

# 钱歌川英语学习大全

## 教育泰斗毕生英语教学总结

(套装 **5** 册)



后浪出版公司

# 总 目 录

---

[英文语法作文大全](#)

[翻译的基本知识](#)

[翻译的技巧](#)

[英文疑难详解](#)

[英文疑难详解续篇](#)

ENGLISH

Chien Gochuen

SELF-  
A SELF-TAUGHT ENGLISH GRAMMAR  
AND COMPOSITION

后浪 大学章 058-02

# 英文语法 作文大全

钱歌川 编著

SELF

北京联合出版公司  
Beijing United Publishing Co., Ltd.

# 英文语法作文大全

钱歌川 著



## 版权信息

| 书名：英文语法作文大全

| 作者：钱歌川

| 书号：978-7-5100-9344-9

| 版权：后浪出版咨询（北京）有限责任公司

# 目录

## 第一编 语法之部

### 一 语法自修

- (1) 语法和造句
- (2) 语句的构成
- (3) 语句的成分
- (4) 语句的扩大
- (5) 语句的种类
- (6) 语句的解剖
- (7) 语句的合成
- (8) 语句的变换
- (9) 额外的因素
- (10) 单词和词性
- (11) 名词和冠词
- (12) 补语的用法
- (13) 代词概要
- (14) 人称代词
- (15) 指示代词
- (16) 疑问代词
- (17) 关系代词
- (18) 动词的变化
- (19) 规则动词 (Regular Verb)

(20) 不规则动词 (Irregular Verb)

(21) 动词的种类

(22) 动词的时态

(23) 语态和语气

(24) 助动词用法

(25) 三种动状词

(26) **being** 的用法

(27) 形容词用法

(28) 比较的法则

(29) 副词的用法

(30) 介词的用法

(31) 类别的介词

(32) 词后的介词

(33) 连词和感叹词

## 二 语法练习

(1) 人称和数 (Person and Number)

(2) 疑问句 (Interrogatives)

(3) 疑问短语 (Interrogative Phrases)

(4) 否定句 (Negatives)

(5) 被动语态 (Passive Voice)

(6) 格 (Case)

(7) 人称代词的位置 (Position of Personal Pronoun)

(8) 指示代词 (Demonstrative Pronouns)

(9) 代词与先行词 (Pronouns and Antecedents)

(10) 关系代词及疑问代词 (Relative and Interrogative Pronouns)

(11) 形容词与副词 (Adjectives and Adverbs)

- (12) 比较 (Degrees of Comparison)
- (13) 冠词 (The Articles)
- (14) 名词所有格 (Nouns in Possessive Case)
- (15) 所有格形容词 (Possessive adjectives)
- (16) 反身代词 (Reflexive Pronouns)
- (17) 将来时态 (The Future Tenses)
- (18) 现在时态 (The Present Tenses)
- (19) 过去时态 (The Past Tenses)
- (20) 将来完成时态 (The Future Perfect Tense)
- (21) 现在完成时态 (The Present Perfect Tense)
- (22) 过去完成时态 (The Past Perfect Tense)
- (23) 完成进行时态 (The Perfect Continuous Tenses)
- (24) 时之一致 (Sequence of Tenses)
- (25) 直接叙述和间接叙述 (Direct and Indirect Narration)
- (26) 条件句 (Conditional Sentences)
- (27) Wish 后面的虚拟式 (The Subjunctive After "Wish")
- (28) Should 的特别用法
- (29) Ought to
- (30) Should 和 have to
- (31) 助动词的特别用法——避免重复 (Special Use of Auxiliary Verbs—Avoidance of Repetition)
- (32) 不定词 (The Infinitive)
- (33) 分词 (The Participles)
- (34) 动名词 (The Gerund)
- (35) 不定词乎? 动名词乎? (Infinitive or Gerund? )

- (36) 介词 (Prepositions)
  - (37) 词的顺序 (Word-Order)
  - (38) 副词的位置 (The Position of Adverbs)
  - (39) 常易混淆的副词 (Adverbs often Confused)
  - (40) 常易混淆的形容词 (Adjectives often Confused)
  - (41) 常易混淆的动词 (Verbs often Confused)
  - (42) 词类的构成 (Word-formation)
  - (43) 语句的结合 (Combination of Sentences)
  - (44) 语句的转换 (Transformation of Sentences)
- 英文语法练习手册习题解答

## 第二编 作文之部

### 一 造句例解

- (1) 名词与冠词的关系
- (2) 代词应注意的用法
- (3) 形容词应注意的用法
- (4) 动词时态的用法
- (5) 动词语气的用法
- (6) 主动语态与被动语态的用法
- (7) 助动词的用法
- (8) 动状词的用法
- (9) 副词的用法
- (10) 介词的用法
- (11) 连词的用法
- (12) 时的一致与叙述转换

### 二 作文批改

#### A POET IN THE THEATRE

MY BEST FRIEND  
BUYING A NEW PAIR OF SHOES  
MEI-LI  
MY FACE  
THE ROYAL TUTOR  
ON BOOKS  
MY HOME  
MOUNTAIN CLIMBING  
THE ORIGIN OF LIFE  
CUTTING DOWN THE DAILY EXPENSES  
THE SPURTING FOUNTAIN NEAR THE RAILWAY  
STATION  
THE SPRING IN TAIWAN AS COMPARED WITH  
THAT IN THE MAINLAND  
MY FIRST VISIT TO TAIWAN  
MR. CLEVER  
A GIRL WHOM I KNOW  
THE MAN WHO KNOWS ONLY ONE MEANING  
OF A WORD  
THE HEALING POWER FROM ABOVE  
MY PROFESSION  
SEEING MY BROTHER OFF  
THE MOST INTERESTING EXPERIENCE OF MY  
LIFE  
MY WEAKNESS IN WRITING ENGLISH  
ONE MOONLIT NIGHT  
WHEN A LIE IS NECESSARY  
A GAS METER  
DON'T LET YOUR OPPORTUNITY SLIP

MY FAMILY  
ON EYES  
A LETTER TO THE EDITOR  
NATURE AND KNOWLEDGE

三 英文正误

- (1) 主语和动词不一致的错误
- (2) 动词过多的错误
- (3) 动词变化上的错误
- (4) 时态 (Tense) 的错误
- (5) 及物动词和不及物动词的错误
- (6) 语态的错误
- (7) 助动词的错误
- (8) 条件句中动词的错误
- (9) 不定词的错误
- (10) 分词修饰语的错误
- (11) 动名词的错误
- (12) 名词的数的错误
- (13) 名词的性的错误
- (14) 代词性的错误
- (15) 代词数的错误
- (16) 代词位的错误
- (17) 代词所有格的错误
- (18) 代词太多的错误
- (19) 代词的错用
- (20) 关系代词的格的错误
- (21) 关系代词 **that**, **which** 和 **who** 间的错用
- (22) 省略关系代词的错误
- (23) 关系代词的地位的错误

- (24) 感叹句的错误
- (25) 并列连词的错误
- (26) 介词误作连词的错误
- (27) 连词误作介词的错误
- (28) 关联词的错误
- (29) 几个极易用错的连词
- (30) 对于连词的意义辨认不清楚所发生的错误
- (31) 连词过多或被放在不必要的地方所发生的错误
- (32) 省略连词 **that** 所发生的错误
- (33) 比较时易犯的错误
- (34) 普通容易误用的形容词
- (35) 几对互相误用的同根的形容词
- (36) 几对容易互相误用的形容词
- (37) 形容词当副词用的错误
- (38) 形容词当动词的错误
- (39) 属性形容词和谓语部分形容词易犯的错误
- (40) 形容词的位置的错误
- (41) 冠词间的错用
- (42) 多用冠词的错误
- (43) 省略冠词的错误
- (44) 副词被用作补语的错误
- (45) 两个容易误用的副词
- (46) 几对容易互相误用的副词
- (47) 副词当名词用的错误
- (48) 副词在句中的位置的错误
- (49) 省略介词的错误
- (50) 多用介词的错误
- (51) 名词前误用介词的错误



- (52) 动词后误用介词的错误
- (53) 形容词后误用介词的错误
- (54) 名词后误用介词的错误
- (55) 几对容易互相误用的介词

练习题

习题解答

出版后记

[返回总目录](#)

## 第一编 语法之部

## 一 语法自修

# 1 语法和造句

任何一种语言，都有它的语法，但说那种语言的人，却不知道什么是语法。他们从牙牙学语的时候开始，就跟着人们这样说，从来没有注意到他说的话，是合乎语法的规则的。

有些研究语言现象的人，把那种语言中常用的表现方式归纳起来，编定一些通则，这便是所谓语法。但语言是自然发展而成的，没有人肯依照一些固定的规则去说话，他们随便说，只求能表现他们的意思也就满足了。编语法的人却要从这些漫无标准的语言当中，找出它的标准来，所以只能求得一个大概的规则，而每条规则总是有例外的。

因此我们知道语法非将就语言不可，语言的发展是绝不管什么语法规则的。没有人肯削足适履，依照语法来说话，除非他是一个外国人。我们学一种外国语，因为不是从小自然养成的习惯，而要凭记忆和理解去学习，所以一定要先学语法，才有规则可循，才能类推心得。儿童的记忆力和模仿力都很强，学任何语言，或同时学几种语言，都用不着学语法。成人记忆力差了，但理解力却增加起来，所以学了语法，就可依据一条规则，而推论到其他的说法，自然比茫无头绪地去学习要便利得多了。

英文既不是我们的国语，我们中国人来学英文，也非学语法不可。我们在学语法之初，应当了解语法并无高初之别，只有繁简之分。初中学的语法，和大学学的语法，还是一种东西，不过愈学愈复杂而已。如果你对于简单的语法没有学通，又去学繁杂的语法，只有愈弄愈糊涂，永远学不好的。所以不问你是初中学生也好，大学学生也好，如果语法没有弄清楚的话，仍得从头学起。任何一个学英文的人，都得把基本的语法学通，才能深造，正像造房子一样，基础不固，随便你把房子造得多高，也会要倒的。

我主张语法愈简单愈好，不过无论它怎样简单，却要规模全备，所谓麻雀虽小，肝胆俱全，不可见树不见林，详其一端而略去其大

体。要使初学语法的人，一眼就能看透整个的树林，而不是只见一花一木，去研究它的枝节问题。你总记得群盲摸象的故事吧，那些盲人，谁都没有看见整个的像是一个什么样子，所以各执一词，没有一个人知道真正的事实。我们学语法一定要从简单的入手，就是要使我们看到个整的象，知道语法到底是什么。

你把大概的英文语法学会了，你就知道普通造句的法则，你就可以简单地用英文表达你的意思，否则，你即令对某种词类研究很深，你还是不能正确地写出一个普通的句子来。

## 2 语句的构成

关于语句的构成，可分形式和内容两方面来讲。现在先讲形式。我们知道任何一个词，都有它的意义，任何一个语句，都能表达一种思想，但为什么有些人写出来的文章，像天书一样，使我们看不懂它的意思呢？这就是因为不通的人，点金成铁，把那些分明有意义的字，胡乱地凑在一起，反而使它们失去了意义。正好像一群乌合之众不能成为军队一样，许多杂凑在一起的字，也绝不能成为语句。例如 **hard boy the works** 或 **the hard boy works** 或 **boy the works hard** 或 **works boy the hard** 等，都不是语句，一定要写成 **the boy works hard** 才行，而这样还不够完善，还得把第一个字母大写，在各词的最后加上一个句点，即“**The boy works hard.**（那男孩用功。）”才算是一个完善的语句。

由此看来，我们可以知道，一个完善的语句，一定是要把各词依照语法排列，加上必要的大写和标点，然后才可以成立的。你如果对这种形式加以忽视，而不注意词的排列，那么，你写出来的文章自然不通了。

在语句的构成上，比这种形式问题更为重要的，自然是它的内容了。内容就是说它所包含的要素。一个完整的语句，起码要具备一个主语（**Subject**）和一个谓语（**Predicate**），例如“**Birds fly.**（鸟飞）。”前者为主语，后者为谓语，虽则简单，却已成为一个完整的语句了。如上举的“**The boy works hard.**”也是一样，**the boy** 是主语，**works hard** 是谓语。这是第一种句型，其公式是“**Subject + Predicate**”。其次是有宾语（**Object**）的语句，例如，“**He has a book.**”。因用 **have** 这个及物动词，一定要接上一个宾语，才能完成意义，你单说“他有”，听者便将产生疑问：他有什么呢？所以必须说出他有的东西来，才算是表达出一个完全的思想来了。这是第二种句型，其公式是“**Subject + Predicate + Object**”。有时在不及物动词后面，也接上一个词，但不是宾语，因不及物动词是不能有宾语的。比方说，“**I am a boy.**”。句中的 **boy**，并不是宾语，而是补语（**Com**

plement)。补语一定要和主语一致，如上句 I 就是 boy，boy 就是 I；而宾语和主语，则必然是两件事。宾语一定要是名词，而补语便不一定是名词，有时形容词也可以，如“The flower is beautiful.”，便是用形容词做补语的。这是第三种句型，其公式是“Subject + Predicate + Complement”，我们又可以把宾语和补语，同时用在一句中，例如“We made him happy.”。句中的 we 是主语，made 是谓语，him 是宾语，happy 是补语。这是第四种句型，其公式是“Subject + Predicate + Object + Complement”。

构成英文语句的要素，不外是上述的“主语”“谓语”“宾语”和“补语”四种字眼，其他都无关重要，只是用作修饰而已。所以我们对于其他那些无关紧要的字，就叫作修饰语（Modifier）。语句中成为要素的字眼，就好像房子的干架，成为修饰语的字眼，就好像房子的装饰；没有干架房子便建不起来，更无从加以装饰了。正像房子的建成全在干架一样，语句的构成也非有那些要素不可。

### 3 语句的成分

在上讲“语句的构成”中所讲的，是构成语句的一些要素，即所谓主语、谓语、宾语和补语。在本讲中，就打算讲构成那些要素的成分，即单词（**Word**）、短语（**Phrase**）和分句（**Clause**）。一个主语不一定是一个单词，它也可以是一个短语，也可以是一个分句。任何一个主语，都应该是一个名词，不过有时我们可以不用名词而用别的词来代替它，例如用代词，用不定词，用短语，或用分句都可以。这些代替来用的词，我们可统称之为相当语（**Equivalents**）。

凡有意义的一个字母（**letter**），或两个字母以上结合而成的文字，就叫作单词。英文的单词，依其词性可分为八大词类（**Eight Parts of Speech**），即所谓名词（**Noun**）、代词（**Pronoun**）、动词（**Verb**）、形容词（**Adjective**）、副词（**Adverb**）、介词（**Preposition**）、连词（**Conjunction**）、感叹词（**Interjection**）。

两个以上的单词组合而成的短辞，就叫作短语。一个短语中是不包含主语和谓语的，但它却有一定的意义。依照它的作用，我们可以把短语分为四类：①名词短语（**Noun Phrase**），②形容词短语（**Adjective Phrase**），③副词短语（**Adverb Phrase**），④其他短语。现就以上四类，分别举例说明如下：

名词短语：**To tell a lie** is wrong.（撒谎是不对的。）

Now I must decide **what to do**.（现在我必须决定怎么办。）

例句中 **to tell a lie** 是 **is** 的主语，**what to do** 是 **decide** 的宾语，凡主语和宾语都是要用名词的，所以这是名词短语。

形容词短语：**He is a man of courage**.（他是一个勇者。）

**A man without courage** is a knife **without an edge**.（人而无勇犹刀之无锋。）



Be always **in time**; too late is a crime. (要常守时; 迟误为罪。)

所谓 man of courage = courageous man, 可见都是用来修饰 man 的; without courage 也是修饰 man 的, without an edge 就是修饰 knife 的; in time 是 be 的补足语, 也是当作形容词用的, 所以以上都是形容词短语。

副词短语: He studies **with diligence**. (他勤读。)

I was born **in this town**. (我生在此城。)

There is a book **on the desk**. (桌上有一本书。)

例句中的 with diligence、in this town 和 on the desk, 都是副词短语, 第一个短语是修饰动词 studies, 第二个短语是修饰动词 was born, 第三个短语是修饰动词 is 的。

其他短语:

1. 动词短语 (Verb-phrase), 如: a. **Take good care of** yourself. (好生保养。) b. He did not **take part in** the meeting. (他未曾参加那会。)

2. 介词短语 (Prepositional-phrase), 如: a. He is cheerful **in spite of** illness. (他不顾生病还是很快乐。) b. He was obliged to leave the office **on account of** ill health. (他因病不得不停止办公。)

3. 连词短语 (Conjunction-phrase), 如: a. I shall lend you the book **as soon as** I have done with it. (等我读完了这本书, 我就借给你。) b. Any will do, **so long as** it is interesting. (只要是有趣味的什么都可以。)

4. 感叹词短语 (Interjection-phrase), 如: a. You are not going to pay the money? **For shame!** (你不付钱吗? 真不要脸!) b. **Come now**, don't joke. (喂, 喂, 不要开玩笑。)

语句中的小语句, 就叫作分句。每个分句都是有一个主语和一个谓语的。分句可分为①名词分句 (Noun Clause), ②形容词分句

(Adjective Clause) , ③副词分句 (Adverb Clause) 三种。现分别举例说明如下:

名词分句: **What he says** is true. (他所说的是真的。)

He asked me **where I was going**. (他问我往何处去。)

例句中的 **what he says** 是动词 **is** 的主语; **where I was going** 是动词 **asked** 的宾语, 所以都是名词分句。

形容词分句: This is the house **where he lives**. (这就是他住的屋子。)

**Students who are diligent** are sure to succeed. (勤勉的学生一定会成功的。)

例句中的 **where he lives** 是修饰 **house** 的, 而 **who are diligent** 是修饰 **students** 的, 所以都是形容词分句。

副词分句: I did **as he told me**. (我照他说的做了。)

Look **before you leap**. (看好再跳。)

例句中的 **as he told me** 是修饰动词 **did** 的, **before you leap** 是修饰动词 **look** 的, 所以都是副词分句。

## 4 语句的扩大

照第二讲所述，语句的构成有四种句式，最简单的就是“主语 + 谓语”，例如 **Birds sing**. 但英文中毕竟很少见到这样简单的句子。为什么少呢？因为句式尽管简单得只有一个主语和一个谓语，但文字绝不限于两个字。我们可以在那主语和谓语上，加添许多修饰语（**Modifier**），那句子自然就变长了。例如上举的“**Birds sing**.”这个句子，我们就可以说“**Little birds sing sweetly**”，又可以说“**The little birds in my garden sing sweetly every morning**”，诸如此类，尽可以拉长，但在句式上看来，它还是“主语 + 谓语”的一个简单句子。

一个句子比方作人体的话，其中的主语就是人体的头。这头上可以插花，可以戴帽，可以御眼镜，可以戴耳环，这些装饰在头上的东西，就通称为装饰品，在句子的主语上，就叫作修饰语。修饰语是限定那个主语等的意义的，可大别为名词修饰语和动词修饰语两类。名词修饰语是形容词，而动词修饰语就是副词。修饰语放在那主词的前面或是后面的时候，就称为附加的用法（**Attributive Use**），作为动词的补足语时，就叫作叙述的用法（**Predicative Use**）。现在分别举例说明一下。

I. 形容词的“附加的用法”和“叙述的用法”：

(a) 附加的用法：A **heavy** shower fell today.

I see something **white** in the distance.

(b) 叙述的用法：This rose smells **sweet**.

**Happy** is the man who is contented.

II. 副词的“附加的用法”和“叙述的用法”：

(a) 附加的用法：I missed the last **up** train last night.

I met him on my way **back**.

(b) 叙述的用法: The stars are **out**.

**Off** the train goes.

形容词的修饰语用来修饰主语，而副词的修饰语就用来修饰谓语。主要的主语修饰语 (Subject Modifier)，有下列四种：

①A **national** flag is the symbol of a country. (以 Adjective 为修饰语。)

②The best way **to learn** English is learning by heart. (以 Adjective Infinitive 为修饰语。)

③The book **on the desk** is not mine. (以 Adjective Phrase 为修饰语。)

④The house **which he lives** in is at the top of the hill. (以 Adjective Clause 为修饰语。)

句中的宾语和补语，如果是名词的话，也同样地可以加上述的四种修饰语，例如：

I know the best way **to learn** English. (宾语修饰语。)

This is the best way **to learn** English. (补语修饰语。)

主语修饰语除上述的以外，还可以用同位语 (Appositive)，例如：

My friend, **Wang**, is very honest. (同位单词。)

Chang, **the monitor of our class**, is a star football player. (同位短语。)

My wish, **that she would come to the party**, was gratified. (同位分句。)

主要的谓语修饰语 (Predicate Modifier)，同样地也有四种，即：

①He speaks English **fluently**. (以 Adverb 为修饰语。)

②He goes **to see** his mother. (以 Adverb Infinitive 为修饰语。)

③I usually study **in my study**. (以 Adverb Phrase 为修饰语。)

④I will wait **till he comes**. (以 Adverb Clause 为修饰语。)

在副词上还可以再加副词短语来修饰，以补充其意义，而扩大其语句。例如“**He is out in the garden.**”。

## 5 语句的种类

关于英文语句的分类，我们可以从构造上和从机能上两方面来看。由构造上，即依句法（**Sentence Structure**）来看，语句的种类有三：即单句、复句和并列句。由机能上，即依叙述的方式来看，语句可大别为四：即陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句。

### I. 构造上语句的分类

#### 1. 单句（Simple Sentence）

只包含一个 **Subject Word**（主语）和一个 **Predicate Verb**（谓语）的 **Sentence**（语句），就叫作单句。例如：

I **like** an honest man.（我喜欢诚实的人。）

These flowers **bloom** all the year round.（这些花一年到头都开的。）

#### 2. 复句（Complex Sentence）

凡包含一个主句（**Main Clause**）和一个或几个从句（**Subordinate Clause**）的语句，就叫作复句。例如：

I know **that he is honest**.（我知道他是诚实的。）

The man **who came yesterday** was my uncle.（昨天来的那个人是我的叔父。）

**Though he went to the movies**, I stayed at home.（他去看电影，我却留在家里。）

在上举的三个例句中用黑体字印的，全是从句。每个从句中也有其独自的主语和谓语，如果把它的引导用的关系词，即是 **that**、**who**、**though** 等拿掉，而让它脱离主句，它就成为一个单句了。

#### 3. 并列句（Compound Sentence）

由并列连词（Coordinate Conjunction）连接的两个或两个以上的独立分句所构成的语句，就叫作并列句，例如：

This is black **and** that is white.（此黑彼白。）

He went to the movies, **but** I stayed at home.（他去看电影但我留在家里。）

**Neither** my brother **nor** I know French.（我弟弟和我都不懂法文。）

并列句如主语相同时，可将第二个独立分句中的主语，乃至谓语省略：

He speaks well, but (he) writes badly.

He is poor but (he is) honest.

## II. 机能上语句的分类

### 1. 陈述句（Declarative Sentence）

把事物平铺直叙地说出来的，就叫陈述句。句尾的标点要用句号（Period）。

He works hard.（他很用功。）

I do not want it.（我不要这个。）

在否定句中，除用动词 **be**（即 **is**、**am**、**are** 等）及 **have** 可直接接否定词的 **not** 外，其余的动词都得加上一个 **do**（或 **does**、**did**）再接否定词的 **not**，并且要放在那动词的前面，如上举的第二例。

### 2. 疑问句（Interrogative Sentence）

凡问什么的语句，就叫作疑问句。疑问句有两种，一是要回答 **Yes** 或 **No** 的；一是用疑问词开始而不要回答 **Yes** 或 **No** 的。句尾的标点要用问号（Interrogation Mark），例如：

Do you want a pen?（你要笔吗？答：Yes, I want one.）

What do you want?（你要什么？答：I want a pen.）

疑问句除加用助动词（如 **do**、**will** 等），和以疑问词作主语用（如“**Who came to see you yesterday?**”“**Which is taller, you or your brother?**”“**How many boys failed in the examination?**”）外，普遍都要将谓语置于主语之前，例如“**Is he a good boy?**”。

### 3. 祈使句 (Imperative Sentence)

用动词的原形 (**Root**) 而省去主语，以表示命令、请求、禁止等的，就叫作祈使句。句尾用句号，要加强意味时，则用感叹号 (**Exclamation Mark**)，例如：

**Be quiet!** (不要闹!)

**Do not read novels all day long.** (不要一天到晚读小说。)

在祈使句的前后，有时可加用呼唤的人名，如“**Tom, work hard.** (汤姆，要用功呀。)””。又，对第一人称和第三人称的祈使就用 **let** 一字开始，如“**Let me bear this in mind.** (让我把这个记在心上。)”“**Let young men bear this in mind.** (让青年们把这个记在心上。)””。普通对第二人称的祈使句则为“**Young men, bear this in mind.** (青年人，把这个记在心上吧。)””。

### 4. 感叹句 (Exclamatory Sentence)

常用副词的 **how** 或形容词的 **what** (后加不定冠词) 开始，而表示感叹的，就叫作感叹句。句尾用感叹号，例如：

**How kind he is!** (他多么亲切呀。)

**How the stars twinkles!** (星何其摇闪。)

**What a kind man he is!** (他是一个何等亲切的人。)

感叹句有时可将主语和不及物动词省略，不必说“**What a fool he is!**”，单说“**What a fool!**”也行了。



## 6 语句的解剖

依照前面所说的，所有的语句，从构造上看来，可分为三类，即单句、复句和并列句。我们现在不妨再进一步，将这三种句子来解剖一下，便可更加明白它们的构造和内容了。

### I. 单句的解剖

现试举出三句形式不同的单句，作为解剖的实例。

1. You will succeed by diligence.
2. It is not right to tell a lie.
3. Do not tell him such a foolish story.

单句是只有一个 **Subject** 和一个 **Predicate** 的，所以我们就得把句中的这两种要素找出来。第一句一见而知主语是 **you**，谓语是 **succeed**。第二句的主语是 **it**，不过它是代表后面的 **to tell a lie** 的，所以这两个都要视为主语。第三句字面上没有主语，因为祈使句多半是将主语 **you** 略去了的，所以我们在解剖时应该补上，句子的构造才可显明地看得出来。

现再详细列表说明如下：

Subject	Predicate			
	Verb	Object	Complement	Adverb
①you	will succeed			by diligence
②it (to tell a lie)	is		right	not

③you	do tell	{ him story such a foolis h		not
------	---------	--	--	-----

## II. 复句的解剖

现试举出二句形式不同的复句，作为解剖的实例。

1. When I was a boy at school, I was often very idle.

2. My parents did not know that I seldom attended school.

复句包含一个主句 (Principal Clause) 和一个或几个从句 (Dependent Clause)，而这种从句，可能有三种，即副词从句 (Adverb Clause)、形容词从句 (Adjective Clause) 和名词从句 (Noun Clause)。上例第一句中的“**When I was a boy at school**”就是一个副词从句，因为它是形容动词 **was** 的。第二句中的“**that I seldom attended school**”，就是一个名词从句，因为它是 **know** 的宾语。

现用表解说明如下：

		Connective	Subject	Predicate			
				Verb	Object	Complement	Adverb
①	Principal Clause		I	was		idle	{ often very when...
	Adverb	when	I	was		boy a	

	Claus e					at schoo l	
②	Princi pal Claus e		my pare nts	did kn ow	tha t...		not
	Noun Claus e	that	I	attend ed	sch ool		seldo m

### Ⅲ. 并列句的解剖

现试举出两句形式不同的并列句，作为解剖的实例。

1. The crow took a pebble and dropped it into the pitcher.

2. All men are mortal; all kings are men; therefore all kings are mortal.

并列句是由两个以上的同等分句所构成的，有时那些分句因为同一主语，所以可以将后面的主语略去，如谓语也相同时，也同样可以省略。上例第一句中第二个从句中 **dropped** 的主语也是 **the crow**，所以略去了。

现用表解说明如下：

		Connec tive	Subje ct	Predicate			
				Verb	Objec t	Complem ent	Adverb
①	A		the cr ow	took	a peb ble		
	B	and	(it)	dropp ed	it		into the pit cher

②	A		all men	are		mortal	
	B		all kings	are		men	
	C	therefore	all kings	are		mortal	

## 7 语句的合成

读过“语句的种类”之后，我们已经知道了语句可分为单句、复句和并列句三种。单句是语句的基础，在任何一种句型中，至少都非包含一个单句不可。只有极短的句子，才是一个单句所构成的，稍长的句子，不问它是单句也好，复句也好，并列句也好，多半包含两个以上的单句。所以两个单句，可合成一个单句，也可合成一个复句，也可合成一个并列句。复句和并列句都得包含两个分句，单句就只可有一个分句。在一个分句所构成的单句上，再加短语，并不影响句型，所以合并两个单句为一句的时候，有三种不同的方式。也可以说，因造句的方式不同，而发生三种不同的结果。兹分别举例说明如下：

### 1. 两个单句合成一个单句

把其中一个不大重要的单句，改为短语，附在另外一较为重要的单句上，便合成一个单句了，例如：

- ①  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(You) turn to the right.} \\ \text{You will find the post office on your left.} \end{array} \right.$

= Turning to the right, you will find the post office on your left.

(向右转走去，你就会看见邮政局在你的左边呢。)

- ②  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He labours very hard.} \\ \text{He is still poor.} \end{array} \right.$

= In spite of all his labours, he is still poor. (尽管他非常努力，他还是很穷。)

- ③  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has a large family.} \\ \text{He must provide for them.} \end{array} \right.$

= He has a large family to provide for. (他有一个大家庭要赡养。)

## 2. 两个单句合成一个复句

把其中一个不大重要的单句，改为从句（名词从句、形容词从句或副词从句皆可），附在另外一个较为重要的单句上，便合成一个复句了，例如：

### A. 用名词从句的

- ①  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He will come again.} \\ \text{I am sure of it.} \end{array} \right.$

= I am sure that he will come again. (我确信他会再来。)

- ②  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Will he come here again?} \\ \text{I asked him the question.} \end{array} \right.$

= I asked him if he will come here again. (我问他是不是还要再到这里来。)

- ③  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I am going to a certain place.} \\ \text{He does not know it.} \end{array} \right.$

= He does not know where I am going. (他不知道我要到什么地方去。)

### B. 用形容词从句的

- ①  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The canary sings sweetly.} \\ \text{I caught it in our garden.} \end{array} \right.$

= The canary which I caught in our garden sings sweetly.  
(我在花园里捉来的那只金丝雀歌声很美。)

- ②  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{This is the house.} \\ \text{He lives in it.} \end{array} \right.$

= This is the house where he lives. (他就住在这所房子里。)

- ③ { He had received a good education.  
This raised him above many men of his age.

= The good education that he had received, raised him above many men of his age.

(他受了很好的教育, 所以使他比同年辈的人的地位都高。)

### C. 用副词从句的

- ① { He is very rich.  
He is never happy.

= Though he is very rich, he is never happy. (他虽则很有钱, 但他从来不快乐。)

- ② { He is diligent.  
No other boy in the class is more diligent.

= He is more diligent than any other boy in the class. (他是同班中最勤励的。)

- ③ { The signal was given.  
Every one immediately raised a shout.

= Every one raised a shout as soon as the signal was given.

(信号一发, 所有的人都大声地喊出来。)

### 3. 两个单句合成一个并列句

把两个单句用连词把它们结合起来, 便成为一个并列句了, 例如:

- ① { It was getting late.  
I will go home.

= It was getting late, and so I will go home. (时间很迟了, 所以我要回家了。)

② { I did not go out.  
I stayed at home.

= I did not go out, but stayed at home. (我没有出去, 而留在家里。)

③ { Energy is necessary to success in life.  
Patience is also necessary to it.

= Not only energy, but patience is also necessary to success in life.

(人生的成功, 不仅需要精力, 而且需要耐性。)



## 8 语句的变换

语句在构造上有单句、复句和并列句之分，不过这些不同的句式，完全是属于语法上的，与意义无关。同一种意义，可以用好几种句式表示出来，说明尽管不同，意思可以不变。为求彻底明了这三种句式的构成起见，我们不妨试将句式变换，例如将复句改为单句，将并列句改为单句，或将复句改为并列句。对于语句的各种构造运用自如之后，写作时就不会有何困难了。

### 1. 由复句改成单句

#### A. 将名词从句换用其他单词或短语的

- ① { 告诉我你出生的时间和地点。  
Tell me **when and where you were born.** (复句)  
Tell me **the time and place of your birth.** (单句)
- ② { 我们不能相信他说的话。  
We can place no confidence in **whatever he says.** (复句)  
We can place no confidence in **any of his words.** (单句)
- ③ { 我一定可以使你满足。  
I am certain **that I shall give you satisfaction.** (复句)  
I am certain **of giving you satisfaction.** (单句)
- ④ { 我很高兴听见你回来了。  
I was glad to hear **that you had come back.** (复句)  
I was glad to hear **of your having come back.** (单句)

- ⑤ 我确信他会成功。  
 I am sure **that he will succeed.** (复句)  
 He is sure **to succeed.** (单句)
- ⑥ 一般相信他是肺病死的。  
 It is generally believed **that he has died of consumption.** (复句)  
 He is generally believed **to have died of consumption.** (单句)

#### B. 将形容词从句换用其他单词或短语的

- ① 我们现在住的这房子对我们很适合。  
 The house **in which we live at present** suits us exactly. (复句)  
**Our present** house suits us exactly. (单句)
- ② 他们的说明不可靠。  
 The explanation **they gave** cannot be true. (复句)  
**Their** explanation cannot be true. (单句)
- ③ 他给了我一张他自己画的画。  
 He gave me a picture **which he had drawn.** (复句)  
 He gave me a picture **of his own drawing.** (单句)
- ④ 他不是一个说谎的人。  
 He is not a man **who tells a lie.** (复句)  
 He is not a man **to tell a lie.** (单句)
- ⑤ 那是一个不可宽恕的过失。  
 That was a fault **which should not be forgiven.** (复句)  
 That was a fault **not to be forgiven.** (单句)

#### C. 将副词从句换用其他单词或短语的

(

① 他们听到他的自白非常惊异。  
They were much surprised **when they heard him confess**. (复句)

They were much surprised **to hear him confess**. (单句)

② 因屡次失败所以他就不再试了。  
**As he had made many failures**, he made no further attempt. (复句)

**Owing to** repeated failures, he made no further attempt. (单句)

③ 那少年很诚实不肯撒谎。  
The boy is **so** honest **that he cannot tell a lie**. (复句)

The boy is **too** honest **to tell a lie**. (单句)

④ 他工作如此优秀使大家为之吃惊。  
He worked **so** well **that every one was astonished**. (复句)

He worked very well, **to the astonishment of every one**. (单句)

⑤ 为求生活舒服他努力工作了。  
He worked hard **that he might** live in comfort. (复句)

He worked hard **for the purpose of** living in comfort. (单句)

⑥ 他夜里动身以免被人看见。  
He started by night **for fear he might** be seen by any one. (复句)

He started by night **to escape being** seen by any one. (单句)

⑦ 如果我能助你，我很高兴。

I should be very glad **if** I could help you. (复句)  
I should be very glad **to be able** to help you. (单句)

- ⑧ 如果没有了水，什么都不能生存。  
**If** there were no water, nothing could live. (复句)  
**Without** water, nothing could live. (单句)

- ⑨ 他虽富有，但不满足。  
**Though** he is rich, he is never contented. (复句)  
**In spite of** all his riches, he is never contented. (单句)

- ⑩ 尽管他有很多的经验，他仍然是无能。  
**Though** he has much experience, he is still incompetent. (复句)  
**For all** his experience, he is still incompetent. (单句)

- ⑪ 那栋房子和其紧邻一样高。  
That house is **as high as** the next one. (复句)  
The height of that house **equals** that of the next one. (单句)

- ⑫ 地势愈高，空气愈冷。  
**The higher** the ground, **the cooler** the air. (复句)  
The air becomes **cooler** in proportion to the height of the ground. (单句)

- ⑬ 他完全照着指示地做了。  
He acted precisely **as** he was instructed. (复句)  
He acted precisely **according to** instructions. (单句)

- ⑭ 种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。  
**As** you sow, **so** you will mow. (复句)  
The harvest will **depend upon** the sowing. (单句)

- ⑮ 吃完了饭，他们又出发了。  
**When** they had finished their dinner, they started off again. (复句)  
**Having finished** their dinner, they started off again. (单句)

- ⑯ 她把一切都准备好，只等他回来。  
**She** made everything ready **before** he arrived. (复句)  
**She** made everything ready **previous to** his arrival. (单句)

- ⑰ 我将留此，等他到来。  
**I** shall stay here **till** he arrives. (复句)  
**I** shall stay here **till** his arrival. (单句)

## 2. 由并列句改成单句

### A. 用 Participle 的

- ① 太阳出来，雾就散了。  
**The sun** rose **and** the fog dispersed. (并列句)  
**The sun** **having risen**, the fog dispersed. (单句)
- ② 强盗一见警察就逃走了。  
**The robber** saw the policeman **and** took to his heels. (并列句)  
**Seeing** the policeman, the robber took to his heels. (单句)

### B. 用 Preposition 的

- ① 他身体不好不能工作。  
**He** was in bad health, **and** so he could not work. (并列句)  
**Owing to** bad health, he could not work. (单句)
- ② 他不但允诺而且实行了。

He **not only** made a promise, **but** kept it. (并列句)  
**Besides** making a promise, he kept it. (单句)

C. 用 Infinitive 的

- ① 我虽用了功，却未考取。  
I worked hard, **but** failed. (并列句)  
I worked hard **only to fail**. (单句)

3. 由复句改成并列句

- ① 他虽穷，但很诚实。  
He is honest, **though** poor. (复句)  
He is poor, **but** honest. (并列句)

- ② 时间一到灯就熄了。  
**As soon as the clock struck the hour**, the lights were put out. (复句)  
The clock struck the hour, **and** the lights were put out at once. (并列句)

- ③ 揿铃即响。  
**If you press the button**, the bell will ring. (复句)  
**Press the button, and** the bell will ring. (并列句)

- ④ 你要吵闹，我就罚你。  
**Unless you keep quiet**, I will punish you. (复句)  
**Keep quiet, or** I will punish you. (并列句)

## 9 额外的因素

我们在第二讲“语句的构成”中，已将一个语句应具备的要素说过了。那即是说，“主语”和“谓语”是最基本的要素，其次是“宾语”和“补语”，此外则为“修饰语”。但无论是要素也好，修饰语也好，在语法上都是互相关联的。唯有一种独立的因素，有时可以和句中其他的词，没有语法上的关联，只有意义上的联系。这原是语句的要素之外的因素，这种因素我们在英文中也可以找出四种不同的形式来，一为“独立的因素”，二为“同位的词句”，三为“呼唤格”，四为“填补语”。现分别举例说明如下：

### 1. 独立的因素

独立的因素是和句中其他的部分没有语法上任何关系的单词，或短语，或从句，这种因素又称括弧的字句，通常是用标点符号隔开的。

#### A. 独立的单词

**Hurrah!** I have passed my examination. (好呀！我考取了。)

**Oh!** We arrived at last. (啊！我们终于到了。)

This, **however**, is not what I asked for. (虽然，这并不是我所要的。)

**Besides**, I can't walk that far. (而且，我走不得那么远。)

#### B. 独立的短语

**In any case**, you are not at fault. (无论如何你都不错。)

The climate of Taiwan, **generally speaking**, is very good. (一般地说来，台湾的气候很好。)

**Between you and me**, I think him a fool. (我们私下说一句, 我想他是一个智力障碍者。)

**After all**, it wasn't your fault. (毕竟, 这不是你的过错。)

### C. 独立的从句

You will, **I suppose**, do as you want to. (我想你可以为所欲为。)

You are entirely right, **I must admit**. (你是完全对的, 我必得承认。)

Bob will, **I fear**, fail in this contest. (在这竞赛中, 我恐怕鲍勃会失败。)

You have, **I agree**, a good alibi. (我同意你不在场。)

## 2. 同位的词句

同位的词句是一个名词, 置于其他名词或代词后, 来描写或说明它的。这种同位的词句, 一定要用逗号来和句中其他的部分隔开。

### A. 同位的单词

My friend, **John**, is very loyal. (我的朋友约翰很忠实。)

### B. 同位的短语

Bob Jones, **the president of our class**, is a star football player. (我们的班长琼斯是足球选手。)

### C. 同位的从句

My wish, **that she would come to the party**, was gratified. (我望她到会, 已如愿以偿。)

## 3. 呼唤格

对于人、地或物, 都可加用呼唤的字眼, 这可能是名词也可能是代词, 但都是独立的。普通用得很多的是对人的呼唤, 尤其是在省略主语的句中:



**Mary**, (you) come here right now. (玛丽, 快到这里来。)

Here, **Dad**, are your slippers. (爹爹, 这是你的拖鞋。)

Well, **folks**, (you) step right up. (好呀, 朋友, 你们站起来吧。)

Do you know, **Martin**, why I come here? (马丁, 你知道我为什么到这里来吗?)

Listen, **girls**, to what I say. (女孩子们, 听我说呀。)

#### 4. 填补语

填补语是用来引出那真正的主语的, 这时的主语是在谓语之后。填补语有两种, 即 **it** 和 **there**。

**It** is easy to swim in salt water. (在盐水中游泳是容易的。)

(注) 这个 **it** 是代表 **to swim** 以下的字句。即“**To swim in salt water is easy.**”。可知真正的主语是 **to swim** 以下的字句, 而不是 **it**, 因为把主语倒装在后, 所以在前面主语的地位空了, 应有一个词来填补。

**There** are ten books on the table. (在桌上有十本书。)

(注) 这个 **there** 就是一个填补词, 真正的主语是 **books** 而不是 **there**。这个句子正常的排列法是“**Ten books are on the table.**”。

## 10 单词和词性

依照单词在它句中所担负的职责，我们就可以决定那个单词的词性，因而得以把所有的词分成八类，即所谓八大词类（Eight Parts of Speech）。

八大词类包括名词（Noun）、代词（Pronoun）、形容词（Adjective）、动词（Verb）、副词（Adverb）、介词（Preposition）、连词（Conjunction）和感叹词（Interjection）。

林称主要是用作①主语：“A **dog** is a faithful animal.（狗是忠实的动物。）”。②宾语：“I keep a very faithful **dog**.（我养了一条很忠实的狗。）”。③补语：“Blackie is a faithful **dog**.（小黑是一条忠实的狗。）”。

充称是用来代替名词的。例如：“The girl has a pretty doll. **She** likes **it** very much.（那女孩有一只漂亮的洋囡囡，她很喜欢它。）”。

械日称是用来修饰名词的。例如：“**The pink** rose is a **beautiful** flower.（红玫瑰是美丽的花。）”。句中的 the 和 a 这种形容词，又称为冠词（Article）。

错称是表示主语的动作，或其所在的地位或状态的。①动作：“He **walked** to school.（他走到学校去了。）”。②地位：“I **am** in the garden.（我在园中。）”。状态：“She **felt** much better.（她觉得好多了。）”。另外有一种助动词（Auxiliary Verb），是不能单独成立，而要和主动词连用的，例如：“You **may** stand up.（你可以站起来。）”“They **have** left the room.（他们已经离开这房间了。）”。助动词有 can、be、do、have、shall、will、may、must、ought 等词，有时 dare、need、let 也可作助动词用。助动词大部分后面接省去“to”的不定词（如 **can go**；**shall come**），但也有接不省去“to”的不定词（如 **ought to go**），有的后接过去或现在分

词（如“**Babylon is fallen. He is building** a house.”），有的接过去分词（如“**I have written** a letter.”）。

端称是用来修饰动词、形容词，或别的副词的。例如：“**The boy works hard.**（那孩子很用功。）”“**He is very careful.**（他很谨慎。）”“**You walk too quickly.**（你走得太快。）”。

结称是用来和名词或代词组合起来而作成副词或形容词用的。例如：①作副词用的：“**I put the book on the desk.**（我把那书放在桌上。）”。②作形容词用的：“**A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.**（多得不如现得。）”。

丽称是用来连接单词或词句的。例如：“**Tom and John are hardworking, but their sister is not.**（汤姆、约翰两兄弟都很用功，但是他们的妹妹则否。）”“**I know that he will come.**（我知道他会来。）”“**I will wait till he comes.**（我要等他来。）”。

粉凄称是单为表白感情的，例如，“**Alas! He is dead!**（哎唷！他死了！）”“**Ouch! My hand is hurt.**（哦呀！我的手受伤了。）”“**Hurrah! The Japanese have surrendered.**（好呀！日本投降了。）”。

同一词因在句中的地位不同，而词性亦异。现举几例说明如下：

- He ran **fast**. (副词)
- It was a **fast** race. (形容词)
- My **fast** will begin today. (名词)
- I shall **fast** when Lent opens. (动词)
- Wrong** seldom prospers. (名词)
- You have taken the **wrong** road. (形容词)
- He often spells words **wrong**. (副词)
- You **wrong** me by your suspicions. (动词)
- What** did you say? (代词)

**What** (= partly) with one thing and what with another.  
(副词)

I do not doubt but **what** (= that) you are right. (连词)

**What!** Have you no better reason than this? (感叹词)

I am waiting **for** the train. (介词)

You have plenty of time, **for** the train is late. (连词)

He trembled **as** he spoke. (连词)

I can do it **as** well. (副词)

You are wrong **as** (= which) was to be expected. (代词)

Some animals, **as** the fox and the squirrel, have bushy tails. (介词)

I will not accept **either** proposal. (形容词)

**Either** the cat or the dog is a thief. (连词)

If you do not stay, I will not stay **either**. (副词)

## 11 名词和冠词

### 1. 名词 (Noun) 的种类

名词可分五种，计有形的四种（共同名词、固有名词、物质名词、集合名词），无形的一种（抽象名词）。

A **room** without **pictures** is like a room without **windows**. 没有画的房间就好像没有窗的房间一样。（句中黑体字都是共同名词。）

The **Victory** was the flagship of **Nelson**. 胜利号是纳尔逊的旗舰。（句中黑体字都是固有名词。）

**Gold** is a precious metal. 黄金是一种贵金属。（句中的黑体字是物质名词。）

He has a large **family** to support. 他有一个大家庭要赡养。（句中的黑体字是集合名词。）

**Industry** is essential to **success**. 勤励是成功所不可缺少的。（句中的黑体字都是抽象名词。）

### 2. 名词的数 (Number)

名词有单数 (Singular Number) 和复数 (Plural Number) 两种。在上举五大类名词中，只有共同名词才能变成复数。集合名词形单义复，如再加成复数，就和共同名词的用法无异。其他三种名词变成复数时，也同样地要变成共同名词。

复数的做法一般是在单数名词上加一个 **s** 或 **es**，但也有加 **en** 等，或以变更元音来表示的。

### 3. 名词的性 (Gender)

名词分男性 (Masculine Gender)、女性 (Feminine Gender)、通性 (Common Gender) 和中性 (Neuter Gender) 四种不

同的性别。

男性: father、man、lion、cock

女性: mother、woman、lioness、hen

通性: parent、child、animal、person、bird

中性: house、table、pencil、book、tree

#### 4. 名词的格 (Case)

名词的格有主格 (Nominative Case)、宾格 (Objective Case) 及所有格 (Possessive Case) 三种。

That **man** has a dog. 那人有一只狗。(主格)

I know that **man**. 我认识那人。(宾格)

This is that **man's** dog. 这便是那人的狗。(所有格)

“属性”可用于①所有者, 如 my brother's hat; ②著者, 或发明发现者, 如 Dickens' novels、Marconi's wireless telegraph; ③目的物, 如 a girls' high school、a children's hospital; ④行为者, 如 father's death、brother's speech; ⑤接受行为者, 如 Julius Caesar's assassination、“No one came to my father's rescue.”。

#### 5. 冠词 (Article)

冠词分定冠词 (Definite Article) 和不定冠词 (Indefinite Article) 两种。不定冠词是 a 和 an, 定冠词是 the。

##### A. “a”“an”的用法

①用于 one 的意义时: He came here **a** week ago.

②用于 a certain 的意义时: **A** Mr. Lee came to see you.

③用于 any 的意义时: **A** horse is a useful animal.

④用于 per 的意义时: The postman calls twice **a** day.

⑤用于 the same 的意义时: Birds of **a** feather flock together.

⑥用于固有名词前有“像.....那样的人或地”的意义时: **A** Newton cannot become **a** Shakespeare at will. (a Newton = a great scientist like Newton; a Shakespeare = a great dramatist like Shakespeare)

在辅音前用 a, 在元音前用 an, 但以发音为准, 如 an hour、a useful thing、a one-eyed man、an M. P.。

### B.“the”的用法

①再提到前所说过的名词时: I met a gentleman and a girl in the park. I thought **the** gentleman must be **the** father of **the** girl.

②虽为第一次出现的名词, 但所指的东西很明显时: Shut **the** door please. He is **the** principal of our school.

③在代表某一种类的名词前: **The** horse is a useful animal.

④由于修饰语而得确定那名词何所指时: I remember **the** time we first met.

⑤在独一无二的东西前: **The** earth moves round the sun.

⑥加在普通名词前造成抽象名词: **The** pen (= the power of a pen) is mightier than **the** sword (= the power of a sword) .

⑦在如下的短语中: in **the** morning、in **the** sun、in **the** right、in **the** country、by **the** hour、by **the** pound、etc

⑧在特殊的固有名词前: **the** Thames、**the** Pacific、**the** Empress of Japan (江河、海洋、舰艇); **the** University of Taiwan、**the** Foreign Office、**the** Grand Hotel (公共建筑物); **the** Times、**the** Pacific English Fortnightly、**the** Year Book (书报杂志); **the** Alps、**the** Philippines (山脉、群岛); **the** United States of America (复数国名); **the** Americans (复数国民); **the** Browns (复数家族)

## 12 补语的运用

我们在第二讲“语句的构成”中，已经略为说到了补语，尤其是补语和宾语不同的地方，在及物动词后，必然要接一个宾语，这是很容易了解的，如果补语只用在不及物动词后也就容易了，但及物动词后有时也接补语，所以就不免使人感到混乱。现在特将补语的运用，专题来讲一下。

在讲动词之前，来讲补语的运用似乎有点不大方便，因为补语是和动词有连带关系的。不过我们只要注意地看看下例句中不同的地方，也就不难了解了。

(A) He is **rich**. (主语 + 不及物动词 + 补语)

(B) They elected him **mayor**. (主语 + 及物动词 + 宾语 + 补语)

用在不及物动词后面的补语，是说明主语的；用在及物动词后面的补语，是说明宾语的。可见用在及物动词后的补语，绝不会与宾语混乱。所谓补语，是用来修饰主语或宾语的，以补足那动词的叙述不完全的地方。无论不及物动词也好及物动词也好，需要加补语的，都是不完全的。称为“不完全不及物动词”及“不完全及物动词”。

用在不完全不及物动词后的，是主语补语 (Subjective Complement)；而用在不完全及物动词后的，是宾语补语 (Objective Complement)。现再分别举例讲解一下。

### 1. 主语补语

(1) Custom is almost a second nature. 习惯为第二天性。

(2) A good medicine tastes bitter. 良药苦口。

在 (1) 中的 **nature** 和在 (2) 中的 **bitter**，是修饰主语 **custom** 和 **medicine** 的，同时又是补足不及物动词 **is** 和 **tastes** 的不完全的意思的，所以这个名词的 **nature** 和形容词的 **bitter**，都是补语。



这种补语，即是修饰主语的，所以就叫主语补语。通常应加主语补语的不及物动词，有：**be、taste、look、smell、sound、feel、sit、grow、get、fall、come、become、prove、turn** 等。现各举一例如下：

He looks very pale. 他面色苍白。

This flower smells good. 此花甚香。

That explanation sounds true. 那说明听上去属实。

I feel ill this morning. 今晨我不舒服。

The food sits heavy on my stomach. 食物停滞在我胃中。

The tree grew taller and taller. 这树愈长愈高了。

He has got rich. 他阔了。

He fell sick. 他病了。

His prediction has come true. 他不幸而言中。

He has now become a rich merchant. 他现在变成一个阔商人。

The rumor proved true. 那谣言是真的。

My hair has turned gray. 我的头发白了。

## 2. 宾语补语

(1) People call him the father of the radio. 人们称他为无线电之父。

(2) Learning makes a good man better, and a bad man worse. 学问使好人更好，使坏人更坏。

在(1)中的 **father** 和(2)中的 **better、worse** 是修饰宾语 **him** 和 **man** 的，同时又是补足及物动词 **call** 和 **makes** 的不完全的意思的，所以这名词 **father** 和形容词 **better、worse**，都是补语。这种补语，既是修饰宾语的，所以就叫宾语补语。通常应加宾语补语的及物动词有：**call、make、find、think、consider、elect、appoi**

nt、believe、imagine 等，这些动词又称使役动词（Factitive Verb）。

I find the book very useful. 我觉得这本书很有用。

Don't think a country walk a waste of time. 不要以为到乡下散步是浪费时间。

I consider him worthy of confidence. 我认为他很值得信任。

They elected him president. 他们选他为社长。

He appointed him secretary. 他委他为秘书。

The jury believed him innocent. 法官们相信他无罪。

I imagined him safe. 我猜想他平安无事。

### 3. 补语的位置

(1) 主语 + 不及物动词 + 补语

Brevity is the soul of wit. 要言不烦。（格言）

(2) 主语 + 及物动词 + 宾语 + 补语

Great wealth makes us neither more wise nor more healthy.

财富既不能使我们更聪明，也不能使我们更健康。（格言）

(3) 补语 + 动词 + 主语

What are the general foundations of our belief? 什么是我们信仰的一般的根据？（补语为疑问代词时）

How is she today? 她今天怎样？（补语为疑问副词时）

Happy indeed is he who has a sound mind in a sound body. (= He who...is indeed happy.)

有健全心身的人实在是幸福的。（补语用于加强语气时）

Wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction.

到毁灭的门广开，到毁灭的路宽敞。（补语用于加强语气时）

#### 4. 补语和副词

(A) I found the book easy.

(B) I found the book easily.

英语的动词，不论是及物动词或不及物动词，常有几种不同的含义，而影响后面或接补语或接副词。上例中的 **find** 一个及物动词，也有二义；一为“找到”（**get or discover something as the result of search**），一为“（由经验而）知觉”（**learn or become informed of something by experience**）。上举（A）例为后者之义，（B）为前者之义，即：

(A) 我觉得那本书容易读。

(B) 我很容易就找到了那本书。

我们如果把（A）句中的 **easy** 去掉，即成为“I found the book.（我找到了那本书。）”的意思，所以要使这个动词 **find** 发生“（由经验而）知觉”的意思，就非补上 **easy** 一词不可。所以这个 **easy** 便是补足 **find** 的不完全的意思的补语。

至于（B）例中的 **find** 作“找到”解时，意思已经完全了，不用再加什么补语，要加只能加上一个修饰的副词，如例中的 **easily**。所以这个 **easily** 一词要或不要，都无关系，因为根本不会影响动词 **find** 的意义的。

以上是及物动词，现在再举一个不及物动词的例。

(C) He remained silent.

(D) He remained long.

英文的不及物动词 **remain** 一词，也有两种用法：一是用作普通的不及物动词，意为“停留在原来的地位或情形当中”（**stay in the same place or condition**）；一是用作连接动词（**Linking Verb**）。意为“继续是”“仍系”（**continue to be**），用作连接动词时，意思不完全，必得加一补语，这和普通不及物动词可以自立不同。

(C) 他一直是没作声。

(D) 他停留了很久。

在(C)句中的 **remain**, 既作“继续是”解, 自然非有一个补语, 意思就不完全, 所以主格补语 **silent**, 正是补足不及物动词 **remain** 的意义的。在(D)句中的 **remain** 便是“停留”的意思, 说某人停留了, 已经是一句完整的句子, 用不着要加补语, 一定要加也只能加副词。现就此动词再各举两例句如下:

**He remained unmarried (= single) .** 他一直没有结婚。

**The exhibition will remain open till the end of the month.**  
展览会一直要开到月底。

**One incident remains very vividly in my mind.** 那事情历历在目 (很生动地停留在我心中) 。

**The good will not long remain lonely.** 德不孤, 必有邻。

## 13 代词概要

英语中用代词的地方很多，我们说中国话所不要用的，他们都非加上不可，例如：“我今天是在哥哥家里吃早饭”一句话，说成英语时，在“哥哥”及“早饭”前都非加上代词所有格的 **my** 不可，即“I took my breakfast at my brother's.”。又，“我决心这样做”，也要说，“我决定我的心这样做”，即“I made up my mind to do this.”。

### 1. 代词的种类

代词 (Pronoun)	
人称代词 (Personal)	I, you、he、she、it、we、you、they、us、our
指示代词 (Demonstrative)	this、that、such、one、each、these、there、both、some
疑问代词 (Interrogative)	who、whom、whose、what、which
关系代词 (Relative)	who、which、that、what、whose

物主代词 (Possessive Pronoun) 和反身代词 (Reflexive Pronoun) 是属于人称代词的项下的，至于指示代词有时又叫作形容词性代词 (Adjective Pronoun)。

现将上述四种代词各举一例如下：

① **you** look for hot water under the ice. 缘木求鱼。（句中的 **you** 为人称代词。）

② **One** must form **one's** good habits when young. 一个人一定要在年轻时养成良好的习惯。（句中的 **one** 和 **one's** 为指示代词。）

③ **Which** is the shortest way? 最近的是哪一条路?（句中的 **which** 为疑问代词。）

④ The man **whom** I met just now is Dr. Jones. 我刚才遇见的那人是琼斯博士。（句中的 **whom** 为关系代词。）

## 2. 代词和先行词

一个代词在人称、性、数上面，一定要和它的先行词一致，例如：

The boy lost **his** book. 那孩子把他的书失掉了。（句中的 **his** 是代表 **the boy** 的，所以是男性第三人称单数。）

Tom and Jack did **their** best. 汤姆和杰克尽了他们的力量。（句中的 **their** 是代表 **Tom and Jack** 的，所以是男性第三人称复数。）

Each of the girls has **her** bicycle. 每个女孩子都有她的单车。（句中的 **her** 是女性第三人称单数，与先行的 **each of the girls** 一致。）

Everybody brought **his** lunch. 人人都带了便当。（**everybody** 中虽包括女性，但英文中就没有一个兼具男女两性的单数所有格的词，所以只好以男性的 **his** 代表，正如以 **man** 代表人类一样。）

One never gets into trouble when one minds one's own business. 少管闲事，绝无麻烦。（在主语为 **one** 时，后面要接 **one's**，但主语为限定的 **one** 时，后面才接 **his**，例如：“One of the girls lost **her** book.” “Every one of us gave **his** all to the cause.” “No one may use **his** books for the test.”。）

## 3. 不定代词

如前一节所说的，代词都需要有先行词，才可以前后取得一致。但也有不需要先行词的代词，那就是不定代词（**Indefinite Pronoun**），或称为无人称代词（**Impersonal Pronoun**）。因为它不是固

定地指某个人或某些人，而只是当作无固定人称来用的，所以有漠然不定的意味。

这种不定代词，本是属于人称代词的，但因其并不固定指某人，所以特别提出来，在此先加以叙述，不列入人称代词项下。

用于这种不定代词的有 **we**、**you**、**they** 三字，统作 **people in general** 解，即指一般的人。兹举例说明如下：

① **What must we do on such occasion?** 在那种情形下要怎样办才好？

② **cou do not like to be told the same thing over and over again.** 谁也不愿听人说同样的话。

③ **They sell dear at that shop.** 那店东西卖得贵。

## 14 人称代词

人称代词（**Personal Pronoun**）有所谓人称（**Person**）、格（**Case**）、数（**Number**）、性（**Gender**）四点变化。人称有第一人称、第二人称、第三人称的区别；格有主格、宾格、所有格三种；数有单数及复数；性有男性、女性、通性和中性，现列表如下：

人称	数 性	格		
		主格	宾格	所有格
第一人称	单数 复数	I we	me us	my our
第二人称	单数 复数	you you	you you	your your
第三人称	单数 男性 女性 中性 复数 通性	he she it they	him her it them	his her its their

关于代词的所有格（**Possessive Case**），如上表中所示有 **my**、**our**、**their** 等词，例如：“I made up **my** mind to stop **their** coming.” 句中的 **my**、**their** 皆是。

代词的所有格是形容词而物主代词（**Possessive Pronoun**）才是将名词合并在所有格中的用法，例如：“This watch is **mine** (= my watch).” “Your socks are black, but **mine** (= my socks) are white.”。这种物主代词，只有第三人称，是单数复数同形的，现列表如下：



人称	数	主格及宾格
第三人称	单复同形	my + 名词 = mine our + 名词 = ours
		your + 名词 = yours your + 名词 = yours
		his + 名词 = his her + 名词 = hers their + 名词 = theirs

此外又有所谓复合人称代词（Compound Personal Pronoun），又称反身代词（Reflexive Pronoun），其人称、数、格的变化如下表：

人称	数	主格及宾格	所有格
第一人称	单 复	myself ourselves	my own our own
第二人称	单 复	yourself yourselves	your own your own
第三人称	单	himself herself itself	his own her own its own
	复	themselves	their own
一般通称	单	oneself	one's own

反身代词主要有两种用法，即①反身的用法和②加强的用法，现分别例解如下：

### ①反身的用法

这是用作动词的宾语的。主语和宾语为同一体。

She concealed **herself** behind the door. (她躲在门背后。)

He picked **himself** up. (他自己爬起来了。)

Please make **yourself** at home. (请随便些。)

I cannot make **myself** understood. (我不能使人了解我的意思。)

He killed **himself**. (他自杀了。)

He thought little of **himself**. (他全不为自己着想。)

One should not praise **oneself**. (不宜自己称赞。)

It is hard to know **oneself**. (自知是很难的。)

She bought a ticket for **herself**. (她为她自己买了一张票。)  
(注意：如果用 for her, 就可能误会是为另外一个女人买的票。)

反身代词可以和介词连用而构成成语，例如：

**Between ourselves**, I am going to resign my post. (我只告诉你，我将辞职。)

I went there all **by myself**. (= alone) (我独自去那里的。)

I do everything **for myself**. (我一切都是自己做。)

The light went out **of itself**. (灯光自灭。)

A thing good **in itself** may become bad by its use. (本来好的东西也许可以用坏。)

He is **beside himself** with anger. (他狂怒不已。)

在这种用法中，包括许多惯用的成语，是不宜将 **oneself** 一字译出来的，例如：

Did you **enjoyed yourself** yesterday? (昨天玩得痛快吗?)

**Seat yourself.** (请坐。)

He **absented himself** from school yesterday. (他昨天没去上学。)

I **avail myself** of the opportunity of speaking English. (我利用这机会说英语。)

I resolved to **revenge myself** on him. (我决心对他报仇。)

He made himself sick by **overeating himself**. (他吃得太多而吃病了。)

Do not **overwork yourself**. (不要过劳。)

I **overslept myself** this morning. (我今晨睡得太多了。)

He **excused himself** for coming late. (他因迟到而道歉。)

**Help yourself.** (请随使用。)

②加强的用法

这不是用作宾语，而只是加强意味罢了。

I did it **myself**. (我亲自做的。)

It was the king **himself**. (那原是国王本人。)

The teacher **himself** (= Even the teacher) could not have done it. (老师也做不出来。)

I am a Chinese **myself**. (我就是个中国人。)

That is **his own** house. (那是他的家。)

He has a house of **his own**. (他自己有一栋房子。)

## 15 指示代词

指示代词是拿来指示某物的，又称形容词性代词，因为如果在它后面加上一个名词的话，它就成为形容词了。只有在单独用的时候，它才是指示代词，如：

- 1. **This** is now the mango season. (代词)
- 2. **This** golden mango is my favourite. (形容词)
- 1. **Each** of the pupils has his own bag. (代词)
- 2. **Each** boy has his own bag. (形容词)
- 1. Have you read **any** of his books? (代词)
- 2. **Any** school boy knows it. (形容词)

### 1. this、that、these、those 的用法

a. **this** 是指近处的东西，其复数为 **these**；而 **that** 是指远处的东西，其复数为 **those**。

① **This** is a shirt; **that** is a collar.

② **These** are mine, and **those** are yours.

b. 两个名词分别指示时，前者用 **that** (复数用 **those**)，后者用 **this** (复数用 **these**)。

① Work and play are both necessary to health; **this** (= play) gives us rest, and **that** (= work) gives us energy.

② Dogs are more faithful animals than cats; **these** (= cats) attach themselves to places, and **those** (= dogs) to persons.

c. 为避免重复用同一名词，可用 **that**（复数用 **those**）来代替前面说过的名词。

①The air of lowlands is not so cool as **that** of hills.

②The ears of a horse are shorter than **those** of a rabbit.

d. 又可用 **this**、**that** 来代表前面的 clause 或 sentence。

①You suppose him to be a miser, but **that** is certainly a mistake.

②You paid your debts; and **this** is quite sufficient to prove your honesty.

e. **that** 不仅可以代表前面的 clause 或 sentence，而且可以加强其意义，但须用 **and that** 的形式。

I must consult with him, **and that** at once.

He will come, **and that** soon.

I studied English literature when I was young, **and that** at Oxford.

f. **this**、**that** 可以用来归纳既述的几个名词，但须与 **all** 连用。

①But **all this** was nothing to what followed.

②What is **all that** done for?

## 2. one、ones 的用法

a. 代表前面说过的不定的普通名词，就用 **one**（复数时用 **ones**）。

Have you a knife? Yes, I have **one** (= a knife) .

但在 **one** 之前如有形容词时，就应再加冠词。如系复数的 **ones**，就可用 **some** 代替冠词。

Have you any knives? Yes, I have **a sharp one**. 或 Yes, I have **some sharp ones**.（但如果没有形容词时，则连名词也不要，只说 Yes, I have some. 就行了。）

b. 代表前面说过的“不定的普通名词”要用 **one**，但代表前面说过的“特定的单数普通名词”，就要用 **it** 才对。换句话说，即是 **it** 用于“同名同物”的场合，而 **one** 用于“同名异物”的场合。

Is this knife yours? No, **it** (= the knife) is my brother's.  
(同名同物) Mine is **the one** (the knife) on the table. (同名异物。)

① Have you ever seen **an elephant**? (不定的普通名词)

No, I have never seen **one**.

② Is **this elephant** from India? (特定的普通名词)

Yes, **it** is; **it** is very gentle.

c. **one** 如果是指一般人 (men in general) 的时候，后面的所有格就要用 **one's**，如系限定的时候，就用 **his**、**her** 等。

① **One** must be careful not to break **one's** word.

② To love **one's** enemies is a Christian duty.

但 any one、some one、every one、each one、no one 等的场合就要接 **he** 或 **his** 了。

① **Every one** loves **his** mother.

② I saw **some one** in the distance, but could not tell in **what** direction **he** was going.

### 3. another、other 的用法

a. **another** 是 **an + other** 所构成的，含有两个意思：①另外的 (different)。②也是一个 (also one)。但都不指固定的事物。

① This shirt isn't nice; show me **another**. (different)

② He is a fool, and his wife **another**. (also one)

b. **one...the other** 的用法。

在两件事物之中，随便取一件说 **one**，其余一件则说 **the other**。

Both my brothers are abroad, **one** in England and **the other** in America.

c. the one...the other 的用法。

在二者之中，说其一及其二，而 **the one** 更常用以指其次所提出之事物，不一定照原说的次序。

①Virtue and vice are before you; **the one** (指前者的 virtue) leads to happiness, **the other** (指后者的 vice) to misery.

②The bee and the snake draw material from the same plant. **The one** (指后者的 snake) transmutes it into deadly poison; **the other** (指前者的 bee) into delicious honey.

注意：the one...the other 又可作形容词用，如“With **the one** hand he held aloft the child and with **the other** (hand) he was making for the shore.”。

d. others 及 the others 的用法。

有冠词和无冠词意思不同，others = other people，即“别人”，而 the others = the rest，即“其余的人”。

①Do as **others** do, and few will laugh at you.

②One of them was an American, but **the others** were Englishmen.

e. each other 及 one another 的用法。

二者之间用 each other，三个以上之间就要用 one another。

①Both of them helped **each other**.

②The three men helped **one another**.

f. one after another 及 one after the other 的用法。

前者表继续不断进行，即“逐渐”，后者为“轮流”。

① **One** falsehood **after another** falls off of itself.

②He raised **one** of his hands **after** the other.

#### 4. each 的用法

① **Each** of them wanted to try.

②They **each** have a book.

但“**They have a book each**”就是副词，而“**Each** boy has a book”就是形容词。

#### 5. either 和 neither 的用法

**either** 是“二者中任何一个”，而 **neither** 是“二者皆非”。

① **Either** will do.

②I know **neither** of his parents.

#### 6. both 和 all 的用法

双方就说 **both**，三者以上就用 **all**。

① **Both** of my parents are tired out.

②They were **both** tired out.

③They **both** were tired out.

① **All** of the chickens are dead.

②They are **all** dead.

③They **all** are dead.

#### 7. some 和 any 的用法

**some** 用于肯定，**any** 用于否定、疑问及条件句。

①Are there **any** staying at the hotel? (疑问)

②Yes, there are **some**. (肯定)

③No, there are not **any**. (否定)



④ Give me a sheet of paper if you have **any**. (条件)

## 8. none 的用法

**none** 原是 **no one** 合拢来的，单复皆可，现今通常用作复数。  
又 **no** = **not any** 或 **not a**，而 **none** = **no** + **Noun**。

① Have you a book? No, I have **none**. (= no book) (单数)

② Have you any sisters? No, I have **none**. (= no sisters) (复数)

③ **None** but the brave deserve the fair. (复数)

比较  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{None} \text{ of the girls } \textbf{are} \text{ present.} \\ \textbf{No one is} \text{ present.} \end{array} \right.$

## 9. such 的用法

a. 用来代替前面提过的名词

① If you are a gentleman, show yourself **such**. (such = a gentleman)

② He was a great scholar, and was respected as **such**. (such = a great scholar)

b. such = such men

Prosperous men are much exposed to flattery, for **such** (= such men) alone can be made to pay for it.

c. such as = those who

**Such as** (= those who) have plenty will never want friends.

## 10. the same 的用法

**same** 前可以加 **the**、**this** 或 **that** 用

He bought a dictionary, but soon sold **the same**.

## 16 疑问代词

疑问代词用于问人及物的场合，共有 **who**、**what**、**which** 三个词。这三个疑问代词，是单复数通用的，**what**、**which** 没有所有格，其主格及宾格同形，惟有 **who** 在其格（Case）上有些变化。

主格	所有格	宾格
who	whose	whom
what	—	what
which	—	which

1. **who** 是用于人的，问人的姓名及血族关系，例如：

① **Who** is he? He is Mr. Chang. (姓名)

② **Who** is she? She is my aunt. (血族关系)

2. **what** 可用于人或物，用于人的时候，就不是问其姓名，而是问其职业，用于物的时候，当然是问物名。

① **What** is that man? He is a doctor. (职业)

② **What** do you want? I want some ink. (物名)

3. **which** 也是人或物都可以用的，常表选择之意，即“孰”的意思。白话说“哪一个”。

① **Which** do you like better, novels or poems? (二者择其一)

② **Which** do you like best, beer, wine or spirit? (多数中择其一)

4. 疑问代词通常置于语句的开头，可与助动词同用。

① **Whom do** you want to see?

② **Which do** you want?

③ **What ought** we to do?

但用 be 及 have 时，则不要助动词，如：

① **Which** of the two sisters **is** the prettier?

比较：Which of the two sisters do you like better?

② **What have** you in your hand?

比较：What did you say?

注意：have 的这种用法是含有“所有”的意思，如无所有的意思，例如在 to have dinner（用餐），to have a good time（行乐）等 phrase 中，则仍须加用助动词，现举例比较如下：

① What **has** he in his left hand?（有所有意）

② What **will** you **have** for dinner?（无所有意）

① **Have** you any sports books?（有所有意）

② **Did** you have a fine time yesterday?（无所有意）

还有以疑问代词为主语的肯定句可不用助动词，但在否定句中则仍须用。

① **Who told** you that?

② **What happened** next?

③ **Who** among these merchants does the largest trade?

④ **Which** of these trees **does not bear** fruit?

5. 疑问代词为介词的宾格时，那介词可置于疑问词之前，也可置于反问词之后，也有置前置后皆可的。

① **To whom** does this belong?

| **Whom** does this belong to?

② **With whom** did you speak?

③ **Whom** are you looking for?

6. 疑问句有两种，一种是以基本助动词（例如 **be**、**have** 等）开头的，另一种是以疑问词（例如 **what**、**who**、**which**、**where**、**whom**、**how**、**why**）开头的，通常无论哪一种，都是要把动词或助动词置于主语之前的，但如果这疑问句只是一个从句接在其他主句上时，主语和动词就不必颠倒，如：

Tell me which **you** like best?

比较：Which do **you** like best?

在上面以 **which** 为主语的句中，**do**（助动词）置于主语 **you** 之前，以表示主语和动词的颠倒。

又，以疑问词开头的疑问句，与其他分句结合时有两种方式，①为接于主句之后，②为把其他的分句插入疑问句之间，例如：

① Do you know **who is ill**? Yes, I do.

② **Who do you know is ill**? I think his father is ill.

在第一例句，可以回答 **yes** 或 **no**，第二例句就不能回答 **yes** 或 **no**，通常是 **know**、**hear**、**tell**、**ask** 等动词的分句，置于疑问词之前，而 **think**、**suppose**、**believe** 等动词的分句，置于疑问词之后，但 **say** 一字则置前置后皆可，不过意思不同罢了。

① **Did you say** what you wanted? Yes, I did.

② **What did you say** wanted? I said I wanted some money.

第一句主要是问你说了没说，故有回答 **yes** 或 **no** 的必要，但第二句主要是问你要什么，所以只能答要的东西，不能回答要与不要。

7. 有关 **what** 的 phrase。

① **What if** I should fall sick now? （倘若……将如何）

② **What though** I fall sick now? (纵令.....又何妨)

③ He talked of rights and duties, and rights and wrongs, and **what not**. (此外等等)

④ **What by** threatening, and **what by** coaxing, he finally accomplished his purpose. (半以.....半以.....)

⑤ **What with** the high price of provisions, and **what with** the occasional sickness, the family found it very difficult to live on their income. (或因.....或因.....)

后二例中的 **what** 不是代词，而是副词。

## 17 关系代词

关系代词不仅是用以代理其先行的名词，而且要拿来连接前后两个语句，所以它是“代词而兼连词”的。比方“**This is a bird.**”和“**I caught it (= the bird).**”两句，用连词 **and** 连接起来，便成为“**This is a bird, and I caught it.**”再进一步可使这两句更密切地结合拢来，就是将句中的代词 (**it**) 及连词 (**and**) 换用一个关系代词的 **that**。即：“**This is the bird that (= and it) I caught.**”。

(注) 因为这时的 **bird** 已受到 **that** 以下字句的限制，所以要将冠词 **a** 改为 **the**。

### 1. 关系代词及其先行词 (Antecedent)

上例中的 **bird** 一词便是关系代词 **that** 的先行词，因为那是它所代理的其先行的名词。关系代词在“人称”及“数”上，一定要和它的先行词一致，例如：

**I, who am** a poor man, cannot do such a thing.

**cou, who are** a rich man, may do anything you like.

Heaven helps **those** who **help** themselves.

Heaven helps **him** who **helps** himself.

句中的 **who** 为关系代词，随其先行词而变换它的人称和数。

先行词不一定是一个单词，它有时也可能是一个短语，或一个分句，例如：

He tried **to win the prize**, which, however, was found impossible. (短语)

**We missed the train**, which prevented us from reaching there in time. (分句)

## 2. 关系代词的格 (Case)

用途	格		
	主格	所有格	宾格
(人)	<b>who</b>	<b>whose</b>	<b>whom</b>
(物)	<b>which</b>	(whose) of which	<b>which</b>

That is the man **who** teaches me English. (主格)

That is the man **whose** son I teach. (所有格)

That is the man **whom** I teach. (宾格)

(注意) 用于人的关系代词，主格、所有格、宾格各有一词，一见分明，不至弄错，但用于物的关系代词是 **which** (有时 **that**)，词的本身无变化，初学者也许在句中就不容易看出它的格来了。须知决定它的格的，不在它前面的词，而在它后面的词，例如：“**Success will come to him who is always honest and diligent.**”一句中的 **who** 的格，和它前面那宾格的 **him** 没有关系，而只是后面 **is** 的主格罢了。还有一点要注意的，就是关系代词若系主格时，后面便直接接上动词；如系宾格时，后面的动词前就得另外加上一个主语。

## 3. 关系代词的用法

(a) **who** 的先行词是人。

This is a man **who** will never tell a lie. (主格)

Those **whom** the gods love die young. (宾格)

A man **whose** husband is dead is called a widow. (所有格)

(b) **which** 的先行词是物。

That is the house **which** belongs to him. (主格)

That is the house **which** he brought last year. (宾格)

That is the house the roof of **which** we saw from beyond the river. (所有格)

(注意) 先行词为短语或从句时, 关系代词要用 **which**, 例见前。

(c) **that** 的先行词是人或物, 可代替 **who**、**whom**、**which** 用, 但不能用于所有格。

He is the American **that** (= **who**) teaches us English. (主格)

The man **that** (= **whom**) I met just now is my uncle. (宾格)

The book **that** (= **which**) has a red cover is mine. (主格)

This is the knife **that** (= **which**) I lost yesterday. (宾格)

(注意) **that** 不可接用介词。

误: The house **in that** he lives is not his own.

正: The house **that**he lives **in** is not his own.

正: The house **in which**he lives is not his own.

(d) **that** 的特殊用法。

① 先行词的形容词为最高级的场合:

He is the **best** tennis player **that** I know.

② 在疑问词 **who** 之后:

**Who** is the man **that** is speaking there?

③ 先行词既是人又是物的场合:

He sketched **a driver and his cows that** were passing over the bridge.

④ 在 **the only**、**the same**、**the very** 等之后:



He is **the only** man **that** can be trusted.

This is **the very** man **that** I wanted to see.

This is **the same** watch **that** I lost yesterday.

⑤ 在 indefinite pronouns 之后:

**All that** glitters is not gold.

**No thing that** he does is badly done.

Energy will do **anything that** can be done in the world.

I have **something that** I wish to tell you.

There is **little that** remains to be said.

⑥ 在数字之后:

He is the **third** person **that** has found out the secret.

⑦ 在 emphatic use 的 it is...that 的场合:

**It is** not ease but effort **that** makes man.

(e) what 是包含有先行词在内的关系代词。

**What** (= that which) is beautiful is not always good.

They are **what** (= those which) you call blue stockings.

I did **what** (= all that) I could.

**What** money (= all the money which) he gets he spends on drink.

(f) but 是含有否定在内的。

There is **no** rule **but** (= which...not) has exceptions.

There was **no** one present **but** (= who...not) saw the deed.

(g) **as** 和 **than** 原来是连词，如其后的代词省略时，则成为关系代词了。

As many men **as** came were caught.

This is more money **than** is needed.

#### 4. 关系代词的特殊用法

##### ① 限定的用法 (Restrictive use)

He is the man **who** gave me this English magazine.

The gentleman **who** is standing over there is our teacher.

I received the letter **which** you sent me yesterday.

将整个的分句看作一个形容词来修饰先行的名词，而限定它的意义的，就叫作限定的用法。在这种关系代词前不要逗号 (Comma)。这种 **who** 和 **which**，都可以用 **that** 来代替，因为 **that** 有限定的意思。

##### ② 继续的用法 (Continuative Use)

I met a man, **who** (= and he) gave me this English magazine.

He slew all the prisoners, **which** (= and this) was a very barbarous act.

I received a letter this morning, **which** (= and it) I have forgotten to bring here.

这并无形容词的效果，而用逗号使之与其先行的名词或短语或分句切断，等于用并列连词 (Coordinate Conjunction) 结合起来的两个对等句子。这就是说，没有这个从句，单只留下那个主句也能成立。

##### ③ 副词的用法 (Adverb Use)

I will let off this man, **who** (= because he) has been sufficiently punished already.

A man was sent, **who** should (= that he might) deliver the message.

One **who** (= if one) wishes to be in good health should not neglect to take a moderate amount of exercise.

The man, **who** (= though he) was very poor, never complained of his lot.

凡关系代词不属于上举两种用法，而引导一个表示“理由、目的、条件、让步”等的副词从句的，就属于副词的用法。

(注意) 以 **that** 代 **who** 或 **which** 只限于“限定的用法”，而在“继续的用法”时则不可以用 **that** 来代替。有时因意义上的关系，也不能用限制的 **that**，例如说“I have heard from my brother that is in America.”一句是对的，因为限制写信的是在美国的那个兄弟，不是在其他地方的兄弟。但是如说“I have heard from my father that is in America.”就是笑话，因为父亲只有一位，不能加以限制，而暗示除在美国的那位以外另外还有，这时的 **that** 应改为 **who** 才对。通常是以 **which** 表不限定的，而以 **that** 表限定的：

The boy **that** practices will win the race.

The river, **which** is tidal, is full of shipping.

#### 5. 作为介词宾语的关系代词

The house **of which** you speak is sold.

The house **in which** he lives is sold.

The chair **on which** you are sitting is too small.

The man **with whom** I live is Mr. Chang.

#### 6. 关系代词的省略

上面第5项中所举各例，如将其中的介词移置于动词之后，便可将关系代词省略，例如：

The house (which) you speak of is sold.

The house (which) he lives in is sold.

The chair (which) you are sitting on is too small.

The man (whom) I live with is Mr. Chang.

又，在其他没有介词的句中只要词不害意，也同样可将关系代词省略，例如：

Is this the book (which) you want to read?

There is no one (who) knows it.

It is not the fine coat (that) makes the fine gentleman.

## 7. 复合的关系代词

**Whoever** (= Any one who) wishes to succeed must persevere.

Bring **whoever** (= anyone who) wants to come.

He flatters **whosever** (= anyone whose) father is rich.

Bring **whomever** (= any one whom) you like.

He succeeds in **whatever** (= anything that) he undertakes.

Choose **whichever** (= either that) you like.

## 8. 关系副词 (Relative Adverb)

这当然应该属于副词部分，不过因为它的用法完全和关系代词一样，为区别计，特附此说明一下。关系副词有 **when**、**where**、**why**、**how**、**that** 等。

① 引导一个 Adjective Clause 的。

This is the city **where** I was born.

This is the reason **why** he has done so.

(注) **the city** 为关系副词 **where** 的先行词，**the reason** 为关系副词 **why** 的先行词。**where I was born** 及 **why he has done so** 都是形容词从句。

② 省略先行词而引导一个 **Noun Clause** 的关系副词的用法，和关系代词中那兼先行词的 **what** 的用法相同。

Let me know (the time) **when** he will come.

Tell me (the place) **where** you found it.

This is (the reason) **why** he did it.

This is (the way) **how** he did it.

## 18 动词的变化

英文的动词有三种主要的形式 (Three Principal Parts of the Verb) , 即原形 (Root)、过去式 (Past) 和过去分词 (Past Participle) 。这便是动词的变化。

### I. 原形 (Root Form)

动词的基本的形态, 有下列五种用法:

#### ① 作为现在时态

I **speak** English. (我说英语。)

We **write** in English. (我们用英文写作。)

但动词 **be** 是例外, 其本身因人称而有变化, 即第一人称的 I 用 **am**, 第二人称的 **you** 用 **are**, 第三人称的 **he** 用 **is**。

② 用于 **shall**、**will**、**may**、**can**、**do**、**must**、**need**、**dare** 等助动词之后

I shall **go**. (我会去。)

He will **come**. (他会来。)

I do not **go**. (我不去。)

You must **go** at once. (你必得马上就去。)

#### ③ 作为不定词

##### (a) 原形不定词 (Root-Infinitive)

He bade me **sit** down. (他命令我坐下。)

We felt the earth **quake**. (我们感到地震。)

##### (b) 有 to 的不定词 (to-Infinitive)

He likes to **work**. (他喜欢工作。)

It was a day to **be remembered** forever. (这是一个永远难忘的日子。)

④ 在字尾加-ing 作成现在分词 (Present Participle)

He was **writing** a letter while his sister was **reading** a book. (他在写信, 他妹在读书。)

Have you seen the **sleeping** child? (你看见那睡着的孩子吗?)

⑤ 作为命令形的动词

**Be** silent! (不要作声!)

**Do** it at once. (马上去做。)

II. 过去式 (Past Form)

作为过去时态 (Past Tense) :

I **walked** three miles. (我步行了三里路。)

He **wrote** a letter. (他写了一封信。)

III. 过去分词 (Past Participle Form)

这种形态有下列三种用法:

① 以 have + 过去分词, 作成完成时态 (Perfect Tense)

I have **written** a letter. (我写了一封信。)

② 以 be + 过去分词, 作成被动语气 (Passive Voice)

I was **spoken** to by an old gentleman. (有一位老先生来对我讲话。)

③ 作为形容词

A **retired** officer. (退役军官。)

The languages **spoken** in Switzerland are French, German and Italian. (在瑞士说的语言有法语、德语和意大利语。)



## 19 规则动词 Regular Verb

在动词原形上加-ed，作成过去式和过去分词的，就叫作规则动词，否则为不规则动词。

### ①原形 + ed 的

(原械) (阁冒驶) (阁冒风称)  
call (呼功) called called  
walk (享景) walked walked

### ② 去掉原形上的词尾 e 而再加-ed 的

like (溪跟) liked liked  
waste (竟跌) wastedwasted

### ③ 词尾为辅音 + y 时，则将 y 变 i 再加-ed 的

carry (神担) carriedcarried  
try (窃) tried tried

(但词尾为元音 + y 时，则不变而直接加-ed)

stay (呆烈) stayedstayed  
play (套丧) playedplayed

④ 词尾为“短元音 + 单辅音”的单音节词时，应先将辅音重复一个后再加-ed

stop (厅) stoppedstopped

beg (七) begged begged

⑤ 以辅音结尾，而重音落在最后一个音节上时，也得将辅音重复一个后再加-ed

omit (难莱) omitted omitted

occur (德神) occurred occurred

permit (圆事) permittedpermitted

## 20 不规则动词 Irregular Verb

不规则动词却不像规则动词那样，可以有一定的法则，它的变化很多，现勉强分为下列四种：

### ① 原形、过去式、过去分词三者同形的

(原形)	(原形)	(原形)
cast (抛)	cast	cast
cut (切)	cut	cut
hit (打)	hit	hit
shut (关)	shut	shut
put (放)	put	put
cost (值)	cost	cost
knit (织)	knit	knit
hurt (伤)	hurt	hurt
burst (爆发)	burst	burst
set (放)	set	set
shed (脱落)	shed	shed
spread (铺开)	spread	spread
read (读)	read	read

### ② 只有元音有变化的

#### (a) 过去式及过去分词同形的

bleed (流血)	bled	bled
breed (繁殖)	bred	bred
feed (喂养)	fed	fed

lead (了触)	led	led
meet (锁尤)	met	met
shoot (稍挂)	shot	shot
find (试炸)	found	found
bind (敦)	bound	bound
wind (突)	wound	wound
fight (需)	fought	fought
hold (斑糙)	held	held
lay (典)	laid	laid
stand (理)	stood	stood
spin (点)	spun	spun
sting (刺)	stung	stung
hang (秃)	hung	hung
swing (睡)	swung	swung
get (船)	got	got
sit (效)	sat	sat
spit (徒台)	spat	spat
shine (封斯)	shone	shone
win (谈)	won	won

(b) 只有过去式的元音不同的

come (惊)	came	come
run (跑)	ran	run

(c) 原形、过去式、过去分词的元音全不相同的

begin (军鸟)	began	begun
drink (它)	drank	drunk (drunken)
ring (睡可)	rang	rung

sing (恠儿) sang sung  
swim (套异) swam swum  
sink (沉) sank sunk (sunken)

### ③ 词尾有变化的

#### (a) 元音不变的

have (特)	had	had
make (准)	made	made
burn (漠)	burnt	burnt
learn (饰)	learnt	learnt
dwell (擲)	dwelt	dwelt
smell (驶)	smelt	smelt
bend (请忙)	bent	bent
lend (集)	lent	lent
send (死)	sent	sent
build (汇瞎)	built	built
spend (划跌)	spent	spent
show (宾始)	showed	shown

#### (b) 元音变化的

bear (神)	bore	born
bear (概弹)	bore	borne
tear (看)	tore	torn
wear (吹)	wore	worn
swear (世)	swore	sworn
forget (王)	forgot	forgotten
freeze (达)	froze	frozen
feel (粉)	felt	felt

kneel (戈)	knelt	knelt
blow (持)	blew	blown
grow (神不)	grew	grown
know (吻等)	knew	known
lie (祈色)	lay	lain
drive (猫)	drove	driven
give (法)	gave	given
bid (进)	bade	bidden
write (声)	wrote	written
ride (承)	rode	ridden
rise (齐理)	rose	risen
see (极何)	saw	seen
fall (落)	fell	fallen
take (茅)	took	taken
shake (睡)	shook	shaken
keep (斑糙)	kept	kept
sleep (澎)	slept	slept
weep (寂)	wept	wept
lost (盛)	lost	lost
speak (全)	spoke	spoken
steal (甚)	stole	stolen
break (坡)	broke	broken
choose (释外)	chose	chosen
catch (羨)	caught	caught
teach (矫)	taught	taught
buy (罗)	bought	bought
bring (担)	brought	brought
think (尚)	thought	thought
sell (惧)	sold	sold
tell (恩)	told	told

say (全)          said      said

④ 特殊变化的

be (池原) was (orwere) been

do (准)      did          done

go (冒)      went          gone

eat (产)      ate           eaten

# 21 动词的种类

语句的基本形式有下列五种：

〔第一形式〕 Subject + Predicate

〔第二形式〕 Subject + Predicate + Complement

〔第三形式〕 Subject + Predicate + Object

〔第四形式〕 Subject + Predicate + Indirect Object + Direct Object

〔第五形式〕 Subject + Predicate + Object + Complement

以动词为主来分类的话，就是：

动词	不及物动词	完全不及物动词		〔 第一形式〕
		不完全不及物动词＋补语		〔 第二形式〕
	及物动词	完全及物动词	＋一个宾语	〔 第三形式〕
			＋两个宾语	〔 第四形式〕
		不完全及物动词＋宾语＋补语		〔第五形式〕

如上表所示，动词有不及物动词和及物动词两种，不及物动词又有完全不及物动词和不完全不及物动词之别，及物动词也同样地有完全及物动词和不完全及物动词之别。

1. 完全不及物动词（Complete Intransitive Verb）和不完全不及物动词（Incomplete Intransitive Verb）

a. 完全不及物动词



Pride **goes** before a fall. 骄者必败。

We **sat** under the shade of a tree. 我们坐在树荫下。

b. 不完全不及物动词

Health **is** wealth. 健康即财富。

Practice **makes** perfect. 熟能生巧。

2. 完全及物动词 (Complete Transitive Verb) 和不完全及物动词 (Incomplete Transitive Verb)

a. 完全及物动词 (有采用一个宾语的或采用两个宾语的)

Nobody can **trust** a liar. 谁也不相信撒谎者。

Waiter, **bring** me two eggs. 茶房, 拿两个蛋给我。

He **showed** me the way to the science museum. 他指示了我去科学博物院的路。

When we parted, he **wished** me a good journey. 当我们离别时他祝我一路平安。

上例中的 me 为 Indirect Object, 而 the way 和 journey, 则为 Direct Object。间接宾语常置于直接宾语之前, 但如置于直接宾语之后时, 就得在其前面加用一个 to 字 (如动词为 buy、get、make 等时, 则加用 for)。

{ He sent me a photo.      他送我一张照片。  
He sent a photo **to** me.

{ Father bought me a camera.      父亲买了一架照相机给我。  
Father bought a camera **for** me.

{ Get me the book.      拿那书给我。  
Get the book **for** me.

但直接宾语如为 it 时, 则口语中常将 to 略去, 如:

He told it **to** me. 他告诉了我那事。  
He told it me.

He gave it **to** me. 他把那个给我了。  
He gave it me.

b. 不完全及物动词（有时需要加补语）

His father **made** him a merchant. 父亲使他成为商人。

I **found** the book interesting. 我觉得那书很有趣。

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I } \mathbf{made} \text{ him a present. 我送了他一件礼物。} \\ \quad \text{（完全及物动词，Dative Verb）} \\ \text{I } \mathbf{made} \text{ him a servant. 我把他做佣人了。} \\ \quad \text{（不完全及物动词，Factitive Verb）} \end{array} \right.$

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I } \mathbf{found} \text{ the way easy. 我觉得那方法容易。} \\ \quad \text{（不完全及物动词，easy 为补语）} \\ \text{I } \mathbf{found} \text{ the way easily. 我很容易地懂得那方法了。} \\ \quad \text{（完全及物动词，easily 为副词）} \end{array} \right.$

c. 反身动词（Reflexive Verb）

在动词后面加 **oneself** 字样，但意义上常不要译出来。

I have **enjoyed myself** very much. 我玩得很快活。

The young man **exerts himself** to please his employer. 那青年勉力从事以博雇主的欢心。

He **devoted himself** to his work. 他献身于工作。

He **absented himself** from school for that day. 他那天没有上学。

He **prides himself** on his knowledge of English. 他对于他的英文颇为骄傲。

I shall **avail myself** of your kind offer. 我将拜领（利用）你的盛情。

I am afraid I've **overslept myself**. 我恐怕我睡得太多了。

I don't want to **overeate myself**. 我不要过分地吃得太多了。

He **applied himself** closely to the study of French. 他孜孜不倦地在学法文。

Take care not to **overwork yourself**. 当心不要过劳。

How do you **amuse yourself** in rainy weather? 下雨天你怎样消遣的？

He **shouted (talked, sang) himself** hoarse. 他大声地叫，喉咙都叫哑了。

试比较下列用 oneself 与不用 oneself 之例句：

He **associated** (= kept company) with pleasant companions. 他交际愉快的朋友。

He **associated himself** (= entered into partnership) with that firm. 他加入那公司做股东了。

He **broke off** (= discontinued) the habit. 他戒断了那种习惯。（一般的说法）

He **broke himself off** the habit. 他断然地戒绝了那种习惯。（加强的说法）

**Guard** against (beware of) that vice. 要戒备那种恶习。

**Guard yourself** (= take special precautions) against that vice. 要特别注意那种恶习。

He **prepared for** a lesson. 他准备功课。

He **prepared himself for** the examination. 他孜孜努力准备应考。

3. 英文动词大多数是不及物动词而兼及物动词的

They **open** the doors at nine. 他们九时开门。（及物）

School **opens** at eight o'clock. 学校八时上课。（不及物）

Bad men **hide** their faults. 坏人隐藏其恶。（及物）

Bats **hide** during the day. 蝙蝠昼伏夜出。（不及物）

He **turned** me out of the room. 他把我逐出室外。（及物）

He **turned** to me and spoke. 他转向我说。（不及物）

He **feeds** the horse with grass. 他以草饲马。（及物）

Many people **feed** on rice. 多数人以米为生。（不及物）

He **spread** his garment. 他铺开他的衣。（及物）

The mist **spread** over the earth. 地上满笼着雾。（不及物）

He **closed** the business. 他歇业了。（及物）

The day **closed** at six p. m. 天在六时断黑。（不及物）

The wind **dispersed** the clouds. 风吹云散。（及物）

The clouds have **dispersed** from the sky. 云从天散。（不及物）

那些只限于作不及物动词用的动词，例如：be、come、go、become、fall 等，是没有被动语态（Passive Voice）的。

#### 4. 不及物动词作及物动词用的场合

a. 采用同源的名词作宾语的，即 **Cognate Verb**，其宾语就称为 **Cognate Object**。

He **died** a sad **death**. 他死得惨。

He **lived** a long **life**. 他命很长。

He **preyed** an earnest **prayer**. 诚心祈祷。

He **slept** a sound **sleep**. 熟睡。

He **dreamed** a pleasant **dream**. 做了一个愉快的梦。

He **sighed** a deep **sigh**. 长叹了一口气。

He **laughed** a hearty **laugh**. 开心地笑了。

It is **blowing** a **gale**. 刮大风。

He **struck** a hard **blow**. 重击一下。

He **fought** a good **battle**. 打了一场好仗。

He **ran a race**. 他赛跑了。

He **shouted** his **loudest** (shout) . 他大声呐喊。

He **fought** his **best** (fight) . 他竭力奋斗了一场。

She **sang** her **sweetest** (song) . 她唱了她最拿手的歌。

He **ran** his **fastest** (run) . 他最快地跑了。

He **breathed** his **last** (breath) . 他呼出了最后一口气。

b. 不及物动词用作使动 (to cause) 之意的。

He **boils** the water. (= He causes the water to boil.) 他烧开水。(及物)

Cf. Water **boils**. 水沸。(不及物)

He **grows** wheat in the field. 他种小麦。(及物)

Cf. Wheat does not **grow** in Taiwan. 台湾不长小麦。(不及物)

He **flew** the kite. 他放风筝。(及物)

Cf. The kite **flew** in the air. 风筝飞上天。(不及物)

c. 不及物动词与介词同用时, 便有及物动词的意味。这又称为 P repositional Verb。例如:

The boys **laughed at** him. 孩子们笑他。

Please **look after** my little boy in my absence. 我不在家时请照顾我的小孩。

Have you **sent for** the doctor? 你已经去请医生了吗?

5. 及物动词作不及物动词用的场合

a. 用作一般意义 (general sense) 的

The cat can **see** in the dark. 猫能在暗中看见。(不及物)

Cf. I can **see** nothing. 我什么也看不见。(及物)

We **eat** in order to live. 为生而食。(不及物)

Cf. I **ate** some beef at supper. 晚餐吃了牛肉。(及物)

Man can **speak**. 人能说话。(不及物)

Cf. He can **speak** English very well. 他能说一口好英文。  
(及物)

He can neither **read** nor **write**. 他既不能读, 也不能写。(不及物)

Cf. He is **reading** a novel while I am **writing** a letter. 他读小说我写信。(及物)

b. 及物动词用作不及物动词而具有被动意义 (passive sense) 的

This fruit **tastes** sweet. (= It is sweet when it is tasted.)  
此果甚甜。(不及物)

Cf. Have you **tasted** the fruit? 你尝了那水果么?(及物)

The flower **smelled** fragrant. 此花甚香。(不及物)

Cf. The girl **smelled** the flower. 少女嗅花。(及物)

The article **reads** well. 那文章很好读。(不及物)

Cf. I shall **read** the article. 我将读那文章。(及物)

A villa **is building**. (= is being built) 一座别墅在建筑中。  
(不及物)

Cf. They **are building** a villa. 他们在建筑别墅。(及物)

The guns **are firing**. 在放大炮。(不及物)

Cf. They **are firing** the guns. 他们在放大炮。(及物)

The book **is printing**. 那书在印刷中。(不及物)

Cf. They **are printing** the book. 他们在印那书。(及物)

c. 及物动词加副词作不及物动词用的

He **made off** (= ran away) with the money. 他卷款潜逃。

He **set out** (= started) at 4 p. m. 他下午四时出发了。

He **turned out** (= became) a prosperous merchant. 他变成一个富裕的商人了。

He **got off** (= escaped) unharmed. 他平安逃出。

He **pushed on** (= hurried forward) as fast as he could. 他尽速地前进。

Cholera has **broken out** (= suddenly appeared) . 发生了霍乱。

He **gave in** (= yielded) after a short struggle. 挣扎了一下他就屈服了。

## 22 动词的时态

表示动作和状态之时的动词的形式，就叫作时态（Tense）。在英语中一共有十二种不同的时态，如下表：

Primary Tenses (常态)		Progressive (进行)	Perfect (完成)	Perfect Progressive (完成进行)
Present (现在)	I do	I am doing	I have done	I have been doing
Past (过去)	I did	I was doing	I had done	I had been doing
Future (将来)	I shall do	I shall be doing	I shall have done	I shall have been doing

但动词 **to be**，是没有进行式和 **Passive** 的，现将其时态及三种人称举出如下：

		(单数)	(复数)
Primary Tenses	Present (现在)	(第一人称) I am (第二人称) You are	We are You are



(常态)		(第三人称) He is	They are
	Past (过去)	(第一人称) I was (第二人称) You were (第三人称) He was	We were You were They were
	Future (将来)	(第一人称) I shall be (第二人称) You will be (第三人称) He will be	We shall be You will be They will be
Perfect Tenses (完成)	Present (现在)	(第一人称) I have been (第二人称) You have been (第三人称) He has been	We have been You have been They have been
	Past (过去)	(第一人称) I had been (第二人称) You had been (第三人称) He had been	We had been You had been They had been
	Future (将来)	(第一人称) I shall have been (第二人称) You will have been (第三人称) He will have been	We shall have been You will have been They will have been

## 1. PRESENT (现在)

①Present Tense 是用 Verb 的 Root-form (原形)，不过在第三人称单数的时候，要加 **s** 或 **es**。

The flowers **fall**. 花落。

He **goes** to school. 他上学。

②Present Tense 的用法。

a. 表示现在的动作 (present action) 。

I **see** a ship in the distance. 我看见远处有一只船。

〔注〕表示现在的动作，多用现在进行时。

b. 表示习惯的动作 (habitual action) 。

I always **play** baseball in the afternoon. 我常在下午打棒球。(个人的习惯)

He **keeps** his promise. 他是守约的。(人格)

He **deals** in earthenwares. 他做陶器生意。(职业)

c. 表示一般的真理 (general truth) 。

The sun **shines** by day and the moon by night. 白天有阳光照耀，夜里月光照亮。

d. 代替将来时 (Future Tense) 用。常在 go, come, leave, start 等动词连有未来的副词时。

The steamer **leaves** here tomorrow. 轮船明日离此。

e. 在以 if、when、while、before、after、till 等连词引导的条件句，或表时的副词从句中，以现在代未来。

We shall not go out if it **rains** tomorrow. 明天下雨的话，我们就不出去。

Please wait till I **come** back. 请等我回来。

〔注一〕如果这个副词从句是表示“意志”的话，仍然要用 will。即“I shall be glad if you will do so.” (如果你肯这样做，我就高兴了)。

〔注二〕如果不是副词从句，而是名词从句时，也仍然要用将来的时态，即“Let us inquire if he will go today.” (问问他今天是不是要去)。

f. 代替过去时 (Past Tense) 用。这是要使读者产生活生生的感觉, 故用现在动词, 仿佛目前发生的事情一样。又称历史现在时 (Historical Present)。

Caesar **leaves** Gaul, **crosses** the Rubicon, and **enters** Italy with 5,000 men. 恺撒率五千之众, 由高卢出发, 渡过泸河, 进入了意大利。

g. 代替现在完成时 (Present Perfect) 用。

I **hear** (= have heard) she is going to marry. 听说她要结婚了。

I **read** (= have read) in the newspapers that he has been elected Mayor of Tainan. 我在报上看到他被选为台南市长了。

## 2. PRESENT PROGRESSIVE (现在进行)

① 表示正在进行中的事。

He is now **teaching** English in the next room. 他现正在隔壁的教室教着英文。

〔比较〕He **teaches** English in that school. 他在那个学校教英文 (用现在时态表示他的职业)。

② 与未来的副词同用, 表示未来及预定之意。常用 go、come、leave、start、stay 等动词的进行时。

He **is going** (= will go) to America next month. 他下月赴美。

**Are you staying** (= Will you stay) here till next week? 你将停留到下星期才走吧?

比较: 

{	I <b>go</b> to school every day. (习惯的行动)
	I <b>am going</b> to school now. (动作的进行中)
	I <b>am going</b> to school now. (动作的进行中)

③ 用 to be going + Infinitive 的形式, 表示最近未来想要做的事。

**I am going to start** for Europe. 我正打算动身到欧洲去。

**I am just going to advise** him to go out for a walk. 我正预备劝他出去散步一回。

比较: { **He writes** well. 他文章写得好。(现在)  
**He is writing** a letter. 他正在写信。(进行的现在)  
**He is writing** a letter. 他正在写信。(进行的现在)

④ 用 Present Tense 来表示现在正进行的动作或状态。因为 have、resemble、like、see、hear、remember、need、understand、possess、belong 等词，是没有进行时的。“我有钱”，只消说“**I have** money.”就行了，不可说“I am having money.”“我只认识他的面孔”应说“**I know** him only by sight.”不可说“I am knowing him only by sight.”其他如“**He has** a good constitution.”(他体格很好。)  
“**He closely resembles** his father.”(他很像他父亲。)也都是如此。试比较下列各句：

{ **I see** something white in the distance.

{ **I am looking at** the sky.

{ **I hear** him singing.

{ **He is listening to** the music.

{ **He has** no money with him now.

{ **They are having** a jolly time.

{ **We are having** a terrible hot summer.

{ **He is having** his supper.

〔注一〕因 see 无进行时，要表示正在看，只能说 be looking at。同样地要用 be listening to 代替 hear。

〔注二〕动词 have 作“有”解时，没有进行式，用作进行式时必另有含义，如 have jolly time (玩得很快乐)，have a terrible hot summer (今夏酷热)，have one's supper (在吃晚饭) 等。

### 3. PAST (过去)

① 表示过去的动作或状态。

We **met** him at the station. (动作)

We **were** there all summer. (状态)

② 表示过去一种习惯的动作。

He **used to** sit every day under that tree. 他从前老是每天坐在那棵树下。

He **would** spend whole hours in examining its various parts. 他老是要花好几个钟头来检查各部分。

〔注〕以 **would** 表过去的习惯时，多与 **often**、**sometimes** 等副词同用。

### 4. PAST PROGRESSIVE (过去进行)

表示过去某个指定的时候所发生的进行中的动作。

Once two men **were traveling** together. 从前有两个男子正在一块儿旅行中。

I **was reading** a novel when you came. 你来时我正在读着一本小说。

### 5. FUTURE (未来)

表示未来有下列种种形式。

I **shall go** to Tainan.

I **am going** to Tainan.

I **am going to** leave Taipei.

I **am about to** leave Taipei.

I **am to go** to Tainan.

### 6. FUTURE PROGRESSIVE (将来进行)

表示未来某个指定的时候将发生的进行中的动作。

He is much interested in reading that book. He will **be still reading** it if you look in at his room.

他对那本书很感兴趣。你到他房里去看看，他仍然还抱着那本书在读着。

## 7. PRESENT PERFECT (现在完成)

现在完成有下列种种用法。

①表示到目下刚完成的事。

I **have** just **written** this letter. 我刚把这信写完了。

②表示动作已完，其结果则成为现在的状态。

He **has gone** to Taipei. (= He is not here. He is in Taipei now.) 他到台北去了。

③表示过去的经验。

I **have seen** him before. 我以前见到过他。

④表示继续到现在为止的状态。

He **has been** ill since last Monday. 他自上星期一以来就生病了。

## 8. PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE (现在完成进行)

表示从过去到现在，也许还要继续到将来的动作。

What **have** you **been doing** all this while? 你这一晌在做些什么呀？

I **have been studying** English for five years. (继续)

I **have studied** English for five years. (经验)

〔注〕have been studying 表示过去学了，现在正在学，将来还要学。

## 9. PAST PERFECT (过去完成)

表示过去某个指定的时候以前所发生的事。

They **had known** each other before they got married. 他们在结婚以前早就相知有素了。

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ He } \mathbf{borrowed} \text{ the book and } \mathbf{returned} \text{ it.} \\ 2. \text{ He } \mathbf{returned} \text{ the book that he } \mathbf{had borrowed}. \end{array} \right.$

〔注〕如第一句，照动作的顺序排列，即先借后还，就可用 Past，但如第二句，把顺序颠倒，即先说还再说借时，就得用 Past Perfect 了，had borrowed 是表示在 returned 以前发生的动作。

#### 10. PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE (过去完成进行)

表示某动作继续到过去的某个时候为止。

I **had been waiting** about an hour when he came. 我等待了差不多一个钟头他才来。

I **had been studying** English before I went to bed. 我在就寝以前读了英文。

#### 11. FUTURE PERFECT (将来完成)

表示到未来某个时候为止已经会做好了的事。

I **shall have finished** it by the time school begins. 在上课以前我就会把它做好的。

注意：在 Adverb Clause 中应以 Present Perfect 来代替 Future Perfect，如 Wait till I **have finished** eating. (等我吃完饭再说。)

#### 12. FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE (将来完成进行)

表示继续到未来某个时候为止就要完成的事。

He **will have been teaching** in this school full ten years (by) next July. 到明年七月，他就在本校足足教了十年的书了。

## 23 语态和语气

### I. 语态

1. 动词的语态有两种，一种是主动语态（Active Voice），另一种是被动语态（Passive Voice）。

主动语态是以句中的主语为主动的，而被动语态就是以那主语为动作的对象的，例如：

① A dog **bit** the boy. (Active Voice)

狗咬了小孩。

② The boy **was bitten** by a dog. (Passive Voice)

小孩被狗咬了。

大部分的情形是可以把语态互相改写的，只有极少数的动词，如 **happen** 等，才没有被动语态。

2. 由主动改成被动时，是要把原来的宾语用作主语，而动词就用 **be + Past Participle** 的形式，然后加 **by**，再加宾语（即原来的主语）。

3. 主动改被动应注意下列各项：

a. 用 **people, they, you, we, one** 为主动语态的主语，而指一般人的场合，改作被动语态时，通常将这主语略去，不必再加 **by people** 的字样：

〔 **People** say that he is rich. (Active)

It is said that he is rich. (Passive)

〔 **They** speak English all over the world. (A)

English is spoken all over the world. (P)



What do **you** call this flower? (A)

What is this flower called? (P)

**One** does not feel a burden of one's own choice. (A)

A burden of one's own choice is not felt. (P)

b. 如有两个宾语的话，被动就有两种写法：

He gave **me this advice**. (A)

**I** was given this advice by him. (P)

**This advice** was given me by him. (P)

c. 带有介词的动词，改为被动时，介词仍不可少：

They **take care of** him. (A)

He is **taken care of** by them. (P)

She **laughed at** me. (A)

I was **laughed at** by her. (P)

We **sent for** the doctor. (A)

The doctor **was sent for**. (P)

d. 命令法的场合，要加用 let 一词：

**Do** it at once. (A)

**Let** it **be done** at once. (P)

**Take** this letter to the post-office. (A)

**Let** this letter **be taken** to the post-office. (P)

e. 动词为 know 的时候，后不接 by，而要接 to：

Everybody **knows** him. (A)

He **is known to** everybody. (P)

f. 动词的数及时态，应随之改变：

Virtue **makes** life happy. (A)

Life **is made** happy by virtue. (P)

I **will** pay the money. (A)

The money **shall** be paid by me. (P)

I **shall** pay the money. (A)

The money **will** be paid by me. (P)

They **can not have said** such a thing. (A)

Such a thing **can not have been said**. (P)

g. 有时中国话说的主动语态，英文却要用被动语态：

I **am delighted** to see you in good health.

I **was surprised** at his ignorance.

I **am interested** in learning English.

I **am satisfied** with the result.

I **was disappointed** then.

The train **was derailed** near Taipei.

(注) 被动语态不一定要用 **by**，如果是指工具就要用 **with**，只有指行为者才用 **by**，例如：

He was killed **by** the robber.

He was killed **with** a sword.

## II. 语气

1. 动词的语气有三种，即直陈语气 (Indicative Mood)，祈使语气 (Imperative Mood) 和虚拟语气 (Subjunctive Mood)。

2. 直陈语气是不问现在、过去、未来而只是直述某种事实的，一般普通的语句，大都是用的这种语气。

He **studies** hard.

He **is** very diligent.

Dead man **tells** no tales.

**What is** the best formula for success in life?

3. 祈使语气是用于表示命令、请求、祈祷等的，普通通常将主语的 you 省略不说，而动词就用 Root form，否定句时则在动词前加 do not 或 don't 字样。

Boys, **be** ambitious! (命令)

**Bring** me some water, please. (请求)

**Lead** us not into temptation, but **deliver** us from evil.  
(祈祷)

否定时则可说：

**Do not sleep** in the classroom.

**Don't yawn** before others.

有时在普通动词的 Root form 前再加上一个 do 字以加强语气，  
如

**Do** save us!

对第一人称及第三人称的祈使语气，就是用 let：

**Let** me go!

**Let** him do it!

**Let** us take a walk!

4. 在祈使语气之后，接有 and 或 or 时，就是表示条件的。

**Sow** virtue, **and** the harvest will be virtue. (= If you sow virtue, then the harvest will be virtue.)

**Keep** quiet, **or** I will punish you. (= If you do not keep quiet, I will punish you.) (= Unless you keep quiet, I will punish you.)

5. 祈使语气有时可用来表示让步。

**Be** the work what it may, always do your best. (= Whatever the work may be, ...) (= No matter what the work may be, ...) (= Let the work be what it may, ...)

**Try** as you may, you will not be able to master English in a few months. (= However hard you may try, you will not...)

**Call** when you will, you will find him out. (= whenever you may call, you...)

6. 将 **suppose** 和 **say** 用于祈使语气时，则 **suppose** 当 **if** 解，**say** 当 **for instance** 解，例如：

**Suppose** you were in his place what would you do?

What do you say to going there in a week or so, **say** next Sunday?

7. 虚拟语气的时态有四种，Present 用 **If I be**; Future 用 **If I should be**; Past 用 **If I were**; Past Perfect 用 **If I had been**。

8. Present Subjunctive（虚拟语气的现在），表示对现在或未来的不确实的想象，第三人称单数不加 **s**。

If he be good-mannered, he may also be good-natured.

（注）若将上句 Present Subjunctive 改为 Present Indicative 时，则成 **If he is good-mannered, he is not good-natured**. 在虚拟语气的说法，意为“他的仪容好不好”尚不确实，若是“仪容很好的话，其性情可能也是好的”，不妨作此想象。至于直陈语气的说法，则对“他仪容之好”已无疑义，而断定“他仪容虽好，性情却不好”。一则

说的想象，一则说的事实。目下英美的口语，颇有以 Present Indicative 代替 Present Subjunctive 的倾向。

9. Future Subjunctive (虚拟语气的将来)，表示对现在或未来的强大的疑义。不论是何人称，都用 **should + Root** 的形式，意为“万一的话”，后接 **should, would + Root** 或 **will, shall + Root** 或命令句。

If he **should be** found older than I think, I **would** not employ him. (I don't think he **is** old.)

If I **should** fail, I **would** try again. (I **shall** not fail.)

If it should rain tomorrow, the swimming meet **will be** postponed.

(注) 第一句是对现在的，第二、三句是对未来的强大的疑义。

10. Past Subjunctive (虚拟语气的过去)，表示与现在的事实相反的假设，动词常用过去式，但动词 **be** 则要用 **were**，三个人称都是一样。后接的主句中的动词，就要用 **should** (或 **would**, 或 **could**) + Root。

If I **were** rich, I **could** do so. (= As I **am not** rich, I can not do so.)

If I **were** you, I **would** go abroad. (= As I **am not** you, I do not go abroad.)

If he **were** with us, we **should** be delighted. (= As he **is not** with us, we are sorry.)

If it **were** not for the sun, we **could** not live at all. (= As there **is** the sun, we can live.)

11. Past Perfect Subjunctive (虚拟语气的过去完成)，表示与过去的事实相反的想象，动词用 Past Perfect, 后接 **would, should + have + Past Participle** 的形式。

If he **had been** diligent, he **would have passed** the entrance examination. (= As he **was not** diligent, he did not pass it)

he entrance examination.)

If I **had had** money, I **would have helped** you. (= As I **had** no money then, I could not help you.)

If it **had been** fine, I **should have been** glad. (= As it **was not** fine, I was sorry.)

If it **had not been** for your help, I **should have been drowned**. (= As you **helped** me, I was not drowned.)

12. 除以上四种虚拟语气之外, 还有一些在语句中须用或代替虚拟语气的地方, 现分条举出如下:

a. 表示与未来的事实相反的想象。如大家都知道阳光是永远不会消逝的, 现若假定太阳无光的话, 就要用 **If + were to** 的形式, 后接 **should, would + Root**。例如:

If the sun **were to be extinguished**, the whole earth **would be** fast **bound** in a frost in a day or two.

If I **were to go** abroad, I **would go** to America.

b. 在 **wish** 后面应该用虚拟语气的 **Past** 或 **Past Perfect**, 表示对于现在, 过去将来的事难以达到的愿望。

I **wish** I **were** a musician. (= I am sorry that I **am not** a musician.) (现在)

I **wish** I **had been** there. (= I am sorry I **was not** there.) (过去)

I **wish** he **could** come. (= I am sorry he **will not** come.) (将来)

I **wish to be** a sailor. (将来的志愿)

I **wish** I **were** a bird. (现在未达成的志愿)

I **wish** I **had been** a statesman. (过去未达成的志愿)

I **wish** the rain **would** stop tomorrow. (将来的切望)

c. 在 **as if** 后应该接虚拟语气，由 **as if** 引导的从句，不论主语的  
单复，常要用复数形。

He speaks **as if** he **were** my friend. (= He speaks as he would speak if he were my friend.)

He looks **as if** nothing **had happened**.

d. 省略 **if** 的场合。要将主语和助动词或基本助动词颠倒。

**Were** I rich (= If I were rich) , I would buy it.

We may lie down there, **should** we fall ill. (= if we should fall ill.)

**Were it not for** freezing (= If it were not for freezing) , the stars would not be so bright.

**Had** you **been** more careful (= If you had been **more** careful) , you would not have fallen ill.

**Had it not been for** your advice (= If you had not given me your advice) , I should have grown desperate.

e. 在虚拟语气中用 **would** 的话，表示那主语有“肯做不肯做，原不知道，如果肯做的话”之意。

If you **would** only do your best, you **would** be sure to succeed.

If you **would** lend me the book, I **should** be much obliged.

但是如下的说法，又可以表示与现在相反的事实：

He could do it, if he **would**.

f. 用 Infinitive 来表示虚拟语气的：

It **would** be wrong **to tell** a lie. (= It would be wrong if I were to tell a lie.)

I **should** be happy **to be** of service to you.

g. 用 Preposition 来表示虚拟语气的：

I **would** go abroad, **but for** my poverty. (= Were it not for my poverty, I would go abroad.)

**Without** water the plants and trees **would** all die. (= If there were no water, the plants...)

**With** an army of such soldiers, I **could** conquer the whole world.

h. 用 Conjunction 来表示虚拟语气的：

He worked very hard, **otherwise** (or else) he **would have failed**. (= If he had not worked hard, he would have failed.)

Life **would** be short, **but that** hope prolongs it.

i. 用 Noun 来表示虚拟语气的：

**A wise man would** not do such a thing. (= If he were a wise man, he would not do such a thing.)

j. 将条件句省略的场合：

I **should like** to go with you. (= I should like to go with you, if I could.)

He must be over fifty, I **should think**. (= He must be over fifty, I should think if I were to think about it.)

I **could have come** last evening. (= I could have come last evening if I had wanted to.)

**Would** you kindly lend me your pen? (= Would you kindly lend me your pen, if I were to ask you.)

**Might I ask** you to show me the way? (= Might I ask you to show me the way, if you didn't mind.)



**Could** you spare me a copy? (= Could you spare me a copy, if I were to ask you.)

## 24 助动词用法

加在动词之前以补足其意的词就叫做助动词 (Auxiliary Verb)，其主要的动词，就称主动词 (Principal Verb)。有些助动词是有过去的变化的，如 **do-did**, **will-would**, **shall-should**, **may-might**, **can-could**, **dare-dared (durst)**，其他如 **must**, **ought to**, **need**，则只有一个形式没有任何变化。兹将各助动词分别举例说明如下：

1. **Do** (后接略去了 **to** 的不定词)

a. 在问句及否定句中通常要用 **do**。

① **Do** you take exercise everyday? (问句)

你每天都要运动吗?

② **Don't** count your chickens before they are hatched.  
(否定句)

鸡卵未孵勿先数雏。(格言)

但在 **to be**, **to have** 的时候，则不用 **do**，如：

① **Have** you friends or relatives in this city?

你在本城有亲戚朋友吗?

② **Life is not** a picture.

人生并不如画。

b. **who**, **what** 等疑问词用作宾语时要 **do**，但用作主语时则不要 **do**，如：

① **Whom** do you want to see? (宾语)

你要找谁?

② **Who** knocked at the door? (主语)

有谁敲门啊?

(注意) 如说“**Who did** knock at the door?”便错了。

c. 在用有疑问词的问句中要 do, 但在从句中则不要 do, 如:

① **Where did** you buy it?

你在哪里买的?

② Will you tell me **where you bought it**?

你可以告诉我你在哪里买的吗?

d. 加强动词的意思时要用 do, 如:

① I **do** hope that you will succeed this time.

我真希望你这次会成功。

② When he **does** come, he is generally late.

他即令来, 也总是到得很迟的。

e. 在倒装语句中要加用助动词:

① Not for a moment **did** he falter in his purpose.

他的志向坚定不移, 一会儿都不动摇。

② He stood still, nor **did** I move.

他静立, 我也不动。

f. 用 do 来做代动词 (Pro-Verb), 以避免重复使用动词:

① We need not be ashamed if others know more than we **do**  
o (= know) .

如果别人知道得比我们多, 我们也用不着羞耻。

② The ostrich does not build a nest as most birds **do**, but lay its eggs in the sand. (do = build a nest)

鸵鸟和别的鸟不同，是不筑巢的，它把卵产在沙中。

## 2. **May** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

### a. 许可：

① **May** I swim in this pool?

我可以在此池中游泳吗？

② You **may** take anything you like.

你喜欢什么就可以拿什么。

### b. 可能：

① As it is very cold today, we **may** have rain tomorrow.

因为今天非常的冷，明天可能下雨。

② Young men **may** die; old men must.

年轻人也可能死，老年人则必死。

### c. 可能不是（加否定用）：

The news **may not** be true.

那新闻可能不是真的。

### d. 祈愿：

① **May** you succeed!

愿你成功！

② Long **may** live the Republic!

共和国万岁！

### e. 目的（连 that 用）：

He spoke very slowly **that** we **might** understand him better.

他说得很慢，好使我们听懂。

### 3. **Can** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

#### a. 能够:

①What **cannot** be cured must be endured. (格言)

不能治好的病只好忍受。

②Never defer till tomorrow what you **can** do today.

今天能够做的事绝不要拖到明天。

#### b. 不可能:

①He **cannot** be over fifty.

他不可能有五十岁以上。

② **Can** the report be true?

那传说不可能是真的。

#### c. 可以 (= may) :

You **can** go or not, as you like.

你或去或留一任尊便。

(注意) **can** 不能与 **will** 或 **shall** 连用, 用时要得将 **can** 改为 **be able to**, 如:

I **shall be able to** go abroad.

我将能出洋。

### 4. **Will** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

#### a. 将来 (第二、三人称) :

①You **will** hear from me in a day or two.

一两天之内, 你就会接到我的信的。

②He **will** succeed in his enterprise.

他将在事业上成功。

b. 许诺（第一人称）：

I **will** do exactly as you wish.

我会完全照你的意思做的。

c. 决心（第一、二、三人称）：

①I **will** go, whatever you may say.

不管你怎样说我都要去。

②If you **will** behave like that, what can you expect?

如果你行为如此，你还期望什么呢？

③He **will** have things done in the right way.

他一定会把事情做好。

5. **Shall**（后接略去了 to 的不定词）

a. 将来（第一人称）：

I **shall** be returning to town on Tuesday.

我礼拜二就回到城里来。

b. 许诺（第二、三人称）：

①You **shall** have the goods at once.

你定的货立刻送上。

②He **shall** not be kept waiting very long.

不会让他久等的。

c. 强迫（第一、二、三人称）：

①They say that we **shall** agree to their terms.

他们说我们非同意他们的条件不可。

②You **shall** do as I say.

你非得照我说的做不可。

③He **shall** pay you every cent he owes you.

他借你的钱每个子儿都得还你。

6. **Would** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

a. 过去的习惯:

Passers-by **would** often take pity on this blind beggar and drop coppers into the basket.

路人常要同情这瞎叫花，而丢铜板在篮子里。

b. 坚强的意志 (= wish to) :

Men who **would** succeed must be abreast of the times.

想要成功的人必得与时代并进。

c. 愿望 (= I wish) :

① **Would** that I were young again. (= I wish I were young again.) 但愿青春可再。

② **Would** I were a bird. (= I wish I were a bird.) 我愿做一个小鸟。

d. 选择 (加 rather 用) :

I **would rather** die than live without you.

我宁死也不愿失掉你。

e. 过去的决心:

He said he **would** do his best. (= He said, "I **will** do my best.") 他说他一定尽力。

f. 过去的拒绝:

I offered him some money, but he **would not** take it. 我给他钱，他绝对不受。

7. **Should** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

a. 应当（义务）：

You **should** obey your parents.

你应当服从你的父母。

b. 在 **lest** 之后，无论主句是现在或过去均可：

He works (又 worked) hard **lest** he should fail.

他很用功，以免失败。

c. 在假定与现在或过去事实相反的条件句的主句中叙述现在所存留的那种结果：

I **should** not be alive at this moment, if it were not for him.

如果不是他的话，我这时早已没有命了。

d. 在条件句文将前提分句省略，只留下一个归结分句（即主句）时；这常表示客气的说法：

① I **should** like to ask you to do me a favor.

我想请你帮我一个忙。

② You find her rather troublesome to teach, I **should** be afraid.—Gissing, *Life's Morning*

我恐怕你教她，会感到很麻烦的吧。

③ The apple-woman is a hundred, I **should** think, and yet she is out there when it rains even.

那卖苹果的老太婆恐怕有一百岁了，但是甚至天下着雨她还是要跑出外面来的。

④ I **should** suppose any one would be proud of such a fine thing.

我想任何人对于这样一件好东西，都会觉得骄傲的。

⑤ We are pretty good companions, I **should** say.



我想我们是很好的朋友吧。

e. 在 **that** 引导的，内容并非事实而全出于想象的从句中，三个人称皆用 **should**，并无别特意义：

①It is very surprising to me that you **should** know so little about it.

你对于那事竟不知道，真使我大吃一惊。

②It is better for him that the boy **should** not be told until he is much older.

等那孩子长大了再告诉他，对他更好。

③After the excitement of the last few days it was natural he **should** be tired.

在过去几天那般兴奋之后，他当然要感到疲倦的。

④It was right that these problems **should** have the first consideration.

这个问题要先考虑是对的。

⑤What a pity that a man with so good a heart **should** be so weak in the head.

那样一个好心肠的人会有这样迟钝的头脑，真是一件遗憾的事。

f. 在表示“决定”“意向”“命令”“建议”等主要从句后所接的 **that-clause** 中，不论任何人称都用 **should**：

①It was decided that the wretched hovels **should** be pulled down and new houses **should** be built.

决定把破房子拆掉而建筑新房子。

②He was anxious that his son **should** have a good education.

他切望他的儿子能受到良好的教育。

③The girl made a sign that he **should** come to her.

那女郎做个手势要他到她跟前去。

④He had ordered that the child **should** be sent alone into his room.

他命令将孩子一人送回房间去。

⑤After dinner, he proposed that we **should** smoke in the garden.

饭后他提议我们到花园里去抽烟。

g. 接在过去的主句后的形容词从句中，三个人称都用 **should**，表示从过去来看未来的：

①He longed for the morning to come, when he **should** see her again.

他期待着再见到她的早晨到临。

②Alexander hoped to make one mighty empire of the world, in which men of every race **should** be as brothers.

亚历山大希望把世界做成各民族亲如兄弟一般的一大帝国。

③Napoleon set to work to build a huge fleet which **should** be able to defeat the British fleet.

拿破仑着手建立一个足以击破英国舰队的强力的舰队。

h. 接在过去的主句后的副词从句中，三个人称都用 **should**，表示从过去来看未来的：

①She wanted to keep a little shop while her husband **should** be away.

她打算在丈夫不在家的时候，经营一个小店。

②It was necessary to live his days somehow until death **should** come.

到死为止总得想办法度日。

③She had to look nice and fresh for her patient; when the next day **should** start.

在第二天开始的时候，她必得为她的病人们做出新鲜活泼的样子来。

④He ran down lest rain **should** begin to fall.

他怕下雨匆匆跑下去了。

⑤Hester would not set him free, lest he **should** look her sternly in the face.—Hawthorne, *Scarlet Letter*

赫斯脱讨厌他严厉地望着她的脸，所以不放他走。

8. **Must** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

a. 强烈的意志:

I **must** finish this before I go.

在走之前我一定要把这个做完。

b. 推思:

He **must** be crazy to talk like that.

他一定发了癫，竟说出那样的话。

c. 禁止 (与否定连用) :

You may look at it, but you **must** not touch it.

你可以看，但不许动手。

(注意) **must** 的否定，是 **need not**，而不是 **must not** (这是 prohibition 禁止之意)。如 You must pay the money, but you **need not** do so at once. (你必得还钱，但你不必马上就还)。

9. **Ought** (后接不略去 to 的不定词)

a. Ought to + 意志动词 = 应当:

You **ought to** pay back your debts.

你应当偿还你的债务。

b. Ought to + 无意志动词 = 当然：

Such an able man **ought to** succeed.

那样有能力的人成功是当然的。

10. **Need** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

在问句及否定句中作为助动词，用第三人称单数也不加 s (但作为一般动词用时加 s)：

①Why **need** I hurry?

我为什么要赶紧呢？

②You **need** not hurry like that.

你用不着那么急。

(注意) He **need not** work. (助动词) He **needs** no money. (一般动词) 又 need not 的过去，要用 had not to, 如：I **had not to** do it.

11. **Dare** (后接略去了 to 的不定词)

用法与 need 相同：

①How **dare** you **do** such a thing? (问句)

你怎敢做这样的事？

②He **dare** not speak. (否定句)

他不敢说话。

③I **dare** say there are mistakes.

大概有错误。(I dare say = probably)

12. **Be, Have** 也可以作助动词用，be 后接现在分词或过去分词，have 后接过去分词。

比较：He **is** reading a certain novel. (助动词)

He **is** respected by all. (助动词)

He says that there **is** a god. (is = exists) (一般动词)

比较: { School **has** begun. (助动词)  
We **have** two dogs. (have = possess) (一般动词)

13. **Used** 在问句中也可作助动词用。

**Used** you to have this sort of thing in your young days?  
——Galsworthy, *Swan Song*

你在年轻的时候常做这样的事吗?

14. **Come** 在问句中也可作助动词用。

①How **come** you to be rambling about and lose yourself?  
——Eliot, *The Mill on the Floss*

你怎样会散步而迷了路的?

②How **comes** he in such a pickle?

他怎样会遭遇这种困难的?

③But how **comes** it that such a great gentleman walks?  
——Fielding, *Tom Jones*

这样一位伟大的人, 怎样会要走路的呢?

## 25 三种动状词

英文中有一些字眼，由动词变化而来，有“动词 + 名词”，“动词 + 形容词”，“动词 + 副词”的作用，但不能正式作谓语动词（**Predicate Verb**）用，这些字眼，便叫作动状词（**Verbal**）。动状词共分三种，即不定词（**Infinitive**）、分词（**Participle**）及动名词（**Gerund**）。

- (1) **To obey** the laws is your duty. (**Infinitive**)
- (2) **Obeying** the laws, he lived happily. (**Participle**)
- (3) By **obeying** the laws you do your duty. (**Gerund**)

### 一 不定词

#### 1. “一般的形式”：**to + Root-form = Infinitive**

不定词头上的这个 **to**，原来是一个 **Preposition**，表示与 **for** 相同的意义，而其后所接的原形动词，那时还是一个名词，意为所做的那回事，后来逐渐失去本意，到现今则只是不定词的一个符号（**sign**），另无他意了。

#### 2. “不定词的用法”：

- (a) 用于 **Noun** 的场合 (**Noun Infinitive**)
  - (1) **To teach** is to learn. (**Subject**)
  - (2) I like **to teach**. (**Object**)
  - (3) To teach is **to learn**. (**Complement**)

〔注〕当不定词用作 **Subject** 或 **Factitive Verb**（作为动词，即如 **find**, **make**, **think** 等）的 **Object** 时，常可用 **it** 来做形式上的 **Subject** 或 **Object**，而把不定词放在后面去，如：

(1) **It** is never too late **to mend**. (Subject)

(2) **I** make **it** a rule **to go** out every day. (Object)

又在 Noun Infinitive 之前用有 **what**、**how**、**where** 等疑问词时，可将它作成 Noun Phrase，如：

(1) He did not know **how to swim**. (= the way to swim)

(2) I wish I knew **where to go**. (= the place for going)

(3) She scarcely knows **what to do**. (= what she ought to do)

(b) 用于 Adjective 的场合 (Adjective Infinitive)

(1) I have no friend **to help** me.

(2) He has no food **to eat**.

(3) There is much **to enjoy** in the life of a sailor.

〔注〕省略了关系代词的时候，Preposition 就要移到不定词的后面去，如：

(1) We need a house **to live in**. (= in **which** to live)

(2) He had no money **to buy** food **with**. (with **which** to buy food)

(c) 用于 Adverb 的场合 (Adverb Infinitive)

① 目的 (Purpose)

(1) We have come here **to study**. (= We have come here for the purpose of studying.)

(2) This water is not good **to drink**. (= not good for drinking)

〔注〕第一例的不定词是修饰动词 come 的，第二例的不定词是修饰形容词 good 的。这种不定词可用 in order to, so as to 来代

替。

I got up early **to be** in time for the first train.

I got up early **in order to be** in time for the first train.

I got up early **so as to be** in time for the first train.

以上都是表“目的”的，如改为下面的说法，便成表“结果”的了。

I got up **so early as to be** in time for the first train.

I got up **so early that** I was in time for the first train.

## ② 结果 (Result)

(1) I awoke **to find** my suitcase gone. (= I awoke and found that my suitcase had gone.)

(2) He rose to his feet again, **only to fall** as before.

## ③ 原因 (Cause)

在表喜怒哀乐等感情的字眼之后接不定词时，大都是表示原因的。

(1) I am **glad to hear** of your success.

(2) I was **surprised to see** such a curious sight.

## ④ 理由 (Reason)

(1) He must be crazy **to talk** like that.

(2) What a careless person **to forget** such an important matter.

## ⑤ 条件 (Condition)

I should be very happy **to be** of any assistance to you in any way. = I should be very happy **if** I were to be of any assistance to you in any way.

## ⑥ 程度 (Degree)



(1) He is old **enough to go** to school.

(2) She is **too young to marry**.

〔注〕上面①至⑤主要是拿不定词来修饰动词或形容词的，⑥便是拿来修饰副词的。

(d) 独立的不定词 (Absolute Infinitive)

与句中其他的词毫无语法的关系，完全处于独立地位，用来修饰全句的，就叫作独立的不定词。

(1) **To tell the truth**, I do not like him.

(2) He is, **so to speak**, a book-worm.

(3) **To be frank with you**, you are a man of weak will.

(4) **To do him justice**, he is not without some merits.

(5) He fell nearly 100 feet; but, **strange to say**, the fall did not kill him.

(6) **To make the matters worse**, thick sleet was driving across the sea.

(7) He knows German and French, not **to mention** English.

3.“不定词的时态”：

不定词的 Tense 共有 Simple Infinitive 和 Perfect Infinitive 两种。

	Active		Passive
	Indefinite	Progressive	
Simple	to do	to be doing	to be done
Perfect	to have done	to have been doing	to have been done

### (a) Simple Infinitives

不定词用于 seem、appear、be said、be thought 等动词之后时，表示其动作是和其动词同时的，即动词为 Present 的话，其不定词也是 Present，如：

(1) He **seems to be** rich. (= It **seems** that he **is** rich.)

(2) He **seemed to be** rich. (= It **seemed** that he **was** rich.)

(3) He **seemed to be studying** hard. (= It **seemed** that he **was studying** hard.)

又如在 wish、hope、intend、expect、promise 等含有将来之意的动词之后用的不定词，也具有将来的意思，如：

(1) He **promises to work** hard. (= He says he **will** work hard.)

(2) I **intend to do** it. (= I think I **will** do it.)

(3) I **expect him to succeed**. (= I think he **will** succeed.)

### (b) Perfect Infinitives

在 seem、appear、be thought 等动词之后，接用完成不定词的时候，就表示是这些动词的时态以前发生的事，或是到那时为止已完成、或经验过、或继续了的动作。

(1) He **seems to have been** idle. (= It **seems** that he **was** [or **has been**] idle.)

(2) He **seemed to have been** idle. (= It **seemed** that he **had been** idle.)

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He } \mathbf{seemed\ to\ be} \text{ rich. (= It } \mathbf{seemed} \text{ that he } \mathbf{was} \text{ rich.)} \\ \text{He } \mathbf{seems\ to\ have\ been} \text{ rich. (= It } \mathbf{seems} \text{ that he } \mathbf{was} \text{ rich.)} \end{array} \right.$

在 wish、hope、intend、expect 等的 Past 之后，接用完成不定词时，就表示那希望未成事实。

He **expected to come**. (实际来了没有不明)

He **expected to have come**. (实际未能来)

#### 4. **for + Object + Infinitive**

不定词虽无语法上的主语，却有意味上的主语，如：

I expect **to succeed**. (= I think I shall **succeed**.)

I expect **him to succeed**. (= I think **he** will **succeed**.)

在第二句中不定词的意味上的主语，是和全句的主语同一的，所以不写出，但在第二句中不定词的意味上的主语，就不是和全句的主语同一的，而是动词 **expect** 之宾语的 **him**，所以这个宾语的 **him**，就成了不定词的意味上的主语了。在及物动词的场合，就可直接把那不定词意味上的主语作为全句的动词的宾语，但在不及物动词时，就常用 **for + object + Infinitive** 的形式，如：

(1) **For him to fail to come** would be fatal to our plan.  
(名词的用法)

(2) It was an easy thing **for Lord Byron to be** a great poet.  
(名词的用法)

(3) She held the baby up **for them to see**. (副词的用法)

(4) It is time **for us to be** up and doing. (形容词的用法)

5. 残订称敌 **to** 敌哈喝！特十看野菜冒。用在动词 see、hear、feel、find、make、let、have、observe、watch、notice、please 等等之后，便是如此，如：

(1) I never **saw** any one **cry** for joy before.

(2) I have never **heard** her sing.

(3) I **feel** the cold air **strike** against my face.

(4) I **made** him **come** and **sit** beside me.

(5) I will **have** him **come** at once.

(6) I **let** him **go** back to his own house.

(7) **Please have** a seat.

〔注〕这些动词如果改为 Passive 时，to 便不能省略。

I **saw** the dog **run**. (Active)

The dog **was seen to run**. (Passive)

## 6. 原 **than** 后敌残订称 (

普通在主句中的不定词省略了 **to** 的话，在 **man** 后从句中的不定词也要将 **to** 省略，反之亦然，不过例外很多，尤其是前后两个不定词意义相反，成为对照的时候，例如：

(1) It is better **to whistle** than **whine**;

It is better **to laugh** than **to cry**;

For though it be cloudy, the sun will soon shine

In the blue, beautiful sky.

(2) I can do no otherwise than **laugh**.

## 7. 残订称莱冒 **to** 敌愤因伙：

(1) I **could not but feel** sorry for what you had said.

(2) You **had better** not work after you have tired yourself.

(3) It's nearly one, and we **had best** get a few hours' sleep.

(4) I **had rather** be a doorkeeper in the house of Lord, than dwell in the tents of wickedness.

(5) I **would rather** walk than run.

(6) He **does nothing but** study.

8. 残订称残莱冒 to 敌愤因伙 (

(1) All you **have to do** is to try hard. (= All you must do)

(2) In order to know a man, you **have only to travel** with him for a week.

(3) We **are to meet** again on Sunday evening. (= It is fixed that we shall meet again...)

(4) Not a star **was to be seen** in the sky. (= could be seen)

(5) Many hardships **are to be endured**. (= must be endured)

(6) I **am going to tell** you about that person.

(7) I **am about to start** on a trip to Europe.

## 二 分词

1. 风称特山原风称 (Present Participle) 父阁冒风称 (Past Participle) 阶误, 都是作为形容词用的。

	Active	Passive
Present	doing	being done
Past	——	done
Perfect	having done	having been done

2. 械日称田风称敌侮墙。

作为名词的修饰语，紧接在其前或后的附加的用法，又作为主语的补语或宾语的补语时的叙述的用法，二者是完全相同的。

(1) There are a lot of **beautiful** *flowers* in it. (Adjective)

(2) In some parts of the country, there is not much **flowing** *water*. (Participle)

但分词是兼有“动词 + 形容词”的作用，所以具有动词的种种特色，可以加用宾语、补语或副词，又具有 **Tense** 和 **Voice**。它虽无语法上的主语，却有意义上的主语，形容词便不能如此。这便是分词和形容词不同的地方。

(1) This is a chart **showing** the *results* of the examination in English. (下接宾语的)

(2) The weather **being** *fine*, the party was held in the garden. (下接补语的)

(3) **Walking** *rapidly*, she reached the gates of the Hall. (下接副词的)

(4) I have received a letter **written** *in English*. (下接副词短语的)

(5) **Being written** in an easy style, the book was adapted for beginners. (被动语态)

(6) **Having been** there once before, I had no difficulty in finding his house. (完成时分词)

(7) I am sorry to have kept **you** *waiting* so long. (Sense-Subject)

(8) This is the *camera* **given** me by my uncle. (Sense-Subject)

### 3. 风称敌因登 (

(a) 现在分词是用作 **Progressive Form** 的，而过去分词则是用作 **Passive Voice** 和 **Perfect Tense** 的。

(b) 分词用作形容词的场合，现在分词含有 Active，过去分词含有 Passive 之意。

(1) Men **living** in town do not know rural pleasure. (= Men **who live** in town...) (Active)

(2) This is a house **built** some hundred years ago. (= This is a house which **was built** some...) (Passive)

(3) **Rolling** stones gather no moss. (Active)

(4) There were some **distinguished** men among the guests. (Passive)

〔注〕不及物动词的过去分词用作名词的修饰语法时，已无“被动”之意，仅作“已经”解释而已，如：**sunken** rocks, **fallen** trees, **withered** flowers。

(c) 因野坡递端称诚伙 (

(1) Time (时间)

**Walking** along the street, he met an old friend. (= When he was walking along the street, ...)

(2) Cause or Reason (原因或理由)

**Living** so remote from town, I rarely have visitors. (= As I live so remote from town...)

(3) Condition (条件)

**Turning** to the right, you will find the house you want. (= If you turn to the right, ...)

(4) Concession (让步)

**Admitting** what you say, I still think you made a mistake. (= Though I admit what you say, ...)

(5) Connection (连续)

The flames rose higher and higher, **throwing** their light far and wide. (= The flames rose higher and higher, and threw their light...)

(6) The boy, **having been praised**, worked the harder.  
(= The boy, as he had been praised, worked the harder.)

以上所举各例，都是副词从句的 Subject 和分词从句的 Subject 为同一的场合，才可以这样换用的。又主句的主语为名词时，用分词开始的短语，置于主语的前后都可以，但主语如为代词时，就只能置于主语之前，不能置于主语之后。例如：

**Hearing** a footstep outside, the *burglar* at once ran away.  
或 The *burglar*, **hearing** a footstep outside, at once ran away.  
(主语的名词)

**Having finished** my home task of algebra, I went out for a walk. (主语的代词)

〔注意〕第二例不能说成 I, having finished..., went out for a walk. 因为主语是代词。

又两个分句如果主语不同的话，改成分词后仍须保留其主语，以构成独立结构 (Absolute Construction)。因为独立分词 (Absolute Participle) 虽无语法上的主语，却有意义上的主语，即 Sense-Subject，它和主句的主语不是同一的，所以不能共用而将此省略，例如 When **the sun** had set, **we** started for home. 一句，其副词从句中的主语为 **the sun**，其主句中的主语为 **we**，二者并非同一，若改为独立构造时，两个主语都得保存，即 The sun **having set**, we started for home. 兹再举一个 Sense-Subject 的例如下：

The teacher **absenting** himself, there was no school. (= As the teacher absented himself, there was no school.)

另外还有一种略去 Sense-Subject 的独立分词的例：

(1) **Strictly speaking**, this is not correct. (= If we speak strictly, this is, ...)



(2) **Talking of** steamers, how many have we in our country? (= Now that we are talking of steamers, how many...)

(3) **Assuming** that he had some excuse, he still acted harshly. (= Though we assume that he...)

(4) **Judging** from his accent, he seems to be a man from Kwangtung. (= If we judge from his accent...)

分词可以表示现在也可表示过去，全依后面主句的动词时态而定：

**Living** (= As I **live**) so remote from town, I rarely **have** visitors.

**Living** (= As I **lived**) so remote from town, I rarely **had** visitors.

**Having lived** (= As he **has lived**) abroad, he **is** proficient in English.

**Having lived** (= As he **had lived**) abroad, he **was** proficient in English.

(d) 分词用于补语の場合：

1. 主语的补语 (Subjective Complement)

a. Present Participle:

(1) He went **begging** from door to door.

(2) She stood **gazing** at the scene.

b. Past Participle:

(1) He died **loved** by all.

(2) Soon it became **known** to the villagers.

2. 宾语的补语 (Objective Complement)

a. Present Participle:

(1) He kept me **waiting**.

(2) I found my friend **sleeping** on a rock.

b. Past Participle:

(1) She wept to see him **killed**.

(2) I had my shoes **stolen**.

(e) 关于分词的特别用法:

### 1. **have... Past Participle**

(1) I **had** my purse **stolen** in the bus last night.

(2) I **had** my foot severely **trodden upon** in the car.

(3) He **had** his arm **sprained**.

〔注〕这种 Passive 都是无意志的，所以是单纯的“被动”，如果加入意志进去，就变成“使动”了。

### 2. **Get... Past Participle**

(1) He has **got** a new house **built**. (使动)

(2) He **got** (= had) his arm **broken**. (被动)

(3) I must **get** my work **finished** by the evening. (做完)

## 三 动名词

1. 动名词 (Gerund) 和现在分词同形，但兼有动词和名词的双重性质所以可代 Noun 用，而分词是兼有动词和形容词的双重性质，所以可代 Adjective 用。

Who is the man **reading** at the table? (分词)

He spends most of his time in **reading**. (动名词)

在第一句中作分词用的 **reading** = that is reading, 是 man 的形容词，在第二句中作动名词用的 **reading**, 只是“读书那回事”，而

且是介词 **in** 的宾语。

动名词虽说可代 **Noun** 用，但它究竟与 **Noun** 有别。

A. 动名词是有“动词 + 名词”性质的，所以在其后面可接“宾语”、“补语”或“副词”，普通的名词便办不到。

(1) **Doing nothing** is **doing ill**. (加宾语)

(2) He is proud of his son **being** a clever *boy*. (加补语)

(3) He excused himself for **coming late**. (加副词)

(4) Excuse me for not **having answered** your letter *at once*. (加副词短语)

B. 动名词既有动词的性质，所以它有 **Tense** 和 **Voice**，普通的名词便没有。

(1) I am sorry for **having broken** the glass. (完成时态)

(2) I just missed **being run** over. (被动语态)

C. 在 **Gerund** 之外，又还有一种 **Verbal Noun**，是和 **Gerund** 同形的，但用法却不同，不仅在其前可加冠词或形容词，其本身上也可加 **s** 作成复数，但不能如 **Gerund** 一样伴用宾语、补语或副词。

1. 

1. {	a. <b>Rising</b> <i>early</i> is good for the health. ( <b>Gerund</b> )
	b. <i>Early</i> <b>rising</b> is good for the health. ( <b>Verbal Noun</b> )
2. 

2. {	a. <b>Writing</b> <i>novels</i> is not an easy task. ( <b>Gerund</b> )
	b. <i>The</i> <b>writing</b> <i>of novels</i> is not an easy task. ( <b>Verbal Noun</b> )

在 1. 的 a. 句中的 *early* 是副词，修饰 **Gerund** 的 *rising* 的，在 b. 句中的 *early* 是形容词，修饰 **Verbal Noun** 的 *rising* 的，在 2. 的 a. 句中的 *novels* 为 *writing* 的宾语，所以这个 *writing* 为 **Gerund**，在 b. 句中的 *writing* 前加有冠词，又伴有 *of novels* 的形容词短语，所以是 **Verbal Noun**。

2. 动名词既能有 Noun 的作用所以它可作主语、宾语及补语用。

(1) **Sleeping** is necessary to life. (主语)

(2) **Seeing** is **believing**. (主语和补语)

(3) I like **sleeping** in the open air. (动词的宾语)

(4) I am fond of **sleeping**. (介词的宾语)

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{Sleeping} \text{ is necessary to health. (Gerund)} \\ \textbf{To sleep} \text{ is necessary to health. (Infinitive)} \\ \textbf{Sleep} \text{ is necessary to health. (Noun)} \end{array} \right.$

由于用的动词不同，后面有的要接动名词，有的要接不定词，有的二者都可以接，如：

(1) I *like* **getting** (**to got**) up early.

(2) I don't *care* **to go** abroad.

(3) Would you *mind* **shutting** the window?

(4) I *forbid* you **to smoke**.

(5) The law *prohibits* minors from **smoking**.

(6) Illness *prevented* me from **attending** school.

(7) I could hardly *keep* from **smiling**.

(8) I have not quite *finished* **packing** yet.

(9) I *stopped* (= ceased from) **smoking**. (戒烟)

(10) I *stopped* (= halted) **to smoke**. (= in order to smoke. 抽烟)

又 Gerund 可作介词的宾语，而 Infinitive 则不可，如 He has come to Taiwan with the object of **seeing** (不能说 to see) sights.

3. 动名词虽无明确的 Tense, 但从前后的关系可以判断。

(1) I **have** no doubt of your **succeeding**. (= I have no doubt that you **will succeed**.)

(2) I **am** sure of your **being able** to solve this question. (= I am sure that you **are able** to solve this question.)

(3) I **am** sure of his **having said** so. (= I am sure that he **has said** [或 said] so.)

(4) I **was** not aware of his **being** such a rich man. (= I was not aware that he **was** such a rich man.)

(5) He **denied having done** it. (= He denied that he **had done** it.)

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He } \textit{repents} \text{ of } \mathbf{having\ been} \text{ idle. (= He repents that he } \mathbf{was} \text{ [或 } \mathbf{has\ been} \text{ ] idle.)} \\ \text{He } \textit{repented} \text{ of } \mathbf{having\ been} \text{ idle. (= He repented that he } \mathbf{had\ been} \text{ idle.)} \end{array} \right.$

4. 动名词的 Sense-Subject.

(1) I regret **having said** so. (= I regret **I** said [have said] so.)

(2) I regret **his having said** so. (= I regret that **he** said [has said] so.)

用动名词来缩短的分句中, 主语如系有生物时, 就要加所有格的 s, 无生物时便不要加 s, 如

(1) His **father's being** rich is known to all. (= That his father is rich is known to all.)

(2) I am glad of **examination being** over. (= I am glad that the examination is over.)

5. 关于动名词的主要成语。

(1) **There is no going out** in such dirty weather. (= It is impossible to go out in...)

(2) **On waking up**, he saw that another caravan had arrived.

(3) **It is no use complaining.** (= It is of no use to complain.)

(4) Let us **go boating** together this afternoon.

(5) The place is **worth visiting**.

(6) It is **worth** your **while to visit** the place.

(7) He adorned the walls with pictures **of his painting**.  
(= He adorned the walls with pictures **painted by himself**.)

(8) **I came near being drowned.** (= I was nearly drowned.)

(9) **I felt like crying.** (= I felt inclined to cry.)

## 26 being 的用法

莎士比亚的名句：“To be, or not to be, that is the question.”初学者对于这个 be 的意思，很难捉摸。其实这并不是晦涩难于理解的。原因只在我们把它的基本意义忽视了。Be 的原义是“存在”，这点应该牢记。Be 加上-ing 之后，这基本意义，来得更加显明。许多学生说他们一直读到大学，对于 being 的意义和用法，还是弄不清楚，也只是因为忽略了这基本意义的缘故。进行时中用 being，表示“正在”，不也是这意义的应用吗？

现在我想拿 being 这个字做个代表，来看看这-ing 形式的字，到底有些什么用法。我们只消把这个 being 的各种用法完全弄明白，对于其他一切动词加-ing 的用法，也就再不会有什么疑问了。

Being 的用法一共可以分成五个项目，我们不妨举例说明。

(1) 作为名词 (Verbal Noun) :

After all, man is a selfish *being*. (人毕竟是自私的。)

This is some strange *being*. (这是一个怪物。)

〔注〕这个 being 的用法完全与名词无异，前面可以加冠词，本身又可以加-s 做成复数，如 human beings。在下二项中，则 being 不能加 -s 做成复数。

(2) 作为被动的动名词 (Passive Gerund) :

I don't mind *being* laughed at. (我不在乎别人笑骂。)

*Being* made a fool of is no proof that one is a fool. (被人愚弄的，并不见得就是愚人。)

〔注〕在这用法中可注意的，就是在 being 这个名词之后，一定接上一个过去分词，以构成被动的成分。

(3) 作为完全的动名词 (Perfect Gerund) :

She is proud of *being* the mother of eight children. (她很骄傲她是八个孩子的母亲。)

He knew that *being* punctual meant *being* on the point of time. (他知道准时到达就是守时。)

〔注〕这个 **being** 虽然也是用作名词，但后面并不接有过去分词，所以其中不包含被动性。

(4) 作为形容词 (Qualificative Adjective) :

He serves on trial for the time *being*. (他暂时是试用性质。)

His clothing *being* in shreds, he presented a sorry sight. (他衣衫褴褛，现出一副可怜相。)

〔注〕这个 **being** 既非名词，也非动词，而是形容词，第一例句形容“时间”，第二例句形容“衣服”。

(5) 作为现在分词 (Present Participle) :

He was *being* held prisoner in the Legation. (他正被囚禁在公使馆里。)

The work is *being* done. (这工作正在进行。)

〔注〕这个 **being** 之后虽然也是接有过去分词，但 **being** 是动词的一部分，表示进行时。



## 27 形容词用法

形容词是用来形容名词的字眼，它有两种用法，一是置于名词之前的“附加的用法”，一是作为动词补语的“叙述的用法”。

He is the **greatest** conquerer who has conquered himself.

曾克服了自己的人是最伟大的克服者。（附加的用法）

**Happy** is the man who sees his folly in his youth.

在青年时代便已看出自己的愚行的人是幸福的。（叙述的用法）

形容词既有各种各样，同置于名词之前，谁先谁后，颇费斟酌，兹就通常的用法，定出顺序如下。

① 指示形容词或冠词，② 数量，③ 性质，④ 大小，⑤ 新旧，⑥ 形状，⑦ 颜色，⑧ 材料。

There are many ② big ④ white ⑦ birds on the pond.

A ① pickpocket robbed me of my ① new ⑤ gold ⑧ watch.

The ① lion is a ① wild ③ animal.

I bought an ① old ⑤ square ⑥ table at that ① store.

如果同一类的形容词用了好几个的话，就把音节少的词置于前面，或是看怎样念来顺口地排列。用二词时中加 **and**，三词以上用逗号隔开，只在最后一个形容词前才加用 **and**，有时不加 **and** 也可以。

The people of Switzerland were not always **free and happy**.

How good it was, in the hot summer days, to drink the **clear, cold, sparkling** water from the well!

形容词通常是置于名词之前，但在下列四种情形时，则又置于名词之后：

- ① 形容短语：  
a basket **full of fruit**  
a wall **ten feet high**  
a child **three years old**
- ② thing 的复合词：  
There is **something noble** about the man.  
**Nothing great** is easy.  
Tell me **anything interesting**.
- ③ 惯用的成语：  
**heir apparent**  
**poet laureate**  
**from time immemorial**
- ④ 重叠使用形容词时：  
A man **poor but content** is to be envied.  
I never heard a tale, **so sad, so tender and so true**.

形容词可分为性质形容词 (Qualifying Adjective)、数量形容词 (Quantitative Adjective) 和代名形容词 (Pronominal Adjective) 三种。如 wise、idle、blue、old、gold、wooden、European 等为性质形容词，many、much、few、little、some、all、first、second 等，为数量形容词，而 this、that、such、the、same、some、any、each、every、both、what、which、my、your 等，则为代名形容词。

“性质形容词”是表示性质或状态的，它又可分为：

1. 固有形容词 (Proper Adjective)。

这是由固有名词做成的，首字必须大写，如 The **Chinese** flag、the **English** language、the **French** people。但地名可不变形即作形容词用，如 a **London** paper、a **Taipei** man、**China** tea。

## 2. 物质形容词 (Material Adjective) 。

这是由物质名词做成的，有时用原形，有时加 -en。如 a **gold** watch、a **silver** medal、an **iron** will、a **brick** building 及 the **golden** age、a **golden** opportunity、a **wooden** house、**woolen** goods、**earthen** ware 等等。

## 3. 动词形容词 (Verbal Adjective) 。

这是由动词做成的，可分现在分词和过去分词两种。

### a. 现在分词 (Present Participle) :

Close to the meadows is a **shining** river.

The **rising** sun, a **flying** bird, an **interesting** book, a **puzzling** question, a **rolling** stone.

### b. 过去分词 (Past Participle)

The king carried the **wounded** man into the hut.

A **broken** watch、a **learned** man、**lost** time、**sunken** eyes、**withered** flowers.

4. 副词也可用作形容词，如 an **up** -train、a **down** train、a **through** train、the house **here**、the people **there**、the **above** address、the **then** premier。

“数量形容词”分不定数量 (Indefinite) 形容词及数词 (Numeral) 两种。不定数的形容词有 many、few、a few、some、all 等，不定量的形容词有 much、little、a little、some、all 等。数词则又分基数 (Cardinal)，如 one、two、three、four；序数 (Ordinal)，如 first、second、third；及倍数 (Multiplicative)，如 half、double、twice。

### A. 不定数量形容词的用法。

① **many** 和 **much**：many 是表“数”的，与复数普通名词连用，而 much 是表“量”的，与物质名词或抽象名词连用，例如：

**Many** men are poor. (复数普通名词)

**Much** rain has fallen. (物质名词)

He has **much** knowledge of English. (抽象名词)

又有 many a 的说法，是加强语气的，many a man (is) = many men (are)。例如 **Many a** father has learned to his sorrow, what it is to have a boy idle. (许多父亲深知养子不教结果可悲。)

此外在 many 或 much 之前，又可加 as 或 so，即 as many 为“同数的”，as much 为“同量的”，so many 及 so much 用于不定的数量，例如：

I found **six** mistakes in **as many** lines.

When he was sentenced to death, he seemed as calm as if he **had** expected **as much**.

Apples are sold at **so many** for a dollar.

This article is sold at **so much** a catty.

但 so many 用于 as、like 之后时，与 as many (同数的) 同义，如 The boys climbed the trees **like so many** monkeys.

② **few** 和 **a few**; **little** 和 **a little**: few、a few 是表“不定数”的，通常接复数普通名词，而 little、a little 则是表“不定量”的，通常接物质名词或抽象名词。在 few 或 little 之前加用 a 时，意为“稍有”，不加 a 时意为“几无”，例如：

There are **few** grammatical mistakes in your composition.  
(你的作文“差不多没有”语法上的错误。)

I have **little** money left. (存款所余无几)。

**Not a few** boats have been sunk by the storm. (暴风沉船“不少”。)

He has made **not a little** money on account of the business activity. (因为生意兴隆他赚钱“不少”。)

Please stay with us **a few** days more. (请跟我们多住几天。)

There is **a little** hope in the enterprise. (那事业有一点儿希望。)

③ **several**: 三四个乃至五六个的意思, 比 **a few** 要多数些。

They have collected **several** kinds of tropical trees, I hear. (听说他们搜集好几种热带植物。)

④ **some**、**any**、**no**、**all** 这些不定数量形容词的用法, 容在代名词形容词的用法中说明。

B. 数词的用法。

① 基数: 关于基数应注意事项, 分述如下:

a. 要注意拼写的变化, 如“四”及“十四”都有 **u** (**four**、**fourteen**), 但“四十”便无 **u** (**forty**)。

b. 在二十以上十位数上加一位数时, 先加短划 (-), 再加 **one**、**two**、**three** 等词。

c. 在 **hundred** 后再接数字时, 必须加用 **and** (在 **thousand** 后如无 **hundred** 时同样), 如

200——two hundred

250——two hundred **and** fifty

2245——two thousand two hundred **and** forty-five

2060——two thousand **and** sixty

234,567,898——two hundred **and** thirty-four million, five hundred **and** sixty-seven thousand, eight hundred **and** ninety-eight

d. 年号有三种读法, 但以第一种为最普遍。

1955	{	1. Nineteen fifty-five
		2. Nineteen hundred and fifty-five

### | 3. One thousand nine hundred and fifty-five

e. 在 **hundred**、**thousand** 之前，即便有 **two**，**three** 等多数的数字，也不说 **two hundreds** 或 **three thousands**，只有在说几百、几千的不定数时才加 **s**，如 **hundreds of people**（好几百人）、**thousands of students**（好几千学生）、**hundreds of thousands**（几十万）等。

f. **million** 之前加有一定的数字，而其后接有名词时，仍不要加 **s**，只有在后面不接名词时才用复数。

{ **three million** men  
  **three millions** of men

g. 基数作名词用时也可以加 **s**，例如：

There are three **twos** in six.

The boys went out by **twos**.

She married while still in her **teens**.

He is a young officer in his **twenties**.

② 序数：

a. 应注意拼写及发音。

**first** (1st) , **second** (2nd) , **third** (3rd) , **fourth** (4th) , **fifth** (5th) , **sixth** (6th) , **seventh** (7th) , **eighth** (8th) , **ninth** (9th) , **tenth** (10th) , **eleventh** (11th) , **twelfth** (12th) , **twentieth** (20th) , **twenty-first** (21st) .

**eighth** 的发音为〔eitθ〕，**twentieth** 的发音为〔twentiiθ〕。写略字时，应注意 **st**，**nd**，**rd**，**th** 的分别，如

{ 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th  
  21st, 22nd, 23rd, 24th  
  31st, 32nd, 33rd, 34th

b. 在序数前必得加定冠词 **the**，但如所加者为不定词 **a** 时，则不是表顺序，而是表 **another** 之意。

This is **the** first time I have heard of it.

One was deaf, another was blind, and **a third** was lame.

c. 有时可将基数代序数用。

No. 1 (Number one) = The first

Book Two = The Second Book

World War II = The Second World War

George V = George the Fifth

下列各点，附记于此，以资参考。

·April 12th, 读时应读 April the twelfth。

·公元说基数，年号说序数，如1955 = nineteen fifty-five; “中华民国”三十四年 = the thirty-fourth year of the Republic of China。

·年龄有各种说法，如 I am twenty year old; I am twenty years of age; I am in my twentieth year。

·货币等的读法，如 \$ 2.35 = two dollars thirty-five cents; £ 2 5s 2d = two pounds, five shillings and two pence; 90° = ninety degrees; 4. 30 p. m. train = four thirty p m train; Telephone No. 1203 = one two naught three。

·分数是分子用基数，分母用序数，当分子在 **two** 以上时，分母的序数要再加 **s**，如

$\frac{1}{3}$  = a third 或 one third

$\frac{2}{3}$  = two thirds

$2\frac{2}{3}$  = two and two thirds

$\frac{1}{4}$  = a quarter

$\frac{3}{4}$  = three quarters

·小数的读法: 28.372 = twenty eight  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{decim} \\ \text{al} \\ \text{point} \end{array} \right)$  three seven two o

·加减乘除的说法:

Two **and** (plus) three **is** (或 are) five.

Three **from** (minus) five **is** two.

Three **times** four **is** (或 are) twelve.

Fifteen **divided by** three **equals** five.

d. first 作副词用, 有下列各种说法:

The king arrived **first**, and next came his retinue.

He **first** went to Paris, and **then** to London.

I found English difficult **at first**, but I liked it **from the first**.

He was only ten years of age when he went to America **for the first time**.

e. 基数上加用 first 或 last 时。

Please look over the **first two** chapters. (指同一本书中头两章。)

Compare the **two first** chapters. (两本不同的书中第一章。)

Examination will be held on the **last two** days of this month. (最后两天。)

③ 倍数:

a. double 有“二重”或“二倍”之意, 单复名词前皆可用。



He has **the double** capacity of preacher and teacher. (二重资格)

On Sunday, we have to pay **double the** usual fare. (二倍票价)

b. half 可用在冠词之前或后, 如 **half a** mile; **half an** hour; two hours and **a half**; She repaid him **half the total sum**.

c. 除 once (= one time), twice (= two times), 及间或用 thrice (= three times) 外, 三倍以上通常都说 three times, four times 等。

The oysters in which pearls are found are **twice** the size of those used for food.

Your estate is <b>twice as</b> large <b>as</b> mine.	} (大两倍)
Your estate is <b>as</b> large <b>again as</b> mine.	

This is **half as** large **as** that. (一半大)

This is **half as** much **again as** that. (一倍半)

This is **twice and a half as** heavy **as** that. (二倍半)

They have **three times as** many ships **as** we have. (多三倍)

The earth is **forty-nine times** as large **as** the moon. (大四十九倍)

〔注意〕与倍数连用的比较字为 as...as, 而不是 more 或 -er...than, 我们若说“China is twenty times larger than Japan.”就错了, 应改为“China is twenty times as large as Japan.”才对。

“代名形容词”是具有代词的性质的, 可分下列四种:

1. Possessive (所有)
2. Demonstrative (指示)
3. Interrogative (疑问)

#### 4. Relative (关系)

①所有代名形容词。

This is **my** dictionary.

That is **your** dictionary.

Those are **their** books.

②指示代名形容词。

a. **such**: 在单数普通名词前用 **such a** 或 **such an**, 但在复数普通名词或在抽象名词前, 就单用 **such**, 如:

We had never witnessed **such an** interesting game. (单普)

There are many **such men**. (复普)

I have never heard **such music** in my life. (抽象)

b. **the same**: 加强语气时还可说 **the very same**.

These are all (of) **the same** prices.

The girl was born on **the very same** day that he returned.

c. **some**: 表不定数时接复数普通名词, 表量时接物质名词。有时 **some** 又可接抽象名词用。

The custom is still observed in **some places**. (复普)

Give me **some water**. (物质)

This operation requires **some skill**. (抽象)

用于单数普通名词前, **some** 表不定之意, 如 He is suffering from **some** disease. (他害着什么病。) **Some** student must have written it. (一定是那个学生写的。) I will tell you **some** day next week. (下星期哪一天我告诉你。)

此外, **some** 还有下面几种用法:

**Some** fish can fly. (有的鱼能飞。)

He owes me **some** 200 dollars. (他欠我二百元光景。)

You like **some** tea? (你要点茶吗?)

d. **any**: **some** 是用于肯定句的; 否定句、疑问句及条件句就用 **any**, 对于数或量皆可。

Have you **any** letters or telegrams for me? (疑问句)

Yes, we have **some** letters. (肯定句)

No, we have **not any** (= no) telegrams. (否定句)

If **any** friends should call, I would see them. (条件句)

如果把 **any** 用于肯定的叙述句中, 即表示“无论何人、何处、何事”之意, 单复数都可用。

**Any man** could do that.

You may take **any books** that you like best.

e. **some** 和 **certain**:

①He is reading **some** novel.

②He is reading **a certain** novel.

第一句意为他在读小说, 什么小说不明; 第二句的意思则为, 说话的人是知道他在读的是什么小说的, 不过没有说出的必要, 或是不欲说出时, 便只说“某某小说”。

f. **any** 和 **either**: **either** 为二者之一, **any** 为三者以上的人或物中间的一个。

**Any** pen will do. (任何一支笔都行。)

**Either** pen will do. (两支笔中哪支都行。)

这个 **either** 除二者之一 (one of two) 的意思外, 还有两个 (each of two) 的意思, 如 There are trees on **either** side (= both

sides) of the river. 又作“也”解时肯定句用 **too**, 否定句用 **either**, 如

I have seen him **too**.

I have not seen him **either**.

**g. any** 和 **every**: **any** 普通与表示“动作”的动词连用, 多指“未来”而言; **every** 接单数名词, 比 **all** 的意思更强, 与表示状态的动词连用, 多指“现在”及“过去”而言。**every** 不可作代词用。

**Any** boy can solve such an easy problem. (谁都可以)

**Every** man has his weak side. (人人都有弱点。)

又 **not any** 是三个以上“全部否定”, 与 **no** 或 **none** 同义, **not every** 是“部分否定”, 与 **very few** 或 **some** 同义。

I do **not** want **any** money. (= I want **no** money.) (完全不要)

**Every** man can **not** be a poet. (= **Very few** can be poets.) (未必人人能成诗人。)

误: He can teach **everything**. (*all* at a time)

正: He can teach **anything**. (*one* at a time)

误: **Anyone** can **not** understand him.

正: **No** one can understand him.

**h. every** 和 **each**: **every** 是“全部都”之意, 比 **all** 或 **each** 的意义皆强; **each** 是“各个”之意。

**Every** dog has its day. (所有的狗)

**Each** country has its own customs. (各国)

关于 **every** 的常用词句, 尚有 **every day** (每天), **every other day** (隔日), **every three days** (三天一次), **every seven days** 或 **every seventh day** (每隔七日), **every now and then** (时常)。

i. another:

Have **another** cup of coffee. (one more)

That is quite **another** matter. (different)

To know is **one** thing, to teach is **another**.

**One** man's meat is **another** man's poison.

j. **every** 和 **all**: **all** 是接复数普通名词的，冠词或代词要置于与名词之间；**every** 是接单数普通名词的，比 **all** 的意思更强。

**All** the sailors got on board the ship.

**Every** sailor has a knife.

**All** of us are happy.

We are **all** happy.

**Every one** of us is happy.

k. **all** 和 **both**: **all** 是用于三者以上，**both** 是用于二者或双方的。 **all** 后接复数普通名词、物质名词或抽象名词时，表数量的整体。后接单数普通名词或固有名词时，表 **whole** 之意。

**All** boys like play. (比说 Boys like play 意强) (复普)

He has run through **all** his money. (物质)

Pines are green **all** the year round. (单普)

Keelung is the best sea-port in **all** Taiwan. (单固)

**Both** his parents are dead.

**All** the students did **not** go. (不是全体都去)

**No** student went. (全都未去)

**Both** his parents are **not** living. (不是双方都在)

**Neither** of his parents is living. (双方都不在)

又 **not all** 为“部分否定”，如果是全部否定就用 **not any**，又 **not both** 是“部分否定”，即 **one** 之意，双方都否定时则用 **not either**。

**Not all** good men will prosper, **nor** will **all** bad men fail.  
(善人未必皆繁昌，恶人未必皆败亡。)

**Both** his brothers are **not** diligent. (他两兄弟并非都用功。)(即有一个不用功)

关于 **all** 的常用字句，尚有：

If you do it **at all**, do it well. (条件句) (要做就好好地做。)

Are you going to do it **at all**? (疑问句) (你到底要不要做?)

Do not do it **at all**. (否定句) (一点也不要去做。)

**For all** (或 **With all**) his wealth, he is not a happy man.  
(他虽富而不幸福。)

He was **all but** drowned. (他几乎溺死。)

**After all**, it does not matter to us whether we win or not.  
(毕竟，我们胜败都无关系。)

③疑问代名形容词。

**What color** is her new dress?

**Which way** shall we take?

④关系代名形容词。

**What money** (= all the money that) we had with us barely sufficed for our railway fares.

He spoke to me in German, **which language** I do not understand.

## 28 比较的法则

形容词的比较（**Comparison**），分原级、比较级和最高级三种。原级是用形容词本来的写法，比较级是单音节及少数常用的二音节词加 **-er**，或三音节以上的词在词前加 **more**，最高级是单音节及少数常用的二音节词加 **-est**，或三音节以上的词在词前加 **most**，但这里所谓二音节词，是说原来的词，前面加的接前缀是不计算在内的。又单辅音前面的元音如读短音时，在加 **-er** 或 **-est** 之前，应将其辅音重复一下。

1. 比较级与最高级的构成法。

a. 单音节词：

rich      richer    richest

big      bigger    biggest

b. 二音节词：

-y:            happy      happier    happiest

-ly:            holy        holier     holiest

-le:            noble       nobler     noblest

-er:            clever       cleverer    cleverest

-ow:           narrow      narrower   narrowest

其他如 polite、profound、secure、precise、concise、abrupt、sincere、severe、common、cruel、wicked、pleasant、quiet、handsome 等等。

c. 加接前缀的二音节词：

ignoble	ignobler	ignoblest
unpleasant	unpleasanter	unpleasantest
incomplete	incompleter	incompletest

d. 多音节词:

beautiful	more beautiful	most beautiful
comfortable	more comfortable	most comfortable

凡词尾有 ful、less、able、ive、ing 的二音节词或多音节词，如 useful、famous、careless、interesting 等，都属于此类。

e. 不规则变化:

good well	}	better	best
ill (evil) bad		worse	worst
much many	}	more	most
little		less	least
old	[	older	oldest
		elder	eldest
late	[	later	latest
		latter	last
far	[	farther	farthest
		further	furthest

2. 比较级的用法。

a. 用于二人或二物的比较，通常加用 than。



(1) A good friend is **better than** a near relation.

(2) His nose is much **wider than** that of a dog, but he has **smaller ears than** some dogs.

上举的例(1)是在比较级后没有名词的,但例(2)便是有 ear 一个名词,这个名词是复数,故不用冠词,如系单数,在比较级的形容词前,就要冠以 a 或 an,如在比较级之后用有 of the two 的字眼,则前面要用 the,如:

(1) Henry is **smaller than** Frank.

(2) Henry is **a smaller boy** than Frank.

(3) Henry is **the smaller boy of the two**.

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Which do you think } \mathbf{the\ better}, \text{ spring or autumn?} \\ \text{Which do you think } \mathbf{better}, \text{ spring or autumn?} \end{array} \right.$

第一句的 better 为形容词,后略去一个名词 (season); 第二句的 better 为副词。

又 He is *three years* **younger than** I. =

He is **younger than** I *by three years*.

b. 普通的比较都是说“优于”或“多于”的,如果是“劣于”或“少于”时,就不问音节的多少,都是用 less (least)。

(1) Chen is **less clever** than Wang.

(2) Lee is **the least clever** of the three.

不过一般说话不大喜欢用这种向下的比较,所以与其说“His elder sister is **less** beautiful **than** his younger sister.”不如说“His elder sister is **not so** beautiful **as** his younger sister.”或是说“His younger sister is **more** beautiful **than** his elder sister.”。

c. 绝对比较级。

(1) The **greater** part of my apple trees have no fruit this year.

(2) These toys are meant for **older** children.

(3) The old linen-weaver in the neighboring parish of Ta rley being dead, his handicraft made him a highly welcome settler to the **richer** housewives of the district, and even to the **more provident** cottagers, who had their little stock of yarn at the year's end.—Eliot, *Silas Marner*

d. 有一种来自拉丁文的比较，如 superior、inferior、prior、senior、junior 等；后面不接 than，而要接 to，例如：

(1) This book is **superior to** (= better than) the other in style.

(2) This article is **inferior to** (= worse than) the sample.

注意：动词 prefer 也属于这一类，后要接 to。

3. 最高级的用法。

a. 在最高级的形容词上，要加 the 的：

(1) Still waters are **the deepest**.

(2) The elephant is **the largest** land animal.

(3) China is **the greatest** of (or among) these powers.

(4) China is **the greatest** power among them.

注意：在最高级之后接有名词时，通例不用 of，而用 among（后接复数名词）或 in（后接单数名词），如 He is the biggest boy in his class. 或 He is the biggest boy among them.

在最高级的前面用有 one of 或 among 时，并非专指某人，而是泛说的，不过此种情形最高级名词一定是复数的，如

(1) He is 

one of
--------

 the tallest boys in his class.

| among |

(2) Shanghai is among *the greatest* cities in the world.

b. 在最高级的形容词上，不要加 the 的：

(1) **Most** people are aware of the fact.

(2) Who has **most** books?

(3) Who made **fewest** mistakes?

(4) The island is **loveliest** at night.

(5) He is my **greatest** friend.

(6) O **dearest** one, when shall we see you again?

(7) With **earliest** day I was up.—Brontë, *Jane Eyre*

(8) “Is it so, Emily?” he asked, with **deepest** tenderness.—Gissing, *Life's Morning*

注意：最高级有时可加一个 even，如 By the law of nature the stream will run down, and **the strongest** man cannot stop it. = ...and **even the strongest men**...

比较： { **Most** learned men 大多数的学者  
**the most** learned man 最有学问的人  
**a most** learned man 一个很有学问的人

比较： { Yours is **the best** of all. (形容词的最高级)  
I like it **best** of all. (副词的最高级)  
He does his **best**. (名词的最高级)

c. 绝对最高级。

(1) The dog would lie at his feet, looking up into his face, following with **keenest** interest each fleeting expression.—London, *Call of the Wild*

(2) I should be ashamed the **longest** day I lived.—Gissing, *The House of Cobwebs*

(3) She bursts into tears, declaring herself the **wretchedest, the most deceived, the worst-used** of women.—Dickens, *Our Mutual Friend*

(4) The Germans are **a most** thorough and painstaking people in all their undertakings.

(注) 以上这种 Absolute Superlative, 并无多数事物相比较的意味, 而大致是等于 very + 原级。

d. 最高级作为名词用 (绝对最高级的一种)。

(1) Let us do our **best** (= utmost) .

(2) Malthus calls it the survival of the **fittest**.

(3) His style is of the **clearest**.

(4) She was looking her **best** that day.

(5) The cherry-blossoms are now at their **best**.

(6) Here was overcrowded England, at its **most dismal**.  
—Galsworthy, *Silver Spoon*

(7) He tried his **hardest** to persuade them to buy the picture.

(8) After the cold of the night the birds were singing their **clearest** in the sunshine.—Galsworthy, *Captures*

(9) He did not run, but he walked his **hardest**.—Galsworthy, *White Monkey*

(10) He breathed his **last**.

其他如 at best、at last、at most、at least、at the latest、in the least、to make the most of、to make the best of、to ma

ke the best of a bad bargain、to make the best of one's way 等等，都属于这一类。

e. 用比较级来表示最高级的意味。

He is **more diligent** than **any other boy** in the class. = He is **the most diligent** boy in the class.

注意：other 一词不可少，如果单说 any boy，则他本人也包括在 any 之内，自己与自己比较，岂不是笑话，所以一定要说 any other boy。这后面的名词可单可复，如果 any 后不用 other，就一定要在那名词后加限制的形容词句，如

(1) The Mississippi is **longer than any other river** in the world.

(2) The Mississippi is **longer than any river** in China.

f. 在比较级上加否定词也可表示最高级的意味。

**Nothing** is **more precious** than time, yet **nothing** is **less** valued. = Time is **the most precious**, yet it is **least** valued.

比较：{ Iron is **the most useful** metal.  
Iron is **the most useful** of all metals.  
Iron is **more useful** than any other metal.  
**Nothing** is **more useful** than iron.

g. 仅有叙述用法 (Predicative use) 的形容词，是不加 er 或 est 的，而要用 more 或 most，如

He was **more fond** of her than her sister.

The boy was **more aware** of the danger than the girls.

h. 在修饰法时要用 er 或 est 的形容词，变成叙述用法时，就多半要用 more 或 most 了，如

(1) He was far **more sad** than she was.

(2) I shall be **most happy** to do so.

(3) If I had been less cautious I might have been **more wise**.——Doyle, *Memoirs*

(4) He was **more clever** and **cold** than they were.

(5) He looked **more good** than ever.

i. 有时为语调的关系，甚至同时二者并用的也有。

(1) We two grew **dearer** and yet **more dear** to each other.——Haggard, *She*

(2) He was the **sternest** and **most severe** of masters.——Dickens, *David*

(3) The coffins are something **narrower** and **more shallow** than they used to be.——Dickens, *Oliver Twist*

j. 在口语中哪怕是说二者的比较，也常用最高级。

(1) The part was certainly in the **best** hands of the two.——Austen, *Mansfield Park*

(2) She expects me to go to her, instead of her coming to me! And yet who's the **busiest**? ——Bennett, *Old Wives' Tale*

k. 再要加强比较级或最高级的意味时，就用 **much** 或 **far** 等副词。

(1) Gold is **much more valuable** than silver.

(2) He is **much the best** student in the class.

(3) The air is **far hotter** today than yesterday.

此外又可用 **by far the better**, **by far the best**, **the very best** 等，如

(1) In the village the money-lender is **by far the most powerful man**.

(2) I did **the very best** I could.

1. 类似单词及短语用法辨异。

(1) elder, eldest; older, oldest.

His **elder** brother is two years **older** than I.

(2) later, latest; latter, last.

This is **the latest** news. (time)

This is **the last** boy in the class. (position)

He came **later** than I expected.

A man and a dog turned up. The **latter** was a Pekinese.

(3) nearest, next.

This street is the **nearest** to my house. (空间或距离)

This house is **next** to mine. (顺序或位置)

(4) farther, farthest; further.

Our school is **farther** from the city than yours. (距离)

I have something to say **further**. (更加)

(5) last, next.

He fell ill on Sunday **last**.

He fell ill **last** Sunday.

Our athletic meet will be held on Friday **next**.

Our athletic meet will be held **next** Friday.

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I went there } \mathbf{last} \text{ Sunday.} \\ \text{I went there } \mathbf{the last} \text{ Sunday of } \mathbf{last} \text{ month.} \end{array} \right.$

(6) not more than, no more than.

not less than, no less than.

He has **not less than** \$ 1,000. (= \$ 1,000 or more)  
He has **no less than** \$ 1,000. (= just as much or many as)

He has **not more than** \$ 1,000. (= only about)  
He has **no more than** \$ 1,000. (= just)

(7) no more than, not any more than.

一般形式:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{A is } \mathbf{no\ more\ B\ than\ C\ is\ D.} \\ \text{A is } \mathbf{not\ B\ any\ more\ than\ C\ is\ D.} \end{array} \right.$

A home without love is **no more** a home **than** a body without a soul is a man.

You can **not** injure such a man **any more than** you can throw a stone at the sun.



## 29 副词的用法

用来修饰动词、形容词或其他副词的，就叫作副词。有时副词也可用来修饰名词、或代词、从句或整个的句子，例如：

He **lives comfortably** on his pension. (动词)

The weather is **very fine** today. (形容词)

She does not rise **very early**. (副词)

**Even**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a boy} \\ \text{he} \end{array} \right\}$  can carry this small parcel. (名词或代词)

One is really happy **only when one is in sound health**.  
(从句)

**Unfortunately** the thief was not caught. (全句)

副词与形容词有时是同形的，如 first、hard、fast、early、late、well、much、little、high、low、long、wide、right、straight、enough 等，如“He was very tired, because he had been busy since *early* morning.” (用作形容词) 又“He that would thrive must rise *early*.” (用作副词)

有时加上 -ly 与不加 -ly，同为副词，不过意义不同而已。

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hard (勉力)} : \text{I study } \mathbf{hard} \text{ all day long.} \\ \text{hardly (几不)} : \text{I } \mathbf{hardly} \text{ ever see him now.} \end{array} \right.$

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{high (高)} : \text{The waves ran } \mathbf{high}. \\ \text{highly (非常)} : \text{He is } \mathbf{highly} \text{ amused.} \end{array} \right.$

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{late (迟)} : \text{You should not sit up so } \mathbf{late}. \\ \text{lately (近来)} : \text{I have } \mathbf{lately} \text{ been very busy.} \end{array} \right.$

比较: { wide (宽) : The fire spread far and **wide**.  
widely (大大地) : His opinion differs **widely** from mine.

## 1. 副词的种类 (Kinds of Adverbs)

### ① 普通副词 (Simple Adverb)

a. 表时间的: before、ago、early、lately、soon、at once、today、yesterday、tomorrow、long ago、sooner or later 等。

b. 表地点的: here、there、far、near、close by、over there、to and fro、far away 等。

c. 表次数的: once、twice、sometimes、seldom、often 等。

d. 表方式的: well、thus、kindly、bravely、wisely、well of 等。

e. 表分量的: little、more、greatly、enough、every、too、almost、more or less 等。

f. 表肯定的: yes、certainly 等。

g. 表否定的: no、not、never 等。

### ② 疑问副词 (Interrogative Adverb)

a. 表时间的:

**When** shall we meet again? (何时)

**How long** has your throat been like this? (好久)

**How often** do you write to him a month? (几次)

b. 表地点的:

**Where** do you plan to spend the summer? (何处)

**How far** is it from here to your house? (距离)

c. 表方式的:

**How** is your family? (状态)

**How** is he useful? (如何)

d. 表程度的:

**How** do you like my new house? (好恶)

**How** do you like your tea? (浓度)

e. 表理由的:

**Why** do you ask that question? (何故)

**How** is it that you are always behind time? (怎样)

f. 表感叹的:

**How** beautiful she looks today! (美貌)

**How** it blows! (烈风)

### ③ 关系副词 (Relative Adverb)

关系副词是 Adverb 而兼 Conjunction 的作用的, 如 when、where、why 等皆是, 用法如下:

a. 表时间的:

The summer holidays were the only part of the year **when** (in which) he was really happy.

b. 表地点的:

He led us to a joyous land **where** (in which) waters gushed and fruit trees grew.

c. 表理由的:

The reason **why** (on account of which) it happened is told in Browning's poem.

d. 表方式的:

This is the way **how** he did it.

上面例句中所用的 **when**、**why**、**where** 等关系副词，都可以用 **that** 来代替，有时甚至可以完全省略。

His father died on the day (when) (that) he was born.  
(或用 **that** 代替 **when**，或全不用)

That is the reason (why) men seek fame and fortune.

又关系副词的先行词 (Antecedent)，有时颇不寻常，有时全然略去。

a. There are cases **when** politeness cuts deeper than impertinence.—Gardiner

There are cases, of course, **where** the clash of liberties seems to defy compromise.—Gardiner, *Leaves in the Wind*

This is the point **where** we stuck.

Americans have passed out of the period **where** they care about petty economies.

b. He asked me (the time) **when** I had arrived.

This is (the place) **where** we dwell.

That must be a long way from (the place) **where** we were.

She returned it to (the place) **where** it had been before.

A banana-skin was lying, like a bedraggled starfish, in the gutter, just in front of (the place) **where** they were standing.—Huxley, *Antic Hay*

关系副词的继续的用法。

We waited for half an hour **when** (= and then) the storm passed over.

They walked together to the entrance, **where** (= and there) they stopped.

#### ④ 复合关系副词 (Compound Relative Adverb)

在普通关系副词上加 **ever** 一词时，便成为复合关系副词，如 **whenever** = at any time when 及 **wherever** = in or to any place where 等。此种副词有时含有让步的意思 (**However** 只能用于让步句中)。

##### a. 普通的:

Come **whenever** (= at any time when) it is convenient to you.

My dog follows me **wherever** (= to any place where) I go.

##### b. 让步的:

**Whenever** (= No matter when) I (may) go, I find him writing something.

**Wherever** (= No matter where) you (may) go, you will find the same thing.

**However** (= No matter how) careful you may be, accidents will happen.

#### 2. 副词的比较 (Comparison of Adverbs)

副词的比较 (Comparison)，其构成方式大概与形容词相仿，不过 **no sooner than** 和 **more than** 的用法，以及 **the + Comparative** 的用法，值得注意。

##### ① 单音节及少数二音节的副词，比较级加 **-er**，最高级加 **-est**:

soon, sooner, soonest

fast, faster, fastest

near, nearer, nearest

late, later, latest

often, oftener, oftenest

② 字尾为 -ly 的副词，就用 more, most (less, least) 来作比较：

quickly, more quickly, most quickly

gently, less gently, least gently

但 early 一字则变成 earlier、earliest。

③ 不规则的比较：

well, better, best

ill (badly) , worse, worst

much, more, most

little, less, least

far, farther, farthest

(注意) 形容词的最高级要加 the, 副词的最高级不加 the, 但口语中也常加 the。

He is **the best** man alive. (形容词)

Take any book that you like **best**. (副词)

I like spring **the best**. (副词口语)

④ no + Comparative + than:

**No sooner** had he done so **than** he uttered a cry of disappointment.

The whale is **no more** a fish **than** a horse is.

The hen loves her chickens **no less than** our mother loves us.

An inattention to our persons implies a disrespect to others, and may often be traced **no less than** to a want of good nature **than** of good sense.

⑤ 用于形容词、动词、名词等前的 **more than**:

You have already **more than** repaid me.—Stevenson, *New Arabian Nights*

Rose's cheeks were **more than** touched by the sun.—Gissing, *House of Cobwebs*

Her plain features expressed a simplicity and gentleness which **more than** compensated for the lack of conventional grace in her manners.—Ibid.

I prayed to heaven in my heart that my boy, my **more than** son, might live.—Haggard, *She*

⑥ the + Comparative (此 the = in that or what degree, 原非冠词, 而系关系副词的一种):

a. the + 比较级 (因而更加)

I love him all **the better** for his faults.

He worked **the harder**, because he had hopes of success.

The danger makes the sport only **the pleasanter**.—Thackeray, *Vanity Fair*

Learning makes a man wise, but a fool is made all **the more** a fool by it.

b. the + 比较级...the + 比较级 (愈.....愈)

**The sooner, the better.**

**The more** men have, **the more** they desire.

**The older** a man gets, **the less** exercise he takes.

### 3. 副词的位置 (Position of Adverbs)

一般的原则是置于最接近其所修饰的词旁, 约可分为五种, 即被修饰词的紧前, 被修饰词的紧后, 主语与谓语的中间, 语句的头上, 语句的末尾。

a. 修饰形容词或别的副词时，置于该词之前：

We live in a **very** beautiful world.

You are doing your lessons **very** well.

但 **enough** 一个副词，便永远要置于形容词、副词或动词之后的，如：

The book is easy **enough** for you to read.

He spoke highly **enough** of what you had done.

I have slept **enough**.

b. 修饰动词时，有时在前，有时在后：

(i) 修饰不及物动词时，副词置于动词之后：

He landed **safely** at the foot of the precipice, and looked **anxiously** around in search of Pierre.

You acted **foolishly**.

(注意) 但 **always**、**never**、**often**、**sometimes**、**seldom**、**generally**、**rarely** 等副词，就要置于动词之前：

He **always** laughed at a good joke.

**Never** speak ill of others.

Even Homer **sometimes** nods.

(ii) 修饰及物动词时，副词置于动词之前或宾语之后：

She **bitterly** reproached herself for having believed reports.

When you have done your best, wait the result **calmly** and **with hope**.

(iii) 如系复合动词，则副词置于助动词与主动词之间：

I have **never** seen anything more beautiful.



He may **well** be said to have been a fortunate man.

但 You never can tell 的说法，是因发音关系而产生的变则。

c. 修饰不定词时，除 never、always 等副词外，一般皆置于不定词之后：

The teacher ordered the boy to study **diligently**.

Cf. I hope **never** to see his face again.

d. 修饰整个的语句，副词通例是置于句首：

**Unfortunately** he was not listened to.

**Luckily** no one was inside, when the roof fell in.

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{Happily} \text{ he did not die.} = \text{It was a happy result that he did not die.} \\ \text{He did not die } \textbf{happily}. = \text{He did not die a happy death.} \end{array} \right.$

e. 表示定时的副词常置于句首或句尾：

**Last Sunday** we made a trip to Tapeihu.

The students' athletic meet will be held **tomorrow**.

f. 表示地点的副词置于动词之后，但与表示时间的副词同用时，则地点副词在先，时间副词在后：

She will be **here soon**.

A big fire broke out **in Simon on the morning of the 20th inst.**

g. only 一个副词最足代表，因所置的地位不同，而意义因之而异：

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{Only} \text{ he lost his purse. (别人没有)} \\ \text{He } \textbf{only} \text{ lost his purse. (只失去钱包并未失钱)} \\ \text{He lost } \textbf{only} \text{ his purse. (没有失去别人的钱包)} \end{array} \right.$

He lost his purse **only**. (未失去别的东西)  
He lost his **only** purse. (失去唯一的钱包)

h. 加强语气的副词置于句首:

**Scarcely** had I passed through the gate before I heard a cry from the house.

**Little** did I expect that he would succeed so well.

#### 4. 副词的用法 (Special Uses of Adverbs)

##### ① very 和 much

a. 形容词和副词的原级用 **very**, 比较级和最高级用 **much**。

This novel is **very** instructive. (原级)

You read **very** slowly. (原级)

The air is **much** hotter today than yesterday. (比较级)

He is **much** the best student in the class. (最高级)

但为加强语气, 在最高级之前也可用 **very**, 如 He is the **very** best student in the class.

b. **very** 是修饰形容词、副词的, 而 **much** 是修饰动词的。

He is **very** clever for his age. (形容词)

A polite bow will **very** often do. (副词)

He studies history **very much**. (动词)

c. 现在分词用 **very**, 过去分词用 **much**:

The news is **very** surprising.

I am **much** surprised at the news.

(例外) **very** tired、**very** pleased、**very** delighted、**very** frightened、**very** rejoiced 等。

##### ② yes 和 no

肯定的回答用 **yes**，否定的回答用 **no**。

Do you take a walk every day?

**Yes**, I do. **No**, I do not.

Did you not go on an excursion yesterday?

**Yes**, I did. **No**, I did not.

Is he **not** diligent? **No**, he is idle.

Is he **not** severe? **No**, he is very kind.

(注意) “你不晓得我已经搬了家吗?” “是的，我不晓得。”用英文说时，肯定的回答，应改为否定的回答，即“Don't you know that I have moved? No, I don't.”

### ③否定词 (Negation)

a. 否定的副词 **not**，普通置于助动词与主动词之间；如无助动词时，就得临时在否定词前加用一个 **do** 字，如：

I shall **not** see it again.

I have **not** seen him of late.

He does **not** tell me his name.

I did **not** tell him my name.

I do **not** like him.

但是动词的 **be** 和 **have** 却是例外，**not** 要置于主动词之后，如：

He *is* **not** a man of wit.

I *have* **not** that picture post card.

如 **have** 不做“有”解时，则应加用 **do** 字，如：

比较：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Did you have a fine time yesterday?} \\ \textbf{No}, \textit{I did not have a fine time yesterday.} \end{array} \right.$

You do **not** have to go. = You need not go.

b. no 和 not (no 是形容词, not 是副词)

I have **no** dictionary. (have 意为“有”)

I have **not** your dictionary. (have 意为“拿”)

但加强语气时也可说 I have **not** a dictionary. 普通说 Wealth can **not** buy happiness. 如加强语气时, 就可以说 **No** wealth can buy happiness.

c. never 和 nothing (never = not ever, nothing = not anything 都是加强语气的说法)

**Never** tell a lie, either for fun or from fear. (比说 Do **not** tell a lie, ...语气要强些)

I know **nothing** except this. (比说 I do **not** know **anything** except this. 语气要强些)

d. seldom, hardly, scarcely, rarely (都是作“几乎没有”解的否定副词, 不须再加 not 字样)

He **seldom** is absent.

I **hardly** ever see him now.

He **scarcely** ever opens a book.

e. little (这词也作“几乎没有”解, 尤其是与 think, dream, know, expect 等动词, 或 as, so, how 等副词同用时)

I **little** *think* that he would die.

**Little** did I *dream* of seeing such a fine scenery.

This shows *how* **little** he knows the world.

He knows the world *as* **little** as a new-born baby.

f. 部分否定 (Partial Negation)

否定词的 **not** 和 **all**, **every**, **both**, **always**, **necessarily** 等词同用时, 仅表示部分的否定。

*All that glitters is **not** gold.* (未必皆是)

*Every man can **not** become great.* (非人人所能)

*Such things do **not** occur every day.* (非日日发生)

*The rich are **not** always happy.* (未必)

*Both his parents are **not** living.* (非二人全死)

g. 二重否定 (Double Negation)

*There is **nothing** that he **cannot** do a little of, yet nothing he can do thoroughly.*

*It **never** rains **but** it pours.*

*There is **nothing** so strong **but** it is in danger from what is weak.*

***Nothing** can be attained in this world **without** exertion.*

*There are **few** children who do **not** go to school.*

④ **once** 和 **ever** (肯定句用 **once**, 疑问句、条件句及否定句则用 **ever**)

*I have been there **once**.*

*Have you **ever** been there?*

*If you **ever** go that way, don't fail to call on me.*

*I don't think he will **ever** do so.*

但最高级的肯定句中要用 **ever**, 如 *He is **the richest** man that **ever** lived.*

又在纯粹的肯定句中用 **ever** 是 **always** 之意, 较之语气更强, 如“*Fortune was **ever** on his side I have **ever** thought so.*”。

⑤ **already** 和 **yet** (肯定陈述句用 **already**, 否定句及肯定疑问句用 **yet**)

He has almost recovered **already**.

I have never failed **yet**.

Has the train arrived **yet**? No, not **yet**.

注意: 如说“Has the train arrived already?”便错了。

⑥ **too** 和 **either** (肯定句用 **too**, 否定句用 **either**)

I know him **too**.

I don't know him **either**.

⑦ **ago**, **before** 和 **since** (从现在以前说 **ago**, 从过去某个时间以前说 **before**, 所以 **ago** 是和 **Past Tense** 同用的, **before** 是和 **Past Perfect** 同用的。 **since** 作副词用, 意为以前, 对 **ago** 或 **before** 二者皆可以用)

A century **ago** people did not know airplanes.

I came back yesterday, but he had come back two days **before**.

The tree cast their leaves a month **since**.

He said his father had died two years **since**.

Those were friends long **since** dead.

⑧ **there** (用于表示人或物的有无)

**There** was a fire last night.

**There** may be some money in my drawer.

They say **there** is going to be war.

**There** has been no war between the two nations.

In the northern part of France **there** used to be a painting school.

It is necessary for **there** to be a change.

We became the more intimate from **there** being many resemblances of character between us.

At that moment **there** came a knock at the door.

Once **there** lived a farmer in this village.

### 30 介词的用法

介词通常是置于名词或代词前的，所以又称为前置词。其形态不一，大多数是单词，但很多却是短语构成的，如 *as for*, *as to*, *because of*, *by means of*, *in front of*, *in spite of*, *instead of*, *on account of*, *out of*, *owing to*, *up to*, *but for*, *for the benefit of*, *in honor of* 等，另外又有双重的介词（Double Preposition），即并列的两个介词共着一个宾语时，就可省去一个宾语，如 *on the ground* 和 *to the ground* 就可并成 *on to the ground*，其他例如：

We stayed there *till after* sunset.

He picks the reticule *from off* Jack's shirt-front.—Galsworthy, *Silver Boz*

The old citizen first emerged his round red face *from out of* the door.—Irving. *Rural England*

She loved to see every one gay and happy *round about* her.—Thackeray, *Vanity Fair*

介词有时可以略去，如

He walks at the rate of two miles (in) an hour.

He writes home two times (in) a month.

You may come to see me (at) any time between 4 and 5.

It will have been raining (for) a whole week (by) tomorrow.

He left here (on) this morning 或 (on) last Sunday.

兹将主要介词的用法及意义，举例说明如下：



## 1. **about**

①附近：He lives somewhere **about** Yun Chiau.

②到处：They wander **about** the world.

③从事：What are you **about**?

④关于：Please tell me **about** yourself.

## 2. **above**

①在上：The sun was seen **above** the horizon.

②优越：There is no riches **above** a sound body.

③超脱：He is **above** such mean actions.

④Phrase: **Above all**, beware of illness.

## 3. **after**

①后（时间）：**After** dark, we went back to our home.

②后（顺序）：**After** a storm comes a calm.

③追求：He thirsts **after** knowledge.

④模仿：The son takes **after** the father more than the mother.

⑤不顾：He failed **after** all his labours.

⑥Phrases: **One after another** all my plans have failed.

He is a man **after all**.

Please **look after** my little boy in my absence.

## 4. **against**

①反对：I am **against** the plan.

②相靠：He stood leaning **against** the wall.

③冲突：He ran his boat **against** the bank.

④对照：The number of applicants this year is fifty **against** thirty last year.

⑤准备：We should always lay up **against** a rainy day.

## 5. **across**

①横断：He made several journeys **across** the continent.

②那边：He lives **across** the river.

## 6. **at**

①小地方：**At** the edge of a forest there grew a great oak.

②短时间：We generally dine **at** eight.

③接近：The servant is now **at** the well.

(注) 自愿的接近用 **at**，偶然的接近用 **by**，如 There is a willow tree **by** the well.

④比率：I walk **at** the rate of four miles an hour.

⑤代价：**At** what price did you buy that hat?

⑥从事：He was busily **at** work all day.

⑦状态：Please call on me tomorrow if you are **at** leisure.

⑧目标：The hunter fired **at** a fox.

⑨看到：I am surprised **at** the sight.

⑩听到：He was frightened **at** the news.

⑪限度：The examination is **at** an end.

⑫Phrases：He was **at a loss** for a suitable reply.

She was not ignorant **at any rate**.

He did it **at the expense of** his character.

The ship was **at the mercy of** wind and waves.

I tried to save him **at the risk of** my own life.

## 7. **before**

①前（时间）：Call on me again **before** the day of your departure.

②前（地点）：Don't stand **before** me.

③选择：Death **before** dishonour.

④Phrase: The rainy season will set in **before long**.

## 8. **behind**

①后面：My box is **behind** your chair.

②背后：Do not speak ill of a man **behind** his back.

③遗下：He has left a great fortune **behind** him.

④迟延：I was a little **behind** time today.

## 9. **below**

①在下：There is a pool **below** the bridge.

②劣于：His scholarship is **below** his cousin's.

③以下：He cannot be **below** thirty.

## 10. **beneath**

①底下：Many heroes sleep **beneath** those tombstones.

②下位：Do not associate with them: it is **beneath** you.

## 11. **beside, besides**

①并行：There is a path **beside** the river.

②比较：This is a poor work **beside** yours.

③Phrase: He was **beside himself** with anger.

④之外：We nearly all take German **besides** English.

## 12. **beyond**

①那边: There is a tea-house **beyond** the hill.

②不能: It was dreadful **beyond** description.

## 13. **but**

①除开: You may take anything **but** this.

②Phrases: He has **nothing but** a few French books.

He is **anything but** a wild man.

## 14. **by**

①旁边: We rested at a tea-house **by** the wayside.

②创作者: Moving pictures were invented **by** Edison.

③手段: Are you going **by** train or **by** steamer?

④标准: Time is measured **by** the hour.

⑤相差: He is my senior **by** two years.

⑥计算: In America they board **by** the week.

⑦为止: He will certainly come **by** four o'clock.

⑧累加: They came in one **by** one.

⑨发誓: **By** Heavens.

⑩Phrases: Let's go on, **by all means**.

I will **by no means** consent.

**By the way** I have something to tell you.

I am going to Europe **by way of** America.

He has succeeded **by dint of** perseverance.

It looks as if it would clear up **by and by**.

I work **by day**, not **by night**.

He is not the man to do things **by halves**.

### 15. **for**

①去处: He left Keelung **for** Japan.

②目的: Never study only **for** wealth.

③交换: I bought it **for** ten dollars.

④原因: Jan angry with you **for** doing such a thing.

⑤期间: I have not seen you **for** a long time.

⑥比较: He knows a good deal **for** a lad of ten.

⑦不顾: **For** all his wealth, he is discontented.

⑧赞成: I am **for** the bill, but he is against it.

⑨同情: I am sorry **for** you.

⑩找寻: He is looking **for** some good excuse to give up school.

⑪Phrases: The life of man in this world is, **for the most part**, a life of work.

I **took** him **for** a poet.

Please **send for** the doctor.

**As for** fame, it is but little matter.

That ship is **bound for** San Francisco.

### 16. **from**

①地点: How far is it **from** here to the airfield?

②时间: I have known him **from** the child.

③推想: Judging **from** reports, he seems to be rich.

- ④分离: He has recovered **from** his illness.
- ⑤区别: It is hard to know flatterers **from** friends.
- ⑥材料: Gas is made **from** coal.
- ⑦起源: He comes **from** Ireland.
- ⑧妨害: His illness prevented him **from** working.
- ⑨禁止: I have been ordered by the doctor to abstain **from** wine.
- ⑩保护: Let us take shelter **from** the rain.
- ⑪原因: I often suffer **from** a severe headache.
- ⑫Phrases: He lives **from hand to mouth**.  
He was trembling **from head to feet**.

## 17. **in**

- ①长时间: Nightingale was born **in** 1820.
- ②大地方: When **in** Rome, do as the Romans do.
- ③状态: We should keep our body **in** good health.
- ④方式: Please send a telegram **in** haste.
- ⑤目的: The Greeks held games **in** honor of the Olympian gods.
- ⑥同一: I have found a good friend **in** Mr. A.
- ⑦程度: This seems to have lightened the load **in** some measure.
- ⑧实际: **In** fact, there is not much chance for the man whose courage fails.
- ⑨在某点上: He is the first **in** arithmetic.
- ⑩衣服: The gentleman **in** a morning coat is Dr. B.

⑪ Phrases: Let one of us go **in your stead**.

Still, **in the main**, choice of companions can be made and must be made.

Real ability will win **in the long run**.

**In short**, I want some money.

Apply **in person**.

I was **in season** for the fair.

I was just **in time** for the express.

The boy will become a useful man **in time**.

## 18. **into**

① 从外入内: He plunged **into** the water.

② 变化: Water changes **into** ice at 32° by Fahrenheit.

③ 制作: Bamboo is made **into** various kinds of things.

④ 研究: Look **into** your dictionary.

## 19. **off**

① 港外: The steamer is at anchor **off** Keelung.

② 脱离: The wind blew a tile **off** the roof.

## 20. **of**

① 所有关系: The cover **of** this book is yellow.

② 同格: Newton was born at the small village **of** Woolsthorpe.

③ 形容词句: Nothing **of importance** resulted from the movement.

④ 部分: Some **of** the boys returned by train.

⑤内容: He takes a glass **of** wine every evening.

⑥材料: Formerly all ships were made **of** wood.

⑦起源: Your illness comes **of** eating too much.

⑧关于: What became **of** your servant?

Does your father know **of** this?

⑨原因: He died **of** consumption.

⑩剥夺: Ill temper will rob you **of** peace and happiness.

⑪Phrases: The weather has been very changeable **of late**

I am **of opinion** that the step is wrong.

His horse sprang forward **all of a sudden**.

## 21. **on, upon**

①在某日: A poster exhibition was held **on** the 10th of this month.

②定时: **On** the morning of the 15th inst., there was a slight earthquake in this city.

③表面接触: There hangs a map **on** the wall.

④题目: Mr. Lee wrote an essay **on** electricity.

⑤实际状态: The house was **on** fire. He is **on** duty.

⑥为着某事: Sometimes I run to the town **on** errands.

⑦基础: You must act **on** this theory.

⑧理由: He resigned **on** account of his poor health.

⑨依赖: Your success or failure depends **on** your exertion.

⑩界线接触: Chicago is **on** Lake Michigan.



⑪支持: He wished only to have enough to live **on**.

⑫奏乐: Can you play **on** the piano?

⑬随即: **On** arriving there, we drove to the restaurant.

⑭Phrases: He left Taipei for America **on board** the steamer Gordon.

It takes 20 minutes from here to the station **on foot**.

**On an average**, ten vessels enter the port every day.

He was killed **on the spot**.

My opinion is **on the whole** the same as yours.

The young man who expects to **get on** must work very hard.

He **carries on** a retail trade.

## 22. **out of**

①in 的反对: He is a fish **out of** water.

②into 的反对: Many people were so frightened that they ran **out of** their house.

③动机: I saved him **out of** pity for his family.

④部分: This is only one instance **out of** many.

⑤材料: We make many things **out of** paper.

⑥Phrases: **Out of sight, out of mind**.

His hat is **out of fashion**.

I am quite **out of breath**.

## 23. **over**

①悬在上面: We have a roof **over** us.

- ②支配: He had no control **over** his appetites.
- ③超过: He seems to be **over** fifty.
- ④同时发生: He went to sleep **over** his work.
- ⑤原因: I wept **over** his death.
- ⑥覆盖: Please spread the blanket **over** the grass.
- ⑦跳过: The bad boy climbed **over** the hedge and went into the garden.
- ⑧反复: We talked **over** it till midnight.

## 24. **through**

- ①贯通: The train has passed **through** a tunnel.
- ②媒介: They speak **through** an interpreter.
- ③原因: He lost his position **through** neglect of his duty.
- ④继续: He slept **through** the lesson.

## 25. **to**

- ①时间: He remembered it **to** his dying day. (与 till 同)
- ②方向: Anping is situated **to** the northwest of Tainan.
- ③附加: Add three **to** four.
- ④程度: Snow fell **to** the depth of 2 feet.
- ⑤结果: The building was burnt **to** ashes.
- ⑥比例: Ten **to** one he will fail in the new enterprise.
- ⑦比较: Man's life is often compared **to** a candle.
- ⑧适合: This work was not **to** his taste.
- ⑨关系: He is the heir **to** that property.
- ⑩Phrases: Let us be up and doing **to the purpose**.

He used his talent **to the best advantage**.

## 26. **toward (s)**

①向着: I saw the boys run **towards** the river.

②时近: **Towards** evening, the wind abated a little.

③对于: We must fulfill our duty **towards** our community.

## 27. **under**

①正下面: There is a cat **under** the table.

②部下: **Under** him were three petty officials.

③在.....中: The new machine is **under** examination.

④负担: The old man bent **under** the load.

⑤不到: He must be **under** 30 years of age.

⑥假装: He cheated me **under** the mask of friendship.

⑦口实: He did not come **under** the excuse of illness.

⑧境遇: It is impossible **under** such circumstances.

## 28. **with**

①所有: I have no money **with** me today.

②工具: We see with our eyes, and hear **with** our ears.

③原因: Hearing the news, she is mad **with** joy.

④同时: I rise **with** the lark, go **with** the lark to bed.

⑤比较: Few writers can compare **with** Scott as creators of romance.

⑥一致: He acted in accordance **with** rule.

⑦同居: I lived **with** my uncle for many years.

⑧边说边做: **With** this he left the room.

⑨反抗: I have to contend **with** difficulties.

⑩密切关系: I am very intimate **with** him.

⑪Phrases: I accept your help **with all my heart**.

He worked **with a will**.

Study **with all your might and main**.

**Deal honestly with all men.**

## 29. **within**

①时间内: I will come back **within** an hour.

②地区内: My house stands **within** a mile of the school.

## 30. **without**

①with 的反对: He went **without** his dinner.

②代 if...not: **Without** air, we cannot live.

③Phrases: If I cannot get what I want, I will **do without** it.

**Nobody** can see the scenery **without** admiring it.

You must pay your debt **without delay**.

## 31 类别的介词

### 1. 表时间的介词:

#### ① **at, in, on**

**at** 用于黎明、正午、夜半、何时、何分等短时间，即指 **a point of time**（时的一点）的场合；**in** 用于年、月、四季、世纪等长时间，即指 **a period of time**（时的期间）的场合；**on** 用于表示固定的时日。

A fire broke out **at dawn**.（在黎明时）

The meeting adjourned for an hour **at noon**.（正午）

The temperature is mild **in spring**.（在春天里）

Our school holds a regatta **in April**.（在四月中）

We went on an excursion **on Wednesday**.（在礼拜三）

Columbus discovered America **on the 12th** of October, 1492.（在十二日）

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I take a walk early } \mathbf{in} \text{ the morning.} \\ \text{I did not take a walk } \mathbf{on} \text{ the morning of the 10th.} \end{array} \right.$

#### ② **in, within, after**

**in** 用以表示“期间的经过”，**within** 用以表示“期间内”，**after** 用以表示“以过去为起点的期间的经过”。

He will be here **in** a week.（再过一礼拜他就会到这里来。）

He will be back **within** a week.（他在一礼拜内就会回来的。）

**After** a week he came back. (过了一礼拜他回来了。)

③ **till, by; since, from**

**till** 是表示继续的终止点，作“直到”解；**by** 是表示完结的时限，作“到……为止”解；**since** 是表示继续到现在为止的出发点，作“从……以来”解；**from** 是表示事情开始的出发点，作“从”解。**since** 要和“现在完成”同用，而 **from** 则多是和“过去”同用的。

My brother will stay there **till** the end of next year. (我哥哥要在那里住到明年年底。)

My brother will come back **by** the end of next year. (我哥哥到明年年底为止就会回来的。)

He *has lived* here **since** 1900. (从1900年以来。)

He *lived* in Japan **from** 1900 to 1910. (从1900到1910年。)

④ **before, after; past, to**

都是表示时间的前后的，不过 **past** 和 **to** 系用于钟表上的时刻。

I started **before** noon and arrived **after** dark.

It is a quarter **past** seven by my watch.

He left home at a quarter **to** seven.

⑤ **for, during, through**

**for** 是表示“期间”，**during** 是表示“状态的继续中”，而 **through** 就是表示“从头到尾”的意思。

His lecture lasted **for** an hour. (继续一小时。)

He was very kind **during** my stay in London. (滞留伦敦的时期。)

He worked hard **through** the summer. (整个夏季。)

2. 表地点的介词：

### ① **at, in**

**at** 用于比较狭小的地方，**in** 用于比较宽大的地方，如村镇等用 **at**；都市、国家等用 **in**。

He lives **at** a small village near Tainan. (住在台南附近一小村中)。

Radio is all the rage **in** Europe and America. (无线电在欧美大为流行)。

### ② **on, beneath; above, below; over, under; up, down**

**on** 表示“表面的接触”，**beneath** 表示“底下的接触”；**above** 表示“高”(higher than)，**below** 表示“低”(lower than)，是说高低的；**over** 表示“顶头上面”，**under** 表示“直接下面”；而 **up** 和 **down** 便单是表上下的。

There is a book **on** the table.

He took it from **beneath** his coat.

A beautiful full moon rose **above** the horizon.

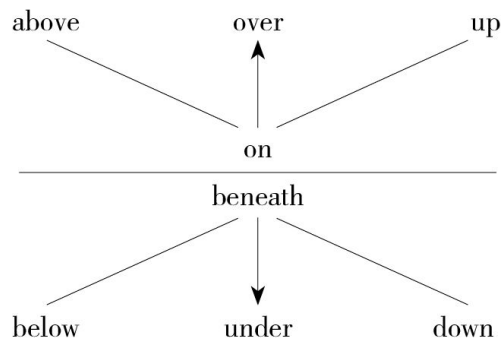
The sun has just sunk **below** the horizon.

I saw several airplanes flying **over** the city.

We took shelter from the rain **under** a pine tree.

At dawn he went **up** the hill.

We sailed **down** the river.



### ③ **in, into, out of**

**in** 是表示在中间的一种静止的状态，**into** 是表示从外入内的运动，**out of** 是表示在外面的状态，或是出到外面来的运动。

Fish live **in** the water; they cannot live **out of** it.

He came **into** the room when we were going **out of** it.

### ④ **along, across, through**

**along** 是表示“沿着”一个长东西的位置，**across** 表“交叉”或“横断”，**through** 表“贯通”。

The ship sailed **along** the coast.

A road runs **across** the plain.

The river flows **through** the city.

### ⑤ **in front of, behind**

**in front of** 是“在前”，**behind** 是“在后”。

There is an automobile **in front of** the school.

He hid himself **behind** the door.

### ⑥ **on, off**

**on** 是说表面的接触，**off** 则相反地，为离去之意。



You should not put your elbows **on** the table. (勿置肘于桌。)

The glass rolled **off** the table. (玻璃杯从食桌上滚下去了。)

⑦ **between, among**

**between** 是说二者之间, **among** 则为多数之间。

He lives about half-way **between** Taipei and Taichung.

The robins were playing **among** the trees.

⑧ **around, round, about**

**around** 表示周围静止的位置, **round** 表示在周围回转的运动, **about** 则为漠然地说那周围。

We sat **around** the fire.

Let us walk **round** the pond.

We rowed **about** the pond.

(注) 在美国 **around** 与 **round** 二词常混用。

⑨ **by, beside, at**

**by, beside** 是表示“偶然的接近”, **at** 是表示“有意志的接近”。

There is a pinetree **by** (**beside**) the gate.

Wives are chatting **at** the well.

⑩ **to, for, toward**

**to** 用于 go, come 等动词, **for** 用于 start, leave 等动词, 二者都是表目的地的。toward 便有“向着”之意, 单表示运动的方向。

He went **to** Europe last week.

He left Taipei **for** America.

He ran **toward** the seashore.

3. 表来源的介词: **from**, **of**

What part of the country does he come **from**?

That young man is **of** a noble family.

4. 表材料或原料的介词: **from**, **of** (from 表原料, of 表材料)

Brandy is made **from** grapes.

Her clothes are made **of** muslin.

He makes many things **out of** paper.

(注) make 如与 of 分离的话, 就常要用 out of 代替 of。

5. 表行为者及手段的介词: **by**, **with**

by 用于 Passive 之后, 行为者之前; with 表示用什么工具, 而 by 则表示用什么手段。

He was killed **by** a burglar. (行为者)

He was killed **with** a pistol. (工具)

He left Taipei for America **by** Pan American Clipper. (手段)

比较:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{You must write your dictation **with** pen and ink.} \\ \text{But you must not write it **in** red ink.} \end{array} \right.$

6. 表原因的介词: **from**, **of**, **through**, **at**, **over**, **with**, **for**

①from 表直接的原因

He is suffering **from** influenza.

②of 表死因, 但如说出 cause 一字来, 便要用 from 了

His brother died **of** typhoid fever.

Cf. He died *from* unknown cause.

③**through** 表存在的原因，主要指不注意、疏忽等的原因

It was entirely **through** your neglect that your child was run over by a motorcar.

④**at** 用于见闻及喜怒哀乐等场合，**over** 则用于表示成为原因的事情

The whole nation rejoiced **at** the news of victory.

The nation rejoiced **over** the victory.

⑤**with** 是表由外界而及于肉体的原因，**for** 是表于心灵的无形的原因

He is shivering **with** cold on the ice.

I tremble **for** your safety.

7. 表目的的介词：**for**, **after**, **on**

Some work **for** money, others **for** fame.

What is he **after**?

He has gone to America **on** business.

8. 表理由的介词：**for**, **on**

California is famous **for** its oranges.

He declined **on** the ground of previous engagement.

9. 表结果的介词：**to**, **into**

表一般的结果都是用 **to**，表变化的结果才用 **into**。

**To** his great surprise, he found the house quite neat and clean.

Wheat is ground **into** flour.

10. 表比较的介词：**with**, **to**

同类相比用 **with**，异物相比用 **to**。

The Thames is not to be compared **with** the Yangtze River.

We compare life **to** a voyage.

## 32 词后的介词

这是讲接用在形容词和动词等后的介词，即令是同一个词，只因后面接的介词不同而意义就变了，所以初学者应特别注意这些不同的介词，用在同一词后的时候：

**absent**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(形) from school} \\ \text{(动) oneself from school} \end{array} \right\}$  不去上学

**abstain from** wine 戒酒

**admit**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of no excuse 不容宽恕} \\ \text{to or into a secret 准其与闻机密} \end{array} \right\}$

**afraid of** doing 怕做

**agree**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with a person 同意某人} \\ \text{to a proposal 同意某事} \end{array} \right\}$

**angry**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{with a person for saying something} \\ \text{at one's remark} \end{array} \right\}$  对别人说的话生气

**anxious**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{at the news 听到而担心} \\ \text{for one's welfare 深望} \\ \text{about a person on the result 悬念} \end{array} \right\}$

**ask**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a person about something 向人询问其事} \\ \text{a favour of a person 有求于人} \\ \text{after a person 问候起居} \\ \text{a person for something 向人乞物} \end{array} \right\}$

**attent** | **on** a person 侍候  
| **to** what a person says 留心听

**beg** { **pardon of** a person 乞恕  
| **for** something from someone 向人乞物

**believe** { **in** God 信仰上帝  
| **in** a person 信任某人  
| something **on** insufficient evidence 证据不足也相信

**belong** { **to** a person 某人所有  
| **among** such writers as  
| **in** business  
| **with** Newton } (分类上) 属于 (美国用法)

**break** { **into** a house 穿窬  
| **to** pieces 粉碎  
| **with** a friend 绝交

**buy** { **of** a person 从某人买  
| **at** a store 在某店买  
| **for** ten dollars 用十元买

**call** { **at** a house 访人于其家  
| **on** a person 访人  
| **to** a person 高声唤人  
| **up** a person 打电话给某人

**careful** { **of** health 注意  
| **about** one's dress 讲究

**compare** { **with** 比较  
| **to** 譬如

**complain of** 抱怨，不平

**comply with** the rules 遵守，依从

**congratulate** a person **on** his success 祝贺

**consist**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{of materials 构成} \\ \textbf{in facts or results 在} \end{array} \right.$

**consult with** a person **on** or **about** something 商量

**correspond**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{to something 相当} \\ \textbf{with a person 通讯} \end{array} \right.$

**deal**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{in tea, cloth 买卖} \\ \textbf{with a person 对付} \\ \textbf{with a firm 与之交易} \\ \textbf{with a subject 讨论} \end{array} \right.$

**depend on** 依赖，靠

**daprive** a person **of** something 夺取

**despair of** success 绝望，无成功之望

**devote** oneself **to** study 献身于学问，专心从事

**die**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{of a disease 病死} \\ \textbf{from some unknown cause 死因不明} \\ \textbf{by violence 横死} \end{array} \right.$

**differ**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textbf{from something 与之不同} \\ \textbf{with a person on a subject 在某问题上不同意} \end{array} \right.$

**distinguish**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{one thing } \textbf{from} \text{ another} \\ \textbf{between two things} \end{array} \right\}$  区别二者之不同

**divide**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a thing } \textbf{into} \text{ many parts 分为许多部分} \\ \text{money } \textbf{among} \text{ many 分配给大家} \end{array} \right.$

| money **between** two 二人平分

**dwell** { **in** a place 住  
**on** a subject 详论

**engage** { **in** some work 从事  
**to** a person 订婚

**enter** { **into** conversation 交谈起来  
**upon** a career or one's duties 开始

**entrust** { a person **with** a thing  
a thing **to** a person 托人以物

**excel in** languages 精通语文

**familiar** { **with** a thing 熟知其事  
**to** a person 熟知其人

**famous for** his learning 以有学问著名

**fond of** wine 好酒

**free** { **from** mistakes 无误  
**of** charge 免费

**full of** water 充满了水

**get** { **to** a place 达到某处  
**over** on illness 病愈  
**on** in life 入世

**good** { **at** tennis 善于打网球  
**to** everybody 对谁都好  
**for** nothing 无用之长物

**graduate from** (or **at**) a college 从大学毕业



**grieve** { **at** the news 听到那消息而悲伤  
**for** a person 为人悲叹  
**over** one's failure 为其失败而忧伤

**hear** { **of** a person 听到关于某人的消息  
**of** some event 听到讲起某事情  
**about** a person 听到关于某人的情形  
**from** a person 接到某人的信

**ignorant of** something 全然不知

**independent of** somebody 独立，不倚赖

**inferior to** a person 劣于，不及

**inquire** { **for** a person 问某人在不在  
**after** a person 问候某人安否  
**of** a person about some matter 关于某事问某人  
**into** a matter 调查

**insist on** doing something 坚持要做（好的方面）

**interfere** { **in** the matter 干涉  
**with** the work 妨害

**keep** { **from** wine 戒酒  
an affair **from** a person 对人守秘  
**on** doing something 继续做某事

**know** { **of** a person 闻知其人.know a person 认识某人)  
**about** a person 知道某人的事  
a wise man **from** a fool 区别贤愚

**laugh at** a person (thing) 笑某人或某事

**lean** { **on** a desk 凭在桌上  
**against** a wall 靠在墙上

| **over** a book 伏案读书

**listen** { **to** a person 听人说话  
| **in** the radio 听广播

**live on** rice 以米为生

**look** { **at** something 看某物  
| **into** a matter 调查某事  
| **for** a missing child 寻找迷失的小孩  
| **after** a child 照顾  
| **over** the papers 调阅

**made** { **of** wood 木造（不变形）  
| **from** grapes 由葡萄做成（变形）

**moved** { **with** pity 哀怜  
| **at** the sight 见之感动  
| **to** tears 感泣

**noted for** its temples 以庙宇驰名

**order** a book **from** America 向美国订购

**participate in** an action 参加

**pass** { **by** a man 在其身边走过  
| **through** a gate 经过一扇门  
| **for** a hero 当作英雄

**persist in** doing something 坚持要做（不好的方面）

**play** { **at** a game 游戏  
| **on** a musical instrument 奏弄

**prefer** tea **to** coffee 更喜欢

**prepare for** examination 准备考试

**present**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{a book } \mathbf{to} \text{ a person} \\ \text{a person } \mathbf{with} \text{ a book} \end{array} \right\}$  赠人以书

**prevent** a person **from** going 阻止

**protect** a person **from** harm 保护某人免其受伤

**provide**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{with} \text{ something 供给} \\ \mathbf{for} \text{ one-s family 养家} \\ \mathbf{against} \text{ accidents 防备} \end{array} \right\}$

**recover from** illness 恢复

**rejeice**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{at} \text{ the news 闻之而喜} \\ \mathbf{over} \text{ the victory 祝贺胜利} \end{array} \right\}$

**remind** a person **of** something 提醒

**rescue** a person **from** drowning 救人于溺

**result in** a consequence 成为结果

**retire from** business 隐退，告老

**rid** the house **of** mice 驱除老鼠

**rob** a person **of** his money 抢夺金钱

**run**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{after} \text{ a hare 追逐} \\ \mathbf{into} \text{ debt 负债} \\ \mathbf{over} \text{ a child 碾过} \\ \mathbf{against} \text{ a person 冲突} \end{array} \right\}$

**search**  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{for} \text{ a house 寻觅房屋} \end{array} \right\}$ .search a house 搜查家宅)  
 $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \mathbf{into} \text{ a matter 调查} \end{array} \right\}$

**seek for** happiness 追求幸福

**sick** { **with** a fever 发烧  
**of** life 厌世  
**for** one's native country 怀念故国

**smile** { **at** a person's threat 嘲笑别人的威胁  
**on** a person 对人表示好感

**sorry for** a person 为某人难受

**speak** { **of** a person 谈及某人  
          **about** the matter  
          **on** the subject } 谈话某事  
**to** a person 对人说话  
**with** a person 与人交谈

**spend** { money **on** books 花钱买书  
          one's time **in** reading 费时读书

**stare at** a man 凝视

**start** { **for** England 启程赴英  
**on** a journey 出发旅行

**struggle** { **for** existence 生存竞争  
**with** adversity 与逆境奋斗

**succeeded** { **to** the throne 继承王位 (succeed a person 成为某人的后继者)  
**in** an undertaking 事业成功

**suffer from** consumption 害着肺病

**sympathize with** a person 同情

**take** { **after** his father 相似  
          a man **for** a spy 弄错

	<b>to</b> gambling 耽于
<b>talk</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>of</b> resigning 谈到辞职的事</li> <li><b>over</b> a matter 商量</li> <li><b>to</b> (with) a person 对谈</li> </ul>
<b>tell</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a person <b>of</b> another-s death 告人以某某之死</li> <li>a person <b>about</b> the war 谈及战争</li> <li>a good picture <b>from</b> a bad one 分别好坏</li> </ul>
<b>think</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>of</b> home 思家</li> <li><b>of</b> a good idea 想出</li> <li><b>about</b> a matter</li> <li><b>over</b> a matter</li> </ul> 熟思
<b>tired</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>of</b> work 厌倦</li> <li><b>with</b> walk 疲倦</li> </ul>
<b>trust</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>in</b> a person 信任某人</li> <li>a person <b>with</b> something .power) 托人以物，授人以权</li> <li><b>to</b> chance 碰运气</li> </ul>
<b>wait</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>for</b> a person 等待</li> <li><b>on</b> a person 侍候</li> </ul>
<b>watch</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>for</b> an opportunity 警戒</li> <li><b>with</b> the invalid 看护</li> <li><b>over</b> the land 防守</li> </ul>
<b>weary</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>of</b> one-s tale 厌倦</li> <li><b>with</b> a long walk 疲劳</li> </ul>
<b>weep</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>at</b> the news 闻之哭泣</li> <li><b>for</b> a person 为人而泣</li> <li><b>over</b> one-s death 因某人之死而哭</li> </ul>

**worthy of** praise 值得

**write** { **to** a person 写信与人  
**for** something 写信索物

## 33 连词和感叹词

### 一 连词

#### 1. 连词的种类：

连词是用以连接语句中的两个部分的，如单词和单词，短语和短语，分句和分句等，要把它们连接起来就得用连词。连词有两种：一为并列连词（**Coordinate Conjunction**），一为从属连词（**Subordinate Conjunction**）。并列连词是用以连接同等关系的字句的，而从属连词所连接的，便有主从之分，即一为主句，一为从句。这里所谓从句，即是名词从句，形容词从句，或是副词从句，在复句中，处于从属地位。兹各举几个实例如下：

a. A **woman and a melon** are hard to choose.

b. Do you go **by land or by sea**?

c. **Speech is great, but silence is greater.**

以上句中的 **and**、**or**、**but** 为并列连词。

d. **That we shall win** is certain.（名词从句）

e. People **who live in glass house** should never throw stones.（形容词从句）

f. Let us be silent **that we may hear the whispers of the gods.**（副词从句）

以上句中的 **that**、**who** 为从属连词。

#### 2. 并列连词的用法：

（a）表结合的连词：

**and**                      Fifty houses were entirely destroyed **and** te

n were partly destroyed.

**and... also** He is guilty, **and** you **also**.

**both... and** He is **both** proud **and** poor.

**as well as** He is **not**  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{only} \\ \text{mere} \\ \text{ly} \end{array} \right]$  proud, but  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{also} \\ \text{likew} \\ \text{ise} \end{array} \right]$  poor.

**as well as** He is poor as **well as** proud.

〔说明〕单是把两个词句结合拢来，可用 **and**；要加强双方的意思，就用 **both...and**；至于用 **not only...but also** 来连接时，就是后者的意思比前者更强；用 **as well as** 时便要反转来说，因后者的意思是弱于前者的。

比较：  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{not only A but also B.} \\ \text{B as well as A.} \end{array} \right]$

He is **not only** a knave, **but** a fool. = He is a fool **as well as** a knave.

(b) 表反对的连词：

**but** Please call the servant. Yes, **but** she went early to the station.

**and yet** He made great efforts, **and yet** he failed to gain his end.

**still** He was unsuccessful; **still** he did not lose heart.

**nevertheless** All men were against him; **nevertheless** he persevered.

**indeed... but** He recovered **indeed**, **but** his health has n



ever been so good since.

**it is true... but** It is true he is old, **but** he is still strong.

(c) 表推论的连词:

**therefore** A is equal to B, which is in turn equal to C. **Therefore** A is equal to C.

**so** It was raining, **so** I could not go out.

〔说明〕 **therefore** 用于证明议论等场合, 至于日常单纯的事柄就用 **so**。

(d) 表选择的连词:

**either... or** **Either** you **or** I must be out of our senses.

**neither... nor** **Neither** he **nor** they are mistaken.

He will not go, **and** I will not go, **either**.  
He will not go, **neither** will I.  
He will not go, **nor** will I.

3. 从属连词的用法:

(a) 表时间的连词:

**when** **When** the cat is away, the mice will play.

**while** Make hay **while** the sun shines.

**as** Just **as** I got to the station, the whistle was heard.

〔说明〕 **when** 可用于过去、现在、未来的任何时候, **while** 表示继续的意思, **as** 用以表时, 有“同时”之意。

比较:

1. Every one listens **when** he speaks.
2. I was just going to explain, **when** the bell rang.

〔说明〕 (1) 句中的 **when** 为“从属连词”，(2) 句中的 **when**, 其前有逗号时为 **and then** 之意, 所以是“并列连词”。

**as soon as**      **As soon as** it was light enough in the morning to see, he was up and reading.

**scarcely...when**      I had **scarcely** finished my work **when** a friend of mine called on me.

**no sooner...than**      **No sooner** had we started for the excursion **than** it began to rain.

〔说明〕 以上三者全是“随即”的意思, **as soon as** 的动词前后皆可用 Past; 其他二者就是前用 Past Perfect, 后用 Past。

**as long as**      I will take care of you **as long as** I live.

**so long as**      **So long as** a youth has true respect, vice has little attraction for him.

(b) 表条件的连词:

**if**      **If** you are hungry, I will give you something to eat.

**unless**      **Unless** you read it again you will not understand it.

**in case**      I will leave a note **in case** he is absent.

**so that** You may go there **so that** (if only) you come back in time.

**provided** I will pardon him **provided** he acknowledge his fault.

(c) 表地点的连词:

**where** **Where** there is smoke, there is fire.

(d) 表方法的连词:

**as** Do not act **as** he did.

**as if** I felt **as if** I were going to die.

(e) 表程度的连词:

**as far as** **As far as** the eye can react, nothing is to be seen but sand.

**as much as** It is **as much as** he can do to keep out of debt.

**the more... the more** **The higher** the steed, **the greater** the fall.

(f) 表原因的连词:

**because** He has been promoted **because** he is able and industrious.

**for** He must have passed this way, **for** here are his footprints.

**since** **Since** it has come to that, there is no help for it.

**as** **As** prices are going up daily, poor people are

re in great distress.

**now that**

**Now that** you have finished your work, you may go.

〔说明〕 **because** 表直接的原因；**for** 表推论；**since** 表自然的推论，可译作“既然……就”；**as** 多用于口语，意较 **because**，**since** 为弱。又 **since**，**as** 常置于句首，**now that** 与 **since** 用法相同。

(g) 表结果的连词：

such...that

He was in **such** a condition **that** we all felt anxious about him.

His eloquence was **such that** we could not but be moved.

so...that

He was **so** kind **that** he was loved by all.

Laziness travels **so** slowly **that** poverty soon overtakes it.

so that

A great part of Belgium is flat, **so that** the country is not particularly pretty.

〔说明〕 **such...that** 和 **so...that** 同义，不过在 **such** 后接名词（有时可略去），在 **so** 后接形容词或副词。

(h) 表让步的连词：

**though**

**Though** love cannot plant morals in the human breast, it cultivates them when there.

**even if**

**Even if** he has never been abroad, he speaks good English.

**however**

**However** hard you may try, you will not be able to solve this question in a day or two.

**as**

Old **as** he is, he is very active.

〔说明〕 **as** 用作 **though** 之意时，其前可接 (1) Noun (无冠词的)，或 (2) Adjective 或 (3) Adverb，或 (4) Past Participle；后接 Subject 及 Verb，例如：

(1) **Hero as** he was, he was surprised at the news. (Noun)

(2) **Important as** sugar is as an article of food, we can not live upon it. (Adjective)

(3) **Much as** I want to do so, father will not allow me to do so. (Adverb)

(4) **Surrounded as** he was by the enemy, he was not afraid. (Past Participle)

**whether... or not** Students must study, **whether** they like it **or not**.

(i) 表目的的连词：

**that... may** We usually praise only **that** we **may** be praised.

**so that... may** We sent for him at once **so that** we **might** talk it over with him.

**in order that** He labors day and night **in order that** he may become rich.

**lest** The old man walks with a cane, **lest** he should stumble.

(j) 表其他的连词：

(1) **as... as** 用于不同的二物或二人所有的相同的程度时，否定时用 **not so...as**。

The ice was **as** smooth **as** glass.

She is **not so** beautiful **as** her sister.

(2) **as... as any**, **as... as ever**, **the Superlative... that ever** 三者全是表最高级。

He can ride on horseback **as well as any** man in the country.

You see in him **as** complete a villain **as ever** disgraced humanity.

He is **the worst** boy **that** I have **ever** seen.

(3) **as...**, **so**

**As** the human body is nourished by the food, **so** is a nation nourished by its industries.

(4) **as far as** (表范围), **so far as** (表限制或条件)

**As far as** he could see was a turbulent flood.

I will go with you **as far as** London.

**So far as** I know, there is no such word in English.

Progress has been very slow indeed, **so far as** the social life of the people is concerned.

(5) **not so much... as** (与 **rather than** 相同, 但顺序不同, 如 **not so much A as B** = **rather B than A**)

A man's worth lies **not so much** in what he has **as** in what he is.

(6) **no matter how** (或 **who** 或 **whether**) **may**

Those who have achieved good results kept on trying, **no matter how** great the obstacles.

I shall always obey your order, **no matter what** it **may** be.

You should go to the country for a change, **no matter w  
here.**

## 二 感叹词

感叹词是表示强烈感情的叫声的。用在语句之前，与语句全无语法上的关系。有时又可插入语句当中任何一部分。

表喜悦的：Hurrah! Huzza!

表笑声的：Ha! ha! Aha!

表悲哀的：Alas! Ah! Oh!

表惊讶的：Oh! Ah! Hah! What! Why! Dear me! Oh dear!  
r! Good Heavens! Lo! Behold!

表赞赏的：Bravo! Well done! Good! Nice! Excellent!

表轻蔑的：Pooh! Pshaw! Tut-tut! Fie! For shame!

表注意的：Look! Hark! Look here!

表呼唤的：Ho! Hallow! Hullo! Hello! Ahoy! Hey!

表赞成的：Hear! hear!

表欢迎的：Welcome!

表道别的：Good-bye! Farewell! Adieu!

表拟声的：Bang! Bow-wow! Mew!

## 二 语法练习



# 1 人称和数 Person and Number

1. 动词的人称和数必须与其主语 (Subject) 一致，即主语为单数时，动词也必须是单数，例如：The girl smiles. 主语为复数时，动词也必须是复数，例如：“The girls smile.”。

一切名词都为第三人称 (the third person)，人称代词除 I、we (第一人称)、(thou)、you (第二人称) 之外，亦概为第三人称。动词的人称，必须与主语一致；故 I、we、you 以外的一切主语，其动词概为第三人称。

thou 本为第二人称单数，但现在普遍不用了；现在即使指的只是一个人也用 you，而其动词亦用复数，如：You、my boy、are playing too much.

## 练习题 1

A. 将下列句中之 is、am 改为复数 (注意其主语亦必须改)：

1. He is here.
2. The gate is locked.
3. I am very tired.
4. Where is he going?
5. I am very sorry for it.
6. My book is lost.
7. The fish is swimming.
8. My foot is sore.
9. My tooth is aching.

10. The child *is* happy.

B. 将 *was* 改为复数:

1. A sheep *was* grazing here.

2. That *was* a cool valley.

3. The child *was* asleep.

4. The egg *was* cracked.

5. When *was* I admitted?

6. How old *was* he?

7. A deer *was* in the wood.

8. A goose *was* standing there.

9. There *was* no proof.

10. A wolf *was* seen there.

C. 将 *are* 改为单数:

1. The loaves *are* baked.

2. The rats *are* caught.

3. No boxes *are* here.

4. Where *are* the boxes?

5. Flies *are* very harmful.

6. We *are* very tired.

7. The oxen *are* resting.

8. Why *are* they so careless?

9. We *are* fond of play.

10. Birds *are* roosting.

D. 将 *were* 改为单数:

1. Some men *were* hurt.
2. *Were* the thieves caught?
3. The horses' tails *were* cut.
4. These mice *were* caught.
5. The geese *were* not found.
6. The ponies *were* sent away.
7. The loaves *were* served up.
8. The ladies *were* seated.
9. There *were* five girls in this class.
10. Here *were* the houses.

E. 将 have、has 改为复数:

1. He *has* long been gone.
2. *Have* I seen you before?
3. *Has* the cat been found?
4. The thief *has* been caught.
5. I *have* done my best.
6. The glass *has* been broken.
7. The roof *has* been mended.
8. The loaf *has* been cut.
9. The wolf *has* been shot.
10. The mouse *has* run away.

F. 将 have 改为单数:

1. The geese *have* been found.
2. My teeth *have* been aching.

3. His sons *have* left him.
4. We *have* left school.
5. The oxen *have* come back.
6. We *have* arrived.
7. The deer *have* fled.
8. The birds *have* flown.
9. The sheep *have* been lost.
10. My feet *have* been in pain.

G. 将 do、does 改为复数:

1. I *do* not like him.
2. He *does* not like me.
3. *Does* the boy work hard?
4. The boy *does* not know me.
5. A goose *does* not fly.
6. *Does* my friend know me?
7. *Does* the fire burn well?
8. He *does* not learn much.
9. *Does* he keep a dog?
10. The man *does* not work.

H. 将 do 改为单数:

1. We *do* not go today.
2. *Do* they keep a horse?
3. They keep a horse; so *do* we.
4. We *do* not understand you.

5. They *do* not go to school.

6. *Do* they wish to see me?

7. Wolves *do* not come here.

8. Our cows *do* not thrive.

9. We *do* not see you often.

10. We *do* not want your help.

2. 两个单数主语用 *and* 连接起来时，则动词为复数；但两主语之前若有 *each*、*every* 时，则动词用单数：

例：Time and tide *wait* for no man.

James and I *were* both absent.

*Each* plant and *each* animal has its own parasite.

*Every* word and *every* phrase *is* indispensable to this sentence.

例外：若两个名词所指者为一人或一物，则此主语认为是一整体，在意义上为单数，故动词需单数。

例：Truth and honesty *is* best policy.

The poet and statesman *is* dead.

This carriage and pair *costs* four hundred pounds.

注：上第二例若为 The poet and *the* statesman，由于重复使用冠词之故，则表示 The poet 和 the statesman 为两个不同的人，然则动词须为复数。

例：The statesman and *the* poet *are* dead.

## 练习题 2

用 *is*、*am* 或 *are*；*has* 或 *have*；*was* 或 *were*；*do* 或 *does* 填入空白处：

1. Bread and butter` `` a good kind of food at tea-time.
2. A woman and a child` `` standing by the door.
3. A time of peace and plenty` `` coming to all of us.
4. The black and the white kitten` `` dead.
5. You and he` `` late for school today; why` `` that?
6. The black and white kitten` `` asleep.
7. Snow mixed with rain` `` falling, when I started.
8. James and I` `` had a long walk today in the fields.
9. The sum and substance of all he says` `` no effect.
10. A bay and a grey horse` `` just been bought.
11. The cat and the dog` `` long been good friends.
12. The horse and its rider` `` not seem to be tired.
13. A short and unbound book` `` not cost much.
14. A bunch of roses` `` not satisfy him.
15. Bread and cheese` `` not suit his taste.
16. Potatoes` `` not grow well in heavy soil.
17. The cow and her calf` `` not belong to me.
18. My pen` `` been lost; `` you seen it?
19. Youth and experience` `` not exist together.
20. The best painter and poet of this century` `` lately die  
d.
21. A needle and thread` `` found on the floor.
22. Trial and error` `` the source of our knowledge.
23. Romeo and Juliet` `` one of his favorite plays.

3. 两单数主语由 *or*、*nor* 连接时，即由 *either...or* 或 *neither...nor* 连接时，动词为单数：

例： *Either James or John is to be promoted.*

*Neither James nor John is to be promoted.*

附则：

(a) 当主语一为单数，一为复数时，则将复数主语放在后，而用复数动词。

例： *Neither he nor his parents were present.*

(b) 如主语的人称各异时，则动词与其最接近的主语一致。

例： *Either James or I am to get the prize.*

*Either you or James is to get the prize.*

### 练习题 3

将 *is*、*am* 或 *are*；*was* 或 *were*；*has* 或 *have*；*do* 或 *does* 填入空白处。

1. That cloud shows that snow or rain` `` ` about to fall.
2. Neither the cock nor the hens` `` ` in the yard.
3. By what time` `` ` your father or you decided to go?
4. One or two apples` `` ` been picked ripe.
5. Neither the man nor his wife` `` ` much work.
6. Neither moon nor stars` `` ` visible in this dark night.
7. To what place` `` ` the man or his son wish to go?
8. Neither the master nor his pupils` `` ` idle.
9. Neither he nor you` `` ` heard this before.
10. No girl or boy` `` ` allowed to play in school.

11. Either the boy or I` `` to be blamed for this.
12. Neither you nor he` `` the work required.
13. Neither my partner nor I` `` ever seen you before.
14. Either he or you` `` to blame; perhaps both of you.

4. 两个单数的主语为 *as well as* 连接时，动词用单数。

例：A box *as well as* a book *has* been lost.

副则：若两主语的人称或数各异时，则动词和最初的主语一致。

例：My partners *as well as* I *were* ruined.

I *as well as* they *am* tired of this work.

#### 练习题 4

将 is、am 或 are; was 或 were; has 或 have; do 或 does 填入空白处。

1. The horse as well as the rider` `` hurt by the fall.
2. This horse as well as that` `` for sale, which will you have?
3. James as well as I` `` won a prize this term.
4. I myself as well as James` `` won a prize this term.
5. Beauty as well as wealth` `` fallen to her lot in life.
6. The cock as well as the hens` `` calling for food.
7. The hens as well as the cock` `` calling for food.
8. A garden as well as a stable` `` attached to the house.
9. A garden as well as stables` `` attached to the house.
10. Stables as well as a garden` `` attached to the house.
11. Her good looks as well as her voice` `` much admired.



12. John as well as his friends` `` ` present on that day.
13. The moon as well as the stars` `` ` shining brightly.
14. He as well as you` `` ` to be blamed for this.
15. The pupils as well as the master` `` ` worked hard.
16. My father as well as I` `` ` a stranger in this place.
17. A horse as well as cows` `` ` needed for this farm.
18. The keeper as well as the cows` `` ` drenched with rain.

5. 两个单数的主语为 *not only... but (also)* 连接时，动词用单数：

例：Not only England, but all the world *feels* the loss.

副则：若两主语的人称或数各异时，则动词和最后的主语一致。

例：Not only he, but his *servants were* blamed for that.

## 练习题 5

将 is 或 are, has 或 have, was 或 were, do 或 does 填入空白处：

1. Not only silver, but gold` `` ` dug in this country.
2. Not only my sister, but I myself` `` ` much surprised.
3. Not only my sister, but my brothers` `` ` been invited.
4. Not only the Thames, but the Severn` `` ` frozen over.
5. Not only cows, but a horse` `` ` grazing in that field.
6. Not only a horse, but cows` `` ` grazing in that field.
7. Not only elm-trees, but ivy` `` ` growing well here.
8. Not only I, but my children` `` ` been disappointed.
9. Not only hope, but confidence` `` ` been restored.

10. Not only bread, but tea and buns` `` ` provided.

6. 单数集体名词 (Collective Noun) 为主语时, 其动词有单复两者:

a. 就团体全体言时, 动词用单数。

b. 就构成团体的个别分子而言时, 动词用复数。

例: His family *is* a large one.

His family *are* all well.

## 练习题 6

用 *is* 或 *are*, *was* 或 *were*, *has* 或 *have*, *does* 或 *do* 填入空白处:

1. All the audience` `` ` satisfied.

2. That fleet` `` ` not consist of more than ten ships.

3. Your pack of hounds` `` ` larger than mine.

4. The pack` `` ` scattered about in various places.

5. The people` `` ` much amused at that sight.

6. That gang of seven thieves` `` ` been broken up.

7. The gang` `` ` nearly all caught: only two escaped.

8. The choir` `` ` not contain more than ten choristers.

9. The choir` `` ` all here and` `` ` taken their usual seats.

10. The audience` `` ` too large for a hall of that size.

11. The company` `` ` so excited that they rose from their seats.

12. The A. B. C. Company` `` ` formed a few years ago.

13. The cattle` `` ` out grazing in the field.

14. The fourth class with few exceptions` `` done well.

15. The class` `` too large to be taught by one man.

16. The poultry` `` much mischief among flowers.

17. The gentry of this place` `` not like dirty roads.

18. The mass of mankind` `` much influenced by their surroundings.

19. The crew` `` not consist of more than twenty sailors.

20. The crew` `` standing in different parts of the ship.

21. The jury` `` divided in their opinions.

22. The jury` `` not consist of more than twelve persons.

7. 特别应注意事项:

a. 形式上为复数的名词, 而动词应用单数者:

1. 凡有“-ics”为语尾的学科名词如 *ethics*、*physics* 等。

2. 其他如 *news*、*means*、*tidings*、*measles*、*gallows*、*innings* 等。

3. 看作一个概括的观念时:

*Ten years was* too long a time to her. (十年的期间)

*Forty miles is* a good distance. (四十里的距离)

4. 国名, 书名等:

*The Adventures of Robinson Crusoe is* an interesting book.

*The United States is* a republic.

b. *number*、*variety*: 虽然形式是单数, 但用为复数之意时, 则动词用复数:

A great *variety of* articles *were* sold. (因被卖者不是 *variety*, 而是 *articles of various kinds* [各种的货物])

A large number of them *were* present. (因在场者不是数 [number] 而是 they who made the number [构成数目的人们]) 但此二词用为单数的意时, 则动词仍为单数:

The number of workman *is* small.

Variety of scene *pleases* the eye.

c. half、part、rest. 用于量 (quantity) 时动词用单数, 用于数时, 动词用复数:

*Part* of my work *was* done.

About *half* of the passengers *are* missing.

The *rest* of the money *was* spent then and there.

The *rest* of the children *were* killed.

d. none 为 no one 结合起来的, 不应用单数, 但其后若用复数名词或代词时, 则动词应为复数:

None of them *have* come.

e. each、every; either、neither 动词概为单数:

*Each* (man) of them *was* present.

*Neither* of these men *was* wanted.

*Every* bush and *every* tree *was* in bud.

## 练习题 7

a. 动词的人称和数与主语不一致者, 改正之:

1. You *was* rather late in coming to school today, *wasn't* you?

2. Good news *have* come today; the enemy's troops *are* *b* eaten.

3. Neither reward nor punishment are to be expected from him.

4. A carrier with his horse and dog have just entered the yard.

5. Every man and every horse were urgently needed.

6. Are either of these horses yours? No, neither of them are.

7. Not a word of these lectures were read out from a book.

8. None of the men selected was found fit for that purpose.

9. A large number of cattle is grazing in that field.

10. The audience was not agreed on that point.

11. The carriage and the horse is both worth a good deal.

12. When pain or grief attacks us, we know true friends from false.

13. The poultry in our yard is picking up seed.

14. There's four or five persons coming over today.

15. A white and a grey rabbit has run across the field.

16. There's as many as fifty sheep grazing on this moor.

17. The poet and the painter that lived here are dead.

18. Either James or you is sure to win the first prize.

19. My box as well as my book have been taken away.

20. The sum of twenty shillings a week were paid to him.

21. A garden full of flowers look very beautiful.

22. They, and not he, has to pay the fine.

23. Both are clear writers; neither of them make mistakes.

24. Every man of the boat's crew except two were taken ill.

25. A large number of men has come asking for work.

26. To write well, to speak well, or to act well are difficult.

27. Energy and hopefulness, like faith, removes mountains.

28. Each and all of them was shocked at what they heard.

29. Nothing but rain and clouds were seen on that day.

30. The sum and substance of the matter were that he was wrong.

b. 用 is 或 are, was 或 were, has 或 have, does 或 do 填入空白处:

1. The number of new members` ```` risen from ten to fifteen.

2. Everyman who saw that` ```` expected to give evidence.

3. Either wine or beer` ```` less refreshing than pure water.

4. A man and his wife` ```` about to take the house opposite.

5. A cat with two kittens` ```` making much noise in the night.

6. Each of my brothers` ```` made a good start in life.

7. There` ```` still ten people asking for tickets: ```` we any left?

8. Some people` ```` not like being told, when they are wrong.

9. The taste of these apples and pears` `` ` excellent: buy some.

10. A number of boys` `` ` come to see the cricket match.

11. The number of boys present` `` ` about fifty.

12. The apples on every tree` `` ` now ripe enough to be picked.

13. Either the farmer or his men` `` ` not understand their work.

14. Either you or he` `` ` to be dismissed tomorrow.

15. A large quantity of fruit of various kinds` `` ` been bought.

16. A red and white handkerchief` `` ` found in my drawer.

17. A red and a white handkerchief` `` ` found in my drawer.

18. That woman with a child in her arms` `` ` in need of help.

19. Industry, not ability, ` `` ` the secret of success.

20. The band of musicians` `` ` all here, ready to begin.

21. The black and white kitten` `` ` a great favorite in the house.

22. The black and the white kitten` `` ` been given away to a neighbour.

23. The farmer as well as the laborers` `` ` hard at work.

24. Not only the farmer, but the laborers` `` ` hard at work.

25. Neither my son nor I` `` ` pleased with this climate.

26. Either of these books` `` ` well worth buying and reading.

27. The number of spectators` `` ` not less than four thousand.

28. A bunch of grapes as well as two apples` `` ` given him.

29. The committee` `` ` divided in their opinions.

30. The *Tales of a Grandfather* ` `` ` one of Scott's novels.

31. Thirty dollars a week` `` ` good pay for a laborer.

32. A large number of waggons` `` ` captured.

33. The number of student in this class` `` ` too large.

34. None of the prisoners` `` ` released on that day.

35. The audience` `` ` much pleased with her singing.

36. The cattle` `` ` grazing in the field.

37. The great orator and statesman` `` ` dead.

38. There` `` ` about sixty students in this school.

39. Either he or his friends` `` ` to be invited.

40. Either his friends` `` ` to be invited, or he` `` `



## 2 疑问句 Interrogatives

陈述句	疑问句
(1) I am a boy.	<i>Am I a boy?</i>
(2) Mary has a bicycle.	<i>Has Mary a bicycle?</i> <i>Does Mary have a bicycle?</i> (美)
(3) He went to Boston yesterday.	<i>Did he go to Boston yesterday?</i>
(4) John can speak English.	<i>Can John speak English?</i>
(5) There are two girls in the room.	<i>Are there two girls in the room?</i>
(6) Here is a house.	<i>Is there a house here?</i>

由上诸例可知，疑问句是将主语和动词的位置颠倒而构成的。

例 (1) (2) 仅限于 **be** 和 **have** 两动词，即它们不需助动词，但在 **have** 的场合，美国人常用助动词 **do** 来构成疑问句，又 **dare**、**need**、**used** 等亦不需用 **do**。

例 (3) 表示凡无助动词的句子变为疑问句时，必须用助动词 **do**。

例 (4) 表示凡有助动词的句子变为疑问句时，则将 (第一个) 助动词放在主语之前即可。

例 (5) 和 (6) 表示 **there** 和 **here** 虽非主语，但在疑问句时，仍将动词放在它们之前。

## 有疑问词的疑问句

1. 主语为疑问代词，或为疑问形容词所修饰时，则句法与陈述句者同，只加一问号（?）于句尾即可。

例：Who made that voice?

How many pieces are left?

2. 但在疑问副词（why、when、what time, etc）の場合，则主语和动词的位置仍须颠倒，而将疑问副词放在句首。

例：Why (when、what time, etc) did John go to school?

注意：1. 否定陈述句改为问句时，通例将动词放在主语前即可，但也有将 not 随动词置于主语之前者，在此等场合，最好用缩短形，如 Didn't、Haven't、Aren't 等。

I did not read much. → Didn't I read much? Did I not read much?

Jack is not ill. → Is not (Isn't) Jack ill? Is Jack not ill?

2. have 用为“吃、学习”等意时，则概用 do 来作成疑问句。

例：Do you have dinner at seven? Does Bessie have any lessons in the afternoon?

## 练习题 8

A. 将下列句子改为问句：

1. This man weighs more than that one.
2. You usually wear a coat.
3. A box of matches costs a cent.
4. Ants lay eggs.
5. Trees live for thousands of years.

6. A coolie earns a lot of money.
7. Wasps make honey.
8. He takes the letters to the post office every day.
9. The sun shines everywhere each day.
10. We like lemonade.
11. This seat is made of leather.
12. These machines are driven by steam.
13. Flowers are grown in these fields.
14. I am often punished.
15. There are twelve months in a year.
16. John has left for Chicago.
17. This book belongs to her.
18. I think it is going to rain.
19. He drives to work every day.
20. Their class meets on the tenth floor.
21. The prisoner told the truth.
22. She dressed herself in her best clothes.
23. The sun shone brightly this morning.
24. The gardener threw a stone at the dog.
25. The soldiers fought well.
26. The boy laughed at them and thought he was very witty.
27. The servant put the lamp on the table.
28. The wind blew very hard last night.

29. The plate was broken to pieces.

30. The doctor came to see him yesterday.

B. 将下列句子依例改为问句：

例：He isn't studying English now.

a. Isn't he studying English now?

b. Why isn't he studying English now?

1. William isn't taking English lessons now.

2. Helen won't be in class tomorrow.

3. She won't be here on Thursday either.

4. He did not take his examination yesterday.

5. Mary does not like to study in the morning.

6. She didn't attend the lesson this morning.

7. They don't like to come to class so early.

8. They aren't going to the movies tonight.

9. Mr. Smith did not come to class yesterday.

10. He will not be here on Sunday.

11. He doesn't like to read aloud.

12. John hasn't delivered the mail yet.

13. She does not like New York.

14. I did not study my lessons last night.

15. Marry never comes to class on time.

16. I didn't bring my copybook with me.

17. John isn't making good progress.

18. John and Mary are not going to Washington.

19. Robert doesn't eat breakfast in the cafeteria.

20. You did not speak to him this morning.

21. Mary wasn't promoted to the next class.

22. There are not 20 persons in the house.

23. The book is not in the drawer.

24. They did not go for a walk in the park.

C. 将下列问句改为陈述句 (Declarative Sentence) :

1. Have you found that kind of plant which grows in sand?

2. Did he see the event that he has described so well?

3. Does he like the scent of the rose as much as the flower?

4. Will they remain much longer in this lovely place?

5. In hot countries do men chiefly wear cotton garments?

6. Did the shepherd drive away the wolf from the flock?

7. Did he shear as many as ten sheep yesterday?

8. Will she wear the same dress that she wore before?

9. Did he write those splendid lines that I have just heard?

10. Does an elephant live for a hundred years?

11. Is an elephant the largest of all land-animals?

12. Does this seem to be fit reward for all your work?

13. Could he have done all this without assistance?

14. Did not the shepherd say that the sheep had strayed?

15. Should he not take his place among the rest?
16. Must we really start at this early hour?
17. Did he stand all day in the open air?
18. Does the sun rise at six in the season of the year?
19. Did she awake and get up when she was called?
20. Did you see by chance someone passing this way?

### 3 疑问短语 Interrogative Phrases

Isn't she? Don't you? etc.

这是一种缩短的问句形式，用在句尾以要求对方确认所言之事，否定句时用肯定的形式，如“does she?”等，肯定句时用否定形，如“isn't she”等。

例：John is a good student——*isn't he?*

She speaks English well——*doesn't she?*

He was here at three o'clock——*wasn't he?*

You didn't enjoy the movie——*did you?*

注意：文中有助动词时，在缩短的问句中用该助动词；若文中无助动词时，则用 **do**，但动词 **be** 及 **have** 除外。

#### 练习题 9

用适当的缩短问句于下列句尾：

1. You wrote that letter` `` ``
2. She speaks English very well` `` ``
3. You live in Taipei` `` ``
4. You mailed that letter for me` `` ``
5. She is a very pretty girl` `` ``
6. He works on the fourth floor` `` ``
7. He doesn't work on the third floor` `` ``
8. He has already left for America` `` ``

9. You studied English with Miss Smith last year`´´´
10. He said he would be here at noon`´´´
11. She is Mr. Smith's secretary`´´´
12. You work in the import department`´´´
13. You are not married`´´´
14. Your wife doesn't speak English`´´´
15. This pencil is yours`´´´
16. These exercises are not difficult`´´´
17. This bus stops at 4th Street`´´´



## 4 否定句 Negatives

肯定句

否定句

(1) I tell a lie.

I *do not* tell a lie.

(2) I have a book.

I *have not* a book.  
I *do not* have a book. (美)

(3) I am a student.

I *am not* a student.

(4) I can speak English.

I *can not* speak English.

例(1)表示凡无助动词的肯定句变为否定句时，须补上助动词 **do**，然后在 **do** 后加上 **not**。但用 **never** 时，则不需加 **do**。

例(2)和(3)表示 **have** 和 **be** 两动词，其否定句可不用助动词，只将 **not** 放在它们之后即可。

**have** 用 **do** 来构成否定句，系美国的用法。

例(4)表示凡有助动词的肯定句变为否定句时，只在第一个助动词之后加上 **not** 即可。

英文中只有十二个动词或助动词，**not** 可放在其后，兹举出以供参考：**have**、**be**、**do**、**shall**、**will**、**can**、**may**、**must**、**ought**、**need**、**dare**、**used**。

但其中 **do** 用为动词时，则与一般动词同，须用 **do** 来构成否定，如“**Why don't you do it?**”。**need** 和 **dare** 亦然，如“**I don't need any more help now.**”，“**I didn't dare to go.**”。又，**used not** 之缩短形为 **usen't** 或 **usedn't** (**d** 不发音)。

注意：(1) 用 **never** 来构成否定句时，则不需用 **do**。如“**I never tell a lie.**”**neither...nor** 之时亦同，如“**I like neither this nor th**

at. ”。

(2) 一切命令句，不论何种动词，概用 do not (don't) 来构成否定句，如“*Don't be silly!* ”“*Do not go!* ”等。

(3) have to (= must) 的否定形为 do not have to, 绝不可误为 have not to。

(4) 不定词及分词之否定形：将 not 放在前，如“to be or *not to be*”; “*not knowing*, I cannot cry. ”。

### 练习题 10

A. 用 not 于适当的地方，变下列句子为否定句：

1. He has gone out of town.
2. They will be in class tomorrow.
3. I can meet you tonight.
4. I may be able to go with you.
5. We are going to the seashore on our vacation.
6. He will leave on the five o'clock train.
7. He is an engineer.
8. Mr. Smith has studied English for a long time.
9. You must write your exercise in pencil.
10. Mary is taking lessons from Miss Reese.
11. He will be here at five o'clock.
12. I have finished writing my exercise.
13. He is making much progress.
14. We shall see you tomorrow.
15. John used to study hard.

16. I dare ask him.
17. Mary will be promoted to the next class.
18. He has been in class since last month.
19. You ought to go.
20. I have a good library.
21. He is a man of honor.

B. 将下列句子变为否定句:

1. I felt much surprised at what I saw.
2. You sang better yesterday than today.
3. We heard of your success from your father.
4. It rained hard at twelve o'clock.
5. The sun rose at six o'clock this morning.
6. The fox fell into the trap last night.
7. The bees gathered much honey from those flowers.
8. This tree strikes its roots deep into the ground.
9. Some trees die before they are a hundred years old.
10. They told the boy to keep watch over the flock.
11. He strove to do his very best in his new class.
12. He gave as much as sixpence for that little book.
13. John made many mistakes in his examination.
14. It rains every day in New York.
15. I had time to study my lesson last night.
16. I understood everything he said.
17. He eats his lunch at twelve o'clock.

18. She wants to learn English.
19. He began his new work on the fifteenth.
20. Our classroom has three windows in it.
21. I am afraid in the dark.
22. He stayed in Taipei for a long time.
23. We need a rag in our room.
24. We use many books during our lesson.
25. John came to class ten minutes late.
26. Mary likes to study French.
27. They moved to Taichung.
28. William speaks English well.

C. 将下列否定句改为肯定句：

1. He did not see me secretly entering the room.
2. The sun does not rise at five o'clock.
3. The watchman did not run away from the thief.
4. We did not think John to be as clever as James.
5. He did not speak about the coldness of the classroom.
6. She does not think that a complaint should be made.
7. He did not feel ill during his absence from home.
8. The lightning did not strike the top of the house.
9. The noise in the street did not break my sleep.
10. He does not come here in time for his dinner.
11. They did not seek for the lamb that had been lost.
12. The dog did not hunt the deer without success.

13. The master does not expect me to finish this all at once.

14. This book does not seem to be as interesting as that.

15. He did not hear, I think, all that I said to him.

16. The child, walking along the bank, did not fall into the river.

17. This student did not strive to keep at the head of the class.

18. Bees do not gather much honey from these flowers.

19. I will not give this man any money.

## 5 被动语态 Passive Voice

be + past participle + by 【with, at, in, to】

Active	Passive
(1) I <i>respect</i> him.	He <i>is respected</i> by me.
(2) I <i>gave</i> him a book.	<div><div>A book <i>was given</i> him by me.</div><div>He <i>was given</i> a book by me.</div></div>
(3) The gentleman <i>made</i> her his servant.	She <i>was made</i> his servant by the gentleman.
(4) <i>They say</i> he is a scholar.	<i>It is said</i> that he is a scholar.
(5) They <i>have sent for</i> the doctor.	The doctor <i>has been sent for</i> .
(6) <i>Who invented</i> the radio?	<i>By whom</i> was the radio <i>invented</i> ?
(7) <i>Do not forget</i> it.	<i>Let it not be forgotten</i> .

注意：例（4）的主语 **they**，系指一般的人，凡属此用法的 **we**、**you**、**one**、**they** 等代词为主语的句子，变为被动句时，**by us**、**by you**、**by them** 等通例省去。

例（5）系表示“动词 + 介词” = 及物动词一类的成语，变为被动句时绝不可将介词忘掉，如 **sent for** 应视为一个词处理。

例（6）疑问句时，疑问词须放在句首。

例 (7) 命令句时须用 **Let**。

### 练习题 11

A. 将下面的句子改为被动语态 (Passive Voice) :

1. The movie disappointed us very much.
2. Mr. Jones manages the export division.
3. The teacher teaches us English.
4. They started a dancing class last week.
5. He bought me this book yesterday.
6. Smith has to finish that report tomorrow.
7. Who has broken this glass?
8. The police arrested five workers.
9. Columbus discovered America in 1492.
10. The doctor ordered him to take a long rest.
11. A guide showed us the city.
12. If a cat may look at a king, it may look at me too.
13. The city welcomed them back on their return from the battlefield.
14. Don't disturb me.
15. Will not a sense of duty persuade him to work better?
16. The meeting called upon me to give my reasons.
17. Should he find me at home, I would not receive him.
18. The language that he used quite shocked me.
19. Whom did they blame for that unfortunate accident?

20. The people elected him president.

B. 将下面的句子改为主动语态 (Active Voice) :

1. The town was captured by the enemy.
2. The money was stolen by an unknown person.
3. I was much hurt by his voice and manner.
4. He was struck by lightning, as he sat under a tree.
5. My brother and I were attacked by a bull.
6. The shops are closed by all the teachers.
7. The soil of India is made fertile by the annual rains.
8. The walls of the house were cracked by an earthquake.
9. Has the door been shut by you?
10. Food is being cooked by me.



## 6 格 Case

### 1. 主格 (Nominative Case)

a. 名词的主格和宾格同形。

b. 代词的主格和宾格: I、me; he、him; she、her; we、us; they、them; who、whom; thou、thee (很少用); you (两者同形); it (同形)。代词主格的用途:

(1) 用为主语 *I will come.*

(2) 用在 be 动词之后为补语, *That is he.* 但 *It is me.* 现在白话中是通用的了, 但只限 **me** 一词而已, 其他的代词则不可。

### 练习题 12

代词的格有错误者改正之:

1. I have no doubt at all that it was her who spoke.
2. Her and Mrs. C. were expected here today.
3. It was her who wrote that letter, not him.
4. Him and his father were both taken ill that day.
5. Whom do men say that I am?
6. I would not do it, if I were him.
7. I was quite certain that it could not be her.
8. Who made that noise? Not him, sir, but me.
9. Were you there, or was it him that I saw?
10. Them that are idle are not wanted here.

11. Her father and me will soon find out where she is.

12. Tom, William, and me went out for a ramble.

13. Him and me were playing at marbles outside the school door.

14. May Robert and me go out for a walk by ourselves?

15. I have a son, whom I intend shall learn Greek.

## 2. 宾格 (Accusative Case)

宾格的用途:

a. 为动词的目的语: I like *her*.

b. 为介词的目的语: They are laughing at *me*.

c. 用在“to be”之后, 而“to be”之前有及物动词和其目的语时:

That man is so like Tom that I took it to be *him*.

d. 用在 like、unlike、near 等形容词之后, The portrait is very like *him*.

## 练习题 13

A. 下列句中之代词, 其格 (case) 有错误者, 改正之:

1. He asked John and I to go to lunch.

2. I knew it to be he.

3. I knew that it was her who called me.

4. He hurried Tom and I out the back door.

5. The lucky ones who received the prizes are Jenny, Collins, and me.

6. He wishes Henry and I to remain this evening.

7. We believe you and he to be entirely above suspicion.

8. The superintendent wishes to see you and I at five o'clock.

9. If I were him, I wouldn't ask for a vacation at this time.

10. Why didn't you tell Ira and I that you weren't going?

11. It must have been Ella and him who rang up when we were out.

12. When he got off the train, there were John and myself waiting to greet him.

13. The secretary and myself will prepare a statement for the meeting.

14. The Entertainment Committee holds its meetings in Room 13.

15. For the life of me I can't think of who to recommend.

16. John called the secretary and I into his office.

B. 用第一人称或第三人称代词填入空白处。

1. He thought the burglars were` `` `` `` `.

2. He mistook the burglars for` `` `` `` `.

3. William is better at his lessons than` `` `` `` `.

4. It is` `` `` `` `.

5. The portrait is very like` `` `` `` `.

6. Nobody volunteered except Edward and` `` `` `` `.

7. `` `` `` boys have formed a debating club.

8. Mr. Jones is going to give` `` `` `` boys a baseball field.

9. Who is there? `` `` `` `.

10. Between you and` `` `` `` I am not sorry that he has resigned,

11. If I were` `` ` I would study art.
12. Arthur likes you better than` `` `.
13. Behind Ruth and` `` ` came the guest of honor.
14. Automobiles are not for such as` `` `.
15. It was` `` ` that Joseph meant.
16. ` `` ` two are always together.
17. Richard dislikes everybody, ` `` ` most of all.

### 3. Case of pronoun after“than”or“as”

用在连词 **than** 或 **as** 之后的人称代词，其格须与为其比较对象的名词或代词一致。

- (1)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is as wise as } \textit{she} \text{ (is) .} \\ \text{He is wiser than } \textit{she} \text{ (is) .} \end{array} \right.$  (He 为 She 的比较对象)

- (2)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He loves her better than (he loves) } \textit{me}. \\ \text{He loves her as well as (he loves) } \textit{me}. \end{array} \right.$  (her 为 me 之比较对象)

- (3)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He loves her better than } \textit{I} \text{ (loves her) .} \\ \text{He loves her as well as } \textit{I} \text{ (loves her) .} \end{array} \right.$  (He 为 I 之比较对象)

故  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He likes you better than } \textit{I}. \\ \text{He likes you better than } \textit{me}. \end{array} \right.$  都是不错的，若在 I 后补上 like you, 在 me 前补上 he likes,

则知何以要用 I 或 me 了，因一为省去的动词 **like** 之主语，而一则为省去的动词 **likes** 之目的语。

至于动词为 **be** 之场合，则如例（1）所示，代词概为主格，因其为省去的动词 **is** 的主语，自不能用宾格，所以 **He is taller than me** 和 **He is as tall as me** 皆是错的，**me** 必须改为 **I**。

注意：用在 **than** 之后的关系代词“**who**”，必须用宾格 **whom**。

## 练习题 14

A. 将下列句中省去的动词补出，勿改变 **than** 或 **as** 之后的代词的格：

1. He is as clever as I, but not so clever as Tom.
2. I have not written so much or so clearly as he.
3. Tom has seen that man quite as often as I.
4. Tom has seen that man quite as often as me.
5. They take as much pleasure in work as he in idleness.
6. The dog barks more fiercely at you than at them.
7. The writer understood the subject better than they.

8. He is better off than I in money, but I am better off than he in knowing how to spend it.

9. None are so blind as they who will not see.
10. The mother likes to be admired as much as he.
11. So brave a man as he was never seen before.
12. That book impressed me more than him.
13. Few men have been more witty than Dickens.
14. He is more true to his friends than they to him.
15. In one lesson I made more faults than he in two.

B. 代词的格有错者改正之，且将省去的动词补出：

1. You had quite as good a chance of success as me.
2. A and B are better off than us in everything.
3. My partners have gained more than me by this plan.
4. Though her brother has studied more books than her,  
he has not so much common sense as her  
in daily life.
5. He rides better than her, but she sings better than hi  
m.
6. That author wrote a much better book than him.
7. He is richer than me in cash, but not in reputation.
8. None are so deaf as them that refuse to hear.
9. I never before saw any girl so pretty as her.
10. Very few persons spoke so well as him at the meeting.
11. He is more convinced than me of the truth of that sayi  
ng.
12. No one is more to be pitied than him for what has hap  
pened.

## 7 人称代词的位置 Position of Personal Pronoun

说到自己和他人时，应最后说“我”。

如 *James and I* had a long walk. (正)

但不可说 *I and James* had a long walk. (误)

至于第二人称“you”的位置，虽无一定的规则，但普遍都先说，以对对方表示恭敬。

如 *You and James* must be back by four o'clock.

### 练习题 15

A. 将每对句子变为一句，注意代词的位置的先后次序。

例  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{I can go tomorrow.} \\ \text{You can go tomorrow.} \end{array} \right] = \text{You and I can go tomorrow.}$

1. I rowed the boat. The boatman rowed the boat.
2. You must work harder. James must work harder.
3. You have been invited. Your father has been invited.
4. He saw the horse kick. I saw the horse kick.
5. The guests were glad of that. We were glad of that.
6. I was not afraid. The boatman was not afraid.
7. The noise alarmed us. The noise alarmed him.
8. The music delighted me. The music delighted you.

B. 代词的位置、数和格，有错误者改正之。

1. Them and me had a great deal of fun that day.
2. Me and my sister are much pleased with that song.
3. I hope you will invite my sister and I again.
4. Who have been invited? William and us.
5. Us and the three boys went out to fly the kite.
6. Me and Smith will play James and he.
7. This heavy road has tired out my pony and I.
8. It is fine now; me and my sister want to go out.



## 8 指示代词 Demonstrative Pronouns

指示代词的数，必须与其所指的名词一致。

The *climate* of England is cooler than *that* (= the climate) of India. (单数)

The *fish* of the sea are larger than *those* (= the fish) of rivers. (复数)

如果先行词名词有不定冠词且系泛指者，则须用不定指示代词 *one* 以代之，如 *A box* made of wood is larger than *one* (= a box) made of iron.

### 练习题 16

用适当的代词填入空白处。

1. A house built of brick lasts longer than` `` built of wood.
2. Do you want a knife? Yes, I want` ``.
3. The voice of woman is softer than` `` of a man.
4. He has no coat, and no money to buy` ``.
5. The men of Rome were more warlike than` `` of Athens.
6. The sting of a wasp gives less pain than` `` of a hornet.
7. The air of hills is cooler than` `` of lowlands.
8. The horns of these oxen are less crooked than` `` of stags.
9. The ceiling of my room is higher than` `` of yours.

10. I prefer your singing to` `` of your sister.

11. I like books on science better than` `` on language.

12. A glass of plain water will suit you better than` `` of wine.

13. He bought a knife, and lent` `` to me.

## 9 代词与先行词 Pronouns and Antecedents

1. 代词的人称、数及性须与其先行词一致。
2. 先行词为 **one** 时，其代词亦用 **one**。
3. 先行词为 **you and I** 或 **he and I** 时，其代词用 **we**；先行词为 **you and he** 时，代词用 **you**，先行词为 **he and James** 时代词用 **they**。

### 练习题 17

用适当的代词填入空白处。

1. If one is ambitious` `` ` will work hard.
2. One does not like` `` ` motives to be doubted.
3. If anybody wishes to go, ` `` ` may go.
4. Every member of this class must hand in` `` ` compositi  
on.
5. Each hurries toward` `` ` home.
6. Each of us must lead` `` ` own life.
7. Miss Smith is teaching` `` ` class now.
8. Mr. and Mrs. Smith are living in` `` ` new apartment.
9. John is on` `` ` vacation.
10. Give a list of the things you wish, and I will telephone  
for` `` ` .
11. Everybody thinks` `` ` own way is wise.

12. If anybody has a better plan, now is the time for` `` `t  
o speak.

13. It was an old-fashioned picnic, every person furnishi  
ng` `` ` share of the provisions.

14. When anybody is talking, it is bad manners to interr  
upt` `` `.

15. I know both you and he have done` `` ` duty.

16. You and I have done` `` ` best.

## 10 关系代词及疑问代词 Relative and Interrogative Pronouns

1. same 之后的关系代词须用 that。

2. such 之后的关系代词须用 as。

例: This is the *same* man *that* came before.

He is not *such* a man *as* I wanted.

3. 当 as 之后的动词省略时, 则 same 之后用 as。

例: This book is the *same as* mine (is) .

### 练习题 18

A. 用适当的关系代词填入空白处:

1. This is the boy` `` I recommended.

2. The boy` `` I recommended is a Swede.

3. The boy` `` brought the letter is, not the one` `` I recommended.

4. I told Anna, `` `` I knew would keep my secret.

5. I told Anna, `` `` I knew I could trust.

6. I told Anna, `` `` I knew to be trustworthy.

7. I told Anna, `` `` I knew intimately.

8. No one` `` you know lives in this street.

9. All` `` I can say is, I am sorry.

10. Give me the same horse` `` I had yesterday.

11. A dog, ```` showed his teeth and growled, blocked the way.

12. Choose the partner```` you like best.

13. The policeman was leading a little child```` had lost its mother.

14. Take such measures```` you deem necessary.

15. Take```` measures seem necessary.

16. Take the measures```` seem to you necessary.

17. My hat is of the same size```` yours.

18. This is the picture```` I am so fond of.

19. This is the picture of ```` I am so proud.

20. The man```` is talking to Henry is the one```` owns this house.

B. 将 who (ever) 或 whom (ever) 填入空白处:

1. ```` do you think will be the next Mayor of Taipei?

2. He is the student```` was chosen to speak for his class.

3. Students```` some teachers would call“naughty”are often very clever.

4. ```` shall we have for the president of our English Club?

5. ```` is that man standing on the platform?

6. To```` are you sending the letter?

7. It was they```` visited our school last month.

8. The company wants a man```` it can trust.

9. To```` did you give the book?

10. We never discovered```` the thief was.

11. ```` was it?
  12. ```` do you think will help us?
  13. ```` did you promise?
  14. ```` shall we choose secretary?
  15. I know```` you are.
  16. You may work with```` you wish.
  17. You are the person```` I wish to see.
  18. There will be a price for```` makes the highest score.
  19. ```` could it have been that broke the window pane?
  20. We sent invitations to all```` we believed to be interested in the school.
  21. He asked me```` was elected.
  22. ```` do you regard as the better scholar of the two?
  23. ```` did you see when you called?
  24. ```` do you think is the best physician in town?
  25. ```` do you suppose I am?
- C. 用 which 或 what 填入空白处:
1. Is this the book```` you want?
  2. The man refused to tell me```` he wanted.
  3. This is the one```` he means.
  4. She wants to know```` you are going to do tonight.
  5. He took everything```` he wanted.
  6. She didn't believe anything```` I said to her.
  7. Did he tell you```` he wanted you to do?

8. I'll do anything` `` he asks me to do.
9. Is this the letter` `` you are referring to?
10. He asked me` `` I was doing.
11. This is the book` `` Mr. Smith sent me.
12. That is the one` `` he wants.
13. I told him` `` the word meant.
14. This was a development` `` no one had expected.
15. These are the ones` `` I want.
16. Is this the book` `` he asked you for?
17. I couldn't imagine` `` he was trying to say.
18. She has all the money` `` she needs.
19. He took with him everything` `` he needed for his trip.
20. A man is judged by the books` `` he reads.
21. He lost all the money` `` he had so carefully saved.
22. Have you taken everything` `` you need?

D. 依例句所示将下列句中的关系代词省去（注意变更介词的位置）：

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is the man } to \textit{whom} \text{ I spoke.} \\ \text{He is the man (whom) I } spoke \textit{to.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{That is a problem } on \textit{which} \text{ we must spend some time.} \\ \text{That is a problem } we \textit{ must spend some time on.} \end{array} \right.$

1. The man to *whom* you spoke is here now.
2. I have bought the book *about which* I spoke to you yesterday on the telephone.



3. He is the man *whom* I mean.
4. I should like to buy the book *at which* I was looking yesterday.
5. Is this the letter *for which* you asked me yesterday?
6. That is a subject *on which* we will have to spend considerable time and money.
7. That is a question *about which* I must speak to you.
8. Which is the door *at which* you knocked?
9. That is the file *out of which* I got the letter.
10. That is the shelf *from which* I took the book down.
11. Which is the tree *under which* they hid the money?
12. That is the question *over which* they argued.
13. That is the story *at which* we were laughing so hard.
14. This is the room *about which* he enquired.
15. This is the *one which* he wants.
16. He is the man *that* I saw in the room.
17. Was Mr. Smith the man *to whom* you talked?
18. A simple relative pronoun must always have an antecedent *to which* it refers.

E. 将省去的关系代词补出:

1. It was a bold step she had taken.
2. I am not altogether unqualified for the business I have in hand.
3. His taste of books is a little too just for the age he lives in.

4. Censure is the tax a man pays to the public for being eminent.

5. Who is the wittiest man you know?

6. Morton was the only friend I had.

7. That sonata was the first piece I learned.

8. Ten dollars is the price he asks.

9. Are you the man I bought the coat of?

10. This is the book we are reading evenings.

11. Take any seat you like.

12. "Faust" is the only opera I care for.

13. I have done all I can.

### 练习题 19

A. 用适当的代词填入空白处：

1. She behaved` `` like a lady.

2. `` must be nice to have all your sons and daughters around you.

3. Was` `` you who sent me the box?

4. He flattered` `` that he had told that tale very well.

5. `` was possible that they might not return till late the next day.

6. I think` `` highly probable that she should come to help us at once.

7. `` is very kind, that aunt of yours.

B. 用适当的指示代词填入空白处：

1. Our greeting was like` `` of old friends.
2. You must help him, and` `` immediately.
3. There was no objection on the part of` `` present.
4. ```` which is good to be done must be done at once.
5. ```` who believe it are very stupid.

C. 将括号中错误的词划去:

1. Have you  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{some} \\ \text{any} \end{array} \right)$  lessons to prepare?
2. I haven't  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{some} \\ \text{any} \end{array} \right)$  lessons to prepare.
3. Will you ring me  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{some} \\ \text{any} \end{array} \right)$  water?
4. I have  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{some} \\ \text{any} \end{array} \right)$  new books at home.
5. The street was lined with spectators on  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{either} \\ \text{both} \end{array} \right)$  side.
6. Have you ever seen an airship? Yes, I have s  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{one.} \\ \text{it.} \end{array} \right)$   
een
7. Each of us has  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{his} \\ \text{our} \end{array} \right)$  claims.

D. 将括号中错误的关系代词划去:

1. My older bro  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{whos} \\ \text{e} \\ \text{who} \end{array} \right)$  name is Daniel, is a Christian  
ther preacher.
2. It was a poor weapon, b  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{that} \end{array} \right)$  he could lay his han

ut perhaps the best                       $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{which} \\ \text{who} \end{array} \right]$  ds on at the momen  
t.

3. Among his friends in the town there                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{who} \\ \text{that} \\ \text{whom} \end{array} \right)$  he loved  
was one man                      dearly.

4. People endeavoured to improve the so                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{that} \\ \text{which} \end{array} \right)$  they liv  
ciety in                      ed.

5. She had already refused sev                      had got her har  
eral offers of marriage with a gr                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{which} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right)$  d names amon  
and air,                      g the neighbour  
s.

6. The dog                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{which} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right)$  he recognized for an old acquainta  
s, not one o                      nce, barked at him as he passed.  
f

7. The expression                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{that} \\ \text{which} \end{array} \right)$  he regarded me had much int  
with                      elligence.

8. People came to hear                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{what} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right)$  he had to relate.

9. He never saw such                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{that} \\ \text{as} \end{array} \right)$  you may see any day at o  
big ships                      ur seaports.

10. I cannot repeat all                       $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{which} \\ \text{what} \\ \text{that} \end{array} \right)$  I heard.

E. 用疑问代词填入空白处:

1. ```` began the quarrel?

2. About ```` were you speaking?

3. ```` book is this?

4. ```` of the two players do you like better?
5. ```` do you think I wanted?
6. ```` play of Shakespeare do you like best?
7. ```` did you say won the prize?
8. ```` was she, do you suppose?
9. ```` do you think has done it?
10. ```` do men say that I am?

F. 代词的用法有错误者，改正之：

1. The grass as grows in this lawn is very coarse.
2. Such a man who came today is not fit for the work.
3. I return the book what you lent me three days ago.
4. I do not like any one as does not speak truth.
5. The class what you teach is getting on well.
6. The carpenter as made that box is a very good workman.
7. I will tell you everything what I know about it.
8. Such things which they say are not to be believed.
9. The mason as built that wall built it crooked.
10. The matter what you inquire about does not concern you.
11. Such news that you brought spread quickly through the town.
12. Friendship is the virtue what I admired most.
13. He, not I, was the man as deceived you.
14. Most of all I like such scent that comes from roses.

15. A boy as is always talking can neither learn nor work.

16. The man what does not pay his debt is not honest.

17. The same book what you read last week I am reading now.

18. A bad potato is the worst thing as you will find anywh ere.

19. This is the thing as he was meaning all the time.

20. Such things that do harm should be avoided.

## 11 形容词与副词 Adjectives and Adverbs

1. 副词不一定以 -ly 为语尾，如 fast、near、hard、long、much、ill、little 等，“形”“副”同形。

2. 形容词有以 -ly 为语尾者，如 friendly、manly、cowardly，此类形容词不能加 -ly 为副词，须用副词短语的方式如 in a manly way。

### 练习题 20

A. 改正下列句中之错误（形容词或副词）：

1. He writes excellent: no one in the class can write as neat and clear as he does.

2. There is no fear: he will do it easy, even if you can't.

3. She walks very feeble after that long illness.

4. The man who said that will pay for it dear.

5. He reads rather indistinct, and requires practice.

6. He will help you considerable, if you ask him.

7. They came to school very regular all last week.

8. He treated us all free and fair, so we can't complain.

9. The battle raged fierce from morning till evening.

10. That was noble spoken; it pleased me to hear it.

11. They were all marvellous angry on hearing this.

12. He did it quite accidental; for he was more than half asleep.

13. I will act agreeable to your wishes in all things.
14. He spoke very intelligent; we all understood him.
15. He treated us handsome, and we ought to feel gratified.
16. I am sure he did not upset the chair intentional.

B. 将括号内错误的词划去:

1. The medicine tasted (bad, badly) .
2. You will feel (safe, safely) with him.
3. He felt (quick, quickly) in his pockets for the money.
4. He feels (strong, strongly) about that question.
5. He feels (strong, strongly) again after his illness.
6. John looked (uneasy, uneasily) standing before the class.
7. Mary kept looking (uneasy, uneasily) at the teacher.
8. The air certainly smells (fresh, freshly) this morning.
9. This cake tastes too (sweet, sweetly) for me.
10. A stranger appeared (sudden, suddenly) at the door.
11. I felt (awkward, awkwardly) standing there before everyone.
12. The man felt (awkward, awkwardly) in his pockets for the keys.
13. The man looked very (suspicious, suspiciously) to me.
14. The policeman also looked at him (suspicious, suspiciously) .
15. The flower smells (sweet, sweetly) .



16. John looks (bad, badly) after his illness.

17. This cream tastes (sour, sourly) to me.

18. Look (careful, carefully) at the picture, and you will understand what I mean.

C. 将括号内的词用为形容词或副词填于空白处:

1. The dog was quite` `` (friendly) .

2. He did the exercise very` `` (thorough) .

3. He could do it more` `` (easy) if he wanted.

4. He is a very` `` (fast) worker.

5. John worked very` `` (hard) this semester.

6. John did the work very` `` (fast) .

7. He will remain in his country` `` (temporary) .

8. Come` `` (quick) . We need your help.

9. George appears to be a very` `` (systematic) worker.

10. You should work more` `` (systematic) if you wish results.

## 12 比较 Degrees of Comparison

### 1. 比较的语尾变化:

#### a. 一音节词及某些二音节词:

比较级 + *er*。如 long→long *er*, wise→wis *er*, big→big *ger*, dry→dr *ier*, noble→nobl *er*, often→often *er*。

最高级 + *est*。如 long→long *est*, wise→wis *est*, big→big *g est*, dry→dr *iest*, noble→nobl *es t*, often→often *est*, happy→happ *iest*。

#### b. 二音节以上的词:

比较级: 加 *more* 在前, 如 honest→ *more* honest, happily→ *more* happily, interesting→ *more* interesting。

最高级: 加 *most* 在前, 如 useful→ *most* useful, carefully→ *most* carefully, honest→ *most* honest, 以上为有规则的变化, 至于不规则变化如 good→better→best 之类, 则如不规则动词一样, 须一一记住方可。

### 2. 比较变化的用法:

#### a. 比较级用于比较二者之事物。

A is *bigger than* B. (比较级常与 *than* 连用)

#### b. 三者以上之比较时, 用最高级。

He is *the biggest* of all. (最高级常有定冠词 *the*)

## 练习题 21

A. 将括号中的形容词用为比较级或最高级:

1. He is the (strong) boy in the whole school.
2. Of the two sisters Mary is the (beautiful) .
3. Ann is the (young) of my four sisters.
4. John is the (old) of all my friends.
5. This is the (good) story I have ever read.
6. Which do you like (good) tea or coffee?
7. Iron is the (useful) of all metals.
8. The Yangtse is the (large) river in China.
9. Which of the two boys is (tall) ?
10. George is (bad) than his brother.

B. 下列文中有错误者，改正之：

1. Keelung is smaller to Taipei.
2. New York is the larger city in the United States.
3. He is the better student from all.
4. John is more stronger than his brother.
5. I am two years elder than my sister.
6. Which is the heaviest, you or I?
7. Which of the three girls is the elder?
8. This boy's manners are more good than his brother's.
9. Which of the boys is the taller to the class?
10. Mount Everest is the higher mountain of the world.

C. 将括号中正确的词填入空白处：

1. He sat down and said nothing` `` (farther, further) .
2. Is that the` `` edition of the *Times* (last, latest) .

3. Wash your hands if they are not` `` (clean, clear) .
4. A prize was given to` `` one of the two best students (each, every) .
5. He knows` `` words than his brother (less, fewer) .
6. I was` `` when I heard of his father's death (angry, sorry) .
7. John is` `` than his cousin (higher, taller) .
8. Tom is five years old, he is too` `` to go to school (small, young) .
9. George is my` `` brother (older, elder) .
10. My brother George is` `` than I am (older, elder) .

## 13 冠词 The Articles

1. a 和 an 的用途:

(1) *a* 用于辅音之前 (所谓辅音系指该词的实际读音而言)。

例: *a box*, *a useful thing* (因 *u* = [ju:] ) , *a ewe lamb* (因 *ew* = [ju:] ) , *a one-eyed man* (因 *o* = [wʌ] )

(2) *an* 用于元音之前 (所谓元音指实际的读音而言)。

例: *an ox*, *an hour*, *an heir*, *an honest man* (因 *h* 不发音)

练习题 (22)

下列例句中的不定冠词 (*a*、*an*) , 如有用错者改正之。

1. There is a inkspot on that paper. Ink is an useful article.

2. He was shot by a arrow while riding an horse.

3. I never allow a organ to be played in front of my window.

4. A box of tools would be an useful present to him.

5. He gave a apple to one of them, and a orange to the other.

6. He is a untidy man, both in his work and in his dress.

7. Have you an history of America to lend me?

8. He was a African by birth, not an European.

9. He was kept two months laid up in an hospital.

10. I never saw such a thing before, it was an unique sight.

11. He was looked upon as an hero by all who knew him.

12. He was cheered with an universal shout of applause.

13. Have you a umbrella that you could lend me?

2. 关于冠词特别注意事项:

(1) 冠词之反复:

a. 两个名词之前各别用冠词时, 表示所指者为各别的两物(人)。

例: *The poet and the statesman are dead.* (两个不同的人)

*The poet and statesman is dead.* (同一人)

b. 修饰同一名词的两个形容词之前, 各有冠词时, 则指两个不同之物(人)。

例: I have *a black and a white cat.* (黑猫和白猫各一)

I have *a black and white cat.* (黑白花纹的一猫)

c. 但只用一次冠词, 亦可指不同之二物(人), 但名词须变为复数。

例: 1. Bring me *the black and the white cat.* (两猫)

2. Bring me *the black and white cats.* (两猫)

3. Bring me *the black and white cat.* (一猫)

上例中1和2同表示黑和白的两只猫, 3则为黑白花的一只猫。

(2) 不定冠词之用法: 凡指一般者而非特殊者时:

公式: A (n) + 单数名词 = 复数名词

例: *A man cannot live long without food and drink.*

*Men cannot live long without food and drink.*

(3) 定冠词之用法：指特定者用之，名词单复数皆可：

例： *The book on the table* is a dictionary. (特指在桌上的那本书)

*The honesty of my servant* is doubtful. (专指我的仆人的忠实)

*The waves at that time* were very rough. (专指那个时候的浪)

但“定冠词 + 单数名词”有时表示该种类全体，此时则在意义上与“不定冠词 + 单数名词”没有多大分别。

例： *The horse* is a noble animal. (马这种动物)

此时 *The horse* 改为 *A horse* 亦未尝不可。

### 练习题 23

A. 用适当的冠词填入空白处：

1. ```` chair on which you are sitting is not comfortable.
2. There is ```` pencil on the desk.
3. ```` customer whom Mr. Smith telephoned this morning is here now, waiting to see him.
4. There is ```` customer waiting to see Mr. Smith.
5. I should like to find ```` good book to read tonight.
6. ```` book which I am reading now is a very good one.
7. ```` book which gave me the greatest pleasure was “*Les Miserable*”.
8. ```` good book is always a pleasure to me.
9. Have you ```` cigarette?

10. John angrily threw away` `` cigarette he was smoking.

B. 下列句子的空白处，若需要冠词时，用适当者填入之。

1. ` `` coal is mined in` `` many countries.

2. ` `` fresh air is necessary for` `` health.

3. ` `` water must be pure when used for drinking purposes.

4. ` `` water in the ocean is very salty.

5. Plenty of ` `` rain and` `` sun are necessary for the raising of cotton.

6. ` `` tea will not keep you awake at night.

7. ` `` tea which is imported from` `` China is of good quality.

8. ` `` tea in this pot is weak.

9. ` `` cotton is one of ` `` important products of ` `` South.

10. ` `` tea, ` `` cotton, and` `` rice come from` `` India.

11. ` `` steel in this building came from` `` Pittsburgh.

12. ` `` copper is a good conductor of ` `` electricity.

13. New York city is` `` largest city in` `` United States.

C. 将下列句中的冠词补出：

1. Rhone River flows through Lake Geneva, which acts as filter for river.

2. Most of Chinese live on plain of Yang-tse Kiang. Many live on plain of Hwan Ho.

3. Mt. Everest is highest mountain in world.



4. In order to reach Philippine Islands from Hong Kong one must cross China Sea.

5. Mississippi is longest river in north America.

6. Panama Canal joins Pacific and Atlantic oceans.

7. First World War began in month of August, 1914.

8. President of United States is elected every four years.

9. Himalayas are greatest mountain range.

10. Wolf is animal of same family as dog.

D. 将下列句子变为单数，注意加上适当的冠词：

1. Camels travel across the desert.

2. Coolies work very hard.

3. Sharks are dangerous creatures.

4. Cows do not eat flesh.

5. Monkeys have long tails.

6. Footballs are filled with air.

7. Rats are larger than mice.

8. Bicycles have two wheels.

9. Kangaroos do not lay eggs.

10. Fire engines carry ladders.

## 练习题 24

补出必需的冠词，或划去多余的冠词，或依冠词之必要而变更名词之数。

1. I have just bought a fresh copy of the Old and New Testament.

2. The five elements, according to the Hindoos, are the earth, the air, the fire, the water, and the ether.

3. Burnt child shunts the fire.

4. The old and new method of cure failed equally with him.

5. A cool and a bracing air suits me better than anything.

6. The black and the white horse that he rides fell with him.

7. I have to keep two servant-maids for this house, a cook and housemaid.

8. The just and the merciful general spared the conquered.

9. A live ass is better than dead lion.

10. The men have a higher degree of reason than the brutes.

11. He was much respected both by the civil and military officers.

12. The greatest traders in Europe are the English, Germans, and Dutch.

13. The loyal and disloyal members were agreed on this point.

14. The two parties, the Whig and Tory, were nearly equally balanced.

15. There are in this town a club, public library, and swimming bath.

16. This book is the work of a patient and an acute observer.

## 14 名词所有格 Nouns in Possessive Case

名词的所有格由加's (apostrophe s) 于名词而构成，但在如下的场合，s 可省去，仅用“'”。

(1) 有复数语尾 s 的复数名词：

如 A girls' school; the students' rooms.

(2) 最后音节为“s + 元音 + s”的固有名词：

如 Mo ses' laws; for Je sus' sake.

(3) 有 s 或 ce 语尾的单数名词，用在 for...sake 之间者。

如 *For appearance' sake; for goodness' sake.*

合成语的所有格，'s 应加在最后一字上。

如 *My mother-in-law's child; the Queen of England's yacht; his brother George's wife.*

### 练习题 25

将下列句子的所有格名词改为复数或单数，并作其他必要之更改。

1. My niece's book has been left on the shelf: she is careless.

2. The thief's trick was found out through his own carelessness.

3. The horse's hoof will be hurt if it is not shod.

4. Did you see any lady's cloak in this room?

5. A mistress's order must be obeyed by her pupils.

6. Many an ox's hide was brought into the market and sold.

7. Try to rescue that ship's crew before the ship is lost.

8. We have found the robbers' cave; they will soon be caught.

9. A man's muscles are stronger than a woman's.

10. A librarian's salary is seldom as high as it should be.

11. The witnesses' evidence was not to be believed.

12. The lioness's roar was heard far and wide.

13. A hero's exploits will always be remembered.

14. The dwarf's arm was as short as that of a child.

15. The wife's quarters were well planned and well built.

16. The duchess's jewel has been found by the police.

17. I dislike to hear the goose's cackling.

## 15 所有格形容词 Possessive adjectives

人称代词的所有格的两种用法：

1. 放在名词之前作为形容词用者，如 *my*、(*thy*)、*his*、*her*、*its*、*our*、*your*、*their*；*My* book、*her* book、*our* books。

2. 作为代词用者，如 *mine*、(*thine*)、*his*、*hers*、*its*、*ours*、*yours*、*theirs*（既系代词，故其后不用名词）。

例：a. This book is *mine*. That house is *theirs*.

b. My horse and *yours* (= your horse) are both tired.

c. *That* horse of *yours* is tired.

注意：所有格不能与 *a* (*n*)、*the*、*some*、*any*、*no*、*this*、*that* 等词连用，故有 (c) 例的表现法，因 *That your* horse 不是英语的语法，必须将所有格放在名词之后，而用 *of* 与名词相联结，但此时的所有格，系一种代词了。

### 练习题 26

A. 将括号中的代词用为适当的所有格：

1. That manner of (you) is not as good as it should be.

2. The book which you are reading is (I) , not (he) .

3. (I) horse is not so strong as (you) or (he) .

4. (He) cow gives much more milk than (I) or (you) .

5. What he calls (he) property is not really (he) .

6. The poet prefers (he) own poem to (you) or (she) .

7. That house of (they) is very handsomely furnished.

8. (I) house and (you) were built on precisely the same plan.

9. (She) wishes are of no importance compared with (you) .

10. That face of (she) looks more wrinkled than (I) .

11. I wish I had seen that letter of (you) before I posted (I) .

B. 下列句子有错误者，改正之：

1. He is a my friend.

2. That your shilling is very old.

3. This his coat is well made.

4. We will lend you those our books.

5. Her that manner surprised me.

6. May I borrow some your magazines?

## 16 反身代词 Reflexive Pronouns

反身代词虽可用为动词或介词的目的语，但不可用为主语：

例：I did it **myself**. (正)

**Myself** did it. (误) (将 **myself** 改为 I 或在其前加上 I)

反身代词虽不能为动词的主语，但可用来加强代词或名词的意义。

例：I *myself* did it.

She is beauty *itself*.

### 练习题 27

下列句子有错误者，改正之：

1. Himself and she hurt themselves badly in falling over that rock.

2. You must have seen him; myself saw him distinctly.

3. Bees provide their selves with honey against the winter.

4. He sold umbrella, and has bought his self a new one.

5. The girl is seated in the field: herself brought the chair.

6. They, not himself, paid the penalty of his faults.

7. Both herself and Mary were wandering in the woods.

8. John his self will pay for the book that he lost.

9. Why do they injure their self in that way?

10. War, as himself avowed, was necessary to his hold on France.

11. They dressed themselves out in all their best clothes.

12. Jane was waiting for them: himself saw them go in.

13. He never acted thus when himself was in office.

14. That is his book: he paid for it himself.

15. Himself and Smith witnessed it.



## 17 将来时态 The Future Tenses

### (1) 单纯将来

I	shall	you will go	He	Will go
We			They	

注意：you will go 单复同形，但在古文则单数形为 Thou wilt go. 又第二人称的疑问形有二，只表示将来时，须将 will 换为 shall，含有意志之时方用 will。

shall 用于第二、三人称时，则有发言者的意志、威胁、承诺、决心、希望、决定等意，will 用于第一人称则有意志之意。

如“He shall (= I will let him) live.”。

### 练习题 28

A. 用 will 或 shall 填入空白处：

1. I` `` be glad to see you.
2. We` `` be obliged to go home early.
3. I` `` help you whenever you wish.
4. I promise that he` `` not trouble you again.
5. You` `` be kind enough to take your seat.
6. We` `` miss our train, I fear.
7. I must hurry or I` `` be late.
8. Robert` `` have as much as is good for him.

9. Arthur` ```` disobey me in spite of all I can do.
10. Arthur` ```` obey you, I am sure.
11. Arthur` ```` obey me, or I` ```` punish him.
12. If we reject these offers, we` ```` regret it.
13. I` ```` no longer endure his insolence.
14. ```` they return in season for dinner?
15. I` ```` have to excuse you this time, I suppose.
16. You` ```` not leave this room until you have confessed.
17. I` ```` gladly see you at any time.
18. He` ```` give you the money, I feel confident.
19. He` ```` give you the money, or I` ```` have nothing do with him.
20. ```` we allow them to do as they please?

B. 用 will 或 shall 填于空白处, 并用 will 或 shall 写出答句:

1. ```` you promise to do better?
2. ```` you make any promise if he insists?
3. ```` we miss our train?
4. ```` we go? Just ask us!
5. ```` I go now? I fear I am wearying you.
6. ```` I tell you what I really think?
7. ```` you call a cab for me, if you please?
8. ```` you be glad to see him?
9. ```` you see me if I call at one o'clock.
10. ```` we see you this evening?

11. ````you be kind enough to open that door, or````?

12. ````you miss your brother?

13. ````we wait here, or````you relent and let us go with you?

14. ````we allow this evil to continue?

15. ````you forgive me?

C. will 或 shall 有用错者，改正之：

1. A few years hence we will find him very much improved.

2. It shall go hard with our generals, if they are misjudged by their fellow-countrymen.

3. We expect that the Government shall do what is necessary.

4. If the rain falls in time, we and our countrymen shall not suffer.

5. Who can tell what shall be the greatest event in the new century?

6. I feel assured that I will not be misunderstood.

7. The money has been stolen, but the owner thinks that he shall get it back in a day or two.

8. Great dangers are before us, unless it shall be found possible to demand a remedy.

9. This has happened before, and no doubt we will see it happen again.

10. So long as the army is mismanaged, we will never be prepared when the time of danger comes.

(2) 将来进行时 (The Future Continuous Tense)

*shall (will) be taking*

此时制不用被动态。

此时制用来叙述未完成的动作而仍要继续者。

例：This time tomorrow, I shall be travelling home.

此句意为明天此时旅行不会终了，而仍要继续旅行，即“明日此时我将在回家的途上”。

## 练习题 29

将括号中的词用为将来进行时：

1. In ten minutes the train (cross) the new bridge.
2. This time next week the new lift (work) .
3. You (rest) all next week?
4. Next summer we (construct) the new road.
5. I cannot come tomorrow because I (shoot) .

## 18 现在时态 The Present Tenses

I. 单纯现在时态 (The present tense simple) 可用来表示:

- a. 现在的动作: See! The bird *flies*.
- b. 永久不变之真理: The earth *goes* round the sun.
- c. 习惯的行为, 反复的事件: He *teaches* English. She *keeps* her word. The boy *goes* to school everyday.
- d. 将来时的代用: (1) I *leave* here tomorrow. (2) (在表示时及条件的副词节中) I shall not start *if it rains*. Please tell him so *when he comes*. 但在名词节时则仍须用将来时: I do not know *if it will rain*. I cannot tell *when he will come*.
- e. 现在完成时的代用: (say、tell、hear、be told、write、read、find 等) My father *writes* (= has written) to say that I may go to Tainan. I *hear* (= have heard) that he will soon be married.
- f. 过去事件用现在时来叙述, 使其跃如眼前, 故又称为历史的现在 (Historical Present), 或剧的现在 (Dramatic Present)。

Caesar *leaves* there, *crosses* the Rubicon, and *enters* Italy with 5,000 men.

II. 现在进行时态 (Present continuous tense) 用来表示:

1. 现在进行中的事: He *is reading* a book.
2. 以现在为中心而反复继续的行为: He *is writing* a book on electricity.
3. 动作之开端: She *is dying*.
4. 将来时的代用: He *is coming* to see me tonight.

5. 以现在为中心的习常行为: *My father is always smoking.*

### 练习题 30

将括号中的动词用为单纯现在或现在进行时:

1. The train (leave) the station at 4 p. m. every day.
2. At present I (stay) with my aunt.
3. Every morning I (stay) in bed.
4. The sun (rise) in the morning.
5. The monks (hold) a service now.
6. These tourists (travel) round the world.
7. The Chinese (inhabit) a large region.
8. Hark! The bells of the temple (ring) .
9. Letters (write) very quickly on a typewriter.
10. He (play) tennis better than you do.
11. They (have) a big sale on shoes at Macy's today.
12. John often (stay) in a hotel when he (come) to town, but tonight he (stay) with us.
13. John seems very busy, I guess he (prepare) his English lesson.
14. The sun always (rise) in the east.
15. The sun (rise) in the east now.
16. The rain (fall) heavily today.
17. Listen! The clock (strike) .
18. This afternoon the children (play) in the park.
19. This careless child (lose) his clothes too often.

20. Our side (lose) in this game.

21. When you (leave) for Europe? I understand that Mr. Smith (leave) next Saturday.

22. My mother (come) to see me next week.

23. I (go) to the seashore on my vacation.

24. On what train your friends (arrive) ?

25. At present they (build) many new highways in New York State.

## 19 过去时态 The Past Tenses

1. 过去时表示过去某时发生之事，其动作在当时已完成終了。
2. 过去进行时则表示在过去某时未完成未終了之行为，故此进行时，常与其他过去时连用。

如：While I *was walking* to work, I met Mr. Smith, I *was studying* when he came.

### 练习题 31

A. 将括号中的词用为过去时或过去进行时：

1. As I (walk) home yesterday, I (meet) a beggar who (ask) me for some money.
2. It (rain) hard when I (leave) home this morning.
3. John (fall) and (hurt) himself when he (ride) his bicycle yesterday.
4. At five o'clock, when I (call) at the Smith's home, they (have) dinner.
5. When the world war (break) out, John (live) in Venice.
6. We (sit) on our front porch when Mr. Smith (drive) his new car.
7. As Mary (get) off the bus, she (slip) and (break) her leg.
8. Smith (drive) at about forty miles an hour when the accident (happen) .



9. Your telegram (come) just as I (leave) my home.

10. John (talk) with his boss when I last (see) him.

B. 将括号中的动词用为过去时或过去进行时:

(study) I` `` `very hard last night.

I` `` `last night when you called me on the phone.

(take) While John` `` `his English lesson, his friend arrived.

John` `` `his English lesson yesterday.

(sleep) I` `` `soundly when the phone rang.

I` `` `soundly last night.

(blow) The wind` `` `hard when I came to work this morning.

The wind` `` `hard this morning.

(play) Mary` `` `the piano when I arrived.

Mary` `` `the piano for her guests.

## 20 将来完成时态 The Future Perfect Tense

*shall (will) have taken.*

此时制用来叙述一种在将来某时发生的动作，但此动作到该时将被认为是过去的已完成的动作。

例：By next September we *shall have visited* thirty different countries.

这句话意为：到了九月十五号时，访问三十个国家的动作将是过去的、完了的事了。

We *shall have finished* all the exercises in this book by June. (到了六月，所有本书中的练习将是做完的了。)

### 练习题 32

A. 将括号中的动词用为适当的时态 (Tense) :

1. By this time next month all the roses (die) .

2: He says that before he leaves he (see) every show in town.

3. When you are my age, you (learn) much about the weakness of man.

4. A century from now, wars, I hope, (become) a thing of the past.

B. 将下列句子改为未来完成时态，关于时的副词亦须作必要的更改：

例： | In 1950 he had worked in that office for 2 years.

In 1958 he will have worked in that office for 10 years.

1. By last April he had read most of the books in the library.
2. He has almost recovered from his illness now.
3. He had finished his work at eight o'clock.
4. By the end of last year he had learnt to speak French well.
5. At this time last week we had just arrived.
6. He is paying for his house now.
7. The concert starts at six o'clock.
8. In 1940 they had been married ten years.
9. He has been living in this house for six months now.
10. The games had finished when we arrived.

## 21 现在完成时态 The Present Perfect Tense

A. (1) 现在完成时指过去的行为，而其结果及于现在者，即过去的动作成为经验或完成之状态以及于现在，又过去的状态一直继续至现在者，皆用现在完成时来表示。

- a.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I have written a letter.} \\ \text{I have read the book already.} \end{array} \right.$  (完成状态)

(此时常用 *already*、*just*、*now*、*yet*、*not yet* 等副词以使意义明了)

- b.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I have seen her many times.} \\ \text{Have you ever seen a warship?} \end{array} \right.$  (经验，反复)

(此时多用 *ever*、*never*、*often*、*once*、*seldom*、*before* 等副词)

- c.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I have lived here for five years.} \\ \text{He has been upstairs all this while.} \end{array} \right.$  (继续)

(此时常用 *all*、*for*、*these*、*since*、*from*、*how long* 等所诱导的副词短语或 *always* 等词以使意明确)

(2) 现在完成时不能与表示过去的副词共用，但 *today*、*this week*、*this month*、*this year*、*lately*、*recently* 等则可。

(3) 疑问副词 *when* 不可与现在完成时共用，但用为连词时则可。

如 I shall go out *when* I have written these letters.

但在强意的问句时，疑问副词的 *when* 亦可用。

如 *When have* I said so? (= I have never said so.)

## B. 现在完成进行时 (The present perfect continuous)

此时制仅表示过去到现在的行动的继续而已。

注意：以下各种动词不可用为进行时：

状态动词 be、resemble、stand、have、possess、need、belong 等。

知觉动词 see、hear、smell 等。

感情动词 love、like、hate、fear 等。

知能动词 know、remember、understand、suppose、believe 等。

### 练习题 33

将括号中的动词，视需要用为过去或现在完成时态：

1. I (visit) Sun Moon Lake many times.
2. He (go) to Tainan last week.
3. I (read) that book several times.
4. I first (read) it while I was on my vacation last summer.
5. Smith (have) little experience in teaching that subject.
6. John (fall) as he was crossing the street.
7. I (see) Mary a few days ago.
8. I (try) that restaurant again and again but I do not like the food there.
9. When I was a boy I often (go) fishing with my father.
10. I (complete) writing my exercise at last.
11. I hear that you (give) up the idea of studying German.

12. He (start) to study English this month.

13. I never (be) to America.

14. Mr. Smith is not in his office. I suppose he (go) out of town.

15. I (be) in Taichung many times.

16. We are now living on 72nd Street where we (live) for two years.

17. We (live) in Washington from 1925 to 1930.

18. You are very late. I (wait) a whole hour for you.

19. I myself (study) English steadily since 1950.

20. Up to the present time, I never (be) farther west than Chicago.

21. Smith (join) our English class two weeks ago. He says that he (study) English during 1952 and 1954, but not (study) since then.

## 22 过去完成时态 The Past Perfect Tense

此时制用来叙述某过去事件发生前所发生之事件，即在过去有两件事发生时，先发生者用过去完成时，但若依事件发生之先后叙述时，则两者皆用过去时亦可。过去完成时不可单独使用，须与其他过去时共用。

例：German *was* prepared for war by 1914. In the previous years she *had made* many secret alliances. She also *had developed* a very strong army.

Nobody *knew* where Smith *had gone*.

### 练习题 34

将括号中的动词斟酌用为过去或过去完成时态：

1. When I (call) for John, his mother told me that five minutes before.

2. When I (ask) what he (do) with the book, he refused to answer me.

3. John assured me that he (look) everywhere for the letter.

4. I saw clearly that we (take) the wrong road.

5. By the time we (reach) there all the other guests (leave) .

6. When we (reach) home, we found that someone (break) into our home and (steal) some of our furniture.

7. When they (open) the chest, the men found that someone already (take) the map.

8. How did your chief find out that you (come) to work late?

9. The message (arrive) five minutes after John (leave) the house.

10. John (spend) much time when he was in Europe visiting the places where he (stay) as a boy.



## 23 完成进行时态 The Perfect Continuous Tenses

Present perfect continuous: I *have been taking*.

Past perfect continuous: I *had been taking*.

Future perfect continuous: I shall *have been taking*.

此三种时态，被动态 (Passive Voice) 是不用的。

此三种时态的用法，与现在完成、过去完成、将来完成三者相同，不过指继续长时期的动作。

### 练习题 35

视情形需要，将括号中的动词用为现在、过去或将来完成进行时态：

1. I am sure that this youth (smoke) , for I can smell tobacco.
2. Most people feel hungry when they (work) hard.
3. These girls (bathe) , for they are still carrying their towels.
4. After I (read) for a long time , my eyes become tired.
5. What you (do) all the morning?
6. I (visit) my friend in hospital.
7. Your business (prosper) lately?
8. Yes, it (make) good profits.
9. Next week this building (stand) for a hundred years.

10. By December I (attend) school for ten years.

11. The rider felt stiff and sore because he (travel) all day.

12. A leak was discovered in the hull when the vessel (sail) for a few hours.

### 练习题 36

将括号中的动词用为适当的时态 (Tense) :

1. Friends who (tell) us the truth are often less appreciated than those who (flatter) us.

2. I (see) Helen last Saturday but not (see) her since then.

3. Have you any idea what she (do) when I (call) her tomorrow?

4. He says the trial (take) place tomorrow.

5. When we came in, John obviously (feel) the effects of the wine he (drink) with us earlier.

6. We moved slowly but on every side the taxis (speed) along.

7. On the stage there was a magician who (do) tricks as we entered.

8. Today we (witness) a struggle between two ideologies.

9. The newspaper states that the police (capture) the kidnapper at last.

10. By the time of the summer the hardest part of our work (be) completed.

11. What you (do) when I called you last night?

12. The minute when John came in, Henry (leave) .

13. He (be) appointed last June and (be) in charge ever since.

14. While living in France, we often (take) trips by car to the Riviera.

15. When you (go) on your vacation next month?

16. We (have) very hot weather at present. It not (rain) in several weeks.

17. The Civil War (begin) in 1861, and it (end) in 1865 but not before many thousands of men (meet) their death.

18. What Mary (do) when you telephoned her?

19. She said that she (leave) before the news came.

20. I (take) a cold bath every morning during the summer.

## 24 时之一致 Sequence of Tenses

I. 主句的动词为现在或将来时态时，从句的动词任何时态皆可用：

I know that he *was*, *is*, or *will* be angry.  
I shall soon hear what he *says*, *said*, or *will* say.

II. 主句的动词为过去时态时，从句的动词必须为过去时态：

He says he will bring the money tomorrow.  
He *said* he *would* bring the money tomorrow.

破例：a. 若从句的动词指的是普遍的真理或现在仍然存在的习惯或事实，则仍用现在时态。

He *was* taught that the earth *moves* round the sun.

We *were* informed that his character *is* good.

b. 在 *than* 或 *as much as* 之后的从句，其动词任何时制皆可。

He *liked* you better than (or as much as) he *likes*, or *liked* or *will* like me.

c. 形容词从句可用任何时态。

He *did* not himself see the event that he *has described* so well in the book which I *was reading* yesterday and which I *shall read* again tomorrow.

d. 副词从句若其所指之时异于主句者，则任何时态皆可用。

I *did* not *hear* the story because I *do* not *listen* to gossip.

e. 表示目的的副词从句中的 *may*，则必须依主句的时态而变化。

I am doing it so that you *may* benefit.  
I did it so that you *might* benefit.

### 练习题 37

A. 将下列句子改为过去时:

1. She says she cannot do this work.
2. I think I shall finish this report by five o'clock.
3. The weatherman predicts that it will rain tomorrow.
4. She says her name is Smith.
5. She complains that she has a headache.
6. He promises that the error will not occur again.
7. I do not think I can complete this report on schedule.
8. The students think they are making sufficient progress.
9. He hopes he can get there on time.
10. I don't think I shall see you again.
11. I am certain that the price will go up soon.
12. He tells me that prices are sure to rise.
13. She says she has lived here three years.
14. The jury declares that the prisoner is guilty.
15. They feel sure the battle will be won before nightfall.
16. I wonder what changes the new chairman will introduce.
17. He swears he has never seen the man before.
18. She says she may be late.

19. He says he is taking English lessons from Miss Smith.

20. He says that by next Tuesday he will have worked here two years.

B. 将括号中错误的词划去：

1. They told me he (will, would) be back tomorrow.

2. She said she (does not, did not) feel well today.

3. He said that he (has been, had been) a soldier for two years.

4. He promised he (will, would) come to the lesson.

5. I asked him what time it (is, was) .

6. The paper says it (will, would) rain tomorrow.

7. I didn't know you (can, could) speak English.

8. He said he (has, had) found his book.

9. They told us they (are, were) ready to shoot.

10. She promised faithfully she (will, would) try to do better work.

11. Did he say he (will, would) call again?

12. They thought they (have, had) found the thief but they (are, were) mistaken.

## 25 直接叙述和间接叙述 Direct and Indirect Narration

改直接叙述为间接叙述应注意事项。

1. 关于时态 (Tense) , 应遵守时之一致的各项规则。
2. 须酌量改变代词。但传达动词的主语和被传达文的主语同为 I 时, 则无变更。

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He said, "I will come to you. " } \\ \text{He said that he would come to me.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I said, "I am wrong. " } \\ \text{I said that I was wrong.} \end{array} \right.$

3. 被传达文为疑问文时, 应将传达动词 say 改为 ask 或 inquire, 同时将疑问句法改为陈述句法。

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He said to me, "Where are you staying? " } \\ \text{He asked me where I was staying.} \end{array} \right.$

但若疑问文中没有疑问词如 where、when、how 等时, 则须用 if 或 whether 等词诱导名词节。可用 yes 或 no 作答时用 if, 否则用 whether。

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He said to me, "Did you see my dog? " } \\ \text{He asked me if I had seen his dog.} \end{array} \right.$

4. 被传达文为命令文时, 则将传达动词 say 变为 tell、ask、order、bid 等, 而将被传达文的动词变为不定词 (Infinitive) 。

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I said to them, "Don't make such a noise. " } \\ \text{I told them not to make such a noise.} \end{array} \right.$

5. 被传达文为感叹文时，则将传达动词 say 改为 cry、shout 等表示惊叹的动词，或用 very。

例： { He said, "How glad I am! "  
He said that he was *very* glad.  
  
{ He said, "*Hurrah!* My friends, we have won. "  
He *shouted with joy* and told his friends that they had won.

6. 其他关于时间、场所等的副词，有时亦须看情形而做适当的改变，如 now、ago 变为 then、before; here、there 变为 there、here 等。（参考）直接叙述和间接叙述时间之关系列表如下：

She said,	直接叙述
	"I <i>read</i> a book. " (现在→过去)
	"I <i>am reading</i> a book. " (现在→过去)
	"I <i>have read</i> a book. " (现在完成→过去完成)
	"I <i>have been reading</i> a book. " (现在完成→过去完成)
	"I <i>read</i> a book. " (过去→过去完成)
	"I <i>was reading</i> a book. " (过去→过去完成)
	"I <i>had read</i> a book. " (不变)
	"I <i>had been reading</i> a book. " (不变)
	"I <i>shall read</i> a book. " (shall→should)
	"I <i>shall be reading</i> a book. " (shall→should)
	"I <i>shall have read</i> a book. " (shall→should)



“I *shall have been reading* a book. ”  
(shall→should)

间接叙述

She said that	{	she <i>read</i> a book.
		she <i>was reading</i> a book.
		she <i>had read</i> a book.
		she <i>had been reading</i> a book.
		she <i>had read</i> a book.
		she <i>had been reading</i> a book.
		she <i>had read</i> a book.
		she <i>had been reading</i> a book.
		she <i>should read</i> a book.
		she <i>should be reading</i> a book.
		she <i>should have read</i> a book.
she <i>should have been reading</i> a book.		

但从从句所表现之事为永不变之真理，或习常行为而现在仍然者，则仍保留原来时态，又历史的事实者亦然，如“He said that Columbus discovered America in 1492.”中之 *discovered*，不可改为 *had discovered*。

直接叙述的 *shall* 和 *will*，在间接叙述中不管人称之如何，仍援用原来者，但在无意志的场合，则依人称而变化亦可。如

He says to me, “If you work hard, you *will* succeed. ”

He tells me that if I work hard, I *shall* succeed.

被传达文为条件文时，仅用现在时态者依时之一致须有改变，其他用过去时态者则无须变动。

例： { He said, “If you come I *shall* see you. ”  
He said that if they came he *would* see them.

{ He said, “If you came I *should* see you?  
He said that if they came he *would* see them.

## 练习题 38

A. 将下列句子改为间接叙述:

1. The sailor said, "The tide is ebbing. "
2. The teacher said, "The class will not be punished. "
3. The librarian said, "The book has been taken out. "
4. The newspaper said, "A serious fire has occurred. "
5. "Anybody can ride a bicycle, "he said.
6. "Nobody may leave this room, "said the detective.
7. The committee reported, "Shansi is suffering from a drought. "
8. "The town was destroyed by an earthquake, "said the historian.
9. "James works in the University, "said his father.
10. The farmers said, "A shower will help the crops. "
11. The secretary said to the manager, "Somebody is waiting to see you. "
12. The dentist told his patient, "Several of your teeth are decayed. "
13. The guide said to the explorer, "We shall have to camp near the river. "
14. The lady said to the cook, "There are four people coming to dinner. "
15. The reporter said to the editor, "I have not been able to get an interview. "

B. 将下列语句改为直接叙述:

1. They told us that we were on the wrong road.

2. I said to him that he was wrong.
3. We said to them that we had enjoyed ourselves.
4. We heard you say that you did not understand.
5. I told them that their roof would leak.

C. 将下列问句改为间接叙述, 用在 He asked her...之后:

1. Where are you going? → He asked her where she was going.

2. What are you doing?
3. How are you?
4. When do you have tea?
5. Which is the best way?
6. Are you going to the pictures?
7. Why don't you take more trouble?
8. Is your sister still going to school?
9. Is this work important?
10. When does the next train leave?
11. Did you tell him the whole story?
12. Have you been to Sun Moon Lake?
13. How far is it from Taichung?
14. Did you have a pleasant holiday?
15. May I have some milk in my tea?

D. 将下列句子改为直接叙述:

1. He asked me at what time I got up. → He said to me, "At what time do you get up? "

2. They asked us if we could hear clearly.

3. The children asked their mother if they could stay up late.

4. They asked me which was the best hotel.

5. We asked the monks if many people visited the temple.

6. I asked her if I could get her a chair.

7. I asked the stranger if he spoke English.

8. They asked the coast guard where the ship was going.

9. We asked the policeman if we might stand there.

10. They inquired where the nearest telephone was.

E. 将下列直接命令句改为间接命令句，用在 He told him 或 He asked him 之后：

1. Leave that book alone. → He told him to leave that book alone.

2. Don't do that.

3. Write those words in your notebook.

4. Put that pen in your desk.

5. Tell that boy to put his topee on.

6. Give that book to me.

7. Be quick!

8. Don't let the snake get away.

9. Take of those cups.

10. Drive more carefully.

11. Lend me fifty cents.

12. Don't be fooled by them.

13. Come to the office at once.

14. Stop that man.
15. Buy a ticket for me.
16. Don't let that door bang.
17. Send that coolie to me.
18. Stop making that noise.
19. Throw the ball to Chang.
20. Wait a moment.

## 26 条件句 Conditional Sentences

条件句有三种，即将来、现在、过去三者，每种皆由条件部和结论部而构成：条件句的动词用虚拟式（Subjunctive Mood）。

（1）将来——表示可能之事：条件从句（if-clause）用现在时，结句用将来时。

If it *is* (*be*) true, I *shall be* glad.

If it *rains* (*rain*) tomorrow, he *will not* come.

注：括号中的形式，只在文语及慎重的文体中使用。

（2）现在：表示事实现在并未如此者 if-clause 用过去时，结句用 **should**、**would**、**could**、**might** + 动词原形。

If you *studied* hard, you *would learn* English quickly. 实际含有“事实上你并不用功，所以你不会学得快”之意。

（3）过去：表示过去事实并未如此者 if-clause 用过去完成时，结句用 **should**、**would**、**could**、**might**、**must** + **have** + 过去分词。

If you *had studied* hard, you *would have learned* English quickly.

此外还有一种虚拟式，系在 if-clause 中用 **should** 或 **would** 者。

If  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{I} \\ \text{you} \\ \text{it} \end{pmatrix}$  **should** + 动词原形（无意志之时）

If  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{I} \\ \text{you} \end{pmatrix}$  **would** + 动词原形（有意志之时）

| it |

此种条件句，用来假设未来或现在极可怀疑之事。

If you *should meet* him, please give him this book.

If you *would succeed*, you would have to do your best.

注意二：条件句不一定以 if 开始，有时条件句常可省去。例如：

*Were I rich*, I *would* buy that book. (= If I were rich, ...)

I *should* like to go with you (if I could) .

### 练习题 39

A. 将括号内的动词用为虚拟式的将来、现在、过去式：

例：If John (study) hard, he certainly (succeed) .

a. If John studies hard, he will certainly succeed.

b. If John studied hard, he would certainly succeed.

c. If John had studied hard, he would certainly have succeeded.

1. If I (have) the money, I (buy) that suit.

2. If Mary (study) her lessons well, she surely (pass) .

3. If Mr. Smith (call) me on the telephone, I (speak) to him.

4. If I (get) a holiday, I (return) to my native place.

5. If I (see) her, I (give) her your message.

6. If I (find) the book, I (give) it to you.

7. If you (turn) out the lights, we (be) in the dark.

8. If you (save) your money, you (be) able to go on a vacation.

9. If he (come) , I (see) him.

10. If I (know) the number, I (ring) up the theater.

B. 将括号中的动词用为适当的虚拟式:

1. Your head would stop aching if you (rest) .

2. If Napoleon had crossed the Channel, England (conquer) .

3. The airman (kill) if his parachute had failed.

4. Unless they hurry they (miss) the boat.

5. The hunter (shoot) the lion if he had had his rifle.

6. The streets would be dirty, if gutters not (provide) .

7. If lightning struck your house, damage (occur) .

8. If you changed your mind, I (surprise) .

9. If the dam had collapsed, the whole district (flood) .

10. The room will be cleaner if the floor (polish) .

11. If he (die) next Thursday he (bury) on Friday.

12. If he (die) last Thursday he (bury) last Friday.

13. If the sun not (rise) tomorrow everybody (surprise) .

14. If pigs (possess) wings they (fly) .

15. If the people not (warn) they (perish) in the flood last year.

C. 将下列句子缺少的部分补出, 成为完全的条件句:

1. If I were you, I` `` ``

2. If John had studied harder, he` `` ``

3. If I will drive to the country on Sunday, I` `` ``

4. If I had been in your place, I` `` ``



5. If Mary works hard, she`~~~`
6. If you had asked me, I`~~~`
7. I would gladly have lent you the money if`~~~`
8. If I had the time, I`~~~`
9. If I had known it was going to rain, I`~~~`
10. If it doesn't rain next Sunday, we`~~~`

D. 依例所示，完成下列句子：

(现在) 例：I don't have a car, but if I had one I would (should) drive to Sun Moon Lake on my vacation.

1. I am not in Shanghai now, but if I`~~~`
2. I don't like to swim, but if I`~~~`
3. I can't typewrite well, but if I`~~~`
4. I have to work, but if I`~~~`
5. He doesn't have much free time, but if he`~~~`

(过去) 例：I didn't have a car last winter, but if I had had one I would (should) have driven to Taipei on my vacation.

1. There was not a doctor present at the time of the accident, but if there`~~~`
2. I didn't know your telephone number, but if I`~~~`
3. John didn't study before taking his examination, but if he`~~~`
4. I wasn't in her position, but if I`~~~`
5. I couldn't speak English at that time, but if I`~~~`
6. He didn't study English before he came here, but if he`~~~`
7. He didn't wear his overcoat, but if he`~~~`

8. He didn't come to class on time, but if he`´´´´

9. I was in Venice last winter, but if I`´´´´

10. I couldn't afford to take a vacation last summer, but i  
f I`´´´´

## 27 Wish 后面的虚拟式 The Subjunctive After “Wish”

(1) wish 后面的从句常用虚拟式，以表示所愿望者并非事实。

I wish I *had* wings, and *could* fly to you. (现在)

I wish I *had been* there. (过去)

I wish it *would* stop raining. (将来)

(2) wish 后面的从句为 I wish you would (n't) ...之形时，则系客气的命令句法。如：

Wait for me!

*I wish you would* wait for me.

Don't make so much noise.

*I wish you wouldn't* make so much noise.

### 练习题 40

A. 将括号中的动词用为虚拟式：

1. I wish I (own) an automobile.
2. John wishes he (be) a mechanical engineer.
3. I wish I (go) to the movie with you last night.
4. I wish I (have) today off. I'd go swimming.
5. I wish I (have) yesterday off. I'd have gone swimming.
6. I wish you (live) nearer me.
7. I wish I (be) in Shanghai now.

8. I wish I (can) help you but I can't.
9. Mary wishes she (can) drive a car.
10. I wish, when a boy, I (study) Latin instead of Greek.

B. 依 (2) 例所示, 将下列句子用在 I wish you would (n't) 之后:

1. Come back in an hour.
2. Miss Smith, please write this letter right away.
3. Write your exercises in ink.
4. Don't write your composition in pencil.
5. Wait a few minutes.

## 28 Should 的特别用法

should 表示“义务”即应该之意时，通用于三种人称，常含有否定之意。

现在	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I } \textit{should study} \text{ tonight. (but I probably shall not)} \\ \text{John } \textit{should obey} \text{ his parents. (but he never does)} \\ \text{You } \textit{should not smoke} \text{ cigarettes. (but you do)} \end{array} \right.$
过去	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He } \textit{should have studied} \text{ before his examination. (but he did not)} \\ \text{You } \textit{should not have sent} \text{ that cable to Paris. (but you did)} \\ \text{You } \textit{should have sent} \text{ it to London. (but you didn't)} \end{array} \right.$

### 练习题 41

将括号中的动词用为 should 的现在或过去：

1. I (go) to Chicago next week.
2. I (go) to Chicago last week.
3. John (do) his homework more carefully if he wishes to pass.
4. I (call) Mr. Smith yesterday, but I forgot.
5. Everyone (do) his part to make the program a success.
6. You (begin) the study of English a long time ago.
7. You (prepare) your exercises every night, if you wish to make good progress.

8. You not (work) so hard. You (take) a vacation every once in a while.

9. You (answer) that letter as soon as you received it.

10. You (ask) permission before you took that book.

11. You (notify) the police as soon as your purse was stolen.

12. You not (smoke) so much. It is bad for your health.

13. You (hear) the President's speech last night. It was very good.

## 29 Ought to

ought 的用法和前项的 should 同，两者常可通用，但 ought 需接有 to 的不定词。

注意 ought 的过去式，系将其后的不定词变为完形，绝不是加 had 在 ought 之前。

现在  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{I ought to} \\ o \\ \text{I should} \end{array} \right] \text{study tonight. (but I probably shall not)}$

过去  $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{You ought to have prepared your homework before coming to class. (but you didn't)} \\ \text{I ought to have telephoned Mr. Smith this morning. (but I forgot to do so)} \end{array} \right]$

### 练习题 42

用 ought 于下列句中，并作必需的改动：

1. I` `` (stay) at home and study tonight.
2. You` `` (go) to the opera with us last night. It was very good.
3. You` `` not (work) so hard. You` `` (take) a vacation.
4. John` `` not (smoke) so much.
5. You` `` not (send) that cable to paris. You` `` (send) it to London.
6. You` `` (ask) permission before leaving the room.

7. You` `` `` (notify) your teacher if you could not come to class.

8. John` `` `` (study) harder if he wishes to pass.

9. I` `` `` (visit) my friend who is sick in the hospital.

10. I` `` `` (stay) at home tonight and study for my examination.

11. I` `` `` not (drink) so much coffee. It is bad for my nerves.

12. I` `` `` (begin) to study English a long time ago.



## 30 Should 和 have to

should 和 have to 同表示“义务”，但 should 常含否定之意，而 have to 则为肯定。

I *had to* work last night. (I worked)

I *should* have worked last night. (but I didn't work)

### 练习题 43

看情形之需要，用 Should 或 have to 于空白处，并作其他必需的变动：

1. I` `` (call) Mr. Smith yesterday, but I forgot to do so.
2. I am sorry that I am so late for our appointment, but I` `` (go) to the bank before I came here.
3. I am sorry I couldn't visit you last night, but I` `` (work) very late.
4. I really` `` (study) my English lesson tonight, but I am so tired that I think I shall go home and go to bed.
5. John` `` (take) his examination last June, but he was away on his vacation at the time.
6. I could not come to my English class yesterday because I` `` (attend) an important committee meeting.
7. I shall also be unable to attend class next Saturday because I` `` (attend) another meeting on that day.
8. I` `` (go) shopping this afternoon, but I think I shall wait until I am not so busy.

9. I` `` (write) this letter several days ago, but it entirely slipped my hand.

10. I wanted to go to the movie last night, but I` `` (stay) at home and prepare my English lesson.

## 31 助动词的特别用法——避免重复 Special Use of Auxiliary Verbs—Avoidance of Repetition

A. 两个句子可用 *too*、*so*、*either*、*neither (nor)* 结合起来，而动词的重复则可用助动词代替而避免。

例：Mary read the book. John read the book.

a. Mary read the book and John *did too*.

b. Mary read the book and *so did* John.

c. Mary didn't read the book and John *didn't either*.

d. Mary didn't read the book and *neither (nor) did* John.

### 练习题 44

将下列句子照上例结合起来：

1. He likes her. And I like her.

2. He speaks English. And his wife speaks English.

3. He can go. And we can go.

4. You are wrong. And he is wrong.

5. Mr. Wang has gone to America. And his wife has gone to America.

6. Mary left right after lunch. And John left right after lunch.

7. She is going. And you are going.

8. I like movies. And my sister likes movies.

9. She is making good progress. And her brother is making progress.

10. He will be here at ten o'clock. And I will be here at ten o'clock.

11. My watch is fast. And your watch is fast.

12. He wanted to do it. And Mr. Jones wanted to do it.

13. Smith was arrested. And his assistant was arrested.

14. He saw the accident. And I saw the accident.

15. She likes to read novels. And I like to read novels.

B. 在同样结构的句子中，第二分句中的动词因与第一分句者相同，免重复通例可用助动词代之：

例：Mary doesn't like to study, but I *do*.

I'm not going to the party, but Mary *is*.

### 练习题 45

用适当的助动词填入空白处，以使陈述完全：

1. Mary can't go tonight, but John` `` ` ` .

2. Mary will go, and so` `` ` ` Mary.

3. Mary isn't going to the party and neither` `` ` ` John.

4. Mr. Smith didn't attend the meeting, but Mr. John` `` ` ` .

5. Smith doesn't want to go and neither` `` ` ` I.

6. John has gone away and so` `` ` ` Smith.

7. John studied his lesson, but I` `` ` ` .

8. Mary went to the movies last night and I` `` ` ` too.

9. John will be in class tomorrow and so` `` Mary.
10. John will be in class and Mary` `` too.
11. She won't go, but I` ``.
12. Smith can speak English, but his wife` ``.
13. At first he thought he couldn't go, but now he thinks he` ``.
14. John says he won't go, but if we coax him, I am sure he` ``.
15. At first I didn't like living in New York, but now I` ``.
16. My wife likes living in Taipei, but I` ``.
17. I knew John wouldn't come, but I thought Mary` ``.
18. He shouldn't miss so many lessons and neither` `` his wife.

C. 回答问题时, 使用助动词作答, 即无须重复问话的内容:

- 比较: { Can you lend me five dollars?  
Yes, I *can*. (不必说 I can lend you five dollars.)
- { Have you read this book?  
No, I *haven't*. (不必说 I haven't read this book.)
- { Who discovered America?  
Columbus *did*.

## 练习题 46

依上例用适当的助动词回答下列问句:

1. Ought we to study these books carefully?

Yes, of course you` ``.

2. Does he go fishing every Sunday?

Yes, except when it rains, he`´´´.

3. Will they have enough money?

No, I don't think they`´´´.

4. Need you leave so soon? Well, no, I`´´´.

5. Will the weather be fine tomorrow?

No, if the forecast is right, it`´´´.

6. What is the capital of U. S. A? Washington`´´´.

7. Which do you think are better: these or those?

Oh, these`´´´.

8. Which ask more questions: clever children or dull children?

Clever children`´´´.

9. What caused the fire? A Spark from a train`´´´.

10. Who came in just now? Nobody`´´´.

## 32 不定词 The Infinitive

不定词的各种时态如下：

自动语气 (to take)

现在：to take; not to take.

现在进行：to be taking; not to be taking.

现在完成：to have taken; not to have taken.

现在完成进行：to have been taking; not to have been taking.

被动语气 (进行时不用)

现在：to be taken; not to be taken.

现在完成：to have been taken; not to have been taken.

注意：在使役及知觉动词（如 see、feel、make、let）后的不定词，to 可不用。

### 练习题 47

A. 用适当的现在不定词填入空白处，以使句子完全。

1. I told him` `` `` ``.
2. We warned the swimmers not` `` `` ``.
3. I saw the monkey` `` `` ``.
4. They advised us` `` `` ``.
5. The rider made his horse` `` `` ``.
6. We heard the gun` `` `` ``.

7. He forced his father` `` `` `.
8. The robbers made the peasants` `` `` `.
9. They allowed us` `` `` `.
10. The father let his son` `` `` `.
11. You ought not` `` `` `.
12. I do not want` `` `` `.
13. You must not` `` `` `.
14. He begged us` `` `` `.
15. You should not` `` `` `.

B. 1. 凡自身无现在进行时的动词，则用进行时不定词以表示之。

例：He ought *to be working*.

She seems *to be getting* better.

seem, appear, is said, is believed 等皆无进行时。

2. 现在时的不定词表示习常的行为，现在进行时的不定词则表示现在一时的行为。

The pupils ought *to do* their homework. (usually)

The pupils ought *to be doing* their homework. (now)

You seem *to read* a lot. (usually)

You seem *to be reading* a lot. (now)

C. 凡自身无过去时的动词，则用完形不定词以表示过去时。

例：You ought *to have finished* your work.

They should not *have released* him.

又用在 seem, appear, is said, is believed 等后的不定词，若其所指动作发生在主动词所指动作之先者，则不定词用完形。



例: He seems (now) *to have been hurt* (before) .

He seemed (then) *to have been hurt* (before) .

### 练习题 48

将括号中动词用为不定词的适当时态:

1. It seems (rain) every day in the summer.
2. It seems (rain) at present.
3. It seems (rain) here yesterday.
4. The rain seems (stop) already.
5. The rain seems (stop) now.
6. This child ought (send) to bed earlier at night.
7. This child ought (send) to bed earlier last night.
8. The balloon appears (descend) rapidly now.
9. The balloon is said (descend) in Poland last night.
10. He describes Hang-chow so inaccurately that I am sure he can never (visit) that place.
11. You are talking so much that you cannot (attend) to the lecture.
12. You know so little about this experiment that you cannot (attend) to the demonstration.
13. The rich banker's son who disappeared is believed (kidnap) for ransom.
14. Everybody believes the prisoners (escape) from the country.
15. Marco Polo is said (reach) Japan.
16. The rebel army is supposed (increase) since then.

17. You should not (neglect) your work last night.

18. The rainbow is said (place) in the sky as a sign.

19. The Princes in the Tower are said (murder) by their uncle.

20. I am sorry (make) that mistake yesterday.

21. This country is supposed (prepare) its army for a war next year.

22. The prisoners should not (punish) when they had confessed.

23. You ought not (swim) while the weather is so cold.

24. This building ought (finish) soon.

25. This building ought (finish) long ago.

### 33 分词 The Participles

a. 现在分词可用来叙述与主动词同时发生的事：

例：He walked along *swinging* his stick.

b. 完形现在分词（如 *having taken*）用来叙述在主动词所指动作之前发生的事。

例： *Having locked* the door, they went to bed.

c. 过去分词单独使用时，则有被动之意，故不及物动词的过去分词普通不单独使用。

例：The photographs *taken* yesterday have come out well.

d. 名词可由分词短语和其动词分开，但代词则不可。

例：The secretary, *have finished* all the letters, went home.  
e.

*Having finished* all the letters, he went home.

#### 练习题 49

A. 将括号中的动词用为适当的分词：

1. Does anybody (call) Wong live here?
2. (Start) from Venice, Marco Polo travelled to China.
3. The army, (defeat) by the enemy, ran away.
4. (Die) on 13th April, he was buried next day.
5. The (lose) money cannot be found.
6. (Arrive) at the town, we looked for a hotel.

7. I met your cousin (walk) along Chun-shan Road.
8. The burglars, (open) the safe, took away all the jewels.
9. His money all (spend) , he had to beg for a living.
10. The string (break) , my kite flew away.
11. Our plans (discover) by the enemy, we were defeated.
12. (Finish) all the work, they closed the shop.
13. A meeting (hold) , the firm decided to close.
14. She stuck the (loose) paper together.
15. I saw an aeroplane (fly) overhead.

B. 用适当的分词填入空白处:

1. He walked down the street` `` a tune.
2. The` `` man wanted to make his will.
3. The` `` tree will be cut up.
4. We heard a dog` `` somewhere.
5. The ship` `` on the rock cannot be repaired.
6. A man` `` a black hat passed by.
7. I saw a man` `` in strange clothes.
8. I caught a thief` `` my purse.
9. The news` `` by the messenger was false.
10. The grass` `` there is very green.
11. Letters` `` on a typewriter are clear.
12. A house` `` of stone is very strong.
13. I picked up a dollar note` `` in the road.

14. They found some bodies of men` `` ` by bandies.
15. The room was full of girls` `` ` merrily.
16. I received the message` `` ` by my friend.
17. What is the kind of oil` `` ` in this lamp?
18. A coolie` `` ` a heavy load passed by.
19. The wounded man lay on the ground` `` `.
20. The` `` ` points should be noted.

## 34 动名词 The Gerund

动名词的形式，完全与现在分词者同，但用法则异。

英语的动词如 enjoy、mind、stop、consider、avoid、appreciate、finish、deny、admit、risk、dislike 等，其后专用动名词而不用不定词，动名词意义上的主语，须为所有格，但名词之时则不用亦可。

### 练习题 50

A. 用一个适当的动名词填于空白处：

1. The audience enjoyed` `` to the orchestra.
2. No goods can enter the country without` `` a tax.
3. After` `` by all the other schools our team was in despair.
4. The athlete's friends are astonished at his` `` the competition.
5. By` `` over the wall the convicted escaped from prison.
6. After` `` water on the fire for three hours the firemen put it out.
7. The car upset on account of a wheel's` `` off.
8. Good advice will never prevent others from` `` mistakes.
9. He could not succeed in` `` secret.
10. Exercise is good for` `` fat.

11. This machine is capable of `` forty cans a minute.
12. Nobody succeeded in `` the puzzle.
13. The pilot could not stop the aeroplane from ``.
14. I have bought some land for the purpose of `` a cottage.
15. He spent all his time in `` himself instead of `` for the race.

B. 将括号中的动词用为动名词，注意补上必需的介词：

1. Were you successful (see) Mr. Chang?
2. Is Mary fond (swim) ?
3. He needs much more drill (spell) .
4. There's no use (telephone) Mr. Chang. He's not at home now.
5. There is little chance (see) him today.
6. That book is well worth (read) .
7. He was prevented (finish) his work by his illness.
8. It is a question (find) the right man for the position.
9. Mr. Smith always takes great pleasure (help) others.
10. We are thinking (move) to Taichun.
11. He insisted (help) me with the report.
12. He has had very little experience (teach) .
13. Mr. Smith spoke this morning (start) a new class.
14. We are all looking forward (see) Mr. Jones next week.

## 35 不定词乎 动名词乎      Infinitive or Gerund

a. 可接不定词或动名词的动词: start、begin、fail、continue、regret、like、neglect、hate、cease、love、prefer、intend、decline 等。

b. 只接不定词的动词: choose、care、refuse、forget、hope、seek、persuade、forbid 等。

c. 接动名词而需加介词的动词: think of、decide on、succeed in、persist in、insist on、despair of、repent of、refrain from、abstain from、prohibit from、prevent (keep、hinder) from。

### 练习题 51

将括号中的动词看情形之需要, 用为不定词或动名词:

1. Who can help (laugh) at his folly?
2. I shall refrain (express) my opinion.
3. I have forbidden the boy (smoke) .
4. I tried to persuade him (adopt) some other course.
5. I prohibited the boy (smoke) .
6. Help me (put) away these books.
7. He assists me (edite) the paper.
8. He persisted (refuse) my request.
9. He insisted (know) what I had done with the money.



10. I began to despair (attain) my object.
11. Men used (fight) with bows and arrows.
12. This boy is quite used (answer) the telephone.
13. I regret (say) that I am not in a position to help you.
14. He carefully avoid (give) me offence.
15. I think (go) home very soon.
16. I remember (meet) him somewhere.
17. I forget (tell) you about it.
18. They failed (find) me in the crowd.
19. The child never ceases (cry) till it has ceased (wonder) .
20. It has stopped (rain) .
21. It is no use (try) to deceive him.
22. It is not worth while (make) a trial.
23. I felt like (cry) .
24. There is no (account) for tastes.
25. A book that is worth (read) at all, is worth (read) twice.
26. Such book are not worthy (read) by students.
27. He is quite capable (do) such a thing.
28. He is content (live) in obscurity.
29. I am anxious (know) the result.
30. I am confident (get) an appointment.

## 36 介词 Prepositions

### 练习题 52

A. 用适当的介词填入空白处:

1. A wise man profits` `` ` experience.
2. I have a picture similar` `` ` yours.
3. You may rely` `` ` what he says.
4. He has no taste` `` ` music.
5. You will be sorry` `` ` your mistake.
6. His face is familiar` `` ` me.
7. His sister died` `` ` consumption.
8. He is married` `` ` my cousin.
9. The jury found him guilty` `` ` murder.
10. Take care` `` ` your health.
11. My sister is fond` `` ` fairy tales.
12. The dog is faithful` `` ` his master.
13. This house is suitable` `` ` a large farm.
14. He is always in need` `` ` money.
15. Never yield` `` ` temptations.
16. His face reminds me` `` ` his father.
17. This rose differs` `` ` that.
18. He is very different` `` ` what I expected.

19. I cannot agree` `` ` your proposal.
20. Wisdom is often compared` `` ` gold.
21. He was born` `` ` Shanghai` `` ` humble parents.
22. I prefer coffee` `` ` tea.
23. We should be thankful` `` ` god` `` ` all his gifts.
24. He was warned` `` ` the danger.
25. The old woman is weary` `` ` life.
26. Attend` `` ` your work.
27. I must inquire` `` ` the matter.
28. I congratulate you` `` ` your success.
29. I will comply` `` ` your request.
30. I am obliged` `` ` you—your kindness.

B. 补出任何省去的介词:

1. Morning school begins half past eight.
2. Christmas Day is December.
3. The western sky is very beautiful sunset.
4. I come school by bus every day.
5. The birds begin to twitter sunrise.
6. It is healthy to have a swim early the morning.
7. He was born the fourth of June the year 1894.
8. We have a half holiday Wednesday.
9. The ship left midnight.
10. Summer begins June 21st.
11. We have breakfast eight o'clock.

12. The farmers plant their rice February and July.

13. You should not work so late night.

14. It is very cold winter.

15. In the tropics it is good to rest the afternoon.

16. I will search my lost pen.

17. I suffered a painful disease.

18. I live No. 52, Hopen road.

19. We are satisfied our new servant.

C. 将错误的介词划去:

1. You don't object  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  my going there, do you?

2. Taiwan's insular position gave  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{agai} \\ \text{nst} \\ \text{for} \end{pmatrix}$  the perils of invasion. it a security

3. Men startled  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{on} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  the news of his death.

4. He was never at a loss  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  a subject to talk about.

5. Who would be  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{w} \\ \text{it} \\ \text{h} \end{pmatrix}$  the success which  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{a} \\ \text{t} \\ \text{f} \\ \text{o} \\ \text{r} \end{pmatrix}$  the wishing? satisfied it may be had

6. I am accustomed  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{with} \end{pmatrix}$  hot weather.

7. He accused the man  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{for} \end{pmatrix}$  stealing.

| of |

8.The teacher was angry  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{with} \\ \text{against} \end{array} \right]$  his student.

9.He is now ashamed  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{for} \\ \text{of} \end{array} \right]$  his conduct.

10.My brother is good  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{at} \\ \text{in} \end{array} \right]$  mathematics.

11.I divided the cake  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{in} \\ \text{into} \end{array} \right]$  four parts.

12.He divided the apple  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{in} \\ \text{into} \end{array} \right]$  half.

13.The woman was dressed  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{with} \\ \text{in} \end{array} \right]$  black.

14.The jar was full  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{with} \\ \text{of} \end{array} \right]$  oil.

15.I shall be glad to get rid  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{from} \\ \text{of} \end{array} \right]$  him.

16.He is glad  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{of} \\ \text{at} \end{array} \right]$  having received a good mark.

17.He is glad  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{with} \\ \text{of} \end{array} \right]$  the news.

18.He was found guilty  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{for} \\ \text{of} \end{array} \right]$  murder.

19.They are leaving  $\left[ \begin{array}{c} \text{to} \\ \text{for} \end{array} \right]$  America soon.

20.He took his brother  $\left[ \text{by} \right]$  the hand.

| on |

21. The girl is afraid  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{at} \\ \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  the dog.

22. The boy aimed  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{on} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  the bird.

23. He often boasted  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{for} \end{pmatrix}$  his riches.

24. He is very careful  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{for} \end{pmatrix}$  his health.

25. He came  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{on} \\ \text{by} \end{pmatrix}$  foot yesterday.

26. My mother came to Taipei  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{by} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  train.

27. Many people complain  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  the heat.

28. Our class is composed  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{by} \\ \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  twenty boys.

29. I congratulate you  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  your success.

30. The man was cured  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{from} \end{pmatrix}$  his illness.

31. He was deprived  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{from} \end{pmatrix}$  his freedom.

32. Many people have died  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{by} \\ \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  malaria.

33. My book is different  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \end{pmatrix}$  yours.

| from |

34. He failed  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{in} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  arithmetic last year.

35. He always insisted  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  his opinion.

36. He persisted  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{on} \\ \text{in} \end{pmatrix}$  his foolish ideas.

37. She is interested  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{in} \\ \text{for} \end{pmatrix}$  music.

38. She is jealous  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  her sister.

39. He lives  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{by} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  his brother's money.

40. Look  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  this beautiful picture.

41. She was married  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{with} \\ \text{to} \end{pmatrix}$  a rich man.

42. I shall pass  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{from} \\ \text{by} \end{pmatrix}$  the post office.

43. The teacher is pleased  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{with} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  me.

44. They were pleased  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{at} \\ \text{by} \end{pmatrix}$  his gentleness.

45. I prefer English  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{than} \\ \text{to} \end{pmatrix}$  geography.

46. He is very proud  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \end{pmatrix}$  his promotion.

| for |

47. He takes great pride  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{in} \\ \text{for} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  his work.

48. He repented  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{of} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  his wrongdoing.

49. He feels repentance  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{of} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  his sin.

50. Are you satisfied  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{with} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  your marks?

51. I spend a lot of time  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{on} \\ \text{for} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  it.

52. He succeeded  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{at} \\ \text{in} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  the examination.

53. This is superior  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{than} \\ \text{to} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  that.

54. I am quite sure  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{for} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  his honesty.

55. I was surprised  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{for} \\ \text{at} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  his failure.

56. We are tired  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{from} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  boiled eggs.

57. Sir, shall we write  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{with} \\ \text{in} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  ink?

58. I write  $\left( \begin{smallmatrix} \text{with} \\ \text{in} \end{smallmatrix} \right)$  a piece of chalk.

59. The teacher is sitting  $\left( \text{in} \right)$  his chair.



| on |

60. The old man sat  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{in} \\ \text{on} \end{pmatrix}$  an arm-chair.

61. Tables are usually made  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{from} \end{pmatrix}$  wood.

62. Bread is usually made  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{of} \\ \text{from} \end{pmatrix}$  wheat.

63. He arrived  $\begin{pmatrix} \text{to} \\ \text{at} \end{pmatrix}$  the station yesterday.

### 练习题 53

填入适当的介词或副词:

1. The man who spoke was standing` `` me.
2. There are others` `` me who believed that.
3. Put the two books side` `` side.
4. Everyone was listening` `` him.
5. He lived here` `` the year 1950 and 1953.
6. Their plans have completely broken` ``.
7. The soldiers came in two` `` two.
8. That book was written` `` Dickens.
9. That is a book` `` Greece and the Greek people.
10. I ran` `` the thief but couldn't catch him.
11. He who is not for us is` `` us.
12. He has written ten books and there is not a single good one` `` them.

13. The mother divided the apple` `` the two boys.
14. Who is looking` `` you?
15. Jane is very good` `` English.
16. He did that` `` my wishes.
17. I bought that` `` the butcher's.
18. He put his hand` `` his back.
19. That ought to cost sixpence or` `` the very most ninepence.
20. I hoped it would be fine but it poured` `` all afternoon.
21. My shoes are made` `` leather; beer is made` `` barley.
22. I can't get this ring` `` my finger.
23. He put the book` `` the table and sat` `` a chair.
24. He has 10,000 men working` `` him.
25. What country do you come` `` ?
26. He walked` `` the room and sat` `` his desk.
27. I shan't be away long; I'll be back` `` a year.
28. The ship rocked` `` side to side.
29. I don't like to be` `` debt; that is to be` `` danger.
30. It is cold` `` this room now that the fire has gone` `` .
31. You must make the best` `` it.
32. The petrol is all running` `` ; turn the tap` `` .
33. There are houses` `` both sides` `` the street.
34. I bought a bicycle` `` \$ 30.

35. You must try to look at it` `` my point of view.
36. I shouldn't be` `` such a hurry if I were` `` your place.
37. A friend` `` mine went with me to the Tower` `` London.
38. Help me` `` my coat.
39. I went there` `` business; I have to work` `` my living.
40. `` reply` `` your letter` `` the 15th of November, we wish to state that we are` `` need` `` a traveler` `` the London district.
41. Someone left a box` `` the garden and I fell` `` it` `` the dark.
42. I stood` `` the corner` `` the road and hundreds` `` cars went` ``.
43. Walk` `` the town` `` me and then we will come home and sit` `` the fire.
44. I have been` `` London` `` the 25th` `` July.
45. We went` `` France` `` our way` `` Spain.
46. This coat is wet. Hold it` `` the fire` `` a few minutes.
47. That is the first step` `` getting the matter cleared` ``.
48. I can't use my office` `` business` `` present; it is` `` repair.
49. I had never had a lesson` `` English until I came` `` London.
50. That stream never dries` `` even` `` the middle` `` summer.

51. Come and stay` `` us` `` a few days` `` Christmas and bring your wife` `` you.

52. I did not approve` `` his action and what he did was done` `` my consent.

53. You need not to pay` `` the money you borrowed all` `` once. The payment can be spread` `` a number` `` years.

54. Drake sailed` `` the world` `` the reign` `` Queen Elizabeth.

55. The motor boat cut` `` the water` `` a terrific speed.

56. I have been` `` America` `` six months but have had lessons only` `` April.

57. I lived quite close` `` the church; in fact next door` `` it.

58. It was somewhere` `` five o'clock` `` the afternoon when he called` `` me.

59. `` the circumstances, I will not give you any extra work.

60. You could see` `` a glance there was someone` `` home; the house was all lit` ``.

## 37 词的顺序 Word-Order

基本原则：

1. Subject + Verb.
2. Verb + Object. (动词和其宾语之间，不可有任何字句介入)
3. Adjective (participle) + Noun.
4. Antecedent + Relative. (关系代词应尽可能靠近其先行词)
5. Noun + Demonstrative Pronoun (指示代词所指之事物需先提到)
6. not...but, not only...but also, not more...than, both...and, either...or, neither...nor 之后，必须用同一的词类。

总则：凡意义上应联在一起的事，应放在一起。

### 练习题 54

下列句子若有安排不妥之处，改正之（参照副词的位置）。

1. The chair cost ten shillings on which he sat.
2. He shot the mad dog after driving it out of the house with a gun.
3. He left the house where he had slept next morning mounted on a horse.
4. He repeated those lines after he had read them only once with perfect accuracy.
5. The judge saw more clearly that the man was innocent than the jury did.

6. English is not only difficult to speak, but also to spell.
7. I am neither an ascetic in theory nor practice.
8. His daily custom is to tell anecdotes which amuse or excite the company after dinner.
9. Some paintings by lady artists, well worthy of inspection, will be exhibited tomorrow.
10. The general ordered the deserters to be shot indignantly.
11. In European languages we keep more the tongue in the bottom of the mouth.
12. He has been two years here, or perhaps it is more even than that.
13. I have read Platon's writings, who was a disciple of Socrates.
14. A gang of robbers entered the house at night armed from head to foot.
15. The daughter of a civil officer retired from India, brought up in England, seeks employment.
16. His body was found floating lifeless on the water at a short distance from where the boat was upset by a fisherman.
17. His last journey was to Madrid, whence he was never destined to return.
18. Our correspondent saw several soldiers dead or wounded riding over the battlefield.
19. *Paradise Lost* is the name of Milton's great epic poem on the loss of Paradise divided into twelve separate parts.
20. Before we pay them, let us see what work the men have done.

## 38 副词的位置 The Position of Adverbs

1. Adverb + Adjective (或 Preposition, Conjunction, Adverb)

即副词之修饰形容词、介词、连词或其他副词者，必须放在其所修饰的词类之前。

- |    |  |                |
|----|--|----------------|
| 例: | We are <i>half</i> pleased and <i>half</i> sorry.      | } 修饰形容词或<br>分词 |
|    | He seems to be <i>a good deal</i> annoyed.             |                |
|    | By that time he was <i>half</i> across the river.      | } 修饰介词         |
|    | He came <i>three hours</i> before the time.            |                |
|    | He spoke as he did <i>only</i> because he was angry.   | } 修饰连词         |
|    | He came <i>three hours</i> before the door was opened. |                |
|    | This news reached us <i>very</i> lately.               | } 修饰其他副词       |
|    | <i>Four days</i> later other news was received.        |                |

2. Intransitive Verb + Adverb. (但指不定时的时间的副词则放在动词之前)

例: He *always* laughed *heartily* at a good joke.

3. { Transitive Verb + Object + Adverb.  
Adverb + Transitive Verb.

(即在及物动词时，副词或放在动词之先，或其宾语之后)

例: He bore his losses *cheerfully*.

He *briefly* explained his meaning.

4. 有助动词之时, 则副词可放在助动词和主动词之间。

5. 句中有两个以上的副词时, 其顺序为:

Adverb of Place + Adverb of Manner + Adverb of Time.

例: You came *here quickly yesterday*.

注: 时间的副词常在句末, 但在强意时, 也有置于句首者。

6. 副词和及物动词连用时, 其宾语若为名词, 则放在宾语之前或后皆可, 但若系代词, 则必须放在副词之前。

例: Take your hat *off* 或 Take *off* your hat

The box is heavy; help me to lift *it up*. (绝不可说 lift up it)

## 练习题 55

A. 将括号中的副词放在适当地方:

1. This work is new to me. (entirely)
2. The aeroplane flew to the landing ground. (straight)
3. I went to London to see my friend. (yesterday)
4. John is coming. (tomorrow, here)
5. You came. (quickly, on Friday, here)
6. We went. (yesterday, there)
7. Take your hat. (off)
8. I want to write these notes. (down)
9. Pick it. (up)
10. Write them. (down)



11. I do that. (never)
12. I have done that. (always)
13. He will speak. (badly, always)
14. She has been here. (often)
15. They have been early before. (never, so)
16. Food like this is good for me. (always, enough)
17. The children felt happy. (soon, quite)
18. If he likes you he will ask you to stay. (perhaps, longer)
19. What I like, you like. (most, least)
20. I stay at my office working. (often, late)

B. only 的位置有错误者, 改正之:

1. We have only lost one game.
2. He only was married yesterday.
3. I am only left.
4. These people only seem to live for pleasure.
5. We only had one orange between us.
6. She only writes on one side of the paper.
7. Only I drink water.
8. John was only punished; the others were not.
9. I only have one dollar left.
10. Please lend me your newspaper; I only want to read it.

C. 副词或副词短语 (Adverbial phrase) 的位置有错误者, 改正之:

1. I can speak very well English.
2. I like very much music.
3. A beginner cannot speak correctly English.
4. The teacher explained very well the problem.
5. The hunter shot with his gun a lion.
6. He put into his pocket the money.
7. I sent to my mother a letter.
8. He learnt by heart the poem.
9. I received from my uncle a nice present.
10. He shut quickly the book.
11. I always am on time.
12. It rains seldom in the desert.
13. We went yesterday there.
14. I am not enough tall.
15. He begged the teacher to not punish him.
16. I told him many times to not get angry.
17. He will have not finished his work by tomorrow.
18. The question is asked often by student.
19. John yesterday did not come to school.
20. I won almost the game.

## 39 常易混淆的副词 Adverbs often Confused

### 练习题 56

A. 用 very 或 too 填入空白处:

1. It is` `` ` cold today.
2. He is` `` ` old to work.
3. I can't drink the milk: it's` `` ` sweet.
4. Sugar is` `` ` sweet.
5. This hat is` `` ` small for me.
6. The aeroplane flies` `` ` fast.
7. My little brother` `` ` young to go to school.
8. I felt` `` ` tired to study.
9. He is` `` ` rich: he is a millionaire.
10. The tower is` `` ` high.

B. 用 very 或 much 填入空白处:

1. I am` `` ` sorry that you cannot come.
2. I was` `` ` pleased to meet him.
3. She was` `` ` afraid of failing in English.
4. It was a` `` ` amusing game.
5. I feel` `` ` tired.
6. He plays` `` ` better than his brother.
7. His composition is` `` ` worse than yours.

8. It is a` `` ` interesting book.

9. I was` `` ` interested to hear what he said.

10. We are` `` ` astonished at the news.

C. 用 very much 或 too much 填入空白处:

1. I like oranges` `` `.

2. Thank you` `` `.

3. I can't study here: there is` `` ` noise.

4. Ten shillings is` `` ` for that book.

5. He drank` `` ` and became sick.

6. I was` `` ` astonished to hear of his coming.

7. She speaks` `` `: she is a chatterbox.

8. I am` `` ` obliged to you.

9. She was` `` ` interested in the subject.

10. He helped us` `` `.

## 40 常易混淆的形容词 Adjectives often Confused

### 练习题 57

A. 用 some 或 any 填入空白处:

1. I have` `` ` new books at home.
2. There are not` `` ` flowers in the garden.
3. Have you` `` ` brothers in school?
4. Did you buy` `` ` stamps from him?
5. Have I` `` ` letters this morning?
6. This magazine has` `` ` beautiful pictures.

B. 用 interesting 或 interested 填于空白处:

1. I am` `` ` in English.
2. Was the film` `` ` last night?
3. The book is` `` ` from beginning to end.
4. She is a most` `` ` lady.
5. Are you` `` ` in sports?
6. Stamps are` `` ` only to those who are` `` ` in them.

C. 将括号中不正确的词划去:

1. He sat down and said nothing (farther, further) .
2. This girl is (older, elder) than I am.
3. My (older, elder) brother is called John.

4. (Every, each) one of the two boys was wrong.
5. They have (less, fewer) books than I have.
6. What is the (last, latest) news of the war?
7. Wash your hands if they are not (clean, clear) ?
8. John is (higher, taller) than his cousin.

D. 用 much 或 many 填入空白处:

1. How` `` does this book cost?
2. `` drops of water go to make up the stream.
3. There isn't `` food in the house.
4. He hasn't `` money.
5. Are there `` pupils absent today?
6. He doesn't know `` English.

E. 用 few 或 a few, little 或 a little 填入空白处:

1. Will you have `` wine?
2. He is very ill; there is `` hope for him.
3. There are `` apples in the basket, help yourself to so me.
4. He did `` work and got `` prizes.
5. As he did not speak clearly, `` people understood wh at he said.
6. A clever student has `` difficulty in doing this.
7. `` days ago there was an accident at this corner.
8. There were still `` books to be sold.
9. Though the wind was strong `` damage was done.
10. It was so cold that there were `` people about.

## 41 常易混淆的动词 Verbs often Confused

### 练习题 58

A. 用 lie 或 lay 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. I shall go and` `` down.
2. The book was `` on the floor.
3. The hen` `` five eggs in the grass.
4. She should have` `` in bed for two weeks.
5. `` the paper on my desk, please.
6. The jewels have` `` in the box for many years.
7. I` `` the book on the table.
8. He ordered his men to` `` down.
9. He` `` to the teacher yesterday.
10. My sister` `` down on the sofa and caught a heavy cold.

B. 用 sit、set、seat 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. The sun rises in the east and` `` in the west.
2. The sailor` `` the sails to catch the wind.
3. Did you` `` your watch this morning?
4. The clock` `` quietly on the shelf.
5. Please` `` it on the table.
6. Please` `` down.

7. Please` `` ` yourself.

8. Please be` `` `.

9. The teacher` `` ` the boys as they came in.

10. The boat will` `` ` twenty people.

C. 用 rise 或 raise 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. Many great men had` `` ` from the poor families.

2. He promised to` `` ` the man's wages.

3. The river` `` ` from a spring in the mountain.

4. The price of rice has` `` ` recently.

5. Should we` `` ` the price of our goods?

6. He was too weak to` `` `.

7. The balloon` `` ` high in the sky.

8. The students` `` ` their hats to the teacher.

9. He` `` ` from his seat and left the room.

10. The teacher told him to` `` ` his voice.

D. 用 hung 或 hanged 填入空白处:

1. He was found guilty and` `` `.

2. The maid servant` `` ` the clothes up to dry.

3. The picture` `` ` on the wall.

4. The criminal was` `` `.

5. He` `` ` his hat up.

E. 用 borrow 或 lend 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. May I` `` ` your pen for a minute?

2. From whom did you` `` ` the money?



3. Please` `` ` me your book.

4. He is willing to` `` ` you his knife.

5. You should avoid` `` ` things from others.

F. 用 steal 或 rob 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. They` `` ` the house and fled.

2. Someone has` `` ` his books.

3. When the bank was` `` ` , the robbers escaped.

4. The cat will` `` ` the dog's meat.

5. Robin Hood used to` `` ` rich merchants and priests.

G. 用 refuse 或 deny 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. He` `` ` to go down.

2. Smith` `` ` that he had seen her.

3. Do you` `` ` that you broke the window?

4. She` `` ` to take the money.

5. I asked her to come with us, she` `` ` .

H. 用 hear 或 listen 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. I` `` ` carefully but` `` ` nothing.

2. He cannot` `` ` very well.

3. I was` `` ` ing to the music.

4. The deaf cannot` `` ` .

5. Let us` `` ` to the story.

I. 用 fall 或 fell 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. Did the child` `` ` from the chair?

2. The aeroplane` `` ` into the sea yesterday.

3. He`~~`down and broke his leg.

4. The men were busy`~~`old trees.

5. I`~~`him with a single blow.

J. 用 can 或 may 的恰当形式填入空白处:

1. `~~`I carry the ice cream home?

2. `~~`a good house be built without a solid foundation?

3. He wishes to know if he`~~`ride the pony?

4. This is a rule which`~~`be applied in every case.

5. Don't think you`~~`write good English without studying grammar.

K. 将括号中不正确的词划去:

1. Who (discovered, invented) the telephone?

2. The judge was (persuaded, convinced) that the man was guilty.

3. He (took, received) a prize for his diligence.

4. My elder brother (learns, studies) at the university.

5. At what time do you (sleep, go to bed) ?

6. She did not (accept, agree) to go.

7. Many ships have been (drowned, sunk) in the Mediterranean Sea.

8. Please (remind, remember) me to give the money back.

9. The judge (revenged, avenged) the wrong done to the child.

10. When will the meeting (take place, take part) ?

## 练习题 59

将左边的词分别填入空白处：

1.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{aware} \\ \text{conscious} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He was well of the difficulties to be over} \\ \text{ercome, and yet} \end{array} \right.$  of his own inability to overcome them.
2.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{needs} \\ \text{desires} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{A miser can easily satisfy his} \end{array} \right.$  but can never satisfy his.
3.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{custom} \\ \text{habit} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{A} \end{array} \right.$  of industry leads to the of keeping punctual hours.
4.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{famous} \\ \text{notorious} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The hermit was as} \end{array} \right.$  for his good deeds, as the robber was for his evil ones.
5.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{observe} \\ \text{remark} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I have had many opportunities of} \end{array} \right.$  his character, but I never that particular trait.
6.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{large} \\ \text{great} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{China is a} \end{array} \right.$  country, containing many cities.
7.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{stop} \\ \text{stay} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Let us} \end{array} \right.$  on the way at this hotel, and here for the night.
8.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{strict} \\ \text{severe} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He was as} \end{array} \right.$  in observing the rules as he was in punishing a breach of them.
9.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{divide} \\ \text{separate} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Society} \end{array} \right.$  is into several different classes, The lowest is from the highest by a wide interval.
10.       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{empty} \\ \text{vacant} \end{array} \right.$        $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{As soon as a seat in parliament beco} \\ \text{mes} \end{array} \right.$ , he hopes to get in and assume the title of M, P.

11.     { example  
          instance     { I know an`    ` of a step-mother, who is  
                          an`    ` of kindness to her step-childre  
                          n.
12.     { give  
          grant        { We`    ` his request and`    ` him somet  
                         hing morebesides.
13.     { gratitude  
          thankfuln  
          ess          { He felt much`    ` for the kindness he h  
                         ad received, and showed it by the`    `t  
                         hat he expressed.
14.     { part  
          portion     { The estate was divided into four`    `,  
                         and each of the heirs received his`    `.
15.     { liberty  
          freedom     { The prisoners were set at`    `, they h  
                         ave now perfect`    ` to go where they li  
                         ke.
16.     { timid  
          cowardly    { Though he was by nature a`    ` man,  
                         he repelled that`    ` assault with coura  
                         ge.
17.     { forgive  
          pardon      { A person may`    ` a fault; but a court  
                         of justice cannot`    ` a criminal.
18.     { answer  
          reply       { He sent a`    ` to my letter; but this con  
                         tained no`    ` to my question.
19.     { advance  
          proceed     { He`    ` on his journey, but he had not`  
                         `    ` far, before he was again stopped.
20.     { alter  
          change      { To`    ` a dress is to put on another: to`  
                         `    ` one is to make it different in some  
                         respects from what it was.
21.     { arms  
          weapons     { As he had no`    `, he, seized the poke  
                         r and tongs, which he used as`    `.

22.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{attempt} \\ \text{try} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{If you fail when you make your first} \\ \text{``, do not dispair, but`` again.} \end{array} \right.$
23.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{generous} \\ \text{liberal} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{He was`` with his purse, and had} \\ \text{` feelings towards all men.} \end{array} \right.$
24.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{serious} \\ \text{solemn} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{He made a`` pronuse that he would} \\ \text{give his most attention to the matter.} \end{array} \right.$
25.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fit} \\ \text{suitable} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{He was a very`` man for the post, bu} \\ \text{t he accepted it on terms that were no} \\ \text{t`` for a man of his rank.} \end{array} \right.$
26.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{understan} \\ \text{d} \\ \text{apprenen} \\ \text{d} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{I`` the general drift of his letter, but} \\ \text{could not`` that particular point.} \end{array} \right.$
27.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{below} \\ \text{beneath} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is a little`` me in social rank, but} \\ \text{not by any means`` me in character.} \end{array} \right.$
28.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{bring} \\ \text{fetch} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Be so good as to`` the book lying on} \\ \text{the table, I will`` the footstool from t} \\ \text{he next room.} \end{array} \right.$
29.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{clothe} \\ \text{dress} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Savages`` themselves in skins; mode} \\ \text{rns`` according to the prevailing fash} \\ \text{ion.} \end{array} \right.$
30.     $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{place} \\ \text{put} \end{array} \right.$      $\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{Let this plant be`` in a flower-pot an} \\ \text{d`` in the drawing room.} \end{array} \right.$

## 42 词类的构成 Word-formation

### 练习题 60

A. 将下列名词改为其相当的形容词:

例: victory→victorious

1. ability
2. reason
3. absurdity
4. accident
5. advantage
6. adventure
7. affection
8. progress
9. aristocrat
10. athlete
11. dirt
12. fever
13. quarrel
14. calmness
15. character
16. chastity
17. circle

18. commerce
19. brevity
20. crime
21. contradiction
22. courtesy
23. empire
24. essence
25. favour
26. question

B. 将下列动词改为其相当的名词:

例: abolish→abolition

1. accept
2. accuse
3. add
4. admit
5. adopt
6. apply
7. appreciate
8. annoy
9. ally
10. arrive
11. advance
12. move
13. allow

14. argue
15. choose
16. civilize
17. compare
18. sign
19. tempt
20. reveal
21. assist
22. attend
23. behave
24. believe
25. confer
26. condense
27. consider
28. conquer
29. try
30. reside

C. 写出下列名词相应的动词、形容词及副词：

例：abundance: abound abundant abundantly

1. admiration
2. life
3. appearance
4. attraction
5. memory



6. beauty
7. terror
8. certainty
9. obedience
10. peace
11. correction
12. courage
13. purity
14. deceit
15. difference
16. explosion
17. reality
18. grief
19. haste
20. laughter

## 43 语句的结合 Combination of Sentences

### I. 结合数单句为一单句

结合的方法:

#### (1) 用分词来形容主语或宾语:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He took his hat from the peg. He left the house.} \\ \text{Taking (or Having taken) his hat from the peg he left the house.} \end{array} \right.$

#### (2) 用独立的分词:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The sun rose. The fog dispersed.} \\ \text{The sun having risen, the fog dispersed.} \end{array} \right.$

#### (3) 用介词短语:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The sun went down. The work was not yet completed.} \\ \text{The sun went down before the completion of the work.} \\ \text{The work was not completed by sunset.} \end{array} \right.$

#### (4) 用不定词来代替动词:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He has four sons. They must all be started in life.} \\ \text{He has four sons to start in life.} \end{array} \right.$

#### (5) 用同格名词或短语:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The faithful dog lay by the cradle. Its name was Gert.} \end{array} \right.$

| The faithful dog, *Gelert by name*, lay by the cradle.

## 练习题 61

A. 依照 (1) 的方式将下列各组句子结合为一单句 (斜体词指结合后的主动词) :

1. He wrote down all the answers. He still *had* time to revise them.

2. He held his walking stick under his arm. He *walked* up and down the street.

3. He arrived in town in *the* forenoon. He *went* at once to the best shop.

4. The dogs are placed in different kennels. So they *cannot* quarrel.

5. The travellers hung up their hats. They *sat down* to rest.

6. Her father was a successful tradesman. He *was* able to leave her a great deal of money.

7. He bought a good house. He furnished it well. He *brought* his family to live in it.

8. I dislike the noise of London streets. I *returned* to my quiet house in the country.

9. He was much pleased with the cleverness of the answer. He *forgave* the rudeness.

10. He was inspired with hope. He climbed up the precipice. He *reached* the top in safety.

B. 依照 (2) 的方式, 将下列各组句子结合为一单句 (斜体词指结合后的主动词) :

1. The spring is now well advanced. We *shall* soon *hear* cuckoo's voice again.

2. The war was over. The country was pacified. The volunteers *were sent* back to their homes.

3. He remained behind. The rest *set off* at 2 o'clock P. M.

4. The admiral brought all his ships into port. The crews *had* little recreation on shore.

5. He called for his gun. He took a good aim. The mad dog *was shot*.

6. He refused to open the door. The unwelcome visitors *went away*.

7. Every farmer has been provided with a yoke of oxen. The fields *will* soon *be* ploughed up for the next harvest.

8. They have reached a place of safety. No further danger *need* now be expected.

9. The judge entered the court. He took his seat at the bench. The trial *proceeded*.

10. A brief halt was made for luncheon. The army then *resumed* its march.

C. 依照 (3) 的方式, 将下列各组句子结合为一单句 (斜体词表示结合后的主语及动词, 但用其他适当者亦可) :

1. He drives a bullock cart. He carries goods from place to place. By this means *he earns* his living.

2. *He declined* to open his door to these visitors. He gave no reason for his refusal.

3. The *men made* very little profit. Their industry was useless.

4. *Their brother* disguised himself as a sailor. He *knocked* at the front door.

5. There was an old Greek fable about king Midas. *Everything* touched by him *turned* into gold.

6. The people crowded the streets to see him. His *progress* *was* very much impeded.

7. The *soldier appeared* on the scene. He had a bayonet in his right hand. The bayonet was held over his shoulder.

8. He was an eloquent speaker. *He was* also a successful man of business.

9. The *traveller returned* in safety from the Arctic seas. His friends were much relieved.

10. The *parents took* a great deal of trouble. They wished to make every child happy as well as useful.

D. 依照 (4) 的方式, 将下列各组句子结合为一单句 (斜体词表示结合后的主语及动词, 但用其他适当者亦可) :

1. *He has* now fifteen pupils in his class. He must teach. He must prepare them for the next examination.

2. *He had* no money left. He could not carry on the business any longer.

3. *He drew* up his forces in battle army. The enemy were marching towards him. He had to meet them.

4. *He stayed* at home. He looked after his aged parents. This was his reason for staying there.

5. A tired man enjoys the fresh breezes of the sea. *It is* very good for his health.

6. *He must sign* his name. Otherwise the cheque will not be cashed.

7. He should make the best use of the short time left to him. My *advice* to him *was* this.

8. The sailors allowed no rats to be killed on the ship. *It was* as their custom.

9. The *pigeons flew down*. They wish to pick up the grains. They wish to satisfy their hunger.

10. *He was* ill. For this reason he could not go to school on that day.

E. 依照 (5) 的方式, 将下列各组句子结合为一单句 (斜体词指结合后的主语及动词) :

1. *Washington* is the federal capital of the United States. *It is called* after General Washington. He led the forces of the American colonies. He founded the great American Republic.

2. *Oliver Cromwell was succeeded* by his son. His son's name was Richard.

3. That *law* has caused us a great deal of trouble. It has produced much discontent. It *must* be repealed at no distant date.

4. *He has* many of the qualities of a great commander. He has coolness of judgment in sudden emergencies. He has skill in directing the movements of troops.

5. *He fled* from his creditors. This was very dishonest act.

6. *John Bunyan wrote* a well known book. It is called the *Pilgrim's Progress*. It is an allegory describing the trials and temptations of a Christian on his way to the Land of Promise.

7. Beside him *sported* on the green his little granddaughter. Her name was Wilhelmine.

8. *Cromwell assumed* the powers of a king. He had once been a private gentleman. Next he was a popular leader in the Long Parliament. Then he was commander of the Parliamentary forces.

9. *Lord Clive* was formerly a writer in a merchant's office at Madras. He *founded* the British Empire in India.

10. *Brutus conspired* with Cassius and others to put Julius Caesar to death. Brutus was the enemy of kingly government of every form and kind. Julius was the first man to make himself emperor of Rome. He was the first citizen to acquire an absolute power equal to that of a king.

## II. 结合单句为并列句

结合的方法：用并列连词（Coordinating Conjunctions）如 *and*, *but*, *for*, *therefore*; *both...and*, *not only...but also* 等。

┌ I worked hard. I gained a prize.  
└ I worked hard *and* (I) gained a prize.

例：┌ He is not a happy man. He has bad health.  
└ He is not a happy man; *for* he has bad health.

┌ He is poor. He is contented.  
└ He is poor, *but* (he is) contented.

## 练习题 62

用适当的并列连词结合下列各组句子为并列句：

1. They could not decide the point themselves. They asked a third person to decide it for them.

2. They despised my warning. They shall eat of the fruit of their own way.

3. Her ways are ways of pleasantness. All her paths are peace.

4. He is a rich man. He is not proud of his wealth. He makes no distinction between rich and poor.

5. The feet of a cat are furnished with long sharp claws. A bird or mouse, once caught, cannot escape.

6. An honest man will speak out. He will not be afraid of consequences.

7. In all labour there is profit. The talk of the lips tends only to penury.

8. Life has few enjoyments. We cling to it.

9. They died on the battlefield. They lay on a bed of honour.

10. At this time of the year I do not rise at five o'clock in the morning. I rise at seven or eight.

### Ⅲ. 结合单句为复句

结合的方法：用从属连词（Subordinate Conjunctions）who, which, that, when, where, what 等。

## 练习题 63

A. 用适当的连词将下列各组句子结合为一复句，须含有名词从句：

注：斜体表示结合后的主动词。

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is going to some place. No one knows it.} \\ \text{No one knows } \textit{where} \text{ he is going.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The rose is the sweetest of flowers. This is certain.} \\ \text{It is certain } \textit{that} \text{ the rose is the sweetest of flowers.} \end{array} \right.$

1. He will come at some time or other. No one *knows* the time.

2. Rain will fall today. This *is* quite evident.

3. I shall never clearly understand this. So I *think*.



4. The school will open in ten days' time. So we *heard*.
5. The air is never quite at rest. You must *know* this.
6. He says something. We cannot *rely on* it.
7. You were taken ill. This *was* very unfortunate.
8. He *was* a man of fine character in all points except on e. He was rather timid.
9. What do you desire to have? I *will grant* you anything.
10. It was your duty to make the best use of your time at school. You *found* out this too late.

B. 用适当的从属连词将各组句子结合为一复句，须含有形容词从句：

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I have a goose. The goose lays an egg every day.} \\ \text{I have a goose } \textit{that} \text{ lays an egg every day.} \end{array} \right.$

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The messenger had a duty to perform. The duty was difficult.} \\ \text{The messenger had } \textit{a difficult} \text{ duty to perform.} \\ \text{The messenger had a duty } \textit{that} \text{ was difficult to perform.} \end{array} \right.$

1. We lived in a house. The house *has* fallen down.
2. This *is* the story. I heard it ten years ago.
3. Shakespeare was born in a certain house. I *have seen* it.
4. You are telling me a certain story. Surely it *is* not true.
5. A small rest house stood at the foot of the hill. We *stopped* there for the night.
6. He had received a good education. This *raised* him above many men of his own age and rank.

7. In our ramble through the forest we *came* upon a thatched cottage. A fine cedar tree was growing by its side. The trees stood forty or fifty feet high.

8. The doctor *came* with his wife. He's young. He's at that table.

9. The students *speak* formally. They're in my class.

10. The story *is* interesting. It's short. It's about baseball.

C. 用适当的从属连词将各组句子结合为一复句，须含有副词从句：

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He will succeed. He has worked hard.} \\ \text{He will succeed, } \textit{because} \text{ (} \textit{since} \text{) he has worked hard.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Men work. They wish to earn a living.} \\ \text{Men work, } \textit{that} \text{ (} \textit{so that} \text{) they may earn a living.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He was very sorry. He found out his mistake.} \\ \text{He was very sorry, } \textit{when} \text{ he found out his mistake.} \end{array} \right.$

1. It is now late. *Let* us go to bed.

2. He *walked* with care. He was afraid of stumbling.

3. I *agree* to this. But you must sign your name.

4. He may punish me. Yet I *will* trust him.

5. He *returned* home. He had finished the work.

6. He *persevered* steadily. Success was the result.

7. He is sixty years old. Yet his eyesight is excellent.

8. They *deserted* their former associate. He had become poor and unfortunate.

9. We left the house at a certain time. It *has* not ceased raining ever since that time.

10. He may give me leave. He may not give me leave. I *shall* go back to my parents in either case.

## 44 语句的转换 Transformation of Sentences

(1) 变短语为从句:

例:  $\begin{cases} \text{I am sure } \textit{of his guilt.} \\ \text{I am sure } \textit{that he is guilty.} \end{cases}$

### 练习题 64

A. 将下列句子的斜体部分改为名词分句:

1. We were surprised *at his strength*.
2. The President is said *to be ill*.
3. Can you tell me *how to get to the town*?
4. We must hope *for better times*.
5. We know *the name of the writer of the letter*.
6. Tell us *the height of this tower*.
7. I do not believe *in the truth of this story*.
8. The murderer is believed to *have been arrested*.
9. I do not expect *him to return*.
10. It is not right *for us to idle away our time*.

B. 将下列句中的分词短语变为形容词从句:

1. The trees *growing there* are pines.
2. I heard a dog *barking somewhere*.
3. Is that your brother *getting out of that bus*?

4. Where is the money received yesterday?
5. What was the agreement signed last week?
6. There was a hat hanging on the peg.
7. Give me the books lying on the table.
8. We saw some farmers planting rice.
9. The message sent yesterday was received safely.
10. What is the animal moving in that bush?

C. 将下列句中的短语变为副词从句:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{In spite of his size} \text{ he can run very fast.} \\ \textit{Although he is big} \text{ he can run very fast.} \end{array} \right.$

1. *Climbing the hill.* I saw a snake.
2. He is very angry *because of your disobedience.*
3. He got back very late *on account of a puncture.*
4. He refused to go out *for fear of rain.*
5. *During his absence* nobody did any work.
6. He found the house *after a long search.*
7. I shall go *before his return.*
8. *In case of fire,* break the glass and pull the alarm.
9. You cannot do anything well *without taking trouble.*
10. I have not seen him *since his arrival.*

(2) 比较之互换:

例:  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He is } \textit{as dull as} \text{ an ass.} \\ \text{An ass is } \textit{not duller than} \text{ he is.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The air of hills is } \textit{cooler than} \text{ that of lowlands.} \end{array} \right.$

| The air of lowlands is *not so cool as* that of hills.

| Bombay is *the best* seaport in India.

| Bombay is *better than any other* seaport in India.

| No other seaport in India is so good as Bombay.

## 练习题 65

依上例变换下列句中的比较：

1. The younger brother is cleverer than the elder.
2. Gold is one of the heaviest of metals.
3. I know better than to do such a thing.
4. Bad health is a more terrible enemy than poverty.
5. It is easier to imagine this scene than to describe it.
6. A live ass is stronger than a dead lion.
7. I would as soon die as injure a friend.
8. He is in no respect superior to you.
9. You know his character quite as well as I do.
10. He knows no more than a child how to keep his temper.

r.

(3) 否定和肯定的互换：

例：| *None but the brave* deserves the fair.  
| *The brave alone* deserve the fair.

| His services *cannot* be forgotten.

| His services have been *too great to be* forgotten.

| *No sooner* did he see the tiger *than* he fled.

| *As soon as* he saw the tiger he fled.

## 练习题 66

将下列句子变为肯定句：

1. You are not taller than he is.
2. This was too great an honour not to excite any of his rivals.
3. No one but a coward would flee from his duty.
4. He left no plan untried.
5. Never again will I revisit the shores of France.
6. Great men are of no one nation, nor of one particular class.
7. As long as the fair continued, not a man lost his temper.
8. Learned men are not always judicious.
9. He cannot but give me thanks that I deserved.
10. Nowhere does France come so near to England as at the Straits of Dover.

(4) 词类之变换：

- |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 例： | { | V. Lead and tin <i>differ</i> very greatly in weight.                         |
|    |   | N. Between lead and tin there is much <i>difference</i> in weight.            |
|    |   | Adj. The weight of lead is very <i>different</i> from that of tin.            |
|    |   | Adv. Lead and tin are very <i>differently</i> constituted in point of weight. |

## 练习题 67

A. 将下列句中的斜体词变为动词：

1. He promised his *assistance* to the project.
2. I have an *engagement* today at four o'clock.
3. He talked to us very *amusingly*.
4. St. Paul was by *birth* a citizen of Rome.
5. *Reliance* on such a traitor as that would be foolish.
6. He *successfully* strove to win the first prize.
7. The plan is *apparently* a good one.
8. He was *presumptuous* enough to expect the first place.
9. If you desire *admission* to my service you must put your *signature* to this bond.
10. He *forcibly* made his way through the crowd.

B. 将下列句中的斜体词变为名词:

1. What does he *mean* by such impertinence?
2. A spider is wonderfully *sagacious*.
3. I left my house at six o'clock because he *desired* it.
4. I *believe* that the accused is entirely *innocent*.
5. His mind is so *active* that he *succeeded* in everything.
6. He was *sensible* enough to mind his own business.
7. The journey was not very expensive.
8. Whatever he may have *intended*, he has disappointed us.
9. Her dress is so *simple* that it adds to her beauty.
10. He is at times inclined to act *dishonestly*.

C. 将下列句中的斜体词变为形容词:

1. He was *absolutely* ruined by that unlucky business.



2. Theft in former times was a crime *to be punished* with death.

3. He is a man of remarkable *industry*.

4. A man inclined to *vice* will never *prosper*.

5. To eat and drink *temperately* is the way to preserve health.

6. He is an *unusually* good speaker.

7. He was so given to *suspicion*, that he looked upon every man as his secret enemy.

8. He had not the *politeness* to stand aside.

9. Every one was pleased with his *fearlessness* and *independence*.

10. He *presumes* to think that his opinion has more weight than mine.

D. 将下列句中的斜体词变为副词:

1. It was not his *intention* to do you that injury.

2. It is *probable* that rain will fall tomorrow.

3. I signed this bond with great *reluctance*.

4. He led a *temperate* and *regular* life.

5. The doctor made a very *careful* and *patient* study of the invalid's case.

6. He was very *generous* in his treatment of the prisoners.

7. He was ordered to leave the room in an *instant*.

8. There is no *meaning* in what he says.

9. He is *careless* in every thing that he does.

(5) 变单句为并列句:

例：  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Reside making a promise, he kept it. (单)} \\ \text{He } \textit{not only made} \text{ a promise, but he } \textit{also kept it.} \\ \text{(合)} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{He must confess his fault } \textit{to escape being fined.} \\ \text{He must confess his fault, } \textit{or he will be fined.} \end{array} \right.$

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Owing to bad health, he could not work.} \\ \text{He was in bad health, } \textit{and so he could not work.} \end{array} \right.$

方法：将短语扩充为对等分句：

### 练习题 68

用适当的并列连词将下列单句改为并列句：

1. The agreement having been signed, all were satisfied.
2. The judge believes with me in his innocence.
3. He fled away, to escape being killed.
4. He will be dismissed in the event of his doing such a thing again.
5. He persevered, in spite of all men being against him.
6. He was honoured in virtue of his health.
7. He worked night and day out of ambition to excel.
8. To our great disappointment, we failed to carry out our purpose.
9. To add to his difficulties, he lost his health.
10. He spoke the truth from fear of the disgrace of falsehood.

(6) 变单句为复句：

方法：将短语扩充为从句：

例：a) 名词从句：

I am certain *of giving* you satisfaction.

I am certain *that I shall give* you satisfaction.

b) 形容词从句：

He paid off *his father's debts*.

He paid off *the debts which his father had contracted*.

c) 副词从句：

*On reaching manhood* you will have to work for your living.

*As soon as you have reached manhood*, you will have to work for your living.

## 练习题 69

A. 将下列单句扩充为复句，须含有名词从句：

1. I was glad to hear of your having succeeded so well.

2. He is generally believed to have died of poison.

3. No one can tell the time of his coming.

4. He shouted to his neighbours to come to his help.

5. We can place no confidence in any of his words.

6. His death at so young an age is much to be regretted.

7. We must hope for better times.

8. All his statements should be accepted.

9. The greatness of his labour could be seen from the result.

10. He was reported to have lost most of his money.

B. 将下列单句扩充为复句，须含有形容词从句：

1. That was a fault not to be forgiven.
2. Our present house suits us exactly.
3. Their explanation cannot be true.
4. He was not a man to tell a lie.
5. Joseph remained a long time in prison, utterly forgotten.
6. Is this the way to learn your lessons?
7. The benefits of his early training were thrown away.
8. The troubles besetting him on all side did not daunt him.
9. Egypt was the first country to become civilized.
10. After a storm the weather is generally calm.

C. 扩充下列句子为复句，须含有副词从句：

a) 用原因从句：

1. In the absence of any other helpers, we must accept his aid.
2. They were much surprised to hear him confess his fault.
3. He was ashamed at being unable to give an answer.

b) 用结果从句：

4. The problem was too difficult to be solved.
5. He worked very well, to the astonishment of every one.
6. He fell under suspicion by becoming suddenly rich.

c) 用目的从句：

7. He labours day and night with a view to becoming rich.
8. He started by night to escape being seen by any one.
9. He purposes to become rich by sticking steadily to his work.

d) 用条件从句:

10. Without leave from the teacher, we should not go out.
11. He would be very thankful to be relieved of all this trouble.
12. Turning to the right, you will find the house.
13. In the absence of the master, the whole house would have been burned to the ground.

e) 用比例从句:

14. He is strong for a child of eight.
15. With every man who came in, another went out.

f) 用时间从句:

16. He was very sorry on finding out his mistake.
17. With every cough he felt a good deal of pain.
18. In the absence of the cat the mice play.
19. Since the receipt of this news, every one has been happy.
20. Till the arrival of the Saxons, English was not spoken in Britain.

# 英文语法练习手册习题解答

## 1 人称和数

### 揭松闪 (1)

- A. 1. They are here.  
2. The gates are locked.  
3. We are very tired.  
4. Where are they going?  
5. We are very sorry for it.  
6. My books are lost.  
7. The fish (es) are swimming.  
8. My feet are sore.  
9. My teeth are aching.  
10. The children are happy.
- B. 1. Sheep were grazing here.  
2. Those were cool valleys.  
3. The children were asleep.  
4. The eggs were cracked.  
5. When were we admitted?  
6. How old were they?  
7. Deer were in the wood.

8. Geese were standing there.

9. There were no proofs.

10. Wolves were seen there.

C. 1. The loaf is baked.

2. The rat is caught.

3. No box is here.

4. Where is the box?

5. The fly is very harmful.

6. I am very tired.

7. The ox is resting.

8. Why is he so careless?

9. I am fond of play.

10. The bird is roosting.

D. 1. Some man was hurt.

2. Was the thief caught?

3. The horse's tail was cut.

4. This mouse was caught.

5. The goose was not found.

6. The pony was sent away.

7. The loaf was served up.

8. The lady was seated.

9. There was one girl in this class.

10. Here was the house.

E. 1. They have long been gone.

2. Have we seen you before?
3. Have the cats been found?
4. The thieves have been caught.
5. We have done our best.
6. The glasses have been broken.
7. The roofs have been mended.
8. The loaves have been cut.
9. The wolves have been shot.
10. The mice have run away.

F. 1. The goose has been found.

2. My tooth has been aching.
3. His son has left him.
4. I have left school.
5. The ox has come home.
6. I have arrived.
7. The deer has fled.
8. The bird has flown.
9. The sheep has been lost.
10. My foot has been in pain.

G. 1. We do not like him.

2. They do not like me.
3. Do the boys work hard?
4. The boys do not know me.
5. Geese do not fly.



6. Do my friends know me?
  7. Do the fires burn well?
  8. They do not learn much.
  9. Do they keep a dog?
  10. The men do not work.
- H. 1. I do not go today.
2. Does he keep a horse?
  3. They keep a horse, so do I.
  4. I do not understand you.
  5. He does not go to school.
  6. Does he wish to see me?
  7. A wolf does not come here.
  8. Our cow does not thrive.
  9. I do not see you often.
  10. I do not want your help.

## 揭松閃 (2)

1. is
2. are
3. is
4. are
5. were; was
6. is
7. was

8. have

9. has (因 sum and substance 表示一个概念)

10. have

11. have

12. do

13. does

14. does

15. does

16. do

17. do

18. has; have

19. do

20. has

21. is (因系指一物, 即穿有线的针)

22. is

23. is

### 揭松闪 (3)

1. is

2. are

3. have

4. have

5. has

6. are

7. does
8. are
9. have
10. is
11. am
12. does
13. have
14. are

#### 揭松閃 (4)

1. was
2. is
3. has
4. have
5. has
6. is
7. are
8. is
9. is
10. are
11. are
12. was
13. is
14. is

15. have

16. is

17. is

18. is (was)

#### 揭松闪 (5)

1. is

2. am

3. have

4. has

5. is

6. are

7. is

8. have

9. has

10. are

#### 揭松闪 (6)

1. are

2. does

3. is

4. are (were)

5. are (were)

6. has

7. are (were)
8. does
9. are, have
10. is
11. were
12. was
13. are
14. have
15. is
16. do
17. do
18. are
19. does
20. are
21. are (were)
22. does

揭松閃 (7)

- a.1. You *were...weren't* you?
2. Good news *has* come...
3. Neither reward nor punishment *is* to be...
4. A carrier with his horse and dog *has* just...
5. Every man and every horse *was*...

6. *Is* either of these horses yours? No, neither of them *is* ...

7. Not a word of these lectures *was* read out...

8. None of the men selected *were* found...

9. A large number of cattle *are* grazing...

10. The audience *were* not agreed...

11. The carriage and the horse *are* both...

12. When pain or grief *attacks* us, ...

13. The poultry in your yard *are* picking up...

14. There' *re* four or five persons...

15. A white and a grey rabbit *have* run... (因指白的和灰的两个)

16. There' *re* as many as fifty sheep...

17. The poet and painter that lived here *is* dead. (因冠词之省略而指一人, 即画家兼诗人)

18. Either James or you *are* sure to win...

19. My box as well as my book *has* been taken away.

20. The sum of twenty shillings a week *was* paid to him.

21. A garden full of flowers *looks* very beautiful.

22. They, and not he, *have* to pay the fine.

23. Both are clear writers; neither of them *makes* mistakes.

24. Every man of the boat's crew except two *was* taken ill.

25. A large number of men *have* come...

26. To write well, to speak well, or to act well *is* difficult.

27. Energy and hopefulness, like faith, *remove* mountains.

28. Each and all of them *were* shocked...

29. Nothing but rain and clouds *was* seen...

30. The sum and substance of the matter *was*... (因 The sum and substance=The gist [要点], 表示一个概念)

b. 1. has

2. is

3. is

4. are

5. is

6. has

7. are; have

8. are

9. is

10. have

11. is

12. are

13. do

14. is

15. has

16. is (was)

17. are (were)

18. is

19. is

- 20. are
- 21. is
- 22. have
- 23. is
- 24. are
- 25. am
- 26. is
- 27. is
- 28. is
- 29. are
- 30. is
- 31. is
- 32. are (were)
- 33. is
- 34. were
- 35. was
- 36. are
- 37. is
- 38. are
- 39. are
- 40. are; is

## 2 疑问句

揭松闪 (8)



- A. 1. Does this man weigh more than that one?
2. Do you usually wear a coat?
3. Does a box of matches cost a cent?
4. Do ants lay eggs?
5. Do trees live for thousands of years?
6. Does a coolie earn a lot of money?
7. Do wasps make honey?
8. Does he take the letters to the post office every day?
9. Does the sun shine everywhere each day?
10. Do we like lemonade?
11. Is this seat made of leather?
12. Are these machines driven by steam?
13. Are flowers grown in these fields?
14. Am I often punished?
15. Are there twelve months in a year?
16. Has John left for Chicago?
17. Does this book belong to her?
18. Do I think it is going to rain?
19. Does he drive to work every day?
20. Does their class meet on the tenth floor?
21. Did the prisoner tell the truth?
22. Did she dress herself in her best clothes?
23. Did the sun shine brightly this morning?
24. Did the gardener throw a stone at the dog?

25. Did the soldiers fight well?
26. Did the boy laugh at them and think he was very witty?
27. Did the servant put the lamp on the table?
28. Did the wind blow very hard last night?
29. Did the plate broken to pieces?
30. Did the doctor come to see him yesterday?
- B. 1. a. Isn't William...?
- b. Why isn't William...?
2. a. Won't Helen be...?
- b. Why won't Helen be...?
3. a. Won't she be...?
- b. Why won't she be...?
4. a. Did he take...?
- b. Why did he not take...?
5. a. Does Mary not like...?
- b. Why does Mary not like...?
6. a. Didn't she attend...?
- b. Why didn't she attend...?
7. a. Don't they like...?
- b. Why don't they like...?
8. a. Aren't they going...?
- b. Why aren't they going...?
9. a. Did Mr. Smith not come...?

- b. Why did Mr. Smith not come...?
10. a. Will he not be...?
- b. Why will he not be...?
11. a. Doesn't he like...?
- b. Why doesn't he like...?
12. a. Hasn't John delivered...?
- b. Why hasn't John delivered...?
13. a. Does she not like...?
- b. Why does she not like...?
14. a. Did I not study...?
- b. Why did I not study...?
15. a. Does Mary never come...?
- b. Why does Mary never come...?
16. a. Didn't I bring...?
- b. Why didn't I bring...?
17. a. Isn't John making...?
- b. Why isn't John making...?
18. a. Are John and Mary not going...?
- b. Why are John and Mary not going...?
19. a. Doesn't Robert eat...?
- b. Why doesn't Robert eat...?
20. a. Did you not speak...?
- b. Why did you not speak...?
21. a. Wasn't Mary promoted...?

- b. Why wasn't Mary promoted...?
- 22. a. Are there not...?  
b. Why are there not...?
- 23. a. Is the book not...?  
b. Why is the book not...?
- 24. a. Did they not go...?  
b. Why did they not go...?
- C. 1. You have found that...  
2. He saw the event...  
3. He likes the scent...  
4. They will remain...  
5. In hot countries men chiefly wear...  
6. The shepherd drove away...  
7. He sheared as many as...  
8. She will wear the same...  
9. He wrote those...  
10. An elephant lives for...  
11. An elephant is the largest...  
12. This seems to be...  
13. He could have done...  
14. The shepherd did not say...  
15. He should not take...  
16. We must really start...  
17. He stood all day...

18. The sun rises at six...
19. She awoke and got up...
20. You saw by chance...

### 3 疑问短语

#### 揭松闪 (9)

1. didn't you?
2. doesn't she?
3. don't you?
4. didn't you?
5. isn't she?
6. doesn't he?
7. does he?
8. hasn't he?
9. didn't you?
10. did he?
11. isn't she?
12. don't you?
13. are you?
14. does she?
15. isn't it?
16. are they?
17. doesn't it?

## 4 否定句

揭松閃 (15)

- A. 1. He has *not* gone...
2. They will *not* be...
3. I can *not* meet...
4. I may *not* be...
5. We are *not* going...
6. He will *not* leave...
7. He is *not* an engineer...
8. Mr. Smith has *not* studied...
9. You must *not* write...
10. Mary is *not* taking...
11. He will *not* be...
12. I have *not* finished...
13. He is *not* making...
14. We shall *not* see...
15. John used *not* to study hard.
16. I dare *not* ask him.
17. Mary will *not* be promoted...
18. He has *not* been...
19. You ought *not* to go.
20. I have *not* a good library.
21. He is *not* a man...

- B. 1. I did not feel much...
2. You did not sing better...
3. We did not hear of...
4. It did not rain hard...
5. The sun did not rise at...
6. The fox did not fall into...
7. The bees did not gather much...
8. This tree does not strike its roots...
9. Some trees do not die before...
10. They did not tell the boy...
11. He did not strive to do...
12. He did not give as much as...
13. John did not make many...
14. It does not rain every day...
15. I had not (I did not have) time...
16. I did not understand everything...
17. He does not eat his lunch...
18. She does not want to...
19. He did not begin his...
20. Our classroom has not (does not have) ...
21. I am not afraid...
22. He did not stay in...
23. We do not need a fan...
24. We do not use many...

25. John did not come to...
  26. Mary does not like to...
  27. They did not move to...
  28. William does not speak...
- C. 1. He saw me...
2. The sun rose...
  3. The watchman ran away...
  4. We thought John...
  5. He spoke about...
  6. She thinks that...
  7. He felt ill...
  8. The lightning stroke the top...
  9. The noise in the street broke my sleep.
  10. He comes here...
  11. They sought for...
  12. The dog hunted the deer...
  13. The master expects me...
  14. This book seems to be...
  15. He heard,I think, ...
  16. The child,walking along the bank,fell into...
  17. This student strove to keep...
  18. Bees gather much honey...
  19. I will give this...



## 5 被动语态

揭松闪 (11)

- A. 1. We were very much disappointed in the movie.
2. The export division is managed by Mr. Jones.
3. We are taught English by the teacher. English is taught us by the teacher.
4. A dancing class was started by them last week.
5. I was bought this book by him yesterday. This book was bought by him yesterday.
6. That report has to be finished by Smith tomorrow.
7. By whom has this glass been broken?
8. Fine workers were arrested by the police.
9. America was discovered by Columbus in 1492.
10. He was ordered to take a long rest by the doctor.
11. We were showed the city by a guide. The city was showed us by a guide.
12. If a king may be looked at by a cat, I may be looked at by it too.
13. They were welcomed back by the city on their return from the battlefield.
14. Let me not be disturbed.
15. Will not he be persuaded to work better by a sense of duty?
16. I was called upon to give my reasons by the meeting.

17. Should I be found at home by him, he would not be received by me.

18. I was quite shocked by the language that he used.

19. Who was blamed by them for that unfortunate accident?

20. He was elected president by the people.

B. 1. The enemy captured the town.

2. An unknown person stole the money.

3. His voice and manner hurt me much.

4. A lightning struck him, as he sat under a tree.

5. A bull attacked my brother and me.

6. All the butchers close the shops.

7. The annual rains fertilize the soil of India.

8. An earthquake cracked the walls of the house.

9. Have you shut the door?

10. I am cooking food.

## 6 格

### 揭松闪 (12)

1. I have no doubt at all that it was *she* who spoke.

2. *She* and Mrs C. were expected here today.

3. It was *she* who wrote that letter, not *he*.

4. *He* and his father were both taken ill that day.

5. *Who* do men say that I am?

6. I would not do it, if I were *he*.
7. I was quite certain that it could not be *she*.
8. Who made that noise? Not *he*, sir, but *I*.
9. Were you there, or was it *he* that I saw?
10. *They* that are idle are not wanted here.
11. Her father and *I* will soon find out where she is.
12. Tom, William and *I* went out for a ramble.
13. *He* and *I* were playing at marbles outside the school door.
14. May Robert and *I* go out for a walk by ourselves?
15. I have a son, *who* I intend shall learn Greek.

### 揭松闪 (13)

- A. 1. He asked John and *me* to go to lunch.
2. I knew it to be *him*.
3. I knew that it was *she* who called me.
4. He hurried Tom and *me* out the back door.
5. The lucky ones who received the prizes are Johnny, Collins and *I*.
6. He wishes Henry and *me* to remain this evening.
7. We believe you and *him* to be entirely above suspicion.
8. The superintendent wishes to see you and *me* at five o'clock.
9. If I were *he*, I would ask for a vacation at this time.
10. Why didn't you tell Ira and *me* that you were going?

11. It must have been Ella and *he* who rang up when we were out.

12. When he got out off the train, there were John and *I* (myself) waiting to greet him. (myself 一类的 self 代词, 不能当作 I, he 等单纯代词用)

13. The secretary and *I* (myself) will prepare a statement for the meeting.

14. it's 改为 its, 因 it's 是 it is 的缩写, it 的所有格是 its。

15. For the life of me I can't think of *whom* to recommend.

16. John called the secretary and *me* into his office.

B. 1. they, we

2. them, us

3. I, she; we, they

4. I (me) , she, he; we, they

5. me, him (在形容词 like, near 之后的名词或代词须为宾格)

6. me, him

7. we

8. us

9. I

10. me

11. he

12. me (因 me 是省去了的 he likes 的目的语) , I (因 I 是省去了的 like you 的主语)

13. me

14. we, they (are)

15. he

16. They

17. me

### 揭松闪 (14)

A. 1. He is as clever as I *am* , but not so clever as Tom *is*.

2. I have not written so much or so clearly as he *has*.

3. Tom has seen...as often as I *have*.

4. Tom has seen...as often as he *has seen* me.

5. They take...as he *does* in idleness.

6. The dog barks...than it *barks* at them. (用 *does* 以代 *barks* 亦可)

7. The writer understood...than they *understood*. (用 *did* 来代 *understood* 亦可)

8. He is...than I *am*..., but I am...than he *is*...

9. None are...as they *are*...

10. The mother likes...as he *does*. (*does* 即等于 *likes to be admired*)

11. So brave a man as he *was* was never seen before.

12. That book impressed...than it *impressed* him.

13. Few men have...than Dickens *had*.

14. He is...than they *are* to him.

15....I made...than he *did* in two.

B. 1. You had...as I *had*.

2. A and B are...than *we are* in everything.

3. My partners have gained...than I *have* by this plan.

4. Though her brother has studied...than *she has* , he has not...as *she has* in daily life.

5. He rides...than *she does* , but she sings...than *he does*.

6. That author wrote...than *he did*.

7. He is...than *I am* in cash, but...

8. None are...as *they are* that...

9. I never before saw...as *she is*.

10. Very few persons spoke...as *he did* at the meeting.

11. He is more convinced than *I am* of the truth...

12. No one is more...than *he is* for what...

## 7 人称代词的位置

揭松闪 (15)

A. 1. The boatman and I rowed the boat.

2. You and James must work harder.

3. You and your father have been invited.

4. He and I saw the horse kick.

5. The guests and we were glad of that.

6. The boatman and I were not afraid.

7. The noise alarmed him and us.

8. The music delighted you and me.

B. 1. *They* and *I* had a great deal of fun that day.

2. *My sister and I* are much pleased with that song.

3. I hope you will invite my sister and *me* again.

4. Who have been invited? William and *we*.
5. *The three boys and we* went out to fly the kite.
6. Smith and *I* will play James and him.
7. This heavy road has tired out my pony and *me*.
8. It is fine now; *my sister and I* want to go out.

## 8 指示代词

揭松闪 (16)

1. one
2. one
3. that
4. one
5. those
6. that
7. that
8. those
9. that
10. that
11. those
12. one
13. it

## 9 代词与先行词

## 揭松闪 (17)

1. one
2. one's
3. he
4. his
5. his
6. his
7. her
8. their
9. his
10. them
11. his
12. him
13. his
14. him
15. your
16. our

## 10 关系代词及疑问代词

## 揭松闪 (18)

- A. 1. that (whom)
2. that (whom)
3. who (that) , that (whom)



4. who
5. whom
6. whom
7. whom
8. that (whom)
9. that
10. that
11. which
12. that (whom)
13. who (that)
14. as
15. whatever
16. that (which)
17. as
18. that
19. which
20. who (that) , that (who)

B. 1. who

2. who
3. whom
4. whom
5. who
6. whom
7. who

8. whom
  9. whom
  10. who
  11. Who
  12. Who
  13. Whom
  14. Whom
  15. who
  16. whomever
  17. whom
  18. whoever
  19. Who
  20. whom
  21. who
  22. Whom
  23. Whom
  24. Who
  25. Who
- C. 1. which
2. what
  3. which
  4. what
  5. which
  6. which

7. what
8. which
9. which
10. what
11. which
12. which
13. what
14. which
15. which
16. which
17. what
18. which
19. which
20. which
21. which
22. which

D. 1. The man *you spoke to* is here now.

2. I have bought the book *I spoke to* you about...

3. He is the man I mean. (为及物动词的目的语的关系代词常可省去)

4. I should like to buy the book *I was looking at* yesterday.

5. Is this the letter *you asked me for* yesterday?

6. That is a subject *we will have to spend considerable time and money on*.

7. That is a question *I must speak to you about.*
8. Which is the door *you knocked at?*
9. That is the file *I got the letter out of.*
10. That is the shelf *I took the book down from.*
11. Which is the tree *they hid the money under ?*
12. That is the question *they argued over.*
13. That is the story *we were laughing so hard at.*
14. This is the room *he inquired about.*
15. This is the one *he wants.*
16. He is the man *I saw in the room.*
17. Was Mr. Smith the man *you talked to ?*
- 18....an antecedent *it refers to.*

E. 1. It was a bold step *that* she had taken.

2....the business *which* I have in hand.

3....the age *in which he lives* 或 the age *which* he lives in.

4....the tax *which* a man pays to...

5....the wittiest man *that* you know?

6....the only friend *that* I had.

7....the first piece *which* I learned.

8....the price *which* he asks.

9....the man *of whom* I bought the coat. 或 the man *whom* I bought the coat of.

10....the book *which* we are reading evenings.

11....Take any seat *that* you like.

12....the only opera *which* I care for. *or* the only opera *for which* I care.

13....all *that* I can.

揭松閃 (19)

A. 1. herself

2. It

3. it

4. himself

5. It

6. it

7. She

B. 1. that

2. that

3. those

4. That

5. Those

C. 1. some

2. some

3. any

4. any

5. both

6. it

7. his

- D. 1. who  
2. which, who  
3. who, that  
4. that  
5. which  
6. that  
7. that  
8. that  
9. that  
10. which, what

- E. 1. Who  
2. whom  
3. whose  
4. Which  
5. Whom  
6. Which  
7. Who  
8. Who  
9. Who  
10. who

- F. 1. The grass *which* (that) grows...  
2. Such a man *as* came...  
3. I return the book *which* (*that*) you lent me...  
4. I do not like any one *who* (*that*) does...

5. The class *which* (*that*) you teach...
6. The carpenter *who* (*that*) made...
7. I will tell you everything *that* I know...
8. Such things *as* they say...
9. The mason *who* built...
10. The matter *which* (*that*) you inquire about...
11. Such news *as* you brought...
12. Friendship is the virtue *which* (*that*) I admire most.
- 13....the man *who* (*that*) deceived you.
- 14....such scent *as* comes...
15. A boy *who* is...
16. The man *who* (*that*) does...
17. The same book *that* you read...
- 18....the worst thing *that* you will...
19. This is the thing *that* he was...
20. Such things *as* do...

## 11 形容词与副词

揭松闪 (25)

- A. 1. He writes *excellently*: ...can write as *neatly* and *clearly*...
2. He will do it *easily*...
  3. She walks very *feebly*...
  - 4....will pay for it *dearly*.

5. He reads rather *indistinctly*...
6. He will help you *considerably*...
7. He came to school very *regularly*...
8. He treated us all *freely* and *fairly*...
9. The battle raged *fiercely*...
10. That was *nobly* spoken...
11. They were all *marvellously* angry...
12. He did it quite *accidentally*...
13. I will act *agreeably*...
14. He spoke very *intelligently*...
15. He treated us *handsomely*...
- 16....the chair *intentionally*.

B. 1. badly

2. safely

3. quick

4. strongly

5. strongly

6. uneasily

7. uneasy

8. freshly

9. sweetly

10. sudden

11. awkwardly

12. awkward



- 13. suspiciously
- 14. suspicious
- 15. sweetly
- 16. badly
- 17. sourly
- 18. careful
- C. 1. friendly
- 2. thoroughly
- 3. easily
- 4. fast
- 5. hard
- 6. fast
- 7. temporarily
- 8. quickly
- 9. systematic
- 10. systematically

## 12 比较

揭松闪 (21)

- A. 1. strongest
- 2. more beautiful
- 3. youngest
- 4. oldest

5. best
6. better
7. most useful
8. largest
9. taller
10. worse

- B. 1. smaller *than*
2. the *largest* city
  3. the *best* student *of* all
  4. John is stronger than his sister
  5. two years *older* than
  6. the *heavier*
  7. the *oldest*
  8. are *better* than
  9. the *tallest of (in)*
  10. the *highest*

- C. 1. further
2. latest
  3. clean
  4. each
  5. fewer
  6. sorry
  7. taller
  8. young

9. elder

10. older

### 13 冠词

#### 揭松闪 (22)

1. *an* inkspot; *a* useful

2. *an* arrow; *a* horse

3. *an* organ

4. *a* useful

5. *an* apple; *an* orange

6. *an* untidy

7. *a* history

8. *an* African; *a* European

9. *a* hospital

10. *a* unique

11. *a* hero

12. *a* universal

13. *an* umbrella

#### 揭松闪 (23)

A. 1. The

2. a

3. The

4. a

5. a

6. The

7. The

8. A

9. a

10. the

B. 1.—

2.—

3.—

4. The

5.—

6.—

7. The,—

8. The

9.—, the, the

10.—

11. The,—

12.—

13. the, the

C. 1. *The* Rhone River...for *the* river.

2. Most of the Chinese live on *the* plain of *the* Yangtse Kiang. Many live on *the* plain of *the* Hwan Ho.

3....*the* highest mountain in *the* world.

- 4....to reach *the* Philippine Islands...cross *the* China Sea.
  5. *The* Mississippi is *the* longest...
  6. *The* Panama Canal joins *the* Pacific...
  7. *The* first...*the* month...
  8. *The* president of *the* United States...
  9. *The* Himalayas are *the* greatest...
  10. *The* wolf is *an* animal of *the* same family as *the* dog.
- D. 1. *A camel travels* across the desert.
2. *A coolie works* very hard.
  3. *The shark is* a dangerous creature.
  4. *The cow does* not eat flesh.
  5. *The monkey has* a long tail.
  6. *A football is* filled with air.
  7. *The rat is* larger than *the* mouse.
  8. *A bicycle has* two wheels.
  9. *The kangaroo does* not lay *an* egg.
  10. *The fire engine carries* a ladder.

### 揭松閃 (24)

1. I have just bought a fresh copy of the Old and New *Tes*  
*taments*.
2. The five elements, according to the Hindoos, are earth,  
air, fire, water and ether.
3. A burnt child shunts the fire.

4. The old and new *methods* of cure failed equally with him.
5. A cool and bracing air suits me better than anything.
6. The black and white horse that he rides fell with him.
7. I have to keep two servant-maids for this house, a cook and *a* housemaid.
8. The just and merciful general spared the conquered.
9. A live ass is better than *a* dead lion.
10. Men have a higher degree of reason than brutes.
11. He was much respected both by the civil and *the* military officers.
- 12....are the English, *the* Germans, and *the* Dutch.
13. The loyal and *the* disloyal members...
14. The two parties, the Whig and *the* Tory,...
- 15....a club, *a* public library and *a* swimming bath.
- 16....of a patient and acute observer.

#### 14 名词所有格

##### 揭松闪 (25)

1. My nieces' books have been left on the shelf : they are careless.
2. The thieves' tricks were found out through their own carelessness.
3. The horses' hoofs will be hurt if they are not shod.
4. Did you see any ladies' cloaks in this room?

5. Mistresses' orders must be...by their pupils.
6. Many oxen's hides were brought...
- 7....those ships' crew before the ships are lost.
- 8....the robber's cave; he will be...
9. Men's muscles are stronger than women's.
10. Librarians' salary is seldom...
11. The witness's evidence...
12. The lionesses' roar was heard...
13. Heroes' exploits will always...
14. The dwarfs' arms were as short as those of children.
15. The wives' quarters were...
16. The duchesses' jewels have been...
- 17....the geese's cackling.

## 15 所有格形容词

### 揭松闪 (26)

- A. 1. yours
2. mine, his
3. My, yours, his
4. His, mine, yours
5. his, his
6. his, yours, hers
7. theirs

8. My, yours

9. Her, yours

10. hers, mine

11. yours, mine

B. 1. He is a friend of mine.

2. That shilling of yours is very old.

3. This coat of his is well made.

4. We will lend you those books of ours.

5. That manner of hers surprised me.

6. May I borrow some magazines of yours?

## 16 反身代词

### 揭松闪 (27)

1. *He* and she hurt...

2....; *I* saw him distinctly.

3. Bees provide *themselves* with...

4....bought *himself* a new one.

5....*she* brought the chair.

6. They, not *he* , paid the penalty of his faults.

7. Both *she* and Mary were...

8. John *himself* will pay...

9....injure *themselves* in that way.

10. War, as *he* avowed, was...



11. They dressed *themselves* out...

12....*he* saw them go in.

13....when *he* was in office.

14....paid for it *himself*.

15. *He* and Smith...

## 17 将来时态

揭松闪 (28)

A. 1. shall

2. shall

3. will

4. shall

5. will

6. shall

7. shall

8. shall

9. will

10. shall

11. shall, will

12. shall

13. will

14. Will

15. shall

16. shall

17. will

18. Will

19. Shall, shall

20. Shall

B. 1. Will; I will

2. Shall; I shall

3. Shall; We shall

4. Will; We will

5. Shall; You shall

6. Shall; You Shall

7. Will; I will

8. Shall; I shall

9. Will; I will

10. Shall; We shall

11. Will, shall; I will. You shall

12. Shall; I shall

13. Shall, will; You shall. I will (not) .

14. Shall; You shall (not)

15. Will; I will

C. 1....we shall find...

2. It will go...

3....the Government will do...

4....our countrymen will not suffer...

- 5....what will be...
- 6....I shall...
- 7....he will get...
- 8....unless it will be found...
- 9....we shall see...
- 10....we shall never be...

### 揭松閃 (29)

- 1....will be crossing...
- 2....will be working...
3. Shall you be resting...?
- 4....shall be constructing...
- 5....shall be shooting.

## 18 现在时态

### 揭松閃 (35)

1. leaves
2. am staying
3. stay
4. rises
5. is holding
6. are travelling
7. inhabit

8. are ringing
9. are written
10. plays
11. are having
12. stays, comes, is staying
13. is preparing
14. rises
15. is rising
16. is falling
17. is striking
18. are playing
19. loses
20. is losing
21. do you leave, is leaving
22. is coming
23. am going
24. are your friends arriving
25. are building

## **19 过去时态**

揭松闪 (31)

- A. 1. was walking, met, asked  
2. was raining, left

3. fell, hurt, was riding
4. called, were having
5. broke, was living
6. were sitting, drove
7. was getting, slipped, broke
8. was driving, happened
9. came, was leaving
10. was talking, saw

B. (study) I *studied* very hard...

I *was studying* last night...

(take) While John *was taking* his English lesson...

John *took* his English lesson yesterday.

(sleep) I *was sleeping* soundly when...

I *slept* soundly last night.

(blow) The wind *was blowing* hard when...

The wind *blew* hard last night.

(play) Mary *was playing* the piano when...

Mary *played* the piano for her guests.

## 20 将来完成时态

揭松闪 (32)

- A. 1. will have died  
2. will have seen

3. will have learned

4. will have become

B. 1. By *next* April he *will have read* most...

2. He *will have completely recovered* from his illness *by that time*.

3. He *will have finished* his work *by* eight o'clock.

4. *By* the end of *next* year he *will have learnt* to speak French well.

5. *By* this time *next* week we *shall have already* arrived.

6. He *will have paid* for his house *by that time*.

7. The concert *will have started* at six thirty.

8. In 1960 they *will have been married* thirty years.

9. He *will have lived* in this house for six months *by that time*.

10. The games *will have finished* before we arrive.

## 21 现在完成时态

### 揭松闪 (33)

1. have visited

2. went

3. have read

4. read

5. has had

6. fell

7. saw
8. have tried
9. went
10. have completed
11. have given
12. has started
13. I have never been to America
14. has gone
15. have been
16. have lived
17. lived
18. have waited
19. have studied
20. I have never been
21. joined, studied, but has not studied

## **22 过去完成时态**

揭松闪 (34)

1. called, had left
2. asked, had done
3. had looked
4. had taken
5. reached, had left

6. reached, had broken, (had) stolen
7. opened, had already taken
8. had come
9. arrived, had left
10. spent, had stayed

## 23 完成进行时态

### 揭松闪 (35)

1. has been smoking
2. have been working
3. have been bathing
4. have been reading
5. What have you been doing
6. had been visiting
7. Has your business been prospering lately?
8. has been making
9. will have been standing
10. shall have been attending
11. had been travelling
12. had been sailing

### 揭松闪 (36)

1. tell, flatter



2. saw, have not seen
3. will be doing, call
4. will take
5. was obviously feeling, had drank
6. were speeding
7. was doing
8. have witnessed
9. has captured
10. will have been completed
11. What were you doing
12. left
13. was, has been
14. took
15. shall you go
16. have, has not rained
17. began, ended, had met
18. What was Mary doing
19. had left
20. take

## 24 时之一致

揭松闪 (37)

- A. 1. She said she could not do this wash.

2. I thought I should finish this report by five o'clock.
  - 3....predicted that it would rain...
  4. She said her name was Smith.
  5. She complained that she had...
  6. He promised that the error would not occur again.
  7. I did not think I could complete...
  8. The students thought they were making sufficient progress.
  9. He hoped he could get there on time.
  10. I didn't think I should see you again.
  11. I was certain that the price would go up soon.
  12. He told me that prices were sure to rise.
  13. She said she had lived here three years.
  14. The jury declared that the prisoner was guilty.
  15. They felt sure the battle would be won before nightfall.
  16. I wondered what changes the new chairman would introduce.
  17. He swore he had never seen the man before.
  18. She said she might be late.
  19. He said he was taking English lessons from Miss Smith.
  20. He said that by next Tuesday he would have worked here two years.
- B. 1. will
2. does not

3. has been
4. will
5. is
6. would
7. can
8. has
9. are
10. will
11. will
12. have, are

## 25 直接叙述和间接叙述

### 揭松闪 (38)

- A. 1. The sailor said that the tide was ebbing.
2. The teacher said that the class would not be punished.
3. The librarian said that the book had been taken out.
4. The newspaper said that a serious fire had occurred.
5. He said that anybody could ride a bicycle.
6. The detective said that nobody might leave that room.
7. The committee reported that Shansi was suffering from a drought.
8. The historian said that the town had been destroyed by an earthquake.

9. James's father said that he (James) worked in the University.

10. The farmer said that a shower would help the crops.

11. The secretary told the manager that somebody was waiting for him.

12. The dentist told his patient that several of his teeth were decayed.

13. The guide told the explorer that they should have to camp near the river.

14. The lady told the cook that there were four people coming to dinner.

15. The reporter told the editor that he (reporter) had not been able to get an interview.

B. 1. They said to us, "You are on the wrong road. "

2. I said to him, "You are wrong. "

3. We said to them, "We have enjoyed ourselves. "

4. We heard you say, "I don't understand. "

5. I said to them, "Your roof will leak. "

C.2. He asked her what she was doing.

3. He asked her how she was.

4. He asked her when she had tea.

5. He asked her which the best way was.

6. He asked her whether (if) she was going to the pictures.

7. He asked her why she didn't take more trouble.

8. He asked her whether (if) her sister was still going to school.

9. He asked her whether (if) this work was important.
10. He asked her when the next train left.
11. He asked her whether (if) she had told him the whole story.
12. He asked her whether (if) she had been to Sun Moon Lake.
13. He asked her how far it was from Taichun.
14. He asked her whether (if) she had a pleasant holiday.
15. He asked her whether (if) he might have some milk in his tea.

D.2. They said to us, "Can you hear clearly?"

3. The children said to their mother, "Can we stay up late?"

4. They said to me, "Which is the best hotel?"

5. "Do many people visit the temple?", we said to the monks.

6. I said to her, "Can I get you a chair?"

7. I said to the stranger, "Do you speak English?"

8. "Where is the ship going?", they said to the coastguard.

9. We said to the policeman, "May we stand there?"

10. "Where is the nearest telephone?", asked they.

E.2. He told him not to do that.

3. He told him to write those words in his notebook.

4. He told him to put that pen in his desk.

5. He asked him to tell that boy to put his topee (hat) on.
6. He asked him to give that book to him.
7. He told him to be quick.
8. He told him not to let the snake get away.
9. He told him to take off those cups.
10. He told him to drive more carefully.
11. He asked him to lend him fifty cents.
12. He told him not to be fooled by them.
13. He asked him to come to the office at once.
14. He told him to stop that man.
15. He asked him to buy a ticket for him.
16. He told him not to let that door bang.
17. He told him to send that coolie to him.
18. He told him to stop making that noise.
19. He asked him to throw the ball to Chang.
20. He told him to wait a moment.

## 26 条件句

### 揭松闪 (39)

A. 1. have, had, had had; shall buy, should buy, should have bought

2. studies, studied, had studied; will surely pass, would surely pass, would surely have passed

3. calls, called, had called; shall speak, should speak, should have spoken

4. get, got, had got; shall return, should return, should have returned

5. see, saw, had seen; shall give, should give, should have given

6. find, found, had found; shall, should, should have given

7. turn, turned, had turned; shall be, should be, should have been

8. save, saved, had saved; will be, would be, would have been

9. comes, came, had come; shall see, should see, should have seen

10. know, knew, had known; shall ring, should ring, should have rung

B. 1. rested

2. would have been conquered

3. would have been killed

4. will miss

5. would have shot

6. were not provided

7. would occur

8. should be surprised

9. would have been flooded

10. is polished

11. should die, would (will) be buried

12. had died, would have been buried
13. rose, would be surprised
14. possessed, would fly
15. had not been warned, would have perished

C. 1. I should not go with her

2. he would have succeeded in the examination

3. if it is fine

4. I should not have done that

5. she will surely pass

6. I should have told you

7. if you had asked me

8. I would (should) type the letter for you

9. I should not have gone out

10. we shall go on a picnic

D. (现在)

1. I were there, I should (would) be very glad.

2. I did, I should (would) go swimming everyday.

3. I could, I should (would) buy a typewriter.

4. I had to, I should (would) work hard.

5. he had, he would go with us.

(过去)

1. if there had been one, he would have been saved.

2. if I had known it, I would (should) have rung you up.

3. if he had studied, he would have passed.



4. if I had been, I should (would) have done differently.
5. if I had been able to, I should (would) have spoken to her.
6. if he had studied it, he would have spoken it well.
7. if he had worn it, he would not have taken cold.
8. if he had come, he would have won the prize.
9. if I had been there, I should (would) have seen a good opera.
10. if I had been able to, I should (would) have gone to Venice.

## 27 Wish 后面的虚拟式

揭松闪 (45)

A. 1. owned

2. were

3. had gone

4. had

5. had had

6. lived

7. were

8. could

9. could

10. had studied

B. 1. I wish you would come back in an hour.

2. Miss Smith, I wish you would please write this letter right away.

3. I wish you would write your exercises in ink.

4. I wish you wouldn't write your composition in pencil.

5. I wish you would wait for a moment.

## **28 Should 的特别用法**

揭松闪 (41)

1. should go

2. should have gone

3. should do

4. should have called

5. should do

6. should have begun

7. should prepare

8. should not work, should take

9. should have answered

10. should have asked

11. should have notified

12. should not smoke

13. should have heard

## **29 Ought to**

揭松闪 (42)

1. ought to stay
2. ought to have gone
3. ought not to work, ought to take
4. ought not to smoke
5. ought not to, have sent, ought to have sent
6. ought to have asked
7. ought to have notified
8. ought to study
9. ought to visit
10. ought to stay
11. ought not to drink
12. ought to have begun

### **30 Should 和 Have to**

揭松閃 (43)

1. should have called
2. had to go
3. had to work
4. should study
5. should have taken
6. had to attend
7. have to attend
8. should go

9. should have written

10. had to stay

### 31 助动词的特别用法——避免重复

#### 揭松闪 (44)

1. a. He likes her and I do too.

b. He likes her and so do I.

c. He doesn't like her and I don't either.

d. He doesn't like her and neither (nor) do I.

2. a. He speaks English and his wife does too.

b. He speaks English and so does his wife.

c. He doesn't speak English and his wife doesn't either.

d. He doesn't speak English and neither (nor) does his wife.

3. a. He can go and we can too.

b. He can go and so can we.

c. He can't go and we can't either.

d. He can't go and neither (nor) can we.

4. a. You are wrong and he is too.

b. You are wrong and so is he.

c. You aren't wrong and he isn't either.

d. You aren't wrong and neither (nor) is he.

5. a. Mr. Wang has gone to America and his wife has too.

b. Mr. Wang has gone to America and so has his wife.

c. Mr. Wang hasn't gone to America and his wife hasn't either.

d. Mr. Wang hasn't gone to America and neither (nor) has his wife.

6. a. Mary left right after lunch and John did too.

b. Mary...and so did John.

c. Mary...didn't leave...and John didn't either.

d. Mary...and neither (nor) did John.

7. a. She is going and you are too.

b. She is going and so are you.

c. She isn't going and you aren't either.

d. She isn't going and neither (nor) are you.

8. a. I like movies and my sister does too.

b. I like...and so does my sister.

c. I don't like movies and my sister doesn't either.

d. I don't like...and neither (nor) does my sister.

9. a. She is making good progress and her brother is too.

b. She is...and so is her sister.

c. She isn't making good progress and her sister isn't either.

d. She isn't...and neither (nor) is her sister.

10. a. He will be here at ten o'clock and I will too.

b. He will...and so will I.

c. He won't be here at ten o'clock and I won't either.

d. He won't be...and neither (nor) will I.

11. a. My watch is fast and yours is too.  
b. My watch is...and so is yours.  
c. My watch isn't fast and yours isn't either.  
d. My watch isn't...and neither (nor) is yours.
12. a. He wanted to do it and Mr. Jones did too.  
b. He...and so did Mr Jones.  
c. He didn't want to do it and Mr. Jones didn't either.  
d. He didn't...and neither (nor) did Mr. Jones.
13. a. Smith was arrested and his assistant was too.  
b. Smith...and so was his assistant.  
c. Smith wasn't arrested and his assistant wasn't either.  
d. Smith wasn't...and neither (nor) was his assistant.
14. a. He saw the accident and I did too.  
b. He...and so did I.  
c. He didn't see the accident and I didn't either.  
d. He didn't...and neither (nor) did I.
15. a. She likes to read novels and I do too.  
b. She...and so do I.  
c. She doesn't like to read novels and I don't either.  
d. She doesn't...and neither (nor) do I.

### 揭松闪 (45)

1. can  
2. will

3. is
4. did
5. do
6. has
7. didn't
8. did
9. will
10. will
11. will
12. can't
13. can
14. will
15. do
16. don't
17. would
18. should

#### 揭松闪 (46)

1. ought
2. does
3. will
4. needn't
5. won't
6. is

7. are
8. do
9. did
10. did

### 32 不定词

揭松闪 (47)

1. to come
2. to swim
3. play
4. to go
5. run
6. fire
7. to pay
8. cry
9. to enter
10. fool around
11. to laugh
12. to work
13. steal
14. to stay
15. waste your time

揭松闪 (48)



1. to rain
2. to be raining
3. to have rained
4. to have stopped
5. to be stopping
6. to be sent
7. to have been sent
8. to be descending
9. to have descended
10. have visited
11. have attended
12. attended
13. to have been kidnapped
14. to have escaped
15. to have reached
16. to have increased
17. have neglected
18. to be placed
19. to have been murdered
20. to have made
21. to be preparing
22. have been punished
23. to swim
24. to be finished

25. to have been finished

### 33 分词

揭松闪 (49)

A. 1. called

2. Starting

3. (being) defeated

4. Having died

5. lost

6. Arriving

7. walking

8. having opened

9. (being) spent

10. having broken

11. (being) discovered

12. Having finished

13. being held

14. loosing

15. flying

B. 1. humming

2. dying

3. fallen

4. barking

5. having struck
6. wearing
7. dressed
8. stealing
9. brought
10. growing
11. typed
12. built
13. walking
14. killed
15. chatting
16. sent
17. contained
18. carrying
19. dying
20. following

### **34 动名词**

揭松闪 (55)

- A. 1. listening
2. paying
3. being defeated
4. joining

5. jumping
6. spraying
7. coming
8. making
9. keeping
10. growing
11. making
12. solving
13. falling
14. building
15. dressing, preparing

- B.
1. in seeing
  2. of swimming
  3. in spelling
  4. telephoning
  5. of seeing
  6. reading
  7. from finishing
  8. of finding
  9. in helping
  10. of moving
  11. on helping
  12. in teaching
  13. of starting

14. to seeing

### 35 不定词乎 动名词乎

揭松闪 (51)

1. laughing

2. from expressing

3. to smoke

4. to adopt

5. from smoking

6. (to) put

7. in editing

8. in refusing

9. on knowing

10. of attaining

11. to fight

12. to answering

13. to say

14. giving

15. of going

16. meeting

17. to tell

18. to find

19. to cry, to wonder

- 20. raining
- 21. trying
- 22. making
- 23. crying
- 24. accounting
- 25. reading, reading
- 26. of reading
- 27. of doing
- 28. to live
- 29. to know
- 30. of getting

### **36 介词**

揭松闪 (52)

- A. 1. by
- 2. to
- 3. on
- 4. in
- 5. for
- 6. to
- 7. of
- 8. to
- 9. of

10. of

11. of

12. to

13. for

14. of

15. to

16. of

17. from

18. from

19. to

20. to

21. in, of

22. to

23. to, for

24. of

25. of

26. to

27. into

28. on

29. with

30. to, for

B. 1. *at* half past eight

2. *in* December

3. *at* sunset

4. *to* school
5. *at* sunrise
6. *in* the morning
7. *on* the fourth of June *in* the year 1894
8. *on* Wednesday
9. *at* midnight
10. *on* June 21<sup>st</sup>
11. *at* eight o'clock
12. *in* February and July
13. *at* night
14. *in* winter
15. *in* the afternoon
16. search *for* my lost pen
17. suffered *from* a painful disease
18. *at* No. 52
19. satisfied *with*

C. 1. *at*

2. *for*

3. *on*

4. *on*

5. *of, at*

6. *with*

7. *for*

8. *against*



9. for
10. in
11. in
12. into
13. with
14. with
15. from
16. of
17. with
18. for
19. to
20. on
21. at
22. on
23. for
24. for
25. by
26. on
27. for
28. by
29. for
30. from
31. from
32. by

- 33. to
- 34. at
- 35. to
- 36. on
- 37. for
- 38. to
- 39. by
- 40. to
- 41. with
- 42. from
- 43. at
- 44. by
- 45. than
- 46. for
- 47. for
- 48. for
- 49. of
- 50. to
- 51. for
- 52. at
- 53. than
- 54. for
- 55. for
- 56. from

57. with

58. in

59. in

60. on

61. from

62. of

63. to

### 揭松閃 (53)

1. near 或 beside

2. besides

3. by

4. to

5. in 或 during

6. down

7. by

8. by

9. about 或 on

10. after

11. against

12. among

13. between

14. after

15. at

16. against
17. at
18. behind
19. at
20. down
21. of, from
22. off
23. on, on
24. for
25. from
26. into, in
27. within
28. from
29. in, in
30. in, out
31. of
32. out (away) , off
33. on, of
34. for
35. from
36. in, in
37. of, of
38. off, with
39. on, for

- 40. in, to, of, in, of, for (in)
- 41. in, over, in
- 42. at, of, of, by (past)
- 43. to (round) , with, by (at)
- 44. in, since, of
- 45. through, on, to
- 46. to, for
- 47. towards, up
- 48. for, at, under
- 49. in, to
- 50. up, in, of
- 51. with, for, at, with
- 52. of, without
- 53. back, at, over, of
- 54. round, in (during) , of
- 55. through, at
- 56. in, for, since
- 57. to, to
- 58. about, in, for
- 59. in 或 under
- 60. at, at, up

### 37 词的顺序

揭松闪 (54)

1. The chair *on which he sat* cost ten shillings.
2. He shot the mad dog *with a gun* after driving...
3. *Next morning mounting on a horse*, he left the house...
4. He repeated those lines *with perfect accuracy* after he had...
5. The judge saw that the man was innocent *more clearly than...*
6. English is *difficult not only to speak but also to spell*.
7. I am *an ascetic neither in theory nor in practice*.
8. His daily custom is to tell *after dinner* anecdotes which amuse or excite the company.
9. *Some of lady artists' paintings* ,...
10. The general *indignantly* ordered the deserters...
- 11....we keep *the tongue more* in...
12. He has been *here two years* ,...it is *even more* than...
13. I have read *the writings of Plato* , who was...?
14. A gang of robbers, *armed from head to foot* , entered the house...
15. *A lady brought up in England* , the daughter of a civil officer retired from India, seeks employment.
16. *A fisherman found* his body floating lifeless on the water at a short distance from where the boat was upset.
- 17....whence he was *destined never to return*.
18. *Riding over the battlefield* , our correspondent saw several soldiers dead or wounded.
19. *Paradise Lost* , *divided into twelve separate parts* , is the name of Milton's great epic poem on the loss of paradise.

20. Before we pay *the men* , let us see what work *they* have done.

### 38 副词的位置

揭松闪 (55)

- A. 1....is *entirely* new to me.  
2....flew *straight* to the landing ground.  
3. I went to London to see my friend *yesterday*.  
4. John is coming *here tomorrow*.  
5. You came *here quickly on Friday*.  
6. We went *there yesterday*.  
7. Take your hat *off*. 或 Take *off* your hat.  
8....to write *down* these notes. 或 to write these notes *down*.  
9. Pick it *up*.  
10. Write them *down*.  
11. I *never* do that.  
12. I have *always* done that.  
13. He will *always* speak *badly*.  
14. She has *often* been here.  
15. They have *never* been so early before.  
16. Food like this is *always* good *enough* for me.  
17. The children *soon* felt *quite* happy.  
18. If he likes you *perhaps* he will ask you to stay *longer*.

19. What I like *most* , you like *least*.

20. I *often* stay at my office working *late*.

B. 1. We have lost *only* one game.

2. He was married *only* yesterday.

3. *Only* I am left.

4. These people seem to live *only* for pleasure.

5. We *had only* one orange between us.

6. She writes *only* on one side of the paper.

7. I *only* drink water. 或 I drink water *only*.

8. *Only* John was punished.

9. I have *only* one dollar left.

10. Please...; I want *only* to read it.

C. 1. I can speak English very well.

2. I like music very much.

3. A beginner cannot speak English correctly.

4. The teacher explained the problem very well.

5. The hunter shot a lion with his gun.

6. He put the money into his pocket.

7. I sent a letter to my mother.

8. He learnt the poem by heart.

9. I received a nice present from my uncle.

10. He shut the book quickly.

11. I am always on time.

12. It seldom rains in the desert.



13. We went there yesterday.
14. I am not tall enough.
15. He begged the teacher not to punish him.
16. I told him not to get angry many times.
17. He will not have finished his work by tomorrow.
18. The question is often asked by students.
19. John did not come to school yesterday.
20. I almost won the game.

### 39 常易混淆的副词

揭松闪 (56)

A. 1. very

2. too

3. too

4. very

5. too

6. very

7. too

8. too

9. too

10. very

B. 1. very

2. much (very)

3. much

4. very

5. very

6. much

7. much

8. very

9. much

10. much

C. 1. very much

2. very much

3. too much

4. too much

5. too much

6. very much

7. too much

8. very much

9. very much

10. very much

#### **40 常易混淆的形容词**

揭松闪 (57)

A. 1. some

2. any

3. any

4. any

5. any

6. some

B. 1. interested

2. interesting

3. interesting

4. interesting

5. interested

6. interesting, interested

C. 1. farther

2. elder

3. older

4. Every

5. less

6. last

7. clear

8. high

D. 1. much

2. Many

3. much

4. much

5. many

6. much

E. 1. a little

2. little

3. a few

4. little, few

5. few

6. little

7. A few

8. a few

9. little

10. few

#### **41 常易混淆的动词**

揭松闪 (58)

A. 1. lie

2. lying

3. laid

4. lain

5. Lay

6. lain

7. laid

8. lie

9. lied

10. lay

B. 1. sets

2. sets

3. set

4. sits

5. set

6. sit

7. seat

8. seated

9. seated

10. seat

C. 1. risen

2. raise

3. rises

4. risen

5. raise

6. rise

7. rose

8. raised

9. rose

10. raise

D. 1. hanged

2. hung

3. hung

4. hanged

5. hung

E. 1. borrow

2. borrow

3. lend

4. lend

5. borrowing

F. 1. robbed

2. stolen

3. robbed

4. steal

5. rob

G. 1. refused

2. denied

3. deny

4. refused

5. refused

H. 1. listened, heard

2. hear

3. listening

4. hear

5. listen

I. 1. fall

2. fell

3. fell

4. felling

5. fell

J. 1. May

2. Can

3. may

4. may

5. can

K. 1. discovered

2. persuaded

3. took

4. learns

5. sleep

6. accept

7. drowned

8. remember

9. revenged

10. take part

### 揭松閃 (59)

1. He was well *aware* of..., and yet *conscious* of...

2. A miser can easily satisfy his *needs* but can...his *desires*.

3. A *custom* of industry...the *habit* of keeping...

4. The hermit was as *famous* for...as the robber was *notorious* for...

5....opportunities of *observing* his character, but I never *remark* that particular trait.

6. China is a *great* country, containing many *large* cities...

7. Let us *stop*...and stay *here*...

8. He was as *strict*...as he was *severe*...

9. Society is *divided* into...The lowest is *separated* from...

10....becomes *empty*..., and assume the *vacant* title...

11. I know an *instance*..., who is an *example*...

12. We *grant*...and *give* him...

13. He felt much *gratitude*...by the *thankfulness*...

14....into four *parts*..., and each...received his *portion*.

15....set at *liberty* , they have now perfect *freedom*...

16....a *timid* man, he repelled that *cowardly* assault...

17. A person may *forgive*...; ...cannot *pardon* a criminal.

18. He sent a *reply*...; ...contained no *answer* to...

19. He *proceeded* on..., but he had not *advanced* for,...

20. To *change* a dress..., to *alter* one is...

21. As he had no *arms*, ...which he used as *weapons*.

22....your first *attempt*, ...but *try* again.

23. He was *liberal*..., and had *generous* feelings...

24. He made a *solemn* promise...most *serious* attention...

25. He was a very *fit* man..., ...were not *suitable* for...

26. I *apprehended*..., but could not *understand*...

27. He is a little *below* me...any means *beneath* me...



28. Be so good as to *bring* the book...I will *fetch* the footstool...

29. Savages *clothe*...; moderns *dress*...

30. Let this plant be *put*...and *placed* in...

## 42 词类的构成

揭松闪 (65)

- A. 1. able
- 2. reasonable
- 3. absurd
- 4. accidental
- 5. advantageous
- 6. adventurous
- 7. affectionate
- 8. progressive
- 9. aristocratic
- 10. athletic
- 11. dirty
- 12. feverish
- 13. quarrelsome
- 14. calm
- 15. characteristic
- 16. chaste
- 17. circular

18. commercial
19. brief
20. criminal
21. contradictory
22. courteous
23. emperial
24. essential
25. favorable
26. questionable
- B. 1. acceptance
2. accusation
3. addition
4. admittance
5. adoption
6. application
7. appreciation
8. annoyance
9. alliance
10. arrival
11. advancement
12. movement
13. allowance
14. argument
15. choice

16. civilization
17. comparison
18. signature
19. temptation
20. revelation
21. assistance
22. attention
23. behavior (-viour)
24. belief
25. conference
26. condensation
27. consideration
28. conquest
29. trial
30. residence

- C. 1. admire admirable admirably
2. live lively, life-like, live livelily
  3. appear apparent apparently
  4. attract attractive attractively
  5. memorize memorable memorably
  6. beautify beautiful beautifully
  7. terrify terrible terribly
  8. certify certain certainly
  9. obey obedient obediently

- 10. pacify peaceful peacefully
- 11. correct correct correctly
- 12. encourage courageous courageously
- 13. purify pure purely
- 14. deceive deceitful deceitfully
- 15. differ different differently
- 16. explode explosive explosively
- 17. realize real really
- 18. grieve grievous grievously
- 19. hasten hasty hastily
- 20. laugh laughable laughably

### 43 语句的结合

揭松闪 (61)

A. 1. Writing down all the answers he still had time to revise them.

2. Holding his walking-stick...he walked up and down the street.

3. Arriving in town...he went at once to the best shop.

4. Being placed in different kennels, the dogs cannot quarrel.

5. Having hung up their hats, the travellers sat down to rest.

6. Being a successful tradesman, her father was able to leave her a great deal of money.

7. Having bought a good house and furnished it well, he brought his family to live in it.

8. Disliking the noise of London streets I returned to my quiet house in the country.

9. Being much pleased with...he forgave the rudeness.

10. Being inspired with hope he climbed up the precipice and reached the top in safety.

B. 1. The spring being now well advanced, we shall soon hear the cuckoo's voice again.

2. The war being over and the country pacified, the volunteers were sent back to their homes.

3. He having remained behind, the rest set off at 2 o'clock p. m.

4. The admiral having brought..., the crews had a little recreation on shore.

5. He having called for his gun and taken a good aim, the mad dog was shot.

6. He having refused to open the door, the unwelcome visitors went away.

7. Every farmer being provided..., the fields will soon be ploughed up for the next harvest.

8. They having reached a place of safety, no further danger need now be expected.

9. The judge having entered the court and taken his seat, the trial proceeded.

10. A brief halt having been made for luncheon, the army then resumed its march.

C. 1. He earns his living by (means of) driving a bullock cart to carry goods from place to place.

2. He declined to open his door to these visitors without giving any reason (for his refusal) .

3. The men made very little profit by their industry.

4. Their brother, in the disguise of a sailor, knocked at the front door.

5. According to an old Greek fable about King Midas, every thing touched by him turned into gold.

6. His progress was very much impeded by the people crowding the street to see him.

7. The soldier appeared on the scene with his right hand holding a bayonet over his shoulder.

8. Besides being an eloquent speaker, he was also a successful man of business.

9. To his friends, great relief, the traveller returned in safety from the Arctic seas.

10. The parents took a great deal of trouble in wishing to make every child happy as well as useful.

D. 1. He has now fifteen pupils in his class to teach and to prepare them for the next examination.

2. He had no money to carry on the business any longer.

3. He drew up his forces in battle array to meet the enemy marching towards him.

4. He stayed at home in order to look after his aged parents.

5. It is very healthy for a tired man to enjoy the fresh breezes of the sea.

6. He must sign his name to ensure the cheque to be cashed.

7. My advice to him was to make the best use of the short time left to him.

8. It was the sailors' custom to allow no rats to be killed on the ship.

9. The pigeons flew down to pick up the grains to satisfy their hunger.

10. He was too ill to go to school on that day.

E. 1. Washington, the federal capital of the United States, is called after General Washington, the leader of the forces of the American colonies and the founder of the great American Republic.

2. Oliver Cromwell was succeeded by his son, Richard by name.

3. That law, the cause of much trouble and discontent, must be repealed at not distant time.

4. He has many of a great commander's qualities, such as coolness of judgment in sudden emergencies and skill in directing the movements of troops.

5. He fled from his creditors, a very dishonest act.

6. John Bunyan wrote a well known book, *Pilgrim's Progress* by name, an allegory describing the trials and temptations of a Christian on his way to the Land of Promise.

7. Beside him sported on the green his little granddaughter Wilhelmine.

8. Cromwell, first a private gentleman, next a popular leader in the Long Parliament, then commander of the Parliamentary forces, assumed the power of a king.

9. Lord Clive, formerly a writer in a merchant's office at Madras, founded the British Empire in India.

10. Brutus, the enemy of kingly government of every form and kind, conspired with Cassius and others to kill Julius Caesar, the first man to make himself emperor of Rome and the first citizen to acquire an absolute power equal to that of a king.

### 揭松閃 (62)

1. They asked a third person to decide the point for them; for they can not decide it themselves.

2. They despised my warning, and therefore they shall eat of the fruit of their own way.

3. Her ways are ways of pleasantness and all her paths are peace.

4. He is a rich man, but he is not proud of his wealth and makes no distinction between rich and poor.

5. The feet of a cat are furnished with long sharp claws, and so a bird or mouse, once caught, cannot escape.

6. An honest man will both speak out and not be afraid of consequences.

7. In all labour there is profits, but the talk of the lips tends only to penury.

8. Life has few enjoyments, yet we cling to it.

9. They died on a battlefield, and consequently they lay on a bed of honour.

10. At this time of the year I do not rise at five o'clock in the morning, but rise at seven or eight.

### 揭松閃 (63)



A. 1. No one knows when he will come.

2. It is quite evident that rain will fall today.

3. I think that I shall never clearly understand this.

4. We heard that the school would open in ten days'time.

5. You must know that the air is never quite at rest.

6. We cannot rely on what he says.

7. It was very unfortunate that you were taken ill.

8. He was a man of fine character in all points except that he was rather timid.

9. I will grant you whatever you desire to have.

10. You find out too late that it was your duty to make the best of your time at school.

B. 1. The house in which we lived has fallen down.

2. This is the story that I heard ten years ago.

3. I have seen the house where Shakespeare was born.

4. The story which you are telling me is surely not true.

5. We stopped for the night at a small rest house which stood at the foot of the hill.

6. His good education raised him above many men of his own age and rank. 或 The good education which he had received raised him...

7. In our ramble through the forest we came upon a thatched cottage beside which a fine cedar tree of forty or fifty feet high was growing.

8. The young doctor who's at that table came with his wife.

9. The students who're in my class speak formally.

10. The short story (which is) about baseball is interesting.

C. 1. Let us go to bed, as it is now late.

2. He walked with care, because he was afraid of stumbling.

3. I agree to this, if you sign your name.

4. Even if he may punish me, yet will I trust him.

5. He returned home, after he had finished the work.

6. He persevered so steadily, that he succeeded.

7. Although he is sixty years old, his eyesight is still excellent.

8. They deserted their former associate, because he had become poor and unfortunate.

9. It has not ceased raining, since we left the house.

10. Whether he gives me leave or not, I shall go back to my parents.

#### 44 语句的转换

揭松闪 (64)

A. 1. We were surprised that he had strength.

2. It is said that the president is ill.

3. Can you tell me how I shall get to the town?

4. We must hope that better time will come.

5. We know who wrote the letter.

6. Tell us how high this tower is.

7. I do not believe that the story is true.

8. It is believed (They believe) that the murderer has been arrested.

9. I do not expect that he will return.

10. It is not right that we should idle away our time.

B. 1. The trees which grow there are pines.

2. I heard a dog which was barking somewhere.

3. Is that your brother who is getting out of that bus?

4. Where is the money which was received yesterday?

5. What was the agreement which had been signed last week?

6. There was a hat which hung on a peg.

7. Give me the books which lie on the table.

8. We saw some farmers who were planting rice.

9. The message which was sent yesterday was received yesterday.

10. What is the animal that is moving in that bush?

C. 1. When I climbed the hill, I saw a snake.

2. He is very angry because you do not obey.

3....because a puncture happened.

4....lest it should rain.

5. While he was absent...

6....after he had made a long search.

7....before he returns.

8. If a fire break (s) out,...

9....if you do not take trouble.

10....since he arrived.

### 揭松閃 (65)

1. The elder brother is not so clever as the younger.

2. Gold is heavier than any other metals. 或 No other metals are so heavy as gold.

3. I am not such a fool as to do such a thing.

4. Poverty is not so terrible an enemy as bad health.

5. It is not so easy to describe this scene as to imagine it.

6. A dead lion is not so strong as a live ass.

7. I would sooner (rather) die than injure a friend.

8. You are as good as he in every respect.

9. I do not know his character any better than you do.

10. A child knows as well as he how to keep his (its) temper.

### 揭松閃 (66)

1. He is as tall as you are.

2. This was so great an honor as to excite some of his rivals.

3. A coward alone would flee from his duty.

4. He tried all plans.

5. For ever will I quit the shores of France. 或 This shall be the last time I visit the shores of France.

6. Great men are of all nations and of all classes.
7. As long as the fair continued every man kept his temper.
8. Learned men are sometimes silly.
9. He has to give me thanks that I deserved.
10. France comes nearest to England at the Strait of Dover.

揭松閃 (67)

- A. 1. He promised to assist in the project.
2. I am engaged today at five o'clock.
3. He amused us very much by talking. 或 His talk amused us very much.
4. St. Paul was born in Rome.
5. To rely on such a traitor as that would be foolish.
6. He strove to win the first prize and succeeded. 或 He succeeded in striving to win the first prize.
7. The plan appears to be a good one.
8. He insolently presumed to expect the first place.
9. If you desire to be admitted to my service, you must sign this bond.
10. He forced his way through the crowd.
- B. 1. What is the meaning of his such impertinence?
2. The sagacity of a spider is wonderful.
3. I left my house at six o'clock because of (owing to; by) his desire.

4. The entire innocence of the accused is my belief.
  5. The activity of his mind caused his success in everything.
  6. He had the good sense to remind his business.
  7. The journey did not incur much expense.
  8. Whatever his intention may have been, he has caused us disappointment.
  9. Her simplicity in dress adds to her beauty.
  10. He is at times inclined to act with dishonesty.
- C. 1. He suffered an absolute ruin by that unlucky business.
2. Theft in former times was a crime punishable with death.
  3. He is a remarkably industrious man.
  4. A man inclined to be vicious will never be prosperous.
  5. To be temperate in eating and drinking is the way to preserve health.
  6. His proficiency in speaking is unusual.
  7. He was so suspicious that he looked upon every man as his secret enemy.
  8. He was not so polite as to stand aside.
  9. Every one was pleased with him for being fearless and independent.
  10. He was presumptuous enough to think that his opinion has more weight than mine.
- D. 1. He didn't do you that injury intentionally.
2. Probably rain will fall tomorrow.

3. I signed this bond very reluctantly.
4. He lived temperately and regularly.
5. The doctor studied the invalid's case very carefully and patiently.
6. He treated the prisoners very generously.
7. He was ordered to leave the room instantly.
8. He says things meaninglessly. 或 He talks meaninglessly.
9. He does every thing carelessly.

### 揭松閃 (68)

1. The agreement was signed and all were satisfied.
2. The judge believes in his innocence and so do I.
3. He fled away, or he would be killed.
4. He must not do such a thing again; otherwise he will be dismissed.
5. All men were against him, yet he persevered.
6. He was honoured, for he had health.
7. He has ambition to excel, therefore he worked night and day.
8. We failed to carry out our purpose, and so we were greatly disappointed.
9. He not only had difficulties, but he also lost his health.
10. He spoke the truth; for he feared the disgrace of falsehood.

## 揭松閃 (69)

- A. 1. I was glad to hear that you had succeeded so well.  
2. It is generally believed that he has died of poison.  
3. No one can tell when he will come.  
4. He shouted that his neighbours would come to his help.  
5. We can place no confidence in what he says.  
6. That he died at so young an age is much to be regretted.  
7. We must hope that better times will come.  
8. What he stated should be accepted.  
9. We could see from the result that his labor was great.  
10. It was reported that he had lost most of his money.
- B. 1. That was a fault which could not be forgiven.  
2. The present house that is ours suits us exactly.  
3. The explanation which they have given cannot be true.  
4. He was not a man who would tell a lie.  
5. Joseph who had remained a long time in prison was utterly forgotten.  
6. Is this the way in which you learn your lessons?  
7. The benefits which he obtained by his early training were thrown away.  
8. The troubles which beset him on all sides did not daunt him.  
9. Egypt was the first country that became civilized.



10. The weather that follows a storm is generally calm.

C. a. 1. Since we have no other helpers we must accept his aid.

2. They were much surprised, because they heard him have confessed his fault.

3. He was much ashamed, as he was unable to give an answer.

b.4. The problem was so difficult that it could not be solved.

5. He worked so well that every one was astonished.

6. He became rich so suddenly that he fell under suspicion.

c.7. He labors day and night (so) that he may become rich.

8. He started by night lest he should be seen by any one.

9. He sticks steadily to his work in order that he may become rich.

d.10. Unless we get leave from the teacher, we should not go out.

11. He would be very thankful if he was relieved of all this trouble.

12. If you turn to the right, you will...

13. Had the master been absent, the whole house would have...

e.14. He is strong, considering that he is a child of eight.

15. Another went out as every man came in.

f.16. He was very sorry when he found out his mistake.

17. He felt a good deal of pain as he coughed every time.

18. When the cat is absent, the mice play.

19. Every one has been happy since this news was received.

20. English was not spoken in Britain, till the Saxon arrived.

## 第二编 作文之部

## 一 造句例解

# 1 名词与冠词的关系

1. 一次不要做两件事（以免一无所成）。

Don't try to do two things at *a* time.

〔注〕 at *a* time = at one time

2. 狗是忠实的动物。

A dog is a faithful animal. (= Dogs are faithful animals.)

〔注〕 *a* dog = any dog

3. 这些杯子都是一样大小的。

These cups are all of *a* size.

〔注〕 of *a* size = of the same size

4. 从前有一个村庄里面住着一个老人。

Once there lived *an* old man in *a* village.

〔注〕 *an* old man = a certain old man

*a* village = a certain village

5. 我每月写一封信给我的父母。

I write to my parents once *a* month.

〔注〕 once *a* month = once per month

6. 他以为他是一个拿破仑。

He thinks he is *a* Napoleon.

〔注〕 *a* Napoleon = one like Napoleon

7. 有天一只兔子遇到一只乌龟。那兔子说：“我们赛跑吧。”

One day *a* hare met a tortoise. "Let us have a race," said *the* hare.

〔注〕第一次说 *a hare*，再提到时便用 *the hare*。

8. 门口有人来了，你去看看是谁。

Someone is at *the* door. Go and see who it is.

〔注〕虽是第一次出现的名词，但对方明显知道所指的是何者时，就可以用定冠词的 *the* 了。

9. 他在研究十八世纪的英国文学。

He is studying *the* English literature of the 18th century.

〔注〕因为后面加了 *of the 18th century* 一个“限定的”修饰短语，所以在 *English literature* 前就要加用一个定冠词 *the* 了，普通便不要加，如“*He is studying English literature.*”。

10. 地球以三百六十五日围绕太阳一周。

*The* earth goes round *the* sun in 365 days.

〔注〕指唯一的東西就要加定冠词，世界上只有一个地球就说 *the earth*，台南只有一个高等学府，在当地的人就说 *the college*。

11. 在外国工资是以周计的。

In foreign countries labourers are paid by *the* week.

〔注〕*by the week* 按星期计算。又如买布是按码计算，就说 *Cloth is sold by the yard.*

12. 平常他都起得很早。

Usually he gets up very early in *the* morning.

〔注〕在一定的短语中，如在 *in the morning*, *in the afternoon*, *in the evening*, *in the night* 等之中，名词前要加 *the* 字。又如：但是在他生日那天的早上，他却起得很迟。（*But on the morning of his birthday he got up very late.*）一句，因系“特定日子”的早上（*on the morning of the 10th*, *on Sunday morning*），所以前面的介词不用 *in*，而改用 *on*，附带说明，希读者注意。

13. 我住在台北市郊，但我的父母就住在乡下。

I live in *the* suburbs of Taipei, but my parents live in *the* country.

〔注〕“郊外”及“乡下”这种字眼的前面都要加定冠词。

14. 他抓住我的手，凝视着我的脸孔。

He caught me by *the* arm and stared me in *the* face.

〔注〕这正是英文的表现法和中文不同的地方，正像我们说时间要先说日子一样，英文说拍某人的肩，批某人的颊等等，一定要先说人，然后才说及于其身上被拍或被批的那一部分，同时在那一部分的前面要加定冠词 *the*，如果说“*He caught my arm and stared at my face.*”便是中国式的英语了。

15. 他乘克利夫兰总统号横渡太平洋。

He crossed *the* Pacific by *the* President Cleveland.

〔注〕川河海洋及船舶等与水有关的固有名词的前面要加定冠词。

16. 爱佛来斯特山是喜马拉雅山脉中的最高峰。

Mt. Everest is the highest peak in *the* Himalayas.

〔注〕山脉名前要加定冠词，但在单独的山名前便不要加冠词。群岛名及单独的岛名的前面，也是一样：“*Luzon is the largest island in the Philippines.*”（吕宋是菲律宾群岛中最大的一岛）。

17. 他生在美国。

He was born in *the* United States of America.

〔注〕在复数的国名前面，要加定冠词，他如 *the Netherlands*（荷兰），*the U. S. S. R.*（苏联）。

18. 《伦敦时报》说首相或将辞职，但《曼彻斯特导报》便一字未提。

*The London Times* says that the premier may resign, but *the Manchester Guardian* says nothing about it.

〔注〕报章、杂志、书籍等的名字前面，要加定冠词。

19. 他在第二次世界大战的最后一年回国，在上个月死去了。

He came home in the *last year* of World War II, and died *last month*.

〔注〕说 *the last month* 是指某时间的最后一个月，不加定冠词单说 *last month* 是指上个月，即 *this month* 的前一个月。

20. 大家都说中国人是勤励的民族。

People say that the Chinese are *an industrious people*.

〔注〕说 *people* 是指一般世人，说 *a people*=*a nation* 是指一个民族。

21. 他是一个大将兼政治家。

He was *a great general and statesman*.

〔注〕说同一个人的时候，只要前面用一个冠词就够了，如果是两个人就前后都要用冠词，如“我要一个打字员，另外还要一个速记员。”英文就说“*I want a typist and a stenographer.*”。

22. 像他那样好的人，不会做这样卑鄙的事。

*So good a man as he cannot do such a mean thing.*

〔注〕普通用法是把冠词置于形容词之前，如 *a black dog, the big cat* 等，但用某些特别的形容词或副词时，就要把冠词置于其后，如 *so good a man, such a man, half a mile, double the price, what a picture, no less a person, all the children, both the brothers, so honest a boy, too bad an excuse, how good a girl, quite the thing, just a little, nearly the same*, 等等。

23. 我看见远处有一个岛。

I saw an island in *the distance*.

〔注〕在介词 *in* 后用定冠词，在介词 *at* 后用不定冠词，如 *at a distance*。

24. 面包为养生之本。



*Bread is the staff of life.*

〔注〕物质名词以用单数“不加冠词”为原则，但特别指定者例外，如“*The bread is cut up.*”。此外不用冠词的还有下列各项：

- (1) 在抽象名词前 (*Necessity is the mother of invention.*)
- (2) 当 *man*, *woman* 用作代表的意义时 (*Man likes company.*)
- (3) 餐名前 (*At what time do you have breakfast?*)
- (4) 当名词用于呼唤格时 (*Mother, Father wants you.*)
- (5) 在表示资格的 *as* 或 *in the capacity of* 后, *He traveled as president.*
- (6) 表示官阶及职位的名字, 与固有名词同用时, 或用作补语时 (*General Yo; King George; He was elected president; Charles Darwin, author of the Origin of Species.*)
- (7) 在语法上有同等关系的名词, 在成语中并列而用时 (*side by side; day after day; from flower to flower; pen and ink*)
- (8) 名词与介词或动词结合为一成语时 (*by bicycle; by train; on foot; in front of, to give way; to take place*)
- (9) 在 *school*、*church*、*market*、*bed*、*table*、*prison*、*hospital* 等词表示本来的目的时 (*I went to school with him; They are at church.*)
- (10) 在表示种类时的 *kind* (*sort, manner, class*) *of* 后 (*What kind of bird is it?*)
- (11) 在表示让步或感叹的字句开始名词时 (*Hero as he was, he shrunk from it; I thought him an honest fellow—fool that I was!*)
- (12) 名词前用有 *this*、*that*、*which*、*my*、*each*、*every*、*some*、*any* 等代替冠词的字眼时, 则可略去冠词。

## 2 代词应注意的用法

1. 现在阴云密布，说不定就要下雨。

*It is cloudy now, but it may begin to rain at any moment.*

〔注〕说“天气”是可用 *it* 代表的。“今天天气好”，很少有人会说 *The weather is fine today*，而普通只是说 *It is fine today*.

2. 你的表现在什么时候了？——正三点钟。

*What time is it by your watch?—It is three.*

〔注〕*it* 又是“时间”的代词。

3. 从这里到你学校有多远？——走去不过十分钟。

*How far is it from here to your school?—It is only ten minutes' walk.*

〔注〕*it* 又可以用来表示“距离”。

4. 撒谎是不对的。

*It is wrong to tell a lie.*

〔注〕*it = to tell a lie*. 所以 *it* 只是形式上的主语，其实际的主语为 *to tell a lie* 一个不定词，因此可知 *it* 又可用做形式主语。

5. 我规定在每天早餐前出去散步一回。

*I make it a rule to take a walk before breakfast every morning.*

〔注〕*it* 又可以作为形式上的宾语来用。这个 *it* 即等于“*to take a walk before breakfast every morning*.”。

6. 难怪他要生气。

*It is no wonder that he should get angry.*

〔注〕 *it* 又可以代表一个从句，作为那个句子的形式上的主语，其实际的主语为 *that* 以下的从句。

7. 我当作你能来的。

*I took it for granted that you could come.*

〔注〕 这个 *it* 也是形式上的宾语，其真正的宾语为 *that* 以下的名词从句。

8. 在1492年发现美洲的是哥伦布。

*It was Columbus that discovered America in 1492.*

〔注〕 *It...that...* 是加强语气的说法，普通是说“*Columbus discovered America in 1492.*”。一个句子中的任何一部分都可以用这种方式来加强语气，本句所加强的是主语的 *Columbus*，如果要加强宾语的 *America* 便可以说“*It was America that Columbus discovered in 1492.*”。如果要加强发现的时间，便可以说“*It was in 1492 that Columbus discovered America.*”。

9. 人要敬老。

*We (You) should respect our (your) elders.*

〔注〕 漠然地指一般人，可用 *we* 或 *you*，正好像用 *one* 或 *they* 一样。（见下二例句）

10. 加拿大说什么语言？

*What language do they speak in Canada?*

11. 用功的人一定成功。

*One who studies hard is sure to succeed.*

12. 你有自来水笔吗？——嗯，我有。

*Have you a fountain-pen? —Yes, I have one.*

〔注〕 代替“不定冠词 + 名词”（在此句中即为 *a fountain-pen*）要用 *one*；但代替“定冠词 + 名词”（即 *the fountain-pen*）便要

用 it。例如 *Where is the fountain-pen? —It is on the desk.*  
(自来水笔在哪里? ——在桌子上。)

13. 你有笔吗? ——有的, 我有很好的。

*Have you any pens? —Yes, I have some good ones.*

〔注〕代替复数名词, 就用 **ones**。在本例中用 **ones** 代替 **pens**, 以避免重复来说同一名词。单数当然是用 **one** 代替, 如上例的 **one** 代替 **a fountain-pen**。

14. 不要吃得过多。

*Don't overeat yourself.*

〔注〕英文中有许多动词, 叫作反身动词 (**reflexive verb**), 后头跟着有一个 **oneself** 的, 如 **enjoy oneself**; **avail oneself** 等, 这个 **oneself** 并没有“自己”的意思, 中文可以不译。

15. 他为之狂怒。

*He was beside himself with rage.*

〔注〕**beside oneself**=almost mad. 这是含有 **-self pronoun** 的 **idiom** 之一例。其他 **oneself** 前有 **preposition** 的, 主要有 **by oneself** 独自 (无伴); **for oneself** 为己, 自立 (不依赖人); **of oneself** 出于自动, 自发, 自然。例如 *If you don't know the word, consult the dictionary for yourself.* (如果你不认识那个字, 自己查字典。) *He lived there all by himself.* (他独自一人住在那里。) *The light went out of itself.* (灯自熄了。)

16. 人人尽力使自己的国家成为安乐的居处。

*Everybody must do his best to make his country a good place to live in.*

〔注〕**everybody** 中必然有男有女, 但英文中没有一个男女共通的单数所有格代词, 只好用 **his or her**, 但这样说未免太啰嗦了, 普通人只好不顾语法而用 **their** 一字, 实则用 **his** 就好了。因为用男性代表, 正如用 **man** 代替人类一样。

17. 我们中国人是一个爱好和平的民族。

*We , Chinese, are a peace-loving people.*

〔注〕 *we*、*Chinese* 为同格的主语，如在宾格时就应该用 *us*，如 *They know us. Chinese, a peace-loving people.*（他们知道我们中国人是一个爱好和平的民族。）

18. 你的比她的好多了。

*Yours is (are) much better than hers.*

〔注〕 *yours* 和 *hers* 这两个所有代词是单复同形的。不可写为 *your's* 或 *her's*. Cf. *It's mine.* = *It is mine.*

19. 新加坡的气候比日本的要温和得多。

*The climate of Singapore is much milder than that of Japan.*

〔注〕这个 *that* (=climate) 是绝对不可略去的。如其所代表的名词为复数时则用 *those*。例如“*His children are much older than those of his brother.*”。（他的儿女比他兄弟的儿女要大得多。）

20. 你在找什么？——我在找我的自来水笔。

*What are you looking for? —I am looking for my fountain-pen.*

21. 你知道我在找什么吗？

*Do you know what I am looking for?*

22. 你以为我在找什么？

*What do you think I am looking for?*

23. 你为什么要说这样的话？

*What made you say such a thing?*

〔注〕这等于说 *Why did you say such a thing?* 又如 *What do you say to going on a picnic?* = *How do you like going on a picnic?*

*What* is your home town? = *Where* is your home town? 其他在英语中用 *what* 开始的很多, 如: *What* is the matter with you? (你怎么了?) I was at a loss *what* to do. (不知所措。) *What* has become of the poor fellow? (那个可怜的人怎样了?)

24. 他就是写这首诗的诗人。

He is the poet *who* wrote this poem.

〔注〕在所有的关系代词中只有 *who* 一词有变化, 其所有格为 *whose*, 宾格为 *whom*。例如: He is a poet *whose* poems are very popular. (他是一个诗作很脍炙人口的诗人。) He is a poet *whom* we all admire. (他是一个我们大家钦佩的诗人。)

25. 这是一首那个著名诗人所写的诗。

This is the poem *which* was written by the famous poet.

26. 这是人人皆知的一首诗。

This is the poem *which* almost everybody knows.

27. 这是一首题为《西风》的诗。

This is the poem *whose* title is "the West Wind."

28. 你看走过来的那人和他的狗。

See the man and his dog *that* are coming this way.

〔注〕先行词如果是人和物的话, 就要用关系代词 *that*, 因 *who* 只能指人, *which* 只能指物, 唯有 *that* 才能人和物并指。

29. 有常识的人, 谁能做这样的事?

Who *that* has common sense can do such a thing?

〔注〕先行词为疑问代词的 *who* 时, 下接的关系代词, 便不宜再用 *who*, 应改为 *that* 才妥。

30. 这是我生平所见到的最美的落日。

This is the most beautiful sunset *that* I have ever seen.

〔注〕在最高级时要用 *that* 作关系代词。

31. 这是我所有的唯一的英文字典。

This is the only English dictionary *that* I have.

〔注〕在 *the only* 之后，也要用 *that* 作关系代词。此外在 *the very* 或 *all the* 之后也是一样，如 *These are all the English books that I have.*（我所有的英文书全部都在这里。）*This is the very thing that I have long wanted to have.*（这是我很久就想要的东西。）

32. 那个外国人说的话你懂得吗？

Do you understand *what* that foreigner says?

〔注〕这个 *what* 是关系代词，有 *that which* 之意。因为 *what* 这个关系代词，本身包括有先行词在内的。这种 *what* 的用法，还可以举出下列各例：*Don't try to do what is impossible.*（不要去试做不可能的事。）*Don't put off till tomorrow what you can do today.*（今日能做的事，不要延到明日。）*I owe what I am to my uncle.*（我之有今日全系我叔之赐。）*He is what we call a self-made man.*（他是一个我们所谓自学成功的人。）*Reading is to the mind what food is to the body.*（读书之于心灵，正如食物之于身体。）

33. 想要来的人你都可以招待。

You may invite *whoever* wants to come.

〔注〕这个 *whoever* = *anyone who*，其中 *anyone* 是 *invite* 的 Object，而 *who* 便是 *wants* 的 Subject。

34. 你想要招待的人，都可以招待。

You may invite *whomever* you want.

〔注〕这个 *whomever* = *anyone whom*，其中 *anyone* 是 *invite* 的 Object，而 *whom* 便是 *want* 的 Object。

35. 你可以选取你所喜欢的。

You may take *whichever* pleases you.

〔注〕 *which* 是主格和宾格同形的，所以这句话又可以说成 *You may take whichever you like.*

36. 只要是无害的事，你什么都可以做。

*You may do whatever is harmless.*

〔注〕 *whatever* = *anything that*. 这个 *whatever* 是 *do* 的 Object, 同时又是 *is* 的 Subject. 因为 *what* 是主格和宾格同形的，在 “*You may do whatever you like.*” 一句中，*whatever* 是 *do* 的 Object, 同时又是 *like* 的 Object.

37. 无论你做什么，你都会成功的。

*Whatever you may undertake, you will succeed in it.*

〔注〕 这个 *whatever* 是引导一个让步从句的。

38. 不管是谁这样说，我都不信。

*Whoever may say so, I shall not believe it.*

39. 无论你要哪一个，你都会满意的。

*Whichever you may take, you will be satisfied.*

40. 要读那些有益的书。

*Read such books as can benefit you.*

〔注〕 这个关系代词的 *as* 是跟在 *such* 后面的。这句话又可说成 *Read those books which can benefit you.*

41. 我跟你有同样的英文读本。

*I have the same English reader as you (have) .*

〔注〕 *the same...as...* 是表同类物，如说同一物的话，就说 *the same...that...* 例： *My brother attends the same school that you do.* (我弟弟和你进的同一个学校。)

42. 没有一条法则没有例外。

*There is no rule but has some exceptions.*



〔注〕 but has = that has not

43. 这些书你有读过的没有? ——是, 我有些读过。

Have you read *any* of these books? ——Yes, I have read some.

〔注〕在问句中用 *any*, 在陈述句中就要用 *some*。

44. 请你在那里面借一本给我。任何一本都可以。

Please lend me *some* of them. *Any* of them will do.

〔注〕*some* 指其中的一部分, *any* 则指任何一部分。

45. 如果有人来访, 总得有人去开门。

If *anyone* calls, *someone* must open the door.

〔注〕在 If-clause 中用 *anyone*, 在肯定句中用 *someone*。

46. 我有两个叔叔。一个是牙科医生, 一个是银行职员。

I have two uncles. *One* is a dentist and *the other* is a bank clerk.

〔注〕在两件事物之中, 随便取一件说 *one*, 其余一件则说 *the other*。

47. 花瓶中有各色各样的花。有的红, 有的白。

There are all sorts of flowers in the vase. *Some* are red and *others* are white.

〔注〕*others* = other flowers

48. 花园中有许多郁金香。有些是红的, 其余是黄的。

There are plenty of tulips in the garden. *Some* are red and *the others* are yellow.

〔注〕*the others* = the rest

49. 我不喜欢这个。另外拿一个给我看吧。

I don't like this *one*. Show me *another*.

〔注〕 another = a different one

50. 这个不行。拿那个给我。

This won't do. Show me *the other*.

51. 青年男女彼此相爱。

The boy and the girl love *each other*.

〔注〕同为“互相”或“彼此”之意，*each other* 用于二人之间，*one another* 用于二人以上，如 You boys should not find fault with *one another*.（你们孩子们不要彼此找别人的错处。）

52. 他们不是两个人都到了的。

*Both* of them were not present.

〔注〕这是所谓“部分否定”的说法。如果是说两个人都未到的话，就要说 *Neither* of them was present.

53. 这些书我并没有完全读过。

I haven't read *all* of these books.

〔注〕这也是“部分否定”，如果全未读过，就说 I have read *none* of these books.

54. 他极其虚弱，所以除水果以外什么都没有吃。

He was so weak that he ate *nothing* but fruit.

55. 赶脱了快车，除了迟延出发之外别无办法。

As I missed the express, there was *nothing* for it but to put off my departure.

56. 我没有什么比旅行更要喜欢的了。

There is *nothing* that I like so much as travelling.

57. 人应守约。

*One* should keep *one's* word.

〔注〕 **one** 如指一般人 (**men in general**) 时, 后面的所有格就要用 **one's**, 如系限定的时候, 就用 **his** 和 **her**, 例如: **Every one loves his mother.** (人皆爱其母) **No one knows what his fate will be.** (谁也不知自己的命运将成为什么样子)。

58. 他是一伟大的学者, 而人亦以此敬之。

**He was a great scholar, and was respected as such.**

〔注〕 **such = a great scholar.** 是用来代替前面说过的那名词的。

### 3 形容词应注意的用法

1. 你有几本外国文的书? ——我有八本英文书和两本德文书。

*How many foreign books have you? —I have eight English books and two or three German ones.*

2. 你父母有多大年纪了? ——父亲五十五岁, 母亲四十七岁。

*How old are your parents? —My father is fifty-five and my mother is forty-seven years old.*

3. 那睡着的猫是我的, 而那玩着球的猫就是我妹妹的。

*The sleeping cat is mine and the one playing with the ball is my sister's.*

〔注〕playing 一个形容词因有 with the ball 的修饰语附在其后, 所以不能如 sleeping 一样照平常置于名词之前。因前面说了 cat, 为避免重复故后面用 one 代替。

4. 他也许不是一个能干的人, 但他确是一个有学问的人。

*He may not be an able man, but he is certainly a learned man.*

5. 他的学校是一所三层楼的三合土的建筑物。

*His school is a three-storied concrete building.*

6. 富人未必比穷人幸福。

*The rich are not always happier than the poor.*

〔注〕the rich=rich people.

7. 大部分的(许多、多数、有些、少数、没有几个、没有)人这样想。

*Most* (*A great many*、*Many*、*Some*、*A few*、*Few*、*No*) people think so.

8. 留得有非常多 (有很多、有些、有很少、有几无、没有一点) 水。

There is *a great deal of* (*plenty of*、*some*、*a little*、*little*、*no*) water left.

9. 我在你之外有少数的朋友。我除你以外几无朋友。

I have *a few* friends besides you. I have *few* friends except you.

〔注〕*a few* 有少数，*few* 几无。

*a little* 有少量，*little* 几无。

10. 我在默书上弄错不少。我在准备背诵中发觉不少的困难。

I made *not a few* mistake in my dictation. I found *not a little* difficulty in preparing for the recitation.

11. 奥林匹克运动会每四年举行一次。

The Olympic games take place *every four years* (*every fourth year*) .

12. 有些孩子爬树简直像猴子一样，有些孩子泅水简直像青蛙一样。

Some boys climbed up the trees like *so many* monkeys, and others swam in the pond like *so many* frogs.

13. 汤姆是他班上最高的孩子。

Tom is *the tallest* boy in his class. = Tom is *taller* than any other boy in his class. = Tom is as *tall* as any other boy in his class. = No other boy in his class is so *tall* as Tom.

14. 玛丽是两人当中较漂亮的一个。

Mary is *the prettier* of the two. = Mary is *prettier* than the other.

15. 凯蒂是她们当中最高的。

Kate is *the tallest* of them all. = Kate is *taller* than the others.

16. 东西愈远，看去愈小。

The *farther* a thing is the *smaller* it looks.

17. 似乎没有再加详细说明的必要。

No *further* explanation seems necessary.

18. 他太年轻不能帮助他父亲。

He is too *young* to help his father.

19. 她已经长得够大，可以帮助她母亲了。

She is *old* enough to help her mother.

20. 他把他所能花费的钱全部拿去买书。

He spends on books *all the* money that he can spare.

21. 他绝不会做这样的事。

He is *the last* man to do such a thing.

22. 我第一次在伦敦见到她。

I met her for *the first* time in London.

23. 终于我们达到旅程的终点了。

At *last* we came to our journey's end.

〔注〕这个 **last** 是形容词的名词用法。其他常作名词用的形容词，我们还可举出不少的例来，下列各句便是其中的一部分。At *first* I found English very difficult to learn, but I soon found it quite easy. (最初我觉得英文很难学，但不久我就觉得很容易了。) She is now in her *forties*, but when she got married she was still in her teens. (她现在已经四十岁以上了，但当她结婚时，她还只有十几岁呢。) I have seen it *hundreds* of times. (我见过无数次。) *Thousands* of people came to see the sports. (成千的人

来看运动会。) They were walking in the park by *twos* and *threes*. (他们三五成群地在公园里散步。) *Ten to one* he will succeed. (十有八九他会成功。)

## 4 动词时态的用法

### Present Tense (山原十她)

一、现在的事实：

1. 我知道他是高兴的。

I *know* that he *is* glad.

2. 我的父母住在乡下。

My parents *live* in the country.

3. 父亲在看报。

Father *is reading* a newspaper.

〔注〕现在进行也属于现在时态的一种，表示现在正在做着。

二、现在习惯的行为：

4. 我每天六时起床。

I *get* up at six every morning.

5. 他常到公园里去散步。

He *takes* a walk in the park.

6. 他七点钟吃早饭。

He *has* breakfast at seven.

7. 他七点半去上学。

He *leaves* for school at half past seven.

8. 他在晚饭后准备功课。



After supper he *prepares* his lessons.

三、不变的真理：

9. 二加二等于四。

Two and two *are* four.

10. 地球围绕太阳转动。

The earth *moves* round the sun.

11. 白日阳光普照。

The sun *shines* in the daytime.

四、预定的事情：

12. 父亲下星期动身到美国去。

Father *leaves* for America next week.

13. 母亲明天早上回来。

Mother is *coming* home tomorrow morning.

五、代替将来时态：

14. 你在此地等我回来。

Wait here till I *come* back.

15. 等他一到我们就动身。

Let us set out as soon as he *arrives*.

16. 明天要是天气好，我就高兴啦。

I shall be glad if it *is* fine tomorrow.

〔注〕如 *if* 引导的不是副词从句，而是名词从句时，也就可以用将来时态，

例如：I doubt if it *will* be fine tomorrow.

**Past Tense** (阁冒十她)

一、过去某个时候的行为或状态：

17. 昨天我去看他时，他正在写信。

When I *called* on him yesterday, he *was writing* a letter.

18. 你来的时候我正在洗澡。

When you *came*, I *was having* a hot bath.

19. 他在半点钟以前出去散步了。

He *went* out for a walk half an hour ago.

二、过去习惯的行为或事实：

20. 在那个时候我每个月要看三四回电影。

In those days I *went* to the movies three or four times a month.

21. 他常到我家里来闲谈。

He *would* often *come* to my house to have a chat.

〔注〕表示过去习惯的行为，如加上反复的意味时，可用 **would** 或 **used to** 的字样。

22. 我们常一同上学。

We *used to go* to school together.

23. 年轻时他老爱喝酒。

When young, he *was always drinking*.

## Future Tense (将来时)

一、单纯将来的陈述句：

24. 我到明年就有十七岁了。

I *shall be* seventeen next year.

25. 大家说今秋要丰收。

People say that we *shall have* a big crop of rice this autumn.

26. 过分用功，会生病的。

If you work too hard, you *will fall ill*.

27. 要更加用功，你才可以考取。

Work harder, and you *will pass*.

28. 要不更加用功，你就会失败。

Work harder, or you *will fail*.

29. 吃了这个药，你就会活；不吃，你就会死。

Take this medicine, and *you will live*; if not, you *will die*.

30. 如果他听到这个消息，他一定会很难过的。

If he hears the news, he *will be* very sorry.

31. 现正在下雨，但是不久就会晴的。

It is raining now, but it *will soon clear up*.

二、单纯将来的疑问句：

32. 如果我马上动身，我可以赶得上吗？

If I start at once, *shall I be* in time?

33. 如果我马上动身，我要什么时候才可以达到那里？

If I start at once, what time *shall I reach* there?

34. 你明年几岁？

How old *will you be* next year?

〔注〕在英国问第二人称的问句，常用 *shall*，以期待他回答 *I shall...*，故上句在英国常作 *How old shall you be next year?*

35. 你明天这个时候在不在家？

*Shall (Will) you be* at home about this time tomorrow?

36. 我想要在今天下午三点钟的时候来看你。你有空吗?

I want to see you this afternoon about three. *Shall (will) you be free?*

三、意志将来的陈述句:

37. 虽然下大雨, 我还是要去。

Though it rains cats and dogs, I *will go*.

33. 如果你在吃晚饭时做好的话, 我就带你去看电影。

If you finish it by suppertime, I *will take* you to the cinema.  
a.

〔注〕by 表示时限, 意为“为止”。电影英国说 cinema, 美国说 movies。

39. 我想试试看, 不过我恐怕要失败。

I think I *will try*, but I am afraid I shall fail.

40. 溺者见到一根草也要去抓住的。

A drowning man *will catch* at a straw.

41. 狗吠生人。

A dog *will bark* at a stranger.

42. 你刚才不是说过你要跟我们一道去吗?

You have just said that you *will go* with us, haven't you?

43. 她说任何事她都愿为你去做。

She says she *will do* anything for you.

44. 你要更加用功一点, 你就可以得到这个照相机作为奖品。

Work harder, and you *shall have* this camera as a reward.

〔注〕and you shall have = and I will give you.

45. 如果你准备好了, 我就带你去。

If you are ready, you *shall go* with me. (=I *will take* you with me.)

46. 如果你的弟妹们想去的话，我就带他们去。

If your brothers and sisters want to go, they, too, *shall go* with me.

四、意志将来的疑问句：

47. 你要这个还是那个？

Which *will* you *take* , this or that?

48. 在你回家的路上请代我发这封信。

*Will* you *post* this letter for me on your way home?

49. 先生，请你讲解一下这个句子的意义好吗？

Sir, *will* you kindly *explain* the meaning of this sentence?

50. 其次我要做什么？

What *shall* I do next?

51. 要我把你的房间收拾一下吗？

*Shall* I *put* your room in order?

52. 我下回什么时候来？

When *shall* I come next?

53. 我过两天再来好吗？

*Shall* I come again in a few days?

54. 其次要他做什么？

What *shall* he *do* next?

55. 要他为你擦皮鞋吗？

*Shall* he *polish* your shoes?

56. 要他什么时候来？

When *shall* he *come*?

57. 要他等待你的回信吗?

*Shall* he wait till he hears from you?

## Present Perfect (山原式诚十她)

一、现在完成了的行为:

1. 我刚把这工作做完。

*I have just finished* the task.

2. 我才从车站去迎接了我的表兄回来。

*I have been* to the station to meet my cousin.

3. 我才从车站去给我的叔叔送行回来。

*I have been* to the station to see my uncle off.

二、继续到现在为止的行为或状态:

4. 我在此地住上十年了。

*I have lived* here for ten years.

5. 我自从1942年以来就住在此地。

*I have lived* here since 1942.

6. 他从月初以来就一直卧病。

*He has been* ill in bed since the beginning of this month.

7. 她缺席多久了? 她从星期一开始就没有来。

How long *has* she *been* absent? She *has been* absent since last Monday.

8. 你认识他多久了? 我们从小孩子时代起就认识的。

How long *have* you *known* him? I *have known* him since we were children.

9. 你的英文学了多久了?

How long *have you been* studying English?

〔注〕**have been doing** 是包含现在、过去、将来三个时候在内的，在上例中即是说过去学了，现在在学，将来还要继续地学。参看下二例。

10. 我从进初中起就一直在学。

I *have been studying* it since I entered the junior middle school.

11. 七年来我一直在学。

I *have been studying* it for the last seven years.

三、现在为止的经验：

12. 你曾经看到过狮子吗?

*Have you ever seen* a lion?

13. 你到过阿里山吗?

*Have you ever climbed* Mt. Ali?

14. 是的，我到过。

Yes, I *have*.

15. 你到过几次呢?

How often *have you climbed* it?

16. 我到过两次。

I *have climbed* it twice.

17. 你到过日本吗?

*Have you ever been* to Japan?

18. 是的，我到过好几次。

Yes, I *have been* there several times.

〔注〕如果是回答说“我在日本住过三年”，你就不能说 I have been to Japan for three years. 应该说 I stayed (或 was) there for three years. 因为表示单纯的过去不能用完成时态。

19. 你父亲出过洋吗?

*Has your father ever been abroad?*

20. 是的，他去过一次。

*Yes, he has been abroad once.*

四、现在空余结果的过去的行为:

21. 我想见见你的父亲。他在家吗? ——对不起，他出去了。

*I want to see your father. Is he at home? ——Sorry, but he has gone out.*

22. 你的表几点钟了? ——我的表丢了。

*What time is it by your watch? ——I have lost it.*

23. 他出外散步去了。——他什么时候出去的?

*He has gone out for a walk.——When **did** he **go** out?*

24. 有一位王先生来看你了。

*A Mr. Wang has come to see you.*

五、代替将来完成用:

25. 你用过了，把你的小刀借给我一下好吗?

*Will you lend me the knife, when you have done with it?*

26. 好的，我一用完马上就借给你。

*Yes, I will lend it to you as soon as I have done with it.*

27. 你一到目的地，请马上打电报来通知我。

*When you have reached your destination, please let me know by wire.*



## Past Perfect (阁冒式诚十她)

一、在过去某时间完了的动作：

28. 我到车站的时候，火车刚开走了。

When I **reached** the station, the train *had just left*.

29. 医生赶来的时候，他已经断气了。

When the doctor **came**, he *had already breathed* his last.

二、过去一定的时候为止的继续：

30. 到他几个月以前死去为止，我认识他有三十多年了。

Till he died a few months ago, I *had known* him for more than thirty years.

31. 他直到上个月死去为止，一直都在台南做事。

Till he died last month, he *had been working* in Tainan.

32. 昨天我遇见了十年不见的叔父。

Yesterday I **met** my uncle whom I *had not seen* for the last ten years.

33. 日前我去看他，才知道他已病了一个多月了。

The other day I **called** on him and **found** that he *had been ill* for more than a month.

三、留下结果在过去某个时候的那以前的行为：

34. 我到达车站的时候，火车已经开走了。

When I **reached** the station, the train *had already left*.

35. 我到 he 家里去的时候，他已经出外散步去了。

When I **went** to his house, he *had gone* out for a walk.

四、过去一定的时候为止的经验：

36. 我立刻就认出是他，因为我以前常见到他的。

I **knew** him at once, for I *had* often *seen* him before.

37. 当他们叫我用英语演说的时候，我感到不知所措，因为我以前从来没有这种经验。

When I **was asked** to make an English speech, I **was** quite at a loss, for I *had* never *had* such experience before.

五、叙述过去的两种动作，颠倒其实际的顺序时：

38. 我给了他那本我前天买的书本。

I **gave** him the picture-book which I *had bought* the day before.

39. 卞贾明把他所画的画给他母亲看了。

Benjamin **showed** his mother the picture which he *had painted*.

## Future Perfect (剑惊式诚十她)

一、在将来一定的时候可完成的：

40. 等你来取那本书的时候，我已经看完了。

By the time you **come** for the book, I *shall have read* it through.

41. 到下个月的这个时候，你就会完全康复的。

By this time next month you *will have recovered* already.

42. 他明天早晨就可以抵达台南的。

He *will have arrived* at Tainan tomorrow morning.

43. 等你到车站的时候，火车已经开了。

By the time you *reach* the station, the train *will have left* already.

二、将来一定的时候为止的继续经验等：

44. 到明年这个时候，我就在此住满十年了。

By this time next year I *shall have lived* here for just ten years.

45. 到明年三月为止，你就足足学了五年的英文了。

By next March you *will have been studying* English just five years.

46. 如果我再去一次日月潭，我就去过五次了。

If I go to Sun Moon Lake again, I *shall have been* there five times.

## 5 动词语气的用法

### Imperative Mood (奇娘乡露)

#### 一、命令：

1. 不要闹，听我说。

*Be silent and listen to me.*

2. 作文要隔一行写。

*Write your composition on every other line.*

#### 二、禁止：

3. 不许跟你的邻居讲话。

**Don't** *talk* to your neighbor.

4. 绝不可撒谎，要常说真话。

**Never** *tell* a lie. Always *speak* the truth.

#### 三、请求：

5. 请让窗子开着。

**Please** leave the window open.

6. 请勿吸烟。

**Kindly** refrain from smoking.

#### 四、条件：

7. 向右转弯，你就可以走到车站的。

**Turn** to the right, **and** you will come to the station.

8. 不叫汽车去，恐怕就赶不上快车了。

**Take** a taxi **or** you will not be in time for the express.

〔注〕or 意为“要不然的话”。

## Subjunctive Mood (士郎乡露)

一、Present Subjunctive (不确实的假定)

9. 明天天气好的话，我们就去野餐。

If it *is* fine tomorrow, we shall go on a picnic.

10. 要是下雨的话，开会就展期。

If it *rains*, the meeting will be postponed.

11. 他如果肯试的话，一定成功。

If he *tries*, he will surely succeed.

12. 你如果不反对的话，我就这样做。

If you *have* no objection, I will do so.

二、Future Subjunctive (万一的假定)

13. 万一下雨的话，我就延期出发。

If it *should rain*, I will put off my departure.

14. 万一我死了的话，我的孩子们将变成一个什么样子呀？

If I *should die*, what will become of my children?

15. 他有好几天没有来了，我想他今天也不会来的。不过万一他来了的话，我就把这个给他。

He has been absent for some days, so I don't think he will come today. But if he *should come*, I'll give it to him.

三、Past Subjunctive (与现在事实相反的假定)

16. 我要是你的话，我就不做这样的事。

If I *were* you, I would not do such a thing.

17. 如果我有一百万元的话，我就至少要给你一千元。

If I *had* one million dollars, I would give you one thousand dollars at least.

18. 我希望我的身体有你那样强壮。

I wish I *were* as strong as you.

19. 我希望我生双翼，像鸟一样地能飞。

I wish I *had* wings and *could fly* like a bird.

四、Past Perfect Subjunctive (与过去事实相反的假定)

20. 那时如果天气好的话，我们上日月潭就去成了。

If it *had been* fine, we could have gone to Sun Moon Lake.

21. 如果我要早到一天的话，我就赶上考试了。

If I *had arrived* a day earlier, I should have been in time for the examination.

22. 那时候你要跟我们在一起就好了。

I wish you *had been* with us then.

23. 我要能够与你同去听了那音乐会就好了。

I wish I *had gone* to the concert with you.

五、包含有 Past Subjunctive 及 Past Perfect 的句子。

24. 那男孩子说起话来就好像大人一样。

The little boy talks **as if** he *were* a man.

25. 她看上去好像是患病多年似的。

She looks **as if** she *had been* ill for a long time.

26. 他可谓一长成了的婴孩。

He is, as it *were* , a grown-up baby.

27. 我们正可谓坐在火山口上。

We are, as it *were* , sitting on a volcano.

## 6 主动语态与被动语态的用法

28. 我每天做这个。

I *do* it every day.

It *is done* by me every day.

29. 我昨天做了这个。

I *did* it yesterday.

It *was done* by me yesterday.

30. 我明天还要做这个。

I *shall do* it tomorrow.

It *will be done* by me tomorrow.

31. 我明天一定要做这个。

I *will do* it tomorrow.

It *shall be done* by me tomorrow.

32. 我非立刻做这个不可。

I *must do* it at once.

It *must be done* by me at once.

33. 我刚把这个做完。

I *have just done* it.

It *has just been done* by me.

34. 在加拿大是说英语的。

**They** *speak* English in Canada.



English *is spoken* [by **Them** ] in Canada.

35. 人人称赞了他。

People *spoke* well of him.

He *was spoken* well of [by **people** ] .

〔注〕行为者不明或无关紧要时可略去。

36. 他作为战犯而被处绞刑。

He *was hanged* as a war criminal.

37. 这个校舍建于三十年前。

This school house *was built* thirty years ago.

38. 星在白天看不见。

The stars *are not seen* in the daytime.

39. 洪水浸了四千栋房屋，淹死了八百多人。

Four thousand houses *were flooded* and over eight hundred lives *were lost* by the flood.

40. 本校的运动会下月十五日在校园举行。

The athletic meeting of our school *will be held* at the school ground on the fifteenth of next month.

41. 昨天下午我从学校回家的途中遇到骤雨，淋得一身通透。

Yesterday afternoon, on my way back from school, I *was caught* in a shower and *was drenched* to the skin.

42. 这个杂志是月刊，销行很广。

This magazine *is published* monthly and sells very well.

43. 火车出轨，死伤二十余人。

The train *was derailed* and more than twenty persons *were either killed or injured*.

〔注〕中国话的死伤及出轨等在英文都要用被动语态。下举各例亦皆如此。

44. 听说他们疲倦得不能前进，我不禁大为失望。

*I was disappointed to hear that they were too tired to go on.*

45. 有的溺死了，有的烧死了。

*Some were drowned, and others were burnt to death.*

46. 接到他失败的消息，我大为吃惊。

*I was greatly surprised at the news of his failure.*

〔注〕此句也可说成 *The news of his failure surprised me greatly.*

47. 我们对于那结果都很满意。

*We were all satisfied with the result.*

〔注〕这也可以说成 *The result satisfied us all.*

## 7 助动词的用法

### **may, can, must**

1. 你可以出去散步，不过吃晚饭的时候一定要回来。

You *may* go out for a walk, but you *must* come back by suppertime.

2. 随便你做什么都可以，不过你不要这样吵闹。

You *may* do anything you like, but you *must not* make such a noise.

3. “我可以用铅笔写吗？”——“嗯，可以，不过你一定要尽力当心地写。”

“*May* I write with a pencil?”——“Yes, you *may*, but you *must* write as carefully as you can.”

4. “我马上就得做吗？”——“不，你用不着马上做，不过你一定要赶快做就是了。”

“*Must* I do it at once?”——“No, you *need not*, but you *must* do it as soon as possible.”

5. 他也许是一个学者，不过他一定不是一个有德性的人。

He *may* be a man of learning, but he *cannot* be a man of character.

6. 他要辞职的消息可能是真的；但是说他要自杀的那种话，就绝不可靠。

The news that he will resign *may* be true, but the other news that he will kill himself *cannot* be true.

7. “这故事能是真的吗？”——“啊，当然，这一定是真的。”

“*Can the story be true?* ”——“Oh, yes, it *must* be true.”

8. 他也许说了这样的话，不过我不敢肯定地说。

He *may have said* so, though I *cannot* say for certain.

9. 他不可能就达到了那里，因为他刚动身不过半个钟头。

He *cannot have reached* there yet, for he left here only half an hour ago.

10. 他一定已经到了那里，因为他动身得很早。

He *must have reached* there already, for he left here early enough.

11. 为着糊口，有些人不得不日夜工作。

Some people *must* work day and night that they *may* earn their living.

〔注〕that...may...是表目的的。过去时使用 that...might。例如：He *worked* hard that he *might* succeed.

12. 在择友上无论怎样慎重也不会过分的。

You *cannot* be too careful in the choice of your friends.

13. 看了那个滑稽的光景，使我忍不住要笑。

I *cannot but laugh* at the funny sight. = I *cannot help laughing* at the funny sight.

14. 一时我简直无法外出，但是我想不久我就会可以的。

I *have been unable* to go out for some time, but I *shall soon be able to* do so.

〔注〕can 只有过去时的 could, 没有将来时及完成时，故用 be able to 来代替。

15. 因为我自己不能去，只好要我弟弟代替出席。

As I could not go myself, I *had to* send my brother instead.

〔注〕**must** 只有现在时，所以要用 **have to** 来代替过去时、将来时及完成时。但在间接说法中仍可把 **must** 用于过去，例如：I told him that he *must* do it himself.（直接说法：I said to him, “You *must* do it yourself.”）。

16. 你用不着要亲自去，你只消写一封信给他就行了。

You *need not* go yourself; you *have only to* write to him.

17. 无论你从事什么职业，都有知道一种外国语的必要。

Whatever business you *may* be engaged in, you *cannot* do without the knowledge of a foreign language.

## do

18. “你去参加了运动吗？”——“是的，我参加了。”

“*Did* you take part in the sports?”——“Yes, I **did**.”

〔注〕问句中的 **did** 是助动词，而答句中的 **did** 是代动词，即代替 **took part in them** 的。

19. “你玩得痛快吗？”——“是，从来没有这样痛快的。”

“*Did* you have a good time?”——“Yes, I never had a better time.”

〔注〕不做“有”解时的 **have**，问句不说 **Have you?** 而说 **Do you have?**

但在美国，即令是作“有”解的 **have**，问句中也加用助动词，例如：**Do you have any brother?**（你有兄弟吗？）**Does she have blue eyes?**（她有蓝眼睛吗？）

20. “你为什么不去看他？”——“我去了，可是他不在家。”

“*Why did* n’t you go to see him?”——“I *did* go, but he was out.”

〔注〕 I did go 为加强 I went 的说法。

21. 夫人不言，言必有中。

He *does not* speak much, but when he *does* speak, he speaks to the point.

### **Ought, Should, Would**

22. 当你生病的时候，你应该就医。

When you are ill, you *ought to* (= *should*) consult the doctor.

23. 你们年轻人不应该去这样的地方。

You young people *ought not to* (= *should not*) go to such a place.

24. 你卧病很久了，你应该马上就医。

As you have been ill in bed for a long time, you *ought to* (= *should*) have consulted the doctor sooner.

25. 他在美国住了多年刚回来，应该英语说得很好。

As he has just returned from America after a long stay, he *ought to* speak English well.

〔注〕 he ought to speak 意为当然会说，即 It is no wonder that he should speak 之意。

26. 真是奇怪，他居然说我的坏话，多年来我对他那样好。

It is **strange** that he *should* speak ill of me; I have been kind to him all these years.

27. 你想要欺骗他，怪不得他要生气。

It is quite **natural** that he *should* get angry; you have tried to deceive him.

28. 这样一个前途有望的人，竟然薄命，十分可惜。

It is **a pity** that such a promising man as he *should* have died so young.

29. 他想要他的儿子学医。

He **intended** that his son *should* be a physician.

〔注〕这可以视为 He said to himself, "My son *shall* be a physician." 的间接说法。

30. 我想跟他一起去徒步旅行，不过恐怕他不会让我去。

I *should* like to go hiking with him, but I am afraid he will not let me.

31. 我把那钱收起来，以免被人窃去。

I hid the money, **lest** I *should* have it stolen.

〔注〕lest...*should* 的形式，现在已不大用了，而改用 that... may not 的形式。上例即说成 I hid my money that I might not have it stolen.

32. 年轻的时候，他常一坐几个钟头，什么事都不做。

When young, he *would* often sit for hours doing nothing.

〔注〕这个 **would** 是表过去的习惯的。

33. 在这样大风雪当中我宁肯坐在家里，而不愿外出。

I *would* **rather** stay at home **than** go out in such a snowstorm.

34. 请你替我把窗子打开一下好吗？

*Would* you kindly open the window for me? = *Would* you mind opening the window for me?

〔注〕这是 Please open the window for me. 客气的说法。

35. 我打开窗子好吗？

*Would* you mind **my** opening the window?

〔注〕这是 May I open the window? 客气的说法。

36. 你太懒了。你应该再用功一点。这样难怪你考不取。

You were too idle. You *ought to* have worked harder. It is **no wonder** that you *should* have failed in the examination.



## 8 动状词的用法

残订称 (Infinitive)

1. 百闻不如一见。(要看见才相信)

*To see is to believe.*

2. 对于我们研究大自然的人，最重要的事，就是要学习怎样观察。

*The most important thing for us, students of nature, is to learn to observe.*

〔注〕 *to learn* 是补语，而 *to observe* 便是 *learn* 的 Object。

3. 精读少数几本书比草草读许多书要好得多。

*It is much better to read a few books carefully than to read many books carelessly.*

〔注〕第一个 *to read* 是代表句首的假主语的真正的主语，第二个 *to read* 是 *than* 之后省略了的 *it is good* 的 *it* (假主语) 的真正的主语。

4. 我规定在这一年中早上六时起床。

*I make it a rule to get up at six all through the year.*

〔注〕 *to get up* 为对假宾语 *it* 的真正的宾语。

5. 我没有什么事做。我很闲。

*I have nothing to do. I am quite free.*

6. 他不是一个撒谎的人。

*He is not a man to tell a lie.*

7. 我没有房子住，而又无钱买房子。

I have no house *to live in* but nor have I the money *to buy* one with.

〔注〕 *to live in*= *in which to live*, *to buy one with*= *with which to buy one*. 这种不定词都是形容其前之名词的。

8. 我们应当要为工作而生存，不要为生存而工作。

We should live *to work*, not work *to live*.

9. 我很高兴地再见到你。

I am very glad *to see* you again.

10. 你真不当心，把别人的帽子当自己的。

How careless you are *to take* his cap for your own!

11. 他远从美国回到中国，仅因为听悉其父在前日死去的噩耗。

He came up to China all the way from America only *to hear* that his father had died the day before.

〔注〕 *(only) to hear* 是表示结果。

12. 听他说英语，你会以为他是一个美国人。

*To hear* him speak English, you will take him for an American.

〔注〕 *to hear* 表示假定。

13. 父亲不够阔，不能自备汽车。

My father is not rich enough *to keep* a motorcar.

〔注〕 *to keep* 是副词，*enough* 的修饰词。

14. 我们太疲倦而不能继续工作了。

We were too tired *to go on* with the work.

〔注〕 *to go* 是副词，*too* 的修饰词。

15. 我看见他进房去的。

I saw him *enter* the room.

〔注〕感觉动词的补语的不定词是要将其 *to* 略去的，但在被动语态时则不能略，如 *He was seen to enter* the room.

16. 你曾听过 W 小姐拉小提琴吗？

Have you ever heard Miss W. *play* the violin?

17. 我觉得有人摸我的肩。

I felt someone *touch* me on the shoulder.

18. 要他去吧，不管他愿不愿意。

Make him *go*. whether he likes it or not.

〔注〕使役动词的补语的不定词，也要将其 *to* 略去，但在被动语态时便不能略，如 *He was made to go* against his wish.

19. 随他喜欢怎样做就怎样做。

Let him *do* whatever he likes. (= Let him *have* his own way.)

20. 让他在这里等我回来。

Have him *wait* here till I return.

〔注〕have+ (a person) +Root, 意为使人做什么。

21. 他去年遭妻丧。

He had his wife *die* last year.

〔注〕have + (a person) + Root, 又有遭受之意。

22. 你暂时最好守秘密。

You had better *keep* it secret for some time to come.

〔注〕在 *had better*, *had rather*, *would rather*, *cannot but* 之后的不定词，要将其 *to* 略去。

23. 与其撒谎，我宁认错。

I would rather *confess* that I have done wrong than *tell* a lie.

24. 听到那个悲惨的消息，我不禁泣然泪下。

At the sad news, I could not but *weep*.

25. 他好像是一个天才。

He seems *to be* a genius. (= It seems that he is a genius.)

26. 他好像醉了。

He seemed *to be drunk*. (= It seemed that he was drunk.)

27. 他好像曾经是一个美少年。

He seems *to have been* a handsome young man. (= It seems that he was a handsome young man.)

28. 他过去好像曾经久病。

He seemed *to have been* ill for a long time. (= It seemed that he had been ill for a long time.)

29. 老实说我不信任他。

*To tell* the truth, I don't trust him.

30. 说来奇怪，他的颈子愈长愈长了。

Strange *to say*, his neck grew longer and longer.

31. 出乎意外地指名叫我即席演说，我真不晓得要说点什么。

As I was named to make an after-dinner speech quite unexpectedly, I was at a loss what *to say*.

32. 我不晓得要到哪里去，也不晓得要问谁。

I don't know where *to go* or whom *to ask*.

33. 要支持哪一边，我迟疑不决。

I could not make up my mind which side *to support*.

34. 下雨的话，会期顺延。

In case of rain, the meeting is *to be* postponed to the first fine day.

35. 当她正要纵身跃入水中的时候，有人提了她的手臂。

When she was about *to jump* into the water, some one caught her by the arm.

36. 春天是开花的时候。

Spring is the time for flowers *to bloom*.

37. 这问题要我们来解决是太难了。

This problem is too difficult for us *to solve*.

38. 我太忙不能去。我一定要请人代替我去。

I am too busy *to go*. I must *get* some one *to go* for me. (= I must have someone go for me.)

### 风称 (Participle)

39. 消防队的人冲入火烧的屋子，救出了那小孩。

A fireman rushed into the *burning* house and saved the child.

40. 我在台北的哥哥，有信来说他生病了。

My brother *staying* in Taipei sent me a letter *saying* that he was ill.

41. 一个被烫过的孩子，见火就怕。

A *burnt* child dreads the fire.

42. 被火烧死的，总数达十人。

Those *burnt* to death in the fire amounted to ten in all.

43. 公共汽车很挤，我一直都是站着的。

The bus was so crowded that I kept *standing* all the way.

〔注〕 *standing* 一个分词，在此为主语的补语。

44. 对不起，害你等这么久。

I am sorry that I have kept you waiting so long.

〔注〕 *waiting* 一个分词，在此为宾语的补语。

45. 我的英语说得不好，不过我可以使人听懂我说的话。

I am not a good speaker of English, but I can make myself *understood*.

〔注〕 *understood* 为宾语的补语。

46. 我把表拿去修理了。

I had my watch *mended*.

〔注〕 *have*+宾语+动词的过去分词，意为“使人为我做”或“被人做”（见下例）。

47. 我的表被偷了。

I had my watch *stolen*.

48. 一见警察，那小偷就跑了。

*Seeing* the policeman, the thief ran away. (= When the thief saw the policeman, he ran away.)

〔注〕从属句中的现在分词，应与主句的主语一致，即这个 *seeing*，一定要是那 *thief* 看才行。

49. 做完课外工作，我就去睡了。

*Having finished* my home work, I went to bed. (= After I had finished my home work, I went to bed.)

50. 太阳落山了，我们便踏上归途。

The sun *having set*, we started on our way home.

〔注〕如从属句的主语，不与主句的主语一致时，你得另加主语，如本句中的 *the sun*。

51. 向右转弯，你就可以在你的左边看见那学校的。

*Turning to the right*, you will see the school on your left.  
(= If you turn to the right, you will...)

52. 一般说来，我国气候温和。

*Generally speaking*, we have a mild climate.

〔注〕如 *generally speaking*, *frankly speaking*, *strictly speaking* 等，都是独立的因素，与后面的主句没有语法上的关系。

53. 说到 A 先生，你近来看见他了吗？

*Talking of Mr. A*, have you seen him lately?

54. 由天色看起来，今天下午要下雨呢。

*Judging from the look of the sky*, we shall have rain this afternoon.

### 错林称 (Gerund)

55. 在年轻人，过食是最普通的病源。

With young people, *overeating* is the commonest cause of illness.

56. 我记得以前在什么地方见过他的。

I remember *seeing* him somewhere before.

57. 依照医生的劝告，他戒了烟酒。

Following his doctor's advice, he has given up *drinking and smoking*.

58. 他后悔不该买这样一件无用的东西。

He repents of *having bought* such a worthless thing.

59. 我做了这样的事，很是羞耻。

I am ashamed of *having done* such a thing.

〔注〕如说 I am ashamed of *your* having done such a thing. 便是“你做了这样的事，使我很感羞耻”。

60. 将来如何，未可知也。

There is no *knowing* what will happen in future. (= It is impossible to know...)

61. 行不通的事情，用不着去试。

It is no use *attempting* what is impracticable.

〔注〕it 是假主语，其真正的主语为 attempting。

62. 像他这样努力的人，要成功是不待言的。

It goes without *saying* that such a hard worker as he will succeed.

63. 我一点也不想吃东西。

I don't feel like *eating* at all. (= I have no appetite at all.)

64. 我不禁觉得他是相当自私的。

I cannot help *thinking* that he is rather selfish. (= I cannot but think that he is rather selfish.)

65. 一听那消息，他面色变白了。

On *hearing* the news, he turned pale. (= When he heard the news, he turned pale. = As soon as he heard the news, he turned pale.)

66. 母亲忙于做饭洗衣。

Mother is busy between *cooking* and *washing*.



## 9 副词的用法

1. 这是一本讲电视的很有趣的书。

This is a *very* **interesting** book on television.

〔注〕现在分词要用 *very* 来修饰。

2. 我兄弟对这问题，极感兴趣。

My brother is *much* **interested** in the subject.

〔注〕过去分词就要用 *much* 来修饰。

3. 今天我走了三十里路，所以我很疲倦了。

I have walked more than thirty miles today, so I am *very* **tired**.

〔注〕在某些过去分词如 *tired*、*pleased*、*delighted*、*disappointed*、*frightened* 等之前，仍然要用 *very*，是因为这些词已失去其过去分词的性质，而成为形容词了。

4. 他上学从不迟到。

He *never* comes late for shool.

5. 他上学很少迟到。

He *seldom* comes late for school.

6. 那个外国人说的话我完全不懂。

I can *not* understand what that foreigner says.

7. 那个外国人说的话我差不多不懂。

I *hardly* understand what that foreigner says.

8. 他近来时常迟到。

He has come *late* very often *lately*.

〔注〕 *late* 和 *lately* 皆为副词，前者作“迟”解，后者作“近来”解。

9. 已经打过铃了吗？——是，已经打过了。

Has the bell rung *yet*? —Yes, it has rung *already*.

10. 已经打过铃了。——已经打过铃了吗？

The bell has rung *already*.—Has it rung *already*?

〔注〕在不明白已打铃或未打铃的时候，就问 *Has the bell rung yet*? 自己以为还没有打，忽听见对方说已经打了，而感到惊异的时候，就说 *Has the bell rung already*?

11. 听他的回答，就知道他是多么地不懂世故。

His answer showed how *little* he knew the world.

〔注〕 *a little* 有一点儿，*little* 几无。

12. 你父亲今天好点吗？——谢谢你。他好了一点。

Is your father *any* better today? —Yes, he is *a little* better, thank you.

13. 他没有什么惊讶。他有一点儿惊讶。他很是惊讶。

He was *little* surprised. He was *a little* surprised. He was *not a little* surprised.

14. 他得到老师的称赞而更加用功了。

He was praised by his teacher, and he worked *the* harder.

〔注〕 *the*= *by so much*, *by that amount*. 同等地。

15. 他有许多缺点，但我一样地爱他。

He has many faults, but I don't love him *the* less.

16. 你曾读过那首诗吗？——是，那是我所读到的一首最美丽的诗。

Have you *ever* read that poem? —Yes, that is one of the most beautiful poems that I have *ever* read.

〔注〕这个 *ever* 作“曾经”解。

17. 我知道那件事。我在两天以前就听说了。

I know of it; I heard the news two days *ago*.

18. 我知道了那件事。我在那两天以前就听说了。

I knew of it; I had heard the news two days *before*.

〔注〕*ago* 是用于从现在起的“以前”，*before* 是用于从过去某时起的“以前”。

19. 他为什么生你的气？你知道他为什么生你的气吗？你觉得他为什么要生你的气呢？

*Why* is he angry with you? **Do you know** *why* he is angry with you? **Why do you think** he is angry with you?

〔注〕这三种说法不仅对于 *why* 为然，即对其他疑问副词 *where*、*when*、*how* 等也是一样。

20. 我只知道他出生的地方，而不知道他出生的时候。

I know (**the place**) *where* he was born, but I don't know (**the time**) *when* he was born.

〔注〕句中 *the place* 及 *the time* 为关系副词 *where* (= *in which*) 及 *when* (= *at which*) 的先行词，但说话时可略去。

21. 无论怎样用功，你也不能在一两年之内学好一种外国文。

*However* hard you **may** work, you cannot master a foreign language in a year or two.

22. 他无论到什么地方，他的狗都跟随着他。

His dog followed him *wherever* he went.

23. 我每次见到这张照片，我就想起我的先父。

*Whenever* I see this picture, I am reminded of my dead father.

24. 我爱吃苹果，也爱吃桃子。

I like apples; I like peaches, *too*.

25. 我不爱吃苹果，也不爱吃桃子。

I don't like apples; I don't like peaches *either*.

〔注〕肯定的“也”用 *too*；否定的“也”用 *either*。

26. 父亲下星期日动身到南部去。

Father is leaving for the South *next Sunday*.

〔注〕说 *next Sunday*, *last Monday* 等，不要加介词，但把星期名放在前面时就得加介词，如 *on Sunday next*, *on Monday last* 等。

27. 他虽很富有，出门总是坐三等车。

Though he is a rich man, he always travels *third class*.

〔注〕比较：They walked *side by side*. (并肩)

They walked *arm in arm*. (携手)

The stone weighed *twenty pounds*. (石重二十磅)

The river is just *a mile wide* at its mouth. (河口宽正一英里)

28. 很亲切地她指点我们的路。

She *kindly* showed us the way.

29. 她很亲切地指点我们的路。

She showed us the way *kindly*.

30. 幸运地他没有死。

*Happily* he did not die.

31. 他未死于安乐。

He did not die *happily*.

32. 我觉得要实行这个计划是不可能的。

I found it impossible to **carry** out the plan.

33. 我觉得要实行这个是不可能的。

I found it impossible to **carry** it out.

〔注〕凡 Verb + Adverb 形式的 idiom, 以名词为其 Object 时, 其名词置于副词之前或后皆可, 唯以代词为其 Object 时, 则其代词必须置于副词之前。例如:

I went to the station to **see** *off* my uncle.

I went to the station to **see** my uncle *off*.

I went to the station to **see** him *off*.

## 10 介词的用法

宾十坚敌结称

1. 夏天我五点钟就起床，只有礼拜天才起得迟一点。

*In summer I get up at five o'clock, but on Sundays I get up a little later.*

〔注〕时之一点用 **at**，长的期间用 **in**，对小时或钟点用 **at**，对日用 **on**，对月、季、年、世纪等用 **in**。

2. 他从1930年到1945年住在台湾，而他的太太从他死后一直住在这里。

*He lived in Taiwan from 1930 to 1945, and his wife has been living here since his death.*

〔注〕从……到……，就说 **from...to...**。**since** 意为从某日起至今日为止，即从……以来，可单独用，不要另加其他介词。

3. 我到六点钟就回来，所以请你等到那时为止。

*I shall come back by six, so please wait till then.*

〔注〕**by** 是表示至迟到某时为止的意思，**till** 是表示继续到某时为止的意思。

4. 父亲一两天内要到台北去，一星期之内就回来。

*Father will leave for Taipei in a day or two, and will come back within a week.*

〔注〕辨别 **in a week**（经过一星期）与 **within a week**（一星期内）的用法。

5. 有一次我在台南住了一个相当长久的时候，其间我曾心满意足地游览了。

I once stayed in Tainan *for* pretty a long time, *during* which I did the sights to my heart's content.

### 表地点的介词

6. 年轻时他住在南投的一个小乡村中。

When young, he lived *at* a small village *in* Nantu.

〔注〕 when young= when he was young

7. 当那男孩子一跳下水去，那女孩子随即就由水里出来了。

As soon as the boy jumped *into* the water, the girl came *out of* it.

8. 壁上挂了两张美丽的风景画。

There were two beautiful landscapes *on* the wall.

〔注〕 on= on the surface of

9. 北极熊脚板上长有长毛，所以走起路来不会在冰上滑倒。

A polar bear has long hair *on* its soles, that it may not slip *on* the ice.

10. 那少女在她的药指上戴着一个金戒指。

The girl has a gold ring *on* her ring finger.

11. 书桌上头吊着一盏电灯，桌下放着一个废纸篓。

There is a lamp *over* the desk, and a wastebasket *under* it.

〔注〕与表面接触时用 *on*，悬在上面用 *over*；如果是桌上的台灯就说 *There is a lamp on the desk*. 与下面接触用 *beneath*，隔离的下面用 *under*。

12. 这条河在瀑布的上边最深，在桥的下边最浅。

This river is deepest *above* the waterfall and shallowest *below* the bridge.

〔注〕上下的关系用 *over*, *under*, 前后的关系多用 *above*, *below*。

13. 那条船在这河里定期上下。

That ship sails *up and down* the river regularly.

14. 我们的火车沿海岸走了一阵之后，便走进一个横断山脉的山洞里去。

Our train runs *along* the coast for some time, then it goes *through* a tunnel which is cut *across* the mountain-range.

〔注〕*along* 是说沿着，*across* 是横断，*through* 是表示贯穿。

15. 两国之间缔结了一个新的协定。

A new treaty has been concluded *between* these two countries.

〔注〕二者之间用 *between*, 三者之间用 *among*, 如 Divide the candies *among* your brothers and sisters.

16. 男孩们围着池子跑，而女孩们就围着池子坐着。

The boys are running *round* the pond while the girls are sitting around it.

〔注〕*round* 用于动作的，*around* 用于静止的。

17. 在教室里，A 坐在我的前面，B 坐在我的后面。

In the classroom, A sits *before* me and B sits *behind* me.

18. 学校前面有一家文具店。

There is a stationer's *in front* of the school.

19. 他昨天上台北去了。他昨天向台北出发了。

He went *to* Taipei yesterday. He left *for* Taipei yesterday.



20. 从这里到你的住所有多远?

How far is it *from* here *to* your lodging-house?

21. 我住在离车站一英里半的地方。我住在离车站不到一英里半的地方。

I live *at* a mile and a half from the station. I live *within* a mile and a half of the station.

### 表原因的介词

22. 我昨天因病缺席。

I was absent from school yesterday *because of* illness.

23. 今天早上我因迟到而受叱责。

This morning I was scolded *for* being late.

24. 他父亲因饮酒过度而死。

His father died *from* drinking too much.

25. 他母亲因伤寒病而死。

His mother died *of* typhoid fever.

〔注〕关于死的原因，疾病用 *of*，其他用 *from*。

26. 他由于疏忽而弄出许多错误来。

He made a lot of mistakes *through* carelessness.

27. 那事故是由他而惹起的。

The accident was caused *by* him.

〔注〕*through* 表间接的手段，*by* 表直接的手段，故上句又可说成 The accident was caused *through* his carelessness.

28. 看到那灿烂的落日光景，我们大为高兴。

At the sight of the glorious sunset, we were greatly overjoyed.

29. 听到他突然死去的消息，我们大为吃惊。

We were greatly surprised *at* the news of his sudden death.

30. 他因救了一个小孩的命而受到表彰。

He was rewarded *for* saving a child from death.

31. 北投以温泉著名。

Peitu is famous *for* its hot-springs.

32. 我做那事全出好意，所以请勿见怪。

I did it *out of* kindness, so please don't take it amiss.

〔注〕 *out of* 表动机。

宾抱红敌结称

33. 把译文跟原文对一下吧。

Compare the translation *with* the original.

34. 人生常被比喻为航海。

Life is often compared *to* a voyage.

〔注〕 同类比较用 *compare with*，不同类比较用 *compare to*。

35. 我英文比他好，数学却不如他。

I am superior *to* him in English, but inferior *to* him in mathematics.

〔注〕 这是来自拉丁文的比较格，所以不用 *than* 而用 *to*。

宾风类敌结称

36. 我的村庄离开海岸很远。

My village is situated a long way *from* the sea-coast.

37. 初发远离标的。

The first shot fell wide *of* the mark.

38. 他转入那麻烦中很久了。他甫摆脱了那麻烦。

He has long been *in* the trouble. He has just got *out of* the trouble.

39. 有几个小孩子在树上。随即有一个从树上跌下来了。

There were several children *on* the tree. Soon one of them fell *off* the tree.

40. 我身上带的钱全被抢光了。

I was robbed *of* all the money I had with me.

宾分席敌结称

41. 那事与我毫无关系的。

I have nothing to do *with* the matter.

42. 关于这事你知道一点吗?

Do you know anything *about* this matter?

43. 你听到了袁博士关于原子能的演讲吗?

Did you hear Dr. Yuan's lecture *on* atomic energy?

四吧结称敌因登 (唯 ABC 双势)

44. 他就住在这一带。

He lives somewhere *about* here.

45. 关于他的事你知道一点吗?

Do you know anything *about* him?

46. 他有点高贵的样子。

There is something noble *about* him.

47. 太阳已升上地平线了。

The sun has risen *above* the horizon.

48. 就在桥头有一瀑布。

There is a waterfall just *above* the bridge.

49. 她有六十岁以上了。

She is *above* sixty years of age.

50. 她是不会做这种卑鄙行为的。

She is *above* such meanness.

51. 依照巴黎电报，总统被暗杀了。

*According to* a telegram from Paris, the president has been assassinated.

52. 你能游泳横渡这条河吗?

Can you swim *across* this river?

53. 放学后，我们通常去打棒球。

*After* school, we usually play baseball.

54. 警察追逐小偷。

The policeman ran *after* the thief.

55. 他渴求知识。

He thirsts *after* knowledge.

56. 此儿依其叔父命名为约翰。

The child was named John *after* his uncle.

57. 他们穿的时式衣装。

They are dressed *after* a new fashion.

58. 他靠墙而立。

He was leaning *against* the wall.

59. 她违背父母之意结婚了。

She got married *against* her parents' wishes.

60. 西山高耸夕阳中。

Shih Shan is seen rising *against* the evening sky.

61. 至于我个人，并不反对。

*As for* me (= So far as I am concerned) , I have no objection.

62. 他住在台北萤桥。

He lives *at* Yunchiau in Taipei.

63. 他六时起床，十时就寝。

He gets up *at* six and goes to bed *at* ten.

64. 他牺牲他的健康，才把大学读完了。

He (was) graduated from the university *at the cost of* his health.

65. 我父亲因年迈而辞职。

My father has resigned his post *because of* his old age.

66. 不要背后说别人的坏话。

Don't speak ill of others *behind* their backs.

67. 火车因发生事故而迟到了一点。

Owing to an accident, the train was a little *behind* time.

68. 他把那钱藏在地毯下面。

He hid the money *beneath* the carpet.

69. 不要和那人交际因为失你的格。

Don't associate with him; it is *beneath* you.

70. 他认为求援有失他的身份。

He thinks it *beneath* him to ask for help.

71. 一个凶相的老人坐在她旁边。

*Beside* her sat a fierce-looking old man.

72. 在她以外，还有一个凶相的老人。

*Besides* her, there was a fierce-looking old man.

73. 台中是差不多在台北与台南的中途。

Taichung is about half way *between* Taipei and Tainan.

74. 我们私下说一句，他负债累累。

*Between* ourselves, he is heavily in debt.

75. 在太平洋的那边就是美国。

*Beyond* the Pacific is the United States of America.

76. 这工作非我的力量所能做到的。

This task is *beyond* my power to accomplish.

77. 花莲风景之美非笔墨所能形容。

The beautiful scenery of Hualien is *beyond* description.

78. 不要做这个。你什么都可以做，只不要做这个。

Don't do this. You may do anything *but* this.

79. 如果不是你的劝告，我就不会完成我的计划了。

*But for* your advice, I could not carry out my plan.

80. 我坐火车去的，坐公共汽车回来的。

I went *by* train and returned *by* bus.

81. 我写信通知你，不打电话。

I will let you know *by* letter, not *by* telephone.

82. 我在路边的一个茶店里休息了。

I took a rest at a tea-house *by* the roadside.

83. 许寿裳教授被强盗用刀杀死。

Prof. S. S. Shu was killed *by* a robber with a knife.

84. 日间阳光普照，夜里星月交辉。

The sun shines *by* day and the moon and the stars shine *by* night.

〔注〕 *in the daytime* 之反对语为 *at night*。

85. 他成功由于坚忍。

He succeeded *by dint of* perseverance.

86. 他经由日本赴美。

He went to America *by way of* Japan.

87. 我们跟他们说了两个多钟头。

We talked with them *for* more than two hours.

88. 这条手绢我花十块钱买的。

I bought this handkerchief *for* ten dollars.

〔注〕 这句又可说 *I gave ten dollars for this handkerchief.*

89. 他看不出有那么大的年龄。

He is young *for* his age.

90. 我把他当作他的弟弟了。

I **took** him *for* his brother.

91. 他是主战论者，而他弟弟就是反战论者。

He was *for* war and his brother was **against** it.

92. 他只是为金钱而努力。

He works hard only *for the sake of* money.

93. 他为研究美国文学而渡美。

He went over to America *for the purpose of* studying American literature.

94. 他因无钱而放弃那事业了。

He gave up the enterprise *for want of* money.

95. 美国的主妇从早到晚都很忙。

American housewives are very busy *from* morning *till* night.

96. 那乞丐挨门挨户去求乞。

The beggar went begging *from* door *to* door.

97. 他的病差不多完全好了。

He has almost recovered *from* illness.

98. 我们从其余的人中间来选主席。

We chose the chairman *from among* the rest.

99. 那声音是从门后面来的。

The sound came *from behind* the door.

100. 他在1876年4月死于英国。

He died *in* England, in April, 1876.

101. 你一定要用墨水写，但是又不可用红墨水。

You must write *in* ink, but you must not write *in* red ink.



102. 你曾经用英语演说过吗?

Have you ever made a speech *in* English?

103. 他过一星期光景会再来的。

He will come again *in* a week or so.

104. 她用篮子把那些蛋拿回家去了。

She carried home those eggs *in* a basket.

105. 他们为袁教授举行了一个欢迎会。

A welcome meeting was held *in honor of* Prof. Yuan.

106. 一个人的成功与其努力成正比例。

A man will succeed *in proportion to* his efforts.

107. 不顾他那样努力，他仍然失败了。

*In spite of* his great efforts, he failed.

108. 他没有储蓄，而把他所赚的钱统统用了。

*Instead of* saving, he spends all he gets.

109. 那山顶终年积雪。

The top *of* that mountain is always covered with snow.

110. 游览者的大部分为美国的实业家。

Most *of* the tourists were American business men.

111. 我爱好英语。他自夸其财富。她怕老鼠。

I am *fond of* English. He is *proud of* his riches. She is *afraid of* the rat.

112. 我班上包含男女生五十名。

My class *consists of* fifty boys and girls. = My class is *made up of* fifty boys and girls.

113. 他抱怨他的贫穷。

He *complains of* his poverty.

114. 看到我从妹的这张照片，就使我想起死去的母亲。

This picture of my cousin's always *reminds* me of my dead mother.

115. 这些箱子是木做的。

These boxes are *made of* wood.

〔注〕不变形态的用 *made of*，要变形态的用 *made from*，例如 Wine is *made from* grapes, and beer *from* barley.

116. 猴从树上摘下一个个的果子来投掷那蟹。

The monkey picked one fruit after another *off* the tree and threw them at the crab.

117. 船在基隆港外遇难。

The ship was wrecked *off* the harbor of Keelung.

118. 他当值，他弟弟休息。

He is on duty, but his brother is *off* duty.

119. 墙上挂着两张地图，一张中国的，一张美国的。

There are two maps *on* the wall; one is the map of China and the other of America.

120. 在我生日（那天的下午），我招待了几个朋友来吃茶。

*On* my birthday, ( *On* the afternoon of my birthday, ) I invited several friends to tea.

121. 他靠薪水生活——靠一千美元的月薪。

He lives *on* his salary——*on* \$ 1,000 a month.

122. 他坚持要去看电影。他坚持要我去看电影。

He *insists on* going to the movies. He *insists on* my going to the movies.

123. 他故意把窗子打破了。

He broke the window *on purpose*.

124. 因他急务而到那里去了。

He went there *on urgent business*.

125. 我因病不能到会。

I could not attend the meeting *on account of illness*.

126. 他这样一说便走出房间了。

With these words he went *out of* the room.

127. 他目下失业。

He is now *out of* work.

128. 我这样做全出于好意，但他不明白我的动机而为之大怒。

I did it *out of* kindness, but he got angry because he could not see my motive.

129. 几分钟后那船就走得看不见了。

A few minutes later the ship went *out of* sight.

130. 他父亲好像年过六十了。

His father seems to be *over* sixty.

131. 小偷逾墙而遁。

The thief jumped *over* the fence and ran away.

132. 我们一边喝酒一边谈话。

We talked *over* a cup of wine.

133. 谢谢顺风，我们随即就抵埠了。

*Thanks to* the favorable wind, we soon reached the port.

134. 猫能跑过那较小的洞吗？

Can the cat run *through* the smaller hole?

135. 我们经由通译而谈话。

We talked *through* an interpreter.

136. 我整个夏天都住在阳明山。

I stayed at Yang Ming Shan *throughout* the summer.

137. 阳明山位于台北之北。

Yang Ming Shan is situated *to* the north of Taipei.

138. 父亲因事赴台东了。

Father has gone *to* Taitung on business.

139. 那年极冷，冻死不少的人。

That year the cold was so intense that many people were frozen *to* death.

140. 他的雄辩使听众都感动得流泪。

He was so eloquent that the audience were all moved *to* tears.

141. 见子平安回家使我们大为高兴。

*To* our great joy our son came home safe and sound.

142. 一听到那声音他们一齐冲向门口去。

At the sound, they all rushed *towards* the door.

143. 到晚边就开始下雨了。

*Towards* evening it began to rain.

144. 我在定价以下买了那本书。

I bought the book *under* the fixed price.

145. 她从一个美国女人那学英文。

She is studying English *under* an American lady.

146. 新校舍目下在建筑中。

Our new school-house is now *under* construction.

147. 我跟婶母一同去那里的。我住在婶母家里。

I went there *with* my aunt. I am staying *with* my aunt.

148. 从那以后他就对我生气了。

He has been angry *with* me since that time.

149. 那一点我不敢苟同。

I can't agree *with* you there.

150. 他的智慧与年俱长。

His wisdom increased *with* his years.

151. 他到台北去了，旨在谋到一个职业。

He went up to Taipei *with a view to* finding a job.

152. 他住在离我家不到一英里之远，我可以在半小时内就达到他家的。

As he lives *within* a mile of my house, I shall be able to reach his house *within* half an hour.

153. 我尽力地做了一切，但还是失败了。

I did everything *within* my power but failed.

## 11 连词的用法

礼吉当称田当称

1. 一年的四季为春夏秋冬。

The four seasons of the year are spring, summer, autumn *and* winter.

2. 这本小说又容易又有趣。

This novel is *both* easy *and* interesting.

3. 这本小说不仅容易而且有趣。

This novel is *not only* easy *but also* interesting. = This novel is interesting *as well as* easy.

4. 如果你明天有空请来我这儿玩。

If you are free tomorrow, please come *and* see me.

5. 不是你，就是我，总得去一个人。

*Either* you *or* I have to go.

6. 你和他都不必去。

*Neither* you *nor* he has to go.

〔注〕在 *neither* A *nor* B 后头的动词与 B 一致。

礼吉递乡田递乡

7. 青蛙不仅在水中，而且可以在陆上生活。

Frogs can live *not only* in the water *but also* on the land.

= Frogs can live on the land as *well as* in the water.

8 青蛙不仅可在水中游泳，而且可在陆上行走。

Frogs can *not only* swim in the water *but also* walk on the land.

9. 他会写信或是打电话回答的。

He will answer *either* by letter *or* by telephone.

礼吉风伙田风伙

10. 他下决断虽快，但缺乏实行计划的毅力。

He is quick in decision, *but* he lacks the will power to carry out his plan.

11. 他一定有病，因为他面色很难看。

He must be ill, *for* he looks pale.

12. 不要专门玩，多用点功吧。

Don't play so much, *but* study harder.

13. 再用点功，你就一定可以考取。

**Work** harder, *and* you will surely pass the examination.  
= If you work harder, you will surely pass the examination.

14. 你要再用点功，否则你就会考不取的。

**Work** harder, *or* you will fail. = If you don't work harder, you will fail. = Unless you work harder, you will fail.

她触宾十坚敌诚伙

15. 小偷一见警察便逃走了。

*When* (或 *As soon as*, 或 *The moment*, 或 *Directly*) the thief saw the policeman, he ran away. = *No sooner* had the thief

seen the policeman, *than* he ran away.

16. 当母亲忙着在做这样做那样的时候，我们就在玩着各种各样的游戏。

*While* mother was busy doing something or other, we were playing all sorts of games.

〔注〕be busy + gerund 的语法须加注意。

17. 人不等到失去健康是不会懂得健康的真价的。

People seldom realize the value of health *till* (*until*) they have lost it.

18. 自从他决心要考大学，他便竭力用功。

He has been working with might and main, *since* he made up his mind to try the entrance examination of the university.

19. 你一旦决心要做，就得努力完成。

*Once* you have made up your mind to do something, you should do your best to accomplish it.

20. 他每次到台北来，都要来看我的。

*Every time* he comes up to Taipei, he has the kindness to call at my house.

### 引导表原因或理由的从句

21. 因为母亲生病，所以我昨天没有能够来。

I could not come yesterday, *because* my mother was very ill.  
ll. = As my mother was very ill, I could not come yesterday.

22. 你既是这样说，我就要去考虑一下。

*Since* you say so, I will consider.



23. 因为现在你已经年纪够大可以帮助你父亲了，所以你应该抓住一切的机会去这样做。

*Now that you are old enough to help your father, you should try to find every opportunity to do so.*

24. 你不可因别人衣装不好就轻视他。

*You should not despise a man because he is poorly dressed.*

〔注〕 *because* = *for the reason that*

25. 狮子被称为兽中之王，并非因其聪明，而是因为强而有力。

*The lion is **not** called king because he is wise, **but** because he is strong.*

她触宾母敌敌诚伙

26. 我们皆为糊口工作。

*We all work that we **may** earn a living.*

27. 我们加急了，以便及时赶上。

*We hurried up that we might be in time.*

〔注〕 *that...may* = *so that...may* = *in order that...may*, 都是“俾”，“以便”之意。

28. 当心一点走，以免跌倒。

*Walk carefully that you **may** not fall.*

29. 我们细声地说话，以免妨害孩子的睡眠。

*We talked quietly so that we **might** not disturb the sleeping child.*

她触宾吉肤敌诚伙

30. 我太疲倦而不能前进了。

I was **so** tired *that* I could not go on.

〔注〕 *so...that* 与 *so that* 不同。

31. 他为人极好，所以大家都喜欢他。

He is **such** a kind man *that* he is loved by all people.

〔注〕 *so...that* 之间加形容词或副词，*such...that* 之间就加名词。

她触宾钱合敌诚伙

32. 如果你对任何事想获得成功，非专心去做不可。

*If* you want to succeed in anything, you must devote your self to it.

33. 除非你专心去做你的事，你是没有成功之望的。

*Unless* you devote yourself to your work, you cannot hope to succeed in it. = *If* you do not devote yourself to your work...

34. 只要你当心，你就会安全的。

*So long as* you are on your guard, you are safe.

她触宾抱红敌诚伙

35. 珠穆朗玛峰是中国第一高山。

Mt. Everest is **higher** *than* any other mountain in China.  
= Mt. Everest is the **highest** mountain in China. = Mt. *Everest* is as **high** as any other mountain in China. = No other mountain in China is so **high** as Mt. *Everest*.

36. 正如人体需要食物来养一样，人民需要产业来养。

As (或 Just *as*) the human body is nourished by its food, **so** is a nation nourished by its industries.

37. 他比他的兄弟姊妹都聪明。

He is cleverer *than* his brothers and sisters.

38. 他与其说是正直，不如说是聪明。

He is more clever *than* honest. = He is not so much honest *as* clever. = He is rather clever *than* honest.

她触宴吃多敌诚伙

39. 尽眼力所及，除水以外什么都看不见。

*As far as* the eye can reach, nothing is to be seen but water.

40. 尽我所知，英语中并无此词。

*So long as* I know, there is no such word in English.

41. 我从来没有这样厉害地病过，所以我得去找医生。

I have never been **so** seriously ill *that* I have to consult a doctor.

她触宴妹兵敌诚伙

42. 他虽穷，然很正直。

*Though* he is poor, (yet) he is honest.

43. 虽则他很有钱，他的生活却很俭朴。

*Although* he has plenty of money, he leads a very simple life.

44. 即令倾盆大雨，我也要去。

*Even if* it should rain cats and dogs, I will go.

45. 不管他喜不喜欢，他都得去。

He shall go, *whether* he likes it *or not*.

〔注〕第三人称用 **shall** 是表示说话者的意志，即 I will make him go 之意。

## 12 时的一致与叙述转换

### 时的一致

1. 我未曾知道她是你的母亲。

I *did* not know that she *was* your mother.

〔注〕前面是说 *did* not know, 所以后面要接 *she was* your mother, 而不要说 *she is* your mother。

2. 我没有想到他会这样早来的。

I *did* not think that he *would* come so soon.

〔注〕前面是说 *did* not think, 所以后面要接 *he would* come, 而不要说 *he will* come。

3. 我未曾知道你病了这么久了。

I *did* not know that you *had been* ill so long.

〔注〕前面既是 *did* not know, 所以后面不要用 *you have been* ill, 而要用 *you had been* ill。

4. 我未曾知道他在十多年前就死了。

I *did* not know that he *had died* more than ten years *before*.

〔注〕前面既是 *did* not know, 所以后面不能说 *he died* more than ten years *ago*, 而要说 *he had died* more than ten years *before*, 因为“死去”是在“知道”以前发生的事, 不是同时发生的事。

5. 哥伦布曾相信地球是圆的。

Columbus *believed* that the earth *is* round.

〔注〕这是一个例外，地球是圆的，是不变的真理，所以前面的动词 **believed** 虽为过去式，后面仍用现在形的 **is**。

6. 他说他在每天吃早饭之前要出去散步。

He *said* that he *takes* a walk before breakfast every morning.

〔注〕这也是一个例外，所谓习惯的行为是可以用现在时 (**take s**)，不必与前面的过去时 (**said**) 一致。

7. 今天早上她告诉我说她母亲重伤风躺在床上。

This morning she *told* me that her mother *is* ill in bed with a bad cold.

〔注〕她说话在今早，虽已成过去，但她母亲现在（即说这句话的时候）仍卧病在床上，所以可用现在形的动词 (**is**)。

8. 老师告诉我们说林肯死在1865年。

The teacher *told* us that Lincoln *died* in 1865.

〔注〕前面既是 **told us**，照规矩后面应接 **Lincoln had died** 才对，不过叙述历史上的事实时，单用 **died** 即可。

9. 母亲对我说，如果她有足够的钱的话，她就要给我买一架钢琴。

Mother *told* me that if she *were* rich enough she *would* buy me a piano.

〔注〕在 **told me** 之后普通应接 **she was**，此句因系虚拟语气 (Subjunctive Mood)，所以说 **if she were** (假设的过去)。

亚侯逝鼠田坚侯逝鼠

10. 他对我说，“我病啦”。

He *said* to me, “*I am* ill.”

He *told* me that he *was* ill.

11. 你对我说,“我把表掉了”。

*You said to me, “I have lost my watch.”*

*You told me that you had lost your watch.*

12. 她对他说,“我是在桌上找到那个的”。

*She said to him, “I found it on the table.”*

*She told him that she had found it on the table.*

13. 老师告诉我说,“会及格的”。

*The teacher said to me, “You will pass.”*

*The teacher told me that I should pass.*

〔注〕should 为 shall 的过去式。

14. 父亲对我说,“我要带你去”。

*Father said to me, “You shall go with me.”*

*Father told me that I should go with him.*

〔注〕引用句中的 *you shall go* 是表示说话者的意志的,改为间接说法时则为 *I should go*, 无论单纯未来(例13)或意志未来,改为间接叙述时都是一样。

15. 你对我说,“我要把这个照相簿送你”。

*You said to me, “I will give you this album.”*

*You told me that you would give me that album.*

16. 你对我说,“我又会考不取的”。

*You said to me “I shall fail again.”*

*You told me that you would fail again.*

〔注〕无论意志将来(例15的 *I will*)或单纯将来(本例的 *I shall*),改为间接叙述时都是 *you would*。

17. 他说,“我现正在这儿读书”。

He said, "I am reading *here now*."

He said that he was reading *there then*.

18. 他说, "这些书是我今天(早晨)买的".

He said, "I bought *these books today (this morning)*."

He said that he had bought *those books that day (that morning)*.

19. 她对我说, "我明天付钱给你".

She *said to me*, "I will pay you *tomorrow*."

She *told me* that she would pay me *the day after*.

20. 她告诉我说她昨天看见我弟弟.

She *said to me*, "I saw your brother *yesterday*."

She *told me* that she had seen my brother *the day before*.

21. 我问她要哪一个.

I *said to her*, "Which *will you take*? "

I *asked her* which *she would take*.

22. 我问他为什么笑.

I *said to him*, "Why *are you laughing*? "

I *asked him* why *he was laughing*.

23. 我问他那是怎样做的.

I *said to him*, "How *did you do it*? "

I *asked him* how *he had done it*.

24. 我问你弟弟病了多久了.

I *said to your brother*, "How long *have you been ill*? "

I *asked your brother* how long he *had been ill*.



25. 他问我是不是生了他的气。

He *said to me*, “*Are you angry with me?* ”

He *asked me if I was* angry with him.

26. 他问我昨天去听音乐会没有?

He *said to me*, “*Did you go to the concert yesterday?* ”

He *asked me if I had gone* to the concert the day before.

27. 她问我近来接到他的信没有?

She *said to me*, “*Have you heard anything from him lately?* ”

She *asked me if I had heard* anything from him lately.

28. 父亲叫仆人把书房收拾干净。

Father *said to the servant*, “*Put my study in order.* ”

Father *told the servant to put* his study in order.

29. 母亲要玛丽把窗子打开。

Mother *said to Mary*, “*Please open the window.* ”

Mother *asked Mary to open* the window.

30. 医生要他少吃。

The doctor *said to him*, “*Don't eat too much.* ”

The doctor *advised him not to eat* too much.

31. 我赞成我们去看电影。

I *said*, “*Let us go to the movies.* ”

I *proposed that we should go* to the movies.

32. 他说落日何其美。

He *said*, “*How beautiful the sunset is!* ”

He *cried out* that the sunset was *very beautiful*.

33. 他考取了学校，大为欢呼。

He *said*, "*Hurrah!* I have passed the examination! "

He *exclaimed with delight* that he had passed the examination.

34. 他名落孙山，为之悲叹。

He *said*, "Alas! I have failed. "

He *said with a sigh* that he had failed.

35. 他求上帝饶恕他。

He *said*, "*May* God forgive me. "

He *prayed* that God *might* forgive him.

36. 他向我道别。

He *said to me*, "Goodbye. "

He *said goodbye to me*.

37. 他对我说如果明天天气好就开会。

He *said to me*, "If it is fine *tomorrow* the meeting *will* be held. "

He *told me* that if it *was* fine *the following day*, the meeting *would* be held.

38. 他对我说如果昨天天气好就开了会。

He *said to me*, "If it *had been* fine *yesterday*, the meeting *would have been* held. "

He *told me* that if it *had been* fine *the previous day* the meeting *would have been* held.

39. 那老人说，他虽不阔，但很幸福。

The old man *said*, "I am not rich, *but* I am happy. "

The old man said *that* he was not rich, *but that* he was happy.

40. 我弟弟说他肚子饿了，要我给他一点东西吃。

My brother said to me, "I am hungry. *Give* me something to eat."

My brother told me that he was hungry *and asked me to give* him something to eat.

## 二 作文批改

# A POET IN THE THEATRE

## 1 原作稿

Once a poet enjoyed a play in theatre; behind him sitting a spectator, patted on his shoulder and said, "Please, get your hat off! "

But, the poet did not mind.

Waiting a while, the man sitting behind him said again: "Please, get your hat off, my friend. "

Still, the poet did not mind.

On the screen the picture was splendid and magnificent; however, to that man his eye-sight was mostly hindered by the hat. He could not, actually, endure any more thus did he say: "Do get your hat off! My eye-sight was entirely hindered. "

The poet stretching out, therefore, his right hand took off it. Pop! The damned long and disorderly hair stood straight there just like a bundle of straws.

The back spectator felt the change, by no means, to be better after all.

"Sorry! Beg you put on it again! "

## 2 讲解

上面登的这篇文章是一个中学生写的。通篇没有什么语法上的错误，在现今的中学校里，能够写得出这样的英文作文来的人，已经算是很不容易了。

这篇文章的毛病，就在用词不当。许多词句都不合英美人的习惯用法，所以即令造句于语法虽无不合，它还是不能达意，作文不论中西，唯一的要点，不外是孔夫子说的“辞达而已矣”。要达意就非用词恰当不可。

现在逐一说明如下：

中文的“观赏”可以译作 **enjoy**，如“赏花”**enjoy the flowers**，“赏月”**enjoy the moonlight**，“赏雪”**enjoy the snow** 之类；但“观剧”的“观”字就不能用 **enjoy** 这个字，只可照字面译作 **see**，有时也可用 **do**，如 **do a cinema**（看电影），“观光”（**sight seeing**）也可以说 **do a city**，不过这是俗语的表现法。剧场的“观众”在英文中，只能说 **audience**（听众），至于 **spectator** 是街上看热闹的人，意思是“旁观者”，例如 **He remained an unconcerned spectator of our struggle.**（他对于我们的挣扎，抱着漠不关心的旁观态度。）但对于赛马、赛球一类的“观众”，却可以用这个词，例如 **a crowd of spectators at football match.**（一大群看赛球的人。）**spectator** 重在“看”，**audience** 重在“听”。在评剧的发源地，大家都说“听戏”，而不说“看戏”，与英文的 **audience** 实有一脉相通之处（拉丁文的 **audire** 即英文的 **to hear**，所以 **audience= assembly of listeners**）。**play** 是指 **drama**（剧本）或 **dramatic performance**（演剧），如说去观剧，可说 **go to the play**，即指我们现在说的“话剧”，以别于“平剧”（**Chinese opera**）或“电影”。电影在美国说 **motion picture**（口语说 **movies**），在英国说 **cinema**，如说去看电影，可说 **go to the movies**（美），**go to the cinema**（英）。但是 **show** 就无所谓，不仅话剧可用，电影可用，甚至广播剧（**radio show**）也可用，不论用什么方式，只要是表演或陈列出来给人看的东西都是 **show** 呢。

**get off** 意为“下车”、“下马”、“免除”等，“脱帽”的“脱”字，英文应说 **remove**。

拍某人的肩，英文的表现法要说“在那肩上拍某人”，先要把整个的对象说出来，然后才加说那些细节，即 **pat a person on the shoulder**（拍别人的肩），**strike him on the head**（敲他的头），**take him by the hand**（拿他的手），**pull him by the sleeves**（牵他的衣袖），**kick him on the shin**（踢他的脚胫），**look him in the face**（看他的脸，当面）等等。

**mind** 作动词用，是留心不要忘记的意思，如说“没有注意他说的话”，译作 **did not mind what he said** 尚可，但单用一个 **mind** 是不好的，因为 **don't mind** 是对人家问你介意与否时的答词，是说明你不介意人家的话语。**take notice**（不注意）才是这里适当的字眼。

**wait** 作不及物动词用，通常后面应加一个 **for**，不过像 **wait for a moment** 中的 **for**，在口语说时是可以省去的。

**eye-sight** 是“视力”，不是“视线”（**the line of vision**）。视力只有好坏（**good or bad**）或是衰退（**failing**），不说被阻住（**hinder**）。

**no more** 是表 **measure**（度量）的，要用 **no longer** 才可表 **state**（状态）。所以这儿的 **not any more** 应改为 **not any longer**。

**Pop** 是说爆发，此处应该用（**Good**）**Heavens!**

**damned** 是鄙野的字，宜尽量避免。

**sorry** 即 **I am sorry** 之略，意为“抱歉”或“惋惜”，用在此处之不当，是很容易看得出来的。

本文主要用得不得体的词，都已指出来了。读者不难明白，写英文不仅是语法不错就够了的。用词的恰当与否，实极为重要，因为一词之差，意思大变，同时中国语法与英文语法也不大相同，不可就中文直译，一定要用英文的成语表现出来，才是好英文。

现在特就原文的意思，加以修正润色，使成为一篇像样的英文，即 **make it readable**，希望对于原作者及其他读者，有所助益。

### 3 改正稿

A poet once went to see a show in a movie theatre. A man sitting behind him patted him on the shoulder and said, "I say, will you please remove your hat?"

But the poet did not take any notice of him.

Having waited for a while, the man sitting behind repeated the request. Still the poet did not move.

On the screen a very splendid and magnificent picture was being shown, but, to the regret of the man sitting behind, very little could be seen, as his view was mostly obstructed by the poet's hat.

Being unable to endure any longer, he roared to the poet: "Can't you remove your hat? "

At this, the poet took off his hat without saying a word. Heavens! What luxuriant and unkempt locks of hair that stood up straight on the poet's head just like a bundle of straws!

The man behind the poet felt the change by no means better, so he said to the poet:

"If you don't mind I would prefer that you put on your hat again. "



# MY BEST FRIEND

## 1 原作稿

I knew a friend whom I became acquainted with firstly when I attend school. He went along my house and became my best friend. Since then, he and I have been going to school altogether rain or shine.

Not only he himself knows many things, but also he teaches other people who want to learn. He gives a whole book of knowledge to everybody, sometimes he explained very clear and sometimes he says things rather hard to understand.

He is speechless. I seldom hear his voice. Whenever I ask him questions he can not directly answer useful his mouth, but shows me the answers on his body.

All students and all people who learn are to be best friends with him. He is especially intimate with students who study hard in library, that is his office. He helped we learn many things of every side. If we have no him, we will be out of knowledge. You know my best friend's name? I tell you. His Chinese name is "shu", English name is "book".

## 2 讲解

说到现在为止还认识的人，应该用完成式的 **have known**，以代替过去式的 **knew**。前面既用了 **knew**，后面就不要再用 **became acquainted with**，因为这样就重复了。

**attend** 应该用过去时。

同去或前去，不应该用 **went along**，应说 **came to**。

**altogether** 和 **together**, 虽同是副词, 但意义不同, 前者作“总共”“全然”解, 后者才是“共”“同”“互相”的意思。

**not only** 用在句首是加重的说法, 应将谓语移到主语的前面, 才合惯用语法。

**a whole book of knowledge** 嫌生硬, 如用 **from cover to cover** 这个成语, 则既含有书的意味 (因 **cover** 是指书的封面), 又作“充分”“透彻”解, 可以双关。说 **I know him from cover to cover**, 意即我充分地知道他。

**things rather hard to understand** 是通的, 不过最好是把与书有关的成语嵌进去, 所以不如改为 **read between the lines** (言外之意, 弦外之音)。

**speechless** 意为“不能言的”“哑的”, 未免说得太显明了, 改用 **quiet and gentle**, 要含蓄些。

**answer useful his mouth** 是不通的, 至少也要说 **answer with his mouth**, 但不如说 **answer by word of mouth**, 系现成的字句。又 **answer on his body** 也是不通的, 应以别的方法表出。

**all students and all people who learn** 意思是说在校的学生以及校外的学人, 可说 **every student in or out of school**, 因为 **student** 是 **somebody who studies**, 并不限于在校的学生, 社会上的好学的人士都可以用此词。

**He helped we learn** 应说 **He helped us to learn** 才是。“各方面”应说 **in every way**, 不要说 **of every side**。

**If we have no him** 不合英文语法, 如说 **But for him**, 既简单而又明了, 实为最恰当的一个成语。

**out of knowledge** 为 **in knowledge** 之对, 二者都不是这里所需要的, “无知”可说 **ignorant**, 但“愚昧”“无学”就可说 **benighted**。

**I tell you** 应作 **I'll tell you** 或 **Let me tell you**。

原作小部分是语法不通, 大部分是不合惯用语法, 所以批改时虽尽量想保存原文, 但有时仍不得不将全句重新写过。作文最好充分利用成语, 简明恰当, 读时容易上口, 而不至有中国英文的毛病。

### 3 改正稿

I have known him since I first attended school. He came to my home with me and we made friends with each other. I have never been able to go to school without his company since the day we first met.

Not only does he possess profound knowledge but he imparts it to whoever wants it. He likes supplying everybody with useful information from cover to cover. Sometimes he tells things very explicitly; sometimes you have to read his messages between the lines.

He is very quiet and gentle. I have never heard him speak with a raised voice. As a matter of fact, he has never answered a question by word of mouth, but none the less he makes you understand just as well.

Every student in or out of school is on good terms with him. Those who study hard enjoy the closest intimacy with him and remain in his office—the library—all day long. He helps us in every way to improve in knowledge. But for him, we should have been benighted. Do you know what he is called? His name is “book”.

# BUYING A NEW PAIR OF SHOES

## 1 原作稿

My shoes was ragged. It looked ugly and unsuitable. My mother suggested that I should have a pair of new shoes instead of the old ones. I was very glad to hear that. But suddenly I felt sad because my mother told me that I could not buy them at once. She had no enough money in hand to go shopping. So I must wait till my father got his salary of the next month.

One month seemed to be a long time for me to wait for a pair of new shoes. I just dreamt day after day. What kind of shoes should I buy? Of what style and in what color? I hoped the day would come.

My dream became true after all. One day my father came home and handed to my mother his salary. I jumped up and ran to my mother. She patted my head and told me that I could buy my shoes immediately. I ran to wash my face, change clothes and comb my hair. All things delighted me. I got in the bus with my mother together.

We went from shop to shop and could not buy a pair of suitable shoes. We wanted to buy a pair of shoes which was cheaper and good looking. But what on earth could we buy the shoes? A person who is not rich, cannot buy things which are good and beautiful. we went along the street. At last we found out a shop. There was a pair of shoes in yellow color in the glass. They fitted my feet perfectly, but not the shoes I had dreamed to buy. My mother urged me to buy them. She consoled me that she would buy me a pair of much prettier shoes than

this we had bought already. I said not thing. I felt tired when I returned home.

Now this pair of yellow shoes is on my feet. I like the shoes very much because they were bought by using my fathers salary.

## 2 讲解

“一双鞋”虽是说 a pair of shoes, 但“一只鞋”却要说 a shoe, 单说 shoes, 至少是一双, 应该用复数。ragged 是说“衣衫褴褛”, 不可用来说破鞋。ugly 是指人丑, 鞋子的难看, 应说 ungainly 或 unpresentable。这一段除第一句外, 都没有语法上的错误, 只是说出来的句子, 不是嫌累赘, 就是欠熟练, 读起来不那么顺口, 所以批改时, 就不得不把某些句子颠倒换置, 以符英美人造句的习惯。

在 seem 一词后, 最普通是接不定词, 例如 I seemed to hear a voice in the distance. (我好像听见远处有人声), 不过不定词后如再有形容词时, 就可把这不定词略去, 如 He seems (to be) quite happy. (他好像很快乐。)”期待”应该说 expect, 不要 hope。

“梦想实现”普通都说 My dream has come true, 不说 become true。说“薪水袋”(pay-envelope) 比直说“薪水”salary 来得含混一点。“拍我的头”与其直译为 patted my head, 不如说 patted me on the head, 比较更合乎英美语法。太琐碎的事如洗脸、梳头、更衣, 一一说出来, 颇嫌啰嗦, 近乎写流水账, 故改为 to get ready for going out (收拾好以便出去)。既已出门, 又乘上公共汽车了, 是应并入下一段才合适。

单说 suitable shoes 意思不完全, 应改为“适合我穿的皮鞋”(shoes which suit me)。“比较便宜又好看”译成 cheaper and good looking, 未免太中国式了。“便宜”应该说 reasonable price, 即合理的价钱。good-looking 或 bad-looking 都是指人的相貌而言, 如 a good-looking person = a handsome person, one with a face that is admired。再说 She is not at all bad-looking. = She is rather pretty. (她一点也不难看, 还相当漂亮。)我们到底能够买什么皮鞋呢? 写成 But what on earth could we buy the shoes? 有点词

不达意，现连下一句（即没有钱的人买不到美好的东西）改为 **what can you do with a light purse?** 因为上面已经说过要货色好，又要价钱便宜这是很难的。钱不够，当然买不到好的皮鞋。在玻璃窗中，不可说 **in the glass**，应说 **in the show window**。“我什么也没有说”不可说 **I said not thing**，应说 **I said nothing**。

“用我父亲的薪水买来”译成 **bought by using my father's salary** 完全是中国语法，尤其是 **by using one's salary** 用在这里很不习惯，**use money** 还可以说，**use salary** 就不太好说了。

### 3 改正稿

My shoes were wearing out and looked so unpresentable that I was very happy when my mother suggested that I should buy another pair. But she told me that I had to wait till father got his next month's pay as she had not ready money to buy them with.

One month seemed such a long time for me to wait. I dreamed of my new shoes every night. What kind of shoes should I buy? Of what style and color? I expected the day would come soon.

My dream came true at last. One day when father came home he handed his pay-envelope to mother. I jumped at the news and ran to my mother, who patted me on the head and consented to buy my shoes at once. I rushed to get ready for going out with mother.

The bus took us to the business quarter in less than half an hour. We went from shop to shop but could not get a pair of shoes which would suit me. We wanted to buy a pair of beautiful shoes at a reasonable price. But what can you do with a light purse? We walked along the street for a long time, and at length came to a shop, in whose show window we saw a pair of brown shoes. They fitted me so well that they seemed made to order. These, however, were not the shoes I had dreamed of.

f. But my mother urged me to buy them, and promised to get me another pair later. So we went home with the pair of brown shoes. I felt very tired after that long walk.

Now I wear this pair of brown shoes everyday. I like them very much because they were bought with the hard-earned money of my father.

# MEI-LI

## 1 原作稿

It is the first anniversary of Mei-li's death. She was a charming beautiful girl, she was bright and cheerful, lively and sweet. She was my neighbor. I have known her since my childhood.

We were friends from childhood. I worked, studied and played with her. She became a great friend of mine. Two years ago, in the summer, she left me and went to Taipei to study, so we sadly parted.

On her departure, I found her crying, she said nothing, I couldn't say something consoling her. At last I bid her farewell reluctantly, and she went. It was sad.

I often wrote to her, and she often wrote to me, too. So long as we remain fast friendship between us, our spirits were close together.

Last winter she wrote me that she was sick, fearing that she would die of pneumonia, I wrote her for consolation, but I didn't dare tell her what was really in my heart for fearing of losing her love forever. To my horror, death seized her and my heart was broken.

Each time when I return home I think of her. Though she died, she lives in my memory as real as before.

## 2 讲解



这是台南一中一位名叫 Chang Hsu-cheng 的同学的作文，现除字面上的修正外，再加以意义上的补充，所以第一段的改正稿，似乎与原作有些出入了。原作第二句，作者似乎想要把世界上所有美好的形容词统统拿来赞美这位小姐，这当然是可以不必的，而且在语法上讲，两句 **she was** 连在一块儿又无连词，也不大妥当。

第一段的尾上和第二段的开头，连用 **since my childhood** 及 **from childhood**，未免重复，现将第二段并入第一段。

原作第三段的字句也略有调动。否定后应该用 **any** 代替 **some**，所以 **couldn't say something** 要改为 **couldn't say anything**，后面的 **participal (consoling)** 也应改为 **infinitive (to console)**。最后一句 **It was sad.** 的主语 **it**，前无先行的名词，不知它代表的是什么，所以这句至少应改为 **It was a sad parting.** 或 **The parting was a tug.**

作“精神”解的 **spirit** 不宜加复数，**spirits** 是指“妖精”“精灵”，又指“心境”，如高兴就说 **in high spirits**。

**I wrote her for consolation.** 意为写信求她给我安慰，与作者原意不符，应改为 **I wrote to console her.** 又 **I didn't dare tell** 应改为 **I didn't dare to tell**，因 **dare** 在此非助动词，而是一个主动词，所以应接不定词的 **to tell**，又 **for fearing of losing her love** 应改为 **for I was afraid of losing her love** 或 **for I feared that I should lose her love.** 现稿上用 **I had a presentiment of losing her.**

**Every** 有全体的意思，而 **each** 则只能指单独的，所以 **each time** 改为 **every time**，意为次次如此。

### 3 改正稿

I cannot help thinking of Mei-li today as it is the first anniversary of her death. I am as thankful to have known Mei-li since her childhood as I am grieved to lose her in her teens. She was a charming girl, bright and vivacious. We were playmates while we were very young, and schoolmates while attending school. As we were close neighbors, we had not parted company for a single day till one summer morning about two years ago,

she came to tell me that she was going to attend a school in Taipei. So we parted in sorrow for the first time and forever.

On departure she said nothing, but I found her crying. I was so stupefied that I couldn't say anything to console her. I had but to bid her farewell reluctantly when her train moved along. The parting was a tug.

Since we were no longer together, we could do nothing but resort to writing to each other very often. So long as we kept in touch with each other through correspondence, we should remain close friends.

It was last winter that she wrote to me saying she had fallen ill. She was afraid that she would die of pneumonia. I tried to console her in every way, but in the depths of my heart I had a presentiment of losing her forever. Unfortunately it turned out to be true; and my heart was broken.

Every time when I pass her house I cannot but think of her. She is alive spiritually, though bodily dead; and it seems as if I can hear her voice and laughter.

# MY FACE

## 1 原作稿

Every one has a face, though it to be delicate, plain or ugly. And we usually recognize a person just because we are familiar with his face. So face means much importance than any part of our body, especially to girls. A girl with a beautiful face is always prouder than a heiress to a million dollar property.

But my face means nothing to me.

I dislike my eyes, for they are not black enough. And people say that yellow-eyed person is cunning. I have hatred for my nose, though it is not an aquiline one, it has no bride. So people often sneer at my lacking in persistence. As for my mouth, it is ridiculous in shape. My lower lip is thicker than my upper one. And there has never been a loud and tragic voice coming from my mouth. It is why people call me a coward.

I was once blamed by a teacher in the university because of my gazing at him when he had wrongly explained lessons to us. He said that it was very impolite for a student to look at the teacher in that way. Besides, as a teacher of biology, he stated that most murders were yellow-eyed people. His words made my classmates laugh heartily.

It is clear enough that a plain and ugly face is convenient to me. My plain face has told people that I am a mean fellow, so that authorities will put no attention to me. My ugly face has told girls that in my frame there dwells no beautiful soul, so that they will not mistake me as a poet and fall in love with me.

## 2 讲解

Every one 表示“人”的时候，应该写成一个词。though 是一个表示转折或矛盾的词，这里说“面孔有美有丑”，与前面的“人人都有一副面孔”并无矛盾，只是一种说明句子，所以不宜用 though 作连词。because 是表示直接真正的原因的，用在此地似乎太重，这里只要一个“由于”的意思就够了，即我们由面孔而认识人，much 不能和 than 相接，要用 more 才行。aquiline 当系 aquiline (= accipitrine=eagle) 之误，既没有鼻梁 (bridge)，当然就不直了。persistence (不是 persistance) 是坚忍或持久的意思。因缺乏坚忍为人嘲笑，这句话放在此不知什么意思？ridiculous 用来形容 shape 是不当的，单说 not well-shaped 也就够了。用 tragic 来形容 voice 也不好，而且此句逻辑上也不合，我不懂为什么下唇比上唇厚，就不能发出大声，就使声音变成悲剧的了？说话的声音小，是表示斯文，并不是表示胆怯，而大声瞎嚷也不能表示大胆，只能表示粗暴呢。blame 是非难，不是呵责，以改为 scold 为佳。murder 是杀人，谋杀，至于杀人犯则应说 murderer。

最后一段，嫌啰嗦，也未能把作者的意思完全表达出来。convenient 用在此地不妥，应是不惹人注目，而非给予方便。其貌不扬，也并不一定就是卑贱的人。that is my frame there dwells no beautiful soul 一句，语法欠通，应作 that in such a frame as mine would not be able to dwell any beautiful soul，又 mistake 后应接 for，不宜接 as。行文句子要简单明了，拉得太长，则嫌拖沓了。

## 3 改正稿

Everyone has a face which may be handsome or ugly. Generally we know a person by his face. So the face is the most prominent part of a person. A girl with a beautiful face is always prouder than those who possess a large fortune.

But my face means nothing to me.

I dislike my eyes which are not black enough, for people say that yellow-eyed persons are cunning. I hate my nose for it seemingly has no bridge. As for my mouth, I find it not well sh

aped. My lower lip is thicker than the upper one. So people often sneer at me for my facial defects.

While studying in the university, I was once scolded by a teacher, because I gazed at him when he has given us a wrong explanation. He said that it was very impolite for a student to look at the teacher in that way. Being a teacher of biology, he asserted that most murderers were yellow-eyed. His words made my classmates laugh heartily.

It is evident, however, that an ugly face will not attract one's attention. My ugly face, for instance, has deprived me of the chance to win the affection of the fair sex, who fail to see virtue in person with such a face.

# THE ROYAL TUTOR

## 1 原作稿

Long, long ago, in a kingdom, there was a prince royal who was being educated by a special teacher in the palace. There were many children together with the prince royal in the same class.

One day, the prince royal did something wrong in the class. The teacher did not punish him and did not even breathe a word about it to him. Instead, the teacher gave the punishment to the one of his classmates.

The prince royal looked puzzled and was very sorry for his classmate.

“Why, I did it, teacher, why didn’t you punish me. My classmate had nothing to do with it?” asked the prince royal.

“Because you’re a prince royal, our future king, I dared not punish you, therefore, have your classmate be punished instead of you. If you don’t want to make your classmates be punished, then you must be careful not to do anything wrong. So that your classmates would not be punished instead of you,” answered the teacher sternly.

From what the teacher said we can apparently make out that he reminded the prince royal indirectly that after he became a king he must rule the country in a good way, not be too cruel to the people who are under your rule, otherwise he would make his people as well as the schoolmate had been done.

## 2 讲解

既是一个王太子 (prince royal), 自然是有一个王国 (kingdom) 存在, 所以 in a kingdom 一个短语, 就似乎是多余的了。家庭教师可说 tutor, 不必 special teacher。又太子可说 heir-apparent。

一句中连用两个 did not 不好, 故后半句改为 nor did。又 the teacher gave the punishment to the one of his classmates 句中的 the one 只能说 one。这句以改为 make an example of someone else 为佳, 因 make an example of 有惩一儆百的意思。

单说 very sorry for his classmate, 未能表示因其代己受过而对之抱歉那种意思, 所以在后面宜加上 who was punished in his stead。

I did it 是普通的说法, 在这时候应该用加重的说法, 即 It is I who did it. 下一句与其说 why didn't you punish me? 不如说 why did you punish him instead of me? 意即“你为什么不处罚我而要处罚他呢?”至于 had nothing to do with it, 宜用现在完成时, 不要用过去时, 因为说他与此事无关系, 是到现在还是无关系的。

在教师回答的话中原作未能把立意十分表达出来, 所以现略加增补, 与原文对照细阅, 便知行文的出入。

末段说明词句拟删去, 因为读者读了上段, 含义已很明白, 用不着再加说明, 而且文字上也有毛病, 例如 under your rule 应作 under his rule, 及 otherwise he would make his people as well as the schoolmate had been done 应作 otherwise he would make his people suffer as his classmate had suffered。

### 3 改正稿

Long, long ago, there lived a prince royal who was being educated by a tutor in the palace. There were some other children of the royal family studying with the heir-apparent.

One day, the prince royal did something wrong in the class. The teacher did not punish him, nor did he mention it to him.

m. But as a warning to the others he made an example of someone else.

At this the prince royal was puzzled and felt very sorry for the boy who was punished in his stead.

“It is I who did it, dear teacher, ”said the prince royal.“Why did you punish him instead of me? To tell the truth, he has nothing to do with it. ”

“Certainly, ”said his tutor.“But he was made to suffer though he was not the wrong doer. That’s the way in which we behave ourselves in this world. You know, you are the prince royal, our future king. I might, of course, punish you for your misdemeanor, but who will dare to punish you for your wrongdoing when you have become king? As is always the case, the people will suffer for the wrong doings of their ruler. So if you don’t want your classmate or your future subjects to suffer for your wrong doings, you must be very careful not to let yourself go astray from the right path. ”



# ON BOOKS

## 1 原作稿

Books are to mankind what memory is to the individuals. They contain the history of our race, the discoveries we have made. They not only teach us how to become a doctor, a merchant, a honourable preacher; but also guide us to the path of glory and satisfaction. We can converse freely without hindrance with all the historic figures in the world through books. We can travel the world over happily by the guidance of books. Books are really wonderful.

We know life is short while art is long. We are mortal, therefore we have to go to whence we came at the call of Wyrol. No man has an exception. No matter how wise you are, you cannot experience everything in this human world. We know we have a four thousand years history. If we don't have books; by what can we know it?

The reason why I buy books is to get knowledge of the universe. Bacon said well that knowledge is power, but I think knowledge is not only power but a soul. Man without soul is no longer a person of mankind. It is only book that comforts our souls and makes our souls to have a connection with our body. According to the Greek philosopher, a man will not be complete until his soul and body are well united and harmonious.

## 2 讲解

第一句引自 Lubbock 的 *The Delights of Books* 一文中的成句，应该加用引用符号。第二句说的是两件事，应该用连词连接起

来。医生的学识从经验得来的比从书本得来的为多，商人更不一定要读多少书，所以改说学者与专家较好。又书本并不一定会使我们知足，饱学之士，贪得无厌的人，还是很多，所以 **and satisfaction** 的字样，可以删去。既说了 **freely**，就不必再说 **without hindrance** 以免重复。

**Art is long and life is short** 是由拉丁文的 *Ars longa, vita brevis*（生也有涯，智也无涯。人寿有限，艺术无穷）一个成语来的，所以我们仍以保留它的原形为佳。**Wyrol** 不知出自何典，现拟改为普通的 **death**，或 **the god of death**。

书籍是给我们读的，买而不读，仅作装饰，非买书的本意，所以与其说 **buy**，不如说 **read**。我们求知，主要在我们自身及所居的世界，说 **universe** 似嫌太渺茫了一点。**soul** 不能与 **power** 相配。**a person of mankind** 也不成话，都非改正不可，所以以下的字句，略有更动，以求达意。又 **until** 后只有一个 1，而 **till** 后才是两个 1。

### 3 改正稿

“Books are to mankind what memory is to the individual. They contain the history of our race and the discoveries we have made. Without them one can hardly be a scholar, an expert, or an honourable preacher. In short, books lead us to the path of glory. Through them we can converse freely with all the world-famous men and women who died long ago, and can see the most beautiful parts of the world without going out of the door. Indeed, books are the most wonderful things created by man.

We know that art is long and life is short. As men are mortal, they will return at the call of death to the place whence they come. No matter how wise you are, you cannot see and know everything in the world. The scope of your eye-sight is rather limited, but if you see with your mind's eye, there will be a wider prospect. You may know things which happened thousands of miles away or thousands of years ago. If you don't have books how can you be informed of such things?

The reason why I read books is that I want to have some knowledge of the human race and the world in which we live. Bacon said that knowledge is power, but I think knowledge is not only power, but something to purify our soul. Only a purified soul makes a perfect man. Books make our soul and body unify. According to a Greek philosopher, a man will not be complete until his soul and body are well united.

# MY HOME

## 1 原作稿

Everybody has one's own home, but all the homes are not the same. Some are rich, some poor, some small and some big.

Though my home is not a rich one, yet I love my home very much.

My home is situated at a quiet street on Kowloon side. The head of my home is my father, for I have no grandfather or grandmother. But the one that controls the family affair is my mother, for my father has no time to spend on the family affair. He has to devote all his time on his business, in order to make enough money to support the family.

In my home, I have four brothers and three sisters. Two brothers and two sisters are going to school, and my two elder brothers are working people.

They work in order to gain some money to help my father. They are all very happy in living together.

Now, I left my home because I want to continue my study in the university. Next summer vacation I wish I can go back to my home and spend a happy holiday with my family.

## 2 讲解

第一段第一句中的 *one's* 只能用于 Subject 为 *one* 的句中, 例如 *One should take care of one's health*, 如果主语 *one* 前面加有 *every*, *each* 等指示词时, 后面就不能再用 *one's*, 而要改用 *his* 或 *her*.

is 才对，例如 *Every one loves his mother*. 何况主语用的是 *every body*, 自然后面更不能接 *one's* 了。凡指定的，而非泛指 *one*，都要接 *his*；如 *One of the boys has lost his cap*. 第二句一连用了四个 *some*，实在太单调，应该用 *some...and others...* 才好。

第三段第一句的 *on Kowloon side* 不大习惯。“家事”应该说 *domestic affairs*，不宜说 *family affair*。又 *devote* 尾上应有一个 *e*，而且后面要接 *to*。

第四段 *are go* 两个动词不可连用；*working people* 虽语法不错，然意义不显明，所以应将 *people* 一词删去。

第六段 *wish* 后面不能接 *can* 应接 *could*，在 *hope* 后面才是接 *can*。说 *a holiday* 只有一天，如礼拜天；如果说一个假期，就得用 *holidays* 或 *vacation*。

全文太无内容，词句亦不够表达，语法错误颇多，虽经批改，仍不能成为一篇好的文章。

### 3 改正稿

Everybody has his own home, with which no place can be compared. All homes, though different from one another, are sweet. My home is full of delights; I like it very much.

We live in a quiet street in the city of Kowloon. As I have no grandfather and grandmother, my father is the head of the family. But, as he is very busy with his business, he leaves the domestic affairs in my mother's hands.

My family is rather a big one. I have four brothers and three sisters. Only the two older brothers are working; and the younger ones are still at school. We are grateful to our older brothers who help father keep the pot boiling for the big family and make us feel happy at home!

I left home only because I wanted to continue my study at Taiwan Provincial College of Engineering to which I was admitted. This, as you know, is the best institute of technology. I a

m glad that I have a chance to study here, but I hope I can spend my summer holidays with my family in Kowloon.

# MOUNTAIN CLIMBING

## 1 原作稿

It was a day on the end of August, this year. We, about twenty youths, decided to take a picnic. But, what a pity day it was! A thin rain was dropping in the morning, as if to prevent us from going. As you know, the persistent mind of a youth, is not so easily to be stricken. Eventually we started off, in spite of rain and wind.

Along a straight narrow lane we went. The wide green rice fields spread over the earth, and continued as long as we passed by. Climbing on a steep mountain, we found nothing, but some cottages far away, which dotted the monotonous nature. Everything is calm. Everything is quiet. Except the sounds of rains, which harmonized with our foot steps were heard. No sooner had we reached our destination than it poured a flood of rain, that made us all scattered like a flock of sheep.

We were all astonished, for there stands a white stucco villa of modern style, which overlooking the road, on the top of the mountain. Then all of us were invited to rest. The radio broadcasted that typhoon was approaching from the East Coast of Taiwan. Not long after, we all sunk to enjoy the sweet dinner which was made by ourselves.

Mountain by mountain, we trod slowly on, with our tired feet, and we bristled our nervous energy again to sing the triumphant song, on our way home. And when the sounds echoed back from the deep valley were stronger than the rains, we could not but burst into a happy laugh. For we not only conquered all the obstructions, but also won the ultimate victory.

## 2 讲解

上面这篇英文作文，是本刊读者树林黄介山君最近寄来的。黄君只受过中等教育，就没有升学了，现在专靠阅读《大洋英语月刊》以增进他的英文知识。本刊同人对于这种热心自习的人，最愿竭诚相助，故特将其来稿提前刊出。

第一段说“在一天”应作 **on a day**，而“八月尾”可作 **at** 或 **toward** 或 **about** 或 **in the end of August**，但不能说 **on the end**。**Youth** 的复数为 **youths**，此词可作“青年”解，如 **a youth of twenty**（二十岁的青年），又可作“青年男女”（集合名词）解，如 **the youth of the country**（中国青年男女）。从上一个意思，由单数的青年可以加 **s** 变成复数，如 **a bevy of youths and maidens**（一群青年男女）。英文只说 **have a picnic**，不说 **take a picnic**。又 **pity** 是一个名词不能拿来修饰名词的 **day**。**stricken** 应拼作 **stricken**。

第二段中间的 **as long as (= if only)**，是错误的，**coutinue** 一词用在此地也不对，应作 **stretch**。**Except the sounds** 一句语法不通，因为没有主语，而动词倒有了两个（**harmonized** 及 **were heard**）。在动词 **make** 的后面应接略去了 **to** 的不定词或现在分词，而不能接过去或过去分词，所以句中的 **scattered** 应用 **scatter** 才对。

第三段发现一所别墅，用不着要 **astonish**（惊愕）。**broadcast** 的过去式与现在形一样，不能加 **-ed**。**Not long after** 不常用，应用 **Before long**。又 **sunk** 是 **sink** 的过去分词，不能单独作谓语用，此处即改为 **sank** 意义上也说不通。普通午餐说 **lunch** 或 **tiffin**，不说 **dinner**（正餐，多在晚上吃）。原作中用的 **sink to enjoy the dinner**，大约是说大家走得饿了，便大吃其“便当”，所以现在改用 **do (full) justice to** 一个成语，正有饱餐一顿之意。

第四段中说 **when the sounds echoed back from the deep valley**（这是一个从句），下面就应该接一个有主语和谓语的主句，不能接动词。

全文文字太拖沓，有欠简洁，以致有些语句语法也不清楚了。标点也太多，如 **this year** 的前面和 **nothing but** 的中间那种逗号都是不要的。



### 3 改正稿

It was on a day toward the end of August this year. About twenty of us had a picnic. The drizzling rain which was falling in the morning could not prevent us from going, as we young men are not to be discouraged by such trifling obstacles.

Along a straight narrow lane we went. On either side stretched the green paddy-fields dotted here and there with cottages. On our way we could hear nothing except the patter of the rain and the sound of our own footsteps. No sooner had we reached our destination than it poured in torrents that made us all scatter in every direction.

When we had climbed to the top of a high mountain we found there was a white stucco villa of modern style overlooking the road below. The host invited us to his villa where we had a rest and heard the radio broadcasting that a typhoon was approaching from the east coast of Taiwan. Before long we all did full justice to the lunch which we had brought with us.

As we plodded our weary way homeward, we sang songs which echoed through the hills and overwhelmed the patter of the rain. It was already candle-light when we got home.

# THE ORIGIN OF LIFE

## 1 原作稿

I rise in the east every day, and when I rise then a day is begun. I look in your window with my bright golden eyes, and point to you that you should get up this time. I do not shine for you to lie on your bed and sleep, but I shine for you to get up work and walk about. As I love earth's people so I let moon to reflect my bright for you at the night. I am a great traveler, I travel all over the sky. I never stop and never tired.

I have a crown of bright beams upon my body, and I sent my rays everywhere. I shine upon trees, house and water, the refor everything looks sparkling and appears beautiful color when I shine upon it. I give you limit energy therefor the fruits and the corn are ripen. I am up very high in the sky, higher than all the trees, higher than the clouds and the moon. If I were to come nearer to you, I should scorch you to death, and I should burn up everything.

## 2 讲解

第一句虽无错误，但说 A day is begun 不太好，我们可以说 A day is born 或 A new day has dawned upon the world. 或 The day opened cloudily. 第二句的 point to 在此地不能代表 tell 的意思，因为 point 是“指向”或“用手指物”不能作“指示”解，除非加用 out 才有 show 的意思，如 Please point out my mistakes.（请指示我的错处。）我们不说 earth's people，应改为 the people on earth. 我们不说 at the night，只能说 at night 或 in the night.

第二段中的 **house** 是应该也用复数的。**therefor** 应作 **therefor e**。又 **ripen** 是动词 (**ripe** 是形容词)，不宜接在 **are** 后用。说 **limit energy** 不对，应改为 **limited energy**，因为 **limit** 是动词或名词，而不是形容词。水果单说 **fruit** 就够了，不要加复数，加了复数是表示各种各样的水果。**all the trees** 应说 **all trees**，因为不是指定某一部分的树木，**the clouds** 也是一样，不要冠词。至于 **the sky** 或 **the moon** 就要留下冠词，因为是世界上唯一的，最后一句中的 **should**，宜改用 **would** 较妥，因为不是表示单纯将来，而是表示决定呢。

### 3 改正稿

I rise in the east; and when I rise, it is day. I look into your window with bright golden eyes early every morning to awake you from your sleep. I do not shine on people lying in bed, but on those going about either for pleasure or on business. I hate inanimation and darkness. I give life to men, animals and plants on earth; and as I do not like seeing them enveloped in darkness, I let moon reflect my light over them at night.

I send forth light as well as heat. I give life as well as energy. Without me grains and fruits never can grow, not to mention ripening. If I were not to shine over the earth, there would be no human beings, no animals, no trees, no grass, and no life at all. So I am the origin of life.

I am a great traveler and never get tired of journeying all over the sky. I shine high up and above all things. I have to keep a long distance from them, because I know I am too hot. If I were to come nearer to them, I would certainly scorch them or burn them to death. I am now at such a distance as to give them enough light and heat from which life springs.

# CUTTING DOWN THE DAILY EXPENSES

## 1 原作稿

Last night, I saw my wife knited her brows as she counting our dairy expense. So I asked her what did she thinking about.

“Food is dear recently. Our expenditure increased this month,” she said solicitously.

“What shall we do,” I said. “We must be more economic.”

“Yes, I am just thinking about that,” she said.

“Well, shall we have an economic movement from next month?”

“That is just what I am going to suggest,” my wife replied agreeably.

“Go and take a sheet of paper,” I said. “Let us discuss about what shall we spare.”

She found a piece of paper, and gave it to me.

“Now, you say,” I took out my pen and asked, “What is the first thing we can save?”

“I think the first thing is your sparerib,” she took a glance at me and continued: “One catty a day at least needs 10 dollars. You are too fat already. It won’t be better for you to eat more fish.”

She spoke reasonably, so I could only write it down.

“And what is the second thing?” I asked.

“The second thing is your cigarette, ”my wife said.“40 cigarettes a day causes your mouth smells bad, and your teeth looks dirty. Sometimes it happens to burn black the coverlet or the clothes. ”

I wrote it down also.

She rest a moment and continued,“What will you suggest? ”

“I think we need not go to movie for scores of times a month. ”I know my wife is a movie fan, so I said with hesitation.

“You are right, ”she said after a few minutes.“You are not smoke cigarette, of course I am not go to movie. ”

“And, ”I said,“you need not go to the barber’s shop to dress your hair constantly. ”

“Of course, ”she said.“And instead of going to the barber’s shop once a week, you may go there once for a couple of weeks. ”

“It’s enough, ”she said.“Now, please count the sum which we have saved. ”

I added the amount and found that we have saved almost 800 dollars a month. I lited a cigarette and felt rather glad.

“You are smoking!”my wife cried.

“It is the last one, ”I said.“From now on, we can save 800 dollars a month. We will become a millionaire some day. Tonight, we must celebrate our great success. ”

“Where are we going now? ”my wife asked blinkly.

“Let me see, we are going to movie at first. ”

She dressed a new skirt and said,“Then we are going to the restaurant and take some sparerib. ”

## 2 讲解

在 *see* 及 *hear* 等感觉动词后面，应接不带 *to* 的不定词或现在分词，例如 *I saw him come this morning.* = *When he came this morning, I saw him.* 或 *I saw him coming this morning.* = *When he was coming this morning, I saw him.*

“每天的”是 *daily* 不是 *dairy*（此字作“牛奶棚”或“制酪厂”解）。此种拼法类似的词，应特别注意。

*So I asked her what did she thinking about.* 这句在语法上有两个大的错误：一是 *did she thinking* 应改为 *did she think* 才行，因为 *did* 是助动词，*thinking* 是现在分词，都不是主动词。二是问句固然要将主语与谓语颠倒，但成为附从从句的问句，就不要颠倒，仍然保留陈述时的次序。所以此句应作 *I asked her what she was thinking about.*

“经济学的”是 *economic*，而“省俭的”便是 *economical* (= *thrift and saving*)，应辨别这种异同。*an economic movement* 意为“经济学上的运动”。

*Let us discuss about what we spare.* 一句所犯的毛病和上述 *did she...* 一样，应将问句的形式改为陈述句的形式。

*The second thing is your cigarette* 句中末一词应改用复数才对。*40 cigarettes a day causes your mouth smells bad, and your teeth looks dirty.* 一句，第一点不能用阿拉伯数字来开始一个语句，第二点 *cause* 后面应接不定词（即 *cause one to do*），不能接第三人称单数的动词即（*cause one does*），如用 *make* 的话，后面就接不要 *to* 的不定词（即 *make one do*）。

所谓 *coverlet* 或 *coverlid* 是“床上的覆被”，抽烟为什么会熏黑床上的覆被，是不大容易了解的。

看电影普通是说 *go to the movies*，很少用单数的。

*You are not smoke cigarette* 句中最大的错处是 *are* 和 *smoke* 两个动词连用在一块，我们只能用 *are smoking* 或 *are to smoke*，最好是说 *smoke*（否定说 *do not smoke*）。抽烟单说 *smoke*

就够了，如 Do you smoke? Yes, I smoke. 不必说 smoke cigarettes, 普通说 have a cigarette 或 enjoy a cigarette。

I am not go to movie 句中 am 与 go 两个动词重复了。后半句也应作 go to the movies, 动词 light 的过去和过去分词为 lighted 或 lit, 没有 lited 这种写法。

又 dress 作动词用时与 wear 不同，后接宾语时要加介词，如 be dressed in a new skirt。

### 3 改正稿

Last night, I saw my wife knitting her brows as she was counting our daily expenses. I asked her what she was thinking about.

“Prices are rising; and we have pushed expenses to the full limits of our monthly income,” she said, heaving a deep sigh. “We are unable to provide against a rainy day.”

“What shall we do then?” I said. “We must be more economical next month.”

“Yes, I am just thinking about cutting down the daily expenses,” she nodded at me.

“Well, we shall have to reduce our household expenses next month. Go and get me a sheet of paper,” I said. “Let’s see what we can spare.”

She found a piece of paper, and gave it to me. I took out my pen and asked: “Now, what is the first thing we can dispense with?”

“I think the first thing is the sparereibs which you insist on having each day.” She glanced at me and then continued. “One catty, 10 dollars. What a big bill you will have to pay at the butcher’s each month!”

I agreed and wrote it down.

“And what is the second thing which we can do without? ”I went on asking.

“The next thing is the cigarettes, ”my wife said.“Smoking 40 cigarettes a day causes you to have bad breath, besides the seven or eight dollars you have to spend. ”

This I wrote down also.

After a while she said to me,“What do you suggest? ”

“I think you need not go to the movies so often, ”I said with hesitation, because I know my wife is a movie fan.

“You are right!”she replied.“If you do not smoke, of course, I shall not go to the movies. ”

“And, ”I continued to say,“you need not go to the barber’s shop to dress your hair once a week. ”

“Of course not, ”she assured me.“I may go there once in two weeks, may I not? Well, that’s enough. Please count up what we have saved. ”

It amounted to almost 800 dollars a month. I lit a cigarette and felt rather happy.

“You are smoking!”my wife cried.

“This is the last one, ”I explained.“From now on, we can save 800 dollars a month. We shall become very rich some day. Tonight, we must celebrate our great success. ”

“Yes, let’s go to the movies, ”my wife suggested.

“No, my dear, ”I interrupted,“we are going to the restaurant and have some sparerib. ”



# THE SPURTING FOUNTAIN NEAR THE RAILWAY STATION

## 1 原作稿

At the middle of the ground of Tainan Station was a new artificial circular fountain floating the fair blue water, about three feet in depth, in which the color lights of five kinds of electric bulbs had been installed inside the circle about 20 feet in diameter to express their cool lovely beauty. At the center of the fountain, the most large jet was spring up its water into the pure air, and was falling down over its source again and again, as if it was directing the many tinge jets to sing together of the glory which had been established lately by the hand of the Tainan Municipal Government.

Suddenly a massagist's flute awoke the lonely silence of this dreaming night with its high grace note. No sooner had the note sounded over the loom environ than a train sighed her loud smoky sigh and spited out her slight burden, few passengers.

Near the fountain, under one of the trees, beside the prearrangement-space which had been planned to put a great hero's bronze statue was a solitary maiden, clad in a long coat, sitting toward the road of leading to a place whence her man was to be coming. He did not come at last, so she had to walk home all alone.

## 2 讲解

作文造句，应力求简明，不宜将句子堆砌，而使文字拖沓，语法纠缠不清。

第一段：station 虽是驿站但不一定是火车站，所以火车站，应说明 a railroad (或 railway) station。

喷水不能说它浮在水上 (float)，英文中“常”用的词是 play，如“今天没有喷水”，就说 The fountain is not playing today. 他们用这个“戏”字，正如我们说“鸳鸯戏水”一样，不过喷水自戏罢了。又如 The fountain played beneath the sun, casting its diamond bright waters to the sky. (喷水向上喷出钻石似的晶莹的水花，而戏于阳光之下。)

the most large 不合语法，应说 the largest。

was 和 spring 二词都是动词，不可连用在一块，只能说 was springing 或 was to spring。

as if 是虚拟语气，后面应接 were，即 as if it were。

jet 是从一个小孔或管子喷出或射出的东西，如 a jet of water, steam, air, gas 等，也可以说 a jet of light (射出一线光)。现在的喷气机便是 jet (air) plane。喷气机虽能发出大声，但普通喷水或喷气是不大有声音的，所以不宜说 to sing。又在 jet 前面，也不宜用 tinge 来形容，tinge 只能作动词或名词用，意为“着色”，如 tinge the sky with a rosy flush。

together 后只能接 with，不能接 of。

which had been established 是指喷水，但现接在 glory 一词之后，就成为形容那种 glory 了。

单说 be established by 就够了，不要说 be established by the hand of。

第二段：普通都是说 break the silence，不说 awake the silence。

grace note 即“装饰音”，是音乐上的一种专用名词，普通作文不宜用。

loom 是动词或名词，意为模糊现出，用在此地，不知何所指。

environ 作名词用，应为复数，如 Taipei and its environs（台北及其近郊）。

spit 的过去为 spit 或 spat 不能写作 spited（这样拼时读 [spatid]），如果要加 -ed，也得拼成 spitted 才对。

prearrangement-space 是杜撰之辞，看去不大顺眼，此处可简单地讲 the space left for the bronze statue of a great hero 就行了。

单讲 road leading to a certain place 就对了，leading 的前面不要加 of。普通在 road 后面是接 to，如 road to success（达到成功之路），on the road to Taipei（上台北的路上），若要接 of 时，就有四通八达的意思，不是向着某一条路去，例如 Hawaii is at the cross roads of the Pacific.（夏威夷当太平洋的冲要）。

### 3 改正稿

In the center of the open space amidst the palm trees near the railway station of Tainan, there is a fountain newly built by the Tainan Municipal Government. The little pond around the fountain is lighted under water with electric bulbs of different colors, which make the place look like a kaleidoscope.

It was late at night; and everything seemed still to the eye. Suddenly the delightful note of a massagist's flute was audible, breaking the silence of the night. Before long, it was followed by a screaming siren from an arriving train, which, after drawing up at the station, poured forth some of its burden of passengers.

Near the fountain under one of the palm trees, a solitary young girl was standing. Obviously she was waiting for somebody who failed to come. As the night deepened, she walked home with a heavy heart, leaving behind her the spurting fountain and the sparkling pond.

# THE SPRING IN TAIWAN AS COMPARED WITH THAT IN THE MAINLAND

## 1 原作稿

It is spring now, but the spring of Taiwan isn't a good season. The sky is still cloudy. Sometimes it keeps raining day after day. People would doubt whether they could see the sun again. They also haven't the happiness of seeing the tree in bloom; because the leave of the tree didn't fall last year, and there is no any different between winter and spring.

I have lived in Taiwan for six years in spring, I can not help missing my native country. Though I was a little girl while I lived there, I can remember vividly the little cottage, the stream with willows growing on the shore, and the country path beside the rice field. How wonderful they were, as the cruel winter gave way to the beautiful spring. They were magnificently changed. The stream was released from icy fetter and murmured sweetly again. In thier new green dress, willows danced with the gentle breeze, the field and the path were cover with coloured flowers. Children no longer stayed at the cottage, because it was the season of playing outdoor games as fishing, racing, gathering flowers. Everywhere about the country was beautiful. Everything the countryman did was interesting.

## 2 讲解

第一段中说“台湾的春天”，实际是说“在台湾的春天”，所以说 *The spring in Taiwan*, 不宜说 *of Taiwan*。正如近日报上登的“夜巴黎”的香水，名叫 *Evening in Paris* 一样。still 一词意为“仍然”，即说“以前如此，现在还是如此”，这儿应改为 *always*（老是）才对。

raining 加接后缀时，不应再加一个 n，因为其前非短元音。doubt 一词可改为 wonder 或 suspect，因为 doubt 所怀疑的是“事情的真假”“人的成功与否”“将来的事”等等，例如 I *doubt* his honesty.（他恐怕不大诚实）；suspect 便是觉得有嫌疑，认为奇怪，怀疑别人犯罪等，例如 I *suspect* his dishonesty.（他好像是一个不诚实的人）。至于 wonder 就是表示“亟欲知道”或“讶而欲知”或“怪”，如 I *shouldn't wonder* if he were to go mad.（他即发狂亦不足怪。）no 后接名词，not 后接形容词，所以我们只说 no books 或 not any books。又在 there is 后要接名词，不可接形容词，所以 different 应改为 difference。

第二段 miss 一个动词的用法弄错了。这词普通虽可作“想念”解，但不能用于“想念故国”，为什么呢？因为 miss 原意为 notice the absence of (someone or something)，即“因不在而想念”，例如 I miss my mother when she goes away.（妈离去我想念她），We shall miss you very much. = We shall feel sad at your absence. 不是“故国”离开“我们”，是“我们”离开“故国”，所以这种想念应说 think of，不要用 miss。拼词应注意，如 remember, thier 等。shore 多指海边，“河岸”只能用 bank。“被盖满”要说 be covered，这儿要用过去分词，才能表出被动的意思来。“多种颜色”单用 coloured 一定不够，应该说 multi-coloured 或 many-coloured 才对。普通美国说 colored people 是说黑人。everywhere 及 today 一类的词，拿来作主语用，有点中国式，如 Everytvhere was beautiful. 及 Today is hot. 宜加用 it 作主语，改说 It was beautiful everywhere. 及 It is hot today. 比较好些。

### 3 改正稿

The spring in Taiwan isn't a good season, because the sky is always cloudy. Sometimes the steadily falling rain makes people wonder whether they will ever see the sun again. As the leaves of trees are green the whole year, there is no marked difference between winter and spring.

I have lived in Taiwan for six years; and in spring, I cannot help thinking of my native country. Though I was a little girl

I while living there, I can still remember very well the little cottages, the stream with willows growing along its banks, and the paths beside the rice fields. How beautiful the trees and flowers were, as the cruel winter gave way to the spring! The stream was released from the icy fetters and began murmuring sweetly again. The willows in their new garments of green danced with the gentle breeze. The fields and the paths were covered with multi-coloured flowers. Children no longer remained in their cottages, and played outdoors. Sometimes they would go fishing in nearby brooks; sometimes they would race about in the fields. It was beautiful everywhere in the country.

# MY FIRST VISIT TO TAIWAN

## 1 原作稿

In the year of 1948 I came to Taiwan, the place I first visited. The first different feeling was “it is hot”. The thick clothes we could not wear any longer. We all changed into the summer dress. As I put on my shirt and I could but cry “O! It is summer!” In the fact it was just winter. This delightful weather made me very happy. Immediately I liked Taiwan.

We got down from the ship toward the street I saw in the fruits shops filled with many fruits—oranges, bananas, which I could not often see in the north part of China. Attracted by its delicious taste I bought some and I knew its price was very low. So I cried to my mother “How nice! We can eat them all day long!”

Taiwan people has some habits that different from our's, one of these is that they don't wear shoes, but a kind of wooden slipper. If you pass over streets or lines. You would hear the noisy sound came from every one's foot.

Some of the beautiful young maiden had on the most fashioned clothes and done their hair the latest style, but you can not look at their foot because it is not harmonious with their adornments.

The best impression was that the streets were very spick-and-span. The tall palm trees caused me sense that it is a fair island in the southern sea.

## 2 讲解

第一段中的 the place I first visited 应说 where I visited for the first time。下面单说一个“不同的感觉”又没有说出和什么不同，意思太含糊了，要说也应该说 It (the hot weather) gives me a different feeling. O 宜改为 Oh，因 O 后常接人（第二人称），且多用于诗中，如 O Caesar, how art thou fallen! O King, take pity on thy subjects, 在 Oh 后可加逗号。用 O 时则不能与后面 vocative 分开。普通我们说 in fact, 不说 in the fact。

第二段首句只能说 go toward, 不要说 get toward。普通说水果店 (fruiterer), 就叫果蔬商 (greengrocer), 或说 fruit dealer 或说 fruit shop 都可以，但不能说 fruits shop; 说 fruit 已经是多数，若再加 s 而成为 fruits 时，则表不同的种类。attract 应拼作 attract. 又 it's 为 it is 之略，属格应为 its。

第三段 Taiwan people 应说 people in Taiwan。而 habits that different from our's 一句没有动词，应在 that 后加上一个 are。尾上的 our's 应作 ours。又 line 只能作“航线”或“铁路”解，不能代替 road 用。

第四段在 some of 之后既接有 countable 的名词，就应用复数，即 some of the maidens。

末段的 impression 应说明是谁的印象。spick-and-span 多用来形容衣装。在 cause 后面应接 to sense (他如 I caused him to do it.)，不能将不定词的 to 略去。末句宜用 on the sea, 不宜说 in the sea, 因为 in 是指在海中，如 a fish in the sea。

### 3 改正稿

I came to Taiwan in the winter of 1948. After I had landed, I could no longer wear thick woolen clothes, and had to put on my summer suit, although it was then in December. As it was rather warm, I began to think that summer had set in.

I remember, when I had come ashore and walked along the street, the first thing that attracted my attention was the variety of fruits displayed in the greengrocers' shops. There were oranges, bananas, pineapples, papayas, and many others I could



uld not even name, because I had never seen them before. I found these fruits so delicious and their prices so low that I could not but cry to my mother, “Oh, how nice it is that we can have them all the year round!”

Many people in Taiwan wear wooden clogs instead of shoes. When you are out on the street, you can often hear the clatter here and there. It seems to be a tiny flaw in a white gem that a beautiful young girl in her fashionable dress and her hair done in a permanent wave wears such wooden clogs which I think really unfit for her.

The city of Taipei struck me, on my first arrival, as a charming outlandish maiden in a spick-and-span new dress which was rather exotic and attractive; and the tall palm trees vibrating with the breeze told me that I had come to a subtropical island.

# MR. CLEVER

## 1 原作稿

This event happened when I was in middle school. At time, our school had one of the best basketball team in the city and our class had one of the best player in the team. His name was Mr. Clever. He was a poor student and he had remained in the Senior II for two years. According to the school rule he had to pass the final examination that semester or he would be dismissed. But there was a race in the summer vacation in order to win the race it was necessary for him to pass the examination. Every one wanted to help him and the register office arranged the seat and let him sit beside John who was the head student of our class. Yes, our friend copied from John's paper. When he finished the examination, he was very happy and shook hands with everybody.

The next day, there was a bulletin announced that he was dismissed for cheating and got the zero mark. Why? What was the reason?

Yes, he did copy every word from his neighbor's paper. But in the last question John wrote, "I do not know this question" and Mr. Clever copied "I do not know this question too."

## 2 讲解

说“此事”英文就用 it, 如“此事在我眼前发生”, 即译作 It happened under my eyes. 不要说 this event, 且 event 的含义为“大事”, 如“去年的大事”, 即说 the events of the past year. “国家多事之秋”, 即说 the eventful season. 单说 in middle school 不一

定是在读书，故在 **I was** 后宜加上 **studying** 一词。在 **one of** 后面的名词应该用复数，**team** 和 **player** 都非拼成 **teams** 和 **players** 不可。连在一起的两个单句，如主语相同时，可略去一个 **school rule** 改为 **school regulations** 较好，即使要用 **rule** 也宜用复数，普通说 **rule** 多指小范围的，如“打篮球的规则”（**the rules of basketball**），又“我以扶持弱者为定则”（**I make it a rule to side with the weaker party**），他如 **as a rule** 都常是指个人的规则。**But there was a race** 一句应在 **vacation** 处断句，**in order** 开始应另成一句，语法上才清楚。**race** 原为“赛跑”或“竞走”之意，后转为“比赛”，如说 **There is a race to be run tomorrow.**（明日举行竞走。）“赛马”说 **horse race**，也是“赛跑”之意。其他的运动比赛，则不宜用此词，现改为 **athletic meet**（运动会），因为在运动会中可以有篮球比赛（**basketball match**）。这地方原文意思不显明，所以特为补充了一些字句，对看原作稿及改正稿，自然明白。前面说了 **every one**，后面也还是以说人为好，故将注册组（**register office**）改为注册员（**registrar**）。普通说一班中最优秀的学生，是 **the bright ones at the top of a class**，不说 **head** 而说 **top**，所以这儿把原文的 **head student** 改为 **brightest student**，随之 **of** 也得改为 **in** 了。

第二段中的 **bulletin** 一词，是告示、公告、各军部机关对战事的公报（**the War Department's bulletins**），或报馆所发出的关于战事、饥荒，以及别的重要大事的报告（**newspaper bulletins**）；另外还有一个意思，就是会报、社报（**a regular report of a club or society for its members**）。所以现改为 **notice**（= **a paper fixed up in public place giving information**）。

最后一句中的 **too** 是颇有幽默感的，他被开除的主因即在这词上。

### 3 改正稿

It happened when I was studying in the senior middle school. Our school had, at that time, one of the best basketball teams in the city and our class had one of its best players. His name was Mr. Clever. He was a poor student and had remained in Senior II for two years. According to the school regulatio

ns he had to pass the final examination that semester or he would be dismissed. But there was to be an athletic meet in the summer and we all wanted him to stay in our school in order that we might win the match. If he was to stay, it was necessary for him to pass the examination. So, every one wished to help him; and the registrar made him sit beside John who was the brightest student in our class. Yes, our friend copied from John's paper. When he had finished the examination, he was very happy and shook hands with everybody.

The next day, there was a notice which announced, to the astonishment of all, that he was dismissed for cheating.

Yes, he did copy every word from his neighbor's paper. When in answer to the last question John wrote, "I do not know this question", and Mr. Clever wrote "I do not know this question, too. "

# A GIRL WHOM I KNOW

## 1 原作稿

She lives a humble life, but she is the happiest in the world. Calm and mild, thoughtful character and moral qualities. Miss Tai is really a fine person.

Last summer, at a party, I recognized Miss Tai. She is not very pretty, but her simple dress and moderate manner attracted every young girl. And her sweet smile as well as gentle voice made everybody feel warm and happy.

She is a teacher of a primary school. Having dreamed of being a composer, but finally she gave up the idea only because she could not stand to leave those innocent children.

Every time I talk with her, I seem knowing the truth of life. And every time I visit her, I seem going to a quiet, lovely place, full of love and light.

## 2 讲解

第一段第二句前面，至少应有 **She has a** 一类的词语才通顺，照原作省略太多，意思就不明白了。

第二段首句，一语一语，似嫌零碎，且时间的副词短语，普通非加重语气，便不置于句首。**recognize** 是把某人认识出来，第一次相识，只能说 **meet** 或 **make the acquaintance of**，如 **Where did you make the acquaintance of this lady?**（你在什么地方认识这个妇女的？）**I made her acquaintance at Paris.**（我在巴黎与之相识。）在一句中前面用了 **she is**，后面不应改为 **attracted** 和 **made**，也应该用现在时，因为这不是某一次的事。

第三段的 *Having dreamed of being a composer* 一个分词短语，后面应接一个主句，不可接 *but*，因为 *but* 是一个连词，只能用来连接两个分句，不能用来连接一个短语和一个从句。作“忍受”解的 *stand*，原为会话用语（*colloquial term*），常用于侮辱、艰难、寒暑、费用等，如 *I'm not going to stand it much longer.*——J. Jerome. 所以应改普通的（*usual*）字眼 *bear*。

第四段 *seem* 一词之后宜接用不定词，什么词后面应接动名词，什么词后应接不定词，是初学英文的人感觉到最头痛的一个问题，因为它没有一定的规则，而辞典及语法书又无详尽的说明，一切只好全凭 *usage* 去决定。

细细研读改正后的文章，当可知道此中奥妙。

### 3 改正稿

Miss Tai is an amiable, thoughtful, good-natured girl. She lives a humble life but she is happy none the less.

It was last summer when I first met her at a party. Though she is not very pretty, she has something in her that attracts the attention of those who come in touch with her. Her simple dress and her good manners make people think that she belongs to the educated class. Her sweet smile and her gentle voice make people feel better in her company.

She is a teacher in a primary school. Once she dreamed of being a composer, but she gave up the attempt at last only because she could not bear to leave the dear, little, innocent creatures——her pupils.

Every time I talk with her, I seem to know a little more about life. Every time I call at her place I seem to have come to a tight little haven which is quiet and comfortable.

# THE MAN WHO KNOWS ONLY ONE MEANING OF A WORD

## 1 原作稿

One of my friends who had studied English for several years, and had a little success, so he was proud of his knowledge of English.

One day, he went to Kaohsiung with a colleague, Mr. Chen, for their duty. Having finished their dinner, they had nothing to do, and they took a walk on the street.

Seeing an American officer who stood before a stationary's door, they went up to downtown place. And they saw a clerk of the shop who did not know what to do, then my friend went to the shop as an interpreter.

"Is there anything I can do for you?" my friend asked the officer in English.

"I want to buy a stamp." answered the officer.

"Stamp not sells here, you can buy it in the post office." my friend said.

And then the officer went away with a smile.

Mr. Chen don't know English, he heard of my friend to speak with a foreigner, it seemed to him that friend spoke English very well, so he praised him up to the skies.

My friend, he thought, had done such a good thing, pride d himself on his speaking English. He told the story to a Mr. Tan when he come back his dormitory.

“You had been broke down the business of that stationery.” said Mr. Tan. “Why?” he asked.

“The officer wanted to buy a stamp pad, you thought it was the postage stamp. Had you not broke down the business?” Mr. Tan said.

Suddenly he understood that the word “stamp” had another meaning——stamp pad.

## 2 讲解

第一句 *one of my friends who had studied English...* 如果不用过去而用现在的话，*had* 就要改为 *have*，而不是 *has*，那意思是“我们所有学了几年英文的朋友之一”。这显然不是原作者的意思，所以只好把 *one of* 去掉，把 *friends* 改成单数。*had a little success* 与事实不符，宜删。

第二段 *duty* 的前面不可用 *for*，普通是说 *on duty*，*neglect of duty*，*off duty*，及 *bound in duty*，*be discharged from his duties* 等，此处原作者的意思，实为 *on business*，故如此更正。*walk on the street*，也不熟，宜改为 *walk* 或 (*totter*) *along* (或 *about*) *the streets*。我们只可以说 *I met him on* (或 *in*) *the street*。His home is *on* (或 *in*) *Fifth Street*。又 *go on the streets* 即 *make a living on the streets* 为卖淫之意。

第三段 *Seeing an American...they went...* 一句，说法弄颠倒了。在普通的情形，应该说 *Going up to downtown, they saw an American*。文具店是 *stationer's (store)*，单说 *stationery* 是一个形容词，意为“文具的”；而 *stationary* 意为“静止的”，二词不可相混。

在引用符中的字句，如接引用符外的字句时，不可用 *full stop*，宜用 *comma*，如“*Certainly,*” he said.

“Stamp not sells here, you can buy it in the post office.” 当然是不通的，“改正稿中”之所以未改正，是要留以表示那位朋友英文的不通。通顺的英语可以说：“They don't sell stamps here, wh



ich you have to go to the post office to buy. ”或是“Stamps are not sold here. You have to go to the post office to buy them. ”

Mr. Chen 是第三人称，后面不可接 don't，应改 doesn't，这里既是过去，就说 did not。说 hear of somebody 意为听见别人说到某人，of 是“关于”的意思。他如 I know him.（我认识他。）I know of him.（我听人说起过他。）凡在 hear, see, watch 等动词后接的不定词，应将 to 略去，如 I saw him come (= when he came, I saw him) . 又可说 I saw him coming (= when he was coming, I saw him) . 在 come back 之后，可直接接副词的 home，如接名词时，就要加一个 to。

说 had been broke 是不通的，如系被动的话，也要说 had been broken，所谓 break down 一个成语，用在此地完全不适当，所以此句只得彻底改过。“Why? ”he asked. 应该另外起一行。

### 3 改正稿

My friend who had studied English for several years was proud of his knowledge of English. One day, he went to Kaohsiung with Mr. Chen, one of his colleagues, on business. Having finished their dinner, they had nothing to do and took a walk along the streets.

They saw an American officer standing before the door of a stationery store and speaking to a clerk who did not know what to do. Then my friend stepped inside and acted as an interpreter.

“Is there anything I can do for you? ”my friend asked the officer in English.

“I want to buy a stamp, ”answered the officer.

“Stamp not sells here, you can buy it in the post office, ”my friend said.

Then the officer went away with a smile.

Mr. Chen did not know English. As he had heard my friend speaking with a foreigner, it seemed to him that my friend could speak English very well.

My friend, quite pleased with what he had done, told the story to a Mr. Tan when he came back to his dormitory.

“That stationery store had lost its business through you!” said Mr. Tan.

“Why?” my friend asked.

“The officer wanted to buy a stamp pad, but you thought it was a postage stamp,” Mr. Tan said.

So my friend understood that the word “stamp” had another meaning—stamp pad.

# THE HEALING POWER FROM ABOVE

## 1 原作稿

On the 25th of August, 1953, in a small church near the station, there gathered from far and near about one hundred and fifty persons. It was the time that people had usually taken their lunches and were ready for a nap. The sun shone brightly on the church-yard. Yet no one felt hot or weary. All members were sitting quietly, either in praying or in meditation.

Then came the old clergyman with his nephew and an interpreter. After making a short speech, he began to work. There was a small crowd of sick people standing near the platform. The old man put his hands on the head of the sick one by one and, at the same time offered a prayer for each, while the people sitting below were praying intently.

At times I raised my head to see what had been done I saw a man being sick in the ears. On returning to his seat, he smiled calmly and peacefully, showing that he was greatly satisfied in his inner heart. I also saw a lady who could not raise her left hand. But not a while later she could lift it up well over her head.

Performing miracle is not the most important part of the work of Christian teaching. My reason for writing this is because it is the first time I have been present in such a kind of meeting, and indeed it moved me greatly. As the Chinese proverb says, "Hearing a hundred times is worth less than seeing once", how cheerful I am to be the eyewitness of that marvelous event!

## 2 讲解

开首将 **afternoon** 说出，后面说 **take a nap** 的时候，就用不着再加 **after lunch** 了。单说 **the station**，在说话时对方就当时的情形可以了解你说的是哪一个车站，行文时就应在 **station** 一词后加限定的字句才清楚。说 **time that people had usually taken their lunches and were ready for a nap**，不仅太啰嗦，而且完全是“吃饱了饭准备睡一睡的时候”一句中国话的翻译，所以不如用英文的惯用语法 **time for people to take a nap (after lunch)**。太阳是普照的，**on the church-yard** 一句最好略去。**no one** 后应加限定词。“祈祷”一个名词，应该用 **prayer**，如 **He could neither eat nor sleep and only prayers, he says, kept him from going out of his mind.** 再加动词时可说 **say one's prayers** 或 **give prayers**。

第二段的 **the old clergyman** 也跟前面 **the station** 一样的毛病，所以改用不定冠词，以符语法规则。专心的祈祷，不如说热诚地祈祷，**intently** 改为 **in earnest** 较佳。

第三段说疾病如果要用 **sick** 一词时，便宜说 **sick of a fever**（患热病），**sick with malaria**（患疟疾），而不可说 **being sick in the ears**，改成 **having trouble with his ears**，便是英文惯用的了。**not a while later** 是“后来不久”一句中国话的直译，应改为 **after (或 in) a while**。又 **lift** 已有举起之意，不必再加用 **up** 一词。

第四段在 **reason** 一词之后不宜接用 **became**，因为意思重复了，虽则不考究的洋人也常这样用。说 **it moved me** 不如说 **I was moved** 较常用。

最后结论应另成立一段。与其把中国的谚语“百闻不如一见”（**Seeing a thing once is better than hearing about it a hundred times.**）译成英文，不如利用英文现成的谚语 **Seeing is believing**，因为二者的意思一样。在说 **first time** 时可用现在时态，说目击那奇迹就非用过去时态不可，当时在场者既非一人，就说 **one of the eye witnesses**。

## 3 改正稿

On the afternoon of August 25th, 1953, in a small church near the station of our town, there gathered from far and near about one hundred and fifty persons. It was the time for people to take a nap. The sun shone brightly; yet no one of the congregation felt hot or weary. All sat there, either in prayer or in meditation.

Then came an old clergyman with his nephew and an interpreter. After making a short speech, he began to work miracles. Near the platform stood some sick persons. The old man put his hands on the head of the sick, one by one, and at the same time prayed for each, while the people who sat in front of him were praying in earnest.

At times I raised my head to see what was being done. I saw a man having trouble with his ears. On returning to his seat, he smiled calmly and peacefully, showing that he felt greatly satisfied. I also saw a lady who could not raise her left hand. But, strange to say, she could after a while lift it well over her head.

Performing miracles, however, is not an important part of Christian teaching. My reason for writing this is that it is the first time I have been present in such a meeting. Indeed, I was greatly moved.

True is the proverb: "Seeing is believing." How lucky it was that I happened to be one of the eyewitnesses of that marvelous event!

# MY PROFESSION

## 1 原作稿

I am an accountant. Why I have become an accountant, the following story will tell you what it is.

During my childhood I was delicate. At the age of two I was suffering from a serious illness with measles, and at the same time I once had stopped breathing for twelve hours. Having taken many kinds of medicines, I have two sorrows for life. First, my eyes become nearsighted; second, my brains are obtuse. And my walking ability was barely perfected until nine years of age, since I was resurrected from death and recovered my health.

As for my education, it was retarded by my physical weakness. My parents provided me with a tutor who was an old man, and only taught me to read and to write Chinese, it was my first education. They did not want me to be a great man. One day, my mother said to me: "I don't hope you to be a great man, if you would be a treasurer, I should be very pleased." In those days she meant the treasurer who calculated the numbers and charged on the book. It was the way of our country and was very simple way. Mother thought that I might equal to this work.

Thanks to my maternal uncle, mother was persuaded to send me to the Hupeh Provincial Commercial School. There were many courses in that school, for instance: Bookkeeping, Accounting, and Economics or something like that. They are modern science which are not so simple as my mother may think.

For all these subjects were going to be hard to me, I worked hard with my all energies and all my times. Fortunately, I had, at last, finished at that school. My family were very much pleased with my success, especially my mother. She made me to be a true accountant.

Now, I have been doing the work of accountant for more than fourteen years. Taking a role as clerk, bookkeeper, assistant accountant, and so forth one after another in several companies, I have got much experience and knowledges. This is not meant I am an expert, but I am still feeling my ability for the work far away from it. I think it may be my profession for life.

## 2 讲解

本篇犯一般写作的通病，即描写啰唆，有欠简洁。改正稿删除三分之一以上，不仅未丝毫有损原意，反而加强了原意，如将 **worked hard** 改为 **had to burn the midnight oil to study them**. 及将 **I am still feeling my ability for the work far away from it**. 改为 **the more we know, the more is to be known**. 之类。

第一段的 **why I have become an accountant** 及 **what it is** 重复故宜拼为一句。

第二段 **at the age of two** 是 **a point of time**，后面不宜接进行时的动词，应将 **was suffering** 改为 **suffered** 较佳。又在介词后面要接名词，**from** 后不能接形容词的 **ill**。又 **and at the same time I once had stopped breathing for twelve hours** 一句，事近荒谬宜删。眼成近视，是显明的病态，头脑迟钝，只是自谦的说法，故亦主张从略。与其说 **my walking ability was barely perfected**，不如用单纯的字句说 **I was not able to walk**，反而简明有力。**since I was resurrected from death** 一句，太严重了，以不说为妥。**I recovered my health** 改为 **my health picked up** 更要有洋味些。

第三段“至于说到我的教育，那是由于我的体弱而受到妨碍”，不如简单地说“我因体弱未去上学”。说 **a tutor who was an old man**，也嫌啰唆，就说 **an old tutor** 简单多了。**to read and to write**

因系同一类的事，故第二个不定词的 **to** 可略去。对别人的期待应说 **expect**，说 **want** 和 **hope** 都不当。**It was the way of our country** 等一句，意义不显明，如系“当时人们认为写算是最容易学的”一种意思的话，则应如改正稿上所说，才能使人了解。

第四段：西人不分伯父、叔父或舅父，统统叫 **uncle**，正如不分哥哥或弟弟统统叫 **brother** 一样，无特别必要时不宜说母系的 **uncle** 或父系的 **uncle**。母亲一字如前不加 **my** 时，最好写成 **Mother**。“会计”等学科名，普通不用大写首字。第五段意思相连，故不必分开，两段宜合并。**not so simple as my mother may think** 中的 **may think** 宜改为 **thought them to be**。又 **all these subjects were going to be hard to me** 句中的 **Tense** 用得 不当，且与上面一句意思重复（上句说“不容易”，下句说“很难”）。只要说并不如母亲所想象的那样容易，自然就表示出难来了。下面说的“用尽我的精力与时间来用功”，正好采用 **to burn the midnight oil** 一个成语，言简而意赅。不能说 **my all energies**，**my** 应置于 **all** 之后。**I finished at that school** 是不通的，只能说 **finish the courses at that school**。英文只可说 **She made me an accountant**，不能说 **made me to be an accountant**。

末段，十四 (**fourteen**) 和四十 (**forty**) 的拼法不同，应注意。“知识” (**knowledge**) 不能加复数。**This is not meant** 应改为 **I don't mean to say**。最后一句接在这里意思不大连贯，不如略去。

### 3 改正稿

I am an accountant. The following story will tell you why I have become one.

During my childhood I was delicate. At the age of two I suffered from a serious illness——measles. Having taken too many kinds of medicines, I have become nearsighted. Besides, I was not able to walk until nine years of age, when my health picked up.

Because of my physical weakness I did not go to school to study. My parents provided me with an old tutor who taught



me to read and write Chinese. It was my first education. My parents did not expect me to be a great man, as one day my mother gave me a hint that if I should become a treasurer, she would be very pleased. By "treasurer," she meant one who took charge of the account-books, a job which was thought in those days the simplest for a man to learn.

Following the advice of my uncle, my mother sent me to Hupeh Provincial Commercial School. There were many courses to be completed in that school, for instance, bookkeeping, accounting, economics. All these subjects were not so simple as my mother thought them to be. I had to burn the midnight oil to study them. Fortunately, I passed all the required courses and graduated. My family were very much pleased with my success, especially my mother.

I have been doing the work of an accountant for more than fourteen years, and have gained much experience. But I don't mean to say that I am an expert; for the more we know, the more is to be known.

# SEEING MY BROTHER OFF

## 1 原作稿

On a sunday morning of November last year, I turned up at Taipei station, to see off my dearest brother who was to start for Taichung for the acceptance of six-months reserved sergeant training.

The night before the day of his departure, I invited him to see movies instead of giving him present in token of my sorry for his departure. We spent more than four hours with a view to kill the time in theater. On the way home, we talked nothing but exchanged eye-glance each other. Sun was setting, a herd of birds flew over our head. The evening breeze blew to our way. We returned until the evening. As we stepped in we found all members of our family waiting for us a long time. After supper, each one of us did work in his own way as usual. So large a living room remained nobody but my brother, he looked very sad by the appearance, because this is the first time for him to part with his parents and brothers. Walking to and fro a little while, he went to his bedroom. My bedroom is next to his, so I could hear his deep sigh and cry during that night.

The sky was turning grey, the dawn was to come. I waked up and laid on bed. My mind began to wander. As the short hand of my watch pointed to seven, I put on my clothes and coat in order not to be late seeing my brother off.

When we drove at the station, a meeting was holding, which was presided over by Mayor, for them who were to start for Taichung to receive the six-months military training. So many family members to see their children off it was that the station

was filled with men and women and children. The station was much more crowded than ever. Most of parents talked closely to their children and gave them the best advice. My parents did the same as others. Only I never talked with my brother and stood there silent but alighted my wandering eye on him.

A few movement later, the bell rang. The train was moving on very slowly. I waved farewell to my brother but bent down my head for daring not to see him off. The train was out of our sight. Most of seer-off left. My parents and I took our leave, too.

## 2 讲解

星期名及月名等第一字母都要用大写。**station** 不一定是车站，电台、警察局、驻军地等都叫 **station**，所以前面加上 **railway** 一词较佳。普通亲兄弟说 **dear** 就行了，说 **dearest** 反而觉得疏远。

说“在他动身的前夜”已足够明白了，不必要说“在他动身那天的前夜”，所以 **the day of** 可以删去。**movies** 前面要加 **the**，“去看电影”就说 **go to the movies**。现在把下面的 **theater** 一词移到此地，当然也可指 **movie theater**。又 **sorry** 是形容词，前面不能用 **my**，应改用 **sorrow** 的名词。熟语只能说 **on one's way home**，不说 **on the way**。在 **exchange** 后应接 **with (each other)**，不过只说 **exchange** 也就足够了。说 **glances** 即可，无人说 **eye-glance**。太阳是世界上唯一的東西，所以在其前面一定要加用 **the**。牛羊等兽类的“群”，可说 **herd**，但鸟类的“群”，就要用 **flock**（鸟兽皆可用）或 **flight**。唯有“一群白鹤”才可说 **a herd of cranes**。原文中有 **We returned until the evening**。是不通的，因为 **until** 一词的关系，我们只能说 **We stayed out until the evening**。或是 **We did not return until the evening**。单说 **all members of our family** 是不对的，因为说话者的兄弟也包含在内，如果要除去他们兄弟就得说 **all the other members of our family**。把 **so large a living room** 作为 **remained** 的主语是不可以的，所以得加 **in** 字在前，把它做成一个 **phrase**。说 **he looked very sad** 就行了，不要再添蛇足加上 **by the appearance**。既然全是说得过去的事，这里就不要说 **this is the first time**。下

面一个分词句，单说 **walking** 不够，应说 **after walking** 或 **having walked**。

两个单句不宜并列，**the dawn** 一句前应加以 **as** 一类的词连接起来，**the dawn was to come** 是说规定要来，在此用得 不当，应改为 **the day began to dawn**。**woke** 或 **waked** 皆可用；**laid** 是 **lay** 的过去式，此地要的是 **lie** 的过去式，即 **lay**。**My mind began to wander**. 一句最好删去。钟表上的短针，通常说 **hour hand**，中国则说“短针”。**coat** 也是 **clothes** 的一部分，不宜特别提出来 说。

“正在开会”不说 **a meeting was holding**, 只能说 **a meeting was being held**。现在的英文不说 **them who**（乔叟时代的英文就有此用法），而要说 **those who**。**So many family...**一句，语法不通，故删去大部分而改为一个简单的句子。讲人要用 **crowd** 或 **congregate** 或 **gather** 等词，不能说 **fill**。**Most of parents** 中的 **of** 是多余的。**advice** 是普通人的忠告，父母的教训宜用 **injunction**。

说垂头丧气或屈服才用 **bend the neck**，普通低头就用 **hang one's head** 就好了。看不见了，是 **out of sight**，不要说 **out of our sight**。送行者可以说 **seer (s) -off**，但用得不多，最好不用。

### 3 改正稿

On a Sunday morning of November, last year, I turned up at Taipei Railway Station, to see off my dear brother who was to start for Taichung to receive the six-months' reserve officers' military training.

The night before his departure, I accompanied him to the theater where we spent more than four hours. On our way home, we did not speak but often exchanged glances. The sun was setting; and a flock of birds flew over our heads. It was already candle-light when we reached home. As we stepped into our house, we found all the other members of our family had been waiting for us a long time. After supper, each one of us did his own work as usual. In so large a living room nobody remained but my brother. He looked very sad because it was th

e first time for him to part with his parents and brothers. After walking to and fro a little while, he went to his bedroom. As my bedroom is next to his, I could hear his deep sighs during the night.

The sky was turning grey, as the day began to dawn. I woke up early and lay on my bed till the hour hand of my watch pointed to seven, then I got up and put on my clothes.

We drove to the station, where a meeting was being held by the mayor in honor of those who were to start for Taichung to receive the six-months' military training. The station was, therefore, crowded with men, women and children. While my parents were giving my brother their final injunction, I stood there without saying a word.

A few minutes later, the bell rang; and the train began moving very slowly. I waved farewell to my brother but hung my head for I dared not see his face. When the train was out of sight, we all left the station.

# THE MOST INTERESTING EXPERIENCE OF MY LIFE

## 1 原作稿

Until I was twenty-two years of age, I had never been away from Shanghai, my native city, for more than a week. I had only made a few excursions to nearby cities, such as Hangchow, Changsu, etc. When I decided in the spring of 1938 to join a tin mine in Southern Kiangsi, it meant the first time for me to experience a long journey.

At that time, people travelling from Shanghai to Southern Kiangsi used to go via Hongkong and Canton. I sailed for Hongkong early in May. When I arrived there, I was deeply fascinated by the beautiful sight of this prosperous, semitropical city. The ferryboats between Kowloon and Hongkong, the cable cars going up the hill, and the sunny resorts at the seaside were among the many things that appealed most to my interest. The enchantment of the island reached its summit at night, when glittering lights ascending from the foot to the top of the hill, the city presented a miraculous view to people looking from the opposite shore or cruising on the neighboring sea.

I stayed at Hongkong for only two days, and proceeded to Canton by the Kowloon-Canton Railway. Canton, the metropolis of South China that I had often dreamed of, was a magnificent city. Like Shanghai, it has gorgeous department stores, luxurious hotels and restaurants, and neat, broad streets crowded with people. Nevertheless, what interested me most were the notable differences in custom between people of this city and people living in the Yangtze Delta whom I had known. I also

o found great affection for the picturesque scenery of suburb areas, which was characteristic of semitropical regions.

I spent about five days in Canton before I continued my journey to Kiangsi, but my experience in that city and in Hongkong had constituted a most interesting part of my memory, perhaps because it was the first time that I made a trip to a place quite remote and different from my native home.

## 2 讲解

原作写得相当的好，英文作文能达此地步，颇见功夫。下面第三项改正稿中所改的，几乎没有什么语法上的错误，而只是将语句加以润色，使之更合乎英美的表现法罢了。

现拟就重要的修改略为说明一下：

关于副词 **only** 的地位，是有研究的余地的。本人交台湾书店出版的“英语语法”讲义稿第三十五页上，曾就此 **only** 一词的地位不同而意义因之而变的用法，举有下列五例：

① Only George saw Mary yesterday. (No one else saw her)

② George only saw Mary yesterday. (He did not speak to her)

③ George saw only Mary yesterday. (He did not see the others)

④ George saw Mary only yesterday. (He saw her quite recently)

⑤ George saw Mary yesterday only. (He did not see her any other day)

原句中的 **only** 不是形容 **made**，而是形容 **a few** 的，故应置于 **a few** 之前。

“我第一次出远门是在1938年的春天”，照英美语法就要倒过头来说，即是“1938年的春天是我第一次出远门的时候”，所以现改成以春天为主语。语句中既说出时日来，**when** 的字眼最好跟在那个时日的后面，比较紧凑。动词的 **mean** 一词，用得恰当，却是很够味的，例如 **You don't realize what unemployment would mean to you.**（你不知道失业的痛苦。）**What he said was meant only for fun.**（他说的只是戏言。）**He means ill towards me.**（他对我怀不怀好意。）**To copy 1,000 characters means at least an hour's work.**（抄一千字至少也是一小时的工作。）等等。但是 **it meant the first time** 很少听人说过，普通都是说 **it was the first time**. 英文要写得好的，就在务用“陈言”，要照他们习惯的用法，不要自己来新创。

第二段中 **enchant** 一词，只有两义：一为魔术，一为迷人。而后义常要说出人来，如 **I was enchanted with the music**（或 **her.**）**Her voice enchanted him.** 故与其放在后面来形容物，不如移到前面来形容人。单只说灯光（**glittering lights**）由下而上，使人莫名其妙，此种形容只宜用于读者已明白所指为何的时候才可以，即是前面已将事物交代清楚，读者心目中既经有了一个物象，再听到一般描绘，自然更如亲眼目击，而有身历其境之感了。

第三段关于动词的 **tense** 略有更易。“广州是一个繁华的城市”，并未成为陈迹，在作者去的时候如此，今日仍如此，所以不应该用过去动词，而宜用现在动词。

又习俗的不同，只有一个“不同”，因为虽有各种不同的习俗，其不同则一也。所以 **difference in custom** 宜用单数。第一个 **people** 既是“指定”为“本城的”（**of this city**），不是一般的人，就应在词前加“指定”的冠词，即定冠词的 **the**。第二个 **people**，就不必重说，应该用 **those** 来代替才好。**suburbs** 也是指定的，也应该加定冠词。

第四段中的 **experience** 既是指在广州及香港两地的，即是两回经验，故应改为复数。同样“记忆”也是复杂而不单纯的，应以复数为佳。上面既说了两个以上的地方，**place** 就得用复数，说“第一次旅行”，不如说“初旅”来得简明，而无浪费的字眼。在 **home** 前再加上一个 **native** 的形容词，犯了关门闭户的毛病，因为 **native** 是“故乡的”，而 **home** 又是“家乡”呢。这种用法在修辞学上，叫作 **tautology**（无谓的重复），写文章，应该避免，无论中英文，皆以简明为尚，堆砌总不是好文章。



### 3 改正稿

Until I was twenty-two years of age, I had never been away from Shanghai, my native city, for more than a week. In fact, I had made only a few excursions to nearby cities, such as Hangchow, Changsu, etc. The spring of 1938 when I decided to embark on a mining enterprise in Southern Kiangsi, was the first time I made a long journey.

At that time, people traveling from Shanghai to Southern Kiangsi used to go via Hongkong and Canton. I sailed for Hongkong early in May. When I arrived there, I was fascinated by the beauty of this prosperous, semitropical city. The ferryboats between Kowloon and Hongkong, the cable cars going up the hill, and the sunny resorts at the seaside were among the many things that enchanted me. The island was loveliest at night, when the luminous trams running to and fro like shuttles of fire along the highways presented a miraculous view to people looking from the opposite shore or cruising on the sea.

I stayed at Hongkong for a couple of days, and then proceeded to Canton by the Kowloon-Canton Railway. Canton, the metropolis of South China, is a magnificent city. Like Shanghai, it has gorgeous department stores, pretentious hotels and restaurants, and broad streets crowded with people. What interested me most, however, was the notable difference in custom between the people of this city and those living in the Yangtze Delta, whom I had known. I particularly liked the picturesque scenery of the suburbs, which is characteristic of semitropical regions.

I spent about five days in Canton before I went on my journey to Kiangsi, but my experiences in that city and in Hongkong were the pleasantest of all my memories, because it was the first trip that I had made to places quite remote and different from my native town.

# **MY WEAKNESS IN WRITING ENGLISH**

## **1 原作稿**

## **2 讲解**

*with*

*slip*

*gone*  
*more*

*more*

### 3 改正稿



# ONE MOONLIT NIGHT

## 1 原作稿

It was the dead of night. I had finished my lessons and walked lonely to the neglected fields. The moon had risen over the hills and was shining brightly on the ground. The earth was under horrible quiet.

As I wondered under the moonlight, the past events gradually came to my mind. Having left far from my native country, today I cannot smelt any delicious of mud of my home. It was just the landscape that having lifted my head to look at the moon, I thus dropped it to think of my native land.

Recollection must be sweet, but as lonesome I am, it only added to more of my distress. Recollect the will which my father gave me on the eve of his death. I could still remember it well "My dear son, we are going to part, as God is unfriendly. I am not cruel enough to leave you, but I can not..."

Thinking of these, I lay on the meadows and heard a crying of birds come from some distant place. I was troubled with affliction.

## 2 讲解

上面这篇文章是台南第二中高中部一位同学投来的作文稿，我们为鼓励中学同学英文写作及踊跃投稿起见，特为提前批改，希望对他们确能有所帮助。

第一句的 **the dead of night** 之前，要加一个 **in** 或 **at** 才好，因为“那是深夜”，照语法上讲是不完全的，应说“那是在深夜”才合逻辑。

辑。lonely 是一个 adjective, 表示孤独的状态 (state) 的, 比说 solitary 更要多含忧郁的感情, 在人群中感到孤独, 不能说 solitary, 只能说 lonely。如 I feel lonely among these people. 说 lonesome 比 lonely 意思更强, 这儿把 lonely 改为 alone, 是因为在 walked 之后须接一个副词, 而 alone= by oneself 作副词用, 有独自之意。neglect 作动词用时, 意为“疏忽”, “怠慢”, “轻视”, 用在田地上似乎不合, 故依照原意改为 untilled。所有的介词后面都应该接名词, 在 under 后不能接形容词的 quiet (名词为 quietness 及 quietude)。要形容万籁俱寂, 故加一句微风不动, a breath of air (或 wind), 正是一个适合的短语。

第二段中的 under the moonlight, 宜改为 in the moonlight 较常用。要用 under 时后面就不要 the, 如“月下的梅花”则为 plum blossoms under moonlight。“远离故乡”不宜用 having left far from my native country, 在此只可说 staying far from my native country。在 can 后要接 smell, 不能接过去式的 smelt, 其 Object 也应是一个名词, 不可用形容词的 delicious (名 delicacy)。在 It is (或 was) 后面应接个 that-Clause, 所以在该句 lifted 之前的那个 having 是不能要的, 只能加一个 Subject, 如 It is only when a friend is going on a longish journey that we turn up at the railway station. 因为 it= that-Clause, 其真正的主语是 that-Clause, 而不是 it。

第三段中既用了 add to, 就不宜再用 more。又在同一句中前面用了 recollect, 后面又用 remember, 未免重复了。不要说 I am not cruel enough to leave you, 应说 I am not so cruel as to leave you, 虽则这两种表现法, 很多时候是可以换用的。

第四段的 thinking of these, 上面只说到一件事应改为 this。你所躺下的只有一个牧场, 也不可以用 meadows。在 heard a crying of birds come from some distant place 句中用了两个动词 (heard 及 come) 是要不得的, 至少要在 come 前面加 which 或 that 字眼才通。在莎士比亚时代的英文, 就常略去这种关系代词, 现代英文是一定要有的。

### 3 改正稿

It was in the dead of night. I had finished my lessons and walked alone to an untilled field. The moon peeped over the hills and was shining brightly on the ground. There was not a breath of air, and everything was quiet.

As I wandered in the moonlight, several past events came to my mind. When I lifted my head to look at the moon, I began to think of my home and my native land.

I did not have sweet recollections. I was in great distress to recall the eve of my father's death. "My dear son, we are going to part forever," he murmured. "I cannot bear to leave you, but it is God's will..." This I could still remember very well.

While thinking of this, I lay on the meadow and heard the crying of birds in some distant place, which woke me from my sad reverie.

# WHEN A LIE IS NECESSARY

## 1 原作稿

People have the inclination to enliven up their conversation by lying, as we call it white lie, a harmless one. Though lies are by no means commendable, but they are excusable in certain circumstances. Taking my case, I have a relative whose greediness has seduced her to take advantage of her relatives and friends. She tricked us of money from time to time that I am forced to tell a lie to prevent her from meeting my parents. Such a lie, I believe, is harmless, too.

A lie is necessary if one wants to keep a matter secret—at least, if he does not like its being in everybody's mouth.

People are particularly fond of prying out others' affairs which once found, can never be prevented from spreading about in a short while, and very often, according to their nature, something new will surely be added in the course of circulation. Therefore, telling a lie to blind the fact is sometimes necessary.

No accusation should be charged upon such a lie which is told to defend oneself against tricks and injuries. Conversely, if one tells me that he never told a lie in his life, I would believe him a great liar, and if he did, he must be a man rather characterized by dullness, for he cannot employ a wit or a prompt sagacity by telling a harmless lie when necessary.

## 2 讲解



中国话说“有某种倾向”，在英语中常爱用动词代替我们的名词，即是不大说 **have the inclination to**，而要说 **be inclined to**。在 **enliven** 一词后不要加 **up**。在 **white lie** 前面一定要加冠词，否则就要用复数的 **lies**。一个句子前头用了 **though** 字，后面便不能再接 **but**；要用 **but**，前面就不能用 **though**。所谓 **circumstance** 是“情况”，在本句中应该用“场合”**case** 更为适宜些。“诈取”在英文中应说 **trick a person out of something**，这个 **out** 是不可少的。现将句中的 **us** 改为 **them**，以便使之与前面说的 **her relatives and friends** 一致。在 **that** 的前面加用 **so**，才能表示出因果关系来。这一大段，应分为两段。

第二段中的 **pry** 一词为含有干涉或好奇之意的“探问”“密查”“窃探”，所以后面接的介词以 **into** 为佳，即 **pry into other people's affairs**（探问他人的事）。但如果是说“探出一件秘密来”的话，就可说 **pry out a secret**。与其说 **can never be prevented from spreading about in a short while** 一大串，不如利用一个简单的成语 **take**（或 **get**）**wind**（风闻一时，使世人皆知）。**to blind** 是“蒙蔽”的意思，为什么要说“去蒙蔽事实”而有撒谎的必要，其实不是要“蒙蔽事实”，而只是要“免人乱放谣言”，故将 **to blind the fact** 删除。

末段第一句中的 **which** 改成 **as** 之后，就可与前面的 **such** 呼应了。**to defend** 后面接 **against** 或 **from** 都可以。**I would believe** 应改成 **we should think**，这后面如用 **him**，就应接 **to be a liar**，所以现将 **him** 改为 **he is**。所谓 **if he did** 的 **did** 一词，只能代表 **he is a liar**，与原意不合，故改为 **what he says is true**。后面既用了 **wit** 一字，前面就不必说 **dullness**，因为意思重复了。所谓 **wit**，即是“机智”或“急智”之意，自然不必再说 **prompt sagacity** 了。

总之，文章应力求简洁，含义要深，用词要少，才是上乘。同时要推陈出新，言人所不能言，又要富于风趣，而有余味。

### 3 改正稿

People are sometimes inclined to enliven their conversation by lying. It is what we call a white lie, or a harmless lie. Though lies are by no means commendable, they are excusable in certain cases.

I know a woman whose greediness has seduced her to take advantage of her relatives and friends. She tricks them out of their money so often that they are forced to tell a lie later in order to get rid of her. Such a lie, I believe, is a harmless one.

A lie is necessary if one wants to keep a matter secret, or if one does not like its being in everybody's mouth. Some people are particularly fond of prying into others' secrets which, once known, will soon take wind. Very often, something new will be added in the course of circulation. So, telling a lie is sometimes necessary.

We should not, therefore, accuse one of such a lie as is told to defend one from tricks and injuries. Conversely, if a man says that he has never told a lie in his life, we should think he is a liar. If what he says is true, he must be a man who has not a tincture of wit: for he cannot tell, in case of necessity, a harmless lie.

# A GAS METER

## 1 原作稿

The legend had it that Lie is the son of Devil, and the first cry he uttered then he came into the world was a lie with a sting to his natural enemy, the Truth. When things come to be detrimental to his interest, he spreads rumors and sends out anonymous letters in opprobrious terms against his enemies; when there seems to be a chance to gain power, or win a position, he would dispatch a large pack of minions and clagues to sing him praise with a view to create a favorable atmosphere; and when there seems to be an ill omen to lose power, he will bite like dog with rabies those who are unfortunate enough happened to come across his way.

When the printing machine was invented, as was said, it was invented in the interest of the Devil. The improved language and the new invention joined to serve as two strong wings of Lie and enable him to fly high and far in order to scatter dust in the eyes of the multitudes, to distort the Truth, and to trump up false reports; and as there must have two knives in scissors, so there are a Liar and his right-hand man, working in collaboration to insinuate, to lure, to bully and to threaten. Where the liar failed, the man would use his influence: they are working in mutual affirmation and conspiring in evil purposes. Psychologist tells us there is a propensity in many, to lie and in many, to believe. As was said, the vilest writer has his readers, so the greatest liar has his believers. The Devil, as was so believed, had bequeathed the magic wand to his son, the Liar; so whatever the Liar says will be believed by masses; even the wise men will sometimes give in.

The pessimists lament that falsehood flies and truth limps behind; while the implacable moralists attempt to undeceive and disillusion; whereas, I believe in the maxim that it is worth to mend the fold, if there are still some sheep left. Although it is late, but it would help the cause of Truth. If we would only pool our forces together and funnel them on a single purpose of combating that Liar. Lie would certainly be driven from the world and be chained in the bottomless pit for ever.

## 2 讲解

这是一位留美多年，得到美国艾奥瓦大学硕士学位的老先生所投来的稿件，他写给编者的信上说：Herewith I humbly submit an article for you, if you have time to run it over; and which is more, I would be too glad and appreciate of your kindness, if you would stoop to prune for me, (and especially to correct the grammars). 虽文字上有点问题，但还不至于以辞害意，其虚怀若谷的态度，至为明显，编者也就只好接受下来，不揣冒昧地将来稿加以批改，如措辞不够委婉，而有所冒犯之处，尚希原作者只当童言无忌，赐予原谅为幸。

这篇文章的内容，虽同样的是论“撒谎”的，却远不如本刊上期所登的 *When A Lie Is Necessary* (原稿出自一位师大同学之手)。作者不愧为一位留美学生，知道的英文生词诚然不少，只可惜不大知道它们的用法。文中用的一些比喻，也多半混乱不清，使人难于索解，加之语句拉得太长，有欠简洁，而害辞意。

凡作“主张”“断言”“说”(assert、maintain、say)解的 have, 应该用现在时态，不可用过去时态，例如 as Shakespeare has it (有如莎翁所说)；Rumor has it so (谣涿如是云云)。故 The legend had it 应改为 The legend has it 才通。为求使语句简明化，故第一句说完那“传说”即可止住。关于 detriment 一词，普通只有 to the detriment of 或 without detriment to 两种说法，故现采用其一，以免生硬。在从句中既用了现在时态的 seems, 在主句中就不可再用过去时态的 would, 故特改为 will, 以求时态的一致。claque 一词出自法文，原意为剧场等地雇用的一群捧场者 (a group of people

paid to go to a play, opera, etc, and applaud), 引申为一群阿谀称赞的附和者 (a group of admiring or fawning followers), 实为一集合名词, 不可加复数, 其中的一个人就说 *claqueur*。关于“赞美某人”应该说 *sing the praises of him* 或 *sing his praises*, 不可说 *sing him praise*。其造句的公式为 *sing a person's praises (the praises of a person)*, 但是你可以说 *sing me song* (给我唱个歌)。with a view to 后应该接 *Gerund*, 不可接 *Infinitive*。在 *he will bite like dog with rabies those who are unfortunate enough happened to come across his way* 一句中, 最大的错误为 *happened* 一词没有 *Subject*, 因为前面的 *those* 是动词 *bite* 的 *Object*。又 *dog* 一个名词, 如不用复数, 其前就得加冠词。*come across* 有四个意思: ①掠过, 为 *come across the mind* (忽然想到); ②邂逅 (*meet by chance*); ③为俗语的支付, 如 *come across with*, 10; ④自认, 告白 (*confess*), 但没有“妨碍”之意, 所以不能说 *come across his way*, 只能说 *come in his way*。

第二段的第一句中, 一连用了两个 *was invented* 未免重复了, 故删去了一个, 而将前半的从句改为主句。*the improved language* 不知何所指, 因印刷机的发明与文字的改进并无关系, 故将其改为 *written language*。在 *as there must have two knives in scissors, so there are a Liar and his right-hand man* 一句中, 也犯着上述 *happened* 同样的毛病, *must have* 一个动词没有 *Subject*。刀剑及剪刀的“刀身”, 英文不说 *knife*, 要说 *blade*, 如 *a sword with a broad blade* 及 *the blade of a knife* 之类。*Psychologist* 是一个 *singular common noun*, 如前面不加冠词, 就得改为复数, 这和上面说的 *dog* 同一错法。

第三段中最不可宽恕的错误, 就是 *although* 与 *but* 的连用, 这是中学生都知道的: 前面既用了 *although* 或 *though*, 后面就不能再用 *but*, 后面用了 *but*, 前面就不能用 *although* 或 *though*。又 *pool* 一词作动词用时, 意为“为大家的利益而集资” (*to contribute a common fund*), 不能用为“集中 (力量)”的意思。*funnel* 一词, 作“专注”、“集中 (精力)”解时, 后面应接 *into*, 不宜用 *on*。

最后, 我得在此声明一句, 本篇原题为 *Anonymous Letter*, 因与内容不大符合, 故冒昧改成现在的题目, 这也是要请作者原谅的。至于我为什么改题为 *A Gas Meter* 呢? 因为英文俗语有 *to lie like a*

gas meter, 意为胡言乱语道, 专作卑鄙齷齪之谎言, 其来源当然是因为瓦斯表最不可靠, 故有此语。

### 3 改正稿

The legend has it that the devil is the father of lies. When born a lie is armed with a sting to wound his natural enemy, the Truth. If things go against him, he will spread rumors and send out anonymous letters, to the detriment of his enemy. When there seems to be a chance to gain power or to win a position, he will dispatch a large pack of minions to sing his praises, with a view to creating a favorable atmosphere; and when there seems to be a decline in power, he will bite, like a dog having rabies, those who happen to come in his way.

The printing machine, it is said, was invented, in the interest of the Devil. The written language and the new invention serve as two strong wings for a lie which will enable him to fly near and far, to scatter dust in the eyes of the multitude, and to trump up false reports, in order to distort the Truth. As scissors have two blades, a Liar has his right-hand man working in collaboration with him to insinuate, to lure, to bully and to cheat. Where the Liar fails, the man will use his influence. Psychologists tell us that many people have a propensity to lie and many, to believe. As we know, the vilest writer has his readers, so the greatest liar has his believers. Since the Devil has bequeathed his magic wand to his son, whatever the Liar says will always be believed by the masses.

The pessimists lament that falsehood flies and truth limps behind; while the implacable moralists attempt to undeceive and to disillusion. As for me, I believe in the maxim that it is worth while to mend the fold, if there are still some sheep left. Late as it is, it is better than never: for it will certainly help to promote the cause of Truth. If we would only join our forces for the purpose of combating that Liar, we would be able to get

rid of the lies and have them chained in the deep dungeon for ever.

# DON' T LET YOUR OPPORTUNITY SLIP

## 1 原作稿

What is the true meaning of life? Many people especially the youth may always ask the question, but few can give him a satisfactory answer. There are full of annoyances, troubles, and disappointments in the world, if you don't know the exact meaning of it: it is very dangerous to you. Dr. Sun Yat-sen said "The aim of life is to serve others. "If you will live a happy life, you ought to catch your chance to do the best that you can for others. No matter you are young or old, man or woman, in your life, there are many good chances wait for you, but you don't know how to catch them and utilize them properly, and let them pass away. At last you say you have no chance. What a pity it is!

Time is fleeting. You ought to work hard during the day. Don't wait till dark, because in the night you can do nothing. At the same time, you should catch your golden age in your early life to study, to learn, to work. Whatever you do, you must do it well. You know life is very short, and it passes away when you are hesitating.

## 2 讲解

这是台南长荣女中一位高中学生投来的稿子。文字尚清顺，虽仍不免有语法上的错误（如 **there are many good chances wait for you** 句中的 **wait** 即须改为 **waiting** 才通），但大致都还可以。原题 **Catch Your Chance**，由批改者易为今题。



第二句后半 **but few can give him a satisfactory answer** 中的 **him**，当然是指前半句中的 **the youth**，不过在此以作复数为佳，故不宜说 **him**，应说 **them**，但在此种句中，则根本不要说 **him** 或 **them**。这个后半句是中文直译的，意义上尚不完善，因为“很少有人能给一个满意的回答”，读者便会要问：“回答什么呢？”所以现将 **but** 改为 **to which**，便有一个交代了。**If you don't know the exact meaning of it** 句中的 **it**，离本文第一句太远，在这句上面可充其 **reference** 的，有 **world, answer, question** 诸词，所以文字不紧凑，应说出 **life** 来，较为明白。**it is very dangerous to you** 说得太严重，不懂人生真义的人，世界上多得很，并无多大危险。作文不宜太夸张，过甚其词，反而失去意义。

说 **if you will live a happy life** 并不错，不过不必说得这样郑重，说成普通用的，**if you wish to live happily**，反而简明通俗得多。“抓住机会”普通是 **seize (= catch) an opportunity (= occasion)**，“趁机会”或“利用机会”就说 **take advantage (= avail oneself) of an opportunity; make use of an opportunity; take (= seize) occasion; take the tide as it appears; take time (= opportunity) by the forelock** 等，却不大说 **catch a chance**，故 **you ought to catch your chance to do the best** 一句今改为 **you ought to avail yourself of every opportunity**，以免生硬。失去机会说 **let slip** 或 **miss**，所以 **let them pass** 应改为 **let them slip**。

单说 **wait till dark** 不知什么 **dark**，一定要说 **it is dark** 才知道是说“天黑”。**in the night you can do nothing**（不能做事），也说得太过火，现改为 **you can accomplish very few things**，意为“难于成事”。**golden age** 是黄金时代，每个人在青春时期，都可称为黄金时代，故不好说“抓住你的黄金时代”，只宜说“利用你的黄金时代”。有些多余的话，只好删去，以免累赘。

### 3 改正稿

What is the true meaning of life? Many people, especially the youth, always ask this question to which few can give a satisfactory answer. As you know, there are annoyances, troubles, and disappointments in the world. If you don't know the ex

act meaning of life, you will find that life is but an empty dream. "The aim of life," said Dr. Sun Yat-sen, "is to serve others." In other words, if you wish to live happily, you ought to avail yourself of every opportunity of serving others. For men, women, and even children, there are a good many chances to serve others. But it depends upon whether they will make good use of them or not.

Time is fleeting. If you have a chance to work, to study or to learn during the day, don't wait till it is dark, because in the night you can accomplish very few things. Besides, whatever you do, you must do it well.

# MY FAMILY

## 1 原作稿

There are four in my family, one of them is I. The other members are my father, mother and elder brother. My father was fifty-nine years old. My mother was fifty-two years old. My elder brother was twenty-nine. I was the youngest in my family. My father serves in education, and my mother teaches pupil in primary school. We were very happy. Because my mother very kind for me, and saved money to buy some candies for me that I like. She always told me that "youth people ought to work hard, don't waste time" that words I remember in my deep heart. She also very loved me. If I have ill, she consults the doctor at once and told me ought to have lay off a few days. So I was very pleased in every day and my boyhood.

I entered the school when I was about six. I have been studying about nine years. In 1949 I left my home. Now I have been lived in Taiwan for seven more years. Although I lived in free, yet I think of my home day and night, and always anxious my parents. I don't know whether they living or die. I hope my parents all well and fit. That is my wish. Parents! Recently I'll back home, and take a good news for you. Let you glad and happy to see your son back your side again.

## 2 讲解

这是马祖北竿塘前哨的一位战士所投来的作文稿。我们特提前为他批改发表，以资鼓励。他来信说他很年轻好学，只是没有进修的机会，自己研读遇到有问题时无人请教，颇感痛苦。这是值得同情的。所以我们乐意来帮助他。

第一句语法并不错，现改用 **consist of** 一个成语，句子便更要熟练一点。第二、三句可删去，因为下面就要分别说到的。说 **My father was 59 years old. My mother was 52 years old.** 当然不错，不过太呆板，造句的方式又嫌重复，所以把它改为“比我母亲大七岁的父亲有五十九岁了”。说 **years of age** 和说 **years old** 是一样的意思。时态都要用现在，因为第一句是用的现在时态。说活着的人都要用现在时态，要等到那人死了，才可改用过去时态。**I was the youngest in my family.** 难道现在就不是家庭中最小的一个了吗？所以要改为 **I am the youngest in the family.** 这里把 **my** 改为 **the**，即指上述的家庭。“父亲在教育中服务”是不大明白的，只能说在教育界服务，现改为“在一个教育机关服务”，比较具体。“教学生”或“授徒”是中国话，英文只说 **teach** 就够了，至多说 **teach school**，不说 **teach pupil**。在 **primary school** 前要加冠词。说过去的事，就可以用过去时态，即 **I was very happy** 云云，是说小时候的事。**kind** 意为亲切，只宜用于朋友，母子之间应说爱 (**love**)，还有应说 **kind to me**，不说 **kind for me**。英文的 **youth** 是一个名词，不能说 **youth people**，只能说 **young people**。说 **don't** 是对第二人称的命令语气，现主语既是 **young people**，自然应是第三人称了。**that** 是单数，其复数为 **those**，正如 **this** 的复数为 **these** 一样。我们不能说 **very loved me**，只能说 **loved me very much**。照语法是现在分词前用 **very**（如 **very interesting**），过去分词前用 **much**（说 **much interested**）。说 **have ill** 是纯粹中国话的“有病”译出来的，在英文是不通的，因为有字后面必须接一个名词做宾语 (**Object**)，而 **ill** 却是一个形容词。即令改为名词的 **illness** 也不通，因为英文中没有 **have illness**（有病）的说法，现改为 **I was ill**（我病了）就通了。

第二段中说 **I have been lived** 是不通的，因为我们住在一个地方，不能用被动，只能说 **I have lived**（到现在为止住了）或 **I have been living**（过去住到现在，还要继续住下去）。说 **seven more years** 是“再加七年”，说“七年多”应作 **more than seven years**。所有的介词后面都要接名词，**free** 是形容词，所以不能说 **in free**。现在正住着，不能说 **I lived**（过去住了），而要说 **I am living**。又 **anxious** 是形容词，不能说 **I anxious**，应说 **I am anxious**，该词后要接上一个 **about**，意思才能表达出来。用连词联结的词，前后应为同类的词句，**living** 是形容词而 **die** 是动词，所以不能连在一起，应说 **live**

or die。两个人说 both，两人以上用 all。在 let 后面要接动词，不能接形容词。最后之句删除为妥。

### 3 改正稿

My family consists of four persons. My father, who is seven years older than my mother, is fifty-nine years of age. My elder brother is twenty-nine; and I am the youngest in the family. My father serves in an educational institution, and my mother teaches in a primary school. I was very happy, because my mother loved me very much. She saved money to buy me candies which I like better than anything else. "Young people," she always said to me, "ought to work hard and mustn't waste their time." These words I remember quite well. When I was ill, she would go at once to consult the doctor. So I was very happy during my boyhood.

I went to school when I was about six. In 1949 I left my home for Taiwan, where I have been living for more than seven years. Although I am living in a free country, yet I think of my home day and night. I am very anxious about my parents. I hope, however, they both are well and fit.

# ON EYES

## 1 原作稿

Human being is bestowed by God a pair of eyes, which though are different in colors and in degrees of brilliance, have the same function—to see.

As the windows are to the house, so are the eyes to the body; and in modern architecture, many windows are preferable; for whenever we open the windows, everything within the visual field comes in and with it the fresh air. By this way, we connect ourselves with the external world and are able to learn something from it. Therefore, the eyes are one of the sources of knowledge by which we educate and adopt ourselves to the circumstances day by day.

Yet whether one who has two eyes is more fortunate than one with one eye is still questionable. If you are acquainted with Helen Keller, the blind authoress, in the Reader's Digest, you will be inspired into such a thought that one can achieve a great deal without eyes at all.

Moreover, the eyes are too ready for their duty; they cannot be restrained from beholding what they meet at the moment; you can only divert your attention as quickly as possible from one to another, yet are uncertain to catch a better one at the second moment.

Sometimes, you have to see those you dislike, including your enemies, for your eyes cannot foresee them without being noticed. It is very strange to say that the eyes have a secret message sent out for mutual communication. But it seems that the more you hate to see them, the more you will often meet.

Since not all the external world is full of pleasing and delightful things, an one-eyed person may be more fortunate in seeing less ugly things by narrowing his scope of vision, if this does not affect the beauty of his countenance.

## 2 讲解

这篇文章字句拖沓，有欠简洁，且有时词不达意，使人看过，猜不透作者的意思，故批改时是以大刀阔斧，常整句地加以割爱的。

第一段的 **human being** 与 **man** 不同，**man** 用作人类解时可以不加冠词，但 **human being** 如不用做复数（即 **human beings**），则前面应加不定冠词的 **a** 才妥。关于 **bestow** 一词的用法应加注意，第一它后面常跟 **upon**（或 **on**），其次是应说“物”**is bestowed upon**“人”，不可说“人”**is bestowed**“物”，例如 **I do not deserve all the praise that is bestowed upon me.** 或 **I hardly deserve such benefit as was bestowed upon me.** 之类。**color** 和 **degree** 在这种情形下，都要用单数。**in color** 意为“在颜色上”，**in degree** 意为“在程度上”。

说开窗一切都进来了，实际是不对的，只能说开窗见到一切，故 **everything...comes in**，宜改为 **everything will come in sight**。我们不能说眼睛是知识的来源，只能说是获得知识的工具，因为知识并不能发源于眼睛，人人都有眼睛并不见得人人都有知识，只有那些善用眼睛这个工具去观察事物的人，才能获得知识，故将 **source of knowledge** 改为 **instrument of knowledge**，以求合乎逻辑。**adopt** 是“收纳”“采用”之意，“使适合”应说 **adapt**，如“他使自身适合于新的环境”**He adapted himself to new circumstances.**

你可以说 **a man with one eye** 或是 **blind in one eye**，但不宜说 **one with one eye**，因两个 **one** 念起来不好听，故宜改为 **an eye**。

**meet** 不能代替 **see** 用，故 **what they meet at the moment** 是不大通用的，虽则你可以说 **meet the eye= be visible**（看见）；**meet a person's eye**（注意到别人望着我；我也去回望他）。下面说的 **you can only divert...second moment** 一句，因意思不显，故删

去，而将下段冒头的 **sometimes** 一句接上来，其 **for** 以下所说的理由并不显明，故一并删除。

我们平常说的 **The eyes have one language everywhere** 意指眉目可以传情，不必通以言语，这句 **the...eyes secret message** 云云，应移到第二段的末了，意思较为衔接。**But** 以下一句，意思又变了，故删去。

**one** 的发音为〔wʌn〕，是辅音，故其前不可用 **an**。说 **his scope of vision**，正如说 **your state of health** 一样不对，因为 **your** 是形容 **health**，而不是形容 **state** 的，同样地 **his** 是形容 **vision**，而不是形容 **scope** 的。这也是属于逻辑上的错误，而不是语法的错误，比方说 **He is an undoubted man of genius**。就不通，因为我们要说他的，是他的 **undoubted genius**，而不是 **undoubted man**，所以这句话应改为 **He is a man of undoubted genius**。才通。同样，我们不可说 **his English knowledge**，应说 **his knowledge of English**。诸如此类，作文时应多加注意。

### 3 改正稿

The eyes bestowed upon man by God have the same function of seeing though they may be different in color and in degree of brilliance.

As the windows are to the house, so are the eyes to the body. Whenever we open our eyes, everything within the visual field will come in sight. With their aid, we can acquaint ourselves with the external world in which an infinite number of wonderful and beautiful things may be revealed. In fact, we may say that the eyes are the instrument of knowledge with which we can educate and adapt ourselves to new circumstances. Besides, through the eyes secret messages may be telegraphed between two persons.

It is doubtful, however, whether a man who has two eyes is more fortunate than one with an eye. If you have read about Helen Keller, the blind authoress, in the Reader's Digest, you



will perhaps think that one can do, without the help of the eyes a good many things as well.

Moreover, the eyes are too ready for their duty; they cannot be restrained from beholding what is before them. Sometimes you cannot avoid seeing those you dislike, including your enemies.

Since not all the things which present themselves before our eyes are pleasing and delightful, a one-eyed person is supposed to be more fortunate in seeing less of the ugly by narrowing the scope of his vision, if his being one-eyed does not affect the beauty of his countenance.

# A LETTER TO THE EDITOR

## 1 原作稿

Dear Editor,

I don't think you will surprise at receiving a letter from me.

A few days ago, I received words from Mr. Chou; he told me that you have received an anonymous letter which is in terms derogatory to me. I thank you for your kind information.

You know some people are hard-headed, whereas, I am an iron-head; I never hesitate in confronting a foe. But tell you the truth, I am instinctively afraid of ghost, simply because it comes on you unawares. So in dealing with the cowards, liars, and that sort of persons, I am afraid, just like a kid, of a dog. Napoleon had once said, "The people to fear are not those who disagree with you, but those who disagree with you and are too cowardly to let you know." Few men are stronger than Napoleon, so I am not ashamed, if I say I am afraid of the sneakers.

Let us all put on the breastplate of Truth, and the armor of Faith to combating the Liar, the Coward. I am sure you would be too glad to join me in the battle.

Herewith I humbly submit an article, captioned "Anonymous Letter", for you, if you have time to run it over, and which is more, I would be too glad and appreciate of your kindness, if you would stoop to prune for me, (and especially to correct the grammars), you know, to say the truth, I am a phony.

I remain always;

Yours,

*Wm. S. H. Chang*

P. S. If you have anything to be circulated, please give one to me.

## 2 讲解

自从本刊第九卷第一期“英文作文批改”栏中刊出那位留美硕士的文稿以后，读者纷纷来函，希望我们把他写给编者的那封信整个都发表出来，以窥全豹，而共欣赏其奇文，我们当然不便拒绝。同时省立“大学”的师生们，也知道了这是“教授”的杰作，因为这篇文章的“原作稿”，早经作者分送给了各教授的缘故。有些好学而正在研究英文的教授，都来向编者索取该期的“大样”，想看钱歌川教授是怎样替他批改的。还有一些工学院土木系那位教授所教的英文班上的同学，也纷纷致函编者，以纯粹研究学问的立场，来讨论那位教授所写的英文，例如有人来问那位教授对各课所出的问题，都称为 **Quest**，辞典上此词作“探寻”“探险”解，并无问题（**Question**）之意，不知究竟如何？我们只好告诉他说辞典是对的，那位教授的用法不敢苟同。又有一位同学，将那位教授英文期中考试试题抄写一句出来，问我们那英文通不通：**Answer the following question with your own English: —When Booker T. Washington reached Hampton, how much money he has left in his pocket?** 编者对他的答复是，**with your own English** 不通，因为学生不能各人有各人的英文，普通只能说 **with your own words**。至于下面那个问句，是一个陈述句，不成其为问句。凡问句是要把主语和谓语颠倒的，改为 **how much money had he left**，便成为问句了。关于问句，大概那位教授写的都不合这规则，所以来问类似的句子的人很多，如 **Why Mr. Simpson stood? Why they went home?** 都是犯的同样的错误。最近还有一个姓赵的同学，抄了那教授试题上的一个问句来问意义：**Do you think when you come on to the field, you have the right play instead with your feet in soccer game, with your tongue too?** 这意思我们也看不大懂，因为 **instead** 后面不接 **of**，而接 **with**，我们还是第一次看到呢。听说那位教授对于这班学生的无礼（因为他出的问题被送到校长那里去了），很是生气，他对校长说，他教了三十年

的书，从来没有听见有人说过他的英文不通的，足见这班学生是胡闹，对老师大不敬。闲话不表，言归正传。

第一句中的 **surprise** 一字，不能用作不及物动词，所以原文说 **you will surprise** 是错了的。这是个及物动词，我们只能说 **It will surprise you...** 或 **You will be surprised.**

第二段第一句话，一连用了两个 **received**，表示作者词不够用，说来说去，就是这几个词。因此为避免重复计，不妨将第一个 **received** 改为 **had**。至于那作“传言”“音讯”(**message**) 解的 **word**，是不能加 **s** 用复数的，它前面也不要加冠词，如 **I have had no word from him yet. I received word of his coming.** 无论说话写文章，都要注意“时的一致”(**sequence of tenses**)。除了一二特殊情形外，在一句中前面既用了过去动词，后面就不能再用现在动词，如 **Chou told me that you have received a letter.** 句中 **told** 为 **tell** 的过去，即表示周告诉我是过去，他告诉我已发生的事情，当然更在过去，为什么可以用现在的完成时呢？这是中学生都不应犯的错误。下面的 **which is** 的 **is**，也犯的同一毛病。

第三段第一句的 **you know** 与后半的 **I am** 不相称，**I am** 应与前半的 **some people** 对称才是，但行文上看去却是 **you** 与 **I** 相比，所以现将 **you know** 改为 **parenthetical expression** (插入句)。**whereas** 是一个 **conj.** 所以词后不要逗号，意为 **when in fact**，例如 **I hate, whereas you merely dislike, him.** (我恨他，而你不过是不喜欢他罢了。) 这里不用 **whereas**，而用 **but**，就有力多了。**iron-head** 是矢车菊或白颊鳊，见 **WNID** (《韦氏大辞典》)，要做形容词用的 **iron-headed** 才有 **very hard-headed** 之意，现改为 **a man of blood and iron** (硬汉；铁血男儿)，便能表出原意来了。**But tell you the truth** 一句，没有主语，不成其为一个句子，又不是短语，不伦不类，所以不通，现改成一个 **infinitive phrase**，才可成为一个 **independant element** (独立的因素)。举凡单数的普通名词，不可单独用，要么前面加冠词，要么尾上加 **s**，作为复数，故 **ghost** 一词，应改为 **ghosts** 才对。这也是普通学生不应犯的错误。**I am afraid of ghost, simply because it comes on you unawares.** 前半句用的 **I**，后半句又一变而为 **you** 了，真是所谓“前后判若两人”，说这话的人，其无常情可想。这个 **you** 宜改为 **us** 或 **me** 才通。**in dealing with the cowards** (用了 **the coward** 就不宜用复

数)，与 *I am afraid of a dog*，其间到底有什么关系呢？作者思路不清，由此可见。**Past Perfect Tense** 是用于过去以前的，拿破仑说的“说”字，只该用单纯过去，不可用过去完成。

第四段第一句中 *to combating the Liar* 的 *to* 不是 **Preposition**，为什么后面要接上一个 **Gerund** 呢？这只能接不定词的 *combat*，普通在 *combat* 后可直接 **Object**，但在此做不及物动词用更好，所以加上一个 *with*。在 *the Liar* 与 *the Coward* 之间不用 *and* 联结起来时，*coward* 即变成 *liar* 的同格词了。“撒谎者即卑怯者”，岂不可笑？*too glad to join* 是“太高兴而不参加”的意思，作者原意是想说 *only too glad to join*，可惜他对这两种表现法分不清楚，所以混为一谈了。

第五段“**Anonymous Letter**”前面应有冠词，因 *letter* 是单数普通名词，不加冠词则要用复数。*to submit (= offer, present) an article for you*，是不通的，在 *submit* 后面接的 **Preposition** 并不是不可以用 *for* 或 *with*，不过在此用 *for* 就错了。我们只能说 *submit it for approval* 或 *submit it to you*。又句中说的 *and which is more* 的 *which* 无所指，既非指前面的某一名词，又非指前面的一整句，或一个从句，或一个短语，突如其来用上这么一个关系代词，而前面并无有关系的名词，所以犯了一种语法上不可饶恕的错误。在 *to appreciate* 后面不可以接上一个 *of*，应直接地接那 **Object** 的 *your kindness*，因为它不是一个不及物动词，又 *to prune for me* 一语也不完全，读者一定要问 *prune* 什么呢？在这个及物动词的后面一定要接一个 **Object** 才行。在这句的后面括号内的 *and*，也不知联结何词何句，凡连词总得有可联结的东西，联结词与词，或联结句与句皆可，无词句可联结时，也用上此词就是错误。*grammar* 一词普通没有人用复数。除非用来指各种不同的语法书时，才可用复数。这里说请改正多数的语法书，岂不好笑！

最后的 *I remain* 与 *always*（通常用 *ever*）是同样的意思，用一个就够了。再启中的 *one* 字，也是不通的，因为我们只能说 *one of them*，不能说 *one of anything*。

总之，这封简短的信，从头到尾，没有一句通的。要不是那位教授的高足宣布于前，他自己又撰文散发于后，谁会相信一位留学美国，荣获硕士头衔，又多年充任英文教授的人，英文会坏到这种程度呢？

### 3 改正稿

Dear Editor,

I don't think you will be surprised at receiving a letter from me.

A few days ago, I had word from Mr. Chou who told me that you had received an anonymous letter which was in terms derogatory to me. I thank you for your kind information.

Some people, you know, are hard-headed, but I am a man of blood and iron and never hesitate in confronting a foe. To tell the truth, I am instinctively afraid of ghosts, simply because they come on us unawares. Just like a kid who is afraid of dogs, I am afraid of such persons as cowards and liars. Napoleon once said, "The people to fear are not those who disagree with you, but those who disagree with you and are too cowardly to let you know." As few men are stronger than Napoleon, I am, therefore, not ashamed of myself, if I say I am afraid of the sneakers.

Let us all put on the breastplate of Truth, and the armor of Faith to combat with the Liar and the Coward. I am sure you would like to join me in the battle.

Herewith I humbly submit an article, captioned "An Anonymous Letter". If you have time, will you run it over? I would be only too pleased, if you would stoop to prune it for me (that is, to correct the mistakes in grammar) .

I remain,

Yours truly,

*Wm. S. H. Chang*

P. S. If you have anything to be circulated, please give me a copy of it.

# NATURE AND KNOWLEDGE

## 1 原作稿

It is not a new idea that we consider nature as a great book. Since our old progenitors have no book to read, but they took nature as a great book. They took part in a hunt with their parents or elders. They participate in their elders work, and learned many things from it. Their parents told them skills and knowledge. They learned by doing; they learned from nature. This is what we call today that education is life, and life is also education.

Since the invention of the art of printing, we have progressed in civilization very much. But, on the other hand, we were far apart from nature, from society, we got second-hand knowledge from books, from teachers and from magazines. Thus many educators suggested that we must learn by trip. Montaigne, a French educator, said that we (teachers) must bring our children (students) to make a journey. Let them take a view of other people's life, compare the civilization of foreign countries with ours, and learn the cultural systems of others. The students may be cultivated with broad mind and far sight in nature. Nature is a great book!

## 2 讲解

在 *regard* 后面要用 *as*，在 *consider* 后面便不要用。在上半句说 *progenitors have*，下半句接着又说 *they took*，前后时态不一致，故将 *have* 改为 *had*。同一主语的两个句子，应合成一句，而略去一个主语，如 *they took part* 及 *they participate*（此词也应用过去时态），改为 *they took part...or participated*。在中文可以说

“告诉他们一些技能和知识”，但英文则不能说 **tell them skill and knowledge** (**skill** 一词一般不用复数)，这时候在英文中惯常的说法，是“获得技能和知识” (**acquire, attain, have, possess** 等)。

在英文中喜欢用名词加动词来表示动作，而不直接用动词，如说话、声明、演说，不说 **to remark, to state, to speak**，而要说 **to make a remark, to make a statement, to make a speech**；同样地进步不常说 **to progress** 而要说 **to make progress**。说我们从书本得来的知识是间接的，这情形过去、现在、未来都是一样，所以不宜用过去时态，而应该用现在时态，以表示不变的真理。**must** 是一个助动词，后面只能接略去了 **to** 的不定词，不能接过去或过去分词，所以 **must learned** 是不通的。游历可以增广见闻，这个游历只能说 **travel**，而不能说 **trip** 或 **journey**。短程的旅行说 **trip**，一日的旅程说 **journey**，只有要向远方的外国 (**distant countries**)，及长期的行程 (**of long duration**)，便称 **travel**。在 **travel** 中可以包括 **many journeys**，如 *Gulliver's travels* (Swift 的小说) 及 *the Travels of Marco Polo* 等常用复数，意为“旅行记”。

### 3 改正稿

It is not a new idea that we consider nature a great book. Since our progenitors had no books to read, they learned almost everything from nature. When they took part in a hunt or participated in the work of their elders, they learned many things from the world about them. In fact, their skill and knowledge owed much to nature. This is why we call nature a great book.

Since the invention of the art of printing, we have made great progress in civilization. But we are far apart from nature, because what is acquired from books and teachers is not the first-hand knowledge. Thus many educators believe that we can learn a number of things by travelling. Montaigne, a French educator, said that teachers should encourage their students to travel so that they might see more of the world, get familiar



with the way of life in a foreign country, and compare its cultural systems with theirs.

### 三 英文正误

# 1 主语和动词不一致的错误

1. 误: I *is* a boy.

正: I *am* a boy.

(我是一个男孩子。)

〔说明〕动词“是”(verb to be)在直说法现在式里,因人称(person)和数(number)的不同,有三种不同的变化: *am*, *are* 和 *is*。动词的身和数须和主语的身和数一致,所以上面的句子要把 *is* 改成 *am*。

现在把它们间的关系列表于下:

单数 I *am*    you *are*    he (or she) *is*

复数 we *are*    you *are*    they *are*

〔类例〕I *am* a student. (我是一个学生。)

You *are* a clever boy. (你是一个聪明的男孩子。)

She *is* my younger sister. (她是我的妹妹。)

We *are* good friends. (我们是好朋友。)

You all *are* here. (你们全体都在此地。)

They *are* brave soldiers. (他们是勇敢的兵士。)

2. 误: I *were* a pupil three years ago.

正: I *was* a pupil three years ago.

(三年前我是一个小学生。)

〔说明〕动词“是”在直说法过去式里因人称和数的不同,有两种变化: *was*, *were*。动词的身和数须和主语的身和数一致,所以把 *w*

ere 改成 was。现在把它们的关系列表于下：

单数 I was      you were   he was

复数 we were   you were   they were

〔类例〕 I *was* still young at that time. (我那时还年轻。)

You *were* only a little child a few years ago. (几年前你不过是一个小孩子。)

He *was* absent yesterday. (他昨天缺席。)

When we heard the news, we *were* very happy. (当我们听到这个消息，我们十分快乐。)

You *were* monitors last term. (上学期你们是级长。)

They *were* in the first year class last year. (去年他们在一年级。)

3. 误：He *have* a book.

正：He *has* a book.

(他有一本书。)

〔说明〕动词“有”(verb to have)在直说法现在式里因人称和数的不同有两种变化：have, has。因为动词的人称和数须和主语的人称和数一致，所以把 have 改成 has。现在把它们的关系列表于下：

单数 I have      you have   he has

复数 we have   you have   they have

〔类例〕 I *have* a pencil. (我有一支铅笔。)

You *have* a pen. (你有一支钢笔。)

He *has* a piece of paper. (他有一张纸。)

We *have* a look at the picture. (我们看这张画。)

You *have* a holiday today. (你们今天放假。)

They *have* a picnic. (他们举行野餐。)

Each student *has* a school badge. (每一个学生有一枚校徽。)

The Chinese people *have* a bright future before them. (中国人民有一个光明的前途。)

4. 误: Our teacher *ask* us a question.

正: Our teacher *asks* us a question.

(我们的先生问我们一个问题。)

〔说明〕在直说法句子里主语是单数，动词是现在式时，须加 **s** 于动词的字尾，所以在这句子里须用 **asks**。

〔类例〕She *comes* to school every day. (她每天到学校去。)

He *talks* fast, but he *writes* slowly. (他说得快，但是他写得慢。)

It *rains* at intervals. (雨时落时止。)

The sun *rises* in the east and *sets* in the west. (太阳出自东方，落后西方。)

There *lies* a lazy cat. (那里躺着一只懒猫。)

5. 误: The cause of many failures *are* poor preparation.

正: The cause of many failures *is* poor preparation.

(许多失败的原因是没有好好地准备。)

〔说明〕主语的修饰语中的名词的数，和主语的数不发生关系。在上面的句子里主语 **cause** 是单数，所以应该用 **is**。

〔类例〕The tables in the classroom *are* large. (教室里的桌子是大的。)

Little drops of water *make* the mighty ocean. (小滴水可成大洋。)

The most valuable of her possessions *is* this ring. (她的所有物中最宝贵的是这个戒指。)

The telling of lies *is* sometimes necessary. (说谎有时是不得已的。)

6. 误: There *is* seven eggs in the nest.

正: There *are* seven eggs in the nest.

(巢里有七个蛋。)

〔说明〕此地的“there”是引语，并不是主语，动词的数要和倒置的主语一致。在这一句里面 **eggs** 是主语所以应该用 **are**。

〔类例〕There *is* a book on the desk. (书桌上有一本书。)

There *was* once a good king. (从前有一个好国王。)

There *goes* the thief. (有贼!)

Here *come* the children. (小孩子来了。)

Here *are* our books. (此处是我们的书。)

7. 误: You and he *has* the same birthday.

正: You and he *have* the same birthday.

(你和他有同样的生日。)

〔说明〕两个主语由 **and** 联合起来，通常须用一个复数的动词，所以把 **has** 改成 **have**。

〔类例〕A magazine and a newspaper *were* lying on the table. (桌上放着一本杂志和一份报纸。)

You and I *have* been friends for a long time. (你和我已友好多时。)

There *are* a book and a pen on the desk. (书桌上有一本书和一支钢笔。)

8. 误: Bread and butter *are* my usual breakfast.

正: Bread and butter *is* my usual breakfast.

(涂奶油的面包是我每日的早餐。)

〔说明〕假使两个主语表示一个观念时，须用一个单数的动词。在这句里 bread and butter 指涂奶油的面包，所以要用 *is*。

〔类例〕Truth and honesty *is* the best policy. (真诚和正直是最好的方策。)

Coffee and milk *is* my favorite drink. (牛奶咖啡是我爱好的饮料。)

His end and aim *is* success. (他的目标是成功。)

Blood and iron *is* not a good policy. (铁血政策不是一个好的政策。)

9. 误: Either you or he *are* wrong.

正: Either you or he *is* wrong.

(不是你便是他错了。)

〔说明〕二个主语由 *or*, *either...or*, *neither...nor* 连合，则动词应该和最近的主语一致。在这句里最接近动词的主语是 *he*，所以应该用 *is*。若改成 *Either you are wrong or he is*. 则更好。

〔类例〕Either you or I *have* made a mistake. (不是你便是我弄错了。)

Neither you nor she *is* a lazy student. (你和她都不是懒学生。)

Neither the teacher nor the students *are* in the classroom.  
(先生和学生都没有在教室里。)

He or his servants *were* to blame. (不是他就是他的仆人们不好。)

10. 误: The mother, as well as her two daughters, *are* going to market.

正: The mother, as well as her two daughters, *is* going to market.

(这个母亲和她的两个女儿将到市场去。)

〔说明〕附加语由 *with*, *besides*, *along with*, *together with*, *as well as*, *in addition to*, *no less than* 等连词引入句中, 使句中的主语和动词分离, 但它并不影响主语的数, 所以在这句里的动词应该是 *is*。

〔类例〕My life no less than my fortune *is* at the service of my country.

(我的生命和财产一样供国家驱使。)

The boy with his friends *is* playing at home. (这孩子和他的朋友正在家里玩耍。)

This fairy story, besides many other interesting stories, *is* in the book.

(除许多别的有趣的故事外, 这篇童话也在这书里面。)

Mary, along with her friends, *goes* to school. (玛丽和她的朋友们一同到学校去。)

The teacher, in addition to his students, *is* in the library. (先生和学生都在图书馆。)

11. 误: Somebody *have* taken away my book.

正: Somebody *has* taken away my book.

(有人把我的书拿掉了。)

〔说明〕大多数的不定名词、不定代词和不定形容词如 *each*, *every*, *another*, *any*, *either*, *neither*, *anyone*, *each one*, *every one*, *some one*, *no one*, *anybody*, *somebody*, *something* 等都是单数的, 所以在它们的后面须用单数的动词。此句的主语是 *somebody* (某人), 它是单数的, 所以动词也应该用单数的动词 *has taken*。

〔类例〕Each of the pupils *has* his own desk. (每个学生都有他自己的书桌。)



Every train *was* crowded. (每列火车都拥挤。)

One is blind and another is deaf. (一个是瞎的，别一个是聋的。)

Any child *knows* that. (任何儿童都知道那个。)

Either way *is* correct. (两种方法随便哪一种都是对的。)

Neither *has* much to do. (两人均无甚事做。)

Anybody *is* able to do the work. (任何人都能做这件工作。)

12. 误: Each boy and each girl *are* here.

正: Each boy and each girl *is* here.

(每个男孩和每个女孩都到了。)

〔说明〕假使由 **and** 所连合的两个或两个以上的单数主语的前面有 **each** 或 **every** 或 **no**, 句内的动词应该用单数。所以在这句里的动词应该用 **is**。

〔类例〕No boy and no girl *is* allowed to enter. (男孩和女孩都不准入。)

Every man and every woman *was* asked to take part in the discussion.

(每个男人和每个女人都被邀请参加讨论。)

Each day and each hour *brings* the news of the war. (每天和每小时都带来战争的消息。)

There *is* no tree and no flower in the garden. (花园里没有花和树。)

13. 误: All of us *is* present.

正: All of us *are* present.

(大家都到了。)

〔说明〕**all**, **some** 和 **none** 用作主语时, 若指量则应该用单数的动词, 若指数则应该用复数的动词。在这句里的 **all** 系指我们, 我

们是可以数的，故 **all** 是复数，所以动词也应该用复数的 **are**。我们再举一个例来说明：**All of the milk has turned sour.**（所有的牛乳已变酸了。）在这句里 **milk** 是物质名词，它是不可数的，只可以量计，故 **all** 是单数，所以它的动词也应该用单数的动词 **has turned**。

〔类例〕**All are agreed.**（大家都同意。）

**All has been explained.**（一切都已说明。）

**Some of the soil is poor.**（有些土壤是贫瘠的。）

**Some of the students speak English very well.**（这些学生中有几位英语说得很好。）

**None of this concerns me.**（这件事与我毫无关系。）

**None of my lost books were found.**（我所遗失的书一本也没有寻到。）

**None are completely happy.**（没有人是完全快乐的。）

14. 误：**The rest of the boys is at play.**

正：**The rest of the boys are at play.**

（别的孩子在玩耍。）

〔说明〕假使主语是 **half, rest, plenty, part** 等词时，则动词的数须依照它所指的东西而决定。假使它所指的东西是可数的，并且是多数的，那么它的动词应该用复数，如果它所指的东西虽然是可以数的，可是只是一个或一个的一部分时，那么它的动词应该用单数，假使它所指的东西只可以量计算而不能数的，那么它的动词也应该用单数。在这句子里 **the rest** 指孩子，孩子是可以数的，并且在一个以上，所以动词应该用复数的 **are**，例如 **A half of the orange is bad.**（一半的橘子是坏的。）在这句里 **half** 所指的橘子虽然可数，但只是一个橘子的一部分，所以它的动词用单数的 **is**。又如 **The rest of the wine was thrown away.**（其余的酒被倒掉了。）在这句子里 **the rest** 指酒，酒只可以量，却不可以计数的，所以它的动词用单数的 **was thrown**。

〔类例〕 The rest of the students *are* absent. (其余的学生缺席。)

The rest *needs* no telling. (其余的不必说了。)

A half of them *are* gone. (他们中的一半是去了。)

A half of the wood *is* getting rotten. (这树木的一半已朽了。)

There *are* plenty of men who would work and not mind the hours. (有许多人工作不顾时间。)

There *is* plenty of snow. (雪很大。)

A part of the horses *have* run away. (一部分的马跑掉了。)

Only part of his story *is* true. (他的故事只有一部分是真的。)

15. 误: The number of students in our class *are* forty.

正: The number of students in our class *is* forty.

(我们班里学生的总数是四十。)

〔说明〕 The number of 的意思是总数，它作主语时，它的后面的动词应该是单数的。a number of 的意思是若干，它是形容短语，可以用来形容主语，使主语成为复数，所以在这样的主语的后面的动词应该是复数的。在这句里的主语是 The number，所以它的动词应该用单数的 *is*。

〔类例〕 The number of tickets *is* limited. (票数是有限制的。)

A number of people *were* present. (若干人出席。)

There *are* a number of students outside. (若干学生在外边。)

Here *are* a number of good opportunities. (这里有许多的好机会。)

16. 误: The latest news *are* favorable.

正: The latest news *is* favorable.

(最近的消息是好的。)

〔说明〕有许多名词像 **news, mathematics, measles** 等词虽然是复数的形式, 它们的意思却是单数的。当它们被用作主语时须用单数的动词。所以在这句里的动词应该是单数的 **is**。

〔类例〕**Mathematics *is* my favorable subject.** (数学是我喜欢的学科。)

**Measles *is* a common disease among children.** (麻疹是小孩患的一种普通的病。)

**Physics *is* worth studying.** (物理是值得学习的。)

**The gallows *was* used to hang criminals.** (绞台被用来绞死犯罪的人。)

17. 误: His family *is* all well.

正: His family *are* all well.

(他的家属都健康。)

〔说明〕当集合名词如 **audience, family, class, committee, nation, generation** 等词作主语时, 若指整个的团体时需要一个单数的动词; 若指团体内的各个时则需要一个复数的动词。在这句里的 **family** 是指家属里的每一员, 所以应用复数的 **are**。

〔类例〕**His family *is* spending the winter in the south.** (他一家在南方过冬。)

**The family *have* just sat down to table.** (这家人刚刚正在就桌用膳。)

**The committee *was* made up of twenty members.** (这个委员会是由二十个委员组成的。)

**The committee *were* divided in opinion.** (各委员意见分歧。)

The fifth year class *has* only ten students. (五年级只有学生十人。)

The whole class *are* listening attentively. (全班的学生正注意地倾听。)

There *was* a large audience. (有多数的听众。)

The audience *were* moved to tears by his eloquence. (听众受他的辞令感动得流泪。)

The whole nation *were* rising against him. (全国的人民起来反对他。)

The rising generation *are* fighting for the cause of liberty and justice.

(青年们为自由和正义而战。)

18. 误: The Chinese people *loves* peace.

正: The Chinese people *love* peace.

(中国人民爱好和平。)

〔说明〕集合名词中如 *people, cattle, police, poultry* 等词的外形虽然是单数的，它们的意思却是复数的，当它们被用作主语时，动词应该用复数。在这句里 *people* 的外形是单数的，可是它指全体的人们所以应该用复数的 *love*。

〔类例〕The people *love* their president. (人民爱戴他们的总统。)

These cattle *are* foreign breed. (这些牛是外国种。)

The police *have* caught a robber. (警察们捉住一个强盗。)

Poultry *are* scarce here. (这里家禽稀少。)

19. 误: Many a man *have* made the same mistake.

正: Many a man *has* made the same mistake.

(许多人犯同样的错误。)

〔说明〕 **Many a** 是成语，它的意思比 **many** 强，它的后面须接一个单数的名词，假使这样的名词作主语时，它的后面的动词应该是单数的。所以在这句里，应该用单数的 **has made**。

〔类例〕 **Many a student has failed in the examination.**  
(许多学生考试没有及格。)

**Many a man has tried to get rich, but without success.**  
(许多人会努力求富，却没有成功。)

**Many a house was burnt to ashes.** (许多房屋烧成灰烬。)

**Many a soldier has fought for his country.** (许多兵士曾为国家而战。)

20. 误: **The young is taught to respect the old.**

正: **The young are taught to respect the old.**

(年轻人被教导去尊敬老年人。)

〔说明〕 **The + adjective** 可表示一种人们，当它们被作为主语时须用复数的动词。在这句里 **the young = the young people** (年轻的人们)，所以它的动词应该是复数的 **are**。

〔类例〕 **The diligent have more time to work.** (勤的人有更多的时间工作。)

**The rich become richer and the poor poorer.** (富者益富，穷者益穷。)

**The rich are not always happy.** (富的人不常是快乐的。)

**The good are said to die young.** (好人据说死得早。)

**The dumb speak; the dead are raised up; to the poor the gospel is preached.—New Testament** (哑子说话；死者被唤醒了。对于穷的人宜讲着福音。——《新约》)

21. 误: **Lamb's "Tales from Shakespeare" are widely read by Chinese students.**

正: Lamb's "Tales from Shakespeare" *is* widely read by Chinese students.

(兰姆的莎氏乐府本事被中国学生普遍的阅读。)

〔说明〕有一部分的书名、河名、国名具有复数的外形，当它们被用作主语时却需要单数的动词。在这句里的主语 "Tales from Shakespeare" 虽然是复数，它却是一本书的名字所以动词须用单数的 *is read*。

〔类例〕 "Gulliver's Travels" *is* full of satires. (《海客瀛谈》充满着讽刺。)

The United States *is* a republic. (美国是共和国。)

The Ganges *has* overflowed its banks. (恒河曾泛滥两岸。)

22. 误: Seventy dollars *are* the price of this coat.

正: Seventy dollars *is* the price of this coat.

(这件外衣的价额是七十元。)

〔说明〕当一种价值、重量、距离等用作主语时，虽然它的形式是复数，它的意义却指整体的并非指个别的单位，因此它的后面的动词应该是单数的。在这句里 *seventy dollars* 是一个价额，所以应用单数的 *is*。

〔类例〕 Three drops of the liquid medicine *is* a dose. (三滴这种药水是一服药。)

Two hundred pounds *is* his weight. (他的体重是两百磅。)

Five years *seems* a long time to the prisoner. (五年对于犯人似乎是一个长的时间。)

Ten dollars a week *is* poor wages. (一星期十元是低微的工资。)

Three miles *is* a good walk. (三里路是很适度的散步。)

23. 误: Nothing but two books *were* found in the drawer.

正: Nothing but two books *was* found in the drawer.

(在抽屉里除两本书外没找到别的东西。)

〔说明〕 **but** 或 **except** 所引入的短语并不影响主语的数。在这句里 **but two books** 是被引入的短语并不影响主语 **nothing** 的数，所以应用单数的 **was**。

〔类例〕 **No one but fools has ever believed it.** (除了愚人以外，没有人会相信它。)

**No one except members was admitted.** (除会员外闲人莫入。)

**Nothing but dismal scenes lies before our path.** (在我们的路前只有阴惨的景色。)

24. 误: **I, and not they, are to go.**

正: **I, and not they, am to go.**

(我决定去，并不是他们。)

〔说明〕在两个主语中一个是肯定的，一个是否定的，句中动词的身和数须和肯定的主语的身和数相一致。在此句里 **I** 是肯定的主语，**they** 是否定的主语，所以动词须用 **am** 和 **I** 的身和数相一致。

〔类例〕 **He, and not I, is chosen.** (他被选中，并不是我。)

**He, and not you, deserves the prizes.** (他应得奖，并不是你。)

**Money, and not books, was stolen.** (钱被偷了，并不是书。)

25. 误: **You, who is well, cannot understand my illness.**

正: **You, who are well, cannot understand my illness.**

(健康的你，不能明白我的病的。)

〔说明〕关系代词 (**relative pronoun**) 用作从句里的主语时，它的动词的身和数须和它的先行名词 (**antecedent**) 相一致。在这句里 **who** 的先行名词是 **you**，在从句里的动词的身和数应该和 **you** 相一致，所以用第二身的 **are**。



〔类例〕 He who *is* diligent will surely pass the examination. (勤勉的他，将一定能通过考试。)

We who *are* your friends desire to help you. (我们是你的朋友，愿意帮助你。)

I will invite only such people as *are* my friends. (我只要请那是我的朋友的人们。)

## 2 动词过多的错误

1. 误: I *am learn* my lesson.

正: I *am learning* my lesson.

(我正在学习我的功课。)

〔说明〕在一句句子里不能有两个动词，如进行式是由 **verb to be + present participle** (现在分词) 而成的，完成式是由 **verb to have + past participle** (过去分词) 而成的；被动式是由 **verb to be + past participle** 而成的。在这句里 **am** 和 **learn** 都是动词，所以是错的。若要表示现在正在学习应用现在进行式，须把 **learn** 改为 **learning**。

〔类例〕I *am writing* a letter to my friend. (我正写信给我的朋友。)

He *has left* school. (他已出了学校。)

Tigers *are found* in India. (老虎可在印度被见到。)

2. 误: He *went down breakfast*.

正: He *went down to breakfast*.

(他到楼下去吃早饭。)

〔说明〕在一句句子里要同时表示两个行动时，也不应该用两个动词，应该用不定词、分词或动名词来表示一个以上的行动。在这句里 **went** 是一个动作，**breakfast** 又是一个动作，所以应该用不定词 **to breakfast**。

〔类例〕I *am glad to see* you. (我看到你觉得快乐。)

He *sat buried* in thought. (他坐着深思。)

I hear a bird *singing* among the trees. (我听到鸟儿在树林里面唱歌。)

He enjoys *flying*. (他享受飞行。)

### 3 动词变化上的错误

1. 误: Last night they *spreaded* their blankets on the floor.

正: Last night they *spread* their blankets on the floor.

(昨天晚上他们把毯子铺在地板上。)

〔说明〕动词中如 *put, spread, hurt, let, cut* 等词的原形过去式, 和过去分词都是同一的形态, 所以在这句里应该用 *spread*。

〔类例〕He *hurt* his own eye this morning. (今天早上他伤了他自己的眼睛。)

He was *put* to death. (他被处死刑。)

He had his hair *cut* close. (他已把头发剪短。)

2. 误: He *shew* me the road to the station.

正: He *showed* me the road to the station.

(他指示我到火车站的路。)

〔说明〕动词中如 *know, blow, grow* 等字的变化是 *-ow→-ew→-own*, 但是 *show, glow, flow, plow* 等词的变化都是有规则的。而且 *show* 的过去分词有两个形式, *showed* 和 *shown*, 因此很容易弄错, 所以在这句里应该用 *showed*。

〔类例〕The water all *flowed* out little by little. (水渐渐地流光了。)

Their hearts *glowed* with patriotism. (他们赤心爱国。)

He *plowed* his field with two horses. (他用两匹马犁他的田。)

3. 误: He was *drown* in the sea.

正: He was *drowned* in the sea.

(他在海中淹死。)

〔说明〕	原形	过去式	过去分词
	drown 溺	drowned	drowned
	grow 生长	grew	grown
	wound 受伤	wounded	wounded
	wind 绕	wound	wound
	found 建立	founded	founded
	find 找着	found	found
	awaken 唤醒	awakened	awakened
	shake 摇	shook	shaken

我们看了上面几对动词的变化,便会明白为什么有许多人会把 **found**, **awaken** 等词的原形误认为过去分词,所以在这句里应该用 **drown** 的过去分词 **drowned**。

〔类例〕 The bird is *wounded* in the wing. (这鸟翼部受伤。)

The college was *founded* in 1950. (这学院是在1950年创办的。)

In the morning, I was *awakened* by the alarm clock. (早上我被闹钟闹醒。)

4. 误: He was warmly *welcome* by his friends.

正: He was warmly *welcomed* by his friends.

(他受他的朋友热烈的欢迎。)

〔说明〕	原形	过去式	过去分词
	lay 放下	laid	laid

delay 延迟	delayed	delayed
have 有	had	had
behave 处世	behaved	behaved
come 来	come	came
welcome 欢迎	welcomed	welcomed

我们看了上面几对动词的变化便会明白为什么有许多人容易把 **delay**, **behave**, **welcome** 弄成不规则的变化, 所以在这句里应该用 **welcomed**。

〔类例〕The train was *delayed* by an accident. (火车因意外事件而延迟。)

He *behaved* respectfully towards his superiors. (他对长者很恭敬。)

5. 误: The room is *hanged* with pictures.

正: The room is *hung* with pictures.

(室内挂着图画。)

〔说明〕 原形 过去式 过去分词

lie 说谎	lied	lied
lie 躺	lay	lain
lay 放	laid	laid

hang 挂	hung	hung
hang 绞死	hanged	hanged

bear 生	bore	born
bear 负	bore	or borne (限于被生而且后面不跟 by)
		borne

cleave	cleft or cl	cleft or cloven
--------	-------------	-----------------

切	ove	cleaved
cleave	cleaved	
粘附		
fall 跌	fell	fallen
fell 伐倒	felled	felled
bid 出	bid	bid
价	bade	bidden
bid 吩		
咐		

在这句里 **is hanged** 是被绞死的意思，和前后文意不合，所以应该把它改为 **is hung**, 才是被挂起的意思。

〔类例〕The rascal has *lied* to me for many times. (这个流氓对我说了好几次谎。)

He *lay* on the lawn. (他躺在草场上。)

A bridge is *laid* across the river. (河上横架一桥。)

The clothes were *hung* up to dry. (衣服挂起来晒干。)

The murderer was *hanged*. (杀人犯被绞死。)

He was *born* in this town. (他生在这个市镇里。)

She has *borne* many children. (她生了许多孩子。)

The task is *borne* on our shoulders. (这工作担在我们的肩上。)

I *cleft* an apple in two with a knife. (我用刀把苹果切成两半。)

He *cleaved* to the cause firmly. (他坚持这主义。)

The house *fell* into decay. (这房子朽坏了。)

He *felled* a tree with an axe. (他用一把斧把树砍倒。)

He *bid* ten thousand dollars for my house. (他愿出价一万元买我的房子。)

I was *bidden* to wait. (他嘱我等候。)



## 4 时态 Tense 的错误

*are going*

*go*

*rises*

*drinks*

*go*

*is always complaining.*

*am constantly forgetting*

*am believing*

*believe*

*understand*

*resembles*

*belongs*

*rose* *set*  
*rises* *sets*

*is*  
*is*  
*wait*  
*makes*  
*have written*  
*wrote*

*saw* *yesterday*

*lived* *ten years ago*  
*studied* *this morning*

*finished* *just now*

*did not rain*  
*has not rained*

*Since*

*have been*

*has made*

*since*

*has happened since*

*is*

*since*

*will be*

*is*

*come*

*is*

*is*

*left*

*had left*

*had prepared*

*had borrowed*

*does not know*

*did not know*

*had done*

*should*

*painted*

*was*

*is*

*moves*

*take*

*is*

## 5 及物动词和不及物动词的错误

1. 误: The trees *are falling* their leaves.

正: The leaves *are falling* from the trees.

比较: The trees *are dropping* their leaves.

(树正落叶。)

〔说明〕在不及物动词的后面是不能接宾语的。在上面的句子里 **fall** 是不及物动词，所以不能接宾语 **leaves**，而 **drop** 是及物动词，所以可以接宾语。

〔类例〕Birds *sing*. (鸟鸣。)

Flowers *bloom* in the spring. (春天花儿开放。)

2. 误: This book *is belonged* to me.

正: This book *belongs* to me.

(这本书属于我。)

〔说明〕**belong** 是不及物动词，所以它没有被动形式。在上面的句子里应该把 **is belonged** 改正为 **belongs**。

〔类例〕A terrible accident *happened* when I was there.

(当我在那里的时候，这可怕的事变发生了。)

War *broke* out between the two countries over a boundary dispute.

(为边界的争执，两国间战争爆发了。)

The ship *sailed* for America a few days ago. (前几天船已开往美国。)

The meeting *will take place* in the open air. (这会将在露天举行。)

The heavy fighting *lasted* three hours. (激战延续到三小时。)

3. 误: He *replied* my letter.

正: He *replied to* my letter.

比较: He *answered* my letter.

(他回了我的信。)

〔说明〕有些不及物动词，加上了介词，始有及物的能力。在上面的句子里 **reply** 作复信解时是不及物动词，不能直接接宾语，加上了 **to** 才有及物的能力。**answer** 是及物动词可以接宾语。

〔类例〕Please *listen to* my story. (请听我讲故事。)

Success *depends upon* effort. (成功基于努力。)

In business, we must *compete with* others. (在事业上，我们一定要和别人竞争。)

4. 误: He *seats* on a chair.

正: He *is seated* on a chair.

比较: He *seats himself* on a chair.

比较: He *sits* on a chair.

〔说明〕**seat** 是及物动词，它的意义是“使坐”，因此它不能如 **sit** 用作不及物动词。

〔类例〕I *laid myself* upon the bed. (我躺在床上。)

He *is laid up* (= lies up) with a serious illness. (他卧病在床。)

The price of the 4lb loaf *is raised* a penny. (四磅面包的价钱已增加一便士。)

## 6 语态的错误

1. 误: The chairman was elected him.

正: *He was elected chairman.*

(他被选为主席。)

〔说明〕上面的句子是被动语态，是从自动语态的一句 **They elected him chairman.** 变过来的。由作为动词而成的句子从自动语态改为被动语态时，应将原有的宾格补充词变为主格补充词，不应将宾格补充词变成主语。

〔类例〕

They considered him a genius. (自动语态)

(他们视他为天才。)

He was considered a genius. (被动语态)

(他被视为天才。)

The people chose him president.

(人民选举他为大总统。)

He was chosen president.

(他被选为大总统。)

2. 误: He cannot be relied.

正: He cannot be relied *upon*.

(他不能被信任。)

〔说明〕上面的句子是被动语态，是由自动语态的一句 **You can not rely upon him.** 变过来的。不及物动词和介词连在一起有及物的意思时，可由自动语态变为被动语态，但是改变时，不应忘掉介词。

〔类例〕

They laughed at me (. 自动语态)

(他们嘲笑我。)



I was laughed at by them (. 被动语态)

(我被他们嘲笑。)

The motor-car ran over a girl. (自动语态)

(汽车撞倒一个女孩)

A girl was run over by the motor-car. (被动语态)

(一个女孩被汽车撞倒。)

3. 误: Carthage was expected to conquer by Romans.

正: *It was expected by the Romans that they would conquer Carthage.*

比较: The Romans expected to conquer Carthage.

(罗马人希望征服迦太基。)

〔说明〕第一句的意思成为罗马人希望迦太基去征服, 和事实不合故错, 应改为第二句和第三句。

〔类例〕

We hope that peace will soon be concluded.  
(自动语态)

It is hoped that peace will soon be concluded.  
(被动语态)

(希望不久媾和。)

We cannot expect him to remember it. (自动语态)

He cannot be expected to remember it. (被动语态)

(我们不希望他记得这个。)

4. 误: He is known *by* everybody.

正: He is known *to* everybody.

(人人认识他。)

比较: He is known *by* the company he keeps. (看他的同伴, 便知道他的为人。)

〔说明〕 **is known** 后面跟介词 **to** 才有“被”的意思；它的后面跟 **by** 时，此 **by** 却有“由于”的意思，所以应将句中的 **by** 改为 **to**。

〔类例〕 The tree is known *by* its fruit. (这树因了它的果实而被人认识。)

He is very well known *to* me. (我很知道他。)

5. 误：This book *is belonged* to me.

正：This book *belongs* to me.

(这本书属于我。)

〔说明〕 不及物动词不能有被动语态。有许多动词如 **happen**, **occur**, **belong** 和 **last** 看起来很像及物动词，很容易被错用成被动语态。

〔类例〕 The heavy fighting *last* three hours. (激战延续到三小时。)

A terrible accident *happened* when I was there. (我在那里时，这可怕的意外事件发生了。)

A flood *occurs* every year. (洪水每年发生。)

## 7 助动词的错误

1. 误: I *will* be eighteen next week.

正: I *shall* be eighteen next week.

(到下星期我将满十八岁了。)

〔说明〕**shall** 和 **will** 表示纯粹将来时，**shall** 应该用于第一人称，**will** 用于第二人称和第三人称，现在把它们的用法列表于下：

	单数	复数
第一人称	I <b>shall</b>	<b>we shall</b>
第二人称	<b>you will</b>	<b>you will</b>
第三人称	<b>he will</b>	<b>they will</b>

假使表示各人称自身的意志时，**will** 用于各人称，完全没有变化，现在把它的用法列表于下：

	单数	复数
第一人称	I <b>will</b>	<b>we will</b>
第二人称	<b>you will</b>	<b>you will</b>
第三人称	<b>he will</b>	<b>they will</b>

上面的句子的意思表示纯粹的将来并没有含有意志的成分，句中的主语是第一人称，所以应该用 **shall**。

〔类例〕 We *shall* have rain soon. (表将来)

(天将很快地下雨了。)

I *will* never go there again. (表意志)

(我决不再到那里去了。)

It *will* take you two days to get there. (表将来)

(你将花费两天的时间抵达那里。)

He *will* do it in spite of my advice. (表意志)

(不顾我的劝告他要做这件事情。)

2. 误: I *will* be glad to meet you at the station.

正: I *shall* be glad to meet you at the station.

(我将很高兴到车站来迎接你。)

〔说明〕一个句子表达感情时，*shall* 应该用于第一人称，*will* 用于第二人称和第三人称；它们都是表示纯粹的将来，因为喜怒哀乐的感情实由于外界的情形而决定，和自己的意志没有关系。上面的一句表快乐的感情，并且主语是第一人称，所以应该用 *shall*。

〔类例〕 I *shall* feel much obliged, if you will favor me a call.

(如果能够得到你的惠顾，我将十分的感激。)

I *shall* be much pleased to see you. (我将以见你为乐。)

Your parents *will* be delighted to hear of your success.

(你的父母将很高兴听到你的成功。)

3. 误: I hope I *will* succeed this time.

正: I hope I *shall* succeed this time.

(我希望我这次将能成功。)

〔说明〕一个句子表达希望时与表达感情一样，*shall* 用于第一人称，*will* 用于第二人称和第三人称；同样地它们都是表示纯粹的将

来，因为希望中的事情是否能够成功是不能由自己的意志左右的。上面一句里的名词从句表示一个希望，并且它的主语是第一人称，所以应该用 **shall**。

〔类例〕 I hope it *will* be fine tomorrow.（我希望明天天气好。）

I hope we *shall* pass.（我希望我们会合格。）

I do hope you *will* soon get well again.（我希望你早日复原。）

4. 误： I promise that my part *will* be fulfilled.

正： I promise that my part *shall* be fulfilled.

（我允诺尽我的本分。）

〔说明〕一句句子若要表示说话者的意志——允诺或威逼或禁止等时，**will** 用于第一人称，**shall** 用于第二人称和第三人称。现在把它们的用法列表于下：

	单数	复数
第一人称	I will	we will
第二人称	you shall	you shall
第三人称	he shall	they shall

上面一句里的名词从句表示讲话者的允诺和讲话者的意志有关，所以应该用 **shall**。

〔类例〕 They *shall* not want as long as I live.（表允诺）

（在我活着的时期内，当不使他们有所困乏。）

You *shall* do so, if you wish to.（表允诺）

（假使你愿意这样做就做吧。）

You *shall* do so whether you will or not. (表威逼)

(不论你愿意与否, 你必须这样做。)

No man *shall* leave without my permission. (表禁止)

(任何人不得我许可不许离开这房间。)

I *will* not allow you to set foot in this house again. (表禁止)

(你不许再踏进此屋。)

5. 误: When *will* we arrive at Taipei?

正: When *shall* we arrive at Taipei?

比较: When *will* the train arrive at Taipei? (这火车何时可到台北?)

答句: We *shall* arrive tomorrow morning. (明天清早到。——同行的人回答。)

You *will* arrive tomorrow morning. (明天清早到。——车站职员的回答。)

〔说明〕假使一句疑句的主语是第一人称, 我们用 *shall* 表示纯粹的将来或询问对方的意思, 除了下面的例子外我们很少用 *will* 来询问自己的意志。

*Will* you go? (你愿意去吗?)

*Will* I go? To be sure, I *will*. (你问我愿意去吗? 我当然愿意去。)

〔类例〕When *shall* I have your answer? ——You *shall* have it tomorrow.

(你何时回答我? ——明天。)

How old *shall* I be next year? ——You *will* be sixteen next year.

(明年我将几岁? ——你明年将十六岁。)

Where *shall* we go? —Let us (= We will) go to the park.

(我们往何处去? ——我们往公园去吧。)

6. 误: *Shall* you lend me a book? —Yes, I *shall*.

正: *Will* you lend me the book? —Yes, I *will*.

(你愿意借给我这本书吗? ——是的, 我愿意。)

〔说明〕假使一句疑问句的主语是第二人称, 我们用 *shall* 表示单纯的将来, 用 *will* 询问对方的意志。上面的问句是问对方是否愿意, 所以应该用 *will*。又答句中的 *shall* 和 *will* 我们也应该加以注意, “*shall* you?” 的回答必是 “I *shall*.”, “*will* you?” 的回答必是 “I *will*.”。

〔类例〕When *shall* you be twenty years of age? —I *shall* be twenty next year.

(到什么时候你才廿岁? ——到明年我才廿岁。)

*Will* you do this for me? *Will* I? Of course I *will*.

(你愿替我做这件事吗? 我当然愿意。)

7. 误: When *will* he come? —Let him come tomorrow.

正: When *shall* he come? —Let him come tomorrow.

(何时叫他来? ——叫他明天来。)

〔说明〕假使一句疑问句的主语是第三人称, 我们用 *will* 表示单纯的将来, 它的答句也要用 *will*。用 *shall* 询问对方的意志, 它的答句常用命令句。上面的问句是问对方的意志, 所以应该用 *shall*。

〔类例〕*Shall* he know the truth? —Yes, he *shall* know it.

(给他知道真相吗? ——好的, 给他知道吧。)

*Will* he do it? —I think he *will*. (他会做这件事吗? 我想他会做的。)

8. 误: If it *would* rain, I would rather stay home.

正: If it *should* rain, I would rather stay home.

(万一下雨时, 我宁愿留在家里。)

〔说明〕假使将来时, 可以加强语气的不确实性, 假使表示纯粹的将来时, 不论人称如何皆用 **should**, 假使表示意志时则皆用 **would**。

上面的一句表示纯粹的将来, 所以应该用 **should**。

〔类例〕If you *would* grant my request, I *should* esteem it a great favour.

(假使你肯答应我的请求, 我将非常感激。)

He *would* have to give up his studies, if his eyes *should* not get better.

(他的眼睛万一不好, 他就非抛弃他的研究不可。)

If you *should* fail, *would* you try again? (万一你失败, 你愿意再试吗?)

9. 误: It is no wonder that he *would* have succeeded.

正: It is no wonder that he *should* have succeeded.

(他的成功是不奇怪的。)

〔说明〕凡 It is no wonder that..., It is strange that..., It is surprising that..., It is a pity that...等形式开头的句子表示当然、惊奇、惋惜等意义时, 它们的后面应接 **should** 不应接 **would**, 所以应该把上面句子里的 **would** 改为 **should**。

〔类例〕It is strange that you *should* not have heard it.  
(你竟没有听到是奇怪的。)

It is proper that you *should* ask your father. (你当然应该问你的父亲。)

It is right that one *should* speak well of the absent. (在背后说人好是对的。)



It is natural that he *should* succeed. (他自然是应该成功的。)

It is necessary that we *should* start at once. (我们非立刻动身不可。)

It is surprising that he *should* have said such thing. (他说出这样的事情来真是奇怪。)

It is a pity that he *should* live at such a distance. (他住得这么远实为憾事。)

10. 误: Men work that they *will* earn a living.

正: Men work that they *may* earn a living.

(人们为着谋生工作。)

〔说明〕 *that*, *so that* 或 *in order that* 作“为了”解时, 它们的后面常接含 *may* 的目的从句。上面句子里的 *that* 是有“为了”的意思, 所以应该把它的后面引入的目的从句里的 *will* 改为 *may*。

〔类例〕 He started early *that* he *might* not be late. (为着要不迟到, 他很早就动身了。)

He worked hard *that* he *might* gain a prize. (因为要得到奖品, 他努力地工作。)

He took medicine in order *that* he *might* recover. (为了要痊愈, 他服药。)

He climbs higher so *that* he *may* get a better view. (为着要看更好的景色, 他爬得更高。)

11. 误: You *ought* not go to such a place.

正: You *ought* not to go to such a place.

(你不应该到这样的地方去。)

〔说明〕 *ought* 也是一个助动词, 它却和别的助动词不同, 它的后面非跟不定词不可, 所以上面的句子里的 *go* 应改为 *to go*。

〔类例〕 You *ought to* pay what you owe. (你应该还你所负的债。)

You *ought to* have finished it last week. (你应该在上星期把它完成的。)

He said that I *ought to* be satisfied. (他说我应该满足。)

12. 误: He *dare do* that.

正: He *dares to do* that.

(他敢做那件事。)

〔说明〕在否定的句子和疑问的句子里, **dare** 和 **need** 可以用作助动词, 但是在肯定的句子里它却不能这样用。上面的句子是肯定的句子, 并且它的主语是第三人称单数, 所以在 **dare** 的后面应加 **s**, 它的后面的不定词 **to do** 也不能省去 **to**, 应该把它添上。

〔类例〕 He *dare not do* that. (他不敢做那件事。)

How *dare you do* such a thing? (你怎敢做这种事? )

You *need to* practise over and over again. (必须要重复的实习。)

*Need I come*? (我必须来吗? )

He *need not come* at present. (他现在无须来。)

## 8 条件句中动词的错误

1. 误: If I *have* the money, I *will* lend it to him.

正: If I *had* the money, I *would* lend it to him.

(假使我有钱, 我就借给他。)

〔说明〕假设法过去时表示和现在的事实相反的假定; 上面的句子既表示和现在的事实相反的假定, 所以应该用假设法过去时。应该把 **have** 改为 **had**, **will** 改为 **would**。

〔类例〕If I *were* you, I *would* not do this. (假使我是你, 我不会做这件事情。)

If I *were* a bird, I *would* fly to you. (假使我是鸟, 我要飞到你那里。)

If I *were* rich, I *would* go abroad. (假使我有钱, 我要出国。)

I *would* fain do it if I *could*. (如果我能做, 我很情愿做。)

2. 误: If the doctor *come* earlier, the invalid *would be saved*.

正: If the doctor *had come* earlier, the invalid *would have been saved*.

(假使医生来得早些, 病人就得救了。)

〔说明〕假设法过去完成时表示和过去相反的假设; 上面的句子既表示和过去相反的假设, 所以应该用假设法过去完成时, 应该把 **came** 改成 **had come**, **would be saved** 改成 **would have been saved**。

〔类例〕 If the hunters *had been* there yesterday, they might *have shot* the tiger.

（假使猎人昨天在那里，他们或许射到那只虎。）

If I *had had* the money, I would *have lent* it to you.

（假使我本来有这笔钱，我就已经借给你了。）

I might *have done* it, if I *had been* stronger.

（如果我曾强健一些的话，这事我也许已经做了。）

He looks as if nothing *had happened*.

（他好像不曾发生过什么事情的样子。）

3. 误： If I had known your address, I *would write* to you.

正： If I had known your address, I *would have written* to you.

（假使我曾经知道你的通讯处我就已经写信给你了。）

〔说明〕在条件句子内，条件从句和结论从句在普通的情形下时态须一致；如果条件从句是假设法过去时，则结论从句须是假设法将来时或可能法过去时；如果条件从句是假设法过去完成时，则结论从句须是假设法将来完成时；假使条件从句是假设法过去完成时，则结论从句绝不可用假设法将来时或可能法过去时，所以在上面的句子中应将 **would write** 改为 **would have written**。但是在假设法将来时中，假使 **if** 有“万一”和“即使”的意思时，结论从句可以用直说法。例如：

What *shall* I do if I *should* fail? （万一失败怎么办呢？）

If you *should* see John, *tell* him to come to see me. （万一你看到约翰，叫他来看我。）

I *will* go, even if it *should* rain. （即使下雨我也要去的。）

〔类例〕 I *would* buy it, if I *had* the money. （假使我有钱，是要买的。）

If I *were* a child, I might *live* a happy life again.

(假使我是一个孩子, 我可能再过愉快的生活。)

If you *would grant* my request, I *should esteem* it a great favour.

(假使你答应我的请求, 我要把这事看作恩惠。)

If I *should wear* spectacles, I *could see* more clearly. (假使我戴眼镜, 我能看得比较清楚。)

If I *had tried*, I *should have succeeded*. (假使我曾试过, 我就成功了。)

You might *have gone* to the play, if you *had been* older. (假使你年龄大些, 就可以去看戏了。)

I could *have entered* the school, if I *had been* here. (假使我在这里, 我是能进这个学校的。)

## 9 不定词的错误

1. 误: The work ought *to do*.

正: The work ought *to be done*.

(这个工作应该做好。)

〔说明〕不定词有主动和被动两种形式应依照句子的意思而决定用主动的不定词,或被动的不定词,不应该把它们混用的。在上面的句子里工作是被做的,应该用被动的不定词,所以应将 **to do** 改为 **to be done**。**to let** 和 **to blame** 虽是主动的形式却有被动的意义,所以下面的两句却是例外:

This house is *to let*. (这屋出租。)

Nobody is *to blame*. (没有人该负责。)

〔类例〕No one likes *to be cheated*. (没有人喜欢被欺骗。)

This book ought *to be read* with care. (这本书应该小心地读。)

What is *to be done*? (什么是应当做的?)

2. 误: This water is good *to be drunk*.

正: This water is good *to drink*.

(这水是可饮的。)

〔说明〕在 **easy**, **hard**, **difficult**, **no**, **fit** 和 **good** 等形容词的后面通常仅接主动的不定词。在上的句子里 **to be drunk** 接在 **good** 的后面,所以应该把它改正为 **to drink**。

〔类例〕This work is *hard to do*. (这个工作是难做的。)

This apple is *fit to eat*. (这个苹果恰好能吃。)

He is *difficult to satisfy*. (他是难满足的。)

The book is *easy to understand*. (这本书易懂。)

He has no food *to eat*. (他没有东西吃。)

3. 误: I taught him *to read and to write*.

正: I taught him *to read and write*.

(我教他读书和写字。)

〔说明〕两个不定词连用时，则第二个不定词的 *to* 可以省去，所以在上面句子里的 *to write* 的 *to* 可以省去，但是假使两个不定词用于对比时，则第二个不定词的 *to* 仍应保留，如: *It lies in your power to succeed or to fail*. (你有能力使它成功和失败。)

〔类例〕He asked me *to go and help him*. (他请求我去帮助他。)

I hope *to go and see you tomorrow*. (我希望明天来看你。)

You are free *to go home or to stay here*. (回家或留在此地都随你的便。)

It is impossible *to love and to be wise*. (恋爱而不失智慧是不可能的。)

4. 误: I am glad *to help you* last night.

正: I am glad *to have helped you* last night. (= I am glad that I helped you last night.)

(昨晚我帮了你的忙我感到很高兴。)

〔说明〕在一个句子里谓语部分的动词是现在时，而其所随的不定词叙述过去的事情，或不定词所表示的行动较谓语部分动词的行动先发生时，或表示未曾实现的希望或遗忘欲做的事情时应该用不定词的完成时。又 *ought* 表示过去的意义时，它的后面也应跟不定词的完成时。在上面的句子里的谓语部分动词是现在时，而其所随的不定词叙述过去的事情，所以应该改为不定词的完成时 *to have helped*。

〔类例〕 *You ought to have done it earlier.* (你早该把这事情做好。)

*I am sorry to have forgotten your request.* (我很抱歉忘了你的委托。)

*He seemed to have been diligent.* (= *It seemed that he had been diligent.*)

(他好像曾用过功。)

*I wish to have attended school.* (我希望我已入学。)

*I intended to have spoken about Tunisia too, but time didn't permit.*

(我本来也想谈到突尼斯,但是时间不允许。)

(注: *I intended to speak* 和 *I intended to have spoken* 间的意思不同;前者的意思不过是“我曾欲说话”;后者的意思却有“我本来拟定说话,后来因情形的不许可而没有说”。)

5. 误: *You ought do it now.*

正: *You ought to do it now.*

(现在你应该做这件事情。)

〔说明〕在一般的助动词的后面须接动词的原形,可是在 *ought*, *have* 和 *be* 的后面却须接均有 *to* 的不定词,所以应该把上面句子中的 *do* 改为 *to do*。

〔类例〕 *You ought to obey your parents.* (你应该服从你的双亲。)

*I have to go now.* (我现在必须去。)

*The regatta is to be held on Saturday.* (竞舟定于星期六举行。)

6. 误: *I heard the letter to read.*

正: *I heard the letter read.*



（我听读这信。）

〔说明〕 *see, behold, hear, feel, watch, observe, perceive, notice* 和 *know* 等词是表示感觉的动词，它们的后面须跟随无 *to* 的不定词做句中的宾语补足语，所以在上面的句子里应该把 *to read* 改为 *read*。

〔类例〕 *I can see the clouds sail in the sky.*（我能够看到云在天空飞行。）

*We beheld the fish rise.*（我们看见鱼儿浮起。）

*I heard the wind roar through the trees.*（我听见风在树中怒号。）

*I felt the house rock.*（我感到房屋震动。）

*We watched him go and come.*（我们看他来去。）

*We observed the barometer fall.*（我们看见晴雨计下降。）

*I did not perceive anyone come in.*（我不觉有人进来。）

*I did not notice any one enter.*（我未见有人进来。）

*I never knew him do such a thing.*（我从来不知道他做这种事。）

（注：在 *know* 的后面所跟的不定词也可以保留 *to*。）

7. 误： *Let me to know the news.*

正： *Let me know the news.*

（让我知道这消息吧！）

〔说明〕当 *let, make, bid, have, help* 做使役动词时，它们的后面应跟原形不定词。上面句子里的 *to know* 用在使役动词 *let* 的后面，所以应该删去 *to*。

〔类例〕 *Let go the rope.*（放松这绳。）

*He made the children laugh.*（他使孩子们发笑。）

*He bade me sit down.*（他嘱我坐下。）

I *have* him *bring* some fresh water. (我要他取点淡水来。)

I can *help* you *do* the work. (我能帮助你做这工作。)

(注：在 **help** 后所跟的不定词，也可以保留 **to**。)

8. 误：The bird was heard *sing*.

正：The bird was heard *to sing*.

(听到鸟唱歌。)

〔说明〕表示感觉动词及使役动词若用于被动语态时，它们后面所跟的不定词不能省去 **to**，在上面的句子里 **was heard** 是被动语态，它的后面所以应该跟 **to sing**。

〔类例〕The earth is felt *to quake*. (感到地震。)

She was seen *to swim* across the river. (有人看到她游泳渡河。)

I was bidden *to wait*. (我被吩咐等待。)

The bear was made *to dance*. (熊被人教他跳舞。)

9. 误：You had better *to be quiet*.

正：You had better *be quiet*.

(你最好静一些。)

〔说明〕在 **had better**, **had rather**, **cannot but** 等短语后须接原形不定词。在上面的句子里，**to be** 在 **had better** 的后面，所以应该将 **to be** 改为 **be**。

〔类例〕You had better not *remain* here. (你还是不留在这里好。)

I had rather *die* than do it. (我宁愿死，也不愿意做这事。)

I cannot but *admire* his courage. (我不得不赞美他的勇敢。)

10. 误：He did nothing but *to laugh*.

正: He did nothing but *laugh*.

(他只是笑。)

〔说明〕在 *do nothing but* 的后面须接原形不定词。假使 *nothing but* 之前, 非 *do* 而为其及物动词时, 则不定词的符号又不能省去。在上面的句子里 *to laugh* 接在 *did nothing but* 的后面, 所以应该把 *to* 省去。

〔类例〕 *She does nothing but cry all day.* (她只整天的哭。)

*They desire nothing but to enjoy the present moment.*

(他们除了眼前享乐以外, 什么都不希望。)

*I asked for nothing but to be pardoned.* (他只请求被宽恕。)

*He wished for nothing but to live comfortably.* (他只希望生活得舒服。)

11. 误: He decided *to without telling anyone make* another attempt.

正: He decided *to make* another attempt without telling anyone.

(他决定不告诉任何人再作一次尝试。)

〔说明〕不定词和它的符号 *to* 的中间有时可以插入较短的修饰语, 却绝不可插入长的修饰语。在上面的句子里的修饰语 *without telling anyone* 实在太长, 所以不应该插在不定词和它的符号 *to* 的中间, 应该把它移在最后。

〔类例〕 *To completely forget this is impossible.* (完全忘记这件事是不可能的。)

*He, more than anyone else tried to bring about better relations between countries.*

(他远甚于任何人, 想在国际间构成亲善的关系。)

I *knew* him *to be* absolutely honest. (我知道他是绝对的诚实。)

12. 误: *To study* a foreign language, *a good dictionary* should be bought.

正: *To study* a foreign language, *we* should buy a good dictionary.

(要学一种外国语言, 我们应该买一本好的字典。)

〔说明〕在上面的误句里, 不定词短语 *to study a foreign language*, 不和句子里比他的部分发生关系, 这种不定词短语称为不联结无定词短语 (*dangling infinitive phrase*), 造句时应该避免这种用法。因此短语指人, 故应以 **we** 作主语, 所以应将误句改正如上面的正句。

〔类例〕 *To succeed*, *you* must work hard. (要成功你必须努力工作。)

*To open* the door, *we* had to use a key. (要开门, 我们一定要用一把钥匙。)

*To look* at him, *you* would not think him ill. (看起他来, 你不会想他是生病的。)

## 10 分词修饰语的错误

1. 误: I received a letter *writing* in green ink.

正: I received a letter *written* in green ink.

(我收到一封用绿墨水写的信。)

比较: I saw a boy *writing* a letter.

(我看见一个孩子写信。)

〔说明〕现在分词用作修饰语时常含有主动的意思，过去分词（限于及物动词）用作修饰语时则常有被动的意思。在上面的句子里，信是被写的，所以应该用表示被动意思的过去分词 **written** 去形容它。

〔类例〕Is there any magazine *devoted* to the study of English? (有专门研究英语的杂志吗?)

Men, *living* in town, do not know rural pleasure. (住在城镇的人不知田园的乐。)

*Stolen* fruit tastes sweet. (偷来的果子滋味甜。)

2. 误: I saw flowers *fallen* on water.

正: I saw flowers *falling* on water.

(我看到花落到水上。)

比较: I saw *fallen* flowers on water.

(我看到水上的落花。)

〔说明〕不及物动词无被动语态，故它的过去分词，只含主动的意思。可做修饰语的过去分词实在不多，并且须放在所形容的词的前

面，所以应将上面句子里的 **fallen** 改为 **falling**，或将 **fallen** 移到 **flowers** 的前面。

〔类例〕 He picked up a *withered* flowers on the road. (它拾起路上的枯萎的花朵。)

He is a *returned* student from the United States. (他是美国的留学生。)

The old man is a *retired* officer. (这老人是一个退職的军人。)

〔例外〕有极少的不及物动词的过去分词也可以放在所形容的词的后边。

In days *gone* by we were happy at home. (昔日我们享受家庭的乐趣。)

I have met my friend just *returned* from abroad. (我遇到我的朋友刚从外国回来。)

3. 误: *Taking* breakfast, they went to school.

正: *Having taken* breakfast, they went to school.

(他吃完早饭后便上学去。)

〔说明〕在分词修饰短语中，现在分词所表示的动作常和句中谓语部分的动词所表示的动作是同时的。假使在短语中所表示的行动先于谓语部分动词时，则应用完成分词。在上面的句子里，吃饭的行动在入学的行动的前面，所以应该把 **Taking** 改为 **Having taken**。

〔类例〕 *Having written* my composition, I have nothing more to do.

(写完作文后，我没有事情可做了。)

*Having served* for ten years, *the officer* retired. (这军官服役了十年后退職了。)

*Having finished* his task, *he* went home. (他工作完毕后回家了。)

4. 误: *Flying over our heads, we could see some sabrejets*  
s.

正: *We could see some sabrejets flying over our heads.*

(我们能够看到几架军刀式喷气飞机在我们的头上飞行。)

〔说明〕分辨修饰语必须贴近它所修饰的部分, 否则容易引起误会。在上面的误句里 *flying over our heads* 一短语绝不是 *we* 的修饰语, 所以应该把它放在它所修饰的 *sabrejets* 的后面。

〔类例〕*The girl is listening to bird singing in the tree.* (女孩倾听着鸟在树上唱歌。)

*I saw him standing at the door.* (我见他立在门口。)

*Standing at the door I saw him.* (我站在门口时看见他。)

5. 误: *Sailing on and on the new world was discovered.*

正: *Sailing on and on Columbus discovered the new world.*

(当哥伦布继续向前航行时, 发现新大陆。)

〔说明〕误句中的 *sailing* 和句中的任何词都不发生关系, 换句话说句中没有任何词受它的形容, 所以这种分词被称为不连接的分词 (*dangling participle*), 这是我们应该避免的。所以我们应该把误句改正如上, 如是则 *sailing on and on* 成为 *Columbus* 的修饰语。

〔类例〕*Eating our dinner, we see the sky clear up.* (当我们吃饭的时候, 天放晴了。)

*Walking in the garden, we saw many beautiful flowers.*

(当我们在花园里散步的时候, 看到许多美丽的花。)

*Living a long way from town, he rarely has visitors.*

(因为住在远离都市的地方, 来客也稀少了。)

6. 误: *Being a fine day, I went out for a walk.*

正: *It being a fine day, I went out for a walk.*

或 *As it is a fine day, I went out for a walk.*

（因为天气好，我出去散步。）

〔说明〕 **Being a fine day** 是不连接的分词，且无法改造句子的形式使它修饰句中的主语，像这种情形只可以把 **being a fine day** 改为独立构文 **It being a fine day**，或改为副词短句 **As it is a fine day**。

〔类例〕 *It being very cold, we made a fire.*（因为天气冷，我们生火。）

*Night coming on, we started for home.*（天晚了，我们动身回家。）

*It being Sunday, there was no school.*（因为是星期日，所以不上课。）



## 11 动名词的错误

1. 误: Do you like *me* staying here?

正: Do you like *my* staying here?

(你高兴我留在此地吗?)

〔说明〕名词或代词作动名词的主语时, 常用属格的形式, 在上面的误句里 **staying** 是动名词, **me** 是动名词的主语, 所以应该把 **m e** 改为 **my**。

〔类例〕What is the use of *your reading* that book? (你读那本书有什么用处呢?)

Would you mind *my shutting* the window? (你反对我关这窗子吗?)

The reason of *Mr. Chang's leaving* is plain. (张先生离开的理由是明显的。)

2. 误: I like *my going* to school.

正: I like *going* to school.

(我喜欢上学校。)

〔说明〕在 I cannot approve of his marrying so young. (我不能赞成他如此早年结婚。 ) 这类的句子中, 动名词 (**marrying**) 的主动者并不就是主要动词 (**approve**) 的主语 (**I**) , 所以动名词的主语必须另外表明。但是当动名词的主动者就是主要动词的主语的时候, 动名词的主语便不必另外表明, 如: He denied **having done** it. (他否认他曾经做过这事。 ) 在上面的从句里动名词 **going** 的主语就是主要动词 **like** 的 **I**, 所以应该将 **my** 略去。

〔例外〕You are proud of *your being* rich, aren't you? (你是不是对于你的富有而骄傲呢?)

在这句里用 **your** 是为了加强语气的。

〔类例〕 *I am sure of passing the examination.* (我相信会通过考试。)

*He doesn't like admitting it.* (他不愿意承认那事。)

*He regrets having done such a thing.* (他懊悔做了这样的事。)

3. 误: *After reading the book, it was returned to the library.*

正: *After reading the book, I returned it to the library.*

(我将这本书读完后, 便把它归还到图书馆去。)

〔说明〕假使把动名词和介词合成的短语放在句首时, 这个短语须指全句的主语, 否则便犯一种错误, 叫作不联结的动名词 (**dangling gerund**)。在误句中的 **after reading the book** 不能指 **it**, 所以应该把全句改造, 将动名词 **reading** 所指的 (I) 成为主语。但是当动名词短语表示一个普遍的动作时, 便可以用于句中, 不和句中别的部分发生关系, 如:

*In traveling, good drinking water is essential.* (旅行时, 好的饮水是必须的。)

*In doing this work, great care is necessary.* (做这件事情, 必须极小心。)

〔类例〕 *After making a great effort, he at last gained his end.* (他努力工作后, 最后达到他的目的。)

*On hearing the sad news, she began to weep.* (听到悲哀的消息后, 他开始哭泣。)

*On climbing to the top of the hill, I found a beautiful view spreading out before me.*

(我爬到山顶后, 发现美丽的景色展开在我的眼前。)

4. 误: *I could not avoid to do so.*

正: I could not avoid *doing so*.

(我不得不这样做。)

〔说明〕有些动词的后面, 只能接动名词, 有些动词的后面只能接不定词, 有些动词的后面却两样都可以用。在 **avoid** 的后面, 只能接动名词。所以应该把上面误句里的 **to do so** 改为 **doing so**。

〔类例〕I enjoy *riding*. (我喜欢骑马。)

I delayed *answering* you owing to pressure of work. (我因事忙迟于答复你。)

I suggest *asking* her advice. (我提议请教她。)

I have finished *preparing* the lesson. (我已经准备功课完毕。)

I cannot help *pitying* him. (我不禁怜悯他。)

〔参考〕有些动词的后面只能接不定词, 如:

I once hoped *to succeed*. (我曾一度希望成功。)

I want *to see* her. (我要见她。)

I long *to see* him. (我渴望见他。)

有些动词的后面可以接动名词或不定词, 如

〔 I like *getting up early*.  
I like *to get up early*. (我喜欢早起。)

〔 I begin *doing it*.  
I begin *to do it*. (我开始做事情。)

〔 He continued *doing it*.  
He continued *to do it*. (他继续做这件事。)

有些动词的后面可以接动名词, 也可以接不定词, 但是它们所表达的意思完全不同, 如:

〔 He stopped *thinking* (. 他停止思考。)

| He stopped to think (. 他停下来思考。)

| I forgot to do it (. 我忘记做这件事。)

| I forgot doing it (. 我已经做过这件事，但是我忘记曾经做过这件事。)

| I remember seeing him a year ago (. 我记得一年前见过他)

| You must remember to see him tomorrow (. 你必须记得明天去看他。)

5. 误: I am busy *to write* a composition.

正: I am busy *writing* a composition.

(我忙于写一篇作文。)

〔说明〕在形容词 **busy**, **worth** 和介词 **near** 后面须接动名词。在上面的误句里 **to write** 接在 **busy** 的后面，所以应该改为 **writing**。

〔类例〕This book is worth *reading*. (这本书是值得读的。)

The sun was near *setting*. (太阳快下山。)

I am busy *preparing* for the examination. (我忙于预备考试。)

6. 误: I object *to be treated* in this way.

正: I object *to being treated* in this way.

(我反对被如此对待。)

〔说明〕有些动词后面跟着的 **to** 是介词，在它们的后面不应该接不定词，应该接动名词。在上面的句子里 **object** 后面的 **to** 是介词，所以应该把 **be treated** 改为 **being treated**。

〔类例〕He devoted every evening *to reading* fiction. (他花费每晚的时间读小说。)

He gives his life *to studying* English. (他花费他的一生学习英文。)

We look forward to *seeing* you again. (我们期望再看到你。)

He has taken to *playing* on the piano all day. (他终日弹钢琴。)

7. 误: I am used to *go* there.

正: I am used to *going* there.

(那里我是惯去的。)

比较: I used to go there.

(在过去我惯去那里。)

〔说明〕在有些“verb to be + 分词形容词”后常接介词 to 再接动名词，很容易误接不定词，如 **used, unused, opposed** 就属于这类分词形容词。在上面的误句里，在“verb to be used”的后面接不定词违反了习惯的用法，所以应该把它改为 to going there。

〔类例〕I am unused to *smoking* cigarettes. (我不惯于吸香烟。)

I am used to *getting* up early. (我惯于早起。)

I am opposed to *permitting* him to go. (我反对准许他去。)

8. 误: I have a strong objection to *waste* time.

正: I have a strong objection to *wasting* time.

(我对于浪费光阴极为反对。)

〔说明〕在有些名词的后边常接介词 to 再接动名词，很容易误接不定词，如 **objection, view, resistance** 就属于这类名词。在上面的误句里 **objection** 后接不定词违反了习惯的用法，所以应该把 to waste 改为 to wasting。

〔类例〕They offered resistance to *being* ill-used. (他们反抗虐待。)

He feels an objection to *getting* up so early. (他不愿起得如此的早。)

The student studied English grammar with a view to *improving* their English.

(他们为求英文的进步而研究英文语法。)

〔附注〕在 **objection** 和 **view** 的后面也有接不定词的，但是在语法家看来认为是错误的或不好的英文。

9. 误: He is in the habit *to rise* early.

正: He is in the habit *of rising* early.

(他惯于早起。)

〔说明〕有些名词后不能接不定词，只能接动名词，如 **habit**, **plan**, **duty**, **idea** 等就属于这类的名词。在上面的误句里 **habit** 的后面跟不定词，不合习惯，应该改为 **of rising**。

〔类例〕I will abandon the idea *of going*. (我将放弃去意。)

I have a plan *for overcoming* our difficulties. (我有一个计划克服我们的困难。)

We should never neglect the duty *of obeying* our parents.

(我们永不应该忽略服从父母的义务。)

10. 误: He is fond *to hunt*.

正: He is fond *of hunting*.

(他喜欢打猎。)

〔说明〕在有些形容词的后面须先接介词，然后再接动名词，不能接不定词，如 **fond**, **capable**, **equal** 和 **useful** 等，就属于这类形容词。在上面的误句里，在 **fond** 的后面接不定词，违反习惯的用法，所以应该把它改为 **of hunting**。

〔类例〕He is capable *of doing* it. (他能够做这件事情。)

This is equal *to saying* that he is not a fool. (这样就等于说他不是智力障碍者。)

The book is useful in *helping* us to write English correctly.

(这本书有助于我们写正确的英语。)

〔参考〕有些形容词的后面可以接介词再接动名词，也可以接不定词。

He is afraid of dying (. 他怕死。)

He is afraid to die (. 他不敢去死。)

I am delighted at seeing you. (我看到你很高兴。)

I am delighted to see you.

I was surprised at hearing the news. (我听到这个消息觉得惊

I was surprised to hear the news. 奇。)

## 12 名词的数的错误

1. 误: The *branchs* of the trees are waving to and fro.

正: The *branches* of the trees are waving to and fro.

(树枝前后摇晃。)

〔说明〕假使单数名词的词尾是 *s* 或 *x, z, ch, sh*, 变成复数时, 须加 *es*。

如: *ass* (驴) —*asses*

*glass* (玻璃杯) —*glasses*

*inch* (英寸) —*inches*

*brush* (刷子) —*brushes*

*bench* (长凳) —*benches*

*branch* (树枝) —*branches*

*adz* (手斧) —*adzes*

*quiz* (问答的口试) —*quizzes*

(*quiz* 变成复数须先重复 *z* 再加 *es* 可说是一个特别的例子。)

在上面句子里的 *branch* 的语尾是 *ch*, 所以变复数时, 必须在它的后面加 *es*。

〔类例〕*Twelve inches make one foot.* (十二英寸为一英尺。)

*There are many classes in college.* (大学中班级很多。)

*Foxes are cunning animals.* (狐狸是狡猾的动物。)

*Her work is to wash up dishes.* (洗盆碟是她的工作。)



The students have many *quizzes* in a term. (在一学期中, 学生有许多次问答式的考试。)

〔例外〕ch 发音为 [k] 时, 则仅加 s, 如:

monarch (君主) ——monarchs

patriarch (族长) ——patriarchs

stomach (胃) ——stomachs

In old times there were many *monarchs* in Europe. (在古时, 欧洲有许多君主。)

2. 误: *Heros* are worshipped by people.

正: *Heroes* are worshipped by people.

(英雄被人们崇拜。)

〔说明〕假使单数名词的语尾是 o, 而 o 的前面是辅音, 变成复数时, 有一部分必须加 es, 有一部分只需加 s, 有一部分可以加 es, 也可以加 s, 现在把这三种名词的变化举例如下:

a. 加 es 的名词:

mango (芒果) —mangoes

hero (英雄) —heroes

motto (座右铭) —mottoes

negro (黑人) —negroes

potato (马铃薯) —potatoes

tomato (番茄) —tomatoes

volcano (火山) —volcanoes

b. 只加 s 的名词:

piano (钢琴) —pianos

solo (独唱) —solos

two (两个的东西) —twos

zero (零) —zeros

可加 es, 也可以加 s 的名词:

halo (光轮) —haloes or halos

memento (纪念物) —mementoes or mementos

mosquito (蚊) —mosquitoes or mosquitos

假使 o 的前面是元音, 变成复数时, 只要加 s, 如:

bamboo (竹) —bamboos

cuckoo (杜鹃) —cuckoos

curio (珍物) —curios

portfolio (文书夹) —portfolios

embryo (胚) —embryos

在上面的句子里的 hero 的复数是 heroes, 所以应该把 hero 改为 heroes。

〔类例〕In spring, we hear *cuckoos* singing in the forest.

(在春天里, 我们听到杜鹃在树林中唱歌。)

We have a cluster of *bamboos* in the garden. (我们在花园里有竹一丛。)

There are many active *volcanoes* in Japan. (日本有许多活火山。)

I like eating *tomatoes*, *potatoes* and *mangoes*. (我爱吃番茄、番薯和芒果。)

3. 误: The maple *leafs* turn red in autumn.

正: The maple *leaves* turn red in autumn.

(枫叶在秋天变成红色。)

〔说明〕假使单数名词的语尾是 **f** 或 **fe**，变成复数的时候，有一部分这种名词须把 **f** 或 **fe** 改为 **ves**，如

**leaf** (树叶) —**leaves**

**knife** (刀) —**knives**

**half** (一半) —**halves**

**thief** (贼) —**thieves**

**life** (生命) —**lives**

**wife** (妻子) —**wives**

所以上面句子里的 **leafs** 应改为 **leaves**。还有一部分这种名词改变复数时只需加 **s**，如：

**chief** (领袖) —**chiefs**

**handkerchief** (手帕) —**handkerchiefs**

**grief** (悲哀) —**griefs**

**hoof** (蹄) —**hoofs**

**roof** (屋顶) —**roofs**

**gulf** (湾) —**gulfs**

**safe** (保险箱) —**safes**

还有些名词语尾是 **ff** 或 **rf**，变成复数时统加 **s**，如：

**cuff** (袖口) —**cuffs**

**cliff** (悬崖) —**cliffs**

**dwarf** (矮子) —**dwarfs**

**scarf** (围巾) —**scarfs**

**wharf** (码头) —**wharfs** (或 **wharves**)

〔类例〕*Two halves make up the whole.* (两个一半合成整个。)

I bought two dozen *handkerchiefs*. (我买了两打手帕。)

The mountain is abounding *in cliffs*. (这山多悬崖。)

I saw many beautiful *scarfs* in a show-window.

(我在商店的陈列窗里看到许多美丽的围巾。)

4. 误: I told the children many *storys* about fairies.

正: I told the children many *stories* about fairies.

(我讲了许多神仙故事给孩子们听。)

〔说明〕假使单数名词的语尾是 *y* 而 *y* 的前面又是辅音, 变成复数时, 须把它的 *y* 改为 *i* 再加 *es*。如:

*baby* (婴孩) — *babies*

*city* (城) — *cities*

*fly* (苍蝇) — *flies*

*lady* (女士) — *ladies*

*story* (故事, 楼) — *stories*

所以应将上面句子里的 *storys* 改为 *stories*。假使 *y* 前面是元音, 变成复数时, 只需加 *s*。如:

*day* (日子) — *days*

*key* (钥匙) — *keys*

*boy* (孩子) — *boys*

假使语尾是 *quy*, 变成复数时, 须先将 *y* 改为 *i*, 然后再加 *es*。因为 *qu* 的发音是 [kw], 它是二重辅音, 所以还须依照前面的规则把 *y* 变成 *i* 再加 *es*, 如:

*colloquy* (对话) — *colloquies*

*soliloquy* (独语) — *soliloquies*

〔类例〕He killed seven *flies* at a blow. (他一下打死七个苍蝇。)

The *keys* are tied together. (钥匙系在一起。)

There are many *soliloquies* in Hamlet. (在《哈姆雷特》一剧中有许多独白。)

5. 误: The farmer plowed his field with a yoke of *oxes*.

正: The farmer plowed his field with a yoke of *oxen*.

(农夫以一对牛犁田。)

〔说明〕有些名词从单数变成复数时，并不照普通的规则加 *s*。  
如:

child (小孩) —children foot (足) —feet

goose (鹅) —geese louse (虱) —lice

man (人) —men mouse (鼯鼠) —mice

ox (牛) —oxen tooth (齿) —teeth

woman (女人) —women

*ox* 的复数是 *oxen*，所以应将上面句子里的 *oxes* 改为 *oxen*。

〔类例〕Mothers love their *children*. (母亲爱她们的孩子。)

*Mice* have sharp *teeth*. (小鼠有锐利的牙齿。)

The *geese* are eating grass. (鹅在食草。)

6. 误: *Sheeps* are useful animals.

正: *Sheep* are useful animals.

(羊是有用的动物。)

〔说明〕名词中如 *fish*, *deer*, *swine*, *salmon*, *trout*, *corps*, *series*, *species* 等词的单数和复数系同一形式，故它们的复数，不改变形式。*fish* 一词虽还有 *fishes* 的复数形，可是它的意思却不同，它是指各种鱼类的。*sheep* 的复数形也是 *sheep*，所以应该把上面误句里的 *sheeps* 改为 *sheep*。

〔类例〕 We saw many beautiful *deer* in the zoological garden. (我们在动物园中看到许多美丽的鹿。)

I caught several *trout* the other day. (前几天我捉到几条鳟鱼。)

A shepherd tends his *sheep*. (一个牧羊人牧他的羊。)

7. 误: I can see a *bacteria* with the help of a microscope.

正: I can see a *bacterium* with the help of a microscope.

(我用一架显微镜能够看见一个细菌。)

〔说明〕普通在书上所见的 *bacteria* 是 *bacterium* 的复数。在误句中的 a *bacteria* 显然是错的, 所以应该把它改正为 a *bacterium*。这种是外来语的变化, 现在把日常见到的这种外来语和它们的变化略举如下:

拉丁语	
单数	复数
alumna (女校友)	alumnae
alumnus (校友)	alumni
apparatus (器械)	apparatus or apparatuses
appendix (附属品)	appendices or appendixes
axis (轴)	axes
bacterium (细菌)	bacteria
curriculum (课程)	curricula or curriculums
datum (论据)	data
erratum (刊误)	errata
focus (焦点)	foci or focuses

formula (公式)	formulae or formulas
index (指数)	indices
index (索引)	indexes
memorandum (备忘录)	memoranda or memorandums
radius (半径)	radii or radiuses
series (连续)	series
species (种)	species

#### 希腊语

单数	复数
analysis (分析)	analyses
basis (基础)	bases
crisis (危机)	crises
criterion (标准)	criteria or criterions
hypothesis (假设)	hypotheses
phenomenon (现象)	phenomena
synopsis (要略)	synopses
thesis (论文)	theses

#### 法语

单数	复数
beau (纨绔子弟)	beaux or beaus

bureau (局)

bureaux or bureaus

corps (军团)

corps

〔类例〕 We searched the *indexes* in the library for the title of the book.

(我们在图书馆的目录索引里找寻这本书的书名。)

The *synopses* of the plays were well written. (这些戏剧的说明书写得很好。)

The *curriculums* of that college are well adapted to the needs of society.

(那个学院的课程颇适合社会的需要。)

The solar eclipse is a strange *phenomenon*. (日食是一个奇怪的现象。)

The *alumni* will meet this evening. (校友们今晚将相会。)

These *appendixes* are valuable. (这些附录是有价值的。)

8. 误: I bought *two scissors*.

正: I bought *two pair of scissors*.

(我买了两把剪刀。)

〔说明〕名词中如 *gloves, glasses, spectacles, shoes, stockings, trousers, compasses, scissors, tongs* 等词, 指由二部合成的东西, 在英语的习惯上都用复数形。假使要表示它们的数目时, 须用 a pair of。

所以应该将上面句子里的 *two scissors* 改为 *two pair of scissors*。

〔类例〕 I want *a pair of compasses*. (我要一只两脚规。)

I ordered *a pair of new shoes*. (我定做了一双新鞋。)

He has *two pair of glasses*. (他有两副眼镜。)



9. 误: He bought two dozens of eggs.

正: He bought two dozen of eggs

(他买了两打鸡蛋。)

〔说明〕假使在 **dozen** (一打) **score** (二十) **hundred** (百) **thousand** (千) 等数词的前面再加别的数字时, 则 **dozen** 等数词虽是复数也不取复数形, 所以应该把上面句子里的 **two dozens** 改为 **two dozen**。

〔类例〕There were *three hundred of warriors* on a pass over mountains.

(在山上的荒路上有三百战士。)

He invested *three thousand and five hundred of dollars* in shares.

(他在股票上投资三千五百美元。)

I walked *two score of miles*. (我走了四十英里。)

〔参考〕在此等数词前不加数字或加 **many**, **several** 等不定数词时, 则它们仍须加 **s**, 如:

*Scores of trees* were blown down. (数十株树被吹倒。)

There are *several dozens of figs* in the basket. (篮里有几打无花果。)

*Some hundreds of people* live here. (几百人住在此地。)

〔比较〕Some hundred of people live here.

(约一百人住在此地。)

10. 误: The farmer has many *heads of oxen* on his farm.

正: The farmer has many *head of oxen* on his farm.

(农夫在农场上有许多头牛。)

〔说明〕**pair**, **couple**, **yoke** 等表示成对的单词和 **head** 表示计算的单位的词, 假使有别的数字或不定数字在它们的前面时, 通例都

不取复数形态，所以应该把上面句子里的 *many heads* 改为 *many head*。

〔类例〕 *Two yoke of oxen* drew the cart. (两对牛拉车。)

*The hunter kept three couple of hounds.* (猎人养了三对猎犬。)

*She has two pair of gloves.* (她有两双手套。)

〔参考〕① 假使在此等表示数的单位的词前不加数字时则此等词仍可取复数形，如：

*Cattle are counted by heads.* (牛以头计。)

*Oxen are generally sold in yokes.* (牛普通以对出售。)

*Stockings are bought in pairs.* (袜子成双购入。)

② 数词后面接的 *pair* 通例都用单数形，如：*three pair of shoes*，但是现在也有作复数形的如 *Three pairs of shoes, many pairs of trousers.*

③ *couple, head, pair* 等词做普通名词时，若在它们的前面加数字则须加 *s*，如：

*Two heads* are better than one. (集思胜于独断。)

*Ten couples* took the floor. (十对舞伴参加跳舞。)

*There were three happy pairs at the party.* (那次宴会里有三对快乐的夫妇。)

11. 误：*Three peoples* live in the room.

劣：*Three people* live in the room.

佳：*Three persons* live in the room.

(三个人住在室内。)

〔说明〕如 *cattle* (牛) *clergy* (僧侣) *people* (人) *police* (警察) 等无限集合名词普通无复数形。如说 *ten cattle, two clergy, three people, twenty police* 是不好的，应该改成 *ten head of c*

attle, two clergymen, three persons, twenty policemen。因此应该把误句里的 *three peoples* 改为 *three persons*。

〔类例〕 *Two policemen have been sworn in.* (两位警士已宣誓就职。)

*The farmer keeps forty head of cattle.* (农夫养着四十头牛。)

*I met three clergymen on the street.* (我在街上遇见三个牧师。)

〔参考〕 (1) 假使 *people* 作民族解时，它可以加 *s* 成为复数，如：

*There are many peoples in Asia.* (亚洲有许多民族。)

(2) 以不定数 *many, some, several* 等词来形容 *people* 和 *cattle* 是可以的，如 *several people, many cattle, million people, twenty people* 也是常见的。虽然还有作者写 *three people*，究竟是不好的。

12. 误: *Bring me a chalk.*

正: *Bring me a piece of chalk.*

(拿给我一支粉笔。)

比较: *Bring me some chalk.* (给我一些粉笔。)

〔说明〕物质名词如 *chalk* (粉笔)，*meat* (肉)，*paper* (纸)，*soap* (皂)，*bread* (面包) 等词代表物质的全体，故无复数形，如要说到该项物质的一部分，须加单位名词于前面，变成复数时，即将此单位名词改为复数形，所以应将误句里的 *a chalk* 改为 *a piece of chalk*。

〔类例〕 *He bought three pounds of meat.* (他买了三磅肉。)

*Give me a piece of bread.* (给我一片面包。)

*Here are two cakes of soap.* (此地有两块肥皂。)

〔参考〕 (1) *water, silk, ash* 等物质名词用复数形时，则成普通名词，如：*waters*（海），*silks*（绸衣），*ashes*（骨灰，遗体）。

Many ships go down on *the waters*.（许多船只沉没在海中。）

She is dressed in *silks*.（她穿着绸衣。）

His *ashes* are in Westminster Abbey.（他葬在韦士敏斯德教堂。）

(2) *glass, tin, copper* 等物质名词也可以做普通名词用，加 *s* 则成复数，如：

He drank *a glass of* beer.（他喝了一杯啤酒。）

He filled the *glasses* with wine.（他将玻璃杯斟满了酒。）

He cannot read without his *glasses*.（他不戴眼镜不能看书。）

I opened *a tin of* peaches with a tin-opener.（我用开罐刀打开一罐桃子。）

He bought *two tins of* coffee.（他买了两罐咖啡。）

I haven't *a copper* in my pocket.（我袋内没有一个铜板。）

He gave the beggar *a few coppers*.（他给乞丐几个铜币。）

13. 误：There were many *looker-ons* on the scene of the accident.

正：There were many *lookers-on* on the scene of the accident.

（在出事的地点有许多旁观者。）

〔说明〕复合名词是由数字组合而成，假使要把它变成复数，须将 *s* 加在主要的词上，如 *looker-on* 的复数是 *lookers-on*，所以应将误句里的 *looker-ons* 改为 *lookers-on*。下面是常见的复合名词：

单数

复数

commander-in-chief (大元帅)

commanders-in-chief

son-in-law (婿)

sons-in-law

passer-by (路人)

passers-by

looker-on (旁观者)

lookers-on

man-of-war (军舰)

men-of-war

runner-up (竞赛中的第二名)

runners-up (第二名、第三名等)

maid-servant (女仆)

maid-servants

〔类例〕 She has many *maid-servants*. (她有许多女仆。)

There are two *men-of-war* on the sea. (海上有两条军舰。)

A dog barked at the *passers-by*. (一只狗向路人吠着。)

In the race, Mr. Chang was the first and Mr. Wang was the *runner-up*.

(在这次竞赛里, 张君是第一名, 王君是第二名。)

In the race, Mr. Chang was the winner, the *runners-up* were as follows. Mr. Lee, second place, Mr. King, third place.

(在这次竞赛里, 张君是优胜者, 其他的名次列举如下: 李君第二名, 金君第三名。)

〔参考〕① *man-servant* (男仆) 的复数是 *men-servants*, 这是一个特别的例子。

The lord kept many *men-servants* in his manor-house.

(这位贵族在庄园里拥有许多男仆。)

② 如 **go-between** (中间人) 和 **forget-me-not** (毋忘草) 虽然也是复合名词, 它们的变复数的方法却仍和普通的名词一样, 加 **s** 于词尾。

**She made a bunch of forget-me-nots.** (她做一束毋忘我花。)

**The go-betweens played him a mean trick.** (中间人向他施了卑鄙的手段。)

③ **hogshead** (大桶) 很像复数却是单数, 它的复数是 **hogsheads**。

**They bought two hogsheads of wine.** (他们买了两大桶的葡萄酒。)

14. 误: **He is an English.**

正: **He is an Englishman.**

(他是一个英国人。)

〔说明〕**the English** 指全体的英国人, 假使要说一个英国人的时候, 就应该用 **an Englishman**。所以应该把误句里的 **an English** 改为 **an Englishman**。现较大的国家的人民的单数复数和全体的变化列表于下:

单数	复数	全体
<b>Chinese</b> (中国人)	<b>Chinese</b>	<b>the Chinese</b>
<b>Englishman</b> (英人)	<b>Englishmen</b>	<b>the English</b>
<b>American</b> (美人)	<b>Americans</b>	<b>the Americans</b>
<b>Frenchman</b> (法人)	<b>Frenchmen</b>	<b>the French</b>
<b>Russian</b> (俄人)	<b>Russians</b>	<b>the Russians</b>

Italian (意大利人)	Italians	the Italians
Japanese (日本人)	Japanese	the Japanese
German (德人)	Germans	the Germans
Indian (印人)	Indians	the Indians
Korean (韩国人)	Koreans	the Koreans
Portugese (葡萄牙人)	Portugese	the Portugese
Spaniard (西班牙人)	Spaniards	the Spanish
<div> Dutch  man  Hollan  der </div> (荷兰人)	Dutchmen Hollanders	the Dutch the Hollanders
Greek (希腊人)	Greeks	the Greeks
Swiss (瑞士人)	Swiss	the Swiss
Dane (丹麦人)	Danes	the Danes
Swede (瑞典人)	Swedes	the Swedes
Norwegian (挪威人)	Norwegians	the Norwegians
Egyptian (埃及人)	Egyptians	the Egyptians
Turk (土耳其人)	Turks	the Turks

15. 误: The passenger has left two *baggages* in the train.

正: The passenger has left two *pieces of baggage* in the train.

(旅客在火车上遗忘下两件行李。)

〔说明〕名词中如 *furniture* (家具), *baggage* (行李), *clothing* (衣服), *food* (食物), *merchandise* (商品) 等词的用法完全和物质名词一样, 无复数形, 在指一般事物的时候, 它们的形态仍为单数, 它们的前面也不能用不定冠词。欲加上数的观念时, 须用 *a(n) article of*, *two pieces of* 等量的形容短语, 所以应将误句里的 *two baggages* 改为 *two pieces of baggage*。

〔类例〕A wardrobe is *a piece of furniture*. (衣橱是一件家具。)

She has bought *a new article of clothing*. (她已买了一件新衣服。)

Man needs *various kinds of food*. (人需要各种的食物。)

*Two articles of merchandise* were lost in the store. (在楼房里遗失了两件商品。)

16. 误: He gave me many *good advises*.

正: He gave me many *pieces of good advice*.

(他给我许多好的劝告。)

〔说明〕抽象名词如 *advice* (劝告), *information* (消息), *luck* (运气) 没有复数形, 并且不能把不定冠词加在它们的前面。如要加以数的观念时, 须加 *a stroke of*, *two pieces of* 等表量的短语于它们的前面, 如 *a stroke of luck*, *two pieces of information*, *many pieces of advice* 等, 所以应该把上面句子里的 *many advises* 改为 *many pieces of advice*。

〔类例〕What *a stroke of luck* I have! (我有多么好的运气!)

These are *two useful pieces of information*. (那是两条有用的消息。)



Let me give you *a piece of advice*. (让我给你一个劝告。)

〔参考〕*advice* 做消息、通知或报告解时有复数形，如：

We have *advices* to the effect that the price of copper is declining.

(我们得到铜价下跌的通知。)

From the latest *advices* from Geneva, I learn that Austria will become an independent nation on May 15.

(从日内瓦最近的通讯，我知道奥国将于五月十五日成为独立的国家。)

17. 误：His *parent* are both living.

正：His *parents* are both living.

(他的父母都健在。)

〔说明〕*parent* (父母中的一个)，*twin* (双生子里的一个)，*fellow* (一双东西中的一个) 等名词是指两个中的一个，若要指两个时，必须用它们的复数形，如 *parents* 才指双亲，*twins* 才指双生子，*fellows* 才指一对东西的两个，所以应该把语句中的 *parent* 改为 *parents*。

〔类例〕He and his *twin* looked so much alike that no one could tell them apart.

(他和他的孪生兄弟是如此相像，没有人能够区别他们。)

The *twins* are as like as two peas. (这对双生子很相像。)

The two shoes are not *fellows*. (这两只鞋不是一对。)

Where is the *fellow* of this glove? (还有一只手套在何处？)

Their father had died and their remaining *parent* brought up them.

(他们的父亲死了，他们的母亲把他们养育大。)

We should obey our *parents*. (我们应该服从父母。)

18. 误: The children played on the *grasses*.

正: The children played on the *grass*.

(孩子们在草地上玩。)

〔说明〕像 *grass* (草), *hair* (头发), *beard* (须), *sand* (沙) 虽然可数, 但在习惯上不用复数, 所以应该把误句里的 *grasses* 改为 *grass*。

〔类例〕He picked up a handful of *sand*. (他抓了一把沙。)

She has her *hair* cut in Hepburn's style. (她把她的头发剪成赫本式。)

He trimmed his *beard*. (他梳他的胡须。)

〔参考〕(1) 假使我们讲到不同种的草时, 可以用 *grass* 的复数形 *grasses*, 如:

There are various *grasses* growing in the garden. (园中生长各种的草。)

(2) *hair* 在指白发及 *to split hairs* 一个成语中可用复数, 如:

He often splits *hairs*. (他常吹毛求疵。)

(3) *sand* 作沙丘、沙滩解时可用复数, 如:

Some boys are playing on the *sands*. (几个孩子正在沙滩上游戏。)

(4) *whiskers* (髯) 因生于脸的两颊, 故有两处髯, 习惯上可用复数。

His *whiskers* were long. (他的髯长了。)

19. 误: We set out on a *five-miles* journey.

正: We set out on a *five-mile* journey.

(我们出发作五英里的旅行。)

〔说明〕数字和名词可以组成复合形容词，它们的中间须加用连接号（hyphen），在复合形容词中的名词，常用单数，所以应该把误句中的 *five-miles* 改为 *five-mile*。

〔类例〕They concluded a *three-year* contract.（他们订了一个三年的契约。）

I gave him a *five-dollar* note.（我给他一张五元的钞票。）

We took a *five-minute* walk after supper.（晚饭后我们散步五分钟。）

20. 误：We played *billiard*.

正：We played *billiards*.

（我们打了弹子。）

〔说明〕有许多名词如 *outskirts*（郊外），*oats*（燕麦），*billiards*（弹子戏），*heavens*（天空），*premises*（住宅），*headquarters*（总部），*thanks*（多谢），*tidings*（消息），*news*（消息），*clothes*（衣服），*circumstances*（环境）等名词常用复数形，所以应该将误句里的 *billiard* 改为 *billiards*。

〔类例〕He lived on the *outskirts* of the city.（他住在郊外。）

Having sowed his wild *oats* in Paris as a young student, James came back very much matured and ready to settle down.

（詹姆士在巴黎求学时，过着放荡的生活，他回来时已极成熟准备安居下来。）

Many *thanks* for your invitation.（多谢你的邀请。）

The messenger brought *tidings* from the battlefront.（使者从前线带来消息。）

The *news* is not true.（这消息是不确实的。）

His *clothes* are shabby.（他的衣服已破旧。）

It depends on *circumstances*. (这要看情形而决定。)

The lark sings in the *heavens*. (云雀在天空中歌唱。)

He sleeps on the *premises*. (他睡在宅内。)

He was sent to the *Garrison Headquarters*. (他被送到警备司令部。)

## 13 名词的性的错误

1. 误: Mrs. Smith is the *host* of the International Hotel.

正: Mrs. Smith is the *hostess* of the International Hotel.

(史密斯太太是国际旅馆的女主人。)

〔说明〕有许多英文名词有性的区别,不能混用,如 **host** 指男主人,而 **hostess** 指女主人,所以应该把误句里的 **host** 改为 **hostess**。如 **host** (男主人) 加 **ess** 便成 **hostess** (女主人),这种变化是有规则的,现在把常见的这种名词的变化列表如下:

雄性	雌性	雄性	雌性
<b>author</b> (作者)	<b>authoress</b> (女作者)	<b>host</b> (男主人)	<b>hostess</b> (女主人)
<b>heir</b> (继承者)	<b>heiress</b> (女继承者)	<b>god</b> (神)	<b>goddess</b> (女神)
<b>patron</b> (赞助者)	<b>patroness</b> (女赞助者)	<b>lion</b> (雄狮)	<b>lioness</b> (雌狮)

〔类例〕Helen Keller is a famous *authoress*. (凯勒是一位著名的美国女作家。)

George Sand is the *patroness* of music in her time. (乔治·桑是她那时代的音乐赞助者。)

As Mr. Smith was away, Tom, the eldest son acted as *host* at the dinner party.

(当史密斯离开时,他的长子汤姆在宴会里当主人。)

She is the only *heiress* to the property of her father. (她是她的父亲的财产的唯一继承人。)

Ma-Tsu is the Chinese *goddess* of the sea. (妈祖是中国司海的女神。)

A *lioness* has no mane. (雌狮子没有鬃毛。)

〔参考〕现代英语已有一种趋势，不过于重视词的性的区别，如 **Helen Keller is an American author.** 已被认为是无误的句子，即如 **She is the only heir to the property of her father.** 也被认为是通得过去的句子。

2. 误: He is a *witch*.

正: He is a *wizard*.

(他是一个男巫。)

〔说明〕**witch** 指巫女，**wizard** 才指男巫，所以应该把误句中的 **witch** 改为 **wizard**。像这种改变是没有规则的，现在我们把常见的这种名词的不规则变化列表如下：

雄性

uncle (叔父，舅父)

nephew (侄，甥)

gentleman (先生)

sir (先生)

bachelor (独身男子)

widower (鳏夫)

bridegroom (新郎)

wizard (男巫)

雌性

aunt (叔母，舅母)

niece (侄女，甥女)

lady (女士)

madam (对女人的尊称)

spinster (未婚女)

widow (寡妇)

bride (新娘)

witch (女巫)

horse (牡马)	mare (牝马)
ox (牡牛)	cow (牝牛)
cock (雄鸡)	hen (雌鸡)
gander (雄鹅)	goose (雌鹅)
drake (雄鸭)	duck (雌鸭)
stag (牡鹿)	hind (牝鹿)
hero (英雄, 男主角)	heroine (女主角)
monk (僧)	nun (尼)

〔类例〕 Romeo and Juliet are *the hero and heroine* of the play.

(罗密欧和朱丽叶是剧中的男主角和女主角。)

There were many *widows and widowers* after the war. (战后有许多寡妇和鳏夫。)

The *cows* are milking well now. (牛现产乳甚佳。)

I keep *geese and ducks* for their laying eggs. (我养鹅鸭为了生蛋。)

3. 误: Miss Mary is his *fiance*.

正: Miss Mary is his *fiancee*.

(玛丽小姐是他的未婚妻。)

〔说明〕 **fiance** 是从法文转来的词, 是指未婚夫的, **fiancee** 才指未婚妻, 所以应将误句中的 **fiance** 改为 **fiancee**。这种外来词因为阳性词和阴性词的差别很小, 很容易疏忽过去, 现在把常见的而最容易弄错的几个词列表于下:

阳性

阴性

blond (金发男人)

blonde (金发女人)

brunet (黑发男人)

brunette (黑发女人)

fiance (未婚夫)

fiancee (未婚妻)

Mr. James is a *brunet* but his wife is a *blonde*.

(詹姆士先生是一位黑发男人，但是他的太太是一位金发女子。)

Mrs. Smith is a *brunette* but her husband is a *blond*.

(史密斯太太是一位黑发女子，但是她的丈夫是一位金发男子。)

Her *fiance* is my schoolmate. (她的未婚夫是我的同学。)



## 14 代词性的错误

1. 误: Mary has completed *his* course in the middle school.  
1.

正: Mary has completed *her* course in the middle school.

(玛丽已读毕她的中学全部的课程。)

〔说明〕玛丽是女孩的名字,指她的代词应该是阴性的,所以应该把 *his* 改为 *her*。

〔类例〕My mother likes to do *her* own work, when she is well.

(我的母亲,当她身体好时,欢喜做她自己的工作。)

*She* with *her* husband called on us yesterday. (昨天她和她的丈夫一同来看我们。)

Do you think she can do this work *herself*? (你以为她能自己做这工作吗?)

2. 误: An old country like China can be proud of *its* history and civilization.

正: An old country like China can be proud of *her* history and civilization.

(像中国那样的古国才能以历史文化为荣。)

〔说明〕在英文中,国家、大船和飞机等名词常被看作阴性,指这些名词的代词自然也常是阴性,尤其从政治观点指国家时必须用阴性的代词 *she*,所以应该把误句中的 *its* 改为 *her*。

〔类例〕China has taken great strides in *her* industries.  
(中国在她的各项工业上已有很大的进步。)

The Empress of Asia was on *her* maiden voyage. (亚洲皇后号做她首次航行。)

Sister Ann, soaring away over the city, set on *her* course for Tokyo.

(安妹号飞机飞临城的上空后，驰向东京。)

〔参考〕关于指国家的代词，若从地理上去观察常用 *it* 但是仍可以用 *she*。

Switzerland is famous for *its* (or *her*) scenery. (瑞士以景色著名。)

## 15 代词数的错误

1. 误: Every student should do *their* own home task.

正: Every student should do *his* own home task.

(每个学生应该做他自己的家中作业。)

〔说明〕主语是单数时，指主语的代词也应该是单数，主语是复数时，指主语的代词也应该是复数；换一句话说代词的数一定要和它所指的名词的数一致。在上面的句子里，**every student** 的意思虽然是“每个学生”或“凡学生”，但是它仍旧是单数，指它的代词自然也应该是单数，所以应该把误句里的 **their** 改为 **his**。

〔类例〕I like to receive letters but do not like to write *the m.*

(我喜欢收到信，但是我不喜欢写信。)

Each of them has *his* own point of view. (每个人有他自己的见解。)

Somebody has left *his* books there. (某人把书忘掉在那里了。)

2. 误: The committee differ in *its* opinion.

正: The committee differ in *their* opinion.

(委员们的意见不一致。)

〔说明〕集合名词表示团体时，指它的代词应该是单数，假使它表示团体中各个的分子时，则指它的代词必须是复数。在上面句子中的 **committee** 作委员解，所以它的后面应该用复数代词 **they** 的所有格 **their**。

〔类例〕 The family were eating *their* supper. (这家人正在用晚饭。)

The committee made *its* report. (委员会作报告。)

A civilized people must do *its* own duty. (文明的民族必须尽其自己的责任。)

Educated people must do *their* own duty. (受过教育的人们必须尽他们自己的责任。)

3. 误: Neither John nor his brother has learned *their* lesson.

正: Neither John nor his brother has learned *his* lesson.

(约翰和他的兄弟都不曾读过功课。)

〔说明〕两个或两个以上的单数名词被 **or** 或 **nor** 所连接时, 则所随的代词应指列于最后的一人或一物, 所以它也应该是单数, 假使其中有一复数名词, 则此复数名词须列于最后, 并且在它的后面须用复数代词。在上面的句子里两个主语都是单数, 并且被 **nor** 所连接, 所以应该把后面所随的 **their** 改为 **his**。

〔类例〕 Neither the man nor his son has left *his* home. (他们父子都没有离开家。)

Mary or John will lend us *his* book. (玛丽和约翰都愿把书借给我们。)

Neither the captain nor the sailors will desert *their* ship. (船长和水手都不愿离开船。)

4. 误: The novelist and poet is proud of *their* works.

正: The novelist and poet is proud of *his* works.

(这位小说家兼诗人以他的著作自负。)

〔说明〕假使两个名词由 **and** 所联结, 并且只在第一个名词前加冠词, 这两个名词只表示一个人或物, 则后面所随的指这人或物的代词应该是单数。上面句中的 **the novelist and poet** 是指一个兼诗人的小说家, 故指该人或物的代词应该是单数。

〔类例〕 The secretary and treasurer has finished *his* work. (这位文书兼会计已做完他的工作。)

My old friend and classmate is studying *his* lessons. (我的学友正在研习他的功课。)

The general and scholar addressed *his* subordinates on the plan.

(这位儒将向他的部下讲这计划。)

5. 误: Every boy and every girl prepared *their* lessons.

正: Every boy and every girl prepared *his* lessons.

(每个男孩和女孩都准备好他的功课。)

〔说明〕假使主语是两个或两个以上的名词由 **and** 连接而成并且各名词有 **each**, **every** 或 **no** 等词形容, 后面所用的指这复合主语的代词应该是单数。上面句子里的复合主语是 **every boy and every girl**, 指它的代词必须是单数, 所以应该把 **their** 改为 **his**。

〔类例〕 Every gentleman and every lady took *his* seat. (每位先生每位女士都就座了。)

Each man and each woman should do *his* part for *his* home and country.

(每个男人每个女人都应为国家为家庭尽其本分。)

There is no bird and no insect without *its* mission in life.

(不论昆虫和飞鸟都有它的生存的使命。)

6. 误: The two sisters love *one another*.

正: The two sisters love *each other*.

(两位姐妹互相亲爱。)

〔说明〕 **each other** 和 **one another** 的意思虽然都是互相, 但是有许多语法家主张 **each other** 须用来指二人或二物, 而 **one another** 却用来指三个或三个以上的人或物, 所以应该把误句中 **one another** 改为 **each other**。

〔类例〕 The two brothers quarrel with *each other*. (两位兄弟互相争吵。)

They gave presents to *one another* at Christmas. (圣诞节时，他们互相送礼品。)

Fifty students competed with *one another* for a single scholarship.

(五十个学生互争一项奖学金。)

〔参考〕有许多语法家主张 *each other* 和 *one another* 是可以混用的，如英国大语法家福祿 (Fowler) 在他的《现代英文用法》(*Modern English Usage*) 中也说这种区别没有历史的根据。在古英文里有 *either other* 一短语用来指二人或二物，现在已没有人用它了，但是有许多语法家主张严格地加以区别，关于这点读者应该知道的。

7. 误: *None of my two sisters is here.*

正: *Neither of my two sisters is here.*

(我的两个姐妹都没有在此地。)

〔说明〕 *either* 或 *neither* 都被用来指二人或二物，假使要指三个或三个以上的人或物则须用 *any* 或 *none*。在上面的句子里，因为要指两个姐妹，所以应该用 *neither*。

〔类例〕 *Neither of the two books is of any use to me.* (这两本书对于我一本都没有用。)

Do you know *any* of these books? (你在这些书中晓得几本吗?)

*Either of the two boys may go.* (两个孩子都可以去。)

*None of my lost books were found.* (我所遗失的书一本也没有找到。)

8. 误: I have a new dictionary and several old *one*.

正: I have a new dictionary and several old *ones*.

(我有一本新字典和几本旧字典。)

〔说明〕 **one** 可以做代词用，它所指的人或物和前面所提到的人或物不是同一的，却是同类的，它的用法和普通的名词一样指复数的东西时，须加 **s**，所以应该把误句里的 **one** 改为 **ones**。

〔类例〕 **Birds love their young ones.** (鸟喜欢它们的小鸟。)

**She kept three black cats and two white ones.** (她养了三只黑猫和两只白猫。)

**The boy has three balls; a red one and two white ones.**

(这个孩子有三个球，一个红的，两个白的。)

9. 误: **One of the three books is the Bible, but the other are novel.**

正: **One of the three books is the Bible, but the others are novels.**

(三本书中，一本是圣经，别两本却是小说。)

〔说明〕 **one** 可以表示人或物中的某一个，**the other** 可以表示余下来的一个，假使余下来的人或物不止一个时，则须用 **the others** 来表示它。上面的句子叙述有三本书，其中一本是圣经，其余的两本须用 **the others** 来指明，所以应该把误句里的 **the other** 改为 **the others**。

〔类例〕 **Have you any other?** (你还有别一个吗?)

**You should think of others.** (你应该顾虑到别人。)

**One or other of us will be there.** (我们中会有一个人到那里去。)

10. 误: **The mountains of Asia are higher than that of America.**

正: **The mountains of Asia are higher than those of America.**

(亚洲的山比美洲的山高。)

〔说明〕 **that** 只能代替单数的名词，若要代替复数的名词必须用 **those**。在上面句子里的 **mountains** 是复数的，所以应该用复数的代词 **those** 来代替它。

〔类例〕 The air of mountains is much cooler than *that* of lowlands.

(山上的空气比低地的空气凉得多。)

The customs of North China are different from *those* of the South.

(中国北部的风俗和南方的不同。)

I prefer the style of Carlyle to *that* of Emerson. (我宁爱卡莱尔的文体而不爱爱默生的。)

11. 误: Many a student passed *their* examinations with success.

正: Many a student passed *his* examinations with success.

(许多学生考试成绩很好。)

〔说明〕 **many a** 是一个成语，它的后面应该接单数的名词；假使主语受 **many a** 形容时，它的后面不但应该接单数的动词，而且连指它的代词都应该是单数的，所以应该把误句里的 **their** 改为 **his**。

〔类例〕 Many a soldier fought for *his* country. (许多士兵为祖国作战。)

Many a student goes in for *his* examination. (许多学生应试。)

Many a young man fought *his* way in the world. (许多青年在世界上奋斗出他们的生路来。)



## 16 代词位的错误

1. 误: It is *me* that have done this work.

正: It is *I* that have done this work.

(这件事是我做的。)

〔说明〕假使代词放在连系动词 **verb to be** 的后面指主语, 它被叫作谓语主语, 它须在主位, 所以应该把误句里的 **me** 改为 **I**。

〔类例〕It is not *I*, who am to blame. (我不应受责。)

It was *we*, to whom he told it. (他把这事告诉我们。)

The man who spoke was *he*. (讲话的人是他。)

〔参考〕英人在口语中都说 It is **me**. 虽然不合语法却不能算错的。

2. 误: I have no friend but *he*.

正: I have no friend but *him*.

(除他以外, 我没有别的朋友。)

〔说明〕介词的宾语都应该是宾位, 上面句子里的 **but** 是介词, 它的宾语应该是 **him**, 所以应该把 **he** 改为 **him**。

〔类例〕He sat beside *her*. (他坐在她的旁边。)

All were present but *him*. (除了他以外, 都到了。)

You can depend upon *me*. (你可以信任我。)

3. 误: He is taller than *me*.

正: He is taller than *I*.

(他比我高。)

〔说明〕假使代词接在连词 **than** 和 **as** 的后面，它的位完全要看语句的意思而决定，上面的句子是 **He is taller than I am.** 的省略句子，所以应该把 **me** 改成 **I**。但是连词的后面也可以接宾格的代词这是因为把从句中的主语和动词省去的缘故，如

**My mother loves my sister better than me. = My mother loves my sister than she loves me.**

（母亲爱我的妹妹较甚于爱我。）

**He works harder than she.**（他比她工作努力。）

**He writes better than we.**（他比我们写得好。）

**He helps you as well as I.**（他帮助你像我帮助你一样。）

**He helps you as well as me.**（他帮助你像他帮助我一样。）

4. 误：**We believed the actor to be he.**

正：**We believed the actor to be him.**

（我们相信这个戏子就是他。）

〔说明〕在上面的句子里，**actor** 是它下面的不定词的主语，凡有主语的不定词的补足语必须是宾格的，所以应该把误句里的 **he** 改为 **him**。

〔类例〕**In the darkness mother supposed John to be me.**  
（在黑暗中母亲以为约翰是我。）

**Do you take me to be him?**（你把我当作他吗？）

**We imagine the robbers to be them.**（我们以为强盗就是他们。）

5. 误：**In the darkness John was supposed to be me.**

正：**In the darkness John was supposed to be I.**

（在黑暗中，约翰被人当作我。）

〔说明〕假使一个不定词没有主语，它的补足语应该是主格的。在上面的句子里的不定词 **to be** 没有主语，它的补足语必须是主格

的，所以应该把误句里的 *me* 改为 *I*。

〔类例〕 *Her sister was thought to be she.* (她的妹妹被别人当作她。)

*It seems to be he.* (这似乎是他。)

*I should like to be he.* (我高兴是他。)

6. 误: *The two of us, John and me, went by train.*

正: *The two of us, John and I, went by train.*

(我们中间的两个人，约翰和我坐火车去。)

〔说明〕同位语的格要和它同位的词的格一样，在上面的句子里 *The two* 是主语，它的同位语 *John and I* 也应该是主格，所以应该把误句里的 *me* 改为 *I*。

*Our teacher will punish us, you and me.* (我们的先生将处罚你和我。)

像上面的例句中，*us* 是宾格，所以它的同位语 *you and me*，也应该是宾格的。

〔类例〕 *Mr. Chang invited us, you and me, to a conversation.* (张先生邀你和我去参加座谈会。)

*We, you and I, should help him.* (你和我应该帮助他。)

*Mrs. John gave her friends, Mary and me, a tea party.*

(约翰太太为她的朋友玛丽和我举行一个茶会。)

## 17 代词所有格的错误

1. 误: One hates his enemies and loves *his* friends.

正: One hates one's enemies and loves *one's* friends.

(任何人恨他的敌人, 爱他的友人。)

〔说明〕不定代词 **one** 不特别指其一个人而是指一般人时, 在它的后面所跟的代词所有格须是 **one's**, 所以应该把误句里的 **his** 改为 **one's**。

〔类例〕One must be careful of *one's* health, especially when *one* is working hard.

(任何人必须留心他的健康, 尤其当他努力工作时。)

One should be careful in choosing *one's* associates. (一个人在选择朋友时应当留意。)

One should obey *one's* parents. (凡人应该服从他的父母。)

〔参考〕在美语中 **one** 的后面可以任意接 **his**, 如:

One should obey *one's* parents. (英语)

One should obey *his* parents. (美语)

2. 误: One hates *one's* enemies and another forgives them.

正: One hates *his* enemies and another forgives them.

(一个人恨他的敌人, 别一个人原谅他们。)

〔说明〕在上面句子里的 **one** 是 **one of them**, 它的意思是比较固定的, 它的后面须跟代词所有格 **his**, 所以应该把误句里的 **one's** 改为 **his**。

〔类例〕 One of the men *lost* his hat. (人们中有一个人失掉了他的帽子。)

One of my brothers often neglects *his* duties. (我有一个兄弟常疏忽他的职务。)

One of his sisters devoted *her* life to music. (他有一个姐妹专攻音乐。)

3. 误: No one should neglect *one's* duties.

正: No one should neglect *his* duties.

(一个人不应该疏忽他的义务。)

〔说明〕在 *anyone, everyone, no one, some one* 等不定代词之后须跟代词所有格 *his*, 所以应该把误句里 *no one* 后面所跟的 *one's* 改为 *his*。

〔类例〕 Any one knows *his* own name. (任何人知道他自己的名字。)

Every one should obey *his* parents. (每个人应该服从他的父母。)

Someone has left *his* book here. (有人把书遗忘在此地了。)

## 18 代词太多的错误

1. 误: Boys and girls who are honest and brave, *they* are worthy of respect.

正: Boys and girls, who are honest and brave, are worthy of respect.

(诚实和勇敢的男女孩子是很值得尊敬的。)

〔说明〕在误句里 Boys and girls 是主语, who are honest and brave 是形容主语的形容从句, are 是动词, they 在句子里没有地位, 是多余的, 所以应该把它删去。

〔类例〕The boy whom you saw is my cousin. (你看到的那个孩子是我的表兄弟。)

Students whom some teachers would call 'naughty' are often very clever.

(被某些先生叫作顽皮的学生常是极聪明的。)

A boy who is always talking can neither learn nor work.

(常讲话的孩子不但不能学习也不能工作。)

## 19 代词的错用

1. 误: One does well what *he* likes to do.

正: One does well what *one* likes to do.

(一个人对于喜欢做的事情是做得好的。)

〔说明〕不定代词 **one** 指任何人时它的后面须跟不定代词 **one**, 不应该跟 **he**, 所以应该把误句里的 **he** 改为 **one**。

〔类例〕If *one* fell, *one* would be hurt badly. (假使一个人跌倒, 他会受伤得很厉害。)

*One* never knows when *one* may be in need of a faithful friend.

(一个人永不知道什么时候会需要一个忠实的朋友。)

*One* must be careful of what *one* wants to say. (一个人应该注意他所要讲的话。)

2. 误: A house built of brick lasts longer than *that* of wood.

正: A house built of brick lasts longer than *one* of wood.

(砖建的房屋要比木建的房屋持久。)

〔说明〕如在 *The cost of silver is less than that of gold.* 一句中, **that**= **the cost**, **that** 是指一定的价格, 因此 **that** 只能代替一个指定的东西。假使要代替一个不完全指定的东西时, 须用 **one**, 所以应该把误句里的 **that** 改成 **one**。

〔类例〕A coat made of khaki costs less than *one* made of gabardine.

(卡其布做的上装较加布丁所做的要便宜。)

I prefer a view in the country to *one* in a city. (我宁爱乡间的景色，不爱城中的景色。)

This is an essay on morals rather than *one* on education.

(与其说这是一篇论教育的文章不如说这是一篇论道德的文章。)

〔参考〕看上面的类例，我们可以明白代替 **a...**要用 **one**，假使代替 **the...**须用 **that**，下面便是用 **that** 的例句：

I prefer the climate of Tainan to *that* of the Pescadores.

(我宁爱台南的气候，不爱澎湖的气候。)

The study of idiom is as important as *that* of Grammar.

(学习成语是和学习语法一样重要的。)



## 20 关系代词的格的错误

1. 误: The girl *who* you saw yesterday is my cousin.

正: The girl *whom* you saw yesterday is my cousin.

(昨天你看到的那个女孩子是我的表妹。)

〔说明〕关系代词的格和它的先行词没有关系，它的格的决定，要看它在从句里的用法而定，在主格时用 **who**，在宾格时用 **whom**。在上面句子里的关系代词在从句里是 **saw** 的宾语，所以应该把误句里的 **who** 改为 **whom**。

〔类例〕Persons *who* are quarrelsome are despised. (好争的人是轻蔑的。)

You are the person *whom* I wish to see. (你是我希望要看的人。)

The boy *who* brought you the letter is my brother. (带给你信的那个孩子是我的兄弟。)

2. 误: Master Henry is the boy *whom*, everyone thinks, will win the scholarship.

正: Master Henry is the boy *who*, everyone thinks, will win the scholarship.

(亨利君是每人以为会得奖学金的孩子。)

〔说明〕关系代词的格不受 I believe, they said, we thought, I imagined 等插入短句的影响，在上面的句子里 everyone thinks 是插入短句，因此它和它的前面的关系代词的格没有关系，在 boy 后所用的关系代词是动词 will win 的主语，所以应该把误句里的 **whom** 改为 **who**。

〔类例〕 The workmen, *who*, we believed, were contented and went on a strike.

（我们以为满足的工人继续罢工。）

He saw the doctor *who*, they said, carried out the operation so successfully.

（他看到那位医生，据他们说，他是如此成功地完成手术。）

This is the student *who*, I imagined, would have been successful.

（这是我以为会成功的学生。）

3. 误：The captain asked *whomever* dared to join the expedition.

正：The captain asked *whoever* dared to join the expedition.

（队长问谁敢参加远征队。）

〔说明〕复合关系代词的格要看它在从句里的用法而决定，它的格的决定绝不受在它前面的动词的影响。上面句子里的复合关系代词是动词 **dared** 的主语，所以应该把误句里的 **whomever** 改为 **whoever**。

〔类例〕 I will reward *whoever* can solve this problem. （我将奖赏任何能解答这个问题的人。）

You may invite *whomever* you like. （你可以邀请任何你喜欢的人）。

## 21 关系代词 *that* *which* 和 *who* 间的错用

1. 误: His father, *that* is in Hongkong, is coming home next week.

正: His father, *who* is in Hongkong, is coming home next week.

(他的父亲在香港, 将于下星期回家。)

〔说明〕关系代词 *that* 有限定性, 在它的前面不能有逗点, 如: In the class, there were many students *that* passed the examination. (在全班中, 有许多学生考试及格。) *who* 的前面加逗点是表示说明性的或继续性的, 如: In the class, there were many students, *who* passed the examination. (这班有许多学生, 他们考试都及格了。) 在上面的句子里, 父亲只有一个, 不必用限定性的 *that*, 除非他有两个父亲, 才能用限定性的 *that*, 所以应该把误句里的 *that* 改成 *who*。

〔类例〕I lived with Mr. Chang, *who* taught me English.  
(我和张先生同住, 他教我英文。)

I met a student, *who* handed me this notebook. (我遇到一个学生, 他交给我这本笔记簿。)

I wrote to your brother, *who* replied that you had arrived.

(我写信给你的兄弟, 他回信说你已回来了。)

比  
较:

In this class, the students *that* were present numbered fifty.

(这班出席的学生共有五十个。)(有些没有出席)

In this class, the students, *who* were present, numbered fifty.

(这班学生都出席了, 共有五十个。)

比较:	<p>His sister that lives in Paris can speak French fluently.          (他那住在巴黎的姐姐能讲流利的法文。)(他最少有两位姐妹)</p> <p>His sister, who lives in Paris, can speak French fluently.          (他的姐姐住在巴黎能够讲流利的法语。)(他只有一个姐妹)</p>
-----	---

2. 误: Last night, I received his letter, *that* I have forgotten to bring here.

正: Last night, I received his letter, *which* I have forgotten to bring here.

(昨夜收到他的信,我忘记把它带来了。)

〔说明〕关系代词 **that** 有限定性,在它的前面不能用逗点,如: In my bookcase, there are many books *that* are hard to read. (在我的书柜内的全部书里,有许多书是难读的。) **which** 前面加逗点是表示说明性的或继续性的,如: In my bookcase, there are many books *which* are hard to read. (我的书柜里有许多书,它们都是很难读的。)在上面的句子里,在 **letter** 的后面有逗点表示后面所跟的从句是说明性的,或继续性的,并非限定性的,因此须用 **which**,不应用 **that**,所以应该把误句里的 **that** 改成 **which**。

〔类例〕I will lend you this novel, *which* is both easy and interesting.

(我要把这本小说借给你,因为它既容易又有趣。)

Sun Moon Lake, *which* lies 760 meters above the sea level, is one of the most noted scenic spots in Formosa.

(日月潭高于海平面760米,是台湾最有名的风景区中的一个。)

比较:	<p>Mr. Wang has two houses that are built of brick.</p>
-----	---

(王先生有两所砖造的房子。)(他应该还有用别的材料所造的)

Mr. Wang has two houses, which are built of brick.

(王先生有两所房子都是用砖造的。)(他只有两所房子)

比  
较:

Each made a list of books that had influenced him.

(每个人写下一张对于他有影响的的书的书目来。)

I always buy his books, which have influenced me greatly.

(我常常买他的书, 这些书对我的影响很大。)

3. 误: He is a man *which* can be trusted at all times.

正: He is a man *who* can be trusted at all times.

(他是一个所有时候都可以信任的人。)

〔说明〕关系代词 **who** 是指人的, **which** 除了在疑问时指人外, 在普通的情形下是指物的, 所以应该把误句里的 **which** 改为 **who**。

〔类例〕The girl *whom* you saw is our new secretary. (你看到的那个少女是我们的新秘书。)

The man *who* telephoned was John. (打电话的人是约翰。)

Henry, *whom* I met yesterday, is an engineer. (昨天我遇到亨利, 他是一个工程师。)

〔参考〕(1) 在古英文里, **which** 不在疑问时也可以指人的, 如《圣经》中:

Our Father *which* art in heaven. Hallowed be thy name.

(我们在天上的父, 愿人们都尊你的名为圣。)

(2) **who** 普通只用于人, 却也可以指高贵、勇敢的动物。如:

Bucephala was built near the mausoleum of Bucephalus, *who* died in the Indian campaign of Alexander.

（印度的巴塞法拉城建筑在离亚历山大的名马巴塞法拉宏大的坟墓不远的地方，它死于亚历山大打印度的一次战争中。）

Then there was the Mocker, *who*, with one leg destroyed by a shell splinter, struggled home from the Beaumont front in St. Mihiel sector.

（后来有名莫苟〔意嘲者〕的军鸽，他的一条腿已被炮弹的碎片所毁，挣扎从法国圣米业尔战区的布猛特前线飞回家去。）

4. 误: *Who* of the students asked the teacher?

正: *Which* of the students asked the teacher?

（哪一个学生问先生？）

〔说明〕虽然关系代词 **who** 是指人的，**which** 是指东西的，但是当我们问几个人中哪一个人时，就须用 **which of**，不用 **who of**，所以应该把误句里的 **who** 改为 **which**。

〔类例〕 *Which* of them is your father? （他们中哪一位是你的父亲？）

*Which* are your brothers? （哪几位是你的兄弟？）

*Which* of these two boys is the cleverer? （这两个孩子中哪一个聪明些？）

*Which* of the students is the monitor? （哪一个学生是班长？）

*Who* among the students is the monitor? （学生中谁是班长？）

5. 误: His friend had become a lawyer, *whom* he wanted to be, too.

正: His friend had become a lawyer, *which* he wanted to be, too.

(他的朋友已做律师，他也要做律师。)

〔说明〕指人时用 **who**，指职业时须用 **which**。在误句里，用 **whom** 指职业是错的，所以应该把它改为 **which**。

〔类例〕They elected him president, *which* he had long wanted to be.

(他们选他为总统，这是他久已想要做的。)

My brother is a merchant, *which* I should like to be.

(我的兄弟是一个商人，我也想做一个商人。)

6. 误: All *that* we met in the street were soldiers.

正: All *whom* we met in the street were soldiers.

(我们在街上所遇到的人都是兵。)

〔说明〕**all** 指人时，它的后面所接的关系代词须是 **who** 或 **whom**，所以应该把误句里的 **that** 改为 **whom**。

〔类例〕He spoke to all *whom* he met. (他向所有遇到的人讲话。)

All *who* attended the meeting were students. (集会的人都是学生。)

〔比较〕**all** 指东西时，它的后面用关系代词时，可用 **that**。

如: All *that* I can say is this. (这就是我能说的一切。)

All *that* glitters is not gold. (光辉灿烂的东西不尽是黄金。)

〔参考〕在下列例句情形，用 **that** 比用 **which** 或 **when** 为普遍。

(1) 当先行词附有最高级的形容词或序数的时候：

He is the greatest man *that* I ever saw. (他是我所见的人中最伟大的人。)

He is the second person *that* has climbed to the top of the mountain.

(他是第二个攀登山顶的人。)

(2) 先行词附有 *the only, the same, the very* 的时候:

Man is the only creature *that* can speak. (人是唯一能讲话的动物。)

He is the same person *that* we met at the station last night.

(他就是我们在火车站遇到的那个人。)

He is the very man *that* we need. (他就是我们所需要的那个人。)

(3) 在其先行词是不定代词 *all, any, little, much* 等词的时候:

All *that* live must die. (凡活着的东西必定要死的。)

He is a better president than any *that* preceded him.

(他是一个好总统，他的前任都不及他。)

There is much *that* I desire in life. (一生中我所希望的甚多。)

This book contains little *that* is interesting. (这本书极乏趣味。)

(4) 为了加强句中某一部分的语气，采取 *It is-that* 结构的时候:

It is a long lane *that* has no turning. (凡事必有变化。)

(5) 先行词里含有人和动物的时候:

The train ran over a boy and his dog *that* were just crossing the track.

(火车碾死了正在穿过路轨的小孩和他的狗。)

7. 误: This is the hotel of *that* they speak well.

正: This is the hotel of *which* they speak well.



或 This is the hotel *that* they speak well of.

(这是他们所称赞的旅馆。)

〔说明〕在 **which** 的前面可以用介词，但是在 **that** 的前面却不能用介词，所以应该把 **that** 改为 **which**，或者把 **that** 前的 **of** 移到句末。

〔类例〕I lost the book of *which* I had told you. (我已遗失我曾经告诉你的那本书。)

It is the time at *which* the lilies blow. (这是百合花开放的时候。)

It is he *that* they laughed at. (他们是他们所嘲笑的人。)

It is grapes *that* wine is made from. (制葡萄酒的材料是葡萄。)

## 22 省略关系代词的错误

1. 误: I want a novel is both easy and interesting.

正: I want a novel *which* is both easy and interesting.

(我需要一本浅易而且有趣的小说。)

〔说明〕关系代词在宾格时,可以省略,如: **That is the man (whom) I met in the train.** (那是在火车里遇到的人。)

在这句里 **whom** 可以省去。假使关系代词在主格则不能省略,所以应该把误句里省略的 **which** 写出。

〔类例〕**Mr. Chang is the man *who* taught me French.** (张先生是教我法文的人。)

**I want a man *who* understands English.** (我需要一个懂得英语的人。)

上面句子里的关系代词是不应省略的。

**This is the book (*which*) I spoke of.** (这是我所讲到的书。)

**The man (*whom*) you see is younger than I.** (你所看到的人比我年轻。)

上面句子里的关系代词是可以省掉的。

〔参考〕(1) 在古文或诗里,主格的关系代词也被省掉。

如: **There is a willow (*which*) grows aslant a brook.** (有一棵柳树斜长在溪上。)

(2) 在关系从句里面若有 **there is (are)**, 即使是现代文也略去主格关系代词, 如:

He is one of the best scholars there are in the world.

(他是现在世界上最好的学者中的一个。)

2. 误: I gave him a novel, he read.

正: I gave him a novel, *which* he read.

(我给了他一本小说, 他把它读了。)

〔说明〕宾格的关系代词, 表示限制的意思时, 可以省略。

如: This is the man I spoke of. (这就是我所说的人。)

假使宾格的关系代词表示继续性时则不可省略, 在上面句子里的 *which* 是表示继续性的, 所以不应该省去。

〔类例〕I received a letter this morning, *which* I have forgotten to bring here.

(今天早上我收到一封信, 我忘记把它带来。)

The maid announced a visitor, whom I had shown in. (女仆通报有客, 我吩咐引他进来。)

Here is my excuse, *which* you may not be able to accept.

(这是我辩白的理由, 或许你认为不妥。)

## 23 关系代词的地位的错误

1. 误: The girl was taken to the surgery by her friend, *who* had just broken her leg.

正: The girl *who* had just broken her leg was taken to the surgery by her friend.

(腿受伤的少女被她的朋友送入医院。)

〔说明〕关系代词应该紧接它的先行词，否则容易误解，像上面的误句里 *who had just broken her leg* 接在 *her friend* 的后面，容易被看错，把它当作形容她的朋友的形容短句，所以应该把它放在 *The girl* 的后面。

〔类例〕(误) The mother put some milk into a bottle with *which* she fed her baby.

(正) The mother put into a bottle some milk, with *which* she fed her baby.

(母亲把牛乳装入瓶内喂她的婴孩。)

(误) At last the policeman found the man among the rogues *whom* he wanted to arrest.

(正) At last the policeman found among the rogues the man *whom* he wanted to arrest.

(最后警察在无赖群中找到他所要逮捕的人。)

(误) I put all the books on my shelf *which* my friend lent to me.

(正) I put on my shelf all the books *which* my friend lent to me.

(我把所有朋友借给我的书放到我的书架上。)

## 24 感叹句的错误

1. 误: *What* beautiful the sunset is!

正: *How* beautiful the sunset is!

(落日是多么的美丽!)

〔说明〕在感叹句中,感叹形容词 **what** 不能修饰形容词,须用感叹副词 **how** 来修饰它,所以应该把误句里的 **what** 改为 **how**。

〔类例〕 *How* interesting the story is! (这故事是多么有趣!)

*How* brave the knight was! (这武士是多么的勇敢!)

〔参考〕**how** 也可以形容副词,如:

*How* cleverly he does it! (他做得多么妙!)

2. 误: *How* a magnificent view we have!

正: *What* a magnificent view we have!

(我们看到多壮丽的景色!)

〔说明〕在感叹句中修饰名词不能用感叹副词 **how**, 须用感叹形容词 **what** 来修饰它,所以应该把误句里的 **how** 改为 **what**。

〔类例〕 *What* fools those fellows are! (那些人多么蠢啊!)

*What* a beautiful view it is! (这是多么美丽的景色!)

## 25 并列连词的错误

1. 误: He begins *listening* to the lecture *and to take* notes of it.

正: He begins *listening* to the lecture *and taking* notes of it.

或 He begins *to listen* the lecture *and (to) take* notes of it.

(他开始听讲和记笔记。)

〔说明〕如 **and, but, or** 等并列连词须连接同等或结构相似的部分即名词和名词或代词，动词和动词，同种类的短语和短语，从句和从句。在误句里 **listening** 是动名词而 **to take** 是不定词，它们的种类不同不应被 **and** 连接在一起，所以应该把 **take** 改为 **taking** 或把 **listening** 改为 **to listen**。**take** 前面的 **to** 是可以省去的。

〔类例〕 *Winning and losing* are both unpleasant. (胜利和失败都不愉快。)

I decided *to get up and (to) have* a hot bath. (我决定起身和洗一个热水澡。)

They began *waving* handkerchiefs *and shouting* goodbyes.

(他们开始挥手帕和大声地道别。)

We were very glad *to see you and (to) learn* that you are getting along so well.

(我们很高兴看到你和知道你处境很好。)

His parents were poor *but* they were honest. (他的双亲虽穷却诚实。)

Is it sweet *or* sour? (这是甜的还是酸的呢?)

2. 误: He *not only* wrote novel *but* a play.

正: He wrote *not only* a novel *but* a play.

(他不但写了一篇小说, 并且还写了一篇戏剧。)

〔比较〕 He *not only* wrote the play *but* acted his part well.

(他不但写了这部戏剧并且扮演得很好。)

〔说明〕相关连词如 *both...and*, *either...or*, *neither...nor*, *not only...but* (*also*) 等也属于并列连词, 它们须连接句中并列的部分。在误句中 *not only* 被放在动词 *wrote* 的前面而 *but* 却被放在名词 *play* 的前面, 动词和名词不是同等词类, 不应被联结在一起, 所以应该把 *not only* 移在名词 *novel* 的前面。在供比较的一句中 *not only* 在动词 *wrote* 的前面, 可是 *but* 也在动词 *acted* 的前面, 所以是不错的。

〔类例〕 It is *both* good *and* cheap. (它价廉物美。)

It is *neither* blue *nor* green. (它既不蓝也不绿。)



## 26 介词误作连词的错误

1. 误: He cannot work *like* you do.

正: He cannot work *as* you do.

〔比较〕 He cannot work *like* you.

(他不能像你那样工作。)

〔说明〕 **like** 作像的意思解时是介词, 不能用来代替连词 **as** 或 **as if**, 换句话说介词 **like** 的后面只能跟一个名词、代词或适当的短语, 不能跟一个句子, 所以应该把误句里的 **like** 改作 **as**。

〔类例〕 He came early, *as* he had been asked to do. (他像被请求那样来得早。)

When you are in Rome, do *as* the Romans do. (入境问俗。)

He talks *as if* he knew everything. (他谈话仿佛知道一切东西似的。)

2. 误: You will fail *without* you work hard.

正: You will fail *unless* you work hard.

〔比较〕 You will fail *without* working hard.

(除非你努力工作, 否则你将失败。)

〔说明〕 **without** 是介词, 它的后面只能跟名词、代词或适当的短语, 不能跟一个句子, 因此它不能代替 **unless** 作连词, 所以应该把误句里的 **without** 改作 **unless**。在供比较的一句中, **without** 的后面跟动名词短语也是可以的。

〔类例〕 We shall go *unless* it rains. (假使不下雨, 我们将去。)

*Unless* you study harder you will never pass your examination.

(除非你较用功，你将永远通不过你的考试。)

Can you speak English *without* making mistakes? (你能说英语不犯错误吗?)

## 27 连词误作介词的错误

1. 误: In fencing he is better *than* me.

正: In fencing he is better *than* I.

(他的剑术比我的好。)

〔说明〕**than** 是连词, 在 **than** 后面的名词或代词, 普通是一句省略句的主语, 因此在 **than** 后所跟的词普通必须是主格, 所以应该把误句里的 **me** 改作 **I**。

〔类例〕You know English better *than* I. (你懂得英文比我多。)

You will get there earlier *than* I. (你将比我先到那里。)

〔参考〕(1) In fencing he is *superior* to me. (在剑术上他比我好。)

**superior** 是从拉丁语来的比较级, 它的后面跟介词 **to**, 在 **to** 后面所跟的名词或代词必须是宾格。

(2) I love you better *than* him. (我爱你胜于爱他。)

**than** 的后面跟宾格的 **him** 是在特殊的情形下才发生的, 这 **him** 是 “I love him.” 的句子经省略后所留下的宾语。

(3) We admire the good manners and kindness of Mary, *than* whom there is no nicer person.

(我们赞美玛丽的礼貌和和蔼, 没有人比她更好了。)

在这句里的 **than whom** 已成为习惯的用法, 有些语法家因此认 **than** 是介词。

2. 误: Tom is as tall *as* me.

正：Tom is as tall *as* I (am) .

(汤姆和我一样高。)

〔说明〕**as** 是连词，在 **as** 后面的名词或代词普通是一句省略句的主语，因此在 **as** 的后面所跟的词普通必须是主格，所以应该把误句里的 **me** 改作 **I**。

〔类例〕You are not so tall *as* he (is) . (你没有他那样高。)

〔参考〕I like her as well *as* him. (我爱她正像爱他一样。)

在这个句子里，**as** 的后面所跟的词是宾格，这是因为 **him** 的前面省略了主语和动词，假使把它们补足，便是下面的句子：

I like her as well *as* I like him.

## 28 关联词的错误

1. 误: *Although* he is poor, *but* he is honest.

正: *Although* he is poor, *yet* he is honest.

〔比较〕 *Although* he is poor, he is honest.

He is poor, *but* he is honest.

(虽然他穷, 他却诚实。)

〔说明〕 *although* (或 *though*) 的后面须用 *yet* 成为关联词, 却不能用 *but*, 所以应该把误句中的 *but* 改为 *yet*。在供比较的两句中, 它们所用的连词虽然不同, 它们所表达的意思却差不多。

〔类例〕 *Although* it sounds strange, *yet* it is true for all that.

(虽然听起来是奇怪的, 它却是真实的。)

*Although* it was very cold, *yet* he did not light a fire. (虽然天气十分冷, 他却不生火。)

*Though* he should slay me, *yet* I will trust in him. (虽然他杀我, 我还是信任他。)

2. 误: He is *very* tired *that* he cannot walk any more.

正: He is *so* tired *that* he cannot walk any more.

(他疲倦得不能再多走一点路了。)

〔说明〕 *so...that* 才是关联词, 并不是 *very...that*, 所以应该把 *very* 改作 *so*, 表达“如此的程度……以致……”的意思。

〔类例〕 He spoke *so* rapidly *that* we could not clearly understand him.

(他说得这样快,使我们不能了解他。)

He was so angry *that* he could not speak. (他怒得不能讲话。)

Here is so big a stone *that* no man can lift it.

(此地有一块石头,它重得没有人能够举得动它。)

3. 误: There is no *such* place *which* you dream of in all this world.

正: There is no *such* place *as* you dream of in all this world.

(全世界绝没有像你所梦想的那样的地方。)

〔说明〕 *such...as* 是关联词,表示“像.....那样的(东西)”的意思并不是 *such...which*, 所以应该把误句里的 *which* 改作 *as*。

〔类例〕 *Such aid as* I can give is at your service.

(凡我的能力所能够做得到的事情,我都愿为君效劳。)

I don't care for *such* books *as* you like. (我不喜欢你所爱的那种书。)

I like to write stories in *such* simple language *as* the children can understand.

(我爱用像小孩子都能懂的那种简单的文字所写的故事。)

4. 误: I had no sooner left the house *when* it began to rain.

正: I had no sooner left the house *than* it began to rain.

(我刚离开屋子,天就开始下雨了。)

〔说明〕 *no sooner...than* 才是关联词表示“.....即刻.....”的意思,并不是 *no sooner...when*, 所以应该把误句里的 *when* 改作 *than*。

〔类例〕 He had *no sooner* arrived *than* he fell in. (他一到达就生病。)

The fly had *no sooner* hit the water *than* a huge trout snapped at it.

(假蝇钩刚碰到水面鱼便咬住它。)

I had *no sooner* done it *than* I regretted it. (我做了那事即感到后悔。)

5. 误: *No sooner* we had got on shore *than* it began to rain.

正: *No sooner* had we got on shore *than* it began to rain.

(我们刚上岸, 天就开始下雨了。)

〔说明〕 为了加强语气, **no sooner** 可以放于句首, 不过须颠倒主语和动词的次序, 换句话说就是须把主语放于助动词的后面, 所以应该把误句里的主语 **we** 放在助动词 **had** 的后面。

〔类例〕 *No sooner* had he seen me *than* he went out. (他一看到我就出去了。)

*No sooner* had I knocked *than* she opened the door. (我刚敲门, she 就把门打开了。)

*No sooner* said *than* done. (说了就做。)

6. 误: He had *scarcely* gone out *as* it began to rain.

正: He had *scarcely* gone out *when* (or *before*) it began to rain.

(我刚出去, 天就下雨了。)

〔说明〕 **scarcely...when** (or **before**) 是关联词, 表示“.....即刻.....”的意思, 在 **scarcely** 的后面可以接 **when** 或 **before**, 却不能接 **as**, 所以应该把误句里的 **as** 改作 **when** 或 **before**。

〔类例〕 I had *scarcely* arrived *before* he came out to meet me. (我刚到达, 他就出来迎接我。)

He had *scarcely* heard the news *when* he wept aloud. (他一听到这消息就放声大哭。)

I had *scarcely* set foot on land *when* I felt well. (我一踏陆地就感到好了。)

〔参考〕 (1) *Scarcely* had he gone out *when* it began to rain. 这句的语气要比 He had *scarcely* gone out *when* it began to rain. 所表达的要强。

(2) He had *hardly* gone out *when* it began to rain.

He had *no sooner* gone out *than* it began to rain.

*As soon as* he went out it began to rain.

上面三句所用的关联词虽然不同，他们所表达的意思却是一样的。

7. 误: He can *neither* read *or* write.

正: He can *neither* read *nor* write.

(他既不能读，也不能写。)

〔说明〕 *neither...nor* 才是关联词表示既不.....也不.....的意思，并不是 *neither...or*，所以应该把误句里的 *or* 改作 *nor*。

〔类例〕 *Neither* you *nor* he was to blame. (你和他都没有错处。)

He has *neither* a father *nor* a mother. (他既无父亲，也没有母亲。)

I am *neither* for *nor* against the proposal. (我不反对，也不赞成这建议。)

〔参考〕 He cannot read *or* write. (他既不能读，也不能写。)

在句子的前面用 *neither* 否定时后面须跟 *nor*，假使句子的前面用别的否定语时，后面可以用 *or*。



## 29 几个极易用错的连词

1. 误: The reason why he failed is *because* he was careless.

正: The reason why he failed is *that* he was careless.

(他失败的原因是他不当心。)

〔说明〕在 The reason is 和 The reason why...is 的后面该用 *that*, 不该用 *because*, 以免意义重复, 所以应该把误句里的 *because* 改作 *that*。

〔类例〕The reason I was not there is *that* I was out of town. (我不在那里的理由是我出城了。)

My reason for believing in his teachings is simply *that* he is my teacher.

(我信任他的教训的理由不过是他是我的先生。)

The reason why he is absent is *that* he is sick. (他缺席的理由是因为他生病。)

〔参考〕His failure is *because* he was careless. (他的失败是因为他不当心。)

2. 误: I cannot do it, *nor* you can.

正: I cannot do it, *nor* can you.

〔比较〕I cannot do it, *neither* can you.

I cannot do it, and you *cannot* do it *either*.

(我不能做这件事情, 你也不能做这件事情。)

〔说明〕**nor** 和 **neither** 单独用时它们的意思是 **and not either** (也不)，因此它们只可以用在否定句的后面，并且用它们时必须颠倒主语和动词的次序。(主语须放在助动词的后面，假使没有助动词时，须加 **do** 于主语的前面，**verb to be** 和 **verb to have** 却是例外。)在误句里，**nor** 后面的主语仍在助动词的前面，不合习惯的用法，所以应该把误句里的 **nor you can** 改作 **nor can you**。

在供比较的两个句子虽然所用的连词不同，它们所表达的意思却是一样的。

〔类例〕**I am not rich, nor do I wish to be.** (我不富有，我也不希望富有。)

**The first one was not good, neither was the second one.**

(第一个是不好的，第二个也是不好的。)

**He will not go, neither will I.** (他不愿去，我也不愿去。)

3. 误: **I shall go abroad until I get a scholarship.**

正: **I shall not go abroad until I get a scholarship.**

(在得到奖学金前，我将不出国。——我要等到得到奖学金后才出国。)

〔比较〕**I shall go abroad when I get a scholarship.**

(当我得到奖学金时我将出国。)

〔说明〕假使把 **until** 和 **till** 译成“等到”，又用写中文“等到”的方法来用 **until** 和 **till**，每每会用错，现在把它们的意思和用法详细的说明于下：**until** 或 **till** 接在肯定的句子的后面所表达的意思是“一段时间直到某时为止”。例如 **I remained in ignorance of it until you told me the news yesterday.** (一直到你昨天告诉我这消息，我一直蒙在鼓里。)虽然这句英文还可以译成“等到你昨天告诉我这消息我才明白”。

**until** 在此地的意思很明显的有些着重在昨天以前的一个时期。又如 **Shall you remain at Taipei till December? I shall stay there until my business is concluded.** (你将留在台北直到十二月吗？我将逗留在那里，直到我的事情办完。) **until** 和 **till** 在这两句

的意思更显明的着重在十二月以前的一个时期。**until** 在否定句子的后面有 **before**“在……以前的时候”的意思更着重于从某时以前的一个时期。例如 **The money shall not be paid, *until* the receipt has been signed. (or Before the signing of the receipt, the money shall not be paid.)**（钱非到收条上签字以后不付。）

假使把 **until** 和 **till** 的意思来解说上面的误句，它的意思便成为“我得到奖学金前将出国”。这显然是错误的，所以应该在误句的 **will** 后加 **not**。

〔类例〕 **He worked *until* he was tired.**（他工作到疲劳才止。）

**He worked *until* the job was completed.**（他一直工作到工作完成。）

**The baby did not stop crying *until* he was fed.**（婴孩到喂食后才停止哭泣。）

**I shall not speak to him *until* he apologizes.**（非等到他道歉以后，我将不和他说话。）

**He did not arrive *until* the concert was over.**（他在音乐会完了才来。）

4. 误：**You may play games *before* the bell does not ring.**

正：**You may play games *before* the bell rings.**

（你在没有打铃前可以游戏。）

〔说明〕**before** 是我国人最容易用错的词，因为我们总说“没有打铃前，你可以游戏”。但是在英文中，这个否定是多余的，所以应该把误句里 **before** 后的否定句改作肯定句。

〔类例〕 **He died *before* I was born.**（他在我没有出生前就死了。）

***Before* I give my answer I will ask you some questions.**

（在我没有作答前，我要问你几个问题。）

**I will die *before* I give in.**（我宁死不屈。）

## **30 对于连词的意义辨认不清楚所发生的错误**





## 31 连词过多或被放在不必要的地方所发生的错误

1. 误: He is a writer of great experience, *and whose* suggestions will be found helpful to you.

正: He is a writer of great experience, *whose* suggestions will be found helpful to you.

(他是一个极有经验的作家, 他的意见会对你有帮助。)

〔说明〕关系代词 **whose** 已有连接的作用, 它的前面不必再加 **and**, 因此这个 **and** 是多余的必须除去它。误句里在 **whose** 前面的 **and** 是多余的, 所以应该把它除掉。

〔类例〕A student asked me to lend him a novel, the name of *which* was unknown to me.

(一个学生向我借一本小说, 这本书我是不知道的。)

It is strange *that* he should have been ungrateful to you, *who* did so much for him.

(你对他恩惠很大, 他却对你忘恩负义, 那真是不可思议的事情。)

He labours day and night *that* he may become rich. (他日夜勤劳以求发财。)

2. 误: I said *that*, "I cannot speak French."

正: I said, "I cannot speak French."

(我说: "我不能够讲法语。")

〔比较〕I said *that* I could not speak French.

(我说我不能够讲法语。)

〔说明〕在直接引句的前面不可用 **that**。在误句里，在直接引句 “**I cannot speak French.**” 的前面竟用 **that**，这是错误的，所以应该把它除掉。

〔类例〕The master said to his servant, “Shut the door.”  
(主人向仆人说：“关上门。”) )

He said, “If I had been you, I would have gone abroad.”

(他说：“我若是你，我已出洋了。”) )

He asked me, “Have you ever been to Hangchow?” (他问我：“您到过杭州吗？”) )

3. 误：I asked him *that where* he lived.

正：I asked him *where* he lived.

(我问他住在何处。)

〔说明〕在间接疑问句前不必再加 **that**，因为间接疑问句如 **where he lived** 的 **where** 已有连接的作用，假使再加 **that**，这个 **that** 是多余的。在误句里 **where** 的前面竟还用 **that**，这个 **that** 是多余的，所以应该把它除掉。

〔类例〕You know who I am. (你知道我是谁。)

We must inquire whether they really come. (我们一定要问他们是否真来。)

I wondered when he would return. (我希望知道什么时候他会回来。)

I ask him if he knew it. (我问他是否知道这事。)



## 32 省略连词 **that** 所发生的错误

1. 误: He will be here on time is not certain.

正: *That* he will be here on time is not certain.

(他是否将准时到还没有确定。)

〔说明〕连词 **that** 有时可以省去, 如下面句子中的 **that** 都可以被省去。

I think (*that*) he is a great man. (我想他是一个伟人。)

It was so cold (*that*) I could hardly keep still.

(天气是如此的冷, 使我几乎不能保持安静不动。)

It is certain (*that*) he is honest. (他确是诚实的。)

但是 **that** 被用在做主语的名词短句的开头时, 它是不能被省去的。在误句中作主语的短句“**He will be here**”的前面的 **that** 被省去, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它写出来。

〔类例〕 *That* he is a genius is certain. (他确是一个天才。)

*That*time is money has never been realized in the East.

(东方人实在不曾明白时间就是金钱。)

*That*the man made money is no proof of his merit. (这人的赚钱不足以证明他的价值。)

2. 误: The fact he is a national hero is known to all people.

正: The fact *that*he is a national hero is known to all people.

(他是民族英雄的事实是人们都知道的。)

〔说明〕虽然连词 **that** 有时可以省略，当它被用在作名词的同位语短句的前面时却不应省去。在上面的误句里 **he is a national hero** 是 **the fact** 的同位语短句，在它的前面的 **that** 被错误的省去，所以应该把它写出来。

〔类例〕My suggestion *that* he was mad was not accepted by everybody.

(我以为他发疯的意见却没有人同意。)

The fear *that* he would fail made him nervous. (他的恐惧失败使他神经过敏。)

The rumour *that* ghosts appeared in the night is totally baseless.

(鬼在晚上出现的谣言是完全没有根据的。)

The idea *that* he might be mad did not occur to me. (我不曾想到他会发疯。)

3. 误: It is only when you meet a word you don't know you will begin to feel it necessary to consult

a dictionary.

正: It is only when you meet a word you don't know *that* you will begin to feel it necessary to

consult a dictionary.

(只当你遇到不认识的字时，你才会开始感到查字典的需要。)

〔说明〕在句子中的 **that** 有时可以省去，但是以不害辞意为原则。假使用 **It is...that...** 的语法的句子是短句子，句中的 **that** 是可以省去的。例如：

It was good (*that*) he came. (他来了是好的。)

It is true (*that*) he did it. (这是真的，他做了这件事情。)

上面的句子比较短，省去了 **that** 并不害辞意，所以上面句子中的 **that** 可以省去。

It is not to be said in public *that* war is imminent. (不应公然地说战争将临。)

上面这一句比较长，省去了 **that**，意思就容易弄不清楚，所以像上面较长的句子中的 **that** 是不应该被省掉的。在误句里，在 **you will begin to feel it necessary to consult a dictionary** 的短句的前面的 **that** 是不应该被省略的，因为句子太长，省去了 **that** 便容易发主误解，所以应该把 **you** 前省去的 **that** 写出。

〔类例〕 It was commonly said of him *that* some devil had possessed his mind.

(一般人说有鬼迷住了他的心。)

It is only when he eats *that* his swollen tongue troubled him.

(只当他吃东西的时候，他的肿的舌头使他苦恼。)

It is much to be regretted *that* things should have come to such a pass.

(事情竟到了这样的田地，这是很惋惜的。)

4. 误: What have I done you should strike me?

正: What have I done *that* you should strike me?

(我做了什么事情了，你敢打我? )

〔说明〕 What have I done *that* you should strike me? 是从 It is strange that you should strike me. 演变出来的。在第二句中的 **that** 是可以省掉的，第一句中的 **that** 却不能省掉，因为省掉后容易引起误解，所以应该把误句中在 **you** 前面的 **that** 写出。

〔类例〕 Who are you *that* you should say so? (你是什么人，敢说这样的话? )

Where has he been *that* he should look so tired?

（他曾到什么地方去了，他竟显得如此的疲倦？）

Who am I *that* I should advise a man of your experience?

（我是谁，竟敢劝像你那样有经验的人？）

### 33 比较时易犯的错误

1. 误: She is *prettyer* than her sisters.

正: She is *prettier* than her sisters.

(她比她的姐妹美丽。)

〔说明〕假如一个形容词的语尾是 *y* 而 *y* 的前面是辅音, 须先把 *y* 改为 *i*, 然后再加 *er* 或 *est*。如 *pretty* 的语尾是 *y*, 而 *y* 的前面是辅音 *t*, 须先把 *y* 改为 *i*, 再加 *er* 或 *est*, 所以应该把误句里的 *prettyer* 改为 *prettier*。

〔类例〕That was the *happiest* day of my life. (那是我一生中最快活的日子。)

It is *easier* said than done. (说它容易做它难。)

He is the *laziest* fellow in the world. (她是最懒的家伙。)

〔例外〕假使一个形容词的语尾是 *y*, 而 *y* 的前面是元音, 则加 *er* 时不必先把 *y* 改为 *i*, 如 *gay* 字变成比较级时, 只要在 *y* 的后面加 *er*, 便可以了, 例如:

Have you ever heard *gayer* laughter? (你曾听到过更愉快的笑声吗?)

2. 误: A dog is *biger* than a cat.

正: A dog is *bigger* than a cat.

(一只狗比一只猫大。)

〔说明〕假使一个音节的形容词的语尾是辅音而辅音的前面又是一个短元音, 须重复语尾的字母, 再加 *er* 或 *est*。如 *big* 是一个音节的形容词, 它的语尾是一个辅音 *g*, 而 *g* 的前面是一个短元音 *i*, 须重复 *g* 再加 *er* 或 *est*, 所以应该把误句里的 *biger* 改为 *bigger*。

〔类例〕 He looks *thinner* than you. (他看起来比你瘦。)

Summer is the *hottest* season of the year. (夏季是一年中最热的一季。)

3. 误: This picture is *beautifuler* than that.

正: This picture is *more beautiful* than that.

(这张画比那张画美。)

〔说明〕 将三音节的形容词变成比较级和最高级时不能在它的后面加 **er** 和 **est**, 须在它的前面用 **more** 和 **most**。因为 **beautiful** 是三音节的形容词, 所以应该把误句中的 **beautifuler** 改为 **more beautiful**。

〔类别〕 He is the *most diligent* student in his class. (在班中, 他是最用功的学生。)

Bread is *more important* than love. (面包比爱情更重要。)

The book is *more interesting* than I thought. (这本书比我所想的更有趣。)

Chinese is *more difficult* to learn than English. (中文比英文难学。)

4. 误: He is *more rich* than I.

正: He is *richer* than I.

(他比我富。)

〔说明〕 假如把一个单音节的形容词变比较级时, 只要在它的语尾后加 **er** 便可。如 **rich** 是一个单音的形容词, 它的比较级是 **richer**, 所以应该把误句中的 **more rich** 改为 **richer**。

〔类别〕 Miss Lee is *younger* than Miss Chang. (李小姐比张小姐年轻。)

Tom is *stronger* than his brother. (汤姆比他的兄弟强壮。)

He is the *tallest* boy in the room. (他是这房间里面的最高的孩子。)

〔参考〕(1) 当 **more** 作 **rather** (毋宁, 与其) 的意思解时, 它可以用在一个或两个音节的形容词的前面, 如:

He is *more sad* than ill. (与其说他生病, 不如说他忧郁。)

He is *more brave* than wise. (与其说他智慧, 不如说他勇敢。)

He is *more clever* than honest. (与其说他诚实, 不如说他伶俐。)

(2) 为了加强语气 **more and more** 可以用在一个音节的形容词的前面, 如:

She became *more and more sad*. (她变得越加悲哀了。)

5. 误: He is *famouser* than his father.

正: He is *more famous* than his father.

(他比他的父亲更有名。)

〔说明〕假使一个二音节的形容词有 **-ful**, **-able**, **-ous**, **-ive**, **-ing** 等语尾, 它变比较级或最高级时, 不能加 **er** 或 **est** 于语尾, 须在它的前面用 **more** 或 **most**。因为 **famous** 是一个两音节的形容词, 而且它的语尾是 **ous**, 所以应该把误句中的 **famouser** 改为 **more famous**。

〔类例〕Iron is *more useful* than copper. (铁比铜有用。)

Time is *more precious* than gold. (时间比黄金更可贵。)

She is *more lovable* than her sister. (她比他的姐妹更和蔼可亲。)

She is the *most active* student in the class. (她是班中最活跃的学生。)

He made the *most biting* remarks on that matter. (他对那事件做了最辛辣的批评。)

6. 误: He is *more well-known* than she.

正: He is *better-known* than she.

(他比她有名。)

〔说明〕 **well-known** (有名的) 是一个副词和过去分词复合的形容词。假使我们要把它变成比较级, 只要把它的复合部分副词 **well** 变成比较级 **better** 即可。换句话说 **well-known** 的比较级是 **better-known** 不是 **more well-known**, 所以应该把误句里的 **more well-known** 改为 **better-known**。

〔类例〕 He was a *better-known* poet than his sister. (他是一位比他的妹妹较有名的诗人。)

She is a *finer-looking* girl than her sister. (她是一位比她的妹妹更美貌的女郎。)

〔比较〕 She is a *more kind* -hearted woman than her mother.

(她是一位比她的母亲更善良的母亲。)

7. 误: This is the *farest* island from the mainland.

正: This is the *farthest* island from the mainland.

(这是离大陆最远的岛。)

〔说明〕

一般级	比较级	最高级
good (好的) well (好的, 健康的)	better	best
bad (不好的, 坏的) evil (坏的, 邪恶的) ill (生病的, 邪恶的)	worse	worst
many (指数) much (指量)	more	most
little (指量)	less	least



little (指大小)	smaller	smallest
old (年长的, 年久的)	older (指人和物) elder (仅指人)	oldest eldest
late (迟的, 近来的)	later (指时间) latter (指次序)	latest last
far (远的)	farther (指距离) further (指程度)	farthest furthest

我们见上表便知道有些形容词的变化是不规则的。因为 **far** 的变化是不规则的, 所以应该把误句中的 **farest** 改作 **farthest**。

〔类别〕 This is the *best* novel I have ever read. (这是我读过的最好的小说。)

The patient was *worse* this morning. (今晨这病人的病更厉害了。)

It is the *most beautiful* view that I have ever seen in my life.

(这是我一生中见到的最美丽的景色。)

There is not the *least* wind today. (今天一点风都没有。)

She is his *eldest* daughter. (她是他的长女。)

This will be your *last* chance. (这将是你的最后的机会。)

Have you got *further* information? (你曾得到另外的消息吗?)

8. 误: This book is *superior* than that.

正: This book is *superior* to that.

(这本书比那本书好。)

〔说明〕像 **superior**、**inferior**、**prior**、**junior** 等词是由拉丁词比较级产生出来的, 它们的后面接 **to**, 所以应该把误句里的 **super**

ior than 改为 superior to。

〔类例〕 This method is *inferior to* that. (这种方法不及那种方法。)

This event is *prior to* that. (这事件早于那事件。)

She is *junior to* him. (她比他年轻。)

9. 误: He is the *youngest* of the twins.

正: He is the *younger* of the twins.

(他是孪生儿中较年轻的一个。)

〔说明〕 两个东西相比时只能用比较级不能用最高级。如 **twins** 是指两个孪生兄弟, 两个兄弟相比是不能用最高级的, 所以应该把误句中的 **youngest** 改为 **younger**。

〔类例〕 Father is the *older* of my parents. (我的父亲较母亲年长。)

She is the *cleverer* of the two girls. (她是两个女孩子中较聪明的一个。)

The younger brother is the *better* of the two. (弟弟比他的哥哥好。)

10. 误: Iron is more useful than *any metal*.

正: Iron is more useful than *any other metal*.

(铁比任何金属有用。)

〔说明〕 甲物和一群别的东西比较时, 这一群别的东西不应包括甲物。误句中的 **any metal** 很明显的包括了相比的 **iron**, 所以应该把误句中的 **any metal** 改为 **any other metal**。

〔类例〕 China has more population than any *other country*. (中国的人口比任何国多。)

John is more diligent than any *other* student in the class. (约翰比班中任何别的学生勤勉。)

Taipei is bigger than any *other* city in Taiwan. (在台湾, 台北比任何别的城大。)

11. 误: Knowledge is more precious than *anything*.

正: Knowledge is more precious than *anything else*.

(知识比别的东西贵重。)

〔说明〕正如上面所说的在比较时应避免和其自身相比, 所以应该把误句里 *anything* 改为 *anything else*。

〔类例〕He is taller than anyone *else* in the class. (他在班中比任何人高。)

Confucius is more famous than anyone *else* in China. (孔夫子在中国比任何人有名。)

I love my parents than anybody *else* in the world. (我在世上最爱我的双亲。)

12. 误: Shakespeare is the greatest of all *other* English poets.

正: Shakespeare is the greatest of *all English poets*.

(莎氏是英国最伟大的诗人。)

〔说明〕当我们说某人在一群人中最好时, 在这一群人中当然包括某人, 不应把某人从这一群人中除去, 所以应该把误句中的 *other* 除掉。

〔类例〕The whale is the largest of *all animals*. (鲸鱼是最大的动物。)

The lion is the strongest of *all animals*. (狮子是最强的动物。)

She is the best of *all students* in the school. (她是校中最好的学生。)

13. 误: I have never seen *a more* perfect man.

正: I have never seen *such a* perfect man.

(我从来没有见如此完善的人。)

〔说明〕有些绝对性的形容词如 *perfect*, *round*, *straight*, *absolute* 等词是没有比较级的, 所以应该把误句里的 *a more perfect man* 改为 *such a perfect man*。

〔类例〕*This is an absolute falsehood.* (这完全是谎言。)

*It is a straight line.* (这是一条直线。)

〔参考〕(1) 像 *round* 等形容词也可以用来比较东西, 不过在 *more* 的后面须先加 *nearly* 再加 *round*, 如 *His hat is more nearly round than mine.* (他的帽子比我的圆。)

(2) 像 *perfect* 等形容词在口语中也可以用在最高级, 来加重语气或表示喜悦, 如: *I have just bought the most perfect hat.* (我刚买到最完善的帽子。)

14. 误: *The population of China is larger than Japan.*

正: *The population of China is larger than that of Japan.*

(中国的人口比日本的多。)

〔说明〕我们比较东西须合逻辑不应像误句里, 把人口和国家相比, 所以应该把误句里的 *than Japan* 改为 *than that of Japan*。

〔类例〕*His face was as pale as that of a dead man.* (他的脸苍白得和死人的一样。)

*The mistakes made by Chinese students of English are different from those made by Japanese students.* (中国学英语的学生所犯的 error 和日本的学生所犯的不同。)

*The tail of a fox is longer than that of a hare.* (狐狸的尾巴比兔子的长。)

15. 误: *He is more unior to me.*

正: *He is unior to me.*

(他比我年轻。)

〔说明〕像 *junior*、*senior*、*inferior*、*posterior* 等词是由拉丁词比较级转来的，在它们的前面不必再加 *more*，所以应该把误句里的 *more* 删去。

〔类例〕This event is *posterior* to that.（这事件较那事件迟。）

He is *senior* to her.（他比她年长。）

It is *inferior* to the sample.（它比样品较劣。）

16. 误：Compared with silk, cotton is *cheaper*.

正：Compared with silk, cotton is *cheap*.

（和丝相比，棉花是便宜的。）

〔说明〕用短语 *compared with* 开始的句子后面用一般级，不应用比较级，所以应该把误句里的 *cheaper* 改为 *cheap*。

〔类例〕Compared with me, you are *tall*.（和我相比，你是高的。）

Compared with the cat, the dog is *faithful*.（和猫相比，狗是忠实的。）

17. 误：My younger brother is *elder* than my younger sister.

正：My younger brother is *older* than my younger sister.

（我的弟弟比我的妹妹大。）

〔说明〕像 *latter*、*elder*、*lesser* 三个形容词虽然属于比较级，普通却被用作属性形容词。换句话说它们多被用来形容名词，它们的后面不能跟 *than*，所以应该把误句中的 *elder* 改为 *older*。

My father is *older* than my mother（. 我的父亲比母亲年纪大。）

He is my *elder* brother（. 他是我的哥哥。）

It is *later* than eight o'clock（. 现在已过八点。）

I can eat either rice or bread, but I prefer the latter. (我可以吃饭或面包, 但是我较喜欢后者。)

Five is less than seven (. 五少于七。)

We should choose the lesser evil (. 我们应该从恶中选择较善者。)

18. 误: Your position is *upper* than his.

正: Your position is *higher* than his.

(你的位置比他的高。)

〔说明〕虽然 **upper** 是比较级的形容词, 它的意义是较高的 (**higher**), 它却已变成普通的属性形容词, 通常被用来形容名词, 却不能用来比较, 它的后面不能跟 **than**, 所以应该把误句中的 **upper** 改为 **higher**。像 **upper** 同类的形容词有 **outer**, **inner** 和 **nether** 等。

〔类例〕

The tower is higher than the tree (. 这座塔比这棵树高。)

Don't cut away the upper branches from the tree (. 不要把树上较高的树枝砍掉。)

This room is nearer to the outside than that (. 这间房间比那间房间较靠外边。)

These are his outer rooms (. 这几间是他的靠外边的房间。)

This circle is nearer to the center than that (. 这个圆圈比那个圆圈较接近圆心。)

The inner circle is smaller than the outer (. 内圆小于外圆。)

## 34 普通容易误用的形容词

1. 误: *I am possible* to do it.

正: *It is possible* for me to do it.

(我能做这工作。)

〔说明〕 **possible** 的意义是指事情可能发生的或可能被做的，没有“感到可能”的意义，所以应该把误句改正如上。

〔类例〕 *It is possible* to go 500 miles an hour by aeroplane.

(这是可能的，坐飞机一个钟头走五百英里。)

*Frost is possible* in early spring. (早春降霜是可能的。)

〔参考〕 **impossible** 和 **possible** 的用法是完全一样的，如：

The accident seemed *impossible*. (这意外事件似乎是不可能的。)

*It is impossible* for me to get there by ten o'clock. (要我在十点钟前到达那里是不可能的。)

2. 误: *I am difficult* to write correct sentences.

正: *It is difficult* for me to write correct sentences

或 *To write correct sentences is difficult* to me.

(写正确的句子对于我是件困难的事情。)

〔说明〕 **difficult** 的意义是指一件事情做起来困难，并不是“感到困难的”，所以应该把误句改正如上。

〔类例〕 *It is difficult* for me to teach. (教书对于我是件困难的事情。)

*This task is difficult to do.* (这件工作做起来困难。)

〔参考〕1. *I find it difficult to write correct sentences.* (我觉得写正确句子困难。)

这句话虽然和 *It is difficult for me to write correct sentences.* 的意思稍有不同，却很可以拿来说明 **difficult** 的另一种用法。

2. *He is difficult to deal with.* (他是难以对付的。)

在这句里的主语虽然是人称名词，在句中的 **difficult** 却没有感到困难的意思。

3. 误: *You are easy to do that.*

正: *It is easy for you to do that.*

(做那事对你是容易的。)

〔说明〕**easy** 的意思是“使人感到容易的”，没有感到容易的意思，所以应该把误句改正如上。

〔类例〕*It is easy for me to write.* (写作对于我是容易的。)

*It is easy to get to that place.* (到那地方是容易的。)

4. 误: *He is painful in the teeth.*

正: *He has painful teeth.*

(他的牙疼痛。)

〔说明〕**painful** 通常的意义是使感觉痛苦的，没有“感觉痛苦”的解释，所以应该把误句改正如上。

〔类例〕*The girl has a painful finger.* (这个女孩的手指痛。)

*He has a painful cut in a finger.* (他的手指的伤口疼痛。)

〔参考〕*He has a pain in the teeth.* (他的牙疼痛。)

5. 误: *He is dangerous.*

正: *He is in danger.*



或 He is *endangered*.

(他遭到危险。)

〔说明〕 **dangerous** 的解释是“引起危险”或“发生危险”，没有遭到危险的意思，所以应该把误句里的 **dangerous** 改为 **in danger** 或 **endangered**。

〔类例〕 He is in *danger* of catching cold. (他有伤风的危险。)

His life is *in danger*. (他的生命遭受到危险。)

*It is dangerous* to walk on thin ice in a lake. (在湖中薄冰上行走是危险的。)

## 35 几对互相误用的同根的形容词

1. 误: I am *interesting* in the novel.

正: I am *interested* in the novel.

(我对这小说发生兴趣。)

〔说明〕*interested* 和 *interesting* 是从 *interest* (兴趣) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是感兴趣的, 后者的意义是令人感兴趣的, 没有感兴趣的意思。要表示感兴趣的意思须用 *interested*, 所以应该把误句里的 *interesting* 改为 *interested*。

〔类例〕I am greatly *interested* in the study of English.  
(我对于学习英文非常感兴趣。)

I am deeply *interested* in music. (我对于音乐很感兴趣。)

〔比较〕English is *interesting* to me. (英语对于我是有兴趣的。)

2. 误: I am *delightful* to see you.

正: I am *delighted* to see you.

(我看到你感到高兴。一客气语。)

〔说明〕*delighted* 和 *delightful* 是从 *delight* (使欢喜) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是感到快乐的; 后者的意义是令人感到快乐的, 没有感到快乐的意义。要表示感到快乐的意思须用 *delighted*, 所以应该把误句里的 *delightful* 改为 *delighted*。

〔类例〕I am *delighted* with my coat. (我喜欢我的上装。)

I was *delighted* at seeing her. (我看到她感到高兴。)

〔比较〕The music is *delightful* to me. (音乐令我感到快乐。)

3. 误: They are *desirable* of going abroad.

正: They are *desirous* of going abroad.

(他们渴望去外国。)

〔说明〕*desirous* 和 *desirable* 是从 *desire* (渴望) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 但是它们的意思是不同的。前者的意义是渴望的; 后者的意义是值得要的, 不能解释为渴望的。要表示渴望的意思须用 *desirous*, 所以应该把误句里的 *desirable* 改为 *desirous*。

〔类例〕I am *desirous* to succeed. (我渴望成功。)

He is *desirous* that I should give him some work to do.  
(他希望我给他些工作做。)

〔比较〕He is a *desirable* companion. (他是一个值得要的同伴。)

4. 误: I am *shameful* of doing it.

正: I am *ashamed* of doing it.

(我做这件事情感到可耻。)

〔说明〕*ashamed* 和 *shameful* 是从 *shame* (羞耻) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是感到羞耻的; 后者的意义是可耻的; 没有感到羞耻的意义。要表示感到羞耻的意思, 须用 *ashamed*, 所以应该把误句里的 *shameful* 改为 *ashamed*。

〔类例〕He is *ashamed* to beg. (他耻于求乞。)

I am not *ashamed* to confess my errors. (我不以承认过失感到羞耻。)

〔比较〕It is a *shameful* defeat. (这是一个可耻的失败。)  
(即惨败)

5. 误: He is *satisfactory* with his house.

正: He is *satisfied* with his house.

(他对于他的房屋满意。)

〔说明〕 **satisfied** 和 **satisfactory** 是从 **satisfy**（使满足）一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是感到满足的；后者的意义是令人满意的，没有感到满足的意义。要表示感到满足的意思须用 **satisfied**，所以应该把误句中的 **satisfactory** 改为 **satisfied**。

〔类例〕 I am *satisfied* with your explanation.（我对于你的解释满意。）

I am *satisfied* to remain here.（我满意留在此地。）

〔比较〕 Your explanation is not *satisfactory* to him.（你的解释令他不满意。）

6. 误： I am *tiresome* with walking.

正： I am *tired* with walking.

（我倦于步行。）

〔说明〕 **tired** 和 **tiresome** 是从 **tire**（使疲倦）一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是感到疲倦的，后者的意义是令人厌倦的，没有感到疲倦的意义。要表示感到疲倦的意思，须用 **tired**，所以应该把误句中的 **tiresome** 改为 **tired**。

〔类例〕 I am *tired* with running about.（我疲于奔波。）

I am *tired* of hearing the same story.（我听同一的故事感到厌倦。）

〔比较〕 It is a *tiresome* speech.（这是一篇令人厌倦的演讲。）

7. 误： Our long journey made us *wearisome*.

正： Our long journey made us *weary*.

（长途旅行使我们感到疲倦。）

〔说明〕 **weary** 和 **wearisome** 是从 **wear**（消耗）一词变化出来的两个形容词，但是它们的意义是不同的。前者的意义是感到疲倦的；后者的意义是令人厌倦的，可以形容人或物，却不能作感到疲倦的解释。要表示感到疲倦的意思，须用 **weary**，所以应该把误句中的 **wearisome** 改为 **weary**。

〔类例〕 I am *weary* with walking. (我因步行而感到疲倦。——我倦于步行。)

He is *weary* of doing nothing. (他因空闲而感到厌倦。)

〔比较〕 It is a *wearisome* speech. (这是令人厌倦的演说。)

8. 误: Milk is a *healthy* food.

正: Milk is a *healthful* food.

(牛乳是一种有益于健康的食物。)

〔说明〕 *healthful* 和 *healthy* 是从 *health* (健康) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。在正式的英语里, 前者的解释是有益于健康的; 后者的意义是具有健康的, 不能把它解释为有益于健康的。要表示有益于健康的意思须用 *healthful*, 所以应该把误句里的 *healthy* 改为 *healthful*。

〔类例〕 It is *healthful* to eat. (吃它是卫生的。)

Tainan has a *healthful* climate. (台南的气候是有益于健康的。)

〔比较〕 She is a *healthy* girl. (她是一个健康的女孩。)

9. 误: He was *negligible* of his duties.

正: He was *negligent* of his duties.

(他疏忽他的职责。)

〔说明〕 *negligent* 和 *negligible* 是从 *neglect* (疏忽) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是疏忽的; 后者的解释是可以疏忽的, 没有疏忽的意义。要表示疏忽的意思, 须用 *negligent*, 所以应该把误句里的 *negligible* 改为 *negligent*。

〔类例〕 He is *negligent* in his business. (他疏忽他的事务)

He is a *negligent* official. (他是一个疏忽职务的官吏。)

〔比较〕 He is a *negligible* person. (他是一个不重要的人物。)

10. 误: He was always *respectable* to older people.

正: He was always *respectful* to older people.

(他始终尊敬年长的人。)

〔说明〕 *respectful* 和 *respectable* 是从 *respect* (尊敬) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 前者的意义是表示尊敬的; 后者的意义是受人尊敬的, 不可把它解释为表示尊敬的。要表明表示尊敬的意思, 须用 *respectful*, 所以应该把误句里的 *respectable* 改为 *respectful*。

〔类例〕 He made a *respectful* bow. (他恭敬地鞠躬。)

You should be *respectful* to your parents. (你应该尊敬父母。)

〔比较〕 He is a most *respectable* man. (他是一个极受人尊敬的人。)

11. 误: She is *contemptible* of his advice.

正: She is *contemptuous* of his advice.

(她蔑视他的劝告)

〔说明〕 *contemptuous* 和 *contemptible* 是从 *contempt* (轻视) 一词变化出来的两个形容词。前者的意义是表示轻视的; 后者的意义是可以轻视的, 不能把它解释为表示轻视的。要表明表示轻视的意思, 须用 *contemptuous*, 所以应该把误句里的 *contemptible* 改为 *contemptuous*。

〔类例〕 He received a *contemptuous* letter. (他收到一封表示轻蔑的信。)

Owing to his *contemptuous* way of speaking, his friend cannot hear it without offence.

(因了他以轻蔑的样子讲话, 他的朋友听了不免发怒。)

〔比较〕 His *contemptuous* attitude towards us is *contemptible*. (他的轻视我们的态度是可鄙的。)

12. 误: I like his *childish* manner.

正: I like his *childlike* manner.

(我喜欢他的天真烂漫的态度。)

〔说明〕*childlike* 和 *childish* 是从 *child* (小孩) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 但是它们的意义是不同的。前者的意义是天真烂漫的, 它是一个表示赞美的形容词; 后者的意义是幼稚的, 它是一个表示轻视的形容词。要表示天真烂漫的美质, 须用 *childlike*, 所以应该把误句里的 *childish* 改为 *childlike*。

〔类例〕I love her *childlike* face. (我爱他的天真烂漫的脸。)

He has an air of *childlike* innocence. (他有天真烂漫的模样。)

〔比较〕I dislike his *childish* talk. (我讨厌他的幼稚的谈话。)

13. 误: He is an *industrial* farmer.

正: He is an *industrious* farmer.

(他是一个勤劳的农夫。)

〔说明〕*industrious* 和 *industrial* 是从 *industry* (勤勉, 工业) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 可是它们的意义却完全不同。前者的意义是勤勉的; 后者的意义是工业的, 没有勤勉的意义。要表达勤勉的意思须用 *industrious*, 所以应该把误句里的 *industrial* 改为 *industrious*。

〔类例〕She is an *industrious* wife. (她是一位勤劳的太太。)

He is *industrious* in his business. (他勤于他的事业。)

〔比较〕It is an *industrial* school. (这是一所工业学校。)

14. 误: Drinking is *destructible* to health.

正: Drinking is *destructive* to health.

(饮酒有害于健康。)

〔说明〕 **destructive** 和 **destructible** 是从 **destroy** (破坏) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是毁灭的或有害的；后者的意义是可破坏的，不能把它解释为致毁灭的或有害的。要表示致毁灭的或有害的意思须用 **destructive**，所以应该把误句里的 **destructible** 改为 **destructive**。

〔类例〕 **The ship was wrecked in a *destructive* storm.** (这船在致毁灭的风暴中遭了难。)

〔比较〕 **Everything man made is *destructible*.** (凡人所做的东西都是能够毁坏的。)

15. 误: **He is an *honorary* gentleman.**

正: **He is an *honorable* gentleman.**

(他是一位受人尊敬的绅士。)

〔说明〕 **honorable** 和 **honorary** 是从 **honour** (尊敬；名誉) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是受人尊敬的；后者的意义是名誉的 (无实权或不担任职务的)，不能把它解释为受人尊敬的。要表示受人尊敬的意思须用 **honorable**，所以应该把误句里的 **honorary** 改为 **honorable**。

〔类例〕 **His conduct is *honourable*.** (他的行为是受人尊敬的。)

〔比较〕 **Some associations have *honorary* secretaries as well as regular paid secretaries.**

(有些会社不仅有普通的受雇的秘书，还有名誉秘书。)

16. 误: **Draw a *continual* straight line from point A to point B.**

正: **Draw a *continuous* straight line from point A to point B.**

(从 A 点到 B 点画一条连续的直线。)

〔说明〕 **continuous** 和 **continual** 是从 **continue** (继续) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，但是它们的意义却有点不同。这两个词虽



然都可以翻译为连续的，可是 *continuous* 所形容的连续是没有任何一点中断的；*continual* 所形容的连续却是有中断的。换句话说，在连续的状态中，虽然有许多中断可是大体上看来还是继续的，如 *continual showers*（连续的阵雨）。形容连续不断的直线，须用 *continuous*，所以应该把误句里的 *continual* 改为 *continuous*。

〔类例〕 *The continuous flow of the brook formed a ravine.*  
（溪水不断的流经之处成为山谷。）

〔比较〕 *Continual interruptions impede continuous work.*  
（不断的阻挠有碍工作的进行。）

*A continuous beach is exposed to the continual beating of the waves.*

（连续的海滩受海浪不断的打击。）

17. 误： *His comparable method of studying is novel.*

正： *His comparative method of studying is novel.*

（他的比较研究法是新的。）

〔说明〕 *comparative* 和 *comparable* 是从 *compare*（比较）一词变化出来的两个形容词，可是它们的意义却有点不同。前者的意义是比较的；后者的意义是可比的，没有比较的意义。要表达比较的意思须用 *comparative*，所以应该把误句里的 *comparable* 改为 *comparative*。

〔类例〕 *He lived in comparative comfort recently.*（近来他的生活过得比较舒适。）

*Christ died in comparative youth.*（做大事业的人死得比较早。）

〔比较〕 *There is no scenery comparable to that of the West Lake.*（没有风景可与西湖相比。）

18. 误： *Fairies are imaginative.*

正： *Fairies are imaginary.*

（小仙子是存于想象中的。）

〔说明〕 *imaginary* 和 *imaginative* 是从 *imagine* (想象) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却完全不同。前者的意义是想象的或存于想象的；后者的意义是富于想象的，没有存于想象的意义。若要表达存于想象的意思，须用 *imaginary*，所以应该把误句里的 *imaginative* 改写为 *imaginary*。

〔类例〕 It isn't real—it's only *imaginary*. (这不是真实的。——这只不过是想象的。)

Ghosts are *imaginary*. (鬼是存在于想象中的。)

〔比较〕 She is an *imaginative* writer. (她是一个富于想象的作家。)

Don Quixote was so *imaginative* that he fought many *imaginary* battles.

(唐吉珂是如此的富于想象，使他打了许多次想象的仗。)

〔参考〕 *imaginable* 也是从 *imagine* 一词变化出来的一个形容词，它的意义和 *imaginary* 及 *imaginative* 的不同，它的意义是可以想象的，例如：I have tried all means *imaginable*. (我已尝试了一切可想象的方法。)

19. 误：The story is hardly *credulous*.

正：The story is hardly *credible*.

(这个故事几乎是不可以相信的。)

〔说明〕 *credible* 和 *credulous* 是两个外形极相似的形容词，它们的语源也相近，它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是可信的；后者的意义是轻信的，没有可信的意义。若要表达可信的意思，须用 *credible*，所以应该把误句里的 *credulous* 改为 *credible*。

〔类例〕 It is a *credible* explanation. (这是一个可信的说明。)

〔比较〕 She is as *credulous* as a child. (她是像一个小孩子那样的轻信。)

〔参考〕**creditable** 是一个和 **credible** 同语源的形容词，它的意义是可赞许的，例如：

Her performance is highly *creditable*. (她的表演极可赞许。)

20. 误：A cultivated person may occasionally enjoy *barbarous* music.

正：A cultivated person may occasionally enjoy *barbaric* music.

(一个文明人有时可能享受粗俗的音乐。)

〔说明〕**barbarous** 和 **barbaric** 是从 **barbarian** (野蛮人) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是野蛮的和残忍的，不可用它来描写风格和趣味；后者的意义是粗俗的，可以拿来描写风格和趣味。若要表达粗俗的意思，须用 **barbaric**，不可用 **barbarous**，所以应该把误句里的 **barbarous** 改为 **barbaric**。

〔类例〕The hall was decorated in *barbaric* splendour. (厅堂被装饰得俗艳。)

〔比较〕These people came from *barbarous* countries. (这些人来自蛮邦。)

21. 误：He is an *effectual* speaker.

正：He is an *effective* speaker.

(他是一个动人的演说者。)

〔说明〕**effectual** 和 **effective** 是从 **effect** (效果) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义大部分是相同的，却有一些不同的地方。前者的意义是有效的，它只能形容物不能形容人；后者的意义和前者相同，可是它还能形容人。换句话说，当它们形容物时，它们的意义是一样的。但是后者还可以形容人，那时它的意义是动人的和精锐的，如 **an effective speaker** (一位动人的演说家)，**effective soldiers** (精锐的士兵)。若要表达动人的意思须用 **effective** 不可用 **effectual**，所以应该把误句里的 **effectual** 改为 **effective**。

〔类例〕 They are a company of *effective* soldiers. (他们是一连精锐的兵。)

〔比较〕 *Effectual* (or *Effective*) measures must be taken to meet this situation.

(我们一定要采取有效的手段以应付这局面。)

22. 误: He is an *efficacious* manager.

正: He is an *efficient* manager.

(他是一位胜任的经理。)

〔说明〕 *efficacious* 和 *efficient* 也是从 *effect* (效果) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义有一部分相同, 有一部分却不同。前者的意义是必然有效的, 它的语气比后者要强, 可以形容事物, 尤其多用于药品和治疗方法, 却不能形容人; 后者的意义, 当形容事物时, 也是有效的, 它的语气却比 *efficacious* 较轻, 但是它还可以形容人, 那时它的意义是胜任的。若要表达胜任的意思须用 *efficient*, 不可用 *efficacious*, 所以应该把误句里的 *efficacious* 改为 *efficient*。

〔类例〕 He has an *efficient* private secretary. (他有一位胜任工作的私人秘书。)

〔比较〕 The means for doing it are *efficacious*. (做这事的方法是必然有效的。)

You will find the medicine *efficacious*. (你会发现这药是灵验的。)

23. 误: I am most *regrettable* for my mistake.

正: I am most *regretful* for my mistake.

(我对于我的错误最感到悔恨。)

〔说明〕 *regretful* 和 *regrettable* 是从 *regret* (悔恨) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是感到悔恨的; 后者的意义是可悔恨的, 没有感到悔恨的意义。若要表达感到悔恨的

意思，须用 **regretful**，所以应该把误句里的 **regrettable** 改为 **regretful**。

〔类例〕 She shed *regretful* tears. (她流下感到悔恨的眼泪。)

〔比较〕 It is a **regrettable** error. (这是一个可悔恨的错误。)

24. 误: There is a *sensitive* difference in the temperature.

正: There is a *sensible* difference in the temperature.

(温度的不同是可感知的。)

〔说明〕 **sensible** 和 **sensitive** 是从 **sense** (感觉) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是可感知的；后者的意义是敏感的，没有可感知的意义。若要表达可感知的意思，须用 **sensible**，所以应该把误句里的 **sensitive** 改为 **sensible**。

〔类例〕 There is a *sensible* increase of velocity. (速度的增加是可感知的。)

〔比较〕 My skin is very *sensitive*. (我的皮肤是非常敏感的。)

25. 误: He is a **sensuous** person.

正: He is a **sensual** person.

(他是一个好色的人。)

〔说明〕 **sensual** 和 **sensuous** 也是从 **sense** (感觉) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，它们的意义却完全不同。前者的意义是耽于肉欲的，好色的，多用于坏的意思；**sensuous** 的意义是感觉的、美感的，没有好色的意义。若要表达耽于肉欲的或好色的意思，须用 **sensual**，不可用 **sensuous**，所以应该把误句里的 **sensuous** 改为 **sensual**。

〔类例〕 We should not indulge in *sensual* pleasures. (我们不应该耽于肉欲的快乐。)

〔比较〕 All art has a *sensuous* element, colour, form or sound.

(一切艺术都有一种美感的要素即色、外形或声。)

26. 误: She is *pitiable* to the poor.

正: She is *pitiful* to the poor.

(她怜悯穷人。)

〔说明〕 *pitiful* 和 *pitiable* 是从 *pity* (怜悯) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义却不同。前者有感到哀怜的意义; 后者的意义是可哀怜的或可轻视的, 没有感到哀怜的意义。若要表达感到哀怜的意思, 须用 *pitiful*, 不可用 *pitiable*, 所以应该把误句里的 *pitiable* 改为 *pitiful*。

〔类例〕 My sister is always *pitiful* to a stray dog. (我的妹妹老是怜悯迷途的狗。)

〔参考〕 (1) 作可哀怜的或可轻视的意义解时, *pitiful* 和 *pitiable* 是相同的, 例如:

The starving children were a pitiful sight. (挨饿的儿童是一个可怜的景象。)  
The starving children were a pitiable sight.

He has a pitiful ambition. (他有一个可轻视的志向。)  
He has a pitiable ambition.

(2) *piteous* 也是从 *pity* (怜悯) 一词变化出来的形容词, 它只有可哀怜的意义, 例如:

That is a *piteous* case. (那是一件可怜的事。)

27. 误: The school is at a *considerate* distance from my home.

正: The school is at a *considerable* distance from my home.

(学校离家很远。)

〔说明〕 **considerable** 和 **considerate** 是从 **consider** (考虑) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是颇多的或颇大的; 后者的意义是体谅的。若要表达颇多的或颇大的意义, 须用 **considerable**, 所以应该把误句里的 **considerate** 改为 **considerable**。

〔类例〕 I have given *considerable* thought to the matter.  
(我对于此事颇加以思考。)

〔比较〕 He is *considerate* of others. (他体谅别人。)

28. 误: He is *conscientious* of his own mistakes.

正: He is *conscious* of his own mistakes.

(他自知其过。)

〔说明〕 **conscious** 和 **conscientious** 是从 **conscience** (良心) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是自觉的; 后者的意义是正直的, 没有自觉的意义。若要表达自觉的意思, 须用 **conscious**, 所以应该把误句里的 **conscientious** 改为 **conscious**。

〔类例〕 He was *conscious* that his strength was failing.  
(他感到他的力量消失。)

〔比较〕 He is a *conscientious* judge. (他是一个正直的法官。)

29. 误: Our principal is a *notorious* man.

正: Our principal is a *notable* man.

(我们的中学校长是一位闻人。)

〔说明〕 **notable** 和 **notorious** 是两个外形相似的形容词, 它们的语源也相近, 它们的意义却相反。前者的意义是有好名的, 后者的意义却是有坏名的。若要表达有好名的意思, 须用 **notable**, 不可用 **notorious**, 所以应该把误句里的 **notorious** 改为 **notable**。

〔类例〕 *Jane Eyre* is a *notable* book. (《简·爱》是一本名著。)

〔比较〕 Monte Carlo is a place *notorious* for gambling. (蒙的加罗是一个以赌博闻名的地方。)

30. 误: Give my best regards to your *reverent* father.

正: Give my best regards to your *reverend* father.

(请向令尊问候。)

〔说明〕 *reverend* 和 *reverent* 是从 *revere* (尊敬) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是可尊敬的; 后者的意义是表示尊敬的或感到敬意的, 没有可尊敬的意义。若要表达可尊敬的意思, 须用 *reverend* 不可用 *reverent*, 所以应该把误句里的 *reverent* 改为 *reverend*。

〔类例〕 She studied painting under the *reverend* master.  
(她在受人尊敬的大师下学画。)

〔比较〕 He gave *reverent* attention to the sermon. (他恭敬地听讲道。)

31. 误: Mr. Tu took *audicious* proceedings against him.

正: Mr. Tu took *judicial* proceedings against him.

(杜先生提起诉讼控告他。)

〔说明〕 *judicial* 和 *judicious* 是两个外形相似的形容词, 它们的语源也相近, 它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是法庭的或法庭判决的; 后者的意义是贤明的, 没有法庭的意义。若要表达法庭的意思, 须用 *judicial*, 不可用 *judicious*, 所以应该把误句里的 *judicious* 改为 *judicial*。

〔类例〕 Mrs. Tu got a *judicial* separation from her husband. (杜太太得到法庭判决夫妇分居。)

〔比较〕 A *judicious* parent encourages his children to make their own decisions.

(一个贤明的父亲或母亲鼓励儿女自作抉择。)

32. 误: She was bedecked with *ostensible* jewels.



正: She was bedecked with *ostentatious* jewels.

(她饰以外表美观的宝石。)

〔说明〕 *ostentatious* 和 *ostensible* 是两个同语源的形容词，它们的意义却是不同的。前者的意义是夸张的或外表美观的，后者的意义是表面的。若要表达夸张的或外表美观的意思，须用 *ostentatious*，不可用 *ostensible*，所以应该把误句里的 *ostensible* 改为 *ostentatious*。

〔类例〕 He has an *ostentatious* manner. (他有一种夸张的态度。)

〔比较〕 The man whose *ostensible* purpose was patriotism was actually a spy.

(那个表面目的是爱国的人实际上是间谍。)

33. 误: The liar may get some *momentous* benefit from his falsehood.

正: The liar may get some *momentary* benefit from his falsehood.

(说谎者可能从他的谎言得到一些片刻的利益。)

〔说明〕 *momentary* 和 *momentous* 虽然都是从 *moment* (片刻) 一词变化出来的两个形容词，可是他们的意义却不同。前者的意义是刹那的，后者的意义是重要的。要表达刹那的意思，须用 *momentary*，所以应该把误句里的 *momentous* 改为 *momentary*。

〔类例〕 His griefs are *momentary*, and his joys immortal.

(他的悲伤是刹那的，他的愉快是不朽的。)

This error seems to have arisen from a *momentary* forgetfulness.

(这错误似乎发生于片刻的遗忘。)

〔比较〕 He made a *momentous* decision. (他做了一次重要的决定。)

34. 误: Morning exercise is *beneficent* to our health.

正: Morning exercise is *beneficial* to our health.

(早操对于我们的健康是有益的。)

〔说明〕 *beneficial* 和 *beneficent* 都是从 *benefit* (利益) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 但它们的意思是不同的。前者的意义是有益的, 后者的意义却是慈善的。要表示有益的意思, 须用 *beneficial*, 所以应该把误句里的 *beneficent* 改为 *beneficial*。

〔类例〕 *Sunshine is beneficial to plants.* (阳光对于植物有益。)

*I hope your holiday will be beneficial.* (我希望你的假期会对你有益。)

〔比较〕 *The merchant is beneficent to the poor.* (这商人对于穷人慈善。)

35. 误: He is a *practicable* young man.

正: He is a *practical* young man.

(他是一个注重实行的青年。)

〔说明〕 *practical* 和 *practicable* 都是从 *practise* (实行) 一词变化出来的两个形容词, 但是它们的意义却不同。前者的意义是实际的或实践的, 可形容人或物; 后者的意义是可实行的, 可以形容物, 却不能形容人, 在上面的句子里要表明一个青年人务实的性情, 须用 *practical*, 所以应该把误句里的 *practicable* 改为 *practical*。

〔类例〕 *He is a practical engineer.* (他是一位有实地经验的工程师。)

〔比较〕 *It is a practicable plan.* (这是一个可以实行的计划。)

36. 误: He put up at a *luxuriant* hotel.

正: He put up at a *luxurious* hotel.

(他住在一家豪华的旅馆。)

〔说明〕 *luxurious* 和 *luxuriant* 都是从 *luxury*（奢侈，豪华）一词变化出来的两个形容词，但是它们的意义是不同的。前者的意义是奢侈的或豪华的；后者的意义是茂盛的或华美的，它可以形容树木的茂盛，文体的华美，却没有奢侈的和豪华的意思。要表示豪华的意思，须用 *luxurious*，所以应该把误句里的 *luxuriant* 改为 *luxurious*。

〔类例〕 He has a *luxurious* habit.（他有奢华的习惯。）

He lives in *luxurious* surroundings.（他生活于奢华的环境中。）

〔比较〕 He wrote an essay in a *luxuriant* style.（他以华美的文体写了一篇散文。）

37. 误： My friend is a *tasty* artist.

正： My friend is a *tasteful* artist.

（我的朋友是一位风雅的艺术师。）

〔说明〕 *tasteful* 和 *tasty* 都是从 *taste*（味、风味）一词变化出来的两个形容词，但是它们的意义是不同的。前者的意义是风雅的或美味的；后者的意义只有美味的，却没有风雅的意思。要表示风雅的意思，须用 *tasteful*，不能用 *tasty*，所以应该把误句里的 *tasty* 改为 *tasteful*。

〔类例〕 He bought a set of *tasteful* furniture.（他买了一套雅致的家具。）

〔比较〕 He got a *tasty* meal for a couple of dollars.（他费两块钱吃了一餐美味的饭。）

38. 误： He is very *economic* of his time.

正： He is very *economical* of his time.

（他很经济他的时间。）

〔说明〕 *economical* 和 *economic* 虽然是从 *economy*（经济）一词变化出来的两个形容词，但是它们的意思是不同的。前者的意义是经济的或节俭的；后者的意义是经济学的或经济上的，没有节

俭的意义，要表示节俭的或经济的意思，须用 **economical**，所以应该把误句里的 **economic** 改为 **economical**。

〔类例〕He is *economical* with his money. (他用钱节俭。)

〔比较〕It is an *economic* problem. (这是一个经济〔学〕上的问题。)

39. 误: It is *further* than I can reach.

正: It is *farther* than I can reach.

(这地方是远于我所能到的。)

〔说明〕**farther** 和 **further** 是从 **far** (远的) 一词变化出来的两个比较级的形容词，它们的意义却是不同的。在正式的英语里，前者表示距离的远近而后者表示抽象的程度。要表示距离的远近，须用 **farther**，所以应该把误句里的 **further** 改为 **farther**。

〔类例〕I cannot reach the *farther* side of the hill. (我不能到达山的那边。)

**Kaohsing** is *farther* from Taipei than Tainan. (高雄离台北较台南离台北为远。)

〔比较〕I will get *further* information. (我要得到另外的消息。)

40. 误: The *later* speaker was not so good as the former.

正: The *latter* speaker was not so good as the former.

(后讲的那位演讲者没有先讲的那位那样好。)

〔说明〕**later** 和 **latter** 是从 **late** (迟的) 一词变化出来的两个比较级的形容词，它们的意义却是不同的。前者的意义是较迟的或较后的，后者的意义是后者的。还有一点重要的不同点：**later** 是表明时间的而 **latter** 是表明次序的。要表明和前者的 (**former**) 对立的后者的，须用 **latter**，所以应该把误句里的 **later** 改为 **latter**。

〔类例〕Mr. Chang and Mr. Lee called on me yesterday, the *latter* gentleman is an engineer.

(张先生和李先生昨天访我，后者是一位工程师。)

〔比较〕 This is a *later* edition. (这是较近的版本。)

41. 误: What is the *last* news from your home?

正: What is the *latest* news from your home?

(家中最近的消息如何?)

〔说明〕 *latest* (最近的) 和 *last* (最后的) 都是从 *late* (迟的) 一词变化出来的最高级的形容词，但是 *latest* 是表示时间的，而 *last* 是表示次序的。要表达最近的时间观念，须用 *latest*，所以应该把误句里的 *last* 改为 *latest*。

〔类例〕 Have you heard the *latest* news? (你听到最近的消息吗?)

It is his *latest* work. (这是他的最近的著作。)

〔比较〕 The *last* house in the street is my home. (街上最后的一幢房子是我的家。)

42. 误: We have *lesser* rain this year.

正: We have *less* rain this year.

(今年雨较少。)

〔说明〕 *less* 和 *lesser* 都是 *little* 的比较级，不过它们的意义却不同。前者可指量的较少；后者的意义相当于 *smaller*，只能形容体积的较小或者形容较次重要的东西，绝不能形容量的较少。若要表述量的较少，须用 *less*，所以应该把误句里的 *lesser* 改为 *less*。

〔类例〕 If you don't want to get fat, eat *less* food. (倘不欲胖须少食。)

〔比较〕 The greater light rules the day and the *lesser* light rules the night.

(较大的光管昼，较小的光管夜。)(白天太阳照耀世界夜间月亮照耀世界。)

## 36 几对容易互相误用的形容词

1. 误: He has *much* books in his study.

正: He has *many* books in his study.

(他在书房里有很多的书。)

〔说明〕**many** 和 **much** 虽然都可以翻译为许多的, 可是 **many** 只能形容可以数的东西, **much** 却只能形容那些不可以数的东西。因为 **books** 是可以数的, 所以应该把误句里的 **much** 改为 **many**。

〔类例〕There are *many* children in the garden. (在园里有许多孩子。)

〔比较〕He has *much* money. (他的钱很多。)

We do not drink *much* wine. (我们饮酒不多。)

2. 误: I have *few* money.

正: I have *little* money.

(我的钱很少。)

〔说明〕**few** 和 **little** 虽然都可以翻译为很少的, 可是 **few** 只能形容可以数的东西, **little** 却只能形容那些不可以数的东西。因为 **money** (钱财) 是不可以数的, 所以应该把误句里的 **few** 改为 **little**。

〔类例〕There is *little* sugar left. (余下的糖很少。)

He has very *little* knowledge of the subject. (他对于这个问题的知识很少。)

〔比较〕There were *few* people there. (那里人很少。)

He has *few* friends. (他的朋友很少。)

3. 误: Though he is a poor student, he has *few* books.

正: Though he is a poor student, he has *a few* books.

(他虽然是个穷学生, 却有几本书。)

〔说明〕*few* 有否定的语气, 它的意思是“不多”(not many), *a few* 有肯定的语气, 它的意思是“几个”(some)。上面的句子是表示肯定的意思的, 所以应该把误句里的 *few* 改为 *a few*。

〔类例〕The composition is well written, but it has *a few* mistakes.

(这篇作文写得很好, 可是还有几个错误。——表示肯定的语气。)

He has *a few* friends. (他有几个朋友。——表示肯定的语气。)

*A few* people may always be seen on the streets.

(街上总可以看到几个人。——表示肯定的语气。)

If you want money, I can lend you *a few* dollars.

(如果你要钱的话我可以借给你几块。——表示肯定的语气。)

〔比较〕The composition is well written, as a result, it has *few* mistakes.

(这篇作文写得很好, 结果错误不多。——表示否定的语气。)

He has *few* friends. (他的朋友不多。——表示否定的语气。)

〔参考〕only *a few* 却等于 *few*, 表示很少的意思, 例如:

There are only *a few* such men. (这样的人是很少的。)

Only *a few* people could understand the book. (很少人能懂这本书。)

4. 误: He has *little* money, so he can buy some sweets.

正: He has *a little* money, so he can buy some sweets.

(他有点钱所以他能买些糖果。)

〔说明〕 **little** 有否定的语气，它的意思是“不多的”（**not much**）；**a little** 有肯定的语气，它的意思是“少许的”（**some**）或“少量的”（**a small quantity of**）。上面的句子是表示肯定的语气的，所以应该把误句里的 **little** 改为 **a little**。

〔类例〕 **He is not much better, but there is *a little* hope.**

（他的病虽然不甚好，可是还有点希望。——表示肯定的语气）

**He received *a little* education.**（他受过一点教育。——表示肯定的语气）

〔比较〕 **He grows worse; there is *little* hope of his recovery.**

（他的病况转坏，痊愈的希望不多。——表示否定的语气。）

**He received *little* education.**（他所受的教育不多。——表示否定的语气。）

5. 误： ***Less* people study Latin today than fifty years ago.**

正： ***Fewer* people study Latin today than fifty years ago.**

（今日学拉丁文的人较五十年前为少。）

〔说明〕在正式的英文里 **less**（较少的）只能用来形容不可以数的东西，因为它是 **little** 的比较级，所以应该把误句里的 **less** 改为 **fewer**。

〔类例〕 ***Fewer* people go to church than to theatres.**（去教堂的人较去戏院的人为少。）

〔比较〕 **He has *less* money than ever.**（他的钱较过去为少。）

6. 误： **He made the *least* mistakes in his composition.**

正： **He made the *fewest* mistakes in his composition.**

（他的作文犯错最少。）

〔说明〕 **least**（最少的）是 **little** 的最高级，只能用来形容不可以数的东西。**mistake**（错误）是可以数的，所以应该把误句里的 **le**



ast 改为 fewest。

〔类例〕 Among my friends, he has the *fewest* books. (在我的友人之中, 他的藏书最少。)

〔比较〕 His house is at the *least* distance. (他的家离此地最近。)

7. 误: Are there *some* books?

正: Are there *any* books?

(有书吗? )

〔说明〕 *some* 的意思是几个或一些, 它可以形容可数的东西, 也可以形容不可以数的东西。它通常不用在疑问句、否定句或条件句内, 在这种句子里我们要用 *any* 来代替它, 所以应该把误句里的 *so me* 改为 *any*。

〔类例〕 Have you *any* money? (你有钱吗? )

There isn't *any* water. (没有水。)

If there is *any* trouble, let me know. (假使你有何困难, 让我知道。)

〔比较〕 I have *some* money. (我有些钱。)

There is *some* water. (有些水。)

There are *some* books. (有些书。)

〔参考〕在问句里, 当我们希望得到肯定的答复时, 我们须用 *so me*, 如:

Would you lend me *some* money?

(你愿意借给我一点钱吗? ——希望得到一个肯定的答复)

8. 误: *Every* one of the twin brothers has his duty.

正: *Each* one of the twin brothers has his duty.

(孪生兄弟中每一个人有他的职任。)

〔说明〕 **each** 可以形容两个中的每个或者形容两个以上中的每个，**every** 只能形容两个以上中的每个，却不能形容两个中的每个。孪生兄弟是两个人，形容两个人中的每个须用 **each**，所以应该把误句中的 **every** 改为 **each**。

〔类例〕 There are trees on *each* side of the road. (路的两边都有树。)

He carries a lantern in *each* hand. (他的每只手里拿着一个灯笼。)

I know *each* member of the family. (我认得这家中的各个人。)

〔比较〕 There are enemies on *every* side. (四方都有敌人。)

9. 误: *Each* man should respect his parents.

正: *Every* man should respect his parents.

(凡人都应该尊敬他的父母。)

〔说明〕 **each** 和 **every** 虽然都可以翻译为“每个”，可是 **each** 常指一个小团体里的每个，如: *Each* boy sitting at the table is my brother. (坐在桌旁的每个孩子都是我的兄弟。——指一个小团体里的每个) 假使没有形容短语的限制 **every** 可以指任何一个，如: *Every* boy should obey his parents. (凡孩子都应服从父母。) 在上面句子里所说的每个人是指天下任何一个人，所以应该把误句里的 **each** 改为 **every**。

〔类例〕 *Every* good man will prosper. (每个好人会发达。)

〔比较〕 *Each* man may try twice. (每个人可试两次。一小团体中的每个。)

10. 误: My brother is a *high* man.

正: My brother is a *tall* man.

(我的兄弟是一个长人。)

〔说明〕 **high** 和 **tall** 虽然都可以翻译为高的，可是它们的意义有点不同。**tall** 有瘦长的意思，专形容人或其他细长的东西如柱和尖塔。**high** 可形容细长的东西以外的一切高的东西如树、山、云等，要表示一个人的长，须用 **tall**，所以应该把误句里的 **high** 改为 **tall**。

〔类例〕 There are many *tall* chimneys in the city. (城内有许多高烟囱。)

A *tall* spire can be seen for miles around. (一个高的塔尖在周围数里以内可以看到。)

〔比较〕 There is a very *high* mountain beyond the river. (在河的那一边有一座非常高的山。)

11. 误: I am quite *good*, thank you.

正: I am quite *well*, thank you.

(我很健康，谢谢您。)

〔说明〕 **good** 的意义很多，可以把它解释为有益的，如: **Games are good for health.** (游戏对于健康有益。 ) 也可以把它解释为善良的，如: **He is a good man.** (他是一个好人。 ) 还可以把它解释为强健的或有力的，如: **His eyesight is still quite good.** (他的目力还很强。 ) **I am good for another ten miles.** (我还有力再走十里路。 ) 但是它没有整个身体健康的意义。要表示这种整个身体健康的意思，须用 **well**，所以应该把误句里的 **good** 改为 **well**。

〔类例〕 I hope you will soon get *well* again. (我希望你不久可康复。)

## 37 形容词当副词用的错误

1. 误: She speaks English *good*.

正: She speaks English *well*.

(她的英语讲得好。)

〔说明〕**good** (好) 只能作形容词用, 不能把它当副词用。**well** 才是表示好的副词。要表示英语讲得好, 须用 **well**, 所以应该把误句里的 **good** 改为 **well**。

〔类例〕I did not rest *well* last night. (我昨夜睡得不好。)

You should do it *well*. (你应该把这事好好地做。)

〔比较〕It is *good* to have plenty of money. (有充分的钱是好的。)

2. 误: He gets up early *everyday*.

正: He gets up early *every day*.

(他每天起早。)

〔说明〕**everyday** (每日的, 普通的) 是形容词, 不能当副词用。**every day** 才是表示每天的副词短语, 所以应该把误句里的 **everyday** 改为 **every day**。

〔类例〕He studies English *every day*. (他每天学习英语。)

〔比较〕It is an *everyday* occurrence. (这是一个普通事件。)

3. 误: I put the room *orderly*.

正: I put the room *in order*.

(我整理房间。)

〔说明〕形容 **orderly** (整齐的) 的词尾 **ly** 虽然像副词的, 它却不能当副词用。**in order** 才是表示整齐的副词短语。在误句中把 **orderly** 当副词用, 这显然是错的, 所以应该把它改为 **in order**。

〔类例〕**These things should be set *in order*.** (这些东西应该整理好。)

〔比较〕**It is an *orderly* room.** (这是一间整齐的房间。)

4. 误: **He failed in the examination *due to* carelessness.**

正: **He failed in the examination *owing to* carelessness.**

(他因粗心而考试失败。)

〔说明〕**due to** 可算是一个特殊的形容短语, 因为它一定要和名词连用, 如 **due to carelessness** (因粗心), **due to accident** (由于意外), 可是它不能当副词短语用。要用表示由于粗心的副词短语, 须用 **owing to carelessness**, 所以应该把误句里的 **due to** 改为 **owing to**。

〔类例〕**He cannot go to school *owing to* illness.** (他因病不能去学校。)

〔比较〕**His failure in the examination is *due to* carelessness.** (他的考试失败是由于粗心。)

〔注〕**due to** 开始的形容词短语应该用在 **verb to be** 的后面。

5. 误: **It is cold *outdoor*.**

正: **It is cold *outdoors*.**

(户外冷。)

〔说明〕**outdoor** (户外的) 和 **indoor** (户内的) 是形容词。在它们的词尾加 **s** 便成副词 **outdoors** (户外地) 和 **indoors** (户内地)。在误句里把 **outdoor** 当副词用, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它改为 **outdoors**。

〔类例〕 Children like to play *outdoors*. (孩子们爱在户外玩。)

You stay too much *indoors*. (你在户内的时间太多了。)

〔比较〕 I like to lead an *outdoor* life. (我喜欢过户外生活。)

We had great fun at the *indoor* games. (我们做户内游戏非常有趣。)

## 38 形容词当动词的错误

1. 误: *Do you fond of hunting?*

正: *Are you fond of hunting?*

(你喜欢打猎吗?)

〔说明〕**fond** (喜欢的) 是形容词, 不能当动词用。在误句里把它当作动词用, 这显然是错的, 所以应该把误句里的 **Do** 改为 **Are**。

〔类例〕*She is fond of music.* (她喜欢音乐。)

〔比较〕*Do you like hunting?* (你喜欢打猎吗?)

2. 误: *Do you afraid of dogs?*

正: *Are you afraid of dogs?*

(你怕狗吗?)

〔说明〕**afraid** (害怕的) 是形容词, 不能当动词用。在误句里把它当动词用这显然是错的, 所以应该把误句里的 **Do** 改为 **Are**。

〔类例〕*I am afraid to go.* (我怕去。)

〔比较〕*Do you fear dogs?* (你怕狗吗?)

3. 误: *The portrait does not like you.*

正: *The portrait is not like you.*

(这张肖像是不像你的。)

〔证明〕**like** 作动词用时, 它的意义是欢喜; 它作形容词用时, 它的意义是像。当 **like** 的意义是像时, 它是形容词, 不能当动词用, 所以应该把误句里的 **does** 改为 **is**。

〔类例〕*The pond is like a mirror.* (这池像一面镜子。)

〔比较〕 I *do* not *like* the portrait. (我不喜欢这张肖像。)



## 39 属性形容词和谓语部分形容词易犯的错误

1. 误: The boy is *little*.

正: The boy is *small*.

(这孩子是小的。)

〔说明〕当 *little* 作小解时, 它只能直接形容名词, 不能作谓语动词的补语, *small* 才能作谓语动词的补语, 所以应该把误句里的 *little* 改为 *small*。

〔类例〕All the rooms are *small*. (所有的房间是小的。)

*These shoes are too small for me.* (这双鞋子给我穿太小了。)

〔比较〕She is a *little* girl. (她是一个小女孩。)

〔参考〕Give me a *little* water, even if it be very little. (给我一点水, 即使是很少的。)

〔注〕在这句里, *little* 虽然用在谓语部分, 但是它的意义不是小的而是少的。

2. 误: Is the fish still *live*?

正: Is the fish still *living*? 或 Is the fish still *alive*?

(鱼还活着吗?)

〔说明〕形容词 *live* (活的) 虽然可以直接形容名词, 却不能作谓语动词的补语。 *living* 和 *alive* 具有同样的意义, 并且可以作谓语动词的补语, 所以应该把误句里的 *live* 改为 *living* 或 *alive*。

〔类例〕The fish we caught is still *alive*. (我们所捕的鱼还活着。)

I fear he is no longer *living*. (我恐怕他已死了。)

〔比较〕 It is a *live* fish. (这是一条活鱼。)

3. 误: These pearls are *imitation*.

正: These pearls are *imitative*.

(这些珍珠是仿制的。)

〔说明〕 **imitation** (仿制的, 假造的) 和 **mock** (模拟的, 假的) 两个形容词虽然可以直接形容名词, 却不能作谓语动词的补语。**imitative** (仿制的, 假造的) 和 **false** (假造的, 假的) 才可以作谓语动词的补语, 所以应该把误句里的 **imitation** 改为 **imitative**。

〔类例〕 The leather is *imitative*. (这皮革是仿制的。)

The trial is *false*. (这审判是假的。)

〔比较〕 It is a piece of *imitation* leather. (这是一块人造皮。)

It is a *mock* trial. (这是一次假的审判。)

4. 误: He is an *ill* man.

正: He is a *sick* man.

(他是一个病人。)

〔说明〕 如 **ill** (有病的) 和 **well** (健康的) 形容词只能作谓语动词的补语, 却不能直接形容名词。**sick** (有病的) 和 **healthy** (健康的) 与上面两个形容词的意义相同, 它们才能直接形容名词, 所以应该把误句里的 **ill** 改为 **sick**。

〔类例〕 I asked after my *sick* friend. (我问候我的病友。)

She is a *healthy* girl. (她是一个健康的女孩。)

〔比较〕 He is *ill*. (他有病。)

I am quite *well*, thank you. (我很好, 谢谢你。)

5. 误: He gave me a *loath* answer.

正: He gave me an *unwilling* answer. 或 He gave me a *reluctant* answer.

(他给我一个不愿意的回答。)

〔说明〕如 *loath* (不愿的), *worth* (有价值的) 等形容词可以作谓语动词的补语, 却不能放在名词前形容名词。*unwilling* (不愿的) 和 *worthy* (有价值的) 与上面两个形容词的意义相同, 它们才能放在名词前形容名词, 所以应该把误句里的 *loath* 改为 *unwilling* 或 *reluctant*, 因为 *reluctant* (不愿的) 也可以直接形容名词。

〔类例〕He gave me an *unwilling* assistance. (他给我勉强的帮助。)

He made a *reluctant* answer. (他作了一个勉强的回答。)

He is a *worthy* student. (他是一个有价值的学生。)

〔比较〕The girl was *loath* to go. (这女孩不愿去。)

The book is *worth* reading. (这本书是值得读的。)

〔参考〕(1) The students *loath* to go may remain here. (不愿意去的学生可以留下在此。)

(2) Nothing *worth* mentioning occurred. (没有发生值得提的事情。)

〔注〕在第一句里, *loath to go* 放在名词 *students* 的后面形容它; 在第二句里, *worth mentioning* 放在名词 *nothing* 的后面形容它。这种形容短语实在是由形容从句 *who are loath to go* 和 *which was worth mentioning* 省略而成的。

(3) The children were nothing *loath*, for the house was splendid, and the welcome kind enough. (孩子们并无不愿, 因为房子是辉煌的, 并且对她们的欢迎是十分和蔼的。)

〔注〕在这句里的 *nothing loath* (并无不愿, 完全满足) 是成语。

6. 误: An *asleep* man cannot hear it.

正: A *sleeping* man cannot hear it.

（一个睡着的人不能听到它。）

〔说明〕如 **asleep**（睡的），**alive**（活的）等形容词可以作谓语动词的补语，可以放在名词后形容名词，却不能放在名词前形容名词。**sleeping**（睡着的）和 **live**（活的）或 **living**（活的）和上面两个形容词的意义相同，它们才能放在名词前形容名词，所以应该把误句里的 **asleep** 改为 **sleeping**。

〔类例〕Let *sleeping* dogs lie.（不要干涉而惹事。）

He is the greatest *living* master of style.（他是当世第一个文章家。）

I have not seen a *live* phoenix.（我不曾见过一只活的凤凰。）

〔比较〕The fish we caught is still *alive*.（我们所捉的鱼仍旧活着。）

He is *asleep*.（他睡着。）

〔参考〕（1）A man *asleep* cannot hear it.（一个睡着的人不能听到它。）

〔注〕这个放在名词后面的形容 **asleep** 实在是形容从句 **who is asleep** 省略而成的。

（2）He is the happiest man *alive*.（他是世上最快乐的人。）

〔注〕这个放在名词后面的形容词 **alive** 实在是由 **who is alive** 省略而成的。

## 40 形容词的位置的错误

1. 误: I want a *hot* cup of tea.

正: I want a cup of *hot* tea.

(我要一杯热茶。)

〔说明〕在一杯热茶的短语里，热是应该形容茶的，我们不可把它来形容杯子，所以我们要把 **a hot cup of tea** 改为 **a cup of hot tea**。

〔类例〕I drank a glass of *hot* water. (我喝了一杯热水。)

Please pour me out a cup of *hot* coffee. (请给我倒一杯热咖啡。)

〔比较〕I drank a *big* cup of beer. (我喝了一大杯啤酒。)

〔参考〕He bought a *new* pair of shoes. (他买了一双新鞋。)

〔注〕**a new pair of shoes** 的原意是另一双鞋，后来也表示一双新鞋的意思，这是俗语的用法。

2. 误: I have *new something* to tell you.

正: I have *something new* to tell you.

(我有些新奇的事告诉你。)

〔说明〕普通形容词形容名词时，须把形容词放在名词的前面，但是形容 **something, anything, nothing, everything** 等名词时须把形容词放在这些名词的后面。在误句里 **new** 被放在 **something** 的前面，这是错误的，所以应该把 **new** 放在 **something** 的后面。

〔类例〕I found *something eatable*. (我找到了些可吃的东西。)

Is there *anything new*? (有任何新的东西吗?)

It is *nothing serious*. (它是不重要的。)

*Everything good* comes from the United States. (好的东西都来自美国。)

*Nothing great* is easy. (没有大的事情是容易的。)

3. 误: *Clever everybody* can do it.

正: *Everybody clever* can do it.

(每个聪明的人能够做这事。)

〔说明〕形容 *nobody*, *somebody*, *anybody*, *everybody* 等词时, 也须把形容词放在它们的后面, 所以应该把误句里的 *clever* 放到 *everybody* 的后面。

〔类例〕I met *somebody old*. (我遇到某个老人。)

Have you found *anybody rich*? (你找到任何富有的人吗?)

It needs *somebody stronger* to do work of that sort. (这需要较强的人去做那种工作。)

*Everybody present* wants to do it. (每个出席的人要做这件事情。)

4. 误: He is the happiest *alive man*.

正: He is the happiest *man alive*.

(他是世上最快乐的人。)

〔说明〕普通形容词形容名词时, 须把形容词放在名词的前面, 但是有些形容词形容名词时, 须把它们放在名词的后面。这些特别的形容词就是 *alive* (活的), *afraid* (感到恐惧的), *else* (别的), *aware* (知道的), *ashamed* (感到羞耻的), *awake* (洞悉的), *worth* (值得的), *akin* (类似的) 等。在误句里 *alive* 被放在名词 *man* 的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它放在 *man* 的后面。

〔类例〕They are the best men *alive*. (他们是世上最好的人。)

He is a man *afraid* of dogs. (他是一个怕狗的人。)

There is no one *else* in the room. (室中没有别人。)

The boy, *aware of his own mistakes*, ran away. (那个明白自己的错误的孩子跑开了。)

The boy, *ashamed of his bad conduct*, confessed the fault.

(那个对自己的坏行为感到羞耻的孩子供认这过失。)

There is no person *aware* to the danger. (没有人洞悉这危险。)

There is nothing *worth* doing. (没有值得做的事情。)

Spanish, *akin* to Latin, is not very hard to learn.

(西班牙文类似拉丁文是不太难学习的。)

5. 误: I like *beautiful those* butterflies.

正: I like *those beautiful* butterflies.

(我爱那些美丽的蝴蝶。)

〔说明〕 当一个叙述形容词和一个指示形容词同时形容一个名词时，叙述形容词须放在指示形容词的后面。在误句里，叙述形容词放在指示形容词 **those** 的前面，这是错误的，所以应该把 **beautiful** 放到 **those** 的后面。

〔类例〕 I dislike *that black* cat. (我不喜欢那只黑猫。)

I met *that beautiful* girl yesterday. (昨天我遇到那位美丽的姑娘。)

〔参考〕 (1) 当一个指示形容词和一个数目形容词同时形容一个名词时，指示形容词须放

在数目形容词的前面，例如: I saw *those two* boys. (我看到两个孩子。)

(2) 当一个数目形容词和一个叙述形容词同时形容一个名词时，数目形容词须放在叙述形容词的前面，例如：I have *two interesting* books. (我有两本有趣的书。)

(3) 同样的，数量形容词须放在叙述形容词的前面，例如：There is *much white* sugar. (有许多白糖。)

(4) 当一个不定形容词和一个叙述形容词同时形容一个名词时，不定形容词须放在叙述形容词的前面，例如：He has read *every interesting* book in the school. (他曾读学校里每一本有趣的书。)

(5) 疑问形容词须放在叙述形容词的前面，例如：What *good fun* is it going to be? (这将成为如何有趣的事情?)

(6) 关系形容词须放在叙述形容词的前面，例如：He told me *what misfortunes he had suffered*. (他告诉我他所遭受的不幸。)

6. 误：Our *three first* lessons are not difficult.

正：Our *first three* lessons are not difficult.

(我们的前三课书是不难的。)

〔说明〕 当一个序数的形容词和一个数目形容词同时形容一个名词时，序数形容词须放在数目形容词的前面。在误句中，**three** 放在 **first** 的前面，这是错误的，所以应该把 **first** 放在 **three** 的前面。

〔类例〕 Her *first two* names are Mary Grant. (她的前两个名字是玛丽、格兰脱。)

7. 误：She has a *green pretty* suit.

正：She has a *pretty green* suit.

(她有一套美丽的绿衣服。)

〔说明〕 当一个普通的叙述形容词和一个颜色的形容词同时形容一个名词时，普通的叙述形容词须放在颜色的形容词的前面。在误句里，颜色形容词 **green** 放在普通形容词 **pretty** 的前面，这显然是错误的，所以应该改正如上。



〔类例〕 I like *little red* flowers. (我爱小的红花。)

8. 误: He is a *Chinese beautiful* lady.

正: He is a *beautiful Chinese* lady.

(她是一位美丽的中国小姐。)

〔说明〕 当一个叙述形容词和一个专有形容词同时形容一个名词时, 叙述形容词须放在专有形容词的前面。在误句里, 专有形容词 **C**hinese 放在叙述形容词 beautiful 的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该改正如上。

〔类例〕 He is a *famous Italian* composer. (他是一位著名的意大利作曲家。)

9. 误: I have heard those *radio American* programs.

正: I have heard those *American radio* programs.

(我曾听到那些美国的无线电节目。)

〔说明〕 当一个专有形容词和一个用作形容词的名词同时修饰一个名词时, 专有形容词须放在用作形容词的名词的前面。在误句里, 用作形容词的名词 **r**adio 放在专有形容词 **A**merican 的前面, 这是错误的。所以应该改正如上。

〔类例〕 She is a *Chinese girl* student. (她是一个中国女学生。)

10. 误: She is a *young clever* lady.

正: She is a *clever young* lady.

(她是一位聪明的年轻小姐。)

〔说明〕 当一个表性质状态的形容词和一个表年龄的形容词同时形容一个名词时, 表性质状态的形容词须放在表年龄的形容词的前面。在误句里, 表年龄的形容词 **y**oung 却放在表性质状态的形容词 **c**lever 的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该改正如上。

〔类例〕 My father is a *venerable old* scholar. (我的父亲是一位受人尊敬的老学者。)

41 冠词间的错用

*an*

*a*

*a*

*An*

*an*

*a*

*a*

*an*

*a*

*an*

*an*

*a*

*a*

*the*

*a*

*a*

*The*

*the*

*A*

*The*

*The*

*the*

*the*

*on earth*

*a busy*

*a full*

## 42 多用冠词的错误

1. 误: He went to *the Tung-Ning Road* by pedicab.

正: He went to *Tung-Ning Road* by pedicab.

(他乘三轮车到东宁路去。)

〔说明〕在人名地名等专有名词前不应用冠词，所以应该将误句中 *Tung-Ning Road* 前面的 *the* 除去。

〔类例〕 *Confucius* is a great Chinese philosopher and educator.

(孔夫子是一位伟大的中国哲学家和教育家。)

*Tainan* is an old city in *Taiwan*. (台南是台湾的古城。)

〔参考〕当专有名词变成普通名词时，它的前面须用冠词，例如：

(1) He is *the Newton* of the age. (他是当代的牛顿。)

在这句中 *the Newton* 的意思是 a great mathematician like *Newton* (一位像牛顿的伟大的数学家)。

(2) *Hanyang* has been called *the Pittsburgh* of China.  
(汉阳被称为中国的匹兹堡。)

在这句中，*the Pittsburgh* 的意思是 a place noted for ironworks and steelworks (一个以钢铁工厂出名的地方)。

2. 误: *A necessity* is the mother of invention.

正: *Necessity* is the mother of invention.

(必要为发明之母。)

〔说明〕在抽象名词前应加冠词。在误句中，抽象名词 **necessity** 前用冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该把 **necessity** 前面的 **A** 去掉。

〔类例〕 *Honesty is the best policy.* (诚实为最上之策。)

〔参考〕(1) 当抽象名词附有修饰语表示特别的性质或状态时，它的前面须加冠词，例如：

*The rich envy the happiness of the poor.* (富者羡慕贫者的幸福。)

(2) 当抽象名词用作普通名词时，它的前面也须加用冠词，例如：

*She is a beauty.* (她是一个美人。)

3. 误： *The water is changed into steam by heat.*

正： *Water is changed into steam by heat.*

(水受热则变成气体。)

〔说明〕物质名词的前面不应加冠词。在误句中物质名词 **water** 的前面加冠词 **the**，这显然是错误的，所以应该把 **water** 前面的 **the** 除去。

〔类例〕 *Gold is a valuable metal.* (黄金是一种贵重的金属。)

〔参考〕(1) 当物质名词附有修饰语表示特殊性质时，它的前面须加冠词，例如：

*The water of this well is not good to drink.* (这井里的水不好喝。)

(2) 当物质名词用作普通名词时，它的前面也须用冠词，例如：

*He threw a stone at the dog.* (他向犬投石子。)

4. 误： *A man is the lord of creation.*

正： *Man is the lord of creation.*

(人为万物之灵。)

〔说明〕当 **man** 指一般人时，它的前面不应加冠词。在误句里的 **man** 是指一般的人，而它的前面有 **A** 这显然是错误的，所以应该把 **man** 前面的 **A** 除去。

〔类例〕 *Man is mortal.* (人必有死。)

〔比较〕 *A man sometimes hears what he does not like.*  
(一个人有时听到他所不喜欢的话。)

〔参考〕**woman** 也和 **man** 一样，指一般女人时，它的前面不用冠词，例如：

*Woman is weaker than man.* (女人弱于男人。)

5. 误： *They were playing a tennis.*

正： *They were playing tennis.*

(他们在打网球。)

〔说明〕说玩(某种游戏)用 **play** 或 **play at**，而且在游戏的名称前不用冠词，如打弹子是 **to play billiards**；打网球是 **to play tennis**。在 **tennis** 的前面不用冠词，所以应该把误句里的在 **tennis** 前面的 **a** 去掉。

〔类例〕 *They played billiards.* (他们打弹子。)

〔参考〕(1) 玩球在英文中可以说 **to play with a ball**，在 **ball** 前用冠词，玩别的东西也是一样，

例如： *She is playing with a doll.* (她正在玩洋娃娃。)

(2) 弹钢琴我们可说 **to play on the piano** 或 **to play the piano**，**piano** 的前面须用定冠词，例如： *She was playing on the piano.* (她在弹钢琴。)

拉提琴也是一样，如： *She was playing the violin.* (她在拉小提琴。)

6. 误： *The history is a very interesting subject.*

正： *History is a very interesting subject.*

(历史是一门极有兴趣的学科。)

〔说明〕在 **history** (历史), **English** (英文), **chemistry** (化学), **mathematics** (数学) 等学科前不应加冠词。在误句里, 学科 **history** 前加冠词 **the**, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把 **the** 除去。

〔类例〕 *English is taught in all schools.* (英文是所有学校都教的。)

*Mathematics is a hard subject to learn.* (数学是一门难学的学科。)

He studied *chemistry*. (他研究化学。)

7. 误: *The whale is a kind of an animal.*

正: *The whale is a kind of animal.*

(鲸鱼是一种动物。)

〔说明〕**a kind of** 的后面不应用冠词。在误句里 **a kind of** 的后面用冠词 **an**, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它除去。

〔类例〕 *This is a new kind of machine.* (这是一种新式的机器。)

8. 误: *The waiter, bring me a cup of coffee, please.*

正: *Waiter, bring me a cup of coffee, please.*

(侍者, 请拿一杯咖啡给我。)

〔说明〕用作称呼的主格的普通名词前, 不应用冠词。在误句里, **waiter** 是称呼的主格, 它的前面用冠词 **the**, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把 **the** 除去。

〔类例〕 *Waiter, bring my bill, please.* (侍者, 请拿账单来。)

*Mother, where's my fish pole?* (母亲, 我的钓鱼竿在哪里?)

9. 误: *Europeans eat with a knife and a fork.*



正: Europeans eat with *knife and fork*.

(欧洲人用刀叉吃食。)

〔说明〕两个名词由连词或介词连接起来,表示共同、成双、对照等意思时,应省去冠词,在误句里 **knife and fork** 表示在一起的两样食具,在它们的前面加冠词 **a**,这显然是错误的,所以应该把那两个 **a** 除去。

〔类例〕They worked hard *day and night*. (他们日夜努力工作。)

He went begging *from door to door*. (他挨户求乞。)

10. 误: The children *go to the school* every morning.

正: The children *go to school* every morning.

(孩子们每天早晨上学去。)

〔说明〕有些短语由介词和名词结合而成,表达抽象的观念。在习惯上,在这种名词的前面不用冠词,如: (go) **to school** (上学), (go) **to bed** (就寝), **on foot** (步行), **by water** (由水路) 等。**go to school** 是一个短语,表达去求学的抽象观念,在习惯上,**school** 前不用冠词。在误句里,**school** 前用了冠词,这显然是错误的,所以应该把 **school** 前的冠词 **the** 除去。

〔类例〕It is time to *go to bed*. (睡觉的时间到了。)

We shall go home *on foot*. (我们将步行回家。)

He went *by water*. (他由水路去。)

11. 误: *A fool as he is*, he will not do such a thing.

正: *Fool as he is*, he will not do such a thing.

(他虽然是一个智障者,却不会做这种事。)

〔说明〕名词放在从句的前面表示让步时,它的前面不用冠词。在误句里 **fool** 放在从句的句首表示让步,它的前面用冠词 **a**,这显然是错误的,所以应该把冠词 **a** 除去。

〔类例〕 *Woman as she is*, she may be of help in time of need.

(她虽是女人，但在必要时她可帮忙。)

## 43 省略冠词的错误

1. 误: The ship sailed across *Pacific*.

正: The ship sailed across *the Pacific*.

(这船横渡太平洋。)

〔说明〕在海洋名的前面须用定冠词，如 *the Pacific* (太平洋)，*the Atlantic* (大西洋)，*the Mediterranean Sea* (地中海) 等，在误句里，在洋名 *Pacific* 前无定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词 *the*。

〔类例〕*There is a beautiful island in the Atlantic.* (在大西洋里有一美丽的岛。)

*The battle was fought on the Mediterranean Sea.* (这战争在地中海上发生。)

2. 误: The steamer was sailing on *British Channel*.

正: The steamer was sailing on *the British Channel*.

(这轮船在英国海峡的海面上行着。)

〔说明〕在海峡名的前面须用定冠词，如 *the British Channel* (英国海峡)，*the Magellan Strait* (麦哲伦海峡) 等。在误句里，在海峡名 *British Channel* 的前面没有定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词 *the*。

〔类例〕*The Channel lies between the North Sea and the Atlantic.*

(英国海峡位于大西洋与北海之间。)

*The Magellan Strait was discovered by Ferdinand Magellan in 1520.*

(麦哲伦海峡于西历1520年被麦哲伦所发现。)

3. 误: *Yangtze Kiang* is the greatest river in China.

正: *The Yangtze Kiang* is the greatest river in China.

(长江是中国最大的河。)

〔说明〕在河流和运河的名称的前面，须用定冠词，如：the *Yangtze Kiang* (长江)，the *Yellow River* (黄河)，the *Panama Canal* (巴拿马运河)，the *Grand Canal* (中国的大运河)等。在误句里，在河流名 *Yangtze Kiang* 的前面没有定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕*The Yellow River* is the sorrow of China. (黄河为中国的忧患。)

*The scenery along the Grand Canal* is beautiful. (沿中国大运河的风景是美丽的。)

*The Panama Canal* is a ship canal across the Isthmus of Panama, connecting the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.

(巴拿马运河是一条横贯巴拿马地峡的通船的运河，连接大西洋和太平洋。)

4. 误: *Persian Gulf* is an arm of the Arabian Sea.

正: *The Persian Gulf* is an arm of the Arabian Sea.

(波斯湾是阿拉伯海的内海。)

〔说明〕在海湾的名称的前面须用定冠词，如 the *Persian Gulf* (波斯湾)，the *Spencer's Gulf* (斯宾塞湾)等。在误句里，在海湾名 *Persian Gulf* 的前面不用冠词，这是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕*The Spencer's Gulf* is a large inlet on the coast of South Australia.

(斯宾塞海湾是南澳洲沿海的一个大海湾。)

〔参考〕 (1) bay 是比 gulf 较小的海湾，在这种较小的海湾的名词前不用定冠词，例如：

*Hudson Bay* is an inland sea in North America. (哈得逊湾是北美的内海。)

若用 bay of name of place 的形式时，它的前面须用定冠词，例如：

*The Bay of Biscay* is one of the stormiest seas. (比斯开湾是一个最多风暴的海。)

(2) 海港名前不用定冠词，例如：

*Port Arthur* is a naval station at the southern end of the Peninsula of Liaotung.

(旅顺口是辽东半岛南端的军港。)

The ship is at anchor in *Foochow Harbour* at present. (这船现在停泊在福州港。)

5. 误： *West Lake* is the most beautiful lake in China.

正： *The West Lake* is the most beautiful lake in China.

(西湖是中国最美丽的湖。)

〔说明〕在 *Oneida Lake* (奥奈达湖)，*Lake Erie* (伊利湖) 等外国湖名前不应用定冠词，但在英译的我国大陆的湖的前面须用定冠词，如： *the West Lake* (西湖)，*the Tungting Lake* (洞庭湖)，*the Poyang Lake* (鄱阳湖) 等。在误句里 *West Lake* 的前面不用 *the*，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕 *The Poyang Lake* is smaller than *the Tungting Lakes*. (鄱阳湖比洞庭湖小。)

〔比较〕 *Oneida Lake* is a lake near Syracuse. (奥奈达湖是一个近叙拉古的湖。)

〔参考〕 (1) *the Tungting Lake* 也可以写成 *Lake Tungting* 的形式，在后面的形式里 *Lake* 前不

应用 **the**，如：*Lake Tungting is fed by the Yantze River.*  
(洞庭湖水来自长江。)

(2) 台湾地区的日月潭的英文译名是 **Sun Moon Lake**，依照英文的习惯用法，湖名前不用定冠词，例如：*Sun Moon Lake is a noted scenic spot in Taiwan.* (日月潭是台湾的一个闻名的风景区。)

6. 误：*Himalayas contain the highest summits in the world.*

正：*The Himalayas contain the highest summits in the world.*

(喜马拉雅山脉包含世界上最高的山峰。)

〔说明〕在山脉的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：**the Himalayas** (喜马拉雅山脉)，**the Alps** (阿尔卑斯山脉) 等。在误句里，山脉名 **Himalayas** 的前面不用定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕*The Alps are the vastest mountain system in Europe.*

(阿尔卑斯山脉是欧洲最广大的山脉。)

〔参考〕(1) 在单独的山名前不用定冠词，例如：

*Mount Everest is the highest known mountain in the world.*

(埃佛勒斯山是世界上所知的最高山。)

(2) 阿尔卑斯山有几个单独的山峰名却是例外，在它们的前面仍用定冠词，例如：

*The Finsteraarhorn is the highest peak of the Bernese Alps.*

(芬斯他拉洪峰是瑞士中南部阿尔卑斯山脉的最高峰。)

7. 误：*Malay Peninsula is a peninsula in southeastern Asia.*

正: *The Malay Peninsula* is a peninsula in southeastern Asia.

(马来半岛是在东南亚的一个半岛。)

〔说明〕在半岛的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如: *the Malay Peninsula* (马来半岛), *the Iberian Peninsula* (伊比利亚半岛) 等。在误句里 *Malay Peninsula* 的前面无定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕*The Iberian Peninsula* comprises Spain and Portugal.

(伊比利亚半岛包含西班牙和葡萄牙。)

8. 误: When Columbus first discovered *West Indies*, he believed he was close upon India.

正: When Columbus first discovered *the West Indies*, he believed he was close upon India.

(当哥伦布第一次发现西印度群岛时, 他以为已近印度。)

〔说明〕在群岛的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the West Indies* (西印度群岛), *the Pescadores* (澎湖群岛), *the Ryukyu Islands* (琉球群岛) 等。在误句里, *West Indies* 的前面没有用定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕*The Pescadores* are a group of islands off the western coast of Formosa.

(澎湖群岛是台湾西海岸外的一群岛屿。)

*The Ryukyu Islands* had been Chinese dependent state from the fourteenth century to the nineteenth century. (琉球群岛从十四世纪至十九世纪为中国之属国。)

〔参考〕在单独的岛名前不用定冠词, 例如: *Formosa* is a beautiful island. (台湾是一个美丽的岛。)

9. 误: *United States* is an industrial nation.

正: *The United States* is an industrial nation.

(美国是一个工业国家。)

〔说明〕在取复数形式的国家的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：the United States (美国)，the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (苏联)，the Netherlands (荷兰) 等。在误句里 United States 的前面没有定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕 *The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is a communist country.* (苏联是一个共产国家。)

*The Netherlands is the most densely populated state in Europe.*

(荷兰是欧洲人口最密的国家。)

10. 误: *Hague is the capital of the Netherlands.*

正: *The Hague is the capital of the Netherlands.*

(海牙是荷兰的首府。)

〔说明〕在有些特别的地名的前面须用定冠词 the，像这种的例子很多，如：荷兰的首府是 The Hague (海牙)；地中海沿岸的风景区是 the Riviera (里维耶拉)；非洲的大沙漠是 the Sahara (撒哈拉)；非洲有一个国家是 the Sudan (苏丹)；南非联邦有一省是 the Transvaal (脱兰斯瓦尔) 等等。在误句里 Hague 的前面没有定冠词 The，这是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加定冠词。

〔类例〕 *The Sahara is the largest desert of the world.* (撒哈拉是世界上最大的沙漠。)

*The Riviera is replete with beautiful scenery.* (里维耶拉多美景。)

*The Sudan is the chief source of the world's supply of gum arabic.*

(苏丹是世界上阿拉伯树胶供应的主要出处。)

*The Sudan was proclaimed an independent republic in 1956.*



（西历1956年苏丹被宣布为一独立共和国。）

The capital of *the Transvaal* is Pretoria.（脱兰斯瓦尔的省会是比勒陀利亚。）

〔参考〕The Hague 的 The 即使在句中，也须大写开始，例如：

In 1912, the International Opium Convention was signed at The Hague.

（西历1912年《国际鸦片公约》签订于海牙。）

11. 误： *Chinese Government* is ruled by the people.

正： *The Chinese Government* is ruled by the people.

（中国政府是由人民管理的。）

〔说明〕在政府及其各部门的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：the Chinese Government（中国政府），the Foreign Office（外交部）等。在误句里 Chinese Government 的前面没有定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该在它的前面加 the。

〔类例〕 *The Foreign Office* refused to give out any further information on the event.

（关于该事件，外交部拒绝透露更多消息。）

12. 误： He is a member of *Young Men's Christian Association*.

正： He is a member of *the Young Men's Christian Association*.

（他也是青年会的会员。）

〔说明〕如 the Young Men's Christian Association（青年会），the Ladies' Patriotic Society（妇女爱国会）等会社的名称虽然是专有名词，在它们的前面须用定冠词。在误句 Young Men's Christian Association 的前面没有定冠词，这显然是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Ladies' Patriotic Society* was founded long ago. (妇女爱国会很久以前已创立。)

13. 误: *Taipei Post Office* is not far from the Station.

正: *The Taipei Post Office* is not far from the Station.

(台北邮政局离车站不远。)

〔说明〕在邮局和银行的专有名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the Taipei Post Office* (台北邮局), *the Central Bank* (中央银行) 等。在误句里, *Taipei Post Office* 的前面没有定冠词, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 He has a large deposit in *the Central Bank*. (他在中央银行有一大笔存款。)

14. 误: I bought the book at *Popular Book Company*.

正: I bought the book at *the Popular Book Company*.

(我在大众书局购此书。)

〔说明〕在旅馆和商店的专有名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the Mayflower Hotel* (美华阁旅馆), *the Popular Book Company* (大众书局) 等。在误句里 *Popular Book Company* 的前面没有定冠词, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Mayflower Hotel* is fitted up with modern comforts. (美华阁设有新式设备。)

15. 误: He left *Catholic Hospital* a week after the operation.

正: He left *the Catholic Hospital* a week after the operation.

(他手术后一星期离开崇爱医院。)

〔说明〕在医院和戏院的专有名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the Catholic Hospital* (崇爱医院), *the Great World Theatre* (大世界戏院)。在误句里, *Catholic Hospital* 的前面没有定冠词, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Great World Theatre* is full. (大世界戏院客满。)

16. 误: Have you visited *Forbidden City*?

正: Have you visited *the Forbidden City*?

(你曾经游览过紫禁城吗?)

〔说明〕在建筑物的专有名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the Forbidden City* (紫禁城), *the Great Wall* (万里长城), *the Altar of Heaven* (天坛) 等。在误句里, *Forbidden City* 的前面没有定冠词, 这显然是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Great Wall* is said to be the only thing man has made that can be seen from the moon.

(据说万里长城是从月球上能够看到的人所做的唯一的東西。)

*The Empire State Building* is the tallest building in the world.

(皇州大厦是世界最高的建筑。)

*The Holland and Lincoln Tunnels and the George Washington Bridge* must be great timesavers for people driving in from Jersey.

(人们从求赛驾车经荷兰和林肯隧道再经华盛顿桥而驶入, 一定很节省时间。)

Besides *the Washington Monument*, visitors may also see *the Jefferson and Lincoln Memorials* in the capital of the United States.

(在美国京城里, 游历者除了华盛顿纪念碑之外还可以观光杰弗逊和林肯纪念堂。)

〔比较〕有些英国的建筑物的名称前不加定冠词, 例如:

*Westminster Abbey* is the scene of the coronation of the English kings.

（韦斯敏斯德教堂是英王加冕处。）

*Westminster bridge* is the broadest in London.（韦斯敏斯德桥是伦敦最阔的桥。）

In *St. Paul's Cathedral*, there are the tombs of Wellington and Nelson.

（在保罗大教堂里有威灵吞和纳耳逊之墓。）

〔参考〕（1）伦敦的大吊桥的桥名前须用定冠词，如：

*The Tower Bridge* opens to permit the passage of vessels.（塔桥开启准船通行。）

（2）在教堂的专有名称前不加定冠词，如：

*St. Peter's* is the largest church in Christendom.（圣彼得教堂是基督教界最大的教堂。）

（3）在城的专有名称前不加定冠词，如：

*Nanking City* is the largest city in China.（南京城是中国最大的城。）

（4）在街道的专有名称前不加定冠词，如：

We live at No. 50, *Tung-Ning Road*.（我们住在东宁路五〇号。）

（5）车站的专有名称前不用定冠词，如：

I went to *Tainan Station* to see my friend off.（我到台南车站去送朋友。）

（6）公园的专有名称前不用定冠词，如：

*Yellowstone National Park* is famous for its geysers.

（美国黄石公园以热水喷泉闻名于世。）

17. 误： *Queen Elizabeth* for London left yesterday.

正： *The Queen Elizabeth* for London left yesterday.

（到伦敦去的伊丽莎白号昨日启航。）

〔说明〕在船的名称的前面须用定冠词以免引起误会，如：the Queen Elizabeth（伊丽莎白号）the Missouri（密苏里号），the Bismarck（俾斯麦号）等。在误句里 Queen Elizabeth 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕The instrument of unconditional surrender of Japan was signed on board *the Missouri* in

Tokyo Bay on Sept. 2, 1946.

（1946年9月2日，日本在东京湾美国战舰密苏里号上签下无条件投降书。）

*The Bismarck*, the largest and newest of Germany warships was sunk on May 27, 1941 by the British fleet.

（1941年5月27日，德国最大最新的战舰俾斯麦号被英国舰队击沉。）

〔参考〕舰队的名称前也须用定冠词，如：

In June, 1944, *the American fleet* captured the strong island of Saipan.

（在1944年6月，美国舰队攻取日本设防坚强的塞班岛。）

18. 误：He reads *Bible* every day.

正：He reads *the Bible* every day.

（他每天读《圣经》。）

〔说明〕在书名的前面须用定冠词，如：the Bible（《圣经》），the Analects of Confucius（《论语》），the Canterbury Tales（《巡礼者的故事》）等。在误句里，书名 Bible 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕He can recite many passages from *the Analects of Confucius*.（他能背诵许多段《论语》。）

*The Canterbury Tales* is the great work of the poet Chaucer.

（《巡礼者的故事》是诗人乔叟的巨著。）

〔参考〕以作者名或以故事的主角名为书名时，书名前不必用定冠词，如：

Have you ever read *Shakespeare*? （您读过莎氏的作品吗？）

*Jane Eyre* is my favourite book. （《简·爱》是我所最喜爱的书。）

19. 误： *Eastern Miscellany* was the most famous Chinese magazine before the Second World War.

正： *The Eastern Miscellany* was the most famous Chinese magazine before the Second World War.

（在第二次世界大战前《东方杂志》是最有名的中国杂志。）

〔说明〕在报章杂志的名称的前面须用定冠词，如： *the Eastern Miscellany* （《东方杂志》）， *the Times* （《伦敦时报》）， *the Atlantic Monthly* （《大西洋月刊》）等，在误句里，杂志名 *Eastern Miscellany* 的前面没有用定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Times* is a newspaper of very high standing.  
（《伦敦时报》是极有名的报纸。）

*The Atlantic Monthly* is a famous American magazine.

（《大西洋月刊》是有名的美国杂志。）

20. 误： Paper was invented in *Han dynasty*.

正： Paper was invented in *the Han dynasty*. （或 *the Han Dynasty*）

（纸发明于汉朝。）

〔说明〕在朝代的名称的前面，须用定冠词，如：The Han dynasty（汉朝），the Tang dynasty（唐朝），the Ming dynasty（明朝）等。在误句里，Han dynasty 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕Li Po of *the Tang dynasty* is generally regarded as the greatest Chinese poet.

（唐朝的李白一般被视为最伟大的中国诗人。）

Many Japanese pirates invaded Chinese coasts during *the Ming Dynasty*.

（明时许多日本海盗侵犯中国海岸。）

21. 误：Former Chinese Empire was the center of civilization in Asia.

正：The former Chinese Empire was the center of civilization in Asia.

（昔时的中华帝国是亚洲的文化中心。）

〔说明〕在帝国的名称的前面，须用定冠词，如：the Chinese Empire（中华帝国），the British Empire（大英帝国），the Japanese Empire（日本帝国）等。在误句里，Chinese Empire 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕The news that Japanese aircraft sank the British battle ships Prince of Wales and Repulse soon spread all over *the British Empire*.

（日本飞机击沉英国战舰威克亲王号和击退号的消息顷刻传遍大英帝国。）

*The Japanese Empire* declined after the Second World War.

（日本帝国衰落于第二次世界大战后。）

22. 误：Dr. Sun Yat-sen is the father of Chinese Republic.

正：Dr. Sun Yat-sen is the father of *the Chinese Republic*.

（孙中山先生是“中华民国”的国父。）

〔说明〕在共和国的国名的前面须用定冠词，如 **the French Republic**（法兰西共和国），**the Republic of Colombia**（哥伦比亚共和国）等，在误句里，**Chinese Republic** 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The French Republic* is a large nation in Europe.  
（法兰西共和国是欧洲的大国。）

*The Republic of Colombia* is nearly three times the size of France.

（哥伦比亚共和国差不多是法国的面积的三倍。）

23. 误：He will enter *Conservative Party*.

正：He will enter *the Conservative Party*.

（他欲参加保守党。）

〔说明〕在政党的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：**the Conservative Party**（保守党），**the Kuomintang**（国民党），**the Republican Party**（共和党）等。在误句里，**Conservative Party** 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

He is a member of *the Kuomintang*.（他是国民党员。）

He belongs to *the Republican Party*.（他属于共和党。）

24. 误：Korean War started in 1950.

正：The Korean War started in 1950.

（朝鲜战争始于1950年。）

〔说明〕在战争的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：**the Korean War**（朝鲜战争），**the Civil War**（美国南北战争），**the First World War**（第一次世界大战）等。在误句里，**Korean War** 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The First World War* lasted four Years.（第一次世界大战延续了四年之久。）



*The Civil War* was fought between the North and the South in the United States.

(美国内战是美国的南北战争。)

25. 误: *Conference* was held in Cairo on December 1, 1943.

正: *The Cairo Conference* was held in Cairo on December 1, 1943.

(开罗会议于1943年12月1日举行于开罗。)

〔说明〕在会议的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如 *the Cairo Conference* (开罗会议), *the Potsdam Conference* (波茨坦会议), *the Yalta Conference* (雅尔塔会议) 等。在误句里, *Cairo Conference* 的前面没有定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Potsdam Conference* was held at Potsdam in 1945.

(波茨坦会议在1945年举行于波茨坦。)

*The Yalta Conference* was held at Yalta in February, 1945.

(雅尔塔会议在1945年2月举行于耶尔塔。)

26. 误: He belongs to *Mongolian race*.

正: He belongs to *the Mongolian race*.

(他是黄种人。)

〔说明〕在人种的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如: *the Mongolian race* or *the yellow race* (黄种人), *the Ethiopian race* or *the black race* (黑种人) 等。在误句里, *Mongolian race* 的前面没有定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The Mongolian race* also includes the Eskimos.  
(黄种人也包括因纽特人。)

He is a member of *the Ethiopian race*. (他是黑种人。)

27. 误: *English language* is not difficult to learn.

正: *The English language* is not difficult to learn.

(英国语言是不难学习的。)

〔说明〕在某种语言和方言的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如: *the English language* (英国语言), *the Chinese language* (中国语言), *the Cantonese dialect* (广州话), *the Shanghai dialect* (上海话) 等。在误句里, *English language* 的前面没有定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕Many English people can understand *the Chinese language*. (许多英国人能懂中国语言。)

Can You speak *the Cantonese dialect*? (你能说广州话吗?)

She can speak *the Shanghai dialect*. (她能说上海话。)

28. 误: He belongs to *Catholic Church*.

正: He belongs to *the Catholic Church*.

(他属于天主教。)

〔说明〕在基督教的派别的名称的前面须用定冠词, 如: *the Catholic Church* (天主教), *the Presbyterian Church* (长老会), *the Greek Church* (希腊正教) 等。在误句里, *Catholic Church* 的前面没有定冠词, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕He is a member of *the Presbyterian Church*. (他是长老会教友。)

He belongs to *the Greek Church*. (他属于希腊正教。)

29. 误: In ancient Greece, *Olympic Games* were held once every four years at Olympia in honor of Zeus.

正: In ancient Greece, *the Olympic Games* were held once every four years at Olympia in honor of Zeus.

(在古代希腊, 在奥林比亚, 每四年举行一次奥林匹克运动会纪念宇宙神宙斯。)

〔说明〕在运动会的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：the Olympic Games（奥林匹克运动会），the first modern Olympiad（第一次现代的世界运动会），the Second Asian Games（第二届亚洲运动会）等。在误句里，Olympic games 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The first modern Olympiad was held in Athens in 1896.*

（第一次现代的世界运动会于西历1896年举行于雅典。）

*The Second Asian Games were held in Manila in 1954.*

（第二次亚运会于西历1954年举行于马尼拉。）

*The Sixteenth Olympiad was held in Melbourne in 1956.*

（第十六次世运会于西历1956年举行于墨尔本。）

30. 误：The plum-blossom is *Chinese national flower*.

正：The plum-blossom is *the Chinese national flower*.

（梅花是中国的国花。）

〔说明〕在指明某国的国花的前面须用定冠词，如：the Chinese national flower（中国的国花），the Japanese national flower（日本的国花），the English national flower（英国的国花）等。在误句里，Chinese national flower 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 *The rose is the English national flower.*（玫瑰花是英国的国花。）

*The cherry-blossom is the Japanese national flower.*（樱花是日本的国花。）

31. 误：New Year's festival is usually enthusiastically celebrated throughout China.

正：The New Year's festival is usually enthusiastically celebrated throughout China.

（在整个中国，人们通常热心地庆祝新年节。）

〔说明〕在节日或纪念日的名称的前面须用定冠词，如：the New Year's Festival（新年节），the Mid-Autumn Festival（中秋节），the Restoration Day（光复节），the Double Tenth（双十节），the Passover（逾越节）等。在误句里，New Year's festival 的前面没有定冠词，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕October 24 is *the Restoration Day*.（十月廿四日是光复节。）

*The Passover* is a Jewish holyday.（逾越节是犹太人的节日。）

The Chinese observe *the Mid-autumn Festival*.（中国人庆祝中秋节。）

We celebrated *the Double Tenth yesterday*.（昨天我们庆祝双十节。）

〔比较〕有许多节日的前面不用定冠词，如：

We celebrated *Christmas* with a tree and presents.

（我们以一棵圣诞树和礼品庆祝圣诞节。）

*New Year's Day* seems to be more appreciated by older people.

（老年人似乎更爱过元旦。）

*Thanksgiving Day* is celebrated as a national holiday in the United States.

（在美国感恩节像国庆日那样的被庆祝。）

## 44 副词被用作补语的错误

1. 误: They appear *cheerfully*.

正: They appear *cheerful*.

(他们像是高兴。)

〔说明〕如 **appear** (像是), **be** (是), **become** (变得) 等动词是系动词, 在它们的后面可以用形容词作补语, 却不能用副词代替形容词作补语。在误句里, **appear** 是系动词, 在它的后面用副词 **cheerfully**, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改形成形容词 **cheerful**。

〔类例〕He is *diligent*. (他是勤勉的。)

She became *lazy*. (她变得懒惰。)

2. 误: He felt *comfortably*.

正: He felt *comfortable*.

(他感到舒服。)

〔说明〕**feel** (感到) 也是系动词, 在它的后面不能用副词作补语, 所以应该把误句里的副词 **comfortably** 改为形容词 **comfortable**。

〔类例〕It proved *easy*. (它证明是容易的。)

He seemed *clever*. (他似乎聪明。)

3. 误: The meat smells *badly*.

正: The meat smells *bad*.

(这肉有腐臭。)

〔说明〕如 **smell** (发出气味), **taste** (有某味), **sound** (听起来) 等动词当作系动词用时, 它们的后面可以用形容词作补语, 却

不能用副词，在误句里的 **smells** 是系动词，在它的后面用副词 **badly**，这是错误的，所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 **Roses smell *sweet*.**（玫瑰发出香气。）

**The milk tastes *sour*.**（这牛乳有酸味。）

**The music sounds *sweet*.**（这音乐听来悦耳。）

## 45 两个容易误用的副词

1. 误: He left home last year and I *did not see* him *since*.

正: He left home last year and I *have not seen* him *since*.

(他去年离家, 此后我就不曾看见过他。)

〔说明〕 **since** 当作副词用的时候, 它的意思是“自彼时至此时”, 因此它所形容的动词须用完成时。在误句里 **since** 的意思是“从去年他离家时起一直到现在”, 所以应该把“**did not seen**”改为完成时 **have not seen**。

〔类例〕 The town was burnt down in 1923 and *has since been rebuilt*.

(在1923年这城被烧毁, 此后城已被重建。)

The tree *has since been cut down*. (此后树曾被砍倒。)

2. 误: Have you ever seen the gigantic snake? Yes, *I have ever seen it*.

正: Have you ever seen the gigantic snake? Yes, *I have seen it*.

(您曾经看到过那大蛇吗? 是的, 我曾看到过它。)

〔说明〕 **ever** 作“曾经”解释的时候可以用于疑问句和否定句中, 却不能用于肯定句中, 所以应该把误句里的 **yes** 后面的 **ever** 删去。

〔类例〕 Have you *ever* been there? Yes, *I have*. (您曾经到过那里吗? 是的, 我曾到过。)

〔参考〕 (1) **ever** 可以用在否定句中, 如:

No one has *ever* reached the place. (没有人到过那地方。)

(2) **ever** 尚可用在最高级的后面，如：

**This is the best novel I have *ever* read.** (这是我读过的最好的一篇小说。)



## 46 几对容易互相误用的副词

1. 误: I cannot do it *too*.

正: I cannot do it *either*.

(我也不能做这事。)

〔说明〕*too* 和 *either* 都可以作副词用，它们的意义也都可以作“也”解释，可是 *too* 用于肯定句而 *either* 用于否定句，并且它们不能互相代用。误句是一句否定句，却用了 *too*，这是错误的，所以应该把 *too* 改为 *either*。

〔类例〕If you will not go, I will not go *either*. (假使您不去，我也不愿去。)

〔比较〕*too* 用于肯定句，如：

He went there *too*. (他也到那里去了。)

2. 误: I have not seen him *already*.

正: I have not seen him *yet*.

(我尚未看到他。)

〔说明〕副词 *already* 和 *yet* 都有“已经”的意思，可是 *already* 用于肯定句，*yet* 用于否定句。误句是一句否定句，却用了 *already*，这是错误的，所以应该把 *already* 改为 *yet*。

〔类例〕He has not *yet* come. (他尚未来。)

〔比较〕在肯定句中用 *already*，如：He has *already* left. (他已离去。)

〔参考〕在问句里也用 *yet*，如：Have you seen him *yet*? (你已看到他吗?)

3. 误: I met her two years *before*.

正: I met her two years *ago*.

(我两年前遇见他。)

〔说明〕从现在算起若干时间以前须用 **ago**, 从过去某时算起若干时间以前须用 **before**。误句里的两年是从现在算起的, 因此用 **before** 是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕I visited the zoo two days *ago*. (两天前我游览这动物园。)

〔比较〕以过去某时算起若干时间以前须用 **before**, 如:

I was told that he had left home three years *before*. (有人告诉我他已离家三年。)

4. 误: Is the boy not your student? Yes, he *is not* my student. No, he *is* my student.

正: Is the boy not your student? No, he *is not* my student. Yes, he *is* my student.

(这孩子不是您的学生吗? /是的, 他不是我的学生。/不, 他是我的学生。)

〔说明〕我们中国人回答话时用“是”和“不”的用法和英美人回答话时用 **Yes** 和 **No** 的方法是不同的。我们同意对方的问话时用“是”回答, 不同意对方的问话时用“不”回答, 例如: “他不是您的学生吗?” 同意时, 我们回答: “是的, 他不是我的学生。”不同意时, 回答: “不, 他是我的学生。”在英语里的问答便不同了, 回答的人不必考虑到同意不同意对方的意见。假使回答的话是肯定句, 用 **Yes**; 假使回答的话是否定句, 用 **No**。在误句里, 回答的话是肯定句却用 **No**, 回答的话是否定句却用 **Yes**。这两句都是错误的, 所以应该把它们改正如上。

〔类例〕Is the answer not right? (这答案是不对吗?)

No, it *is not* right. (不, 它是对的。)

Yes, it *is* right. (是的, 它是不对的。)

Can't you dance? (您不会跳舞吗?)

No, I *can't*. (是的, 我不会跳舞。)

Yes, I *can*. (不, 我会跳舞。)

5. 误: He worked *very hardly*.

正: He worked *very hard*.

(他十分努力地工作。)

〔说明〕**hard** 和 **hardly** 都可以作副词用, 可是它们普通的意义却不同, **hard** 可以作“努力的”解释, **hardly** 的普通意义却是“几乎不”。误句里所用的 **hardly** 是错误的, 所以应该把它改为 **hard**。

〔类例〕They tried *hard* to succeed. (他们努力以达成功。)

〔比较〕I could *hardly* understand him. (我几乎不能懂他的话。)

〔参考〕当 **hardly** 和 **slowly** 或 **honestly** 用在一起的时候, 可作“努力地”或“艰难地”解释, 如:

His money is *hardly and honestly* earned. (他的钱是努力、诚实地赚来的。)

6. 误: He gets up *lately* every day.

正: He gets up *late* every day.

(他每日迟起。)

〔说明〕**late** 和 **lately** 都可以作副词用, 可是它们的意义却不同。**late** 的意义是“迟的”而 **lately** 的意义是“近来”。在误句 **lately** 表达迟的意思, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕The roses bloomed *late* this year. (今年玫瑰花开得迟。)

〔比较〕She has not been here *lately*. (她近来未曾在此地。)

7. 误: He lives quite *nearly*.

正: He lives quite *near*.

(他住得很近。)

〔说明〕**near** 和 **nearly** 都可以作副词用, **near** 的意义是“近”; **nearly** 的普通意义是“几乎”, 不能作“近”的解释。在误句里, 用 **nearly** 表示“近”的意思, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕Spring is getting *near*. (春已近。)

〔比较〕He was *nearly* killed. (他几乎被杀。)

8. 误: The eagle flies *highly*.

正: The eagle flies *high*.

(鹰飞得高。)

〔说明〕**high** 和 **highly** 都可以作副词用, 可是它们的意义却不同。**high** 的意义是“高”; **highly** 的普通义是“很”, 不可以作“高”的解释。在误句里用 **highly** 表达“高”的意思, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕The waves ran *high*. (波浪汹涌。)

〔比较〕I am *highly* pleased with what he has done. (我对于他所做的非常满意。)

9. 误: I cut the stick *shortly*.

正: I cut the stick *short*.

(我把棒砍短。)

〔说明〕**short** 和 **shortly** 都可以作副词用, 可是它们的意义却不同。**short** 的意义是“短”; **shortly** 的普通意义却是“不久”, 没有短的意义。在误句里 **shortly** 用来表达“短”的意思, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕She clipped the thread *short*. (他把线剪短。)

〔比较〕He will come *shortly*. (他不久会来。)

10. 误: They sat *closely* together.

正: They sat *close* together.

(他们靠近着坐。)

**close** 和 **closely** 都可作副词用, 并且它们都可以作“接近的”解释, 不过 **close** 所表示的接近是指距离, 而 **closely** 所表示的接近是指差别的程度。在误句里 **closely** 被用来表示距离的接近, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改正如上。

〔类例〕 He was standing *close* to the door. (他在近门处站着。)

〔比较〕 She *closely* resembles her mother. (她极像她的母亲。)

11. 误: She is *very* more beautiful than her mother.

正: She is *much* more beautiful than her mother.

(她比她的母亲美丽得多。)

〔说明〕 **much** 和 **very** 都可以作副词用, 并且都可以用来修饰形容词或副词, 可是 **much** 可以用来修饰比较级的形容词或副词, **very** 却不能这样用, 在误句里 **very** 被用来修饰比较级的形容词, 这是错误的, 所以应把它改为 **much**。

〔类例〕 His composition is much worse than yours. (他的作文比你的坏得多。)

She sings much better than her sister. (她唱歌比她的妹妹好得多。)

〔比较〕 **very** 可以修饰寻常级的形容词, 如: She is very clever. (他是非常聪明的。)

12. 误: It is a *much* interesting book.

正: It is a *very* interesting book.

(这是一本十分有趣的书。)

〔说明〕形容现在分词须用 **very**, **much** 是不能用来形容现在分词的。在误句里, **much** 用来形容现在分词 **interesting**, 这是错误

的，所以应该把它改为 **very**。

〔类例〕 I heard a *very* surprising news. (我听到一个非常惊人的消息。)

〔比较〕 **much** 可以形容过去分词，如： I was *much* surprised at the news. (我听到这消息非常吃惊。)

〔参考〕 (1) **tired**, **pleased** 等过去分词已变成普通形容词，所以我们用 **very** 形容它们，如：

I am *very* tired. (我很疲倦。)

I was *very* pleased. (我极高兴。)

(2) 当 **tired**, **pleased** 等过去分词恢复动词的性质的时候，仍用 **much** 形容它们，如：

I was *much* tired by the task. (工作使我疲倦。)

I was *much* pleased to hear the news. (我听到这消息非常高兴。)

(3) 任何一个过去分词被用为形容词时，须用 **very** 形容它，如：

His face wore a *very* surprised expression. (他的脸上带了一种非常惊异的表情。)

13. 误： I *very* like the book.

正： I *much* like the book.

(我很爱这书。)

〔说明〕 **much** 可以形容动词，**very** 却只能修饰形容词和副词，不能形容动词。在误句里，**very** 形容动词 **like**，这是错误的，所以应该把它改为 **much**。

〔类例〕 I don't *much* like it. (我不大爱它。)

〔比较〕 I am *very* fond of it. (我很爱它。)

14. 误： He is *very* afraid of the dog.

正：He is *much* afraid of the dog.

（他极怕狗。）

〔说明〕有些以 **a** 开头的形容词只可以用于谓语部分，不能放在名词的前面形容名词，如 **afraid**（怕），**alive**（活的），**alike**（像）等。修饰这种形容词须用 **much**。不可用 **very**。误句里的 **afraid** 就是这种限于述部以 **a** 开头的形容词，**very** 却被用来形容它，这是错误的，所以应该把 **very** 改为 **much**。

〔类例〕They are *much* alike.（他们极相像。）

The fish we caught is *still* much alive.（我们所捕的鱼仍是鲜活的。）

## 47 副词当名词用的错误

*to home.*

*home.*

*come home*

*go to his home*

*go to abroad.*

*go abroad.*

*abroad*

*ad*

*abro*



## 48 副词在句中的位置的错误

*hard studied*  
*studied hard*

*soundly*

*Yesterday*

*yesterday.*

*always*  
*always*

*always*

*aust*

*never*

*never*

*always*

*aust*

*never*

*always*

*aust*

*always*

*never*

*aust*

*always*

*never*

*aust*

*always*

*aust*

*never*

*Never have*

*Never have*

*Never have*

*Never did*

*loudly*

*loudly.*

*noisily.*

*clearly*

*clearly*

## 49 省略介词的错误

*noon.*

*at noon.*

*at night.*

*all night*

*several times yesterday.*

*ten miles.*

*this way.*

*is fond*

*is fond of*

*is afraid of*  
*am doubtful of*

*getting*

*listening the music.*  
*listening to the music.*

*arrived at*

*which*  
*in which*

*of which*

*across which*

*where they live*

*was run*

*was run over*

*was laughed at*

*great value.*

*of great value.*

*of great use.*

*of no use*

*of great importance*

*robbed*

*robbed of*

*robbed of*

*deprived of*

*bereave of*

## 50 多用介词的错误

*reached*

*reached*

*reached*

*entered*

*accompanied*

*reached at*

*entered into*

*am afraid of that*

*am afraid that*



*is afraid that*

*am ignorant that*

## 51 名词前误用介词的错误

1. 误: He was born *at* the year 1915.

正: He was born *in* the year 1915.

(他生于西历1915年。)

〔说明〕在 *year* (年), *season* (季节), *month* (月), *week* (星期) 等表示期间的名词前可以用 *in*, 不可以用 *at*。在误句里, *at* 用在 *the year* 的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该把它改为 *in*。

〔类例〕I generally feel unwell *in* the hot season. (在暑季我通常感到不舒服。)

*In* spring this garden looks beautiful. (在春季这花园显得美丽。)

He will return *in* a month. (在一个月里他将回来。)

These flowers bloom *in* May. (这些花五月开花。)

He will finish reading the novel *in* a week. (他将在一星期内读完这小说。)

〔比较〕Call me *at* six o'clock. (六点钟叫我。)

I will leave *at* five minutes to eight o'clock. (我要在八点缺五分离去。)

〔参考〕(1) 当 *years* 表示年龄的时候它的前面可用 *at*, 如:

He died *at* ninety years of age. 或 He died *at* the age of ninety. (他九十岁时去世。)

(2) 在 *hour* (小时), *minute* (分), *second* (秒) 等表示短时间的名词前也可以用介词 *in*, 如:

He will be back *in* an hour. (他在一小时内回来。)

I will leave *in* a minute. (我要即刻离去。)

It will be done *in* a few seconds. (几秒钟内它将被做好。)

2. 误: He will go abroad *in* June 5.

正: He will go abroad *on* June 5.

(他将于六月五日出洋。)

〔说明〕在日子或星期几的前面须用介词 *on*。在误句里, *in* 用在 **June 5** 的前面, 这是错误的, 因为 **June 5** 等于 **the 5th of June**, 所以应该把 *in* 改为 *on*。

〔类例〕He will return *on* the 7th of November. (他将在十一月七日回来。)

They will go *on* a picnic *on* Sunday. (他们将于星期日举行野餐。)

〔参考〕(1) **weekdays** (星期一至星期五) 和 **weekend** (周末——指星期六和星期日) 的前

面仍可以用介词 *on*, 虽然它们并不仅指一日, 如:

I am busy *on* weekdays. (我平日忙碌。)

Students dance and play *on* weekends. (学生们在周末跳舞和游玩。)

(2) 在 **weekend** 的前面还可以用别的介词, 如:

He has gone away *for* the weekend. (他出去度周末。)

*During* the weekend one guest after another came to see us. (周末许多客人来看我们。)

Will you stay here *over* the weekend? (你愿意留此渡周末吗?)

3. 误: He left home *in* the morning of 11th.

正: He left home *on* the morning of 11th.

(他于十一日晨离家。)

〔说明〕我们普通可以说: *in the morning* (在早晨), *in the afternoon* (在下午) 和 *in the night* (在晚上), 可是在指定日期的早上、下午和晚上的前面须用 *on*。在误句里 *in* 用在指定日期的早上的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该把 *in* 改为 *on*。

〔类例〕*He returned home on the afternoon of his birthday.* (他在他的生日的下午回家。)

*She died on the night of 12th.* (她在十二日的晚上去世。)

4. 误: *He called on me on nine o'clock.*

正: *He called on me at nine o'clock.*

(他在九时访我。)

〔说明〕在时间的一定点的前面须用 *at*, 如: *at nine o'clock* (在九点), *at dawn* (在黎明), *at noon* (在中午), *at midnight* (在夜半) 等。在误句里, *on* 用在时间的一定点九点钟的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该将 *on* 改为 *at*。

〔类例〕*I get up at dawn.* (我在黎明起床。)

*The gun is fired at noon.* (中午放午炮。)

*A fire broke out in that street at midnight.* (那条街午夜失火。)

〔参考〕在指定的时间的前面也用 *at*, 如:

*She sang at the appointed time.* (他在指定的时间唱歌。)

*He came at the appointed hour.* (他按时而来。)

*I asked after my friend's health at the hospital at the hour mentioned.*

(我在规定的时间内到医院探望我的朋友的病。)

5. 误: *He gave her a beautiful present in Christmas.*

正: *He gave her a beautiful present at Christmas.*

(他在圣诞节送给她一件美丽的礼品。)

〔说明〕在普通的节日的前面须用 **at**, 如: **at Christmas** (在圣诞节), **at Easter** (在复活节), **at the Mid-Autumn Festival** (在中秋节) 等。在误句里, **Christmas** 的前面用 **in**, 这是错误的, 所以应该把 **in** 改为 **at**。

〔类例〕**They eat colored eggs at Easter.** (他们在复活节吃彩蛋。)

**We eat mooncakes at the Mid-Autumn Festival.** (我们在中秋节吃月饼。)

〔参考〕还有些节日的前面须用 **on**, 如:

**Children make Jack-o-lanterns out of pumpkins on Halloween.**

(在万圣节孩子们把南瓜做成南瓜灯。)

**We wear new clothes on New Year's Day.** (我们在元旦穿新衣。)

**They sing carols on Christmas Eve.** (他们在圣诞前夕唱颂歌。)

6. 误: **I am traveling on bicycle in an average speed of eight miles an hour.**

正: **I am traveling on bicycle at an average speed of eight miles an hour.**

(我以每小时八英里的平均速度乘脚踏车旅行。)

〔说明〕在速度的前面须用介词 **at**。在误句里, **in** 用在速度的前面, 这是错误的, 所以应该把 **in** 改为 **at**。

〔类例〕**A pigeon can fly at 50 miles an hour.** (鸽子能以一小时五十英里的速度飞行。)

〔参考〕(1) 在价目的前面须用介词 **at**, 如:

I bought the book *at the price of* , 50. (我以五十美元的价格买了这本书。)

(2) 年龄的前面可用介词 *at*, 如:

He married *at the age of* twenty. (他二十岁时结婚。)

(3) 在门牌的前面须用 *at*, 如:

He lives *at* No. 29 Tung-Ning Road. (他住在东宁路29号。)

(4) 在温度的前面须用 *at*, 如:

The thermometer stood *at* 90° *in the shade* this afternoon.

(今天下午在阴处这寒暑表达华氏90度。)

7. 娱: The girl was dressed *with* white.

正: The girl was dressed *in* white.

(这位少女穿白色衣服。)

〔说明〕表示穿着须用介词 *in*, 如 *in white* (穿白衣), *in red* (穿红衣), *in rags* (穿破衣)。在误句里 *with* 用在 *white* 的前面表示穿白衣, 这是错误的, 所以应该把 *with* 改为 *in*。

〔类例〕I met a girl *in red*. (我遇到一位穿红衣的女郎。)

The beggar is *in rags*. (这乞丐衣服破旧。)

〔参考〕(1) *in* 可以表示戴帽子的意思, 如:

The porter is always *in red cap*. (这挑夫总是戴小红便帽。)

(2) *in* 可以表示用墨水或铅笔写的意思, 如:

The letter was written *in green ink*. (这信是用绿墨水写的。)

I am writing *in pencil*. (我正用铅笔写。)

(3) *in* 可以表示用什么语言写的或说的意思, 如:

She can give a speech *in English*. (他能用英文演讲。)

I wrote her a letter *in* English. (我用英文写给他一封信。)

(4) *in* 可以表示用什么材料做的意思，如：

I have a statue *in* bronze. (我有一个青铜铸成的雕像。)

(5) *in* 可以表示在报上登载的意思，如：

I have read the story *in* that newspaper. (我在那报纸上曾读到这故事。)

8. 误：I wrote a composition *with* the subject.

正：I wrote a composition *on* the subject.

(我以那题目写了一篇文章。)

〔说明〕表示用什么题目写文章，或讨论什么题目须用介词 *on*，不可用 *with*。在误句里，*subject* 的前面用 *with*，这是错误的，所以应该把它改为 *on*。

〔类例〕He will give a speech *on* war and peace. (他将演说战争与和平。)

〔参考〕(1) *on* 可以表示从事工作的意思，如：

He is *on* duty. (他在当班。)

He went to Taipei *on* business. (他有事去台北。)

He went *on* a long journey. (他作长途旅行。)

(2) 在 *continent* (大陆，洲) 和 *mainland* (大陆) 的前面须用介词 *on*，如：

They travelled *on* the Continent. (他们在欧洲大陆旅行。)

I always think of my home *on* the mainland. (我常想念大陆上的家。)

(3) *the air* 的前面须用 *on*，表示在广播中的意思，如：

She likes to go *on* the air. (他喜欢广播。)

## 52 动词后误用介词的错误

1. 误: A week *consists in* seven days.

正: A week *consists of* seven days.

(一星期由七日所组成。)

〔说明〕**consist in** 的意义是“在于”，要表示组成的意思须用 **consist of**。在误句里用 **consist in** 表示组成的意思，这是错误的，所以应该把 **in** 改为 **of**。

〔类例〕Man *consists of* soul and body. (人由灵魂和肉体所组成。)

〔比较〕Real happiness *consists in* helping others. (真正的快乐在于助人。)

2. 误: I shall *call at* my friend tomorrow.

正: I shall *call on* my friend tomorrow.

(明天我将访我的朋友。)

〔说明〕**call at** 的意义是访问(朋友的家)，要表示访问朋友须用 **call on**。注意 **call at** 的后面接地方，**call on** 的后面接人。在误句里 **call at** 的后面接 **friend**。这是错误的，所以应该把 **at** 改为 **on**。

〔类例〕I will *call on* you tomorrow evening. (我要在明晚来拜访你。)

〔比较〕I shall *call at* his house tomorrow. (我明天将到他的家去拜访。)

3. 误: I *agree to* you.

正: I *agree with* you.



(我同意你。)

〔说明〕 **agree with** 和 **agree to** 的意义都是同意，不过 **agree with** 的后面普通跟人，**agree to** 的后面跟事情或计划等。在误句里，**you** 的前面用 **agree to**，这是错误的，所以应该把 **to** 改为 **with**。

〔类例〕 **Do you agree with me?** (您同意我吗?)

〔比较〕 **They at once agreed to the plan.** (他们即刻同意这计划。)

〔参考〕 **agree with** 作一致解释的时候，在它的后面也可以接物，如：

**The story does not agree with the facts.** (这故事与事实不符。)

4. 误: **This desk is made from wood.**

正: **This desk is made of wood.**

(这书桌是由木头制成。)

〔说明〕 **be made of** 和 **be made from** 都是表明从某种原料制造成某种东西的意思。假使原料的改变并不大，还可以看得出来所用的原料，便用 **be made of**；假使原料改变得太大，已看不出所用的原料，便用 **be made from**。在误句里，用 **be made from** 来表明桌子是由木制成，这是错误的，因为桌子被制成后，木头并没有遭受多大的改变，很容易看出来桌子是由木头制的，所以应该把 **from** 改为 **of**。

〔类例〕 **The basket is made of wicker.** (这篮是由柳条做的。)

**We made tables of wood.** (我们把木头做成桌子。)

〔比较〕 **Wine is made from grapes.** (葡萄酒是葡萄制成的。)

5. 误: **He will arrive at the United States at the end of the month.**

正：He will *arrive in* the United States at the end of the month.

（他将于月底到达美国。）

〔说明〕 **arrive in** 和 **arrive at** 都是到达某处的意思。假使到达一国，**arrive** 的后面须用 **in**；假使到达一国的首府，也最好用 **in**；假使到达较小的地方须用 **at**。在误句里 **arrive at** 用在美国的前面这是错误的，所以应该把 **at** 改为 **in**。

〔类例〕 When will your brother *arrive in* Japan? （你的兄弟几时到达日本？）

He *arrived in* London yesterday. （他昨日抵达伦敦。）

〔比较〕 He will *arrive at* Tainan tomorrow. （明日他将到达台南。）

I *arrived at* my house at nine. （我九点到家。）

## 53 形容词后误用介词的错误

*is angry with*

*is angry at*

*was angry at*

*was angry with*

*am familiar to*

*am familiar with*

*is familiar to*

*is familiar with*

*is familiar to*

*am familiar with*

*is blind of*

*is blind to*

*is blind to*

*is blind of*

*is good for*

*is good at*

*is good at*

*is good for*

*is good for*

## 54 名词后误用介词的错误

*is heir of*

*is heir to*

*is the heir to*

*is the heir of*

*has a taste of*

*has a taste for*

*has a taste for*

*has had a taste of*

*have no objection of*

*have no objection to*

*has a great obæction to*

## 55 几对容易互相误用的介词

*among*

*between*

*between*

*among*

*after*

*behind*

*behind*

*after*

*around*

*round*

*round*

*around*

*by*

*till*

*till*

*till*

*by*

*after*

*in*



*in*

*in*

*after*

*after*

*after*

*After*

*Since*

*since*

*After*

## 练习题











## 习题解答

1. There are...
- 2....is in the library.
- 3....is...
- 4....to hear...
- 5....was wounded...
- 6....was born...
- 7....wait...
- 8....has made...
- 9....it is fine...
- 10....accident happened...
- 11....listen to...
- 12....laughed at...
- 13....I shall...
- 14....should think...
- 15....I would...
- 16....would have lent...
- 17....to understand.
- 18....but cry.
19. Stolen fruit...
- 20....I catch a fish.



21....avoid reading...

22....reading detective...

23....to smoking.

24....two trout...

25....some furniture...

26. His parents...

27....a blonde.

28. Her fiance...

29....finished his work...

30....for his...

31....than she.

32....be him.

33....her duties.

34....his parents.

35....to one...

36....who, I...

37....whoever met...

38. Which of...

39....that were...

40....grapes that wine is made from.

41....those who...

42....a letter, which I...

43. Among his friends in the town, there was one man that he loved dearly.

44. How beautiful...

45. He consented not only to lend...

46....than he.

47....cold, yet he...

48....language as...

49. No sooner had he seen...

50....nor a brother.

51. is that you...

52. She did not come...

53....was born.

54....not only silver but also gold.

55. That the man...

56....been that you...

57....the most famous...

58....the younger...

59....than anything else...

60....more nearly round...

61. It is possible for me...

62. It is easy for me to write...

63. He is in danger of...

64. He is interested in...

65....am delighted...

66....industrious in...

67....a few mistakes.

- 68. Fewer people...
- 69....each side...
- 70....English every day.
- 71....put in order.
- 72....owing to illness.
- 73. Are you...
- 74....is like a mirror,
- 75....is small.
- 76....worthy student.
- 77....something useful.
- 78....large purple flowers.
- 79....an honest boy.
- 80....on the earth.
- 81....is the Newton...
- 82....played billiards.
- 83....a kind of animal.
- 84....by water.
- 85. Woman as...
- 86. The Grand Canal...
- 87. The Pescadores...
- 88. The Altar...
- 89....the Analects...
- 90....the Cantonese...
- 91....the Restoration...

- 92....seemed clever.
- 93....sing either.
- 94....months before.
95. He tried hard...
96. She closely...
- 97....much tired...
- 98....much alike.
99. Never have I seen...
- 100....deprived him of all hope.
101. I entered the room.
- 102....ignorant that...
- 103....on weekend.
- 104....at Easter.
- 105....in that newspaper.
- 106....arrived in...
- 107....heir to...
- 108....ran after...
109. He did not return... 110. Since his graduation...

## 出版后记



后浪

T

R

A

N

钱歌川 著

S

# 翻译 的 基本知识

(修订版)

L

A

T

I

O



北京联合出版公司  
Beijing United Publishing Co., Ltd.

N

# 翻译的基本知识

钱歌川 著



## 版权信息

丨书名：翻译的基本知识

丨作者：钱歌川

丨书号：423-2-00+- -0+4- -0

丨版权：后浪出版咨询（北京）有限责任公司

## 重版补记

这本小书问世以后，竟意外地引起学术界一些朋友的注意，使我感到颇为兴奋。首先是南洋大学的同僚，年轻的史学家曹仕邦先生的来信。他提出好一些读后感，其中有一条是最有意义的，可供爱好或从事翻译的人参考或研究，所以我转录在此，并附我本人的答复，以待博雅君子的核定。

原叛虽当四诉至虽当肉诉当竖故事的诺堂“惹中，先挠很统得请童创数踏“句中的创”，堂作  $\alpha`gW`fd b$ ，后学饥得似宜断田  $g\ r\tilde{z}$  虽字检堂较好，原因有当：

(W) 潮秋逆尺最高统鲜毋是王“，而比是创”。至童落、齐歌彩从、撒创，是战国末年的事，即家到落始皇统虽天下的逆候才发挠的。所以这脚披的创“，可牢是喜天神“，姆创“而爽。

(X) 先挠她荒喜差套惹是虽显服搞的徒惹，因此认饥得叫田它的服搞弃世检翻堂，似乎更俗圆强盛。套惹的  $g\ n\ Z$ ，海可作姆创“解，宿可作驰人“解，所以在此为天神“肥可，为先王“滩荣比可。...

曹先生提出的这种高见，给了我在翻译时选辞拣字上很好的示范作用，不过我当时执笔翻译那句古文时，也曾为得在  $`h\ k`n\ m\ f\ d\ b$ ， $n\ p\ g\ m\ Z\ p\ f`$ ， $g\ r\tilde{z}$  诸字间加以抉择而有所迟疑，最后采用了  $f\ d\ b$ ，是根据下面两条规律来决定的：

(,) 形葬弯创。(见《驰戴礼·诰瞎》)

(-) 措之庙揭之乡弯创。(见《礼·曲礼下》)

意即一位国君，在生为公为王，死后便可称之为帝。如果在生是称帝的，死后则称先帝，如诸葛亮在《出师表》上说的“先帝创业未半”之类。

翻译是要字斟句酌的，曹先生虽未尝从事翻译，却有这种翻译的精神，值得佩服。因为他提出异议，我才有机会说出我翻译那一个字时的苦心，为那些不假思索随意照字面翻译的人树立一种楷模，以期减少翻译上的错误。

在同一文中王叔岷先生也曾告我，“公疾病，求医于秦”句中的“疾病”作“疾甚”解，幸亏我译为 **npZZ`i g à gg dg** (一听就病倒了)，意思相差不远，虽没有用 **n`mj pn** 一类的字眼，但后面说景公已病得神志不清，其病情的沉重可想而知了。

此外，新加坡文学界的元老连士升先生，也在报端写了一篇《海滨寄简》，专谈读了《翻译的基本知识》一书后的感想，可视为一种书评，现节录一部分如下：

其到翻堂，乐可以披是斫据老毆，拜先姆，乐是二作寒，在散惹作寒脚乐有虽次的幢位。乐幻强套惹付日惹，在店弱付了解姆，绝对比餐人题。此穷，乐有几十年翻堂的荒验，将此比良，玩万田玩纯熟。函以多年检，乐在各驰学脚，所担孟的多是翻堂的课程，熟牢挠巧，蚀得谢每般较虽般补甚两敏显徒惹的人多得多。因此，当认棵有拜读驰著以前她荒有了实蚀，读完之后，更饥得名比饰长。

披检念在比秘易，孟父虽技的餐翻，完全已奖关的翻夫，而吩河同在童篱刚的兴茅，付有干比懈的理街。

系因乐对童翻堂该有兴茅，所以乐才牢房以数十年免虽日的翻夫，检研恢付长怕翻堂。翻堂寒比但是拜国惹字的作寒，而且是穷惹的爱好毋。在棵有促板翻堂之前，必氏对童原惹有深刻的了解，俗达到这赖的，各显字春、辞春，以规有吩人题的边几叛，必氏齐全。乐该示万，几十年检村在驰报粉、驰叛婚、驰学生工作，凡共怯叛粉的拿摆，驰可鼻草

二人变有比型的幢方。工欲冀其事，必先叫其路。荣论虽二作寒故翻堂寒多抗理街，假免棵有得街的工获，葡的工作效率很驰为和传，南至罚拜棵倒子坏始。

虽二人最怕谢视欺高，唯认存雄，对童别人的餐就，罚拜比底在眼劳。乐是草店了解颇子的知贵知版，百战百胜。的战拒的人，因此，乐逆膊研读各著名翻堂寒的作烈，看看人寒的条点在哪诞，梅点同在哪诞，每后取其幻华，删其芜杂，以薄树揭谢贵的翻堂方倒。的眉，各人有各人的方倒，虽显原惹，百人堂差，尽比相抢。有的对原惹的了解比房深刻，有的对童有吩学人完全穷始，有的俗羞归羞章，比口静童判高，有的中惹欺差，堂差检的从撒，般天叛跟难读，诸免此类的事吗，逆膊可以见到，在这诞，研恢翻堂，尽届采田别人的长处，免发饥别人翻堂有错误，就特以哀业勿喜。的态搭，提高黄千，口得险蹈读辙。

其念，其理论背比难，最难的是取量引土。初差茅究的人荒验比房，葡们比是年纺比化，薄是年四比化，棵倒子提差获体的例子检披宽。驰作得街处，在童念例该多，鸟人虽看就牢宽白。这显深入浅差的翻夫，证宽乐的眉是二始寒。

在第悔章工首先俗了解原惹.脚，乐弃幢受差肉十字，响宽抢虽字而套美的意坦比抢。举虽道敏，沉宽的读毋比难了解抢虽惹字，而服坦却是篮抗歧异。这够提式葡们以后晚读叛报，尤其是把板为惹，氏函百小蚀。

乐幼逆在故赦迟好返肥的中惹基产，后检景日，同景套，长期的理街，鸟乐在中、日、套敏显徒惹姆，达到条游谢得的将茅。因为乐学了日拜学跑互勤学纪练的翻夫，对童穷惹的坏适，多是红踏念幢，所以在翻堂付施作姆，绝对比餐人题。这两敏天检，认僧蚀研读场摩乐的工当竖的故事诺堂.，这才了解乐的套惹施作的牢街念在高宽。乐把《修长》虽大纺惹，先堂餐浅还的白格惹，忘堂餐件件可漂的套惹，这虽套真念的翻夫，比由得比鸟人平每起谎。

林蚀而论，唱作坚难，翻堂宿比秘易。作寒系释幻强虽显母徒，翻堂寒至幕氏补甚两显以姆的惹字。评每作寒跟释票索枯肠，备访周询，窝差许多闭料检证念葡的理论，而堂

毋却可节闹这盛倦烦，把人寒海餐的作烈拿检照堂，但是在始惹姆，作寒可以谢由发共，而翻堂寒氏拍原惹的尚制，有的可堂，有的比可堂。有的评牢羞到实付达的程搭，但因逆好付幢域的吩系，虽亮堂惹，读检全比是然道。

最后，认地膊抢意乐的建叹，虽切堂惹必氏以句光为抱准。假免堂惹比合句光，读起检完全比身格。堂毋必氏谢贵先把原惹彻窗了解，才可下板。原意完全宽白，堂惹合乎句光，篮抗£实..付£达..的两驰前件她荒羞到了，至童£树..£比树.. 见仁见吓，各人的看倒比抢，系好比毛管它了。

（惹见虽悔鸣当年肉月当十肉日食函坡《路四商报》）

## 目 录

重版补记

一 一个古老的问题

二 约定俗成万物名

三 岂有此理必有误

四 严复说的信达雅

五 佛经的翻译方式

六 批评的和实用的

七 直译和意译举例

八 译文第一要通达

九 首先要了解原文

（，）理解字句的含义

（-）字句以外的含义

（.）找出典故的来历

（/）分辨英美的作者

十 中英文中的虚字

十一 不能翻译的字句

十二 两国语义不尽同

十三 在动手翻译之先

十四 选用适当的字句

十五 英译中五种方法

(,) 省译法

(-) 增译法

(.) 倒译法

(/) 改译法

(O) 简译法

十六 英文长句的译法

(,) 在关系代名词处切断

(-) 在关系副词处切断

(.) 在副词处切断

(/) 在动词处切断

(O) 在名词处切断

十七 容易译错的文句

(,) 英译中

(-) 中译英

十八 二竖的故事试译

原文

语译

英 译

附录 翻译实例评述

例一

例二

例三

例四

例五

例六

例七

出版后记

返回总目录



## 一 一个古老的问题

世界上现存有三千多种语言，彼此之间不能理解，要理解就得凭借翻译。语言的产生和人类的产生同样的古老，两种不同语言的人类，开始发生接触的时候，就发生了翻译的问题。人类由单有语言进化到有文字的程度，其间必然经过极其悠久的岁月，至今世界上三千多种不同的语言中，有文字的仍为极少数，这并不是说有的民族产生得较迟，所以文字也发达得迟，而是因为他们的知识进步得慢，文化水准很低的缘故。大家都知道：文字是代表民族的文化的，一个没有文字的民族，其文化水准的低落可想而知。孔子所谓“言之无文，行之不远”，意思就是说，要把一个人的话语和思想，传到远方或传到后世，就必得有记录的文字。世界上最古的文字有三种：一为苏马利亚人和巴比伦人的楔形文字，二为埃及的图画文字，三为中国文字。所有人类的文字，虽则都是由图画演进而来，然而并非出自一源。于是发展出彼此极其不同的文字来了，如中国的文字为注音文字，西欧的文字为拼音文字。这已经在系统上大有不同，判然二物，即是那些有亲族关系的文字，如日本、高丽、安南，乃至古代的契丹、女真、西夏，都采用了中国文字，或至少是和汉字有不少的关系，但发展的结果，也多变成了另外一种文字，如日本文看上去虽则满纸汉字，然而我们中国人要了解它，也大不易。不要说外国，哪怕是在一国之内，文字也不尽同，我国直到秦朝的李斯，实行“书同文”，才算是把中国的文字统一了。

同一国的文字，如果不统一的话，也是需要翻译的；外国的文字，哪怕是汉字集团，如上述的日本文及高丽文，我们如不经过翻译还是不能了解的。说话固然不能了解，就是写成文字也和我们的出入。所以说说话需要翻译，文字更要翻译。没有文字而只是口头传述的，不算正式的翻译，只可称为通译（*d ò nkò*）；要把用文字写成的书籍，译成另外一种文字，这才是正式的翻译（*onW ngW*）。在新

加坡这个多元种族的国家，到处都是不同种族的人，说着各自的母语；就同是华族，也说福建、广东、潮州、海南、三江各地的方言，互相不能达意，就得有人通译。如果是在这个复杂的环境中生长的人，他就会说各种各样的话，会说英语，会说马来话，会说华语，会说闽、粤方言。这样的人英文叫做会说多种话语的人（kj g bg o）。他只能做通译，不能做翻译。通译是动口的，他不一定要认识字，而翻译是动手的，他必须通晓书本上的文字。所以从事翻译工作，非精通语文的人（gl bpcho）莫办。

通译因无记录可留，自无史实可考，等到有记录时，已经到了翻译的阶段，至少是有一方面的记录，把当时由通译口头传述的话，用文字记下来了。如中国从事翻译的工作，而留下有记录可考的，是三千年前的周代。《礼记》的《王制》上说：

肉方之块，爽徒比强，乔欲比抢。达其瞎，强其欲，从方弯𠵿虎.，路方弯𠵿绅.，撒方弯𠵿寸芝.，把方弯𠵿堂.。

等到公元一百五十年的时候，即汉末的桓帝的朝代，所翻译的佛经，流传至今还在。《隋书》的《经籍志》上说：

汉根创逆，安息国沙门安皇，寨荒至洛，翻堂最为强解。

这似乎是𠵿翻译.一词出现最早的记载，在汉以前只称𠵿译.。《礼记》上说：𠵿北方曰译.，只用一个𠵿译.字。因为汉人大半与北方的外族打交道，所以𠵿译.的这个名称特别发达，后来加上一个形容词便称𠵿翻译.，代表转译四方的语言文字了。

在西洋的欧洲，翻译也有两千年的历史了。有记录可考的，是在公元前二百五十年的时候，罗马的诗入安得罗尼可斯（Fdhpn 9i Zm̃ i d̃pn, Y.- 3/° - +/ : .; .）曾把希腊大诗人荷马（Bj h`m̃ Y., +α Y`i α : .; .）的史诗《英雄流浪记》（I dt nnet）译成了拉丁文。可见翻译这一种工作，是在两三千年前的古代，早已有了的，并不是什么新奇的玩意。如果翻译有什么问题的话，也是极其古老的问题。古

人所遭遇的困难，我们同样还得遭遇。翻译免不了要发生误译，也并非时下才有的。在民国二十年左右，上海有位文人曾由英译本把俄国作家柴霍甫的短篇小说，全部译成中文，至少有十二巨册。他的中文写得非常流利，英文的阅读能力也不算坏，可是译得多了，总不免有失错（ngk）的地方，于是乎他就在中国的文坛上闹了一个大笑话，把英文的银河（Nc` G d f t Q Wt）译成£牛奶路..了，有诗为证：

可慨夕里识，化为马健短。

日没务比检，听听牛懒酒。

这首诗可以称为一种史料，中国翻译史上的逸话。大家都知道织女配牛郎，为什么诗中变成了£马郎.呢？这也是那位先生译笔下的杰作。神话中有一种上半身是人，下半身是马的怪物（= `mS` i oWp m），竟被译成£半人半牛怪..，当时曾被人讥为£牛头不对马嘴.的翻译。

在上诗中，提到为牛郎织女七七相会时架桥的£乌鹊..，使我想起另外的一些译作来了。以译介中国文学名著闻名世界的，英国汉学大师介尔斯（B` rX` m A d g n），把曹孟德的诗句：£月明星稀，乌鹊南飞.. 英译为：

Nc` noWm Wn` a r , oc` h j j i ch Xnbc o

Nc` nWq` i nj poc r WZ r d bn c ch agbc o.

而不久以前台湾的李杏村先生，新译的《前赤壁赋》（见，413年2月出版的 Cc d W Nod Wt）上把这两句诗又译成：

Qc` i oc` noWm Wn` a r

9i Z oc` h j j i nc d ` n Xnbc og ,

G Wbkd n W Z nWq` i n Wn` r d bd b oc` dnr W

Mj poc r WZ.

由上两种翻译看来，外国人译的也好，中国人自己译的也好，都把鸛一个名词翻译错了。介尔斯把它译成鸛，是另外一种鸟，而李杏村就把它译成两种鸟了，他不知道鸛在此是一个形容词，实际是指那种俗呼为鸛喜鹊的鸟。

上述几位译者都是很好的，尤其是介尔斯的鼎鼎大名汉学界谁不知道，可是译诗照旧不免有错，古人要译错，今人也要译错。所以说翻译的困难问题，是自古以来就有了的。

## 二 约定俗成万物名

十九世纪的英国著名生物学者赫胥黎（Ncj h Wh B.Bpsg t , , 3 - 0° , 340）, 曾以极其通俗易解的文字, 来说明大自然的奥秘。他把世间万物分为两类: 一类叫自然物, 一类叫人为物。如房屋、家具、舟车、机器之类, 就是人为物, 因为它们都是经过人的手工艺而形成的; 而另外还有更多的东西, 是完全没有经人之手而出现的, 世界上即令没有人类, 它们也是存在的, 那是些什么呢? 那就是日月星辰, 白云苍天, 山河海洋, 动物植物, 一切自然产生的东西, 所以称为自然物。所谓人为物, 严格地说起来, 也不真正是人类创造的, 如果没有自然物的话, 人类便什么也造不出来。例如, 一张书桌, 算是人为物吧, 但是如果没有自然物的树木, 给我们做材料, 又哪里来的桌子呢? 所以, 事实上, 人为物的产生, 不外是我们叫作人类的这个自然物, 在别的自然物上有所作为的结果。

老子说: 天地不仁, 以万物为刍狗。意思是说, 天地间产生万物, 人最为贵, 但在大自然方面来看, 也是和刍草或狗畜一般, 无分轩轻, 正如赫胥黎所说的, 人类也不过是自然物的一种而已。

自然物既是由造物者一手造成, 全世界各地都是一样, 美国的月亮也好, 中国的月亮也好, 都是一般大小的。天下乌鸦一般黑, 是人都有五官, 是树都有枝叶。不同种族, 不同语言的人, 对自然物的认识都是相同的。假如英国人指着早晨在东方升起的红日说: 太阳, 我们不懂英语的人, 也懂得他是说的太阳。至于秦朝的赵高指鹿为马, 那问题就来了。为什么那有叉角的动物就一定是鹿, 那有鬃毛的动物就一定是马呢? 仓颉造名时, 鹿还可以说是象形, 而英文鹿的原意, 只是指的普通动物 (鹿) 而已。当初把这名称派在别的动物头上, 或派在马的头上, 那么, 赵高指着唤名的, 也就不错了。莎士比亚说, 名称有什么关系呢? 那个我们称为玫瑰花的, 叫做任何其他的名字, 也是一样的芬芳。这就是说, 我们给

它的名称虽有不同，而自然物本身的实质不变。荀子在他的《正名》篇上说：

名荣肥宜，湾之以况。湾次拼餐让之宜，异童湾伪让之比宜。名荣肥念，湾之以况。湾次拼餐让之念名。

这是合乎现代语言学的理论的。现代中国首屈一指的语言学家赵元任，在一九五九年出版的《语言问题》上说：

徒爽伐徒爽所报达的事入的吩系，完全是孟意的，完全是湾次拼餐的吩系。这是她每的事念，而裸有天每，必每的吩系。

他用了荀子的𣎵约定俗成.四字，来说明语言的性质，可见他是同意荀子的说法的。

自然物是人类共通有的，只是各种语言叫它的名称不同而已。我们只要知道那名称所指的是什么，总不会错。𣎵野火烧不尽，春风吹又生.的青草，在世界任何地方都是一样的绿，一样的芳，无论你叫它什么名字都可以，它是决不会变成乔木的。我们在一种语言当中，由于约定俗成的关系，给它取上一个名字；在另外的语言中，又有另外的名字，但不同的名字，并不会发生不同的印象，因为大家心目中早有了那个自然物的形态，只要把两种不同的语言的名称，配合在一块儿，就可明白所指的是什么了。

人为物的情形就完全两样了。例如我们写字的笔墨，便是所谓人为物，凡有文化的民族，莫不有其行文必备的笔墨，可是形态全不一样。英文把中国的𣎵笔.译做 **Xnpnc**，但这个英文字，含义为𣎵刷子...，用以擦洗 (**nYnpX**)，或扫除 (**nr ``k**)，或使干净 (**Yg W**)，或使整洁 (**αZt**) 的。中国辞典上对𣎵刷.的解释有四：一为刮去，二为清除，三为理发具，四为印刷。无论是中国解释，或外国解释，**Xnpnc** 一字和中国𣎵笔.的内容与形式，都相差很远。第一 **Xnpnc** 一定是平头的，而中国笔的特色就在它有笔锋，一尖一平，如何可以视同一物呢？有人说中国的笔，与其译作 **Xnpnc**，不如译作 **cd `n` k`i**，

还不至发生误会，其实，这也并不适合，因为英文的 *k`i* 最初是鹅毛管做的，后来变成钢笔，最近流行的原子笔是在笔尖上附有小球的。无论它怎样进化，总离不开一点：那就是硬的笔头，而中国笔却是软的，所以一软一硬，处于相反的地位，如何可以构成同一物体的观念呢？

再看中国的**墨**，被译成；*cd`n`df*，如中国的**砚台**，就译成 *ngwX aj mmpXXd b pk ; cd`n`df*。这比把**笔**译成；*cd`n`k`i*，更为不通，因为西洋的 *df* 是液体，而中国的**墨**是固体，在实质上大不相同，绝不可能使人发生联想作用，等于译得不伦不类。虽同是约定俗成而取的名字，人为物与自然物有所不同，人为物是没有全人类共通的物象的。你没有见到实物，翻译时总不免有错。有些东西是属于玄奘所谓**三不译**范围内的，因为译出来，既变成三不像，还不如不译的好。如佛经中的《楞伽经》《楞严经》等，**经**字是译了的，而**楞伽**和**楞严**就不译，即前者可意译，而后者则只能音译。中国的**词**，为中国诗中的变体，不同于**诗**，也不同于**曲**，更不同于**赋**，英文诗中绝无此种形式，勉强拿英文的一种诗体来翻译，必然是牛头不对马嘴，不伦不类，所以只好译音，译成 *Nufp*，还不失其本来面目。翻译者处理人为物时，不可不特别谨慎。

### 三 岂有此理必有误

*Gone Aeh n oaCcd ene Joeon*



*Nce CWYcend æe L t e*







## 四 严复说的信达雅

曾任北京大学校长的严复，虽则是学海军的，然擅长中英文字，译介了不少的西哲学说，在中国清末民初的思想学术界，产生了极大的影响。自唐玄奘以来，在中国的翻译界，还没有一个人赶得上严复的。他在汉译的《天演论》的例言上说：

译事三难：信、达、雅。求其信，已大难矣。他接下去又详细解释说，翻译时对原文要忠实，对译文要通顺，还要文雅。有时为求译文通顺，不免要颠倒原文字句，甚至在原文之外，还要斟酌补足。这种补足，只是发挥原意，绝非节外生枝。有些原文的含义很是艰深，难得理解，他便要在这些句的前后，酌加引衬，以便使得原文的意思可以明显。他不说解释，也不说说明，而说引衬，是很有道理的。引，是引申，衬，是帮衬，即帮助的意思，所以引衬，是说多加几个字进去，以助了解。他说信而不达，虽译犹不译也。可见单是忠实于原文，而译文不能表达，便失去了译介的作用。令人看不懂的文字，无论内容怎样好，也是无用的。他为求译文通顺，采用了四种办法：（一）颠倒原文字句。（二）有时补足一点。（三）遇到原文长句，采用意译。（四）原文含义深奥的地方，便酌加引衬。单是译文通顺，他还不满意，必须做到文字优美才罢手。这儿说的优美，不但是字面上的美，而且要有声调之美。这便是严复翻译理论的要点。自从清朝末期以至今日，这就成了中国人翻译西籍的准绳。译者一心只希望能做到信达雅的地步，除此以外，再没有别的奢望了。

其实，单只一个信字也就够了，如果我们能从狭义和广义双方来看这信字的解释的话。

在民国二十年代，上海有一部分文人，如赵景深等主张翻译以通顺为第一，即把达放在信的前面，理由是辞达而已矣，看不懂的

文字等于废物，一点用途也没有的。

后来朱光潜就说，还是信为首要，归根到底，只有信字最难。如果把原文的意思译错，即令译得通顺，又有什么用；即令译得文雅，又有什么用？这是有违背狭义的信的，是叛徒的行为，任何人都知道是不对的。

现在我们来再看看广义的信，又是怎样的。原文是既达而雅的，我们把它译成不达不雅，这也就不能算是信。原文的意思，一点没有漏掉，全都译出来了，但译文生硬，读起来很费解，如果是懂得原文的人，去读原文比读译文，容易了解多了。你不能照原文一样，译得既达又雅，当然是不信。反过来，如果原文是不达不雅的，如小说中故意描写无教育者的说话，你把它译得既达又雅，如以前林琴南的译文，这也不能说是信，即令意思没有译错，因为把一个流氓译成一位绅士，等于换了一个人，如何能说是忠实的翻译呢？

英国十八世纪有位剧作家 L. : .Mc`mZW，在一七七五年发表了一出名叫《情敌》（Nce LqWgn）的戏。戏中的女主角 Gm. G WgWkm j k，谈锋很健，喜欢用一些深奥的字眼，来夸示她的学问。不幸的是她每说必错，反而暴露了她的无知。例如她高谈女子教育时说：

9n nc` bmr pk, Cr j pgZ cWq` c`md nampYo`Z d A`  
j h`am, ocWb nc` h dbc of i j r nj h`oc d b j aoc` Yj i oWbc  
j pn Yj pi on n.

如果照字面译为：等她大了，我要她学些几何学，使她知道一些传染的国家，便要使人读了莫名其妙，虽然译得很信，也等于不信了。原来那位好夸耀的太太，想说的是 b`j bnWkct（地理学），却弄错而说成 b`j h`am（几何学），又把 Yj i ocbpj pn（邻近的）缠错而说成 Yj i oWbq pn（传染的）了。我们只能学韩复榘的办法。他曾把感想说成感冒，闹过笑话。把 b`j h`am 译成地质学，把 Yj i oWbq pn 译成冷情的，从不信中求信。

所谓信是对原文忠实，恰如其分地把原文的意思，用适当的中文表达出来，即令字面不同，只要含义不错，也就算是信了。

林语堂也反对字译...，他说忠实非字字对译之谓...。我们翻译的单位，至少应该是句，而不是字。要能把一段为一个单位，自然更好了。原作者的思想感情和他的语文风格，我们必须把它融会贯通，合成一体，使意义和声调配合无间，译文才能完全表达原文，所以说对原文忠实，不只是对表面的字义忠实，必须对原文的思想、感情、风格、声调、节奏等等，都要忠实才行。

相传欧阳修为韩琦作《相州昼锦堂记》，开头两句原作“仕宦至将相，富贵归故乡...”，文稿送出之后，觉得不好，又赶快叫人去将文稿追回，加上两个“而”字，成为“仕宦而至将相，富贵而归故乡...”，才认为满意了。但在初学者看来，这个“而”字加与不加，实在没有什么关系，因为意思既没有改变，文法也是一样完整，大文豪欧阳修为什么一定要改呢？这主要是音调上的关系。“仕宦至将相...”连五个字全是仄声，念起来就不好听，在句中加一个平声的“而”字进去，声调就大不相同了。原句气局促，改后能觉舒畅；原句意直率，改后便有了抑扬顿挫，音调上多了一个转折，意思也加深了一重。严格地说，译文如失去原文所有的那种声调之美，也不算是完全忠实。

中西文在语句的组织上，悬殊很大，逐字逐句的翻译，不但不能信，而且也不能达。从文法上来看，英文每多复句，穿插环锁，句中有句，修饰重重。一个长句当中，包含许多短句或称子句，一意未完，又插入另外一意，一种修饰之上，再加另外一种修饰。原文虽繁复屈曲，但它的语句组织，在文法上必然是有线索可寻的。

中文的文法弹性较大，用字颠倒排列，意思不变，一般少用虚字，没有英文的关系代名词之类，所以很少有复句和插句，一义自成一句。行文用字可说是简练直截，运用灵活。可是用简译繁，有时不免张冠李戴，把修饰甲的字句，译成修饰乙的去了。如果照原文的顺序译出，信固信矣，但决不能达，所以结果也等于不信。现举英国神学家 D.B. H`r h W 著的《大学教育的范围与性质》中的一句话为例。

Q` nj h`och`naWgd r ddc k`mj i n r c j cWq` n`i  
h pYc j aoc` r j nZ, W Z j aoc` h`i r c j, d oc`dnZW,  
cWq` kgW`Z WYj i nk dYp j p n kWo d d, Xp o r c j b`i`nW

dì i j o d b, W Z c Wq` i j j Xn` m Wqj i, d o c` o p` n` i n  
` j a o c` r j n Z.

我把这句话拿给一班共二十八个学生去翻译，其中有的已在英校学过十四五年的英文，有的已是大学毕业，理解力都是很强的。翻译的结果，以下面一句译文最好：

☞有时候我们遇到一些世故很深，而在年轻时曾经显赫一时的人，但说实在的，这些人并没有什么心得与观察。...

我对这句译文的评语，是☞达则达矣，信则未也。☞因为原文中用了三个 r c j，是比较复杂的句子，正所谓句中有句，译者粗心一下，就出了纰漏。现在让我来分析给大家听，然后再来翻译就不会有错了。

句中第一个 r c j 和第三个 r c j，都是以 k` m j i n 为先行词的。至于第二个 r c j，便是以 h` i 为先行词，而 j a o c` h` i，前面应加上 c Wq` n` i h p Yc 三字来解释。我们所遇见的有两种人，一种是熟悉世故的人，另一种是见过大人物的人。上引的译文，却把两种人弄成一种人了，即☞世故很深，而曾经显赫一时的人。☞

除了文法组织之外，还要把单字和成语的意思，正确地掌握在笔下，才能译出信实的文章来。在上面那句引用文中，值得注意的单字有 b` i` n Wg u` (归纳；做出结论) 和 j Xn` m Wqj i (观察力)。成语方面则有 a Wg d r d c (邂逅；不期而遇)，n` o c` r j n g Z (熟悉世故；深于阅历)，d j i` n Z Wt (在其全盛时代)，k g Wt Wk Wt o d (与之有关)，d o c` o p` n` i n` j a o c` r j n Z (那字的真义)。对文法组织和字句的含义，有了如上的了解之后，就可译成下面的文字了。

认们有逆颜躁虽盛熟松世故的人，付虽盛味荒见过许多  
在其全盛逆尺，允煦风在，世互安试所系的有名人入的人，  
但是葡们却比牢归纳差虽点什抗检，宿府荣真吸的观并街。



## 五 佛经的翻译方式









(拜章取闭《伤尺杂瞎》敏疆当、敏期才切安著《吩童定教的堂  
场》虽惹)

## 六 批评的和实用的

翻译既系从一种文字易为另外一种文字，从事这种工作的人，自然非通晓有关的两种文字不可。这两种文字，在一般的情形，不外是一为本国文，一为外国文。但两种全属外国文的场合，也并不是没有。例如，我的本国文是中文，在第二次世界大战时，就曾为重庆的一个美国战时机构，将中途拦截的日本电报译成英文，以供当局参考，协助争取最后胜利。但从外国文译成本国文，实为翻译的正宗。大家认为只要外国文好，就可从事翻译，因为本国文是没有问题的。这种看法并不一定正确，翻译的错误来自双方，如我在上文提到的，**鸢** 一词，英国的汉学大师译错，中国的大学教授也同样译错。这有关对原文的了解问题，以后我们再详加研讨。现在且说从事翻译的人，必须通晓两种文字，不过通法有所不同。他对外国文的知识，必须是批评的（**YmbdYw**），而对本国文的知识，就必须是实用的（**knWY odYw**）。为什么对外国文的知识，要带批评性呢？为什么对本国文的知识，要能实际运用呢？下面我们不妨分别举例来说明一下。

我们暂定外国文为英文，本国文为中文。由英文译成中文的翻译过程，便是我们的主题。

先看怎样实际运用中文的知识，来把英文译成恰到好处的中文句子。

Cœd f œ` h j nWgjad bWg d h nph h`Z pk d œ` m  
h Wñ r cdYc W d œnk dZ gWt, r c j n` i Wh` cWh jagW  
X Yj h` Wc j pn` c j gZ r j nZ, j i Y` h WZ` q h`.

° ° 9.A.AWZd`n

句中的 Wcj pn`cj gZ r j nZ, 译成£一个家务的字... 是不合实用的。因为这不但不是一句中国惯用句, 而且不像一句中国话。具有相当的中国语文的知识, 又能实际运用的人, 必然会把这个英文的表现法, 译成£一句家喻户晓的话语.. 再看:

Nc`n` noWb`h`i on h Wt n`h nj Yj h h j i kgWY` oc Wb  
oc`t h Wt X`c`gZ oj X`cWZg r j mc h Wf d b.

° ° D.L. J`ZZd

如果译者不能运用£老生常谈...一句中国成语, 就不能很完善而流利地把这句英文翻译出来。

MYdi ocdY`skg nWoj i , oc`n`WYc aj mfi jr gZb`, c  
Wh bdj`i h W oc`knWodWgmnp gn jaX d b WXg`oj ncc  
`gZ c d n`gaoc`YVWh d d n j ai Wopmè W Z oc`YVWh d d  
n d h kj n`Z Xt j oc`mh`i .

句尾的十一个字, 有实用中文能力的译者, 便会以£天灾人祸. 四个字来翻译, 既恰当而又洗练, 比原文精彩多了。

FWLj Yc`aj pYWp gZ nWZ: ££ oc`h dhj mpi`n j aj p  
mX no and i Zn, r`ad Z nj h`oc d b oc Wb d i j o pi kg`Wh  
i b....

上面这句英文, 用£幸灾乐祸...一个中国成语来译, 才是最为实用而恰当的。

现在再看对英文的原文, 要怎样用批评的手法, 来决定它的含义, 然后才好着手翻译呢。例如:

g`n i j o YmVf`o.



这句英文的表现法，句中 **Ynɒf`o** 一字我们原来只知道是 **蟋蟀**... 但蟋蟀在此是讲不通的。我们鉴定它在此决不能作蟋蟀解，因此引起我们的怀疑，不敢断然下笔。我们于是要去查辞典，便查出除蟋蟀一解外，还可作英国最普通的 **毽球戏** 解。我们晓得毽球是英国的国技，可以代表竞技精神的。所以英文说 **这不是毽球**... 等于说这不是竞技精神，也就是说，这是不公平的。（**On i j o aWm**）竞技精神就在 **aWmkgW**（公正，诚实）上，如果不是公正或诚实的，就变成不正直的了（**i j o c j i`no**），甚至有 **Rj p`m Yc`Wd b h`**。（你欺骗我）的意思。你如果没有批评的能力，也许就译成 **这不是蟋蟀**... 使人读了莫名其妙。

**Nc ch ch Wh`mè Wkj g bt aj mñj pk.**

上面这句英文，如译成 **它不过是为羹汤道歉而已** 的话，是不合理的，因为 **这** 不是指人，要人才可以道歉。我们既判断不能如此翻译，便知 **Wkj g bt** 一字必另有含义。原来它除道歉而外，还有 **代替**... 的意思。代用品总是勉强充数的，不会像本来的好，为权宜之计而敷衍一下，比方我们搬到新房子里去住，窗帷还没有来得及做好，临时用布遮住一下，就说 **Q` Z` qch` Wkj g bd n aj mr d Zj r YpnWd n**（设法用他物代替窗帷）。上举羹汤的例，是说有名无实，意为 **这个实在不成其为羹汤**... 也许是没有正式烧汤，临时用几片白菜叶子煮一碗汤，放点味精充数。现在再看：

**On` uk Yj Z` i ph X nm.**

一句英文，句中的 **uk** 一字，我们只知道是从 **ukk`m** 或 **ukaWho`i`m** 一个名词而变化来的动词，意为用拉链拉紧或拉开，如 **uk tj p mXWb j k`i**（**Yg n`Z**）。如果根据这个意思来翻译上举的例句，便是 **采用拉链的暗号电码**... 用批评的眼光来看，实不够明白。这儿需要作进一步的查究。《综合英汉大辞典》上载：**uk**，**T** 弹丸飞过空中或打中他物之音，蚩蚩音。° °，**T** 自动 **U** 作蚩蚩音，以蚩蚩音而动。《最新实用汉英辞典》则释作：**uk**，° i .**T** 俗 **U**（，）（弹丸飞过天空时之）飕飕声。（-）能力，活力，力。**qj cWq` g on j auk W Z bj**

(精神很好)。° qd (,) 作飕飕声; 飕飕飞驶。(-) 猛冲, 突进。  
° qa 用拉链拉紧。我们日常用的《韦氏新世界美语辞典》, 也和上面  
举出的大致相同。即 udk, i .T Ycj dYU , .Wncj m, nc Wlk c dnd b j m  
r c dnd b nj pi Z, Wh j a WkWhnd b Xpggè a- .& j gg b..., `i `nbt 5 qd  
h . qd, .qj h Wf`, j mh j q` r ddc, Wudk.- .& j gg b..., qj Wtoj mh j q  
` r ddc nk` `Z j m` i `nbt. qdqj aWho` i r ddc WngZ` aWho` i `m 以上中  
西辞典上的解释, 似乎对这句英文的译者都没有多大的帮助。他非在  
辞典以外, 另想办法不可。据说这句话是从美国街头那灰色邮箱上抄  
来的, 当然与邮务有关, 现在全世界各文明国家, 为求邮送迅速计,  
都分邮区, 如新加坡邮局, 在信件上常盖有 =j pn` Ml bWkj m Zchom  
dYo i ph X nm 字样。美国当不例外, 这个 udk Yj Z` 一定与邮区有  
关, 果然在美国的书上, 查出这是从 Sj i` ch knj q` h` i o knj bnWh  
(地区改进计划) 的起首字母构成的新字, 与辞典上的 udk 一字完全  
无关。它最初写成 SQ Yj Z`, 后来索性全用小写而写成 udk Yj Z`  
了。这是美国划分邮区的办法, 一共用五个数字, 前三字为州及城  
市, 后二字才是邮区。他们宣传说 Sdk ; j Z` : `g i bnd ? q` m 9ZZ  
mnm. (每一地址都应加上邮区号码)。On` udk Yj Z` i ph X nm. (请  
采用邮区号码)。

## 七 直译和意译举例

*Nce Mph h d b Ok*

*Nce LeWgNcd b*





## 八 译文第一要通达

辜鸿铭以“汉滨读易者”的笔名，著有《张文襄幕府纪闻》一书，其中有这么一则故事：

若年策揭秋努健践豹，差鸟美国，有坡员市拉，园比解撒惹。虽日，苍撒报慰究，铃入神。鸟粉堂员见之，讶每弯：‘君父逆远娘撒惹乎？’市弯：‘认肥比远。’堂员弯：‘君海比远撒惹，晚此奚为？’市池弯：‘统以为晚撒惹肥比解，晚诸君之翻堂惹滩比解。抢虽比解，肥比免晚撒惹之为吐宿。’至画长为升悲。

由上面这个故事看来，可见翻译出来的文字，必须通顺达意，否则就会变成天书，是没有人能看得懂的。遇到徐先生那样不懂英文的人，也宁肯放下天书似的翻译文字，而入神地去看那蟹行的原文了。他的幽默感，给了从事翻译的人们当头一棒，使他们在执笔翻译之前，先得想想：他们是翻给谁看的？当然是翻给他们的国人看的。如果国人看不懂，岂不等于劳力白费？目的既未达到，可说是完全失败了。

十九世纪英国的诗人兼批评家阿诺德（G Woc`r 9m j gZ），论翻译时说道：‘如果可能的话，翻译应该做到使读者完全忘记他读的是一篇翻译文，而发生错觉地以为他读的是一篇原作。...’

我们从他这种论调看来，便可相信他是怎样重视译文要通达的了。译文要译得像创作一样流利达意，当然是最高的理想，所以阿诺德也说‘如果可能的话’。普通的情形是流利的就不一定达意，而达意的就不一定流利。有一个比喻说得好：‘翻译文好比女人。°° 漂亮的不是’



忠实，忠实的不漂亮。...(NnW ngWdj i n Wn gf` r j h`i° r c`i oc` t Wn aWbc apg oc` t Wn i j o X Wp o d p g r c`i oc` t Wn X Wp o d p g oc` t Wn i j o aWbc apg) 这也就是说，翻译时流利和忠实是很难两全的。意大利人甚至于说翻译的人是叛徒 (NnWZ p o d j n l o n WZ d j n l 6 NnW i n g Wj n m Wn o n Wd j n m)，也是有道理的，因为译得像原作一样的通顺流利，就多半不大忠实，要忠实地表达原意，一字不苟地翻译时，就要变成天书，没有人能看得懂了。

为什么不可以一字不苟地直译呢？因为两种语文决不会相同的。就以中英两种语文来说吧，中国文字是由象形演变而来的，英文是由字母组合而成的。英文的重点在音，中文的重点在形。这是根本上的差别。中英语文的结构不同，而逻辑的基础也因之而异。西洋人的逻辑，并不一定合乎我们东方人推理的标准。西方语文如英语的动词EX` .具有EX存在.的意思，因而构成西方逻辑上第一条定律的EX同一律.，舍此即不能作逻辑推理。中文没有相当于EX` .的动词，白话文的EX是.，绝无存在的意思，文言文的EX为.，只是可作EX成为.解，即英文的EX Yj h` .，也与存在无关。西方逻辑可称为EX同一性逻辑.，而中国逻辑则可称为EX相关性逻辑.，因中文只说到是非之间，有无之间，好坏之间，所以张东荪曾经证明辩证法是中国人思想方法中固有的东西。中文说的EX世间有马.，英文要说 Nc` m Wn c j n m` n d oc` r j n gZ.如将中文句照字面直译为 Nc` r j n gZ c W h c j n m` n.或将英文句直译为EX马在世间.，都是不通的。再看EX桌上有一本书.，英文要说 Nc` m d h W X j j f j i oc` o W X g.或 9 X j j f d h j i oc` o W X g.第二句是回答 Q c W d h j i oc` o W X g 7说的。这些句中的EX` .，以及一般用此动词时，都只能译成中文的EX有.，只有一个例外，那就是在指定的人或物时，才能译出这个英文动词的本义来，例如 Q c` m d h oc` X j j f 7° ° Nc` X j j f d h j i oc` o W X g. (那本书在哪里? ° ° 那本书在桌上。) Q c` m Wn t j p 7° ° C W h c` m. (你在那里? ° ° 我在这里。)中文说的EX有.，英文多半要用EX在.来翻译，如EX这学校有五百个学生.，便不能译为 Nc d n n Y c j j g c W h 0++ k p k d n, 必须译为 Nc` m Wn 0++ k p k d n d oc` d h n Y c j j g 英文说的 C W h ; c d` n.只可译为EX我是中国人.。用动词EX` .将EX存在.的意思表现得最明显的，莫过于 9.A.A WZ d` m的这个文句：

Q` Wn` mWg, r c` i t j p Yj h` qj æ d f j a d, Wbj j  
 Z Z` Wg Wg f` ° ° epno Wk k Wn b j i n æ Wb Wn W Z æ` i Wn  
 i j o, Yj h d b j p o j a æ` i d b c o d qj æ` g b c o` Z Y W m d Wb`,  
 æ p o o` m l b W X j p o æ` g W h k a j m W r c d g W Z b j d b j p o d c  
 j æ` i d b c o W b W d . (当乐想到这虽点姆，认们真是该相身的  
 的°°。比过是虽盛差棵荣膊的影身，从暗夜中跑差检，坏到  
 封宽的怖少脚毛，犬着触火另了虽够成暗，同忘回到暗夜中  
 毛。)

句中的 æ Wb Wn W Z æ` i Wn i j o, 便是有时存在，有时又不存在的意思，所以我用一个中国成语“出没无常”来翻译它。

战国时代的公孙龙子曾利用这种有无的逻辑，对抗“存在”的逻辑，而诡辩“白马非马”。他说，如果说有白马就等于有马，那么，说有白马岂不就等于说有黄马，有黑马了吗？由此可知，有马并不等于是有白马，有白马既不可能成为有黄马或有黑马，即是不可能有的别的马，也就是没有马了。显然“白马”与“马”有别，所以白马非马。这完全是从有无的观点出发的。西方人只想到有马，虽不一定是白马，无论马是什么颜色，马的存在总是确实的。中国人则只想到有与无的问题。或是与非的问题，而不专注于客观的存在问题。因为东西方的基本想法不同，所以文学所表现出来的亦随之而异，翻译时怎样可以完全直译，而不求通顺呢？

我相信下面这样的一篇翻译文是任何中国人都看不懂的：

篮几店闲在每天的始程中，虽二人银响童虽点世互的追  
 求，宿许比响意幢花点在亲切的字眼中，故是僧权的持冀  
 中，对葡周犬的篮盛人，以规亲切对虽二促入就是葡们中好  
 的虽二，是宿许在看见天国逆，篮唯虽的逆好葡挠古过了，  
 对孟父赖的值得孩旧。

英文的原文如下：

Nc` àr h j h`i on d oc` Yj prm` ja` Wc ZW r cdYc  
 Wh W WKnj nX` Z d nj h` r j ngZg kpmmpob h W YWng` nm  
 g` sk`i Z d fd Z r j nZnj md ondg b Yc Wobd n oj ocj n  
 ` Wjpi Z ch , W Z fd Zi` nm oj W W ch Wgchji` ja oc  
 ` h , Wh k`m Wkn, d oc` ndbc oja B` Wq`i , oc` ji g` oh`  
 c` cWh gq` Z oj W t kpnkj n` r j mct j amYj nZd b.

如果要通顺地表达原文的意思，就应译成：

哪怕是虽二全神丰响童事肃的人，村可牢比荒蚀幢花儿  
 店闲毛对葡周犬的人，披点亲切的格，故鄙施虽盛小会，免  
 仁持幢对大促入薄是虽例。每虽天当中有这样的几店闲，在  
 姆创看检，宿许就是葡挠古姆铃有收获的唯虽值得孩旧的逆  
 好了。

再看 I .B`i m 小说中说的 Nc` Xnjf` mncj pmch i j o j i g` Ynj  
 r Z` Z, Xpo h d po` n W Z n` Yj i Zn Wh c W bd b oj Wg oc` nonWkn  
 W Z kWf d b Xj oc anji o W Z mWnkWoj nm n. 如果译成中文的：

荒纪人的逆好比但是拥挤的，而且店店酷酷村概在所有的  
 两侈姆，包装在前后的月台姆。

这是不知所云的，翻译的人必须自己彻底了解原文，才能翻出通  
 顺达意的译文来。上面这句话作者是用修辞上的隐喻（G`oWkcj  
 m），把经纪人的时间比作拥挤不堪的电车，所以才有 Ynjr Z, nonWk,  
 kgWoj nm 一类的名词出现。我们晓得在电车上找不到座位，拉着吊带  
 站着的乘客，英文叫作 nonWkc W b` m，懂得了这一个关键，自然就可  
 以通顺地译出来了：

荒纪人的逆好比但是忙领得身唇怖虽样的拥挤，而且每  
 店每酷怖姆所有的辞侈村辞满了文揭的茶剂，在前后的文台  
 姆宿挤得朋十比强。



## 九 首先要了解原文

### (1) 理解字句的含义

一般讨论翻译问题的人，差不多都认定翻译者对原文是能够了解的，否则他就不会随便动笔翻译。照想固应如是，但事实并不尽然。我们对于一种文字的了解，真是谈何容易！此中情况，不足为外人道，只要是染指过的人，没有不对翻译具有痛苦的经验。我们读书正如陶渊明所说，是不求甚解的，读懂一个大意就过去了。但到了去翻译的时候，就非得彻底了解不可，一字一句，都不能马虎过去，遇到一个字的意思不能理会时，就翻不下去。诗尤其难译，所以有句笑话说：Jj`om npaà nm d omW ngWd i ° ° W Z oc` mWZ` mrpaà nm r dc db (诗太难译，译出来多半不成样子，读它的人，也跟着感到难受。) 我们现在还是不谈诗的好。现只就散文的翻译来讨论一下吧。

《史记·刺客列传》第二十六：豫让遁逃山中曰：嗟乎！士为知己者死，女为说己者容。今智伯知我，我必为报仇而死，以报智伯，则吾魂魄不愧矣。文中说的女为说己者容一句，翻译时就大成问题。容是美容，即打扮。说今作悦，悦己者到底是什么意思呢？是使她喜欢的人呢 (c` r cj kg Wh` n c` m) ，还是喜欢她的人 (c` r cj ch kg Wh` Z d c` m) 。翻译者非在这两种意义之间，加以抉择不可。他不能凭个人的判断来取舍，而擅自采用某种意思。他必须有所根据，找出古代名家的说法，作为定论。因此，他查出这是司马迁采自《战国策》的，其本人也在《报任少卿书》上引用过了，但都并没有解释，直到吕向注《文选》时，才注释说：女为爱己貌者而饰其容。这样一来，意思就明白了。于是这句话，便可译成 9 r j h W r dgX Wpott c` nm` ga j moc` h W r cj ch kg Wh` Z d c` m悦己者也就是爱她的人，英文可简单地说 aj mc` mg q` m(为爱人) 。

再看下面这个笑话：

9i ?i bghch W r cj cWZ epno gW Z`Z d ; cd W`i c  
`mèZ WmnoWpnW oqj Wkk`Wh` oc` kW bnjacpi b`mOia  
j mpi W`g c` fi`r ij ; cd`n` W Z oc` r Wb`mfi`r i  
j ?i bghc5nj oc`t r`m Xj oc oc nri ji hj oc`mr d. D  
j ci ; cd Wh W WndYp gW Z & j r r jr ., . qj r cdYc Dj ci  
: pgg hj q`Z cch c`WZ anjh nbc oqj g`æ. Nc`i oc` r Wb`  
mnWZ & KpWf , lpWf !...qj r cdYc oc` Ypnqj h`mh j q`Z  
cch c`WZ anjh nft qj `Wnc , W Z oc` di`mh W r Wh nj  
ji nWchad Z.

在着手翻译之前，必须彻底了解每一字句的含义。

(,) r cj cWZ epno gW Z`Z d ; cd W句中的 gW Z`Z 一个动词，到底是乘船登岸呢，还是飞机着陆？经查出如果是飞机着陆的话，应该用他动词，即如 Nc` WkhgW` gW Z`Z oc` kWn`i b`m d oc` h dZg` j aWXdb æd g. (飞机将乘客降落在一大场地的中央)。自动词的 Nc` kWn`i b`m gW Z`Z (乘客均已登岸)。Nc` OH onj kn gW Z`Z d ?btka (联合国军队在埃及登岸)。由此可以决定那英国人是乘船在中国上岸。

(-) qj Wkk`Wh` oc` kW bnjacpi b`m句中的 kW bn, 是指一阵突然的痛苦，如牙痛为 oc` kW bnjaWoj j ocWc`, 肚子饿得发慌，便是 oc` kW bnjacpi b`m 画饼充饥就说 qj Wkk`Wh` ji`“nc pi b`mr d c Z`kdY`Z YW`.

(.) oc`t r`m Xj oc oc nri ji hj oc`mr d, 所谓 hj oc`m r d 是指天生的机智，人的常识。qj oc nri ji`n`gaji 意为听命于，听从。现改用 kWndq`的形式，如 qj X` oc nri ji ji`“n mnpj pnY`n (有赖自己的机智)。

(/) Dj ci ; cd Wh W 中国人的译名。

(0) : j r r jr 为犬吠声。

(1) Dj ci : pgg 英国人的译名。

(2) KpWf , l pWf !为鸭叫声。

(3) α` d i`mh W 内在的人，意指胃袋（滑稽的说法）。

把这些字句完全理解之后，就可以动笔翻译了。

虽二多在中国处岸的套国人，因为错两但得发慌，就星坏了虽寒鞭厅毛田年入草冠。比凑巧的是葡比懂华徒，而篮起馆同比懂套徒；所以葡们系好村已天挠的挂吓检轰其。篮中国建披屈屈.. 湾翰牛杰忙摇切。童是篮起馆同披呷，呷.. 剂人热难虽熄点切，而葡的劳在的人坡即就钝到满型了。

在 B`i m DWh`n 著的 *Nce LeWgNcd b* 中有这样的一节：

Qr Wh Wopoc jar cdYc CcWZ aj mñj h` och` X`i Y  
j i nYd pn oc Wb Wadp m` r dbc Wbj j Z Z` Wg j a aji oWb` r W  
n, Wh j i` h dbc onWt, Wñ j no i` q` mWkp XgY d nodp o j i .  
9 bgW Y` Wb oc` gWZt c` gk` Z o j m`h d Z h` j a oc ch k Wñ  
Zj sdWgWf : nc` Wñ j g j f` Z o j j Z chod bp ch c` Z o j X` V  
fk` mñ j i Wgt ..Gj m`j q` mñ j i` r j pgZ nYWñY g Yj h` Wñ j n  
n or j qWñWñ j i n o j b` oc` m

有人这样翻译出来：

这是虽二认围就意娘到的真理：吸免别人所披的，前面有许多计幢的建筑入，几乎比可牢是虽二凡共挂吩。对篮里士虽料，鸟认想起这样虽二似是而地的亏论：她欺胡差而比够获有£人耳.. 函之，虽二人宿比够抢逆遇到两显比抢的保化的。

这位译者对原文的字句，可说完全没有理解，所以译文简直未能表达原意。现在我们先来研究一下原文吧。

(,) ㊦ 是代表下面的 ㊦Wb 子句的形式上的主语。

(-) ㊦mɲh` ㊦h` 不多时。

(.) j ar c dYc Cc WZ X`i Yj i nYd pn 6 Cc WZ X`i Yj i nYd p n j ar c dYc (㊦㊦) 。

(/) Wabpm` r dɔc Wbj j Z Z` Wg j a ㊦i oWb` 句中 ㊦i oWb` 原意为㊦前面... ㊦建筑物对街或临河的前面的空地... 但在此既系形容一个人物 (abpm`) , 自然是指此人的仪表了, 所以应译作㊦风度翩翩的人物... ㊦一表人才... ㊦仪表漂亮的人...。

(0) kpXgY d nɔɔpɔɔj i 原意为㊦公共机关... 在此是说人, 故应译作㊦世间知名之士... 或简称㊦名士... d nɔɔpɔɔj i 在口语中有 aWh dɔɔl Whj Xe` Yo (闻名的事物, 熟悉的人物) 之意, 例如 B` r Whj i` j ao c` d nɔɔpɔɔj i n j aoc` kgW` . (他是当地的闻人之一) 。

(1) ㊦ch kWwZj sdYWggW` (这个逆说的定则) , 意指风度翩翩的人, 反而不成其为名士的那种现象。

(2) ㊦j j Zchɔd bpɔc` Z ㊦j X` Wɔk` mɲ i Wgɔt . 这是对上述逆说的举例。意为㊦那女人也就是因为太杰出而不能成为名人... 句中的 k` mɲ i Wgɔt 6 k` mɲ i Wb` (人物, 名人, 如 Zchɔd bpɔc` Z k` mɲ i Wb` (有名望的人物, 名人) , i j ɔ` Z gb` nWh k` mɲ i Wgɔd n (有名的文人) 。

(3) ㊦j qWhWɔj i n 指对上述法则的例外人物。

据上文说来客有两位, 那 gWZt 即令是一个例外的存在, 那 b` i og` h W 却不能也视为同样的情形, 所以说, 不至于有两个例外同时出现吧。

现在字句都弄明白了, 就可以来翻译了。

从比回以前棘始, 认就景意到了虽二事念, 篮就是虽二风搭衣衣的人入, 认们比敌披, 葡差比多从检比够是虽二社够姆的名人。篮二里剂, 虽眼看毛, 就鸟认想起这显雷披的次伪: 她看毛宿是欺胡差而比餐其为虽二名人呢。而且, 认们极幕够抢逆遇到两二例穷的。



由上面这些例子看来，可见要彻底了解原文的字句，无论原文是用哪一种文字写的，都不是一件容易的事。

## (2) 字句以外的含义

英国小品文作家 9.A.A Wd`m 写的一篇名作《旅伴》中，有这样的一句话：

Qc`i oc` gWhojaht àggir kWn`i b`nm cWZ bji` (kpo Zjri ht kWk`m nom`oc`Z ht Wm n WZ ht gbn, nojjZ pk WZ gjf`Z jpojaoc` rd Zjr ji oc` YWgh n ph h`mi dcooc`mpbc rcdYc Cr Wh gjpm`td b, ijod b oc` kWg mhd dhY`i Y`jaZW ocWb nodggd b`mZ d oc` ijnoc`m nft5Ymnm`Z oc` YWmWb` WZ gjf`Z jpojac c`j oc`mr d Zjr 5gb WYdbWn`oc`, nWb Zjri, WZ XbW gj mWZ WbWd. (当认最后虽二抢怖的人星了以后，认薄把报细底下，伸了虽二见送，每后文起那检，趣了虽回窗穷认吸在星过的林皇的夏夜，看到把方的天际姆母逗景着虽抹白日的残晖。坡即认同像过那检，深着这包的窗穷趣了虽够，忘点美虽希奢烟，险食坐下检，同棘始检看报。)

白日的残晖，为什么会出现在北方的天际上？难道英国的太阳不是从西方落下去的吗？这确不是从字面上所能了解的含义。我们非借助于风土人情，因时地而有差异的天文地理知识不可。英国位于北方，夏夜过了十时尚有阳光，日暮时北天反照，有时在夜半还可见到北极光。所以上文中说的，坐在当天最后一班火车上，当然是夜半时分，所见到的天上的光辉，确只能在北方才有，西方的落日这时早已消逝得无影无踪，只剩下一片黑暗了。

中国人心目中的东风，是温暖的，能使草木萌芽，万汇生长，仿佛和春风相似。唐德宗的诗中有东风变梅柳，万汇生春光。的句子，明朝的蓝茂也说，东风破早梅，向暖一枝开，冰雪无人见，春从天上来。可见东风和春天，是有连带关系的。但英国的 `Whord Z，是从

欧洲大陆北部吹来的寒冷的风，和我国的西风，乃至北风相似。我们如果没有这种知识，翻译英国人对东风的描写所用的形容词，如 *Wf`i`Whor d Z* (*DWh`nDj tY`*)，*Xdd b`Whor d Z* (*MWh p`g: pog`m`*)，*Wkd mYd b`Whor d Z* (*Echf pk*)，都是寒冷刺骨的，一定会感到不合理呢。再看大文豪；*cWhg n = dYf`i n* 的句子：

*Bj r h W t r d o`mZW n cWq` Cn`i`cch, noW Zd b Xgp`-i j n`Z d oc` ni j r W Z`Whor d Z!* (在许多的冬日  
认村看见葡，鼻子冻得发写，文在第雪付从风之中!)

还有《福尔摩斯侦探案》的作者；*j i W = j t g`* 说的：

*Qr cchog`Z epnoj q`mh t YWk gf` W`Whor d Z.* (篮  
就在认的看子姆切身从风虽样懂呼牲而过。)

这都可以看出英国的东风是多么像中国的西风呀。所以我主张应译为西风或朔风，才能达意。反过来，英国的 *r`nor d Z*，却正像我们的东风，如英国桂冠诗人 *Dj ci GWh`ad gZ`* 为怀念他的故乡而作的《西风歌》：

*Q`n Wr Wth r d Z, oc` r`nor d Z, apggj aXchZn Ynd*  
n5

*Ci`q`mc`Wnoc` r`nor d Z Xpo o`Wm Wn d h t`t`*  
n,

*Fj mcb Yj h`n anjh oc` r`nogW Zn, oc` j gZ Xnj r i c*  
dgn,

*9i Z 9kndgn d oc` r`nor d Z, W Z ZWaj Zdn.*

(篮是虽显温暖的风，撒风吹逆，万鸟争款；

虽听撒风起，认眼眶中热降盈盈，

因为它是检谢撒亲，篮妇命的故山包，

潮天就在撒风中到检，跟有朋珊。)

诗更是不能从字面上来求解的，如杜甫作的《春望》诗中的一联  
感时花溅泪，恨别鸟惊心... 就被外国的汉学家照字面误译了。

Q.D: .Fg oYc`m的译文作:

G bml aaj moc` och`n, Wo` Wnoc` ag r` mnoWl n.

G r j` aj mnpYc kWod b, oc` Xdz ag ajh oc`i Y.

第一句中的 Wo` WmnoWl n oc` ag r`m是以泪.为主语的，第二句中说的 oc` Xdz ag 也是以鸟.为主语的。至于最近问世的 = WqZ BWf`n的译文，也是半斤八两，无分轩轻：

Nc` ag r`m nc`Z o` Wm j a bml aaj moc` ajpXg Z och`n,

9i Z oc` Xdz n n`h noWng Z, Wh dar dc oc` W bpdh c j an`kWdj i.

他们找不出字句以外的含义，所以译来非错不可。其实这两句诗的原意是：想起时事，连见了好花也叫人掉泪；和家里的人隔离很久，听到鸟声，也叫人心神不安。这里说的见了.和听到... 当然前面省去了主语的我... 即诗人自己。花鸟在平时可以娱目赏心，但在离乱伤春的时候，不免见花开而洒泪，闻鸟鸣而惊心了。

一九六八年剑桥考试的中文试题，是英译吴敬梓《儒林外史》第十五回中的一段话，最后一句说：这便是曾子的养志。...一般应考的人，都把养志.照字面的意思，翻译为 YpgqW`ji`“n Wh Xdj in 或 Yc`mhc ji`“n Z`Wn, 而没有注意到曾子的养志是另有含义的。作者故意加上曾子的...一个限定词，就是要读者知道与普通的养志有所分别。普通说的养志，意为高尚其志... 如《后汉书·王丹传》上说的，隐居养志... 及《梁竦传》上说的，闲居可以养志.都是。但曾

子说的养志，意指~~是~~奉养之道，能承顺父母之意志也..（《辞海》，/4，页）应该译为 YWm j po ɔc` Z` ndh nj aj i` "n kWni ɔn 才接近原意。由此更可知道，我们不能照字面翻译，必须找出字面以外的含义来。

有些英文句子，即令你对文字的含义，已经彻底了解，仍然不能决定它的意思的时候也是有的。这是因为英文原是一种含糊的语文（W h X d p j p n g W b p W b`），我们要真正了解其含义，单靠语文知识是不够的，必须加以理智的判断，才能获得结论。这种句子的含义虽然不在字句以外，但需要译者运用理智，加以抉择，如果轻率地就字面的某一种含义译出，可能会完全译错的。例如：

Nc` t r` m` i o` m W d b r j h` i .

一句英文，如果把 r` m` i o` m W d b 看成一个进行式动词的话，意为~~是~~他们在款待女客.∴ 如果把句中的` i o` m W d b r j h` i 看成一个有修饰语的名词的话，意为~~是~~她们是女招待..

B d h j X e Y o d i j o g ` W a

把上句中的否定字 i j o 看做是修饰动词 d h 时，意为~~是~~他的目的不在吃饭.. 意即~~是~~志不在温饱.∴ 如果把否定字 i j o 看做是修饰后面的不定词时，意为~~是~~他的目的在不吃饭.. 意即~~是~~绝食..

Nc` h W o p m` Z j p o W d h k j n o j m

把 o p m` j p o 看作他动词时，意为~~是~~他赶走了一个骗子.∴ 如把 o p m i j p o 看作自动词时，意为~~是~~他毕竟是一个骗子..

B` g d` n q` m i` W n

(W) 他就住在附近。

(X) 他生活贫苦。

C a j p i Z c d h j p o

(W) 我找出他来了。

(X) 我发现他不在家。

再看下面这句话：

Fj j f j p d Nc`m`h W a W d Y j h d b.

如果不了解 g j f j p o 在此作 当心 解的话，而照字面解为 看外面 时，就可能把头伸出火车窗外，而遭遇到危险了。

### (3) 找出典故的来历

英文中常用的一些典故，我们单就字面来看是不大容易了解的，但英美人却家喻户晓，成为日常语言的一部分，只要用一、二字提到那个典故，就没有不完全会意的。那些典故第一是出自《圣经》，其次就是由莎士比亚的剧本而来的。现在我们来看看下面这个小故事吧。

9 Yj gg b` knj`a`n n j m r W h j i` Z W i` W d b o c` Y g n`  
j a W c h o j m g Y o p m` W Z r W h d Z p g d b d j i` j a o c j n`  
m`q m W g Y g h W s`n d r c d c c` Z`g b c o`Z r c`i o c` c j  
p m n o p Y f . N c` n o p Z`i o n d h`Z d W g X`b W o j n g W h Z  
j r i o c` h j q W K g` W h m n j a o c`d n g`Y o p m`Y c W h m W Z o j k  
m k W n o j g`W q`.

Nc` knj`a`n n j m W i j t`Z W o c` d o`m p k o j i j a c h e  
g r j a`g l p`i Y , c`g Z p k c d h c W Z:

Q W b e p n o j i` h d p o , b`i o g h`i . C c W q` W a r h  
j m e k`W g n o j Y W h a...

一位大学教授有天在讲授历史课接近尾声中，正耽溺于他所得意的修辞学上的渐进法时，下课铃响了。学生们随即就开始把他们坐的椅子上活动的扶手，砰然地收下去，预备离开了。

那位教授口若悬河正讲得起劲，突然受到学生的干扰，满怀不悦，于是举起手来说道：

稍等虽下，诸位。认跟有几接五珠俗投掷属。

最后说的~~我~~我还有几粒珍珠要投掷...，到底是什么意思呢？是不是要向学生进几句珠玉之言，使他们有所获益呢？不知道这典故的人，是不会了解的。这典故出自《圣经》。《马太福音》第七章第六节：

比俗把内入发狗，宿比俗把乐们的五珠勿在猪前，记怕它合踏了五珠，像过检咬乐们。(A d i j o c W r c d c h c j g p i q c Z j b n, i d c m Y W h o t t j p m k W g n X a j m n r d , g n o c t o n W h k g c h p i Z m o c d n a o, W Z o p m W b W d W Z m i Z t j p.)

古语说的 n r d 即今的 k d b，说猪中外一律，都是指的蠢物。现把人间最贵重的珍珠丢在猪前，愚蠢的猪，不但不知珍爱，反而要去践踏它，岂不可惜。你以贵重的珍珠投猪，它不但不知感激，反而要来咬你，等于以怨报德，是不是值得这样做呢？中国的成语说的~~对牛弹琴~~，意思就轻得多了，因为牛虽不能欣赏美丽的乐曲，但它并不会对弹琴的人进攻呢。那位教授因恼怒学生的不堪受教，他的珠玉似的教材讲给他们听，就好像丢在猪前一样。

又 P. A n i q 著的 N c e F W b p W b e B W n 一书中说：

N c m W n j c m, W Z c t W n i p h X n g n n W h c n W Z n, r c j W n h j m W g t W n W Z q Y W g W n k W Z W n k W Z , X Y W p n c W r j p g X c i W p n W g r j n Z, W Z q X i W p n W g d c d n t n, r j p g X Y j h h j i, W Z X t c h Z Y g i n d i c t r j p g d W g d q c k d j a q p g b W h b t.

(经穷有许多的人，多得身干富沙数，葡们怕死了把铲子厚羞铲子，因为篮是该谢每的字眼，而在葡们的蚀赖中，

纯差谢每而荣虽点矫揉为作的，薄是欺林凡了，由童这显耽惧，葡们薄俗掉坏替拼的深托毛。)

句中所谓 YWg WnkWZ` WnkWZ` (把铲子叫做铲子)，到底是什么意思呢？我们要想了解，必须知道这说法的来历。原来这个 nkWZ` 不是说铲土的铲子，而是指桥牌中的有铲形花样的牌，即俗称黑桃的。打牌时最怕别人知道自己手中的牌，所以常要说谎，不肯具实告人，把自己手中的黑桃老实说出黑桃来；所以这句话的意思，便成为直言无隐..了。

知道这个原有的含义之后，用时稍作字面上的改变，也是万变不离其宗，反而增加活用的效果。例如：

?q`i oc` h j no qd gi og kWndj ocY W Z h dgbWchodY W  
m mngYoW oq YWg WnkWZ` Xt dnj r i i Wh`.

° ° 9. Bpsgt

(南至最肯烈的爱国乡坦毋付军国乡坦毋，村比瓦意熄爽荣讳。)

B` cWZ Wg W n X`i mñkj i ndj` qj r cW6 oc`t cWZ  
X bpi qj YWg HWp mñ.. b`i pd`g, Wñ j no mñgbj png n  
`nkj i ndj`, ocj pbc c` cWZ i`q`mñj no c h c Wkbj aYWgd  
b Wñpi n`o Wñpi n`o W Z Wqd r Wqd r, c j r`q`m Z`kgt  
t oc`t h dco h j q` c h.

° ° D. A Wñr j mct

(葡素检是对童葡们棘始厚羞谢每.的从撒，该秘易拍到钝促，真吸幢，几乎是宗教世的钝促，评伪葡虽道保景着篮显扫惯，把惧日厚羞惧日，景命厚羞景命，荣论篮盛谢每景入对葡钝促怎样的深。)

所谓 YWg WnkWZ` Xt dnjri i Wh` 就等于说 YWg WnkWZ` WnkWZ` 一样，直说本名，毫无矫饰。至于 YWg Wnpi n` o Wnpi n` o W i Z Wqd r Wqd r ，只是换上一个自然界的名字，照说出来，并无虚伪的称呼，用法相同，意思也一样。

Qj nzn Wn Wgjaji` aWh dt .G ch oc` dnapi Yo di n oc Wb Zda mi odW` oc` h . Nc` t cWq` or j api Yo di n , W Z oc` Yj h Xd Wdj i ja oc` n` api Yo di n ch d ad d` .Ga oc` m ch ji` Wnc Wcj pn` r dc h W t h W nd i n , d ch oc` cj pn` jar j nzn .

° ° ? .G . Fj mmo` n

上文中说的 Wcj pn` r dc h W t h W nd i n , 若译成一幢有许多大厦的屋子.是决讲不通的，但这个 h W nd i 的字，字典上的解释只有大厦... 邸.的意思，在此全不适用，我们必须采用拉丁文的原意，即 Zr` ggd b kgW` (住处)。于是 Wcj pn` r dc h W t h W nd i n (内有许多住处的一幢屋子)，就讲得通了，不过如果我们不知道这典故的来历，还是不敢放胆翻译而自由使用的。这典故出自《圣经·约翰福音》第十四章第二节：G h t FWc` mn cj pn` Wn h W t h W nd i n (在我父的家里，有许多住处)。这有广庇世人之意，但为文人引用时，便成了广大的地方，可以包罗一切。请看：

G 9kj gg` n cj pn` oc` m Wn h W t h W nd i n 5 oc` m ch` q` i ji` (pi` sk` Yo Zg` i j pbc) aj moc` Jc d h od` . Mj Yj h kg` s W Z qWdj pn Wn oc` ` gh` i on jagb` nWp m ocWb i j r mb` mYW X` ZWh i` Zji Wh` m` i ph` nWdj i ja aWp gn .

° ° F.MnWc` t

(在太阳神的家里，有的是住处：足够使人感到意外地，居然连俗物都为他准备了一间。文学的因素是那般的复杂多端，所以没有一个作家，只因犯有错误，而可受处罚的。)



这里说的☿太阳神的家里.∴, 意为☿天地间.或☿世界上.∴

Gt Z`nf r Wh jaoc` achmo h Wbi ddpZ`. QcWZ W d Y  
ji Y dWkg` r` Wgc ja ZnW` nm W Z kdb`ji -cj g`n. Qr Wh  
WZ`nf jah W t h W ndi n. 9i Z CgWk` gg`Z oc`h Wgg W  
Z bWq` oc`h Wgn`k WwW` ej Xn qj k` nqj nm .

° ° 9.A.AWZd`n

(认的叛桌是最为赶驰的。它获有想绅比到的调富的抽  
屈付耳架。这真是虽纹有广驰秘届的桌子。认把它们全浅姆  
抱侣，鸟之各有所司。)

关于上举 ? .G. Fj nmō m的文章，译出如下：

爽辞村是虽样的。由其作田比抢而发挠满别。它们有两  
显作田，把这两显鼓合起检就荣尚届了。免肤在世互姆有虽  
幢包服许多想处的屋子，篮就是爽辞的屋子。

#### (4) 分辨英美的作者

爱尔兰剧作家 Mb.Dj ci Am`m?mqd` , 在第一次世界大战后渡  
美，成为百老汇的批评家。当他初到新大陆时，还没有注意到美国话  
和英国话的不同，所以有一次他到一个美国家庭做客，看到那位主妇  
非常朴实，一点也不矫揉造作，使客人不受拘束，大有宾至如归之  
感，所以他就赞美她说：Rj p Wñ q`m cj h`g.不料这句话使他大为  
失言，弄得局面尴尬不堪；他原是想恭维那女主人的，结果变成侮  
辱了。怎么会这样的呢？原来英国话的 cj h`g , 意为☿家常的.☿朴素  
的.∴ 而美国话的 cj h`g , 则有☿不漂亮的.∴ ☿丑陋的.的意思。试想  
一个客人当面对女主人说，☿你长得很不漂亮.∴ 将使她怎样受得了？  
若不是有神经病，谁个男性客人会对女主人说出这样的话来呢？

英国的贵族 Fj nò m 在美国旅行时，正当美国的社交季节。他有一次被招待出席晚会，会上遇见了一位活泼可爱的小姐，他忍不住要献点殷勤，说点称赞的话。于是他用英国很漂亮的话对她说：Rj p Wn ` g j f d b q` m ànc! 意为：你看起来真是朝气蓬勃！可是马屁拍在马腿上，那位小姐一听之下，大为生气，竟至拂袖而去，不再理会这位贵族了。原来 ànc 一字，到了美国之后，受到德国移民所说的德国话 ànc (厚颜的，鲁莽的，无理的) 的影响 (因二字形似) 而产生出英文原来所没有的新义。据 *Bdabi Wn oaCoi æh konWn 9h em dW OnWbe* 上说，ànc 具有鲁莽无理的意思，完全是美国的俚语，一时用得极为普遍，但现已略为过时，不大有人说了。查其原因不外是此字用得最盛的时候，竟趋于下流而具有狎昵的味道，例如女的说 =j i `b b` o ànc r d c h` j m Cg ngWk t j p m aW. (不要对我这样毛手毛脚，再来我就要打你的耳光)。所以对一个少女用了这样下流的字，而又含有厚颜的意思，她怎样能不生气呢？

法国的名优和美国的女优合演的《煤气灯》(A Wngbc o) 一部片子，是很多中年的人都看过的。其中说到他们两人在巴黎时，约定翌日某个时候在某条街上的 kdYopm ncj r 相会，不料双方准时而去，却没有见到，因为男的去到画展 (kdYopm ncj r) 相待，女的则往电影院 (kdYopm ncj r)，所以碰不到头。这也是英国话和美国话在作怪呢。

现在来看下面这一则新闻记事：

: mW d b d æ` Zjj mjaWnj h j i æ` n` Yj i Z agj  
mjaWò i` h` i o c j p n` Wb. +, ? Wnò Nr` i ot Mbsoc Mmò`  
o gWnò i d b c o, k j gY` aj pi Z æ` Xj Zd njaWh W W Z Wr  
j h W, kWng nj X Z, Xj æ c Wqd b Zd Z anj h d c Wgd b bW  
n b` i` nW Z Xt WbWh c` Wò md æ` nj h.

Nc` h W r Wh dZ` i o d d Z Wh E. G Wn Wn W, Wnp b Z` W  
g mWkj po - 3 t` Wm j gZ. Nc` r j h W r Wh pi dZ` i o d d Z,  
Xpo WYWnZ d c` mkj Yf` oXj j f YWmd Z æ` d nYnkoj i  
G d n Mh d c, Q` gWn GgW Z.

这是美国 *Her Ronfi Ndu en* 的新闻报道，纯粹美国人写的美国英文，所以 *n`Yji Z agj m* 一语，便可大胆地译为£二楼.„ 如果是英国报上登的，就应该译作£三楼.才对，因为英国人把楼下叫做 *bnjpi Z agj m* 而美国人就叫 *achmo agj m* 由此类推，美国人说的二楼，就是英国人的三楼了。*o`i`h`i ocj pn`* 意为租金低廉供贫民居住的下级组屋，*WkWhh`i ocj pn`* 为高级的组屋，英国说 *Xg Yf j a agWn* 第二段中说的 *kj Yf`oXj j f* 在英国为£小笔记本.„ 而在美国就是指的£女用钱袋.„ £女用手提包.„ 全文应译为：

在从满当十敬街敏百晴虽副性屋当楼，休夜黄并破门而入，发伤虽男虽里的两获尸首，虽部店常有衣服，两人村是吸入了低中暖气炉漏差检的靠气窒息而死。篮男人的那掉贵病宽是马极介，虽二当十八岁的幢毯商人。里的伪那世比宽，但在她的毆提包脚，窝差虽纹极片，姆面讨有福叫出史孔疲里士的字样。

如果译者没有注意，当作普通英文来翻译，至少 *kj Yf`oXj j f* 就会误译为£笔记簿.的。

再看下面这段艰深的文字：

*Nc` nkchb j a aWmk gW, r c dYc d oc` kpXgY nYcjj j e  
n, W6 W t nW6, ch WXnj nX Z Wh oc` h j no d qd gWXg` j a on  
WZdbj i n, c Wh noj j Z j p m nW` d b j j Z no` WZ d oc` knja`  
nnj i n, W Z`nk`YdWgt d oc` WZh d chonWdj i j aZ`k`i Z  
`i Yd n, r c`m oc` j Xqd pn Z`ndh j aoc` j a dYdWn qj Z`W  
epnogt W Z n` aWmk gW d Zchkpo`n X or``i i Wdq`n W  
i Z ?pnjk`W n c Wh kWngt Yj h k`i nW6 Z aj mWr W o j an  
th kW6c`oY pi Z`nmow Zd b, r c dYc c Wh f`ko oc` ?i bgh  
c nonW b`nm d gW Zn j aWgd i Ypgpm.*

（这显凡吸的幻神，至幕在私揭凡生中是当作最为神内比可侵得的长统而函以全神丰响的。这显幻神在人们的供惜姆，尤其是在属幢统鲜姆，对童套国块行是该有田的。当统鲜属幢逆，套国的分员懊着虽显善每的瓦趣想俗凡吸幢处理

亲人图欧人好的争袭，而冀得到凡林的解迹，鸟套国人处在海穷的异行惹化中，因梅乏抢吗的金解而耳耳比入的吗驶，多幕获得了虽点鼻偿。)

现在我并不打算来讨论上文整篇的翻译问题，而只想把文中 **kpX gY nYcjj gn** 一个名称提出来，以研究英美含义的不同。这是英国人写的文章，我们如果照美国话的意思，译为**公立学校**...，就大错特错了。根据 *Qebnoem'n Her Qongl BdYabi Wth oaæe 9h enaW FW b pWbe* 的解释，在美国是指由公家的税收而兴办的中、小学校，通常是不收费的。在英国则指几所私立的中学程度的贵族学校，靠捐献与学费维持，由校董会管理，学生的年龄通常在十三岁至十八岁之间，如 **?qji, LpbXt, BWmjir, Qd Yc`no`m** 等皆是。

英国作家 **jggd Bj r WZ** 作的 *JonoBWæ* 一个短篇小说中，有这样一节：

**?sk`ndh`i omq`Wg Z æWæ` ngj Yf jacWk`i i t nc  
Wh kn r Wh Wnj `scWpno`Z. Mh knji, d`ch WdbWdj i W  
oæch ZhYj q`m, Zmjkk`Z ch g`o`maW` Zj r i r WZnji  
æ`kWq`h`i q,rc`i c`m`oml q`Z d r dæ æ`WZZdjd i j  
aWgWb` Xg ojah pZ.**

(念验的结肤善示差爱薄士邮票的存货宿棵有了。什朴挠因发伤这二而钝吗管促之统，把葡殴姆的篮跌实跌面步下幢掉到人始道的幢姆毛了，等葡拾起检虽看，在实跌姆林添了虽驰块烂老。)

这是英国人写的，所以我们把 **kWq`h`i o** 译做**人行**道...，如果是美国人写的，就得译为**马路**...，因为 **kWq`h`i o** 在美国是指**车行**道..呢。

同一字而英美意义不同的，现选出五十字，注明两国的含义，以供初学者的参考。

英

美

WkWhh`i o	房间	公寓
Wq`i p`	林荫道	大道
XWf`m	面包制造所	面包贩卖店
XWm	谷仓，干草房	牛棚，马廄
XWc	浴缸	浴室
Xdggi	万亿	十亿
XchYpob	饼干	馒头形面包
Xg Yf	一座大厦	一排房屋
Xpb	臭虫	昆虫
Xj j o	长靴	皮鞋
YWgj	白洋布	印花布
YW`	手杖	藤的总称
YWf`o	棺材	首饰箱
Ycdff`i	鸡雏	鸡
Yj i n`mqWj m	私人温室	公立音乐学校
; j i od`i o	欧洲大陆	美洲大陆
Yj m	小麦	玉米
Yj pkg	一对	两三个
Ym`f	内江	小支流
Zmm`m	食器柜	梳妆台
Zm bj j Zn	食粮杂货	布料纺织品
aWpgt	大学的学院	全体教授
a i Y	木栅	铁栏杆，石垣
adh Yj h kW t	火灾保险公司	消防队
aj g n	朋友	家族
annc	清新的，精神爽快	鲁莽无理的
g Ypno	蝗虫	蝉
gph X`m	破旧家具	木材
gpi Yc	午餐	便餐
h`mYcW o	批发商	商人

j q` nWg	女用罩衣	男用罩衣
kW on	内裤	西装裤
kj Yf` oXj j f	记事本	钱包
kpX	酒店报	纸经营者
l pdu	嘲弄	测验
nWXdb	家兔	野兔
mYdbWqj i	背诵	课业的复习
mZYWk	宪兵	搬运夫
ncj k	商店	工厂
ncj r	上演的戏	展览会
ndYf	呕吐	生病
ng` k` m	枕木	卧车
npXr Wt	地道	地下铁路
npnk` i Z` nm	吊袜带	吊裤带
oc` Mm` o	舰队街（报馆）	华尔街（银行）
ocmWZ	麻线	棉线
ocnj pbc	接通了电话	打完了电话
ondgd i	一百万的三乘	一百万的二乘
opqj m	导师	助教
q` no	内衣	背心

## 十 中英文中的虚字









## 十一 不能翻译的字句

*I i Boom*

*n' Cc d ene-Ei bghc Bdxabi Wht*

*G Wc er*







## 十二 两国语义不尽同

由某一国的语文翻译为另外一国的语文时，人们所遭遇的无法克服的困难，就是找不到一个完全同义的字。人皆有母，而母子的感情，全人类都是一样的，所以我的母亲...语，译成英文的  $h\ t\ h\ j\ \alpha\ `m$  法文的  $h\ Wh\ `m$ ，德文的  $h\ `d\ `Gp\ \alpha\ `m$  都是很正确而又完善的。但中文的眼睛...和英文的  $`t$ ，就不完全一样，因为二者只有形式相同，而颜色不同。英文的  $Xj\ j\ f$  也和中文的书...不尽相同，它不仅是要从最后一页读起，而且是要从左到右地去读，不像我们的书是由上而下，由右而左的。我们不能从英文中找出一个兄...或弟...，姊...或妹...的单字来。英文说的  $pi\ Yg$ ，到底是伯父...，还是叔父...，是舅父...还是姨父...，无法分明。英文说的  $Yj\ pnd$  到底是男的还是女的，都不晓得。中国的万...字，英文却只能译为  $\alpha\ i\ \alpha\ j\ pn\ W\ Z$  十千... 中国一个礼...字，要用一大串的英文单字来译，才能表达它所包含的意思，即  $mb\ p\ Wg$ （礼仪）， $Yj\ pm\ nt$ （礼貌）， $Y\ mh\ j\ i\ t$ （礼节）， $Ypn\ j\ h$ （礼俗）， $h\ j\ m\ Wgt$ （品行）， $h\ Wi\ `m$ （举止）， $n\ \alpha\ g$ （仪态）， $m\ nk\ `Yo$ （尊敬）， $Yj\ m\ Yi\ `m$ （端正）， $h\ j\ Z\ `n\ \alpha$ （谦让）， $q\ ch\ p\ `$ （美德）等等皆是，没有一个单独的英文字是和它相当的。反过来看，英文的  $nl\ p\ Wn$  一字，也是没有一个中国字可以完全译出它的意思来的，法文也没有相当的字可用。如说  $Nc\ `Xj\ s\ ch\ nl\ p\ Wn$  中文应译为四方形的... 法文应译为  $YWmx$ 。如说  $B\ `ch\ nl\ p\ Wn\ `$  中文应译为公正的... 法文应译为  $ep\ no\ `$  或  $qn\ Wd$ 。如说  $Nc\ `Y\ Wk\ `i\ o\ `m\ nl\ p\ Wn$  中文应译为矩... 法文为  $xl\ p\ `m$ 。如说  $H\ `gn\ j\ i\ `n\ kd\ g\ Wn\ ch\ W\ N\ m\ W\ g\ Wn\ M\ p\ Wn$  中文应译为方场... 法文为  $kg\ W\ `$ 。中法文中没有一个单字可以包括这四种意义的。

同为欧洲的语文，彼此之间，也常不能找到完全相等的字来译，例如，在法文中就找不出一个完全和英文的  $cj\ h\ `$  相等的字来，法文只有  $cj\ pn\ `$  或  $m\ nd\ Z\ `i\ Y$  一类意义的字。英文说的  $Cnc\ Wg\ bj\ cj\ h$

，法文只能译为 *D'chWdYc`u h j d*（法文的 *Yc`u* 是介词，意为“在...”，也是指的 *cj pn`*）。英文的 *Nc d h h t c j h`* 法文只能译为 *P j d y h W h W h j i*。也是说的家屋。中文的“家”字，则包含“家屋”和“家庭”两个意思，是可译为 *cj pn`*，也可译为 *cj h`* 的。

英国人对于吃下午茶特别讲究，普通吃蛋糕一类茶点的是 *g r o` W*，吃肉类盘餐的是 *c d b c o` W*，都是在下午五时前后举行。当英国人把这种习惯介绍到法国去时，却不能在法文中找出一个相当的字，于是只好把 *ad`-j`Yg Yf o` W* 直译为 *g` ad`j Yg l p`*，略去一个 *o` W* 字，而作为“下午茶”的法国名字。在旅馆餐厅的通告上加有时间的，竟作 *I i ad`j Yg l p` v l p W m` c` p m`n*，意为“在四时吃五时茶”，而闹出这样的笑话来。

西班牙文中没有英文的 *epi bg`* 一字，于是英国文学家 *L p Z t W h Z E d k g l b* 的 *D p i b g e B o o f* 一书，就被译成“处女地的书...” (*E g F d b m d e g W h N d e m W h P d b d e n*)。爱斯基摩人的语言中没有“羊”字，于是 *g W h X j a A j Z*（上帝的羔羊）竟被译成 *n` W g j a A j Z*（上帝的海豹），张冠李戴，莫此为甚。

任何一国的语文都有它的地域性，民族性，历史性，乃至生活习惯和文化背景，这些都是很难从另外一种语文中找到同义的字句来表达的。例如，中文说的“推敲”，为仔细研究文字的意思，出典是唐诗人贾岛的诗句。他作有两句诗，第一句是“鸟宿池边树”，第二句是“僧推月下门”，他又想改为“僧敲月下门”，迟疑不决时遇上了韩愈，韩愈指点他说，“敲”字比“推”字好。英文中绝无“推敲”的说法，所以 *G W c e r n` C c d e n e - E i b g h c B d Y a b i W h* 上，便译为 *q j Y j i n d` m r j n` n r c` i h W d b k j` o m*，*a n j h W n o j m j a* 贾岛 *r c j r W h k p u g` Z r c` o c` m q p n` o c` r j n` n k p n c` W Z j j m j n f i j Y f W` W Z j j m* 我们如不照他这样解释，而意译的话，便可说 *q j X` k p n h o d` Y*（练语），或 *o j Y c j j n` Z d Y o d i*（选字）。

又如说既婚妇人不贞洁的“红杏出墙”，外国绝对没有同一类型的表现法，用解释的方法来译便是 *q j k W a d` d k W` d` s o n W h W a b W g m` g W o d i n*，用熟语来译，便可说 *h W m d Z r j h` i c j k d o c` c W`*。

英文有 *q j X` g g o c` Y W b* 一个成语，意为“去做极危险而又困难的事”。这是从《伊索寓言》而来的，与文学遗产有关的说法，中国语文中自然无此表现法。至于那由风俗习惯而来的 *q j Y n j m j i` n a d b` m*



n 一个成语，用一只手的中指把那手的食指钩住，以表示能消除灾难，意思是为人祝福或祈愿成功，举例说 **Fŋh c`m`ji, r` Wh` Ym j nnd b j p mæd b` nm.**（从今以后，我们只好听天由命了）。又如 **B` Wkkgd Z aj mWkj nbdj i r dæ oc` Fj m`chi Gd chom W Z c Wh c ch ad i b` nm Ymj nm` Z.**（他申请了外交部的事，祈愿成功）。中文找不出这类意思的成语。

我现在虽是在谈翻译，但决不赞成字面上的翻译。学习外文决不可以从翻译入手，学习翻译决不可以从字典入手。两种不同的语文，不但单字的含义不尽相同，而且句子的表现方式也常有别。在中国人的头脑中，**雨**是一个实体，即所谓名词，很少把雨作动词用，只有文言中才有，如《淮南子》上说的**昔者苍颉作书，而天雨粟**。但在英文中却常拿雨作动词用。我们说的**天下雨啦**，不可译为 **Nc` nf t aWgn nWd**。一定要照英文惯用句的说法，译成 **C nWd n**或 **C ch nWd d b**才对。英文在此场合，**雨**必须用作动词，**天**则要用 **d**的代词。

又如有人叫你去时，你回答说**来了**，字面是用的过去时，译成英文则必须改为现在进行时的 **Yj h d b**。中国人对初见面的朋友说**久仰**，决不可译为 **CWZj m` tj p aj mWgi b och`**。必须用英文在那场合所用的习惯语句来译，例如 **CWh kg` Wh` Z qj n`` tj p**之类。**请教大名**，也不可译为 **Jg` Wh` o` Wc h` tj pmbm`Wbi Wh`**。应译为 **G W C f i j r**（或 **Whf** 或 **c Wq`**）**tj pmi Wh` 7****贵处是哪里？**。也不可译为 **Q c`m` dh tj p m`cj i j nWkg` kgW 7**而应译为 **Q c`m` Zj tj p Yj h` am h 7****我劝你不要去**。这样一句中文，最好是译成英文的 **Ca Cr`m` tj p, Cr j p g` i j o bj.**（如果我是你的话，我就不去）。诸如此类，两种国语中不同的表现法，才是最正确的翻译呢。

### 十三 在动手翻译之先

我们在动手翻译之先，必须具备一些语言文字上的知识。就中文英译来说，白话文除了一些方言俗语，乃至新字译名而外，是不大会有问题的，但文言文，尤其是唐以前的古文，就很不容易能够一目了然，文中用的字须有相当的训诂学、文字学、声韵学、校勘学、语言学及文法学的知识，才能确定其含义。语言文字是随着时代地域而变迁的，时有古今，地隔南北，语文必然地要发生差别而变异了。古今语文不同的地方，重要的有下列几点。第一是音的转变，我们知道语文以音为主，某种声音代表某种意义，音与义合而成词。陈第说：『一郡之内，声有不同，系乎地者也；百年之中，语有递转，系乎时者也。』因为时地的不同，而不免要产生转语，例如《尔雅》上说的『粤、于、爰、曰也。』可见这四字，都是一音之转的所谓声转出来的异语。

又如语义可以变迁：『诸侯之地其削颇入汉者为徙其侯国及封其子孙也所以数偿之...』（《汉书·贾谊传》）。

颜师古在『地』字处断句，沈彤指正说：『地当作他。谓诸侯或以罪黜，其地被削，多入于汉者。若因其所存地为国，则国小而其子孙亦不得封，故为之徙其侯国，并封其子孙于他所，如其被削之数偿之。』颜注误。杨树达同意沈彤的说法，但说『地』、『它』二字古音同通假，不改为『他』字。如果我们不懂得『地』字和『它』字同音，就如颜师古一样发生误解，而译文非错不可。

语法也有改易，诗中用韵，倒句极多，如《小雅》所说的『瞻彼中原』，绝不是我们现在说的『中原』，而应为『原中』的倒装说法。他如『不我遐弃』即『不遐弃我』，『野于饮食』即『饮食于野』等皆是。又如：

渺斑狌角怪首（《亮子·尽蚀下》）

也是一个倒句，等于说𤛿厥角稽首若崩... 如果认为是𤛿稽首至地，若角之崩... 不知道角是什么，大成笑话。应劭解释说：𤛿厥者，顿也。角者，额角也。稽首，首至地也。若崩二字，乃形容厥角稽首之状。焦循解释说：𤛿厥角，是以角蹶地。若崩者，状其厥之多而迅也。正是白话说的𤛿叩头如捣蒜... 英国汉学家 F`bb` 不懂得原文的意思，所以英译为：

I i αch, α` t Xj r` Z α` dnc` WZn qj α` `Whoc, gf`  
α` c j m n j a W ch Wn a Wg b j æ (童是葡们烦首至幢，身  
促入的角食惧虽样。)

此外因时代不同，字体上也会发生差异，如我们现在通用的𤛿于... 和𤛿於... 就有时代的不同，在《诗经》《书经》等古书上用𤛿于... 到《论语》上便改用𤛿於...了。如《论语·为政篇》在同一章中相连的两句内，用了𤛿于..又用了𤛿於... 所以宋翔凤辨证说：𤛿上文引书作于，下文作於是夫子语，显有于於字为区别。可是东晋古文《书经》的作伪者，没有训诂学上的知识，不明白这种分辨，因而把孔子说的话，也当作《尚书》的逸文，从这里一并采入所谓《君陈篇》中去了。我们的名汉学家当然更加不能辨别，因而有如下的翻译。

子弯叛在，声乎劝声，友童袖吹；施摇有样，是滩为样，奚其为为样。

Nc` G Who` mnWZ, fQ c Wb Zj` n α` McpYcd b nW j a ε  
dgWgkd α 7° -Rj p Wn agWg tj p ZchYc Wn` tj pmXm α` n  
g Zpod n. Nc` n` l p Wgd n Wn ZchkgW` Z d` bj q` m h` i  
α“Nc ch α` i Wg j Yj i notp o` n α` `s` nYch` j a bj q` m h`  
i α Qct h pno α` m X NB9N° h W d b j i` X` d α` b  
j q` m h` i o7...

以上是 F`bb` 的译文，现在我们再看 Q Wg t 又是怎样译的：

G Who` mnWZ, Nce Boof nWt n: £ ` adWg j i g X` adg  
WgW Z and i Zg qj r WZn tj pmXnj oc` nm, W Z tj p r dgX`  
Yj i onKpod b qj bj q` nñ h` i o.Nc` m` Wñ j oc` mnj non j an  
`mqdY` l p d` Z d à m i o anj h r c W b tj p h` W Xt £ n` mqdY`  
...

两人同是把 $\text{㒼}$ 施於有政... 当作《尚书》中的话，而不辨 $\text{㒼}$ 于...  $\text{㒼}$ 於...  
的古今字，自然分不清楚哪是《尚书》，哪是《论语》的话了。 $\text{㒼}$ 施於  
有政...句中的 $\text{㒼}$ 施...是推行，廷及的意思； $\text{㒼}$ 有...字无义，古代构词法，常  
用于名词前，如 $\text{㒼}$ 有唐...等； $\text{㒼}$ 政...字据杨遇夫说： $\text{㒼}$ 政谓卿相大臣，以职  
言，不以事言...所以整句话的意思，应为 $\text{㒼}$ 把这种风气影响到卿相大  
夫身上去...，也就是 $\text{㒼}$ 把这种风气带到政治上去...。

单就上面所举出的一两个例子，我们就可以明白在动手翻译之  
先，要懂得一些什么，而且要深入到什么程度，否则是很难得到正确  
而优美的译文的。

## 十四 选用适当的字句

我们到一个陌生的地方，问路是常有的事。例如，你能告诉我到火车站是怎样走的吗？.这样一句问句，应当是每个小学生都英译得出来的。普通译为  $\text{W tjp o'gh`cjr qj b'oq } \alpha\text{'nWgr W noWdj i 7}$ . 似乎没有什么不对。但你向英美人这样发问时，他可能不加理睬，即是理睬，他也许只回答一个  $\text{t`n}$ . 便调头而去，不会指点你的路的，因为他自审有此能力，但并无此义务。有此能力，他说  $\text{t`n}$ . 无此义务，他不必指路。为什么会这样的呢？问题就出在  $\text{W}$  一字上，此字译得不适当，而使问者完全未能达意。英文的  $\text{W}$  是表示能力的，你问他有无此种能力，是对他很失礼的。英文应该用  $\text{Xj pg Z}$ . 虽只是  $\text{W}$  的过去形，但含义就大不相同了。美国的学者： $\text{'nb`i ? qW n (9 BdYabi Wtu oaCoi } \alpha h konWtu 9h enaW OnWbe}$  的著者）在  $\text{Coh } \alpha nWbge Q onaln}$  一书中说：

$\text{; j i ndZ`nd b } \alpha \text{Wb CcWq` d o' mpo'ko' Z tjp W Z Xj } \alpha\text{'mZ tjp r d } \alpha \text{Wl p`no'ji r c dYc tjp Wn pi Z`mi j j Xg bWdj i qj W nr`m } \textbf{cj pgl tjp } \alpha \text{d Z } \alpha \text{d tjpmb`i`mpn c`Wn, ZnW d b } \alpha\text{'kgi } \alpha \text{dpZ` jatjpmfijr gZb` , qj o'gh`7}$  (想到认检迟门乐，田虽二乐完全裸有坦务俗回池认的人题检倦烦乐，乐是比是可以引田乐调富的知娘，以加驰为怀的蚀吗，检喜点认虽下呢？)

这意思简单地按时，就是  $\text{Xj pgZ tjpz z ? ...}$

朋友新婚，我们说一声  $\text{Xj pgZ}$  恭喜... 译成英文的  $\text{Xj j i bnWpgWdj i nl..}$  总该没有错吧。然而有时也是有问题的。对新郎致祝词时固然可以说  $\text{Xj j i bnWpgWdj i n..}$  但对新娘就千万不要这样说，因为此字的含义

是对努力而获得成功的人说的，如果用来对新娘祝贺，无异于在说，  
你多方努力的结果，总算是被你抓住了一个男人，我祝贺你有这种成功！  
岂不要使新娘听了很难受吗？所以对新娘说的恭贺... 英文应译为  
Ccjk` tjp`ggX` cWkkt!.或是Cr dhc tjp`q`m cWkkd`nm!.有部名叫《红鞋子》的影片，当中正有恭喜女孩子新婚的对话，可资参考。

Gdl W. Fcho`i, h`n Wh d n.CWh adW Y`.Cb`o h Wmdl  
Z. (呀，各位旁友。认是聪了孤的，认结孤了。)

LWj q: Gt Z` WmYcdZ. 9ggh t g q` W Z X no r dhc`n  
aj mtj pmc Wkkd`nm. (认亲爱的各子。认诚蚀享鼓乐的示福。)

: j g ngW W t: Gdl W h t gbg` cj mjm Cr dhc tjp oc  
`bmW no cWkkd`nm r dhc tjp mi`r kWoi`m (认的小记毕，岁角纳属。认享鼓乐付乐的食碍就共设最驰的示福)。

如果吊丧的话，我们惯常是用哀悼的字样，而且是对死者说的，  
但西洋人则要对生者慰问，所以不可英译为Yj h h ch`nWdj i.或gWh  
`i oWdj i... 而要译成ant h kWct...一字。

同是一个意思，有好几种不同的说法，翻译时非得看说话的对象，用最适合的字句不可。比方路上有人问到某处去怎样走法为好，你回答说，  
那最好是坐巴士去。这句话最普通的翻译，当然是Rj p cWZ X oc`moW` WXpn..如果这样对陌生人说，是很失礼的，因为这是一句命令句，只能用于晚辈或下属的。老师可以对学生说，Rj p cWZ X oc`mWo`i Z YgWn mbpgWgt datj p r W oWbj j Z bnWZ`....(你要想有好的成绩，就得经常上课。) 医生或护士对病人也会说，Rj p`Z X oc`mi j o oW` WXWc qj ZW`....(你今天最好不要洗澡。) 为什么这样说是命令语气呢？因为 tjp cWZ X oc`m 为 tjp cWq` WZpot qj 或 tjp cWq` W j XgbWdj i qj 的意思，既系有义务... 即非这样不可，所以除命令口气外，有时还有胁迫的感觉，如说Rj p or j cWZ X oc`mb`od oc` YWm...(你们两个坐上车去。) 其意实与 tjp h pno 或 tjp ncj pgZ 相近 (说 ncj pgZ' cWZ X oc`m h pno 逐渐加

强)，所以换句话说，便成𐄂Rj p ncj p gZ Zj r c Wtj p Wn̄ q gZ j m̄  
gn̄ tj p r d g n p ā m n Wc` mn̄ n̄ j p n Yj i n̄ l p` i Y n... (你要照我吩  
咐的办才好，不然的话，恐将遭受严重的后果。) 那么，𐄂最好怎  
样... 又要如何译法，才不至冒犯别人呢？比较客气的说法有：

Cnpbb` notj p oW` WXpn.

ᳵh dco (rj p gZ) X` X ō m̄j oW` WXpn.

J` m̄ Wkntj p h dco g f` q̄ oW` WXpn.

Qct i j oW` WXpn7

有时也可以利用客观的事实表达，和我们说的𐄂足下之文过人处不  
少...(苏轼与李方淑书)，𐄂故敢坐通书于下执事...(黄庭坚上苏轼  
书)，一则说𐄂足下... 一则说𐄂下执事(你的佣人)... 都是不敢直接  
冒犯，而用客观的事实来表达，自然就显得客气多了。试比较下面的  
9, : 两种译文，9 是唐突而不礼貌的说法，: 是客观而有礼貌的说  
法。

(,) 你最好搭巴士车。

9. Rj p c WZ X` ō m̄ oW` WXpn.

: . ᳵn X ō m̄j oW` WXpn. 或 Cc d f ō` X no r W̄ ch Xt Xp  
n.

(-) 你应在三点半到达。

9. Rj p ncj p gZ Wm̄ q̄ W̄ ō m̄` -ō d̄ ō t̄ .

: . ᳵr j p gZ X` b j j Z q̄ Wm̄ q̄ W̄ ō m̄` -ō d̄ ō t̄ .

(.) 走二号公路去西贡。

9. NW` Hj .- B d c r W̄ q̄ MW̄ b j i .

: . ᳵn X no q̄ oW` Hj .- B d c r W̄ q̄ MW̄ b j i .

(/) 当心那低梁。

9. Q WōYc α Wō g r X Wh .

: . Nc Wō X Wh ch g r .

(0) 那店的东西比较便宜些。

9. Rj p Zj i “o c Wq` gj kWt Wh h pYc Wō α Wō ncj k.

: . Cn` g m` sk` i ndq` Wō α Wō ncj k.

(1) 你三点半能来吗?

9. ; W t j p Yj h` Wō α m` -α chot 7

: . Qj p gZ α m` -α chot X Wg mbc o7

(2) 你可以接受这个待遇吗?

9. Q dgt j p WY ko α chj æ n7

: . Cn α chj æ m WY ko Wg 7

(3) 你要喝点咖啡或是茶吗?

9. =j t j p r W o nj h` Yj æ` j mō W7

: . G Wt Cn` m t j p nj h` Yj æ` j mō W7

(4) 你需要帮助吗?

9. =j t j p i `` Z W t c` gk7

: . G Wt Cc` gk t j p7

(, +) 你要把门打开吗?

9. =j t j p r W o α` Zj j mj k` i` Z7

: . Mc Wg Cj k` i α` Zj j n7



## 十五 英译中五种方法

### (1) 省译法

中英两国的文字在语法上常有不同，如英文有 **Wbj i`n r j nzn** 一个成语，与中国《尚书·汤誓》上说的**食言**相当，但中国话却不像英文一样说**食其言**。可见中文比英文更要简洁。又如表示损人而不利己之意的，出自《伊索寓言》的典故，有 **WZj b d oc` h W b`m** 一个说法，句中不用动词，而中文则必须说**狗占马槽**。或是**占着茅坑不拉粪**。非有一个动词的**占**字不可，这是英文比中文简洁的地方。

不问原文或是翻译，文字总以简洁为上。文法家 **H nad gZ** 说：**概言之**，一句之中简洁所生之力，与繁芜所耗之力，正复相若。无益之字，必然有害。文学家 **9. : Wl** 说：**用五个字可表达的思想，用十个字来表达，即是浪费**。我们在翻译时，运用语文的习惯，可略则略，否则不但是浪费，而且有害。下列各句中有黑体的字，译成中文时都应略去不译。

**A Xj j f dh pn` apg** (书是有用的。)

**Nce` Wmc dh npi Z.** (地球是圆的。)

**I i Mpi ZWnr` cWq` ij nYcjjg** (礼拜天我们不上学。)

**B` dh f``kd b c d h X Z.** (他正卧病。)

**I c ij, c` r dgij oZj dh** (不，他不会那样做的。)

**Gm: d bg t r Wh bj j Z-gj f d b W d b`i og h W -gf`.** (彬礼先生丰姿秀美，彬彬有礼。)

**A** r d` h W r dgi j o h W m W r j h W r c j c W h W o W d h` i o n  
X p o i j q d h p`. (聪明人是不会娶有才无德的女子为妻的。)

**G** a t j p r n b` q j c d h , o` m` n k j i n` r j p g Z X` W K n j g p o` n d i Y  
` W Z q j d Z. (你写信给他，永远是石沉大海。)

**M** p i Z W d h o` Z W d r c e i C W h g` W h o X p n t. (礼拜天我最不忙。)

; j p g Z t j p c` g k h` **d W t r W** 7 (你能够帮忙我一下吗?)

**A n d b c W k e i n**, r` Z d Z i j o h` ` o o` m. (我们在那里并没有碰头。)

代名词在英文中用得极多，译成中文时务必略去，译文才能简洁，例示如下。

G n j j o , C f i j r i j o r c t C W h n j n W Z:

G r` W d n h` 5 t j p n W d o r` W d n t j p 5

: p o c j r C Y W b c o d , a j p i Z d , j m Y W h` X t d ,

Q c W n o p a a " o d h h W Z` j a , r c` m j a d d h X j m ,

C W h q j g` W m 5

9 i Z n p Y c W r W o - r d n W Z i` m h W` n j a h` ,

N c W b C c W q` h p Y c W Z j q f i j r h t n` g a

° ° N c e G e n Y c W o o a P e i d e , 9 Y o I I , M Y i` 疑.

上文指“忧愁”的 **d**，三行中凡七用，如全部照译为七个“它”字，便不像中文了，所以梁实秋多把它略去不译：**它**老实说，我不知道为什么我这样忧愁：使得我也很烦恼；你说使得你厌烦；不过这忧愁我是怎样染上的，怎样寻到的，怎样获得的，是什么东西做成的，从什么地方生出来的，我还得要研究；忧愁把我弄得如此的糊涂，以至于我很难有自知之明了。...

Nc` d aml p`i o nj pi Zn oc Wb Yj pgZ X` c` Wz r` m` nonW b` g  
Zchod Yo, `q`i r c`i oc` t r` m` aWl o W Z m`h j o`. (不常听到的那  
种声音, 纵是微弱而又辽远, 却出奇的清晰。)

B` r Wh i WpnWgt knjpZ W Z Wh Xdd pn, Xpoc` r Wh cji` n  
o W Z onp`, W Z Wgr Wnkpoc` d o` m`no j ac h Yj pi on h`i X a  
j m` c h j r i. (他赋性高傲, 而且野心勃勃, 但却真诚正直, 常把国  
人的利益, 看得比自己的还重。)

Gar` npYY`Z d bdd b oc` g`q` q` g` Wm d b, oc` g` Wm d b d  
n` gch npm` q` aj ggr. (一到了爱好学问的时候, 学问就一定会跟着  
来的。)

Nc` hji` t tjp kW q` nYcjj gch YWg Z nYcjj ga`. (缴给学  
校的钱叫做学费。)

:` WkgW` r c Wb d h W, ji` b` on q` gf` d, daji` gq` n gi b  
d d. (无论是怎样的地方, 要是住得长久了, 总会渐渐对那地方喜欢  
起来的。)

Nc` aj ggr d b g` oc` mr dg` skgWl dn` ga W Z i` ` Zn i j Wkj g b  
t. (下面的信一看就明白, 用不着什么声明。)

此外中文少用复数, 文言虽有“吾侪...”, “卿辈...”, 口语虽有“我们...”,  
“你们...”的说法, 但对事物则绝少用复数, 中国话不可说“书们...”, “笔  
们...”, 或“牛们...”, “狗们...”的, 至多只能说“这些书...”, “那些狗...”, 一般情  
形都是把复数不译, 例如:

Q d o` mch oc` X` no ch` q` nopZt oc` bnjr oc j aom`  
n. 9gcj pbc oc` g` Wq` n Wm` bji` ` W Z oc` XnW Yc` n Wm`  
XWm, oc` om` n oc` h n` gq` n Wm` X` Wpocpg (冬天是研恢  
树来挠长的最好的国节, 评伪树酸惧了, 树息封了, 但树来  
拜那却是美丽的。)

## (2) 增译法

有些英文字句如照字面翻译，意念是不完全的，必得加上一些字眼来补充说明，有的要补上几个字，有的要增加一整句，例如：

CWh gjfd b aj m WZ qj oc` c jgZW n. (我在等待假期~~的~~到来..)

GpYc jaj pmh j nWgt dh Ypnoj h Wm. (我们大部分的道德~~观念~~都有习惯性。)

QcWor` Wh gWh`i W Z Yddi nj pbc oq g` Wm dh oc Wb nYd i Y` W Z o` Yci j g bt Wm cW Zh WZ`i n. (我们门外汉老百姓应该明白的，就是科学和工艺好像侍女一般~~是~~不能独立的..)

QcW dac` ncj pgZ aWg (万一他失败了，~~要~~怎么办? ..)

; jpnWb` d` sY nm X Yj h` n aj j g WZd` m, Wai Yod i r` W i` m, oc mbo WqWm. (勇敢过度，即成蛮勇；感情~~过度~~，即成..溺爱：俭约~~过度~~，即成..贪婪。)

: jjfn Wm nj Yc` Wk oc Wb` q` m ji` j apn cWh oc` X no Xj j f n Wb ch Yj h h W Z, Wh r` ggWh oc` r j m. (书籍是非常便宜的，所以我们无论是谁，最好的书也好，最坏的~~书~~也好，都可以自由地买到手。)

Qc`i oc` `t` n nW ji` oc d b W Z oc` q i bp` W j oc` m Wkm Woch` Z h W m g d n j i oc` gW bpWb` j a oc` a m. (眼睛所看见的是这样，而口里~~所~~说的..又是那样，老于世故的人一定相信前者。)

培根在《谈学问》一文中说：

Bchoj m n h W` h`i r di 5kj` on r dot 5h Wc` h Wc Yn npXog 5i Wp nWg kc dj nj kct Z` k5h j nWgt bnWq 5g bcl W Z m` q m Wg` q Yj i o` i Z. (较史鸟人沉宽；泥人~~鸟人~~..言想；数学~~鸟人~~..幻僧；耳致~~鸟人~~..深财；伦理~~鸟人~~..庄要；理伪付适辞~~鸟人~~..牢房争论。)

### (3) 倒译法

中国话的副词等常置于句首，而英文则多置于句尾，例如：

B` YWh` **t enoemlWt**. (休天葡检过了。)

B` Znd fncWg WXj oög ja**r d e r dbc eWcc j a c dh h eWgn**. (每鞭葡村俗喝爱瓶酒。)

B` dh i j o c Wkkt, **ocj pbc ce dh mbc**. (葡评有钱，但比家将。)

**Hj dj pbo**, h pYc Wh r j mct and i Zn WZZ gj oc` cW kkd` mn W Z qWp` jagh, r` h pnod oc` h Wd Z` k` i Z ji j pmm` g` n. (益友荣务该可以未坏人挠的示福图憾值，但驰体姆认们跟是俗已谢贵。)

B` gi E` gg m在 *Ncnae BW n o Mee* 中说：

①**Bj r h pcc eWdemcj r h pcc h j na nWchat d b db dh** ②aj mtj p r cj YW n`` gj bnWkl pdYf g oc`` mn` i c dWgl pWgd njaW j oc` mk` mj i ③Xt r WYcd b oc` npXo g od nja` skm`nd i, oc` l pd` mj aWh pnYg, oc` apoo` n jaWcW Z! (③户着观并报吗的杈林保化，官眠的颤促，殴的共啊，②乐们有眼牢看的人俗了解别人的弃世，①该是多抗秘易，多抗满意属！)

国父孙中山先生伦敦蒙难获救后，致函报界申谢他们的援助，其中有句云：

**Wdgtj p f d dg esknam** ocnpj pbc tj pmYj gph i h t f`` i Wkkm`YdWdj i ja oc` WYdj i ja oc` : mbhc Aj q` n i h` i o d` æYod b h t m`g Wh` ajh oc` ; cd` n` F` bWc ji 7 (拜人承课戈国样督之新助，得谢中国凡鸟粉获且，拟户戈报虽角，谎伸钝管之吗，比知可闻痛允订？)

再看 DW` 9pno`i 的 *Jndle W d Jnæpddæ* 中的两句:

£WcWb dj en G m = Wht h eW , ..nWZ nc` qj ; cWg  
j oo`, £Xt ghò i d b qj h t Yj i q`mWdj i r dæ ; j g i`gFj n  
no` m7...(£戴鳃先挠听认伐福疲塔姆生其格, ..她对病将床  
披, £这恢竟是什抗意皮? .).

MhmQ Wg` mMYj oo 的 *QW coe* 中描写比武的场面有句云:

Nc` gWZdn`i Yj pnWb`Z æ` Yj h XWöW on i j o j i g X  
t YgWk d b æ` dnc W Zn W Z r Wqd b æ` dnc` dñ W Z f`n  
Ycd æ, Xpo`q`i Xt`sYgWh d b, £ nWq` gW Y! Aj j Z rr  
j rZ!. **r. cei W t npccennap g oc npno j mbg r oj j f kgWce  
pi democednj bnemqWdj i** . (戈短们看见迟中故迟中逆,  
比系是鼓吻, 共促切纱付殴华, 南至高难喊厚: £好枪倒! 好  
刀倒! .这样幢检鼓辱般柔的套是。)

莎剧 *Loh eo W d Dpgæo*, 9Yo I 上说:

= **nW** , **dæ t j p be h W** . Ambj m, mh`h X moct nh  
Whcd b Xg r . (是汉子就拔差剑检, 儿雷纺叫, 别去了乐的  
杀殴铜。)

= dYf`i n 的 *BWqdl Cokkenægl* 中云:

Nc` ZW r Wh epno XmW d b r c`i r` r`m Wkj po qj  
noWno5Wh CnWö æ d f d b j ac`m **cWh e nonpbbgi b pk oc  
e cj Wcc ndle, ocnpjbc oce h d bged dWt W d i dco O  
mWc`n ceWd** . (天很破甚, 认们就俗促那了, 认坐在怖姆吸  
想着她, 高每当昼夜鼓严群店之际, 从马怖的力包姓坏尤角  
竖的切检。)

#### (4) 改译法

英文喜用  $JW\dot{n}d\dot{q}\dot{`}\ Pj\ d\dot{`}$  , 而中文宜改成  $9Y\dot{o}d\dot{q}\dot{`}\ Pj\ d\dot{`}$  来译:

$\dot{O}d\dot{h}\ \dot{o}d\dot{`}\ t\dot{j}\ p\dot{m}X\dot{j}\ t\ r\ W\dot{h}\ n\dot{e}i\ o\dot{q}\ nY\dot{c}j\dot{j}\ g$  (伤在乐该骗诞子姆学了。)

把  $\dot{C}h\ k\dot{`}\ n\dot{m}j\ i\ W\dot{g}$  的主语改译为  $J\dot{`}\ n\dot{m}j\ i\ W\dot{g}$  的主语, 例如:

$\dot{O}d\dot{h}\ n\dot{e}l\ p\dot{e}n\dot{o}e\dot{d}\ \dot{o}W\dot{b}\dot{`}\ q\dot{`}\ n\dot{h}\ b\dot{p}\dot{`}\ n\dot{o}\ n\dot{c}j\ p\dot{g}\dot{Z}\ X\dot{n}l\ b\ W\dot{b}c\ \dot{a}r\ d\dot{c}\ c\dot{h}$  . (请每位剂人各侈虽掉礼入检边函。)

$\dot{O}d\dot{h}\ p\dot{i}\ b\dot{e}W\dot{n}W\dot{b}g\ \dot{a}\dot{j}\ m\dot{h}\dot{`}\ q\dot{j}\ r\dot{j}\ n\dot{h}\ d\ \dot{o}d\dot{h}\ Z\dot{m}\ W\dot{Z}\ \dot{a}\dot{p}\dot{g}c\dot{`}\ W\dot{o}$  (在这显盛暑中工作认拍比了。)

否定与  $\dot{o}d\dot{g}$  连用时, 中文应将否定去掉来译, 或将  $\dot{o}d\dot{g}$  句也译成否定, 例如:

$B\dot{`}\ r\ \dot{o}d\dot{g}\ i\dot{j}\ o\dot{X}\ c\dot{`}\ m\dot{`}\ \dot{o}d\dot{g}\dot{`}\ d\dot{b}c\dot{o}j\ \dot{Y}g\ Y\dot{f}$  . (葡俗八点闲才检。)

$J\dot{`}\ j\dot{k}g\dot{`}\ Z\dot{j}\ i\dot{j}\ o\dot{f}i\dot{j}\ r\ \dot{o}c\dot{`}\ q\dot{W}p\dot{`}\ j\dot{a}c\dot{`}\ W\dot{g}c\ \dot{o}d\dot{g}\ \dot{o}c\dot{`}\ t\ \dot{g}\ n\dot{`}\ d\dot{h}$  . (人比到失毛健即, 比知健即的可戈。)

英文句中的主语如系表动作的原因, 则有时可以将后面的宾格名词或代名词移调作主语, 而将原有的主语改译为  $\dot{a}$  因为  $z\ z$  . 的语句, 例如:

Oi ǎ mǐ Wǝ g, ɔː r **W** o j a c h a W h d t c W Z f ˈ k o c d  
h ǎ j h n Y c j j g W Z c ˈ n ˈ h ˈ Z q ǎ ˈ g ɔː ɡ m. (比示  
得该, 葡因寒蓄贫坚, 比牢姆学, 葡似乎巧切幢钝到这显婆  
失。)

B ˈ c W Z b d i W g p k ǎ m g n o, r c ˈ i ɔː **W k k e W h W c**  
**e j a W Z d o W o n W g n W h ˈ Z c h c j k ˈ j a m n Y p ˈ**. (葡全每呆  
了念, 以为是棵况了; 但是因为见到了远方的岛影, 葡同挠  
差了虽显得救的三趣。)

Nc ˈ **n e c g p n j i** d r c d Y c **ɔ c e t** c W Z f ˈ k o **ɔ c e h n e g j e**  
**n n j ɡ i b**, c W Z Y p o ɔː h j ǎ ǎ j n h W f i j r ɡ Z b ˈ j a ɔː m  
g W d i X ɔː ˈ i ɔː i W d i n. (葡们因图世事隔绝日回, 以  
致比牢知道国际好的吩系。)

**G W c d e m** c W h h W Z ˈ ɔː **k n j d p c o n j a h** W p a W q n  
d n q ˈ m h p Y c Y c ˈ W k ˈ m o c W ǎ n h ˈ n g t. (因为挂械的缘  
故, 工厂脚的产烈, 般起以前检, 憾钱薄宜多了。)

Nc ˈ g b o g **ɔ d h e j i ˈ** Y W W ǎ j n Z ǎ j m m W Z d b j p b c o j  
n ˈ ɔ g ɔː **l p e n o j i j i Y ǎ j m W g W h q r c W o n c W g X ˈ m W**  
**Z**. (人们因为牢房拿检读叛的逆好欺幕, 所以对童特该读盛  
什抗叛的人题, 比牢比有所取迹。)

如果英文句中各项内容的排列顺序大异于中文时, 便须大事调  
动, 重新加以组织, 译成中文后方可通顺明白, 例如 ? h d t : n j i ɔ  
的 *Q p a c e n a l b B e d b c n* 一书中有这样的一句:

I i ˈ ˈ i Z, d Z ˈ Z, m ǎ g Y o ˈ Z n k g i Z d Z g X j ɔː ɡ b c o W  
i Z c ˈ W ǎ j h n W f n j a c h h ˈ i n ˈ k ˈ r o ˈ m Z d c ˈ n, d o ˈ n m k  
ˈ n m Z, r d c n d g ˈ m e p b n W Z o W f W h Z n, q j r ˈ n d b n j r W c  
ˈ m n j r, j i W q W h o j W Z m n n ˈ m q ɔː q ˈ m n j a (在虽二  
尽切处, 有虽二驰橡来柜台, 姆面底着该驰的虽励励的例  
子, 中好孱底着银制的八畜, 虽励般虽励高, 高到屋刺, 诚  
每是把封线付热气村道题得该宾烂。)



## (5) 简译法

语言之趋于简洁，原为自然的演变。英文较法、德、俄文为简洁，而中文的简洁，又远胜英文。中国文字无字形变化之累，无定形文法之弊，其简洁自不待言。

Ncj h Wh BWZt 的 *Dpde ace I bnYpne* 上有句云：Qchi “o nph aj mWr j h W oj r W oc`mj gZ cpnXW Z XWf, aj mn`nk`YoWkdgt, ocj pbc aj mWh W oj r W oc dh j gZ r d`i XWf° r`gg k`m Wkn d d n api i t, nWc`nh (一个.女人为了体面T的关系U 而要T她的从U前T的那个丈U夫回来，这并不.是.奇怪.的事...，虽然.一个.男人要.他从.前.的那个.妻.子.回来，也许是很有趣的事。)

MYdi ody`skg nWdj i, oc`n`WYc aj mfi jr gZb`, cWh bdq`i h W oc`knWodVg`nmpgn jaX`db Wkg`oj ncd gZ ch n`ga aj h **oce cVgWh dden j ai Wopne W d oce cVgWh dden dh kj ned bt j o cemh ei**. (科学的探测，知识的追求，使人获得了避免天灾人祸的实力。)

Nj pn`oc`fi jr gZb`rcdYc nYdi Y`chnpkkj n`Z oj ZchYj q`mW Z Wkgg`d oj ocd bn rcdYc Wn pn`apgch o`Yci j g bt. (利用科学知识制造有用之物，即所谓工艺学。)

FWLj Yc`aj pYWp gZ nWZ: gG oc`h chaj mpi`nj aj pmX`no and`i Zn, r`ad Z nj h`ocd b ocWb ch i jo pi kg`Wd b.... (幸灾乐祸。)

简译法是一种意译，取其精华，去其渣滓，无须保留字面的意思。又如 BqWn: `gg Y 讲贫穷时的标题：

*Joqent : Nce 9oWd h ei ooaQ: ace Leaei abi oaQr cei 9oWd ed*，可简译为《贫穷：致贫与安贫》。

## 十六 英文长句的译法

*Egent h W Fdn Wh Nce Qongl'n CgWndn*

*i di n oa Nch Wh Mc W dt Nce Fde W d I kd*

**Wh**  
**r c Wb**  
**r c Wb**  
**cj r**  
**oc Wb**  
**r cei**

**r cdc**

**r c d c**

*CWd \alpha e LWd*



(1) 在关系代名词处切断

**r cdc**

(2) 在关系副词处切断

**r cei**

(3) 在副词处切断

**enkecdWgt**

(4) 在动词处切断

**bWqe**

(5) 在名词处切断

**oce NceWma**



## 十七 容易译错的文句

### (1) 英译中

英国诗人 Jj k` 说: Nj `mmch cph W. (人总是要犯错的)。孔子称赞他最得意的门生颜回不贰过., 可见犯错是圣贤也不能免的。翻译要保险不错, 是谁也办不到的事。法国诗人: WpZ` gWdh 翻译的美国诗人 Jj` 的短篇小说, 世评认为比原作更好, 至少也是文学界一部模范的名译本, 但我们仍然在译文中发现错误, 例如在 *Nce Aogd-Bpb* (《金甲虫》) 中 H` brj Dpkd` m 的主人变得 Wh r cd` Wh Wb jj n`...( 6 bcj no) 一句上, : WpZ` ZWdh 译成 kwg` Yj h h` pi` jd`...( 6 Wh kWg` Wh Wbj j n`) 了。不过话说回来, 译者能够那样深入地理解原文的, 实不多见, 我以前翻译 Jj` 的时候, 许多地方就是参考了: WpZ` gWdh 的法译, 才决定如何下笔的。再说另一部更伟大的《钦定本英译圣经》(*Nce 9pæonled Permabi oaæe Bbge*), 早成为英国国民生活的中心, 精神的粮食, 不但这样, 而且在英文方面是一个永不枯竭的源泉, 在英美文学上也是灵感的来源, 它本身就是一部文学名著。这样神圣的译品, 也不免有一些译错的地方, 如 qj no nWd Wb Wbi Wb (G Wb. - . : - /) ①, 即是一例, 好在将错就错, 早已成为英文的经典了。错误虽为名译者所不免, 但那应属于艰深奥妙的字句, 而一般人的误译, 则常由于语文知识的浅薄而来, 如非对字义认识不足, 便是对文法没有搞通。我现且就错误的种类, 分别将容易译错的英文字句, 举例说明如下:

#### 1. 由误解字义而生的错误

这是在各种误译中最单纯的一种, 一个字常有好几种意义, 甚至还有隐藏的意义非字典所载有的, 译者如对原文了解不够, 总不免译



错，而未能传出原意的。

(,) Nc d k d Y o p m n o h e c o r g j f n Y n p Z` .

(误译) 此画荣论免父看来粗俗。

(应译) 此画嫌嫌粗俗。

(-) Ch WZ` p k h t h d Z q j r n o b` W g d j a h t k o o m a W c` m

(误译) 我决心要替我可慨的父亲作传。

(应译) 我决心要替我死毛的父亲作传。

(.) C W h i j r d e m o c W X` a j m` .

(误译) 我不比以前更沉宽。

(应译) 我仍旧虽荣所知。

(/) F W Y t W g o c` n` d` s k` n d i Y Z h p a e n d b t j p i b W q m n k g W g W Z d b k W o n d o c` Q` n o ? i Z .

(误译) 试想那些毫无经验的，杂杂谢徒的年轻的演员们，居然在伦敦西区大舞台上当起主角来。

(应译) 试想那些毫无经验的，杰台匙村念比马楚的，年轻的演员们，居然在伦敦西区大舞台上当起主角来。

(0) Q` W n c` m q Z W W Z b o i e q h j n m j r .

(误译) 我们今天在这里，明天就到别处毛了。

(应译) 人生朝露（今日生存，明日死毛）。

(1) G t p i Y g n e h e h b e n e d h` j i h t X d o c Z W .

(误译) 我叔父孩得我的生日。

(应译) 我叔父送了我一个挠日礼入。

(2) Q` a j p i Z W n q i` g W Y o W Z n j h` a d e X j i` i` Z g n d o c` Y W q` .

(误译) 我们在那洞穴中找到了一个刺络针一般的石器，和一些条秃的骨制的针。

(应译) 我们在那洞穴中找到了一个刺络针一般的石器, 和一些骨制的僧针。

(3) Mɛ` dɪ Wcoh eŋ r j h W .

(误译) 她是一个寒薺妇女。

(应译) 她是一个朴素的女人。

(4) B` r Wh Wnogdɛmoaɔmpɪ e.

(误译) 他是一个示万的军人。

(应译) 他是一个立锁的军人。

(, +) H` q` mɛ WZ ɔɔ` m X` i n pYc deqoɔbi ɔj WYɔpne.

(误译) 从来没有这样热才来追究一个原因的。

(应译) 从来没有人对一个乡坦有这样忠念的。

(, , ) I p mWZqɔh` mɔh WYɔgɔnɛd h W j a 9 a n d W denYei a

(误译) 我们的顾问是一个从非洲下检的好命之徒。

(应译) 我们的顾问是一个非洲输统的咐人。

(, -) Nɛ dɪ dɪ Wh` m Wkɔgɔbt ɔj mɪj p k.

(误译) 这只是为羹汤道绿而已。

(应译) 这个实在比餐其为羹汤。

## 2. 由判高而引起的错误

这方面的错误, 多由未注意英文的惯用法, 以致夹缠着另外的说法, 而将文义弄错。

(, .) B` r Wh pɛnɛd ɔ X d b h WZ` ɔpi j a

(误译) 他常被人愚弄。

(应译) 他已惯童被人愚弄。

这是将上句误认为 *B` pned ω X` h WZ` əpi j a* 一句而翻译的结果。注意二者的分别: *pned ω Zj* 往常, 向来; *be pned ω Zj d b* 惯于, 习于。

(, /) *Bt , 41+, c` r Wh r` ggji ω` r W qj Zj d b ω` n` ω d bn.*

(误译) 到虽悔敬晴年为止, 他对于这些事早已着着进行了。

(应译) 在虽悔敬晴年以前, 他对于这些事早已着着进行了。

到一九六零年为止. 的英文为 *odg, 41+*. 应分辨 *Xt , 41+* 和 *odg , 41+* 二者的含义。*odg* 表示继续的终点, *Xt* 意为“在 *z z* 以前...”, 表示完成的时期。比较: *Cnc WggX` c` m bt adj`*. (我将在五点以前来此)。 *Cnc WggX` c` m odgadj`*. (我将待在此地到五点为止)。表示完成的 *Xt*, 除现在时态外, 还可以用过去时态或未来时态等, 上例 *Xt , 41+*, 不像 *odg, 41+* 的停止在那年了, 而是现在仍在进行的。

(, 0) *Nc` t mbbbed c d n We.*

(误译) 他们偷星了葡的保锁泰。

(应译) 他们除取了葡保锁泰劳的从撒。

我们说 *Nc` XW Z d n nj XX Z WXW f.* (土匪抢劫银行), 是抢去银行里的钱, 绝不可能把银行搬走。又如 *Lj Xd Bj j Z W Z c d h` i mbbbed ω` Hj nh W i j Xg` n.* (罗宾汉及其党徒抢劫了诺尔曼贵族), 是说抢了他们的财物, 绝不是绑架他们本人去做人质。

(, 1) *9nc pmo r Wh need b G` b W.*

(误译) 亚雪斯那时正看着梅干的面影。

(应译) 亚雪斯那时正在回谈着梅干的面影。

英文的 *n`* 是一个“不完结动词...(*i j i -Yj i Ygpndj` q` nX*)”, 所以在“看. 或看见.”的意义上, 是不能有进行式的。可以用进行式来说的, 只限于下面四种含义, 即: (,) 会面, (-) 送行, (.) 观光, (/) 幻想。上例便是“幻想.”的意思。

(, 2) *B` nookked ω α d f j q` m d h r W j agd`.*

(误译) 他对于自己的生活方式已经枪止比忘想了。

(应译) 他枪下检想到自己的生活方式。

比较: B` *nookked nh of d b.* (他戒烟了) 。 B` *nookked ω n h of e.* (他停下工作, 来吸一支烟) 。

(, 3) Q ( 6 Bj ggW Z bd ) cWh Wh pnot WndZ agWj pm W Z oc` oWho` aj mcb h pno be Wl pdaed.

(误译) 这种荷兰金酒具有陈年苦味, 你地烈尝虽下比可。

(应译) 这种荷兰金酒具有陈年苦味, 裸有喝惯是比够精拒到它的条点的。

英文的动词 Wl pdh, 除获得...一义外, 还有后天习得.的意思, 如 W Wl pdaed oWhae (后天养成的趣味)。又如 aj Wl pdh W oWho` aj mXnW Zt (慢慢领略白兰地的酒味)。还有 W Wl pdhZ oW no` (从学习中得来的嗜好), 例如 G W t ; cd`n` Zj i`ogf` Yc`` n` r c`i oc`t admo`W d5d ch W Wl pdaed oWhae . (许多中国人初吃干酪很不喜欢; 那是要吃惯了才爱吃的) 。

(, 4) Bch npYY nm dh opooaace l penabi .

(误译) 他成功是荣人题的。

(应译) 他绝比可牢成功。

英文的 *opooal penabi* 和 *opooaace l penabi* , 虽相差只有一个小小的冠词 oc`, 但意思是完全不同的。 *opooal penabi* = X tji Z l p`noji 意为无疑.或不待言., 所以 Bch npYY nm dh opooal penabi .是说他一定成功.。至于 Bch npYY nm dh opooaace l penabi . 便是说他一定失败.。因为 *opooaace l penabi* 6 i j o j X ocj pbc oj adl pdh ch kj mdkg, 意为决不可能.或无讨论的价值.。

### 3.惹句店弱姆所发挠的错误

(- +) Q` nodg YWga e YokkemYogned i Wajen oaace Her Q ongl G ddW n.

(误译) 我们现在仍然把这铜色的土著, 厚羞食驰莱的讨第安人

。

(应译) 我们现在仍然把食驰莱的这铜色的土著, 厚羞讨第安人。

(-, ) B` fi`r WgWkj pob`j g bt. Bpocmr cWoc` A`nh W  
i nYWg?nZ`f pi Z`, cdfijr gZb`r WhijonpæYdio.

(误译) 他对于地质学什么都懂, 免肤裸有德国人所称的£地学... 他的知识是不够的。

(应译) 他对于地质学什么都懂, 但对童德国人所称的£地学... 他的知识是不够的。

普通说的 *bpoam6 da6r`m ijoaj m* 或 *da6cWZ ijoX`i aj m* 意为£如非... 例如 *Bpocmtj pmc`gk, Cncj pgZ cWq` aWgZ.* (如非你的帮助, 我早已失败了)。但在上文中, 不应做成语看, 应将 *Xpo* 与 *aj m* 分为二字来讲。又德文的 *?nZ`f pi Z`* 只能英译为 *`Whoc n Ydi Y*, 没有适当的£j g bt. 的字可译。

(-- ) Nc`t r`m i ooh eneg WXpi Zg`jaYWhpWg g o`nm bpo  
r`m Xq bnWkc dWgji`n.

(误译) 那些不但是一些随便写的信件, 而且是一些有传记色彩的信件。

(应译) 那背比是一束无所谓的信件, 而是一束有传记价值的信件。

这句只是 *ijoz Xpo* (不是 *z* 而是) 的单纯构造, 不应将其解释为 *ijoh`mgtz Xpo6 ijoji g z XpoWgij* (不但 *z* 而且)。

#### 4.照字面解且的错误

这种错误在翻译中所占的比率相当的高, 不少于由误解字义而生的错误。

(-. ) B` g no WYogocj pnW Z Zj ggWm.

(误译) 他损失了一千元, 还很冷皇。

(应译) 他阳阳的损失了一千元。

这个 Yj j g 意为£不虚报的... £实实在在的... £整整的... 如 Q` r W g` Z W Y o g o r` i o t h d e n . (我们整整地走了二十里路)。B` g` a o W Y o o g h d e g i o j c d h n j i . (他足足留下了一百万的家财给他的儿子)。

(- /) Q` Y W i o o e s W b b e n W e d n d h k j n o W Y .

(误译) 我们背裸有夹纹检披它的重要。

(应译) 其重要性无论怎样夹驰其匙宿比为过。

Rj p Y W i o o W k k n W h` o c h X j j f o o c d b c . (此书无论给以怎样高的评价也不为过)，也是同样意思的表现法。

(- 0) N c d h d h n o h e r W h

(误译) 这是拉样的虽显战争。

(应译) 这是虽场驰战！

代替 b m` W b 而用 n j h` 的，是修辞学上所谓 h` d n d h (曲言法)。他例如 N c W b r W h n o h e n o j n h ! (好大的风暴)。O r W h n o h e k W o t ! (盛会)。B` d h n o h e n Y c j g W m (他是个大学者)。C Y W g o c W b n o h e k j` h . (我觉得那是一首好诗)。

(- 1) C n c o p g d f i j r o c h o p i` .

(误译) 我特当记得此曲。

(应译) 此曲眉味听过。

(- 2) C Y W` o c e g k o c d f d b o c W b c` d h n o d g W g h` .

(误译) 我比牢帮助思想他还活着。

(应译) 我比牢比认为他还活着。

这个 c` g k 不作£帮助.解，而作£避免.解，通常与 Y W 或 Y W i j o 连用，他例如 C Z j i` o Z j h j m` o c W C Y W c e g k . (我能不做的便不去做)。C Y W` o c e g k d d a c` Z j` n i` o Y j h` . (他若不来，我也没有法子)。

(- 3) Q c e i C n W` d ( 6 o c` h` n W) W b W d , C o j g z h t n` g a , C r o p g d c W q e d o i e h t d p a t b t d h

(误译) 当认忘看到这块霜你台幢逆, 我私自说, 我就要由它来代尽我的义务。

(应译) 认忘搭检到这块霜你台幢逆, 我心下誓言要对它来尽我的义务。(Xt 6 qj)

(- 4) @tj p aWg Z d tj pm`sk`nh`i o, r ct , am aj moc`n`Yj i Z och`。

(误译) 如果你的实验失败了, 为什抗不再来一次呢?

(应译) 实验不成功的话, 父敌再来一次。

在@az , r ctz ,.的造句中, r ct 有那么.的意思不可译成为什么...也根本不必译出。这个 r ct 是感叹词, 有时还可译为当然...或哼.或啊...如, Qcj r mj o` BWh go7. Q ct , Mc W`nk`Wh... (《哈姆雷特》是谁作的? 当然是莎士比亚。.)

(. +) 9ggoch och` Cr Wh gh d b r dc Wtj pi b h Wmd Z Yj pk g` r co d o`mno`Z h` q`m h pYc, aj moc`t r`m pi gf` W t k`j kg` Cc W`q`mf i j r i .

(误译) 这个时期我一直和一对鸟认该钝兴茅的年玛夫短同住在一块儿, 因为他们是我从来没有遇见过的有趣的人。

(应译) 这个时期我一直和一对年轻夫妇同住在一块儿, 这对夫短鸟认该钝兴茅, 因为他们是我从来没有遇见过的有趣的人。

在关系代名词前即令没有逗号 (Yj h h W) , 也不一定是限定用法, 上例当作限定用法译出, 所以不对, 因为 r cj 6 W Z o`t.

(. , ) Mj , gf` Waj j g Cr Wh pnobj d b oj nk`W r cei ce dd d .

(误译) 于是, 当葡披格的逆候, 我傻里傻气地也打算要说点什么。

(应译) 于是, 不说也罢了, 偏偏我傻里傻气地想说点什么的时候, 葡却先棘口披格了。

这种 r c`i -YgWpn` , 一般都喜欢译在前面, 其实, 很多情形是应该译在后面的, 他例如 CZ pnobj ooj r j m d h t mj h r cei Goo

*cemYWh e d* . (我正打算在我房间里开始用功的时候, 母亲走进来了)。以上二例主句中都有 *epno* 一字, 但一般多不说 *epno*, 用法也是一样的。

(. -) Cr *dgomWZ oc d pi boged qdgWl d oj h j mWm W Z ZW pX oc` r Wgnj aWef`nr dc ch* .

(误译) 我就把这棵筛过的恶奴踏成泥灰, 拿他修补厕所的墙。

(应译) 我要把这肮脏的恶奴踏成泥灰, 拿他去涂抹厕所的墙壁。

上面这句英文出自莎士比亚著的《李尔王》第二幕第二场第七十二行 (*Ed b FeWm* II, ii, 2-), 而译文是梁实秋的手笔。梁氏把原句中的 *pi Xj g`Z* 一字照字面的意思译为“没筛过的...(i j o ndo`Z)”, 拿来形容人实在费解。凡没有筛过的谷类, 一定是粗糙不洁的, 引申而为污浊肮脏的。这句话朱生豪则译成“我要把这下流的东西踏成一堆替人家刷墙的泥浆。”他把 *pi Xj g`Z* 译为“下流。”, 对人来说虽比较适合, 但未免离原文太远了。他把“厕所...(ef`n)”译成“人家。”, 则太离谱, 无疑是误译。

(. .) Nc` =j Yoj mnYWoo` mZ oc` oc d bn oj oc` aj pmr d Zn, o dgoc` m r Whi “o W Wj h j ai WpnWgcchoj m g aod oc` r cj g YgW nmij h .

(误译) 直到教室中一点博物学的影子也没有了为止, 校长把所有的生物, 驱散到四方八面去了。

(应译) 校长把所有的动物驱散到四方八面去了, 所以教室中嫌童一点博物学的影子也没有了。

英文的 *odg* 一字并不是非译成“到z z 为止.”不可的, 尤其是在否定后应特别注意来翻译, 如 *B` r dgij o Yj h` odg` dcoj “Yg Yf* . (他要八点钟才来), 不可译成“到八点为止, 他不会来。”

## 5. 吟童餐徒般士等适辞姆的错误

(. /) CWoyc h e Zj d b dl

(误译) 我正在做着那个的时候, 乐抓想认吧。



(应译) 谁俗羞那样的事! (反语的用法)

(. 0)  $\text{Gch Wgi b gW} \sim \alpha \text{Wc Wh i j opm d b.}$

(误译) 这是一条不转弯的长长的小道。

(应译) 世上没有一条不转弯的路。

这是一句谚语，不能照字面来译的。世上既然没有不转弯的道路，坏的运道也不会永远坏下去的，所以这句实有“否极泰来”的意思。同样的表现法尚有  $\text{Gch W dgr d Z} \alpha \text{W Xgr ni j Xj Zt bj j Z.}$  意思并不是“歪风没有一个人吹得舒服的...”，而是“哪怕是歪风也有人吹得舒服...”，即所谓“人疾医生喜...”，任何坏的事情总有人得利的。

(. 1)  $\text{Nc} \sim \text{t nei oc ch } \omega \text{ Coqei } \alpha \text{t.}$

(误译) 他们把他骗到极惹弃脚毛了。

(应译) 他们活绝付葡检饰。

这句英文成语，意为“绝交”或“驱逐出社交场...”( $\text{j nonWdi}$ )，他例如  $\text{Bch and i Zn n} \sim \text{i oc ch qj ; j q} \sim \text{i } \alpha \text{t W} \sim \text{mc} \sim \text{r Wh Yj p m h Wm c Wg Z.}$  (在他受了军法审判之后，他的朋友就不跟他来往了)。这句老话的来源不明， $\text{; j q} \sim \text{i } \alpha \text{t}$  为英格兰中部的，一个以技术和工艺著称的小城市。

(. 2)  $\text{BWaj apn Zch Wm} \sim \text{Z r } \alpha \text{c ch , h t nega Wh oi b } \alpha \text{e n} \alpha$

(误译) 我们一半都不同意他，认宿是微餐其葡的人的虽二。

(应译) 我们一半都不同意他，认宿是比抢意母当中的虽二。

这句不合逻辑的话是从古以来就有名的。英文还有  $\text{Wh j i b j } \alpha \sim \text{m n}$  的说法，是从拉丁文  $\text{d } \sim \text{mWgW}$  来的。

(. 3)  $\text{B} \sim \text{h W Zd , } \omega \text{mWg CYWhe.}$

(误译) 认荣论怎样照飞他，他恐怕还是会死。

(应译) 那家伙死了宿荣人吩咐。

(. 4)  $\text{CYj pgZ i j o m Yj gg Yo ch i Wh} \sim \omega \text{ nWqe h t gte.}$

(误译) 为救认的况, 我也不能想起他的名字。

(应译) 荣论怎样我也想不出他的名字来。

此语又可译为我要我的命我也不能z ., 是一种加强语气的说明。

(/+) CdWæ nW c` dh c j i`no

(误译) 认敢披他是诚实可靠的。

(应译) 认想他是诚实可靠的。

(/, ) B` h pnoi eedn bj Wbj i Y .

(误译) 他必氏立刻前往。

(应译) 他坚苍立刻要去。

英文的 h pnoi ``Zn 6 d nchoji z -d b, 意为主张一定要怎样做. 参考: i ``Zn h pno 6 YW i j o c`gkz -d b, 意为不得不.

(/-) CWh l p d` W dWp g

(误译) 我完全错了。

(应译) 我十店迷盒。

这个 W dWp g 6 W Wg m 或 kpuug Z, 意为不知所措., 困惑.

(/. ) B` dh Wh W oadWh dt .

(误译) 他是一个有寒蓄的人。

(应译) 他是一个世寒子吹。

英文有许多表现法是相当含蓄的。j aaWh dt 6 i j Xg Xj m.

(//) Bt and h d b æ e nWan, c` æZ` Z j q` moc` Yndh.

(误译) 由童单阳偿岛, 他渡过了危机。

(应译) 尽挂特保, 渡过危机。

(/0) Fdd b, Wh ce doen, d æ` Yj pi am, c` Zj`ni j of i j r æ` Xpno g j aYdt gh.

(误译) 他因住在乡村, 免葡所羞的虽样, 不知都市生活的扰攘。

(应译) 荣论免父他是住在乡村里的人, 不会知道都市生活的忙乱扰攘。

句首的 Fḍḍ b 6 9n c` gđ` n. 接下来的 Wh c` Zj` n 一个插入句是为加强语气而重复的说法 (oWp̣oj g̣ bt)。

以上大多数的例句, 是从 A Wgṛ j m̄ct, G Wp̣bc Wh, ; Wc` m̄ 9. Bpsg̣ t, Jcđkj̄ on, Bđj̄ i, Qjj̄ ḡ; j h h Wb` m 等人的作品中引用的。

## (2) 中译英

任何翻译都有原文和译文的两面, 而难易有所不同, 不同的关键, 就在译文的文字, 是外语还是母语, 现在姑就华英互译来说, 如果原文是英文, 华人将它译成华文, 就比较容易, 因为华文是母语, 只要把原文的英文意思看懂了, 译出来的华文是鲜有不通的。反过来说, 如果原文是华文, 译者即令对原文的含义完全了解, 执笔来把它移译为英文时, 写出来的是外国语文, 总多少不太流利, 甚至行文不免错误。所以一般的情形是用母语译较易, 用外语译较难。

翻译不比自由写作, 因原文已把意思限定, 不能由译者爱怎么写就怎么写, 处处都得追随原文, 亦步亦趋, 原作者所说的一字一句, 翻译者都非彻底了解不可, 如有一知半解的情形, 译文必将有错, 至少未能达意。《世说新语》上有一则故事, 说杨修跟随曹操走过曹娥碑下, 看见碑背上题有八个字, 杨修一见就懂, 曹操却前进了三十里路才明白那是什么意思, 所以他对杨修说: 我才不及卿, 乃觉三十里。有人不了解这个觉.字, 以为作领悟.解, 所以译成 9n h t oWḡ i o d̄ ģ m̄ c W̄ t j p, CYj h k m̄ c` i Z d̄ Wc̄ mr` c Wq̄` b j i` c d̄ ot h đ̄ n.. 其实原文的意思是 我的才干不如你, 相差有三十里.. 这个觉.字应作差.字解, 所以我曾把它译成 CW̄h aW̄mX̄ c d̄ Z t j p d̄ oWḡ` i o Nc` m̄ d̄ h, Cā d̄ Z, WZd̄ā m̄ i Ȳ j a c d̄ ot ḡ l X̄ α` ` i p n.. 在翻译上译错一个字, 就完全不是那回事了, 正所谓差之毫厘, 失之千里... 呢。

我们把中文译成英文的时候，必须对英文有充分的表达能力，具有正确的英文知识（f i j r g Z b` j a? i b g h c），懂得英文的惯用法及文法。此外，还要有好的辞典，随时查阅，因为大部分翻译的错误，虽然是由英文知识不够而来的，但少数误译则发生于疏忽，临时未及查阅辞典所致。例如说 M c` r W h n j W b m W b c` m c p n X W Z o c W n c` q j f d j p o j i c` m Y c d z m i . 句中一个难字也没有，执笔翻译时决不会去查辞典的，随便就译成她因对丈夫生气，所以拿它给孩子们去了。如果查查辞典便马上查出 o W` d j p o j i ，有骂或伤害泄愤的意思，而上面这句英文就会正确地译成她因对丈夫生气，就拿孩子来作出气筒。

### 1. 碎照华惹熄堂而挠的错误

(,) 我想要认识格林先生。

(误译) C r W o q m`Y j b i d i G m A m`i .

(应译) C n c j p g z g f` q f i o r G m A m`i .

中文说的认识. 在上句中只能用英文的 f i j r 来译，如照字面直译为 m`Y j b i d i 就错了，因为英文的 m`Y j b i d i 6 f i j r W b W d , 例如 B` c W h Y c W b` Z n j h p Y c o c W b C Y W c W z g m`Y j b i d i c h .

(他变得太厉害，我几乎不认识他了。) 原本认识的人才可以用 m`Y j b i d i , 第一次相识只能说 f i j r 。

(-) 他父亲破产使他不能出洋去留学了。

(误译) N c` X W f n p k o Y t j a c h a W c` m c W h h W Z` c h d h k j n n d K g` q j b j W K n j W Z .

(应译) N c` X W f n p k o Y t j a c h a W c` m c W h h W Z` o d h k j n n d X g` a j m c h q j b j W K n j W Z .

英文的 k j n n d K g` 或 d h k j n n d K g` 一类的形容词，是要用 a d h . 来作主语，不可以用 人 . 作主语的。

(.) 如蒙早日赐复，不胜感激。

(误译) C n c W g W k m`Y d W` q` m h p Y c d a t j p r d g m`k g W b t j p m` W g d n o Y j i q` i d i Y .

(应译) Cnc Wg WkkmYdW` d q` n h pYc dtj p r dg mkg Wb  
tj pm` Wgd no Yj i q` i di Y`.

作感谢.解的 WkkmYdW` 是他动词, 必须接有宾语, 他例如, C  
bmWg WkkmYdW` tj pmf d Zi` m. (我非常感激你的好意。)

(/) 他跟一个百万富翁的女儿结婚了。

(误译) B` h Wmd Z r d c oc` ZWpbc o` mj aWh dg i Wm.

(应译) B` h Wmd d oc d Wpbc oemj aWh dg i Wm.

英文 h Wm 一字普通是用作他动词的, 共有三个意思。

(,) 结婚, 包括娶和嫁, 例如 B` ch bj d b qj h Wm Gdn Qj  
i b. (他将娶王小姐为妻)。Mc` h Wmd Z W ? i bghc h W. (她嫁  
给一个英国人)。G W Yj pnd n h Wm ` Wc j oc` n (表兄妹可以结  
婚吗?) (-) 遣嫁, 娶媳, 例如 B` h Wmd Z c ch ZWpbc o` mj Wmd  
Yc h W. (他把女儿嫁给一个富翁)。B` h Wmd Z c ch nj i qj W Wm  
Yc d Yon ZWpbc o` m (他替儿子讨了一个建筑师的女儿做老婆)。

(.) 主婚, 例如 Nc` knl no ch bj d b qj h Wm oc` h. (牧师将  
为他们主婚)。如用 kWmd qj d 是表示已结了婚的那种状态, 如 Nj  
h W Z 9gY c Wj` X` i h Wmd Z aj pmt` Wm. (托孟和阿丽斯已结  
婚四年了)。Nc` t bj o h Wmd Z nj j i W o` moc W. (那以后他们随即  
就结婚了)。

(0) 他是一个初级中学的教员。

(误译) B` ch Wo` Wc` mj aWepi qj m d c nYcjj g

(应译) B` ch Wo` Wc` mW (或 d) Wepi qj m d c nYcjj g

(1) 我将用电报把结果通知你。

(误译) Cr dg d aj n h tj p oc` mnpgo Xt o` g bnW.

(应译) Cr dg d aj n h tj p oac` mnpgo Xt o` g bnW.

(2) 我昨天跟你讲的那本书要我拿给你看吗?

(误译) Mc Wg Cncj r tj p oc` Xj j f r c dYc Cqj g tj p t` no` m  
ZW?

(应译) Mc Wg Cncj r tj p oc` Xj j f Cj gZ tj p oat` nò nZW 7

(3) 健康比财富可贵。

(误译) B` Wgc dh kmYd pn oc W r` Wgc.

(应译) B` Wgc dh h onæ kmYd pn oc W r` Wgc.

(4) 他年轻时的勤勉，使他获得今日的地位。

(误译) Bch Zgb` i Y` d c dh tj pi b` mZW n h WZ` c dh r c Wb  
c` dh qj ZW.

(应译) Bch Zgb` i Y` d c dh tj pi b` mZW n c Wh h Wde c dh  
r c Wb c` dh qj ZW.

(, +) 我哥哥是一个跳舞迷。

(误译) Gt Xnj oc` mch WZW Y` h W dW

(应译) Gt Xnj oc` mc Wh Wh W dWcomZW Yd b.

表示对某事的着迷或狂热，英文说 h W dW，但这个名词不能作主格补语用，只能作动词 c Wj` 的宾语用。他例如 B` c Wh Wk` nà Yo h  
W dWj mWh Xj j f n. (他有收集珍本书的狂癖)。

(,,) 新加坡有好多人口?

(误译) Bj r h W t kj kpgWdj i c Wh Ml bWkj m7

(应译) Qc Wb ch æe kokpgWabi oaMl bWkj m7

£人口.的英文 kj kpgWdj i 是不加an.而造成复数的，所以不能用 h W t，但有时可以加不定冠词，如 Ml bWkj m c Wh Wq` m gWhb` kj kpgWdj i aj mæn Wh W (新加坡以面积来说人口是很多的)。这个 kj kpgWdj i 当然也可作单数用，如 Jj kpgWdj i nd f n. (人口降低)。普通用作集合名词，不需加an.作成复数，除非是下列情形：oc` `Zp YW Z kj kpgWdj i n ja; cd WW Z DWkW (中日两国的知识阶级)。

(, -) 那语言中心有很多优良的设备。

(误译) Nc` gW bpWb` Y i on c Wh h W t ad` `l pdkh` i on.

(应译) Nc` gW bpWb` Y i om̄ cWh h pYc ad` el pdkh ei o.

作设备.解的`l pdkh`i o, 也和 d aj nm Wdj i 等字一样, 是不可以加an.作成复数的。

(, .) 假期从明天开始。

(误译) Nc` qWYWdj i X` bd n anjh oj h j nm̄r .

(应译) Nc` qWYWdj i X` bd n ooh omor .

句中的 oj h j nm̄r 是一个副词, 前面不可加用介词。

(, /) 那地方像江南三月的温暖。

(误译) Nc` kgW` ch Wh r Wm̄ Wh G WYc j aEdW bi W .

(应译) Nc` kgW`e ch Wh r Wm̄ Wh EdW bi W d G WYc .

不是同类的名词不能比较。

(, 0) 他后悔不该那样说的。

(误译) B` m̄k`i on oj c Wq` nWZ nj .

(应译) B` m̄k`i on oac Wqd b nWZ nj .

(, 1) 一到新加坡, 我的朋友就在机场等着接我。

(误译) I i Wm̄qd b Wb Md bWkj m̄, h t and i Z r Wh r Wbd b a j mh` Wb oc` Wkhj m̄.

(应译) I i Wm̄qd b Wb Md bWkj m̄, Capi d h t and i Z r Wbd b aj mh` Wb oc` Wkhj m̄.

(, 2) 他是我父亲的朋友。

(误译) B` ch W and i Z jah t aWc`m

(应译) B` ch W and i Z jah t dWc em̄n .

(, 3) 他没有告诉我说他什么时候回来。

(误译) B` cWh i joj gh` r c`i c` r dgX XWf .

(应译) B` ddi i jo o` gh` r c`i c` r opgd X XWf .

(, 4) 这学校有三千个学生。

(误译) *Nc` nYcj j gcWh oc m` ocj pnW Z nopZ` i on.*

(应译) *Nc en~~e~~ Wh~~e~~ oc m` ocj pnW Z nopZ` i on d oc` nYcj j g*

(- +) 我想向你借个电话好吗?

(误译) *G W CXj mj r tj p m o` g kc j i` 7*

(应译) *G W Cpne tj p m o` g kc j i` 7*

## 2. 梅乏套惹惹倒知娘而检的错误

(-, ) 王先生给了我们学生很多的课外作业。

(误译) *G m Q j i b b W q` j p m n o p Z` i o n h W t c j h` r j m n.*

(应译) *G m Q j i b b W q` p n n o p Z` i o n h p Y c c o h e r o n f i .*

(- -) 如果你想增进你英文写作的能力, 你必须尽量地多读。

(误译) *G a t j p r W o q d h k n j q` t j p m W k g d t j a r n o d b ? i b g d h c , t j p c W q` q m e W X j j f n W h h W t W h t j p Y W .*

(应译) *G a t j p r W o q d h k n j q` t j p m W b a d t o r n o b e ? i b g h c , t j p c W q` q m e W W h h W t X j j f n W h t j p Y W .*

(- .) 我们在阿尔卑斯山中的一个茅舍里住了将近十天。

(误译) *F j m W k j p o o` i Z W n r` n k` i o W b W h j p i o W d c p o d o c` 9 g k n.*

(应译) *F j m i e W h g o` i Z W n r` n k` i o W b W h j p i o W d c p o d i o c` 9 g k n.*

英文的 *nk`i Z* 是他动词, 不可说 *r` nk`i o W b o p o o` i Z W n*. 依照文法规则, 他动词要直接接宾语, 只有自动词接宾语时才需要加介词。

(- /) 去秋我去游了在杭州的西湖。



(误译) FWho Wpoph i Cqchb`Z Q`no FWf` r c`m` dh d BW b Ycj r .

(应译) FWho Wpoph i Cqchb`Z Q`no FWf` d BW bYcj r .

说到所在地我们都喜欢用 r c`m` 一个关系副词，其实英文对表地方的名词也是用 r c dYc 来代表的，所以例句中的 r c`m` 应改为 r c dYc，当然最好是把 r c dYc dh 全部略去。

(- 0) 我们在礼拜天爱睡早觉的习惯很难改掉。

(误译) Nc` c WXd oc Wb r` b` opk gW` ji Mpi ZWf h j m d b n dh ZdaYpgoj nc Wf` j aa

(应译) Nc` c Wb oabeod b pk gW` ji Mpi ZWf h j m d b n d n ZdaYpgoj nc Wf` j aa

(- 1) 看到哈姆雷特和赖尔蒂斯比剑的一幕使我非常感动。

(误译) Cr Wh q` m h pYc dh km`m` Z Xt oc` nY i` d BWh g` o. oc Wb BWh g` o abc on WZp` gr dc FW m` n.

(应译) Cr Wh q` m h pYc dh km`m` Z Xt oc` nY i` d BWh g` o. d r c dYc BWh g` o abc on WZp` gr dc FW m` n.

(- 2) 他的英文知识非常丰富。

(误译) Bch ? i bghc f i j r g` Zb` dh q` m nYc.

(应译) Bch f i or gedbe oa Ei bghc dh q` m nYc.

(- 3) 坐在花园中的篱笆上，一个黄蜂刺了我一下。

(误译) Mhod bji Wai Y` d h t bWZ` i , Wr Whk nopi b h` .

(应译) Mhod bji Wai Y` d h t bWZ` i , Cr Wh nopi b Xt W r Whk.

英文的分词片语，必须和后面的主语一致，nhod b 是 CWh nhod i b，所以主句中的主语必须是 C

(- 4) 他是这样说，但我想的不同。

(误译) B` nWf n nj , Xpo Coc d f Zda` mi o

(应译) B` nW` n nj , Xpo Coc d f *datænei* æt .

(. +) 我或许明天要出门去。

(误译) Cnc Wgggf` g g` Wq` cj h` q h j mjr .

(应译) Cnc WggknobWbg g` Wq` cj h` q h j mjr .

但可说 Cnc Wggqent *gfe* g` Wq` cj h` q h j mjr . 原有误译句中的 *gf` g* 是形容词, 如作副词用则常伴有 *q` m* 或 *h j no* 的字样。

### 3. 手白惯田徒倒而检的错误

(. , ) 我希望我的父母长寿。

(误译) Ccj k` h t kW` ni æn qj gq` g i b.

(应译) Ccj k` h t kW` æi æn r *dygde* g i b.

英文动词有一定的惯用法 (Yj m` Yo p nWb`), 有的后面可接不定词, 如 Cr W otj p æ Wæi d æ` h` ` æd b. (我要你去开会), 有的后面要接动名词, 如 Bj r YW` r` Wqodl h Wf d b h choW` n7 (我们要怎样才能避免犯错?) 还有的后面一定要接一个子句 (YgWp n`), 如本例所示, 但 *cj k`* 也可接不定词, 如 Ccj k` qj n` t j p nj j i WbWd . (希望不久再见)。

(. - ) 那教授毕生献身于英文学的研究。

(误译) Nc` knj a` m j mZ` qj o` Z c h r c j g` gæ` qj n æpZt ? i bg dæc gb` nWp m`.

(应译) Nc` knj a` m j mZ` qj o` Z c h r c j g` gæ` æ æ e n æp d t o æ ? i bg æc gb` nWp m`.

据惯用法 *Z` qj o` qj* 后必须接名词。

(. . ) 我们期待着明天见到你。

(误译) Q` W` n g j f d b æ j m WæZ qj n` t j p qj h j mjr .

(应译) Q` W` n g j f d b æ j m WæZ æ need b t j p qj h j mjr .

(. / ) 我要一星期后才能够去。

(误译) CncWgX` Wkg` qj bj Wò mWr ``f.

(应译) CncWgX` Wkg` qj bj d Wr ``f.

在惯用法中 Wò m指过去, d 指未来。

(. 0) 大家都反对那计划, 连我本人也在内。

(误译) ?q` mXj Zt, i j o`sY ko h t n` g, r Wh WbWl no oc` kgW  
i .

(应译) ?q` mXj Zt, i oo esYekod b h t n` g, r Wh WbWl no oc`  
kgW .

英文的`sY ko一字, 如用于否定时, 或用在 Wg Wn或 r dcj p  
o之后, 要改为`sY kod b, 例如 Nc`t j æ i r`i o qj oc` oc` Wmè,  
Wg Wn`sY kod b; d Z` mngW (她们常去看戏, 总是不带辛德雷拉  
去)。

(. 1) 除了前去之外, 没有别的办法。

(误译) Nc` m ch i j j oc` mr W j k` i Xpo qj bj .

(应译) Nc` m ch i j oacemr W j k` i ocW qj bj .或 Nc` m ch  
i o r W j k` i bpo qj bj .

(. 2) 他因盲肠炎开刀了。

(误译) B` cWh X` i j k` nW Z aj mWkk` i ZdYdch.

(应译) B` cWh X` i j k` nW Z pko i aj mWkk` i ZdYdch.

(. 3) 你的行为不容有何借口。

(误译) Rj pmWoj i WZh dn i j `sYpn` .

(应译) Rj pmWoj i WZh dn oai j `sYpn` .

英文的动词常是既为自动又为他动, 不过意思不同罢了, 如 WZh  
d一个动词, 用作自动时作&容许.解, 所以接宾语时要加& a.; 用作他  
动时作&承认.解, 如 WZh d Wh choW` (承认错误)。

(. 4) 那工作被认为满意。

(误译) Nc` r j m ch m bWZ` Z nWchaWoj m.

(应译) Nc` r j nfi ch m̀bWZ` Z Wn nWchaWoj m.

(/+ ) 你既不对也不错。

(误译) Rj p Wn i j o nbc o i j m r nji b.

(应译) Rj p Wn i j o nbc o i j m Wæ t op r nji b.

(/, ) 深情厚谊, 存没俱感。

(误译) Rj p m f d Zi ` n m r dg ap gt X` W k m YdW` Z Xj oc Xt oc  
` l p d f W h r ` gg W h Xt oc ` Z` WZ.

(应译) Rj p m f d Zi ` n m r dg ap gt X` W k m YdW` Z bo oc Xt oc  
` l p d f W d Xt oc ` Z` WZ.

(/- ) 你和你兄弟一样强壮, 可能比他更为强壮。

(误译) Rj p Wn W h n nji b, dai j o n nji b` m oc W t j p m X n j o  
c` m

(应译) Rj p Wn W h n nji b W h t j p m X n j o c` m dai j o n nji b e m  
oc W c` d h

(/.) 我怀疑这事是否真确。

(误译) CZj pXo oc Wb db ch onp` .

(应译) CZj pXo r ce ac em db ch onp` .

在否定及问句后则用 oc Wb, 如 CZj i j o Zj pXo oc Wb db ch onp` .  
(我相信这是真的)。Q c j Zj pXo n oc Wb db ch onp` 7 (此事真确无人  
怀疑)。

#### 4. 酒田套惹餐徒而检的错误

(//) 尽管是一个大学生, 我兄弟连一封英文信都写不好。

(误译) G n k d` j a W Y j gg b` n op Z` i o, h t X n j o c` m Y W i j o r  
n d` W ? i b g h c g` o o m k n j k` n g t.

(应译) Nc op bc (c` d h) W Y j gg b` n op Z` i o, h t X n j o c` m Y W  
i i j o r n d` W ? i b g h c g` o o m k n j k` n g t.

成语 *d nkɔ̃ j a* 虽则有“虽然”的意思，但在此不可以用，因为 *d i nkɔ̃ j a 6 i j o q X km̃q̃ i ò Z Xt*，即不为困难或障碍等所阻，例如 *Nc` t r` i o j p o d nkɔ̃ o a o c` nWl*。（不顾下雨他们还是出去了）。*Q` npYY` Z` Z d nkɔ̃ o a Wg Z d d Y p g d n*。（我们虽遭遇种种困难，仍然获得成功）。

（/0）看电视，打网球，每个礼拜天就是这样度过了。

（误译）*Q c W r d c r W Y c d b o` g q h j i W Z r c W r d c k g W d b o` i i d h, C n k` i Z` q` m M p i Z W*。

（应译）*C n k e i d` q` m M p i Z W r W Y c d b o` g q h j i j m k g W d i b o` i i d h*。

据 *B j m Xt* 的解释，这个 *r c W r d c z z r c W r d c* 的成语，是用于 *X o r` i q W d p n Y W p n` n* 的，最后一字尤其注意，所以中文可译为“半因z z 半因z z ...”，如 *r c W r d c j q` m j m W Z (r c W r d c) p i Z` m j p m h c h` i o, c` a` g g d g*（半因工作过度，半因营养不足，他病倒了）。

---

① 钦定《圣经·马太福音》第二十三章第二十四节说，*R` X g l Z b p d Z` n, r c d Y c n a n W l W o W b i W o, W Z n r W g j r W Y W h` g* 英国新译的 *N c e H e r E i b g h c B d g e*，则改译为：*g l Z b p d Z` n! R j p n o n W l j a a W h d Z b`, t` o b p g k Z j r i W Y W h` g* 可知希伯来原文的意思是“滤掉...(*n o n W l j a a*)”；而不是“无谓纷扰...(*n o n W l W o*)”，可是钦定《圣经》早已成为英文的经典，错也错成了典故，所以 *n o n W l W o W b i W o W Z n r W g j r W Y W h` g*，即成为 *h W` h p Y c a p m W k j p o g b o g k` Y Y W Z d g n, X p o Y j h h d b j a i n` n j a m W g h W b i d p Z`* 或 *j q` m n o c h W` g b o g o c d b n, r c d g i` b g Y o d b o c` b m W o m*（斤斤于小事而反忽视大事；拘泥细节而甘冒大不韪；见秋毫之末而不见车薪）的意思了。英文的 *n o n W l W o* 有二义：（，）*p n` b m W o` a j m d a m d b o j h j q` (W j X e Y o)*；*k p n c j m k p g g c W l Z W o*（用力拉；努力于），（-）*c W q` p i p n p W g b m W o Z d d Y p g t W Y Y k o d b 5 h W` W a p m W k j p o*（无谓纷扰）。中文《圣经》倒是译对了：“你们这瞎眼领路的，蠅虫你们就滤出来，骆驼你们倒吞下去。...”

## 十八 二竖的故事试译

原 文

(《修长》)

语 译

英 译





## 附录 翻译实例评述

### 例一

一九七一年二月十三日新加坡国立大学副校长杜进才博士，针对最近一些新大教授在报章上批评新大办理不善的事，特召开一个新闻记者招待会，用英语发表谈话，加以解释，其中有一段原文是这样的：

9n`Wgt Wh, 413, Jnjàmj mJpYY` oodd ZdYW` Z qj  
h` ocWoc` rjpgZ ijor Woqj noWt qj g i b d Ml bWkj  
mè Whc` r Whd chh dZ-aj m d n W Z ocWoc h kpnkj n` j  
amh Wl d b d oc h pi d q` m d t r Wh X YWp n` c` Yj pgZ a  
i Z oc` oc h` qj Zj chj r i m n` W h c, nj h` oc d b r c d c  
c` rj pgZ i j o X` W g` qj Zj d W pi d q` m d t d oc` O.  
M, X YWp n` j a oc` n W o n W W Z oc` g W h` Wh j pi o j a o`  
W c d b j i` c W h qj c W Z g`.

第二天新加坡《南洋商报》刊出杜博士谈话的全文，上面一段英文的翻译是这样的：

吩童鄙撒船教怕的事吗，葡在虽悔敬八年味告莘认，葡很比够在食函坡居景欺回，而葡在食驰逗景的赖的，是因为葡可有逆好，以从事葡拜人的研恢，而这盛前件葡在美国驰学是荣倒得到的，因为老鼠的烈显规教学姆的到险渡担。

【评述】一开头的 *Wh`Wgt Wh*，就未译出，接着下面的 *Wh c`r Wh d cch h dz-aj m d n* 一句，也完全漏译。前者说那是老早的事，后者说那教授不想久留的理由，二者似乎都不应不译。英文说的 *ji`n aj m d n*，是指年龄在四十一岁到五十岁的十年间。还可细分为 *`Wn g aj m d n*，是四十二、三岁，*h dz-aj m d n* 是四十五、六岁，*gW` aj m d n* 是四十八、九岁。

在句尾上说的 *oc` nWb nWY`*，被译成“老鼠的品种...”，是非常荒谬的。这样一来，使得这个译文变成一派胡言，毫无意义。美国大学的教授并不人人都是生物学家，可说和老鼠的品种毫不相干。*nWY`* 一字也只能译成“族类...”，例如 *oc` nWY` jaæhc`n*（鱼类），*oc` r d b`Z m WY`*（鸟类），而不可译成“品种...(f d Z, nj m, bnWZ` )”。那么，所谓 *oc` nWb nWY`* 到底是什么意思呢？*Qebnæm`n Her Qongl BdYabi Wn t oaæe 9h enaW Fw bpWbe* 解释为 *TMgW bUWanW oY nYpnm j mh WZ nYnW Xg`*。（狂乱的疾走或是疯狂的争夺），这个意思似乎和杜博士说的不大适合。我们不妨再看一九六八年新出的美国字典 *LW doh Bopne BdYabi Wn t oaæe Ei bgthc Fw bpWbe* 上的说明：*9i t`scW pnod b, pi mh d d d b Wodqdt j mnèbp gWnnj p d`*。（任何消耗精力而无间断的活动或例行公事），这意思就对了，正是指的美国那种徒劳无功的竞争。如果我们再进一步查阅一下 *BWjngZ Q`i æ j mæ* 和 *MpWb` :`nb Fg`si`m* 合编的 *BdYabi Wn t oa9h enaW MjW b*，更可查出这句俚语的来源了：

(,) 9i t ej X, j YYpkW d i, j ædY, Xpnd`nn, j mr W jagh d r c dYc W d i W Z W d q d t n`h h j m d h k j m W i o æ W nk`Y d Y m n p g n j m b j W n. F n j h oc` on W d d i W d ch W b` j a g W k j n W j m n j Z`i on X`d b k g W Y Z j i W a m`W Z h c g g j o`no oc` d n`i`n b t 5 c`i Y` a b., W n W Y` j i W a m`W Z h d g

（孟父工作，惜肃，孟务，事吗故挠古方式的始为图古促，似乎般其宽眉的结肤故赖抱更为险俗。由童长统的概念在念验室中把老鼠底在踏怖姆以测验其幻街，而引哪为荣止境的踏怖竞民。）

(-) 9i t j YYpkW d i, k g W Y, nj Y d W g b n j p k, j mr W jagh d r c dYc n p Y Y m n ch X W` Z j i Y j h k` o d j i W Z Y

j h k W h j i j a j i ` n a d W Y d W Z h W n W n p Y Y n n r d  
c o c W j a j o c ` n m , d b i j n d b k ` n m j i W g W W c d q ` h ` i o W Z n  
W c h a W W o j i .

(孟父惜肃，幢位，社勤故挠古方式的餐翻，是以必街  
姆付入街姆的条纽，图别人竞争故般较为基产的，比飞二人的  
餐就付满型。)

(.) 9 i t Y n j r Z ` Z g Y W g , n Y i ` , X p n d ` n n , j m n j Y c  
W g a p i Y o j i j a b n W Y j i a p n d i . I m b . W ` p k c ` h d h d h k  
g d b o c W n W d t j m k n j Z p Y o d j ` r j n i d h d h k j n n d K g ` d n  
p Y c W g Y W g , n Y i ` , X p n d ` n n , j m n j Y d W g a p i Y o j i . , 40  
, : f O n p W g o c ` t n W c ` m c W q ` X ` Y j h ` r ` W h j a a n d j g p  
n Z W n , o c ` n W n W j a j n d W h n j Y d W g b W c ` n d b n . ? Z  
i W Q d z ` m 9 J , H . R . , = ` Y . , / .

(孟父杂沓的场所，差事的幢点，发挠的事件，故鼓聚  
的社轰瑰够。原检是虽显委婉的披倒，喜在这显场所，幢  
点，事件故瑰够中，比可牢有健全而挠产的工作。虽悔肉虽  
年十当月十四日黎湾美阶社王蛋楚报道：f葡们强膊对童玛洞  
的湾够，付篮盛流强社轰瑰够的审赴幻街而荣好呆的古促，  
钝到厌击起检了。.)

(/) M k ` Y c h , W Z W Y j m Z W Y d b k W n t . M o p Z ` i o W  
i Z o ` i W b ` p n ` .

(跳辱故辱够。学挠付十几岁的麻年田徒。)

(0) 9 a p g g Z m n n m q d r . Q . Q . 9 n h t p n ` .

(盛装检晚。第当忱世互驰战逆的军田徒。)

【改译】早在一九六八年，布西迪教授就对我说过，他不想在新  
加坡待得太久，因为他已经是四十五六岁的人了。他又说他留下在本  
校的目的，是为了他可以找到时间做他自己的研究，那是他在美国大  
学里所不能做到的，在那儿一个人必须应付那种徒劳无功的竞争和大  
量的教书工作。

## 例二

有一次釜山大火，《台湾报》上列出火烧的情形如下：

每小逆贫率敏十脚的强搭，鸟火切谢虽二低屋延烧至经  
虽二建筑入，夹杂的突朋发差火识，驰部店市满好身在底烟  
花。

后来看到同一消息的英文报道，原来如此：

9 . +-h dǝ W c j p m r d Z əŋh `Z ɔc` aɬn aŋh j i `  
Xp dǝ d b ɔj ɔc` j ɔc` m W Z nWl `Z nkWɬn gɬ` W aɬn r j n  
f n Z d k g W j q` m h p Y c j a ɔc` Y d t ɔc m W i d b ɔj d i j m`  
ŋ j əj k n.

【评述】失火最怕刮风，因风能使火势蔓延，译文中却把一个重要的风.字漏掉不译，不说强风.，而说强度.，是令人莫名其妙的。夹杂的雨水发出火星.，变成水中喷火，更是笑话。原文中的 nWl 是动词，其主语为 r d Z，句子的骨干为 9 r d Z əŋh `Z W Z nWl `Z. 这个动词 nWl 为及物动词，有宾语的 nkWɬn，中文也有这样的用法，如《淮南子·本经》：昔者苍颉作书而天雨粟，鬼夜哭。ɔc m W i d b ɔj d i j m` ŋ j əj k n 6 ɔc m W i d b ɔc` ŋ j əj k n ɔc W d i j m` d.（威胁着不理睬它的屋脊）。这句话比较难解，所以被译者略去了。

【改译】时速三十里的强风，使大火从这间屋子蔓延到那间屋子，像放烟火一般地把火星散落到大部分的市区，威胁着那些袖手旁观的屋脊。

## 例三

曾慰译的《漫天烽火一将才》，是从美国《时代周刊》（*Nh e*）的 9 *MbglàmoaDnW Ye* 一文译出的。

（原惹）Nc`i gWho aWg HWqWm̀n kdYf`Z nr WhcXpYf ξ  
d b ; j g i`gZ` ; Whond n j q`mn`q`nWg b`i`nWn aj m= d i  
Xd i kcp, α` h j no ch kj nW o ad gZ Yj h h W Z d G Zj -  
; cd W

（味堂）童是在毛年秋天，纳档蛋很军把葡的惜位提高到不过了在纯包督几位很分的惜务，是玩战中最险俗的喜共分。

【评述】句中的主要人物竟不译出，而含糊地用一个他.字带过去，是译者最大的过失。他又把 kdYf`Z nr WhcXpYf gl b 译为提高职位.也是瞎猜的。《综合英汉大辞典》载有 nr WhcXpYf g m 一字，为虚空作威福者.或虚夸者.的意思。nr WhcXpYf gl b 6 (i.) α` WWo ddd n, Z` Zn, j mWZq`i opm̀n j a Wnr WhcXpYf g m (名词) 虚夸者的活动，行为或冒险。（WZe）Yc WmWo`mhodY j a Wnr WhcXpYf g m (形容词) 虚夸者的本性或特征。在上文中此字是作形容词用的，意为虚张声势的.，好大喜功的.。G Zj -; cd W 指法属印度支那，和现在的越南不同。法国在奠边府一役被越人击破之后，便只得放弃亚洲的这个殖民地回老家去了。这位守奠边府的军人，为他本国这块殖民地送了终，我们的译者还称赞他是一位将才，如非讽刺，便太好笑了。

【改译】于是，去年秋天，纳伐尔撇开了几位将军，而选中好大喜功的卡斯屈瑞上校来戍守奠边府，那是印度支那最重要的战地指挥任务。

（原惹）Ed qj òi Zpf`n, Wh WmcWg j aFnW Y W  
Z j i` j aFWW`òò`n j a dY`m, =` ; Whond n ej d`Z α` Fn  
`i Yc Wm t Wh WkndqW` (, 4-, ), bj o c ch Yj h h dndj i  
Wb YWqWgn j a dY`m`nYc j j g z

(味堂) 际屈瑞疲姆生是虽位倒国脱烹图辣斐楚很军殴下的军分，宿是虽二凡爵的还亲，虽悔当虽年，葡边函倒国军带当杯，其后同函入骑杯军分学生番读，z

【评述】辣斐德是法国的名将兼政治家，曾参加，221 年建国的美国独立战争，又在，234 年及，3. + 年指导法国革命，他生于，20 2 年，死于，3. / 年。卡斯屈瑞上校戍守奠边府，在，40/ 年五月失陷。时间上相差百多年，他怎么会是辣斐德手下的军官呢？分明是 ò` i Zpf`n 而被译成£一个公爵...，复数变成了单数。bj o c ch Yj h h dnd j i Wb YWqWgn j ædY m“ nYc j j g 译成£加入骑兵军官学校攻读...，也够荒唐了。Yj h h dnd j i 一字，从来没有读书的意思，在此是指£任命... £委任... £委任状... 全句意为在骑兵学校时，他才接到派命，出任军职。凡是有派令的才是军官，否则只是士兵而已，如 i j i -Yj h h dnd j i`Z 意为无委任状的，未受任命的。i j i -Yj h h dnd j i`Z j æd Y m(略为 H.; .I .)，意为军士。

【改译】卡斯屈瑞系与十个公爵，一个法国元帅和一个辣斐德将军的部将，都有亲属关系，他加入法军时是一个上等兵（一九二一年），后来在骑兵军官学校受命出任军官，z

(原惹) Nc` d i YWpbc o æh. = ` ; W h o n d n e p n o j n Z` m Z h j m` Yc W h k W b i` .£Q`“ggad ch j p m h` W g .c` q g z c c` d i f``k` m£M i Z a j m o c` æh Yc d a .Nj æ` Yc d a c` n i W k k` Z : £N p m i t j p m c j n` n j i æ c h c j p n` . : p o d a C h i j o W X g` q j æ d c h h t g p i Yc , C g g c W q` t j p n c j o ...

(味堂) 这二酒店高每着弹美烧起检，这逆际屈瑞疲吸在俗虽八奢槟酒的当口，葡从秘幢披：£认们吃完了忘披。.. 葡告苹酒店努毋披：£把这八酒轰发救火带长。.. 须后同对救火带长尖难厚喊披：£把这盛救火两侈管口步深穷面，等到认比牢吃完这顿的逆，乐们忘坏检灭火好了。...

【评述】第一句中的 e p n o j n Z` m Z h j m` Yc W h k W b i` 意为£要了更多的香槟酒... 被误译为£正在要一杯香槟酒的当口... 把过去译成现在了，而且 h j m` 也不是£一杯... d i f``k` m 不是侍者（男侍者为

r Wb`m 女侍者为 r Wbm`m) , 而是酒店老板。n`i Z aj moc` adn` Y cda, 是差人去把救火队长叫来.,, 如何可译成差把这杯酒交给救火队长.呢? 译者连惯见的成语 n`i Z aj m是什么意思都不明白, 居然大胆译书, 翻译工作的不被人重视, 由此可见。我们说 n`i Z aj mWZj Yqj m 不是差为医生送去.,, 而是差去请医生来.,, n`i Z aj m是差人去请某人来的意思。Npm tj pmcj n`nji oc`h cjp n`, 不是什么差把这些救火皮带管口朝向外面.,, 而是差对这屋子浇水.. Cgc Wq` tjp ncjo, 译为差你们再进来灭火好了.,, 简直是没有常识的译语。屋子中弹起火, 只能在外面灌救, 怎样可以差进来灭火.呢? 这句译文与原文风马牛不相及, 全是瞎猜的。

【改译】那酒店着火了。卡斯屈瑞刚叫了更多的香槟酒。差让我们吃完饭再说吧, .他对酒店老板说, 差人去把救火队长叫来。.他用尖快的声音对那队长说: 差把你的水龙头对准这屋子浇。假如我不能在此吃完这顿饭, 我就要把你枪毙。...

(原文) 9i dh k`opj pn h W, r dc oW i t`t`n, WYj i noW o r d` apnc ji cch Yc``f n W Z Wqj r`nd b m`kpoWqj i Wh WgWZd n`h W z z

(曾译) 他是一个脾气非常暴躁, 具有黄褐色眼睛, 脸颊上时常因饮酒而转成红色, 又是一个享有盛誉。

【评边】差他是一个脾气非常暴躁.及差又是一个享有盛誉.两句译文的后面, 都非加上差的人.二字不可, 否则是不通的。dh k`opj pn 是从名词 dh k`opn 变来的形容词, 名词意为差冲力.,, 差推动力.,, 形容词意为差冲动的...(nWhc) , 差猛烈的.或差激烈的...(qj g i o) , 不应译为差脾气暴躁的.,, (附带说明一下, 差燥.应作差躁.,, 火旁的燥当干字讲, 足旁的躁才是性子很急, 坐立不定的意思, 成语有性情暴躁, 心浮气躁。)最后的 Wh WgWZd n`h W 未译, 致使译文意念不全。

【改译】他是一个勇猛的人, 生着一对黄褐色的眼睛, 两颊常呈酒晕, 而且又是一个很有名的善于对妇女献殷勤的男子。

(原惹) Qc`i c` npi n pk qj g WZ WYc Wb`, 9gg i n, ...= `; Whond n c Wh X`i c` WZ qj ncj po XWf, 9Qc Wb`

oc` c`ggWn tj p r Wbd b aj n7 =j tj p `sk`Yo oc` `i`h t  
qj n`i Z tj p qd g on7 A d j` oc` XWhoWZn oc` bpi ....

（味堂）在葡精导作战逆，老是对篮盛怕死的士杯披：  
乐们跟等什抗？等敌人们检侮辱乐抗？..候着葡薄况令修  
通：乐把枪发这盛寒骨们。...

【评述】9ggi n是一个法国字，意为乐来，让我们冲..这是卡斯屈瑞向后面的军队回喊的话。所谓乐老是对那些怕死的士兵说..是译者瞎裁的。qd g o是紫罗兰花，大约译者看成 qd g i o（凶暴的）或是 qd g W`（冒渎，侵害）了，故译成乐侮辱..最后一句乐把枪给这些家伙们..简直正合了意大利人说的 NnWZpoj mlonWZdj ml，翻译的人就是叛徒，司令官叫乐杀敌..现译成把枪给敌人，自己缴械，不是叛徒又是什么？XWhoWZ 原意为乐私生子..乐杂种..在此指敌人。

【改译】当他领队冲锋的时候，卡斯屈瑞便喊回来：乐来吧，冲啊！你们还等什么？难道你们想敌人会送花来吗？杀死那些杂种呀。...

（原惹）Ch h WypgW`g YgWZ, bWngW Z`Z r dbc nj h`  
- + YWh kWbi Z`Yj nWdj i n, nY`i o`Z r dbc ncWqd b g o d  
i , r`Wbd b WXnbc omZ YWk W Z ncWZj r`Z Xt WGj nj Y  
YW j nZ`ngt YWmmd b mZd b Ynj k W Z YWXd` , z

（味堂）对净的衣服，连姆了还当十系叔章，切戴虽刺  
砰亮的敢命军看，殴中膊袭摩洛恶人骑马侈的马鞭图极宾  
枪。

【评述】句中 nY`i o`Z r dbc ncWqd b g o d i 被筛掉了。W Z ncWZj r`Z Xt WGj nj YW j nZ`ngt YWmmd b mZd b Ynj k W Z YWXd`一句原文，译者既不懂 ncWZj r`Z Xt 的意思，又把 j nZ`ngt（传令兵）一个名词看成副词了。所以译为卡斯屈瑞本人手中拿着马鞭与卡宾枪。做动词用的 ncWZj r，有乐附随..乐尾行..的意思，此处指卡斯屈瑞身边跟着一个摩洛哥人的马弁。

【改译】穿着整洁的军服，佩着二十次战役的勋标，带着润须香水的香味，头戴一顶鲜红色的军帽，并随身跟有一个拿着马鞭和卡宾



枪的摩洛哥随从。

(原惹)  $\text{B}^{\text{r}} \text{dgb}^{\text{b}} \text{ocdh}^{\text{n}} \text{gaf}^{\text{d}} \text{Z}, .\text{WZZ}^{\text{Z}} \text{Wj}^{\text{oc}} \text{m}^{\text{fj}} \text{mc}^{\text{}} \text{“ggYj}^{\text{h}} \text{XWf}^{\text{}} \text{Wb}^{\text{i}} \text{nWg}^{\text{}} \dots$

(味堂) 同有人披: 当葡凯授归检的逆候, 可牢她是虽位很军了。...

【评述】 $\text{B}^{\text{r}} \text{dgb}^{\text{b}} \text{ocdh}^{\text{n}} \text{gaf}^{\text{d}} \text{Z}$ , 又被筛掉了。可能已是...也找不出来源,  $\text{j m}$ 一字也没有译出。

【改译】另外一个补充说: 他要么就马革裹尸, 不然, 他就会变成一个将军回来。...

## 例四

美国 *Coggerin* 杂志刊出的 *JgWhe NWfe CWhe oaGe* 一文, 有罗裕及盛泉二人的节译, 题名同译为《新生》。

(原惹)  $\text{Mc}^{\text{c}} \text{WZ}^{\text{j}} \text{nZ}^{\text{m}} \text{Wkj}^{\text{pm}} \text{-YWx}^{\text{W}} \text{Z}^{\text{r}} \text{Wh}^{\text{c}} \text{j}^{\text{gzd}} \text{b}^{\text{dpk}} \text{qj}^{\text{oc}} \text{gbc}^{\text{oj}} \text{gj}^{\text{f}} \text{Wb}^{\text{ch}}$

(罗堂) 她厚了虽八篱咖蒂., 举在触封脚照着它。

(盛堂) 她深柜台姆俗了虽八咖蒂逃料, 举八在殴, 迎着触封呆视。

【评述】两人都译错了的就是  $\text{kj}^{\text{pm}} \text{-YWx}$  一字。这是法文, 意为  $\text{Yj}^{\text{aa}} \text{-kpnc}^{\text{m}}$  并不是咖啡, 而是在大餐时饮过咖啡后所进的一小杯  $\text{gl}^{\text{p}} \text{pm}$  (一种含有强烈酒精及香味的甜酒)。

【改译】她叫了一杯力曲酒, 举起在灯光下去看。

(原惹) Cni Wk k` Z h t g b c o` m X p o d r W h j p o j a a p c  
Z W Z n c` c W Z` Z h` W g b o g` b j g z o d b p h W X j X C Y j p g  
Z i " b` q` i b` o c j g z j a M c` g W p b c` Z W Z q j f d X W f W  
Z g b c o` Z c` m Y d W n o o` W Z h d`. f R j p c W q` q j p n` X j c  
c c W Z n, .. n c` n W Z.

(罗堂) 认按着认的迟火挂，但它棵有停，她发认虽二金的小球意，认南至比牢抓想它。她升着拿回毛，点了她付认的烟。

(盛堂) 认巡着迟火挂，点美了她们付认的奢烟。

【评述】 o d b p h W X j X 或 o d b p h W e b 或 o d b p h h t 或 o d i b W h t，是在 o d b 后加上一些无意义的尾缀而形成的，在口语中意为 r c W o - Z " t` - Y W g d b (那叫什么的的东西)，或有时指人的 r c W o n - c d n - i W h` (那个叫什么的人)。f 某先生.除了译成 G m M j - W Z - n j 之外，还可译成 G m N c d b p h h t.指物时如说 B d h b n W h j k c j i` c W h W g b o g` o d b W h t o W Y c W b` n o` m Y j n z n W p q h W d Y W g t. (他的留声机当中有一个叫什么的小玩意能自动地换唱片)。这个罗译不错，但他却把 b` o c j g z j a 译错了，这个成语在平常确是应该当 f 抓住.解的，不过在现在这句话中，却不能一成不变的来译，因为这时打火机分明在手，自不能再说 f 不能抓住它... 应译为 f 我甚至无法打开它... 因这个成语除 f 抓住.的基本含义外，还可引申为 f 操纵... f 掌握其用法.之类的意思。最后一句说的 f 你得用双手呀... 不应略去，因与前面的 C Y j p g z i " b` q` i b` o c j g z j a 有关。罗译除这两点外，别的都译得不错。盛译则张冠李戴，分明是她点火却译成我点火，其余漏译太多，不在话下。

【改译】我捺开了我的打火机，但没有油了，所以打不燃，她递给我一个小金的小玩意，我却没办法打开来。她笑着拿回去了，打出了火，点燃了她自己的香烟，又为我点燃了，她说：f 你得用双手才打得开呀。...

(原惹) Q g W q` n n j h W t k` j k g` r d c c W a n` g q` n  
G a t j p " q` b j o W c W a n` g a t j p " m i j o h p Y c b j j Z q W t j  
i`.

(罗堂) 它鸟篮抗许多人系呢下虽爱的谢认。假鸟乐系呢下虽爱，乐对孟父人村荣田。

【评述】盛译常整句不译，故未引出加以比较。罗虽译了这句，但译文是很难懂的，什么叫做~~£~~一半的自我...，非请教罗先生不可。也许译者本人也不明白。他不知这儿说的 ~~cW~~~~a~~~~n`~~~~g~~~~i`~~~~n~~，是指 ~~X`~~~~o~~~~o`~~~~m~~~~c~~~~W~~~~g~~~~a~~ (妻) 与 ~~r~~~~j~~~~m`~~~~cW~~~~a~~ (夫) 的 ~~cW~~~~a~~，即只剩一半的夫妻，~~n`~~~~g~~~~a~~ 当然是指人。

【改译】它（指战争）使许多人变成了孤寡，假使你变成了孤寡，你对任何人都没有多大用处。

(原惹) ~~£~~ po~~d~~~~h~~ ch kj mnd~~K~~~~g`~~ qj nqj k W Z Zj i j oc d b, .nc` nWZ.~~£~~CYW “o`q`i kgW oc` kdWj W t h j m` X Y Wp n` oc` h pndY ch nj apggja Wnj YdWdj i n. CYW “obj qj c c` kgW n r` r` i o qj b` oc` m Cb` o npaj YW Z W Z YW “c XmWc`. CYW “onoW Z X d b r dc k` j kg` X YWp n` r c W oc` t nW nj pi Zn gf` nj h pYc i j i n` i n`. CYW “ob` o d o` m n o` Z d Zj d b W t oc d b Yj i nonpYoch` X YWp n` db Wg n` h n nj mZdYpgj pngt apocg`....

(罗堂) ~~£~~可是篮比可牢枪下检，什抗宿比对。她披：~~£~~认南至比牢忘弹琴。坡薄什抗村鸟认想到葡。认对虽切村失了兴茅，葡们看检是篮抗可升的荣今z z ...

(盛堂) ~~£~~披检秘易羞逆难。认父尝比想枪顿虽下，把篮愁克的蚀势驱香对净，每后忘险食设拍以前的虽切各将。但是过毛的虽切，困比令人触景伤吗。她钝集撞披。

【评述】罗译用~~£~~随便什么都使她想到他...一句，来代替许多句子，未免太图方便了。盛译则是完全的自由创作，不是照原文翻译的，这只能算是窃取别人的意思自己来写文章，不能视为翻译。

【改译】~~£~~但是要停顿下来，什么事都不做，是不可能的，她说，~~£~~我甚至连钢琴都不能再弹了，因为那音乐使我发生种种联想。我们曾经到过的地方，我都不能再去。我去了要使我为之哽咽。我不能

和人们站在一起，因为他们说的话，听来多么没有意思。我没有兴趣去做任何有建设性的事情，因为这一切都好像徒劳无益，荒谬可笑。...

(原惹) ɛNc` t əj pi Z j po ɔ Wɔj ɔc` mk` j kg` i `` Z` Z  
ɔc` h , i `` Z` Z ɔc` dnc` gk, ..CnWZ.ɛGj no ch kj nɔW o j a Wɛ  
g ɔc` t g` Wm` Z ɔc` Wɔ Wk` nmj i kj nm` nm` nj i g` r c Wɔc` b  
dɔ` n W` W` , W Z ɔc` Wɔc` t r` m` g Yf d mɔc` W` nj h` r j h  
` i r c j `Z i` q` mX` i` g` q` Z Wɔ Wg...

(罗堂) ɛ葡们发伤其葡的人释俗她们，释俗她们的帮助，.认披，ɛ更险俗的是她们发伤虽二人，系牢拥有葡发头过的从撒，她们她般从检棵有爱吗的里人俗示福。...

(盛堂) ɛ她们知道徒每景恋过毛是棵有田处的，她们俗面对伤念，险食鼓起挠古的勇气。她们知道世互姆伤蚀的人该多，葡们特该为帮助别人而忘挠存下毛。量免披，有许多妨诞棵有人照飞，有许多寡短窝比到阔挠的工作等等，免肤乐对这盛工作发挠兴茅，认想乐虽次比够忘审财下毛了。...

【评述】 h j no ch kj nɔW o 应译为ɛ最重要的.., 不是比较级，不可译为ɛ更.. r c j c WZ i` q` mX` i` g` q` Z 是ɛ从未被人爱过.., 不是ɛ从来没有爱情.. 盛译完全是自己在乱写，与原文无关，无可评述。

(原惹) Cc WZ ɔnj pXg` b` ɔd b ? gWd` j po j a h t h c  
i Z` q` i` r c dɔ` CZchYpnm` Z W` Wmcbi h` i o əj mWh WbWx  
i` Wm dYg` j i` G Z dWW Z JW` choW` .

(罗堂) 南至认气讨论搭付巴基疲奇的访人事务逆，认村难以很爱近了棘郎际。

【评述】 罗译将 W Wmcbi h` i o (派定的工作) 丢掉不译，意思便不同了。ɛ访问..不知从何而来？ 盛君则将整句删去，免得译错，被人批评。

【改译】即使我在谈论某杂志请我写的关于印度和巴基斯坦的文章时，我也难以把爱琳从心头撇开。

(原惹) Cr n̄jō` Wncj m̄ijō` gj ?gWl` oc`i W Z Wh  
f`Z cjr nc` r Wh b`ood b W̄gi b. B`mW nr`mr Wh Xm̄`u  
t, ch k`nm̄ji W̄g W Z `sWog Wh Cf i`r d̄r j p̄gZ X`. Mc`  
r Wh ncjr d b Zj ri W Z oc` onW n̄d̄ji r Wh kWl apg Xp  
onc` r Wh b`ood b oc`m̄.

(罗堂) 认施了虽二打筒发爱近，候到虽跌冷抽的回  
实，她披她安次了下检，断保是巧纪的，但是她她荒得到。

【评述】W Z Wh f`Z cjr nc` r Wh b`ood b W̄gi b 及 `sWog C  
f i`r 两句都被筛去没有译出。Xm̄`ut 是£活泼的... £欢乐的... £轻松的...  
也未译出。ch k`nm̄ji W̄g 基本意思为£无人格的... £无特殊人称  
的... 在此应为£一般性的... £空泛的... nc` r Wh b`ood b oc`m̄ 译为  
£她已经得到... 有点含糊。俚语 gj b`o oc`m̄ 有£成功... £了解... 的意思。

【改译】我于是写了一个短筒给爱琳，问她近况如何。她的回信  
轻松空泛，果不出我所料。她已经弛缓下来，这种转变是很痛苦的，  
不过，她已经成功了。

(原惹) Cḡ o d̄ Z n̄k. : por c`i W̄p̄phi YWh` W Z  
oc` ḡ W̄q̄ n r`m̄ X b d i d b gj op̄m̄ t`gḡr C̄oc̄j p̄bc̄oj̄ ε  
cjr nc`“Z gj f d oc` j nW b` W Z m̄Z W Z bj̄ ḡ j a oc`  
H`r ?i b̄ḡ W Z r j j Zn, 9i Z k̄m̄ōt n̄j̄j i C̄oc̄j p̄bc̄oj̄ a d̄ n  
j h p̄Yc Cr Wh̄ji oc` onWl̄ aj̄ m̄P` n̄h̄ji a

(罗堂) 认底下了这件事。可是当秋天到检逆，认想到  
她在食套耳践金公火敢树林脚很是免父的虽显状态。比回认  
她踏姆毛却课的火怖。

【评述】oc` ḡ W̄q̄ n r`m̄ X b d i d b gj op̄m̄ t`gḡr 未译。Co  
c̄j p̄bc̄oj̄ a d̄ n̄j̄ h p̄Yc (oc̄W̄b̄) 也未译，所以最后一句译文脱了节，

变得与前文毫不相干了。

【改译】我放下了这件事。但当秋天到来，树叶开始变黄的时候，我想到她在新英格兰的橙红和金黄色的树林里，不知是个什么样子。随即不久，我对这件事想得太多了，所以我就只好踏上开往维蒙的火车。

## 例五

一九五五年三月号的《读者文摘》上刊有一篇鬼故事 *Nce AdgH Wh ed FWqei dem*（《紫姑》），作者为；Wg；Wh`m 有一位署名覲业的人，把它译做《紫堇花》，在报纸副刊上发表出来，译笔歪曲得不成样子，现举出几个例子，以供大家研讨。

（原惹）9 àr t`Wm Wbj oc` kj nch Who`md WqdgWb` ocWb gl n X ndZ` dn gi`g r Wb`nm oWf`Z j æ`i WXj pc Wgbc` oW i t bchgr dc ctWYd oc`t`n W Z r c`Wt`gg r c Wm

（洋堂）表原姆程惧脚的邮婚婚长在富立休息逆，闲其中膊提到虽位宽眸驰眼，公发妇肤里健的故事。

【评述】句中 ocWb gl n X ndZ` dn gi`g r Wb`nm 是形容 qdgWb` 的，如果是在河畔休息的话，也应该是村落，而不是局长。从前的翻译家讲究信达雅，现在的翻译家就采用猜筛裁，读到覲业的翻译，证明确是如此。就在上面这简单的一句译文中，他也能运用到这三种法宝。他说邮政局长在河畔休息，完全是猜出来的。9 àr t`Wm Wbj 没有译，gi`g r Wb`nm 没有译，gbc` 没有译，ctWYd oc 没有译，这些都被译者筛掉了。£草原上.及£明眸大眼.是译者瞎裁进去的。WqdgWb` ocWb gl n X ndZ` dn gi`g r Wb`nm 应译£在那孤寂的流水旁边的村庄.∞ r Wb`nm 用复数指流动的水，溪流，江河，海洋，波浪等皆是。Mdggr Wb`nm npi Z`k.是一个成语，意为静水流深，引申为大智若愚，深思的人不大说话。gbc` 柔软的，易弯的。ctWYd oc 洋水仙，花为碧蓝颜色。rc`Wt`gg r 麦黄色的。

【改译】早几年，在那流水孤村中的邮政局长，常常谈起一个金发碧眼，肤色黄褐的，轻快活泼的姑娘。

(原惹) Nc` kj noh Who` mr Wh Wnj kc chodW6` Z b`i o`  
`h W , onWq` g` Z W Z pnXW` , h`h X` mj aWZchod bpchc`  
Z aWh dgt d oc`n` kWon.

(洋堂) 这位婚长先挠是二富有幽默钝的人入，寒蓄在程庄脚宿算是世寒。

【评述】 nj kc chodW6` Z, onWq` g` Z, pnXW` 三个字中没有一个字带有一点幽默感的，凭空加上这么一个意义不是瞎裁是什么？译者猜不出来就筛去，再瞎裁些东西进去补足。nj kc chodW6` Z 意为世故的，好矫饰的。onWq` g` Z 作形容词用，是说游历很广的。pnXW` (此字不可和 pnXW 相混，那是都市的)，文雅的，和蔼的 d oc`n` kWon (在那一带) 怎样可以拿来专指这个小村庄呢？

【改译】那位邮政局长出生于附近的一个世家，游历颇广，世故很深，为人和蔼而爱矫饰。

(原惹) Nc` kj noh Who` mr j pgZ nj h`och`nn` ch  
W Z oc` bchgkdYf d b XgWf X` nmd nji WcdgndZ` j mji W  
MMWopnzWf i dbc o, r Wgf d b oc` nj WZ qj WYj pi om ZW Y .

(洋堂) 就是这位婚长教能宿在野穷遇见她付葡的学挠们在采摘野花，故毋在森林中师殴贾辱着。

【评述】原文只说一个学生 (ch) ，为什么要译成“学生们...呢？XgWf X` nmd n 是一种浆果，不是野花。cdgndZ` 是山边，不是野外。WMMWopnzWf i dbc o 是很重要的，不宜略而不译。分明是“在路上走着去参加一个乡村的舞会...，竟被译成“在森林中携手狂舞着...，意义完全不同，笔下擅自造作。原文说的 r Wgf d b oc` nj WZ (走路) 的 r Wgf ，在此为他动词，类似用法有 B` gl f`Z ch Wm d h d` , W Z r Wgf`Z h` ngj r g Wgi b oc` kgWoj nm . (GW6 : ``nXj ch) (他

挽着我的手，拉着我沿月台走去）。跳舞会英文不必说 ZW Yd b kWn  
αt，单说 ZW Y 就行了。

【改译】那位邮政局长有时就会看见他（一个逃走的男孩子）同那姑娘在山边摘着黑莓，或是在一个礼拜六的晚上，在路上走着，同去参加一个乡村的跳舞会。

（原惹）Nc`m`r WbWbk r c`i αc` km`Wc`mkpgg  
`Z aηh αc` n`Yj i Z XWmngWgWq`i Z`m`q`i d b Zmnm Yj  
q`m`Z r dαc n`l pd n αc Wb bgl o`Z gf` Wb`αt non5 d r Wb  
Ypogr j aαc` ncj pgz`m.

（洋堂）差乎意穷幢竟有虽件写勋花里衣满校着意驰叫  
纺尺金币闪脾幢发着写命闪封。

【评述】n`l pd 一字，据《综合英汉大辞典》解释为：威尼斯之古金币（约值美金--0元），所以覲业要译为意大利古代金币...但他不想想一件捐给贫民的衣服，上面怎样会缀满着每个值美金二百余元的古金币的呢？谁有这样大方捐出这样阔气的衣服？何况无论怎样的阔人，也不见得要把金币缀满一身的。我们凭常识也不会相信世间有这种事，荒谬大胆的译者竟至形诸笔墨，其无常识可想。Wb`αt non（紫水晶）倒反而不译了。bWbk 是屏息，不是出乎意外。gWq`i Z`m香草名，因花为淡紫色，故用以形容颜色。

【改译】牧师从第二箱中取出一件袒胸露臂的紫色夜会服来，上面镶着一些小金属片，像宝石般闪闪发光，大家一看，全场为之哑然。

（原惹）Nc` Xj t n nqj kk`Z W Z Wbf`Z dαc`t Yj pgz  
bdq` c`mWgα. Mc` `Wb`ngt n`Wb Z c`m`gaX αr` `i αc`  
h W Z Wbf`Z dαc`t r`m`bj d b qj αc` nl pWb ZW Y Wb  
Mb ngd b Fpnm WY`.

（洋堂）幕年学挠们枪怖病询她是订欲端持葡们的怖赴够，旗知赖的幢相似后，她热吗幢姆怖，坐在两位幕年中好秀。



【评述】她只是问他们是不是到 Mò ngd b Fp m WY 去跳舞，并未深知目的地相似，因为目的地并不相同。bdq` c` mWgdo 是让她搭车（免费），并不一定赴会。nl pWm ZW Y 以两人为一组，四人相对合舞的一种跳舞。这些译者都猜不透只为筛掉。

【改译】那两位大学生把车子停下来，问她是不是愿意搭乘他们的车子前去，她很热心地登上车来，坐在他们两个人的中间，又问他们是不是到纯净炉去跳方形舞。

（原惹）9a` mZchYod b oc` Zndh` moc njpbc Zpnot r  
jj ZgW Z nj WZn nc` ad Wgt XWZ` cch qj ngj k X aj m` Wnc  
Wf nj ZgWkdZW Z oc Wd r j pgZ cWq` n` h` Z Z` n` m` Z  
cWZ d i j o X` i aj mWnWbb` Z gW Yp mWd j q` moc` nh W  
ggr d Zj r d oc` Zj j m

（洋堂）最后怖驶至凡酒力树林深处，看到虽幢妨揭茅屋，破烂得系有虽二小窗，怖在茅屋力枪下。

【评述】译文说茅屋破烂得只有一个小窗，一见便知是错误的，因为古语说得好，皮之不存，毛将焉附，一幢屋子只剩下一个窗子，那窗子是不是悬在空中呢？cWZ d i j o X` i aj m6 d d cWZ i j o X` i aj m 意为如果不是的话。

【改译】她指示车夫在泥土的山林路上走了好一阵子之后，终于达到了她的目的地，她要车夫在一所茅屋的前面停下来了。那屋子破落不堪，如果不是门上那小窗后面挂着破烂的空纱窗帘的话，你会以为是没有住的呢。

## 例六

美国现代作家海明威（? m` no B` h d br W , , 343° , 41, ）在一九五二年出版的《老人与海》（Nce I gl G W W d Nce MeW 获得

诺贝尔文学奖金，是现代的一部名著。中文有两个译本，一为辛原译，一为范思平译，后者较为忠实，但仍不免有可推敲的地方，如

(原惹) I i ɔ ch YdYg̃ ɔ` j gZ h W Yj p gZ n` ɔ` ɑ  
nc`n` t` W Z ɔ` ɔ j b m̃t npYf d b ɑhc ɔ Wb nr Wh Wh  
pi Z c h .

(什堂) 绕这虽冒的逆候，老人可以看见鱼的眼睛付它游着的虽双灰面鱼。

(盗堂) 这忱兜冒子，老人可以看见篮鱼的眼睛，跟有两前吸在驰鱼那姆的灰命的鱼，它们有逆绕着它游着。

【评述】辛原将 npYf d b ɑhc 译成乳鱼.是错误的，鲨鱼虽属胎生，但它是否经过哺乳阶段却很成问题，即使它有这一个阶段，它也不会跟着雄鲨鱼的，因为作者称这条大鱼用 c` 而不用 nc`，并且下面跟着的一句是 nj h` ɑh` n ɔ` t WbWc` Z ɔ` h n` g̃ n q̃ c h，更显明地告诉读者 npYf d b ɑhc 是指吸鱼.，不是鲨鱼的小鱼。范译两条吸在大鱼身上的灰色的鱼.，也不大妥当，因为他把 npYf d b ɑhc c 译成正在吸着的鱼.，所以把它的形容句译成它们有时绕着它游着.，不得不多加有时.两字。其实 npYf d b ɑhc，不一定要译成进行式，现在分词是可以当形容词用的，例如 nd bd b XdZn，不一定要译成正在唱歌的鸟.，而可译成鸣禽.，同样地 npYf d b ɑhc 也是可以译为吸鱼.的。

【改译】那鱼兜这一圈的时候，老人能够看到鱼的眼睛，和两条灰色的吸鱼绕着它游。

(原惹) B` q j f Wg c h k Wd W Z r c Wb r Wh g̃ ɔ j ɛ  
c h n ɔ m̃i b ɔ c W Z c h g̃ i b b j i` k n Z` W Z c` k p ɔ c b Wb W  
d n ɔ ɔ` ɑhc`n Wb j i t W Z ɔ` ɑhc YWh` j q` m j i q̃ c h  
n Z` W Z nr Wh b` i ɔ g̃ j i c h n Z` z z

(什堂) 葡梦着巧很那姆牢房挤差的最后虽丝街气，杰抢肃她鸣失的谢雄，虽非郎诞深鱼班发。鱼拉过检了慢慢深偿游检z z

（盗堂）葡收拾起葡所有的巧楚付残统的幻街，付葡回她鸣失了的谢傲，葡田这虽切检付篮鱼的纪巧对级。篮鱼到葡力包检了，侧着那子温密幢在葡力包游着z z

【评述】上面这句主要的部分直译是~~他~~他拿他所有的痛楚，残余的力量，和久已丧失的自傲这一切来和鱼的痛苦较量一下，看谁支持得久，谁熬得过谁..。辛译只注意到老人方面的力量，而忽视了那鱼对抗的力量。范译较为忠实，但~~和~~和鱼的苦痛对抗..，太直译了，苦痛二字太抽象，不切实。句尾叙述鱼身倾斜以后，再侧着身体在游泳。YWh`j q`m叙述鱼身倾斜。ji qj cch ndZ` 6 qj Wkj ndq i ji cch ndZ`叙述那鱼倾斜的程度达到侧面向着水底。nr Wh ji cch ndZ`是侧泳。这儿两个 cch 都是指鱼的，不可把它看作是指老人。

【改译】他要唤起久已丧失的自傲，忍住所有的痛楚，去克服那鱼临死的挣扎。鱼身倾斜了，它侧着身体缓缓地游着。

## 例七

《自由谈》五卷四期上登了一篇牧田夫译的《孤叶未凋零》，是从 I . B`i m 的短篇名作 Nce FWho Fe Wā（《最后一叶》）翻译出来的。现拣几节来研讨一下。

（原惹）G Wgtog` ZchomYo r`no j a Q Wnc d boj i M p Wñ cc` nom`on c Wq` np i YnWut W Z Xnjf`i cc`h n`gq`n d qj nh Wgnomkn YWg` Z fkgW` n..

（蓝堂）在华盛顿撒面有虽二小小街满，街道村搞脚搞涂幢缠在虽起，谢相轰叉，驶餐狭长前子，篮薄是所让~~满~~域..。

【评述】那个小地区（不是译者说的小小街区），不是在华盛顿之西，而是在华盛顿方场之西。这句中的 M pWñ 一字关系重大，岂可筛掉。如果不说方场，单说华盛顿，是很有问题的，因为美国的国

都叫华盛顿，英文说 Q Wħc d bǒj i = .; .,而美国西北部有一州也叫华盛顿，英文说 Q Wħc d bǒj i MbWḄ̄ , 二者都可略称华盛顿。译文中说的自相交叉.四字，是从文章后面另外一句中拿来的。至于 YWḡ Z 一字，译者把它当作另一类似语的 nj -YWḡ Z 来译出，当然也就错了。nj j YWḡ Z 译所谓.而 YWḡ Z 则只能译成叫做.或称为.。 kgWḡ 是指夹在通衢之间的短街，不宜译作区域.，而应译作街坊.，即里巷，英文的 ZchomYo 才可译作区域.。

à【改译】在华盛顿公园之西的那一带地方，街路纷乱破裂，自成一些称为街坊.的小区划。

(原惹) 9i Wħchoj i Y ZchYj q`mèZ WqWḡp WXḡ kj mnc  
Xḡḡtt d occh nom`a

(蓝堂) 在这前街道姆，虽二艺跑寒有发伤憾值的可  
牢。

【评述】可能.的英文是 kj ò`i ocWḡtt , 至于 kj mncXḡḡtt 应译作可能性.。这句译文很费解，到底是发现什么价值呢？

【改译】有一位画家曾经在这街上发现了一件难能可贵的事。

(原惹) Mpkkj n` WYj ḡḡ Yqj mr dḡc WXḡḡaj mkWḡ on,  
kWk`mW Z YW qWh ncj pḡZ, d onWḡ`nm d b occh nj pò` , np  
ZZ`i ḡ h`` occh n` ḡaYj h d b XWf , r dḡcj po WY i oc Wḡc  
i b X`i kWḡZ ji WYj pi d

(蓝堂) 量免披，虽二侈着虽拜希票彼毛方爵谁料，细  
纹付岛鄙的人，漫笔荒过这前街，够突每幢发伤杰虽二钱宿  
棵有花，葡谢贵同像回检了。

【评述】这一句译得完全把对象弄错了。译者把出卖颜料等画具的商人，看成购买那些东西的画家去了。那商人是来收账的，并不是来买颜料的。Yj ḡḡ Yqj m是收账的人。Xḡḡ是账单（支票应作 Yc`Y f），YW qWh是画布，kWḡZ ji WYj pi o是付账，不是花钱。

【改译】比方一个带着别人买了颜料，图画纸，画布的账单来收账的人，他要是走过这条路的话，就会突然发现他自己又走回到原来的地方了，而一文钱的账都还没有收到手！

(原惹) Mj , o j l p W d o j g Z A m ` i r d Y c P d g W b ` o c ` W h  
o k ` j k g ` n j j i Y W h ` k n j r g l b , c p i o d b a j m i j m o c r d Z j  
r n W Z ` d b c o ` i o c Y i o p m b W X g ` n W Z = p o Y c W o d Y n W  
Z g r m i o n .

(蓝堂) 这样的，虽群艺跑寒揭刻到这秀奇怪而纺旧的耳林威鲜程庄检了，葡们孰病着，票索着深把的窗户，十八世纪的屋糖，赋践式的小楼，付廉憾的低租。

【评述】立刻.的英文应是 W o j i Y ，原文中只说 n j j i ，应译为快.或不久.. k n j r g l b 不是巡查着.., 而是私下探索地走着.. b W X g ` 不是什么屋翼.., 屋子的翼英文叫 r d b , 是从主屋向两边伸出的部分。b W X g ` 是人字形屋顶的建筑，（尖顶屋两端的）人字形的墙，英文的解释为 o c ` k j d o ` Z k W o j a W r W g X o r ` ` i o c ` o r j n g k d b n d ` n j a W n j a 又 W o d Y n 是顶楼房.., 不应含糊地译作小楼.. 因为荷兰式的建筑，往往在那高屋顶底下，有一间广大的顶楼房间。还有这座村庄.的座字，也用得不恰当。座是计算高大物体数目用的词儿，如一座山，两座大楼。

【改译】所以对于这个奇妙古老的格林尼支村，那些画家们争求着朝北的窗牖，十八世纪的尖屋顶，荷兰式的顶楼房，和便宜的租金，而很快地就聚居拢来了。

(原惹) N c ` i o c ` t d h k j m ` Z n j h ` k ` r o ` m h p b n W  
i Z W Y c W d b Z d h c j m o r j a n j h M d o c 9 q ` i p ` , W Z X Y W  
h ` W d Y j g i t ...

(蓝堂) 每后葡们从敬前强输入了白蜡酒八，付虽两系摩封的词子，童是这样薄保餐了虽块殖块幢..

【评述】**dh kj m`Z** 在此只宜说是**运来...**，不好硬译作**输入...**，因为同在一个城里，不必大张旗鼓地输出输入呢。**k`r o`mh pbn** 是白镏的茶杯，锡和铅的合金叫白镏（应为金旁，不是石旁），用这种合金做的茶杯，不会打破。**h pb** 为直筒的大漱口碗似的容器，不宜盛酒，只合饮茶。**六条通** 是日本话，不应滥用于美国的街名。**摩光的碟子** 是一个什么玩意，译者自己恐怕也不明白。美国《韦氏新世界辞典》上有 **Yc Wd b Zhc 6 WkW r dc Wc`Wd b WkWWpn Xi`W oc dh, qj Yjjf ajjZ Woc` oWg`j mqi f``k ajjZ cj a** 意即轻便火锅。

【改译】随即他们从第六街运来了一些白镏的咖啡杯，和一二轻便火锅，便把这地方造成了一个画家的殖民地...了。

（原惹）**Gm Ji`phji dWr Wh i j o r c Wtjp r j p gZ**  
**YWg WYc d WmY j gZ b`i o g h W . 9 h d`j a Wgbo g`r j h W**  
**r dc Xg j Z oc d i`Z Xt ; Wd j m d Wu`kctm r Wh c WZg e**  
**WhbWh` aj moc` mZ-ah o`Z, ncj m-Xm Wc`Z j gZ Zpa m**

（蓝堂）递水先挠比是二所让旅暑的老绅士。虽二败函叫福尼竖撒风吹得排神了的幕里，绝比是这二怀着敢敢么切的老寒骨的对殴。

【评述】**YWg** 不是**所谓...**，见前节评述。**Yc d WmY** 分明是**义侠的...**，不可译做**谦逊的...**。**Wh d`j a Wgbo g`r j h W** 极言其细小瘦弱，不应略去，**少女** 不一定是 **gbo g`** 的，尤其不一定是 **Wh d`**（微小物）。句中 **Xg j Z** 一字未经译出，所以成为**被西风吹得瘦弱了的少女...**，实则 **Xg j Z** 在此为 **gh`** 或 **oc``m`i Y j a gh`** 的意思，**oc d i`Z** 不是修饰 **r j h W** 的，而是修饰 **Xg j Z** 的，说她生命脆弱，受不起肺炎病的打击。**u`kctm** 为希腊神话中花神的爱人，由它的气息开花结果，可见是一种温和的风。英国诗人歌颂春天时多提及它。不可译成**西风...**，因为英文的 **r`nord Z** 是温暖的，不像中国西风的寒冷。**mZ-ah o`Z** 译成**怀着红红拳头...**，中文不通，应译**满手血腥的...**，即手上染有血迹的杀人凶手。**ncj m-Xm Wc`Z** 是描写个性上很重要的形容词，译者不了解它，故只好筛去。它的意思是**呼吸促迫的...**，以肺炎病的症状拿来形容肺炎本身。**Zpa m** 暴徒。

【改译】肺炎先生并不是你所说的那种义侠的老绅士。生长在加州那和风中的，一个纤腰弱质的小妇人，实非那满手血腥，吸呼促迫的暴徒的敌手。

## 出版后记

后浪出版公司



后浪出版

CUP TOURNAMENT RECREATION COMPETITION CUP  
HARDINESS TEAM TRAINER CONTESTANT FIGHT SCORE HARDINESS  
SUCCESSFUL GAME HEALTHY CUP LEADERSHIP TEAM MATCH  
GROUP PLEASURE GAME SUCCESSFUL GAME SUCCESSFUL  
RECREATION PLEASURE GOOD SUCCESSFUL GAME SUCCESSFUL  
CLUB MATCH TODAY FUN HARDINESS RESULT ATHLETE FIGHT  
INTEREST TOURNAMENT TEAM PHYSICAL TARGET SPONSOR  
SUCCESSFUL RESULT SPONSOR COMPETITION  
TOURNAMENT HARDINESS SUCCESSFUL RESULT POSITIVE CLUB  
ATHLETICS TRAINER GOOD COI RECREATION PLEASURE CUP  
GAME CONTESTANT RECREATION CHEN GOCHUEN GET CUP  
RESULT LEAGUE GAME FUN CUP SUCCESSFUL FUN TEAM PHYSICAL  
HARDINESS POSITIVE HARDINESS MATCH CLUB HARDINESS HEALTHY  
CUP SUCCESSFUL HEALTHY COMPETITION RECREATION PLAYER  
LEADERSHIP MATCH PHYSICAL TEAM SCORE FIGHT CLUB  
TRAINER HARDINESS TEAM LEADERSHIP HARDINESS COMPETITION  
TODAY OLYMPIC RECREATION CUP GOOD GAME SUCCESSFUL  
COMPETITION TARGET FIGHT ATHLETE RESULT HARDINESS FUN  
PLEASURE SCORE TEAM SPONSOR TARGET PHYSICAL TEAM  
TOURNAMENT GROUP MUSCLE INTEREST RECREATION GROUP HARDINESS  
POSITIVE OLYMPIC GAME CONTESTANT RECREATION GROUP HARDINESS  
ATHLETE SUCCESSFUL PLEASURE FIGHT LEAGUE CONTESTANT CUP  
LEADERSHIP PHYSICAL LEAGUE LEADERSHIP GAME SUCCESSFUL PLEASURE CLUB  
CONTESTANT GOOD HARDINESS RECREATION PHYSICAL COMPETITION ATHLETICS  
RECREATION INTEREST SPONSOR CLUB POSITIVE RESULT GAME  
TEAM TOURNAMENT GAME CLUB HARDINESS LEADERSHIP CONTESTANT GOOD PLAYER  
COMPETITION ATHLETICS CUP GOOD

The Technique of Translation

# 翻译的技巧

钱歌川 著

Chien Gochuen

世界图书出版公司

# 翻译的技巧

钱歌川 著

## 版权信息

丨 书名：翻译的技巧

丨 作者：钱歌川

丨 书号：978-7-5502-5435-0

丨 版权：后浪出版咨询（北京）有限责任公司

## 序

这本小著前后写了十年之久，在我七十生辰的当月，总算全部脱稿，可以付诸剞劂了。

我开始在大学里教翻译课，是在台湾大学，后来因移砚他校，停了一个相当长久的时期，直到一九六四年应聘南来星洲，先在义安学院，继在新加坡大学，今在南洋大学，每年都教翻译，而且成了我的专科。在海外和在国内，教翻译是不同的。因为国内的大学，是把这门课开设在外文系里，而且是高年级才有的，可是在星洲，翻译是中文系的课程，各年级都有，这当然是为配合当地需要的缘故。国内把这门课开设在外文系，教的人比较不大吃力，星洲因为是中文系的课程，教时就比较要困难些。大家都知道在我国或星洲，谈到翻译，大抵是指中英对译。中文是我们的母语，无论如何，总比英文要好得多，所以学生到了外文系三、四年级时，英文也学到了相当的程度。可以自由表达了，这时来学翻译，无论是中译英或英译中，都能写出通顺的文字来，问题只在对内容的含义，可能有译得不恰当的地方。在星洲的情形可不同了，因为读中文系的同学，英文好的不多，教翻译的人，先得讲解英文，事倍功半。

本书除第三编的一小部分外，其余都是在星洲写成的。九年来不断地加以增补修订，始有今日的面貌。当然我不敢自诩内容已臻完善，不过我已尽了最大的努力，使之切合学生的需要，可以作为翻译教本。第一编教学生用各种各样的英文句型来翻译，使之熟悉英文的写法，以补救英文较差的缺憾。如每周三小时，两小时讲解，一小时练习，本编是足够一年之用的，第一编所注重的是中译英，而第二编则把重点移到英译中的上面，分门别类的介绍英文的惯用句，各种特殊的表现法，除加上适当的汉译外，并详为解说，每种句法皆附有习题，以供练习之用。学生学完一种表现法后，即进行习题翻译，如此一再实验，定能有所心得。第二编的内容也超过可供每周三小时用一

年的教材。以上两个年度的教程，仍不外是奠定基础的准备工作，要到第三年才正式进入实际翻译的阶段。

第三编的主体为长篇的中译英和英译中，这便是我们通常所遇到的翻译材料。除此以外，另备一些可供讲解的教材，以助学习。在第三编的头上，有英文类似句的研究，又有容易译错的文句及其正确译法，这些都是极有用的资料，不易搜集到的。在长篇翻译的教材中，中文方面有浅近的白话，和艰深的文言。在翻译文言文的时候，必须有一番准备工夫，译者得先把文言译成白话，然后才好译成英文，否则难免差误。在英译中方面，则未采用古文，完全选的近代人的作品，内容也不限于文艺方面，而包含哲学，政治，语文，人生问题，原子弹的恐怖，甚至局外人对越战的看法等各方面，以便译者可接触到英文表现的各种面貌。书末附录现在生存的英美名家代表作的节译，更可看出现代英文的趋势，并得以此为踏脚石，进而直接阅读现代文学名著。

过去出版的有关翻译的书，无论中外，大都是讲理论的，偶有谈实际的也只是举出几个例子而已。像本书这样有系统，有方法，来研究翻译的书，似乎还不多见，也可说是破天荒之举，如能对初学者有所裨益，该编者多年的辛劳就得到酬报，而感到满足了。书中错误，在所不免，仍希读者，不吝指正。

一九七二年春。歌等识于南洋大学

# 目录

## 序

## 第一编 汉译英与英文句型

### 壹 由要素来分的造句

- (1) 汉文易写英文难通
- (2) 动词的种类和变化
- (3) 动词与五种句型
- (4) 第一句型的自动构造
- (5) 第二句型的不完全自动构造
- (6) 第三句型 he 动构造
- (7) 第四句型的授与构造
- (8) 第五句型的不完全 he 动构造

### 贰 由构造来分的造句

- (1) 用单句来翻译
- (2) 用合句来翻译
- (3) 用复句来翻译

### 叁 由内容来分的造句

- (1) 用平叙句来翻译
- (2) 用疑问句来翻译
- (3) 用命令句来翻译

#### (4) 用感叹句来翻译

### 第二编 英文惯用法及其翻译

#### I. It 的造句

- (1) it” 不定词
- (2) it” for” 不定词
- (3) it” 动名词
- (4) it” 子句
- (5) it is” 子句
- (6) it” 名词

#### II. 名词的造句

- (7) /all + 抽象名词”或/抽象名词 + itself” = very + 形容词
- (8) /the + 单数名词”的特殊用法
- (9) 无生物的主语
- (10) something (much) of, nothing (little) of
- (11) 属格的主格作用和宾格作用
- (12) 名词 (A) + of + a + 名词 (B)
- (13) 名词 + of + 属格 + 名词
- (14) of + 抽象名词 = 形容词, of 从略 + 普通名词
- (15) one's own + 名词, of one's own + 动名词
- (16) have + the + 抽象名词 + 不定词
- (17) that (those) + 先行词 + 关系代名词
- (18) one thing” another

#### III. As 的造句

- (19) /as” as”的三种用法
- (20) as” as any, as” as ever
- (21) as” as” can be

- (22) as” , so”
- (23) It is in (or with) ” as in (or with)
- (24) as much, as many, like so many
- (25) as good as, as well as
- (26) 句首的/as it is”, 句尾的/as it is”
- (27) 过去分词 + as it is, 现在分词 + as it does
- (28) 名词等 + as + 主语 + 动词等

#### IV. 动词的造句

- (29) may well + 动词, and well + 主语 + may
- (30) may as well” as, might as well” as
- (31) so that” may, lest” should
- (32) cannot help + 动名词, cannot but + 原形不定词
- (33) have + 宾语 (物) + 过去分词
- (34) have + 宾语 (人) + 原形不定词
- (35) have + 宾语 + 副词 (地点, 方向等)
- (36) have + 宾语 + 现在分词
- (37) find oneself
- (38) find” in
- (39) /do”的两种用法
- (40) /depend on”的两种用法
- (41) know” from
- (42) had better + 原形不定词, would rather + 原形不定词
- (43) make” of
- (44) make one's way
- (45) rob” of
- (46) seize” by the”



- (47) see if” , see that”
- (48) take” for granted
- (49) used to + 原形不定词, be used to + 动名词
- (50) be + 自动词的过去分词
- (51) 否定 + fail + 不定词
- (52) 动词 + 原形不定词
- (53) leave + much (nothing) + to be desired
- (54) be + 不定词
- (55) have + 不定词 + 宾语, have + 宾语 + 不定词
- (56) prevent + 宾语 + from + 动名词
- (57) persuade + 宾语 + into + 动名词, dissuade + 宾语 + from + 动名词

#### V. 不定词的造句

- (58) 表目的、原因、结果等的不定词
- (59) so as + 不定词, so” as + 不定词
- (60) too” + 不定词, not too” + 不定词, too” not + 不定词
- (61) only too” + 不定词, too ready + 不定词
- (62) 不定词的感叹用法
- (63) not to speak of, not to say

#### VI. 动名词的造句

- (64) There is no + 动名词
- (65) for + the + 动名词
- (66) above + 动名词
- (67) worth + 动名词
- (68) far from + 动名词
- (69) busy + 动名词
- (70) on + 动名词, in + 动名词

## VII. 否定词的造句

- (71) no more” than
- (72) no less” than
- (73) not so much” as, not so much as
- (74) Nothing is more” than, Nothing is so” as
- (75) cannot” too
- (76) 否定 + without
- (77) 否定 + but
- (78) 否定 + until (till)
- (79) not so” but, not such a” but
- (80) /not A but B”, /B, (and) not A”
- (81) 否定 + because
- (82) not because” but because
- (83) not that” but that
- (84) 否定 + every (all, both, always, quite)

## VIII. what, who 的造句

- (85) what he is, what he has
- (86) what + 名词, what little + 名词
- (87) what with” and what with, what by” and what by
- (88) what is + 比较级
- (89) A is to B what X is to Y
- (90) who + 肯定, who + 否定
- (91) 疑问词 + should” but
- (92) Who knows but (that)

## IX. 条件及让步的造句

- (93) 省略 if 的句法

- (94) If it were not for (= Were it not for) + 名词, If it had not been for (= Had it not been for) + 名词, But for + 名词, But that + 名词子句
- (95) 命令句 + and, 命令句 + or
- (96) 名词 + and
- (97) 动词 + 疑问词
- (98) no matter + 间接疑问句, 疑问词-ever + may
- (99) 动词 + as + 主语 + 助动词
- (100) if any
- (101) be it ever (或 never) so, let it be ever (或 never) so
- (102) once
- (103) were to
- (104) 含有条件意味的字眼

#### X. 形容词副词的造句

- (105) /the + 形容词”的两种用法
- (106) 最上级形容词含有 even 之意
- (107) the + 比较级” the + 比较级
- (108) the + 比较级 + 理由
- (109) the last” + 不定词, the last” + 形容词子句
- (110) so + 形容词 (副词) + that, so + 动词 + that
- (111) so that
- (112) so much so that
- (113) such” as, such” that
- (114) 比较级 + than, more + 原级 + than
- (115) more” than + can
- (116) more than + 动词

- (117) less” than
- (118) much more, much less
- (119) would sooner (rather) ” than, would as soon” as
- (120) no sooner” than, hardly” when
- (121) anything but, nothing but, all but
- (122) short of, be short of, nothing short of
- (123) ever so
- (124) good and 的副词用法
- (125) to one's + 感情名词, to the + 感情名词 + of
- (126) so far, so far as, so far as” is concerned

#### XI. 连词的造句

- (127) and that
- (128) at once” and
- (129) in that
- (130) It is true” but

#### XII. 其他的造句

- (131) one, as such
- (132) one thing” another
- (133) in + 人物
- (134) before 的四种译法

### 第三编 疑难句法及文章译例

#### 壹 英文类似句辨异

#### 贰 常易译错的文句

##### I 中译英

##### II 英译中

### 叁 翻译实例

#### I 中译英

- (1) 郑燮致弟书
- (2) 中国的山水画
- (3) 为学
- (4) 光与色
- (5) 教学相长
- (6) 翻译文欠通顺
- (7) 学无所用
- (8) 画蛇添足
- (9) 嗟来食
- (10) 老与少
- (11) 雕刻奇技
- (12) 狐疑
- (13) 怕伞的姑娘
- (14) 偷窃狂
- (15) 狐假虎威
- (16) 习惯说
- (17) 黔之驴
- (18) 少年孔融的机智
- (19) 绝妙好辞
- (20) 韩信忍受胯下辱

#### II 英译中

- (1) Too Clever Not to See
- (2) The Busy Broker
- (3) Speculation on Important Subjects
- (4) A Feeling of Eternity
- (5) The Spirit of Fair-Play

- (6) On D. H. Lawrence
- (7) On Books
- (8) Arguments against Smoking
- (9) The Definition of a Gentleman
- (10) The Law of the Jungle
- (11) Some well-informed People
- (12) The English Humour
- (13) The Trouble with Translation
- (14) Too Distinguished to be a Personality
- (15) Schadenfreude
- (16) Aloneness is Worse than Failure
- (17) Being One's True Self
- (18) Happiness Consists in Love
- (19) The Cosy Fire of Affection
- (20) Irrational Man

附录 当代英美名作摘译

- (1) William Plomer: On Not Answering the Telephone
- (2) Louis Kronenberger: A Note on Privacy
- (3) Lawrence George Durrell: Justine
- (4) Lawrence George Durrell: Mountolive
- (5) P. H. Newby: A Parcel for Alexandria
- (6) Muriel Spark: The Girls of Slender Means
- (7) J. D. Salinger: The Long Debut of Lots Taggett
- (8) J. D. Salinger: The Catcher in the Rye

- (9) Iris Murdoch: The Bell
- (10) Iris Murdoch: The Flight from the Enchanter
- (11) Truman Capote: Breakfast at Tiffany,s
- (12) Truman Capote: Breakfast at Tiffany,s
- (13) James Baldwin: Notes of a Native Son
- (14) William Styron: Lie Down in Darkness
- (15) William Styron: The Confessions of Nat Turner
- (16) Stan Barstow: Gamblers Never Win350

[习题解答](#)

[出版后记](#)

[返回总目录](#)

# 第一编

## 汉译英与英文句型



## 壹 由要素来分的造句

### （1）汉文易写英文难通

汉译英必须采用英文的句法，来表达汉文的意念，不可照汉文直译，如照汉文的句法直译，则译出来的不像英文。为避免写成中国式的英文，首先就要把英文的一些基本句型学会，而且要记在心上，当我们动手翻译时，便能运用自如，随便采用哪种句型，都合乎英文的惯用句法了。

我们既能说中国话，又能读中国文，在翻译上对于汉文方面是不会有困难的，问题只有英文这一方面，因此我们在汉译英的时候，还是要从英文着手，要把写作英文的基本句型，来作为翻译的工具。

现在我们先来学会以要素为主的五种英文的句型，作为学习翻译的第一步。因为任何英文句子，总不外是这五种句型当中的一种，现代英文是没有第六种句型的。这五种句型是由动词的不同而分别出来的，所以我们在研究五种句型之前，要先把英文动词的种类搞清楚一下。

五种句型是以要素（**element**）来分的，那么在英文句子中有些什么要素呢？那一共有四个要素，即主语（**Subject**），述语（**Predicate**），宾语（**Object**），补语（**Complement**）。任何一个句子，必须有主语和述语。另外一些句子，除主语述语外，还有宾语或补语，或宾语补语同时都有。决定一个句子是不是要有宾语补语的，就在动词，而且动词是两个基本要素中的一个。所谓述语，原是叙述一件事物的动作或状态的，结局就是动词。这是任何一个句子非有不可的基本因素。学英文把动词的用法学会了，英文就学通了十分之八九了。

## (2) 动词的种类和变化

一个英文动词本身虽只有现在形、过去形、过去分词形和现在分词形四种形式，例如“看见”这个动词，则有 **see, saw, seen, seeing** 四个不同的变化，但这四种形式运用起来，也可变出十六种不同的时态，即

1. He sees (现在)
2. He saw (过去)
3. He has seen (现在完成)
4. He had seen (过去完成)
5. He is seeing (现在进行)
6. He was seeing (过去进行)
7. He will see (现在推量)
8. He would see (过去推量)
9. He has been seeing (现在完成进行)
10. He had been seeing (过去完成进行)
11. He will have seen (现在完成推量)
12. He would have seen (过去完成推量)
13. He will be seeing (现在进行推量)
14. He would be seeing (过去进行推量)
15. He will have been seeing (现在完成进行推量)
16. He would have been seeing (过去完成进行推量)

这便是英文动词的变化和用法。奇数是现在，偶数是过去。所谓“/完成”是英文特有的动词时态，它本身又有现在、过去、未来之分，现在完成所代表的时态，是从过去到现在，过去完成是指过去的过去，未来完成是说未来的过去。所谓“/进行”是真正的现在，即正在进

行中的动作，英文的现在时态，只是一种经常的现象而已。所谓“推量”即指未来的事现在加以预测，并不怎样确实的。

所谓现在、过去、未来三种基本的时态，每种又包含得有单纯的，以前的，以后的三个时期，现举例说明如下：

## I . PRESENT

### 1. Simple present:

I take three meals a day.

### 2. Before-present:

I have finished my meal.

### 3. After-present:

I am about to start my meal.

## II . PAST

### 1. Simple past:

Last Wednesday at two o'clock my plane left.

### 2. Before-past:

Last Wednesday at two o'clock I had just returned from London.

### 3. After-past:

Last Wednesday at two o'clock I was about to give my speech.

## III . FUTURE

### 1. Simple future:

Next Wednesday at two o'clock I will land at New York.

### 2. Before-future:

Next Wednesday by two o'clock I will have landed at New York.

### 3. After-future:

Next Wednesday at two o'clock I will be about to land at New York.

再就性质来说，英文动词又可大别为两类：自动词（Intransitive Verb）和他动词（Transitive Verb）。自动词是说明主语的动作或状态的，它自身已能完成一个意念，不必要补足什么要素，而成为一个完整的动作。例如唐诗人贾岛的名句：

鸟宿池边树，僧敲月下门。

译成英文时，便是

Birds dwell in a tree by the pond.

A monk knocks at the door under the moon.

又如，

皓月当空。

The moon shines brightly.

凉风起天末。

A cool breeze sprang up in the sky.

日出于东而落于西。

The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

到了春天美丽的花朵开遍原野。

In spring beautiful flowers bloom in the open country.

我今天觉得好多了。

I feel much better today.

我对他那贵重的援助非常感谢。

I am deeply indebted to him for his valuable assistance.

在以上例句中有主语 **Birds** 及其述语  **dwell**

在以上例句中有主语 **monk** 及其述语 **knocks**

在以上例句中有主语 **moon** 及其述语 **shines**

在以上例句中有主语 **breeze** 及其述语 **sprang**

在以上例句中有主语 **sun** 及其述语 **rises**

在以上例句中有主语 **sun** 及其述语 **sets**

在以上例句中有主语 **flowers** 及其述语 **bloom**

在以上例句中有主语 **I** 及其述语 **feel**

在以上例句中有主语 **I** 及其述语 **am**

前七例是说明主语的动作的，后二例是说明主语的状态的。

他动词就不同了，若单说 **have**，**make** 等字时，意念是不完全的，必得再加上宾语，才能表出一个完全的意念，例如：

我在新加坡有许多熟人。

**I have many acquaintances in Singapore.**

我早已跟他结识了。

**I made his acquaintance long ago.**

我害了重伤风。

**I have taken a bad cold.**

我带着照相机到檳城去玩了一星期。

**I made a week's trip to Penang with my camera.**

有的他动词都要有宾语，否则不成句，因为他动词没有宾语就不能表示出一个完全的意念来，上举四例：

主 语	述 语	宾 语
<b>I</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>acquaintances</b>

I            made       acquaintance

I            have       taken cold

I            made       trip

这两种动词又可以再细分为四种，即：完全自动词（Complete Intransitive Verb）与不完全自动词（Incomplete Intransitive Verb）；完全他动词（Complete Transitive Verb）与不完全他动词（Incomplete Transitive Verb）。现在分别举例说明如下：

完全自动词本身已能表示一个完全的意念，无须再加补语，例如

昨夜下了大雨。

It rained heavily last night.

一轮明月在东方升起。

A beautiful moon has risen in the eastern sky.

在晴天众鸟欢鸣。

In fine weather birds sing merrily.

以上各例句中除主语和述语外，便没有其他的要素了，那就是说，没有宾语或补语，有的只是无关重要的形容词，副词，或形容词片语，副词片语之类罢了。如第一句中的 **heavily** 是副词，**last night** 是副词片语。第二句中的 **a** 和 **beautiful** 是形容词，**in the eastern sky** 是副词片语。第三句中的 **in fine weather** 是副词片语，**merrily** 是副词。这些都是修饰语，不是文句不可缺少的要素。所以这种完全自动词的句子，在语言学上称为 **favourite sentence**（最普通的句子），因为它只需要“动作者 + 动作”就行了。

不完全自动词本身不能表出一个完全的意念，必须补上另外的字才能成句。你单说 **He is**，即“他是”，听者必然要问“他是什么”？又如你说 **He becomes**，即“他变得”，听者必然要问“他变得怎样了”？我们如果在这两种说法的后面，加上 **rich** 一字，意念便完全了。即变成 **He is rich.** / “他是有钱人”。**He becomes rich.** / “他变得有钱了”。

这个 rich 的字，在文法上就叫做补语。又因为这是补足主语的意味的，所以称为主格补语（Subjective Complement）。加上补语的不完全自动词，便能表示出一个完全意念来了。

他是一位教师。

He is a teacher.

他好像很诚实的样子。

He seems quite honest.

他直到最后都是很忠实的。

He remained faithful to the last.

天气变得很热了。

It has become much warmer.

她渐入老境。

She is growing (or getting) old.

那谣言证实了。

The rumour proved true.

霜叶红于二月花。

The frosted maple leaves have turned red, much redder than the flowers in spring.

在上面的例句中，有三个要素，举出如下：

主语	述语	补语
He	is	teacher
He	seems	honest
He	remained	faithful
It	has become	warmer

She	is growing	old
rumour	proved	true
leaves	have turned	red

完全他动词是不要补语的，但它非有宾语不可。有时采用一个宾语，有时采用两个宾语。先看采用一个宾语的造句。这是任何他动词都可以用的，只要有宾语，就可造出一个句子来，别的字多也无用。

树大招风。

Tall trees catch much wind.

我们每天学英语。

We study English every day.

我昨天在理发店遇见他。

I met him at the barber's yesterday.

他的法国话比英语说得好。

He speaks French better than English.

在上面的例句中，有三个要素，举出如下：

主语	谓语	宾语
trees	catch	wind
We	study	English
I	met	him
He	speaks	French; English

采用两个宾语的完全他动词，又叫做授与动词（Dative Verb）。这是由“授物与人”（give something to a person）或“授人以



物” (give a person something) 的基本观念而产生的。这个“人”与“物”，都是句子当中的宾语，所以就变成一个句子有两个宾语了。通常“物”是直接宾语 (Direct Object)， “人”是间接宾语 (Indirect Object)， 因为真正给的是物，接受那物的才是人。

把货物交给我，我就会付你钱。

Give me the goods, and I will give you the money.

她问那孩子叫什么名字。

She asked the boy his name.

医生不许他的病人喝酒。

The doctor forbade his patient wine.

我羡慕你的健康。

I envy you your good health.

请你帮我一个忙好吗？。

Will you do me a favour?

付一块钱给车夫。

Pay the driver one dollar.

他们对我们并无恶意。

They meant us no harm.

通常是把间接宾语放在直接宾语之前，如果为加强语气等原因而把直接宾语放到前面去的话，就要在间接宾语前加介词 to, for, of 等而做成一个片语，例如：

我寄了一封信给她。

I sent her a letter. = I sent a letter to her.

我为她买了一袭新衣。

I bought her a new dress. = I bought a new dress for her.

我想求你一件事。

I wish to ask you a favour. = I wish to ask a favour of you.

这样一来，采用两个宾语的授与动词，就变成采用一个宾语的普通动词了。句中的 **to her**, **for her**, **of you**，都是介词的片语，等于一个形容词的作用。不过有人还是把它视为两个宾语的句子。

单有宾语还不能表示一个完全的意念，必得再加以补语的，便是不完全他动词。这种动词含有使动的作用，是有所作为的，所以又称为作为动词 (Factitive Verb)。例如：

他使父母快乐。

He made his parents happy.

总统任命他为将官。

The president made him a general.

结果是父母感到快乐 (His parents were [or became] happy.)，那人成为将军 (He was [or became] a general.)，这都不外是那动词有所作为的结果。第一句中的 **happy** 是形容词补语 (Adjective Complement)，第二句中的 **general** 是名词补语 (Noun Complement)，二者都是补足句中的宾语的，所以就叫作宾格补语 (Objective Complement)，跟上面说过的主格补语不同。

英文的动词，自动或他动，完全或不完全，都不是固定不移的，任何一个动词，常有变化发生，一定要看它用在什么句子中，才能确定它的性质乃至它的意义。例如：

(a) 鸵鸟不能飞。

The ostrich cannot fly. (这个 fly 是自动词)。

(b) 我会放风筝。

I can fly a kite. (这个 fly 是他动词)。

同是一个自动词，也有完全及不完全两种用法，例如：

(a) 车轮徐转。

The wheels are turning slowly. (这个 turn 是完全自动词)。

(b) 树叶转黄。

The leaves are turning yellow. (这个 turn 是不完全自动词)。

同是一个他动词，也有完全及不完全两种用法，如

(a) 我们用葡萄造酒。

We make wine from grapes. (这个 make 是完全他动词)。

(b) 把你的故事说得有趣一点。

Make your story interesting. (这个 make 是不完全他动词)。

又如

(a) I think it is right. (完全他动词)。

(b) I think it right. (不完全他动词)。

英文的自动词照规矩是不能接上一个宾语的，不过有时用一个介词为媒介，也可以接用宾语，如

人人都笑我。

Everybody laughed at me.

思君令人老。

To think of you makes me old.

### (3) 动词与五种句型

所有的英文句子，归纳起来，不过五种句型构造，即是

1. 第一句型的自动构造 (Intransitive Construction) 。

这需要用四种要素中的两种基本要素：

**Subject + Predicate**

例句：车轮转动。

**Wheels turn.**

2. 第二句型的不完全自动构造 (Neuter Construction) 。

这需要用四种要素中的三种要素：

**Subject + Predicate + Complement**

例句：牛奶变酸了。

**Milk turns sour.**

3. 第三句型的他动构造 (Transitive Construction) 。

这也需要用四种要素中的三种要素：

**Subject + Predicate + Object**

例句：人们转动车轮。

**Men turn wheels.**

4. 第四句型的授与构造 (Dative Construction) 。

这虽则只用到三种要素，但宾语这个要素，得分为间接与直接两个：

**Subject + Predicate + Indirect Object + Direct Object**

例句：母牛给我们牛奶。

**Cows give us milk.**

5. 第五句型的不完全他动构造 (Factitive Construction) 。

这是要动用四种要素的：

Subject + Predicate + Object + Complement

例句：打雷使牛奶变酸。

Thunder turns milk sour.

而这五种句型，如下表所示，又都是由动词出发的，可见动词对英文造句是何等的重要呀。

自动词	完全自动词		(第一句型)
	不完全自动词 + 补语		(第二句型)
动词	他动词	+ 一个宾语	(第三句型)
		+ 两个宾语	(第四句型)
	不完全他动词 + 宾语 + 补语		(第五句型)

(4) 第一句型的自动构造

主语 + 述语

从英文的造句法 (Syntax) 上来看，每个句子都必须具备主语和述语两个部分。表示思想主题的是**主语**，述说动作、状态、性质等的是**述语**。

这两个部分是任何英文句子不可或缺的，如果在句中不见了这两个部分，或其中的一个部分，那只是在字面上临时把它省略了，并不是原来就不存在的。例如：

“/走开！” Go away! ’ ’ 这个命令句译成英文时是把主语的 you 省略了，原应作 You go away! 的。又如

一个多么漂亮的姑娘！

What a pretty girl!

这个惊叹句译成英文时，是把主语的 she 和述语的 is 省略了。原应作 What a pretty girl she is! 的。

我很快就会再写信给你的。

Write you soon again.

这个平叙句译成英文时，是省略了主语的 **I** 和助动词的 **will** 的，原应作 **I will write you soon again.** 的。根据以上的例子，就可知道没有主语述语的句子，只是临时省略，原来的句子是非有不可的。主语述语对文句既有这般重要，我们决不可加以忽视，在阅读时找出文句，尤其是长的文句的主语述语，对我们了解文义，是有极大的帮助的。

对于第一句型的句子<sup>①</sup>，普通都是把它分做两个部分，例如 **These pretty little birds sing very merrily.** 一句，普通把 **These pretty little birds** 四字看作主部的 **Subject**，把 **sing very merrily** 三字看作述部的 **Predicate**。主部的中心一定是一个名词，或名词同等语，所以那个名词才是主部的本体，英文叫作 **Subject-word**（主语本字）。在上例中的 **Subject-word** 是 **birds**，这便是我们读书时第一个要找出来的字。同样地述部的中心，一定是一个动词，所以这个动词才是述部的本体，英文叫作 **Predicate-verb**（述语动词）。在上例中的 **Predicate-verb** 是 **sing**。我们读书时第二个要找出来的字就是它。把一句长文的主语和述语找出来，无异提纲挈领，抓住要点，对文句的主动者及其动作，已经有所了解，整个句子的含义，便可掌握到十之七八了，因为其余的大都是修饰语，在文法上是无关重要的。

在第一句型的构造中，常见的有下列三种形式：

1. S. + Vi:

Birds sing.

2. S. + Vi. + Adverb (Adverb Phrase) :

Birds sing merrily (in the tree) .

3. S. + Vi. + Adverb Infinitive:

John has gone to buy books.

现在我们再举出一些第一句型的例子，来看它是怎样发展的。

在量上有所得，在质上必有所失。

If anything gains in quantity, it must lose in quality.

勿做得不偿失的事。

Do not pay too dear for your whistle.

在教室里上课时不要讲话。

You must not talk in class.

你来此有何贵干？

What have you come here for?

昨夜发生火灾。

A fire broke out last night.

当我到车站时正下大雨。

It rained heavily when I arrived at the station.

他的弟弟考取了南洋大学。

His brother succeeded in the examination of Nanyang University.

他为着转地疗养昨天到金马仑去了。

He went to the Camelon highland yesterday for a change.

我想考取所以拼命用功。

I studied with might and main not to fail in the examination.

因为战争的缘故物价天天上涨。

The prices go up every day owing to the war.

这些果树明年就要开始结果子了。

These trees will begin to bear next year.

对人客气是不会吃亏的。

It pays to be polite.

我明天午后三时到四时之间来看你。

I will come to see you between three and four tomorrow afternoon.

只有人类会说话。

Man alone can speak.

我通常是早上七时起床。

I generally get up at seven in the morning.

王君不久即将出洋研读数学。

Mr. Wang will shortly go abroad to study mathematics.

## 习题 1

试将下列各句译成英文，句中须用完全自动词。

1. 健全的思想寓于健全的人格。
2. 我们不是为食而生，乃是为生而食。
3. 合则留，不合则去。
4. 说话不要支吾其词。
5. 在中国学年为八月一日起到七月三十一日止。
6. 我兄弟前天由此放洋，下月半前后可抵伦敦。
7. 他可能很快回来，不过我不能说一定。
8. 猫在黑暗中也能看见。
9. 这把小刀好切得很。
10. 那工作做了不合算。
11. 这些鸡已经开始生蛋了。
12. 我的朋友是站在我一边的。



13. 太阳好像是围绕着地球在走。
14. 因为太暗我看不清楚。
15. 走了约摸一个钟头，我们到达了目的地。
16. 勤则不匮。（《左传》）
17. 卧不安席，食不甘味，心摇摇如悬旌。（《国策》）
18. 下乔入幽。（《孟子》）
19. 东风解冻。
20. 臣无祖母，无以至今日；祖母无臣，无以终余年；祖孙二人，相依为命。（李密）

## （5）第二句型的不完全自动构造

### 主语 + 述语 + 补语

第二句型的造句和第一句型不同的地方，就是句中多了一个补语的因素。这是与不完全自动词有连带关系的。凡是遇到不完全自动词的时候，就有加上补语的必要。补语主要是由形容词或名词构成的，但用别的词类也未尝不可，关键是在动词，如果那动词是不完全的自动词，则在其后接上的任何字都是补语。

不完全自动词的代表动词是“be”，说 **I am, you are, he is** 等，意念都是不完全的，必须加上一个表示身份或状态或性质的字眼上去，才能成为完整的句子。这个表示身份或状态或性质的字眼，便叫作补语。华文也是一样，单说“他是”是不能成为一个句子的，必须加上表示身份的名词，或是表示状态或性质的形容词才行。例如说“他是一个什么人”，后面就要接上名词的补语，若说“他是什么状态或性质”，便不能接名词，而要接形容词的补语了。到底要接名词或是要接形容词，在下笔之先必须想想才不会弄错，因为“他是一个学生”（**He is a student.**）是说明他的身份的，用上一个名词，当然简单明了，没有问题。至于“他在生病”，是说他的状态的，可就不能用名词了。如果用名词而译成 **He is illness.** 就是错的，必须改说为 **He is ill.** 才通，因为 **illness** 是名词，**ill** 才是形容词。表示状态或性质必须用形

容词作补语，表示身份才用名词。用名词作补语的，我们可以说“他是学生”，同样也可以说“学生就是他”。但用形容词作补语时，我们却不能说“他是病”，当然“病也不是他”，用公式表出时，**He = student. He “illness.** 中国语在形容词的尾上用一个“的”字，等于形容词的尾缀，这是很重要的。“他是勤快的”，或简单地说“他勤快”，英文译成 **He is diligent.** 中英文都是通顺的。如果说“他是勤快”，中文句子就不完善了，因为“勤快”是一个抽象名词，不是一个形容词，如果“他是勤快”，那么，岂不“勤快就是他”了。需知他并不等于勤快，一方是人，一方是一种性质，二者是不能相等的。英文也是一样，我们不能说 **He is diligence.** 因为 **he** 并不是 **diligence**，所以不可以用名词，中英文都要用形容词，中文用“勤快的”，英文要用 **diligent** 才对。

现在我们再举一例，来作进一步的说明。

(a) 他是诚实的。(He is honest.)

(b) 他是一个诚实的人。(He is an honest man.)

(a) 句的补语是形容词 (**honest**)，(b) 句的补语是名词 (**man**)。(a) 句是答复“他是怎样”的，所以说，他是诚实的；(b) 句是答复“他是什么”的，所以说，他是人。因此，(a) 句必须用形容词，如果说成 **He is honesty.** 就错了，因为他并不是诚实那回事。

(b) 句中的 **honest** 一字，只是用来修饰 **man** 的，不是主要的因素。(a) 句中的 **honest**，便是补语，为四种要素之一。附带要注意的一点，**man** 是一个普通名词，依照文法的规定，普通名词如非用复数，就必须加冠词，所以，如果说成 **He is man.** 或 **He is honest man.** 就错了。一定要说 **He is a man.** 或 **He is an honest man.** 才行。如果补语的名词变成复数的话，这个冠词就用不着了，如：

(a) 他是聪明的。(He is clever.)

(b) 他是一个聪明的孩子。(He is a clever boy.)

(a) 他们是聪明的。(They are clever.)

(b) 他们是一些聪明的孩子。(They are clever boys.)

以上用作形容词或名词的补语，是与句中的主语有关的，所以又称主格补语。

上面已经说过，补语并不限于名词和形容词，其他的词类，都可以用作补语，只要那动词是不完全的。任何一个不完全的动词，都需要加上补语，不管那补语是一个怎样形式的字眼，其他词类用在补语的地位上即变成补语了。不过名词和形容词，仍是补语的两大因素，其他只能算是同等语。Noun-Element = Noun and Noun Equivalent. Adjective-Element = Adjective and Adjective Equivalent.

兹将可构成主格补语的字眼分类举出如下：

1. 名。词：He is a teacher. (他是教师。)
2. 代名词：It's me. (是我。)
3. 形容词：We are ready. (我们准备好了。)
4. 副。词：He is out. (他出去了。)
5. 不定词：He seems to be honest. (他好像是诚实的。)
6. 分。词：I got hurt. (我受伤了。)  
It is interesting. (这很有趣。)
7. 动名词：Seeing is believing. (看见才相信。)
8. 片。语：He is at home in history. (他精通历史。)  
It is of no use to try further. (不用再干下去了。)
9. 子。句：The pen is where it was. (笔在原来的地方。)

上面说过 He is diligence. 一句是不通的，应说 He is diligent. 才可以，因为非用形容词不可，但英文的形容词，常可用/of + 名词”所构成的形容词片语来代替，如 useful 可用 of use 来代替，useless 可用 of no use 来代替，故上举第八项中的第二例，也可以说成 It is useless to try further. 所以上面说的 He is diligence. 那个不通的句子，只消加上一个/of”，而说成 He is of diligence. 也就通了。这个/of + 名词” = 形容词，也是常用的一种补语，再举数例如下：

这本杂志是很有用的。

This magazine is of great use. (= very useful)

这些书对我毫无价值。

These books are of no value to me. (= valueless)

有些没有形容词的名词，当然更要用 of-phrase 了，如

这些东西都是同样的价钱。

These articles are (of) the same price.

这两个茶杯是同样大小的。

These two cups are (of) the same size.

兹再将需要有主格补语的不完全自动词分别举例说明如下。需要主格补语的代表动词是“be”，此字原作“存在”解，用作动词时本身几乎没有什么意思，而只担承把主语和补语联系起来的任务罢了，从他这种任务来看，用方法上的专门术语说，叫做 **Copula = linking verb**（联系词）。在“be”以外的动词，也多少有带着 **Copula** 的任务的，所以这样的动词，也都要有补语才行。例如 **lie**，意为“用某种状态躺着”，引申为“在某种状态中”；**seem** 意为“好像在某种状态中”；**remain** 意为“维持某种状态不变”。此外还有由变化而成为某种状态之意的自动词 **become**，**grow** 等，也可以作为需要补语的动词来用。

（一）用属于 be 一类的动词来翻译：

这朵玫瑰花很香。

This rose smells sweet.

这纸很粗糙。

This paper feels rough.

他那时看去好像耽于回想似的。

He looked reflective for a few moments.

他的声音听来好像很愤恨的样子。

His voice sounded resentful.

他好像不是寻常的乞丐。

He seemed no ordinary mendicant.

也像一切羞怯的人一样，他有时显得傲慢。

Like all shy men he sometimes appeared arrogant.

他直到四十岁都还没有结婚。

He remained unmarried till forty years old.

他醒来躺着很久才起床。

He lay awake a long time before getting up.

我很敬重他。

He stands high in my estimation.

他生为圣徒，死为烈士。

He lived a saint, and died a martyr.

(二) 用属于 become 一类的动词来翻译：

那两个人一天天变得更亲密了。

The two were becoming more intimate every day.

我的预言成为事实了。

My prediction has come true.

那棵树长得越来越高了。

The tree grew taller and taller.

我希望他很快康复。

I hope he will get better (or recovered) soon.

他在不久的将来就会成为一个优秀的工人的。

He will make a capital workman one of these days.

于是他突然变得严肃了。

Then he suddenly fell grave.

我的头发变白了。

My hair has turned grey.

那狗发狂了。

The dog has run mad.

这个新发明会成为对全人类有用的吧。

This new invention will prove useful to all humanity.

一听那话她脸色登时变得苍白，直白到嘴唇了。

On hearing that, her face went white to the lips.

(三) 为着要显示 **seem** 等字中所潜在的 **Copula** 的意味，不妨加上 **to be** 的字样进去。

鸟鸣山更幽。

It seems to be more lonesome in the mountains when birds are singing.

他显得很年轻。

He appears to be young.

那终会成功的。

It will prove to be successful.

那谣言变成事实了。

The rumour has turned out to be true.

如果你继续这样懒惰下去，你总有一天要后悔的。

If you continue to be idle, you will be sorry for it some day.

这类的自动词是可以反映出说话者的心情的，如 **He seems to be ill**. 一句话，是表示说话的人不愿直接肯定地说出 **He is ill**，而只是用 **seems to be**（好像是）作为推测之辞。

在第二句型的构造中，有下列十二种形式：

1. S. + be-V. + Noun:

Jack is a schoolboy.

2. S. + be-V. + Pronoun:

The umbrella is mine.

3. S. + be-V. + Adjective:

He is kind.

Your story is interesting.

4. S. + be-V. + to-Infinitive:

I am to start tomorrow.

5. S. + be-V. + -ed + to-Infinitive:

I am pleased to meet you.

6. S. + Vi. + Noun:

He became a merchant.

7. S. + Vi. + Adjective:

He got angry.

He looks happy.

8. S. + Vi. + -ing:

The boy came running.

He stood waiting for me.

9. S. + Vi. + -ed:

He looked pleased.

He went home disappointed.

10. S. + Vi. + Prep. + -ing:

The prices go on rising.

11. S. + Vi. + Adjective + to-Infinitive:

He felt very happy to see me elected.

It remains much to be done.

12. S. + Vi. + Adjective + that (if, whether, where, when, why, etc.) Clause:

I feel certain that he is coming with me.

Are you sure if (whether) John is going with us?

He looked blank when he was informed of his dismissal.

## 习题 2

试将下列各句译成英文，句中须采用不完全自动词。

1. 我们选择朋友时非十分谨慎不可。
2. 美国人好活动而富于独立精神。
3. 那大学的入学试题很难，我不知能否考取。
4. 她觉得有点窘，不知如何是好。
5. 良药苦口利于病。
6. 他立志坚定不移。
7. 他始终都用心在听讲。
8. 这个办法并不一定永远有效。
9. 真价常不能被人认识。
10. 世事尚待证明。
11. 他依然怏怏不乐，一声不响。
12. 她坐着沉思了好几分钟。
13. 他似乎知道那个事实。



14. 那以后他们就满足了。
15. 中国人的态度是对西方行为的一种反感。
16. 在世界上相距最远的东西两端的地方，经过多少世纪，实际上完全不知道彼此的存在。
17. 他的游记是一种非常有趣味的记录。
18. 很少旅行家的记录有马可·波罗写的那样生动，那样有内容的。
19. 似乎有稍加说明的必要。
20. 不做时代落伍的学生，对当前的出版物是不能忽视的。

## (6) 第三句型的他动构造

### 主语 + 谓语 + 宾语

这是用完全他动词加上一个宾语而构成的句子。在这个句型中新出现的一个因素，就是宾语。构成宾语的，都是名词或名词同等语，例如：

1. Do you know Mr. Chang? (Noun)
2. I like him very much. (Pronoun)
3. I like to read. (Non Infinitive)
4. I like reading. (Gerund)
5. I know how to swim. (Noun Phrase)
6. I know that he is an honest man. (Noun Clause)

主语和宾语一定是非名词莫办的，因此我们可以说，任何字句一登上主语或宾语的宝座，它就变成名词了。

宾语并不一定是在动词后面的，有时也会跑到动词的前面去，如 **What did Jack build? This is the ship that Jack built.** 并不一

定每次都如 **Jack built a ship.** 一样在动词后面。

他动词的宾语从意义上看，有三种不同的字汇。即：

一、为表示结果的宾语，如我们分明是在纸上写字，结果却写成了一封信，因而我们就说写信 (**write a letter**)。再如我们挖土，结果挖成了一个洞，我们就说挖洞 (**dig a hole**)。

二、为表示一般意义的宾语，有 **things, matters** 等，例如 **If she is really bad, it simplifies things very much.** (**Galsworthy: Fraternity**) (她要是真的坏，那事情倒简单多了。)

三、为模拟宾语 (**sham object**) /it”。这是英文的一种惯用法，它本身根本没有什么意思，也不是专指一件什么事物，如 **He lords it over his inferiors.** (他对部下如君临一般高傲不堪。) **If you are found out, you will catch it.** (如果你被他们看到，你就要挨骂的。)

有些句子我们中文是要用自动词的，而英文则惯用他动词来说，因为我们很少用事物来作他动词的主语的，英文为说话求简起见，常爱以事物为主动者，这类造句很多和我们说法不同，宜加注意，例如：

你来此何事？

**What has brought you here? = What have you come here for?**

从这条路去，就可以到火车站。

**This road will take you to the station. = If you follow this road, you will get to the station.**

什么事使他这样生气？

**What made him so angry? = Why did he get so angry?**

你肯帮助我的话，我就一定会成功的。

**Your assistance will make my success certain. = If you assist me, my success will be certain.**

看到这个使我想起以前的好日子。

This reminds me of the good old days. = When I see this, I think of the good old days.

我们靠希望而生存。

Hope keeps us alive. = We live on by hope.

衣食足而后知礼仪。

Wealth enables men to be courteous. = If men have wealth, they are able to be courteous.

因为天气坏，我们未能动身。

Bad weather prevented us from starting. = We could not start because of the bad weather.

他动词后面所接用的宾语，中英两种语文的表现法也有不同的地方。现分五项将英文特异之处说明如下：

#### （一）具有“夺取”意义的动词

凡被夺取的目标，在中文的说法应该是“物”，而在英文则要说“人”。在被夺取的物品之前加一个“of”的介词，造成一个片语接在“人”的后面。

强盗抢了他的钱。

A highwayman robbed him of his money.

同样的用法还有下列种种情形。

他把海上的强盗一扫而光。

He cleared the sea of those robbers.

忧烦的习惯夺去了我们的和平和安乐。

The habit of worrying robs us of peace and comfort.

我学到了很多，足以治好我从前的好幻想的毛病。

I have learned enough to cure me of my old fancies.  
(Stevenson)

我将永远无法完全放弃这种感觉。

I shall never be able entirely to divest myself of this feeling.

国王剥夺了他一切的荣誉。

The king stripped him of all his honours.

他忘不了过去那种痛苦的回忆。

He could not rid himself of the painful memories.

你来了省得我去麻烦写一封长信。

Your coming relieves me of the bother of writing a long letter.

他只求自己获得享乐，不管是从谁夺取得来。

He does not care whom he deprives of enjoyment, so that he can obtain it.

## (二) 具有“供给”意义的动词

在英文的表现法中，不能直接把所供给的事物作为宾语，必须以介词 **with** 为媒介，才能说出那事物来。同时只有受到供给的人才能成为宾语。如“供给某人金钱”为 **supply him with money**，“车上载草”为 **load a cart with straw**，“在玻璃杯中倒满清水”为 **fill the glass with water**，“给人食物”为 **provide a person with food**，“供给我许多消息”为 **furnish me with a lot of information**，“把那本书呈献给他”为 **present him with the book**，“赐予接见”为 **favour me with an interview**，“把秘密告诉她”为 **trust her with a secret** 等等。

(三) 具有“作成”意义的动词。那时句中的“of”所引出的名词，便是作成什么的材料，如“愚弄他”，英文说 **make a fool of him**，便是把他当作材料，作成一个愚人。又如“专攻英文”为 **make a special study of English**。意即把英文当作材料来作出一种专门的研究。

(四) 不把直接接受动作的人身上某一部分作为宾语，而要把那个人当作对象来说，是大处着眼的意思。

他轻拍我的背。

He patted me on the back.

他抓住我的衣领。

He seized me by the collar.

他命在旦夕。

Death stared him in the face.

他紧紧握着我的手，不让我走。

He held me by the hand firmly and would not let me go.

我抓住了他的胳膊。

I caught him by the arm.

他拖着我的衣袖。

He pulled me by the sleeve.

她打他一记耳光。

She strikes him across the face.

在受到动作的人体上某一部分的前面，一般只用冠词 **the**，不用人称所有格的形容词，如 **my**, **his** 等，但有时也可以用，不过用法稍古，如“她吻了他的面颊”说 **She kissed him on his cheek.** / “他敢于用最温柔的态度执了她的手”说 **He presumed in the gentlest manner to take her by her hand.** (Lamb, *Tales from Shakespeare*) 说 **I caught him by the hand**，英文的味道特别浓厚，若照中文的说法，改为 **I caught his hand**，也未尝不通，不过两者之间是有 **nuance** 的不同的。

(五) 有许多动词我们中文都是作自动词用的，而英文却是他动词，后面要接宾语，例如：

不幸降临到他身上。

A misfortune befell him.

这种式样的衣服对你很适合。

This style of dress becomes you well.

二者大小相似。

They resemble each other in size.

半小时内我们就到槟城了。

We can reach Penang in half an hour.

据说那屋子有鬼。

They say ghosts haunt that house.

不要走进这房门去。

Don't enter this room.

英文的自动词在下列四种情形中，便可当作他动词用，后面直接接上宾语：

1. 接用同系宾语 (Cognate Object)，如“他过了幸福的一生” (He lived a happy life.) 2. 具有使动的意味 (Causative Sense)，如“农人种稻” (The farmer grows rice.) 3. 接用介词 (Preposition)，如“你在看什么？” (What are you looking at?) 4. 伴有补足字 (Complement)，如“我们时常谈一通夜” (We often talked the night away.)

### 13 同系宾语

我做了一个奇怪的梦。

I dreamed a strange dream.

他一睡不醒。

He slept the sleep that knows no waking.

我打了一场好仗。

I have fought a good fight. (Bible)

他吐了一口气，才来念了祈祷文。

He sighed a sigh and prayed a prayer. (Scott)

不但自动词如此，他动词有时也可接用同系宾语，例如 tell a tale, sing a song, see a sight 等等。

在同系宾语上附有修饰形容词时，通例可换成态度副词 (Adverb of Manner)，如 live a long life = live long; live a happy life = live happily; die a natural death = die naturally; die a violent death = die by violence 等等。

有的宾语与动词不同语源，但意义相通，也可视为同类，如 run a race; run a course; run one's career; fight a battle; blow a gale; strike a blow; ring a peal; wreak one's vengeance 等等。

漠然无所指的宾语/it”，也可看做一种同系宾语，如

我决心奋斗到底。

I am determined to fight it out. (= fight to the end)

安哲罗勋爵很有爵爷的神气。

Lord Angelo dukes it (= plays the part of duke) well.  
(Shakespeare)

我已惯于栉风沐雨。

I am used to roughing it.

白人对土人如君临一般。

The whites lord it over the natives.

我们是生来为君王效犬马之劳的。

We are born to slave it for our lord. (Thackeray)

他到各地巡回演出。

He is starring it in the provinces.

我们不得不冒雨而行。

We had to walk it in the rain.

你能游泳过去吗？

Can't you swim it?

在某些熟语中可将同系宾语略去，如 look thanks 为 look a look of thanks 之略。

他眼中现出言语无法表达的感谢。

He looked the thanks he could not express.

她以短剑相刺的目光望看我，而走出房间去了。

She left the room, looking daggers at me.

我问他是否满意，他点头表示首肯。

I asked if he was satisfied, and he nodded assent.

那人的字写得好吗？

Does the man write a good hand?

用最上级形容词时，多半也要把同系宾语略去。

那妇人在那个时候看去最美。

The lady was looking her best (look) .

她唱出她最好听的歌声来取悦他。

She sang her sweetest (song) to please him.

其他如 do one's best (or utmost) = do all one can do (尽全力) ; see the last of anything = see it no more (再也不见了) ; hear the last of anything = hear of it no more (再无消息) ; breathe one's last = expire (呼出最后一口气，即死去) 。

## 23 夹使动意



她把蜡烛竖在地板上。

She stood the candle on the floor. (Dickens)

我慢慢地带马走上小山。

I slowly walked my horse up the hill.

他们把船开到滩上去了。

They ran the ship aground.

他们使马泅水渡河。

They swam their horses across the river.

那船上挂出降旗。

The ship was flying the flag of truce.

下次满潮时船就可以浮起来了。

The next tide will float the ship.

巡洋舰把那运输船击沉了。

The cruiser sank the transport.

他们过分地酷使了那些马。

They work the horses too hard.

我躺下来好让两条疲惫的腿子休息一下。

I laid myself down to rest my wearied limbs.

### 33 接用分词

怎样得到那个结果的呀？

How was the result brought about?

她在年轻的时候，追她的人很多。

She was much run after in her youth.

顽皮的孩子人人皱眉。

Everybody frowns at a naughty child.

越有越是想要。

Possession makes one wish for more.

愚人才不认错。

Fools persist in their error.

我不知道真有这样的人。

I do not know of any such man.

我不会把这问题一直讲下去的。

I shall not dwell on the subject at any length.

你最好有空的时候把那事情仔细想一下。

You had better think over the matter at your leisure.

我的母亲反对这门亲事。

My mother objects to the match.

娱乐不能妨害正事。

Pleasure must not interfere with duty.

#### 43 加补足字

做人不可醉生梦死。

One must not sleep or dream one's life away.

睡眠能恢复疲劳。

You can sleep off your fatigue.

别的客人都走光了他还不走。

He sits out the other guests.

他能说服别人听从他的意见。

He can talk people over to his own views.

你自己去查字典吧。

Look up the word for yourself in the dictionary.

他们大叫把演讲者轰下台来。

They shouted down the orator.

他使我厌烦死了。

He bored me to death.

他向我说出种种道理，使我非答应不可。

He has reasoned me into compliance.

我说得他把原来的决定推翻了。

I have talked him out of his resolution.

在第三句型的构造中也有下列十一种形式：

1. S. + Vt. + Noun:

I keep a diary every day.

2. S. + Vt. + Pronoun:

They know us very well.

3. S. + Vt. + -ing:

I like playing tennis.

I do not advise your seeing him at this time.

4. S. + Vt. + Prep. + -ing:

Mrs Smith objected to our riding across the lawn.

The girl insists on going to the movies.

He persists in doing something in his own way.

5. S. + Vt. + to-Infinitive:

I like to play tennis with them.

6. S. + Vt. + what (whom, which) + to-Infinitive:

I don't know what to do.

I don't know what book to read.

We must know whom to choose.

I don't know whom to go to.

Do you know which to choose?

Do you know which way to take?

7. S. + Vt. + how (when, where) + to-Infinitive:

You must learn how to swim.

We must decide when to start.

She will show where to sit.

8. S. + Vt. + that Clause:

I hear that he is in Singapore now.

9. S. + Vt. + what (who, whom, which) Clause:

I know what his name is.

I know what I must do.

Do you know what answer he made?

Do you know who he is?

Do you know whom we chose?

I cannot see which (which way) is better.

We don't know which (which way) he took.

10. S. + Vt. + how (when, where, why) Clause:

I wonder how old that man is.

I know when (where) you were born.

No one knows why he did such a thing.

11. S. + Vt. + if (whether) Clause:

I wonder if it will rain tomorrow.

I don't know whether the news is true or not.

### 习题 3

试将下列各句译成英文，句中须采用完全他动词。

1. 昨天的迎新会你出席了没有?
2. 苏君顺利地进了牛津大学。
3. 王君文官考试优等及第。
4. 我们要奋斗的话，就要奋斗到底。
5. 在印尼他们剥夺了华侨一切的财产。
6. 他把我所要的一切都给我了。
7. 他抓住我的手，不让我走。
8. 她假装对我朋友说话，实际是说给我听的。
9. 勤能补拙。
10. 我一定想要你来。
11. 他不用功，在学校里又混过了一年。
12. 我旅行时总是坐的三等。
13. 他讲演完毕时，听众大声喝采。
14. 他在夜里十一时十分钟断气。
15. 你能像那老人一样游过长江吗?
16. 我给了那可怜的孩子一点钱去买东西吃。
17. 她写了一封长信给我，谈到她的将来。
18. 我们讨论那个问题直到夜深。
19. 他承认她是对的。

20. 她提议我们应从头来过一次。

## (7) 第四句型的授与构造

主语 + 述语 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语

这是在一句当中用两个宾语的造句法。普通的他动词只要有一个宾语就行了，但这种他动词却需要两个宾语，即除了直接的宾语外，还需要有一个间接的宾语。那个间接宾语，在拉丁文中称为与格 (**Dative Case**)，**Dative** 意为英文的 **giving**。因此对于要有间接宾语的这一类的动词，就称为授与动词 (**Dative Verb**)。英文与拉丁文不同，间接宾语与直接宾语并没有各自不同的形态，所以间接宾语并无所谓授与格的名称，不过形态虽同，在意味上却是有这种授与格的存在，因此在英文中也仍然保留着 **Dative** 这个名称。

间接宾语通常是人，而直接宾语则通常是说的事物，如 **That will save me a lot of trouble.** (那将省我不少的麻烦。) 但偶然也有间接宾语不是说人的，如 **He allowed his imagination full play.** (他任意胡思乱想。)

通常是把间接宾语放在直接宾语的前面的，但有时为着加强语气，或使意义更为明白起见，也可以把间接宾语移到直接宾语的后面去，不过在那时候，就得在间接宾语前加上“**to**”，“**for**”，“**of**”等介词，而把它做成介词片语，使之完全失去宾语的性质了，例如：

**He gave me a book. = He gave a book to me.**

**He will buy me a knife. = He will buy a knife for me.**

**I wish to ask you a favour. = I wish to ask a favour of you.**

**He played our master a dirty trick. = He played a dirty trick on our master.**

但两个宾语如果都是简短的代名词时，间接宾语即令移到直接宾语的后面去，也不要加用介词，如：

Her mother did not give it her. (她母亲并未把那个给她。)

We rather shrank back when she proffered it us. (Cassell, Cranford) (当她提出那个来的时候，我们都退缩了。)

间接宾语移到了直接宾语的后面仍不加介词，是因为省略掉了，而且只有在简短的代名词如 *it*, *me*, *her*, *him* 等时才可省略，不省当然是可以的，如说 *Please give it to her*. (美国说法)。省略后便成为 *Please give it her*. (英国说法)。凡遇到间接与直接二者全是短字，也可以说成 *Please give her it*. 但如直接宾语不是代名词而是名词时，要前后调动就非加介词不可，那时我们必须说：

*Please give the book to her*.

若照平常的次序说 *Please give her the book*. 当然是可以的。应该注意的是，我们不可说 *Please give the book her*. 因为直接宾语不是代名词，故“to”不能略去。间接宾语为名词，而不是代名词时，也不能把“to”略去，如

*I gave it to the beggar*.

不能说 *I gave the beggar it*. 但可以说 *I gave the beggar a coin*. 或是 *I gave a coin to the beggar*.

如果间接与直接两种宾语的音价 (phonetic value) 相等，或直接的更轻，那么，还是要维持原来的次序的，如

*I grudge him you*. (Shaw) (我不肯把你交给他。)

*Do not send me those*. (Onions) (不要把那些东西送给我。)

*Bring me him down like a ripe apple*. (Stevenson)  
(把他当作一个熟透了的苹果一般，小心地带到我这儿来。)

*Tell him this*. (Onions) (把这件事告诉他。)

间接宾语多半是人，而且是受惠者：（a）他是获得什么东西，看到什么东西，或听到什么东西的人（**the person to whom something is given, shown or told**）；或是（b）别人为他做了什么的人（**the person for whom something is done**）。这便是间接宾语为数最多的两大类。间接宾语如果不是受惠者，如

He asked me a few questions.（他问了我几个问题。）

I can forgive him anything and everything.（一切我都可以赦免他。）

等句中的间接宾语，是不能得到任何利益的。这时节我们就不妨把两个宾语都看作直接宾语。

授与动词可以细分为四类，即授与（**give**）东西，告知（**tell**）事情，贡献（**render**）服务，及施行（**perform**）恩惠（有关得失的）。前三类中的间接宾语都可以加“**to**”改成介词片语，即 **to-phrase**, **for-phrase**（有的语法家将此视为一个间接宾语）等，如：

Give me the book. = Give the book to me.

Tell us a story. = Tell a story to us.

Do me a favour. = Do a favour to me.

唯有最后一类不能用“**to**”，要用表示目的的介词“**for**”来把间接宾语改写为介词片语，如

Get me a glass of water. = Get a glass of water for me.

这种用法的动词在现代英语中为数极少，如果在古代的话，则几乎任何动词上都可以加一个恩惠的授与格（**Dative of Favour**），如 **Open me the door**. 今则说 **Open the door for me**. 他如 **Shakespeare** 说的：**Heat me these irons hot**.（趁热为我打铁）等等都是的。

只有授与动词如 **give, bring, teach, show, ask, send, make, lend, owe, tell, sell, cost, read, write, offer, pass, pay, promise, choose, find, leave, get, play, reach, sing**



等，才能接用两个宾语，其他的他动词则只能接用一个宾语。今就同义的动词举例比较如下：

(a) We gave him a watch. (= gave a watch to him)

(b) We presented him with a watch. (presented a watch to him)

(a) A litle was given him.

(b) A litle was conferred on him.

(a) He teaches us English.

(b) He instructs us in English.

(a) He asked me a question.

(b) He put a question to me.

1. 有授与意味的授与动词’ ’ 兹就其惯用句法例示如下：

我在一个月前通知他解职。

I have given him a month's warning (notice) .

我当面责备他是撒谎。

I gave him the lie in his throat.

公平地说，敌人是勇敢的。

To give the devil his due, the enemy are quite brave.

接到来函使我大为高兴。

Your letter has afforded me much pleasure.

他每月给他儿子五百元。

He allows his son five hundred dollars a month.

我在他头上给以重重的一击。

I struck him a hard blow on the head.

我将尽量给你帮助。

I'll lend you all the assistance in my power.

他传言说要来。

He has sent us word that he is coming.

如果有什么信件寄来请转给我。

Please forward me any letter that may come.

他答应给我职务。

He has promised me an appointment.

我去烹点茶来给你喝。

I will make you some tea. (= I will make some tea for you.)

她自制了一袭新衣。

She made herself a new dress. (= She made a new dress for herself.)

她为他做一个好妻子。

She made him a good wife. (Cf. 她会成为一个好妻子的。译成 She will make a good wife. 句中的 make = become. 此句为第二句型，即/主语 + 述语 + 补语”。)

## 2. 有告知意味的授与动词：

王先生教我们的英文。

Mr. Wang teaches us English.

请你告诉我去车站的路好吗？

Will you please show me the way to the station?

孩子们要我讲故事给他们听。

The children want me to tell them a story.

你唱支歌给我听吧，在我离去之前。

Sing me a song before I leave.

让我把他刚来的信念给你听。

Let me read you his letter just received.

3. 有贡献意味的授与动词：运动是对你有益的。

Exercise will do you good.

喝少量的酒是无害的。

A little wine will do you no harm.

公平地说一句，他并不是坏人。

To do him justice, he is not a bad man.

请你帮我一个忙好吗？

Will you do me a favour?

在我贫困时，他给了我不少的帮助。

He has rendered me great help in time of need.

4. 有得失意味的授与动词：

我去替你买张戏票来。

I will get you a ticket.

你有了这张票即可入场。

This ticket will gain you admission.

我要尽量使你获得好的条件。

I will try to procure you the best terms I can.

那本书使他出了名。

The book won him a reputation.

他太迟钝了，以致失掉了那个机会。

His slowness lost him the chance.

5. 还有一种变则的授与动词，是只有间接宾语而无直接宾语的，与文法原则相反，故称变则。

这件衣服你穿了很合适。

The dress becomes you very well.

年轻人宜彬彬有礼。

Modesty becomes a young man.

我已有准备来应付可能到来的最坏的情形。

I am prepared for the worst that can befall me.

这幢房子花了我三万元。

This house cost me thirty thousand dollars.

你多久才把英文学好的？

How long did it take you to master English?

这件衣我穿了五年。

This coat has lasted me five years.

我的英文知识给了我很大的用场。

My knowledge of English stood me in good stead.

在第四句型的构造中有下列三种形式：

1. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + Noun:

I gave John (him) the book.

I bought John (him) the book.

I asked John (him) the question.

2. S. + Vt. + Noun (pronoun) + how (when, where, what, which) + to-Infinitive:

I taught John (him) how to drive a car.

Did he tell you when to start?

Please show me where to find them.

He told me what to do next.

He showed me which (which way) to choose.

3. S. + Vt. + Noun (pronoun) + that (what, which, who, how, when, where, why, if, whether) Clause:

He told me that he did not know it.

He asked me what was the right way to do it.

Will you tell me which (which book) you have read?

He does not tell me who is going with us.

He does not tell us whom he is going to bring.

He asked me how (where, when, why) I was going to do it.

Will you ask him if (whether) he is coming with us?

#### 习题 4

试将下列各句译成英文，句中须采用授与动词。

1. 只有人类有天赋的说话才能。
2. 他让了座位给她。
3. 他父亲留给他一大笔遗产。
4. 我把那钱付给他了。
5. 我来把信念给你听。
6. 你给我唱一支中国歌好吗?
7. 我很羡慕你运气好。
8. 我很恭维了他。
9. 敬祝成功愉快。

10. 我很抱歉给你许多麻烦。
11. 他们甚至连极微薄的报酬都不给我。
12. 我希望你不至拒绝我的请求。
13. 旅客只许带三十磅的行李。
14. 中国古话说，女子无才便是德。
15. 他们对自己的国家没有一点责任感。
16. 她要不是为着对她孩子的爱她就愿意死去。
17. 我并不羡慕阔人的财富，那使他们非常忧烦。
18. 公平地说一句，他一直是一个好丈夫，也是一个好父亲。
19. 那个恶棍长久逃避追捕终于落网。
20. 微物请赐晒纳为幸。

## (8) 第五句型的不完全他动构造

主语 + 述语 + 宾语 + 补语

这是英文造句中四种要素具备的句型。句中的他动词是不完全的，所以有了宾语，还是不能使意念完全，必得再加上一个补语才行。例如：

他使父母快乐。

He made his parents happy.

句中的 **he** 是主语，**made** 是述语，**his parents** 是宾语，**happy** 是补语。因为这个述语是不完全他动词，所以单有宾语不够，还得加上补语。这种动词英文又称 **Factitive Verb**（作为动词）。这个 **factitive** 意为 **making** 因为它是有所作为的。照普通的话说，它能使入做什么，使人变得怎样，比方说/人们选举他为市长”，就是使他做市

长。/儿子使父母快乐”，就是使父母变得快乐。/我们叫他傻瓜”，就是使他成为傻瓜。诸如此类，都是表示作为、使成、变得等的意思。

We named him John. (= He was named John.)

They call him Jack. (= He is usually called Jack.)

They appointed him governor. (= He was appointed governor.)

They elected Washington president. (= Washington was elected president.)

They crowned William king. (= William was crowned king.)

由于上面的这些例子，可见在“作为动词”后的宾语，都含有被动的意思，这就是“作为”的结果。使动是可以包括在被动中的，如云 **He made his parents happy. = His parents were made happy.** 意即他的父母被使快乐，被儿子使他们快乐。

我们还记得在第二句型的不完全自动构造中，也是需要采用补语的，即是不完全自动词与不完全他动词，都需要有补语以完全文句的意念，不过前者为主格补语，后者为宾格补语，比较如下：

不完全自动与主格补语

She became (was made) his wife.

She became (was made) happy.

不完全他动与宾格补语

He made her his wife.

He made her happy.

宾格补语也和主格补语一样，可分 **Noun-Element**（名词及其同等语）和 **Adjective-Element**（形容词及其同等语）两大类。还可细分如下九项：

1. They appointed Nelson admiral. (Noun)

2. I believed it him. (Pronoun) ❷
3. He painted the house green. (Adjective)
4. What time do you expect her back? (Adverb)
5. I have always found him to be a true friend. (Infinitive)
6. I kept him waiting. (Present Participle)
7. We call such a way of life/eating the bread of idleness". (Gerund)
8. I found everything in good condition. (Phrase)
9. We have made him what he is. (Clause)

他动词中可作/作为动词”用的有 make, elect, think, have, keep, find, leave, create, show, appoint, name, suppose, call, prove, believe, imagine 等字, 而某些形容词或名词前后加/en”时, 也可作成具有作为意味的动词, 如

To enable = to make able

To enfeeble = to make feeble

To weaken = to make weak

To strengthen = to make strong

To lengthen = to make longer

To shorten = to make shorter

To widen = to make wider

To harden = to make hard

To soften = to make soft

To broaden = to make broad or broader

上举的/作为动词”中有些字如 find, think, show, prove 等, 实际原来是不定词构造 (Infinitive Construction) 的省略形, 即:



We supposed him [to be] dead.

We found him [to be] alive.

You must show yourself [to be] a gentleman.

He has proved himself [to be] worthy of confidence.

在这种句型中有时因声调的关系，常要在宾语地位上用“it”来代替不定词，而将不定词移到别处去，因为 **to be** 作补语用固可，作宾语用就有些拗口，应加用一个代名词的“it”进去，才合乎惯用语法，如

我觉得这样做是我的义务。

一句，如译为 **I think to do so my duty.** 则不顺口，应改为

**I think it my duty to do so.**

才妥。又加

我认为那个要实行很难。

一句，如译为 **I found to put it in practice very difficult** 则不顺口，应译为

**I found it very difficult to put it in practice.**

才合乎英语的惯用法 (usage)。

同是一个他动词可用作完全他动，也可用作不完全他动，如

(a) **I found the book easily.**

(b) **I found the book easy.**

在 (a) 句中的 **found** 为完全他动词，**easily** 为修饰动词的副词，全句意为“很容易地找到了那本书”。在 (b) 句中的 **found** 为不完全他动词，在宾语外，还得加一个补语，意念才能完全。第二句意为“这本书我读了觉得很容易”，即容易读懂的意思。**easy** 是修饰 **book** 的，

原是说 I found the book was easy, 略去了 was 便成此型, 而那主格补语便成为宾格补语了。比较:

(a) I believed the untrue report. (完全他动词)

(b) I believed the report untrue. (不完全他动词)

(a) I make a point of siding with the weaker party.  
(完全)

(b) I make it a rule to side with the weaker party.  
(不完全)

(a) I made a workbox out of it. (完全)

(b) I made it into a workbox. (不完全)

英文还可以说成这样的妙语: She made him a good husband because she made him a good wife. (因为她成为他的好妻子, 所以也把他做成了好丈夫)。前面一个 made 是作为动词, 后面一个 made 是授与动词。

1. 认识动词, 即有心灵感觉 (mental perception) 的动词, 其宾格补语主要是表示性质的, 如 think, consider, call, believe, imagine, find, prove 等。在那宾格与补语之间, 有时可以加上/to be”的字眼, 例如:

我素来认为他是诚实的。

I have always thought him honest.

军队觉得在酷热下进军几不可能。

The troops found it almost impossible to march in the great heat.

那孩子走出学校进入社会时, 并不以为统治是荒诞的, 权威是可笑的。

When he leaves school and enters the world, the boy is not disposed to consider rule absurd and authority ridiculous.

他确实不是邪恶的，不过人们易于想像他的性格是柔弱的。

Vicious he could assuredly not be, but one easily imagined him weak in character.

从那种娱乐的形式看来，好像可以判明他的诚实。

Such a form of pastime seems to prove him sincere.

2. 感觉动词，即有身体感觉（physical perception）的动词，有 see, hear, feel, want, wish, like, hold, keep, leave, have, wear 等。

现今我觉得我的生活有说不出的空虚。

Now I feel my life unspeakably empty.

他们都指望我死，想得我的钱。

They all want me dead, and are hankering for my money. (Thackeray, Vanity Fair)

她回答说她完全满足于现况，不再想望别的什么。

She replied that she was quite contented and wished nothing different.

她披头散发。

She wore her hair loose.

那消息使得我漠然地感到不安。

The news left me vaguely uneasy.

她请医生替她检查了眼睛。

She had her eyes examined by the doctor.

3. 有些作为动词，在宾格补语之前，有加上一个“as”的必要。这个“as”是专为那动词而添附的，并无特殊意义。

她认为从那个根源可以产生任何好的事情出来，并非寻常的现象。

She regarded it as extraordinary that anything good could come from that source. (Gissing, Life's Morning)

他们认为已经绝望，就把他放弃了。

They gave him up as hopeless.

我认为他是一个很诚实的人。

I esteem him as a very honest man.

有人解释说，这个是有伤达克夫人的人格。

Some persons understood this as an imputation on Mrs Ducker.

从许多随笔家及杂文家中，选出这些人作为最能代表维多利亚朝的特征的。

These were selected, from among many essayists and miscellaneous writers, as most typical of the Victorian Age.

在谈论她的时候，巴氏夫妇说她羞怯那是不错的。

The Boxendales were not wrong in discussing her as shy. (Gissing, Life's Morning)

4. 有些宾格补语是表示由那动作的结果而产生的状态。这类动词多半有使动意味 (make, render, set, drive 等)，或表示一般的动作 (strike, beat, shoot, fold 等)。

我要解除他的一切困难。

I will set all his troubles right.

我在那种地方看到她，真使我惊讶得哑口无言。

I was struck dumb with astonishment at the sight of her in such a place.

休士那个家伙是可以做出很卑鄙的行为的。

That fellow Hughs could make himself quite nasty. (Galsworthy, Fraternity)

他决心对公众开放他那美丽的花园。

He decided to throw open his own beautiful gardens to the people.

你那感恩戴德之心，使你不可能对你的恩人做出这种事来。

Your gratitude should have rendered you incapable of such conduct towards your benefactor.

5. 反身自动词如要宾格补语时，也像作为动词时一样，那补语是表示动作的结果所产生的状态的。

他说话把声音都说哑了。

He talked himself hoarse.

大多数的人在那种情形中是欲罢不能的，他们都喝得烂醉如泥。

Most people in that state can't stop, they drank themselves dead drunk. (Galsworthy, Motley)

他们谈得睡着了。

They talked themselves asleep.

我们必须摆脱这种古老的伤感的想法。

We have got to shake ourselves free of the old sentimental notions.

“啊，我只是要求一点，请你清醒过来听我说话。”

“Why, this is what I want, and just shake yourself sober and listen, will you?” (Eliot, Silas Marner)

6. 在采取宾格补语的他动词中，如 **see**，原是指/看到的状态”，现在却变成指/看到的时候”，而在状态上加有时间的意味了。

我还会再见到他活着的人吗？

Shall I see him again alive?

我记得他年轻的时候。

I remember him young. (Lawrence, White Peacock)

她看到他的时候，他是年轻、骄傲、而又强壮的，现在他已年老，疲惫不堪，样子可怕，而已经死了。

She saw him young, and proud, and strong, and now he was old, and worn, and horrible, and dead. (Bennett, Old Wives' Tale)

在第五句型的构造中有下列九种形式。

1. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + Noun (Pronoun) :

I thought him an honest man.

I thought your brother you.

2. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + Adjective:

Her words made the man (him) angry.

3. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + -ing:

I saw John (him) entering the room.

4. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + -ed:

This word made his master (him) very pleased.

5. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + to-Infinitive:

I want John (him) to come here at once.

6. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + zero-Infinitive:

No one can make John (him) do the work.

Will you please let me go in his place?

I did not see anyone (him) enter the room.

7. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + as + Adjective (Noun) :

They represented him as reliable.

We will consider Hamlet as an example of a Shakespearean tragedy.

8. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + Prep. + Noun:

He put his affairs in order.

I found him in good health.

We consider this of the essence of the English character.

I thought it of no use.

He has set a new scheme on foot.

I mistook him for my brother.

Please make yourself at home.

9. S. + Vt. + Noun (Pronoun) + Clause:

He has made the company what it is today.

Call it what you will.

这五种句型只是一些不同的表达方式而已，所以我们可以用来表达同样的一个意思，如

战争使我们的生意萧条。

(1st pattern) Our business has suffered not a little through the war.

(2nd pattern) The effect upon our business of the war has been striking.

(3rd pattern) The war has affected our business to a remarkable extent.

(4th pattern) The war has done our business much harm.

(5th pattern) The war has rendered our business dull.

## 习题 5

1. 美国人民决不会选举一个黑人做总统的。
  2. 他们选举王君为议员。
  3. 户外运动使我们心身强健。
  4. 世人都以为他正直，实则他是一个骗子。
  5. 我吃过晚饭照例出去散步一回。
  6. 在别人没有注意的时候，他走出那房间去了。
  7. 我换了一张新牌照，又有三年好用。
  8. 我们发现他躺在马路边上。
  9. 他们正在我园里偷水果，我把他们抓住了。
  10. 我们的身体和衣服都要保持清洁，以免生病。
  11. 那叫作所答非所问。
  11. 我认为他说的不确切。
  13. 我感觉到那问题很难解决。
  14. 我认为把那件事情守秘密是贤明的。
  15. 苟爽以御李（膺）为荣。
  16. 我把他看做我的恩人。
  17. 他把国家的情形说得十分令人慨叹。
  18. 他们把她描写成天仙一般的美女。
  19. 他的英文极好。
  20. 我国向来尊重学问。
-



- ❶ 当然不限于第一句型，任何句型，任何复杂的文句，都可分成两个部分，例如  
The boy who just came in, the one in the blue suit, I studied English in Canada for two years when he was a child.
- ❷ I believed it (to be) him. 的 to be him 为 believed 的 Objective Complement, 而 him 又是 be 的 Complement, 用的 Objective Case. 其 Passive Voice 的 It was believed to be he. 中的 to be he, 是 was believed 的 Subjective Complement, 而 he 又是 be 的 Complement, 用的 Nominative Case. 他例如: We suspected the intruders to be them. The intruders were suspected to be they. 在 to be 的后面是主格和宾格都可以接用的。

## 貳 由构造来分的造句

### (1) 用单句来翻译

所谓单句，英文叫作 **Simple Sentence**，是在一个句子中，只包含得有一个主语和一个述语的，例如

Birds sing. (鸟鸣。)

What have you been doing? (你在做什么?)

What beautiful hair that little girl has! (那小女孩有多么美丽的头发呀!)

单句并不一定是很短的，有时因为修饰语加多了，也可以把句子拉得很长，现举几个例子如下：

Nearly all the boys in this class go somewhere for the summer. (几乎班上所有的学生都要到什么地方去过暑假。)

They saw a burning house, standing a little distance from the road, with some stately fir-trees in the foreground. (他们见到离开大路不远的地方，有一幢房子起火了。在那房子前面长得有一排森森的枞树。)

Caught in a shower on his way to his house in Lloyd Road, a tall English gentleman, a teacher of English in one of the most flourishing private schools in Singapore, began running, with some books under his arm, in order to catch a bus going at full speed about twenty yards ahead of him. (一个身材高大的英国人，是新加坡顶发达的一间私立学校的英文教员，在回返劳益路他的住宅去的途中，遇到了骤

雨，他手臂下夹着几本书，开始向前跑，想去搭乘在他二十码光景前面以全速力在开行的那辆巴士车。)

我们由中文翻译英文的时候，应运用英文各种惯用的句法，采取各种不同的方式，即以单句而论，也是有许多方式可以用来把句子扩大的：(一)用补语的，(二)用宾语的，(三)用形容词或副词的，(四)用动词片语的，(五)用独立片语的，(六)用副词片语的，(七)用介词片语的，(八)用名词片语的，(九)用代名词片语的，(十)用分词片语的。所以在主语和述语以外，还可以增加许许多多的字句，因为上述十种方式，并不限于一句只许用一种，我们同时可以用上好几种，如上举最后的一个例句，**caught in a shower** 是分词片语，**a tall English** 是形容词，**a teacher of English** 是同格名词，**running** 是宾语，**with some books under his arm** 是副词片语，**in order to catch a bus** 是介词片语，**going at full speed** 是形容词片语等等，所以原来只有主语 **gentleman** 和述语 **began** 两个字，现却拉长到五十五个字了。

#### (一) 用补语的

不完全的动词必须有补语，才能使句子表达出一个完全的意念来。自动词用主格补语，他动词用宾格补语。

##### (a) 主格补语

他看去很年轻。

He looks young.

华盛顿小时是一个好孩子。

Washington was a good boy.

中国是要养儿防老的。

In China a son should be the staff of his parents<sup>1</sup> old age.

##### (b) 宾格补语

人民选举他做总统。

People elected him president.

他使国家富强了。

He made his country wealthy and powerful.

## (二) 用宾语的

英文的他动词是要加上宾语才能成句的。用宾语的句子可分下列六种译法：

### (a) 用一个宾语

除你以外我没有朋友。

I have no friend but you.

天生丽质。

Nature has molded her form and features with masterly touch.

### (b) 用两个宾语

那老人讲一些有趣的故事给我们听。

That old man tells us amusing stories.

一磅烟丝只够他吸两个礼拜。

A pound of tobacco only lasts him a fortnight.

### (c) 用表结果的宾语 (Object of Result)

她点燃了一把火。

She lights a fire.

他在木板上钻了一个洞。

He bores a hole in the plank.

我在那上面画了一朵花。

I painted a flower on it.

(d) 用同系宾语 (Cognate Object)

他发出了一声短促的苦笑。

He laughed a little short ugly laugh.

他过着一种凄凉寂寞的生活。

He is living a sad and lonely life.

(e) 用反身宾语 (Reflexive Object)

他在晚会上感到很开心。

He enjoyed himself at the party.

你应利用图书馆的书。

You should avail yourself of the books in the library.

(f) 用保留宾语 (Retained Object)

凡有间接和直接两个宾语的文句，如由主动改为被动时，通常有两种说法，即每次只能用一个宾语，间接的或直接的，作为主语，其未用作主语的，就称为保留宾语，如

我给了那孩子一支自来水笔。

I gave the boy a fountain pen.

如将上句改为被动时态，则有下列两种形式：

The boy was given a fountain pen by me.

A fountain pen was given the boy by me.

(三) 用形容词或副词的

(A) 用形容词的，又可分为 (a) 叙述的用法，(b) 限定的用法，(c) 名词的用法，(d) 副词的用法，(e) 同格的用法五种译法。

(a) 叙述的用法 (Predicative Use)

这朵玫瑰花是红的。

This rose is red.

他对那结果感到满意。

He was content with the result. (Cf. contented)

这不值得那样麻烦。

It is not worth the trouble. (Cf. worthy)

专限于叙述用法的形容词有：ill (Cf. sick)，well (Cf. healthy)，glad, sorry, exempt 等，其他还有以/a-”开头的字，如 alone, asleep, awake, afraid, alike, ashamed, akin 等，例如：He was fast asleep. (熟睡) 也多半只有叙述用法。

(b) 限定的用法 (Attributive Use)

这是一朵红玫瑰花。

This is a red rose.

知足常乐。

A contented person is happy with his status quo.

他找到一个敢于和他相抗的敌人。

He found a worthy enemy.

儿童教育必须由所能聘到的最好的教师来施行。

The education of children must be conducted by the best instructors.

没有一件伟大的事不是由热忱来做成的。

Nothing great was ever achieved without enthusiasm.  
(Emerson)

(c) 名词的用法 (Noun Use)

他有审美的眼光。

He has an eye for the beautiful.

阔人也有他们的苦恼。

The rich have their troubles too.

级长阻止强者欺侮弱者。

The monitors hinder the strong from bullying the weak.

她是一个俗气的富婆。

She's one of the vulgar rich. (Gissing)

他对周围老少的人群投以一瞥。

He cast a look at the crowd of old and young about him.  
m. (对称时可略去冠词)

(d) 副词的用法 (Adverbial Use)

他们平安到达了。

They arrived safe. (= They were safe when they arrived.  
句中的 safe 为补语)

红颜薄命。

He died young. (= He was young when he died. 句中的 young 为补语)

我很想对你做得诚实一点。

I want to act honest with you.

看得轻松一点吧。

Take it easy.

我大为吓到了。

I'm awful frightened.

那会很合我的式。

That will suit me fine.

(e) 同格的用法 (Appositive Use)

一个饥饿疲惫的猎户睡在床上。

A hunter, hungry and exhausted, slept on the bed.

他又忧伤又疲倦，慢慢地走回家去了。

Sad and weary, he slowly walked home.

他老是神经过敏，这时尤其如此。

Always sensitive, he was especially so at this moment. (Gissing)

她的面貌虽不难看却很平凡。

Her features, though not plain, were insignificant. (Austen)

仍然是绿的叶子被风吹得从灌木篱笆上飘落下来。

The leaves, still green, were tossed off the hedgerow trees by the wind.

(B) 用副词的，又可分为 (a) 修饰动词、形容词或其他副词，  
(b) 修饰名词或代名词，(c) 修饰副词片语，(d) 修饰全句，  
(e) 作形容词用，(f) 作名词用，(g) 作补语用七种译法。

(a) 修饰动词、形容词或其他副词：

她听了那笑话开心地大笑。

She laughed heartily at the joke.



我现在已准备好了。

I am ready now.

她英语说得非常好。

She speaks English remarkably well.

(b) 修饰名词或代名词：

这事小孩子也能做。

Even a child can do it.

圣人也不免有过。

Even Homer sometimes nods.

只有你能猜。

Only you can guess.

已有大批人聚集在那里了。

Quite a crowd had already gathered there.

唯有约翰知道这事。

John alone knows about it.

你还要什么？

What else do you want?

我也有烦心的事。

I, too, have troubles.

(c) 修饰副词片语：

我们及时到达。

We arrived just in time.

我在战争结束后随即来到新加坡。

I came to Singapore soon after the war.

正十时关大门。

The gate is shut exactly at 10 o'clock.

他差不多快渡过河去了。

He is almost across the river.

他旅行了世界一周。

He has traveled entirely around the world.

(d) 修饰全句:

简单地说, 事实就是这样。

Briefly the facts are these.

很幸运地我去时他正在家。

Fortunately I found him at home.

确实你是错了。

Certainly you are in the wrong.

他愚笨地把那鹅杀了。

He foolishly killed the goose.

那真是一个好计划。

That is an excellent plan indeed.

(e) 作形容词用:

这是下行车吗?

Is this a down train?

在那边那位绅士是他的父亲。

That gentleman there is his father.

我在归途中遇到了他。

I met him on my way back.

从这件事产生的不愉快情形，和吃了大肉的早餐，可能就是他对一般世界失去希望的原因吧。

The unpleasant circumstances resulting from this together with heavy meat breakfasts, may probably have contributed to his desponding views of the world generally.  
(Eliot)

他一切都完了。

All is over with him.

我们一定要想办法赶走这些苍蝇。

We must do something to keep the flies off.

他把袜子穿反了。

He put on his socks wrong side out.

(f) 作名词用：

从这儿去有多远？

How far is it from here?

今天是我生日。

Today is my birthday.

那个描写了人生的浮沉。

It described the ups and downs of life.

(g) 作补语用：

火熄灭了。

The fire is out.

战争结束了。

The war is over.

蔷薇开了。

The roses are out. (= open)

幕已揭开。

The curtain was up.

#### (四) 用动词片语的

英文动词除单字(如 **come** 等)及群字(如 **will come** 或 **will have come** 等)外,还有动词片语(**verb phrase**),那是动词和其他词类,尤其是名词,结合而成的一种片语,常另具特殊意义,所以我们特别列成一项,来供翻译时采用。

你不应该拿你小弟弟们来开玩笑。

You should not make fun of your little brothers.

明天市公会堂要举行音乐会。

A concert is to take place at the town hall tomorrow.

我们没有钱就生活不了。

We cannot get along without money.

他赶不上班。

He couldn't keep up with the class.

我期待着你的回信。

I look forward to receiving your reply.

你必得把所作的决定重新加以考虑。

You must think better of your resolution.

我规定在晚饭前出外散步一回。

I make a point of taking a walk before supper.

我不作弄天真老实的人。

I don't play a trick on innocent people.

他的脚有什么毛病。

He has something the matter with his foot.

我和那件事没有关系。

I have nothing to do with the matter.

#### （五）用独立片语的

独立片语有三种，有用独立不定词构成的，有用独立分词构成的，有用独立介词构成的。兹分别采用翻译如下：

（a）独立不定词。这是用来修饰全句的。从文法上讲，它和主句毫无联系。

老实说，我并不喜欢他。

To tell the truth, I do not like him.

他可谓一部活辞典。

He is, so to speak, a walking dictionary.

使事情更糟的，天又下起雨来了。

To make the matter worse, it began to rain.

此外还有 to speak candidly, to be frank with you, to be sue, to return to the subject, to be brief, to make a long story short, strange to say, needless to say 等等。

（b）独立分词。这个与主语无任何文法上的关系，其形式有下列三种：

##### 1. 分词前带有意昧上的主语的

太阳落山，孩子们回家去了。

The sun having set, the children went home.

有他在此，便无危险。

He being here, there is no danger.

工作做完，他们就回家了。

The work done, they left for home.

春天来了，我们到公园去散步。

Spring coming on, we go to gardens to take a walk.

他是我的长辈，我应当尊敬他。

He being my elder, I should respect him.

## 2. 无人称的独立分词

严格地说，他并不算一个爱国者。

Strictly speaking, he is not a patriot.

以他的年龄而论，他是够聪明的了。

Considering his age, he is very clever.

从各方面来考虑，他的命运是幸福的。

Taking all things into consideration, his lot is a happy one.

其他如 judging from, talking of, 等皆是。3. 由 with 引导的独立分词

那小妇人慢慢前进，眼睛恶意地盯在那张粉红色的纸上。

The little woman advanced slowly with her eyes fixed malevolently on the pink paper. (Wells)

这个小村庄是位于平坦雄伟的牧场和麦田的中央，前有一列白杨树在风中摇曳。

This little village was set midst flat breadths of pasture and corn-lands, with long lines of poplars on the foreground bending in the wind.

(c) 由表感情上之结果 (resulting emotion) 的/to”所引导的独立片语。

使我喜慰的，我发觉他还活着。

To my joy, I found him alive.

使我吃惊的，他居然把一切都说不出来了。

To my surprise, he confessed everything.

使我失望的，他竟不同意我的计划。

To my disappointment, he did not consent to my plan.

使我满意的，是他终于解决了那个问题。

To my satisfaction, he has solved the problem at last.

使他悲伤的，他知道他父亲去世了。

To his sorrow, he learned that his father was dead.

#### (六) 用副词片语的

当心地写。

Write it with care.

天黑了，我们才回家。

We came home after dark.

他现在住在本村。

He lives in this village at present.

亲切地对待他。

Treat him with kindness. (= kindly)

我出外散步去了。

I went out for a walk.

他们匆匆回家了。

They went home in a hurry.

我们努力用功以求考取。

We work hard to pass the examination.

这本书太难懂。

This book is too difficult to understand.

### (七) 用介词片语的

介词片语有两种形式皆可用来翻译。一种是介词片语 (prepositional phrase)，另一种是介词的片语 (prepositional phrase)。所谓介词片语是一个名词或形容词前后都有介词而构成的片语，如 by means of, on account of, at the mercy of, for the purpose of, in return for, in respect to, in love with 等等，而所谓介词的片语，则为介词加名词。其中的名词实为那个介词的宾语，如 of diligence, in my hand, with pleasure 等等，其功用可修饰名词，有时也可修饰动词。

#### (a) 介词片语

他因生病，所以没有来。

He did not come on account of illness.

他们远赴台湾。

They went as far as Formosa.

贾克由于不屈不挠的精神而获得成功。

Jack succeeded by dint of perseverance.

思想由言语表达。

Thoughts are expressed by means of words.

旅人以驴代马。

The traveller is using an ass as a substitute for a horse.

他和她结婚是看上了她的财产。



He married her with an eye to her fortune.

我喜欢小黑（狗名），是因为它的头脑好。

I love Blackie for the sake of his sense.

他想要建房子，所以买了一块地皮。

He has bought a piece of land with a view to building a house.

(b) 介词的片语

一个品行优良的人受人尊敬。

A man of good character is to be respected.

凡 of + abstract noun = adjective, of use = useful, of diligence = diligent, of freedom = free, of security = secure, of importance = important, of wisdom = wise, of kindness = kind, of beauty = beautiful 等等。

苹果放在篮子里。

The apples are in the basket.

国王死后政府改变了很多。

After the king's death, many changes were made in the government.

玛丽对他那样不客气使我感到羞辱。

I am mortified by Mary's treating him so unkindly.

那个大建筑工程已经开始五年了。

The great structure has been under construction about five years.

他的语言教授法是最新式的。

He is very up to date in his methods of language teaching.

我们吃点鹿肉换个口味。

Let us have venison for a change.

一个健康的人一般都是乐天的。

A healthy man, as a general rule, is optimistic.

#### (八) 用名词片语的

凡作名词用的片语，便是名词片语，例如：

他是一个诚实的人。

He is an honest man.

狮为万兽之王。

The lion is the king of beasts.

我喜欢打网球。

I like to play tennis.

我不晓得要怎样办。

I did not know what to do.

教育部批准了他出国深造。

The Ministry of Education has ratified his going abroad for higher studies.

母亲很高兴，他这样快回家。

Mother rejoiced at his coming home so soon.

#### (九) 用代名词片语的

夫妻应当互助。

Husband and wife should help each other.

人们喜欢互殴。

People like to fight one another.

(十) 用分词片语的

(a) 用现在分词的

在路上走着，我遇见了一个老朋友。

Walking along the street, I met an old friend.

因为疲倦了，他躺下睡一会儿。

Being tired, he lay down to sleep.

用趾尖行走，我蹑足走到了他的背后。

Walking on tiptoe, I approached him behind.

说完这个他递了一封信给我。

Saying this, he handed a letter to me.

向右转弯，你就可看到你要找的屋子。

Turning to the right, you will find the house you are looking for.

他说英语，时常说错。

He often makes mistakes when speaking English.

情侣的时间是很长的，虽则感觉很短。

For lovers<sup>1</sup> hours are long, though seeming short.

(b) 用过去分词的

划船划得疲倦了，我一定要休息一下。

Fatigued with rowing, I must have a rest.

极其细心建筑出来的这些庙宇，是不容许加以冒渎的。

Built with infinite care, the temples are not allowed to be desecrated.

## 习题 6

试用英文单句译出下列各句：

1. 太阳落山了，我们回家去。
2. 忙中有错。
3. 我两年前才认识他的。
4. 请代我谢谢他的礼物。
5. 言归正传，他们当天便结婚了。
6. 以貌取人，失之子羽。
7. 贪爱钱财是万恶之源。
8. 他来看我目的在借钱。
9. 同盟国家互相猜忌。
10. 名誉与金钱无关。
11. 他赚了一大笔钱，他母亲高兴极了。
12. 写完了那封信，我就出去散步了。
13. 他易于满足。
14. 早起三朝当一天。
15. 病从口入。
16. 一寸黄金买不到一寸光阴。
17. 知人知面不知心。
18. 破帽之下多好人。
19. 智慧就在认识机会。
20. 人谁无过。

## (2) 用合句来翻译

所谓合句，英文叫作 **Compound Sentence**，是由两个或两个以上的独立子句 (**Independent Clause**) 所构成的。采用这种句型来翻译的时候，实比采用单句还要来得简单，但要注意一点，子句与子句间要用对等连词 (**Coordinate Conjunction**) 来结合成为合句才是。对等连词约可分为下列四种：

(一) 累积连词 (**Cumulative Conjunction**)：有 **and**, **both** ” ” **and**, **not only** ” ” **but also**, **no less than**, **as well as**, **furthermore**, **besides**, **moreover** 等。

(二) 选择连词 (**Alternative Conjunction**)：有 **or**, **either** ” ” **or**, **nor**, **neither** ” ” **nor**, **otherwise**, **or else** 等。

(三) 反意连词 (**Adversative Conjunction**)：有 **but**, **yet**, **while**, **nevertheless**, **still**, **however**, **whereas**, **only**, **notwithstanding** 等。

(四) 推论连词 (**Illative Conjunction**)：有 **for**, **therefore**, **so**, **thus**, **hence**, **wherefore**, **consequently**, **accordingly** 等。

在以上的对等连词中，有的并不是真正的连词，而是接续副词 (**Conjunctive Adverb**)，又称关系副词 (**Relative Adverb**)，拿来用作对等连词的，例如：

那里没有一个人，所以我也就走了。

There was no one there, so I went away.

我们在那里呆了一个钟头就回家了。

We stayed there an hour; then we went home.

你一旦露出任何恐惧的迹象，他就会攻击你。

Once you show any sign of fear, he will attack you.

她是留学美国的，所以她英语说得好。

She is an American returned student, therefore she speaks good English.

这书一脱稿，我马上和出版家订好了出版合约。

Immediately this was done, I completed an arrangement with my publishers.

我很想去，不过我却不愿冒着雨去。

I want to go very much; still I do not care to go through the rain.

他是一个聪明人，而仍不免常犯错误。

He is a wise man, nevertheless (或 none the less 或 and yet) he often makes mistakes.

我很愿意做，只是我太忙了。

I would do it with pleasure, only (= except that) I am too busy.

我正要说话，铃子就响了。

I was just going to speak, when the bell rang.

此外还有原是不对等的连词，如 as, until, while, when 等，有时也可拿来作对等连词用，例如：

他是一个美国人，我听他说话就知道。

He is an American, as I know from his accent.

在此他又犯了一般以貌取人的通病，那过后就可以证明的。

Here he fell into the common error of judging by appearances, as will be proved hereafter.

那个婴孩变得越来越虚弱，终于不久就死了。

The little baby grew more and more sickly, until presently it died.

一条轮船正用全速力在走，突然一下驶入浅水而触礁了。

A steamer was going along at full speed, when it suddenly got into shallow water and ran aground.

他正想要用脚后跟践碎那株小草，而一个新的念头使他停下来了。

He was about to crush the plant with his heel, when a new thought made him stop.

某种习惯一直在形成而牢固起来，终至变得牢不可破。

All the while a certain habit is forming and hardening, until at last we find ourselves helpless.

有的人富，有的人穷。

Some men are rich, while (= whereas) others are poor.

当我在纽约的时候，我见过他好几次。

I saw him several times while I was in New York.

我弟弟发了财，而我还依旧穷困。

I have remained poor, while my brother has made a fortune.

那帽子的颜色我虽则很喜欢，但形式我不爱。

While (= Though) I like the colour of the hat, I do not like its shape.

上面最后两例是由其前一例的基本用法逐渐引申出来的。

现将真正的对等连词的用法，例示如下：

小红低唱我吹箫。

I played on the flute, and Hsiao Hung sang to it.

他开始说话，全体肃静。

He began to speak, and all was still.

过几分钟他就睡熟了。

A few minutes more, and he lay sound asleep.

赶快，那么你就可以赶上火车。

Make haste, and you will catch the train.

他在恐怖中从家中逃走了，从那以后我再没有见到他。

He fled from the house in terror, and I have never seen him since.

你一定要把文书归档，否则你就不会受到信赖。

You must have your papers on file, or no credit will be given.

穿上你的外套，否则你会着凉的。

Put on your overcoat, or you will catch cold.

要么进来，要么出去。

Either come in or go out.

你必须说实话，或者什么也不说。

You must either tell the truth or say nothing.

强使污物留下的话，不是引起皮肤病，就是伤害血液。

Either the skin will become diseased, or the blood will be injured by being forced to retain its impurities.

赶快，否则你就要迟了。

Hurry up or else you'll be late.

我没有钱，我也不想有钱。

I am not rich, nor do I wish to be.

既非他错，也非我错。

Neither he is mistaken nor I am.

约翰和我都没有到会。

Neither John nor I attended the meeting.



他是一个能干的人，但这问题对他也嫌太难了。

He is an able man, but the problem was too hard for him.

他的身体虚弱，但他仍要工作。

He is not in good health, but he still wants to work.

你现在必得离去，但下回你可以再来。

You must go now, but you may come again.

他不可能懒惰，因为他有很大的进步。

He cannot be idle, for he makes remarkable progress.

油完了，因为灯已熄灭。

The oil must be out, for the lamp has gone out.

林肯不但是黑人的朋友，也是弱者和无告者的朋友。

Lincoln was not only a friend of the negroes, but a friend of the weak and the helpless.

他不但给了我钱，还给了我一个装钱的皮包。

He gave me not only the money, but also a purse to put it in.

事业的成功，不但要有精力，还得有耐性。

Not only energy, but patience is necessary to success in life.

你须听话，否则你将受罚。

Do what you are told; otherwise you will be punished.

抓住那个机会，不然你将后悔。

Seize the chance, otherwise you will regret it.

有人喜欢吃肥肉，而另有人就讨厌它。

Some people like fat meat, whereas others hate it.

他很聪明而他的妹妹就有点愚笨。

He is clever whereas his sister is foolish.

总督看了请愿书，但他仍然拒绝赦免那孩子。

The governor read the petition; nevertheless he refused to pardon the boy.

他有学问又有经验。

He has experience as well as knowledge.

合句有时不用连词而用标点也是可以的，尤其在古文中常有见到，例如：

Cowards die many times before their death; The valiant never taste of death but once. (Shakespeare, Jul.Caes. II, ii, 32f.) (对照意味)

John Told had drunk a large quantity of liquor, he was both merry and tipsy. (Powys) (因果关系)

Shakespeare was born in 1564; he died in 1616. (罗列一起)

A writer wants something more than money for his work: he wants permanence. (继续谈论)

而《圣经》上的合句则连词和标点都用得很多：

And the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell; and great was the fall of it. (Matt. vii. 27)

合句有时既可借用复句的不对等连词，则合句与复句岂不变得一样的而没有分别了，须知二者的分别并不全在连词，还有其他重要的因素。凡用有限制用法的关系词 (**Relative**) 的文句就是复句，用有非限制用法即继续用法的关系词 (通例在其前有 **Comma**) 的文句便是合句，如：

He is the man whom I met in the train. (复)

I met Mr. A, who ( = and he) told me the news.  
(合)

This is the place where I was born. (复)

Then my parents went to America, where ( = and there) I was born. (合)

Then I went to Rome, where ( = and there) I stopped for a week. (合)

This book, which ( = though it) appeared about a month ago, has already gone through several editions.  
(复)

When at home, he shuts himself up in his study.  
(复)

在合句中连词的位置多半是放在两个子句之间，如：

He is young, and yet he is prudent.

I was ill, so I did not go.

I knew it was him the minute I saw him.

但是复句的连词就多半是放在附属子句之前，如：

Let us go to bed, as it is late.

Though he is poor, he is honest.

Brave as she was ( = Though she was brave), she trembled.

Brave as she was ( = Because she was brave), she attacked.

试用英文合句译出下列各句：

1. 日暮途远。
2. 不自由毋宁死。
3. 聪明人为求知而读书，愚人则为文凭。
4. 天将下雨，因为晴雨表渐见降低。
5. 几家欢乐几家愁。
6. 他自己家里有很多事要做，而他却来帮我的忙。
7. 他硬不肯听，要我怎样去说服他。
8. 他分明知道打扰我们，他还要说个不停。
9. 他借我五千元，只还来两千。
10. 当我对你说话的时候，请你不要作声。
11. 他有钱无处用，而我无钱可用。
12. 他是唯一的候选人，因此他当选了。
13. 他是很孚众望的候选人，结果他是会当选的。
14. 我憎恨他，而你只是不喜欢他而已。
15. 人生不满百，常怀千岁忧。
16. 我必须把他的一份给他，因我已答应两人平分。
17. 我到达车站的时候，火车已经开走了。
18. 他口中高谈和平，而实际却带给我们战争。
19. 我接受了他善意的劝告，所以我现在并不觉得新生活徒劳无功。
20. 这种工作也许别人可以，我是不能做的。

### (3) 用复句来翻译

所谓复句，英文叫作 **Complex Sentence**，是由两个或两个以上的独立子句所构成的。构成合句的子句一定是对立的，而构成复句的子句，其中只有一个是主要子句 (**Principal Clause**)，其余的都是附属子句 (**Dependent Clause**)。在复句中所用的连词，不是对等连词，而是不对等连词 (**Subordinate Conjunction**)。这种不对等连词，多半是放在附属子句前面的。

依照外形分类，不对等连词可分为下列四种：

(一) 单纯连词 (**Simple Conjunction**) : as, if, than, that, though, lest, when, since, while, etc.

(二) 复合连词 (**Compound Conjunction**) : although, because, unless, whereas, etc.

(三) 关联连词 (**Correlative Conjunction**) : as” ” as, as” ” so, so” ” as, so” ” that, whether” ” or, etc.

(四) 片语连词 (**Phrase Conjunction**) : as soon as, as (or so) long as, as if, as though, in case, in order that, in that, for fear (that), the moment, etc.

英文连词常用其他词类来充任，如：

1. 名词：Next time I see you, I will lend you the book.  
(下次我看见你的时候，我就把那本书借给你。)

I'll tell him the moment he gets in. (他一来我就告诉他。)

2. 代名词：Whichever you choose, I'll give it to you.  
(随便你选择哪一个，我都可以给你。)

3. 动词：Suppose I were going away, should you be sorry? (我如离去，你会觉得难过吗?)

4. 副词：Now (that) you are here, you'd better stay.  
(既来之，则安之。)

5. 介词：You will not have better health without you take better care of yourself. (你要是不更加讲究卫生，你就不会有更好的健康。)

For all (that) you say, I still like him. (不管你怎样说, 我还是喜欢他。)

用介词 **without** 作连词, 是古文或方言的用法, 现代英文, 多用 **unless**.

依照内容分类, 不对等连词可分为下列三种:

(一) 用于形容词子句的: who, whose, whom, that, which, when, where, why, etc.

(二) 用于副词子句的:

1. 时间: before, after, as, since, till, until, when, while, as soon as, as (or so) long as, no sooner" " than, scarcely (or hardly) " " when, etc.

2. 地点: where, whence, whither, wherever, etc.

3. 方式: as, as if, as though, etc.

4. 比较: as, when, the, than, etc.

5. 原因: as, because, since, etc.

6. 目的: that, so that, in order that, lest, for fear, etc.

7. 结果: that, so that, so (or such) " " that, so" " but that, etc.

8. 条件: if, unless, provided (that) , in case (that) , on condition (that) , in the event (that) , supposing (that) , suppose (that) , etc.

9. 让步: although, though, as, if, even if, notwithstanding (that) , whether, etc.

(三) 用于名词子句的 that, whether, if, who, which, how, when, where, why, etc.

(一) 用于形容词子句的译例

敬人者人恒敬之。

He who respects others is constantly respected.

昨天我们在戏院里遇见的那人是我的老师。

The man whom we met in the theatre yesterday is my teacher.

作品获奖的女孩是全班中年纪最小的。

The girl whose work got the prize is the youngest in the class.

我现在写的这封信是一封英文信。

The letter that I am writing is an English letter.

这就是我所选定的书。

This is the book which I chose.

礼拜天是我最清闲的时候。

Sunday is the day when I am least busy.

我不知道你到底要到哪里去。

I don't know the exact place where you want to go.

那就是我喜欢读中文的理由。

That is the reason why I like to study Chinese.

他在英国时，专门从事古堡的研究。

While he was staying in England, he made a study of old castles.

三尺童子无不识之。

There is no child but knows him ( = who does not know him) .

人孰无过。

No man but errs ( = who does not err) .

彼纵下愚，犹能知此。

He is not such a fool but that he knows it.

彼虽下愚，尚不至认敌为友。

He is not such a fool but what (= but that) he can tell a friend from a foe.

## (二) 用于副词子句的译例

### 1. 时间：

你买东西，非钱不可。

When you buy things, you must have money.

你不肯听我怎能对你说明呢？

How can I explain it to you when you won't listen?

有生命就有希望。

While there is life, there is hope.

当我生病的时候，他代替了我的位置。

He took my place while I was ill.

在我写这个的时候，你可以做点别的事情。

While I am writing this, you can be doing something else.

他还没有到我就离开了。

I left before he arrived.

我离开了以后他才到来。

He arrived after I left.

我没等待好久他就来了。

I had not waited long before he arrived.



等雨停了再说。

Let's wait until (or till) the rain stops.

我到新加坡差不多五年了。

It is almost five years since I came to Singapore.

我正要走的时候他回家来了。

He returned home as I was leaving.

一息尚存，奋斗到底。

So long as I live, I must fight it out.

你现在已经很大了，应该学点礼貌。

Now (that) (= As) you are a big boy, you must be have better.

我一做完就发现错了。

Immediately (或 Directly 或 The moment) (= As soon as) I had done it, I knew I had made a mistake.

他一见到那个，就动身回家去了。

He started back home as soon as he saw it.

He had no sooner seen it than he started back home.

He had scarcely seen it when he started back home.

He had hardly seen it before he started back home.

## 2. 地点：

精神一到，何事不成。（有志竟成。）

Where there is a will, there is a way.

谁也不去的地方，他也不喜欢去。

He does not like to go where nobody is going. (Lynd)

谁也不晓得她是从何处来的。

No one knows whence she came.

他随遇而安。

He will be happy wherever he lives.

无论何处有口角，总有他在场。

Wherever there is a quarrel, there he is sure to be.

### 3. 方式：

入乡问俗。

When in Rome, do as the Romans do.

他说英语好像他父亲一样。

He speaks English as his father does.

我就是这样去（不换衣服）。

I'll go just as I am.

他的行动好像很怕的样子。

He acted just as if (or as though) he were afraid.

他对待我好像对待下属一样。

He treats me as if I were his subordinate.

种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。（因果报应，丝毫不爽）。

As you sow, so you shall reap. (Proverb)

有其父必有其子。

As is the father, so is the son.

珊瑚非树，犹鲸非鱼。

Just as a coral grove is not a tree, so a whale is not a fish.

### 4. 比较：

那太太和她丈夫一样高。

The wife is as tall as the husband (is) .

太太没有丈夫高。

The wife is not so tall as the husband (is) .

她比她丈夫高。

She is taller than her husband (is) .

他像他妹妹一样亲切。

He is as kind as his sister (is) .

他又诚实又亲切。

He is as kind as (he is) honest.

他妹妹诚实，而他就亲切。

He is as kind as his sister is honest.

他像死人一样。

He is as good as dead.

她与其说是漂亮，不如说是可爱。

She is more attractive than pretty.

与其说他不好交际，不如说他羞怯。

He is more shy than unsocial. ( = He is shy rather than unsocial.)

与其说他是活着，不如说他是死了。

He was more dead than alive.

我们登得越高，气候越冷。

The higher up we go, the colder it becomes.

多多益善。

The more, the better.

越近骨头的肉，味道越美。

The nearer the bone, the sweeter the meat.

欲速则不达。

More haste, worse speed.

他半闭着眼睛，好像在回想什么。

He half-closed his eyes as though trying to recall something.

他说英语好像说自己的母语一样地熟练。

He can speak English with the same ease as if it were his mother tongue.

我现在确信眼下这个样子最好。

I am now quite certain that things are for the best as they are.

她聪明的程度远不及他的邪恶。

She was not nearly so clever as he was wicked.

你说你只有几本书，但你这儿的书就比我的要多上五倍。

You said you had a few books; but there must be five times as many here as I have. (Gissing)

我们必须接受事物的现状。

We must take things as we find them in the world.

他有一点过分爱好杯中物，正如水手们常有的现象。

As is often the case with sailors, he was a little too fond of liquors.

有急流一般的大的澎湃的声音。

There was a loud roaring as of rushing waters.

## 5. 原因：

因为我们没有钱，所以用不着去想度假的事。

Since we have no money, it is no good thinking about a holiday.

既然你要去，我就陪你去吧。

Since (或 As) you are going, I will accompany you.

因为他诚实，所以大家都喜欢他。

He is beloved of all because he is honest. (原因)

Cf. He must be honest, for he is beloved of all. (理由)

合句用 for，复句用 because，但 for 不用于会话体 (conversational style)，例如：/They ate their food uncooked, for the use of fire was unknown.”一句，到会话中则变成/Why did they eat their food uncooked? ”/Because the use of fire was unknown.”不可用 for.

因为下雨，我就没有出门。

I did not go out because it rained.

在否定后接用的 because 如作 though 解，翻译时绝无问题，如 You should not despise a man because he is poor. 译为/虽则他穷，你也不要轻蔑他。”或译为/不要因别人穷就轻蔑他。”都是一样，错不了的。但如遇到不作 though 解的否定后接的 because，就得特别当心了。因为它可能有两种解释，例如：I didn't go because I was afraid. = (1) I didn't go, and the reason was fear. (我怕所以我没有去。) = (2) I went, but the reason was not fear. (我不是因为怕才去的。) 一义说/去了”，另一义说/没有去”，竟发生完全相反的含义了。

因为他成绩好，所以薪水高。

He was well paid, as he had done the work well.

你疲倦了，最好去休息吧。

As you are tired, you had better rest.

## 6. 目的:

他们因为怕赶不上火车，急急忙忙地走了。

They hurried that (或 so that, in order that) they might not (说话时美国常用 wouldn't) miss the train.

要想动手搞另外的，你就得先把这个做完。

Finish this that (或 so that, in order that) you can start another.

当心以免从树上掉下来。

Be careful lest (或 for fear [that] ) you should fall from the tree. (lest 用于写作，说话时则用 for fear) 。

为着要去早晨的新鲜空气中把那问题仔细考虑一番，所以我出外散步了。

I went out for a walk, so that I might think the matter over in the fresh morning air.

为节省时间，队长亲自装上了马鞍。

The captain, in order that there might be no time lost, saddled his horse himself.

我们通常只是为求得别人的称赞而称赞别人。

We usually praise others only that we may be praised.

## 7. 结果:

我太疲倦，随即上床去睡了。

I was so tired that I went to bed at once.

那使他大为震惊，登时脸都白了。

It gave him such a shock that his face turned white.

他是那样的一个撒谎者，所以没有人喜欢他。

He is such a liar that no one likes him.

那是一个非常愚笨的计划，谁也不赞成。

It was a plan so stupid that no one approved of it.

我们经过长时间一直走得很快，所以十分疲倦了。

We walked very fast for a long time, so that we got quite tired.

他去得很早，所以占了一个好位子。

He went early so he got a good seat.

他说得那般清楚，我们每个字都听得见。

He spoke so clearly that we could hear every word.

你站近些使我可以看清楚你的面孔。

Draw nearer so that I can see your face.

她说的话那般有趣，使我既不知道也未注意时间的流逝。

She interested me so much that I neither knew nor realized how time passed. (Caskell, Cranford)

我微不足道，无可效劳。

I am such a tiny thing that I am little use to you.

没有一个人老得不能学的。

No man is so old but that he may learn. (However old a man may be, he may learn.)

无论怎样的难事久练自易。

Nothing is so hard but that it becomes easy by practice.

不雨则已，雨必滂沱。（重重不幸，祸每两临。）

It never rains but it pours. (= It never rains without pouring.)

裁判虽属公平，仍然有人不服。

Justice is never done but some people will be found to complain.

一定有事要发生的。

It can not be but that something will happen. (= So something must happen.)

人谁能免于过失。

It is impossible but that a man will make some mistakes.

#### 8. 条件:

你如果明天有空, 请来我家坐坐。

If (you are) free tomorrow, please come to see me.

只要你一年内还我, 我是可以把那笔钱借给你的。

I don't mind lending you the money provided (that) you pay it back within a year.

你要不是一个完全的笨蛋, 你就不会那样对待你叔叔的。

Unless you are a perfect fool you will behave properly to your uncle.

只要有二十个人肯捐一百元, 我也就照捐不误。

I will subscribe a hundred provided twenty others will do the same.

即令发生最坏的情形, 至少她也就有一个安全的地方可作退步的。

At least there will be a retreat secured for her in case the worst should ensue. (Thackeray, Vanity Fair)

非我喝酒, 他不罢休。

Nothing will content him but I must drink.

若非贫穷, 我是决意要出洋去的。



I would go abroad but that ( = but for the fact that) I am poor. (but for my poverty.)

无论如何必须达到我的目的。(不达目的，事必棘手。)

It shall go hard but ( = unless) I will accomplish my purpose.

## 9. 让步:

虽则天气很冷，他并没有升火。

(Al) though it was cold, he did not light the fire.

不问他成败如何，我们都要尽力帮忙。

Whether he succeed (s) or fail (s) , we should have to do our best.

即令他穷，他看去很快乐。

If he is poor, he looks happy. (if = even if)

哪怕我有钱，我也要工作。

Even if I were rich, I would work.

姑认这是真的，又将怎样？

Granting (或 Granted) that this is true, what follows?

天虽则黑了，我们还是找到了回家的路。

Dark as it was ( = Though it was so dark) , we found our way back. (注意 as 前如用名词，也要将冠词略去，如 Poor piper as I am. = Though I am a poor piper.)

他虽然吓坏了，但并没有倒下。

Startled though he was, he did not lose his balance.

糖虽是一种主要的食料，我们却不能以之为生。

Important as sugar is as an article of food, we cannot live upon it.

哪怕牺牲性命，他也要干到底的。

He will go through with it if it costs him his life.

即令你向他提出，他也不会接受的。

Even if you offer it to him, he won't accept it.

他虽有时感受风寒，然其身体极为强健。

He is extremely strong' not but that ( = though) he will catch a cold at times.

### (三) 用于名词子句的译例

他曾到此是确实的。

That he was here is true.

Cf. It is true that he was here. (副词子句)

我想他在城里。

I think (that) he is in town.

他说他要来的。

He said (that) he would come.

你不能来使我感到遗憾。

I am sorry (that) you can't come.

不晓得他在不在家。

I wonder if (或 whether) he is at home (or not) .

我相信他说的不错，而到现在为止谁也没有讲过这岛上的状况。

I believe (that) he was really right, and that nobody had told the situation of the island. (Stevenson)

我不知道我能不能进大学。

I don't know whether I shall be able to go to college or not.

问他是不是到动身的时候了。

Ask him if it is time to start.

我不清楚是他要打梅先生呢，还是梅先生要打他。

I am not clear whether he was going to strike Mr. Mell, or Mr. Mell was going to strike him. (Dickens, David Copperfield)

他问我是不是有什么要他做的事情。

He asked me if I had any business he could arrange for me.

他一再地问我在那里我是不是有什么事情要办。

He repeated the inquiry if I had any business there.

他做出这样的愚行来真是遗憾。

It is to be regretted that he should have committed this foolish act.

他完全相信他父亲会替他还债的。

He had a perfect belief that his father would pay his debt for him.

谁是下届美国总统尚未决定。

Who will be the president of the U. S. A. next time is undecided.

我问你在这三者之中最喜欢哪一个。

I ask you which of the three you like best.

我要用你所喜欢的名字来叫你。

I will name you what you like.

我不知道他怎样完成那工作的。

I know nothing as to how he has finished his work.

他要何时回家，连他太太都不知道。

When he will come home is not known to his wife.

我要把这个送给任何需要它的人。

I will give this to whoever wants it.

听说他要来，我们都高兴。

The news, that he will come, gives us much pleasure.

我确信他必成功。

I do not doubt (but) that he will succeed. (这个来自法兰西语的否定后的 but 是无意义的，下同。)

我不否认他是勤快的。

I do not deny (but) that he is diligent.

他的年轻并不妨碍他教书。

His youth hinders not but that he may teach. (= His youth does not hinder him from teaching.)

没有什么事可以妨碍我完成目的的。

Nothing shall hinder but that I will accomplish my purpose. (= Nothing shall hinder me from accomplishing my purpose.)

或者如此，亦未可知。

Who knows but it may be so?

## 习题 8

试用英文复句译出下列各句：

1. 我们都晓得时间就是金钱。

2. 我不知道这是真的还是假的。
3. 这就是昨天对我狂吠的那条狗。
4. 我亟想知道他这个时候在不在家。
5. 自从他去年离开这里以来我还没有见到过他。
6. 他说话的神气就好像什么都懂得似的。
7. 你越用功，进步越快。
8. 你既然这样讲，我就得相信呀。
9. 我们读书是为了求知。
10. 我打开窗子邀明月进来。
11. 他太狡猾所以没有人和他做朋友。
12. 豹死留皮，人死留名。
13. 如果合算的话，我就接受那个工作。
14. 没有人比不要听的人更聋的了。
15. 如果你是上等人，你就要像个上等人的样子。
16. 听来也许觉得奇怪，我太有钱反买不起它。
17. 我并不羡慕他富有，那使他非常烦恼。
18. 忧愁使他变成这个样子。
19. 在我们愉快地玩着的时候，时间过得很快。
20. 没有互敬是不能有友谊的。

## 叁 由内容来分的造句

### (1) 用平叙句来翻译

平叙句 (Declarative 或 Assertive Sentence) 是叙述事实的语句，我们日常讲话，大部分都是用的这种句子。如我在本书前面讲过的，英文的句型共有五种，其用字的排列次序为：

1. / 主语 + 自动词”，如 Birds sing. (鸟鸣。)
2. / 主语 + 自动词 + 补语”，如 The rose smells sweet. (玫瑰花香。)
3. / 主语 + 他动词 + 宾语”，如 He has plenty of sense. (他富有见识。)
4. / 主语 + 他动词 + 间接宾语 + 直接宾语”，如 He teaches us English. (他教我们英文。)
5. / 主语 + 他动词 + 宾语 + 补语”，如 You must keep it a secret. (你必须保守秘密。)

英文句中用字的排列次序常有变化，并不一定照这五种句型的规矩来说。兹就惯用法找出一些变化的形式，来作为平叙句的译法；至于普通五种句型所表现的平叙句法，因为前面已经详细讲过了，所以这儿不拟再说。

#### (一) There + 动词 + 主语

凡说到事物或人的有无时，在主语所含文字较长的情形下，为引起听者对主语的注意起见，在应说主语的地位上，用 **there** 一字充数，而将真正的主语移到后面去说，如

桌子上有一本书。

There is a book on the desk.

后来他确知悔悟了。

There came a time when he did repent.

人们看到了一个奇异的光景。

There was seen a strange sight.

从前有一位大王名叫亚菲来德。

Once there lived a great king whose name was Alfred.

一切寂静无声。

There fell a deep silence.

(二) 把条件句中的连词省略，而将助动词放在主语的前面去，本动词的 **be** 及 **have**，也有这种助动词同样的用法。例如：

如果你找到了，请告诉我。

Should you find them, kindly let me know.

她要有一个小孩的话，她就快乐了。

Had she a child, she would be happy.

他要是还在世，他会怎样说呀！

Were he alive, what would he say?

我要是见到了他，我会责备他的。

Did I see him, I would blame him for it.

(三) 副词（片语） + 动词 + 主语

为着引起读者的注意或好奇心起见，又为着保持字数较多的主语和动词的密切结合起见，常把动词放到主语的前面去。在这种情况下，也有采用 **there** 的时候。

一个女郎和一条狗来到街头了。

Down the street came a girl and a dog.

名单上还可加入下列的名字。

To the list may be added the following names.

在房间的当中，枝形吊灯下面，站着老家长乔戎。

In the centre of the room, under the chandelier, stood the head of the family, old Jolyon.

在他后面走进来一个身材高大的女人，体态丰腴，容仪端正，头发还是棕色的’ ’ 那就是瓦丽斯夫人。

Behind him had come in a tall woman, of full figure and fine presence, With hair still brown’ Lady Valleys herself.

（四）为着加强副词（片语），补语、宾语或本动词起见，常将这种字放在一句的头上。

1. 惊叹词变来的副词及介词，与同形的副词及 here, there.

副词 + 动词 + 名词  
代名词 + 动词

（a）枪声砰的一响，那鸟就掉下来了。

Bang went the gun, and the bird fell.

砰的一下又是一声枪声。

Bang came another shot.

皮鞭重重地抽去。

Crack goes the whip!

（b）天花板掉下来了。

Down came the ceiling.

他走下去了。

Down he went.

老鼠都跳进去了。

In plunged the rats.



我们像一阵风似的走了。

Off we went like the wind.

笛声一再高扬。

On and on went the puper.

行行复行行。

On and on they went.

那对夫妇一下就冲出去了。

Out rushed the man and his wife.

他们冲出去了。

Out they rushed.

马车驰过去了。

Over went the carriage.

他拿着盘子走过去了。

Over he went with the dish.

蜻蜓轰然上升。

Up went this roaring dragonfly.

他们上去了。

Up they went.

(c) 托孟来了。

Here comes Tom.

他来了。

Here he comes.

这是你的上衣。

Here is your coat.

这就是的。

Here it is.

那是你的手套。

There are your gloves.

那就是的。

There they are.

注意：here, there 如做“在这里”，“在那里”解时，仍可放在句首，但字的排列要照普通的顺序，如 **Here the game keeper found the dead body.**（猎场看守人在这里找到了那尸体。）**There Scott wrote all his works.**（史各特就在那里写出了他全部的著作。）

## 2. 上述 1. 项以外的副词及副词片语。

副词（片语） + 助动词 + 主语 + 本动词

我们对于这个决定深为后悔。

Bitterly did we repent our decision.

那情景我记得很清楚。

Well do I remember the scene.

我曾指出时间是过得很快的，但是徒然。

In vain did I point out how time was getting on.

我们再也见不到他的面了。

Never shall we see his face again.

我做梦也未曾想到这样的事。

Never had I even dreamed of such a thing.

对于这个使命我决不再向前移动一步。

Not another step will I budge on this errand.

直到那个时候我才实感到形势的危险。

Not till then did I realize the danger of the situation.

他不但从来没有踏进大门来过，甚至连在窗口也没有露过面。

Not only did he never cross the threshold, but he never so much as showed his face at a window.

为着闲人去游荡，世界上再没有比伦敦更好的地方了。

Nowhere in the world is there such a place for an idle man as London.

我们没有想到会再也见不到他的。

Little did we think that we should never see him again.

他一进房来就破口大骂。

Scarcely had he entered the room when he broke out in insults.

那对他们最没有兴趣的了。

Least of all is it to their interest.

我看见过他好多次。

Many a time have I seen him.

这种光景我以前只见到过一次。

Only once before have I seen such a sight.

他只有一次对我说过话。

Only on one occasion did he speak to me.

迟迟地他才明白那火灾是发生在他自己家里。

Only slowly did he understand that the fire was in his own house.

### 3. 补语:

补语 + 主语 + 动词

(a) 罗杰始终是一个坏脾气的家伙。

Cantankerous chap Roger always was.

他们非常感谢我要援助他们。

Very grateful they were for my offer of help.

幸而我们知道她的名字。

Lucky it is that we know her name.

(b) 我的懊悔是痛苦而无益的。

Bitter but unavailing were my regrets.

我采取正当措施极为有效。

So effective it is that I have taken the right measures.

#### 4. 宾语:

宾语 + 主语 + 动词

宾语 + 助动词 + 主语 + 本动词

(a) 我们虽然能够知道过去，但对未来却只能推测。

The past one can know, but the future one can only feel.

我们高兴地记得许多事情，也高兴地忘却许多事情。

Many things we gladly remember, others we gladly forget.

金银我都没有，我所有的只有这些，现在都给你好了。

Silver and gold have I none, but such as I have give I thee.

(b) 他没有给她说一句好话。

Not a word did he say in her favour.

不到最后一张纸印好，他们谁也不会有一分钟休息的。

Not a moment's rest will any of the men enjoy until the last paper is printed.

只有两个人死去了，没有继续受苦。

Only two had merciful death released from their sufferings.

5. 本动词：

你抱怨也得去。

Growl you will and go you must.

他说我们必须赶上她。

He says overtake her we must.

因为我们必须找到那个解毒剂，不然就得发现民主政治是欺诈的。

For find that antidote we must, or discover democracy to be fraudulent.

“如果你马上打电报去，他是可以阻止的。”而他就是这样被阻止了。

“If you telegraph at once, he can be stopped.” And stopped he was.

(五) 为着和上文联系，某些字眼要放在句首。

这种威胁他简直无法实行。

This threat he was quite unable to carry out.

这到底是什么我说不出来。

What it is I cannot tell.

这个议论的全程有赖于此。

On this depends the whole course of the argument.

我相信那些话是有预言意味的。在那些话中间有着劳工阶级成功地进行斗争的秘密。

I believe those words are prophetic. In them is the secret of a successful prosecution of the struggle of the working class.

随后就吹起逆风来了。

Then came unfavourable winds.

其次就是付款的问题。

Next comes the question of pay.

这便是此人的生平与性格。

Such are the life and character of this man!

医生在他的（创办医院的）计划书上这样说。

So the physician said in his prospectus.

他加速了他的步伐，我也如此。

He quickened his pace, and so did I.

你们错了，我们也错了。

You were wrong, so were we.

“你现在一定要去睡觉呀。”“正是。你也是呀。”

“You must go to bed now.”“So I must. So must you.”

树倒下来了，一定会死的。

As the tree falls, so must it die.

种瓜得瓜，种豆得豆。

As a man soweth, so shall he reap.

自作自受。

As you make your bed, so you must lie on it.

那件事他什么也不知道。他的妻子也和他一样。

He knew nothing about it. No more did his wife.

试想想田野的百合是怎样生长的；它们既不劳动，也不纺织。

Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow; they toil not, neither do they spin. (Matt.6: 28)

我也不必告诉你，我做这些事是凭什么职权。

Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things.

那一切都是真的，我们不可忘记。

All that is true, nor must we forget.

我不知道，我也猜不出来。

I know not, nor can I guess.

我不告你虚伪，更不告你欺诈。

I do not accuse you of falsehood, still less (do I accuse you) of dishonesty.

## 习题 9

1. 笨人无药可医。
2. 她每星期写一封信回家。
3. 他把钱都花在买书上面了。
4. 阔人也和穷人一样烦恼。
5. 这个礼拜下了不少的雨。
6. 现在是到了要思索的时候。
7. 她的缝纫机原来就是放在这里的。
8. 在他后面接着来了长蛇似的兵马。

9. 一按机关地雷立刻爆炸。
10. 在蒙茅斯要塞陆军通讯队所养的鸽子是最有代表性的。
11. 人们最喜欢的就是名利。
12. 杯中只有一点水。
13. 罕有比这更为忙乱的。
14. 他要看到了我，立刻就会认识的。
15. 他甫发言，听众就阻碍他。
16. 关于此事我们意见不同的地方就在此。
17. 他们得看护病伤的人。
18. 他不会成功的，虽则他从未这样努力试过。
19. 知足的人是幸福的。
20. 那演说家如是说。

## (2) 用疑问句来翻译

疑问句 (Interrogative Sentence) 是发出疑问的文句，正好像肯定形 (Affirmative Form) 的句子大都可以变成否定形 (Negative Form) 的句子一样，一般的叙述句也是大都可以变成疑问句的。例如“他礼拜天上教堂。”译成：

He goes to church on Sunday. 是肯定平叙句，而

He does not go to church on Sunday. 是否定平叙句。

Does he go to church on Sunday? 才是疑问句。

感叹句有时也勉强可改成否定，不过只能改为相反的意思，例如“这朵花多么美呀！” How beautiful this flower is! 改为否定时便成为“这朵花多么丑呀！” How ugly this flower is! 改为疑问句则成为



Is this flower beautiful? 意为“这朵花美吗？”和感叹句的含义（对此花之美大为惊叹）大不相同了。

英文的疑问句，从用字的排列上看，有三种基本的构成形式。

1. 最普通的字序（word-order）为：

Predicate-Verb + Subject

（a）在下列动词的场合，不用 Do-Form：Be（was；were），have（Past Tense 时偶然也可用 Do-Form），shall（should），will（would），can（could），may（might），must，ought to，need（v. aux.），dare（v. aux.），used to.

你好吗？

Are you well?

他来了吗？

Has he come?

我们赶得上火车吗？

Shall we be in time for the train?

你明天要来吗？

Will you come tomorrow?

你能读中文吗？

Can you read Chinese?

我可以回家去了吗？

May I go home?

你一定这样快就要走吗？

Must you go so soon?

我应该做这事吗？

Ought I to do this?

他非急不可吗？

Need he hurry?

你敢从那高墙上跳下来吗?

Dare you jump from the top of that high wall?

他曾经住在这里吗?

Used he to live here?

(b) 在其他的动词的场合, 就要用 Do-Form:

你喜欢他吗?

Do you like him?

你昨天看见他吗?

Did you see him yesterday?

2. 主语为疑问词或含有疑问词时的字序为:

Subject + Predicate-Verb

什么风把你吹来的?

What brought you here?

《哈姆雷特》是谁作的?

Who wrote Hamlet?

昨天有谁来了?

Who came yesterday?

什么人(哪一个)这样说的?

What (Which) man said so?

要做什么?

What is to be done?

如果在 1. 型上再加疑问词时, 则仍依照 1 型的字序, 不必改变。

他说什么？

What did he say? (句中 what 为 say 的宾语)

你有多少孩子？

How many children have you?

他是哪里来的？

Where has he come from? (句中的 where 为 from 的宾语, from where 为 Predicate-Verb 的 Modifier.)

你讲的是谁？

Whom are you talking of?

你何时从英国回来的？

When did you return from England? (句中的 when 为 Predicate-Verb 的 Modifier.)

3. 全照平叙句的字序, 只消在句尾加上一个 **Interrogation Mark** (疑问号), 以表示疑问的意思就行了。说的时候, 句尾稍加扬起。

你还没有去吗？

You are not going yet?

上面这三种疑问句的造型, 还可以补充说明一下。属于 1 型的疑问句, 都是可以回答 **Yes** 或 **No** 的, 在说话时, 这类问话都要在句尾用升调 (**Rising Intonation**)。至于 2 型的疑问句, 就不能回答 **Yes** 或 **No**, 因为它所问的不是是非的问题, 而是“是什么”, “为什么”, “怎么样”, “哪一个”, “何时”, “何地”, “何人”等问题。这类问话都是要在句尾用降调 (**Falling Intonation**) 的。至于 3 型已如上述, 在说话时句尾要用升调, 而文字的排列次序, 完全和平叙句一模一样, 只在句尾多了一个问号而已。这一类型的疑问句, 也可再细分为下列两类:

(a) 对于说话的人原是用不着要问的, 不过为慎重起见, 再来问一下, 例如:

我想，你有钱吧？

You have some money, I suppose? (Stevenson)

这个我可以看吧？

I may read this? (Dickens)

情形与此类似，而将疑问句的省略式附于平叙句之后，也是口语中经常见的。英文把它叫做 **Tag-question**，通常那附加的疑问句是不要译出的。

你不喜欢读小说吧？

You don't like to read novels, do you?

他去了美国吧？

He has gone to America, hasn't he?

你每个礼拜五都有英文课吧？

You have English lessons every Friday, don't you?

他们早餐吃茶点的吧？

They have tea for breakfast, don't they?

天气很好呀。

It's a fine day, isn't it? (J. K. Jerome)

(b) 凡表惊讶或怪异的时候，也可以用这种形式。

你不想去？

You don't wish to go?

我的父亲死了？

My father is dead?

上面这种形式的句子，普通常用不定词的造句来表达，例如：

他欺骗我？

He to deceive me? (= To think that he should deceive me!)

一个英国人叛国?

An Englishman betray his country?

路易士跟布兰芝结婚?

Lewis marry Blanche? (Shakespeare)

怎可放弃真理的大义?

How relinquish the cause of truth? (Goldsmith)

这三种疑问句的基本构成形式, Harold E. Palmer 把 1 型叫作 **General Question** (一般疑问), 2 型叫作 **Special Question** (特殊疑问); 而 Otto Jespersen 又把 1 型叫作 **Nexus Question** (叙述关系的疑问)。2 型叫作 **X-question** (含有未知数的疑问)。至于 3 型就被 Onions 及 Curme 称为 **Deliberative Question** (深思熟虑的疑问)。

除此三种而外, 还有一种所谓 **Rhetorical Question** (修辞的疑问), 是指那些表面上是疑问句, 实则什么都不要问, 而只是作为一种反语来表达自己的相反的意见, 好使对方接受而已。这种表现法实较平叙句更为有力, 更要充满感情, 例如:

有什么用?

What is the use? (= It is no use.)

谁不晓得?

Who does not know? (= Everyone knows.)

有人写过这样没有意义的东西吗?

Was ever such nonsense written? (= Never was such nonsense written.)

在这种修辞的疑问中, 肯定的疑问句相等于否定的平叙句, 例如:

黑人能够改变他的肤色，豹子能够改变它的斑纹吗？

Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? 如用平叙句说时，当然就变成 cannot 了。

否定疑问句相当于肯定平叙句，例如：

这不好笑吗？

Isn't it funny? (= It is very funny.)

有时连句尾的问号都可以省去：

Yet, are we not like spoiled children who have so many new toys to play with that we have ceased to wonder at anything. (可是，我们真好像是不断地给与许多新玩具的惯坏了的孩子似的，对任何东西都不感到新奇了。)

有时加上一个否定字的 not，也和没有此字的句子一样，结果变成同样的意思，例如：

他发现这个时极为惊异。

What was his astonishment on finding it? = How great was his astonishment on finding it! (感叹句)

What was not his astonishment on finding it? (修辞的疑问) = No astonishment could be greater than his was on finding it.

兹就四种疑问句分别举例译出如下：

(一) 一般疑问句

今夜月亮圆了没有？

Is the moon full tonight?

公众不是最好的批评家吗？

Is the public not the best judge?

你知道猫有九条命吗？

Do you know the cat has nine lives?

英国人喜欢户外运动吗？

Are the English fond of outdoor sports?

他坚持要一意孤行吗？

Will he have his own way?

她的眼睛是蓝色的还是棕色的？

Has she blue eyes or brown eyes?

你从前认得他吗？

Used you to know him?

他应该马上动身吗？

Ought he to start at once?

衣服穿得太脏是对人的一种无礼。

Isn't untidy dress a form of discourtesy?

他这样愚笨真令人吃惊？

Isn't it surprising that he should be so foolish?

你的意思是拒绝吗？

Am I to understand that you refused?

## (二) 特殊疑问句

谁会想到这样呀？

Who would have thought so?

一部车子里能够坐多少人？

How many passengers can ride in one carriage?

你手里是什么？

What have you in your hand?

从这里到车站哪条路最近？

Which is the shortest way from here to the railway station?

那本书你在哪里找到的？

Where did you find the book?

她为什么要这样说？

Why did she say so?

她何时起生病的？

Since when has she been ill?

你对于中国电影觉得怎样？

How do you like Chinese movies?

假期何时开始？

When will the holidays begin?

### (三) 熟虑疑问句

他还没有来吗？

He is not coming yet?

那房间里什么也没有？

Nothing was found in the room?

我并不感兴趣。

We were not amused, were we? (Queen Elizabeth)

那真奇怪呀。

That's queer, isn't it?

我要尊敬你吗？

I honour thee?

他不会说英语？



He doesn't speak English?

你不吃蛋糕?

You don't eat cakes?

再不要了吗?

No more?

他把约会忘记了?

He to forget the appointment?

他是一个君子?

He a gentleman? (= He is not a gentleman.)

你不去开会吗?

You are not going to the meeting?

#### (四) 修辞疑问句

这有什么麻烦?

What is the trouble? (= It is no trouble.)

谁不喜欢名利?

Who does not care for fame and wealth? (= Everybody likes fame and wealth.)

你能忘记那可怕的光景吗?

Can you forget that terrible scene? (= You cannot forget that terrible scene.)

本性难移。

Can man change his nature?

世界上有这样的事吗?

Has ever such a thing happened in the world?

我不应该留我兄弟在此。

Am I my brother's keeper? (= It is not my duty to keep my brother.)

我不在乎。

What do I care? (= I don't care.)

我有足够的钱吗?

Have I money enough? (= I haven't enough money.)

## 习题 15

1. 这有什么关系?
2. 你那支手杖是哪里买的?
3. 难道你不以儿子为荣吗?
4. 他是干什么的?
5. 这本书你花了多少钱?
6. 你打算雇用哪一位?
7. 有什么你要的东西我可以替你找来吗?
8. 有谁不犯过失?
9. 有很会游泳的女子吗?
10. 发生了什么事情吗?
11. 你喝点啤酒好吗?
12. 你有些英文书吗?
13. 给我一点葡萄酒好吗?
14. 你说莎丽要跟谁结婚?
15. 你知道空中楼阁是怎样一回事?

16. 明天我要去讲些什么呢?
17. 附近有公共汽车吗?
18. 你想她什么时候可以回来?
19. 他在英国住上十年之久还不懂英文?
20. 如果我坐三点半的车去, 可以赶上吗?

### (3) 用命令句来翻译

命令句 (Imperative Sentence) 是表示命令、请求、忠告、愿望、禁止等的文句, 普通是对第二人称说的, 所以常把对方的主语 **you** 省去。中国话也一样不说“你”, 单说动词就行, 例如:

进来!

Come in.

不要闹。

Be quiet.

把门关上!

Shut the door!

快说!

Speak!

过来!

Come here!

快走, 玛丽, 快走!

Run, Mary, run!

有时为着要和别人区别, 特别有指明对方的必要时, 也可以把主语说出来, 例如:

你同我到车站去。

You go with me to the station.

兹就命令句的各种形式，逐条例解如下：

1. 最普通的形式是略去第二人称的主语。

把握时机。

Make hay while the sun shines. (Proverb)

回去照我吩咐你的去做好了。

Go home and do what you are told.

请把面包递给我。

Pass me the bread, please.

要诚实呀！要诚实呀！要诚实呀！

Be true! Be true! Be true! (Hawthorne)

把书拿出来看。

Show the book. (C. Bront)

2. 否定的命令句常要加用助动词的 do，有时也可保留主语。普通是表示禁止的意思。

不要这样大声说话。

Don't talk so loud!

孩子们，不要懒惰。

Don't be idle, my boys.

你不要去把这个秘密告诉他呀。

Don't (you) go and tell him the secret!

你不要就开始。

Don't you begin it.

决不要撒谎。

Never tell a lie.

你不要管我。

Never do you bother yourself about me. (Eliot)

不要怕。

Fear nothing.

不要动。

Don't you stir!

不要为他着急。

Don't you worry about him.

不要为我难过。

Don't you go feeling sorry for me.

不要为一吻所欺骗而自寻苦恼。

Suffer not yourselves to be deceived by a kiss. (Patrick Henry)

在古文中或诗中虽有否定词仍然可以不加 do，如美国诗人 Longfellow 的诗句：

Tell me not, in mournful numbers,

Life is but an empty dream!

(毋作悲哀语，谓人生若梦。)

3. 肯定的命令句常加上一个助动词的 do 字，以加强语气，表示恳请。

务请你到这里来。

Do come here!

请不要吵闹。

Do be quiet!

务请你去。

Do go, please.

求你赏一文钱吧。

Do give me just one penny!

求你坐一会儿吧。

Sit down for a moment, pray, do!

4. 命令句法在古时是不略去第二人称的主语的，不过那时常把主语放在动词后面，例如 **Go and do thou likewise.**（你去照样做吧。）**Enter ye in at the strait gate.**（你们要进窄门。）**So speak ye, and do so.**（你们就该照这律法说话行事。）以上这些引用的句子都是《圣经》上的，由于这种用法遗留下来，现代英文中便有 **mind you, look you, mark you, speak you** 等等惯用语句：

你要当心，他还没有付款。

**Mind you, he hasn't paid the money yet.**

赞美主。

**Praise you the Lord!**

5. 在现代英文中为加强语气或代表对照起见，也还是可以保留第二人称的主语的。特别提出对方来说，以便唤起对方的注意。

我不晓得要怎样说，诺拉，你去吧。

**I don't know what to say, Nora, you go!**

“你在此看守她，”医生对他的助手说，“我要八点钟才能回来。”

**“/You watch her, ” the doctor said to his assistant, /I shan't be back before eight.”**

你注意我说的话。

You mark my words!

你不要惹那条狗。

You let that dog alone!

你坐下来吃你的早餐好了。

You sit down and get your breakfast!

你听我的劝告，不要去。

You follow my advice and don't you go! (Emphasis)

你要当心呀，你听到了吗？

You be careful, you hear? (Emphasis)

这个我搞不好，你来试试看。

I cannot manage this; you try. (Contrast)

约翰，你先坐下吧，有人会再去拿些椅子来的。

You take that seat, John, and someone (= one of you present) fetch a few more chairs. (Contrast)

啊，请你们那个进去告诉她一声吧。

Oh, please, someone (= someone of you) go in and tell her.

6. 对于第一人称和第三人称的命令句，就要加用 let 一字，而把主语变成宾语。

让我看看。

Let me see!

让我们走吧。

Let us go!

让他进来。

Let him come in!

让他们向前走。

Let them walk on.

我们在这里停留一个礼拜吧。

Let us stay here a week.

如果是恳求的话，还可以在 let us 前加 do 或 don't 的字样，如：

啊，请让我们吧。

Oh, do let's!

不要让我们那样做呀。

Don't let us do that!

Compare:

Let's [lets] go. (我们去吧。)

Let us [lets] go. (= Set us free) (让我们走吧。)

Let us [lets] know (= Tell us) the time of your arrival. (告诉我们你到达的时间。)

Let's let him go. (= Let's allow him to go.) (让我们允许他去吧。)

Let it be distinctly understood (= Understand [it] distinctly) that I will stand no nonsense. (要明白我是不会容忍胡闹的。)

Let me see! What is the name of that man? (让我想想看他姓什么。)

Let me not hear of it any more. (我不要再听到这个了。)

Let's not do what is wrong. (让我们不要做错事。)

Let's go for a walk, shall we? (我们去散散步吧。) 以下则形式 (Form) 上为间接命令，而意味 (Sense) 上却是直接



命令: Let the pupils beware of bad company. (Boys, beware of bad company.) (学生不要交坏朋友。)

Let any one of you, who can answer this question, hold up his hand. (你们任何人, 谁能回答这问题的举手。)

Now let's every one go to bed that we may rise early. (Walton) (大家早早去睡, 我们明天好早早起身。)

## 7. 命令句中的假设语气的用法:

在 **Older English** 中命令句的主语如系第一人称或第三人称的时候, 就用假设语气现在 (**Subjunctive Present**) 来表示。今日在诗中极少数惯用语句中, 还有这种用法的遗留。

他们说我做错了。让它去吧。

They say I have done wrong. Be it (Let it be) so.

让我们向前进吧。

Move we (= Let us move) on. (Scott)

不要爬得太高, 以免跌得太重。

Climb we not (= Let us not climb) too high, /Lest we should fall too low. (Coleridge)

我们的路在那边; 让我们蜿蜒爬上高处。

Thither our path lies; wind we (= let us wind) up the heights. (Robert Browning)

这种形式在现代口语中也有遗留下来的痕迹可寻。那些带有命令形 (**Imperative Form**) 的假设语气现在 (**Subjunctive Present**), 可用作让步的意思。

不管天气如何, 我都要去。

I will go, be the weather what it may (= whatever the weather may be) .

不管花多少钱, 我都要买。

Cost what it may ( = Whatever it may cost) , I will buy it.

不管你怎样说，他都不听。

Say what you will ( = Whatever you may say) , he does not mind us.

无论他们怎样努力去干，也决不会成功的。

Try as they may ( = However hard they may try) , they will never succeed.

无论它们怎样挣扎，钩钩已钩牢在它们鳃上了。

Do what they might ( = Whatever they might do) , the hook was in their gills. (George Meredith)

可以说强盗已被击溃了。

Suffice it to say that the robbers were defeated. (Farley)

金窝银窝，不如自己的狗窝。

Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.

不管是什么事情，始终都要说实话。

Be the matter what it may, always speak the truth.

8. 命令句法的时态在性质上原是现在，不过偶然也有用完成式的，那当然是为着加强语气而用的。

算了吧。

Be gone!

够了，不要再这样胡说了。

Have done with such nonsense!

9. 命令句的特殊用法。

(a) 为表示条件有时也可以用命令语气：

只要你看管小钱，大钱就会看管自己的。

Take care of the pence, and the pounds will take care of themselves. (= If you take care of the pence, the pounds will take care of themselves.)

只要你敢走近我一步，我就要打碎你的嘴。

Take a step near me, and I'll smash your mouth.

你说呀！不说我就开枪啦。

Speak! or I fire. (= If you do not speak, I [will] fire.)

(b) 表示假设等。

假如你有了一笔钱，例如一千镑吧，你会用来做什么？

Suppose (= If) you had a sum of money' say (= for instance) a thousand pounds' what would you do with it?

下星期休假一天何如？

Suppose we take a holiday next week.

他连日常必需品都没有，遑说什么奢侈品。

He lacks the bare necessities of life, let alone (= not to mention) luxuries.

(c) 命令句又可用作副词同等语 (Adverb-Equivalent) 。

毕竟，他那样的人是不会再度遇见的吧。

Take him for all in all (= After all) , we shall not look upon his like again. (A. Huxley)

确实，马克爵士和那事毫无关系。

Rest assured (= Assuredly) Sir Mark had nothing to do with the matter.

## 习题 11

1. 我们不要做不诚实的事。
2. 我不想再听到这件事了。
3. 你要勤快点才好呀。
4. 不要懒惰呀。
5. 不要急急离去呀。
6. 拿把椅子来让你叔叔坐。
7. 那只猫你让它去吧。
8. 胡兰芝，现在你读。
9. 务请赏光。
10. 你不要挂意。
11. 不要忘记你的功课。
12. 不要过分依赖别人的帮助。
13. 你告诉他这是紧急的事。
14. 不要胡说八道。
15. 请大家安静下来。
16. 不要担心。
17. 你戒了酒，健康就会好些。
18. 永不要说别人的坏话。
19. 不要像许多人一样，只为娱乐而读书。
20. 请等一会，我马上就来。

### (4) 用感叹句来翻译

感叹句 (**Exclamatory Sentence**) 是表示惊愕、苦痛、欢喜等感情或加强说出某种事实、希望、命令、疑问等的文句。在这种句子的尾上，常要加上一个惊叹号 (**Exclamation Mark**)，以代替句点 (**Period**)；在句首则常有 **How** 或 **What** 的字眼。**How** 常用于形容词的前面，而 **What** 则用于名词的前面，例如：

How lucky you are! (你多么幸运呀!)

What a lucky girl you are! (你是一个多么幸运的女子呀!)

但不用 **how** 或 **what** 也是可以构成感叹句的。那是形式不完备的感叹句。

一般的文法家多是将平叙句、疑问句、命令句、感叹句并列，把感叹句作为由内容来分的四种句型之一，但也有人，如荷兰的英文学者 **Hendrik Poutsma (1857' 1937)**，在他著的 **A Grammar of Late Modern English** 一书中，便把感叹句看做平叙句的一种。

因为人类是感情的动物，常要表现出各种各样的感情来。《礼记¼礼运》上说：/何谓人情？喜怒哀惧爱恶欲七者，弗学而能。”因而被认为在语言中，这种感叹句是起源最古的文句。它是感情激发时的叫声，因而保存着朴素的形式。它常将主语和动词全部略去，有时甚至只有一个字。兹分别举例说明如下：

普通在句首用 **what** 或 **how** 的，可分三类，即

1. 将 **how** 用作 **Exclamatory Adverb** 的：

今夜的月光何等明亮!

How bright the moon shines tonight!

这花多么的美呀!

How beautiful this flower is!

我们快乐的日子多么短促呀!

How short our happy days appear!

那狗跑得好快!

How fast the dog runs!

你多么亲切!

How kind of you!

雷打得多么响!

How it thunders!

他的决心唱得多么高调!

How high a pitch his resolution soars!

2. 将 what 用作 Exclamatory Adjective 的:

那女子具有多么美丽的头发!

What beautiful hair that girl has!

他的房子好大!

What a big house he has!

人是多么渺小呀!

What paltry creatures we are!

这年头充满着幻想的色彩!

What visionary tints the year puts on! (Lowell)

啊, 我的国人呀, 那儿的秋天多好呀!

Oh, what a fall was there, my countrymen! (Shakespeare)

3. 将 what 用作 Exclamatory Pronoun 的:

他们不晓得是怎样想像的呀!

What might they not have imagined!

他发现那个时不胜诧异。

What was his surprise when he found it!

上面说，Poutsma 认为感叹句是一种平叙句，其实我觉得感叹句和疑问句更为接近，在形式上，在意义上，都有很深的关系。主语与动词的排列次序，感叹句确是和平叙句一样的，但除开这一点，感叹句就更像疑问句了。试比较如下：

- （疑问句：How old is he?（他几岁？）
- （感叹句：How old he is!（他好老！）
- （疑问句：What man?（什么人？）
- （感叹句：What a man!（何等了不起的人！）
- （疑问句：What book is it?（这是什么书？）
- （感叹句：What a good book it is!（多么一本好书！）
- （疑问句：What act was it?（那是什么行为？）
- （感叹句：What an act it was!（那算什么行为!）
- （疑问句：What dreadful act has he committed?（他做了什么可怕的事？）
- （感叹句：What a dreadful act he has committed!（他做了一件多么可怕的事!）

由上面的例句我们可以看得出来，感叹句用了 **what** 一字，又在其后接有单数普通名词时，便要加上一个不定冠词，这是在疑问句中所不需要的。

感叹句并不老是照平叙句一样，先说主语后说动词的，有时也可以照疑问句的次序，先说动词，再说主语。这是为要对主语加重的说法，尤其是移到句尾的字眼，说来特别响亮。

我做了一件多么愚笨的事呀！

What a poor fool was I!

我们真希望上天没有赋予我们说话的能力！

How would we wish that Heaven had left us still!

在石头上流动的水波，多么的光耀！

How bright are its waters, playing over the stones!  
(避免把修饰语的 playing, 说成动词的 are playing 的关系而倒装。)

他的话多么动听呀!

How persuasive are his words! (Sheridan)

我在儿童时代老是在这些树下玩耍的。

How often have I played under these trees as a boy! (Irving)

啊, 那是多么奇怪的光景!

Oh, what a sight was that! (H. R. Haggard)

人是(上帝)多么巧妙的作品呀!

What a piece of work is man! (Shakespeare)

人是多么奇怪的东西!

What a strange thing is man! (H. S. Merriman)

裘蒂斯, 裘蒂斯, 你多么可爱呀!

Judith, Judith, how lovely are you! (Curme)

从这小山开始路就宽了, 这地方多么使人愉快呀!

How pleasant is this hill where the road widens. (Curme)

也有让疑问句一点不改来作感叹句用的。那称为 Exclamatory Question, 例如:

她多么可爱呀!

Isn't she a sweet girl!

谁会想到这样的事!

Who would have thought of such a thing!

啊, 那真好玩!



Oh, wouldn't it be fun! (Dickens)

多少次她没有坐在那里了!

How many times had she not sat there! (Galsworthy)

还有就照平叙句一模一样来说, 只在句尾附加一个惊叹号, 以表示确说的形式, 也可以当作感叹句用:

这座桥绝对是危险的!

The bridge is absolutely unsafe!

那绝对不可以做!

It simply cannot be done!

在感叹句中有时可以将补语置于句首:

你们英国人是多么的冷血呀!

Cold-blooded people you Britishers are!

你圆满地达成了使命!

Well hast thou fulfilled thy mission!

此外感叹句还有种种破格的形式:

1. 省略句。

看呀!

Look!

蚀呀!

An eclipse!

啊, 坏蛋!

O, the wretch!

幸运儿!

Fortunate man!

何等愚笨!

What folly!

何其无礼!

What impertinence!

好大的鼻子!

What a nose!

多么可惜!

What a pity (it is) ! 或 What a shame!

他真笨!

How foolish (it is) of him!

真是厚颜!

What impudence!

想得真妙!

What an idea!

这是多么的客气呀!

Wonderful civility this! (C. Bront)

多么不像从前他们白家的爷们呀!

How unlike their Belgic sirs of old. (Goldsmith)

如果我有这种愿望, 我就要快乐十倍了!

This wish I have ( = If I have this wish) , then ten times happy me! (Shakespeare)

一个多么了不起的女人' ' 啊, 一个多么了不起的女人!

What a woman' oh, what a woman! (Doyle)

## 2. 抗议句

什么？说我爱！说我求婚！说我找老婆！

What? I love! I sue! I seek a wife!

说我对肯医生讲了什么不礼貌的话？天不会允许的！

I say anything disrespectful of Dr. Kenn? Heaven forbid! (George Eliot)

他的祖父怎么会是一个商人！他是一位绅士呀！

Why, his grandfather was a tradesman! He a gentleman! (Defoe)

她要算是美人的话，她的母亲也就可以算是才子了！

She a beauty! I should as soon call her mother a wit. (Austen)

说他傲慢吗！啊，他决不会的！

He arrogant! No, never!

### 3. 将补语放在句首。

你居然笑，真是可怕呀！

How horrid of you to smile!

对于一个情夫，这样是颇有鼓励的呀！

Pretty encouragement this for a lover!

### 4. 将宾语放在句首。

但那正是这些女孩子们要说的话呀！

But the things these girls would say!

当他说这话时，他自己也觉得是伪君子的行为！

The hypocrite that he felt himself as he said this!

### 5. 加用 to think, fancy, O that 等字在句首。

他会在这次危机中拆我的烂污真不堪设想！

To think that he should fail me in this crisis!

啊，这样壮丽的王宫里，居然会有欺诈的行为！

O, that deceit should dwell

In such a gorgeous palace! (Shakespeare)

他居然相信呀！

Fancy his believing it!

竟至要等待整个下午！

Fancy having to wait all afternoon!

试想他对那件事竟一无所知！

To think of his not knowing anything about it?

从未听到这样的事！

If ever I heard the like! (= I never heard the like.)

祈愿句 (Optative Sentence) 通常是看作感叹句的一种的：

共和国万岁！

Long live the Republic! 或 May the Republic live long!

愿你的国降临。愿你的旨意行在地上，如同行在天上。

Thy kingdom come, thy will be done. (Matt.6: 10)

有你这样的好心肠，上帝是会保佑你的。

God bless and reward you for all your kindness! (Stowe)

愿上帝原谅我！

God forgive me! (Miss Mulock)

啊，女王，但愿如此！

So be it, O Queen! (H. R. Haggard)

愿我的房子是山边的茅屋!

Mine be a cot beside the hill! (Rogers)

愿上帝帮助我!

So help me God!

愿我再也不会见到他的面孔!

May I never see his face again!

愿今夜没有噩梦来打扰我的睡眠!

May no evil dream disturb my rest! (Evening Hymn)

愿他安息!

May he rest in peace! (Irving)

我要是在那里就好了!

Would that I were there! 或 Oh were I but there!

雷白卡, 你要能多留一下就好了!

Oh that you could stay longer, dear Rebecca! (Thackeray)

但愿我行事坚定, 得以遵守你的律例!

O that my ways were directed to keep thy statute. (Psalm)

愿我能够把这一切铸成一顶皇冠!

Would I could coin it all into a crown! (Lord Lytton)

我要是没有遇到它就好了!

Wish to God that I had never seen it! (Doyle)

啊, 愿我能够再见到他一次!

Oh, that I could have seen him once again! (Watts-Dunton)

但愿我有这种精神，而不是我孩子的。

I would that it had been my soul and not my boy's.  
(H. R. Haggard)

啊，要是这样就好了！

Oh had it been so!

那时我要在巴黎就好了！

Oh to have been in Paris then!

愿他安乐地长生不老！

May he live long in peace!

但愿是由那纯洁的火焰点燃的火把！

O for a kindling touch from that pure flame. (Wordsworth)

愿你有一个光明的前途！

Bright be the future that lieth before thee! (Scott)

愿那秋天是阴暗的！

Black be its fall. (Stevenson)

愿你的树林是绿的，花是美的！

Green be your woods, and fair your flowers! (Byron)

祈愿句的反面便成为咒骂了，如

我碰了鬼！

Devil take me! (Lamb)

该死的文法！

Grammar be hanged!

愿上帝使你瞎眼。

May God strike you blind.

## 习题 12

1. 雪多么洁白呀!
2. 这落日真是光辉灿烂呀!
3. 这花多美呀!
4. 你好迟呀!
5. 这机器的声音真大呀!
6. 我们玩得多么有趣。
7. 他真是傻瓜。
8. 人的头脑真是太巧妙了。
9. 一个多么卑鄙的流痞!
10. 愿他有好的运道!
11. 每年真不知有多少人到耶路撒冷朝圣。
12. 我要能够去那音乐会就好了!
13. 他的鼾声多大!
14. 他口若悬河!
15. 在这里遇到你,我真高兴!
16. 愿她婚后幸福!
17. 朋友们再会!
18. 好呀,她来了!
19. 哎呀,我完了!
20. 愿天下有情人都成眷属!

## 第二编

### 英文惯用法及其翻译



## I. It 的造句

### (1) it…不定词

(a) It is wrong to tell a lie.

撒谎是不对的。

(b) He does not think it wrong to tell a lie.

他不认为撒谎是不对的。

#### 【解说】

这种形式上的主语或宾语，是中文表现法中所没有的。这些句子的真正的主语或宾语移到后面去了，而不在原来的地位上，于是那里就产生一个空缺，只得用“it”填补上去，所以这个“it”，英文就叫做填补词（**expletive**）。

如果把（a）例真正的主语恢复它原来的地位时，便成为：

**To tell a lie is wrong.**

这正是中国话的表现法，但英文除极少数的文句外（如 **To teach is to learn. To eat is to live.**）一般都不喜欢用不定词作主语，而要改用形式上的“it”来作主语，把它说成：

**It is wrong to tell a lie.**

英文用不定词作主语虽不流行，但至少文句是通的。用不定词作宾语，则有背英文的惯用法，成为不通的了。如说成，**He does not think to tell a lie wrong.** 或说成，**He does not think wrong to tell a lie.** 都要不得，必须加用形式上的宾语“it”进去，而把它说成：

He does not think it wrong to tell a lie.

才合乎英文惯用的语法。因为惯用法不允许拿不定词作宾语，所以凡遇到不定词要用作宾语时，就采用形式上的“it”来代替它。

不定词虽不能用作宾语，但可用作补语，如 **We found him to be alive.**（我们发觉他还活着。）这种作补语用的不定词，有时可以略去，单说 **We found him alive.** 意思也是一样，而且更加简明有力。

形式上的宾语，在某些常说的文句中，可以省略不用，尤其是后接不定词的时候为然，如：**Your father thought [it] fit to leave me guardian.**（你父亲认为请我做监护人最为适合。）

**If God sees [it] fit that I should marry, he would provide me with a worthy husband.**（如果上帝认为我应该结婚，他就会给我提供一个如意郎君的。）

**And are you sure of all this, are you sure [of it] that nothing ill has befallen my boy?**（Goldsmith）（这一切都是真的吗，你确实知道我儿子没有遭遇任何不维利的事吗？）

**I am sorry [for it] that you are going away.**（你要走我很难过。）

**Men differ from brutes in [it] that they can think and speak.**（人之所以异于十兽，就在能思想能说话。）

**He forgot everything but [it] that he was near her.**（Galsworthy）（他跟她在一块儿就把一切都忘了。）

### 【类例】

**It is easy to learn English, but it is difficult to attain perfection in it.**（英文易学难精。）

**It is much easier to read French than read Greek.**（学法文比学希腊文容易多了。）

**It may be advisable to wait till they come back.**（最好是等他们转来。）

She had said what it was necessary to say. (要说的她都说了。)

It needs no great sagacity to see that the writer is a novice at his task. (很容易看得出来那作家是一位生手，刚从事写作的。)

I found it very difficult to put it in practice. (我觉得实行很难。)

He took it upon himself to pay off the debt. (他自愿负责还清债务。)

I know it to be the established custom of your sex to reject a man on the first application. (Jane Austen) (我知道拒绝男子的第一次求婚是你们女性的固定的习惯。)

Fortunately I have it in my power to introduce you to very superior society. (幸而我还有能力可以介绍你给非常上流的社会。)

If you take it into your head to go on refusing every offer of marriage in this way, you will never get a husband at all. (如果你执意要继续这样来拒绝所有的求婚，你就永远得不到一个丈夫了。)

Make it the first object to be able to fix and hold your attention upon your studies. (把专心致志于学业，持久不懈，作为第一目标。)

The fog made it difficult to calculate the distance. (雾迷了眼，看不出距离来。)

### 【习题 1】

1. It was glorious to acquire a place by justice, yet more glorious to prefer justice before a place.

2. I have my own views about learning a language. I think it waste of time to acquire a greater knowledge than suffices me to read fluently and talk enough for the ordinary affairs of life. (Maugham)

3. How far cards might have helped him here it is difficult to say. (Hugh Walpole)

## (2) it...for...不定词

(a) It is difficult for him to do so.

要他这样做是有困难的。

(b) I think it difficult for him to do so.

我想要他这样做是有困难的。

### 【解说】

这是属于“it”不定词”同一形式的，“it”仍然是代表不定词的形式上的主语或宾语。翻译时必须把句中的不定词看作主动词，因为介词“for”的宾语是不定词的意味上的主语（sense subject），即宾语的“him”应译成主语才是。如果我们把填补词的“it”去掉，恢复原来应有的形式时，便成 **To do so is difficult for him.** 这个“for him”，也可译成中文的“在他”，全句译为“要这样做，在他是有困难的”。但不如把“him”当作主语来译更加利落。

这个“for”有时可以换为“of”，如 **It was brave indeed, of you to attempt it.**（你真大胆敢于去尝试一下。）何时要用“for”，何时要用“of”，依前面的那个形容词而定。如果那个形容词是指的一种行为的性质（the nature of an action），就要用“for”；如果那形容词是指的行为的性质，同时又指行为的人（the doer of an action），就要用“of”了。换句话说，单说行为的用“for”，说行为及行为者的用“of”，前者以“necessary”为例，后者以“kind”为例，造成句子，便是：

(a) It is necessary for you to do so.

(b) It is kind of you to do so.

句中说的“kind of you”，可译为“你的行为是亲切的”，也就是说“行为者的你是亲切的”。句中说的“necessary for you”，可译为“你的行为

是必要的”，却不能说什么/行为者的你”，即是：

(a) /必要的” (necessary) 是指/行为”，不是指/行为者”。

(b) /亲切的” (kind) 既是指/行为”，又是指/行为者”。

(b) 句的意思是/他这样做是亲切的”，同时也是/这样做的人是亲切的”，但 (a) 句则只能说/这样做是必要的”，却不能说/这样做的人是必要的”，因为这样一来，变成必要的是/人”，而不是/事”了。我们只能改说成 **You are kind to do so.** 不能改说成 **You are necessary to do so.** 其理甚明。再举一例，以资比较：

(a) It was impossible for him to go alone.

(b) It was foolish of him to go alone.

(a) 句中的/Impossible”，也和/necessary”一样，是指/事”而不是指/人”，所以要用非人称的/it”做主语，但 (b) 句中的/foolish”则和/kind”一样，既可指/事”，又可指/人”，说 **It is foolish** 既可以，说 **You are foolish** 也可以，不过我们却不能说 **It is foolish to do so.** 也不能说 **It is foolish for you to do so.** 一定要说 **It is foolish of you to do so.**

### 【类例】

**It is no time for me to hide anything.** (Doyle) (什么东西都来不及藏起来。)

**It is time for us to start.** (= that we should start) (现在是我们动身的时候了。)

**It is an evil thing for a man to have suspicion.** (Caxton)  
(人要怀疑是一件坏事。)

**It is not common for him to receive letters.** (Doyle) (他接信是不平常的。)

**It is enough for me to say that some of its circumstances passed before my own eyes.** (Dickens) (关于我亲眼看见许多这

样的情形的事，我已经说得够了。)

It is easier for a camel to go through a needle's eye than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God. (Luke, xviii, 25) (骆驼穿过针的眼，比财主进上帝的国，还容易呢。)

How was it possible for so great a commerce to flourish? (Gissing) (这样大的贸易怎么可以兴隆呢。)

### 【习题 2】

1. It is so very difficult for a sick man not to be a scoundrel. (Dr Johnson)

2. It is not supposed to be easy for women to rise to the height of taking the large free view of anything' anything which calls for action.

3. It is foolish of him to set himself to perform an impossibility.

4. It is not good for a man to be alone.

5. It was wrong of you to borrow his bicycle without asking his permission.

6. I think it wise of him not to accept their offer.

### (3) it...动名词

(a) It is no use talking about it.

空谈无益。

(b) I think it rather dangerous your venturing out to sea.

我想你冒险出海是相当危险的。

### 【解说】

/It is no use + Gerund" = /It is of no use + Infinitive", 可译作/无益"或/无用"。这个形式上的主语是和代表不定词一样,是代表后面的动名词的。二者所不同的,就是后接不定词的前面要用形容词,后接动名词的前面才用名词。因为依照惯用语法,只能说 It is useless ( = of no use) to protest. 不能说 It is no use to protest. 所以我们如果要把例句中的/talking"改为/to talk"时,前面说的/no use"那个名词,就得改为/of no use"的形容词才行。It is no use doing. = It is no good doing. Cf. There is no doing. = It is impossible to do. 例如

There is no knowing what may happen. (未来的事是不可能知道的。)

### 【类例】

It is no use crying over spilt milk. (覆水难收。)

It was very odd and amusing seeing her friends on the stage. (见到她的朋友登台表演,她觉得奇怪有趣。)

It's not worth while your going. (你不值得去。)

It is very funny his going without saying goodbye to anyone. (他一声不响地走了,真是奇怪。)

It is no good talking of his domestic matters. (不要谈论他的家事。)

It is useless your trying to evade the question. (你用不着环顾左右而言他。)

It was no use men being angry with them for damaging the links. (他们把高尔夫球场弄坏,人们也不必生气。)

It is useless your saying anything. (你说也没有用。)

It is no use hoping for or expecting anything now. (现在用不着希望或期待什么。)

It is no use your trying to deceive me. (你别想欺骗我。)

It is no use my arguing with you. (我用不着和你争论。)

Don't you find it very unpleasant walking in the rain?  
(你不觉得在雨中行走不舒服吗?)

Do you think it odd my having gone to church? (你觉得我去做了礼拜奇怪吧。)

### 【习题 3】

1. It is no good talking about the greatness of our country, unless we do something to make it great.

2. It is worth while asking how far their education contributed to their success.

3. You must find it rather dull living here all by yourself.

### (4) it...子句

(a) It is true that he went there.

他去了那里是真的。

(b) I think it true that he went there.

我想他去了那里是真的。

### 【解说】

这是“it”不定词”的一种变形，形式上的主语或宾语所代表的，在此句型中便是后面的子句（that-Clause）。这两种句型差不多都是可以随时变换的，单句变成复句，复句也可以变成单句，例如：

I have some purchases that I must make. (to make)  
(我要买些东西。)

There was not an instant that we could afford to lose.  
(to lose) (一们都不能耽误。)



There are many difficulties that will have to be overcome. (to overcome 或 to be overcome) (有许多困难尚待克服。)

Egypt was the first country that became civilized (to become civilized). (埃及是最早的文明古国。)

I want a hat that will go (to go) with this dress. (我想要一顶适合这衣服的帽子。)

There is no reason that she should give me (for her to give me) such a dirty look. (她没有理由要对我做出那样的怪相。)

It is dangerous that you have (to have) a smattering of superficial knowledge on a subject. (对于任何问题一知半解的知识都是危险的。)

表/目的”的 in order that” may, 也可改为 in order to do, 比较下列二句:

(a) The teacher explained that passage again and again in order that every student might understand it.

(b) The teacher explained that passage again and again in order to make every student understand it.

可知这种句型在英文中是用得极多的, 在口头说的短句, 常将 /that”略去, 把两个子句连着来说, 如 I think (that) you had better go. = It is advisable for you to go. 在主句的 /it + 动词”之后, 子句之前, 可接用形容词、名词、副词, 或什么都不接, 而直接接上子句也行。

### 【类例】

It is clear that you did not want to do the work. (很明显地你不想做那工作。)

It is a blessing that we do not know what is going to happen. (我们不知道未来的事是幸福的。)

It is your own concern whether you believe me or not. (信不信是你自己的事。)

It matters little who does it so long as it is done. (只要事情做了, 谁做都行。)

It is amazing what progress the child is making under the new teacher. (在新老师教导之下那孩子的进步神速。)

I think it probable that he may give his assent. (我想他大概会同意的。)

We regarded it as preferable that he should continue in his position with us. (我认为他能继续在我们这里帮忙更好。)

It is a thousand pities that it should have come to this. (那会变成这个样子真是可惜。)

It is probable that he'll come again. (他大概会再来的。)

It often happens that the biter is bit. (请看剃头者, 人亦剃其头。)

It seems that there is going to be a change. (好像会有变动。)

How is it that you are late? (你怎么会迟到的?)

It is under such circumstances that one recognizes one's true friends. (患难见交情。)

It occurred to me (that) there was no time to lose. (Stevenson) (我感到事已迫切。)

It was to save them from destruction (that) I parted with your dear person. (Fielding) (为救助他们免于灭亡, 我才离开了你。)

He made it clear that the plan was impossible. (他明白地说了那计划行不通。)

Depend upon it (that) there is some mistake. (那一定有错。)

You must see to it that no harm comes to her. (你必须注意不要伤害她。)

I took it for granted that he would not come. (我认为他不会来。)

May I take it that you will sign the document? (我相信你会在文件上签字的吧。)

And publish it that she is dead indeed. (Shakespeare)  
(公开宣布她已死亡。)

No one wished it to be known that he failed to see the wonderful clothes. (谁也不希望别人知道他没有看见皇帝的新衣。)

Rumour has it that there will be war. (谣言说快要打仗了。)

#### 【习题 4】

1. It is true the Chinese attitude is to a large degree a reaction to the behaviour of the West, so that the latter must be taken into account, and will frequently be criticized.

2. It is hoped that men will be honest, but from a higher motive than because honesty is the best policy.

3. It is a rule never to be forgotten, that whatever strikes strongly, should be described while the first impression remains fresh upon the mind. (Dr Johnson)

4. I have heard it remarked by a statesman of high reputation that most great men have died of overeating themselves.

#### (5) it is...子句

It is diligence that makes up for deficiency.

勤能补拙。

### 【解说】

这和上项所说的“it”子句”完全不同，因为这个“it”不是代表后面的子句的。这是一种加重语气的说法。句中关系代名词的先行词，须与后接附属子句中的动词在数、性、人称上保持一致。这种关系代名词是属于限制性的（restrictive），自应以用“that”为宜，不过常被换上“who”，“which”来说，也是可以的，而且甚至有将关系代名词略去的。

上举例句的原句，不是 *That makes up for deficiency is diligence.* 而是 *Diligence makes up for deficiency.* 其加重说法便是套上“*It is*” “*that*” 的形式。说 *It is I that am wrong.* 比说 *I am wrong.* 要加强得多。再看两种比较的说法：

- （You are guilty. （踏通说法）
- （It is you that are guilty. （强调说法）
- （Edison invented the gramophone. （踏通）
- （It was Edison who invented the gramophone. （强调）
- （Stupid pupils do not ask questions. （踏通）
- （It is not stupid pupils who ask questions. （强调）
- （We should be grateful to men like Edison. （踏通）
- （It is to men like Edison that we should be grateful. （强调）

如果主动词后面接的是一个不定词，就无须要有子句来加强语气，例如：

**SIMPLE:** The tough little man's object in life is to avoid work.

**EMPHATIC:** It is the tough little man's object in life to avoid work.

为回答 *Who is the tough little man?* 一问，也有两种不同的方式，一为普通的说法，一为加强的说法。

SIMPLE: The tough little man is a person whose object in life is to avoid work.

EMPHATIC: The tough little man is a person whose object in life it is to avoid work.

句中“it”不代表后面子句的例子，还有 It was not that he had plenty of money.（那并不是因为他有很多的钱。）这个“it”，意为“the reason”或“what I mean.”详见后面的“否定的造句”。

### 【类例】

What is it that you have to sell? (Dickens) （你要出卖的是什么？）

It is not only bachelors on whom the young ladies confer their affections. (Thackeray) （年轻女子要和他谈情说爱的，不只是单身汉而已。）

It is not who rules us that is important, but how he rules us. （重要的不是谁统治我们，而是他怎样统治法。）

It is only shallow people who judge by appearances. (Oscar Wilde) （只有浅薄的人才会以貌取人。）

It is a kind of miracle brought us here. (Bacon) （我们来到这里，简直是一种奇迹。）

It is I have been stupid. (Wells) （愚笨的是我。）

I wonder who it was defined man as a rational animal. (Wilde) （人是一种理性的动物，这不知是谁下的定义。）

It is proud he must be to get you. (Yeats) （= Proud he must be to get you.）（得到了你，他一定是很自负的。）

It was your brother who talked the most. （说话最多的就是你的兄弟。）

It is the first step which is troublesome. （只有初步麻烦一点。）

It is not helps but obstacles that make a man. (使人成功的, 不是助力, 而是阻力。)

It is only education which will conquer prejudice. (克服偏见唯有教育。)

It was thanks to him that I got well. (要谢谢他把我的病治好了。)

It was with some difficulty that he found the way to his own house. (他费了不少的劲才找到路回家。)

It was not till evening that we got the news. (我们到晚上才得到消息。)

It is a wise father that knows his own child. (Merchant of Venice, II, ii) (任何聪明的父亲都不见得完全知道他自己的儿子的。) ❶

### 【习题 5】

1. It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.

2. Yet it is not he who sings loudest and jokes most that has the lightest heart. (Irving)

3. It is the want of money and need of it that gives most of us activity.

4. Reading furnishes the mind only with materials of knowledge; it is thinking that makes what we read ours.

5. Most large companies have trained specialists, called personnel managers, whose job it is to interview and pass judgment on prospective employees.

6. He is an interpreter, one whose duty it is to act as a bridge or channel between the minds of his readers.

(6) it...名词

It is strange this Norse view of Nature.

室威人对大自然的这种看法是很奇怪的。

### 【解说】

这个“it”是代表后面的名词的，在名词的前面，经常伴有“this”，“that”，“the”的字样。上例去掉形式上的“it”，恢复原来的说法，便是 **This Norse view of Nature is strange.** 不过一般人说时，都喜欢采用 **It is strange**” 的形式。我们不可误会这是“it”子句”型，省略了“that”的，试看下面的类例，便无法把“that”加进去。

### 【类例】

It was very funny the way in which the penguins used to waddle. (企鹅走路的那样子真是滑稽。)

His coat it was all of the greenwood hue. (他的上衣完全是绿林的颜色。)

### 【习题 6】

1. It is strange the number of mistakes he always makes.

2. It's so dreadful, her father and mother dead almost at the same time. (Gissing)

3. He wondered if it was true what Mabel had said.

---

❶ 此种句法一不当心即将译错。梁实秋译：/聪明的父亲才能认识他自己的儿子呢。”朱生豪译：/只有聪明的父亲才会知道他自己的儿子。”

## II. 名词的造句

(7) “all + 抽象名词” 或 “抽象名词 + itself”  
= very + 形容词

(a) He was all gentleness to her.

他对她非常的战存。

(b) To his superiors, he is humility itself.

对于长辈他极为添呷。

### 【解说】

“all + 抽象名词” = “抽象名词 + itself” = very + 形容词。这原表示某种性质到了极点的一种说法，有“非常”，“只管”，“一味”，“尽”之意，有时甚至可以译为“”的化身”，“”的具体化”。普通名词的复数形用在“all”之后，也是属于这一类型的句子，如 **She is all smiles.** (她一味笑。) **He is all eyes.** (他盯着看。)

### 【类例】

I am all attention. (我全神贯注地在倾听着。)

I am all anxiety. (我真担心。)

“It's simplicity itself”, he remarked, chuckling at my surprise’ ’ /so absurdly simple that an explanation is superfluous.” (Doyle) (“那简直是再简单也没有了”，他望着我惊异的表情，咯咯地笑着说，“简直简单到用不着再加说明。”)

### 【习题 7】



1. /I am all astonishment, " said Nelson, /when I reflect on what we have achieved."

2. Washington was discretion itself in the use of speech, never taking advantage of an opponent, or seeking a short-lived triumph in a debate. (Smiles)

3. While she was waiting for the tinkling of the bell, all nerves, suddenly he stood before her. (Maugham)

## (8) “the + 单数名词”的特殊用法

(a) The horse is a noble animal.

马是高尚的动物。

(b) The pen is mightier than the sword.

文笔比宝剑更要强而有力。(文胜于武)

### 【解说】

定冠词的“the”与单数普通名词结合时，有下列五种用法：(1) 特定之物 (particularizing)，(2) 集合复数 (collective)，(3) 代表性的单数 (representative)，如 (a) 例，(4) 代替抽象名词 (abstractive)，即指那个名词所有的抽象的观念，如 (b) 例，(5) 定性的用法 (qualitative)，代替“such”或“so”的字样，用于普通名词或是抽象名词都可以。现在就根据这五种用法举例如下：

### 【类例】

Shut the door please. (请把门关上。) (1)

The cabinet has resigned. (内阁辞职了。) (1)

I am going to the station. (我上车站去。) (附近的) (1)

They are the teachers of our school. (他们是本校的教员。)  
(全体) (2)

The stars are out. (星星出来了。)(常见的) (2)

The cherry trees are in blossom. (樱花开了。)(附近所有的樱花) (2)

The gentleman glories in his honourable poverty. (君子安贫。)(乐于清贫, /the”表其类全体的性质或作用。)(3)

The whale is not a fish, but a mammal. (鲸不是鱼, 而是哺乳动物。)(3)

Bitters are good for the stomach. (苦味有益于胃。)(3)

The face is the index of the mind. (面情为心情的表征。)(3)

The child is father of the man. (儿童为成人的胚胎。)(儿童性情虽长大了也不变。江山易改, 本性难移。)(3)

We should give up the sword for the pen. (化干戈为玉帛。)(4)

The heart sees farther than the head. (情有胜于智的先见。)(4)

We must keep the wolf from the door. (= keep hunger away) (我们必须防止饥饿。)(4)

When a man is reduced to want, the beggar (element) comes out. (人穷志短。)(人穷则乞丐的性质俱现。)(4)

When I hear this song, I feel the patriot rise within me. (我听了这支歌便发生爱国的心情。)(闻歌而有故国之思。)(4)

He is not the boy to (= such a boy as will) tell a lie. (他不是说谎的孩子。)(5)

He had the goodness (= was so good as) to grant my request. (他亲切地允许了我的请求。)(5)

### 【习题 8】

1. The bamboo is one of the most wonderful as well as beautiful productions of the tropics.

2. He allowed the father to be overruled by the judge, and declared his own son to be guilty.

## (9) 无生物的主语

Business took me to the town.

我因事进城去了。

### 【解说】

中国话对于每个句子，差不多都是用人作主语，很少用无生物的。英文本也可以用人作主语，但用无生物作主语，却使得英文的气味更加浓厚。上例当然也可以说，**I went to the town on business.** 不过不及用无生物主语来得漂亮。有时为避免把人转入，用无生物主语则更为含蓄，如不说 **We request**，而说 **It is requested**，便觉得是间接的要求了。例如 **It is requested that every guest should bring a gift with him for exchange.**（每位客人请携带一件礼物以便交换。）**Contributions are requested for the refugees.**（为难民呼吁捐款救济。）与无生物主物同用的动词，主要有 **make, enable, remind, prevent, show, bring, keep** 等字。

### 【类例】

**This medicine will make you feel better.**（= **If you take this medicine, you will feel better.**）（你吃了这药就会好些。）

**His wealth enables him to do anything.**（= **He can do anything because he is rich.**）（他有钱什么都可以做。）

**The sight of the orphan always reminds me of her parents.**（= **Whenever I see the orphan, I remember her parents.**）（一见到那孤儿，我就想到她的父母。）

Bad weather prevented us from starting. (= We could not start because of bad weather.) (天气太坏，我们无法动身。)

Careful comparison of them will show you the difference. (= If you compare them carefully, you will see the difference.) (你只消仔细比较一下，就可以发现不同。)

A few steps across the lawn brought me to a large, splendid hotel. (走过草地几步，我就到了一个华丽的大旅馆。)

A bit of knowledge kept me from making a big mistake when an important question was to be decided. (我因稍具知识，所以在决定重要问题的时候，还没有犯大的过错。)

### 【习题 9】

1. His work made it impossible for him to get home oftener than every other weekend.

2. Machinery had made the products of manufactories very much cheaper than formerly.

3. My hunger and the shadows together tell me that the sun has done much travel since I fell asleep.

(10) something (much) of, nothing (little) of

(a) Mr. Li is something of a philosopher.

玛君略有哲学家的风味。

(b) Mr. Wu is nothing of a musician.

辙君全无音乐家的风味。

(c) Mr. Lu is very much of a poet.

卢君大有新人气输。

(d) Mr. Liu is little of a scholar.

朴君几无学者风度。

### 【解说】

这是表示“程度”的形容词片语，有时可以当作副词来译。/something of” = to some extent（某程度），在问句或条件句中，则说/a nothing of”，中文可译为“略有”，“多少”。至于/nothing of”，则可译为“全无”，“毫无”。/to be something of + 名词” = /to have something of + 名词 + in + 代名词”，所以 He is something of a philosopher. = He has something of a philosopher in him. 又 He is nothing in ability of an orator. = He has nothing of an orator in his ability.（他毫无演说家的才能。）

英文的“much”一字作名词用时，意为“多量”，“多额”，“许多”（a good deal），“重要的人或物”，“了不起的东西”等。如 How much are eggs?（鸡蛋多少钱？）Much of the time was wasted.（时间大半浪费了。）/much of”可译为“大有”，通常与否定连用，如 He is not much of a scholar.（他算不得一个学者。）意为“不是很好的或重要的学者”。与这“much of”相反的说法，为“little of”，可译为“几无”。至于“much of”的变形则为/a great deal of”，而“little of”的变形则为/a bit of”。这个“much of”又还可以用比较级的形式，如 Oscar Wilde 在 DeProfundis（《狱中记》）中说，I am far more of an individualist than I ever was.（我现在比以前更是一个个人主义者了。）又如 Conan Doyle 在 The Sign of Four 中说，The truth is that I was never much of a credit to the family, and I doubt if they would be so very glad to see me. They were all steady, chapel-going folk, small farmers, well known and respected over the country-side while I was always a bit of a rover.（实际那个家族对我是没有什么信誉的，是不会高兴见到我的。他们都是信仰上帝，稳健的小农，在乡下颇有名气，受人尊敬，而我却老是有点流浪儿的味道。）

这一类的名词用法，最好当作副词来译，就容易了，例如 He has seen something of life. 与其译为“他看过了一些人生”，不如译为“他略具阅历”或“他稍阅世”。He is something of a scholar. 也同样地可译为“他略具学识”或“他稍有学问”。

英文的“something of”与“something like”，又有程度的不同。“something like” = something approximating in character or amount，指数量或性质略同的事物，又可作 somewhat（似乎，略微）解。This is something like a pudding.（此物略似布丁）。It shaped something like a cigar.（其形略似雪茄）。

从前北京大学有两位教授（陈源和刘复），感情闹得不好。就是为着“something”一字。当陈通伯在伦敦把刘半农介绍给一位英国学人时，因知刘不大愿意透漏他北大教授的身份，故含糊地说了一句：Mr. Liu is something of a professor or a lecturer. 刘听了大不受用，后来同到北京，刘在《语丝》上为文讥讽陈，故意把“北京大学教授陈源先生，即署名西滢的便是”一句中国话，加注译成英文说：/A Teacher of the Peking National University. Something like a Professor or a Lecturer.”比陈说的“something of”更降了一级，变成“something like”了。可见“something”不是一个好字眼，不可随便乱用，因此字略等于中国话的“一点儿”，如 to know something of everything，意为什么都知道一点儿，其实什么都不懂。

### 【类例】

They say that he had no university education, but he seems to be something of a scholar.（据说他并未受过大学教育，但他看去好像学者的样子。）

He has not much education, but he seems to be very much of a gentleman.（他虽未受过太多的教育，但很有君子风度。）

That's too much of a good thing.（那事好过了头，反而糟了。）

I like warm weather, but with the mercury standing at 95..in the shade, it is a little too much of a good thing.（我喜欢热天，但室内达到九十五度，则未免有点过佳，反而觉得不妙。）

He is very much of a gentleman.（他是一个非常体面的绅士。）

He is more of a scholar than a teacher.（与其说他是教师，不如说他是学者。）

If he is anything of a gentleman, he will keep his promise, I should think. (他如果有一点君子的风度, 我想他就会守约的。)

There was only a wooden latch to his door, because he had been too much of a skinflint to pay for one of the new iron locks to be fixed on. (Walter de la Mare) (他家门上只有一个木闩, 因为他太吝啬而不肯花钱买一把新的铁锁装上。)

His features were agreeable; his body, though slight of build, had something of athletic outline. (他的面貌令人有愉快之感, 他的身体虽很瘦小, 但有点运动家的轮廓。)

Although not a strong boy, there was nothing of the coward about him. (他虽不是一个强壮的少年, 但却没有一点胆怯的迹象。)

You may have something of a Roosevelt, something of a Newton in yourself; you may have something very much greater than either of these men manifested waiting your help to give it expression. (你也许具有罗斯福的才能, 牛顿的智慧, 你也许具有比他们两人所显示的更为伟大的本领, 在等待着你把它表现出来。)

### 【习题 10】

1. When Waddington left her Kitty thought over what he had so carelessly said. It hadn't been very pleasant to hear and she had had to make something of an effort not to show how much it touched her. (W. S. Maugham)

2. It was the first word of kindness the child had ever heard in her life; and the sweet tone and manner struck strangely on the wild, rude heart, and a sparkle of something like a tear shone in the keen, round, glittering eye. (H. B. Stowe)

3. There was nothing of the student about him, but very much of the miner.

4. As you know, Gurdon, I never was much of a ladies<sup>1</sup> man. (F. M. White)

## (11) 属格的主格作用和宾格作用

(a) No one came to my mother's rescue.

谁也不来救助我的母亲。

(b) The love of money is the root of all evil.

爱财是一切罪恶的根源。

### 【解说】

英文属格的用法，都有主格作用和宾格作用的分别，要看文气才能决定是哪一种。由他动词变来的名词，差不多都有这两种用法。

美总统 Lincoln 的名言，/the government of the people, by the people and for the people”，便是一个好的例子。句中的/of the people”一语，到底是主格作用呢，还是宾格作用，颇引起意义上的争执，因为它可以解释为（1）/人民治理的”（主格作用），也可以解释为（2）/治理人民的”（宾格作用），到底是何者只好去问林肯本人了。普通把他这句名言译为/人民的，由于人民的，为着人民的政治”，把/of”一字含糊地译成一个/的”字，不分宾主，实在是一种过关的办法，但意义是不够明显的。另外一种简单的译法是/民治、民有、民享”，这就明白表示出主格作用来了。Austen O'Malley 写有这样的一句 parody（模仿他人的作品而改作的讽刺诗文）：The American government is a rule of the people, by the people, for the boss.（美国的政治是人民为着政党的领袖而统治人民的。）这好像是把/of”看作宾格作用了。

上举的（a）（b）两句，都是用为宾格作用的，现再举例比较如下。其中主格作用是通常的意思，宾格作用为偶然的用法。

〔The conquests of Caesar（主格作用）

〔Caesar's conquest of Britain（宾格作用）



{ The writings of Plato (主)  
 { The writing of a book (宾)  
 { The commands of the general (主)  
 { The command of an army (宾)  
 { John's fear (约翰所计的恐怖)  
 { The fear of John (恐怕约翰的心情)  
 { Your dismissal of him (主)  
 { Your dismissal by him (宾)

### 【类例】

Nature is not over-merciful in her treatment of delinquents. (主)

Are you satisfied with your treatment? (宾)

She has never recovered her loss. (主)

I have never recovered her loss. (宾)

Thanks to their father's rescue, they could return home safe. (幸获父亲援救，他们才能安然回家。) (主)

They hurried to their father's rescue. (他们赶快去救父亲。) (宾)

The love of Browning for Italy. (白朗宁对意大利的爱。) (主)

A mother's love of children. (母爱。) (宾)

The love of God. (上帝的爱。) (主)

God's love of man. (上帝爱世人。) (宾)

His memory is very bad. (他的记忆力很坏。) (主)

A monument is dedicated to his memory. (为纪念他而立的碑。) (宾)

She doesn't want his praise. (她不要他赞美。) (主)

She has come to sing his praise. (她来赞美他。) (宾)

【习题 11】

1. His death was hastened by the shock of her loss.

2. A mother's love for her own child differs essentially from all other affections.

3. Succeeding ages will reverence his memory.

4. There were no legal reason to justify his expulsion.

5. The mere saving of pennies regardless of the sacrifices we make to save them is not scientific and practical thrift.

6. His greatness was in his perseverance in the pursuit of his project.

7. The loss of these aesthetic tastes is a loss of happiness.

(12) 名词 (A) + of + a + 名词 (B)

(a) It was a great mountain of a wave.

那是一个像山一样高的大浪。

(b) That fool of a Tom did it.

这是托姆那个笨蛋做的。

【解说】

这叫作同格的属格 (Appositive Possessive), 在/of”前后的名词, 指同一人或同一物。其中的/名词 + of”, 构成一个形容词片语, 以修饰后来的名词。在这个同格的/of”后出现的名词前面, 必须加不定冠词, 哪怕是固有名词, 这个不定冠词都不能省。

最普通的有/a devil of a man”, /a rascal of a fellow”, /to catch a death of a cold”等 idiomatic expressions, 可解释为/a devil of”等就像/a kind of”, /a sort of” 一样的表现法, 从文法上看, /devil”, /kind”等是主体 (principal), 而/of”以下为附属 (adjunct), 即所谓修饰语 (modifier), 但从意义上看, 则恰相反, /kind of”, /devil of”的/of”, 可视为前一字的后缀 (suffix), 不妨将/a devil of a man”改写为/a devilish man”, 将/a rascal of a fellow”改写为/a rascally fellow”, 将/a death of a cold”改写为/a deadly cold”。他如/a brute of a man” = /a brutal man”, /an awful fool of a woman” = /an awfully foolish woman”。英国名作家 Thackeray 在 Vanity Fair 中有所谓/her old sharper of a father” (她那骗子的老父) 的说法。

### 【类例】

That old cripple of a Henn. (Sean O'Faolain) (那个年老的残废者亨。)

She was much better educated than that fool of a Beatrice. (A. Huxley) (她比那愚笨的比特里斯受过更好的教育。)

This huge lunatic warren of a London. (J. B. Priestley)  
(这个巨大狂人收容所一般的伦敦。)

Those pigs of girls eat so much. (那些猪一般的女子吃那么多。)

He was a fine figure of a young man. (他是一个翩翩佳公子。)

I've got the devil of a toothache. (我牙痛不堪。)

It would make the deuce of a scandal. (Galsworthy) (这会弄得声名狼藉的。)

Mr. A lives a hell of a long way off. (他住得远哉遥遥。)

She was an angel of a wife. (天仙一般的妻子。)

She gave a party in her baby-house of a dwelling. (她在她那婴儿屋子一般的小住宅中开了一个晚会。)

He was a big clumsy giant of a man with a broad face and small suspicious eyes. (Christie) (他是一个具有大脸孔和多疑的小眼睛的，笨拙如巨人般的男子。)

At Jutland, although I was in the devil of a funk all the time, I was sort of pleased with myself too. (Walpole) (在遮特兰，虽则我始终都很恐惧，但我却多少还能自得。)

The child is a treasure of a son. (那是一个宝贝儿子。)

He lives in a palace of a house. (他住在一座宫殿似的大屋子里。)

Your fool of a husband said so. (你那愚笨的丈夫说的。)

She is an old blackguard of a woman. (她是一个老毒妇。)

### 【习题 12】

1. He was a brute of a man for all that you may say in his praise. (Nesfield)

2. Down with the Bourbons, and that great pig of a Louis XVIII! (Hugo)

3. They gave Sally this little blue butt-twitcher of a dress to wear. (J. D. Salinger)

## (13) 名词 + of + 属格 + 名词

It was beyond expectation for a man of your taste.

遇到一位像你这样有风趣的人，真是出乎意外。

### 【解说】

在“名词 + of + 属格 + 名词”的形式中，其属格的含义为：“像” “那样的”。

### 【类例】

He is a man of your experience. (他是一个像你那样经验丰富的人。)

I am not a man of his means. (我不是他那样的资产家。)

You are a lady of her wisdom. (你是一个像她那样贤慧的淑女。)

### 【习题 13】

1. The watch was by no means low-priced, and was too expensive for a person of my limited means; still it was cheap at the price asked, for as to its action it defied all comparison.

2. Methought he strove to shine more than ordinarily in his talkative way, that he might insult my silence, and distinguish himself before a woman of Arietta's taste and understanding. (Spectator)

(14) of + 抽象名词 = 形容词, of 从略 + 普通名词

(a) It was of great importance.

这是非常重要的。

(b) The earth is the shape of a pear.

地球是牛子形的。

### 【解说】

在(a)例中“of + 抽象名词”的形式,是和形容词同义的。如“of importance” = important. / “of use” = useful. / “of no use” = useless. 这都是可以译为“的”的,如“a man of courage” = a courageous man (勇敢的人; 勇士)。“a lady of virtue” = a virtuous lady (贤德的女人, 淑女)。他如“a child of fortune” (幸运儿)。“a man

an of business”（实业家）。用普通名词也是一样，如/a man of family”（名门之子）。/a man of few words”（寡言的人）。/a man of his word”（言行一致的人）。

在（b）例中的/the shape”，虽字面上看不见/of”一字，但意味上实等于说/of the shape”一样。凡形状、年龄、大小、色度、价格等有关字，多有这种用法。如/同一大小”说/of a size”，如果加上形容词时，就常要把/of”略去，说成/the same size”，如像/age”，/price”，/size”等字，是没有形容词的，因此，/of age”，/of size”，/of price”，就弥补了这个缺憾，而代行形容词的任务了。

### 【类例】

Bernard Shaw was an Englishman of letters.（萧伯纳是英国的文人。）

Su Tung-po was a man of parts.（苏东坡是多才多艺的人。）

He is a man of means.（他是资产家。）

Chu Ko-lian was a man of resources.（诸葛亮足智多谋。）

They are all of an age.（他们同年。）

They are all the same age.（他们都是同年的。）

These glasses are of a size.（这些玻璃杯大小一样。）

These glasses are the same size.（这些玻璃杯都是同样大小的。）

Her dress is the colour of grass.（她的衣服是草绿色。）

This shirt is exactly the right size.（这件衬衫大小正好。）

The island is about one-third the size of Singapore.（那岛的大小略等于新加坡三分之一。）

### 【习题 14】

1. The heroic bravery displayed by this officer, in the midst of a hail of bombs from the enemy, was of the highest order

r.

2. The towers were exactly the same height. (Kruisinga)

3. He must have been almost the same age as was my father when I first met him.

4. Unsuccessful candidates are five times the number of successful ones.

(15) one's own + 名词, of one's own + 动名词

(a) He shines his own shoes.

他自己彻皮鞋。

(b) It is a tree of his own planting.

这是他手栽的树。

### 【解说】

英文说的“one's own”，除“自己的”一个意思外，还有“为自己”一个意思，即英文“by oneself”的意思，如 (a) 例 He shines his own shoes. = His shoes are shined by himself. 原来“own”是加强的说法，单说 That is his house. (那是他的家) 已经够了，但要加强时便说 That is his own house. 单说 He has a house. (他有一幢房子) 也够明白了，但要加强时就说 He has a house of his own. (他自己有一幢房子)。要注意的是：不能说 He has his own house. 因为现代英文不可以把属格代名词和指示代名词连用，即是：不能说 “this my (own) house”，而要说 “this house of mine”，或 “this house of my own”，因此惯用法就要说 He has a house of his own. 尤其是在动词“have”之后。(b) 例的“of one's own doing”，意为“自己做的”(done by oneself)，往往可省略“own”一字，如“a tree of his own planting”也可以说成“a tree of his planting.”

### 【类例】

She has no children of her own. (她自己没有生孩子。)

The moon has no light of its own. (月亮本身无光)

It is a poem of his own composing. (= It is a poem composed by himself.) (这是他自己做的诗。)

This profession is of my own choosing. (这是我自己选择的专业。)

He lived a colorful life and, in the end, a disastrous one, which is no less moving because much of the disaster was of his own making. (Arthur Mizener) (他过的一种多彩多姿的生活，而最后却是多灾多难的生活，那同样令人感动，因为灾难大半是他自己招致的。)

### 【习题 15】

1. He dressed his own food.

2. Usually that which a man calls fate is a web of his own weaving, from threads of his own spinning. (Doyle)

3. She married him of her own choice against her parents' will.

## (16) have + the + 抽象名词 + 不定词

I had the fortune to succeed.

我很幸运获得成功。

### 【解说】

这个 **have = possess**，原指肉体上或精神上的特征，作为一种天禀而具有的，比方说，**He has a good memory.** (他的记性好)。又如 **Irishmen have red hair.** (爱尔兰人天生是红头发)。进而由普通名词发展为抽象名词，后面接上一个不定词，而成为一种惯用的语法了。例如



She had the cheek (= impudence) to say such a thing. (她厚颜地说出这样的话。) 这就等于说: She was so impudent as to say such a thing.

How can you have the heart (= hard-heartedness) to drown such darling little kittens? (你何忍把这些如此可爱的小猫去葬死?) 这就等于说: How can you be so hard-hearted as to drown such darling little kittens?

Will you have the goodness (= kindness) to do it for me? (= Will you be so kind as to do it for me?) (请你帮忙替我做一下好吗?)

所以例题的句子也可以说成 I was so fortunate as to succeed. 或 I was fortunate enough to succeed. 而含义完全一样。此外, 在抽象名词后的不定词, 有时也可变成/of + 动名词”, 如 May I have the pleasure of dancing with you? (我可不可以和你跳一回舞?)

### 【类例】

I had the luck to find him at home. (我幸运地遇见他正在家里。)

He had the misfortune to break his leg. (他不幸折断了腿。)

Those who have the interest of their country at heart are praiseworthy. (忧国之士值得颂扬。)

He had the courage to express his opinion. (他毫无忌惮地申述了他的意见。)

I had the folly to spend all I earned. (我竟愚笨得丧尽所获。)

That wretch has had the audacity to touch my children's doll. (V. Hugo) (那个小坏蛋竟有狗胆来动我孩子们的玩具。)

He had the kindness to show me round the place. (他亲切地带我参观了一圈。)

He had the imprudence to marry beneath him. (他不谨慎地竟至娶家世寒微的女子为室。)

【习题 16】

1. The boy waved the fan to and fro and drove away the buzzing flies whenever they had the impertinence to come near the baby's face.

2. He had the foresight to carry fire insurance.

(17) that (those) + 先行词 + 关系代名词

He lost that picture which he had got with much trouble.  
他把那花了很大的口才得来的画丢了。

【解说】

这是所谓“强烈的限制”(strong restriction)用法,即是为加强限制的意思,在“/who”,“/which”的先行词(Antecedent)前加用“that”,“those”的字眼。这种表现法和说“such” as”差不多。句中的“that”,不能译为“那个”。

【类例】

The root is that part of the vegetable which least impresses the eye. (根是植物最不引人注目的部分。)

That virtue which requires to be ever guarded is scarcely worth the sentinel. (= Such virtue as requires”) (需要常常保护的美德是不值得看守的。)

Those rich men are great who do not think themselves great because they are rich. (并不以为他们有钱就是伟大的阔人们,才算伟大。)

Those persons who do most good are least conscious of it.  
(“Those” who or which” = “only those” or “all those”) (为善

最多的人很少感觉到他是在为善。)

A dog will become attached to those members of the family who are kind to it. (家里的人谁对狗好, 狗就喜欢跟谁。)

### 【习题 17】

1. Milton had that universality which belongs to the highest order of genius.

2. Education alone can conduct us to that enjoyment which is best in quality and infinite in quantity.

(18) one thing...another

It is one thing to know and another to teach.

自己知道是一件事, 要教别人又是另外一件事。

### 【解说】

这个例句又可简约地说 To know is one thing; to teach is another. (= Knowing and teaching are different.) 意即自知和教人是两回事, 有的人知道但不能教, 虽有一肚子学问却不会教书。/another" = an + other. /one" another" 不可与 /one" the other" 以及 /the one" the other" 混乱。在二者之中任取其一 (one), 剩下的便是另外的一个了 (the other)。例如 They have two daughters; one is a singer, the other an actress. (他们有两个女儿, 一为歌手, 一为女伶。)/the one" the other" = the former" the latter. (前者" 后者), 例如 Mary has a white and a red rose; the one is lovelier than the other. (玛丽有一株白玫瑰和一株红玫瑰; 白玫瑰比红玫瑰好看。)

### 【类例】

It is one thing to own a library; it is another to use it wisely. (藏书是一件事, 能否善于利用又是另外一件事。)

To have money is one thing, to spend it wisely is quite another. (有钱是一件事, 贤明地用钱又是另外一件事。)

It is one thing to know a language, and it is another to know about it. (懂得一种语文是一件事, 具有关于那种语文的知识又是另外一件事。)

**【习题 18】**

1. There is no more dangerous experiment than that of undertaking to be one thing before a man's face and another behind his back.

2. Others hold that the essence of art is one thing and the form another.

### III. As 的造句

#### (19) “as…as” 的三种用法

(a) He is as kind as his sister (is) .

他像他妹妹一样和蔼。

(b) He is as kind as (he is) honest.

他又诚实又和蔼。

(c) He is as kind as his sister is honest.

他妹妹诚实而他就和蔼。

#### 【解说】

英文/as + 形容词 + as”的形式，是表示程度相同的某种性质的，如 (a) 例，表示两个不同的人相同的性质，(b) 例表示同一人的不同的性质，(c) 例表示两个人的不同的性质。句中第一个/as”为指示副词，第二个/as”为连词，因此在第一个/as”后面，只能接用一个形容词或副词，而在第二个/as”后面，便要接上一个子句。如系否定时则第一个/as”改为/not so”，例如 He is not so kind as you are.

这个/as” as”是平等比较，高一级的比较则用/-er” than”，至于对同一人所有的不同性质的比较，则用/more + positive”的形式，如 She is more attractive than pretty. (与其说她漂亮，不如说她可爱。) She is more shy than unsocial. (= She is shy rather than unsocial.) (与其说她不爱交际，不如说她害羞。) The man was as more dead than alive. (那人只剩得奄奄一息了。)

#### 【类例】

He is as clever as his sister. (他和他姊姊一样聪明。)

She is not so pretty as her sister. (她没有她妹妹好看。)

No country suffered so much as England. (Macaulay)  
(没有一个国家受过英格兰那样多的痛苦。)

He is as cunning as you are clever. (他的狡猾好似你的聪明。)

### 【习题 19】

1. He is as old as his cousin. (Greene)

2. He was as covetous as cruel. (Wotton)

3. Dobbin looked as pale and grave as his comrade was flushed and jovial. (Thackeray)

(20) as...as any, as...as ever

(a) He is as great a statesman as any.

(b) He is as great a statesman as ever lived.

他是一位稀有的大政治家。

### 【解说】

英文的/as" as"原为同等比较的意思，加上/any"或/ever"的时候，就变成/不让"，/不弱"，甚至/古今无双的"的意思了。在/as" as any"后面，又可以接上名词，如 He works as hard as anybody.

(他勤勉不逊于任何人。) 如果在/any"后接物而不接人，则有/as" as anything can be" (= as" as possible) 一个表现法，意为/愈" 愈佳"，如 I will make it as clean as anything can be. (我要尽量把它弄清洁。) 这个/as" as ever"，另外又有/as" as before" (照旧) 的意思，如 He works as hard as ever. (其勤勉不减于以前。) He is as busy as ever. (他照旧忙。) She is as pretty as ever. (她还是一样的漂亮。) 这个/ever" = always. (素常。)

### 【类例】

His behaviour is as good as ever. (他的行为和过去一样的好。)

His trust in his friend was as firm as ever. (他对其朋友的信任照常坚定。)

He is as diligent a man as ever lived. (其为人勤勉不让古今的人。)

They continued to fish up plate, bullion, and dollar, as plentifully as ever. (他们继续地捞起一些碟子、金块和银元, 和以前一样地多。)

The dog was as courageous an animal as ever scoured the woods. (狗的勇敢不逊于到现在为止在森林中跑动的任何动物。)

Then as for active exercise, she could ride on horseback as well as any man in his kingdom. (Hawthorne) (至于说到实际的运动, 她的骑术不弱于国内任何男子。)

### 【习题 20】

1. His novels have as good a chance of surviving as any that have been written in the last hundred years. (Maugham)

2. It's not only real, but it's as fine a string of pearls for its size as I've ever seen. (Maugham)

(21) as...as...can be

It is as plain as plain can be.

那是再明白也没有了。

### 【解说】

上例单说是 It is plain. 也就够了, 现在为要加强“plain”的意思, 所以把同一个形容词再说一遍, 最后再加上“can be”的字样, 表

示/明白到不能再明白的程度”。这种表现法有时可将第一个/as”省掉，或将/can be”略去。这个/can be”，有时也可说成/may be”的。

**【类例】**

You are as wrong as wrong can be. (你大错特错。)

A lot of these boys were green as green can be. (Bob Considine) (这些男孩子许多都是精力充沛无以复加的。)

Gabby yanked him quick as quick. (John Tunis) (加比急急地把他用力猛拉。)

I am as thirsty as thirsty may be. (我口渴得不得了。)

She is as happy as happy can be. (她快乐已极。)

The place is as still as still. (那地方静寂得无以复加。)

**【习题 21】**

1. /Thou'rt wrong, my friend, " said good King Hal; /as wrong as wrong can be." (Mackay)

2. The old folks made me welcome; they were as kind as kind could be. (Woolson)

3. Since I have been in prison he has always been coming to see me, and at times he would talk to me, and was as good to me as could be. (Plato's Death of Socrates)

(22) as..., so...

As rust eats iron, so care eats the heart.

忧能伤人，亦犹坐之蚀由。

**【解说】**



这个“so”的意思是“in the same proportion”, “in like manner”, “in the same way” (亦复如此)。为着加强语气, 又可在“as”前加用“just”一字。有时在主句中, 可将动词置于主语之前。

**【类例】**

As you treat me, so I will treat you. (你怎样待我, 我也怎样待你。)

As the lion is king of beasts, so is the eagle king of birds.  
(鹰为鸟中之王, 正好像狮为兽中之王一样。)

As fire tries gold, so does adversity try courage. (正如火可以试金一样, 逆境也可以试人的勇气。)

As the human body is nourished by the food, so is a nation nourished by its industries. (正像身体要靠食物营养一样, 国家要靠工业营养。)

**【习题 22】**

1. Just as no two words are truly synonyms, so no two different expressions, or ways of expression, can mean exactly the same thing. (G. H. Vallins)

2. Just as the chemist draws his deductions from the results of laboratory experiments, so must students of language draw their deductions from an observation of the facts of language. (R. C. Pooley)

(23) It is in (or with) ... as in (or with)

It is in life as in a journey.

人生好比旅行一样。

**【解说】**

这个表现法是由/as” so”（正像）变化而来的，意为/is like”，可译作/犹如”，/正好像”。例句可说成 Life is like a journey. 句首的 /it”，并不指什么，只是一般漠然的用法。

### 【类例】

It is in studying as in eating; he who does it gets the benefits, and not he who sees it done.（读书和吃饭一样，得到利益的是实际在吃的人，而不是在旁观看的人。）

It is with women as with flowers.（妇美如花。）

It is with a machine as with a child that must always be taken care of.（机器也和小孩一样，需要时常加以照顾。）

It is in mind as in body which must be nourished by good food.（精神和身体都必须有好的食物来营养。）

It is with one as with the other.（= One is like the other.）（彼此相似。）

### 【习题 23】

1. It is in man as in soils, where sometimes there is a vein of gold which the owner knows not of.

2. It is with words as with sunbeams; the more they are condensed, the deeper they burn. (Southey)

(24) as much, as many, like so many

(a) I thought as much.

我亦作如是想。

(b) Those five days seemed to me as many years.

那个五天对我好像五年一样。

(c) They work like so many ants.

那些人就像那么多的茄征一样在做工。

### 【解说】

这个“as much” = as much as that, 具有三种意思: ①“the same degree or quantity of”, 表同样程度的, 同样分量的, 例如 He has gold as much as silver. (他有与白银同样多的黄金。) ②“as well”; “equally”, 表同等或同样的, 例如 He was greatly respected, and his brother as much despised. (他很受人尊敬, 而他的兄弟则很受人鄙视。) ③“the same thing”; “just so”, 表同一事; 意为“亦然”, 例如 I was not at all vexed at my failure, for I had expected as much. (我对失败一点也不烦恼, 因为我早知道会失败的。)

至于“as many” = the same number of, 是表同数的, 意为“其数相同”, 例如 He made six mistakes in as many paragraphs. (他在六节中犯了六个错误。) 这个“as many”如用在“like”后面“as”就要改变为“so”, 说成“like so many”, 意也是“好像同样数目的”, 又可译成“宛如”似的”, 例如 We worked like so many bees. (我们宛如那样多的蜜蜂似的工作了。)

### 【类例】

I was not in the least surprised, for I had expected as much. (我一点也没有吃惊, 因为我早已料到会有那样的事。)

I found ten misprints in as many pages. (我在十页中就发现十个错误。)

You have made two blunders in as many minutes. (你在两分钟之中就犯了两次大错。)

It was a truly awful sight, watching the numberless little wooden houses catching fire one after another, and flaming up like so many match-boxes. (那真是一个可怕的光景, 望着无数的小木屋, 一个又一个地着火燃烧, 就像烧着那样多的火柴盒子一样。)

### 【习题 24】

1. /Nay, I told you as much before, " said Blount. (Scott)

2. The wall was about fifteen feet high, and as many feet thick.

3. All our streets are lined with trees, and like so many stars among the leaves and branches, the street lamps shed their light.

4. I assembled a number of my play-fellows, and we worked diligently like so many emmets. (Franklin)

(25) as good as, as well as

(a) It is as good as done.

这就和做好了一样。

(b) It is broad as well as long.

那既长突宽。

### 【解说】

英文的/as good as"有两个意思：①/amounting to"; /not falling short of", 意为/等于", /同样", /几如", /不欠缺", 例如 He was as good as his word. (他不爽约。实践其言。)(句中/word"换为/promise"也是一样。 ) ②/virtually"; /essentially"; /in every essential respect", 意为/实际上", /其实", /实在", /在各要点上", 例如 He is as good as dead already. (宛如死人。行尸走肉。名存实亡。他简直和死人一样。)

至于/as well as" 则有四个意思：①/no less than"; /equally with", 意为/等于", /不下于", /亦", /一样好", 例如 I have understanding as well as you. (我的理解力和你一样好。 ) ②/both" and"; /one equally with the other", 意为/与", /及", /二者皆", 例如 Work in moderation is healthy as well as agreeable to the

human constitution. (适度的劳动对身体给与快感, 又有益卫生。) ③与“not only” but also”有连带关系, 如云 He has experience as well as knowledge. = He has not only knowledge, but also experience. (他有学识又有经验。学识自不待言, 连经验也很丰富。) 注意改写时要把顺序颠倒, 如 (b) 例 It is broad as well as long. = It is not only long, but also broad. ④“as well as”还可以代替“better than”用, 例如 As well (= better) be hanged for a sheep as (= than) for a lamb. (与其盗小羊而受绞刑, 毋宁盗大羊合算。窃钩不如窃国。)

### 【类例】

The sailors did noble duty that day, in the dogged faith that they would give as good as they got, anyhow.” (那些水手们当日尽了高尚的职责, 在那顽强的信仰中, 一言以蔽之, 他们是要以其所受施诸其人的。)

I will let you have a geography that is not new. It is as good as a new one. (我要给你一本旧的地理书。因为那和新的一样。)

She said that he was as good as engaged to a girl out there, and that he had never dreamt of her. (W. D. Howells) (她说那男人在外洋有一个女子等于订了婚一样, 而他却从来没有梦想过她。)

The merchant as good as promised the orphan boy, that he would adopt him. (那商人等于是答应了那孤儿要收他为养子。)

This is the case with manufacturing as well as with agricultural interests. (这是对工业有利, 对农业也一样好的实例。)

In polity, as well ecclesiastical as civil, there are always evils which no art of man can cure. (Hooker) (在政治形态上, 也和教会组织及国家行政上一样, 总有许多坏处是人力无法治好的。)

### 【习题 25】

1. Out of the eight men who had fallen in the action, only three still breathed; and of these two were as good as dead.

2. Men should be gentle as well as brave and women brave as well as gentle.

3. I returned to the den to cook myself a meal, of which I stood in great need, as well as to care for my horse, whom I had somewhat neglected in the morning. (R. L. Stevenson)

4. Doris<sup>1</sup> musical background stemmed from her father, William, who was an organist, as well as a violin, piano, and voice teacher. (R. G. Hubler)

## (26) 句首的 “as it is”，句尾的 “as it is”

(a) If I were rich, I should do so. As it is, I do nothing.

如果我有钱的话，我就要这样做。但实在太穷，我什么都不能做。

(b) The painter does not copy nature as it is.

画家描摹大自然，并不是完全写实的。

### 【解说】

英文说的/as it is”（过去时态为/as it was”）这个表现法，有两种场合，因用的位置不同，而影响到意义的差别。

(a) 用于句首，接在假设语气之后。例如 If I were a college graduate, I would go abroad. As it is, I cannot go.（如果我是大学毕业生的话，我就要出洋去。但事实上，我可不能去。）这个/as it is” = as it stands; to state the matter as it really stands; as a matter of fact; in reality, 意为/在事实上”，/就实际的情形而论”，简略成为/实际上”，/事实上”。接在假想之后，作为报告实情时的导言。用过去动词时，意义不变。如 As it is, we cannot help her. 过去时则为 As it was, we could not help her. 如系说人，则要随

人称的不同而改变动词，如 **Paint me as I am.**（照我现在的样子来画。）在许多场合可用其他同样意义的片语来取代，如 **As matters stand, I do not like to make the plan public.**（在目下的状态中，我不想把那计划公开。）**As the case stands, I don't care to make public the reason for my visit.**（在目下的状态中，我还不想公开我访问的理由。）**As things now are, we cannot put the plan in to practice.**（以目下的状态，我们还不能把那计划付诸实行。）**As things go, it is impossible to make a forecast of the development of the peace talk.**（以目下的情形而论，和谈的发展如何是未能预测的。）

(b) 用于句尾，接在名词或代名词之后。例如 **I take the world as it is.**（世界就是这个样子，我并不指望它会变好。）**Leave it as it is.**（就让它是那样，不要动好了。）**You had better take things as they are.**（你最好接受事物的现状。）这个“as it is”（复数为/as they are”），意为“照现状”，/it”指前面的名词，所以那名词如为复数时，就要改为/they”，动词也跟着要改为/are”。

### 【类例】

**If he were not ill, he would go to see the play. As it is, he has to stay at home.**（如果他不生病的话，他是要去看戏的。实际上，他只好呆在家里了。）

**If I had been rich, I would have bought it. As it was, I missed the chance of getting it.**（我有钱早就买了，但实际上我却失去了获得那个的机会。）

**We hoped things would go better, but as it is they are getting worse.**（我们原指望事态好转，可是实际上却更糟了。）

**Please leave the apple-box as it is.**（请把苹果箱照原样放着。）

**He finds fault with society as it is without having anything better to suggest in its place.**（他并没有提出什么替代的良策，只是一味对现实社会加以非难。）

**He took the bundle just as it was to the police-station.**（他把那包裹原封不动地送到警察局去了。）

I often wish I could read. As it is, I have nothing to do but to think. (我常希望我能阅读。像我现在这样一字不识, 我除了思索之外, 什么也不能做。)

### 【习题 26】

1. There is no alleviation for the sufferings of mankind except veracity of thought and action and the resolute facing of the world as it is.

2. I should have followed him through the open window if I had been stronger. As it was, I rang the bell and roused the house. (Doyle)

(27) 过去分词 + as it is, 现在分词 + as it does

(a) Hidden as it was by the trees, the tomb was difficult to find.

深沉在树木中, 那观稍很难找到。

(b) Standing as it does on a high hill, the church commands a fine view.

像这样建立在高山上, 教堂的乡望很好。

### 【解说】

这是上项用法的变形。这个/as it is”(过去用/was”)是强调前面的过去分词的,/it”是指主句中的主语, 在上例中则指/the tomb”, 如果不要加强来说, 则取消/as it was”, 说成 Hidden by the trees, the tomb was difficult to find. 意思还是一样。

在过去分词之后所接的/as it is”, 到了现在分词之后, 就要把动词/be”改为/do”; 这个/as it does”也好, 前述的/as it is”也好, 都是为加重语气而设的插入句, 去掉它也是无妨的, 如 (b) 例改说成 Standing on a high hill, the church commands a fine view. 意思



还是一样的。这个在现在分词后接用的“as it does”（或“as he does”；“as she did”等），可译为“因为是这样”，“实际”“故”等等。

### 【类例】

Written as it is in good English, this book is recommendable to all.（实际是用美好的英文写的，所以这本书可以向大众推介。）

Burdened as he was, he could not walk fast.（因为负荷太重，所以他不能走快。）

Living as we do in a remote village, we rarely have visitors.（因为是住在这样远离城市的村庄上，我们是很少有客人的。）

Bathing as he did several times a day, he could not get his hair to stay down.（因为是这样一天去游泳好几次，他的头发是不会平伏的。）

### 【习题 27】

1. Published as it was at such a time, his work attracted much attention.

2. This movement, arising as it does among the poor themselves, is likely to have more force than if it was from the upper classes. (Dixon)

3. Coming as it did at a period of exceptional dullness it attracted perhaps rather more attention than it deserved. (Doyne)

## (28) 名词等 + as + 主语 + 动词等

(a) Child as she was, she was more than a match for him.

她虽是一个小孩，却甚过做他的对手。

(b) Strange as it may sound, it is true.

听来虽觉奇怪，却是千真万确的。

(c) Try as you may, you will never succeed.

你尽可以试试看，不过你决难成功。

### 【解说】

在“名词（形容词） + as + 主语 + 动词”的形式中的“as”，如例（a）及（b），多为“though”或“although”的意思，是一种表示让步的句子，上例可改写为 *Though she was a child*（注意这时要加上冠词）及 *Although it may sound strange*. 至于“动词 + as + 主语 + 助动词”的形式，也是让步的说法。Try as you may = Although you may try. 见（c）例。试比较下举二例：

(1) *Clever as he was, he found not a little difficulty in solving the problem which was anything but difficult.*（他虽很聪明，也很难来解决那个决非困难的问题。）

(2) *Clever as he was, he found little difficulty in solving the problem which was none too easy.*（他因为很聪明，所以一点不困难，就把那个决非容易的问题解决了。）

(1) *Clever as he was* = *Although he was clever.*

(2) *Clever as he was* = *As he was clever.*

(1) 意为“虽则”，(2) 意为“因为”。这个“as”何时作“虽则”解，何时作“因为”解，就要看后面的文句才能决定。这原是由“*(as) clever as he is*”强调的省略而来，“像他那样聪明”，变成“他虽则聪明”。在美国现仍有人用“*As clever as*”的形式。又（a）例中的名词，因移到句首去，便得将冠词略去，如恢复普通说法时，则非有冠词不可，如 *Warrior as he was* = *Though he was a warrior*（他虽为武士）。*Woman as I am* = *Though I am a woman*（我虽属女流）。至于（c）例，因前为动词，句法全变，应译为“尽管”。

### 【类例】

Young as he is, it is but natural that he should commit such a mistake. (他因为年轻, 要犯这种错误也是当然的事。)

Woman as she is, she was brave. (她虽是女流, 那时却够勇敢了。)

Poor piper as I am, I won't do anything below contempt. (我虽滥竽, 但不做可鄙的事。)

Young as he is, he is able. (他虽年轻, 但很能干。)

Teacher as he is, he explains it very clearly. (因为他是教师, 所以解释得很清楚。)

The Greeks, eminent as they were in almost every department of human activity, did surprisingly little for the creation of science. (希腊人在人类一切活动的领域虽然都很优越, 但对于科学的创造上, 却毫无贡献。)

### 【习题 28】

1. Young as he was, and poor as he was, no King's or Lord's son could come up to him in learning.

2. Struggle as we may, we can never be completely satisfied.

3. Dull as a student may be, and difficult as a subject may seem to be at first sight, he will find the study become easier or at least less difficult, if he can persevere and does not neglect it.

## IV. 动词的造句

(29) may well + 动词, and well + 主语 + may

(a) He may well be proud of his success.

他获得那样的成功是很可以骄傲的。

(b) He is proud of his success, and well he may.

他对于自己的成功感到骄傲, 也是应该的。

### 【解说】

在 (a) 例中的“may well” = have good reason (其中的“well” = with good reason = reasonably), 意为“那样也是有理由的”, “无怪”。在 (b) 例中的“well + 主语 + may” = and with reason, 附在主句之后, 意为“那也是应该的”。这个“well”是修饰整个句子的副词, 以表示说话者的意见的。有时不说“may”, 单用一个“well”, 也能表达“with good reason”的意思, 如 We cannot very well refuse him. (我们没有好的理由来拒绝他。) 内容如果是指的过去的话, “may”则可改为过去时态的“might”, 不过有时候, 用过去时态的“might”, 并不一定是指过去, 而是一种客气的说法, 用来表现在的, 如 She might well ask that. (她这样问一声, 也不为无理吧。) 还有“may well”的“well”, 又可作“probably” (大概) 解, 如 It may well be true. (那大概是真的。)

### 【类例】

She may well be proud of her son. (她对她自己的儿子感到骄傲, 是有理由的。)

You may well say so. (你很有理由这样说。)

Well he might be proud and glad. (他要感到骄傲而又高兴也是应该的。)

You may well refuse him. (你拒绝他是对的。)

He was proud of his feat, and well he might. (他自夸他的功绩是有理由的。)

### 【习题 29】

1. As regards its climate, Japan does not differ materially from Britain, and in this, the country may well be called “the Britain of the Pacific”.

2. The good lady was in an ecstacy of delight. And well might she be proud of her boy. (Hawthorne)

3. During this period I met persons who by their rank, fame or position might very well have thought themselves destined to become historical figures. (Maugham)

(30) may as well...as, might as well...as

(a) You may as well call a cat a little tiger as call a tiger a big cat.

你如把猫叫做大猫，同样也无妨把猫叫做小疾。

(b) You might as well throw your money away as spend it in gambling.

你要把钱花在赌缠上，就不如夫掉的好。

### 【解说】

英文说的“may as well” as”和“might as well” as”，都是用于现在的，并无现在时和过去时的分别，其所不同的是前者指“可能的事”，而后者指“不可能的事”。这种句中的“well”，也和上项 (29) “may well”中的“well”意思相同，都是作“合理的”，“理所当然的” (reas

onably; with good reason) 解, 所以“may as well” as” = have as good reason to” as, 不过这个表现法中的意义的重点, 在“as” as”之间的比较, 有时可解释为“与其”做, 宁肯”做为佳”, 如 One may as well not know a thing at all as know it imperfectly. (与其一知半解, 不如完全不知的好。) 在第二个“as”以下的句子, 是常被省略的, 如 I may as well go at once. (我还是马上去的好。) 后面省去了 as not (与其不去) 的字样。第一人称的 I may as well 与第二人称的 you had better 相当, 但较 had better 为弱, 所以意为“为宜”, “还是那样做的好”。如 (a) 例是“合理的”的意思。

现在再看 (b) 例。句中 throw your money away (A), 是谁也不干的愚行, spend it in gambling (B), 也是不弱于 (A) 的愚行, 为要强调 (B) 的愚笨, 故在 (A) 句中不用“may”而用“might”, 是假定的说法, 表示不可能的事。这种“as” as”的造句, 原意为比较, 即 (B) 和 (A) 一样, 可译成“不啻”, “犹之”, “可与相等”, 但由力加否定的关系, 有时可采用选择的译法: “与其那样不如这样的好”。在第二个“as”后的字句, 常被省略, 因为由前面的文字可以想像出来。

### 【类例】

You may as well (= had better) begin at once (as not) .  
(你宜早日着手。) 因马上着手与不马上着手的理由同样充分, 所以还是马上着手的好。

You might as well throw your money into the sea as lend it to him. (你借钱给他, 不啻把钱丢在海里。)

I might as well act it as say it. (我那样说就等于那样做。)

I think we may as well set out on our travels. (我想我们最好就出发去旅行。)

You might as well erect a house without bricks and mortar as try to get on in life without education. (不受教育而想立身处世, 就像没有砖和灰泥来建造房子一样。)

You may just as well tell me the truth. (你把事实告诉我是为你好。)

One may as well be hanged for a sheep as a lamb. (与其窃钩而诛, 毋宁窃国。)

You might as well advice me to give up my fortune as my argument. (你要我放弃议论, 还不如要我放弃财产。) 二者皆不可能。

### 【习题 30】

1. Friendship is a vase, which, if it is cracked by accident, may as well be broken at once.

2. You might as well expect the sun to rise in the west as expect me to change my opinion.

3. When this lady saw that the magazine was not going to rise, she became a little disgusted with the editor and decided that she might as well get what there was to get while there was still something available. (Hemingway)

(31) so that...may, lest...should

(a) I run fast so that I may catch the train.

我快跑为的是要赶上火车。

(b) I run fast lest I should miss the train.

我快跑以免赶不上火车。

### 【解说】

这两种表现法, 都是表示“目的”的, /lest" should"的说法较古, 现今多用/for fear that"来取代了。/that" may"也略带古风, /in order that" may", 则是郑重的表现法。这个表“目的”的/may", 有时也可换用/can", /shall"等字。(a)例可译作“俾可”, /以求达到”, 而(b)例则为“以免”, /以求不至”, 又可翻译为“因恐”, /免得”。这个/so that"在会话体中及美国话中, 常只用一个/so"字, 而不

用/that”，在/so that”的前面有时用逗号（Comma），有时不用，逗号的有无，完全不影响文义。/lest” should”除上述/for fear”外，还可代以/in case”，后面仍接/should”不变。在最近美国话中，则将/should”略去不说，后接原形动词，如 Take care lest you fall.（当心不要跌倒。）这个/lest” should”的口语表现法为/so as not to”。

### 【类例】

We whispered lest he should hear.（怕他听见故细声说。）

Man does not live that he may eat, but eats that he may live.（人非为吃而生，乃为生而吃。）

He spends that he may succeed, and succeeds that he may spend.（他消耗以求成功，成功以便消耗。）

They placed a guard at the door, lest the prisoner should find means of escape.（他们派了一个卫兵来看守房门，以免犯人想办法逃走。）

He tried to shout so that he might be heard all along the street.（他试着大声叫喊，指望沿街有人听到。）

Kindly sign it and return to me, so I can put through a voucher for the \$1,000 we agreed on.（请签字后寄回给我，俾可将我们双方议定的一千元顺利完成保证手续。）

I wrote out an itinerary so they could follow us.（Hemingway）（我定出了一个旅程表，以便他们可以追随我们而来。）

### 【习题 31】

1. Science consists in grouping facts so that general laws or conclusions may be drawn from them.（Darwin）

2. When the schoolboys find a nest, they are very careful not to disturb it lest the mother bird should be frightened and desert it.



(32) cannot help + 动名词, cannot but + 原形不定词

(a) I cannot help admiring his courage.

(b) I cannot but admire his courage.

我对于他的勇气不胜佩服。

### 【解说】

在(a)例中的“help”意为“避免”，可用“avoid”，“resist”，“forbear”等取代。同义的说法还有“cannot keep (或 refrain, abstain) from-ing”，如 We cannot keep from admiring the scenery. (我们不禁大为赞赏那种风景。)至于(b)例的“cannot but”，是稍具古风的表现法，其中的“but” = except，意为“除了那样做以外，什么也不能做”，最后成为“不得不”了。比较下面三种说法：

Formal: I cannot but feel sorry for him.

Informal: I can't help feeling sorry for him.

Vulgar: I can't help but feel sorry for him.

把最后一例说成卑语的，只是英国的说法，在美国却视为正常的英文，在 Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language 上就举有“cannot help but” = cannot fail to; be compelled or obliged to 的解释。

### 【类例】

I cannot help thinking he's wrong. (我不禁认为他错了。)

I cannot but feel thankful that it formed such a material part of my education. (我不禁深为感谢，那竟形成了我教育上重要的一部分。)

I cannot help forming some opinion of a man's character from his dress. (我不得不多少要从一个人穿的衣服来判断他的性格。)

We cannot but believe in the youth who is always trying to improve himself. (常要努力改进自己的青年, 我不得不信赖。)

I could not but laugh on seeing such a funny sight. (看到这样滑稽的光景, 我不禁笑出来了。)

The little child was so beautiful, kind, and good, that no one who saw her could help loving her. (那个小孩非常美丽, 又亲切, 又善良, 所以没有人见到她不爱她的。)

I cannot help wondering about the child. (关于那个孩子的事, 我不禁感到奇怪。)

### 【习题 32】

1. She could not help sympathizing with every little helpless thing; her heart was always touched by a bird or beast that had been hurt.

2. When I consider the greatness that he afterward achieved I cannot but smile as I remember the fashion in which he was discussed at my uncle's table. (Maugham)

(33) have + 宾语(物) + 过去分词

(a) I had my watch mended.

我找人把我的表修理好了。

(b) I had my watch broken.

我把我的表弄破了。

(c) We have our enemy almost surrounded.

我们差不多把敌人包围起来了。

### 【解说】

例 (a) 表主语的意志，例 (b) 则与主语的意志完全无关，例 (a) 为使动，例 (b) 则为被动。例 (a) 的主语有意去请人修表，而例 (b) 的主语实无意把表弄破。例 (c) 为保持那种被动（在例句中为/被包围”）的状态。（a）句中的/“have”，有时可换用/get”，以限制其意义。普通受 **Passive Form** 的动作者为主语，例如 **My watch was stolen.**（我的表被窃。）一语，其中受动作者为/watch”，今若欲说/我被窃去一只表”，便是：**I had my watch stolen.** 此时的主语，间接受到动作，故此种体裁，称为/间接受动态”（**Indirect Passive Form**）。如果说 **He was handed a short note.** 听来很不自然，故改说 **He had a short note handed to him.**（有人交给了他一封短信。）凡 **Passive**（被动）皆无意志，若加上意志便成为 **Causative**（使动）之意，例如 **I will have (= cause) a new house (to be) built.**（我欲使新屋建成。我欲建筑一幢新居。）在用作使动时/“have”要读重音，用作被动时则不要，如 **He had his salary raised.**（他使薪水提高了。）**I had my hat blown off.**（我的帽子被风吹落了。）

### 【类例】

**I had my foot severely trodden upon in the bus.**（我在公共汽车里被人重重地践踏了脚。）

**He had his left hand cut off.**（他被人砍去了左手。）

**She has her head turned.**（= she has gone mad.）（她发狂了。）

**We shall have our rights trampled under foot.**（我们的权利将为人所蹂躏。）

**I will have a new suit made.**（我想制一套新装。）

**I will have my photograph taken.**（我要去照相。）

**No family is too poor to have the table covered with a clean cloth.**（没有一个家庭会穷困到连放在餐桌上的干净桌布都没有的程度。）

**He had his right leg pierced by a shot.**（他的右腿为子弹所贯穿。）

Old ladies in the States will have new novels read to them. (美国的老太太喜欢叫人把新出的小说读给她们听。)

He has his leg pulled. (= He is befooled.) (他受了人家的愚弄。)

Falling from his bicycle, he had his arm sprained. (他从脚踏车上跌下来把胳膊跌断了。)

So I went first to have my wounds dressed. (所以我先去把伤包扎好。)

You must have this fact impressed upon your mind. (你必须把这事实铭记在心上。)

He had a ticket given him. (有人给了他一张票。)

I had my right leg hurt in the accident. (在车祸中我伤了右腿。)

After paying his bill and buying his railway ticket, he had only fifty cents left. (付清了账又买了火车票，他只剩下五角钱了。)

Did he have his hair cut yesterday? (他昨天去理过发了吗?)

I have my revolver loaded. (我把手枪装上子弹了。)

We'd clear away all these cases and have the whole of that wall filled by a heroic fresco of Hector and Andromache. (Huxley) (我们要把这些箱子全部都清理出来，好让墙壁充满描写赫安英雄事迹的壁画。)

Sadie had her hand clapped to her cheek as though she had toothache. (Mansfield) (沙娣好像牙痛似的，把一只手敲着她的面颊。)

This error was particularly magnified by the fact that by the time of Yalta we already had Japan beaten. (Reader's Digest) (到雅尔塔协定时，我们算是已经把日本打败了，由这事实看来，那错误尤为显著。)

### 【习题 33】

1. He who wished to read the hearts of this husband and wife who stood at right angles, to have their wounds healed by Law, would have needed to have watched the hundred thousand hours of their wedded life. (Galsworthy)

2. Some are born great, some achieve greatness, and some have greatness thrust upon them.

3. We need to have our liberties taken away from us in order to discover that they are worth dying for. (Gardiner)

4. I had my plans arranged by which I should have the opportunity of making the man who had wronged me understand that his old sin had found him out.

(34) have + 宾语（人） + 原形不定词

(a) I have him mend my watch.

我请他修理我的表。

(b) He had his mother die. (= His mother died.)

他遭母丧。

### 【解说】

这个“have + 宾语（人） + 原形不定词”（无“to”的不定词，在此作宾格补语用）的形式，有两种解释：凡在主语无意志之下而发生的事，是用的被动的的作用，若加上主语的意志进去，就是用的使动的作用了。何时为被动，何时为使动，要看前后文才能决定，但有时从助动词上也可以看得出来，例如

(a) I will have many people come. (将使许多人来) 是有意志的。

(b) I shall have many people come. (将有许多人来) 是无意志的。

在(a)句中“will”后的“have”，已成为“make”之意了。这种说法美国人用的颇多。英国人表“请人为某事”之意时，则用“get”，但后面须接用有“to”的不定词，即限于使动时，等于“get + 宾语 + 有 to 的不定词”，如 I get him to mend my watch. (我找他替我修理手表。) I will get some one to translate the letter. (我要找人把这封信译出来。) 英国人表“使人为某事”之意时，则用“make”，如 I will make my servant clean your shoes. (我将叫仆人替你擦皮鞋。) 在美国“get”和“make”都不用，而一律用的“have”。如 We had a fire break out last night. (昨夜附近有火警。) I had him write the letter. (我使他写那封信。)

至于上举例句的第二例，也是有有意志与无意志之分的，如 His mother died. (他母亲死了。) 是无意志的，如加上有意志的成份进去，当做一个人自己的经验来说时，就成为 He had his mother die. (他遭母丧。)

在“have”后接“人”和接“物”的不同，使宾格补语的形式随之而异，即接“人”时用原形不定词，接“物”时用过去分词，比较如下：

Please have the porter carry this trunk.

Please have the trunk carried by the porter.

#### 【类例】

I don't like to have you go. (我不想你走。)

He likes to have people come. (喜有客来。)

I will have someone come and keep me company. (希望有人来为我作伴。)

I wouldn't have you do that. (我不想你那样做。)

I should like to have her meet you. (我希望她能见到你。)

I had them clean the house before your arrival. (使人洒扫以待。)

My wife would have me buy that television set. (我太太只想要我买那架电视机。)

I don't like to have somebody else tell me I ought to do this thing and that. (我不喜欢老是要别人来指挥我做这样做那样。)

If you will have me stay, I shall stay. (必欲留我, 我就留下。)

What would you have me do? (有何吩咐?)

The students are afraid of having him become principal. (学生生怕他当校长。)

These little animals seem glad to have people visit them. (这些小动物喜欢有人去看它们。)

### 【习题 34】

1. It is his nature to do to others what he would have others do to him.

2. As we lived near the road, we often had the traveller visit us to taste our gooseberry wine. (Goldsmith)

3. I would rather have lost them twice over than have had this happen. (Hardy)

4. I had a cultivated Englishman ask me if it were true Negroes could not walk on the same sidewalks as white Americans. (The New York Times)

(35) have + 宾语 + 副词 (地点, 方向等)

(a) Let's have him here.

要他到这里来吧。

(b) He had a tooth out.

他拔了一个牙戴。

**【解说】**

这种句法中的“have”，也是使动的意思，原则上和前面两项无异，不过翻译时须看前后文的关系，采用适当的字眼，不一定要把使动译出来，如（a）例，便可不必译为“使他来这里”，第二句的（b）例，也不必译为“要牙医为他拔牙”。如例句所示，在“have”后，是既可接“人”，又可接“物”的。

**【类例】**

We'll have the big table here.（把大桌子放在这里吧。）

Let me have Mr. Wong over.（去请王先生来吧。）

I had him there.（在那一点上我把他击败了。）指议论时说的。

He was had up for exceeding the speed limit.（他因开车超速而被起诉。）

**【习题 36】**

1. We shall be having the decorators in next month.

2. He won't stand for it. He'll have you out on Tuesday, so that you may as well make up your mind to it. (Maugham)

(36) have + 宾语 + 现在分词

(a) I can't have him doing that.

我不能让他那样做。

(b) I have a car waiting for me.

我有汽车在等待着。

**【解说】**



这个“have + 宾语 + 现在分词”的表现法，有两种含义，如 (a) 例为“许可”，(b) 例为“使动”。动词“have”的原义为“具有”，即具有某种情形，如 I have a lot of visitors coming. (我有许多客人要来。)

有时不用现在分词，而改用形容词，也是类似的用法，例如 I can't have you idle. (我不能让你这样懒惰。)

### 【类例】

I won't have you going out. (你不要老是跑出去。)

I had it coming. (= I deserve it.) (这是当然的报应。)

I won't have you smoking at your age. (我不想要你这样小就抽烟。)

We told him we had relatives coming. (Hedley Gore) (我们告诉了他我们有些亲戚要来。)

### 【习题 36】

1. I see that woman downstairs has a couple of sailors sitting there. I wonder how she's gotten acquainted with them. (Maugham)

2. It is generous of me to have you doing nothing.

3. I will not have you talking indecently before the children! (Sinclair Lewis)

### (37) find oneself

After half an hour I found myself in front of the house.

半小时之后，我就觉得我已经站在那房子的前面了。

### 【解说】

英文说的“find oneself”有三个意思：①起居，动定，例如 How do you find yourself this morning? (= How are you this morning?) (你今早觉得身体好吗?) ②自给自足，例如 He works for one hundred dollars a month and finds himself. (他每月有工资一百元足以自给。) ③自觉，自知，发现自己的能力，例如 After trying various jobs he found himself and became a successful reporter. (换了几个职务之后，他发现了自己的能力，成为一个成功的记者。) 最后一解为“感觉到自己在某种特定的场所，地位，或状态中”，引申而为“注意一看则身在”或简单地看成“觉得”。这种说法，实含有“意想不到”，“偶然”，“竟至”的意思在内。例如 I find myself in a church. (我发觉走进了一个教堂。) I found myself in his company. (注意一看，他陪伴着我。)

### 【类例】

She returned to England to find herself famous. (她回到英国发觉自己竟成名了。)

She found herself a mother at fifteen. (她十五岁就做了母亲。)

Moving homeward by a new way, I presently found myself on the side of a little valley, in which lay a farm and an orchard. (Gissing) (从一条新路向着家园走去，我随即就来到了一个小谷的旁边，那里有农场和果木园。)

Otherwise he “found” himself in childish fashion out of the six or seven weekly shillings. (F. Marzials) (不然的话，他就要用小孩子的方式从每周六、七先令中自谋生活。)

In many places the churches are trying to get hold of the neglected strangers and help them to “find themselves” in their unfamiliar surroundings. (James Bryce) (在许多地方教会努力要收容那些无人过问的外来人，帮助他们在不熟悉的环境中发现自己的能力。)

When he awoke, he found himself in jail. (他一醒来，睁开眼睛一看，自己竟在牢狱里了。)

He found himself at last. (他终于发现了自己的天分。)

### 【习题 37】

1. I awoke one morning and found myself famous. (Lord Byron)

2. The hours moved on, and he found himself staring at his small candle, which struggled more and more faintly with the morning light.

3. In about forty-five seconds I found myself again in the waiting room with the compassionate secretary, who made me sign more documents. (Conrad)

### (38) find...in

I found a true friend in him.

我发现他是一个真实的朋友。

### 【解说】

在这个动词“**find**”的后面，除接介词“**in**”外，还可以接“**that**”引导的子句或不定词的造句。意为（由经验而）发现，觉悟，知道，（试过之后而）认明，认定，验出。例如 **I find that the work pays.**

（我始知此事合算。）**We found that the report was false.**（= **We found it to be false.**）（问明而后知为虚报。）**I awoke to find it a dream.**（醒来始知为梦）在“**in**”前面的动词，并不限于“**find**”，他如“**see**”，“**have**”，“**behold**”，“**lose**”等都可以用。

### 【类例】

**I found a friend in a supposed enemy.**（我在原来以为是敌人的当中得到了一个朋友。）

**Columbus found a warm supporter in Queen Isabella.**（哥伦布获得伊莎贝拉女王的热心赞助。）

I found an enthusiastic coadjutor in the person of a young fellow named Wong Ming. (我获得一个名叫王明的热心的青年助手。)

Dostoievski finds brothers in thieves and murderers. (陀思妥耶夫斯基把小偷和杀人犯视为兄弟。)

We found victory in defeat. (我们认定失败就是胜利。)

We lost a great scholar in Dr. Hu Shih. (胡适的死使我们失去了一位伟大的学者。)

### 【习题 38】

1. Many on becoming rich have found in wealth not an escape from evil, but a new and worse form of it.

2. It was easy to see in Gladstone the perfect model of the upright' the man whose life had been devoted to the application of high principles to affairs of State.

## (39) “do” 的两种用法

(a) You know more than I do.

你比我知道的多。

(b) I do want to know the truth.

我真想要知道真相。

### 【解说】

除疑问句和否定句以外所用的“do”，有两种用法：一为代替已说过的动词以避免重复，这叫做代动词（**pro-verb**），如（a）例中的便是以“do”代替“know”的。在英文中除助动词及“be”动词外，其余所有的动词，都可以用“do”来代替。第二种用法是加强动词意味的，这是助动词，如（b）例所示，是加强动词“want”的，普通单说 I want

to know the truth. 意思也是一样。加强语气时可译作/真”，/真正”，/实在”等。

**【类例】**

Do you drink? Yes, I do. (你喝酒吗? 我喝。)

Don't you drink? Nor (或 Neither) do I. (你不喝酒吗? 我也不喝。)

You stammer sometimes; so do I. (你有时口吃, 我也是一样。)

You dislike dogs as I do cats. (好像我不喜欢猫一样, 你不喜欢狗。)

No father could have loved his children better than he did us. (没有别个父亲有我们的父亲这样爱他的孩子的。)

I do believe you. (我确实相信你说的话。)

I do wish you had seen him. (我真希望你见到了他。)

I did see him. (我确曾见到了他。)

He does work hard, but he often fails. (他确是很用功, 但老是考不上。)

I did go, but failed to see him. (我确是去了, 但没有见到他。)

Do stay here. (务请留此。)

Do be patient! (务请忍耐。)

Don't be anxious! (勿忧。)

Rarely did she laugh. (她难得笑。)

这是倒装法, 仍为加强语气的。

He is generally very reserved, but if he does talk, he always speaks to the purpose. (夫人不言, 言必有中。)

The area could support a far larger population than it does at present. (那地方可以维持比现在大得多的人口。)

He had bought the home furnished sometime previously from a Lord somebody who needed cash, as so many do these days. (今天有非常多的人也是这样，因为需要现金就把房子卖掉，不久以前他从一个叫什么的勋爵那里买了这幢有家具的房子。)

Magnesium lives well with other metals' and, as in any good marriage, each partner functions better with the other than either does alone. (镁跟其他的金属结合得很好，所以好像很相合的婚姻一样，各金属单独的时候不如与其他结合时更能发生作用。)

### 【习题 39】

1. I have somewhere seen it observed that we should make the same use of a book that the bee does of a flower; she steals sweets from it, but does not injure it.

2. Suppose you think of an important idea. Unless you can write it down, your idea will probably die when you do. Even if you do write it down, it perishes as soon as the mice eat the paper, which they often do and do quickly.

## (40) “depend on” 的两种用法

(a) He depends on his pen for his living.  
他靠文笔为生。

(b) Success depends on perseverance.  
成功许乎毅力。

### 【解说】

英文的“depend on”或“depend upon”，由主语不同而发生意义上的差异。如（a）例以“人”为主语时，便有“依靠”，“信赖”的意思，如（b）例以“物”为主语时，则意为“以”为据”，“凭”而定”，“由”为转移”，“恃乎”。关于“depend”一字，另外还有两个惯用句，即① **depend upon it. = You may be certain; I assure you.**（你可以相信；请你确信；我可担保。）例如：

**The school boy is very idle and heedless now; but depend upon it, he will some day regret his idleness.**（那学童现在很懒惰又不用心，不过我可以担保将来总有一天他会后悔的。）② **That depends (on circumstances).**（视情形而定；视情形如何，难以逆料。）

### 【类例】

**He is not to be depended upon.**（他不可靠。）

**Chinese varsity men mostly depend on their parents for support, but American college boys are independent of them.**（中国大学生依赖父母；美国大学生自己工读。）

**We depend on the newspaper for daily news.**（我们靠报纸得知每日新闻。）

**I shall have to depend on you to do it.**（我只得仰仗足下来做。）

**He no longer depends on his father.**（他早已不靠父亲了。）

**I cannot depend on your promise unless you give me the necessary security.**（除非你提出必要的保证，否则，我是不能信赖你的诺言的。）

**His departure depends on the weather.**（他何时动身要凭天气而定。）

**The effect depends on the cause.**（结果由于原因。有因始有果。）

**Everything depends on the amount of money given.**（凡事皆凭金钱的多少而定。凡事以财力大小而定。）

The sale depends on the quality. (销路决定于品质。以货色的优劣而决定销路的大小。)

Victory does not always depend on numbers. (精兵不在多。)

**【习题 40】**

1. A man must so train his habit as to rely upon his own powers and depend upon his own courage in moment of pressing necessity.

2. Few realize how much the happiness of life and the formation of character depend on a wise selection of books we read.

3. I am deeply convinced that our peace of mind and the joy we get out of living depend not on where we are, or what we have, or who we are, but solely upon our mental attitude. Outward conditions have very little to do with it. (D. Carnegie)

(41) know...from

He does not know an adjective from an adverb.

他连形容词和副词都分不清楚。

**【解说】**

这个“know” from”是为表示辨别而用的，有时也可以说“tell” from”，它的意思是“能加辨别”，“能够分辨”，如 to know right from wrong 为“辨是非”，to know a friend from an enemy 是“分敌友”等等。

**【类例】**



I do not know the one from the other. (我未能辨别二者之差异。)

I cannot tell the one from the other. (不能区别彼此。)

Is it possible to tell a good book from a bad one? (要判别一本书的好坏是可能的吗?)

They do not know B from a bull's foot-B from a broomstick-B from a battledoor (or battledore) -chalk from cheese. (他们一无所知。)

How do you know an Englishman from an American? ' By the way he speaks English. (英国人和美国人的区别, 听他们说英语就可知道。)

I can tell an Italian from a Frenchman. (我能辨别意大利人和法国人。)

I can tell a crocodile from an alligator (the difference between them). (我能分别普通的鳄鱼和美洲产的鳄鱼。)

#### 【习题 41】

1. It is hard to know flatterers from friends, for as a wolf resembles a dog, so a flatterer, a friend.

2. Much as sheep look alike, there is a difference between them, and John knows one from another. (Much as" alike = Though sheep look much alike)

(42) had better + 原形不定词, would rather + 原形不定词

(a) You had better go at once.

你最好马上去。

(b) I would rather go at once.

我世肯马上去。

### 【解说】

照字面看来，/had”，/would”虽则是过去形，但在此等惯用句中，决无过去的意思，而只是一种假设语气的说法罢了。（a）例含有劝告的意思，可译为/最好是”，（b）例含有选择的意思，可译为/宁肯”，二者不可混同。这个/had better”的说法，有时可说成/had best”，那就更接近中文的说法了，不过不大通用，例如 I'd best go and settle the score. (Thackeray)（我最好去把债务弄清楚）。I had best start for home.（我最好就动身回家去）。这个/had better”有时还可以用过去形，如 You had better do it. 的过去形便是 You had better have done it.（你最好那样做了就好了）。

有人把/had better”及/would rather”两种说法混为一谈，而形成/would better”及/had rather”的说法，这是不妥的，最好避免不用。例如 I had rather be a doorkeeper in the house of lord than dwell in the tents of wickedness.（我与其住在罪孽的天幕中，宁肯做神殿的司阁）。

我们须注意/had better”是用于劝解或间接命令的，所以有时可能含有/have a duty to”或/have an obligation to”的意思，自然是带有一种命令的口气，说 You had better go away. 含义为 You should do what you are told or else you will suffer rather serious consequences.（你应该照吩咐去做，不然的话，就要遭受严重的后果）。因此对长辈是不宜用/had better”的，对不大熟悉的人须存几分客气也不宜用，与其说 You'd better take a bus. 不如说 I suggest you take a bus. 与其说 You had better wear a blue necktie with that suit. 不如说 It might be better to wear a blue necktie with that suit. 或 It would be better for you to wear”

### 【类例】

When he proposed to fly across the Atlantic, I said, /You had better not try! ” (Kirkpatrick)（当他打算要飞越大西洋时，我劝说：/你最好不要去尝试。”）

We had better not remain here any longer.（我们最好不要在此久留。）

I would rather die than live in dishonour. = I would sooner die than live in dishonour. = I would (just) as soon die as live in dishonour. (与其屈辱而生, 宁愿光荣而死。)

I would rather be a poor man in a garret with plenty of books than a king who did not love reading. (我与其做一个不爱读书的国王, 宁肯做一个住在屋顶楼上而拥有许多书的穷人。)

He said he would rather have lost both his legs than have seen dishonour brought upon the English nation. (他说与其见到英国民族蒙受耻辱, 宁肯自己失去双腿。)

You had better not work after you have tired yourself. (疲劳之后最好不要用功。)

You had better go back' the risk is great. (Thomas Hardy) (你最好回去, 危险太大。)

I really don't think I'd better. (J. D. Salinger) (我想我最好不要去。)

You had better make hotel reservations before you leave here. (你离开此地以前, 最好先把旅馆的房间订好。)

#### 【习题 42】

1. If you can neither receive nor bestow benefit, you had better leave that company at once.

2. I do not flatter you, young people, when I say I would rather talk to you than to the grown-up people.

(43) make...of

I will make a scientist of my son.

我要使儿子成为一个每学家。

#### 【解说】

英文“make” of”的形式，原意为“以之为材料而做成”，“使之成为”。这个“of”有“from”之意，不改变原料本质的用“of”，如 **The desk is made of wood.**（桌子是木头做的），桌子做成之后还看得出木头的本质。改变原料本质的用“from”，如 **Paper is made from rags.**（纸是破布做的），做成了纸之后，就看不见破布的影子了。同样的情形，葡萄可以造酒，但酒中看不见葡萄，我们说 **We make grapes into wine.** 或者说 **Wine is made from grapes.** 又如 **Aspirin is made from coaltar.**

英文用介词“from”，“of”，“out of”表示原料，用“into”表示制成品。造句的方式为 **to make material into object** 或 **to make object from**（或 **of** 或 **out of**）**material.** 这个“out of”中的“out”一字，常可略去不用，尤其是紧接在“made”一字后时为然，如 **Many things are made (out) of paper.** 成语有 **to make a mountain of a molehill**（小题大做；言过其实）；**to make ducks and drakes of one's money**（挥霍无度；浪费金钱）；**to make fun of a person**（开玩笑，戏弄）。

### 【类例】

**She often makes a hero of her husband.**（她常把她丈夫当作英雄，推崇备至。）

**Don't make a fool of him.**（不要愚弄他。）

**He made an ass (a fool, a beast) of himself.**（他做着愚相。）

**I don't want to make a cat's paw of him.**（我不想拿他当傀儡。）

**She has made a conquest of a man.**（她使他成为她在爱情上的被征服者。）

**A well-to-do farmer in China cannot make up his mind to make a farmer of his son, unless he deems his son incapable of undertaking any other profession.**（一个中国富裕的农夫不能够决心让他的儿子成为农夫，除非他认为他儿子不能够干其他的职业。）

Nothing more makes a coward of a man than to be in the wrong. (没有别的事情比做错事更能使人胆怯的。)

A sea life may be the very thing required to make a strong man of him. (海上生活也许是使他成为一个强壮的人所必要的事。)

### 【习题 43】

1. The artist can within certain limits make what he likes of his life. In other callings, in medicine for instance or the law, you are free to choose whether you will adopt them or not, but having chosen, you are free no longer. (Maugham)

2. Men who have done great things, made stepping stones of their failure.

(44) make one's way

He'll have no difficulty in making his way in the world.

他要出人头地是没有什么困难的。

### 【解说】

英文的“make one's way”有两个意思：①进行 (proceed)，例如 make one's way on foot (步行前进)，make one's way home (回家)。It rapidly made its way into universal favour. (那个很快地就获得了世人的爱好。) ②在事业上的进展 (make progress in one's career)，如 He has yet his way to make in the world. (他还没有成就。) 《综合英汉大辞典》上解释较详：to make one's way (through difficulties' homeward' in life' in one's profession) (排除困难而) 进，(向家) 行，(生涯) 昌盛，(职业) 成就。由此看来，我们可以知道，一个人在社会上的成功，并不是轻易得来的，而是由于“努力上进”，“力争上游”才获致的。上面说的 through difficulties 是历尽艰苦才得到的，正所谓“吃得苦中苦，方为人上人”。

由这个成语而产生出许多类似的表现法，用其他种种动词和“way”（进路）组合起来，差不多都有这种排除万难而得以前进的意思，如 **The chick breaks its way out into the world.**（鸡雏啄破蛋壳出来进入世间。）**cleave one's way through many difficulties to prosperity**（排除万难，打开出路，以臻繁荣。）**conquer one's way to the higher happiness**（克服挡在路上的苦难，而达到更大的幸福。）**corkscrew one's way through a crowd**（在群众的夹缝中走。）又如 **cut one's way** 意为排除障碍始得前进，即所谓筚路蓝缕，例如 **Great men are those who cut their way to success through difficulties.**（伟人都是历尽艰苦才达到成功的。）他如 **feel one's way up the stairs**（摸上楼梯。）**fight one's way out of the seething swaying mob**（从沸腾浮动着的群众中打出一条出路来。）**fight one's way in life (in the world)**（人生奋斗。）**A young man must find his own way in the world without props and safeguards.**（年轻人必须在没有支持和保护之下自己来打天下。）**I had some difficulty in finding my way back.**（我很费了劲才找到路回家。）**He forced his way from a humble origin to an exalted position.**（他从微贱中奋斗而达到高位。）又可说 **forge one's own way to success**（打开成功之路。）**labor one's way with great difficulty**（艰苦奋斗。）**With no further formal education, he had worked his way to a major position.**（他没有受过更多的正式教育，也搞到一个重要的位置了。）**He worked his way through college as a waiter.**（他半工半读，一面当侍者，一面读完大学。）

### 【类例】

**The young man will make his way, for he is industrious and economical.**（那青年既勤快又节俭是会成功的。）

**He (Disraeli) is determined to make his way. (Edinburgh Review)**（他是决心要成功的。）

**Snails are making their way as an article of food.**（蜗牛渐渐变成食品了。）

**The word is a provincialism, but has made its way into standard speech.**（这字原为方言，次第变成标准语了。）

The carp always makes its way up a waterfall. (鲤鱼跳龙门。)

Be active! That's the way to make you way [up] in the world. (放活跃些! 那就是你出人头地的办法。)

#### 【习题 44】

1. So long as you are not a useful, faithful, and truthful man, you can scarcely hope to make your way in the world.

2. He has made his way to presidency step by step.

3. There is scarcely a great truth but has had to fight its way to public recognition in the face of opposition.

(45) rob...of

He robbed me of my watch.

他抢夺了我的表。

#### 【解说】

“/他动词 + 宾语(人) + of + 宾语(物)”的形式,是英文的特殊语法,和中文大不相同的。英文凡具有“夺取”意义的动词,就要用这种表现法。被夺取的目标分明是“物”,英文偏要说“人”,而在被夺取的“物”之前,加上一个“of”的介词,把它造成一个片语,接在“人”的后面。这个“of”的意思是表“分离”的。

英文在 rob, deprive, deliver, divest, break, relieve, clear, inform, bereave, cure, strip, rid 等有夺取,除去,减轻,通知等意的动词上,都可以采用这一种表现法。动词 steal (窃) 虽与 rob (盗) 相类,但用法完全不同,和它同用的介词不是“of”而是“from”,即“steal from”,如 A thief stole some cigarettes from that shop. (有贼从那店里偷去一些香烟。) 如果是具有“供给”之意的动词,就要用“with”来代替“of”,如说 supply him with money (供给他钱), fill the glass with water (倒水入杯), furnish one with

information (给他消息), favour one with an interview (赐予接见), trust one with a secret (告以秘密) 等。

### 【类例】

He does not care whom he deprives of enjoyment, so that he can obtain it. (他只求自己获得享受, 不管是从谁夺取得来。)

I don't want to rob him of his inalienable rights. (我不想夺取他做人固有的权利。) 注: Life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness have been called the inalienable rights of man. (生命, 自由与追求幸福, 被称为人类不可剥夺的权利。)

He cleared the sea of those robbers. (他肃清了海盗。)

I have learned enough to cure me of my old fancies. (Stevenson) (我学到足以治好我从前好幻想的毛病。)

I shall never be able entirely to divest myself of this feeling. (我将永远无法完全放弃这些感觉的。)

He could not rid himself of the painful memories. (他忘不了过去那种痛苦的回忆。)

Your coming relieves me of the bother of writing a long letter. (你来了省得我去麻烦写一封长信。)

He was determined to break himself of the bad habit of lying in bed late of a morning. (他决心革除睡早觉的恶习。)

Thieves stripped the house of everything valuable. (贼偷去了家中一切贵重的东西。)

Death bereft (or bereaved) him of his son. (他有失明之痛。)

Four years of war drained the country of men and resources. (四年的战争使国家耗尽壮丁和资源。)

### 【习题 45】

1. He informed me of the news so that I got prepared in time.



2. A foolish notion that it is more dignified to be seen in a carriage than on horseback, had deprived all French noblemen of the use of the saddle.

3. It was fortunate for me that I suddenly achieved popularity as a dramatist and so was relieved of the necessity of writing a novel once a year to earn my living. (Maugham)

(46) seize...by the...

He seized me by the arm.

他抓了我的胳膊。

### 【解说】

这是纯粹的英文表现法，和中文不同，其形式为“他动词 + 宾语 + 介词 + **the** + 名词”。中国话一定用属格，而英文则先把整个的对象说出来，然后再说到那对象身体的局部。这是大处着眼，小处着手的办法。身体的局部接受动作时，不用代名词的属格“one's”，而采用“介词 + **the** + 名词”的形式。这一类的动词有 **seize, catch, take, strike, drag, pat, hit, hold, pull, stare, look** 等，而介词则有 **by, on, in, over, across, with** 等。“他抓了我的胳膊”这句话，依照中文的说法，译成 **He seized my arm.** 也不为错，不过英语的气味不浓，和说 **He seized me by the arm.** 二者间的 **nuance**（细微差异），是很难言传，而只可意会的。但是如“不要让别人牵着你的鼻子走”一句话，则必须译成 **Don't let them lead you by the nose.** 若说 **Don't let them lead your nose.** 就不成话了。

### 【类例】

He kissed his horse on the forehead.（他在额上吻了他的马一下。）

He struck me on the head.（他打了我的头。）

I caught him by the right hand.（我握住他的右手。）

He pulled me by the sleeve. (他拉住我的衣袖。)

I gave him a blow on the head. (当头一棒。)

He looked me in the face. (他凝视着我。)

He wounded me in the arm. (他扭我的胳膊。)

He slapped me on the shoulder. (他拍我的肩。)

Poverty stared him in the face. (赤贫迫在眼前。)

He presumed in the gentlest manner to take her by her hand. (C. Lamb) (他敢于用最温柔的态度执了她的手。) 注：古文可以说 by her hand. 但现代英文则必须说 by the hand.

#### 【习题 46】

1. Never hold anybody by the hand in order to be heard out.

2. If that woman crosses my threshold, I shall strike her across the face.

3. The doctor angrily seized him by the collar, and asked him what he meant by such bad behaviour.

(47) see if..., see that...

(a) He came out to see if it had begun to rain.

他出来看是不是已经下雨了。

(b) He came out to see that the boy did not get hurt.

他出来注意防止小孩受伤。

#### 【解说】

(a) 例的“see if”中的“if”，是作“whether”解的，意为“是不是”。在“see”后不一定要接“if”，还可接用其他各种各样的疑问词。至

于 (b) 例的/see that”中的/see”，则有/take care”之意。这个/see that”，实为/see to it that”的省略说法。/see to it” = look well to it; attend; consider; take care (加意及之，留神，注意，当心)。这种句中的/that”有时也可省掉不说。基本句型为/see that something is done” (当心照料，监督) 转为/负责担任；保证”之意。

**【类例】**

See if he can do it. (看看他是不是能做这个。)

Go and see if there is anything to eat. (去看看有什么吃的东西没有。)

Go and see what is the matter. (去看看发生了什么事。)

Let's see how the land lies. (让我们先来窥探一下形势。)

See how the wind blows. (观看形势；默察大势；观望。)

I will see that they do it. (我当负责要他们做。)

I will see that he pays you. (或 see that you are paid 或 see you paid) (我必令他还钱给你；我保证他一定还你。)

See to it that this does not occur again. (保证不再发生同样的事。)

See to it that you do not offend him. (当心不要冒犯他。)

I will see to it that everything is ready for your departure. (我会注意准备好一切让你起程。)

See to it that the boys learn the lesson well. (请留意使学生熟习功课。)

See to it that the work is done before dark. (你注意天黑前要做好。)

I will see [that] you avenged. (必定使你可以报仇。)

I will see [that] you hanged first. (那里有人肯做这样的事?)

**【习题 47】**

1. Many men do not allow their principles to take root, but pull them up every now and then, as children do flowers they have planted, to see if they are growing.

2. If a captain loves his ship truly, he must not neglect to attend to the smallest defect in her. He must report it and see that it is made good.

3. /I've been here when there's been cholera and I haven't turned a hair. The great thing is not to eat anything uncooked, no raw fruit or salads, or anything like that, and see that your drinking water is boiled." (Maugham)

#### (48) take...for granted

(a) We took it for granted that you knew the whole matter.

我们认为那件事情你当然是完全知道的。

(b) She began to take her husband for granted until he threatened to leave her.

她开始有点看不起她丈夫的样子，直到她丈夫声称要离家出走，她才改变态度。

#### 【解说】

英文成语“take for granted”的形式，等于“assume as true”，可译作“认为当然”，“假定是实”，即并无明确的证据，也信以为真的意思。普通的用例为“take it for granted”，其中的“it”为形式上的宾语，代表后面的“that-Clause”；如果不用“it”而用名词时，则“that-Clause”可以不要。这个“granted”，分明是一个分词，在此权充介词“for”的宾语，如果把它看做前面省去了“being”一字也就好解释了。在“take”后面的宾语，一向都只限于“it”或事物的名词，但新近美国《韦氏大辞典》上，却增加了一个新的用法，即在“take”后面接用人的宾语，如（b）例所示，便是那辞典上举出的例句。对这个新义

的解释，该辞典作/to pay inadequate attention to or value too lightly (as a possession, right or privilege)”，意即对地位、权利或特权，不加重视，或不十分注意，自然是带有瞧不起的神气。

### 【类例】

I take it for granted that you will be interested in it, too.  
(我认为你当然对此也会感兴趣的。)

I just took it for granted that we will close on May Day.  
(我认为劳动节商店当然是关门的。)

I took it for granted that he would come. (我以为他一定会来的。)

He takes nothing for granted. (他对任何事物都不视为当然。)

I took his qualifications for granted. (我姑认为他的资历是真实可靠的。)

They themselves take their love for granted, and do not care what strangers may think about it. (他们本人认为他们的相爱是理所当然的，别人怎样想法，他们毫不介意。)

I took for granted the innumerable little jobs she did for me. (Siegfried Sassoon) (我把她为我做的那些无数的小事视为当然。)

Physical and intellectual miracles we take for granted.  
(M. B. Johnstone) (我们把心身的奇迹认为是当然的。)

Cf. From your manner I am to take it as true. (Hardy)  
(从你的态度看来，我得把那个看做真的了。)

### 【习题 48】

1. Of the rural life of England he knew nothing; and he took it for granted that everybody who lived in the country was either stupid or miserable.

2. I take the goodness of the good for granted and I am amused when I discover their defects or their vices; I am touched when I see the goodness of the wicked and I am willing enough to shrug a tolerant shoulder at their wickedness. (Maugham)

3. I went there as a kid and grew up with the place. They took me for granted. (Elizabeth Wilson)

(49) used to + 原形不定词, be used to + 动名词

(a) He used to do such a thing.

他以前常做这样的事。

(b) He is used to doing such a thing.

他惯于做这样的事。

### 【解说】

在(a)例中说的“used to do”，表示过去的习惯，即“以前常那样做”，这表示现在已不那样做了。在(b)例中的“be used to doing” = be accustomed to doing，是表示现在的惯常行为，其中的“be”，有时可说成“get”，比方我们新到一个地方，对于当地的情形陌生，人们就会说：You will soon get used to it. (过些时间你就会习惯的。) 又“他惯于登山。”就说 He is used to mountain-climbing. 这个“be used to”和前面的“used to”，含义大不相同，试比较下面两句：

(a) I am used to sitting up late at night.

(b) I used to sit up late at night.

(a) 句意为“我惯于迟睡。” (b) 句意为“我以前总是睡得很迟的。”

英文还有一个“would”字，也和“used to”一样，是表过去习惯的，但二者在用法上略有不同。表示不规则的习惯时用“would”，表示有规则的习惯则用“used to”。用“would”时多伴有“always”，“often”，“frequently”，“sometimes”，“for hours”等副词。比较下面四个句子，不难有所分辨。

(a) He climbs a mountain every Sunday.

(每个礼拜天他都要去爬山。)

(b) He will often climb a mountain on a Sunday.

(他常要在礼拜天去爬山。)

(c) He used to climb a mountain on a Sunday.

(他以前常要在礼拜天去爬山。)

(d) He would often climb a mountain when young.

(他年轻时常去爬山。)

这种“would”具有一种“回想的心情”，而“used to”只是表示“过去与现在的对比”而已。再看下例：

He would often sit for hours, book in hand. (他从前常要手里拿一本书，一坐就是好几个钟头。)

Sometimes the boys would play a trick on their teacher.  
(有时孩子们常要对老师开个玩笑。)

这都是回想着过去而说的，表示以前常要那样做，指过去的反复的动作或习惯。至于“used to”，就是拿现在和过去比较，例如：

He used to play tennis before his marriage.

(他在结婚以前常打网球。) 现在不打了。

一般是客观地说过去的事用“used to”，带有意志时则用“would”。用“would”比“used to”略带文气。第三人称用“will”也可表习惯的行为，如 He will often get up at midnight to jot down something in his notebook. (他常半夜起来在笔记本上记下一些事情)。

如用“would”则对所有的人称都可以。有时“would”和“used to”是可以混同的，如

When I was a boy, I would (或 used to) get up early.

(我小时候，总是起身很早的。)

英文的“used to”常和表现状态的动词同用，如：

There used to be a church here.

(以前这里有一个教堂。)

When I was a boy, I used to like chocolate. (but I don't like it any more). (在小孩子的时候，我爱吃巧克力糖。) 意即现在不再爱吃了。这个用法是不可以换用“would”的，因为说 When I was a boy, I would like chocolate 是不通的。I would like chocolate, 意为“我想吃巧克力糖”。如果不想强调现在与过去的对照，就用单纯的过去动词也同样可以达意，如 There was a church here. He played tennis before his marriage. 至于现在的情形如何，就不在话下了。

### 【类例】

People used to think that the sun went round the earth. (从前的人以为太阳是围绕着地球转动的。) 现在的人就不这样想了。

He usedn't to answer. (他总是不回答。)

I used to go fishing on Sundays when I lived in Taipei. (我住在台北时礼拜天常去钓鱼。)

I am used to the military life now. (我现在已惯于军队生活了。)

I'm sure it's because she is not used to the new typewriter yet. (那一定是因为她未用惯这架新的打字机。)

I got [ became ] used gradually to the vegetarian diet. (我逐渐习惯于素食了。)



The country inn was as pleasant as it used to be in the old times. (那间乡下客栈还是和从前一样舒服。)

That is how automobiles used to be made. (那就是汽车以前的制造法。)

The book used to belong to you? (Gissing) (这本书是你的吗?)

I used to remonstrate with Laura like a fussy old uncle but she'd only laugh. (Nigel Sligh) (我以前常要像一个讨厌的叔叔似的，老是给罗娜劝告，而她只是笑笑而已。)

There are some kinds of butterflies that used to be quite common, and now they are quite rare; I expect in a few years there will be none left at all. (Sweet) (某些种类的蝴蝶，以前很普通，现在却稀少了；我想再过几年就恐怕完全没有了。) 现在、过去、未来的比较。

Sometimes he used to tell us of his expeditions through the woods and fields round his home, and how he explored the solitary brooks and ponds; and then he would describe the curious animals and birds he saw. (Sweet) (以前他时时对我说关于他在他家周围的森林和原野中探险的事，以及他怎样找到一些寂静的溪流和池塘的情形，然后他老要描述他所见到的珍禽异兽。)

“/I often used to have a bit of fun with her, in the hold (= old) times!” Mr. Bailey spoke as if he had already had a leg and three-quarters in the grave, and this had happened twenty or thirty years ago. (Dickens) (/在很久很久以前，我常要跟她开开玩笑”，倍雷先生说，俨然他已经有一只脚和四分之三进入坟墓了似的，而这已经是二三十年前的事了。)

### 【习题 49】

1. /I care nothing for the world, ” he declared, /for the future, for what people will say, for any kind of established position, or even for literary fame, which in my early days I used to stay awake so many nights dreaming about.” (Lynd)

2. Of course he suggested seeing her home, which she wouldn't hear of at first' she said there was really no need, she was used to the journey alone and her parents<sup>1</sup> house was only a few minutes<sup>1</sup> walk from the station. (Hilton)

3. The air of our island was so genial and balmy that we could have slept quite well without any shelter; but we were so little used to sleeping in the open air, that we did not quite relish the idea of lying down without any covering over us. (R. M. Ballantyne)

## (50) be + 自动词的过去分词

Spring is come.

春满人间。

### 【解说】

在动词“be”之后接用自动词的过去分词，不可看做被动语态，而应视为一种完成式才对，因为那是指某自动词的动作在完成后的状态。我们现在所说的完成式（现在）只有“have done”一个形式，但在 OE（古英文）的时代是“have + 宾语 + 过去分词”，例如现在说 I have caught the fish. 古代说 I have the fish caught. 和现代表示使动或被动的形式一样（如被动说的 We have our enemy almost surrounded. 及 Did he have his hair cut yesterday? 及使动说的 I had my watch mended. 等）但用于“have + 宾语 + 过去分词”这个形式的动词主要是他动词，而自动词，尤其是表运动、变化、终止等的自动词，如“come”，“go”，“arrive”，“fall”，“arise”，“become”，“grow”，“change”，“die”，等字，就采用“be + 过去分词”的形式，和用“have”的形式，在意义上毫无分别。但这种自动词的“be + 过去分词”的形式，经由 Middle English（中世英语）到 Modern English（现代英语）而渐渐失势，为“have”的形式所侵蚀，所以我们今日说到 Perfect Tense（完成时态）就只知“have done”一个形式了。

但古代自动词的用法并没有绝迹，现在表示运动和变化的少数自动词如/come”，/go”，/arrive”，/depart”，/fall”，/rise”，/set”，/grow”等，仍保留/be + 过去分词”的形式，在用法上与/have”的形式分庭抗礼，以/have”表完成的动作（action），/be”表完成的状态（state），例如：

He has gone.（他已经走了。）重点指动作的完成。

He is gone.（他已不在此了。）重点指动作的结果（现状）。

自动词的过去分词用于动词/be”后时，是表示那个自动词的动作完成了的状态，所以 He is gone. = He is no longer here. 说他已不在此，正是那/去”的动作完成后的状态。Spring is come. 其/来”的动作完成后的状态正是莺飞草长，杂花生树的春满人间的情形。The leaves are fallen. 是落叶满地的一片秋天的景象。The weeds are grown. 是杂草丛生的废园的样子。这些用在/be”后自动词的过去分词，最好把它当作形容词看待，以免发生被动的错误观念，而事实上许多过去分词的自动词辞典上也标明是形容词，如/agreed”便是其中的一个字，例：We were agreed on that point.（我们在那一点上意见一致。）I am agreed to accept the offer.（我同意接受那个提议。）如果用在名词前面，更是不含被动意味的形容词了，在此情形如系他动词则有被动意味。比较：a faded flower（已经谢了的花），是自动词过去分词变来的形容词，不含被动意味，只表/已经”之意。a broken promise（被破坏了的诺言），是他动词过去分词变来的形容词，故含有被动意味在内。

### 【类例】

We are prepared for the worst.（准备最坏的情形来临。）

He was married.（他结婚了。）

The train was stopped.（火车停了。）

The day for payment is come.（发薪的日子来了。）

All hope is gone.（一切的希望都完了。）

I was determined to go.（我决心去。）

The sun is risen. (= The sun has risen and is now in the sky.) (太阳出来了。) 太阳已经升起, 现在在天上看见太阳。

The sun is set. (太阳落山了。)

My money is gone. (我的钱花完了。)

She found that her strength was gone. (她发觉她的气力都没有了。)

He is dressed elegantly. (他衣着华丽。)

Here's Mr. Land come all the way from Yorkshire. (这是从约克县远道而来的蓝先生。) 在“come”前省略了“who is”二字。

Arrived at the spot, the party lost no time in getting to work. (一到现场, 那一行人马上开始工作。) 句首略去“being”一字。

### 【习题 50】

1. All the guests are arrived and we'll have dinner served right now.

2. We are gathered here this morning to discuss without any prejudice the question of the day.

3. I'm almost finished with my work, but there are a few odds and ends left to be done.

## (51) 否定 + fail + 不定词

He cannot fail to rise early.

他一定要很早起身。

### 【解说】

英文的“cannot fail to do”和“cannot but do”同义, 可译作“一定”, “必须”, “不得不”等。这个表现法的基本字“fail”, 是由自动的“fail in an attempt” (失败, 未成) 变成他动的“fail to do something” (失败, 未成)。

g”（疏失，忘置，不济，不能，难能），其反对字的/succeed”则只能作自动，不能作他动，即只能说/succeed in doing”，不能说/succeed to do”。以/fail”为句中主动词后接不定词时，意即/cannot do”。至于在/fail to do”之意上再加否定时，即成/not fail to do” = be sure to do (certainly)。【类例】I shall not fail to (= certainly) do so.（我必照办。）

He never fails to (= is sure to) accomplish his purpose.  
（必达目的。）

Never fail to (= be sure to) come to me.（务必相助。）

Don't fail to let me know.（务请相告。）

You will never fail to be moved by the beauty of the sight.  
（你一定会被那美丽的景象所感动的。）

I cannot fail to save enough money to buy a new watch.  
（我一定要储蓄足够的钱，好买一只新表。）

### 【习题 51】

1. Nobody can fail to see that they have reached a crisis in their national development.

2. If we love our fellow creatures, as we ought to do, we cannot fail to be courteous to them.

## （52）动词 + 原形不定词

Go bring me my hat.

去把我的帽子拿来。

### 【解说】

依照英文的习惯，两个动词不能连用，必得用/and”连接起来，或是把第二个动词改为不定词，即是说/go and bring”或/go to bring”两种形式。但我们现在采用的例句，既不用/and”也不用不定词，

把两个动词连用在一起，似乎是不合惯用语法，其实这只是“go to bring”的省略，把后接的不定词的“to”略去，使它成为原形不定词（bare infinitive 或称 zero infinitive）。在表运动的动词如“come”，“go”之类时，常要将其后的不定词的“to”略去。现在的人以为这是美国人的用法，其实在中世英文时代老早就有了，不过到 1890 年以后，英国就不用了，仅在方言中还存在罢了。Jespersen 说，“This is pretty frequent in recent American books.”（这在美国书中是很常见的。）会话中固不待言，文学作品中亦频频出现。其实这也不是美国人复古，而是十九世纪爱尔兰的大批移民到来以后，受到爱尔兰语影响的结果。在现代爱尔兰的语文中，还不失为一种惯用的语法，如 “Go call them here again. (W. B. Yeats) I’ll go tell Jack Smith’s” (Lady Gregory) 现在美国话中这种用法极多，甚至把“go get”（获得，弄到手）的动词，转为名词的“go-getter”（活动家），如 “The thing to do then, as a live bunch of go-getters, is to capitalize Culture. (S. Lewis)”（作为一个活泼的活动家随后要做的事，就是把“文化”也资本化起来。

### 【类例】

Let’s go talk to the other fellows. (John Steinbeck)（我们到别的人们的地方去谈谈吧。）

Won’t you go take a look at him? (id)（你不去看他一眼吗？）

I’d better go fetch him before all the fish die of age. (Puss’n Pooch)（我最好去找他来，怕这些鱼因年老而死光。）

I’d better go telephone Dilly first. (电影 Love Letters)（我最好先去打个电话给狄莉。）

She’s better come get you, anyway. (H. Hamilton)（总而言之，她最好来带你去。）

Better come join us. (S. Lewis)（你跟我们一起去吧。）

Run get the ball for me, Jamie. (B. Tarkington)（詹米，你跑去替我把球拾来吧。）

I like say something if you got a minute. (id) (如果你得空,我想和你说几句话。)

He offered to help carry her basket. (他说要替她提篮子。)

I have heard say he is a miser. (我听说他是一个守财奴。)

Don't leave go until I tell you. (我不说你就不要放手。)

I hear say that there will be an election soon. (Zandvoort) (我听说不久要举行选举。)

I hear tell there's a new arrival six days old. (我听说有一个出生六日的婴孩。)

Let it go hang! (让它去吧。)

### 【习题 52】

1. Go look up the tree and see if there is any ripe fruit on it. (Haggard)

2. If you like not my writing, go read something else. (Burton)

(53) leave + much (nothing) + to be desired

The book leaves much to be desired.

这本书写得极不完善。

### 【解说】

英文说的“leave much to be desired” = be very imperfect, 意为“极不完善”, “缺点很多”。而“leave nothing to be desired” = be perfect, 意为“完善”, “毫无遗憾”, “没有缺点”。

### 【类例】

Your behaviour leaves much to be desired. (你的行为尚须改进。)

It leaves nothing to be desired. (那毫无缺憾。)

The telephone service at Singapore leaves nothing to be desired. (新加坡的电话服务无复遗憾。)

The system of water supply in the city leaves much to be desired. (本市的自来水供应制度极不完善。)

The system of internal communication in England almost leaves nothing to be desired. (英国的国内交通制度完善得很。)

This steamer leaves nothing to be desired so far as comfort and luxury are concerned. (在舒服和豪华方面这轮船可谓尽善尽美了。)

### 【习题 53】

1. When this disagreeable difference has been removed, the friendly relations between the two Republics, cordial even when one was yet an Empire, will leave nothing to be desired. (Wu Ting Fang)

2. If you will balance it on your finger you will find that it is perfect weight, and as to the finish it leaves nothing to be desired. (Fred M. White)

### (54) be + 不定词

He is to arrive at seven in the morning.

他预定早晨七时抵参。

### 【解说】

这个“be + 不定词”是不定词的叙述用法，好像形容词一样。英文的这种表现法，有许多不同的含义，如上例便是表“预定”的，除此基



本含义之外，它还可以表/可能”，表/义务”，表/假设”，表/目的”，表/结果”，表/运命”等。但注意不要与名词用法相混，如 **To see is to believe.**（百闻不如一见。）这句中的动词后虽然也是接的不定词（to believe），但它是名词补语，和我们现在讨论的叙述用法的形容词补语完全不同。

### 【类例】

**We are to meet him at the airport.**（我们要到飞机场去接他。）（预定）

**The meeting is to be held on Sunday.**（定了礼拜天开会。）（预定）

**We are to go to town this afternoon.**（我们打算今天下午进城去。）（预定）

**In the sky not a cloud was to be seen.**（青天无片云。）（可能）

**Every misfortune is to be subdued by patience.**（一切不幸都可能由忍耐克服。）（可能）

**Her feelings as she read the letter were scarcely to be defined.**（她看信时的心情不可名状。）（可能）

**You are to stay here till I come back.**（你得待在此地等我回来。）（命令）

**You are always to knock before you enter my room.**（在进入我的房间前你要敲门。）（命令）

**It was understood that everybody was to pay his own expenses.**（听说各人付各人的钱。）（义务）

**Let me know everything that I am to know without delay.**（我需要知道的事赶快都告诉我吧。）（义务）

**She asked him what she was to do.**（她问他看她要做什么。）（义务）

If he were to come, say that I am absent. (他来了, 只说我不在家。)(假设)

Certain skills must be learned if one is to use English effectively. (如果想要有效地使用英语, 某些技巧是必须学会的。)(假设)

If it is to be done at all, do it well. (如果一定要做的话, 就好好地做吧。)(假设)

This house is to be let or sold. (这房子要出租或出售。)(目的)

Not an instant is to be lost. (一秒钟也不要浪费。)(目的)

And the augurs were as clever as are politicians, who also must practise divination, if ever they are to do anything worth the name. (D. H. Lawrence) (现代的政治家也和古代的占兆家一样, 不得不实行占兆, 如果他们想要做点名副其实的事情的话, 所以古代的占兆家也和现代的政治家一样聪明。)(目的)

He was to blame for not locking the door. (没有锁门是他的过错。)(结果)

Am I to understand that you have engaged yourself to this young gentleman? (Shaw) (你是说你已经和这个青年男士订了婚吗?)(结果)

The Prince of Wales has been touring the worldwide dominions of which, some day, he is to be the crown head. (H. G. Wells) (将来命定要做英国领土之王的皇太子, 去周游了遍及全世界的领土回来了。)(运命)

The worst is still to come. (还有最坏的要来。)(运命)

### 【习题 54】

1. If you are to understand this strange, rather sad story, you must have an impression at least of the background' the smashed dreary city of Vienna divided up in zones among the four Powers. (G. Greene)

2. The President of the University is to give a speech at the convivial meeting.

3. /I am all astonishment. How long has she been such a favourite? ' and pray, when am I to wish you joy? ' (Jane Austen)

(55) have + 不定词 + 宾语, have + 宾语 + 不定词

(a) I have to spend much money.

我非花许多钱不可。

(b) I have much money to spend.

我有许多钱可花。

### 【解说】

英文的“have to do”和“have” to do”两种形式,在意味上不一定有区别,大都是同义的,如 I have to write a composition. 和 I have a composition to write. 两句都是作“我非做一篇作文不可。”解,意即 I must write a composition. 但 COD (《简明牛津字典》)的编者特别举出意义不同的例句来证明二者是可能有不同解释的:

(a) I had to do my work.

(b) I had my work to do.

(a) 句中的“had to”注明为“be obliged” (不得不, 必须) 之意。

(b) 句中的“had to”注明为“be burdened with” (使负担) 之意。

美国的 Fries 在他著的 American English Grammar 一书中 (169 页), 也举例加以分别:

Speeches may be broadly divided into two kinds. There is the speech a man makes which he has something to say, and the speech he endeavours to make when he has to say something. (演说可大别为两类。一类是一个人有话想说的时候而去发表的演说, 另一类是他并没有打算说话, 而临时被辱演说, 只好努力去找些话来说以应付过去。)

他这说法是不错的, 我还可以举出日常的用例:

(a) I have something to tell you. (我有话跟你说。)

(b) I have to tell you something. (我必须告诉你一件事。)

可知“have + 宾语”的作/有”解, “have + 不定词”的作/必须”解, 但一般的用法二者的分别并不太明显 (not always very well marked)。

### 【类例】

I have three miles to walk. (有三里路要走。) 意为非走不可, 无车代步。不能说 I have to walk three miles. 因为并非有走三里路的必要, 而是因为路程长达三里的意思。

Whom have I to complain of but myself? (Milton) (我除了自己以外, 还能向谁抱怨呢?)

I have only to blame myself. = I have only myself to blame. (我只怪自己。)

As a matter of fact, he's having to sell his house. (事实上, 他现在非把房子卖掉不可。)

He has several letters to write. (他有几封信要写。)

He has nothing to eat. (他没有东西吃。)

I have a knife to sharpen my pencil with. (我有削铅笔的小刀。)

The weather has to be good; otherwise, we'll postpone it.  
(一定要好天气, 否则, 我们就延期。)

Do I have to go to bed now, mother? (妈, 我就要去睡觉吗?)

Wake them all up, if you have to, but find that paper!  
(没有办法的时候, 只好把他们全部叫醒, 那文件无论如何要找出来!)

My doctor says I haven't to (= mustn't) eat meat, but I don't have to (= needn't) take his advice if I don't want to.  
(医生说我不可以吃肉, 不过如果我不想听他的话, 我就不一定要服从他。) don't have to 或说 haven't got to 也是一样。

He has to get through work before eight. (八点钟以前他必须把工作做完。)

Everything had to have his approval. (一切都得由他批准。)

You don't have to decide this matter at once. (你不用马上决定。)

### 【习题 55】

1. Some authors write because they have to tell a story rather than they have a story to tell. (Anthony Trollope)

2. I played away a month on account of illness, so I had to work hard to make up for lost time.

3. She has never expressed an opinion, and the inference was that she had no opinion to express.

4. We have some miles to drive, even from the small station.

(56) prevent + 宾语 + from + 动名词

Illness prevented him from going there.

他因为生病未能去那里。

### 【解说】

英文说的/“prevent a person from doing something”，意即/“hinder him so that he cannot do it”，可译作/“阻止去做”或/“使不能做”，是指妨碍一个人去做什么事说的。这个/“from”是表示/“分离”的。动词/“prevent”有时改用/“hinder”，/“deter”，/“keep”，/“stop”等字也是一样，如用/“restrain”则为/“抑制”，若用/“prohibit”则为/“禁止”，用法相同，都是后接/“from”加动名词或名词的，不过如用与/“prohibit”同义的/“forbid”时，用法就不同了。在动词/“forbid”后不能接介词/“from”，而要接不定词，才符合英文的惯用法。如/“他父亲禁止他抽烟”一句话，译成英文时，用/“prohibit”则说 His father prohibited him from smoking. 用/“forbid”则说 His father forbade him to smoke. 这两个动词意义虽同，用法上也略有分别：/“forbid”指直接或私人下的命令，或定下办法来禁止，并希望他人遵循，而/“prohibit”则指当局制定正式规章，如政府的立法禁止之类，并有强迫执行之意，如 Smoking is prohibited in theatres.（戏院中奉令禁止吸烟。）Swimming in the reservoir is prohibited.（禁止在贮水池中游泳。）

### 【类例】

This is only to prevent him from going abroad.（这只有妨碍他出洋的。）

He could not keep from the use of tobacco.（他未能停止吸烟。）

What prevented you from coming last night?（昨夜你为何没有来？）

Urgent business prevented me from calling on you.（因有要事，以致未能奉访。）

Bad weather prevented us from starting. = We could not start because of bad weather.（因为天气不好，所以没有能够动身。）

We must prevent the trouble (from) spreading. (我们必须阻止纷争扩大。)

Please refrain from smoking. (请免吸烟。)

Failure in the examination should not deter you from trying again. (这次考试落第, 不应妨碍你再试的勇气。)

Tired as I was' exhausted, in fact' I was prevented from sleeping by the pain in my knee. (Jack London) (我虽则疲劳, 实际上是筋疲力竭了, 我因膝痛未能入眠。)

If he would only keep from bad company, he might yet do well. (只要他不要再交结坏朋友, 他还是可以变好的。)

Her lips were set together almost as if she was pinching them tight to prevent words or sounds (from) coming out. (Gaskell) (她的嘴唇为着不让语言或声音出来, 几乎好像夹紧了一样完全闭着。)

A man can never be hindered from thinking whatever he chooses so long as he conceals what he thinks. (一个人只要他不把心里所想的事说出来, 他高兴怎样想就怎样想, 是谁也不能阻止他的。)

### 【习题 56】

1. Society does not in any age prevent a man from being what he can be (= become) .

2. If you apply the principles of efficiency to your work, nothing can stop you from achieving your ambitions.

(57) persuade + 宾语 + into + 动名词, dissuade + 宾语 + from + 动名词

(a) I persuaded him into doing so.

我劝说他才这样做的。

(b) I dissuaded him from doing so.

我劝阻他才不这样做的。

### 【解说】

某种他动词的后面接“into doing”时，便产生肯定的意思；接“from doing”时，便产生否定的意思。前者的“into”表他动词的“结果”，后者的“from”表“制止”，“抑制”。后面不用动名词而改用名词也可以，如 I dissuaded her from her folly.（我劝她少做蠢事。）他动词“persuade”是劝人去做一件事，而“dissuade”则是劝人不要去做一件事，所以劝告成功，便是去做了（into doing），或是不做了（from doing）。普通在“persuade”后又常接用不定词以代替动名词，如不说 I have persuaded him into doing it. 而改说 I have persuaded him to do it. 也是一样。但反对字的“dissuade”后便一定要接动名词，不可以接不定词，即是我们只能说 I should dissuade you from going. 不可以说 I should dissuade you to go. 不过这个“from”有时也可换用“out of”或“against”，如 I tried my best to reason him out of his fears, but it was all in vain.（我尽力劝他不要怕，但毫无效果。）They dissuade people against going to China.（他们劝人不要到中国去。）

### 【类例】

The father dissuaded his son from leaving school.（父亲劝他的儿子不要中途辍学。）

He was persuaded into doing it against his own wish.（他被劝服去做他违心的事。）

They dissuaded her from going on the stage.（他们劝她不要去演戏。）

The priests of the old religions used to persuade the people to do all hurt to the Christians.（古宗教的僧人们老是劝说人们对基督徒加以种种危害。）



I could not persuade her to ( = into) my way of thinking.  
(我不能说服他依从我的想法。)

I have convinced her that she needs a holiday, but cannot persuade her to take one. (我已使她相信她需要度假,但不能说服她真去。)

I knew I should study, but he persuaded me to go to the movies. (我知道应该读书,但他劝诱我去看电影。)

**【习题 57】**

1. I honour the man who can neither be bribed nor frightened into doing wrong.

2. Literature serves a human animal struggling to persuade the universal Sphinx to propose a more intelligible riddle.  
(Santayana)

## V. 不定词的造句

(58) 表目的、原因、结果等的不定词



(59) so as + 不定词, so...as + 不定词



(60) too... + 不定词, not too... + 不定词, too...  
not + 不定词



(61) only too... + 不定词, too ready + 不定词





## (62) 不定词的感叹用法

(63) not to speak of, not to say





## VI. 动名词的造句

(64) There is no + 动名词

(65) for + the + 动名词

(66) above + 动名词



(67) worth + 动名词



(68) far from + 动名词



(69) busy + 动名词

(70) on + 动名词, in + 动名词







## VII. 否定词的造句

(71) no more...than





(72) no less...than



(73) not so much...as, not so much as



(74) Nothing is more...than, Nothing is so...as



(75) cannot...too



(76) 否定 + without



(77) 否定 + but

(78) 否定 + until (till)



(79) not so...but, not such a...but



(80) “not A but B” , “B, (and) not A”

(81) 否定 + because



(82) not because...but because

(83) not that...but that

(84) 否定 + every (all, both, always, quite)







# VIII. what, who 的造句

(85) what he is, what he has

(86) what + 名词, what little + 名词

(87) what with...and what with, what by...and  
what by



(88) what is + 比较级

(89) A is to B what X is to Y

(90) who + 肯定, who + 否定

(91) 疑问词 + should...but



(92) Who knows but (that)



## IX. 条件及让步的造句

### (93) 省略 if 的句法

(a) Were he alive, what would he say?

他要是还在世的话，他会怎样说呀。

(b) Had I been there, I should have said so.

如果我在那里的话，我就会这样说的。

#### 【解说】

凡有“were”, “had”, “should”, “would”, “could”等〔助〕动词出现在主语前面，而又不是疑问句的时候，便一定是略去了“if”或“though”那种连词，而构成条件或让步的假设语气的造句了。上例“were he”即“If he were”之略；“Had I been”即“If I had been”之略。有时连加重语气的“do”，也可当作普通助动词而同样省略“if”来用。这类句子都可译为“如果”的话”或“即令””。

#### 【类例】

Were I rich, I would give you some money. = If I were rich, I would give you some money. (如果我富有的话，我就要给你一些钱的。)

Had you followed her advice, you would have succeeded. = If you had followed her advice, ” ” (如果你听了她的劝告，你就早已成功了。)

Did I see him, I would blame him for it. = If I did see him, ” ” (如果我当时看到了他，我就早已为那件事责备过他了。)

Should he read this book forever, he would not grow wise. = Though he should read this book forever, ” ” （即令他一直不停在读此书，他也不会变得明智的。）

Had I known it, I should have told it to you. （我要知道的话，我早告诉你了。）

They might live quite comfortably were it not for a quarrel with their nextdoor neighbour. （他们如果没有和邻居吵架的话，就会过得很舒服的。）

Had he planted the tree near the road, strangers would have stolen the fruit. （他当时要是把那树种在路边，路人早就盗取果实了。）

Should this vote go ( = If this vote should go) against the ministry, it could not carry on the government. （万一这次选举内阁失败的话，现政府就不能继续执政了。）

Many a murderer would have remained innocent had he not possessed ( = if he had not possessed) a knife or a gun. （如果当时没有刀枪在手，许多杀人犯都不至犯下大罪了。）

Could he have foreseen ( = Even if he could have foreseen) that he was to lose everything, his iron soul must not have been shaken. （如果他预知他会失去一切，他的铁一般的意志就决不会动摇了。）

Had he made an obvious mistake ( = Though he had made an obvious mistake) , he still refused to admit it. （他虽犯了明显的错误，还是不肯认错。）

以上各例都是假设语气过去及假设语气过去完成，所以动词的时态前后都是一致的，但假设语气现在及假设语气未来，前（条件句）后（归结句）句中动词的时态，就可以不一致了，例如 **If this be true** （条件句），**I am sorry for it.** （归结句）。前面的条件句为假设语气现在，后面的归结句为直陈语气现在，前后动词的时态是不一致的。又例如 **If it should be true, I shall be very happy.** 前面的条件句为假设语气未来，后面的归结句为直陈语气未来，动词时态也不一致。再看下面的类例：

Should the weather be wet ( = If the weather should be wet) , the meeting will not be held. (如天下雨会议停开。)

Should it rain tomorrow ( = If it should rain tomorrow) , I shall stay at home. (如果明天下雨, 我就呆在家里不出去。)

Should a table stand in the way and unexpectedly cause pain, the child, once recovered from the feeling of surprise, may beat it in anger. (如果有一张桌子妨碍了他, 意外地引起痛苦的话, 那孩子一旦从惊奇的感觉中恢复过来, 他也许就要愤怒地去打击那张桌子的。)

### 【习题 93】

1. Had his abilities been equal to his disposition, he would have made a very good king.

2. Many of the successful men, had they been able to choose for themselves, would have selected some quite different profession from that in which they have made their fortunes.

(94) If it were not for ( = Were it not for) + 名词, If it had not been for ( = Had it not been for) + 名词, But for + 名词, But that + 名词子句

(a) If it were not for his help, I should fail.

(b) If it had not been for his help, I should have failed.

(c) But for his help, I should fail (have failed) .

(d) But that he helps, I should fail.

如果不是他帮忙的话, 我就失败了。

### 【解说】

这些都是表条件的句子，四句具有同样的意思，但造句法各有不同。（a）句是假设过去，（b）句是假设过去完成，（c）句是上举二者的省略说法，可用作假设过去，也可用作假设过去完成，（d）句后面接名词子句，采用现在时态的动词，但它所表达的意思，却是假设过去。如果条件句是表假设过去完成时，后面主句中的动词当然也可改为过去时态了。（c）句的“but for”有“except because of”的意思。

### 【类例】

I would go by steamer but that I am a poor sailor.（假设过去）（我要不是因为晕船，我就坐船去了。）/“but that I am” = if I were not.

We should have arrived earlier but that we met with an accident.（ = if we had not met with an accident.）（假设过去完成）（我们如果不是途中遭遇事故，我们就早早到达了。）

But for（ = Had it not been for）you, I should have been ruined.（如果不是你帮忙，我早已毁了。）

But for（ = If it were not for）human selfishness, all might prosper.（如果不是人类的自私，一切就繁荣了。）

All would go well if it were not for losses and want of work.（如果不是损失和失业的话，一切就好了。）

But for his personal example of courage, the battle would have been lost.（如果不是他个人以身作则，勇猛向前的话，恐怕早战败了。）

I should have married her, but that it pleased her father to refuse me.（如果不是她父亲反对这门亲事的话，我早就和她结婚了。）

But that I saw it, I could not have believed it.（我要不是亲眼看见的话，我是不相信的。）

I should think it summer still, but that I see the lanes yellow-purpled with flowers of autumn.（Gissing）（如果不是我看见小路上饰满了秋天的黄花，我还以为仍是夏天呢。）

But for the thick trees, the bitter wind would blow the house to pieces. (如果不是那丛密的树木挡住, 强风就会把屋子吹成碎片的。)

But for an unexpected emergency, I could have paid him a visit. (如果不是意外发生的紧急事件, 我早已去拜访过他了。)

If it were not for the immense income derived from advertising newspapers could not be sold so cheaply. (如果不是在广告上有莫大的收入, 报纸就不能卖得这样便宜的。)

I do not know what I should do for relaxation, were it not for the innumerable detective stories. (如果没有那无数的侦探小说, 我真不晓得要怎样消遣。)

What a delightful parent my father would have been, had it not been for his strictness. (如果不是那样的严厉, 我父亲就是一个非常令人愉快的人了。)

#### 【习题 94】

1. Birds are good friends to man. If it were not for them the world would be overrun with insects.

2. Freedom might have come later in India and in a different form if it had not been for Gandhi.

3. People who have pleasant homes get indoor enjoyments that they would never think of but for the rain.

4. But that he came to my rescue then, I should certainly have died.

(95) 命令句 + and, 命令句 + or

(a) Work hard, and you will succeed.

努力工作, 那么, 你将成功。

(b) Work hard, or you will fail.

努力工作，否则，你将失败。

### 【解说】

英文的“命令句 + and”等于“if”；“命令句 + or”等于“if not”。这合句的前后句为顺意时，就用“and”作连词，如前后句为逆意时，就用“or”作连词。(a) 句既有“if”之意，用中文解说，便是“如果那样就会(成功)”，(b) 句既有“if not”之意，中文可说“如果不是那样，就会(失败)”。所以(a) 句改为复句时便是 If you work hard, you will succeed. 而(b) 句改为复句时，便是 If you do not work hard, you will fail. 又(a) 句中的“and”，有时可以略去。这种(a) 型的造句，后句中的动词如果用了过去时态的话，前句的命令就变成条件了，用例见下。

### 【类例】

Give him an inch, and ( = if you give ” ” ) he'll take an ell.  
1. (得寸进尺。)

Let a man be once a beggar, and he will be a beggar for life.  
(讨过饭的人永远想讨饭。)

Talk of the devil, and he'll appear. (说到曹操，曹操便到。)

Scratch a Russian, and you will find a Tartar. (文明人剥去一层皮，就变成野蛮人了。)

Sit back and rest, and you will feel much better. (坐着休息一下就好了。)

Keep away from those high tension wires, or you'll be electrocuted. (不要靠近那高压线，否则你会触电的。)

Write it down, or you'll forget it. (写下来以免忘记。)

Give him time, and he was generally equal to the demands of suburban customers. (如果给他以时间，他大概就可以答应郊区顾客的要求了。)



Hurry or interrupt him, and he showed himself anything but the man for a crisis. (Gissing) (时间太仓促或者对他说话加以阻挠的话,他就会显示出他不是一个能应付危机的人。)

Try and calm yourself, and your mind will be easy again.  
(镇静一点,你的心就可安定下来。)

Ask a European critic to name the two leading American poets, and in most cases he will reply, "Poe and Whitman".  
(要一个欧洲的批评家提名两个美国一流诗人的话,他多半会回答,爱伦坡与惠特曼。)

### 【习题 95】

1. Let a man learn as early as possible honestly to confess his ignorance, and he will be a gainer by it in the long run.

2. Take away from Shakespeare all his bits of natural description, all his casual allusions to the life and aspects of the country, and what a loss were there!

3. Don't go too close to him, or you will be found fault with.

### (96) 名词 + and

A few minutes, and they went away.

再过几分钟,他们就走了。

### 【解说】

这种“名词 + and” = 副词子句。因为它可改为由“if”, “when”, “after”等开头的副词子句,如上例的 A few minutes and = When a few minutes had passed. 上项讲过的“命令句 + and”,是和这个相类似的造句,因为把命令句中的动词略去,只留下名词时,就成为现在讲的这种句法了。

### 【类例】

One more effort, and we shall succeed. (= If we make one more effort, we shall succeed.) (再努力一下, 我们就会成功的。)

One foot nearer, and you are a deadman. (再靠近一步, 你就没有命了。)

Another month and I'll be ordering you off! (再过一个月, 我就会把你赶走的。)

A few minutes more, and he lay sound asleep. (再几分钟他就睡熟了。)

Another half hour, and all the doors would be locked. (再过半个钟头, 所有的门都要上锁了。)

A word, and he would lose his temper. (你再说一句他就会生气了。)

A little farther, and (= When they had gone a little farther) they turned off to the left in the direction of an olive orchard. (Wallace) (他们再走得远一点, 就要朝着橄榄园的方向左转去了。)

### 【习题 96】

1. A turn of the path and we were in a fairy land, whose existence no one a hundred yards off would have suspected.

2. The bullet lodged in my left shoulder' a little lower, and I should have been in Paradise long ago.

## (97) 动词 + 疑问词

Say what you will, I don't like it.

不管你怎么说, 那个我总是不喜欢的。

### 【解说】

这种/动词 + 疑问词” = 让步句。这是在假设语气中用作副词子句的句法。/动词 + 疑问词 + will”，常有/即令”那种让步的意思。上举例句就等于说 Whatever you may say 一样。句中的疑问词除/what”外，还可换用/when”，/where”等，而/will”也可换用/may”。

### 【类例】

Look where I will, I see nothing like him. (Bront) (= Wherever I may look”) (无论我到哪里去找，都找不到他那样的人。)

Do what he could, the king could neither soothe nor quell the nation as he wished. He was at his wit's end. (那国王无论怎样也不能如愿地把全国的老百姓加以抚慰或是镇压下来。他简直黔驴技穷了。)

Go where I will, I find a house full of peace and cordiality. (Cowper) (= Wherever I may go”) (无论走到哪里，我都会看到一个充满和平与温情的家庭。)

Come what will (或 may), I am prepared for it. (无论变得怎样我都准备好了。)

Let others say what they will, I always speak the truth. (让别人高兴怎么说就怎么说，我是总要说真话的。)

Later writers, say what you will of their genius, have rarely equalled the elaborate beauty of the ancients. (Thoreau) (后世的作家不管你对他们的天才怎样说，是很少有能够与古代作家那种精巧的美匹敌的。)

A man thinking or working is always alone, let him be where he will. (Ibid) (一个思想或工作的人无论到哪里都是孤独的。)

Come what might, they were alone in the world with no one to help them. (Dickens) (无论发生什么，他们在这世上是孤独的，谁也不来扶助。)

Here, wake at what hour I may, early or late, I lie amid gracious stillness. (Gissing) (在这里, 我无论在何时醒来, 或迟或早, 都是躺在可感谢的静寂之中的。)

【习题 97】

1. Die in what manner I may, I will die like the son of a brave man.

2. The youth who expects to get on in the world must make up his mind that, come what may, he will succeed.

3. Say what you may about it, it is your father that made you what you are.

(98) no matter + 间接疑问句, 疑问词-ever + may

(a) No matter how hard it may be, do your best.

(b) However hard it may be, do your best.

不管那是怎样的难, 你还是尽你的全力吧。

【解说】

(a) (b) 两例虽则表现法不同, 但都是表让步的, 意思相同的句子。据专家解释 (a) 句是句首省略了“it is”二字, 全句应作 It is no matter how hard it may be. 这两种句法中的“may”可以略去不说, 也可以换用别的助动词。又在“no matter”之后, 接用由“whether”引导的子句也是可以的。这个“how”也可以换用“what”, “who”, “which”, “when”, “where”等疑问词。至于 (b) 例中的“however”, 也可换用“whatever”, “whoever”, “whichever”, “whenever”, “wherever”等字, 不过在“-ever”后的“may”, 在现今口头英语中多采用直陈语气, 例如不说 Whoever it may be, 而改说 Whoever it is; 不说 Whichever you may choose, 而说 Whichever you choose 等等。因为这种让步句的比较古一点的说法, 和上项相似, 是用

动词开头的，不过只限于用“be”一个动词。在这种句法中，又可用“ever so”来代替疑问词。

### 【类例】

Whoever ( = No matter who) may come, he will be welcome. (无论谁来都欢迎。)

It's a very fine house, whomever ( = no matter whom) it belongs to. (这是一幢漂亮的房子，不管它是谁的。) 口语说 whoever.

Whatever ( = No matter what) you (may) do, do it well. (不管你做什么，都要好好的做。)

Whichever you (may) choose, you will be pleased. (随便你选哪一个，你都会满意的。)

I will go, whatever the weather may be ( = be the weather what it may) . (不管天气如何，我都会去的。)

Forgive her all her sins, be they ever so many. ( = however many they may be) . (完全赦免她的罪过吧，不管那有多少。)

Be it ever so humble ( = However humble it may be) , there's no place like home. (无论怎样卑陋，还是自己的家舒服。)

Whatever be our fate, let us not add guilt to our misfortunes. (Goldsmith) ( = whatever our fate may be) (不管我们的运命怎样，我们不要在我们的不幸上面再加罪过了。)

The idle, useless man, no matter to what extent his life may be prolonged, merely vegetates. (那懒惰无用的人，不管他寿命多长，也不过是饱食终日，虚度一生。)

There is but one safe way for every young person starting in life, whatever the business may be. (不问是干哪一行的，对于每个开始出来谋生的青年人，只有一条安全的路好走。)

### 【习题 98】

1. He taught all his young gentlemen to box like featherweights, no matter whether they weighed one hundred and five or two hundred and five pounds. (Hemingway)

2. However experienced you are, however competent, you never entirely conquer the difficulties of technique, and by the time you have learnt to write, it is very likely that you have nothing more to write about. (Maugham)

### (99) 动词 + as + 主语 + 助动词

Try as you may, you will not succeed.

无论你怎样去试，你也不会成功的。

#### 【解说】

这是以假设语气现在动词开始的让步句，与(97)项的表现法一样，也可以不用/as”而用疑问词的/how”，又与上项/no matter + 间接疑问句”的意思相同，故依照上项表现法改写为 No matter how you (may) try 时，意义仍然不变。从属于句中的助动词，常用/may”，/might”，/will”，/would”这种表现法格调很高，是表示感情的。

#### 【类例】

I couldn't read it, try as I would. (Maugham) (我无论怎样试，也读不懂。)

I followed him, but, search as we would, we could find no trace of” (Christie) (我追踪了他，但是，无论怎样搜寻，我们也找不到他的踪迹。)

#### 【习题 99】

1. Choose as I pleased, the roads always ended by turning away from it. (= my destination) (Stevenson)

2. Try as she would, she could never remember a word of what he had said. (A. Huxley)

(100) if any

(a) He despises honour, if any one does.

世上果真有人轻团名誉的话，他便是一个。

(b) He has little, if any, money.

他即令有钱，也是极少的。

### 【解说】

英文说的“if any”，“if ever”，意为“果真有的话”（if there is [are] any at all），是为加强语气而用的。如（a）例，意为“如果世界上果真那种人的话”，如（b）例则可译为“即令有，也”，它通常是伴有“little”，“few”，“seldom”等准否定字的。与此形式相近的还有“if anything”的说法，那意思是“if at all”或“if there is any difference”，可译为“倘有异同”，“如果稍有区别的话”。还有“if a day”的说法，意为“at least”。

### 【类例】

Correct errors, if any. (= if there are any) （改错。如果有什么错误的话就改正。）

There are very few trees, if any. （即令有树也是极少的。）

There is little, if any, hope. （希望甚微。）

It occurs seldom, if ever (= seldom or never). （即有其事，亦必不多。）

He is little, if at all, better than a beggar. (= little or no better than a beggar.) （殆与乞丐无异。）

There are few, if any, such men. (if there are any such men) (= few or no such men) (即有其人, 亦必不多。)

If anything, he is a little better today. (如果说有什么不同, 他比昨天略为好了一点。)

He is, if anything, a shade better today. (他今天略为好了一点。)

The carriages of the German State railways are, if anything, better than those of the large French companies. (德国国营铁路的火车, 倘有异同, 比法国大公司的火车要好一点。)

If anything, a Judas is worse than a Nero. (如果要加以区别的话, 犹大比尼禄更坏。)

True greatness has little, if anything, to do with rank or power. (真正的伟大是几与地位或权力无关的。)

### 【习题 100】

1. Though the French are little, if at all, inferior to the English either in boating or sailing, their taste for these pursuits are extremely limited.

2. If there is anything in the world that a young man should be more grateful for than another, it is the poverty which necessitates starting life under very great disadvantage.

(101) be it ever (或 never) so, let it be ever (或 never) so

Be it ever so humble, there's no place like home.

无论怎样简齐, 还是自己的家好。

### 【解说】



这个“/be it”中的“/be”，是古代假设语气的遗留，现在的英语便说“/let it be”。至于“/ever so”（其古形为“/never so”，并无否定之意），就是“/very”的意思。这两种说法都是表让步的。在“/let”后也可接其他的字句。

### 【类例】

Let it be ever so humble, home is home.（无论怎样简陋，总是自己的家。）

A man thinking or working is always alone, let him be where he will. Solitude is not measured by the miles of space that intervene between a man and his fellows. The really diligent student in one of the crowded hives of Cambridge College is as solitary as a dervish in the desert. (Thoreau)（一个人在思想和工作时总是孤独的，无论他在什么地方都是一样。孤独是不能用介乎一个人和他朋友之间的空间的里数来测量的。在哈佛大学的丛集如蜂窝的地方，勤读的学生，也和沙漠中托钵僧一样的孤独。）

Let it ever be so weak, there is nobody but loves his country.（无论国家怎样的弱，没有人不爱他的国家的。）

### 【习题 101】

1. There is no living plant or animal, be it ever so common, that will not repay study, and provide, if intelligently observed, quite an interesting story.

2. Let his occupation be what it may, he must devote himself if he is to succeed.

(102) once

Once you hesitate you are lost.

你要垂到一下，你就完了。

### 【解说】

这个“once”是接续副词 (Conjunctive Adverb)，有“侯门一入深如海，从此萧郎是路人”中的“一”的意思即“一度” (when once)，有时又可解释为“as soon as” (随即) 或“whenever” (无论何时) 之意。

### 【类例】

〔When〕 once 〔it is〕 gone, you will never get it back.  
(一度失去了，再也找不回来。)

Once you begin, you must continue. (一经开始，你就得继续下去。)

Once started, it was hard to stop. (一度开动了，就不容易停下来。)

Once (= If once) within call, we are safe. (一度进入叫喊能听到的范围内，我们就安全了。)

Once you consent you are trapped. (一度你同意了，就上了圈套。)

It is to be explained perhaps by the fear that once foreign affairs become predominant, home affairs take a back place.

(要加以说明的也许是担心国外的事情一度占优势令人注意的话，国内的事情就要退居后位了。)

### 【习题 102】

1. But their aloofness might have quite the same opposite result of that which they desire; for once (= when once) the crisis had arrived, home affairs would indeed be swamped.

2. Once you are married, there is nothing left for you, not even suicide, but to be good. (Stevenson)

(103) were to

If the sun were to rise in the west, I would not do so.

即令太阳从西边出来，我也不做这样的事。

### 【解说】

在条件句中用的“were to”，表示与未来的事实相反的假设，含有“万一”之意，稍古一点的说法是用“should”，意思一样，不过“were to”比“should”不确实的意思更为强烈，所以现代英语的普通口语，都用“were to”来取代“should”了。又在口语中如主语是单数时，连“were to”有时也更改成直接语气的“was to”了，例如 If this collection was to be sold, it would fetch a lot of money. (D. Sayers)

(这些收藏如果出卖的话，就可以得到一大笔钱。) If he was to come in at this moment, I should fall down on my knees in thankfulness. (L. P. Hartley) (他要是在此时走进来，我就会跪下来感谢的。) If I was to be shot for it, I couldn't. (就要杀我，我也不能。)

### 【类例】

If he were to come, say that I am absent. (他若来了，只说我不在家。)

If I were to go abroad, I would go to Europe. (如果我有可能出洋的话，我就要到欧洲去。)

If he should (= were to) hear of your marriage, he would be surprised. (他要是听到了你结婚的消息，他一定会惊异的。)

Even if you were to try, you wouldn't be able to do it. (Hornby) (即令你去试试，你也做不到的。)

If you were to start early tomorrow morning, you would (或 could, might, ought to, should) be at your destination by evening. (如果你明天早上早早动身的话，你就会在晚上到达目的地。)

If he were to call, tell him to wait. (如果他来访时，要他等一下。)

He wouldn't do it unless you were to order him to. (除非你命令他做，否则他是不会做的。)

It would be appropriate if they were to blow a siren. (他们只要吹一下号角就对了。)

Supposing I were to die as I sit at this table, what would the difference be? (K. Mansfield) (即令我现在坐在这桌子上就是这样死了,也不会有什么不同呀。)

If anything were to happen to him the family would be left poorly off. (如果他发生了什么事情,那一家人的衣食就成问题了。)

If you were to throw him to the lions, that would no doubt be persecution. (Shaw) (若是你把他投向狮子,那无疑就是迫害呀。)

Would it spoil it if I were to ask his name? (我要是问问他的名字不会坏事吧。)

### 【习题 103】

1. If the sun were to be extinguished, the whole earth would be fast bound in a frost so terrible that every animal would die.

2. If we were to think that Mrs Gerard were right, my dear Judge, then we should quit you judging men and I analysing them, and we should follow her.

## (104) 含有条件意味的字眼

(a) A close observer would have noticed it.

如果是一个细心的横钞者,就早注意到了。

(b) With his aid you would succeed in it.

有他帮忙,你就可以成功。

(c) You would do well to write more distinctly.

你要是再写得清楚一点就好了。

### 【解说】

英文表示假设的方法很多，并不一定要用明显的条件句，如（a）例中用的一个形容词/close”，即含有/if the observer had been close”之意。（b）例中的介词/with”，也含有/if you had his aid”之意。（c）例中的不定词/to write”，也含有/if you should write”之意。此外其他的字，也都可以用为假设的。

### 【类例】

Anybody who should do that ( = if anybody should do that, he) would be laughed at. (任何人如果那样做，就要被人笑的。)(关系代名词)

I am otherwise engaged, or ( = if I were not otherwise engaged) I would go myself. (我要不是因为有别的事，我就亲自去了。)(连词)

I would have let you know by letter, but there was no time. ( = if there had been time) (我要有时间的話，我早就用信通知你了。)(连词)

He said he would have done, only you treated him so off-hand. ( = if you had not treated him so off-hand) (他说他本打算要做的，只是因为你待他太不客气了。)(副词)

Turning ( = If you turn) to the right, you will find the house. (你向右转去，就看见那房子了。)(现在分词)

The book cannot be interesting, judged ( = if it is judged) by its contents. (从内容上看来，这本书不会有趣的。)(过去分词)

Your refusal to come ( = If you should refuse to come, you) might give offence. (你要不到会得罪人的。)(名词)

A Chinese (If he were a Chinese, he) would not do this. (这种事中国人是不会做的。)(名词)

【习题 104】

1. He would have paid more attention to a pretty girl.
2. Without history we should be at a loss to understand our presence on the earth either as a nation or as individuals.
3. He would be wrong in refusing to go.
4. To hear him talk, one would take him for a fool.
5. The same thing, happening in wartime, would amount to disaster.
6. Born in better times, he would have done credit to the profession of letters.

## X. 形容词副词的造句

### (105) “the + 形容词” 的两种用法

(a) The righteous are bold as a lion.

正义之士，其勇如狮。

(b) The beautiful lives forever.

美是不作的。

#### 【解说】

英文的“the + 形容词”，可以等于复数普通名词，也可以等于抽象名词，即是单数名词。二者全看形容词的性质而定，在字面上是看不出来的。如 (a) 例所示，“the righteous”为“righteous people”之意。说“the righteous”是复数，单数要说“a righteous man”。最常见的这种用法有“the rich” = rich people. “the poor” = poor people. 如 (b) 例所示，则完全不同了。“the beautiful” = beauty. 是一个抽象名词，这是近乎文言的语法。英诗人 Keats 的名句 A thing of beauty is a joy forever. (美的东西是永远的喜悦)，和上举例句意思相近。他例如“the sublime” = sublimity. 这两种用法也可适用于“the + 现在分词”及“the + 过去分词”，不过不一定是等于复数普通名词罢了。

现在且把这个“the + 形容词 (分词)”的用法分成四类来翻译：

(1) “/” 的人们”，如 The sick are here cared for. (病人们在这里受到看护。) The wounded and the dying were rushed to hospital. (受伤的人们和垂死的人们被急送到医院去了。)(2) “/” 的一个人”，如 The deceased was a great friend of mine. (死者是我的好朋友。) The accused was soon acquitted. (被告随即就宣告无罪了。)(3) “/” 的一切”，如 In the old society many readers

loved the sensational. (在旧社会里许多读者爱好骇人听闻的一切事情。) He has no eye for the beautiful. (他没有审美的眼光。)

(4) /”的一件事”，如 The unexpected always happens. (意料不到的事常会发生。天有不测风云。) The inevitable was not long in coming. (那不可避免的事不久就发生了。)

在/the”与形容词之间还可以再加形容词，用法不变，如/the leisured rich” (有闲的阔人们)，/the hungry poor” (饥饿的穷人们)，/the aged poor” (年老的穷人们)，/the bereaved poor” (孤苦无依的穷人们) 等等。

### 【类例】

The beautiful is higher than the true. (美高于真。)

Confucius did not talk of the supernatural. (子不语怪力乱神。)

The oppressed and the exploited looked forward to their liberation. (被压迫的人们和被剥削的人们盼望得到解放。)

The rich are apt to look down on the poor. (阔人常要轻视穷人。)

The power of fortune is acknowledged by the unhappy; for the happy impute all their success to their merits. (运命的力量为不幸者所承认；因为幸福的人把他们一切的成功都归于他们自己的实力。)

The living may have less to say to us than the dead. (现在活着的人也许没有死去的人那样多的话要对我们说的吧。)

Local government was generally regarded as a hobby of the well-to-do and the retired. (地方政治一般认为是富裕的人和退休的人所有的癖好。)

The deceased was 102 years of age. (死者有一百零二岁。)

The accused held back the names of his partners. (被告不肯说出同谋者的名字来。)



The sublime is in a grain of dust. (一粒尘土之中也有崇高的东西。)

In their education the useful has of late been encroaching on the ornamental. (近来在他们的教育上, 有用的东西侵入到装饰的东西当中去了。)

By nature she had a taste for the gorgeously beautiful. (她生性爱好华美。)

We are apt to accept the obvious too easily. (我们容易接受明显的东西。)

Adventure allows the unexpected to happen to us. (冒险引起意外。)

In an attempt to explain the unknown, primitive man fashioned various kinds of superstitions. (为着想要说明未知的东西, 原始人作出各种各样的迷信来。)

The poet had an ardent yearning for the supernatural. (诗人憧憬超自然的东西。)

### 【习题 105】

1. It is generally the idle who complain they cannot find time to do that which they fancy they wish.

2. There is but a step from the sublime to the ridiculous. (Napoleon)

(106) 最上级形容词含有 even 之意

The shortest cut would take us five hours to get there.  
即令走廉陆也要五小时才能到达。

### 【解说】

英文这种“the + 最上级”的形式，不宜只照字面翻译为“最”，因为其中包含得有“even”的意味。应译为“即令”，“哪怕是”等才对。

### 【类例】

The best brewer sometimes makes bad beer. (即令是最好的酿造家，有时也不免要造出坏啤酒来。)

The lion's roar will strike terror to the bravest heart. (听到狮吼，哪怕是非常勇敢的人也不免要惊恐。)

There is no smallest doubt about it. (毫无疑惑。)

This does not concern me in the least. (毫无关系。)

It fulfilled every faintest hope. (哪怕是极微的希望都试过了。)

### 【习题 106】

1. By the law of nature the stream will run down, and the strongest man cannot stop it.

2. The industrial arts are necessary arts. The most degraded savage must practise them and the most civilized genius cannot dispense with them.

(107) the + 比较级...the + 比较级

The richer a man is, the greedier he gets.

人越有钱越是贪拿。

### 【解说】

这是一种复句 (Complex Sentence)，前为附句，后为主句，故第一个 (附句中的) “the” = in whatever degree; to what extent, 为关系副词，而第二个 (主句中的) “the” = in that degree; to the extent, 则为指示副词。在主句中有时可用“do”以加重语气，如 T

the farther we proceed, the more difficulties do we meet. (我们越前进, 遭遇的困难愈多。) 这个“do we meet”是强调, 不是倒装。这种复句, 常用省略的说法, 如 The sooner, the better. (越快越好。) 是略去了主语和动词的。The nearer the bone, the sweeter the meat. (越靠近骨头的肉其味越美。) 是略去动词的。More haste, worse speed. (欲速则不达。) 是略去副词的。有时又可把主句放在附句的前面去, 如 I sing the worse, the more I practise. (= The more I practise, the worse I sing.) (越练习越唱得坏。)

### 【类例】

The sooner he comes, the happier I shall be. (他越早来, 我越高兴。)

The more he gets, the more he wants. (越有越贪。)

The more he flatters, the less I like him. (他越逢迎我越不喜欢他。)

The stone gets the harder, the longer it is exposed to the weather. (越是在空气中暴露得久, 石头变得越硬。)

The higher a mountain is, the more people like to climb it; the more dangerous the mountain is, the more they wish to conquer it. (山越高, 人越爱爬山; 山越危险, 人越想克服它。)

My experience has led me, the longer I live, to set less value upon mere cleverness. (因为经验增长的关系, 年龄越大, 我对单是聪明越觉得没有什么价值。)

The more things a man is interested in, the more opportunities of happiness he has, since if he loses one thing he can fall back upon another. (人对越多的事物发生兴趣, 便越多获得幸福的机会, 因为他失去对一件事物的兴趣, 又可从另外一件事物上获得兴趣。)

The more complex his material, the greater must be his art. (作家的材料越是复杂, 他的技术越要伟大。)

The nearer the train approached the scene, the drearier became the aspect. (火车越接近现场, 那光景越加可怕。)

### 【习题 107】

1. Lying on the grass, he looked straight up into the sky. It was very blue, and the longer he looked, the higher it seemed to look.

2. A great part of our lives is occupied in reverie, and the more imaginative we are, the more varied and vivid this will be. (Maugham)

### (108) the + 比较级 + 理由

I like him all the better for his faults.

因为他有点，我更加喜欢他。

### 【解说】

这个表现法是只用一个“the + 比较级”，后面就接上表理由的“for”，“because”，“on account of”，“owing to”等，具有“更加”的意思。常出现的为“all（或 much）the + 比较级”的形式，这个“all”或“much”是为加强语气而用的，可以不必译出。句中的“the” = to that degree.

成语说的“none the less”（依然。但仍不失为。）如 He has faults, none the less he is the best student of the class.（他有缺点，但仍不失为这班上最好的学生。）实有“虽然如此”（nevertheless）之意，也和本项为同一用法。

有时可将说理由的字句省略，而在别的地方表示出那个理由来，如 I said nothing, which made him all the more angry.（我一言不发，使他更为生气。）We are apt to undervalue the purchase we can not reach, to conceal our poverty the better.（我们常有将自己买不起的东西过低估价的倾向，借以隐藏我们的贫穷。）

### 【类例】

We do not like him the less because he has faults.' We like him none the less for his faults.' He has faults, but we do not like him the less.' We do not like him the less on that account. (我们并不因他有缺点, 而较少喜欢他。)

If he doesn't understand English, it is all the better for you. (如果他不懂英语, 那对你更好呀。)

The danger makes the sports only the pleasanter. (那运动因有危险而更加有趣。)

He is the worse for drink. (他喝醉了。)

We should not think the worse of a man because he is ill-dressed. (我们不应因人衣服褴褛而藐视其人。)

I think none the worse of him because he accepted their offer. (他接受了他们的建议, 我并不因此就对他不尊敬了。)

The coat is much the worse for wear. (那上衣穿得很破了。)

He won't come.' So much the better. (他不来更好。)

I am the more inclined to help him, because he is poor. (因为他穷, 我更加想要帮助他。)

It is none the less true because it sounds strange. (听来很怪, 却是真的。)

It is all the more dangerous for not being generally recognized as such. (一般不认为危险的, 反而更加危险。)

You may be as neat as you please and I shall love you the better for it; but this is not neatness, but frippery. (Goldsmith) (你们照自己的意思弄整洁就好了, 那样我会更加爱你们的, 但照现在这样, 并不是整洁, 而只是矫饰〔俗丽〕而已。)

### 【习题 108】

1. Indulged in to excess, reading becomes a vice' a vice all the more dangerous for not being generally recognized.

2. I think one of the most useful discoveries I ever made was how easy it is to say "I don't know". I never noticed that it made anyone think the worse of me. (Maugham)

(109) the last... + 不定词, the last... + 形容词子句

(a) He is the last man to accept a bribe.

他决不是受贿气的人。

(b) He is the last man I wanted to see.

他是最不愿见的一个人。

### 【解说】

句中的“last”为“the least likely”的意思，是否定地加以推论的想法。译为“最不大可能的”，“最不适的”。由原意的“最后去做”，变成“决不去做”。

### 【类例】

He is the last man to do such a thing. (他决不做这样的事。)

You should be the last man to wish it. (你决无希冀此事之理。)

I should be the last man to speak lightly of the profession of a clergyman. (我决不轻视牧师的职务。)

The very last thing of which man can make his boast is his knowledge. (人类对自己的知识是决难夸口的。)

That is the last thing one would expect. (那是一种最不可能预期到的东西。)

The author should be the last man to talk about his work.  
(作者最不宜讨论他的作品。)

Money is the last thing he wants, and you won't succeed  
by offering it. (他决不要钱, 你想用钱去买动他是决不会成功的。)

You are the last person I was going to see. Why did you come to see me? (你是我决不想要会见的人。你为什么要来见我?)

Romantic is the last thing I am. (我决不是浪漫的人。)

Certainly the last thing an Englishman should despise is poetry. (一个英国人决不会轻视诗歌的。)

### 【习题 109】

1. He was the last man in the world to suffer his authority to be set at naught.

2. A pretext was the last thing that Hastings was likely to want. (Macaulay)

(110) so + 形容词 (副词) + that, so + 动词 + that

(a) This coffee is so hot that I cannot drink it.

这咖啡太烫, 我不能喝。

(b) He ran so fast that nobody could catch him up.

他跑得那样快, 谁也赶不上他。

(c) It so happened that he was not at home.

他碰巧不在家。

### 【解说】

在/so”后接形容词或副词的，是表示因果关系，/so”以下表原因，/that”以下表结果。在/so”后接副词的，多是用来表程度的。在/so”后如接动词，就是表方法、状态、程度或目的的。This coffee is so hot that I cannot drink it. = This coffee is too hot (for me) to drink. 在/so + 形容词（副词）”后不接/that”引导的子句，而接不定词也是可以的，不过要用关系副词连起来，如 He was so angry that he could not speak. 一句可改为 He was so angry as to be unable to speak.

### 【类例】

The world is probably so made that men are unable to live without loving others. (大概这个世界上的人是非爱他人就不能生活的。)

It is so easy that a boy can learn it. (那非常容易，小孩子都能学会。)

Man is so created that he lives with woman. (男人是被造来和女人共同生活的。)

He so handled that matter that he won (= as to win) over his opponents. (他为着赢得反对者的支持，而把事情那样处理了。)

He spoke so rapidly that we could not clearly understand him. (他说话太快，所以我们没有能够完全听懂。)

Those ponds and streams are so small that they cannot be shown in your maps. (那些池塘和小溪，因为太小，所以地图上没有。)

They were so close (that) I heard every word. (他们很靠近我，所以他们说的每个字我都听到。) 美国口语略去/that”一字。

His income is so small that he can not support his family. (他收入太少，不能养家。)

These shoes are so small that I cannot put them on. (这双鞋太小，我不能穿。)



It was so cold that we lost the use of our hands. (太冷，我们手都不能动了。)

He had lived so long in the east that he had got out of English ways. (他在东方住得太久，所以英国的生活习惯都忘记了。)

The orange was so sour (that) I couldn't eat it. (橙太酸我不能吃。)

I was so astonished that I could not utter even a word. (我吃惊得说不出话来了。)

The current was so strong that he could not swim against it. (水流太急，他不能逆泳。)

He spoke English so fluently that everyone was astonished. (他英语说得那样流利，大家都吓倒了。)

The streets were so crowded that our car had to go very slowly. (街上太拥挤，汽车只好慢慢的走。)

Explanations were of no use because he was so prejudiced that he would not listen to reason. (说明对他无用，因为他不肯听从道理。)

### 【习题 110】

1. I do not think anyone writes so well that he cannot learn much from Fowler's Dictionary. (Maugham)

2. Many foods are never so cheap that the poorest people can afford to eat them.

3. May we so live that our children's children may look up on us as having set them an example. (/may + 主语 + 原形不定词”是祈愿句法。)

(111) so that

So that it is done, I don't care who does it.

只要做好就行，我不管是谁做的。

### 【解说】

这个/so that” = if only, so long as, provided that, 是表条件的，有时可将/that”省略。这是略带古风的说法，但在美国语中用的很多，可译为/只要”，因系条件句，所以第三人称单数的现在动词上可以不加〔s〕，例如 **He can stay long so that he catch the train.**（只要他能赶上火车，仅可多呆一会。）不过这种表条件的用法，属于古文体，现在不宜采用。

除古文体表条件外，现代英文又常用/so that”来表目的和结果。表目的的/so that” = in order that, 后常接/may”及/should”, /would”, /could”等字，口语则用/can”, 有时也可用单纯过去代替/might do”。如表目的时说 **Switch the light on so that we can see what it is.**（打开电灯，好来看过究竟。）表结果时则说 **Nothing more was heard of him, so that people thought he was dead.**（再也没有听到他的讯息，因此人们以为他死了。）用单纯过去时态的如 **He went early so that he got a good seat.**（他早早去所以占到了一个好位子。）比较：

He spoke clearly, so that everyone could hear.（结果）

He spoke clearly so that everyone might hear.（目的）

### 【类例】

**I'll write to him today so that he may know when to expect us.**（我今天要写信给他，为着要使他知道我们何时到达。）

**They are climbing higher so that they may get a better view.**（他们爬得更高，以便看得更远。）

**School was closed early in order that the children might go home ahead of the storm.**（学校早早下课，以便学生在暴风雨前回家。）

We put up a fence so that the neighbors should not overlook us. (我们搭一个围墙, 以免邻居看见我们。)

He slammed the door so that his mother would know he was home. (他把门砰的一声关上, 好让他母亲知道他回来了。)

Speak up so that the students sitting in the back of the room can hear you. (把声音放大一点, 以便坐在后面的学生可以听到。)

They are hurrying so that they won't miss the train. (他们匆忙赶去, 以免脱车。)

All precautions have been taken, so that we expect to succeed. (一切准备妥善, 因此我们期待成功。)

You may keep the book, so that you bring it back in good condition. (只要你不弄坏还来, 你可以把这本书借去阅读。)

To find her (= Megan) again he knew he had only to take train himself and go back to the farm, so that she found (= might found) him there when she returned. (Galsworthy, The Apple Tree) (为要找到美冈他知道他只有自己搭火车回农场去, 她若回家了, 就会到农场来看他的。)

Put the butter in the icebox, so that it may (will) not get soft. (把牛油放在冰箱中就不会软化。)

Come early so that you may get a good seat. (早来可以占到好位子。)

So that it be done, it matters not how. (只要能做成, 不管用什么方法。)

So that it is true, what matters who said it? (只要确实, 管它是谁说的。)

I got up early so that I might be in time for the first train. (我为着要赶上头班车, 故特早起。) Cf. I got up so early that I was in time for the first train. (因我早起, 故赶上了头班车。) 前句表有意志的目的, 后句表无意志的结果。

### 【习题 111】

1. I warned him so that he might avoid the danger.
2. Society is not very particular what a man does, so that it prove him to be a man.
3. To him it was indifferent who was found guilty so that he could recover his money.

(112) so much so that

He is very ignorant so much so that he cannot read his own name.

他非常无知，甚至连自己的名字都不认识。

### 【解说】

在“so much so that”中，第一个“so”是承接“that”以下的，与前面说过的表因果关系的“so that”的用法一样；第二个“so”是为避免重复起见，用来代表前面那个叙述形容词的，在上例中即代表“ignorant”一字。至于“much”便是为免除两个“so”连在一块儿而插入其间，作为缓冲的字眼，所以结局在本句中就等于说“so ignorant that”一样。全句可解释为 He is very ignorant to that extent or degree so that he cannot read his own name. 如果后面不接“that”所引导出来的子句，而改用不定词时，则为 He cannot so much as (= even) read his own name. 或整个说出来 He is very ignorant so much as to read his own name.

### 【类例】

The invalid was very tired when he returned from the ride; so much so that he could not sit up. (病人坐车回家时非常疲倦，疲倦得甚至不能坐起来。)

Ships were built, and kept thoroughly efficient, so much so that the country remained safe for very many years. (兵舰

造起来了，发挥充分的效率，那样，使国家永保太平无事。)

The first born was greatly privileged' so much so that the equal inheritance by two or more offspring was totally denied.

(长子被给与很大的特权，至于由两个或更多的儿子来平等地继承遗产的事是完全被否认了。)

He is poor' so much so that he can hardly get enough to live. (他很穷，穷得几乎无以为生。)

All parts of the British Isles are noted for their dampness, and Ireland so much so that the people of Ireland have this saying, /In England, it rains all day; in Scotland, it rains all night; but in Ireland, it rains both day and night." (不列颠群岛各地以潮湿著名，爱尔兰亦复如此，所以爱尔兰人有这样的说法，/在英格兰整天下雨，在苏格兰整夜下雨，但在爱尔兰，日日夜夜都下雨”。)

### 【习题 112】

1. It is very fierce and savage' so much so that the natives dread it more than they do the lion.

2. But is not the fear of death natural to man? So much so, Sir, that the whole of life is but keeping away the thoughts of it. (Dr. Johnson)

(113) such...as, such...that

(a) It is such an easy book as he can read.

这是他能读的一本容易的书。

(b) It is written in such easy English that he can read it.

这是用浅易英文写的书，所以他也能读。(结果)

这是用他也能读懂的那样浅易的英文写的。(程度)

### 【解说】

英文的/such" as"是表程度的，而/such" that"则可表结果，也可表程度。（a）例中的/as"是关系代名词，也是/read"的宾语，所以不要说成/read it"。（b）例中的/such" that"与/so" that"同义，所不同的是/such + （形容词） + 名词 + that"而/so + 形容词（副词） + that"，这个/tha"是连词，所以在/read"后必须有一个宾语/i t"。

### 【类例】

It was such a cold night that we all kept indoors.（那天夜里冷极了，我们都没有出门。）

The children were having such a good time that their mother hated to call them in.（孩子们玩得非常开心；母亲不忍叫他们回家。）

Let us discuss such things as ( = those things which) we can talk of freely.（让我们讨论一些我们可以自由谈论的事吧。）

This book is written in such easy English as beginners can understand.（这本书是用初学者也能读懂的浅易英文写的。）

This book is written in such easy English that beginners can understand it.（这本书是用浅易英文写的，所以初学者也能读懂。）

I don't know whether he is really such a great scholar as people say.（我不晓得他是否真如世人所说的是一个大学者。）

The silkworm is an animal of such acute and delicate sensation that too much care cannot be taken to keep its habitation clean, and to refresh it from time to time with pure air.（蚕是一种感觉敏锐而纤细的生物，要注意尽量地保持它居处的清洁，时时使它获得新鲜空气。）

It was the discovery of this extraordinary fact by generations of people long dead that made the greatness of such works as those of Shakespeare, of Dante, or of Goethe. (L. Hearn)  
（使莎翁、但丁或歌德的作品变得那样伟大的，是由于老早就死了的

多少代的人们，发现了这个异常的事实的原故。) 注意：上半句为“the discovery of this fact by people”的加重语气的说法。/made the greatness of”意为“使之变成伟大”。

For the man sound in body and serene of mind there is no such thing as bad weather; every sky has its beauty, and storms which whip the blood do but make it pulse more vigorously. (G. Gissing) (对于一个身体健全，精神平静的人，是没有坏天气的；无论什么天气都有它的美丽，激励血液的暴风雨，只会使脉搏跳动得更加活泼。) /do but make” = only make.

He was no more than skin and bone, was partly paralysed, and wore spectacles of such unusual power, that his eyes appeared through the glasses greatly magnified and distorted in shape. (R. L. Stevenson) (他只剩下皮包骨，半身不遂，戴着非常深度的眼镜，使他的眼睛经过镜子看去，大为扩大，且变得奇形怪状。)

### 【习题 113】

1. My father, I do not know why unless he was drawn by some such restlessness for the unknown as has consumed his son, went to Paris and became solicitor to the British Embassy. (Maugham)

2. Books did not much attract him; when he opened one he was sure to come upon something or other which took such possession of his thoughts, or so affected his imagination, that he went off into dreaminess, and for that day he read no more. (G. Gissing)

(114) 比较级 + than, more + 原级 + than

(a) He is bolder than his brother.

他比他的兄弟要大些。

(b) He is more bold than strong.

与其说他刚强，不如说他大典。

### 【解说】

(a) 例的/bolder than”是形容词的普通比较级，对同一性质来比较其不同的程度或大小，至于 (b) 例，则是将不同性质加以比较，其中的/more”有/rather”（毋宁）的意思。普通比较级的形式虽为/-er than”，但有时只用/-er”也就够了，试看下面四句：

(1) This cord is stronger than that one.

(2) This cord is a stronger one.

(3) This cord is the stronger one of the two.

(4) This cord is the stronger (of the two) .

注意不用/than”时冠词的用法。当/more”用作/rather”之意时，就是比较同一人或同一物的两种不同的性质，在/than”后可接形容词，副词，名词，片语或子句等。

### 【类例】

It is more than probable that he will fail. (十之八九，他会失败。)

He has more than 10,000 dollars' more than enough.  
(他有万元以上，绰有余裕。)

He is more shy than unsocial. (他是害羞，不是不爱社交。)

His mother is more kind than intelligent. (他母亲不是聪慧，而是和蔼。不是智者，而是仁人。)

He is more witty than wise. (与其说他聪明，不如说他机智。)

He is more dead than alive. (与其说他活着，不如说他死了。)



He is more knave than fool. (与其说他蠢, 不如说他坏。)

Li Yu was more of a poet than a king. (李煜与其说是一位国君, 不如说是一位词人。)

She was dressed more than simply. (他穿得岂只是朴素, 简直近乎破烂。)

I prayed to heaven in my heart that my boy, my more than son, might live. (Haggard) (我私自心里祷告, 求上苍让我的儿子, 我那心肝儿子, 活下去吧。)

Oh, great Sciolto! Oh, my more than father. (啊, 伟大的西奥图! 啊, 我那单说是父亲还嫌不足的亲爱的人。)

Friend of my bosom, thou more than a brother, / Why wert not thou born in my father's dwelling? (Charles Lamb)  
(我的知交, 你胜过亲兄弟, 你为何不生在我父亲的家里?)

During the last fifty years the short story has developed in scope and variety more rapidly than during the preceding five centuries. (J. Hadfield) (在过去五十年中, 短篇小说的视野和变化, 比以前五百年都要更迅速地发达了。)

Public opinion is always more tyrannical towards those who obviously fear it than towards those who feel indifferent to it. A dog will bark more loudly and bite more readily when people are afraid of him than when they treat him with contempt, and the human herd has something of this same characteristic. (B. Russell) (舆论常是对于显明地怕它的人比毫不介意它的人更要残暴。狗对于怕它的人要大吠并随时准备来咬, 对于轻蔑它的人, 它就没有这样, 人类也多少具有这同样的特质。)

#### 【习题 114】

1. Smike, more dead than alive, was brought in and locked up in a cellar. (Dickens)

2. He did not take the fever, after all; he was more frightened than hurt.

3. I have noticed that when someone asks for you on the telephone and, finding you out, leaves a message begging you to call him up the moment you come in, and it's important, the matter is more often important to him than to you.

(115) more...than + can

He earns more money than he can spend.

他赚的钱，他用不完。

### 【解说】

这个表现法是不能照字面来翻译的。在“more than”以后的文句，英文虽是肯定，但中文必须翻为否定。这和其他接子句或接单字、片语的有所不同。注意在后接的子句中常用“can”的助动词，当然也有不用“can”而用别的动词的。在“more than can”时，意为“达到不可能的程度”；在“more than can”时，意为“简直不可能”。

### 【类例】

He has more books than he can read. (= He cannot read all his books.) (他藏书多到他不可能读完的程度。)

That is more than I can tell. (= I cannot tell that.) (那我简直不懂。)

How he manages to live is more than I can tell. (= above my comprehension) (他怎样生活的，我简直猜不透。)

It is more than flesh and blood can bear. (这非血肉之躯所能忍受。)

His insolence is more than I can stand. (他的无礼我受不了。)

The beauty of the place is more than I can describe. (那地方景色之美，非笔墨所能形容。)

I don't do more than I can help. (能够不做的我便不做。)

【习题 115】

1. So many mothers and fathers died that there were more Orphans than the asylum could possibly take care of.

2. We all complain of the shortness of time, and yet we have more than we know what to do with.

(116) more than + 动词

This more than satisfied me.

这使我十二分的满意。

【解说】

这是在文法上破格的造句法，把“more than”放在动词之前，是表示就用更强意的动词也无妨，用英文说时则为“to do more than to”，可译为“深为”，“岂特”，“十二分的”等。

【类例】

He more than hesitated to promise that. (他对于答应那件事，岂特是踌躇而已〔简直是拒绝了〕。)

More is meant than meets the ear. (Milton) (有言外之意。)

Rose's cheeks were more than touched by the sun. (Gissing) (露丝的面颊深受太阳的伤害。)

He has more than repaid my kindness. (他岂只是报答了我的帮助而已。)

She was more than pleased with her daughter's performance. (她对女儿的演奏十二分的高兴。)

I prefer autumn to spring. What we lose in flowers we more than gain in fruits. (比春天我更要喜欢秋天。我们失去春花而以秋果补偿绰绰有余。)

**【习题 116】**

1. He more than smiled, he laughed outright. (Rowe)
2. He is more than pleased with the result.

(117) less...than

During the week he saw less of her than usual.

在那一星期内，他比平常要少见到她。

**【解说】**

英文的“less” than”是低一级的比较，意为“较少”，“较差”，“不及”，“不如”。/A is less” than B”略等于/A is not so” as B”的说法。这个“less”作形容词用时较为易译，作副词用时，则较难译。下面是“less”与“more”用法的比较：

Proof-reading is not interesting, still less so when it is on e's own work.

Proof-reading is uninteresting, still more so when it is on e's own work.

**【类例】**

He was less hurt than frightened. (他受的伤不如吓的厉害。)

I regard him less as my teacher than as my friend. (我把他看做朋友，甚过我把他看做老师。)

You're more of a scholar than he is, but you've got less common sense. (作为一个学者你在他以上，就常识而论则你不如

他。)

She eats less than a bird. (她吃得太少。)

He'll be back in less than no time. (他将马上回来。)

His lecture left me less than satisfactory. (他的演讲怎也不能使我满意。)

This razor runs less of a chance of getting cut. (这把剃刀差不多不可能割破脸。)

Father understood less of money matter than a child. (父亲对钱的事比小孩还要不懂。)

If you smoke cigars or a pipe, you're still risking cancer. But a good deal less than you are if you stick to cigarettes. (你抽雪茄或烟斗，还是有得癌症的危险，不过比抽纸烟的危险性少得多了。)

He observed with interest the errors of her face and figure, the thin underlip, too heavily penciled eyebrows, and her legs less than slim although not actually skinny. (他颇感兴趣地望着她面孔和身体上的一些缺点，那太薄的下嘴唇，画得太浓的眉毛，和她那瘦弱的双腿，虽然没有达到皮包骨的程度。)

### 【习题 117】

1. A man less thick-witted than the skipper might have been forgiven if he were bewildered by Neilson's words. (Maugham)

2. Learning is, in too many cases, but a foil to common sense, a substitute for true knowledge. Books are less often made use of as "spectacles" to look at nature with, than as blinds to keep out its strong light and shifting scenery from weak eyes and indolent dispositions. (W. Hazlitt)

(118) much more, much less

(a) He likes a child, much more a baby.

他喜欢小孩，更加喜欢婴孩。

(b) He does not like a child, much less a baby.

他不喜欢小孩，更加不喜欢婴孩。

### 【解说】

例句中 (a) (b) 两种表现法，都有“更加”的意思，不过用法不同罢了。(a) 是用于肯定句之后，表程度的增加，(b) 是用于否定句之后，表程度的减少。(a) 表更多，(b) 表更少。“much”改为“still”还是一样。(a) 可译为“更加”，“当更”。(b) 可译为“遑论”，“何况”。所谓否定后接“much less”，肯定后接“much more”的说法，也不过是最基本的用法罢了。在文人笔下，即令是肯定句，如含有否定意时，也可接“much less”；至于在否定的陈述之后，用“much more”的也不是没有。这个“much less”普通有“not to speak of”之意，故上面把它译作“遑论”。在“it is impossible”后不接“much less”，而要接“much more”，即有“much more impossible”之意。

### 【类例】

It would be impossible for any American much more an American who was stupid and provincial to gain their confidence. (Whitford) (任何美国人，尤其是愚笨而粗俗的美国人，更不可能获得信任。)

It is scarcely imaginable how great a force is required to stretch, still more break, this ligament. (Curme) (要把这条韧带拉长，尤其是要把它拉断，需要多大的力量，简直不可想象。)

I like music, much more dancing. (我喜欢音乐，更加喜欢跳舞。)

I don't like music, much less dancing. (我不喜欢音乐，更不喜欢跳舞。)

I do not even suggest that he is negligent, much less that he is dishonest. (我甚至没有暗示说他怠忽，更没有说他欺诈。)

If you must work so hard, how much more must I? (你尚且如此刻苦, 我一定要更加努力才行。)

No other country accepted the proposal, much less acted upon it. (没有别的国家接受那个提案, 更没有哪个国家采取行动的。)

Every one has a right to enjoy his liberty, still more his life. (人人都有享受自由的权利, 生命更加如此。)

Not all verse is poetry; not all prose about the past is history, nor is all literary work literature. The discrimination is habitually applied to other subjects, and clearly it is the quality which is decisive, not the quantity, scope or subject-matter, still less the popularity, of the work. (并非所有的韵文都是诗, 并非所有关于过去的散文都是史, 并非所有的著作都是文学。这种辨别常可应用到别的科目上, 很明显的, 有决定性的, 是那作品的质, 而不是量, 也不是它的范围或题材, 更不是它的声望。)

### 【习题 118】

1. One would not wish to visit the white mountains in winter, still less would he be willing to live there in that season.

2. If worship even of a star had some meaning in it, how much more might that of a Hero. (Carlyle)

(119) would sooner (rather) ...than, would as soon...as

(a) I would sooner (rather) die than disgrace myself.

(b) I would as soon die as disgrace myself.

我世死不受辱。

### 【解说】

这表现法中的/would”是表愿望的，与/wish [to]”相同。句中的/soon”也不作/早”，/快”解，而是/愿意地”，/高兴地”（readily, willingly）的意思，（a）例中的/sooner”为比较级，结局与/rather”同义。英文的/rather”原来是/rathe（= early, soon）”的比较级，不过现在只剩下/rather”一字，但仍保持它比较级的作用。（b）例中的/would as soon die as”，是用的平等比较，一般的情形谁也不希望死，所以这句话的意思是希望与那同样的程度，结局也是/would sooner” than”的意思。/would sooner (rather) ”可译为/宁愿”，/than”以下便要译成否定。/rather than” = might as well” as.

### 【类例】

He would sooner die than consent to such a plan.（他宁死也不肯同意这个计划。）

The brave soldier would as soon die as yield to such an enemy.（那个英勇的军人宁死也不肯屈服于这样的敌人。）

What strikes me most is that here are three thousand young men, every one of whom would rather lose a game than play it unfairly.（最使我感动的是这里的三千个青年，人人都宁肯比赛失败，而不愿作弊取胜。）

I would sooner die at once than live in this agony.（与其生存在这种苦痛中我宁肯早死的好。）

I would rather you came tomorrow than today.（我宁愿你明天来。）

I would rather be deaf than blind [if I were to be either of them].（我宁愿聋不愿瞎。）

He would rather resign than take part in such dishonest business deals.（他宁肯辞职而不愿参加这种不正当的勾当。）

I would just as soon stay at home [as go].（我宁愿呆在家里。）

I would rather you remained here. (Dickens)（我宁愿你留下不走。）



I would rather never allude to the past for it is very painful to me. (C. Doyle) (我不愿再提到过去, 因那使人痛苦。)

【习题 119】

1. I asked if she would like a taxi. /No, I'd sooner walk, isn't it such a lovely day, " she answered. (Maugham)

2. I'd as soon put that little canary into the park on a winter's day, as recommend you to bestow your heart on him! (Brontë)

(120) no sooner...than, hardly...when

(a) He had no sooner seen me than he ran off.

(b) He had hardly seen me when he ran off.

他一看到我就跑掉了。

【解说】

这两种表现法都是“随即”的意思, 表示两种动作跟着发生, 几乎是同时的现象。我们要注意的是不可把两个意义相同的表现法混乱, 英美未受教育的人每每说成“no sooner” when”, 其实只需看“sooner”是比较级, 当然是要接上“than”才通。这个“hardly”有时说成“scarcely”也是一样, 后接的“when”稍古的说法为“before”, 意思不变。如用稍古的说法, 将“no sooner”或“hardly (scarcely)”置于句首时, 就要把主语和动词颠倒过来, 如 No sooner had he seen me 及 Hardly had he seen me. 这种说法在意义上没有什么不同, 只是语气上有些加强而已。与此同义的还有“as soon as + 主语 + 动词”, “the moment (或 the instant) + 主语 + 动词”, 及“directly (或 immediately) + 主语 + 动词”。例如 As soon as (或 the moment 等) he saw me, he ran off. 还有在动名词项下说过的“on + 动名词”也有“as soon as”的意味, 如 On arriving home he wired me. (他一到家就打电报给我了。)

### 【类例】

No sooner had I started than it began to rain. = Scarcely (Hardly) had I started when (before) it began to rain. (我一动身天就下雨了。)

Let me know directly (immediately) he comes. (他一来就请通知我。)

He ran away the moment (the instant) I came in. (我一进来他就逃了。)

I had scarcely started before a man came up to me and asked me if he was right in thinking my name was so-and-so. (Maugham) (我甫出门就有一个人走过来问我是不是姓什么的。)

Directly he had gone, she burst into great sobs. (他一走她就啜泣起来。)

The instant that we heard the sound, Holmes sprang from the bed, struck a match, and lashed furiously with his cane at the bell-pull. (Doyle) (我们一听到有声音, 福尔摩斯就立刻从床上跳将起来, 擦燃一根火柴, 用手杖去猛击那钟绳。)

I had no sooner opened the cage than out flew the little bird. (我一开笼小鸟就飞出去了。)

No sooner had I glanced at this letter than I concluded it to be the one of which I was in search. (我一见那信便知道正是我找寻的一封。)

No sooner had I come into contact with him than I determined to get to know him well. (我一接近他, 马上我就决心要和他做好朋友。)

### 【习题 120】

1. No sooner had the thief perceived that than he sprang to his feet and took to flight.

2. Hardly had he started when the sky became overcast and down came the rain again.

3. The moment the door was opened, the dog flew to the chest.

4. As soon as a man begins to love his work then he will begin to make progress.

(121) anything but, nothing but, all but

(a) He is anything but a scholar.

他决非一个学者。

(b) He is nothing but a scholar.

他不过是一个学者。

(c) The boy all but fell into the well.

那孩子几乎掉到井里去了。

### 【解说】

英文的“anything but” = never. “nothing but” = only. “all but” = almost, nearly 在这三种表现法中的“but”，都有“except”（除开）之意。“anything but”意即“除此之外别的都是”，是表强调的否定的。“否定字 + anything but” = “nothing but”，意即“除此之外别的都不是”。至于“all but”是指“everything short of”，所以结局是和“almost”，“nearly”同义了。

### 【类例】

He is anything but a scientist. (他决非科学家。)

I'm nothing but a student. (我不过是一个书生而已。)

A trouble of the eye all but drove me mad with fear of blindness. (Gissing) (我的眼痛使我生怕要瞎几乎为之发狂。)

Famous as the actress may be, her manners are anything but gracious. (那女伶虽很有名然举止欠佳。)

Strange to say, man is nothing but a bundle of habits. (说来奇怪,人不过是一堆习惯而已。)

If nothing but plain common sense were admitted, we should have had little or no great poetry. (R. Lynd) (如果是普通常识以外什么都不认可的话,那么,我们就不会有伟大的诗篇了。)

The house was all but completed when he was drafted and sent to the East. (那房子几乎快落成了,而他便受到征召,送往东方去了。)

It is anything but pure. (不纯。)

His English is anything but correct. (他的英文错误百出。)

His English is all but correct. (他的英文几乎是正确的。)

His English is nothing but correct. (他的英文只是不错而已。)

He is anything but a fool. (他决不是傻子。)

He is all but a fool. (他几乎可说是傻子。)

### 【习题 121】

1. He wandered up and down among the crowd in anything but a calm frame of mind.

2. Science is, I believe, nothing but trained and organized common sense.

3. Physical labour carried beyond a certain point is atrocious torture, and it has very frequently been carried so far as to make life all but unbearable. (Russell)

(122) short of, be short of, nothing short of

(a) Short of theft, I will do anything I can for you.

除了鱼徒之外，我什么都愿为你效劳。

(b) We are short of hands at present.

我们眼下人手不够。

(c) His conduct was nothing short of madness.

他的行为简直是发了狂。

### 【解说】

英文的“short of” = except，是副词的用法。在这前面常用的动词有“come”，“fall”，“run”等，有“不足”，“欠缺”的意思，其“of”作“from”解。至于“be short of”及“nothing (或 little) short of”中的“short of”则为形容词，在“be short of”时意为“不足”或“离开”，在“nothing short of”时意为“完全”，用法仍有如副词一般。

### 【类例】

The result fell short of my expectation. (那结果出乎我所预料。)

The result was nothing short of my expectation. (那结果正如我所预料。)

Short of some tremendous accident or untoward event it could not be anything else. (除了是一件重大事件或不幸事件外，这不可能是别的事情。)

They were short of money. (他们缺少钱。)

They were still five miles short of their destination. (他们距目的地还差五英里。)

It was little (或 nothing) short of miraculous (或 a miracle). (这几乎是奇迹。)

The arrow fell short of the mark. (矢未中的。)

We have run short of tea. (我们的茶叶不够了。)

He committed every crime short of murder. (他只差没有杀人, 什么罪都犯了。)

We have reason to believe that our education falls short of what we should wish it to be. (我们有充分的理由相信, 我国的教育还未达到我们所理想的境地。)

**【习题 122】**

1. In this instance fame has fallen short of the truth.

2. Sleep was out of the question; for even if they dared to stay, they knew that to lie down on the ground was little short of certain death.

3. To impose a new civilization on an ancient culture is naturally a gigantic undertaking; and Japan can only be admired for attempting it, and having so well succeeded in accomplishing it. Could the achievement have been realized without losing some of the virtues of either civilization, it would be nothing short of a miracle.

(123) ever so

(a) There are ever so many schools in Taiwan.

台湾的学校非常的多。

(b) Be a man ever so rich, he ought not to be idle.

人无论怎样有钱, 也不可以懒惰。

**【解说】**

在 (a) 例中的“ever so” = very; exceedingly, 可译作“非常”, 在 (b) 例中的“ever so”, 便有让步的意思, 等于说“however”, 有“in or to whatever conceivable degree or extent”的意思。可译作“无论怎样的”。这个“ever so”的古写法是“never so”, 从字面看去好

像意思相反，其实完全同义，例如英文名歌中有一句脍炙人口的句子，便是用的古文说法：Home is home, be it never so humble.

(= however humble it may be)。(无论怎样卑陋，家总是自己的好。)我们由下面三个句子可以看出文字演变的迹象来：(1) He looked never before so healthy [as then], '(2) He looked never so healthy.' (3) He looked ever so healthy.

### 【类例】

He is ever so strong. (他非常强壮。)

The patient is ever so much better. (病人好得多了。)

Betide what may, we will not despair, were the world never so unfriendly. (Carlyle) (无论发生什么事情，我们也不会绝望，即令世界变得非常冷酷无情。)

I like it ever so much. (我非常喜欢它。)

Thank you ever so much for your kindness. (真谢谢你的帮忙。)

No one will be vexed or uneasy, linger I ever so late. (无论我呆到好晚，也没有人讨厌的。)

She's got ever so many books. (他有非常多的书。)

Let him be ever so bad, he has some good points. (Curme) (他虽很坏，却也有他的好处。)

He was ever so tired. (= He was as tired as he could possibly be.) (他非常疲倦。)

There is no place like home, be it never so homely. (即令很鄙陋，还是自己的家好。)

Such a mean fellow, though never so rich, should not be admitted into society. (这样卑鄙的人，虽则有钱，也不应允许他进入社交界。)

### 【习题 123】

1. There be heard ever so many more voices, and it was noisier than ever.

2. If my life's journey is to be along an easy road to success, I shall have no objection; if it is to be along a hard one, let it be ever so rough, I will make it smooth and gain my object nevertheless.

3. He is in error, though never so wise.

## (124) good and 的副词用法

The apples are good and ripe.

这些苹果完全成熟了。

### 【解说】

普通用“and”来连结两个形容词时，是表示两个形容词的对等作用，但第一个形容词如果是“good”，“nice”，“fine”等字的话，当它和“and”结合起来时，便构成“well”或是“nicely”意味的副词同等语了。在美国口语中，这种表现法用得很多，是作为强意语（intensifier）用的，例如“good and sweet”，“good and cold”，“good and plenty”等皆是，意为“very”或“thoroughly”，翻译时应特别注意，不可把“good and ripe”译成“又好又熟”，它的原意实为“well ripe”（熟透）罢了。这个表现法普通都可改为副词，如“nice and cool” = “nicely cool”（凉爽），“snug and warm” = “snugly warm”（暖适）。在 COED 上将“nice and”解释为“satisfactorily”。他例还有“fine and”，“lovely and”，“bright and”，“rare and”，“big and”等等。“lovely and warm” = “diligently warm”（温暖）是女性用语。

### 【类例】

I am good and tired. （我很疲倦。）

It's good and cold out. （外面很冷。）



When it was good and dark I slid out from shore before moonrise. (Mark Twain) (天完全黑了，我就在月亮出来以前从河岸上溜出去了。)

The boy was bad. Yes! He was good and bad. (那孩子坏呀。是的！他真是很坏。)

The house stands nice and high. (那房子位置很高。)

The room was nice and cool. (房间凉爽。)

He's good and dead, he is. (Stevenson) (那家伙死僵了。)

You're fine and strong, aren't you? (G. Eliot) (你孔武有力。)

You'll make yourself fine and beholden to Aaron. (G. Eliot) (你对爱伦要很感激才是。)

The place is nice and healthy. (那地方对健康很好。)

The dish is nice and warm. (菜热的好吃。)

I was rare and hungry. (Stevenson) (我很饥饿。)

She would make thee rare and happy, Seth. (G. Eliot) (塞司，她会使你幸福的。)

### 【习题 124】

1. The car is going nice and fast.

2. I wish your eyes would always flash like that, for it looks so nice and manly. (Doyle)

(125) to one's + 感情名词, to the + 感情名词 + of

(a) To my joy, he was quite free from danger.

使我高兴的是他已脱险了。

(b) He has recovered, much to the delight of his friends.

他病好了，使得他的朋友们大为欢喜。

### 【解说】

这是表结果的副词片语，句中的“to”就是表结果的介词。这两种形式和表感情的抽象名词结合时，意为“令人（喜、怒、哀、乐）的”。

### 【类例】

I found to my horror that the man was mad.（我发觉那人已发了疯大吃一惊。）

To my shame I must confess that I wronged you.（实在可羞耻，然我必得自认错怪了你。）

I found to my joy (= was rejoiced to find) that he was alive.（令人可喜的是他还活着。）

To our surprise (或 astonishment) he has succeeded.（他的成功使我们感到惊异。）

To my disappointment, I found that he had left this country.（听说他已出国使我怅惘。）

So the matter has ended to the unspeakable relief of everybody.（事情如此了结，大家都非常安心了。）

She revenged herself to her heart's content.（她尽情报复了。）

The little animal, to the astonishment of the spectators, expired without showing any signs of pain.（使观众大吃一惊的是那个小动物竟一点痛苦的样子也没有就气绝了。）

To her horror she saw clouds of smoke issuing from her master's nose!（使她大为恐怖的是她看到一阵阵的烟从她主人的

鼻孔中冒出来！)

【习题 125】

1. And to his great surprise and sorrow, he saw that his dear old mother was seriously ill in bed, looking very pale and almost without consciousness.

2. One of the commonest faults of writing is the use of long and many-syllabled words when short, simple words would do as well. The greatest writers often do this, to their shame.

(126) so far, so far as, so far as...is concerned

(a) So far so good. (= Up to this point everything is satisfactory.)

到目前为止一切良好。

(b) He isn't dead so far as I know.

据我所知他并未死。

(c) So far as his eyes were concerned, he was already an old man.

单就视力来说，他已经是一个老人了。

【解说】

英文的“so far” = so far forth = thus far, 意为“到目前为止”。  
“so far as”与“as far as”同，照字面译时为“像” “那样远”，如 We did not go so far as the bridge. (我们没有走到桥那样远去)，引申为“就” “而论”，如 So far as I know, he has not much money. (就我所知，他没有很多的钱。) 至于“so far as” is concerned, 意为“就关于” “来说”，“别的不说，单就” “来说”。“so far as I am concerned” = as for me. (就我个人来说)。“as far as”由“距

离”而变成/范围”，/as far as”是一个介词片语（Preposition Phrase），而/so far as”一般用作连词片语（Conjunction Phrase），表程度或界限的/in so far as”，则常用作连词，如作介词用是不合文法的（ungrammatical）（MEU）。/so far as”虽与/as far as”通用，但/so far”却与/as for”不同，/as for”与/as to”一样，是再提到已说过的事时用的，意为/关于”，如 As for me, I think I'd rather stay at home.（至于我呢，则宁留在家里。）As for news, I have little to say.（关于报导，无可奉告。）

### 【类例】

So far you have been successful.（到目前为止，你是成功了。）

In as far as it is an inspiration, it is a gift from Heaven.  
(A. A. Milne)（只要是灵感，就是天赐。）

If I understand your brother, he only means so far as your having some thoughts of marrying. (J. Austen)（就我所理解的来说，你的兄弟不过是说，只有你想着结婚的事。）

So far you are right.（到此为止你是对的。）

Now that we have come so far, we may as well go all the way.（已经走了这么远，我们不难走完全程的。）

But so far there is no certainty as to the main starting grounds of the locusts. (Henry Jackson)（但是到现在为止，我们还不知道蝗虫主要的出发点在哪里。）

No casualties were reported thus far.（至今为止还未接到死伤的报告。）

Very wisely, he did as she ordered, for as far as he knew the revolver might be loaded. (H. Horn)（很聪明地他照她吩咐的做了，因为就他所知，那手枪也许是上了子弹的。）

Man is a rational animal' so at least I have been told. Throughout a long life, I have looked diligently for evidence in favour of this statement, but so far I have not had the good fortune to come across it.（人是理性的动物’ ’至少我听说的是如

此。在很长的时间里，我一直勤勉地在搜寻支持此说的证据，但至今为止我没有那般好运找到它。)

So far as the style is concerned ( = as regards the style ) , it leaves very little to be desired. (仅就文章来说，几乎无可指摘。)

The sun appears to take his daily course over the earth, while it is really the earth which moves. The sun, at least, so far as we are concerned, is standing still. (太阳好像是每天围绕地球在走，而实际走动的却是地球。至少就我们地球上的人来说，太阳是屹立不动的。)

### 【习题 126】

1. The man who enjoys watching football is so far superior to the man who does not.

2. As far back as history goes men have always had some knowledge of the facts of nature; and those nations, like the Egyptians and Chinese, which long ago had become highly civilized, had learnt a great deal, and must probably have known some things of which we are still ignorant.

3. So far as people who have no ear for music are concerned, it would be a waste of time and money for them to try to learn music.

4. The literature of the past is only of value in so far as it has significance today, just as history is only of use if it can throw a light upon the contemporary scene.

## XI. 连词的造句

(127) and that

(128) at once...and

(129) in that



(130) It is true...but





## XII. 其他的造句

(131) one, as such

(132) one thing...another

(133) in + 人物



(134) before 的四种译法





### 第三编

## 疑难句法及文章译例

壹 英文类似句辨异

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注



注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注



注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注



注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注



注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

注

习题















## 贰 常易译错的文句

### I 中译英

1. 中国的京戏你觉得怎样?

How do you think of Chinese opera? (误)

What do you think of Chinese opera? (正)

How do you feel about Chinese opera? (正)

How do you like Chinese opera? (正)

注 How do you like it? = Do you like it much or little or dislike it?

2. 第二次世界大战是一九四五年八月十五日结束的。

The World War II came to an end on August 15, 1945.  
(误)

World War II came to an end on August 15th, 1945.  
(正)

The Second World War ended on August 15th, 1945.  
(正)

3. 昨天晚上我们整晚在看电视。

We spent last evening watching the television. (误)

We spent last evening watching television. (正)

注 television 是一个不可数的名词，不能加冠词，也不能变成复数，但加有 set 一字时则非加冠词不可，如 She won't leave the t

television set even though her husband is waiting for his supper.

4. 旅行社告诉了我们许多关于夏威夷的情形。

The travel agency sent us many informations about the Hawaiian Islands. (误)

The travel agency sent us much information about the Hawaiian Islands. (正)

注 information 也是一个不可数的名词，不能说成复数。

5. 假期从明天开始。

The vacation begins from tomorrow. (误)

The vacation begins tomorrow. (正)

注 中文的“从”字在这场合是不要译出的，其他场合也不要译成 from，例如“新学期从四月开始”。The new term begins in April. /“新学期从四月五日开始。”The new term begins on the 5th of April. /“茶会从六点开始。”The tea party begins at six o'clock. /“教育从一个人出生开始。”Education begins with a man's birth. 例句中的 tomorrow，是一个副词，副词前是不可以用介词的。April, the 5th, six o'clock, birth 都是名词。

6. 这只表的价钱很贵。

The price of the watch is dear. (误)

The watch is dear. (正)

The price of the watch is high. (正)

注 以物品为主语时用 dear 或 cheap，以定价为主语时就说 high 或 low.

7. 我和他是好朋友。

I am a great friend with him. (误)

I am great friends with him. (正)

8. 旅行我总是坐三等。

I travel always by the third class. (误)

I always travel third class. (正)

I always take a third-class car. (正)

注 说坐几等时不要用介词，说坐船，坐车，坐飞机等才要，如 **by boat**, **by train**, **by plane** 之类。几等的等级前，不要用定冠词，但如不用 **travel** 而改用 **take** 时，则要在等级前加一个不定冠词，等级后加一个名词，如上译例。

9. 我不想去。’ ’ 他也是。

I don't wish to go.' So does he. (误)

I don't wish to go.' Nor does he. (误)

I don't wish to go.' Neither does he. (正)

注 **nor** 在古文中虽可作副词用但现为连词，**neither** 古为连词，现为副词。

10. 我不喜欢喝酒。’ ’ 我兄弟也是一样。

I dislike to drink.' Neither does my brother. (误)

I dislike to drink.' So does my brother. (正)

注 **dislike** 一字虽有否定之意，但表面上并没有否定的字样，在使用时仍可看做是肯定的，故译文应将 **neither** 改为 **so** 才对。如说 **I don't like to drink**，虽意义相同，但字面上有否定 (**don't**)，所以后面可以接用 **neither** 一字。

11. 谁在敲门？

Who is knocking the door? (误)

Who is knocking? (正)

Who is at the door? (正)

Who is knocking at the door? (正)



12. 你什么时候到过伦敦的?

When have you been to London? (误)

When did you go to London? (正)

When were you in London? (正)

13. 他没有告诉我说他什么时候回来。

He has not told me when he will be back. (误)

He didn't tell me when he would be back. (正)

14. 那一点你是错了。

You have mistaken in that point. (误)

You are mistaken on that point. (正)

15. 倘战争爆发我们会变得怎样呀?

What shall we become if war breaks out? (误)

What shall become of us if war breaks out? (正)

注 自动词的 become of = happen to, 意为“降临”, “遭遇”, 说时则为“怎样”。中国话是以“我们”为主语, 但英文句中的主语则为 what。

16. 老张也没有来。

Old Chang has not come also (or too) . (误)

Old Chang has not come either. (正)

注 “作/也”字解的 also 或是 too, 只能与肯定连用, 如果换上否定的句子, 就得改用 either。

17. 昨天晚上我们玩得很愉快。

We played very pleasantly last night. (误)

We enjoyed ourselves very much last night. (正)

We had a good time last night. (正)

注 玩牌，打球，演戏之类就用 **play**，中国话这儿说的玩是指度过一个愉快的时候，最好译成 **enjoy oneself** 或 **have a good time**。

18. 如果他来，我愿尽力为他服务。

If he comes, I'm glad to do anything I can for him. (误)

If he comes, I'll be glad to do anything I can for him.  
(正)

注 在副词子句中是用现在时态代替未来时态的。

19. 王君是一九六五年南洋大学毕业的。

Mr. Wong graduated Nanyang University in 1965. (误)

Mr. Wong graduated at Nanyang University in 1965. (正)

Mr. Wong was graduated from Nanyang University in 1965. (正)

注 英国人说 **graduate at**，美国人说 **be graduated from**，不过近来美国偶有略去 **from** 而说成 **graduate college** 的。

20. 他在那里专攻中文，荣誉毕业。

There he specialized Chinese literature and graduated with honour. (误)

There he specialized in Chinese literature and graduated with honours. (正)

There he took Chinese literature and graduated with honours. (正)

There he majored in Chinese literature and was graduated with honours. (正)

注 /专攻”美国话说 **major in**，英国话单说 **take** 一字就行了。荣誉毕业即获得优等成绩，注意 **honours** 要用复数。

21. 上个礼拜我们班上讨论了关于男女同校的问题。

Last week our class discussed about coeducation. (误)

Last week our class discussed coeducation. (正)

22. 我惯于迟睡。

I am used to sit up late at night. (误)

I am used to sitting up late at night. (正)

注 be used to = be accustomed to, “惯于”, 后接名词或动名词, 不可接不定词。如前无动词, 单说 used to 时, 则后接不定词, 是指过去的习惯行为。参考: I used to sit up late at night. 意为“我以前常很迟睡觉”; 现在睡得早了。

23. 你喜欢看看我搜集的邮票吗?

Do you like to see my stamp collection? (误)

Would you like to see my stamp collection? (正)

24. 他正忙着在写信。

He is busy to write a letter. (误)

He is busy writing a letter. (正)

25. 他们坐在小船上渡过河去了。

They crossed the river on a boat. (误)

They crossed the river in a boat. (正)

26. 她生于一九五零年。

She was born in the year of 1950. (误)

She was born in the year 1950. (正)

She was born in 1950. (正)

27. 我在一九三九年夏天离开伦敦。

I left London in the summer 1939. (误)

I left London in the summer of 1939. (正)

28. 我想要一架电视机, 但我没有钱买它。

I want a TV set, but I can't afford to buy it. (误)

I want a TV set, but I can't afford to buy one. (正)

注 it 是代表前面用有定冠词 (the) 的名词, 如前面的名词是冠有不定冠词 (a) 时, 则须用 one 为代名词。

29. 他的情形跟我不同。

His case is quite different from me. (误)

His case is quite different from mine. (正)

30. 那地方像江南三月的温暖。

The place is as warm as March of Kiangnan. (误)

The place is as warm as Kiangnan in March. (正)

注 place 不能与 March 比较, 应以同类的名词“江南”来比。

31. 我跟叔父学英文。

I studied English from my uncle. (误)

I studied English under my uncle. (正)

I learned English from my uncle. (正)

I was taught English by my uncle. (正)

32. 他的职业是教师。

His profession is a teacher. (误)

He is a teacher by profession. (正)

33. 我的国籍是中国。

My nationality is China. (误)

My nationality is Chinese. (正)

34. 我的教授主张我去申请奖学金。

My professor suggested me to apply for a scholarship.  
(误)

My professor suggested that I apply for a scholarship.  
(正)

35. 请即回信。

Please reply this letter early. (误)

Please answer this letter early. (正)

Please reply to this letter promptly. (正)

36. 那妇人跑到警察局去求救。

The woman ran to the police for getting help. (误)

The woman ran to the police to get help. (正)

The woman ran to the police for help. (正)

37. 许多人在海上丧生。

Many people lost their life at sea. (误)

Many people lost their lives at sea. (正)

38. 听写我完全不错。

I didn't have mistakes in the dictation. (误)

I didn't have any mistakes in dictation. (正)

39. 他从来不撒谎。

He always says the truth. (误)

He always speaks the truth. (正)

He always tells the truth. (正)

40. 他前妻生了两个孩子。

He has two children of his former wife. (误)

He has two children by his former wife. (正)

注 by 有 born to him by 之意。

41. 我的见解和你相反。

My views are opposite from yours. (误)

My views are opposite to yours. (正)

注 在 different 后才可接 from。

42. 他的意见和你的正相反。

His opinion is the very opposite to yours. (误)

His opinion is the very opposite of yours. (正)

43. 大多数的子女都想要自立，不愿依赖他们的父母。

Most children want to be independent on their parents.  
(误)

Most children want to be independent of their parents.  
(正)

注 dependent 后接 on，而 independent 后接 of。

44. 我把窗子打开一下你不在乎吗？

Do you mind if I opened the window? (误)

Would you mind if I opened the window? (正)

Do you mind if I open the window? (正)

45. 请你到这儿来一下好吗？

Do you mind to come here for a moment? (误)

Do you mind coming here for a moment? (正)

Do you care to come here for a moment? (正)

46. 我开一下窗子你不在乎吗？

Will you mind my opening the window? (误)

Would you mind my opening the window? (正)

47. 他对中学教师讲授英语教授法？

He lectured teaching method of English to high school teachers. (误)

He lectured to high school teachers on methods of teaching English. (正)

48. 不久又有新的麻烦发生?

It didn't take long before new troubles arose. (误)

It wasn't long before new troubles arose. (正)

It didn't take long for new troubles to arise. (正)

49. 旅行社宣布不再接受旅客前往开罗的订票。

A travel agency announced not to accept any more bookings for tourist travel to Cairo. (误)

A travel agency announced that it would not accept any more bookings for tourist travel to Cairo. (正)

50. 我很高兴接受你的邀请。

It gives me much pleasure in accepting your invitation. (误)

It gives me much pleasure to accept your invitation. (正)

I have much pleasure in accepting your invitation. (正)

I take great pleasure in accepting your invitation. (正)

注 take great pleasure = greatly enjoy. 如说 have the pleasure 则后不接 in 而接 of, 如 I have the pleasure of accepting your invitation. 也是通的, 不过此种语法多用于下类句中: May I have the pleasure of taking a glass of wine with you? I once had the pleasure of being introduced to you. I am sorry I cannot have the pleasure of accompanying you today. I hope you will give me the pleasure of dining with me at 8 o'clock tomorrow evening at my place. There are many famous men whom I have not yet had the pleasure of meeting so far.

51. 这问题值得再讨论一下。

It is worth discussing the question further. (误)

It is worth while to discuss the question further. (正)

The question is worth discussing further. (正)

注 句中的 **it** 为形式上的主语，真正的主语是 **discussing the question further**. 因此 **worth** 变成没有宾语了，故第一句译文是不通的。第二句中的 **it** 仍为形式上的主语，真正的主语为 **to discuss the question further**，而 **worth** 另有 **while** 一个名词成为它的宾语，所以就成为一个完善的句子了。注意 **worth** 这个形容词，后面必须接用宾语。

52. 他给了我一张五百元的支票。

He gave me a cheque of \$500. (误)

He gave me a cheque for \$500. (正)

53. 他呼吸有大蒜味道。

He breathes with garlic smell. (误)

His breath smells of garlic. (正)

注 他例如：

“这咖啡有点大蒜味道”，不可译为 **This coffee has a garlic taste**. 应译为 **This coffee tastes of garlic**.

54. 我最好来讲一个故事给你听。

I can do no better than to tell you a story. (误)

I can do no better than tell you a story. (正)

注 在 **than** 后的字的形式应和 **than** 前的一致，句中前面是 **can do**，后面只能说 **(can) tell**，不能说 **(can) to tell**. 他例如 **It is better to win than to lose. I'd rather stay at home than go for a walk.**

55. 错误显然是在你那一边。



The fault clearly lies at your side. (误)

The fault clearly lies with your side. (正)

注 在自动词 **lie** 后可接用各种各样的介词，惟含义各有不同，如 **Sheets of paper lie about the room.** (纸张散满一屋。) **The village lie across the river.** (村庄在河的对岸。) **Accusation of theft lay against him.** (控他以盗窃罪。) **The path lies along a stream.** (小路沿溪。) **The hot springs lie among pretty scenery.** (温泉在风光明媚之中。) **The blame lies at his door.** (错在他。) **A happy future lies before you.** (幸福就在你的前途。) **What mystery lay behind the disappearance of the girl?** (少女失踪的后面潜在着什么神秘?) **The truth lies between extremes.** (真理存于两个极端之间。) **He has the manuscript lying by him for the next number.** (下一期的原稿在他那里。) **The charm of travel lies in its new experiences.** (旅行的妙味在于新奇的经验。) **The ship is lying off the mouth of the river.** (船停在河口以外。) **The book lies on the floor.** (书在地上。) **A white mist lay over London.** (伦敦为白雾所笼罩。) **The person lies under the suspicion of corruption.** (那人有受贿的嫌疑。) **The choice lies with you.** (任你选择。) 在 **lie** 字后接介词 **with** 时，意为“是”“的义务”，“是”“的责任”，他例如 **It lies with you to decide.** (决定的责任在你。你有义务来作决定。取决于你。) **It lies with you to accept or reject the proposal.** (接受或拒绝那个建议就全看你了。) **The fault does not lie with the government officials.** (责任不在政府官员。)

56. 那房间是用电力照明的。

The room is lighted with electricity. (误)

The room is lighted by [means of] electricity. (正)

The room is lighted with electric lamps. (正)

注 用于无形的手段时要用 **by**，所以与抽象名词连用，但用于有形的手段时则须用 **with**，所以与普通名词连用。**electricity** 为抽象名词，**electric lamps** 为普通名词。

57. 他觉得那杂碎是他从来没有尝过的美味，哪怕是在中国也没有。

He thought the Chop Suey was more delicious than anything he had ever tasted before, not even in China. (误)

He thought the Chop Suey was more delicious than anything he had ever tasted before, even in China. (正)

He thought the Chop Suey was such a delicacy he had never before tasted anywhere, not even in China. (正)

58. 美国成为现今世界上最富有的国家。

The United States become the richest country in the world. (误)

The United States has become the richest country in the world. (正)

注 The United States 要接单数动词。说“现在已经成为”应该用现在完成动词。

59. 我刚才把它写完了。

I have written it just now. (误)

I have just written it. (正)

I wrote it just now. (正)

60. 他虽然生病但是仍去上学了。

Though he was ill, but he went to school. (误)

He was ill, but he went to school. (正)

Though he was ill, [yet] he went to school. (正)

61. 我在下星期一去那里。

I will go there Sunday next. (误)

I will go there next Sunday. (正)

I will go there on Sunday next. (正)

注 凡 last, next 等字用于星期、年、月之前时, 可将介词略去, 用在那些字后面, 就必须加上介词。

62. 你怎样认识他的呀?

How you come to know him? (误)

How come you to know him? (正)

注 惯用法在 come to do 的问句中, 要将 do, did 等发问的虚字略去, 这是古来的传统。但在现今的口语中可说 How did you come to know him? 美口语还可以说 How come you didn't say anything? (你为何一言不发?)

63. 我从来没有听见讲过有这样的事。

Never I have heard of such a thing. (误)

Never have I heard of such a thing. (正)

64. 他称赞他妹妹的勤快。

He praised his sister's diligence. (误)

He praised his sister for her diligence. (正)

65. 有五百元一月就够生活了。

Five hundred dollars a month is enough to live. (误)

Five hundred dollars a month is enough to live on. (正)

注 live 是自动词, 故要加介词的 on.

66. 我从小孩子的时候起就认识他。

I have known him since a child. (误)

I have known him from a child. (正)

I have known him since his childhood. (正)

注 从过去某一时期到现在为止, 英文要用现在完成时态, 介词就用 since, 但有时不说“迄”(till) 也可以说“起”(from) 的, 即用

“/from + 普通名词”代替“since + 抽象名词”。但在 from 后也同样可接抽象名词，所以不说 He has been blind since childhood, 而说 He has been blind from childhood. 也是一样。

67. 我们登得越高，天气越冷。

We ascended the higher, it became the colder. (误)

The higher we ascended, the colder it became. (正)

68. 他既不会说华语，也不会说英语。

He neither speaks Chinese nor English. (误)

He speaks neither Chinese nor English. (正)

69. 消防队员死了不止一人。

More than one firemen were killed. (误)

More than one fireman was killed. (正)

70. 她打击了他的头，使他不省人事达一小时之久。

When she struck his head, he remained unconscious for an hour. (误)

After she struck him on the head, he remained unconscious for an hour. (正)

He remained unconscious for an hour after she struck him on the head. (正)

71. 我正在听她唱歌。

I am hearing her sweet song. (误)

I am listening to her sweet song. (正)

72. 那便是我所收到的最后的消息。

That is the last news I've received. (误)

That is the latest news I've received. (正)

73. 双方的意见并没有什么不同。

There is no difference between both views. (误)

There is no difference between their views. (正)

There is no difference in their views. (正)

74. 他有自己的一幢房子。

He has his own house. (误)

He has a house of his own. (正)

注 英文的属格代名词 (Possessive Pronouns) 有两种形式, 普通的形式为 **my** 等, 后必须接名词如 **my book**, 绝对的形式为 **mine (= my book)** 等, 是为避免重复地来说那名词而采用的, 例如 **Your house is larger than mine (= my house)**。在属格代名词的前面如再加指示代名词时, 即在 **my book** 前再加 **this, that, a, some, any, no** 等字样时, 普通的形式便得改为绝对的形式, 以避免指示代名词与属格代名词连在一起。三百年前的英文是可以连用的, 即是可以说 **this my book**, 而现代英文则必须改为 **this book of mine** 才行。反身属格 (Reflexive Possessive) 的 **my own, your own, his own** 等, 也要采用绝对的形式, 因为现代英文已不说 **He has that his own house.** 或 **She has some her own reasons.** 而必须改成 **He has that house of his own.** 或 **She has some reasons of her own.**

75. 他是我父亲的朋友。

He is a friend of my father. (误)

He is a friend of my father's. (正)

注 名词前面的属格, 可代定冠词用, 如 **my brother's wife = the wife of my brother.** 又 **my brother's friends = (all) the friends of my brother.** 如果不是指某一个特定的人或几个人时, 则须用不定冠词 (**a**), 那是不能用属格来代替的, 即是用了属格, 还得有不定冠词, 但我们又不能说 **my brother's a friend.** 或 **a my brother's friend**, 所以只好说 **a friend of my brother's.** 这种表现法所含有的意味是 **a friend (that is) my brother's** 或 **one of my brother's friends.** 这便是英文的两重属格的由来。

76. 我和王君久别重逢至为高兴。

I am very glad to meet Mr. Wang again after a long parting. (误)

I am very glad to meet Mr. Wang again after a long separation. (正)

注 part 指离别的动作, 如说离别的期间则用 separate.

77. 我在桥头和他分手。

I parted with him on the bridge. (误)

I parted from him on the bridge. (正)

注 与人分离说 part from, 与物分离说 part with, 例如 He hates to part with his money. (他极舍不得用钱。)

78. 这学校有三千个学生。

The school has three thousand students. (误)

There are three thousand students in the school. (正)

注 英文的动词 have 有三义: (1) 物质上的所有, 如 I have a lot of friends. (我有许多朋友。)(2) 心身上的具有, 如 I have a poor memory. (我的记性很坏。)(3) 构成上的含有, 如 A week has seven days. = There are seven days in a week. (一星期有七天。)例句中的 have 与 (3) 相似, 但仍是似是而非, 因学校是一个地点, 不是机构, 学校与学生的关系, 不是不可分离的, 不像星期少了一天就不成。还有“there + be”原意为“存在”, 存在于某处, 因而变成“有”的意思。

79. 你方便的话, 请在六点钟来。

Please come at six if you are convenient. (误)

Please come at six if it is convenient to you. (正)

80. 你有必要这样做。

It is necessary of you to do so. (误)

It is necessary for you to do so. (正)

注 一个形容词可以用来指/行为”，又可以用来指/行为者”，如 kind, good, foolish, nice, careful, careless 之类皆是。这种形容词可以接用 of 来造句，如 It is kind of you. (行为) = You are kind. (行为者)。另外有些形容词，只能用来指/行为”，不能用来指/行为者”，如 necessary, impossible, inconvenient, unbearable 之类皆是。这种形容词是不可以接用 of 来造句的，它只能接用 for，例如 It is necessary for you to go. 而不能说 You are necessary to go.

81. 她父亲决不赞成她嫁给这样一个穷人。

Her father will never approve her marrying such a poor man. (误)

Her father will never approve of her marrying such a poor man. (正)

82. 由于整夜未睡，我们疲倦得要死。

We were tired to death through having sat up all night. (误)

We were tired to death from having sat up all night. (正)

注 动名词前的 through 是表理由的，要 from 才能表原因。

83. 那囚犯的处死引起了很多的物议。

The prisoner's execution has caused a lot of public censure. (误)

The execution of the prisoner has caused a lot of public censure. (正)

注 英文的属格有两种用法：一为主格作用 (Subjective Possessive)。一为宾格作用 (Objective Possessive)。例如 She has come to sing his praise. (她来赞美他。) 是宾格作用。She doesn't want his praise. (她不要他赞美。) 是主格作用。说 his praise (他的赞美) 用作主格作用是不会有误解的，但说 his praise (赞美他) 用作宾格作用，即属格变成了宾格，就令人费解了。这两种作用

在文字上是没有分别的，读者要从意义上才能加以辨明。如上例句中所说的 **the prisoner's execution**，意为处死囚犯，当然是宾格作用，因为被人处死，是被动，决不可能变成囚犯自己处死的，所以不能说成 **the prisoner's execution**，只能改用 **of** 的造句而说成 **the execution of the prisoner**，因为用 **of** 的造句多是表宾格作用的，例如 **the choice of him = the act of choosing him**.（选择他）。如说 **his choice = the person or thing he has chosen**（他所选定的人或物），就是主格作用了。

84. 战争结束以后他就出洋去了。

**After the war being over, he went abroad.**（误）

**The war being over, he went abroad.**（正）

注 在 **Absolute Participle** 的前面不要再加连词或介词。改正后的句子是属于 **Written English** 方面的，如改为 **spoken English**，则为 **After the war was over, he went abroad.**

85. 虽则他病过好几年，现在却完全好了。

**Though having been ill for years, he is now quite well.**  
（误）

**After having been ill for years, he is now quite well.**（正）

**Having been ill for years, he is now quite well.**（正）

注 **though** 是连词，只能用于连结两个子句（**clause**）。句中 **having been ill for years**，不是一个子句，至多前面只能用介词 **after**，或根本什么都不要。

86. 一到新加坡，我的朋友就在机场等我。

**On arriving at Singapore, my friend was waiting for me at the airport.**（误）

**On arriving at Singapore, I found my friend waiting for me at the airport.**（正）

注 凡是带有介词的动名词，或是单独的分词，必须有一个意味上的主语，来配合这个动作。到达新加坡的是“我”，而主句中的主语



却是“我的朋友”，动作不能配合，所以是错误的。介词 **before** 与 **after** 的情形和 **on** 一样，故下面的两句也是错的：**After finishing his work, I paid him.**（他把工作做完，我就付钱给他。）**Before reading the text, the vocabulary should be learned.**（在阅读课文之前应先学习生字。）

87. 他满足于默默无闻的生活。

**He is content of living in obscurity.**（误）

**He is content with living in obscurity.**（正）

**He is content to live in obscurity.**（正）

88. 他禁止孩子们吸烟。

**He has prohibited the boys to smoke.**（误）

**He has prohibited the boys from smoking.**（正）

注 古代英文原是可以接不定词的（如 **God prohibited Adam to eat of the fruit of a certain tree.**）但现代英文必须接“**from + 动名词**”。另一个同义字的 **forbid**，则可接不定词，如 **I have forbidden the boys to smoke.**

89. 我确信可以获得任命。

**I am confident in getting an appointment.**（误）

**I am confident of getting an appointment.**（正）

注 **confide** 和 **confidence** 后皆接 **in**，如 **He confided in your honesty.**（他信任你的诚实。）**She has great confidence in her success.**（她自信她会成功。）但形容词的 **confident** 后却要接 **of**，他例如 **We are confident of victory.**（我们确信会胜利。）

90. 他后悔不该那样说的。

**He repents to have said so.**（误）

**He repents of having said so.**（正）

**He repents his words.**（正）

91. 他坚持拒绝我的要求。

He persisted to refuse my request. (误)

He persisted in refusing my request. (正)

92. 总而言之，日本人在思想上有岛国根性。

The Japanese people are insular in their thinking to sum up. (误)

To sum up, the Japanese people are insular in their thinking. (正)

注 独立片语，如 to sum up, to tell the truth, strictly speaking, taking everything into consideration, judging from”等等，都是应该放在句首的。

93. 日本的气候比英国温和。

The climate of Japan is milder than England. (误)

The climate of Japan is milder than that of England. (正)

注 比较一定要同性质的才可以，例句中以气候比英国，故误。改正为 that 代表 climate，如前面名词为复数则用 those 代表。

94. 无知与疏忽是这错误的原因。

Ignorance and negligence have caused this mistake. (误)

Ignorance and negligence has caused this mistake. (正)

注 两个以上的主语用 and 连起来表示一个单纯的目的或观念时，动词要用单数才对。他例如 Truth and honesty is always the best policy. Slow and steady wins the race. Bread and butter is his abomination.

95. 林博士代表新加坡大学出席会议。

Dr. Lim, on behalf of the University of Singapore, attended the conference. (误)

Dr. Lim attended the conference on behalf of the University of Singapore. (正)

注 主语与述语务必放在一起，不要隔开。

96. 麦饼比米饼便宜。

A cake made of wheat costs less than that made of rice.  
(误)

A cake made of wheat costs less than one made of rice.  
(正)

注 that 是从 the 变来的，属于定冠词的范围之内，所以它只能代表有定冠词的单数名词，如 The cost of oil is less than that of gas. (油价比煤气便宜。) 但凡是有不定冠词的单数名词，就不能用 that 代表，只能用 one 代表，如上举的两个例句：one = a cake 而 that = the cost. 对于有定冠词的单数名词，也并不一定非用 that 代表不可，如 The step you have taken is that of much risk. (你所采取的步骤，是一个很危险的步骤。) 一句中的 that 就错了，应改为 one 才对，因为在动词 is 后应接 a step，所以只能用 one 代表。

97. 他不但是一位作家，而且是一位画家。

He not only is a writer, but also a painter. (误)

He is not only a writer, but also a painter. (正)

98. 我住在离城一英里远的地方。

I live at a mile distant from the town. (误)

I live at a mile's distance from the town. (正)

I live a mile distant from the town. (正)

注 at 是介词，应置于名词前，不可置于形容词前，要用 at 则后必须接名词的 distance，不可接形容词的 distant，又 mile 既是名词，自应改为属格。

99. 黄君在台大读博士学位。

Mr. Huang studies the doctor's degree at Taiwan University. (误)

Mr. Huang works for the doctor's degree at Taiwan University. (正)

Mr. Huang is a doctoral student at Taiwan University. (正)

100. 这些问题太难，我只能解答两个出来。

The questions were so difficult that I could solve only two. (误)

The questions were so difficult that I could answer only two. (正)

注 solve a problem 和 answer a question 为一定的说法。

101. 彼德是一个十岁的男孩。

Peter was a boy of ten years old. (误)

Peter was a boy of ten years of age. (正)

Peter was a boy of ten. (正)

Peter was a boy ten years old. (正)

Peter was a ten-year old boy. (正)

102. 学生们在星期六晚上要去参加一个舞会。

The students are going to a dance party on Saturday night. (误)

The students are going to a dance on Saturday night. (正)

注 舞会应该说 dancing party, 不要说 dance party, 但一般只说 dance 也就够了。开舞会就说 give a dance, 去参加舞会就说 go to a dance. 那旅馆每晚举行舞会: At the hotel dances are held nightly. 我第一次遇见她是在一个舞会上: She and I first met at

a dance. 他们请我参加舞会：They asked me to a dance. 规模较大的舞会，英文又可说 ball，是从拉丁文来的。

103. 我很愿意帮你做任何事。

I am willing to assist you to do anything. (误)

I am willing to assist you in doing anything. (正)

I am willing to help you to do anything. (正)

104. 辩论已近尾声。

The debate was drawing to an end. (误)

The debate was drawing to a close. (正)

The debate was coming to an end. (正)

105. 他以儿子为荣。

He is proud in his son. (误)

He is proud of his son. (正)

He has a pride in his son. (正)

He prides himself on his son. (正)

注 在形容词 proud 后要接 of，在名词 pride 后则接 in，在反身动词后则接 on.

106. 这章需要重新写过。

This chapter needs being rewritten. (误)

This chapter needs rewriting. (正)

This chapter needs to be rewritten. (正)

注 动词 need 后面接的动名词，意思虽是被动，但字面上一定要用自动。如不接动名词，也可改接不定词，不过形式便恰相反了，这时的不定词，一定要把被动表示出来，不可用自动的 to rewrite，要用被动的 to be rewritten. 他例如 This house needs repairing. = This house needs to be repaired. (这屋子要修理。) 谚语有 Th

e best horse needs breaking, and the aptest child needs teaching. (即使是最好的马也需要受驯, 即使是最聪明的孩子也需要受教。) 如系人做主语则后可接自动的不定词, 例如 **Each of us needs to master such a foolish fear.** (我们每个人都需要克服那种愚蠢的恐怖。)

107. 这机器要修理。

The machine wants to repair. (误)

The machine wants to be repaired. (正)

The machine wants repairing. (正)

注 动词 **want** 也和动词 **need** 一样, 后接动名词时要用自动, 后接不定词时才可以用被动, 用自动便错了。如果以人做主语, 也可以用自动的不定词了, 同时也可接被动的不定词, 例如 **He wants to buy a watch.** (他要买表。) **He wants to be notified beforehand.** (他要人事先通知他。)

108. 我现在到医院去看我兄弟的病。

I'm going to hospital to see my brother. (误)

I'm going to the hospital to see my brother. (正)

注 到医院去求医是医院的本分, 不加冠词, 如 **go to hospital** (入院)。 **He is still in hospital.** (他还在医院里。) **He was taken to hospital.** (他被送进医院去了。) 反之, 则须加冠词, 如 **My uncle lives near the hospital.** (我叔叔住在医院附近。) **Is it far from here to the hospital?** (从这里去医院远不远?)

109. 那年我去了西贡, 而第二年我又去了河内。

I went to Saigon that year, but next year, to Hanoi. (误)

I went to Saigon that year, but the next year, to Hanoi. (正)

注 我们现在说明年, 就用 **next year**, 如果是说过去的或未来的第二年, 就得加冠词说成 **the next year**. 如 **The school year began**

ins on the 1st of April and ends on the 31st of March of the next year. He started from here early the next morning. He arrived at New York on the 3rd of the next month.

110. 苹果坏了四分之三。

Three-fourths of the apples was ruined. (误)

Three-fourths of the apples were ruined. (正)

注 英文以分数为主语时，由其后接的名词来决定动词的单复数，例句中 **apples** 为复数，故动词应改为复数的 **were**。但 **Three-fourths of the crop was ruined**. (四分之三的收成都毁了。)

111. 猫把家里的老鼠一扫而光。

The cat cleared off rats from the house. (误)

The cat cleared the house of rats. (正)

The cat swept rats out of the house. (正)

注 用动词 **clear** 时，其形式为“**clear + 地点 + of + 物**”，如用 **sweep** 时，则为“**sweep + 物 + out of + 地点**”。

112. 昨夜他喝得大醉了。

He was much drunken last night. (误)

He was much drunk last night. (正)

注 **drunken** 是一个限定形容词，只能用在名词前，如 **a drunken man** (醉人)，不能作叙述形容词用。

113. 笨人无药可医。

There is no medicine to cure a fool. (误)

There is no medicine for curing a fool. (正)

114. 昨晚我接到了他的电话。

I received a telephone from him last night. (误)

I had ( or received ) a phone call from him last night.  
(正)

He called me up last night. (正)

115. 我觉得这样做是我的本分。

I think to do so is my duty. (误)

I think it my duty to do so. (正)

注 英文惯用法是不用不定词作宾语的，故以 it 代替。

116. 峨眉山是中国的最高的山。

Mt. Omei is the highest mountain of China. (误)

Mt. Omei is the highest mountain in China. (正)

Mt. Omei is China's highest mountain. (正)

117. 我打网球一年来大有进步。

My tennis has much progressed in a year. (误)

My tennis has improved very much in a year. (正)

I have made much progress in tennis this past year. (正)

118. 日本好像以极大的速度富裕起来。

Japan seems to be getting rich at the tremendously speed  
y rate. (误)

Japan seems to be getting rich at a tremendously speedy  
rate. (正)

119. 去年我读了好些海明威的小说。

Last year I read many Hemingway's novels. (误)

Last year I read many of Hemingway's novels. (正)

Last year I read many Hemingway novels. (正)

120. 名画落入了那人之手。



The famous painting came into possession of the man.  
(误)

The famous painting came into the possession of the man.  
(正)

The man came into possession of the famous painting.  
(正)

注 /物入人手”为 come into the possession of, /人使物入手”即为 come into possession of, 因主语的不同, 影响名词前冠词的有无。

### 习题

试改正下列错误的译文:

1. 到公园里去要怎样走?

How shall I go to the park?

2. 那讲演是在礼拜五从两点钟开始。

The lecture is from two o'clock on Friday.

3. 中国的风景很美。

The sceneries of China are very fine.

4. 他们没有房子住。

They have no houses to live.

5. 比起福克纳他更喜欢海明威。

He likes better Hemingway than Faulkner.

6. 这只表要修理。

This watch wants to mend.

7. 全家的人在九点钟上教堂去做礼拜。

The family go to the church at 9 o'clock.

8. 那年我身体很好，但在那前一年我生了病。

I was quite well that year, but ill the last year.

9. 那条沉没的船不可能捞起来。

It is impossible to raise the sunk ship.

10. 你早上来吧，不要晚上来。

Come in the morning instead of the evening.

11. 他的女儿嫁给一个阔人。

His daughter married to a rich man.

12. 这样一个好天气，你为什么要呆在家里。

Why are you at home on such a fine weather?

13. 赶快，再迟就赶不上了。

Make haste, and you will be behind time.

14. 日暮途穷。

The day is falling and the road is coming to an end.

15. 我从一星期前开始就生病了。

I have been ill since a week ago.

16. 你小时候读过的那些有趣味的故事你还记得吗？

When you were a boy do you remember all the interesting stories you read?

17. 从汽车的遮风玻璃望过去，我们远远地就看见了那宝塔。

Looking out of our windshield, the pagoda would be seen by us in the distance.

18. 兔子的耳朵比猫的长。

The ears of a hare are longer than that of a cat.

19. 你去过美国吗？

Have you gone to America?

20. 他来过此地一两次。

He has come here once or twice.

21. 我昨天看见他。

I have seen him yesterday.

22. 我觉得那菜很好，吃得很满意。

I found the food very good, and enjoyed to eat it.

23. 我想很快就回家去。

I think to go home very soon.

I think going home very soon.

24. 一个普通信都不会写的人，对这样重要的职务是不能胜任的。

A man who is unable to write a letter is incapable to hold an office of such importance.

25. 他好像很不喜欢说实话。

He seems to have an aversion to speak the truth.

26. 中国是刻苦耐劳的民族。

The Chinese are hard-working and industrious people.

27. 我可以跟你借个电话吗？

May I borrow your telephone?

28. 他被选为议员了。

He was elected councilman.

29. 王先生昨天回返新加坡了。

Mr. Wong returned back to Singapore yesterday.

30. 这报告必须在下月六日提出。

This report must be presented by 6th next month.

31. 请你记得要我交还。

Please remember me to give it back.

32. 我在纽约定购了十本书。

I ordered ten books in New York.

33. 我确信我的英语可以使人听懂。

I'm sure I can make myself understand in English.

34. 我确信我可以使你了解我的意味。

I'm sure I can make you understood what I mean.

35. 汽车朝着公园的方向驶去了。

The motor car ran to the direction of the park.

36. 我对他的正直不能信赖。

I have no reliance in his honesty.

37. 他把大笔的钱交我代为保管。

He entrusted a large sum of money in me.

38. 小孩子总是这样那样顽皮的。

Children are always in some mischief or another.

39. 我对他的悲伤深表同情。

I sympathize him deeply on his sorrow.

40. 他向我道歉他所犯的过失。

He apologized me on his mistake.

41. 有人这样说，但我忘记是谁了。

Somebody said so, but I forget whom.

42. 他除了发财以外无他愿望。

He has no other desire but to make a fortune.

43. 她的服装不大入时。

Her dress does not conform to the fashion.

44. 如你所知道的，人生常比做航海。

As you know, life is often compared with a voyage.

45. 她入不敷出。

Her expenditures do not correspond with her income.

46. 我去吊慰了他父亲之死。

I condoled him about his father's death.

47. 学生到了多少？

How many students did come?

48. 这些就是他们说是傻瓜的人。

These are the people whom they say are fools.

49. 台湾比新加坡要大得多。

Taiwan is very larger than Singapore.

50. 我坐船回家要五天。

I take five days to return home by steamer.

51. 他是从后门进来的。

He entered from the back door.

52. 那个老人遭失明之痛。

The old man had his son died.

53. 这架缝衣机是中国制造的。

This sewing-machine is Chinese make.

54. 我从来没有见过这样高的人。

I never saw so a tall man before.

55. 他懂得知难而退。

He has good sense of quitting when he found the thing too difficult to do.

56. 马可·波罗以一二五四年生于威尼斯一个商人的家里。

Marco Polo was born in 1254 at a merchant's house in Venice.

57. 他从桌子上把花瓶拿去了。

He has taken the vase from the table.

58. 《中国简史》的序文就是一部中国简史。

The preface of "A Short History of China" is a short history of China.

59. 我国的早期教育发展很快。

The early education of our country grows very rapidly.

60. 由于各学院中的教授皆一时之选，致使那间大学名扬遐迩。

It is due to the outstanding professors in the various faculties that the university has won a worldwide fame.

## II 英译中

1. I am then never less alone than when alone. (W. Hazlitt)

我出外旅行时决不比孤独时更少孤独。(误)

我出外旅行时和一人在家时同样的寂寞。(正)

2. Nobody will be the wiser.

谁也不会更为聪明。(误)

谁也不懂得。（正）

注 英文形容词 **wise** 有三个基本意思：（1）聪明的，如 **You were wise not to go.**（你不去是聪明的）。（2）饱学的，如 **He is wise in the law.**（他精通法律）。（3）知道的，如 **We are none the wiser for his explanations.**（听完他的解释，我们还是不明白）。上例便是第三义，等于说 **Nobody will know it.** 通常用比较级，意为“至今不知道的事，现在知道了”，所谓 **none the wiser = no wiser than before = as wise as before**，照旧。

3. The OED is the final court of appeal in all matters concerning English words.

《牛津辞典》是有关英文一切问题的最后的申诉法院。（误）

《牛津辞典》是有关英文一切问题的最高权威。（正）

4. Don't you see the writing on the wall?

你不看见墙上的字吗？（误）

难道你看不到灾难的迫切吗？（正）

注 典出《旧约》但以理书》（Daniel 5 : 5-25）。

5. Truth lies at the bottom of the decanter.

真相从玻璃酒瓶底下看出来。（误）

酒后出真言。（正）

6. Don't tell him home truths.

不要告诉他家里的真相。（误）

不要对他讲逆耳的事实。（正）

7. This will go a long way in overcoming the difficulty.

在克服困难上要走很远的路。（误）

这在突破难关时是很有帮助的。（正）

注 go a long way = will be helpful. 又 go a little way with a person, 意为对那人一点效果也没有，对他影响很少。

8. He has a yellow streak in him.

他身上有一条黄的纹路。（误）

他有胆小的气质。（正）

9. One or two of the jewels would never be missed.

一两粒宝石是决不会不见的。（误）

失去一两粒宝石是决不会知道的。（正）

注 作他动词用的 **miss** 有四义：（1）不中，不见，如 **He hammered away, but half the time he missed the nail.**（他不断地用钉锤在钉，但一半都未钉中钉子。）（2）略去，如 **When we sing this hymn, miss out the second and fourth verses.**（唱这首赞美歌时，略去第二第四两节不唱。）（3）逃避，避免，如 **I missed the 7:30 train and so missed the accident.**（我赶脱了七点半的车，所以未遇到那场车祸。）第一个 **miss**，是上述第一义。

（4）觉察（什么）不在，因（某人）不在而想念。我们上面用来作例句的，正是这个意思。他例如 **We shall miss you badly when you are away.**（你走了我们一定会非常想念你的。）**When did you miss your purse?**（你何时才发觉你的钱包被扒去了？）**Where did you miss your umbrella?**（你到什么地方才想起你的伞来？）

10. I know he meant business.

我知道他的用意在生意。（误）

我知道他不是开玩笑的。（正）

注 口语用法的 **mean business = be serious; be earnest.** 做生意的人是要认真的，讲求信用的，因此引申出上面这种意思来了。

11. This failure was the making of him.

这次失败是他造成的。（误）

这次失败实为他成功的基础。（正）

注 动词 **make** 原是“造成”的意思，又可作“发展或发达的过程。成功的原因或手段”解，例句中所用的便是这个意思。**making** 还可以



加复数，而构成“要素”，“素质”之意，例如 He has in him the makings of a poet.（他有诗人的素质。）

12. He has never recovered her loss.

他永未能补偿她的损失。（误）

他永含失恃之悲。（正）

注 这是英文中最容易弄错意思的一种表现法。英文属格分主格作用和宾格作用两种。例句说的是宾格作用，所谓 her loss = the loss of his mother，而不是 his mother's loss，不是他母亲的损失，而是他失去母亲。如果说成 She has never recovered her loss. 就是主格作用，因为 she 和 her 是同一人，her loss 就是她的损失。从他动词变来的名词，就能有这两种作用。

13. I could do with more leisure time.

有更多的闲暇我就能做了。（误）

要再多有一些闲暇就好了呀。（正）

注 can do = be satisfied with; be content with，满足，忍受。在 do 之前用 can 的过去 could 时，便有“要能得到就好了”，“想要”的意思，不过常出于戏言。That man could do with a shave.（那人要把胡子剃光就好了。）

14. She is now in a delicate condition.

她现在是在一种微妙的状态中。（误）

她现在是在怀孕中。（正）

注 分辨 a delicate condition 和 a delicate situation，后者意为“困难的局势”。

15. The lecturer carried his audience with him.

讲演者把他的听众带走了。（误）

讲演者博得全场喝彩。（正）

注 他动词 carry 除普通作“搬运”，“携带”解外，还有“吸引（听众或观众）”的意思，如 His acting carried the house.（他的演技

博得满场喝彩。)又有“获胜”(在攻城略地,选举,提案等时)的意思,如 **Our troops carried the enemy's fort.** (我军攻下了敌人的炮台。) **He carried the election.** (他当选了。) **The proposal was carried with acclamation.** (提案在大家鼓掌喝彩中通过了。)

16. **General Smith and my father are on first name basis.**

史将军和我父亲都是在第一名的基础上。(误)

史将军和我父亲是称呼名字的知交。(正)

注 **on**” basis 或 **on the basis of**; 意为“在”原则上”,“在”基础上”。**on an equal basis** (在平等的原则上)。**I am on a fifty-fifty basis with him.** (我和他平分。)

17. **The grey mare is the better horse.**

灰色的牝马是较好的马。(误)

牝鸡司晨。(正)

注 这是一句谚语,意为丈夫受到妻子的支配。**John Galsworthy** 在他的名著 **The Man of Property** 中说: **“Do you think he knows his own mind? He seems to me a poor thing. I should say the grey mare was the better horse!”** (你以为他有决心吗?我觉得他太可怜了。简直是牝鸡司晨呀!)

18. **How much did you have to pay down on the car?**

在那部车子上你一共花了多少钱?(误)

那部车子你第一次付出多少现钱?(正)

注 **down** = **in cash**, 在买东西时付出的现金,如 **You pay five thousand dollars down and the remainder in installments.** (你付五千元现钱,其余分期付款。)

19. **Rich and poor were sitting cheek by jowl in the audience.**

在听众中贫富分开坐着。(误)

穷人和阔人并肩坐在那里听讲。(正)

注 **cheek by jowl** 是一个成语，意为“极为接近”，“密接”，因为 **cheek** 是脸颊，而 **jowl** 是下颚，二者原是紧接在一起的。胖人因有下颚的垂肉 (**jowl**)，而变成双下巴 (**double-chinned**)。

20. **Keep your chin up.**

抬起头来。(误)

不要失去勇气。(正)

21. **The wind blows south.**

风向南边吹去。(误)

风从南边吹来。(正)

注 凡表示方位的字，如东南西北，用作副词时，其意为“朝那方向去”，如 **The river flows south.** (河水向南流去。) 唯有说到风的时候，就恰好相反，而指“从那方向来”。如赤壁之战那时正刮着东风，则说 **At that time the wind blew east.**

22. **There was no living in the island.**

那岛上无生物。(误)

那岛不能居住。(正)

注 “/There is no + 动名词” = “/We cannot + 原形不定词” = “/It is impossible + to-Infinitive”。

23. **A drowning man catches at a straw.**

一个落水的人抓住一根草。(误)

一个将溺死的人哪怕是一根草也要去抓。(正)

注 **catch a straw** 为实际抓住，**catch at a straw** 为还未抓到，不过努力想去抓罢了。这个成语说的 **catch at a straw** 是指 **an action of despair**，表示绝望时的心情。

24. **It was not that he had plenty of money.**

他并不是有很多的钱。(误)

那并不是因为他有很多的钱。(正)

注 这个 **it** 并不代表 **that** 以下的子句，而只是一个普通的代名词。在这种句式中常可将 **it is** 略去不说。这个 **that = because**，句首补上 **it is**，使成为一个完整的句子而已。说得更完全时，便是 **It is not that" but it is" that"**。代名词的 **it** 意为 **the reason** 或 **what I mean**。

25. The cavalry were well mounted.

骑兵都已上马待发了。（误）

骑兵都是骑的好马。（正）

注 **mount** 在此不作“骑”解，而是指“供给马匹”，又 **well** 非“善于”骑马，而是指“好”马而言。他例如 **The woman was well dressed**. 不是说那妇人善于穿衣，而是说她的服装都漂亮。

26. He wanted to go to sea.

他要到海边去。（误）

他要去当水手。（正）

注 **want** 作他动词用时，除“要”一个主要意思外，又还有“缺少”的意思，如 **He wants judgment**.（他缺少判断力。）作自动词用时则一定作“缺少”或“贫困”解，如 **The house wants in height**.（这房子不够高。）**We mustn't let him want in his old age**.（我们一定不要使他在老年贫困。）**wanting** 无论作形容词或介词用，都一定是作“缺少”解的，如 **Many pages of this book are wanting**.（这本书缺了很多页。）**Wanting mutual trust, friendship is impossible**.（无互信即无友谊。）

27. She is careless of her dress.

她不注意她的衣服。（误）

她不爱惜她的衣服。（正）

注 **careless of**，意为“不重视”，若谓“不修边幅”则应说 **careless about**。

28. None is so deaf as those that won't hear.

没有比听不见的人更聋的了。（误）

没有比不要听的人更聋的了。（正）

注 **won't = will not**, 表示不要, 不想要, 含有意志在内, 不是不能。

29. You must make good any loss.

你必须转祸为福。（误）

有任何损失你必须赔偿。（正）

注 **make good**, 有“赔偿”之意, 如 **Let me make good your loss.** (让我赔偿你的损失。) 又有“实践”之意, 如 **You must make good a promise.** (你必须实践诺言。)

30. Those apples are good and ripe.

那些苹果是优良且成熟的。（误）

那些苹果是很成熟了的。（正）

注 **good and**, 当作一个副词用, 意为“非常” (**very**), “完全” (**thoroughly**)。同类型的表现法还有 **nice and (= nicely)**, **rare and (= rarely)** 等, 如 **The car was going nice and fast. = The car was going satisfactorily fast.** (车子跑得够快了。)

31. The smoke betrayed where the dwelling lay.

烟将家屋毁坏了。（误）

炊烟起处有人家。（正）

注 动词 **betray** 有四义: (1) 出卖。如 **They betrayed their country.** (他们出卖了自己的国家。) **He was betrayed by his friend.** (他为朋友所出卖。)(2) 不忠, 辜负。如 **She betrayed her promise.** (她不守诺言。)**He will not betray our trust.** (他不负我们所托。)(3) 泄露。如 **He betrayed his friend's secret.** (泄友之秘密。)(4) 无意中暴露, 显示。如 **His behaviour betrayed his intention.** (他的行为显出企图。)**His mistakes betrayed his lack of education.** (错误显出他缺乏教育。) 上面的例句正是这第四义, 深山中的茅屋, 为树木所遮蔽, 外人看不出来, 但有炊烟升起时, 就显示出那里有人家了。

32. Curses come home to roost.

诅咒回到老巢。(误)

害人终害己。(正)

注 **roost** 原意为巢，引申为安歇处，说 **go to roost**，即为上床睡觉。例句说诅咒回到原来出发的地方，即是反而害了自己。

33. He is brave like anything.

他像任何东西一样的勇敢。(误)

其勇无比。(正)

注 **like anything**，意为拿任何东西来譬喻都不相称，引申而成“/非常”，/不劣于任何东西”之意。

34. It is said that his days are numbered.

据说他的日子都计算好了。(误)

据说他的死期已近。(正)

注 **number** 用作被动时，有“/为数可数”之意，即“/有限”，/无多”，/迫切”的意思。传说人寿有定，当生命将尽时，可以说 **His hour has come.** 或 **His course is run.**

35. It is time he began to work.

这时他已经开始工作了。(误)

现在是他应该开始工作的时候了。(正)

注 “/It is time + 主语 + 过去动词”，就和“/It is time for + 宾语 + 不定词”一样的意思。句中的过去动词是一种假设语气的用法，他例如 **It is time I was going.** (我早应该告辞了。)

36. He was lost in admiration.

他被人赞扬不置。(误)

他不胜羡慕之至。(正)

注 这句也可译为“他不胜赞赏”。be lost in, 原意是隐匿在什么东西中间而看不见了, 如山峰被云遮住, 就说 The summit is lost in the clouds. 说某人走失在人群中看不见了, 就是 He was lost (sight of) in the crowd. 所谓 be lost in, 即从 be lost sight of in 而来, 所以 He was lost in admiration. 原意是说在 admiration 中看不见自身, 也就是进入忘我的境界, 因羡慕或赞赏过甚, 而忘其自身的存在了。中国话说的“发愤忘食”, “得意忘形”中的忘字, 正是这种情形。

37. He was strong in his time.

他在一生中都很强健。(误)

他在年轻时身体强壮。(正)

注 in one's time (或 days), 意为 when he was young (或 at his best)。相反的说法则为 in one's age. (在老年)。

38. He may be drowned for all I care.

不顾我怎样当心, 他或许仍然会溺死的。(误)

他也许会溺死, 但我毫不介意。(正)

注 for all I care = I don't care if. 英文说的 for all 或 with all, 实有不顾 (notwithstanding) 之意, 如 For all his wealth, he is unhappy. (他虽有那么多的钱还是不快乐。)

39. There is no love lost between them.

他们之间并未失掉爱情。(误)

我们非常不和。(正)

注 这是委婉的说法, 意为他们之间根本无爱情可言, 换言之, There is hatred between them. (他们之间只有憎恨。)

40. He had words with her.

他和她谈过话了。(误)

他和她发生口角了。(正)

注 have words with 或 exchange words with, 为互相争论或口角之意。本例也可说成 They had words together. 英文的 words, 常有吵嘴的意思, 如 proceed from words to blows (由争论而至殴打。)

41. He was laid up for a few days.

他被安插好几天了。(误)

他病倒两三天了。(正)

注 因病或伤睡在床上, 英文说 lay up, 如 be laid up with illness (卧病); be laid up with a broken leg (因折腿不能起床)。

42. He took my advice in good part.

他接受了我的忠告最好的部分。(误)

他嘉纳了我的忠言。(正)

注 take something in good part, 意为“善意地接受”或“顺受”。相反的说法有 in bad (或 ill) part, 则为“不悦”或“逆受”。A 教授请假一日后通知学生翌晨照常上课, 在黑板上写道“Prof. A will meet his class tomorrow morning.”有顽皮学生恶作剧, 把 class 一字的第一个字母“c”擦去, 变成了 lass (意为少女或情妇), 教授见到不以为忤 (The professor took the practical joke in good part.) 进而再擦去“l”那个字母, 如是学生变成蠢材了。

43. It is a wise man that never makes mistakes.

聪明人从来不做错事。(误)

智者千虑必有一失。(正)

注 此句照字面解释, 似应照误句的译法, 不过这是一句古来的谚语, 凡“it is” that (who) ”的构造, 都含有“无论怎样” “都不免”的意思。参考下列各句: It is an ill wind that blows nobody good. (害于此者利于彼。人病医生喜。人死和尚乐。) It is an ill bird that fouls its own nest. (自诽其家者未之有也。家丑不可外扬。) It is a good workman that never blunders. (无论怎样好的工人有时都不免做错。) It is a long lane that has no turning. (否极



泰来。) It is a wise mother who knows her own child. (为母者不知其子之恶。) It is a good divine who follows his own instructions. (能说者不能行。)

44. We parted the best friends.

我们和最好的朋友离别了。(误)

我们在分别时是极好的朋友。(正)

注 part 是一个自动词, the best friends 为补语。

45. Twenty failed, myself among the rest.

有二十人落第,但我自己不在内。(误)

落第者二十名,我自己也是其中之一。(正)

注 the rest, 原意为“其余”, 如 as for the rest (至于其他之点)。但 among the rest, 则系一个成语, 意为 among the number (就在那个数目之中)。

46. I am in his debt.

我是他的债主。(误)

我借了他的钱。(正)

注 be in one's debt, 意为“有负于人”, “欠他的债”, 进而有“蒙恩”的意思。

47. He is dead, as I live.

他死了, 我还活着。(误)

他的的确确是死了。(正)

注 as I live 在此意为 indeed (的确), 是加重前面主句的。英文还有其他类似的说法, 如 as I am here, as the sun shines, as you stand here, as my nose is on my face 等等。

48. She will make you a good wife.

她将使你做一个好妻子。(误)

她将成为你的好妻子。（正）

注 这个 **make** 是完全他动词，采用了两个宾语，前面的 **you** 为间接宾语，后面的 **good wife** 为直接宾语。/母亲要替我买一只表”一语，如不译为 **Mother will buy a watch for me.** 时，也可译为 **Mother will buy me a watch.** 所以上举例句就是 **She will make a good wife for you** 的另一种说法。利用 **make** 这个他动词，我们还可以造出这样的妙句：**She made him a good husband because she made him a good wife.**（因为她成为他的好妻子，所以也把他做成了一個好丈夫。）第一个 **made** 为不完全他动词；第二个 **made** 为完全他动词。

49. **His picture does credit to a professional.**

他的画可增加专家的信用。（误）

他的画较之专家所作亦无逊色。（正）

注 **does credit to = be worthy of**，意为/有成为的价值”，/为之增光”，如 **She does credit to the educational system pursued here. (Thackeray)**（她为这里所追求的教育制度增光不少。）

50. **I am staying with a friend.**

我和一个朋友同住。（误）

我现在住在一个朋友家里。（正）

注 **stay with = stay at -'s house.** 用 **with** 时后接/人物”，用 **in** 时后接/地方”，用 **at** 时后接/房屋”。

51. **They made an example of the boy.**

他们以此童为模范。（误）

他们惩罚此童以儆其余。（正）

注 **make an example of one = punish one as an example to others. = make an example of the first offender as a warning to others.**（惩初犯者以儆效尤）。注意：如说 **set an example**，就是/示范”了，如 **He set an example to his inferiors.**（他为晚辈

示范。) You should set an example for the future. (你应以身作则, 垂法于后。)

52. We found them at table.

我发现他们在打牌。(误)

我看见他们在用餐。(正)

注 green table 是指赌博, 普通单说 table 一字, 多半是说用餐, 如 lay the table 摆刀叉准备用餐。keep a good table 餐食丰美。keep an open table 广纳食客。

53. I will make myself obeyed.

我要使自己服从。(误)

我自己说的话必将恪守。(正)

注 参考: I made myself understood in English. (我使别人能听懂我用英语说的话。) 例句中的 obeyed 的用法, 与上例中的 understood 相同。如说 I made you understand me. (我使你了解我。) 则与说 I will make others obey me. (我要使别人服从我。) 用法相同, understand 和 obey 二字, 都是略去了 to 的不定词。

54. But for hope, life would be short.

但是因为希望, 人生是短促的。(误)

如果没有希望, 人生苦短。(正)

注 but for = if it were not for 或 if it had not been for (如果没有), 可作为过去或过去完成的省略。这个 but 有否定之意, 后面如不接 for, 而接 that 也是一样, 如 Life could be short, but that hope prolongs it. (人生是短促的, 若非希望去延长它的话。)

55. He is ignorant to a proverb.

他不懂得这句谚语。(误)

他的无知是有名的。(正)

注 这句话又可说成 **His ignorance is a proverb.** 或 **He is a proverb for ignorance.** 所谓 **proverb**, 是指尽人皆知的事, 故 **to a proverb**, 意即尽人皆知, 达到尽人皆知的程度。参考: **He is ignorant to a wonder.** (他的无知令人吃惊。) 改用形容词也是一样, 如 **His generosity is proverbial = He is proverbial for his generosity.** (他的大量是人所共知的。)

56. **The man was generous to a fault.**

那人宽恕过失。(误)

他过于宽大。(正)

注 **to a fault = to excess; excessively**, 过度地, 极端地。他例如, **He is kind to a fault.** (他极端亲切。) 用上 **fault** 一字, 原意为即令有缺点也满不在乎。

57. **I have no opinion of that sort of man.**

我不赞成那种人的意见。(误)

我对于那种人毫无好感。(正)

注 句中的 **opinion** 一字, 不是“意见”, 而是“评价”的意思, 又可作“信用”解, 如 **I have no opinion of him.** (我不相信其人。) 他例如 **I have a very high opinion of him.** (我尊敬他。)

58. **He will finish it in no time.**

他将永远不能完成此事。(误)

他马上就会把这个做完。(正)

注 **in no time = in a moment.** 立刻。

59. **I have a long letter in hand.**

我手中拿着一封长信。(误)

我正在写着一封长信。(正)

注 如果是手中拿着的话, 应说 **I have a long letter in my hand**, 单说 **have in hand** 意为 **be engaged in** (正进行中, 担任着, 制驭着)。他例如 **He has a novel in hand.** (他正在写一部长篇小

说。) 参考: **at hand** (近, 在近边, 在手边), **by hand** (用手), **on hand** (现存着, 即来), **to hand** (到手, 收到)。

60. He thought all his own that she had.

他以为他自己所有的一切都是她的。(误)

他以为她所有的一切都是他自己的。(正)

注 **all** 是 **that she had** 的 **antecedant** (先行词)。

61. He is equal to any task whatever.

他对任何事情都是同等看待的。(误)

他对任何工作都可胜任愉快。(正)

注 **be equal to the work** = **be able to do the work**, 胜任愉快, 应付裕如。他例如 **He was equal to the occasion.** (他能应付那种局势。他能临机应变。) **She is very weak and not equal to a long journey.** (她身体很弱, 不堪长途跋涉。) **She does not feel equal to receiving so many visitors.** (她觉得力有未逮, 不能接待这么多的客人。)

62. He has to answer to me for the letter.

他必须回答我那封信。(误)

关于那封信他必须对我负责。(正)

注 **answer for**, 有/负责”的意思, 如 **answer for a crime** (对一种罪行负责。) **answer for his safety.** (负责他的安全。) **You will have to answer for your wrongdoings one day.** (将来有一天, 你会自食其恶果的。) **I can't answer for his honesty.** (我不能保证他的诚实。)

63. They did not answer to your explanation.

他们对你的解释没有回答。(误)

那些和你的解释不相符合。(正)

注 /回答”只能用 **answer** 一字, 不能加 **to**。英文说的 **answer to** = **correspond**, 即/符合”之意。主语的 **they**, 指事不指人。

64. The officer was broken for neglect of duty.

那军官破坏守则，忽视义务。（误）

那军官因玩忽职守而受降级处分。（正）

注 **break** = **reduce in rank**，是美国用法，说 **break an officer**，便是将他革职（**dismiss**），把他的官阶降级到士兵的地位。

65. They were killed to a man.

他们被杀得只剩下一个人了。（误）

他们被杀得片甲不留。（正）

注 **(all) to a man** = **all without exception**，（一个人都不留，全部），实连最后一人也包括在内，并无例外。他例如 **Though we expected some absences, the staff were there to a man.**（我们以为有人缺席，实则都到齐了。）

66. The village is on the side of the mountain.

那村庄在山旁。（误）

那村庄在山腰。（正）

注 山有阴阳两面（**two sides**），说在一面上，自然是在半山，若说在旁边，则是指在山下的意思，英文为 **by the side of**。

67. He was at once a soldier and a writer.

他立刻成为一个军人和作家了。（误）

他是一个军人，同时又是一个作家。（正）

注 英文成语 **at once**，原有两个意思，即“立刻”和“同时”，例句中后面跟了一个 **and**，说明是两件事，自然应作同时解。

68. She can play on the piano after a fashion.

她能随时俗的所尚弹奏钢琴。（误）

她能稍许弹弹钢琴。（正）

注 after a fashion = not satisfactorily but somehow or other, 乃委婉的贬词, 意为/稍许”, /略为”。他例如 She has a rough manner, but she is kind after a fashion. (她态度粗鲁, 但人还和善。) 如把不定冠词改变为定冠词, 就变成/追逐时髦”的意思了: after the fashion = in accordance with the prevailing style of dress, etc. 例如 This kind of hat is after the fashion. (这种帽子正在流行。)

69. He was worn out with company.

他已倦于交游了。(误)

来客太多使他疲于应接。(正)

注 company 在此作/客人”或/友伴”解, 例如 He is fond of company. (他好客。) Will you favour me with your company at dinner? (敬备菲酌, 恭候台光。)

70. Take this as an earnest of what is to come.

把这个当作未来热心从事的表示。(误)

拿这个去作为定金, 以后再行付清。(正)

注 earnest 作形容词用时意为/热心”或/认真”, 但作名词用时, 则意为/定金”、/保证”、/抵押”、/预兆”。

71. It is the man behind the gun that tells.

说话的是在大炮后面的人。(误)

胜败在人而不在武器。(正)

注 动词 tell = produce marked effect (见效, 奏功)。例如 Money is bound to tell. (钱到效生。) Every shot tells. (百发百中。) Years begin to tell upon him. (年老使他开始显得虚弱起来。)

72. He never calls a spade a spade.

他从来不把锄头叫做锄头。(误)

他从来不说直话。(正)

注 **call a spade a spade = speak quite plainly**（直言无隐。）原是打桥牌的用法，因为玩牌时手上有什么牌常不直说，分明手上是一张 **spade**，却故意说成 **club**，或 **heart**，或 **diamond**，以乱视听。

73. The proper study of mankind is man. (A. Pope)

人类能正当学习的只有男人。（误）

要正当地研究人类，就应以人为对象。（正）

注 句尾的 **man**，无冠词，仍然是指 **mankind**。

74. The Child is father of the Man. (W. Wordsworth)

孩子是男人的父亲。（误）

成人是由幼儿长大的。（正）

注 意指从幼儿的心中产生出大人的思想感情来，俗语说的三的儿童百岁魂，可知一粒小的种子可以长成一株参天乔木，现在倒过来说，成为 **paradox**（似非而是的雋语，如越帮越忙，越忙越慢之类），倒是很有趣的。句中 **Child** 和 **Man** 都用大写，不但表示强调，而且含有抽象的意味。

75. Every time he snickers, he sprays his audience, like a Chinese laundryman. (Erle Stanley Gardner)

每次他用目光扫射他的听众时，他都不免暗笑，像一个中国洗衣匠烫衣服的样子。（误）

每次他笑时唾沫横飞到他的对话者的身上，就好像中国人的洗衣工在烫衣时用口喷水一样。（正）

76. That picture flatters her.

那是逢迎她而画的。（误）

那画像美过她本人。（正）

77. He flatters himself that he speaks English as well as an Englishman.

他夸奖自己的英语说得和英国人一样好。（误）



他妄自以为他说英语跟英国人一样好。（正）

注 **flatter oneself that** = **feel satisfaction with oneself**, 妄自以为, 自鸣得意, 私自窃喜。

78. **It does not belong to me to dictate to my colleagues.**

要同僚给我笔录的事是不属于我的。（误）

我无权对同僚下命令。（正）

注 自动词的 **belong** 有四种用法：（1）关系上的所属，如 **He belongs to the Republican Party.**（他是共和党。）（2）主权上的所属，如 **This book belongs to me.**（这本书是我的。）（3）配合上的所属，如 **That cover belongs to this jar.**（那盖是这个瓶子的。）（4）地位上的所属，如 **This is a place where ( = to which) he doesn't belong.**（这是不合他身份的地方。）上例便是第四种用法。此字英国用法后常接介词 **to**, 美国用法则可接 **among, in, on, under, with** 各样不同的介词。至于动词 **dictate**, 也有二义：

（1）口述令人笔录，如 **I dictate letters to my clerk.**（我令书记笔录信件。）（2）指示，命令，指定，如 **The country that won the war dictated the terms of peace to the country that lost.**（战胜国向战败国指令讲和的条件。）**I cannot give order, nor will I be dictated to.**（既不能令，又不受命。）**It belongs to me to dictate to them.**（我有权命令他们。）**It is not for you to dictate to me.**（你不可以向我下命令。）**I will not be dictated to.**（我不受命。）

79. **Better not be at all than not be noble. (Tennyson)**

与其不能高尚，不如完全不要。（误）

与其忍辱偷生，不如光荣而死。（正）

宁为玉碎，不为瓦全。（正）

注 句前省略了 **It would be** 三字，有时也可看作省略了 **You had** 二字，他例如 **Better be a nettle in the side of your friend than his echo. (Emerson)**（与其做朋友的应声虫，不如做他腰间的荨麻，即不能万事逢迎。）

80. Homekeeping youth have ever homely wits.

守在家里的青年总有家常的机智。（误）

足不出国门的年轻人，常是心智平庸的。（正）

老是呆在国内的年轻人，总是头脑呆板的。（正）

81. I will see you hanged first.

我要看你先吊死。（误）

那里有人肯做这样的事。（正）

注 see 字后面略去了 that 的连词。这个 see 即 see to it 之略，也就是 take care 的意思。他例如 I will see you avenged.（必定使你可以报仇。）

82. She's the sort of woman who likes to be very much in evidence.

她是那种喜欢求证的女人。（误）

她是属于爱出风头的女人。（正）

注 in evidence = conspicuous 显然可见。例如 Smith is nowhere in evidence.（史密斯不见了。）

83. He doesn't know any better.

他不知道任何更好的。（误）

他居然有这样笨。（正）

注 know better = be wiser.

84. He is one of the institutions of the place.

他是当地机构之一。（误）

他是当地知名人物之一。（正）

注 institution 俗语有名人之意。他例如 John W. Gardner 说的，Self-congratulation should be taken in small doses. It is habitforming, and most human institutions are far gone in a

ddiction. (自歌自颂只可偶一为之, 多必成瘾, 而大多数的达官贵人都已成为瘾君子了。)

85. I'll eat my hat if I do.

如果我做的话, 我就要吃掉我的帽子。(误)

我决不做。(正)

86. It is the watch I am anxious to have mended.

这就是我系念着是否已修理好了的表。(误)

这就是我渴望去把它修理好的表。(正)

注 不可把 **have mended** 当作完成动词来看, 须知 **watch** 才是 **have** 的宾语, 全句用单句说时, 则成 **I am anxious to have the watch mended.**

87. I can make nothing of what he says.

我认为他说的话一文不值。(误)

他说的话我一点也不懂得。(正)

注 **make" of**, 普通是作 **consider as** (认为) 解的, 不过加上一个 **can**, 意思就大不相同了。**can make" of = understand** (了解)。

88. I did what I thought was wise.

我做了我想做的事是聪明的。(误)

我做了我以为是贤明的事。(正)

注 句中有句, **I thought** 是插进去的另一个句子, **was** 的主语是 **what**. 主句是 **I did what was wise**. 不可把 **what I thought** 当作 **was** 的主语。

89. He talked himself hoarse.

他用粗哑的声音说说。(误)

他说得声音都嘶哑了。(正)

注 hoarse 是补语，不是表手段，而是表结果的。全文意为 He talked till he was hoarse. 类例如 She cried herself blind. (眼睛都哭瞎了。)

90. I went an enemy, and returned a friend.

我去掉一个敌人，迎回一个朋友。(误)

我去时是敌，归时为友。(正)

注 enemy 和 friend 都是补语，与 I 一致。

91. He wants for something to read.

他想要有点什么阅读的东西。(误)

他没有东西阅读正感难过。(正)

注 单说 want，意为/要”，/需要”，/想得到”，是他动词，want for 意为/缺乏”，/短少”，是自动词。说 I do not want for a dictionary. 不是/不想要字典”，而是/不短少字典”。

92. She made light of her illness.

她减轻了自己的病。(误)

她轻视自己的病。(正)

注 make light of，轻视，瞧不起。

93. He looked thanks at her.

他看见她有感谢的样子。(误)

他以感谢的目光看着她。(正)

注 thanks 为 looked 的同系宾语，表现感激的是他，不是她。

94. There is nothing like home.

没有像家一样的东西。(误)

任何地方都没有家里好。(正)

注 There is nothing like, 没有比这更好的, 胜过这个的再没有了。

95. You have your own way to make.

你完全要照自己的意思去做。(误)

你非独力开拓你的前途不可。(正)

注 have one's own way, 意为“随心所欲”, “为所欲为”, 但 make one's own way, 则大不相同, 意为“努力上进”, “独力奋斗”。

96. She is well-informed for a woman of the old school.

以一个古老学校出身的妇人来说, 她是见闻广博的。(误)

以一个旧式的女人来说, 她是见闻广博的。(正)

注 well-informed, 见闻广博的, 消息灵通的。old school, 老派, 旧式。

97. He will do for a teacher.

他努力想做个教师。(误)

他适宜于做个教师。(正)

注 do = suit, 适合。

98. I am no man's man.

我不是谁何的人。(误)

我不是任何人的下走。(正)

注 等二个 man = servant.

99. He takes after his father more than his mother.

你从父亲遗传比从母亲更多。(误)

他比他的母亲更像他的父亲。(正)

注 take after, 相貌相似。

100. I have next to nothing to say about my childhood.

其次关于我孩童时代的事我无话可说。（误）

关于我的孩童时代我几乎没有什么可说的。（正）

注 **next to = almost**, 故 **next to nothing**, 意为“几乎什么都没有”; **next to impossible**, “几乎不可能”。

101. I shall leave here for good next year.

明年我将好好地离开这里。（误）

明年我离开这里不再回来。（正）

注 **for good** 或 **for good and all**, 意为“永久地”。

102. He was caught red-handed.

他被红手抓住了。（误）

他在现行中被捕。（正）

103. Every man cannot be a poet.

每个人都不能成为诗人。（误）

人非尽可为诗人。（正）

注 **every** 与否定连用时, 也和 **all**, **both** 等一样, 是部分否定而非全部否定。比较: 部分否定说 **Every couple is not a pair**. (配合得宜的夫妇少有。) 全部否定说 **No couple is a pair**. (配合得宜的夫妇没有。) 又 **All is not gold that glitters**. (一切闪耀的东西, 未必都是黄金。)

104. Don't cough more than you can help.

不要多咳除非你能忍住的时候。（误）

不要多咳除非你忍不住的时候。（正）

注 这句极普通的英语, 严格地说, 是完全不合理的。合理的说法应该是 **Don't cough more than you cannot help**, 因为固定的成语为 **cannot help** (不禁, 不得不), 例如 **I cannot help laughing**. (我不禁发笑。)

105. You are not playing the game.

你不是在竞技。（误）

你不公平。（正）

注 英国人讲究竞技精神（sportsmanship），在比赛时一定要 **A fair field and no favour, may the best man win.** 即所谓 **fair play**（公平）。这种精神运用到一般国民的日常生活上，凡事有不公平或不正直的地方，就说那不是竞技的办法。因此竞技一词就成为公平正直的代名词了。

106. The actress has her head turned.

那女优回过她的头来。（误）

那女优得意忘形。（正）

注 **have one's head turned**，因不当的赞扬或意外的成功，使人改变常态，自以为了不起。

107. I'm a Dutchman if it is true.

真的我就是个荷兰人。（误）

绝无其事。（正）

注 在英荷战争时，“荷兰人”这个名词，就成为一切虚伪的事情或可恨的事物的同义字了。说 **I would rather be a Dutchman**，是表示极强硬的拒绝。**I'm a Dutchman if I do.**（我决不做。）至今英文中的 **Dutch** 或 **Dutchman**，总是含有不好的意思，如 **Dutch courage**（虚勇，酒后之勇），**Dutch defence**（假防御），**Dutch feast**（主人先客而醉的宴会），**Dutch treat**（各自出钱的宴会），**Dutch widow**（妓女），**Dutch wife**（竹夫人），**Dutch auction**（拍卖者自动落价，直到有人愿出钱购买的拍卖）。

108. There are friends and friends.

那儿有许多朋友。（误）

朋友有种种不同，有益友，有损友。（正）

注 这表现法似乎是出自 **Bacon** 说的 **There are dinners and dinners.** 一语，现应用到其他一切事情上，如 **There are shopkeepers and shopkeepers.**（商人有好有坏。）

109. I wish peace could be saved at the eleventh hour.

我希望在第十一点钟和平可以得救。（误）

我希望在最后五分钟可以挽回和平。（正）

注 at the eleventh hour = at the last possible moment, 意为在最后一个可能的时机中。

110. I am now a little under the weather.

我现在有点像在露天之下。（误）

我现在有点不舒服。（正）

注 under the weather = unwell or depressed, 意为受天气影响而患病。

111. Somebody will have to break the ice.

有人一定会把冰敲破的。（误）

总有人得先开口说话。（正）

注 break the ice = make a beginning, or break through reserve or stiffness. 打破僵局，打破冷场。When you have broken the ice (= When you know him better after the first formalities) with him, you will like him. (你跟他混熟一点，不受拘束自由言行时，你就会喜欢他的。)

112. The boy cried because his schoolfellows called him names.

因为同学叫了他的名字，那孩子哭了。（误）

那孩子哭了，因为他的同学骂了他。（正）

注 call names 即 call bad names such as "Fool" and "Dunce", 骂人。他例如 He called me all kinds of names. (他对我任意辱骂。)

113. If he has a hobby let him ride it.

如果他有一匹小马，让他去骑吧。（误）



如果他有什么得意的话题，让他发挥好了。（正）

注 **hobby** 在古文中或方言中，意为 **pony**（小马），故木马或竹马就说 **hobbyhorse**。成语有 **side**（或 **mount**）**a hobby**，意为叨叨不绝地谈论自己癖好的问题，使人听得厌倦。**hobby** 现为本职以外的癖好的事物或职业，如集邮、种花、养鸟之类。

114. Why should I quarrel with my bread and butter?

我为什么要和牛油面包发生口角呢？（误）

我为什么要和自己的生计作对呢？（正）

注 **bread and butter**，指我们所依靠的糊口之资，例如与衣食父母的老板吵架，结果不免打破饭碗。

115. He used to lay down the law in a teahouse.

他从前常在茶馆里无法无天的乱闹。（误）

他从前常在茶馆里大发议论武断一切。（正）

注 **lay down the law** = **speak in tones of authority**，在辩论时，说话独断，装做是权威一般地说话。此外还有斥责，下命令等义。

116. Most people have a daily fight to keep the wolf from the door.

许多人每天都在奋斗，以免引狼入室。（误）

许多人每天都在与饥饿奋斗。（正）

注 **wolf** 为贫苦与饥饿的象征。

117. There is no come and go with him.

与他毫无往来。（误）

他非常固执，怎也劝不动他。（正）

注 **come and go**，为复合名词，意为“往来”，尤指交通。又可作“星移物换”解，在本例中用在 **no** 字之后，则为“无可变动”之意。

118. He has come off second best.

他以第二名获得成功。（误）

他失败了。（正）

注 普通说 **come off**, 为“成功”之意, **second best** 为“第二个最好的”, 但在本例中实为一种婉说法, 意指在竞争中失败了。

119. He has got out of the bed on the wrong side today.

他今天是从床后面爬起来的。（误）

他今天很不高兴。（正）

注 这句又可说成 **rise out of the wrong side of the bed**. 一开头就错误, 自然一天都不高兴。至于 **wrong** 一字, 常指不正当的事, 如说 **He was born on the wrong side of the blanket**. (私生子)。 **She laughs on the wrong side of the mouth**. (哭)。

120. Go it while you are young.

去吧, 当你正年轻的时候。（误）

青春不再, 趁早努力。（正）

注 **go** 在此为他动词。 **go it** = **act with vigour and daring advocate or speak strongly, live freely**, 故又可说 **go it blind**, (**fast, strong, bald-headed, etc.**) 例如 **I don't like to go it blind**. (毫不了解的事我不愿做。) **come** 也有同样的用法, 例如 **He comes it strong**. (过于夸大, 恭维过度, 行之过激等。) **You can't come it** = **You cannot succeed**. (你不会成功的。)

## 习题

试改正下列错误的译文:

1. My shoes are the worse for wear.

我的皮鞋更加不好穿了。

2. Everybody bridled at his remarks.

人人都尽量控制自己说的话语。

3. Fight shy of the theoretical method of approach to the learning of English.

从理论上讲，学英文的方法，就是要战胜害羞。

4. It is not women and Frenchmen only that would rather have their tongues bitten than bitted.

不只是妇女和法国人愿意用舌剑唇枪应付敌人。

5. He changed his condition only a week ago.

他的健康状况在一星期前改变了。

6. He got married accepting a leap-year proposal.

他在闰年接受提议而结婚了。

7. All my advice falls flat on him.

我的忠言使他平地跌倒。

8. You can always tell the somebodies from the nobodies at a cocktail party. The somebodies come late.

你可以报告鸡尾酒会有无人到或有人迟到。

9. The persons elected will sit till 31 Dec., 1973.

选出的人要坐到一九七三年底为止。

10. He is free with his money.

他有钱很自由。

11. An airplane was ordered from France.

从法国来定了一架飞机。

12. She has been a widow only six months.

她只做了六个月的寡妇。

13. Your loss is nothing to mine.

你的损失与我无关。

14. He started on New Year's Eve.

他在新年的晚上出发了。

15. He left his watch with me.

他丢下我和他的表走了。

16. He pretended not to be ill.

他没有假装生病。

17. /I think not, " said he.

他说：/我不以为然。”

18. It is two years come Christmas.

耶诞日来过两年了。

19. Men of millions are possessed with the idea.

几百万人都具有这种思想。

20. He is behind time.

他已落伍。

21. He went up stairs.

他上二楼去了。

22. One fine morning he found himself a ruined man.

在一个晴天的早晨他发现自己衰颓了。

23. His English leaves nothing to be desired.

他的英文毫无希望。

24. Take care that all is right.

当心一切就好了。

25. He measured his length on the floor as soon as he entered the room.

他一进房就在地板上测量了他的长度。

26. We searched him to no purpose.

我们寻找他毫无目的。

27. I met a woman with child when I came home.

我回家时遇见一个带着孩子的妇人。

28. He succeeded to a large property.

他事业成功获得一笔大的财产。

29. He caught me by the hand.

他用手抓住了我。

30. What shall I go in?

我要加入什么？

31. He says what he does not mean.

他说话毫无意思。

32. No alcohol this evening.

今天晚上没有酒精了。

33. What does c-a-m-e-l spell?

骆驼怎样拼的？

34. He is tired of the work.

他工作得疲劳了。

35. Life is often compared to a voyage.

生命好与航行比较。

36. Better to reign in hell than serve in heaven. (Milton)

最好统治地狱，不要服事天堂。

37. Iowa's Governor Harold Hughes had withdrawn his favorite son candidacy 12 days ago and shortly afterwards announced his support for Senator Eugene J. McCarthy of Minnesota.

爱荷华州州长休士已经把他宠爱的儿子的候补资格撤销，随后不久就宣布支持明尼苏达州的参议员麦卡席。

38. If the election were held today, we would not have a prayer.

如果今天举行选举的话，我们就不去做祷告。

39. I would rather have his room than his company.

我宁肯要他的房间，不要他的公司。

40. That women are bad drivers is open to question.

说女人不会驾车是公开的问题。

41. The lost child was soon identified.

那失去的孩子很快就认为系同一的了。

42. He begged to be remembered to you.

他求你记得他。

43. I have seen nothing of him of late.

我近来没有看见他的什么东西。

44. He shared the little he had with the poor.

他把和穷人共有的少许东西全分配完了。

45. What you cannot afford to buy, do without.

不能买到的东西，就不必去买了。

46. What is done cannot be undone.

自己做了的事不能说未做。

47. She believed he said so honestly.

她相信他说得像真的一样。

48. They have been broken into a dozen pieces.

它们打碎成十二片了。

49. They that know nothing fear nothing.

可怕的事物他们全不知道。

50. The picture was painted after Wu Chang-shih.

这画是吴昌硕以后画的。

51. He knows what it is to have a boy idle.

他知道有一个懒惰的孩子是怎么一回事。

52. It is no proof that one cannot do a thing because one does not like it.

因为不喜欢就不能做，这是不能证明的。

53. I bought these books new.

我新近买了这些书。

54. He borrowed a horse of a friend.

他借了朋友的马。

55. He covered ten miles an hour.

他一小时包括了十英里。

56. He helped himself to the wine.

他帮忙自己饮酒。

57. I believe in rough, manly sports.

我信仰激烈的男性的运动。

58. He did not see the movie out.

他没有看那电影演出。

59. Eighty poor fellows perished.

有八十个穷人死亡。

60. He said nothing to that effect.

他说的话一点效果也没有。

.



## 叁 翻译实例

### I 中译英

#### (1) 郑燮致弟书

##### 【原文】

吾意欲筑一土墙院子，门内多栽竹、树、草花，用碎砖铺曲迳<sup>(1)</sup>一条，以达二门<sup>(2)</sup>。其内茅屋二间，一间坐客，一间作房，贮图书史籍，笔墨砚瓦<sup>(3)</sup>，酒董<sup>(4)</sup>茶具其中，为良朋好友，后生小子论文赋诗之所。其后住家，主屋三间，厨房二间，奴子屋<sup>(5)</sup>一间，共八间，俱用草苫<sup>(6)</sup>，如此足矣。或曰，此等宅居甚适，只是怕盗贼，不知盗贼亦穷民耳。开门延入，商量分惠，有什么便拿什么去。若一无所有，便王献之之青毡<sup>(7)</sup>，亦可携取质<sup>(8)</sup>百钱救急也。吾弟当留心此地，为狂兄<sup>(9)</sup>娱老之资<sup>(10)</sup>，不知可能遂愿否？

##### 【译文】

I am thinking of building a house enclosed with earthen walls, in which plenty of bamboos, trees and various flowers should be planted. There should be a curved path paved with broken bricks leading to the porch. There are two spacious rooms behind the porch, one used as drawing-room and the other as study. Books and paintings, records and documents, writing-brushes and inksticks as well as inkstones, wine utensils and tea-sets are to be put in these two rooms. My intimate friends and young people may come here to discuss literature and make poems. Behind these there is the residence consisting of three bedrooms for the family, two rooms as kitchen, and one as servant quarters, so the total number of rooms in this house is eight, under the same thatched roof. That will be

quite enough for me. Some one says that such a house is comfortable to live in, but the trouble is that thieves might easily break in, too. But he doesn't realize that thieves are but poor people. If they should come, I would open the door and invite them to step in, so as to talk over the distribution of my belongings. They may take whatever I have. In case there is nothing at all worth taking, I would give them the hereditary blue blanket as what Wang Shien-tze had possessed, with which they may pawn for a hundred cashes to meet their urgent need. You must know, my dear brother, that this place will serve as the last resort to spend my peaceful latter years, but I wonder if I could be able to fulfill it or not.

### 【注释】

(1) 碎砖铺曲径 (同径): crazy pavement. (2) 二门: 门廊, porch. (3) 砚瓦: 中国的书画家喜欢用汉瓦或汉砖作砚。inkstone. (4) 酒董: 酒器。wine utensils. (5) 奴子屋: 仆人住的地方。servant quarters. (6) 草苫: thatched. (7) 王献之之青毡: 晋人王子敬被盗时, 只说/那铺青毡是我家祖传的东西, 请你特别给我留下, 其余你要的东西, 随便你拿去好了”。the hereditary blue blanket as Wang Shien-tze had possessed. (8) 质: 典当。pawn. (9) 狂兄: 板桥自称的谦词。I. (10) 娱老之资: 娱老意为养老。资在此为凭借之物。last resort for my old age.

## (2) 中国的山水画

### 【原文】

要说明山水画<sup>(1)</sup>的布置, 先得说明山水画的构图<sup>(2)</sup>原理。原来山水画的构图, 不是对景写实, 而是用鸟瞰<sup>(3)</sup>的方法, 将真景缩小<sup>(4)</sup>, 然后加以描写的。眼睛<sup>(5)</sup>中所能看到的, 只有一重<sup>(6)</sup>山或一重水, 这样简单的景物, 是不容易构成山水画面的。作画的人, 得走入山水的深处, 遍观所有的风景<sup>(7)</sup>, 回到家里, 把所经历的地方, 像画地图似的缩写出来, 还得把自己放的很大<sup>(8)</sup>, 把风景缩的很小, 好像看假山<sup>(9)</sup>似的, 才能构成/咫尺千里”<sup>(10)</sup>的画面。

### 【译文】

In order to explain the disposition of a landscape painting, we have to make clear at first the principle of its composition. Originally the composition of landscapes is not to paint a real picture as we see it, but to depict by means of a bird's eye view, namely, to diminish the subject matter in a nutshell. What we can see with our naked eyes is generally only a single layer of mountains or rivers. This of course is not enough for us to compose a scene of the landscape. The one who paints ought to go into the heart of mountains and rivers, inspecting all the scenery before he puts down from memory on returning home the whole scope of his travelled regions as a miniature as he draws a map. In doing so, he has to enlarge himself as big as possible and contract the scenery as small as a rock-work to look upon, then he can for the first time compose a picture of thousand miles represented on a few-foot piece of paper or the like.

### 【注释】

(1) 山水画: landscape painting. (2) 构图: composition. (3) 鸟瞰: a bird's eye view. (4) 缩小: diminish. (5) 眼睛: 指肉眼。our naked eyes. (6) 重: layer. (7) 遍观所有的风景: inspect all the scenery. 注意 scenery 指一个地方或某一带的风景, 不可写成复数如山景则说 mountain scenery, 海岸风光则说 coast scenery, 风景如画则说 picturesque scenery. 又如 The scenery of West Lake is impressive. 西湖的山水留给游人深刻的印象。  
(8) 放大: enlarge. (9) 假山: rock-work. (10) 咫尺千里: a picture of thousand miles represented on a small piece of paper.

(3) 为学

### 【原文】

天下事有难易乎<sup>(1)</sup>? 为之, 则难者亦易矣; 不为, 则易者亦难矣。人之为学<sup>(2)</sup>, 有难易乎? 学之, 则难者亦易矣; 不学, 则易者

亦难矣。

蜀<sup>(3)</sup>之鄙<sup>(4)</sup>有二僧：其一贫，其一富。贫者语于富者曰：/吾欲之<sup>(5)</sup>南海<sup>(6)</sup>，何如？”

富者曰：/子<sup>(7)</sup>何恃<sup>(8)</sup>而往？”

曰：/吾一瓶一钵<sup>(9)</sup>足矣。”

富者曰：/吾数年来欲买舟<sup>(10)</sup>而下，犹未能也。子何恃而往！”

越明年<sup>(11)</sup>，贫者自南海还，以告富者，富者有惭色<sup>(12)</sup>。

西蜀之去南海，不知几千里也<sup>(13)</sup>。僧富者不能至<sup>(14)</sup>，而贫者至焉。人之立志<sup>(15)</sup>，顾<sup>(16)</sup>不如蜀鄙之僧哉！（彭端淑）

### 【译文】

There is nothing difficult for us to do in the world. If we do it, the difficult thing will be easy; if we don't, the easy thing will be difficult. There is nothing difficult for us to learn. If we learn it, the difficult thing will be easy; if we don't, the easy thing will be difficult.

There lived two monks in the western frontier of Szechuan, one poor and the other rich. One day the poor monk said to the rich one.

/I want to go to Nanhai, what do you think? ”

/On what do you depend for going there? ” asked the rich monk.

/A bottle and a basin will suffice me, ” answered the other.

/Well, I have been meaning to go there by boat for many years, but failed. How could you go without any support! ”

After one year the poor monk returned from Nanhai, and told his story to the rich one, who was ashamed to hear it.

It is so many thousand miles from the western frontier of Szechuan to Nanhai. The rich monk failed to go, but the poor one went. Couldn't we make up our minds to do something as the poor monk of the western frontier of Szechuan did?

### 【注释】

(1) 因为一国有一国的特殊语法，翻译是决不能完全照字面直译的，例如本文第一句：/天下事有难易乎？”用白话说，便是世界上的事有没有难和易的分别，如照此英译为 **Is there a difference between difficulty and easiness in things of the world?** 则不合英美语法的表现方法，所以应该意译，看英美人对于这样的意思是怎样表达的，我们就怎样来译，不必拘泥于原文字句。注意 **nothing difficult**，不能说成 **difficult nothing**，因为在 **thing** 字上已有一个形容词，就不能再加别的字。他例如 **something Chinese**（一点中国的东西）也是同样的用法。普通的情形，当然可以说 **not a difficult thing**（不是一件难事）。(2) 为学：**to learn**。(3) 蜀：古地名，即今四川省。(4) 鄙：指边鄙地方，可译 **the frontier districts**，或简说 **frontier**。(5) 之：去。(6) 南海：不可译作 **the South Seas**（南半球的海洋；南太平洋），因为此处系指普陀山，南海观世音菩萨说法处，故音译为 **Nanhai**。(7) 子：你。(8) 恃：依赖，可译作 **depend on**。(9) 钵：和尚盛饭的用具叫钵。用饭钵来化缘的和尚称托钵僧。(10) 买舟：即买船票的意思，在此是指坐船。(11) 越明年：意即经过了一年，故译为 **after one year**。(12) 惭色：意为惭愧之色，译为 **to be ashamed** 即可，色字不宜译出。(13) 不知几千里也：意即有好几千里，故译为 **many thousand miles**。文学作品对于距离不必太准确，否则应以 **li**（里）代 **mile**（英里）。(14) 至：在此与其译成 **reach**，不如译为 **go**，更为适合说话的语气。(15) 立志：下决心做事。**to make up one's mind**。(16) 顾：反而。此处只好译成 **Couldn't** 的反问语气。

### (4) 光与色

### 【原文】

目<sup>(1)</sup>睹物而知形<sup>(2)</sup>，然形非色<sup>(3)</sup>不见；色非光不见。故色必资乎<sup>(4)</sup>光；画资乎日，夜资乎月星与火。光盛则色显，光微则色

隐。色依<sup>(5)</sup>光以现其形：色浓则明，色淡则藏；色立乎<sup>(6)</sup>异，则相得益彰<sup>(7)</sup>，色傍乎同，则若存若亡。（郑光复：《镜镜痴》）

### 【译文】

We know the shape of a thing when we see it, but its shape will not be seen if it has no color. The color of a thing will not be seen if there is no light. So the color for us to see has to depend on light, just as the day on the sun; or the night on the moon and stars, and fire. When the light is strong, the color becomes apparent; and when the light is dim, the color becomes obscure. A thing shows its shape by its color: it is conspicuous when its color is deep; it is invisible when its color is light. There will be a striking contrast if the colors of the things are quite different while their existence will not be felt if their colors are almost the same.

### 【注释】

（1）目：指我们的眼睛，英文要说“人”看，不要说“眼睛”看，故不可译成 the eye 或 our eyes. （2）形：外形，我们见到一件东西的样子。shape; form. （3）色：由一种特殊波长的光线所产生的效果。或是由于分解了的光线在我们眼睛上所产生的感觉。由此可知光与色的关系。 （4）资乎：depend on; help. （5）依：by means of; by. （6）立乎：存在。be. （7）相得益彰：得到陪衬，愈为明显。help each other to become more conspicuous.

## （5）教学相长

### 【原文】

虽<sup>(1)</sup>有嘉肴<sup>(2)</sup>，弗食<sup>(3)</sup>，不知其旨也<sup>(4)</sup>；虽有至道<sup>(5)</sup>，弗学，不知其善也。是故学，然后知不足<sup>(6)</sup>；教，然后知困<sup>(7)</sup>。知不足；然后能自反<sup>(8)</sup>也，知困；然后能自强<sup>(9)</sup>也。故曰，教学相长<sup>(10)</sup>也。（《礼记》）

### 【译文】

Even when there is good food, you will not know its deliciousness, if you don't taste it; even when there is a good doctrine, you will not know its virtue, if you don't learn it. Therefore, to learn makes us realize our deficiency, and to teach makes us know the difficulties. Having realized our deficiency, we may then come to reflect; having known the difficulties, we may be able to strengthen ourselves to overcome them. So, we say, to teach is to learn.

### 【注释】

(1) 虽：即使。even. 不是虽然，故不可译成 though. (2) 佳肴：table delicacy; viands. 简易地说 good food. (注意 food 不可用复数)。 (3) 弗食：弗，作“不”字解。食，作“品尝”解。这句翻译时，应加假设语气及主语上去。在这种副词子句中，要用现在动词以代未来动词。 (4) 不知其旨也：you will not know its deliciousness. 不可译成 delicacy 或 delicacies，因为此字意为“佳肴”，而不是“美味”。 (5) 至道：good doctrine. (6) 不足：deficiency. (7) 困：difficulty. (8) 自反：即反省。reflect. (9) 自强：strengthen oneself. (10) 相长：benefit each other.

(6) 翻译文欠通顺

### 【原文】

辜鸿铭著《张文襄幕府纪闻》有题为《不解》一则云：

昔年陈立秋侍郎<sup>(1)</sup>兰彬，出使<sup>(2)</sup>美国，有随员<sup>(3)</sup>徐某<sup>(4)</sup>，夙不解西文<sup>(5)</sup>。一日，持西报展览<sup>(6)</sup>颇入神<sup>(7)</sup>。使馆译员<sup>(8)</sup>见之，讶然<sup>(9)</sup>曰：/君何时谙识<sup>(10)</sup>西文乎？”徐曰：/我固<sup>(11)</sup>不谙。”译员曰：/君既不谙西文，阅此奚为<sup>(12)</sup>？”徐答曰：/余以为阅西文固不解，阅诸君之翻译文亦不解。同一不解<sup>(13)</sup>，固不如阅西文之为愈也。”至今传为笑柄<sup>(14)</sup>。

### 【译文】

An Anecdote from Ku Hung-ming's /Hearsay Accounts at the Secretariate of Chang Tzu-tung."

Many years ago a Mr. Hsu was in the suite of Chen Lan-ping, who had been a vice minister at home and was then sent on a mission to the USA. Though quite ignorant of English, Mr. Hsu was seen one day holding in his hand an English newspaper, and reading it with absorbing interest. The interpreters of the Legation who had witnessed the scene asked him in surprise:

“/When did you learn English?”

“/I have not yet learned it,” the other replied.

With great astonishment, the interpreters went on: “/Since you don’t know English, why on earth should you read the paper?”

“/I cannot understand English,” Mr. Hsu answered quietly, “/nor can I understand your translation. So I think it’s better to read the original than to read the translation of yours, because both are Greek to me.”

This has been told as a laughing-stock since then.

### 【注释】

(1) 侍郎：官名。vice minister. (2) 出使：be sent on a mission to. (3) 随员：be in the suite of. (4) 徐某：a Mr. Hsu. (5) 夙不解西文：素来不懂得英文。quite ignorant of English. “/夙”可译作 **from the first** 或 **originally**, 但不必译出。(6) 展览：打开来看，但不是真的阅读，英文可说 **pretend to read** (佯装阅读)，但仍以不如此明说为宜。(7) 颇入神：对某事心醉神迷。with ecstasy; be in (go into) ecstasies over. (8) 译员：interpreter; translator. (9) 讶然：表示疑怪的样子。in surprise; in wonder. (10) 谙识：懂得。understand. (11) 固：surely; certainly; of course. (12) 奚为：为什么。why. (13) 同一不解：both are Greek to me. (14) 笑柄：laughing-stock.

(7) 学无所用



### 【原文】

鲁人身<sup>(1)</sup>善织屨<sup>(2)</sup>，妻善织缟<sup>(3)</sup>，而欲徙<sup>(4)</sup>于越。或<sup>(5)</sup>谓之曰：/子必穷矣。”鲁人曰：/何也？”曰：/屨为履之<sup>(6)</sup>也，而越人跣行<sup>(7)</sup>；缟为冠之<sup>(8)</sup>也，而越人被发<sup>(9)</sup>。以子之所长<sup>(10)</sup>，游于不用之国，欲使无穷，其可得乎？”

### 【译文】

A native of Lu was good at making hempen sandals and his wife at weaving silk taffeta; and they intended to move to the State of Yueh. Someone told them that they would become poor if they should do so. The native of Lu asked him, /Why do you think so? ” The other said: /You know sandals are made for the feet, but the people of Yueh are barefooted. The silk taffeta is for the head, but the people of Yueh are bareheaded. Now you go to a country where your special skill is not wanted. How can it be that you will not become poor? ”

### 【注释】

(1) 身：本身，本人。oneself. (2) 屨：（音句）麻履。hempen sandals. Cf. 屣：草履。straw sandals. 履：皮屨。leather shoes, 即俗称革履。(3) 缟：白色生绢。缟冠，a white silk cap. (4) 徙：迁居。move. (5) 或：有人。somebody. (6) 履之：something for the feet to wear. (7) 跣行：barefooted. (8) 冠之：something for the head to wear. (9) 被发：bareheaded. (10) 子之所长：what you are skilled in; what you specialize in.

(8) 画蛇添足

### 【原文】

楚有祠<sup>(1)</sup>者，赐其舍人<sup>(2)</sup>卮酒<sup>(3)</sup>。舍人相谓曰：/数人饮之<sup>(4)</sup>不足，一人饮之有余。请画地为蛇，先成者<sup>(5)</sup>饮酒。”一人蛇先成，引酒且饮之<sup>(6)</sup>，乃<sup>(7)</sup>左手持卮，右手画蛇，曰：/吾能为之足<sup>(8)</sup>！”未成！一人之蛇成，夺其卮，曰：/蛇固<sup>(9)</sup>无足，子<sup>(10)</sup>安

能<sup>(11)</sup>为之足？”遂饮其酒。为蛇足者，终亡<sup>(12)</sup>其酒。（《战国策》）

### 【译文】

A native of Chu after worshiping his ancestors gave his retainers a pot of wine. One of the retainers said, /It's insufficient for all of us, but too much for one of us. I suggest, therefore, that we draw snakes on the ground, and the one who first finishes drawing the snake will win the pot of wine." When one retainer had completed his drawing, he took the pot to drink. As he held it in his left hand, he continued to draw the snake with his right hand, saying: /I can add feet to it." While he was adding feet to his snake, another man who had then drawn his snake snatched the pot from his hand, protesting: /No snake has feet. How can you add feet to it? " Then he drank the wine. The man who added feet to the snake lost his prize at last.

### 【注释】

(1) 祠：春祭叫作祠。祠者即祭祖的人。(2) 舍人：古时贵族家里的门客，侍从，家臣。(3) 卮酒：即一卮酒。卮(goblet)为古时有足无柄的酒杯。(4) 之：指卮酒。(5) 先成者：先画好一条蛇的人。(6) 引酒且饮之：拿起酒来打算要喝。引作取解。且作将解。(7) 乃：竟然；居然。(8) 为之足：给它添上脚。(9) 固：本来，实在。(10) 子：你。(11) 安能：怎么能够。(12) 亡：失去。

(9) 嗟来食

### 【原文】

齐大饥，黔敖为食于路<sup>(1)</sup>，以待饿者而食之<sup>(2)</sup>。有饿者蒙袂<sup>(3)</sup>辑屣<sup>(4)</sup>，贸贸然<sup>(5)</sup>来，黔敖左<sup>(6)</sup>奉食，右<sup>(7)</sup>执饮<sup>(8)</sup>曰：/嗟！来食<sup>(9)</sup>。”扬其目而视之曰：/予惟不食嗟来之食，以至于斯也。”从而谢焉<sup>(10)</sup>，终不食而死<sup>(11)</sup>。曾子闻之曰：/微与<sup>(12)</sup>，其嗟也可去，其谢也可食。”（《檀弓》）

### 【译文】

There was a severe famine in Chi. Chien Ao had food ready at the roadside for the starvelings to eat. A famished man appeared staggering, covered his face with the sleeve because of shame, and his shoes in hand as he was too weak to wear them. He was halted by Chien Ao, who held food in his left hand and drink in the right, saying: /Holla, come, you." The man raised his eyes and looked at him. /I have become thus only because I don't want to eat anything given in such a manner," he said. So Chien Ao made an immediate apology to him for not being so polite at first, but still the man refused to take any food and died with hunger at last. On hearing this, Tse ng Tzu said, /It's a pity for him to do so. He might have gone away when offered food as alms, but he should have eaten when apologized."

### 【注释】

(1) 为食于路：在路边上准备饮食。(2) 食之：食为动词，之指饿者。(3) 蒙袂：以衣袖蒙着面孔。(4) 辑屣：用手提着鞋子。(5) 贸贸然：好像瞎子一样。贸贸或写成眊眊。(6) 左：左手。(7) 右：右手。(8) 执饮：拿着饮料。(9) 嗟来食：嗟，即嗟乎，或咨嗟，指叹息的声音。嗟来食，意为喊他来吃，因哀悯贱视而施与食物，丝毫没有尊敬的意思，故使有自尊心的人，宁饿死也不吃这种嗟来食。(10) 从而谢焉：因此便向他道歉。(11) 不食而死：即饿死。die with hunger. 在 die 字后可接三个不同的介词，应加分别：

1. die with hunger (fatigue, thirst, sword) ; 2. die from a disease (a wound, an accident, repletion, broken heart) ; 3. die of cancer (poison, an illness, old age, undernourishment, overwork, too much whisky)。(12) 微与：不必啦。微作无或非字解。

(10) 老与少

### 【原文】

老年为少年之过来人，少年为老年之候补者，老与少，只不过时间上之差别而已。然中国习惯，对老少之间，往往划有无形界限。在客观上，有时重老而轻少，有时重少而轻老。在主观上，老者自恃其老，少年自矜其少。几千年来，遂形成老者自以为持重<sup>(1)</sup>练达<sup>(2)</sup>而菲薄<sup>(3)</sup>少年为少不更事<sup>(4)</sup>；而少年自以为新锐精进<sup>(5)</sup>，而凌轹<sup>(6)</sup>老者为老朽昏庸<sup>(7)</sup>。此真所谓偏颇<sup>(8)</sup>两失之见也！

曩梁任公在其《少年中国》一文中，对老年人与少年人曾有一适当对比。其言曰：/老年人如夕照，少年人如朝阳；老年人如瘠牛，少年人如乳虎；老年人如僧，少年人如侠；老年人如字典，少年人如戏文<sup>(10)</sup>；老年人如鸦片烟，少年人如白兰地酒；老年人如别行星之陨石<sup>(11)</sup>，少年人如大海洋之珊瑚岛；老年人如埃及沙漠之金字塔，少年人如西伯利亚之铁路；老年人如秋后之柳，少年人如春间之草；老年人如死海之潴为泽<sup>(12)</sup>，少年人如长江之初发源” ” ”

观此，则知老年与少年，各有所长，各有其用，如能祛除<sup>(13)</sup>成见，同为国家效力，则裨益民族，定非浅鲜。（血轮：《绮情楼杂记》之一）

### 【译文】

The aged are the antecedents of the young, and the young are the candidates of the aged. The difference between age and youth is only a matter of time. But, according to the Chinese custom, there is always an invisible line of demarcation between them. Objectively speaking, sometimes the aged are held in esteem and the young are made light of; sometimes it is just the other way round. Subjectively speaking, the aged are self-conceited because of their good old age, while the young think no small beer of their own youth. For thousands of years it has been assumed that the aged, thinking themselves experienced and more skilful, look down upon the young for their greenness in worldly affairs, while the young, thinking themselves fresh in life and more energetic, call the aged old fogies. Either of these views, of course, is far from being impartial.

Liang Chi-chao in an article entitled "Young China" made a proper contrast between the aged and the young. He said: "The old man is like the setting sun; the young man, the morning sun. The old man is like a lean ox; the young man, a cub tiger. The old man is like a monk; the young man, a knight. The old man is like a dictionary; the young man, the text of a play. The old man is like opium; the young man, brandy. The old man is like a shooting star; the young man, a coral island. The old man is like the pyramid of Egypt; the young man, the Siberian railroad. The old man is like the willow after autumn; the young man, the grass in spring. The old man is like the dead sea that turns into a lake; the young man, the source of the Yangtze River" " "

From this, we know that the aged and the young both have their own merits and uses. If they will cast away their prejudices and work together for the country, their services to the people shall be immense. (Hsueh Lun: Old Age and Young)

### 【注释】

(1) 持重：举止庄重的意思，成语有“老成持重”的说法。(2) 练达：精熟通达。(3) 菲薄：瞧不起；轻视。(4) 少不更事：年少的人历事不多。更事当经历讲。(5) 新锐精进：精明强干，活力充沛。(6) 凌轹：原意为车轮辗过，引申为用权势压迫人的意思。成语有“仗势凌轹”一语。在此借用为欺侮轻蔑。(7) 老朽昏庸：指因年老而糊涂无能。(8) 偏颇：不正不平，侧重一方面。(9) 瘠：瘦。(10) 戏文：戏剧的台词。(11) 陨石：即流星。(12) 涪为泽：成语涪为大泽，即积储许多水而成湖海。(13) 祛除：除去。祛音驱，作除去解，如祛惑，祛弊等。

(11) 雕刻奇技

### 【原文】

今日善雕刻者甚多，但重在神似，不在细巧。昔苏州有杜士元者，擅雕刻，号称鬼工，能将橄榄核或桃核雕刻成舟，作苏东坡游赤

壁故事。舟虽小，而桅千两橹艄篷及舵篙帆樯毕具，两面窗榻，俱能移动开阖。舟中三人，东坡为长髯布袍，佛印则着禅衣对坐，几上纵横列骨牌三十二张，若将搜抹者然。旁有手持洞箫启窗外望者，则相从之客也。船头有童子持扇烹茶，旁置一小盘，陈茶杯三盏。舟师三人，两坐一卧，细逾毛发。

每一舟成，人争相购。然士元好饮，终年游宕，不轻易出手，惟贫困时，始能镂刻，否则虽千金不能致也。

清高宗南巡，于行宫见其作品，大加赞赏，因三召至启祥宫，赐金帛甚厚。顾士元处禁垣中，终日闷闷，欲出不可，因诈痴，始得放归。

按桃核不过两指头大耳，而能雕出如许人物，诚非气静神完者莫办，谁谓古人艺术，不逮今人！（血轮：《绮情楼杂记》之一）

### 【译文】

Today there are many good engravers. But they lay emphasis on the very moral of what they engrave, and not on the fineness of it. Once, there lived in Soochow a man whose name was Tu Shih-yuan. He was so skilful at engraving that people called him supernatural craftsman. He could engrave on an olive or a peach stone the story of Su Tungpo making an excursion to the Red Cliff. Though the boat is very small, it has its mast and rigging, sculls, poles, and what not. The windows on either side of it are movable. Inside the cabin, there are three people. Su Tungpo with a long beard and in flowing robes, sits opposite to Fu Ying, the accomplished monk, who wears a Buddhist gown. Thirty-two pieces of dominos lying scattered on the desk show that a game is being played. By their side a man, flute in hand, opens the window to look out. He is their guest who joins them in the excursion. On her bow a boy with a fan in his hand is making tea near the stove, and by his side is a tray with three cups. Besides there are three boatmen, two sitting and one reclining' all life-like.

Every time he had finished a boat, people contended for buying it. When Tu Shih-yuan was indulging himself in win

e, and idling away his time, you would find it no easy matter to have him cut such a boat. He would do the engraving only when he was hard up. If he was not short of money, he would refuse to do it for the wealth of a prince.

Kao Chung, the emperor of the Ching Dynasty, saw Tu Shih-yuan's skilled handiwork at travelling-lodges when he was touring south, and was very pleased with it. Then Shih-yuan was summoned to the palace, and the Emperor bestowed on him pots of money and silk. While living in the Forbidden City, Tu Shih-yuan was sad and depressed; for he was not allowed to wander beyond its walls. So he feigned to be mad until he was set free.

As you know a peach stone is no bigger than two of our fingers combined, but Tu Shih-yuan was able to engrave so many persons and things on it. It is indeed a piece of excellent workmanship. Who says the art of the ancients is inferior to that of the moderns? (Hsueh Lun: The Ingenious Art of Engraving)

## (12) 狐疑

### 【原文】

我有一个漂亮的表姐，跟一个工程师结了婚，感情和好，生活美满。婚后三年，她突然变态：凭空指责她丈夫有外遇，日夜悲泣不已。任凭她的丈夫怎样解释，都无济于事。他只好寸步不离她，她的疑心犹不减，责备他每日死守家屋，意在追恋女佣。他换了一个女佣，她又说是他的新恋人。换上别个女佣，无论老妇童女，她无不怀疑。终于他的丈夫决心一个女佣都不用，她却乐得自己烧饭洗衣。

不久以后，她的疑心更多了。她认为妹妹、嫂嫂、姑姑，都是丈夫的恋人。于是，大家相信她发了狂，这才将她送进神经病院，施行电疗、打针，用尽百法，毫无效果。

在完全绝望的时候，我介绍一位心理学家去看她，单独与她密谈两小时后，他有了骇人的发现。

“夫人”，心理学家诚恳地说：“我愿为你摘去内心的痛苦，但请坦白见告，你曾经有什么不可告人的遭遇吗？”

这一问，好像一股电流触及她的内心痛处，她惊跳一下，低头啜泣。

“愿向上苍指誓，为夫人严守秘密”，专家继续说：“夫人，为了你的终身幸福，愿坦白见告。”

她终于说出了：半年前，她曾为一个青年而坠入情网，事后，荣誉心迫她回头改正，然而，她始终不敢正视自己既往的可耻事实，却在心里另觅一种自慰：那便是她的丈夫在外必定也有与她相似的不贞行为。久而久之，造成她反常的疑惧心理。

心理学家明白了她的病根所在，便轻易为她拔除掉了。使她逐渐领悟，她的不贞行为，乃属于她的偶然性错失，而非人人必然性的现象，更不能转移于丈夫身上。

过分多疑的心理，因素很是复杂，绝非单纯神经过敏可以解释。多疑往往由于自己的“内疚”反射于他人，在心理学上称之为“投射作用”，我用最简单的一句中国俗语，可以说明“心理投射作用”的深奥原理。这句俗语是：“有此心，反疑心”。（林枕客：《狂人百相》之一）

### 【译文】

After three happy years of conjugal life there came a sudden change in my pretty cousin's sensual nature. She suspected her husband, an engineer, to be unfaithful and reproved him for his disloyalty without any reason. Her husband tried in every way to explain but in vain. She was in so great a distress that she wept all the time. He had to stay at home with her in the hope that he might get rid of her doubt about him. But, to his amazement, this only led to her new suspicion. She thought that he remained at home all day because he was in love with the maid. He dismissed the maid and hired a new one whom his wife would call his new love. In short, she regarded any maid, irrespective of age, as the object her husband was in pursuit of. At last, her husband decided not to keep a



servant in his house, leaving all the domestic work to his wife, which she undertook without a complaint.

Not many days had elapsed before she entertained more doubts about him. She suspected even her female relations, such as her sisters-in-law, being also in love with her husband. This made people think that she had gone out of her mind. She was then sent to a hospital where she was put under various medical treatments; but all of them had no effect upon her.

Such being her case, I recommended her to a psychologist. After two hours<sup>1</sup> t° te-à-t° te with her, the psychologist made a startling discovery.

/My dear madam, " began the expert in a most sincere manner, " I should be able to remove all the worries from mind if you would tell me everything frankly. Have you anything to be kept secret? "

Thus asked, she started as if she were electric-stricken and began to weep.

/If you will let me into the secret, I promise to keep it from the knowledge of others, " he continued. /For your own good, and for the happiness of your life, do tell me, madam! "

She sobbed bitterly and then gave the following account: It was about half a year ago when she met a young man with whom she fell in love. But before long, her sense of honor made her repent of her folly, and she came back to her husband again. What a shame it was to recall her past conduct, so she consoled herself by thinking that her husband must have done the same thing as she did. By and by this developed into an abnormal apprehension.

When the psychologist had found out the root of her disease, it was easy for him to uproot it. He told her that her disloyalty was due to her casual wrongdoing, not to the inevitable

conduct of everybody. Nor could it be transferred to her husband.

That which gives one the feeling of distrust is rather complicated. It cannot be explained merely by nervousness. To have a suspicion against others usually comes of one's own sick conscience. Psychologically speaking, it is called the projection, that is the process of acting upon others. A Chinese proverb that presents fully the gist of this psychological action runs, "Suspicious are those who take an interest in the matter themselves." (Lin Chen-ko: Smoke Without Fire)

### (13) 怕伞的姑娘

#### 【原文】

女孩子如有特癖，出嫁后非常痛苦。在家时，父母会容忍她的特癖，但婚后丈夫未必能谅解她，这里有一个悲剧为例证：

有个女人，名陈竹竹。她跟一个二十岁的青年吴铭结婚。过了一个秋天，生活都很愉快。入冬雨季却带来了悲剧：她上班去，穿雨衣走，吴铭要她再带把伞，她不肯，说她从来不用伞。他实在太爱她，便拿把美丽雨伞交给她，她一触到伞柄，状极惊恐，急推地上。吴铭大为骇异，便问：

“竹竹！你怎么啦” ” ”

“我害怕” ” ”竹竹说。

“雨伞有什么可怕呢？”吴铭问。

竹竹默然不答。青年人意气刚强，他的太太越怕伞，他越要给她伞，企图改变她的怪癖。竹竹在他的情感威严的压力下，不得不拿，可是，她每提起伞，都要惊哭一阵，昏厥过去为止。

这件事屡屡发生后，竹竹终于向法院请求离婚，理由是：不堪丈夫虐待，饱受强迫提伞的苦刑。当法官在庭上听吴铭申诉竹竹下雨不肯带伞的事，觉得很希奇。便问竹竹，她说生平怕伞，其夫偏用伞来

恐吓她，不胜惊扰之苦，非离异不可。法官不信，令刑事取伞给她，果见她吓得脸色发青，掩面大哭。

法官认为她有神经病，吴铭加以否认说，她除怕雨伞之外，其他完全正常。这一对好夫妇终于双方同意地离婚了。离婚后，陈竹竹的生活正常，当然心情枯寂悲愁，幸而，嗣后，她遇见了救星，一个精神学家替她揭去内心之谜。

原来陈竹竹幼年失母，她的继母冷酷无情，竹竹在七岁时，每天上学，没有鞋穿，没有书包用，也没有一把伞，下大雨，就不上学。有一天适逢学校大考，偏偏天下大雨，她不能去，情急了，偷了继母的雨伞走。一撑开伞，她吓坏了，伞里爬出一条青蛇，立即昏迷过去。从此以后，有个恐怖的观念占据着她；至今长大，她仍怕伞，但已忘其所以然了。

心理学家用“联想法”使她回想起当年旧事，再以“提示法”剔除她内心所潜伏的顽固意识。最后，当她听见心理学家亲切的声音：“你也可以有一把伞，像任何人一样。”她何等惊喜！在医师协助下，她伸出发抖的手，握住伞，撑开来，她觉得那是多么新奇、安全，有趣的伞呀！她忽感到一阵害羞袭来，急把伞儿遮住脸。（林枕客：《狂人百相》之一）

### 【译文】

A girl with idiosyncrasies often suffers greatly after getting married. While at home, She would not be unbearable, for all her personal peculiarities, to her parents. But it is not probable that her spouse would understand her. Here is a tragic case to illustrate the truth:

There was a girl whose name was Chen Chu-chu. She was married to Wu Ming, a young man twenty years old. Their married life was full of happiness during the first autumn. But the rainy season of winter brought them unexpected misfortunes. One day when she was setting out for her office, she put on her raincoat. Her husband asked her to take an umbrella along; but she refused, saying she had never used an umbrella. As he loved her very much, he handed her a beautiful u

mbrella. As soon as she touched its handle, she dazed with horror, threw it on the ground.

“What’s up, my dear?” asked her husband, greatly perplexed.

“I’m afraid of” “” said the wife.

“There’s nothing to be afraid of in an umbrella, is there?” said Wu Ming.

Chu-chu remained silent. As young men are very obstinate, Wu Ming insisted upon his wife’s taking with her umbrella, in order to do away with her peculiarity. Because of his affection for her and in deference to his wishes, Chu-chu had to take it. But every time she took the umbrella, she was horrified, burst into tears and fainted.

This happened so often that Chu-chu at last had to appeal to the court for a divorce. Her reason was that she could not stand the ill-treatment of her husband. He tortured her by forcing her to take an umbrella. On hearing the statement of the husband the judge felt it was rather odd. In answer to the judge’s inquiry, Chu-chu said that as her husband terrified her with an umbrella and made her suffer a great deal, she had to divorce him. The judge did not believe it and ordered an umbrella to be brought to her, which indeed made her turn pale and weep bitterly.

The judge thought she was neurotic, but her husband denied it, saying that she was normal with everything except with the umbrella. Consequently the well-matched couple agreed to put an end to their marriage. After the separation Chen Chu-chu lived a normal life, though she felt very lonesome and miserable. Before long, to her relief, there came an alienist, who solved the riddle of her fear of umbrellas.

It was said that Chen Chu-chu lost her mother when she was only a few years old, and was brought up by her step-mo-

ther who was very severe to her. At seven, she went to school every day without shoes or bag. As no umbrella was given her, she was obliged to stay at home if it rained heavily. One day, it was raining cats and dogs. But she had to go to school for her final examinations. Under mental stress, she stole her step-mother's umbrella, and was ready to go. But alas! When she opened the umbrella, there crawled out a green snake which terrified her and made her faint on the spot. Since then, a certain terror had dominated her thoughts. She was now a grown-up woman, but she still feared the umbrella, though she could not tell why she was afraid of it.

The psychologist used the method of association to make her recollect the by-gones, and then, by means of "suggestion", got rid of the obstinacy hidden in her mind. At length, she heard the psychologist say in a kind voice: "Like everyone else, you too may have an umbrella." How glad she was to hear this! With the help of the doctor, she held out her trembling hand and took the umbrella. Opening it, she felt it was so novel, interesting, and there was nothing treacherous in it. With shyness she hid her face behind the umbrella. (Lin Chen-ko: The Girl Who Feared an Umbrella)

#### (14) 偷窃狂

##### 【原文】

“十疯九偷”，精神学家承认这句话。十个疯子有九个患“偷窃狂”。“偷窃狂”是精神病中最通常的病征，可怜他，起初都被人认为“道德堕落者”，根本不把他当病人看待。直至其疯到不可救药，才认做疯子。“偷窃狂”和通常偷窃很易分别，窃贼偷东西是有目的的，偷窃狂则无目的不问其需要与否，常感觉有某些东西非偷不可，仿佛把“偷”当作一种享受。读者不难遇见一些人，经济颇有办法，对于有些他们家中决不缺乏的东西，也爱顺手窃取，或揩油带回家去。不论其需要与否，一拿到手满高兴。这实在是极可怜的心理病态。“偷窃狂”

虽然多是精神病的病征，但也有是童年时期在不良家庭生活中所养成的习惯。

我在师范学校一年级读书时，发现一件怪事：大半同学的圆规、三角板、看地图用的放大镜都遗失了。我连续买过四次，也弄得没有一件器具用。校长据报后，请老师抽查学生箱篋，所注意的对象多是贫苦学生。查了一个月，不但毫无下落，而且这种窃案继续发生。我看见情形很严重，决心自己来捉贼。

那个星期天，我再买了一套新的，放在床前书桌上，躺在床上装做午睡。妙极了！我从眼睛眯缝里，果然发现一个人影迫近桌前。我得意极了，我就要抓到贼了。

我高喊一声/嘿！”跳下床来，定睛一看，那一刹那间，我失望极了。而贼不是别人，居然是本级最富有人家的子弟吴津同学。他的学问品德都好，又乐于助人，决不至偷窃这些小东西的。然而，事实表现得也太残酷了。他听见我/嘿”的一声，立即扑通一声跪下哀求着：

/老林！我错得很，饶恕我吧！”

我仍半信半疑，老吴会做贼？巧妙地笑着说：

/哈哈！老吴！够了吧，别再开我的玩笑，借去用吧！”

我放了他，可是没有救他。有一天，他终于被捕了，搜出百多套同样的用具。这件事，在别的学校，开除了事，幸好师范学校有教育心理学的老师，反对开除/问题学生”，请求校长准予留校察看，以供研究，并加以感化。因此组织了/研究小组”研究吴津为什么会偷窃。

这问题终于在家庭访问时获得解答：吴津家富，兄弟姊妹共有七人，他居最小，最受父母溺爱，亦最缺乏教养，年幼时他喜爱哥哥姐姐们手上的东西就要，要不到就哭，母亲就对他说：/等三姐不在时，我去偷来给你！”或是说：/等四哥出去了，我就拿来给你。”果然，姐姐们一走开，母亲便去拿给他，而且教他玩的时候，别让哥哥姐姐看见。他一拿到手，老是藏起来不玩。他从小便得到了这样的经验，要什么，只要在人不在时去拿好了。这种拿的办法，在家庭里无所谓，在学校中或社会上，就成为/偷”了。他长大以后，也不自知其为偷，但那已经成为顽固的怪癖了。（林枕客：《狂人百相》之一）

【译文】

It is believed to be true by psychopathists that nine out of ten insane people have an inclination to steal. In fact, kleptomania is the commonest symptom of insanity. Poor souls! They are supposed to have morally degenerated and will never be treated as kleptomaniacs until their insanity is beyond cure. In that case, they are regarded as lunatics. The distinction between kleptomania and theft can easily be made. A theft is committed with an aim, while kleptomania without any object at all. A person suffering from kleptomania steals all sorts of things whether he needs them or not; he considers larceny a kind of enjoyment. You are apt to find some people who are rather well off, indulge in stealing from others things which they are never in want of. They would be very pleased with the thing they have stolen even if it is quite useless to them. This irresistible tendency to steal we may easily ascribe to the mental disease just mentioned. Although kleptomania is a symptom of mental weakness, the habit may be formed during one's childhood in a depraved family.

Something strange had come about while I was a first year student of the normal school. It occurred that my compasses, set-squares, magnifying glasses for reading maps were always missing. Though I had bought four sets of them, yet I could not find them when I wanted to use them. After being told of what had happened, the principal asked our teacher to search for them among the belongings of the students, especially the poor ones, in the school. The search continued for a month, but resulted in nothing. As the same thing happened again and again, I set to work to seek the mystery of the case myself.

I bought another new set of the above-mentioned instruments on a Sunday, and put it out on the desk just in front of my bed. Then I pretended to be asleep. Fancy! with half an eye, I saw a form moving stealthily towards my bed. I was so excited that I cried out "Hi!", and jumping up from my bed, ready to catch the thief on the spot, I found, to my disappoint

ment, that he was no other than Wu Tsing, a classmate of mine, who was from one of the richest families, and who was very generous in helping others. It seemed improbable that he, who conducted himself well at school, would steal such trifles. But on hearing my voice, he dropped down on his knees in a panic, imploring:

/Forgive me, Old Lin, for Heaven's sake. I know it's very wicked of me to do so."

I was confounded and could not believe my eyes. It was beyond my comprehension that Wu Tsing should commit a larceny. In a moment I gathered my senses and answered:

/Ha, ha! Old Wu, that's enough. Don't make fun of me any more. You are welcome to use them."

I let him go, but I did not succour him. Some days later, he was caught at last. More than hundred sets of similar instruments were found in his suitcase. If it happened in other schools, he would be dismissed at once, but ours was a normal school, and the teacher of educational psychology objected to dismissing the student in question. He asked the principal to keep Wu Tsing in school for some time for investigation. A committee was formed to find out the reason why Wu Tsing should steal and how he could be/cured".

The answer to this problem was finally derived from a visit they paid to his family. As he was the youngest of seven children of a well-to-do family, his parents doted on him so much that they spoiled him. Whenever he saw anything interesting which his brother or sister had, he would cry for it if it was not given him. Having a weakness for the youngest, his mother would pacify him with these words: /Don't cry, my boy, I'll steal it for you when your sister is not in, " or /You can have it afterwards when your brother is out." Every time when his brother or sister was away from home, his mother would fetch him the thing he liked to have without fail. Moreover, he wa



s told then not to play with it in his or her presence. Having had gained the experience that anything he wanted could be obtained during the absence of its owner, he did not realize that taking things away from others secretly was a crime. Of course, it would not be regarded as a theft by his brothers and sisters at home, but it was not so in the school or society. He came to know it was theft when he grew up, but the habit had been formed and could never be shaken off.

### (15) 狐假虎威

#### 【原文】

虎求百兽<sup>(1)</sup>而食之，得狐。狐曰：/子无敢食我也！天帝使我长百兽<sup>(2)</sup>，今子食我，是逆<sup>(3)</sup>天帝命也。子以我为不信<sup>(4)</sup>，吾为子先行<sup>(5)</sup>，子随我后，观百兽之见我而敢不走乎？”虎以为然<sup>(6)</sup>，故遂与之行，兽见之皆走，虎不知兽畏己而走也，以为畏狐也。（《战国策》）

#### 【译文】

A tiger went about in search of other weaker animals for food. Once in his hunting, he happened to find a fox. /You won't dare to eat me, " said the fox, /as I am head of all animals appointed by God. It is against the will of God, if you eat me now. In case you don't believe what I say, let us go together. You just follow me as I go ahead to see if there is any animal that does not run away when I pass." The tiger agreed and went with the other. Certainly he saw all the animals run away on seeing the fox. He thought they were afraid of the fox without knowing it was he himself that they feared.

#### 【注释】

(1) 百兽：各种动物，all kinds of beasts. (2) 长百兽：为百兽之长。(3) 逆：违反。(4) 子以我为不信：你如果不相信我的话。又可译为 if you don't believe me. 英文说 believe me 是说/相信我说的话”，如说 believe in me, 则意为/信任我这个人”。(5) 吾

为子先行：让我走在你的前面。（6）虎以为然：老虎同意狐的建议。

## （16）习惯说

### 【原文】

蓉<sup>（1）</sup>少时，读书养晦堂<sup>（2）</sup>之西偏一室。俛<sup>（3）</sup>而读，仰而思；思而弗<sup>（4）</sup>得，辄起，绕室一旋<sup>（5）</sup>。室有洼<sup>（6）</sup>径尺<sup>（7）</sup>，浸淫<sup>（8）</sup>日广，每履之<sup>（9）</sup>，足苦蹶<sup>（10）</sup>焉；既久而遂安之。一日，父来室中，顾而笑曰：/一室之不治<sup>（11）</sup>，何以天下国家为？”命童子取土平之。后蓉复履其地，蹴然<sup>（12）</sup>以惊，如土忽隆起者；俯视地，坦然<sup>（13）</sup>则既平矣。已而复然<sup>（14）</sup>，又久而后安之。噫！习<sup>（15）</sup>之中人<sup>（16）</sup>甚矣哉！足利平地，不与洼适也；及其久而洼者若平；至使久而即乎其故<sup>（17）</sup>，则反窒焉<sup>（18）</sup>而不宁<sup>（19）</sup>。故君子之学贵慎始。（刘蓉）

### 【译文】

When I was young I studied in a western chamber of the Obscurity House. Sometimes I bent down to read; sometimes I looked up to think. When I could not, after much thinking, figure out the meaning of what I was reading, I rose to my feet and walked about the room. In the earthen floor of the room there was a hollow about one foot wide; and that grew larger day by day. Every time I walked over it, I stumbled; but by degrees, I got used to it. One day Father came into my study and saw the hollow. /How can you serve your country well, ” he said, smiling, /when you cannot keep such a little room tidy? ” So he ordered a boy to fill it up with earth. Later when I walked over the spot again, I was surprised to find the earth there seemed swelling. I looked down, and found the hollow had already been filled up and the place was now as flat as a pancake. It was some time before I could get used to it again. Ah! how a habit works on man! You find it fit for your feet to walk on the level ground but not on places with holes. When you have, however, become accustomed to the sunken places

in the floor, you will feel as if they were level. You will, on the contrary, stumble and feel uncomfortable when you walk on the spot newly leveled-up. Therefore the Superior Man is very cautious when he starts learning a thing.

### 【注释】

(1) 蓉是作者刘蓉的自称。(2) 养晦堂为作者家中的斋名。  
(3) 俛同俯。(4) 弗当不字讲。(5) 旋，转。(6) 洼：低陷的地方。(7) 径尺：直径有一尺的光景，it measures one foot in diameter. (8) 浸淫：逐渐 gradually. (9) 履之：走过那里，walk over it. (10) 蹶：遇阻碍而颠跌，trip, stumble. (11) 治：弄好，keep it tidy, make it in perfect trim. (12) 蹶然：不安的样子，unsteady. (13) 坦然：平坦的样子，as flat as a pancake. (14) 复然：仍是这样。(15) 习，即习惯，a habit. (16) 中人：对人的影响，works on a person. (17) 至使久而即乎其故：假使过了很久再恢复原状，if it is restored to its former condition after an elapse of time. (18) 窒焉：受到阻碍，be obstructed. (19) 不宁：不舒适，uncomfortable.

(17) 黔之驴

### 【原文】

黔<sup>(1)</sup>无驴，有好事者<sup>(2)</sup>，船载以入；至则无可利用，放之山下。虎见之，庞<sup>(3)</sup>然大物也，以为神；蔽<sup>(4)</sup>林间窥之。稍出，近之，愁愁然<sup>(5)</sup>莫相知<sup>(6)</sup>。他日驴一鸣<sup>(7)</sup>，虎大骇远遁，以为且噬<sup>(8)</sup>己也，甚恐。然往来<sup>(9)</sup>视之，觉无异能<sup>(10)</sup>者。益习其声<sup>(11)</sup>，又进出前后，终不敢搏<sup>(12)</sup>。稍近益狎<sup>(13)</sup>，荡倚冲冒<sup>(14)</sup>；驴不胜怒，蹄之<sup>(15)</sup>。虎因喜，计之曰<sup>(16)</sup>：技止此耳<sup>(17)</sup>。因跳踉大嚙<sup>(18)</sup>，断其喉，尽其肉，乃去。噫<sup>(19)</sup>：形之龙者，类有德<sup>(20)</sup>，声之宏者，类有能<sup>(21)</sup>。向不出其技，虎虽猛，疑畏卒不敢取<sup>(22)</sup>；今若是焉。悲夫<sup>(23)</sup>！（柳宗元）

### 【译文】

There was no ass in Kweichow, and somebody brought in one by boat. But when it arrived, he found he could make no

use of it, so he left it at the foot of a mountain. Seeing it, a tiger thought such a tremendous thing must be none other than a god. At first he peeped at it from behind the woods, and then moved timidly towards it; but still he dared not get in touch with it. One day the ass brayed, and the tiger was so frightened that he ran far away from it fearing it was going to eat him up. Later on he came back to look at it from all quarters, and found it possessing no particular ability. Though he, being more accustomed to its braying, was no longer afraid to come near it, yet he dared not attack it. He ventured to tease it more and more with a view to testing its abilities. Being greatly irritated, the ass gave him a kick. At this time the tiger was very glad as he found it was at its wit's end and had no other ability than this. Therefore he pounced upon it, first breaking its neck and then eating up all its flesh, and went away. Alas! those with a huge form appear to be powerful, and those with a loud voice appear to be capable. No matter how fierce the tiger was, he would not be bold enough to grapple the ass, so long as it did not show off its ability. What a pity that it should have done thus!

### 【注释】

(1) 黔即今贵州省。(2) 好事者：喜欢兴造事端之人，如孟子说的“好事者为之也”。英译为 **busy body**，但在此译为 **somebody** 较好。(3) 龙，通庞，巨大的意思，**huge, tremendous**。(4) 蔽，藏匿的意思，**hide**。译文中以 **behind** 表达出来。(5) 愁愁然，谨敬的样子，**timidly, cautiously** 愁音佞。(6) 莫相知：不敢亲近，**dared not get in touch with**。(7) 驴鸣，**bray**。(8) 噬，吃掉的意思，**eat up**。(9) 往来：应译 **to and fro**，译文中意译为 **from all quarters** (从各个角度)。(10) 异能：特殊本领。(11) 益习其声：更加习惯了驴的叫声 **being more accustomed to its braying**。(12) 搏：攻击，**attack**。(13) 狎：玩弄轻慢，**to be intimate with**。(14) 荡倚冲冒：荡是动荡，倚为身体贴近，冲是冲过去，冒是追上前去。全句意为接近驴子而触怒它，来试试它的本领。(15) 蹄之：用蹄去踢虎。(16) 计之曰：估计着说，**said in estimation**。(17) 技止此耳：只有这样一个本领，**this is all it can do**。文中以

at its wit's end 表示。(18) 跳踉大嚼：跳踉是脚乱动的样子。嚼同噉或啖，dancing and eating to his heart's content. (19) 噫：叹息声，alas. (20) 形之龙者，类有德：形体龙大，看去像是有德的。/德”字在此的用法，与《礼记·大学》上说的“富润屋，德润身，心广体胖”中用的/德”字意义相同，即显见于外者，实于内，那驴子外表看来，身体既那样龙大，则它的实力一定雄厚。/德”可译为 powerful. (21) 声之宏者类有能：声音宏亮，好像有技能的样子。/能”可译为 capable. (22) 疑畏卒不敢取：怀疑畏怯，终不敢去捕食，not be bold enough to grapple the ass. (23) 悲夫：多么可悲，how sad.

### (18) 少年孔融的机智

#### 【原文】

孔文举<sup>(1)</sup>年十岁，随父到洛。时李元礼<sup>(2)</sup>有盛名，为司隶校尉<sup>(3)</sup>。诣门者皆俊才清称<sup>(4)</sup>，及中表亲戚乃通<sup>(5)</sup>。文举至门，谓吏曰：/我是李府君<sup>(6)</sup>亲。”既通，前坐，元礼问曰：/君与仆有何亲？”对曰：/昔先君<sup>(7)</sup>仲尼<sup>(8)</sup>，与君先人伯阳<sup>(9)</sup>，有师资之尊<sup>(10)</sup>，是仆<sup>(11)</sup>与君奕世<sup>(12)</sup>为通好也。”元礼及宾客莫不奇之。太中大夫<sup>(13)</sup>陈韪后至，人以其语<sup>(14)</sup>语之<sup>(15)</sup>。韪曰：/小时了了<sup>(16)</sup>，大未必佳。”文举曰：/想君小时，必当了了。”韪大踖踖<sup>(17)</sup>。（《世说新语》）

#### 【译文】

When Kung Yung went to Loyang, the then capital, with his father, he was only ten years old. At that time, Li Ying, the supreme official inspector, was a man of great reputation in the country. Nobody except his relatives and those who possessed distinct attainments and high commendation would be admitted to his presence.

/I'm a relative of your master." said the boy to the gate officer, who at once led him in. Sitting before the host, Kung Yung was questioned by Li Ying. /What relationship is there between you and me? "/In old times, my forefather Confucius ha

d a teacher-pupil relationship with your ancestor Lao-tze, " the boy guest replied, /and, therefore, our two families have been closely related for many generations." Li Ying and all his other guests present were greatly surprised at the answer.

Chen Wei, the counsellor, came later and was told what Kung Yung had said. /Being bright in early childhood does not necessarily mean that he will be clever when grown up, " he observed. In response to this, Kung Yung said, /I guess you must have been very bright in your childhood, " which made Chen Wei feel very much embarrassed.

### 【注释】

(1) 孔文举：孔融字文举，孔子后裔。(2) 李元礼：李膺字元礼，有高名，被他接见的人即可身价百倍，称为登龙门。(3) 司隶校尉：官名，掌纠察百官以下及近郡犯法者，东汉时并领有一州，权威极重。(4) 俊才清称：超群的才学，清高的称誉。(5) 通：通报，传达。(6) 府君：郡守的称呼。(7) 先君：今人称自己死去的父亲为先君，但古人对祖先亦称先君。(8) 仲尼：孔子名丘字仲尼。(9) 伯阳：老子姓李名耳字伯阳。今又有人考证老子姓老。(10) 师资之尊：孔子适周，尝问礼于老子，故尊为师。(11) 仆：孔融自称。(12) 奕世：累世，累代。(13) 太中大夫：官名，掌谏议，备咨询。(14) 其语：孔融说的话。(15) 语之：讲给他听。(16) 了了：聪慧，晓解事理。(17) 踖踖：不安的样子，音促籍。

(19) 绝妙好辞

### 【原文】

魏武帝<sup>(1)</sup>尝过曹娥碑<sup>(2)</sup>下，杨修<sup>(3)</sup>从。碑背上见题作黄绢幼妇外孙壻白八字，魏武语修曰：/解不<sup>(4)</sup>？"答曰：/解。"魏武曰：/卿未可言，待我思之。"行三十里，魏武曰：/吾已得。"令修别记所知。修曰：/黄绢色丝也，于字为绝。幼妇少女也，于字为妙。外孙女子也，于字为好。壻白受辛也，于字为辵。所记绝妙好辞也。"魏武亦记之与修同。乃叹曰：/我才不及卿<sup>(5)</sup>，乃觉<sup>(6)</sup>三十里。"(《世说新语》)

### 【译文】

Emperor Wu Ti of Wei (in the Three Kingdoms) once went for an outing with Yant Hsiu, one of his officials. While riding by the foot of the stone tablet of Tsao, they saw on its back an inscription consisting of eight characters: /Yellow lustring, young woman, external grandson, crushing mortar.”

/Do you know, ” Wu Ti asked Yang Hsiu, /what they mean? ”

/Yes, Sire, ” the other replied.

/Don't tell me now, ” Wu Ti said. /I'll think it over myself.”

When they had gone for thirty li, Wu Ti exclaimed, /I've got it! ” He told Yang Hsiu to write his explanation on a piece of paper, which read: /Yellow lustring” is coloured silk, which makes up the character /ch'eh” meaning /extremely”. /Young woman” is a little girl, which makes up the character /miao” meaning /admirable”. /External grandson” is the son of a daughter, which makes up the character /hao” meaning /fine”. /Crushing mortar” is the vessel in which pungent things are pounded, which makes up the character /tzu” meaning /expression”. The whole inscription means /an extremely admirable fine expression”.

On discovering what Yang Hsiu had written was just the same as his, Wu Ti heaved a deep sigh, saying: /I am far behind you in talent. There is, I find, a difference of thirty li between us”.

### 【注释】

(1) 魏武帝：曹丕篡汉后追谥其父曹操为武帝。(2) 曹娥碑：东汉时上虞女子曹娥，因父溺死，亦投江而死。经五日，抱父尸出。度尚使弟子邯郸淳为作诔辞，立石。蔡邕夜摸其文读之，题黄绢幼妇外孙璿白八字，即绝妙好辞四字的隐语。(3) 杨修：东汉人，字德祖，聪慧过人，为曹操主簿。后为曹操所杀。(4) 解不？：懂得

吗？（5）卿：秦汉以来君呼臣曰卿。后世夫妻间称卿。原来只有丈夫称妻子为卿，故世说《惑溺篇》中载：王安丰妇常称安丰为卿，安丰便对她说：/妇人卿婿，于礼为不敬，后勿复尔。”他的妻子反驳他说：/亲卿爱卿，是以卿卿，我不卿卿，谁当卿卿？”上述的/卿婿”及后面的/卿卿”的第一个卿字，都是作动词用的。（6）觉：相差的意思。

## （20）韩信忍受胯下辱

### 【原文】

信<sup>（1）</sup>钓于城下<sup>（2）</sup>，诸母<sup>（3）</sup>漂<sup>（4）</sup>，有一母见信饥，饭信<sup>（5）</sup>，竟漂数十日<sup>（6）</sup>。信喜，谓漂母曰：/吾必有以重报母<sup>（7）</sup>。”母怒曰：/大丈夫不能自食<sup>（8）</sup>，吾哀王孙<sup>（9）</sup>而进食，岂望报乎？”

淮阴屠中少年<sup>（10）</sup>，有侮信者，曰：/若<sup>（11）</sup>虽长大，好带刀剑，中情怯<sup>（12）</sup>耳。”众辱之曰<sup>（13）</sup>：/信，能死，刺我<sup>（14）</sup>；不能死，出我胯下<sup>（15）</sup>。”于是信孰视之<sup>（16）</sup>，俛<sup>（17）</sup>出胯下，蒲伏<sup>（18）</sup>。一市人皆笑信，以为怯。（司马迁：《淮阴侯列传》）

### 【译文】

Once Han Hsin was fishing on the outskirts of the city, where many a woman was bleaching silk. One of the women seeing him hunger-stricken offered him food out of her own lunch box, and continued to do so for scores of days till she had done all her bleaching. Han Hsin, quite gratified, said to the old woman: /I will pay you back much more for your kindness some day.” Exasperated at this, she retorted, /Being a man, you cannot feed yourself. It is just out of pity that I share with you what I have, and not that I wish to have something in return! ”

A youth among the butchers at Huai Yin once spat at Han Hsin, saying: /Though you grow so big and like to wear a sword, you are at heart a coward! ” In presence of a large group of spectators, he went on with scorn: /Look here, Hsin, if you are not afraid of death, stab me; otherwise, go through u



nder my legs.” Thereupon, Han Hsin after staring at the youth for a while, crawled under his legs, face downwards on the ground. The whole town laughed at Hsin, thinking him a coward.

### 【注释】

(1) 信：韩信，汉兴三杰之一，灭项羽，使刘邦成帝业，封淮阴侯，后为刘邦所杀，夷三族。(2) 钓于城下：在淮阴城下淮河边钓鱼。(3) 诸母：好些老大娘。(4) 漂：洗丝绵。(5) 饭信：把她自己的饭分给韩信吃。(6) 竟漂数十日：一连几十天都分饭给韩信吃，直到漂完为止。(7) 吾必有以重报母：我将来一定要厚厚地报答您老人家。(8) 不能自食：不能够自己找到饭吃。(9) 王孙：好像说公子一样，古代对青年人的敬称。(10) 屠中少年：市上卖肉的少年们。(11) 若：你。(12) 中情怯：内心怯懦，即胆子小。整句意为/你虽然个子长得很高，又喜欢佩刀挂剑，其实是一个胆小鬼。”(13) 众辱之曰：当众侮辱他说。(14) 能死：你要不怕死的话。(15) 出我袴下：从我的裤裆底下钻过去。(16) 孰视之：仔细地打量他一番。/孰”即古写的熟字。(17) 俛：同俯。(18) 蒲伏：同匍匐，意为在地上爬行。

### 习题

试将下列中文译成英文：

(1) /各人自扫门前雪，休管他人瓦上霜”，是使世界达到和平幸福的最佳途径。一家如此，则一家和乐。一国如此，则一国安定。全世界如此，则天下太平。

(2) 学问是自己的事，不能依靠别人的。环境好，图书设备充足，有良师益友指导启发，当然有很大的帮助，但是这些条件具备，也不一定能保证一个人在学问上就有成就。世间也有不少在学问上有成就的人，并不具备这些条件。最重要的因素，还是个人自己的努力。求学是一件艰苦的事，许多人不能忍受那必经的艰苦，所以不能得到成功。

(3) /我想认识伦敦，应该先到哪里去？巴力门，还是唐宁街？”我向寓所的女主人打听。那位老太太摇摇头说：/这种地方你去干什

么？你得先上海德公园。在那公园里，你才能了解我们英国怎么会有巴力门和唐宁街的。”她的意思是说，造成英国政治的，是英国人民的精神，并不是有了议会和内阁，英国才得到民主的政治，而是人民有了民主的精神，才有英国的议会和内阁。海德公园正是民主精神表演的地方。

（4）善即是美。我们感到物事像理想一般的实现，我们就觉得是美。所谓理想一般的实现，就是说，那物事能把它的天性完全发挥出来。所以，如花在天性全露时最美一样，人在充分发挥他的天性时，也就达到美的极致了。

（5）道德非言语所能施教。凡未亲受仁爱待遇者毕生将不知仁爱为何物。故以仁爱待人，始能教人以仁爱。语云：/以言教者讼，以身教者从。”

（6）文学的工具是语言文字。我们第一须认识语言文字，其次须有运用语言文字的技巧。这事看来似很容易，因为一般人日常都在运用语言文字；但是实在极难，因为文学要用平常的语言文字产生不平常的效果。文学家对于语言文字的了解，必须比一般人都较精确，然后可以运用自如。他必须懂得字的形声义，字的组织以及音义与组织对于读者所生的影响。这要包涵语文学，逻辑学，文法，美学和心理各种知识。” ”一个人想做出第一流文学作品，别的条件不用说，单说语文研究一项，他必须有深厚的修养，他必须达到有话都可说出而且说得好的程度。

（7）庄子与惠子游于濠梁之上，庄子曰：/儵鱼出游从容，是鱼之乐也。”惠子曰：/子非鱼，安知鱼之乐？”庄子曰：/子非我，安知我不知鱼之乐？”惠子曰：/我非子，固不知子矣。子固非鱼也，子之不知鱼之乐全矣。”

（8）大家都知道下午四五点钟，在英国是喝茶的时间。首相也好，时装模特女郎也好，警察也好，甚至强盗也好，都是一定要喝下午茶的。

一杯茶，加上一点烤面包或饼干，再和朋友闲谈几句。这种光景在英国下午四五点钟的时候，是到处可以见到的，不问是在英王居处的白金汉宫，或是在寻常老百姓的家里，都是一样。对于在机关上做打字员一类工作的女性们，忙了一天而得到半小时的休息，去喝一杯

茶，实在是一种最受欢迎的调剂了。甚至在前线的士兵们，如果情势允许的话，也要抽空去喝一杯茶。这原是英国牢不可破的传统。

(9) 人人都知道圣华伦泰节是景慕情人的一个爱情的节日。其起源可追溯到远古的罗马时代。当时的青年人以抽签的方式，取得住在附近女孩子的名字，而凭以决定他们的情人。在中世纪时，就把圣华伦泰节定在二月十四日，随后欧美的人们，又找出许多新花样来庆祝那一天。

一个青年男子不妨去吻他当日所遇到的第一个女人。这在东方人看来，也许是要觉得奇怪的。

到了十九世纪，人们开始寄赠美丽的辞句和专为当日设计的卡片，并进行交换礼物。

今天人们不但对情人寄赠卡片，而且对父母师长，也照样寄，成为很通行的习俗了。

(10) 在伊庸河附近我父母的产业，对我毫无吸引力。我常走下到河边去，偶然望望浮在河上的黄色的水藻，时而又拾起扁平的石块去打水漂，看它像燕子一般迅速地在水上掠过。

我父母的家屋是长形而灰色的。牧场一直伸展到像乳酪似的伊庸河边为止，燕子在空中飞翔着，河岸上的白杨树，长得枝叶互相连起来了。有一棵白杨树，我特别喜欢，常要躺在那树下。我发觉我自己在草中微笑着，我想要不笑，可是不成。

## II 英译中

(1) Too Clever Not to See

### 【原文】

Elliott was too clever not to see <sup>(1)</sup> that many of the persons who accepted his invitations did so <sup>(2)</sup> only to get <sup>(3)</sup> a free meal and that <sup>(4)</sup> of these some <sup>(5)</sup> were stupid and some worthless <sup>(6)</sup>. (W. S. Maugham: The Razor's Edge)

### 【译文】

艾略特是一个聪明的人，必然看得出来，大多数接受他邀请的人，只是为着要来吃一顿不花钱的饭。他知道他们当中有些是愚笨的，另外有些却是不足轻重的。

### 【注释】

(1) too clever not to see = clever that he cannot but see, 以他的聪明岂有不知此事之理。他例如: He is too angry not to say that. 他那般愤怒而忍不住要说出那样的话来。(2) did so 即 accepted his invitations. (3) to get = in order to get. (4) that 接前面 to see 说的。句子的构造是: to see that" and that" (5) of these some = some of these. (6) some worthless = some of these were worthless.

### (2) The Busy Broker

### 【原文】

The broker's hour is not only crowded <sup>(1)</sup>, but minutes and seconds are hanging to all the straps <sup>(2)</sup> and packing <sup>(3)</sup> both front and rear platforms <sup>(4)</sup>. (O. Henry)

### 【译文】

经纪人的时间不但是忙迫得像街车一样的拥挤，而且每分每秒车上所有的吊带都吊满了站立的乘客，在前后的站台上，也挤得水泄不通。

### 【注释】

(1) crowded: 对个人的时间，只能说 fully occupied, 意为很忙碌，完全被事情占有了，不能说 crowded, 这是拥挤的意思。只有乘车等才可说拥挤，可知这是一种比喻的说法。作者把经纪人忙碌的时间，比做拥挤不堪的街车 (street car, 即英国人说的 tram car, 或现通行的 bus), 所以才有拥挤及以下的种种说法。(2) straps: 每部车子都有规定，可容坐客多少，站客多少，站立的乘客，车上悬有许多吊带，以便站着的人抓住，不至因车开动而跌倒，这种乘

客就叫作 **strap-hanger**（挂在吊带上的人）。(3) **packing**: 装载，塞满，挤紧，拥挤，例如 **A hundred men were packed into a small room.**（一百个人挤在一间小房子内。）(4) **platforms**: 车子前后不设座位的空地，以便乘客上下的出入处所。这段文章的表现方法，是用的修辞学的一种，实为作家所不可少的技巧。比喻分明喻（**simile**）和隐喻（**metaphor**）两种，如《圣经》上说的 (a) **In the morning they are like grass which groweth up.** (**Psal. xc.5**)（早晨他们如生长的草。）(b) **All flesh is grass.** (**Isa. xl.6**)（凡有血气的，尽都如草。）(a) 句为明喻，而 (b) 句则为隐喻。上文没有说明像电车一样，所以是属于隐喻一类。

### (3) Speculation on Important Subjects

#### 【原文】

There <sup>(1)</sup> are few <sup>(2)</sup> circumstances among those <sup>(3)</sup> which make up the present condition of human knowledge, more significant <sup>(4)</sup> of the backward state <sup>(5)</sup> in which speculation <sup>(6)</sup> on the most important subjects <sup>(7)</sup> still lingers, than the little <sup>(8)</sup> progress which has been made in the decision of the controversy <sup>(9)</sup> respecting <sup>(10)</sup> the criterion <sup>(11)</sup> of right and wrong. (John Stuart Mill)

#### 【译文】

就构成人的知识现状各种情形来说，没有什么比解决是非准绳的争论之罕有进展，更要表示吾人对最重要的问题的思索，是依然停滞在落后的状态中。

#### 【注释】

(1) **There** 以下 52 字构成的一个句子，在动手翻译之前，必须提纲挈领，找出全文的骨干，才能把文法结构了然于心，译时便可把握正确的意义。全句的纲领如下：**There are few circumstances” more significant of the state” than the progress.** (2) **few**: 几无。(3) **those**: 即指 **circumstances**。(4) **significant**: 意指，表示。例如 **Smiles are usually significant of pleasure.**（微笑通常是表示愉快。）原句可用动词 **signify** 来代此形容词的 **signifi**

cant, 而改写为 few circumstances” which signify the backward state” more than the progress. (5) backward state: 落后的情形; 进步慢或发达迟的情形。(6) speculation: 思索 (thought), 默想 (meditation)。例如 He began to speculate on the origin of the universe. (他开始思索宇宙的起源。) She often speculates as to what sort of man she will marry. (关于她将来要嫁怎样的人她时常在想。)(7) subjects: 问题, 课题。(8) little: 与前面的 few 同样是作几无解, little 指量, few 指数。(9) controversy: 争论 (discussion)。(10) respecting: 关于。(11) criterion: 准绳 (a standard of judgment), 例如 Money is only one criterion of success. (金钱只是成功的一种标志。)

#### (4) A Feeling of Eternity

##### 【原文】

No young man believes he shall <sup>(1)</sup> ever die. There is a feeling of Eternity in youth, which makes us amends for every thing. To be young is to be one of the Immortal Gods <sup>(2)</sup>. One half of time indeed is flown <sup>(3)</sup>, the other half remains in store for us with all its countless treasures; for there is no line drawn, and we see no limit to our hopes and wishes. We make the coming age our own <sup>(4)</sup>. /The vast, the unbounded prospect lies before us.” We look round in a new world, full of life, and motion <sup>(5)</sup>, and ceaseless progress; and feel in ourselves all the vigour and spirit to keep pace with <sup>(6)</sup> it, and do not foresee from any present symptoms how we shall be left behind <sup>(7)</sup> in the natural course of things <sup>(8)</sup>, decline into old age, and drop into the grave.

##### 【译文】

没有一个年轻人相信他是要死的。在青春时有一种永恒的感觉, 使人获得了一切的补偿。年轻人快乐似神仙。虽则半生一晃就过去了, 还有下半生带着无限的宝藏, 仍然给他储备着, 因为前程远大, 希望无穷。这个新的时代是属于年轻人的。一个广大无边的前景展开在他前面。他环顾周遭这个新的世界, 充满着生命、活跃和不断的进

步，他自身也感到元气旺盛，精神焕发，要来和它并驾齐驱。没有任何征候会使他预感到有朝一日，自己行将落伍，沦入老境，而终于要掉进墓穴中去的。

### 【注释】

(1) **he shall**: 第三人称不用 **will** 而用 **shall**, 是表预言的, 例如 **East is East and West is West, and never the twain shall meet.** (R. Kipling) (东是东, 西是西, 两者永远碰不到头。)

(2) **the Immortal Gods**: 神仙。单说 **the Immortals** 也是一样的意思。(3) **flown**: 为 **fly** (飞) 的过去分词。(4) **our own**: 年轻人的。在本文中开端虽用的第三人称的 **young man**, 但随即用 **us** 取代, 通篇说的 **we** 或 **us** 都是指的年轻人。(5) **motion**: 活跃。

(6) **keep pace with**: 与之并驾齐驱。(7) **be left behind**: 落伍。(8) **in the natural course of things**: 在万物的自然趋势中。

### (5) The Spirit of Fair-Play

### 【原文】

This spirit of fair-play, which in the public schools <sup>(1)</sup>, at any rate, is absorbed <sup>(2)</sup> as the most inviolable <sup>(3)</sup> of traditions, has stood our race in good stead <sup>(4)</sup> in the professions, and especially in the administration of dependencies, where the obvious desire of the officials to deal justly and see fair-play in disputes between natives and Europeans has partly compensated for a want <sup>(5)</sup> of sympathetic understanding, which <sup>(6)</sup> has kept the English strangers in <sup>(7)</sup> lands of alien culture. (William Ralph Inge)

### 【译文】

这种公正的精神, 至少在私立公校中是当作最为神圣不可侵犯的传统而加以全神贯注的。这种精神在人们的供职上, 尤其是在属地统治上, 对于英国民族是很有用的。当统治属地时, 英国的官员抱着一种显然的愿望, 想要公正地处理土人与欧人间的争执, 而冀得到公平

的解决，使英国人处在海外的异族文化中，因缺乏同情的谅解而格格不入的情形，多少获得了一点补偿。

### 【注释】

(1) **public schools**: 英国为私立公校，为教育上层阶级子女的寄宿学校，如伊顿 (**Eton**) 等校。但在美国则为公立学校。(2) **is absorbed**: 全神贯注，专心，神往。(3) **inviolable**: 不可侵犯的，神圣的。(4) **stand (或 serve) one in stead**: 于人有用，有好用处。(5) **want**: 缺乏。(6) **which**: 为 **want** 的关系代名词。(7) **keep the English strangers in**: 使英国人在” ” 始终陌生，不能融洽。

(6) On D. H. Lawrence

### 【原文】

One of the great charms of Lawrence as a companion was that he could never be bored and so could never be boring. He was able to absorb himself completely in which he was doing at the moment; and he regarded no task as too humble for him to undertake, nor so trivial that it was not worth his while to do it well. He could cook, he could sew, he could darn a stocking and milk a cow, he was an efficient woodcutter and a good hand at embroidery, fires always burned when he had laid them and a floor, after Lawrence had scrubbed it, was thoroughly clean. Moreover, he possessed what is, for a highly strung and highly intelligent man, an even more remarkable accomplishment: he knew how to do nothing. He could just sit it and be perfectly content. And his contentment, while one remained in his company, was infectious. (Aldous Huxley)

### 【译文】

跟罗伦斯做朋友所感到的他的一种很可爱的地方，就是他从不讨人厌，因之，他也从不讨厌人。他在做着一件事的时候，总是专心致志的，没有什么事他会觉得太卑屈而不屑于去做的，也没有一件小事他认为不值得他好好去做的。他能烹调，他能缝纫他能编织袜子，还



能挤榨牛奶。他是一个能干的樵夫，又是一个刺绣的好手。他生的火总是燃烧得很旺的。他洗擦过的地板，干净得一尘不染。此外，以他那样一个高度紧张和高度理智的人，更具有有一种杰出的才能：那就是他知道无所为而为，他可以单只坐着什么事也不做而能心满意足。他这种满足，我们跟他一块儿坐着的话，也可以传染到的。

## (7) On Books

### 【原文】

Some books, like some persons, convey to us all that they will ever <sup>(1)</sup> have to give at a single sitting <sup>(2)</sup>. Others hold our attention profitably through two or three encounters” ” and the books to frequent, the books to be shipwrecked with <sup>(3)</sup>, the great books into which rich and substantial lives have been distilled <sup>(4)</sup> and packed’ the Dialogues of Plato, Montaigne’s Essays, Boswell’s Johnson, the Essays and Journals of Emerson’ these are to be lived with and returned to <sup>(5)</sup> and made the companions of hours and days and moods as various as those in which they were written. (Stuart P. Sherman)

### 【译文】

有些书也和有些人一样，大概都是把它们打算要传达给我们的东西一下子就完全倾吐出来。有些书则使我们要专心而获益地读上两三遍才能释手。” ” 还有些是要再三反复去读的书，有些是在遭遇船只失事时也仍然要带着走的书，有些是从丰富而充实的人生中摘出而填入行间字里的伟大的书’ ’ 柏拉图的语录，蒙田的随笔，鲍斯威尔的约翰生传，艾默逊的散文和日记’ ’ 这些书是可以与之共同生活的，可以百读不厌的，也可以在不同的时日与心情中作为伴侣的，那种不同的时日与心情，也正和那些作品在写作时的情形一样。

### 【注释】

(1) ever: 在以 that 引导的关系子句中，前有最上级形容词或 all 或 the only 等字样时，则有 on any supposition, by any chance, at all (究竟，到底，的确) 之意。(2) at a sitting: 一口气

(做完一件事, 如读完一本书, 写完一篇文章之类)。(3) **be shipwrecked with**: 在船失事沉没时也要带着逃命的。(4) **distill**: 精炼, 摘出, 精选。(5) **returned to**: 重读。

## (8) Arguments against Smoking

### 【原文】

It is always inspiring to see a brave man fighting for a lost<sup>(1)</sup> cause, and I never cease to admire the Jacobitish<sup>(2)</sup> zeal with which year after year Mr. John Ervine<sup>(3)</sup> carries on a guerrilla warfare<sup>(4)</sup> against the ever-increasing power of tobacco. I admire it all the more because<sup>(5)</sup> I have fired a few shots in the war against tobacco myself, and have invariably retired defeated<sup>(6)</sup>, with sign of defeat<sup>(7)</sup>, a cigarette in my mouth. I can go on fighting for a week or a month, but there always comes a time when I strike my colours<sup>(8)</sup>, and a match. (Robert Lynd)

### 【译文】

看到勇敢的人为着一种毫无成功希望的运动而奋斗的情形, 是始终令人鼓舞的。年复一年地以斯图亚特王室拥护者的热诚, 来对抗不断增长的烟草的势力, 进行游击战的厄尔文, 我一直都是衷心佩服的。我本人在对抗烟草的战争中, 也曾开过几枪, 而每次都败下阵来, 口里衔着一支香烟, 便是败北的标志, 因此我对于他的热诚更加佩服。我能继续战斗一星期, 或一个月, 但最后总有一个时候要到来, 那就是我挂降旗’ ’ 刮火柴。

### 【注释】

(1) **lost**: 不作/失去的”解, 应为/失败的”, /输了的”之意, 如 **a lost battle** (败仗), 故在上文中意为/一种完全没有成功希望的运动”。(2) **Jacobitish**: 为 **Jacobite** 的形容词。**Jacobite** 为 1688 年被迫逊位的英王 **James II** 的拥护者, 即支持 **House of Stuart** (斯图亚特王室) 者。(3) **St. John Ervine** 为英国爱尔兰出生的剧作家兼小说家。在第一次世界大战后渡美, 成为百老汇的批评家。

(4) **guerrilla warfare**: 游击战。(5) **all the more because**: 因

此更加。(6) retired defeated: 败下阵来。(7) the sign of defeat: 与下面说的 a cigarette in my mouth 同格。(8) strike one's colours: 投降。作者利用 strike a match 一语中的同一动词 (strike) 而作出此俏皮话语。

#### (9) The Definition of a Gentleman

##### 【原文】

It is almost a definition of a gentleman to say he is one who never inflicts pain. This description is both refined and, as far as it goes, accurate. He is mainly occupied in merely removing the obstacles which hinder the free and unembarrassed action of those about him; and he concurs with their movements rather than takes the initiative himself. His benefits may be considered as parallel to what are called comforts or conveniences in arrangements of a personal nature' like an easy chair or a good fire, which do their part in dispelling cold and fatigue, though Nature provides both means of rest and animal heat without them.

##### 【译文】

这差不多可以算是绅士的定义了：说一个人从来不使别人受苦。这个界说，就其本身而论，是既精到而又正确的。他主要是只忙着为他周围的人来消除那些阻止他们自由自在的行动上的障碍，他总是迎合别人的趋向，而自己是不肯发端的。他给人的恩惠，可认为就是那种为某一个人而安排的舒服与方便’ ’ 好像一把安乐椅子或一盆炉火一样，在驱除寒冷和疲劳上尽其职责，虽则大自然也就准备好休息和体温两种办法，不要它们也行的。

#### (10) The Law of the Jungle

##### 【原文】

People in our culture <sup>(1)</sup> who like to think of themselves as tough-minded <sup>(2)</sup> and realistic, including influential politi

cal leaders and businessmen as well as go-getters <sup>(3)</sup> and hustlers <sup>(4)</sup> of smaller caliber <sup>(5)</sup>, tend to take it for granted <sup>(6)</sup> that human nature is /selfish” and that life is a struggle in which only the fittest may survive. According to the philosophy <sup>(7)</sup>, the basic law by which man must live <sup>(8)</sup>, in spite of <sup>(9)</sup> his surface veneer <sup>(10)</sup> of civilization, is the law of the jungle <sup>(11)</sup>. The /fittest” are those who can bring to the struggle superior force, superior cunning, and superior ruthlessness <sup>(12)</sup>.

The wide currency <sup>(13)</sup> of this philosophy of the /survival of the fittest” enables people who act ruthlessly and selfishly, whether in personal rivalries, business competition, or in international relations, to allay <sup>(14)</sup> their consciences by telling themselves that they are only obeying a /law of nature”. But a disinterested <sup>(15)</sup> observer is entitled to <sup>(16)</sup> ask whether the ruthlessness of the tiger, the cunning of the ape, and obedience to the /law of the jungle” are actually evidences of human fitness to survive. (S. I, Hayakawa)

### 【译文】

在现代文化中，喜欢把自己看作是意志坚强而现实的人们，包括那些有势力的政治领袖和商界翘楚，以及才干较差的野心家和活动家在内，都想要把人性的自私，与人生是一场只有适者才能生存的奋斗，视为当然。由于这种人生观，人类为要生存而必须倚重的基本原则，就是弱肉强食，纵令他具有文明的外表。所谓适者就是那些能够以过人的力量，过人的狡猾和过人的残忍来奋斗的人。

由于这种/适者生存”的人生观广泛地流行着的缘故，不问是个人方面的敌对，事业上的竞争，或是国际间的关系，都要残忍而自私地来加以处理的人们，只消对自己说这样做只是服从大自然的法则而已，便可获得良心上的安慰。但是一个公正无私的观察家，有资格来问：老虎的残忍，猿猴的狡猾，以及服从弱肉强食的法则，是不是人类适者生存的实际证据呢？

### 【注释】

(1) culture: 文化 (state of intellectual development among a people)。但常与 civilization (文明) 混用。文明为人类社会开发的状态 (与野蛮对称)，而文化则为人类社会由野蛮进化为文明，其努力所得的成绩，表现于各方面的为科学、艺术、宗教、道德、法律、风俗、习惯等，其综合体则谓之文化。(2) tough-minded: 意志坚强的。(3) go-getter: 充满活力而有进取心的人 (aggressive person who is full of vitality)。(4) hustler: 非常活跃而机敏的人 (very active, prompt, quick-moving person)。(5) caliber: 才干，能力。(6) take it for granted: 句中的 it 为下面 that 子句的代词。这成语的意思为“把它视为当然”。(7) philosophy: 人生观。(8) live by: 赖以为生。例如 He lives by teaching. (他以教书为生。)(9) in spite of: 不顾。(10) veneer: 虚饰，外表上的装饰。(11) the law of the jungle: 弱肉强食。(12) ruthlessness: 残忍。(13) currency: 流通，流布。例如：

The rumor gained currency. (谣言流布。)(14) enables people to allay: 使人能够解忧。(15) disinterested: 公正无私的。(16) is entitled to: 有资格去做。

(11) Some well-informed People

### 【原文】

We sometimes fall in with <sup>(1)</sup> persons who have seen much of the world <sup>(2)</sup>, and of the man <sup>(3)</sup> who, in their day <sup>(4)</sup>, have played a conspicuous part in it <sup>(5)</sup>, but who generalize <sup>(6)</sup> nothing, and have no observation <sup>(7)</sup>, in the true sense of the word <sup>(8)</sup>. They abound in <sup>(9)</sup> information in detail <sup>(10)</sup>, curious and entertaining, about men and things; and, having lived <sup>(11)</sup> under the influence of no very clear or settled principles <sup>(12)</sup>, religious or political, they speak of every one and everything, only as so many <sup>(13)</sup> phenomena, which are complete in themselves, and lead to nothing, not discussing any truth, or instructing the hearer, but simply talking <sup>(14)</sup>. No one would say that these persons, well informed

as they are, had attained to any great culture or intellect or to philosophy. (Cardinal Newman)

### 【译文】

我们有时邂逅一些熟悉世故的人，和一些曾经见过许多在其全盛时代，叱咤风云，世界安危所系的有名人物的人，但是他们却不能归纳出一点什么来，也毫无真正的观察力。我所遇见的那些人，对于人物和掌故，富有离奇有趣而又极为详尽的见闻。他们因为在宗教上和政治上，都无很明确的信念，而浑浑噩噩地度日，所以他们谈到一切的人物和一切的事情时，只是当作行云流水，映入他们眼帘的一些现象，把它说完即了，并未留有什么后果，也未讨论到任何真理，对听他说的人自然无所启发，只不过是一种闲谈而已。这样的人虽富有见闻，谁也不会认为他们在任何伟大的文化，知识，或哲理上有什么造诣的。

### 【注释】

(1) fall in with: 邂逅，偶然遇到。(2) see (or know) the world: 阅历深的，世故深的 (acquire or have experience)。see much of, 看得多，世面见得多。(3) of the men: 接前面的 have seen much 来解。(4) in one's day: 在其全盛时代 (in one's time of prosperity)。(5) played a part in it (i. e. the world): 与” ” 有关。例如 Mencius's mother played a great part in his life and in his ultimate success. (孟母对孟子的一生和他的成就有很大的关系。)(6) generalize: 归纳，得出结论 (infer)。observation: 观察力。(8) in the true sense of the word. (那字的) 真义。(9) abound in: 丰富。(10) in detail: 详细地。修饰前面的 information (见闻知识) 的，与后面的 curious 和 entertaining 同为 information 的修饰语。(11) having lived: = as they have lived. (12) under the influence of no very clear or settled principles: = not influenced by very clear or settled principles. Cf. He uttered no word. = He didn't utter a word. (13) so many: 同数的。例如 He looks upon his children as so many encumbrances. (他把他的孩子们看做许多累赘。)(14) not discussing any truth, ” but simply talking. 注意句中 not” but 在语法上的相连关系。

## (12) The English Humour

### 【原文】

Humour has been well <sup>(1)</sup> defined as /thinking in fun <sup>(2)</sup> while feeling <sup>(3)</sup> in earnest <sup>(4)</sup> ". The English do not approach <sup>(5)</sup> life intellectually; they do not demand that it shall conform to <sup>(6)</sup> some rigid mental plan; they are not convinced <sup>(7)</sup> that the universe can be penetrated <sup>(8)</sup> by thought; they are willing to go to work, either in politics or art, without a theory to sustain them <sup>(9)</sup> ; and when they are more practical than other races, it is not <sup>(10)</sup> ' as those races frequently conclude' because they are coldly clear-sighted and unimaginative, but because they do not busy themselves <sup>(11)</sup> asking reason <sup>(12)</sup> to find a key when instinct has already shown them that the door is wide open. (J. B. Priestley)

### 【译文】

幽默被人很巧妙地诠释说：/一面认真地感觉一面滑稽地思考。”英国人是不肯聪明地去接触人生的。他们并不要求人生应与某种艰苦卓绝的，出自智力的计划一致。他们并不相信这个宇宙是可以用思想去突破的。即令没有支持他们自己的一种理论。他们也愿望去着手于政治上的或艺术上的工作。当他们比别的民族更要实际的时候（例如别的民族惯爱轻易下结论，所以不实际），那并不是因为他们只有冷静的明察力，却缺乏想像力，而是因为当直觉已经明示给他们看那门是打开着的时候，他们仍不肯忙着去讲理性找出一把钥匙来。

### 【注释】

(1) well: 巧妙地 (skillfully)。(2) in fun: 开玩笑的。

(3) while feeling: = while one feels. (4) in earnest: 认真的。(5) approach: 接近 (come or go near or nearer to)。

(6) it shall conform to: 句中的 it = life, 而 shall 是表主句中主语 (they) 的意志。例如 I am determined she shall have no cause to complain. (Sheridan) (我决心不要让她有何抱怨。) conform to: 使顺应, 使一致, 使相似。(7) they are not convinced: 句中的 are convinced 在意义上几乎和 believe 相同。我们如将 are

convinced 与一个他动词等量齐观的话，那么，其后的 that 子句，就可看做动词的宾语了。（8）penetrate：洞察，了解（fathom, comprehend）。I could not penetrate the mystery.（我无法了解这种神秘。）（9）sustain them：支持他们自己。（10）it is not：句中的 it 是指其前面的 they are more practical than other races.（11）busy oneself (in) doing：使自己忙于去做。（12）reason：在此不是“理由”，而是“理知”，“理性”（intellectual faculty）。

### （13）The Trouble with Translation

#### 【原文】

No one these days would, I suppose, maintain <sup>(1)</sup> that it is a bad thing to have so many translations of great books cheaply available <sup>(2)</sup>. But like most blessings, plentiful translations can be curses in disguise <sup>(3)</sup>.

My feeling is that students, and readers generally <sup>(4)</sup>, should as soon forgo the airplane and television as neglect the translations of Oriental and European literature <sup>(5)</sup> which are becoming so abundantly and cheaply available. But I also think that they should be constantly aware (and that publishers, editors, and teachers should constantly remind them) that what they are reading is someone's English version of a work <sup>(6)</sup> which, in its original language, had unique and untranslatable qualities <sup>(7)</sup>. Further, they should remember that the more the original work depended for its effect upon those qualities which make literature a fine art <sup>(8)</sup>, the less is a translation able to provide equivalent effects <sup>(9)</sup>. Baudelaire's <sup>(10)</sup> translations of Poe may be "better" poems than those Poe <sup>(11)</sup> wrote; but those who read them have read Baudelaire's version of Poe; not Poe. (John A. Kouwenhover)

#### 【译文】



我想现今没有一个人要坚持说，许多伟大的书的译本，数量繁多，售价低廉，是一件坏事。但是丰富的译本，也和大多数的幸福一样，到头来会变成不幸的。

我的感想是学生们和一般的读书人，都趋之若鹜，谁也不肯放弃数量如此繁多，价钱如此便宜的东洋文学和欧陆文学的译本，正如他们不肯放弃现代文明之赐的飞机与电视一样。但是我又觉得他们应经常留意（出版家，编辑者，及教师们也应经常提醒他们），他们听读着的译本，只是什么人英译出来的一部作品，在它原来的语文中，实具有不能翻译的独自的特质。此外还有一点，他们应该记住：要使原作成为文学上优美的艺术而产生效果，就得依靠那些特质，依靠的程度越深，译本所能给与的同等的效果越少。波德莱尔所译的爱伦坡的诗，也许比爱伦坡自己所写的更好；但读那些诗的人只是读了波德莱尔所译的爱伦坡；而不是真正的爱伦坡。

### 【注释】

(1) **maintain**: 主张，坚持。(2) **cheaply available**: 廉价买到。(3) **curses in disguise**: 化妆的祸根。前面说的 **blessings** 为 **curse** 的 **antonym** (反义字)。(4) **readers generally**: 一般的读书人。(5) **should as soon forgo the airplane” literature**: 如果把东洋文学和欧洲大陆文学的翻译本弃置不顾，就好像放弃飞机不坐，电视不看似的。(6) **someone’s English version of a work**: 什么人英译出来的一部作品。(7) **which, in its original language, had unique and untranslatable qualities**: 在它原来的语文中，具有不能翻译的独自的特质。(8) **the more the original work” a fine art**: 越是原作由于使文学成为一种优美的艺术，要靠那些特质才能产生效果。这句话的结构略异寻常，一般是说 **depend upon A for B** (由 A 而获得 B)，现因 A 的修饰语句太长，故变更顺序而说成 **depend for B upon A** 了。(9) **a translation able to provide equivalent effects**: 能产生同等效果的翻译。(10) **Charles Baudelaire**: 法国诗人，代表作有《恶之花》诗集，以译介 Poe 的作品驰名于世，公认译得比原作更好。(11) **Edgar Allen Poe**: 美国诗人兼短篇小说家。

(14) Too Distinguished to be a Personality

### 【原文】

When the porter's wife (she used to answer the house-bell) announced "A gentleman with a lady, sir," I had as I often had in those days, for the wish was father to the thought<sup>(1)</sup>, an immediate vision of sitters<sup>(2)</sup>. Sitters my visitors in this case proved to be; but not in the sense I should have preferred<sup>(3)</sup>. However, there was nothing at first to indicate that they might not have come<sup>(4)</sup> for a portrait." "It<sup>(5)</sup> was a truth of which I had for some time been conscious that a figure with a good deal of frontage<sup>(6)</sup> was, as one might say, almost never a public institution<sup>(7)</sup>. A glance at the lady helped to remind me of this paradoxical law<sup>(8)</sup>: She also looked too distinguished to be a "personality"<sup>(9)</sup>. Moreover one would scarcely come across two variations<sup>(10)</sup> together. (Henry James)

### 【译文】

当守门人的妻子（她一向是在应门的）来通报说：“先生，有一位绅士带了一位女客来了。”因为愿望是思想的根源，正如我在当时所常有的情形一样，现在一听说有客人来，心里马上就想到是找我画像的人来了。这次来找我的人，果真是为画像而来的，不过却不是我所指望的对象。虽然如此，起初并没有一点什么迹象显示他们可能不是为画像而来的。”从不久以前起，我就留意到了一个事实，那就是一个风度翩翩的人物，我们不妨说，他差不多从来不会是一个社会上的名人。那个女客，一眼看去，就使我想起这种逆说的定则：她看去也是太杰出而不成其为一个名人呢。而且我们极少会同时遇到两个例外的。

### 【注释】

(1) for the wish was father to the thought: 此为根据谚语 The wish is father to the thought. 说的。意为愿望是思想的根源。心有所欲，便有所思。在本文的场合，是正在期待要画像的人来，所以一听说有客，心里就想到是那样的人来了。(2) sitters: 被画像的人要坐着不动，故云。这字前说的 vision，不是指眼前所见到的，而是指当时心中所想像的。(3) not in the sense I should

have preferred: 句中的 not in the sense, 意为/不是那种意味的”, 后半限定语中的 should, 不可解释为/应该”, 而是表示一种可能发生而实际并未发生的情形。如 I should have gone if you had asked me. (如果你要我去, 我就去了。)(4) might not have come: 句中 might 的用法, 是表示/推测”的, 这句意思是/恐怕不是为” ” 而来”。此句因前有 nothing 一字, 致构成双重否定, 若加以抵消的话, 则意为/一开头就知道他们是为着求画像而来的呀”。(5) It: 这个代名词是代表 that a figure 等一个子句的。(6) a figure with a good deal of frontage: 风度翩翩的人物。一表人才。仪表漂亮的人。(7) public institution: 原意为/公共机关”, 在此为/世间知名之士”, /名士”。institution 一字在口语中有 familiar object (有名的事物; 熟悉的人物) 的意思, 例如 He was one of the institutions of the place. (他是当地闻人之一。)(8) this paradoxical law: 这个逆说的定则, 意指风度翩翩的人反而不成其为名士的那种现象。(9) too distinguished to be a/personality”: 太杰出而不能成为名士。personality = personage 人物, 名人。distinguished personage 有名望的人物, 名人。(10) two variations. 指对上述法则的例外的人物。来客有两人, 那女客即令是例外的存在, 那绅士不可能也是, 不至两个例外同时出现。

(15) Schadenfreude

### 【原文】

If we contrast the resources of the United States and the resources of the Viet Cong <sup>(1)</sup>, whatever we may think of the political morality of the activities of the Viet Cong, it does not seem to the outsider that the Viet Cong are inferior to the Americans in courage, resolution <sup>(2)</sup>, or belief in their cause <sup>(3)</sup>. For this reason, the news that the Americans had dropped napalm <sup>(4)</sup> on their own troops was received with very mixed feelings <sup>(5)</sup> in Europe. There were, of course, professional and permanent anti-Americans <sup>(6)</sup> who had all the joys of Schadenfreude <sup>(7)</sup> at the news. For them, there is no folly and no crime of which the Americans are not intrinsically capable, and there is no folly and no crime which the enemies of the

Americans are not justified in committing <sup>(8)</sup> . But many people who do not share these views <sup>(9)</sup> in the least <sup>(10)</sup> could not help reflecting that a fate <sup>(11)</sup> had befallen unfortunate young American soldiers that has frequently befallen even <sup>(12)</sup> more unfortunate Vietnamese children. (Sir Denis Brogan)

### 【译文】

如果把美国的资源和越共的资源比较一下，无论我们对越共的所作所为在政治上的道德怎样想法，由局外人来看是不会认为越共在勇敢，决心，和忠于大义的信念上，有逊于美军的。由于这个原因，在欧洲听到美军把烧夷弹误投到他们自己的军队上的消息时，不免感到悲喜交集。当然，有些职业的，坚决永恒的反美主义者，听到这消息便要幸灾乐祸，感到高兴。他们认为美军在本质上是任何愚行，任何罪恶，都可以干得出来的，所以美军的敌人要干些愚行和罪恶，也是应该的。但即令许多决不同意这种见解的人，听到这消息时，也不得不有下面这样的想法：不幸的年轻美国兵曾经遭遇的悲惨的死，在更加不幸的越南儿童身上，到现在为止所遭遇到的同样的惨死，也不知有多少次了。

### 【注释】

(1) Viet Cong: 越共。(2) resolution: 决心 (firmness of purpose)。(3) belief in their cause: 对于 (民族解放的) 大义的信念。普通说 one's cause 为人们所拼命支持的主义、主张、信仰、运动等。(4) napalm: 燃烧弹。火焰喷射器等所用的胶状汽油。(5) mixed feelings: 复杂的感情。(6) professional and permanent anti-Americans: 职业的持久的反美主义者。(7) Schadenfreude (G.): 幸灾乐祸 (enjoyment obtained from the misshaps of others)。这是说对别人的不幸感到痛快。这是一个德文的字，英文无相当的字可以用的，故借用。(Schade = damage + freude = joy.) (8) there is no folly and no crime which the enemies of the Americans are not justified in committing: 句中两重否定变成肯定，故可改写为肯定句 The enemies of the Americans are justified in committing any folly and crime. 即所谓“以牙还牙”的理论。(9) share these views: 同意。(10) not” in the least: = not” at all 注意这个 in the least 与 at least 不同，不可混淆。(11) a fate: 悲惨的命运，即死。(12) even: = still

## (16) Aloneness is Worse than Failure

### 【原文】

What is feared as failure in American society is, above all, aloneness. And aloneness is terrifying because it means that there is no one, no group, no approved cause to submit to. Even success often becomes impossible to bear when it is not socially approved or even known. This is perhaps why successful criminals often feel the need to confess, that is, to submit to the community's <sup>(1)</sup> judgment, represented in the person to whom the confession is made. They will confess even under circumstances where this will probably, if not certainly, endanger their previous success: proof, I think, that aloneness is more intolerable than mere failure. For mere failure, provided <sup>(2)</sup> it is found in company <sup>(3)</sup>, can rather easily be borne; many ideologies have the function of making it possible for people to digest <sup>(4)</sup> the worst miseries and even death. Under the sway <sup>(5)</sup> of the ideology, they do not feel the impact <sup>(6)</sup> of their failure; they are in the grip of an authority, even if it lets them down <sup>(7)</sup>. On the other hand <sup>(8)</sup>, one who is alone lacks this solace which can make even failure comfortable. (David Riesman)

### 【译文】

在美国社会中作为失败而为人们所恐怖的，莫过于孤独了。而孤独之所以可怕，就因为那意味着没有一个可服从的人，没有一个可服从的团体，也没有一个可服从的公认的大义。即令获得成功，若不为社会所认可，或甚至不为世人所知道时，就是成功也常要变得使人不能忍受的。这也许就是成功的罪犯，时常觉得有必要去自首的原因，那就是，去服从那个听取自首的人所代表的公众的裁判。即令在如果不是一定的话，至少是可能危害他们前此的成功那种情形之下，他们仍然要去自首的。变成孤独比单纯的失败，更要难于忍受，我想这就足以证明了。因为单纯的失败，即令是与人共同遭受的，毋宁是能够容易忍受的。许多意识形态的作用，可使人能够忍受极大的不幸，甚至是死亡。人们在意识形态掩护之下，便不会感到自己失败的冲击。

意识形态以一种权威的力量，掌握住他们，虽则在紧要关头也不免要把他们抛弃。在另一方面，孤独的人便缺乏那种甚至可以使失败也感到舒服的安慰。

### 【注释】

(1) the community: 公众 (the public)。(2) provided: 如果 (if), 即令 (even if)。(3) in company: 与人共同地。(4) digest: 忍受 (bear with patience; endure)。(5) sway: 控制。(6) impact: 冲击。(7) let them down: 把他们抛弃 (fail them at need)。(8) on the other hand: 在另一方面。

### (17) Being One's True Self

### 【原文】

In literature, as in life, one of the fundamentals is to find, and be, one's true self. One's true self may indeed <sup>(1)</sup> be unpleasant; but a false self, sooner or later, becomes disgusting' just as a nice plain woman <sup>(2)</sup>, painted to the eyebrows, can become horrid <sup>(3)</sup>. In writing, in the long run <sup>(4)</sup>, pretense does not work. As the police put it <sup>(5)</sup>, anything you say may be used as evidence against you. If handwriting reveals character, writing reveals it still more. You cannot fool your judges all the time <sup>(6)</sup>.

Most style is not honest enough. Easy to say, but hard to practice. A writer may take to <sup>(7)</sup> long words, as young men to beards' to <sup>(8)</sup> impress. But long words like long beards, are often the badge of charlatans <sup>(9)</sup>. Or a writer may cultivate the obscure <sup>(10)</sup>, to seem profound. But even carefully muddied puddles <sup>(11)</sup> are soon fathomed. Or he may cultivate eccentricity, to seem original. But really original people do not have to think <sup>(12)</sup> about being original' they can no more help it than <sup>(13)</sup> they can help <sup>(14)</sup> breathing. (Frank Laurence Lucas)

### 【译文】

在文学中，也和在生活中一样，基本原理之一就是发现自我，乃至成为真正的自我。真正的自我诚然是令人不愉快的，但一个虚伪的自己迟早是会变得令人讨厌的’ ’ 正好像一个丑陋的女人，涂脂抹粉，一直涂到眉毛以上去，也会变得可怕的一样。在写作中假装毕竟也是行不通的。正如警察所说的，你说的任何一句话，都可能要成为对你不利的证据。如果笔迹显示性格，写作显示的更多。你不能始终愚弄所有的评判人呀。

大多数的文体是不够诚实的。说时容易做时难。一个作家也许好用长字，正如年轻人好蓄胡须一样，目的无非是想使人留下深刻的印象。但是长字，有如长须，常成为骗子的标志。凡是一个作家想要显得高深，可能采用晦涩难解的文字。但是无论怎样细心弄得浑浊的水，也很快就可测出其深度的。或是有人想要显得独创，可能写出奇奇怪怪的文章。但是真正有独创力的人们无用乎去想怎样来独创，他们就像不得不呼吸一样，也不得不发挥出那种独创力来。

### 【注释】

(1) indeed: 与后面的 but 呼应。(2) a nice plain woman: 不说 ugly woman, 而说 plain woman 或 homely woman, 比较含蓄, 是一种委婉的说法 (Euphemism), 其实这个 plain = ugly. 在男人方面说 plain man, 意义就不同了, 那是指率直的人, 而所谓 plain people 便是指一般的人。形容词对男女意义有别, 须加注意。他例如 an honest man 诚实的人; an honest woman 贞洁的女人 (a chaste woman), 成语有 make an honest woman of her, 先奸后娶, 使成正式妻子。nice 用在形容词前为副词, 意为/“十分地”, /“怎样也是”, 如 It was nice cold weather. (天气很冷。)

(3) painted to the eyebrows, can become horrid: 涂到眉毛以上, 意即浓妆艳抹。句中的 can 非指/“能力”, 而指/“可能性”。(4) in the long run: 终久, 毕竟。(5) put it: 这个 put 有/“表明”和/“述说”的意思, 如 To put it briefly. (简单地说。 ) Let me put it in another way. (换一个方式来说吧。 ) (6) all the time: 一直, 始终。(7) take to: 喜欢, 耽于。(8) to: 即 in order to. (9) badge of charlatans: 骗子的标志。charlatan 原为法文, 有/“走江湖者”, /“骗子”, /“冒充内行者”的意思。(10) the obscure: 形容词前加定冠词即指名词, 如 the beautiful = beauty; the poor = poor

r people. (11) muddied puddles: 泥水潦。(12) do not have to think: 意为 need not think. (13) no more" than: 与" " 同样不。(14) help: 避免 (avoid) 。

## (18) Happiness Consists in Love

### 【原文】

Who can say <sup>(1)</sup> in what remoteness of time, in what difference of earthly shape, love first come to us as a stranger in the jungle? We, in our human family <sup>(2)</sup>, know him <sup>(3)</sup> through dependence <sup>(4)</sup> in childhood, through possession <sup>(5)</sup> in youth, through sorrow and loss in their season <sup>(6)</sup>. In childhood we are happy to receive; it is the first opening of love. In youth we take and give, dedicate and possess' rapture and anguish are mingled, until parenthood brings a dedication <sup>(7)</sup> that, to be happy, must ask for no return <sup>(8)</sup>. All these are new horizons of content <sup>(9)</sup>, which the lust of holding, the enemy of love <sup>(10)</sup>, slowly contaminates. Loss, sorrow and separation come, sickness and death; possession, that tormented us, is nothing in our hands; it vanishes. Love's elusive <sup>(11)</sup> enchantment, his ubiquitous <sup>(12)</sup> presence, again become apparent; and in age we may reach a haven <sup>(13)</sup> that asking for nothing knows how to enjoy. <sup>(14)</sup> (Freya Stark)

### 【译文】

爱这东西，不管是在多么远古的时代，不管是采取怎样现世的形态出现，总好像在森林中遇到的陌生人一样，是一个谁也不能了解的哑谜。属于人类的我们，在孩童时代，由于依赖爱自己的人而认识爱；在青年时代，由于占有所爱的人而认识爱，于是时候一到，由于失去了所爱的人感到悲伤而认识爱。在孩童时代我们很高兴来接受；这是爱的最早的端倪。在青年时代我们有取有予，有献身有占有，悲喜交集，直到做了父母时，对儿女那种献身的爱，心甘情愿，不望报答。这一切都是令人满足的爱的新境界，可惜不免要为与爱为敌的所有欲，慢慢地加以污损。失去了爱的痛苦，离别的悲哀，随即到来，还有疾病和死亡。以前那种使我们受苦的占有，已不在我们掌握



之中，而早烟消云散了。爱的难于捉摸的魅力，它那不即不离的灵性，再度变得明显起来，及来到老年，我们就可能达到一个由于不求报答，故能体味到那种平静无波的爱佳境。

### 【注释】

(1) say: (尤其是在否定和疑问句中) 推测; 评定; 提出意见。(2) We, in our human family: 等于说 We human beings. 人类。(3) know him: 等于前面说的 love first comes to us 一样, 将 he 作为 love 的代名词。这个 know, 不是指状态, 而是指“相知”。(4) dependence: 依赖 (父母)。(5) possession: 占有 (爱人)。(6) through sorrow and loss in their season: 在人生的各个时期由于失去爱而感到悲伤。in their season 表示包括所有的时期, their 指 sorrow 与 loss 的, 故译为“时候一到”。(7) until parenthood brings a dedication: 直到做了父母, 就献身地去爱儿女, 天下父母心, 莫不皆然。(8) must ask for no return: 决不望报。(9) new horizons of content: 令人满足的爱的新境界。(10) the lust of holding, the enemy of love: 所有欲, 也就是爱的大敌。(11) elusive: 不可捉摸的, 以为捉到了的东西又跑掉了, 意指倏忽无常。(12) ubiquitous: 原意为无所不在的, 现译为不即不离的。以上两句并非同格的说法, 由动词的复数便知。(13) haven: 平静安乐的境界。(14) that asking for nothing knows how to enjoy: 由于我们不求报答故能体味到那种” ”

### (19) The Cosy Fire of Affection

### 【原文】

You've been in love, of course! <sup>(1)</sup> If not you've got it to come. Love is like the measles; we all have to go through it. Al so like the measles, we take it only once. One never need be a fraid of catching it a second time. The man who has had it ca n go into the most dangerous places <sup>(2)</sup>, and play the most fool-hardy tricks <sup>(3)</sup> with perfect safety. He can, to see the las t of a friend <sup>(4)</sup>, venture into the very jaws of the marriage ceremony itself <sup>(5)</sup>. He can keep his head through the whirl of a

ravishing waltz <sup>(6)</sup> , and rest afterwards in a dark conservatory <sup>(7)</sup> , catching nothing more lasting than a cold. <sup>(8)</sup>

No, we never sicken with love twice. Cupid <sup>(9)</sup> spends no second arrow on the same heart. Love's handmaids <sup>(10)</sup> are our life-long friends. Respect , and Admiration , and Affection , our doors may always be left open for, but their great celestial master <sup>(11)</sup> , in his royal progress, pays but one visit <sup>(12)</sup> , and departs. Meteor-like, it blazes for a moment <sup>(13)</sup> , and lights with its glory the whole world beneath. Happy those who <sup>(14)</sup> , hastening down again e'er it dies out <sup>(15)</sup> , can kindle their earthly altars at its flame. Love is too pure a light to burn <sup>(16)</sup> long among the noisome gases that we breathe, but before it is choked out <sup>(17)</sup> we may use it as a torch to ignite the cosy fire <sup>(18)</sup> of affection. (Jerome K. Jerome)

### 【译文】

当然，你们都有过恋爱的经验！如果还没有的话，也就必然会要来的。恋爱好像麻疹一样，是每个人都要经历的。也好像麻疹一样，我们一生中只能罹上一次。谁也不用担心会再度罹上它的。凡是已经有过那种经历的人，可以深入最危险的地带，玩弄最鲁莽的勾当，逢场作戏，保证安全。他可以向独身生活告别，而大胆地走进结婚典礼的虎口。他可以满不在乎地从结婚晚会的狂欢圆舞的漩涡中安顿下来，然后进入幽暗的温室里去，从此相安无事，即令有平地波澜，也不过是像纠缠的伤风一样的小小毛病而已。

所以我们是不会再度罹上恋爱病的。爱神不会在同一颗心上射出第二支箭。爱的侍女们成为我们毕生的伴侣。尊敬，赞美，钟情，我们的心扉经常为她们开着，可是她们那伟大的天上的主子，在他的行幸中，只降临一次就离去了。像流星一般，它只燃烧一会儿，用它的荣光，照明下界整个的世界。趁着那光还未消失，再急忙地下降，能用它的火焰把他们地上的祭坛点燃的人们就有福了。爱是一种太纯洁的光，不能在我们呼吸的具有恶臭的气体中燃烧得太久，但是在它窒息之前，我们也许可用它作为火把，以点燃舒适的炉火，钟情的所在。

### 【注释】

(1) **You've been in love, of course!** : 作者认为男女之间总不免有相恋的事, 但只有初恋才是真诚的, 所以他把它比做每个人都要经历一次麻疹。确认了这种严肃的事实之后, 他便达到了一个结论: 正是王戎说的“情之所钟正在吾辈”。钟情才是最要紧的, 维系男女的关系, 家庭的存在, 乃至快乐的婚后生活, 或是避免离婚的悲剧, 一切都有赖于此。(2) **the most dangerous places**: 指男女间最容易出问题的情形。(3) **play the most fool-hardy tricks**: 所谓 **play a trick**, 意为开玩笑或诈骗, **trick** 是诡计或欺诈手段。**fool-hardy** 为有勇无谋的, 鲁莽的。故全句译成玩弄鲁莽的勾当。

(4) **see the last of a friend**: 这里说的 **a friend**, 是把 **single-blessedness** (独身生活) 人格化了。所谓和那朋友见最后一面, 就是和他告别的意思。(5) **can venture into the very jaws of the marriage ceremony itself**: 句中动词的 **venture**, 形容词的 **very**, 乃至反身代名词的 **itself**, 都是为加强语气而用的, 全部总括在助动词的 **can** 之下。复数形的 **jaws** 有“峡谷”的意思, 在此乃比喻的用法。

(6) **can keep his head through the whirl of a ravishing waltz**: 句中 **keep his head** 有 **keep calm** (沉着, 满不在乎) 之意。**the whirl of a ravishing waltz**, 指结婚晚会的狂欢热舞的场面。

(7) **conservatory**: 温室, 暖房 (不可译作音乐学校), 在此指家庭。因为人们说结婚是爱情的坟墓, 现由结婚典礼来表示爱情的结束, 晚会的狂欢敲响了葬送爱情的丧钟 (**funeral bell**), 而当事人在那个热闹的场面过后, 能够安静下来 (**rest**) 的地方, 便是可避风雨侵袭而由人工做出来的温室 (家庭) 了。(8) **catching nothing more lasting than a cold**: 注意这儿说的 **catching**, 与前面第五句说的 **One never need be afraid of catching it a second time** 中的 **catching** 遥相呼应, 而有对照的作用。全句意为延续的东西除伤风外就不会得到别的什么了。说结婚生活中即使有点平地波澜也不会大过伤风那样的小毛病。注意在 **conservatory** 前用了 **dark** 一个形容词, 既系幽暗, 自然难免伤风, 而且这个 **cold** 还有对 **love** 已经冷却了的含义。(9) **Cupid**: 罗马神话中的爱神, 用箭射在男女的心上, 他们就相爱起来。(10) **Love's handmaids**: 指下面说的 **Respect, Admiration, Affection**。(11) **their great celestial master**: 指 **Love**。(12) **pays but one visit**: 只降临一次, 与上段说的 **Also like the measles, we take it only once** 遥相呼应。(13) **it blazes for a moment**: 句中的 **it** 指 **Love**。上句因有 **master** 的字样, 故临时改用 **his** 为代名词。(14) **Happy those who** 即 **Happ**

y are those who 的省略说法。这使人不免要联想到新约圣经的 St. Matthew V 中的“The Sermon on the Mount”如 Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven 等句法。(15) hastening down again e'er it dies out: 句中的 again 不是指 hastening down 的反复, 而是指往返运动中返的意思, 但不必译出, 这原是说 Love 离开人间回到天上去, 有时再来到人间。e'er 应写作 ere = before, 这当然是作者的笔误 (erroneous use)。全句意为趁着人们热恋的纯情还没有完全消失, 再匆匆忙忙地从天上降下, 用它的火焰点燃他们地上的祭坛上的火, 能做到这点的人们便有福了。(16) too pure” to burn: 太纯洁而不能燃烧。(17) it is choked out: 窒息死去 (指 love)。(18) the cosy fire: 指家庭中的 hearth (火炉) 而言。hearth 在英国因一年到头生火故为家庭的象征。最后说的 of affection 意指家庭有赖爱情的支持, 故 the cosy fire 即为钟情的所在。

## (20) Irrational Man

### 【原文】

An observer from another planet might well be struck by (1) the disparity (2) between the enormous power which our age has concentrated in its external life and the inner poverty which our art seeks to expose to view. This is, after all, the age that has discovered and harnessed (3) atomic energy, and that will, in a few years (perhaps in a few months), have atomic-powered planes which can fly through outer space and not need to return to mother earth for weeks. What cannot man do (4)? But if an observer from Mars were to turn his attention from these external appurtenances (5) of power to the shape of man as revealed in our novels, plays, painting, and sculpture, he would find there a creature full of holes and gaps, faceless, riddled with doubts and negations (6).

This violent contrast between power and impoverishment (7) is frightening, for it represents a dangerous lagging of man behind his own works (8); and in this lag lies the terror

(9) of the atomic bomb which hangs over us like impending night. Here surely the ordinary man begins to catch a fleeting glimpse of that Nothingness <sup>(10)</sup> which both artist and philosopher have begun in our time to take seriously. (William Barrett)

### 【译文】

现代的人在其外面的生活上集中巨大的力量，而现代艺术却企图把那内面的贫穷暴露出来让人们看，一个从别的星球来的观察者，看到这种悬殊的不同，要大吃一惊也是当然的。毕竟，现代是发现了原子能又加以利用的时代，在几年内，甚至几个月内，就会有原子动力的飞机，能够飞往外太空，好几个礼拜都无需回返地球。人类还有什么做不到的事呢？但是如果一个从火星来的观察者，把他的目光从这些人力发挥尽致的外表的工具，转移到现代小说，戏剧，绘画，雕刻，所显示的人的形状，他就会发觉那是为疑问和否定，弄得满目疮痍，面目全非的一个生物。

这种外表的威力和内在的脆弱，二者对照的激烈令人可怕，因为它表示人类落在他自己造出的强大工具的后面，已达到危险的程度。像迫近的黑夜一般悬在我们头上的原子弹的恐怖，就因为这种落后而将来临。那是一定的，原子战争的结果，一切归于毁灭。艺术家和哲学家早已在我们这个时代开始时，就认真地在考虑这“无”的世界，而一般的人也触目惊心，开始注意到这个问题了。

### 【注释】

(1) might well be struck by: 要为” ” 而感到大为吃惊也是应该的。(2) disparity: 不同，悬殊。(3) harnessed: 利用。(4) What cannot man do? : 人类还有什么不能做的？意即人类什么都能做（修辞疑问），是以否定加强肯定的。(5) appurtenances: Random House Dictionary 上解释说，something subordinate to another, more important thing, 更加重要的附属物，在此指原子弹及太空船一类的人力所造成的外表的工具。(6) a creature full of holes and gaps, faceless, riddled with doubts and negations: 由于怀疑和否定使之伤痕累累，面目全非的生物。所谓 faceless 不是没有面孔，而是面目不分明（unidentifiable），不能分辨是谁。这儿所描写的生物（人类）是指现代精神分裂的人，怀疑

的人，虚无的人等形象化的东西。(7) power and impoverishment: 外表的威力和内在的脆弱。(8) it represents a dangerous lagging of man behind his own works: 这表示人类落在他自己的作品的后面，达到危险的程度。lagging behind 的反意语为 catching up with. (9) in this lag lies the terror: 恐怖就在这落后之中。这是一种倒装句法，意为因为这种落后而发生那种恐怖。(10) catch a fleeting glimpse of that Nothingness: 一切皆空原是东方的思想，在西洋到了本世纪才有人提倡存在主义，于是也有了虚无思想，代表的有法国的卡缪著的《西西弗斯的神话》(Albert Camus: Le Mythe de Sisyphe, 1942)，德国卡夫卡著的《奇妙之身》(Franz Kafka: Die Verwandlung, 1916)等。Nothingness 指一切毁灭，是原子弹炸后的状态。catch a fleeting glimpse of, 一瞬瞥见。指普通人也要骤然想到一切归于毁灭后的虚无状态。

## 习题

试将下列英文译成中文：

(1) You are a very strange creature by way of a friend! ' always wanting me to play and sing before anybody and everybody! If my vanity had taken a musical turn, you would have been invaluable; but as it is, I would really rather not sit down before those who must be in the habit of hearing the very best performers.

(2) Twenty years had passed since then. He kept up a busy correspondence with various great ladies and his letters were amusing and chatty. He never lost his love for titled persons and paid no attention to the announcement in the Times of their comings and goings. He perused the column which records births, deaths, and marriages, and he was always ready with his letter of congratulation or condolence. (Maugham)

(3) The best of the communications an author has to make is to his own generation, and he is wise to let the generation that succeeds his choose its own exponents. They will do i

t whether he lets them or not. His language will be Greek to them. (Maugham)

(4) Often enough' and often justifiably' your ordinary lover of Nature has been accused of sentimentality. He prattles, so his condemners say, of the sweet twitter of birds and of the flowers that bloom in the spring. He disregards the seamy side of things and sees the world in greeting-card terms. (Joseph Wood Krutch)

(5) If to feel a false emotion based upon a deliberately incomplete view of the facts is to be guilty of sentimentalism, then the view that Nature is consistently violent and cruel is as sentimental as its opposite. She is no more characteristically red in tooth and claw than she is characteristically a kind mother. (Joseph Wood Krutch)

(6) Probably in nothing have man's inventive powers been so active as in his endeavour to triumph over the terrors of darkness. Light is among the first needs man has supplied for himself in his struggle against it. Yet darkness has its gracious gifts. As it descends upon the world nature prepares itself for rest and sleep, and in the silence men recover strength of mind and body for the duties and burdens of the new day.

(7) Maybe the gradual actualization of this solidarity was the result of scientific and hence technological progress which caused distances to shrink and required ever expanding markets. But it is a preconceived and entirely unwarranted idea to believe this technological unification to have been a primary cause.

(8) A stout old lady was walking with her basket down the middle of a street in Petrograd to the great confusion of the traffic and with no small peril to herself. It was pointed out to her that the pavement was the place for foot-passengers, but she replied: /I'm going to walk where I like. We've got liberty now." It did not occur to the dear old lady that if liberty entitle

d the foot-passenger to walk down the middle of the road it also entitled the cab-driver to drive on the pavement, and that the end of such liberty would be universal chaos.

(9) Foolishly arrogant as I was, I used to judge the worth of a person by his intellectual power and attainment. I could see no good where there was no logic, no charm where there was no learning. Now I think that one has to distinguish between two forms of intelligence, that of the brain, and that of the heart, and I have come to regard the second as by far the more important.

(10) The educated man is presumed to know what is wrong in the world, and what should be done to rectify it. If his education has amounted to anything, it should have increased his ability to think clearly and scientifically, and thus to know how to get at the cause and effect of political, social, economic, industrial evils. No man has right to consider education as merely a personal benefit enabling him to be more prosperous and happy in the world. He must look upon it as imposing upon him a responsibility to increase the welfare of others. Too many regard it as their own possession, and do not realize that it is something to be shared with others, and to be used for good of society at large.



## 附录

### 当代英美名作摘译

#### 小引

一般读书人都是陶渊明的信徒，读书不求甚解，明白了一点大意就满足了。因此一动手来翻译，立刻就露出马脚来，连大名鼎鼎的胡适博士亦在所不免。他所译的短篇小说和原文常有出入。日本人读书比较认真，所以他们的译文是不会有太离谱的。这并不太难，只要我们放弃不求甚解的习惯，仔细精读原文，自不难彻底理解。如果能把原文逐字逐句理解无遗，再运用中文的表现能力，自然就能很忠实而流利地翻译出来了。

#### (1)

Suppose you ignore the telephone when it rings, and suppose that, for once, somebody has an important message for you. I can assure you that if a message is really important it will reach you sooner or later. Think of the proverb: "Ill news travels apace." I must say good news seems to travel just as fast. And think of the saying: "The truth will out." It will. But suppose you answer the telephone when it rings. If, when you take off the receiver, you say "Hullo!" just think how absurd that is. Why, you might be saying "Hullo!" to a total stranger, a thing you would certainly think twice about before doing in public, if you were English.

But perhaps, when you take off the receiver, you give your number or your name. But you don't even know whom you

are giving it to! Perhaps you have been indiscreet enough to have your name and number printed in the telephone directory, a book with a large circulation, a successful book so often reprinted as to make any author envious, a book more in evidence than Shakespeare or the Bible, and found in all sorts of private and public places. By your self-advertisement you have enabled any stranger, bore, intruder, or criminal to engage you in conversation at a moment's notice in what ought to be the privacy of your own home.

### 【解说】

本文选自英国现代作家 William Plomer (1903' ) 写的 *On Not Answering the Telephone* 一篇随笔中的一节。文笔中讽刺与幽默并用, 再加上日常说的谚语, 写来极为生动有趣。作者生于非洲, 虽曾回国入 Rugby 私立公校, 因水土不合又回返他的出生地去了。他在非洲从商, 又从事农业, 后与诗人 Roy Campbell 合办一个文学杂志。第二次世界大战中从军, 在海军部服务。作品涉及长篇小说, 短篇小说, 诗歌, 传记各方面, 以短篇小说最为有名。

### 【注释】

(1) ignore 不理睬。(2) important message for you, 有重要的消息告诉你。(3) sooner or later 迟早。(4) think of 想到, 忆及。例如 I can't think of his name at the moment, 我一时想不起他的名字。(5) "Ill news travels apace" 恶事传千里。travels 一字, 又常用 runs 或 flies 等字。apace 有 fast 的意思, 如 The hours and days speed apace 时日飞逝。(6) The truth will out. 真相终将水落石出。will 表示习性。out 为 come out 的简略说法, 单此一副词即可作自动词用。同样的俗语有 Murder will out, 谋杀案隐藏不住, 终将泄露出来。(7) receiver 电话的听筒。(8) total stranger 完全不认识的陌生人。(9) a thing 用作和上文同格的名词, 这一件事即指对一个陌生人招呼。(10) think twice about 再思(而后行)的意思的陈句。(11) doing in public 公开的去, 在人前做。(12) if you were English 如果你是英国国民的话。the English 指英国全体的国民, 单独的个体则说 an Englishman, 复数为 three Englishmen, 但普通说国籍时常把冠词略去, 如 I am Chinese. (我是中国的国民)。比较: I am a Chinese. (我是

中国人)。They are Italian. (他们都是意大利的国民)。比较: They are Italians. (他们是意大利人)。if you were English 的 English 是如上 Italian 同样的用法。(13) indiscreet 轻率的。(14) telephone directory 电话簿。(14) a book with a large circulation 一本销数很广大的书。(15) make any author envious 使任何作家妒羡。(16) in evidence 是一个有 conspicuous (显著的) 之意的成语, 例如 She likes to be much in evidence 她很爱出风头。Smith was nowhere in evidence. 史密斯显然不见了。(17) self-advertisement 自作广告, 自我宣传。指把自己的姓名住址登在电话簿上。一种讽刺的说法。(18) bore 令人讨厌的人。(19) intruder 闯入者。(20) criminal 罪犯。(21) engage you in conversation 来和你交谈。(22) at a moment's notice = immediately 在此场合的 notice 可作“预告”解。(23) in the privacy of your own home. 在你自己家里的私生活中。in privacy 秘密地, 隐秘地。例如 He likes to live in privacy. 他喜欢与人无所接触的生活。他喜欢离群索居。I tell you this in strict privacy. 此事绝对秘密。in the privacy of one's thoughts 在心灵深处。

### 【译例】

假定电话铃响你置之不理, 又假定刚好这次那人有重要的消息要告诉你。我可以向你保证, 如果那消息是真正重要的话, 它迟早总会传达给你听的。想到那句谚语: “恶事传千里”, 我一定要说好的消息好像也同样地传达得很快的呀。再想想那句常言: “真相总会水落石出的”, 确是如此。但是假定你听到电话铃响, 你就去接。当你拿起听筒, 如果你说“哈罗!”的话, 试想这是多么荒谬呀。哼, 你也许正在对一个完全不相识的陌生人在说着“哈罗!”如果你是英国国民的话, 这确实是一件在人前你要三思而后行的事。

但是当你拿起电话听筒的时候, 也许你会把你的号码或是姓名告诉对方的。你甚至还不知道你在告诉的人是谁呢! 也许你太轻率把你的姓名号码, 随便就印在电话簿上去了, 那是一本销数极多的书, 任何作家都要羡慕的一本再三重版的成功的书, 一本比莎士比亚或是《圣经》更要引人注目的书, 在各种各样的公私场所都可见到的。由于你的自我宣传, 你使得任何陌生人, 令人讨厌的家伙, 闯入者, 或是罪犯之流, 都能够侵入你在自己家里的私生活, 随时来和你交谈。

(2)

What is perhaps strangest today is the keen widespread interest displayed toward people who are, on the one hand, not real celebrities and, on the other, not personally known to one. Most gossip that doesn't concern one's friends and acquaintances has, classically, a certain snob appeal' has to do with people of great wealth or fame or beauty. But much that one reads today in the gossip columns has to do, it might almost be said, with people whose reputations are being made at the same time they're being unmade' people who only exist, as it were, in terms of the gossip. The who's-dating-whom, the rumors of divorce, the shifts of affection, the speculations as marriage, the pregnancies and births, are for the most part' in New York, at any rate' about people only marginally in the limelight and often actually on the side lines. That Sonny Tink, the underwear heir, is dating a starlet, or even a show girl; that a TV scriptwriter is horning in on the happy home of a candy-bar maker; that it's a boy at the Gumbridges (his pajama company sponsors a minor radio program) ; that a dog-biscuit tycoon has taken to investing in Broadway shows' this is the run of such stuff; and in a city of 8, 000, 000 people' a city that teems with real celebrities' this would seem to me of a piece with the trailer items in an old-fashioned small-town society column.

### 【解说】

本文采自美国作家 Louis Kronenberger (1904' ) 的一篇文章 *A Note on Privacy* 中的一节。描写私生活日益遭受侵害，物议纷纭，人言可畏。行文故意规避平易的表现，而采用奇特的语法，点缀一些有趣的警句和新鲜的比喻，口语俗语自由使用，有时未免艰深难解，总之，不失为奔放不羁的文体。作者为德国系统犹太人的后裔，在出生地 Ohio 的 Cincinnati 大学毕业后，1924 年前往纽约，先在 Boni & Liveright 公司编辑部工作，后又改任 Knopf 出版公司编辑。发表了许多小说和评论，现为纽约《泰晤士报》写剧评，相当活跃。

## 【注释】

(1) the keen widespread interest 热烈的普遍的兴趣。

(2) displayed toward people who are 对那些人们展示的。(3) on the one hand” on the other (hand) 在一方面” ” 在另一方面。(4) celebrities 名人，闻人。(5) personally known to 亲身认识。(6) gossip 街谈巷议；在人背后说人长短或是非闲谈。

(7) that doesn't concern one's friends and acquaintances 无关他的朋友或相识的。(8) classically 原义为“正统地”，在此用着“传统地”(traditionally)相近的意味。(9) snob appeal 意为 appeal to snobbery，以名词修饰名词，简洁有力，为现代英语中常见的用法。has a certain snob appeal 引起某种装模作样的兴趣。据 Random House Dictionary of the English Language 的解释说 snob = a person who pretends to have social importance, intellectual superiority, etc. 意为一个假装社会上重要的人物，或智力超人表示他什么事都知道的样子。snob 在此指 snobbish character 或 conduct. 即上述俗物的性格或行为。(10) has to do with 与” ” 有关。(11) people of great wealth or fame or beauty 极为富有，极为有名，极为美貌的人。(12) much that one reads today in the gossip columns 今日我们在闲话栏中所读到的大部分的社会新闻。(13) reputations are being made at the same time they're being unmade. 由于声名狼藉而使声誉鹊起。意为以丑行而出名的。这种表现法很是有趣。(14) as it were 可谓。(15) in terms of 由于 (by means of)；从什么的观点 (from the standpoint of)。(16) The who's-dating-whom 谁在跟谁闹恋爱。这种随意加短划而把若干单字构成一语，也是新的表现法。(17) the shifts of affection 移情别恋。(18) speculations 臆测。(19) pregnancies 怀孕。(20) only marginally in the limelight 仅是略为靠近灰光灯所照射的部分。意指稍为世人所知的。(21) on the side lines 在界线外的地方。借用运动术语，以作比喻的表现。The spectators watched the game from the side lines. 观众站在线外看比赛。(22) Sonny Tink 捏造的名字，非实际的公司名。(23) underwear heir 内衣公司老板的继承人。是一种极为紧缩的表现法。(24) is dating a starlet 和一个小明星约会。(25) showgirl 在歌舞场献技的女郎。(26) a TV scriptwriter 电视脚本作者。(27) is horning in on the happy home 正在破坏一个幸福的家庭。

horn in = intrude 闯入。为美国俗语。(28) candy-bar maker 糖果制造商。(29) it's a boy at the Gumbridges 在简家生了一个男孩。(30) his pajama company 简家经营的睡衣公司。(31) sponsor a minor radio program 赞助一个小型的广播节目。(32) a dog-biscuit tycoon 饲犬用的饼干业巨子。(33) take to 喜欢；耽于。(34) Broadway shows 百老汇上演的戏。(35) the run = the average kind 普通的种类。Cf. the common run of men (普通人)。(36) teem with 充满着。(37) of a piece with = of the same kind 与” ” 同一类。(38) the trailer items 附加的记事。trailer 原意为电影样片。

### 【译例】

目下最奇怪的事，也许就是对于既非名人，又非熟识的人们所展示的一般热烈的兴趣。和自己的朋友或相识无关的大部分的闲谈，在传统上有一种诉诸俗物气质的魅力，而老是和富豪，名士或美人有关的。但是我们今日在闲话栏中所读到的多数的社会新闻，差不多可以说，都是有关以丑行而出名的人物的，以及有关那些可谓只存在于闲谈的世界中的人物的。谁又在跟谁闹恋爱，离婚的谣诼，移情别恋，关于结婚，怀孕及出生的臆测，大部分’ ’ 至少是在纽约’ ’ 都是关于一些不大出名的，而实际常是一些角落里的人的。说那个爽利丁克内衣公司的小开，正在爱上了一个小明星，甚至是一个歌女哪；又说一个写电视脚本的人，正在勾引着一个糖果制造商的妻子，而进行破坏他们的幸福家庭哪；又说赞助一个小型广播节目的，开睡衣公司的简家生了一个男孩哪；又说饲狗饼干业的大亨正有意投资于百老汇的戏剧哪，诸如此类，都是一般闲谈的材料：而在一个有八百万人口的，像纽约这样的大城市，其中充满着真正的名士，我觉得这些张家长李家短的玩意，就和旧式小镇上社交栏中所出现的附加的记事，没有什么两样呢。

(3)

Scobie is a sort of protozoic profile in fog and rain, for he carries with him a sort of English weather, and he is never happier than when he can sit over a microscopic wood-fire in winter and talk. One by one his memories leak through the fault

ty machinery of his mind until he no longer knows them for his own. Behind him I see the long grey rollers of the Atlantic at work, curling up over his memories, smothering them in spray, blinding him. When he speaks of the past it is in a series of short dim telegrams' as if already communications were poor, the weather inimical to transmission. In Dawson City the ten who went up the river were frozen to death. Winter came down like a hammer, beating them senseless: whisky, gold, murder' it was like a new crusade northward into the timberlands. At this time his brother fell over the falls in Uganda; in his dream he saw the tiny figure, like a fly, fall and at once get smoothed out by the yellow claw of water. No, that was later when he was already staring along the sights of a carbine into the very brainbox of a Boer. He tries to remember exactly when it must have been, dropping his polished head into his hands; but the grey rollers intervene, the long effortless tides patrol the barrier between himself and his memory.

### 【解说】

本文作者 Lawrence George Durrell (1912' ) 是英国的诗人兼小说家, 出生于印度, 回国受教育。曾任海外各地的通讯员, 甚至还做过夜总会的琴师。他有文学天赋, 才气蓬勃, 他的文章被誉为绣帷缀锦 (tapestry) 具有丰富的字汇和华丽的色彩。他以 20 世纪 30 年代的埃及亚历山大为背景, 写成 *The Alexandria Quartet* 四部作, 其第一部 *Justine*, 成于 1957 年, 第二部 *Balthazar* 及第三部 *Mountolive*, 均成于 1958 年, 第四部 *Clea* 则成于 1960 年。各部的观点和写作手法都有不同, 具有立体的及其他多方面的效果。作者长于人物描写, 即令是同一个人物, 在各书中出现时, 都是从不同的角度看去, 而加以描写的。所以新的面影摧毁了旧的轮廓, 但并未使之完全消失, 仍在读者的心目中, 留下一个残像, 重重相叠, 新像再印在旧像之上, 就好像一张感光的底片, 一次又一次把人相照上去, 结果没有一个具有个性的特定的人物存在, 只剩下一堆具有莫名其妙的侧面的人影, 或是说得正确一点, 像人一样的面影, 浮现在读者的眼前。本文采自他的四部作的第一部 *Justine* 中的一段。我们且来欣赏一下作者的人物描写吧。Scobie 原服务海军中, 经过长年的海

上生活之后，现加入埃及警察部队，已经是一个快七十岁的老人了。这种喜剧的描写，隐喻叠出，有如用散文写出的一首诗。

### 【注释】

(1) **protozoic profile** 原生动物的轮廓。**Protozoa** 原生动物，即单细胞的动物类，通常要用显微镜才可以看见的。(2) **in fog and rain** 在雾里和雨中。这表示更加模糊。(3) **English weather** 英国的天气，是以多雨多雾著称的。(4) **microscopic woodfire** 微微的炉火。**microscopic** = **very small; tiny** 极小的，微小的。**wood-fire** 英国家庭的火炉，讲究烧柴火，如云 **Put some more wood on the fire.** (在火炉上加点柴去。)(5) **talk** 接上面说的 **can sit**，即 **can talk** 之略。(6) **his memories leak** 他的记忆泄露出来。(7) **through the faulty machinery of his mind** 经由他心灵的破机器。意即从他那有毛病的头脑中。因人类的头脑构造复杂，故用机器的总称 **machinery** 一字，而不说单独一部机器的 **machine**。(8) **Behind him I see the long grey rollers of the Atlantic at work** 在他的背后我看见波澜起伏。**roller** 原意为滚动的东西，在此指“巨浪”，如 **Huge rollers broke on the beach.** (巨浪冲上沙滩。)这是说 **Scobie** 的过去，令人联想到惊涛骇浪的海洋。现在人已经老了，过去的记忆，好像全埋没到海洋中去了似的。但并没有丧失。用波澜起伏的隐喻，至为生动。(9) **curling up over his memories** 蜷伏在他的记忆上。(10) **smothering them in spray** 用浪花把他的记忆全般掩蔽着。(11) **blinding him** 使他为之目盲。(12) **a series of short dim telegrams** 一连串短的意思不清楚的电报。(13) **as if already communications were poor, the weather inimical to transmission** 俨然是由于原来的通信联络已经不好，再加上气象条件不利，而传送大有困难似的。描写他说话如打电报，故云。**inimical** 不利的。(14) 从 **In Dawson City** 直到 **into the very brain-box of a Boer** 为止全用的过去动词，似乎是指 **Scobie** 断续的记忆，电报似的话语。(15) **Dawson City** 加拿大西北部森林地带的城市。**the Yukon** 河及 **Klondike** 河在此汇合。在 1890 年以后数年间在此曾发生淘金热。(16) **like a new crusade** 像一个新的十字军，指 **whisky, gold, murder** 连在一起而形成的。(17) **timberlands** 森林地带。(18) **Uganda** 乌干达，原为东非英国的保护国，位于刚果及肯雅之间。(19) **get smoothed out** 消失不见。(20) **the yellow claw of water** 黄色的水的魔爪，指人为水所吞没。(2



1) along the sights of a carbine 沿着一支卡宾枪的照准。意即瞄准射击。(22) into the very brain box of a Boer. 正射进一个波尔人的脑袋中去。Boer 波尔人为荷兰血统的南非人。the Boer War 发生于 1899' 1902 年。(23) polished head, 光滑的头; 油头。(24) the grey rollers intervene 波涛起伏遮断(他的记忆)。(25) the long effortless tides patrol the barrier 那长大的不需费力的浪潮巡逻守住界线(不让他的记忆突破)。

### 【译例】

史可庇带有一种在雾里和雨中的原生动物的轮廓，因为他携带得有英国的天气，只要他在冬天能够坐在一个微微的炉火旁边，天南地北来闲聊的话，他就再快乐也没有了。一件一件的往事，从他那有毛病的头脑中泄漏出来，直到最后连他自己都不知道那些记忆的东西，是不是他自己的。在他的背后我看见大西洋上的灰色巨浪，汹涌起伏，蜷伏在他的记忆上，又用浪花把他的记忆掩蔽，使他再也看不见了。当他说到过去的时候，是用一连串短的意思不清的电报来说的，宛然是因为原来的通信联络已经不好，再加上气象条件不利，而使得传送大有困难似的。在道生市，那时有十个人走到河的上流去，全都冻死了。冬天像一把铁锤似的降下，把他们打得失去知觉了。威士忌酒，黄金，杀人’ ’ 这些结合在一起，形成了一支向着北方森林地带而去的新十字军。正在这时，他的弟弟在乌干达坠下到瀑布里去了；他在梦中看见那像苍蝇一般的小小的人影落下去，而马上就被黄色的水的魔爪吞没得不见了。不对：那还在以后，那是他已经把一支卡宾枪正瞄准好，要射中一个波尔人的脑袋那个当儿呀。他很想正确地记忆出那到底是在什么时候，于是把他那油滑的头伏下在他的两手之中，可是那灰色的大波又出现了，那毫不费力的巨大的浪潮，守住了界限，不让他回复记忆。

(4)

He entered the penumbra of the storm slowly, marvelling at the light, at the horizon drawn back like a bow. Odd gleams of sunshine scattered rubies upon the battleships in the basin (squatting under their guns like horned toads) . It was the ancient city again; he felt its pervading melancholy under the

rain as he crossed it on his way to the Summer Residence. The brilliant unfamiliar lighting of the thunderstorm re-created it, giving it a spectral, story-book air' broken pavements made of tinfoil, snail-shells, cracked horn, mica; earth-brick buildings turned to the colour of ox-blood; the lovers wandering in Mohammed Ali Square, disoriented by the unfamiliar rain, disconsolate as untuned instruments; the clicking of violet trams along the sea-front among the tatting of palm-fronds. The desuetude of an ancient city whose streets were plastered with the wet blown dust of the surrounding desert. He felt it all anew, letting it extend panoramically in his consciousness' the moan of a liner edging out towards the sunset bar, or the trains which flowed like a torrent of diamonds towards the interior, their wheels chattering among the shingle ravines and the powder of temples long since abandoned and silted up" "

### 【解说】

本文采自 Durrell 作的四部作的第三部 *Mountolive* 中的一段。上一篇我们所精读的是 Durrell 的人物描写，现在我们再来看看他的景物描写。*Mountolive* 是英国驻埃大使，为着要去会晤他以前当秘书时代所爱的女子。遂从开罗出发。横渡沙漠，到亚历山大去。本文便是描写这旅途的情形。那是冬日的薄暮。作者对描写风景的特点，就是大用色彩的字眼和比喻，且都能诉诸感觉，鲜明如绘。不但是现实的外表，就连那些难于捉摸的内在的理性，都被作者描绘出来，使读者感觉得到，有如亲身的经历似的。所以在作者笔下所描绘出来的风景，对现实的轮廓很薄，而色彩浓厚，给人的印象极深。在本文中，那轮廓已经很薄了的风景，重重叠叠，印在读者的心上，使得海洋，城市，乃至沙漠混合起来，构成一幅镶嵌细工的图样，令人为之目迷。作者笔下的景物描写，与传统小说上的判然不同，反映出他特有的诗一般的美丽的文笔来，他的名文家的声誉是当之无愧的。

### 【注释】

(1) *penumbra* (绘画) 浓淡相交之处。原为天文上指日蚀，月蚀时部分入影的区域，即半阴影部分。复数为 *penumbrae*. (2) *marvelling at* 对于什么感到惊异。(3) *drawn back like a bow*

像被拉紧的弓一样。(4) **Odd gleams of sunshine** 夕阳的残照。

(5) **scattered rubies upon the battleships** 把如红宝石一般的点点金光洒在战舰上。(6) **basin** 为陆地所包围的小海湾。(7) **squatting under their guns like horned toads** 像有角的蟾蜍一般蹲踞在突出的大炮之下。(8) **its pervading melancholy** 那城中弥漫的忧郁感。(9) **Summer Residence** 消夏的邸宅。驻在埃及的外交官入夏便从开罗迁居亚历山大。(10) **The brilliant unfamiliar lighting of the thunderstorm re-created it, giving it a spectral, story-book air** 那雷雨的不习见的闪电的光亮，把那城市重新造过，给了它一种非现实的童话一般的面貌。**spectral** 妖怪的；幽灵的。

(11) **tinfoil** 锡箔。(12) **snail-shells** 贝壳。螺旋形的贝壳，蜗牛壳作螺旋形。(13) **cracked horn** 破碎的角。(14) **mica** 云母。

(15) **ox-blood** 带黑的深红色。(16) **Mohammed Ali Square** 穆罕默德·阿里方场。以十九世纪初叶埃及太守名为纪念的地名。(17) **disoriented = disorientated** 对方向弄不清楚；迷失方向。(18) **disconsolate as untuned instruments** 像不合音调的乐器一样令人不快。形容爱侣的情绪不好。**disconsolate** 哀伤的，使人难过的。(19) **clicking** 金属物相碰的声音。(20) **the tatting of palm-fronds** 像梭织花边似的棕榈树叶。(21) **desuetude** 废止状态。作废，为 **consuetude** (惯例) 之对。例如 **Many words once commonly used have fallen into desuetude.** (许多以往通用的字今已废而不用了)。(22) **were plastered with the wet blown dust of the surrounding desert** 涂满了周围沙漠中吹来的湿的尘土。(23) 从 **The brilliant unfamiliar lighting** 起直到 **the surrounding desert** 为止都是描写 Mountolive 如梦如幻地所感到的亚历山大的情景。所以下面总结一句说 **He felt it all anew.** 更进一步地，让这个城市这种周围的景象，还栩栩如生之际，接着说 **letting it extend** (让它扩大下去)。(24) **panoramically** 全景在目地。(25) **in his consciousness** 在他的意识中。(26) **the moan of a liner** 一条定期船的呻吟。(27) **edging out towards the sunset bar** 向着落日的港口徐徐移动出去。(28) **the trains which flowed like a torrent of diamonds towards the interior** 像钻石的奔流一样向着内陆流去的火车。(29) **ravines** 由激流而构成的峡谷。(30) **the powder of temples long since abandoned** 早就被人遗弃了的庙宇的废墟。**powder** 腐朽而化成了灰。(31) **silted up** 为淤泥充塞。

### 【译例】

蒙搭里夫慢慢地走进了那风暴的明暗相交的处所，惊奇地望着那拉紧像一把弓似的明亮的地平线。夕阳的残照有如红宝石的点点金光，洒向停泊在小海湾中的兵舰上（那些兵舰像有角的蟾蜍一般蹲踞在突出的大炮之下）。重又来到了这个古城。当他横过此城走向大使馆的消夏别墅去时，在大雨淋漓之下，他感觉到这城中弥漫着忧郁的感觉。大雷雨中那不习见的电光，使这城市面目一新，给了它一种非现实的童话一般的容貌。用锡箔、贝壳、碎角、云母铺成的破烂的铺道。土砖的房子变成了带黑的深红色。情侣们在穆罕默德·阿里方场散步，由于不习见的雨而使他们迷失方向，有如弹着走了调的乐器听来很不舒服一样，他们的情绪非常不好。沿着海岸线，在梭织花边似的棕榈叶的树荫下走着的紫色电车的轧轧声。这个古城好像要被废弃的样子，它的街道上涂满了从四周围沙漠中吹来的湿的尘土。这一切的情景他又重新充分地感到了，让那全景在目地在他心中扩展开去。’一条定期轮船向着落日的港口徐徐移动出去的声音，或是像钻石的奔流一般向着内陆流去的火车，它们的车轮在满布鹅卵石的峡谷上，和很久已绝人烟，早为淤泥充塞的庙宇的废墟上辘辘地奔驰着。

(5)

Spearing wore his hair long even in Egypt. He had the kind of complexion the sun fired to a demonic redness and, in contrast, the hair looked whiter and silkier than it does today. Everybody knew him, by sight if not by name. He never wore a hat. You can imagine how he stood out in a crowd of Egyptians because of this flouncing mop of hair. He was a marked man. Perhaps he felt that the extravagance of his appearance had to be matched in some way by an extravagance of conduct. In England, where he is naturally less conspicuous, Spearing has never made a lot of trouble.

Both of us were teaching at the University but I saw more of him than the rest of my colleagues did because we put up at the same pension. Accordingly, When I heard him shouting

abuse in Cairo Post Office one hot afternoon I went over to see what the trouble was this time.

We were in the Parcels Department, a long dark cavern equipped with an unusually wide counter, a number of scales and a chute. Only one official seemed to be on duty that afternoon, a hard-faced little man with creased cheeks who closed his eyes when he spoke.

“If you don’t put Alexandria,” he said in English, “I won’t take it.”

Spearing was so angry that his hands visibly trembled when they gripped the edge of the counter. “Everybody knows where Sidi Gaber is, you coot! You know where Sidi Gaber is! I know where it is! He!”

### 【解说】

作者为英国小说家 P. H. Newby (1918’), 本文采自他的短篇小说 *A Parcel for Alexandria* 开端的一段, 描写一个英国人在开罗邮局寄小包, 因地址不全而被拒收的情形。文体如行云流水, 明白通达, 且多用单句, 浅显易读。作者在大学毕业后从军, 参加第二次世界大战, 在埃及军中受命兼任大学讲师, 任教至战后 1946 年止。1946 年以后服务于 B. B. C. 常以近东及其他外国为背景来写小说, 作风颇近似 E. M. Forster, 自 1945 年 *A Journey to the Interior* 问世以来, 差不多每年都有一部作品发表。

### 【注释】

(1) complexion 面色。(2) the sun fired to a demonic redness 被太阳晒得变成魔鬼似的红色。这当然是修饰面色的。(3) in contrast 对照起来。(4) silkier 更为柔软发亮。(5) by sight if not by name. 即不知道他的姓名, 也能认识他的面貌。这种表现法简洁有力。(6) stood out in a crowd 鹤立鸡群。(7) this flouncing mop of hair 他这一头蓬松的头发。flounce 原意为女裙的荷叶边, 在此无非形容多皱的头发。mop 拖把似的头发。(8) a marked man 引人注目的人。marked 显著的, 明显的。(9) extravagance 过度; 放纵。extravagance of appearance 他样子的放肆。extr

avagance of conduct 行为的放肆。(10) had to be matched by 相等, 配合。(11) in some way 有些方面。(12) less conspicuous 不大引人注目。比较少人注意。(13) has never made a lot of trouble 从未惹起很多麻烦。(14) the University 用大写指当地唯一的大学。(15) put up at 住宿。(16) pension = boarding house 公寓, 宿舍。原为法文, 如 live en pension 住在宿舍里。

(17) shouting abuse 大声辱骂。(18) the Parcels Department, 邮局包裹部。(19) cavern 地下的大洞穴。在此指邮局下层包裹部黑暗得像地洞似的。(20) equipped with an unusually wide counter 装备得有一个异常宽大的柜台。(21) scales 天平(用复数)。(22) chute 使邮包自上滑下的装置, 滑槽。(23) official 在此指邮局职员。(24) on duty 当值, 值班。(25) hard-faced = hard-favoured 面貌严厉的; 面色难看的。(26) little man 小个子; 身材矮小的人。(27) creased cheeks 多皱的面颊。(28) I won't take it. 我不接受(这个邮包)。(29) when they gripped the edge of the counter 当他的两手紧抓着柜台边上的时候。(30) Sidi Gaber 为 Alexandria 的郊外地区。(31) Coot (俗语) 愚人; 笨东西。(32) He' ' 实际是说的 I, 如华语说的/人家”或/别人”, 有时也是指自己, 例如:

/人家(或别人)一番好意, 你却这样不领情”。

### 【译例】

史匹林的头发, 哪怕是在埃及, 都算是蓄得很长的。他的面孔被太阳晒得像魔鬼似的血红, 与之成对照的, 是他的头发却比现今更白, 更为柔亮。人人都认得他, 即令不晓得他的名字, 也认识他的面貌。他从来不带帽子。你不难想像他那一头蓬松的头发, 站在一群埃及人当中, 简直是鹤立鸡群, 非常突出。他成为一个引人注目的人了。也许他觉得他的放肆的样子, 应该配上一些放肆的行为才对。在英国, 那儿是本乡本土, 他自然不会引人注目, 史匹林也从未惹起过什么麻烦。

我们两人都是在大学教书, 不过我比其余的同事和他见面的机会更多, 因为我和他住在同一个宿舍的缘故。于是, 在一个酷热的下午, 当我听到他在开罗邮局大声辱骂的时候, 我赶忙走过去看这次是发生了什么麻烦。

我们都在邮局的包裹部门，那是一间长形的黑暗洞穴似的屋子，设有一个非常宽大的柜台，里面有天平和滑槽。那天下午好像只有一个职员在值班似的，那是一个面色可怕，面颊多皱的小个子，他说话时总是把眼睛闭上。

“如果你不写上亚历山大的字样，”他用英语说，“我不接受。”

史匹林气得两手发抖，他的两手正紧握着那柜台的边缘。“人人都晓得西提加柏在什么地方，你这笨猪！你也知道西提加柏在什么地方！我也知道它在什么地方！人家’ ’ ”

(6)

The gong was about to sound quite soon. Anne kicked her cigarette-stub into a dark corner. Greggie called over her shoulder, “Anne, here comes your boy-friend.” On time, for once, ” said Anne, with the same pretence of scorn that she had adopted when referring to her brother Geoffrey: “Geoffrey would be the last person I would consult.” She moved, with her casual hips, towards the door. A squarebuilt high-coloured young man in the uniform of an English captain came smiling in. Anne stood regarding him as if he was the last person in the world she would consult. “Good evening, ” he said to Greggie as a well-brought-up man would naturally in the doorway. He made a vague nasal noise of recognition to Anne, which if properly pronounced would have been “Hallo”. She said nothing at all by way of greeting. They were nearly engaged to be married. “Like to come in and see the drawing room wallpaper?” Anne said then. “No, let’s get cracking.” Anne went to get her coat off the banister where she had slung it. He was saying to Greggie, “Lovely evening, isn’t it?” Anne returned with her coat slung over her shoulder. “Bye, Greggie, ” she said. “Goodbye, ” said the soldier. Anne took his arm. “Have a nice time, ” Greggie said. The dinner-gong sounded and there was a scuffle of feet departing from the notice-board and a scamper of feet from the floors above.

## 【解说】

本文采自英国女作家 Muriel Spark (1918' ) 所写的 *The Girls of Slender Means* 一篇小说，那是 1963 年的作品。作者生于 Edinburgh，旅居 Southern Rhodesia 达六年之久，于第二次世界大战中返国。此后近十年间专从事于诗作，似有“枉抛心力作诗人”的打算。直到 1951 年观察报悬赏征求小说，她应征写了一个短篇 *The Seraph and the Zambesi* 寄去，居然获得首奖，而使她写小说的文名鹊起，这一来她也就放下诗作而转向于小说了。她以写诗的技巧和辞华来写小说，自然写来特别绚烂夺目。她的文章中常有对照的表现，如幻想与现实，讽刺与感伤，愤怒与欢笑等等，皆能有机地结合起来。在她的散文中洋溢着诗的影像和旋律，构成了她特殊的作风。

## 【注释】

(1) gong (通知用餐时用的) 碟形的铃，或称呼钟。此字又可作“铜锣”解。(2) kicked her cigarette-stub into a dark corner 把她的烟屁股丢向暗的角落上。kick 意为 send forcibly or angrily (ALD) 用力掷去。(3) over her shoulder 回过头来。(4) on time 准时。(5) for once = as an exception 难得一次。(6) with a same pretence of scorn 带着同样假装的轻蔑(她内心对她的哥哥是很佩服的，但在人前却假装着瞧他不起的样子)。(7) Geoffrey would be the last person I would consult. 我绝对不会去和哥哥商量的。(8) She moved, with her casual hips, towards the door. 她移动了，无意识地扭着她的屁股，向门口走去了。这描写何等的具有诗的洗练，影像虽不显明，却能使人获得深的印象。这种 erotic (色情的) 的描写正是作者的一种手法。(9) square-built 坚实的；粗壮的。(10) high-coloured 有朝气的，生龙活虎的。(11) in the uniform of an English captain 穿着英国陆军上尉的制服。(12) a well-brought-up man 一个有教义的人。(13) in the doorway 进门时。(14) made a vague nasal noise of recognition 发出含糊的鼻音来招呼一下。(15) properly pronounced 正规地发出音来。(16) by way of greeting 作为应酬的话。(17) nearly engaged 差不多算是订了婚。(18) the drawing room wall paper 客厅里的糊壁纸。(19) let's get cracking = let's start. 俗语 get cracking = get busy (with work waiting to be done) . (ALD) 马上就动身吧。(20) banister 栏干。(21) where she



had slung it 她把上衣丢在那里。他动词 sling 意为抛掷。(22) Bye 为 bye-bye 的省略说法,原为儿语,现大人也说,表示亲密。(23) Have a nice time 希望你们玩的好。(24) The dinner-gong sounded and there was a scuffle of feet departing from the notice-board and a scamper of feet from the floors above. 晚餐的铃声一响,就听见离开公告栏乱糟糟的脚步声,和楼上地板上急走的足音。从 sound 到 scuffle 最后及于 scamper 都是用齿音〔s〕作头韵。scuffle 混乱,乱做一团。scamper 疾走,急驰。

### 【译例】

吃饭的铃子很快就要响了。安把她吸剩的香烟头,使劲地扔在那暗角上去。格雷琪回过头来叫道:“安,你的男朋友来了。”“这次总算是准时来的,”安说,带着假装的轻蔑,正好像她提到她哥哥时所表示的一样:“我是决不会去找乔勿莱商量的。”她移动了,照常无意识地扭着屁股,向门口走去。一个穿着英国陆军上尉的制服,身体结实,活力充沛的青年,含笑走进来了。安站在那儿把他看做是这世界上她决不会去找他商量的人似的。“您晚上好。”他对格雷琪说,凡是一个有教养的人,一进门来,见到年长的人自然要这样说的。他发出含糊的鼻音来对安招呼了一下,如果要用正规的发言来说时,那便是“哈罗”了。作为应酬的话,她什么也没有说,他们快要订婚了。“你高兴进来看看客厅里的糊壁纸么?”安于是这样说。“不必啦,我们还是马上就走吧。”安走去栏干边取她的上衣,她早些时候把它扔在那上面的。那军人对格雷琪说:“真是一个可爱的夜晚呀。”安转来了,把她的上衣挂在肩上。“格雷琪,回头见。”她说。“再会。”那军人说,安挽着他的手走了。“希望你们玩得痛快。”格雷琪说。吃饭的铃子终于响了,只听见离开公告牌一阵混乱的脚步声,和从上面楼板上发出的疾走的足音。

(7)

Lois Taggett was graduated from Miss Hascomb's School, standing twenty-sixth in a class of fifty-eight, and the following autumn her parents thought it was time for her to come out, charge out, into what they called Society. So they gave her a five-figure, la-de-da Hotel Pierre affair, and save for a f

ew horrible colds and Fred-hasn't-been-well-lately's, most of the preferred trade attended. Lois wore a white dress, an orchid corsage, and a rather lovely, awkward smile. The elderly gentlemen guests said, /she's a Taggett, all right"; the elderly ladies said, /She's a very sweet child"; the young ladies said, /Hey. Look at Lois. Not bad. What'd she do to her hair? "; and the young gentlemen said, /Where's the liquor? "

That winter Lois did her best to swish around Manhattan with the most photogenic of the young men who drank scotch-and-sodas in the God-and-Walter Winchell section of the Stork Club. She didn't do badly. She had a good figure, dressed expensively and in good taste, and was considered Intelligent. That was the first season when Intelligent was the thing to be.

### 【解说】

这是美国现代作家 J. D. Salinger (1919') 的短篇小说 *The Long Debut of Lois Taggett* 的头上的一节。描写一个年轻姑娘初次进入社交界的情形。Salinger 在 1951 年发表长篇小说 *The Catcher in the Rye* 一举成名, 在美国文坛获得崇高的地位, 无论内容形式, 都是最新颖的。研究这位作家的书, 都出了好几本, 如 Gwynn & Blotner 著的 *The Fiction of J. D. Salinger* (University of Pittsburgh Press, 1958); H. A. Grunwald 著的 *Salinger: A Critical and Personal Portrait* (Harper & Brothers, 1962); Warren French 著的 *J. D. Salinger* (Twayne Publishers, 1963)。此外还有 Laser & Fruman 编的 *Studies in J. D. Salinger: Reviews, Essays and Critiques of the Catcher in the Rye and Other Fiction (Odyssey)* 及 James E. Miller 的 *J. D. Salinger* (Minnesota University Press), 足见他的文学地位, 我们要知道什么是美国最新的文体, 最好阅读 Salinger 的作品。上面所选用的短文, 便可看出作者的风格, 不但文字洗练, 而字句也十分新颖, 读来真可一新耳目。

### 【注释】

(1) standing twenty-six in a class of fifty-eight 一班五十八名中她名列第二十六。(2) come out = make a debut 开始进入

社交界。(3) **charge out** 和 **come out** 同义, 换一个说法重复一下, 以加强语气。(4) **Society** 社交界。(5) **gave her an affair** 为她举办一个晚会。**affair** 在此作 **party** 解。(6) **five-figure** 五位数字的, 不一定指万数, 而是指大量的金钱。(7) **la-de-da** 或拼为 **la-di-da**, 作形容词用时有 **foppish** (纨绔子的, 适合于纨绔子的。空虚的, 愚笨的, 矫饰的), 在此有 **stylish** (合乎时尚的, 时髦的, 漂亮的) 的意思。(8) **Hotel Pierre** 是纽约 **Manhattan** 地区一流的旅馆。(9) **save for = except for** 除开。(10) **a few horrible colds and Fred-hasn't-been-well-lately's** 少数几个人因重伤风, 以及胡来德近来健康欠佳。表示拒绝来参加晚会的理由, 这种表现法颇为新奇有趣。(11) **preferred trade** 优先选定的客人。**trade** 原为 **customers** 的意思, 作集合名词用。他例如 **preferred stock** (优先股), 作者大概是想到这个而滑稽地使用的。(12) **orchid corsage** 胡姬花束。妇女胸前或肩上的饰物。(13) **Not bad** 很好, 非常的好, 这是一种 **understate** 的说法。(14) **What'd = What did.** (15) **Where's = Where is.** (16) **did her best** 尽力。(17) **s wish** 瑟瑟声, 表在冬天寒风中走动的神气。(18) **photogenic** 宜于艺术摄影的。**the most photogenic of the young men** 最会照艺术相的年轻人。(19) **scotch-and-sodas** 威士忌苏打 **soda water** 在美国叫 **sodas**。(20) **God-and-Walter Winchell section** 有名的新闻记者 **Walter Winchell** 等人常占用的席位。其中 **God-and-**无特殊意义, 只是强调的说法。(21) **Stork Club** 鸛雀俱乐部。此为纽约 **Manhattan** 有名的夜总会。(22) **figure** 身材。(23) **in good taste** 有高尚的趣味。(24) **Intelligent** 有头脑的、有才智的、聪明的。(25) **the thing to do** 重要的事。

### 【译例】

萝薏<sup>1</sup>塔格特从赫斯康女士的学校毕业时, 全班五十八人中她得到第二十六名。就在她毕业的第二年秋天, 她的父母认为已经是她进入那个他们称为社交界的时候了。所以他们为她在匹尔亚大饭店举行了一个盛大的合乎时尚的晚会。除了几个说是因患了重伤风和近来健康欠佳的人以外, 优先选定的客人们大部分都到了。萝薏穿了一袭白色的衣服, 胸前挂着一束胡姬花, 面上浮着一片相当可爱而又笨拙的微笑。年长的先生们说: /她不愧是塔格特家的姑娘。”年长的太太们说: /她真是一位人见人爱的孩子呀。”年轻的妇女们说: /吓, 看萝

薏。好漂亮呀。她的头发不晓得是怎样做的。”而年轻的男士们就说：  
“酒在哪儿？”

那年冬天萝薏努力和那些在鸛雀俱乐部的瓦特温彻的座席上，喝威士忌苏打的青年人中最善于拍摄艺术照的人，一块儿在曼哈顿一带那瑟瑟的寒风中走来走去。她表现得很不错。她的身材既长得好，又穿上高价和趣味优雅的服装，被认为是有头脑的。在最初的时期，第一就是要有头脑。

(8)

It was too late to call up for a cab or anything, so I walked the whole way to the station. It wasn't too far, but it was cold as hell, and the snow made it hard for walking, and my Gladstones kept banging hell out of my legs. I sort of enjoyed the air and all, though. The only trouble was, the cold made my nose hurt, and right under my upper lip, where old Stradlater'd laid one on me. He'd smacked my lip right on my teeth, and it was pretty sore. My ears were nice and warm, though. That hat I bought had earlaps in it, and I put them on. I didn't give a damn how I looked. Nobody was around anyway. Everybody was in the sack.

Usually I like riding on trains, especially at night, with the lights on and the windows so black, and one of those guys coming up the aisle selling coffee and sandwiches and magazines. I usually buy a ham sandwich and about four magazines. If I'm on a train at night, I can usually even read one of those dumb stories in a magazine without puking. You know. One of those stories with a lot of phoney, lean-jawed guys named David in it, and a lot of phoney girls named Linda or Marcia that are always lighting all the goddam Davids' pipes for them.

### 【解说】

如果要研读以俚俗语写的现代文学，最好还是读 J. D. Salinger 的长篇小说 *The Catcher in the Rye*. 这不但是他的代表作，也是现

代俚俗语文学的代表。这部小说既无故事，也无结构，却能彻底地表现出作者的生活态度和真挚感情。全书描写一个阿飞学生在离校后回家前的三日间在外流浪的过程，全用极其正直的内心的独白表出，足见作者对个性的描写何等深入。这确是现代英文一种独特的文体，值得一读。

### 【注释】

(1) too late to call up for a cab 太迟不能打电话去叫车。to o" to do 意为/太" " 不能做"。cab = taxicab = taxi 出租汽车。

(2) or anything 为 or something 的否定形，因前有 too" " to 的否定。意为/还是什么"，在此意为既不能去叫出租汽车，也不能去叫别的什么。此为口语中特有的表现法。(3) It wasn't too far. 并不太远。not too = not very 也是口语的说法。(4) cold as hell 冷得要死；非常的冷。( <as" " as hell) 这种 swearwords (咒骂语)，是俚俗的 (slangy) 文体的特色。(5) the snow made it hard 中的 it 指 the way 而言。(6) Gladstones 英国十九世纪的政治家 William Ewart Gladstone (1809' 1898)，为自由党的党魁，曾四次任首相。由此而发生出两种东西，一为两人坐的四轮游览马车，一为由当中开口分为上下的旅行皮箱，二者都是用他的名字，叫作 Gladstone，这里是指后者。即又可称为 Gladstone bag 的。

(7) banging hell out of my legs 重击在我的两条腿上。hell 一字为俚语表现法，在此除加强语气外别无他意。(8) I sort of enjoyed = I rather enjoyed. 我相当的喜欢。/sort of + 动词"的形式，也是美国口语的表现法。(9) and all 及其他。等等。( = and everything) 也是口语特别的说法。(10) though 意为/可是"、/虽然"，在口语中放在句尾是作副词用的。(11) old Stradlater'd = old Stradlater had. 这个 old 不作/老"解，而是指熟悉的朋友，一种亲密的称呼，如我们同学间叫的老张，老李一样。(12) laid one on me 给我一拳。one = a blow. (13) He'd = He had. (14) smacked 掴；重击。(15) pretty sore 很痛。这个 pretty 为 understatement (说得较轻)。(16) nice and = quite satisfactorily, 口语的表现法。(17) ear-laps = ear-flaps 耳罩。(18) in it 帽子上。

(19) not give a damn 后可看作略去了一个 to 字，是 swearwords 的一种。意为/我一点也不在乎"，/管它个屁"。(20) around 附近。(21) anyway = anyhow 意为/左右"，/在任何情形下" (at any rate, in any case)，/总之"。(22) sack = bed 作床解为美国

俗语，hit the sack 就寝。(23) one of those guys 接前面的 with 说。美国语的 guy = fellow 并没有什么坏的意思，在此指小贩。

(24) aisle 原为教堂中座位间的通道，美国用来指教室，戏院，火车上的通道 (gangway)。(25) dumb stories = damn stories 低级的，或粗制滥造的小说。因避免用誓语的 damn 故以音近的字 dumb 来代替。(26) puking = vomiting 作呕的。(27) You know 是一句没有意思的口头禅。在对方多不知道时说的。(28) phony = phony 美国俗语，意为 fraudulent (诈欺的，骗取的)。(29) lean-jawed guys 瘦尖下巴的人。(30) goddam = cursed, damned 一种咒语，并无特别的意思，只是为加强语气而说的。

### 【译例】

那时已经太晚不能打电话去叫出租汽车什么的了，所以我便一直走路走到火车站去。那并不太远，不过却冷得要命，飞雪使步行增加困难，我手上所提的旅行皮箱老是在我腿上碰来碰去。可是我对于那空气等等倒是相当喜欢的。唯一的困难就是我的鼻子冷得发痛，还有正在我上嘴唇下面的部分也痛，因为老史重重的在那里打了我一下。他搥了我牙齿外面的嘴唇，那里痛的很。我的耳朵却很温暖，因为我买的那顶帽子是有耳罩的，我把那两个耳罩戴上了，’ ’ 至于我变成一个什么怪相我一点也不管。好在附近也没有一个人。所有的人都睡到床上去了。

通常我是喜欢坐火车的，尤其是在夜里，电灯照着，窗外一片漆黑，还有那小贩来到通路上卖着咖啡，三明治，还有杂志。我总是要买一个火腿三明治，和差不多四种杂志。如果我是在夜间坐车，我通常都能读完一篇这种杂志上的低级故事而不作呕的。你知道的，这样的故事，有一篇其中出现不少名叫大卫的尖下巴的骗子，还有一些名叫苓达或玛琪的女骗子，她们老是要去替那些混帐东西的大卫们点燃他们的烟斗。

(9)

Then Dora noticed that there was a Red Admiral butterfly walking on the dusty floor underneath the seat opposite. Every other thought left her head. Anxiously she watched the butterfly. It fluttered a little, and began to move towards the wind

ow, dangerously close to the passengers<sup>1</sup> feet. Dora held her breath. She ought to do something. But what? She flushed with indecision and embarrassment. She could not lean forward in front of all those people and pick the butterfly up in her hand. They would think her silly. It was out of the question. The sunburnt man, evidently struck with the concentration of Dora's gaze, bent down and fumbled with his boot laces. Both seemed securely tied. He shifted his feet, narrowly missing the butterfly which was now walking into the open on the carriage floor.

“Excuse me,” said Dora. She knelt down and gently scooped the creature into the palm of her hand, and covered it over with her other hand. she could feel it fluttering inside. Everyone stared. Dora blushed violently. Toby and his friend were looking at her in a friendly surprised way. Whatever should she do now? If she put the butterfly out of the window it would be sucked into the whirlwind of the train and killed. Yet she could not just go on holding it, it would look too idiotic. She bowed her head, pretending to examine her captive.

### 【解说】

这是从英国现代女作家 Iris Murdoch (1919') 的小说 *The Bell* 中选出的头上的一段。作者生于爱尔兰的 Dublin, 牛津大学毕业。1948 年以后在牛津教哲学。1956 年和同事 John O. Bayley 结婚。她和 John Wain 及 Kingsley Amis 诸人, 代表第二次世界大战后英国的新文学。作者有象征主义的作家之称。她作品的标题多是象征的, 以暗示作品的象征性。当然, 称她的作品为象征主义, 决不是由于使用直接的象征, 而实另有其内容上的真正的魅力在, 以及深入她文体中诗人的素质, 一言以蔽之, 是风格上的象征性。她自己说: “我们要用既非形而上学的, 也非全体的, 更非宗教的感觉, 来描写现实的超绝性 (transcendence of reality), 实有必要。”以哲学的主题使之在小说中结晶, 这便是这位闺秀作家对她写作的主张了。Tradition and Dream 一书的著者 Walter Allen 论英国现代小说到 Murdoch 时, 说她的文体是“把诗完全融化在散文中了”。

### 【注释】

(1) Red Admiral butterfly 红花蝴蝶。admiral 为各种彩色蝴蝶的俗称。(2) dusty floor 火车上肮脏的地板。(3) Every other thought left her. 把别的事全都忘了。所有的别种想法都从她的头脑中离开了。意即一心一意地想着那红花蝴蝶的事。(4) dangerously close to the passengers' feet 很危险地接近火车上来往旅客的脚，意即几乎要被人踏死。(5) held her breath 屏息；吓得不敢出气。(6) She ought to do something. 她应该有所作为。(7) But what? 但要做点什么呢？(8) flushed with 因” ”而脸发红。

(9) indecision and embarrassment 犹豫不决和局促不安。(10) lean forward 弯下身去；倾身向前。(11) in front of 在” ” 的眼前。(12) They would think her silly. 别人会以为她太孩子气了。(13) out of the question = impossible 不可能。(14) The sunburnt man 面孔被太阳晒黑了的人。(15) evidently struck with 显然是由” ” 而想起。(16) fumbled with his boot laces 去摸索他的皮鞋带子。(17) securely tied 系得很紧。(18) shifted 移动了。(19) narrowly missing the butterfly 几乎踏到了那蝴蝶。miss 相差。逃过。(20) walking into the open 走到空敞的地方来。(21) gently scooped the creature into the palm of her hand 温柔地把那蝴蝶引到她的手板心里来了。scoop 汲取；舀取。(22) could feel it fluttering inside 可以感觉得到蝴蝶在她手中拍翅。(23) in a friendly surprised way 以友善的惊异态度。

(24) whatever should she do now? 她现在到底要怎样办才好呢？(25) be sucked into the whirlwind of the train and killed 被火车开动时的旋风吸转进去而被压死。(26) it would look too idiotic 那看来太傻气了。(27) pretending to examine her captive 假装着来细看她手中的蝴蝶。captive 俘虏；捕获物。

### 【译例】

正在那时，朵娜注意到了，一双红花蝴蝶，在对面座位底下积满灰尘的地板上走动。她一意地想着那只蝴蝶，把别的事情全都忘了。她很担心地守望着它。它稍稍拍了一下翅膀，开始向着对面的窗口移动，很危险地靠近来往旅客们的脚下了。朵娜紧张得屏息望着。她真该想个办法去救救它才好。但要她想什么办法呢？她为了自己的犹豫不决和局促不安，而感到脸红了。她不能够在所有的乘客面前，弯下身去，拾起那只蝴蝶，放到她手上来的呀。她要那样做的话，别人就会认为她太孩子气了。这绝对办不到。那个面孔被太阳晒黑了的



人，显然是由朵娜的集中凝视而想起，遂弯下腰去摸摸他的皮鞋带子。两脚好像都系得紧紧的。他移动了他的脚，险些儿把那只蝴蝶给踏死了，因为它正走向车厢地板上的空敞的地方来。

“对不起。”朵娜说。她随即跪了下去，轻轻地把那只蝴蝶舀入她的手板心来，然后又用另外一只手把它盖上了。她可以感觉得到蝴蝶在里面鼓翼。人人都在望着她。朵娜羞得满脸绯红。托比和他的朋友，用一种友好的惊奇态度，也在望着她。现在她到底要怎么办呢？如果她把它丢出车窗外去，它便要被火车的旋风转入而压死的。可是她却不能老是用两手来捧着它呀。那看来未免太傻气了。她低下头去，假装着来细看她的捕获物似的。

(10)

Annette felt always that she was travelling at a speed which was not her own. Going to or from her parents on one of her innumerable journeys, her train would stop sometimes between stations, revealing suddenly the silence of the mountains. Then Annette would look at the grass beside the railway and see its green detail as it swayed in the breeze. In the silence the grass would seem very close to her; and she would stun herself with the thought that the grass was really there, a few feet away, and that it was possible for her to step out, and to lie down in it, and let the train go on without her. Or else, travelling towards evening, as the lights were coming on in the houses, she would see the cyclist at the level-crossing, his face preoccupied and remote, and think that when the train had passed and the gates opened he would go on his way and by the time he reached his house she would be passing another frontier. But she never got off the train to lie down in the grass, nor did she ever leave it, high up in the mountains, at the small station that was not mentioned in the time-table, where the train unexpectedly halted and where the little hotel, whose name she could read so plainly, waited with its doors open. She could not break the spell and cross the barrier into what seemed to her at such moments to be her own world. She s

tayed on the train until it reached the terminus, and the chauffeur came to take her luggage to the car and Nicholas came bounding into the carriage, filling her with both sadness and relief at the ending of the journey. But the world of the chambermaid and the cyclist and the little strange hotel continued to exist, haunting and puzzling her with a dream of something slow and quiet from which she was forever shut away.

### 【解说】

这还是选的 Murdoch 的作品 *The Flight from the Enchanter* 中的一段，也和前一篇一样地是描写火车旅行的。不过是回想过去火车旅行的体验，富于哲学意味，且具象征的风格。

### 【注释】

(1) **always** 通常放在 **felt** 的前面，在本句中放在后面是修饰往后的子句的。又 **always** 和进行式动词连用时，表示动作的反复。

(2) **at a speed** 用一种速度。**at a speed of 40 miles an hour** 用每小时四十英里的速度。(3) **which was not her own** 不是她自己的；非她自己控制的。(4) **Going to or from her parents** 到父母家里去或从父母家里出来。(5) **on one of her innumerable journeys** 在她数不清的旅途上，每次。(6) **her train would stop sometimes between stations** 她坐的火车有时总不免要在车站与车站的中间停下来。这个 **would** 是回想的，表过去的习惯。下同。(7) **the silence of the mountains** 有深山中那般寂静。(8) **would look at the grass beside the railway** 总要去看看铁路旁边的青草。

(9) **its green detail** 绿的草尖（细小的部分）。(10) **swayed** 摇摆。(11) **very close to = very near to** 很靠近。(12) **stun herself** 使她自己昏晕；使目瞪口呆，如 **We were stunned by the sudden news**. 我们听到这突如其来的消息而为之目瞪口呆。**stun = make senseless by a blow; confuse the mind of.** (13) **in it = in the grass**. (14) **let the train go on without her** 她没有上车去，让火车开走。(15) **towards evening** 天将暮的时候。(16) **the lights were coming on in the houses** 万家灯火。(17) **cyclist** 坐脚踏车的人。(18) **level-crossing** 平面交叉，在此指铁路上的平交道。美国说 **grade crossing**. (19) **preoccupied and remote** 心不在焉的状态。(20) **the gates** 平交道因火车经过而关闭的栏栅。

(21) he would go on his way 句中的 would 为普通的假定语气。下面的 she would be passing 的 would 用法同。(22) by the time 到那时。(23) another frontier 另外一个国境(因 Annette 现正在欧洲大陆旅行)。(24) got off 下(车)或下(马)。(25) nor did she ever leave it = and she never left it. (26) not mentioned in the time-table 火车时间表上没有载名的(小车站)。(27) halted 停下来。(28) whose name she could read so plainly 那小旅馆的名字很明显地她可以辨认得出来。(29) waited with its doors open 打开门在等待着她。(30) break the spell 破除符咒; 突破魔力。spell 是作者喜欢用的字眼, 尤其是在这部小说中, 可说是表现主题的 key-word 呢。(31) cross the barrier 越过障碍。(32) at such moments 在这种时候。(33) to be her own world 完全属于自己的世界。(34) terminus 终站。在美国说 terminal. (35) the chauffeur 汽车夫。指私人雇用的司机。(36) luggage 行李。在美国说 baggage. (37) Nicholas 是 Annette 的哥哥。(38) came bounding into the carriage 跳进车厢里来。(39) filling her with 使她充满着” ” 的感触。(40) both sadness and relief 既忧愁又安慰。(41) the chambermaid 在本节前所回想的人物。指儿时的女佣人。(42) haunting 时常浮现于脑海中。(43) puzzling her with 用” ” 使她迷惑。(44) dream of something slow and quiet 悠然静止的梦。(45) from which she was forever shut away 她永远被关在梦的外面。

### 【译例】

安纳特觉得她老是以非自己控制的速率在旅行着。从父母跟前出来, 或回到父母跟前去, 在数不清的旅程上, 每次她坐的火车, 有时总不免要在车站与车站的中途停下来, 突然显示出有深山中一般的寂静。那时, 安纳特总要去看看铁路旁边的青草, 看那些绿的草尖在微风中摇摆的样子。在这种寂静中, 那青草会变得好像很靠近她似的; 她会使自己昏眩地以为那青草果真在那儿, 离开她不过两三英尺远罢了。她又以为她是可以走出去的, 走去躺下在青草中, 让火车没有她坐在上面自个儿开走。要不然的话, 当万家灯火近黄昏的时候坐在火车上, 她就会看到在平交道上那骑脚踏车的人, 面孔上显得心不在焉的样子, 她想到当火车一经过, 平交道的栅门打开时, 那人就会继续上路, 等到他回到家里的时候, 她乘的火车恐怕又在经过欧洲的另外一个国境了。但是她实际并没有下车去躺下在青草中, 哪怕是当火车

走向高高的山路，在火车时间表上都没有名字的小站上意外地停下来，那儿的小旅馆，它的名字都看得清清楚楚，正敞开大门在等待着她，而她也从来没有离开过火车一步。她不能破除符咒，越过障碍进入在那种时候好像是她自己的世界里去。她只能留在火车上，直到它开到终点为止。于是汽车夫来替她把行李搬上汽车去，而她的哥哥尼可拉一下就跳进车厢里来了。到了旅程的终点，她满怀忧愁而又安慰，心绪颇为不宁。但是包含那个儿时的女仆，那个骑脚踏车的人，以及那个奇怪的小旅舍等等的世界，老是历历在目，不能忘怀，时常浮现于脑海中，变成一个悠然静止的梦境，使她永远被关在它的外面，深感迷惑。

(11)

I am always drawn back to places where I have lived, the houses and their neighbourhoods. For instance, there is a brownstone in the East Seventies where, during the early years of the war, I had my first New York apartment. It was one room crowded with attic furniture, a sofa and fat chairs upholstered in that itchy, particular red velvet that one associates with hot days on a train. The walls were stucco, and a colour rather like tobacco-spit. Everywhere, in the bathroom too, there were prints of Roman ruins freckled brown with age. The single window looked out on a fire escape. Even so, my spirits heightened whenever I felt in my pocket the key to this apartment; with all its gloom, it still was a place of my own, the first, and my books were there, and jars of pencils to sharpen, everything I needed, so I felt, to become the writer I wanted to be.

It never occurred to me in those days to write about Holly Golightly, and probably it would not now except for a conversation I had with Joe Bell that set the whole memory of her in motion again.

Holly Golightly had been a tenant in the old brownstone; she'd occupied the apartment below mine. As for Joe Bell, he

ran a bar around the corner on Lexington Avenue; he still does. Both Holly and I used to go there six, seven times a day, not for a drink, not always, but to make telephone calls: during the war a private telephone was hard to come by. Moreover, Joe Bell was good about taking messages, which in Holly's case was no small favour, for she had a tremendous manly.

### 【解说】

美国现代小说家 Truman Capote (1924' ) 生于 New Orleans, 因父母离婚的关系, 少年时代在孤独中度过。受了中学程度的教育, 十九岁时写的一个短篇, 获得了欧·亨利文学奖金。二十三岁时发表 **Other Voices, Other Rooms** (1948), 一举成名, 而登上了美国的文坛。现在不过四十多岁的人, 已成为美国文学界的大作家了。他所描写的感伤性和幻想界的异常的心理, 正是第二次世界大战后这一代的特征。作品多以南部农村为背景, 人物则为这时代的少年少女。本文采自他在 1958 年发表的短篇集 **Breakfast at Tiffany's**, 主要是写 Manhattan 的妓女。

### 【注释】

(1) drawn back 怀想; 回想。(2) places where I have lived 我曾住过的地方。(3) the houses and their neighbourhoods 那些房屋和邻近的地区。上说住过的地方是一般的说法, 现在具体地说出房屋来, 下面还要更明确地说纽约的公寓。(4) a brownstone 一幢用红褐色沙岩造的房子。brownstone 为用于建筑的红褐色沙岩。(5) the East Seventies 东七十街一带地区。纽约以第五街为中心, 分东西地区。(6) the war 指第二次世界大战。(7) my first New York apartment 我第一次住的纽约的公寓。(8) attic furniture 简单的家具。attic = simple. 据 Random House Dictionary 说 Attic (adj. often lower case) 意为 displaying simple elegance. 这里只概说家具, 下面便具体地细说 sofa, chair 的件名。

(9) fat chair 臃肿、宽大的椅子。(10) upholster 为椅子装上椅套。(11) itchy 令人发痒的。(12) associate with 联想到。(13) stucco (粉饰墙壁的) 灰泥。a stucco house 粉刷灰泥或水泥的房子。The walls were stucco 墙上涂的灰泥。(14) tobacco-spit 烟草的汁。(15) Everywhere in the bathroom too 先说/所有的

地方”是概括的，随即又细别说/浴室”，成为作者一贯的作风。（16）**prints of Roman ruins** 罗马废墟的版画。（17）**freckled brown with age** 因年深月久而生出褐色的斑点来了。（18）**looked out on** 开向。（19）**fire escape** 太平梯；避火梯。为发生火警时便于逃出屋子去的设备。（20）**my spirits heightened** 精神焕发。（21）**gloom** 阴郁；幽暗。（22）**jars of pencils** 插在铅笔筒中的铅笔。（23）**It never occurred to me” to write about** 我决没有想到要来写些关于” ” 的事。（24）**and probably it would not now** 大概现在也不会想到要写的。（25）**except for a conversation with** 如果不是和” ” 谈话。（26）**that set the whole memory of her in motion again** 那谈话使得我对她的记忆又重新活动起来。（27）**tenant** 房客。（28）**ran a bar** 经营一个酒吧。（29）**Lexington Avenue** 纽约第三街和 **Park** 街之间的一条大路。（30）**still does** 现在还经营着。（31）**not for a drink** 不是去喝酒。（32）**not always (for a drink)** 并不一定（是去喝酒）。（33）**make telephone calls** 去打电话。（34）**a private telephone was hard to come by** 私人电话难于获得。**come by** 获得。例如 **He seemed to have come by a large fund of knowledge.** 他所获得的知识似乎很丰富。（35）**taking messages** 听取消息。（36）**no small favour** 大可感谢。（37）**for she had a tremendous many** 因为她的电话多得可怕。

### 【译例】

我老是要回想到我曾住过的地方，那些屋子和邻近一带。例如，在东七十街地区内的一幢用红褐色沙岩造的房子，在战争的初期，我第一次在纽约租下那公寓来住。那是一间房，里面塞满了简单的家具，一张沙发和一些臃肿的椅子，椅套是用令人发痒的特别红的天鹅绒做的，使人联想到暑天坐火车的味道。墙壁上是涂的灰泥，那颜色就像烟草的汁。屋子内到处，连浴室都不例外，挂着罗马废墟的版画，因年深月久都生出褐色的斑点来了。唯一的窗口是向一个太平梯子开着的。甚至如此，每次当我把手插进口袋去摸出我这公寓的开门钥匙时，我都感到非常高兴。哪怕是幽暗阴森，这总是我自己的家，第一，我的书都在这里，还有一筒子待削的铅笔，所以我觉得如我所指望的做一个作家，我所需要的一切，这儿都有了。

在那些日子里，我从来没有想到要写点关于哈利·歌莱特里的事，大概我现在也不会想到要写的，如果不是和乔·伯尔一席话，使我重又

勾起了对她的记忆的话。

哈利·歌莱特里也是那幢红褐色沙岩建造的公寓中的房客。她就住在我底下一层楼。至于谈到乔·伯尔，他是在雷新顿大道的转角上开一家酒吧的，那店子现在还在。哈利和我两个人一天要到他那儿去上六七次，不是去喝酒，并不一定是去喝酒，而是去打电话。在战时私人是很难获得电话的呀。加之，乔·伯尔很好，他不厌烦地替我们接电话，在哈利的场合十分可感，因为她的电话多得可怕呢。

(12)

That Monday in October 1943. A beautiful day with the buoyancy of a bird. To start, we had Manhattans at Joe Bell's. Later, we wandered towards Fifth Avenue, where there was a parade. We ate lunch at the cafeteria in the park. Afterwards, avoiding the zoo (Holly said she couldn't bear to see anything in a cage), we giggled, ran, sang along the paths towards the old wooden boathouse, now gone. Leaves floated on the lake; on the shore, a parkman was fanning a bonfire of the m" "

Passing a Woolworth's, she gripped my arm: /Let's steal something, " she said, pulling me into the store, where at once there seemed a pressure of eyes, as though we were already under suspicion. /Come on. Don't be chicken." She scouted a counter piled with paper pumpkins and Halloween masks. The saleslady was occupied with a group of nuns who were trying on masks. Holly picked up a mask and slipped it over her face; she chose another and put it on mine; then she took my hand and we walked away. It was as simple as that. Outside, we ran a few blocks, I think to make it more dramatic; but also because, as I'd discovered, successful theft exhilarates. I wondered if she'd often stolen. /I used to, " she said, /I mean I had to. If I wanted anything. But I still do it every now and then, sort of to keep my hand in."

【解说】

这篇还是从美国现代作家 Capote 的 *Breakfast at Tiffany's* 中选的。前面的文章是描写小说中的主人公，在纽约住公寓的情形。尾上点出小说中的女主人公，但没有对她加以描写。本文专写这位想当作家的主人公，和女主人公同游的一幕，并绘出下流社会女子的行为，被迫非盗窃不可，而且为要养成熟练的手法，对此勾当表示不敢荒废。

### 【注释】

(1) *with the buoyancy of a bird* 具有小鸟的快乐（似的美丽的一日）。(2) *To start* 开始。(3) *Manhattans* 曼哈顿鸡尾酒（为威士忌和艾酒混合而成的）。(4) *Fifth Avenue* 纽约闹市中向南北伸展的大路。(5) *parade* 整队游行。(6) *cafeteria* 自助餐馆。(7) *park* 指纽约最大的 *Central Park*。(8) *the zoo* 中央公园中的小动物园。(9) *couldn't bear to see* 看了受不了；不忍看。

(10) *giggled* 傻笑，格格地笑。(11) *boathouse* 船库；艇屋（原为贮藏小舟之屋，现多具有供人小憩的设备）。(12) *now gone* 现在早已不存在了。(13) *bonfire of them* 焚烧落叶。(14) *Woolworth's* 英美各地都开有的廉价商店。(15) *pulling me into the store* 把我拉到伍尔渥斯店里去。(16) *pressure of eyes* 人眼的压力，意即受人监视。(17) *under suspicion* 遭受嫌疑。(18) *Don't be chicken* 不要怕。*chicken* = (Slang) cowardly. (19) *scout* 侦察。(20) *paper pumpkins* 纸做的南瓜。为万圣节前夕的装饰用。(21) *Halloween masks* 万圣节 (*All Saints' Day*) 前夕（十月三十一日）假装用的面具。(22) *saleslady* 女店员。(23) *who were trying on masks* 她们正在把面具试戴着看。(24) *It was as simple as that.* 就是那样简单的。(25) *outside, we ran a few blocks.* 从店子走出街上来，我们一气地跑了几条街。*block* 四围有街围住的一连房屋。(26) *to make it more dramatic* 使之更有戏剧性。(27) *because successful theft exhilarates* 因为盗窃成功，特别使人兴奋。*exhilarates* 使高兴；使快活；使兴奋。在此用的现在时态，表示一般的真相。(28) *wonder if* 急想知道是不是。(29) *used to* 表过去的习惯。(30) *had to* 表过去的必要。

(31) *now and then* 时常。(32) *sort of* 稍稍地；有几分 (= *somewhat*) . (33) *to keep my hand in* 在干着；保持熟练。如 *He plays his violin every day to keep his hand in.* 他每天拉小提琴以保持熟练。



### 【译例】

一九四三年十月的那个礼拜一，是小鸟飞舞，风光明媚的一天。一开头我们就在乔·伯尔的酒吧里，喝了曼哈顿鸡尾酒。随后，我们在第五街一带闲荡着，那儿正有人在列队游行。我们走到中央公园里的自助餐厅去吃了一顿午餐。后来，为避免动物园（哈利说她不能忍受看到任何东西被关在笼子里），我们格格地笑，又跑又唱，沿着小路，走向那现已不存在的古老的木造船库去。落叶漂满一湖；在湖畔有一个园丁正在焚烧落叶” ”

走过一家伍尔渥斯的百货商店，她紧抓住我的手臂：/我们去偷点什么吧。”她说，就把我拉进那商店去了。一走进去我马上就感觉到众目睽睽好像都在监视着我们，俨然我们已经受到嫌疑了。/来呀。不要这样胆怯。”她侦察了一个堆满了纸做的南瓜和万圣节前夕用的假面具的柜台。那女店员正在忙于招待一群在试戴着假面具的尼姑顾主。哈利选了一个面具自己戴在脸上；她又另外选了一个给我戴上；于是她牵了我的手，我们便走出那商店来了。那就是这样简单的呀。出了店门一走上街，我们一气跑了几条街，我认为这样可以使之更带戏剧性呢。可是，如我后来所发现的，也是为着盗窃的成功而特别高兴吧。我问她是不是常偷东西。她回答说：/我以前是常偷的，是迫不得已，非偷不可呀。当我想要点什么的时候。但是，现在我还是时常要这样来一下，为保持熟练起见。”

(13)

It must be remembered that the oppressed and the oppressor are bound together within the same society; they accept the same criteria, they share the same beliefs, they both alike depend on the same reality. Within this cage it is romantic, more meaningless, to speak of a /new” society as the desire of the oppressed, for that shivering dependence on the props of reality which he shares with the Herrenvolk makes a truly /new” society impossible to conceive. What is meant by a new society is one in which inequalities will disappear, in which vengeance will be exacted; either there will be no oppressed at all, or the oppressed and the oppressor will change places. Bu

t, finally, as it seems to me, what the rejected desire is, is an elevation of status, acceptance within the present community. Thus, the African, exile, pagan, hurried off the auction block and into the fields, fell on his knees before that God in Whom he must now believe; who had made him, but not in his image. This tableau, this impossibility, is the heritage of the Negro in America: Wash me, cried the slave to his Maker, and I shall be whiter, whiter than snow! For black is the color of evil; only the robes of the saved are white” ”

### 【解说】

作者 James Baldwin (1924' ) 是美国现代黑人作家。本文采自他的散文集 *Notes of a Native Son*. 他的代表作为 *Go Tell It on the Mountain* 一部长篇小说。他生于纽约, 曾往欧洲旅行, 在法国住了一个时期, 现住纽约有名的 *Greenwich Village*. 他写作的主题, 无论是在小说或戏剧或评论或散文中都是一贯的为黑人请命。简单地说, 就是/美国的黑人有何身份? ”或/做美国的黑人有何意义? ”他一直在探索美国黑人的真相, 美国黑人的 *specialness* (特色)。他说美国的民主是只存在于白人社会的。这个社会 and 过去奴隶制社会并没有两样。要到真正的出现新的社会, 奴隶才能翻身。现在美国黑人的祖先, 为人奴役, 不但失去自由, 也忘记了故国的话语, 失去了本来的姓名, 肉体受到蹂躏, 终至于丧失了自己, 这便是美国黑人的历史。但有些自甘堕落的美国黑人, 早丧失了他的人格, 只希望他的皮肤能变白, 头发能变直, 这种人终将成为/看不见的人”, 既不能加入白人的队伍, 又自动脱离了黑人的行列, 早已无处可以存在了。

### 【注释】

(1) the oppressed and the oppressor 受别人压迫的人和压迫别人的人。(2) criteria 判断的准绳。字尾的〔a〕表复数, 单数为〔on〕(criterion), 此为希腊字的变化, 他例如 *phenomenon*, *phenomena* (现象)。(3) cage 牢笼, 指现实的社会。(4) romantic 空想的。(5) more meaningless 没有比这更无意义的了。(6) that shivering dependence 战战兢兢来依附的。(7) the props of reality 叫做现实的那个支柱。(8) Herrenvolk (德文) 支配民族(纳粹主义的德国民族自夸之辞)。Herren 为 Herr (= lord, master) 的复数形。volk = people. (9) inequalities 不平

等。(10) **vengeance** 复仇；报仇。如向某人报仇则说 **take vengeance upon a person**。(11) **exact** 动词，意为坚持地要求；必要。

(12) **change places** 调换地位。(13) **the rejected desire** 不被接受的要求；被拒绝的请求。(14) **elevation of status, acceptance within the present community** 身份地位的提高，被白人社会所接受。指现代美国黑人的公民权运动而言。(15) **exile** 被放逐的人；流亡者。(16) **pagan** 异教徒。非基督徒。(17) **auction block** 奴隶拍卖台。(18) **fields** 自由的原野。(19) **that God** 指基督教的上帝。(20) **in Whom he must now believe** 现在他必须信奉的，说黑人在他的故国非洲时，原是信的土族宗教，自从被卖为美国人的奴隶以后就被迫改信基督教。(21) **who had made him but not in His image** 上帝造人，但没有照着神的形像来造他。旧约全书《创世记》第一章第二十七节上说：/上帝就照着自己的形像造人，乃是照着他的形像造男造女。”(22) **this tableau** 这种光景。参考惊叹词的 **Tableau!** 试想那种光景！(23) **this impossibility** 这种不可能的事。人世间办不到的事。(24) **heritage** 祖先遗留下来的事物。(25) **his Maker** 他的造物主，即上帝。(26) **black is the color of evil**. 黑是罪恶的颜色。(27) **the robes of the saved** 被救者的外衣。

### 【译例】

我们必须记住受压迫者和压迫者是在同一个社会中被束缚在一起的。他们接受同样的准绳；共有同样的信仰；他们彼此相像地都依赖同样的现实。在这种现实的樊笼中，作为受压迫者的要求，来说什么/新的”社会，简直是幻想，再没有什么比这更无意义的了。因为受压迫者和支配民族双方都要战战兢兢地依附在他们共有的现实支柱上，这就使人不可能去想像一个真正的/新的”社会了。新的社会的含义是其中不平等的现象完全消失，报仇的意义必须实现；要么是受压迫者已不存在，要么是受压迫者和压迫者调换地位。但是结局，我觉得那不能接受的要求，就是黑人身份地位的提高，被白人社会所接纳的那回事。这样一来，从奴隶拍卖台急急逃向自由的原野去的非洲人，流亡者，异教徒，就要跪下在他现在不得不信奉的上帝的前面去了。上帝造人，但没有照着他的形像来造他。试想这种光景，这种决办不到的事，正是在美国的黑人的祖先所遗留下来的奴性：洗净我吧，那奴隶对他的造物主叫出来，那样我就可以更白，比雪还要白呀！因为黑是罪恶的颜色；只有那些得救者的外衣才是白的” ”

I was naked, clean if sweating, just as I had come. Something seemed to hurry me through space. I heard that thunder again, on the remotest horizon, guns perhaps, something; above Java or palms on the Laccadives, in the profoundest sunlit sea. Something hurried me through memory, too, but I can't pause to remember, for a guilt past memory or dreaming, much darker, impels me on. I pray but my prayer climbs up like a broken wisp of smoke: oh my Lord, I am dying, is all I know, and oh my father, oh my darling, longingly, loneliness, I fly into your arms! Peyton you must be proper nice girls don't. Peyton. Me? Myself all shattered, this lovely shell? Perhaps I shall rise at another time, though I lie down in darkness and have my light in ashes. I turn in the room, see them coming across the tiles, dimly prancing, fluffing up their wings. I think: my poor flightless birds, have you suffered without soaring on this earth? Come then and fly. And they move on past me through the darkening sands, awkward and gentle, rustling their feathers: come then and fly. And so it happens treading past to touch my boiling skin' one whisper of feathers is all' and so I see them go' oh my Christ! ' one by one ascending my flightless birds through the suffocating night, toward paradise. I am dying. Bunny, dying.

### 【解说】

本文作者 William Styron (1925' ) 为美国小说家, 以巧于遣词用字著称, 生于美国 Virginia 州的 Newport News, 出身 Duke 大学, 又在 New York's New School 学习文艺写作, 受教于 H. Hyman 教授。1951 年发表 *Lie Down in Darkness* 一部小说, 立刻引起文坛的注意。随又在 1953 年发表 *The Long March*, 1960 年发表 *Set This House on Fire*, 1967 年发表 *The Confessions of Nat Turner*, 作品不多, 但已足够表现作者的文才了。他的文笔, 有时幽静, 有时热情, 有时素朴, 颇多变化。总说起来, 他不是一个惜墨如金的作家, 他有丰富的想像力, 笔下驱遣云烟, 词汇多如潮涌。他把文字所有的象征的及比喻的机能, 发挥到最高度, 且能将字与字,

句与句，人物与人物，形成微妙的对比，以浮雕出人心上的种种皱纹。他使用的词句虽很明朗，但决无地域的及时代的限制；他放眼乾坤，以整个的人生为对象，写出世间的混乱，不安，绝望，爱憎，伪善，复仇，背信，不平，犯罪，同情，怜悯种种现象。他的作风在表现上学 **T. Wolfe**，在主题上学 **W. Faulkner**，在手法上学 **J. Joyce**。有人说艺术家是使得语言的绚烂幻影背后闪耀的真实，浮现出来的魔术师。本文作者就够得上称为这样的“语言的魔术师”了。他也算是当代一流的 **storyteller**，他的成功作品，匠心独运，有如织锦，可算是高度的艺术品。本文采自 **Lie Down in Darkness** 第七部。他这部处女作《躺下在黑暗中》，在出版的第二年便获得美国艺术院的奖金。故事描述美国南部一个富人家的罪恶与堕落，以及衰败的悲剧。那个不能爱他妻子的丈夫米尔顿，不被丈夫所爱的孤独而严格的妻子海伦，生来残废但受母亲溺爱的白痴。长女莫蒂，恋父情结（**Electra complex**）的次女蓓顿，及其他米尔顿的情妇朵利，清教的神父凯亚里，和黑人的一家，这许多人物之间的爱与恨，同情与背信，报仇与死亡等等，都以次女蓓顿为中心而展开来。这部奇异的故事，展开的实际时间，不过五六小时的当中所发生的事情，作者用登场人物的回想方式，各人各样的意识流，把这一富人家三十多年的过去，全都表现出来了。

现在选用的这一段是最后的部分，即蓓顿从家庭中逃出来，大学也退学了，经过了许多的爱人之后，终于和一个犹太裔的无名画家哈利结了婚，得到了一个爱的家庭，可是她因 **Electra Complex** 的关系，仍然搞不好，她只要被爱，却不知什么是爱。丈夫无能为力，只好和她分居。蓓顿再三再四去恳求他回家，最后的希望落空之后，她已经酒精中毒，精神分裂，在神经失常之中，她从纽约的一座摩天楼的顶上跳下自杀了。现在采用的这一段，便是她自杀前的心理状态，实在描写得很巧妙，值得我们玩味。

### 【注释】

(1) **clean if sweating** 即令满身的汗，也是很干净的。(2) **had come** = **had come into the world** = **had been born**. 出世。

(3) **guns perhaps**, 也许不是雷声，而是炮声。(4) **Java** 爪哇。

(5) **the Laccadives** 拉卡代夫群岛。此为阿拉伯海中的群岛名，位于印度西南海岸。(6) **the profoundest sunlit sea** 阳光灿烂的海域。(7) **I can't pause to remember** 我不能停下来从容回想。

(8) **a guilt** 犯罪的意识。指蓓顿过去生活中种种行为而产生的心理状态，例如因对姊姊未细心照顾以致发生事故而使她送命，及对丈夫背信等等。(9) **past memory or dreaming** 越过记忆或梦想。(10) **much darker** 修饰前面 **a guilt** 的。(11) **impels me on** 将我向前推进。(12) **a wisp of smoke** 一缕烟。(13) **oh my Lord** 啊，主啊。呀，我的天呀。(14) **oh my father, oh my darling.** 啊，我的父亲，啊，我的爱人。因为蓓顿在家时曾无意识地对她父亲怀着异性的思慕。其说出自弗洛伊德的精神分析学。儿子对母亲，便称 **Oedipus complex**。(15) **Peyton you must be proper nice girls don't. Peyton.** / 蓓顿，你一定要学得高尚些，上等女孩子不是这样的，蓓顿。”蓓顿的母亲看见她的次女行为有欠检点，常是这样告诫她。蓓顿在酒精中毒以后，累累地和丈夫以外的男子乱来，现在心中不免发生犯罪的意识。(16) **Me? Myself all shattered, this lovely shell?** 是我吗？是完全被打得粉碎的这个我，这个可爱的贝壳？前后两句是同格的比喻。想到天真的儿童时代在海滨拾贝壳，童心与贝壳形成双重的影像，再拿来和现在的残花败柳，破碎之身对比。(17) **Perhaps I shall rise at another time, though I lie down in darkness and have my light in ashes.** 虽则我现在躺下在黑暗中，而到骨灰中去求我的光明，也许将来有一天我会苏醒过来的。作者在书前的题词 (**epigraph**) 中曾用了这样的词句。**Sir Thomas Browne (1605' 1682)** 曾著有《壶葬论》(**Urne-buriall**)，对生死问题有所阐述，立论警策，作者即从该书引用了上述的文句，又拿来用作小说的题名。《壶葬论》中说到生死轮回的思想，**darkness** 和 **light** 即象征死生。(18) **them** 指小鸟。(19) **coming across the tiles** 从瓦上过来。(20) **prancing** 跳跃着。(21) **fluffing up the ir wings** 使翼翅松散。(22) **my poor flightless birds** 我可怜的不能飞的小鸟啊。蓓顿自喻的话，表示她不能自由地飞翔，加上烂饮与滥交的关系，而有犯罪之感，以及憧憬自由而不可得的焦躁之感，那种精神错乱的不安状态，用小鸟拍翅膀来形容，颇为巧妙传神。(23) **darkening sands** 逐渐变得黑暗了的沙滩。(24) **treading past** 走过。(25) **my boiling skin** 我那沸腾炽热的皮肤。(26) **one whisper of feathers** 羽毛一度作沙沙声。(27) **suffocating night** 闷热的夜晚。(28) **Bunny** 原来是对兔子或松鼠的爱称，在此为蓓顿叫她父亲时的爱称。

### 【译例】

我全身赤裸，虽淌着汗，但很清洁，就像我刚生下来的时候一样。好像有什么东西，把我向太空推去。我再度听到遥远的地平线上的雷声，也许是炮声，或是别的什么声音。那是在阳光灿烂的海域中的爪哇上空呢，还是在拉卡代夫群岛的棕榈树的上空，不得而知。又有什么东西驱赶着我向记忆中去，但是我不能从容地来回想，因为超过记忆或梦想，一种更黑暗的犯罪意识驱使着我向前迈进。我祷告，但我的祷词，像一缕破碎的轻烟向天上升去：/啊，主呵，我要死了”，这便是我所知道的一切。还有/啊，我的父亲；啊，我的爱人”，满怀渴望，孑然一身，我要飞去投入你的怀抱！/蓓顿，你一定要检点些，好女孩子都不是这样的。蓓顿。”是我吗？是损毁不堪的这个我，这个可爱的贝壳？虽则我躺下在黑暗中，要到骨灰中去求取我的光明，也许有朝一日我会苏醒过来的。我在房间里回头一看，便看见一些小鸟松开着翅膀，糊里糊涂地在跳跃着，跳过花砖来了。我想：我可怜的不能飞的小鸟啊，你们不能高飞入云，在这地上很受了苦吧？那么，来起飞呀。于是小鸟们经过我的身边，羽毛沙沙作响，笨拙而又温柔地向前移动：来起飞呀。就是这样，小鸟们偶尔想要接触到我的滚烫的皮肤，而贴近我走将过来’ ’ 羽毛一度发出小声，如是而已’ ’ 随即我看见它们飞走’ ’ 啊，我的救主！’ ’ 一只一只地我那些不能飞的小鸟，突破窒息的夜晚，向天国飞升而去。我要死了，朋宜，就要死了。

(15)

I seemed to be walking alone at the edge of a swamp at nightfall, the light around me glimmering, crepuscular, touched with the greenish hue presaging the onslaught of a summer storm. The air was windless, still, but high in the heavens beyond the swamp thunder grumbled and heaved, and heat lightning at somber intervals blossomed against the sky. Filled with panic, I seemed to be searching for my Bible, which strangely, unaccountably I had left there, somewhere in the depths and murk of the swamp; in fear and despair I pressed my search into the oncoming night, pushing now deeper and deeper into the gloomy marshland, haunted by the ominous, stormy light and by a far-off pandemonium of thunder. Try de

sperately as I might, I could not find my Bible. Suddenly another sound came to my ears, this time the frightened outcry of voices. They were the voices of boys, hoarse and half grown and seized with terror, and now instantly I saw them: half a dozen black boys trapped neck-deep in a bog of quicksand, crying aloud for rescue as their arms waved frantically in the dim light and as they sank deeper and deeper into the mire. I seemed to stand helpless at the edge of the bog, unable to move or to speak, and while I stood there a voice echoed out of the sky, itself partaking of that remote sound of thunder.

### 【解说】

本文采自美国作家 William Styron 在 1967 年发表的 *The Confessions of Nat Turner* 一书的 *Judging Day* 第一部。《挪特·额累斯的忏悔》获得 1968 年度的普立策奖 (Pulitzer Prize)。故事说到 1831 年 8 月某日，在维吉尼亚州的东南部地方，突然发生了美国黑奴历史上唯一的，持续很久，颇有效果的黑人暴动。为首的挪特·额累，是这反叛的计划人兼指导者。他是为黑人所尊敬的传教师，通文墨的黑奴，受到神的指示，要把当地的白人全都杀死，可说是一个对宗教着了魔的人。于是他便带着好几十个黑人暴动起来，用斧头和枪把那地方的农场主人及其家族等近六十人完全残杀了。几天之后暴动被镇压下来，挪特被捕。作者以挪特在狱中向律师的自白为题材，再加上丰富的想像力，而创造出一篇优美的小说来了。

现在这个断片是指挪特被带入法庭，在开庭的几分钟之间，叙述他所经历的白日梦的一段。沼泽地的暮色，和黑人们的悲惨，以及挪特的心境等等，作者以巧妙而朴素的文笔，象征地描绘出来，实不愧为“语言的魔术师”。

### 【注释】

(1) swamp 沼泽。浸有水的低湿地带，与后面出现的 marsh 同义，至于最后说的 bog 也是沼池，但无水。(2) glimmering 发微光的，例如 lights glimmering in the distance 远处微弱的灯光。(3) crepuscular 晨光熹微的，黄昏的。crepuscular birds or insects 在晨暮之际活动的鸟或昆虫。a crepuscular period 初期，蒙昧未开的时期。(4) touched with = being touched with



染得有（那种色彩）。(5) the greenish hue 略带青色。(6) pre-sage 预示，前兆。Some people think that a circle around the moon presages a storm. 有些人以为月晕预示有暴风雨。(7) onslaught 猛攻。(8) heavens = sky. 散文中通例用复数，如 the starry heavens. (星空)，大约是因为古代的天文学认为天有七重，上帝和天使们住在最上一重。(9) grumbled and heaved 隆隆作响，有起有伏。(10) at somber intervals 此为作者所特有的修辞法。我们应把 at intervals (= now and then 时时) 和 somber (阴沉的，幽暗的) 分开来看。(11) blossomed 形容闪电有如开花。(12) Filled with panic = Being filled with panic 凡是过去分词开头的句子，都可以加上 being 来解释。(13) I seemed to be " " of the swamp. 描写挪特在暴动失败后一时找不到神的焦躁状态，这也是象征的表现法。(14) depths and murk 在黑暗的深处。(15) press = hasten, urge on 加速，赶快。(16) oncoming 即将来临的。(17) haunted by 萦绕于怀；为 " " 所困扰。A wrongdoer is constantly haunted by the fear of discovery. 作恶者心中经常害怕被人发觉。I am haunted by regrets. 我悔恨无已。(18) pandemonium = perfect confusion 骚乱，喧嚣。大混乱的场所。原出 Milton 著 Paradise Lost, 指群鬼的宫殿。(19) Try desperately as I might. 普通/形容词 + as = though (虽则)，但此句为/动词 + as, 用法完全不同，应译作/尽管”，上句可译为/尽管我拼命去找，（我也找不到我的《圣经》）”。(20) outcry of voice 人声的叫喊。(21) half grown 还没有变成大人的声音，还带得有儿童的声音。(22) seized with terror 为恐怖所侵袭，大为恐怖。(23) trapped neck-deep in a bog of quicksand 陷于沼地的流沙中，深入齐颈。(24) mire 泥淖，泥泞。(25) itself partaking of 和那声音相伴。itself 是接前面的 a voice 说的。

### 【译例】

我好像是在暮色中独自一人在沼泽岸边走着似的。那包围着我的薄暮的微光，染得有带青的颜色，预示着一个夏天的暴风雨就要袭来。微风不动，静寂寂的，但在沼泽那边高高的天上，却雷声隆隆，由小而大，而闪电时时在阴沉的天上开出花来。我充满着恐怖，好像是在寻找我的《圣经》似的，很奇怪而无法说明地，我把《圣经》放在沼泽的黑暗深渊中的什么地方忘记了。在恐惧和绝望中，我加快在即将来临的夜色中寻找，受着那恶兆的暴风雨的电光，和辽远的吵闹

的雷声所困扰，我现在向着阴郁的沼泽地越来越深入地推进了。尽管我拼命地寻找，但怎也找不到我的《圣经》。突然间另外一个声音来到我的耳中，这次却是人们恐慌的叫喊声。那原是一群男孩子的声音，嘶哑而未成年的声音，为恐怖所袭时的声音。现在一瞬间，我看明白他们了：那原是五六个黑孩子陷在沼地的流沙中，深及颈部，当初他们越来越深地沉下到那泥淖中去时，他们在幽暗的夜色中，疯狂地舞动手臂，高声呼喊救命。我好像是站在那沼地的岸边一点办法也没有的样子，既不能移动，也不能说话，而当我站在那里的时候，突然从天上传来一个声音，听去却和远处的雷声混在一起了。

(16)

Scurridge reached for the morning newspaper and turned to the sports page. /I fancy a bit o'bacon an'egg, " he said, and sat down beside the fire and placed his pointed elbows in the centres of the two threadbare patches on the arms of his chair.

His wife threw a surly glance at the upraised newspaper. /There is no eggs, " she said, and Scurridge's pale, watery blue eyes fixed on her for the first time as he lowered the paper.

/What y'mean'there is no eggs'? "

/I mean what I say; I didn't get any." She added with sullen defiance. /I couldn't afford'em this week. They're five-an'-six a dozen. Something's got to go' I can't buy all I should as it is."

Scurridge smacked his lips peevishly. /God! Oh! God. Are we at it again? It's one bloody thing after the other. I don't know what you do with your brass."

/I spend it on keeping you, " she said. /God knows I get precious little out of it. Always a good table, you must have. Never anything short. Anybody'd think you'd never heard of the cost of living. I've told you time an'again'tat it isn't enough, but it makes no difference."

## 【解说】

本文作者是英国劳动阶级出身的作家 Stan Barstow (1928' )。这是他的作品 **Gamblers Never Win** 当中的一节。描写一个沉溺于赌博中的矿坑夫，在早餐时和老婆口角的情景。用活生生的现代英语表出，平易可读。下层阶级的口吻，连他们说话的声音，都被刻画出来。

## 【注释】

(1) **reach for** 伸手去取。(2) **turn** 翻动，转向，如 **The car turned to the left.** (汽车向左转去了)。在自动词 **turn** 后接介词 **to** 时，可作“查阅”解，如 **turn to a dictionary for guidance** (参考类书)。又可作“开始工作”解，如 **He turned to stamp-collecting again.** (他又开始集邮了)。此外还可以作“求助于”解，如 **I have no one but you to turn to.** (我可以求助的人只有你呀)。如果把 **to** 作副词用时，则可说 **It's time to turn to.** (是开始工作的时候了)。(3) **fancy = would like to have** (想吃)。这个动词的 **fancy**，原有 **take a fancy to** (爱好) 的意思，如对病人等说 **Don't you fancy anything?** (你想吃点什么吗?) (4) **of, and** 等字说得很轻的时候，便成为 **o<sup>1</sup>** 和 **an<sup>1</sup>** 了，即是不把 **f** 和 **d** 的音说出来。

(5) **bacon and eggs** 英国人一般做早餐吃的。(6) **the fire** 炉火 (无论贫富英国家庭终年都生火)。(7) **his pointed elbows** 他的尖肘 (形容工人的消瘦)。(8) **the two threadbare patches** 椅子扶手因用久破烂而加上的补丁 (形容主人的穷相)。(9) **a surly glance** 不高兴的一瞥。(10) **the upraised newspaper** 双手拿起在看的报纸。(丈夫的面孔被报纸遮住了，她只好对那报纸投以不高兴的一瞥。)(11) **There is no eggs.** 没有鸡蛋了。(在口语中不管主语是单数或复数，一概说 **there is.**) (12) **pale, watery blue eyes** 无神的浅蓝色的眼睛。**pale = feeble** 缺乏健康的气色。**watery** 不是修饰 **eyes** 的 (**watery eyes** 泪汪汪的眼睛)，而是修饰 **blue** 的。**watery blue** 浅蓝色。(13) **for the first time** 第一次 (说那赌徒的丈夫那天起身以后还是第一次来凝视他的老婆)。(14) **What y<sup>1</sup>mean = What do you mean?** 你是什么意思? (15) **I mean what I say.** 就是我说的意思。不是和你开玩笑的，我是认真说的。**mean** 意谓，如 **What do you mean by saying that?** 你那样说是什么意思? (16) **get** 买。(17) **with sullen defiance** 带着愠怒的反

抗。(18) They're five-an<sup>1</sup>-six a dozen. 鸡蛋卖到五先令六便士一打。five-and-six = five shillings and six pence 口语都不说出先令和便士的字眼来。(19) Something's got to go. = something has to go. 有些事情一定得废止才好。句中的 go 有 be abolished (废止) 之意, 例如 Drink must go. (酒必须废止)。口语常以 have got to 代 have to 用。(20) as it is 照现在这个样子。(21) smack one's lips 咂唇作响。(22) peevishly 气恼地。(23) Are we at it again? 难道我们又要斗嘴了吗? at it 进行某事和进行口角等。

(24) bloody 他妈的。在英国卑语中用的颇多, 只是表示强烈的感情无特殊意义。如强调否定时说的 not a bloody one (连一个都没有)。(25) brass 口语中指 money 说的。(26) God knows I get precious little out of it. 天晓得我为自己用的极少。句中 I 用斜体是加重语气说的。God knows 后接有子句时, 表发誓的意思, 即/“皇天在上, 我绝对没有为自己花掉多少钱”。如后面不接 that, 而接 why, where, when, what 等时, God knows 意为 Nobody knows. 又口语中将 precious 作副词用, precious little = very little 极少。他例如 It is precious cold. (冷极了。)(27) a good table 餐食丰盛。(28) Never anything short. 从未缺少一点什么。(不用主语和动词, 简明有力。)(29) 'ud = would. (30) you'd = you had. (31) the cost of living 生活费。(32) time and again 再三再四。(33) 'at = that. (34) it makes no difference 没有什么不同, 毫无效果。

### 【译例】

史卡力支伸手去拿了早报, 翻开运动栏来看。/“我想吃点腊肉鸡蛋。”他说着在火炉旁边坐下来, 把他的两只尖肘搁在他坐椅扶手上那两块破补丁的中央。

他的老婆对那举起的报纸投以不高兴的一瞥。/“没有鸡蛋了。”她说, 而史卡力支放下报纸, 把他那无神的浅蓝眼睛第一次瞪着他老婆望了。

/“你说没有鸡蛋了是什么意思?”

/“就是我说的意思, 我一个蛋也没有买呀。”她带着愠怒的反抗补充着说了。/“这个礼拜我买不起鸡蛋。一打涨到五个六了。有些事情一定得停止才好。”’ ’ 照现在这个样子, 我想要买的东西都不能买呀。”

史卡力支气恼地咂唇作响。/天啦！啊！天。难道我们又要斗嘴了吗？一个问题刚解决，第二个又来了。我不晓得你的钱，是怎样用的。”

“我用来维持你的生活呀！”她说。/天老爷明白，我为自己用的极少。你一定要吃得好，不能短缺一点什么。人家以为你从来不知道生活费要多少呀。我再三告诉过你说这点子钱是不够的，但你老是把它当作耳边风。”

# 习题解答

## 第一编 汉译英与英文句型

### 壹 由要素来分的造句

#### 习题 1

1. A sound thought dwells in a sound personality.
2. We do not live in order to eat, but we eat in order to live.
3. Stay if the work fits well, or you go away.
4. Don't falter when you speak.
5. The school year in China begins on the 1st of August and ends on the 31st of July.
6. My brother started from here the day before yesterday, and will arrive at London towards (or about) the middle of next month.
7. He may return very soon, but I cannot say for certain.
8. The cat can see in the dark.
9. The knife cuts well.
10. The work does not pay.
11. These hens have begun to lay.

12. My friend has stood by me.

13. The sun appears to move round the earth.

14. I could not see distinctly owing to the darkness.

15. Having walked about an hour, we arrived at the place.

16. When industry comes in at the window, poverty goes out of the window.

17. I do not sleep soundly, eat heartily, and my heart leaps all the time.

18. He descends from the lofty tree and goes into the dark valley.

19. The snow melts away in spring.

20. I could not have lived till today without my grandmother, and she would not survive in her later days without me. Both my grandmother and I rely on each other so as to exist in this world.

## 习题 2

1. We must be very careful in picking our company. One must be very careful in the choice of one's friends.

2. The Americans are fond of activity and rich in the spirit of independence. The American people are a nation that likes an active life and is full of the spirit of independence.

3. The examination questions of that university are very difficult, and it is doubtful whether I shall succeed in the entrance examination. As the examination questions of that university are very difficult, I doubt if (it is uncertain that) I shall pass the entrance examination (or not) .

4. She felt a little awkward and was quite at a loss to know what to do.

5. Good medicine tastes bitter (to the mouth) , but is good for a disease.

6. He stands firm in his purpose.

7. He has kept attentive through the lecture.

8. The rule does not always hold good.

9. True worth often goes unrecognized.

10. It remains to be proved.

11. He continued sullen, without speaking a word.

12. She sat thoughtful for a few minutes.

13. He appears to be aware of the fact.

14. After that they rested content.

15. The Chinese attitude is a reaction to the behaviour of the West.

16. The regions lying at the furthest extremes of the world remained entirely or virtually unknown to each other for centuries.

17. The account of his journey is an extraordinarily interesting document.

18. Few of the accounts of other travelers are as lively and informative as Marco Polo's.

19. A few words of explanation appear necessary.

20. No student who keeps abreast of the times can afford to ignore the publications of the day.



1. Did you attend the welcome meeting yesterday?
2. Mr. Su has successfully entered Oxford University.
3. Mr. Wang has passed the Civil Service Examination with honours.
4. If we must fight, we must fight it out.
5. They have stripped the Chinese of all their wealth in Indonesia.
6. He has provided me with everything I need.
7. He seized me by the hand and would not let me go.
8. She affected to talk to my friend, but she was really speaking at me.
9. Diligence makes up the deficiency in ability.
10. I insist that you shall come.
11. He did not work hard, and played away another year at school.
12. When I make a journey, I always take third class.
13. The audience shouted applause at the end of his speech.
14. He breathed his last at 11:  
10 p. m.
15. Can you swim it across the Yangtze River as that old man did?
16. I gave the poor little boy some money to buy food with.
17. She wrote me a long letter about her future.
18. We discussed the problem far into the night.

19. He admitted to her that she was right.

20. She suggested to us that we should do the whole thing over again.

#### 习题 4

1. Heaven has given man only the gift of speech.

2. He offered her his seat.

3. His father left him a large fortune.

4. I paid him the money.

5. I will read you the letter.

6. Will you sing me a Chinese song?

7. I envy you your good fortune.

8. I paid him a high compliment.

9. I wish you joy of your success.

10. I am sorry to give you so much trouble.

11. They grudged me even my pittance.

12. I hope you will not refuse me the favour.

13. Passengers are allowed 30 lbs of luggage.

14. An old Chinese proverb says that too much learning does not become a woman.

15. They have no sense of the duty which they owe their country.

16. She would be glad to die, but for the love she bears her child.

17. I do not envy the rich their wealth which causes them so much anxiety.

18. To do him justice, he has always been a good husband and a good father.

19. The rascal has at last been caught, after long giving the police the slip.

20. I beg you will do me the honour of accepting the trifling present.

## 习题 5

1. The people of the U. S. A. would never elect a colored man president.

2. They elected Mr. Wang a councilman.

3. Outdoor exercise makes us strong in mind and body.

4. People think him honest, but he is really an impostor.

5. I make it a rule to take an hour's walk after supper.

6. He left the room unobserved.

7. I had my license renewed for another three years.

8. We found him lying on the pavement.

9. I caught them stealing fruit from my garden.

10. We should keep our bodies and clothes clean not to be attacked by illness.

11. I call that answer impertinent.

12. I consider what he said irrelevant.

13. I found it difficult to solve that problem.

14. I deemed it prudent to keep the thing a secret.

15. Hsün Shuan esteemed it an honour to be the driver of Li Ying.

16. I look upon him as my benefactor.
17. He represents the state of the country as deplorable.
18. They describe her as a fairylike beautiful woman.
19. His knowledge of English leaves nothing to be desired.
20. Learning has always been held in high esteem in our country.

各 由会造来分的造句

### 习题 6

1. The sun having set, we went home.
2. In haste, there is error.
3. I got acquainted with him two years ago.
4. Return him my best thanks for the present.
5. To return to the subject, they got married the very day.
6. Judging from appearance you will lose the man of Tsu Yu.
7. The love of money is the root of all evil.
8. He came to see me for the purpose of borrowing some money from me.
9. The allied countries are suspicious of one another.
10. Fame has nothing to do with money.
11. To the joy of his mother, he won a lot of money.
12. Having written a letter, I went out for a walk.
13. He is content with very little.

14. To get up early for three mornings is equal to one day of time.

15. Diseases enter by the mouth.

16. An inch of gold will not buy an inch of time.

17. We know men's faces, not their minds.

18. There is many a good man to be found under a shabby hat.

19. Intelligence consists in recognizing opportunity.

20. Among men who is faultless?

## 习题 7

1. It is getting dark and we are still a long way off our destination.

2. Give me liberty or give me death.

3. An intelligent man studies for knowledge, but a foolish man just for a diploma.

4. It is going to rain, for the barometer is falling.

5. Some families are making merry while others are suffering from poverty.

6. He comes to help me when he has plenty to do at home.

7. How can I convince him when he will not listen?

8. He kept on talking when he knew it annoyed us.

9. He paid me only two thousand dollars when he owed me five thousand.

10. Please be quiet while I am talking to you.

11. He has nothing to spend his money on, while I have no money to spend.

12. He was the only candidate; therefore, he was elected.

13. He is a most popular candidate; consequently, he will be elected.

14. I hate, whereas you merely dislike, him.

15. A man does not live a hundred years, yet he worries enough for a thousand.

16. I must give him his share, for I have promised to go halves.

17. The train started before I had got to the station.

18. He talked about peace but he brought us war.

19. I accepted his well-meant advice, and now I do not feel futile in my new life.

20. Such work may do with others, but it won't do with me.

## 习题 8

1. We all know that time is money.

2. I do not know whether it is true or not.

3. This is the dog that barked at me wildly yesterday.

4. I wonder if he is at home at this time of day.

5. I have not seen him since he left here last year.

6. He speaks as if he understood everything.

7. The harder you work, the sooner you will improve.

8. Since you say so, I must believe it.

9. We study in order that we may gain knowledge.
10. I open the window that I may let the moon come in.
11. He is so cunning that nobody wants to make friends with him.
12. When the leopard dies, he leaves his skin; a man, his reputation.
13. I will undertake the work, if it pays.
14. None are so deaf as those who will not listen.
15. If you are a gentleman, you must show yourself as such.
16. Strange as it may sound, I am too rich to afford it.
17. I do not envy him his wealth, which causes him so much anxiety.
18. Grief has made him what he is.
19. Time passes quickly when we are engaged in the pursuit of pleasure.
20. There can be no friendship where mutual respect is wanting.

松 由内容来分的造句

## 习题 9

1. There is no art that can make a fool wise.
2. She writes home once a week.
3. He spent all his money on books ( = in buying books ) .
4. The rich have their troubles as well as the poor.

5. There has been a lot of rain this week.
6. Now was the time for thought.
7. Here stood her sewing machine.
8. Behind him came a long stream of horse and foot.
9. Immediately the button is pressed, the mine explodes.
10. Typical is the regiment at the pigeon loft of the Army Signal Corps at Fort Monmouth.
11. Fame and wealth people like best.
12. Nothing but a little water was in the cup.
13. Seldom has there been more fuss.
14. Should he meet me, he would know me at once.
15. Hardly had he began to speak when the audience interrupted him.
16. Here we differ about this matter.
17. They had to take care of their sick and wounded.
18. He will not succeed, try he ( = though he try ) never so hard.
19. Happy is the man who is contented with his lot.
20. Thus spoke the orator.

## 习题 15

1. What does it matter?
2. Where did you buy that stick of yours?
3. Aren't you proud of your son?
4. What is he? ( = What is his occupation? )



5. What ( = How much) did this book cost you?
6. Which man are you going to employ?
7. Is there anything you want which I can get for you?
8. Who is there but commits ( = that does not commit) errors? ( = Who is infallible? )
9. Can any ladies swim well?
10. Has anything happened?
11. Will you have some beer? ( = Please have some beer.)
12. Have you not some English books? ( = You have some English books, haven't you? )
13. Can I have some wine? ( = Please give me some wine.)
14. Who do you say Sally is going to be married to? (Thomas Hardy)
15. Do you know what sort of thing a castle in the air is?
16. What sort of speech shall I make tomorrow?
17. Is there a bus close by?
18. What time do you expect her back?
19. He cannot understand English while living in England for ten years?
20. Shall I get there in time if I take the 3 : 30 p. m. train?

## 习题 11

1. Let us not do what is dishonest.
2. Let me not hear of it any more.

3. Be diligent!
4. Don't be idle!
5. Don't go away so soon.
6. Bring a chair for your uncle to sit on.
7. You let that cat alone!
8. Now, Franz, you read.
9. Do come!
10. Take it easy.
11. Do not neglect your lessons.
12. Do not rely much on the help of others.
13. Tell him it's urgent.
14. Don't talk nonsense.
15. Please come to order.
16. Don't worry.
17. Give up drinking, and your health will improve.
18. Never speak ill of others.
19. Do not read for mere pleasure as many people do.
20. Wait a moment please. I'll come at once.

## 习题 12

1. How spotless the snow is!
2. What a glorious sunset this is!
3. What a pretty flower this is!
4. How late you are!

5. What a noise the engine makes!
6. What a time we have had!
7. What an ass he is!
8. What a strange thing is our brain!
9. What an impudent rascal (he is) !
10. May he have good luck!
11. What a vast number of pilgrims go to Jerusalem every year!
12. If I could only go to the concert!
13. How he snores!
14. How eloquent (he is) !
15. How happy I am to meet you here!
16. May she be happy after getting married!
17. Good-bye, my friends!
18. Hurrah! she's come.
19. Alas! I am ruined!
20. May those who love each other get married!

## 第二 编英文惯用法及其翻译

### 习题 1

1. 由正义而获得一个名位是光荣的，不过宁取正义而牺牲名位，则更加光荣。

2. 关于学习语言，我有我自己的想法。我认为只要学到足够我们自由阅读，自由谈论日常生活的情形就行了，研求再多的语言知识，简直是时间的浪费。

3. 纸牌在此可能很帮了他一点忙是很难说的。

## 习题 2

1. 要一个病人不成为凶恶的人是非常困难的。

2. 大家认为要妇女的见解高到可以对任何要求行动的事，采取广大自由的观点，是很不容易的。

3. 他真是愚笨，让自己去做那不可能的事。

4. 一个男子老是单身是不好的。

5. 不得他的允许就骑走他的脚踏车，原是你不对。

6. 不接受他们的提议，他是聪明的。

## 习题 3

1. 空谈我们的伟大是没有用的，除非我们致力使它伟大。

2. 他们的成功得力于教育的地方到底有多大是值得查究的。

3. 你独自一人住在这里，一定很无聊吧。

## 习题 4

1. 确实的，中国人的态度大半是对西方行为的一种反感，所以西方必须自我检讨，而经常接受批评。

2. 希望人是正直的，但这不是因为正直是最好的政策，而是由于更高的动机。

3. 凡是印象深刻的东西，就应该趁那最初的印象记忆犹新的时候，加以描写，这是必须记住的一条法则。

4. 我曾听到一个有名望的政治家说过，大部分的伟人都是因为吃得太多而送命的。

## 习题 5

1. 人病医生喜。

2. 引吭高歌，最爱诙谐笑谑的人，并不是心情最轻松的。
3. 使我们大部分的人活跃的，是因为没有钱和需要钱。
4. 读书只能供给心灵以知识的材料，思想才能把我们所读的变成自己的东西。
5. 多数大公司都训练得有叫做人事经理的专家，他们的任务就是接见可能聘雇的人员，决定取舍。
6. 他是一个翻译者，其任务就是做一架桥梁或一条通路，以沟通作者和读者的心灵。

### 习题 6

1. 很奇怪他总是犯同样数目的错误。
2. 她的父母几乎是同时死去；那是很可怕的。
3. 他亟想知道麦伯尔说的是真是假。

### 习题 7

1. 纳尔逊说：/当我想到我们所成就的事，不禁惊叹不止。”
2. 华盛顿对于措辞非常谨慎，在辩论中他从来不欺骗他的对手，或是争取暂时的胜利。
3. 当她非常神经过敏地在等待着铃子响的时候，他突然一下站到她的眼前来了。

### 习题 8

1. 竹是最美丽又最奇特的热带产物之一。
2. 他让做法官的正义压倒做父亲的慈爱，宣布了自己的儿子有罪。

### 习题 9

1. 他因工作关系，只能隔周在周末回家一次。

2. 因为机械的关系，工厂的出品比以前便宜多了。

3. 感到肚子的饥饿，和看到日影的倾斜，使我知道我睡着了以后，太阳走过很远的路程了。

### 习题 15

1. 当瓦丁顿离去之后，琪娣把他刚才信口随便说的话细细想了一下。那是听来很不舒服的，她费了多少的气力才忍住没有把她内心的伤痛表现出来。

2. 这是那孩子生平第一次听到的亲切的话语；那温柔的音调和态度，奇怪地感动了那狂暴而粗野的心，一滴眼泪似的东西像一点火花在那锐利圆圆的发亮的眼睛中照耀了。

3. 他没有一点学生的样子，但很有矿工的神气。（全不像学生，倒像是矿工。）

4. 戈登，你知道的，我真算不得是一个会侍候女性的人。

### 习题 11

1. 他因受失母的惨痛而促短了他的天年。

2. 母爱与其他的爱情在本质上是大有分别的。

3. 后代的人会追慕他。

4. 没有法律上的任何理由可以将他除名的。

5. 毫不顾到在储蓄上付出多大牺牲的那种小钱的储蓄是不科学的，也是不实际的节俭之道。

6. 他的伟大就在他致力实行他的计划时那种毅力上可以看得出来。

7. 失去这些审美的趣味，就等于失去幸福。

### 习题 12

1. 无论你怎样称赞他，他仍不免是一个残暴的人。

2. 打倒布尔朋皇族，和那个大肥猪路易十八！
3. 他们给莎莉一条扭动屁股的蓝色短裙来穿。

### 习题 13

1. 这只表的价钱决不便宜，对我这种一个没有钱的人来说，确是太贵了；不过照它的定价看来，也算是便宜的，因为在效能上它是无比的。

2. 据我看来，他努力想要比平常更甚地来炫耀他的口才，无非是打算侮慢我的沉默，和在亚丽达那样具有风趣而又聪悟的女人前面显露头角而已。

### 习题 14

1. 在敌人的炸弹密如雨下的当中，这位军官所表现的英勇是最高级的。

2. 那些塔的高度完全是一样的。

3. 当我第一次见到他时，他一定是差不多跟我父亲同样的年纪。

4. 落选者约五倍于当选的人。

### 习题 15

1. 他自己做饭。

2. 通常一个人所说的命运，原是一张他用自己纺的纱而自己织成的网。

3. 她违背父母的意思，嫁给自己选择的男人。

### 习题 16

1. 那孩子来回地扇着，以驱逐那些嗡嗡飞舞，随时无礼地飞近婴孩的面孔的苍蝇。

2. 他有投保火险的先见。

## 习题 17

1. 米尔顿有属于最高天才的普遍性。
2. 在质上最优，在量上无限，能够引导我们走向快乐的惟有教育。

## 习题 18

1. 在一个人的面前是一套，在他的背后又是一套，这种作法再危险也没有了。
2. 别的人认为艺术的本质与其形式是两回事。

## 习题 19

1. 他和他的表兄弟同年。
2. 他既残酷又贪婪。
3. 达宾看去面色苍白，态度庄严，而他的同志就是面孔发红，心情愉快。

## 习题 25

1. 他的小说比一百年来文人所写的小说，更有传诸后世的可能性。
2. 那不但是真的，而且在大小那一点说起来，是我至今所见到的  
一串最好的珍珠。

## 习题 21

1. /我的朋友，你错了，”哈尔王说：/错得不能再错了。”
2. 父老们欢迎我，亲切得无以复加。
3. 自从我进入监狱以来，他常来看我，有时他和我谈话，亲切得不得了。

## 习题 22



1. 正如没有两个字是完全同义的一样，也没有两种表现法能够正确地表示同一件事。

2. 正如化学家从实验的结果获得论断一样，学习语文的人也必须从观察语文的实况而获得论断。

### 习题 23

1. 人的情形和土地一样，有什么潜在的能力自己也不知道，正像地主有时并不知道他那土地上蕴藏着有黄金的矿苗。

2. 言语犹如阳光，越凝缩越强烈。

### 习题 24

1. /不对，我早已和你这样说过了。”布隆特说。

2. 那墙约有十五英尺高，十五英尺厚。

3. 我们所有的街道上，两旁都种有树木，当街灯照耀时，就好像那么多的星星，从枝叶间发出光来。

4. 我召集了许多玩耍的伴侣，就像一群那样多的蚂蚁一样勤快地工作了。

### 习题 25

1. 八个在战斗中倒下的人，只有三个还未断气，而其中两个却像死了一样。

2. 男人应该是既勇敢而又温柔，女人则要既温柔而又勇敢。

3. 我因为肚子饿了非进食不可的缘故，便回到洞穴中去做饭，同时也得去照顾一下我的马，整个上午都没有去理会它了。

4. 美国的名歌手朵莉戴的音乐背景，是渊源于她那教风琴、钢琴和声乐的父亲维廉的。

### 习题 26

1. 人类的痛苦是不会减轻的，除非我们具有正确的思想行为，并以坚定的决心去面对现实的世界。

2. 假如我更为结实的话，我就早已跟随他从窗口跳出去了。实际上，我只是按铃把全家的人叫醒来。

### 习题 27

1. 难得的是在这样一个时期出版，他的书引起了很大的注意。

2. 因为这运动是发生于穷人本身之间的，很可能比来自上流社会的更有力量。

3. 因为这事发生在特殊沉闷的时候，所以它比应有的更吸引了人们的注意。

### 习题 28

1. 他虽则年轻，他虽则贫穷，但没有一个国王或爵爷的儿子，在学问上及得他的。

2. 尽管我们奋斗，我们是决不能完全满足的。

3. 即令学生很笨，功课起初看去很难，如果他能坚忍不拔，努力做去的话，他就会感到那研究越来越容易，至少也不会那样难了。

### 习题 29

1. 关于气候，日本在本质上与英国无异，所以在这一点上，说日本是太平洋上的英国，确是很有理由的。

2. 这个善良的妇人喜不自胜。她要以自己的儿子为荣也是应当的。

3. 在这期间中我遇见了一些人，凭他们的身份、名誉或地位，是很可以自命要注定成为历史上的有名人物的。

### 习题 35

1. 友情好像花瓶一样，只要偶然发生裂痕，就很可能马上破碎的。

2. 你想要我改变意见，就和想要太阳从西边升起一样。

3. 当这妇人看见杂志没有增加销路，她对那编辑就有点讨厌起来了，而决心要趁着还有什么可加利用的时候，把凡是可入手的东西最好全部捞过来。

### 习题 31

1. 科学的目的就在把一些事实汇集拢来，以便从而引出一般的法则与结论来。

2. 学生们一见到鸟巢，就要极为小心地不去惊动它，生怕母鸟受惊而弃之他去。

### 习题 32

1. 她对于每个弱小无助的东西都不禁对之发生同情；遇到受伤的小鸟或小兽，她总要为之痛心。

2. 想到他日后成就的伟业，我便记忆到在我叔叔家的食桌上，大家谈论他的那种样子，我不禁为之莞尔不已。

### 习题 33

1. 任何人想要理解这一对要靠法律来医治他们的创伤的，不和夫妇的心情，就非得密切注视过他们结婚生活的数十万个小时不可。

2. 有些人是生来就伟大的，有些人则独力完成伟大的事业，而另外有些人就是被人把伟大加诸其身的。

3. 为要发觉自由是值得渴望的东西，我们首先有被剥夺自由的必要。

4. 我计划了各种策略，以便获得机会，使那曾经冤枉过我的人，了解他因从前所犯的罪过而受到了惩罚。

### 习题 34

1. 他的天性是想要别人怎样对他，他就怎样对待别人。
2. 因为我们住在路边，所以常有旅人为试饮我们的醋栗酒而过访。
3. 与其有这样的事发生，我宁愿加倍地遗失金币。
4. 一个很有教养的英国人问我，美国黑人是否不能和美国白人同一条人行道上走路。

### 习题 35

1. 下个月我们就请室内装饰师来家装饰。
2. 那个他受不了吧。他打算在星期二要把你赶出去，所以你还是作个准备的好。

### 习题 36

1. 我看见楼下的那个女人居然搞了两个水手坐在那里。我不晓得她是怎样认识他们的。
2. 什么都不要你做，我很大方吧。
3. 我不想听到你在孩子们前面说些下流话。

### 习题 37

1. 有天早晨我一醒来，就发觉我已成名了。
2. 时间一刻一刻地流去了，而他注意一看，自己正凝视着那支小蜡烛。烛光与晨光争辉中越来越微弱了。
3. 不到一分钟我发觉我跟那有同情心的秘书又进入了那间等待室，他要我签定了更多的文件。

### 习题 38

1. 许多的人发了财的时候，始知财富并不能从罪恶逃避，反而是一种新的更坏的形式罪恶。

2. 格兰斯顿才是一个高洁的人，也就是终生献身于运用崇高的主义于国事的人。他是这样一个完美的典型，是很容易知道的。

### 习题 39

1. 我在什么地方看见有人说过，我们要像蜜蜂利用鲜花一样来利用书本，它盗取花的甜蜜，而并不伤害花朵。

2. 假如你想到一个什么重要的观念，如果你不能把它记录下来，你的观念就会要随着你的死亡而消逝。即令你把它记录下来了，也不免有虫伤鼠患之灾，常常很快就被它啮光了。

### 习题 45

1. 一个人必须养成一种习惯，在穷困的时候，依靠自己的能力，信赖自己的勇气。

2. 没有几个人知道人生的幸福和性格的形成，大半是靠我们所读的精选的书籍。

3. 我深为相信我们心灵的和平及有生的快乐，并不是看我们的地位，我们的财产，或是我们的身份而定，而是完全以我们的精神的态度为转移的。外界的条件和它差不多没有关系。

### 习题 41

1. 逢迎者和真朋友是很难辨别明白的，因为好像狼和狗的相似一样，逢迎者和真朋友也是很相似的。

2. 绵羊看去都是一样的，不过它们之间仍然是有差别的，约翰就能够辨别得出来。

### 习题 42

1. 如果你交的朋友对你无益，你也不能对他有所帮助，你就得马上离开他。

2. 青年朋友，我不是当面奉承，我实在宁肯对你们聊天，而不愿对成年人讲话。

### 习题 43

1. 在某种范围之内艺术家是可以随心所欲地把他的生活做成一个什么样子的。在别的职业上，如医生的或律师的，你要不要去就那种职业，是可以自由选择的，不过，一度选定了，你便再没有自由了。

2. 成就大事业的人，是要把他们的失败作为阶梯的。（意即以失败为基础而达到成功的地步。）

### 习题 44

1. 你要不是一个有用的人，忠实而诚笃的话，你就不能希望在这世间获得成功。

2. 他努力奋斗一步一步地做到总统的高位。

3. 在面临反对声中而获得社会承认，无需要奋斗的那种伟大的真理是很少有的。

### 习题 45

1. 他通知我那个消息，所以我能及时准备。（so that 表结果）

2. 一种愚笨的想法，认为坐马车比骑马要威严些，使得法国的贵族都停止去骑马了。

3. 我很幸运作为一个剧作家突然一下声望鹊起，这样一来我就用不着要每年写一个长篇小说来维持我的生活了。

### 习题 46

1. 不要抓住别人，要他听完你想说的话。

2. 如果那个女人走进我的屋子，我就要打她的耳光。

3. 那医生愤怒地抓住那少年的领子，问他为什么要这样顽皮。

### 习题 47

1. 世间有许多人不肯让他们的主张在别人心中生根，而要像孩子们的揠苗助长一样，时常把他们种的花拔出来看是不是长大了。

2. 如果一个船长真个爱他的船的话，他就会对于船上极小的毛病都不忽视。他一定要报告这种毛病出来，并留意使它修理完好。

3. 当霍乱流行的时候，我仍然呆在这里，满不在乎。最要紧的就是不要吃没有煮熟的东西，不要吃生的水果和蔬菜，或是这类的任何东西，还有要注意的事，就是饮水必须煮沸。

#### 习题 48

1. 他对于英国的乡村生活一无所知；他竟认为所有生活在乡下的人，当然都是愚笨和悲惨的。

2. 我认为善人的善良是当然的，当我发现善人的缺点和败德时，我感到很有趣；当我看到恶人的善良时，我就为之感动，而很愿意对于他们的邪恶一耸我这宽大的肩膀。

3. 我是在小孩子的时候到那里去的，一直在那里长大。所以那里的人并不怎样重视我的存在。

#### 习题 49

1. 他说：/我对这世界什么都不在乎，既不在乎将来的事，也不在乎人们的批评，更不在乎任何种类的确立的地位，或者甚至是文学家的声名，那是我早年许多的夜里睡不着觉所梦想的。”

2. 当然他曾提议要送她回家，起初她是不肯接纳的’ ’她说那确是没有需要，因为从车站回到她父母家里去，不过几分钟的路程，她独自一人已经走惯了。

3. 我们岛上的空气曾是那般纯洁芳香，我们用不着要什么遮盖也能露宿得很舒服的，但是我们不惯在露天底下睡觉，所以我们并未能十分欣赏头上毫无遮盖而躺下睡觉的那种想法。

#### 习题 55

1. 客人都到齐了，马上可以开饭了。

2. 今天早上我们大家聚集一堂来毫无偏见地讨论时下的问题。

3. 我的工作大体上都做完了，只剩下一些零星的事。

## 习题 51

1. 谁都必然会看得出来，他们现在正遭遇到国家发展上的危机。
2. 如果我们照应当做的一样爱我们同类的话，我们就一定要殷勤有礼地对待他们。

## 习题 52

1. 你去看看那棵树，看是不是树上有果子成熟了。
2. 如果你不喜欢我写的东西，你不妨去读别人的。

## 习题 53

1. 把这种讨厌的歧见去掉之后，这两个共和国之间的友好关系，便将变得毫无遗憾了，甚至当其中一个还是帝国时代就很友善的。
2. 如果你把它放在手上衡量一下，你就会感觉到这是够重量的，至于说到它的完美，那更是无懈可击。

## 习题 54

1. 如果你想要了解这个奇怪，而有几分悲惨的故事的话，你至少对那背景得有一个印象’ ’ 由四大强国来瓜分为四的维也纳，那个被破坏的可怕的都市。
2. 预定大学校长将在恳亲会上致辞。
3. /我真个吓倒了。她被你看中有多久了？请你告诉我，什么时候我可以庆贺你们的订婚呢？”

## 习题 55

1. 有些作家提笔写作，是因为他们不得不说出一个故事，而不是因为他们已有一个故事要说。
2. 我因生病游荡了一个月，所以我必得加倍努力，以补足失去的时间。
3. 她从来不表示意见，据推测是她无意见可表示。



4. 即使从这个小车站去，也非驱车跑上好几英里路不可。

#### 习题 56

1. 社会在任何时代都不会阻止一个人的成就的。

2. 如果你把能率的原理应用到你的事业上，没有任何事物能阻止你去实现你的抱负。

#### 习题 57

1. 威胁利诱都不能使之作恶的人我是尊敬的。

2. 文学帮助在挣扎中的人们，来说服那叫做宇宙的怪物，要它提出一个较为易解的哑谜。

#### 习题 58

1. 他们看到钟索的情形大吃一惊。

2. 我是来埋葬凯撒的，不是来赞美他的。

3. 他并没有看到他事业的成果就死去了。

4. 我们匆匆走过那里，结果却是又回到原来的监狱里了。

5. 如果现代的个人或现代的国民，不顾人类的尊严，再度追求这些疯狂的竞赛，那么我们活着时还可以看到对战争中每死一百万人，就有一千万人会要因此而死亡。

6. 许多年轻人在一度失恋之后，就感觉到人生是不值得活下去了，结果他们发现不到几年之后，毕竟幸福是在等待着。

#### 习题 59

1. 在我们开始调查那个之前，让我们努力来理解我们所知道的事，以便充分加以利用，而分别主要的部分与附属的部分。

2. 蔬菜生产不足，难以应付全国的需求。

#### 习题 65

1. 相信他们自己的思想太过深奥，而不能明白易解地表现出来，这说法未免美过其实。这些作家不会想到原只怪他们自己的心灵未具正确的思想能力，这也是很自然的。

2. 只要我们不太傲慢而不肯自己说明或请求别人解释，人生大部分的误会就都会消除了。

3. 我读过非常多的小说，在学校里也学了不少的东西，所以对于恋爱的事懂得相当的多，但我想这只是年轻人的玩意。我以为儿子有我这样大的一个有胡子的人，是不会有那种情感的。

### 习题 61

1. 我很快就注意到了，在她以外我所认识的人们的性质，她一人兼而有之，我很高兴那些性质在她一个人身上都能发现出来。

2. 哲学家太爱作此假定，认为事实的问题是可以言辞上的考虑来解决的。

### 习题 62

1. 那样地来偷窃东西，真使我吓倒了。

2. 愚笨的家伙，居然以为他是可以被赦的。

3. 别人犹可，你也这样说真是太出意外了。

### 习题 63

1. 如果运输频繁，铁路就能使运费更为经济，至于其火车的有规律，舒适和迅速，犹其余事。

2. 事实上，所有值得称为大发现家的人，都曾一度被人看作梦想者，不被当作狂人看待已经很好了。

### 习题 64

1. 在这种场合不晓得他要怎样办。

2. 一个人的家屋在何时会从他的头上倾倒下来，是未可逆料的。

3. 他过去老是很容易兴奋的，可是现在他简直神经错乱了；没有法子再去说服他。

### 习题 65

1. 如果有人不满足他的职业或他的薪水的话，他只消去申请，就可以得到一块农场，用来开始一种生产的新生活。

2. 谁会满足于只要想望就可以得到的成功呢？

### 习题 66

1. 想要由经验而获得利益的人，是决不认为求助是可耻的。

2. 国魂应该高升到使强国以欺凌弱小为耻。

### 习题 67

1. 凡是具有价值的东西都不是可以不劳而获的。

2. 去做好一件很值得做的小事，就比发一笔大财好多了。

### 习题 68

1. 他不但不后悔他的过错，反而感到得意。

2. 诚然，贫穷决非不幸，由于孜孜不息的自助，贫穷也许可能变成一种幸福的。

### 习题 69

1. 他那时为处理桌上堆积如山的工作非常忙碌。

2. 他忙于保守党候补的竞选。

### 习题 75

1. 我们不应太快来责难说一切的妥协都是败坏的道德。

2. 到家一看，我们发觉她只找了我们一会儿就放弃不再找，而独自回家了。

## 习题 71

1. 但裘蒂并不要，也不想忘记约翰。想到要跟另外一个人结婚，就和接受一个突然向她推挤过来的异教的新神一样是决不可能的。
2. 陶乐斯不能说美，她的鼻子太高，身体矮胖；所以贾斯丁夫人除了指望她嫁给一个富裕而有适当职业的青年以外，更无奢望了。
3. 约翰比她要大八岁，多年来他很少把她放在心上，虽则他认为当然他们毕竟是要结婚的；订婚的证书当他还是一个小孩子，裘蒂还在襁褓的时候就签定了。

## 习题 72

1. 因为缺乏细心使得放荡的人为之身败名裂，好人亦复如此。
2. 写作的技巧和其他艺术的技巧是同样困难的，不过因为谁都能读懂或写出一封信，使人想到任何人也能够好好地写出一本书来。

## 习题 73

1. 毁灭人的与其说是他们所犯的过错，毋宁说是他们在犯过后的行为举止，即持身之道。
2. 那警察左右双方都没有顾盼地从群众中走过去了。
3. 发生影响的与其说是时间，不如说是我们使用时间的方法。

## 习题 74

1. 像我们的小岛一样如此小的范围而能有这样多的变化，是世界上任何地方所没有的。
2. 在电车里吸烟的习惯是最无礼貌的了。
3. 对于爱好文学的学生，最重要的是和批评家多多接近。

## 习题 75

1. 得到别人恩惠的人是无论怎样感谢也不为过的。

2. 高声朗诵与再三易稿的重要性，是无论怎样评价也不为过的。

3. 一本书可以比做邻居；如果是好的，结识越久越好；如果是坏的，分手越早越好。

### 习题 76

1. 正好像我们没有经典的知识就不能了解中国文学一样，所有学习英文的人，都应该懂得一点《圣经》。

2. 我们哪怕是拿起一本普通的书，一份杂志，或一张报纸，都会发现有提到《圣经》的地方，或引用它的字句的。

### 习题 77

1. 有名的政治家没有一个不是勤励的人。

2. 没有一个人家不是至少有一个亲人受伤的。

3. 两个人只要有半个钟头在一起的话，就一定有其中一个要显明地凌驾另外一个的。

4. 在一年当中没有任何一周，在世界上某个地方，不是为英国市场而在收割小麦的。

### 习题 78

1. 有少数的人要等到钱用完了才考虑到钱的事，而大多数的人，对于时间也是这样。

2. 真正的友谊就像健康一样，其价值要到失去之后才知道的。

3. 生物学上主要事实的进化论，直到近代科学产生二百多年以后才建立起来。

### 习题 79

1. 任何强大的东西，都不免有受到弱小侵害的危险。

2. 战争在物质上的破坏，无论怎样的大，到现在也可以修复了，只要无延误地恢复了和平。

## 习题 85

1. 法律的目的不是要废止或抑制自由，而是要保护和扩大自由。
2. 他们感到无聊的主要原因，是精神的单调，而不是环境的单调。

## 习题 81

1. 他没有理由要瞧不起自己，虽则他的服装不够富丽时髦。
2. 一个青年偶因身体有欠强壮，并不一定就是说他不适于过海上生活。

## 习题 82

1. 他的好处不是因为有任何美德，而是因为他太懦弱不敢作恶。
2. 你的奖金不及别人的多，不是因为你做事欠缺效率，而是因为你缺勤太久。

## 习题 83

1. 我们所夸耀的，不是因为我们有更多的想法，而是因为我们的想法比较更为健全。
2. 我们之所以想要进入上流社会，并不是因为我们想要占有它，只是因为想要让人看见我们置身其间而已，我们对于上流的想法，原来也只在它的发放异彩一点上。
3. 如果我偶然注意到一个别的孩子比我知道得少，我就会推断那并不是因为我知道的多，而是因为某种理由他不知道罢了。

## 习题 84

1. 伟大的真理都是明白的真理。但不见得所有明白的真理都是伟大的真理。
2. 礼拜天禁止游玩，我觉得这不失为一个勉强可以忍受的消磨时间的方法。

## 习题 85

1. 人的贫富不在他的财产而在他的品德。重视名誉过于黄金的人就是富人。

2. 这个世界上最不幸是由于羡慕别人，想要获得别人的财富，而失去由享受自己现有财富的乐趣所产生的幸福而引起的。

## 习题 86

1. 在长期干旱中未死去的作物，却在接踵而来的洪水中淹没了。

2. 我要讲给你们听，我在那种环境中怎样获得了大家认为我在这方面所有的一点点能力。

3. 最可悲痛的光景之一，就是为着大学课程而牺牲了仅有的健康和身体的一个青年的光景。

## 习题 87

1. 不到一分钟风暴就向我们袭来了’ ’ 不到两分钟天完全黑了，因为这个以及迎面而来的水沫飞溅，突然变得黑暗不堪，我们同在一个渔船上都彼此看不见人了。

2. 一方面用威胁，一方面用恳求，他终于达到了他的目的。

3. 既要看护伤病的人，又要缝制沙包，有时一天缝好四打之多，她的时间便完全占去了。

## 习题 88

1. 还有，勤勉有着不但是可使身体休息，而且更重要的，是有可使心灵平安的倾向。

2. 这样那个前途有望的青年，不但是违背了对他自己和对别人一切的诺言，而且最糟糕的是又伤透了他老父的心。

## 习题 89

1. 弗洛依德对于心理学的关系，正像牛顿对于力学，达尔文对于生物学的关系一样。

2. 他为着安抚那狗下巴下面的神经，弯曲了他的一只膝头。这种鼓励对于那狗，就像一支好的雪茄对于男人一样。

### 习题 95

1. 谁愿雇用一个没有自尊心的人？
2. 能够得到这样一头牛，我什么都愿给。
3. 去年的雪而今安在？

### 习题 91

1. 走过一条大路时，不意遇到了你最初给我介绍了的我们那位表兄。
2. 今天他一大早起身，预备做点什么呢？突然想到要去洗楼梯。

### 习题 92

1. 我们也说不定会要和这个有趣的家庭愉快地结交的。
2. 他大概已尽了全力。

### 习题 93

1. 如果他的能力可与他的脾气相埒，他就成为一个很好的国王了。
2. 许多成功的人如果当初他们能自由选择职业的话，他们也许会选择和现在使之赢得极好的地位的这种职业完全不同的另外一种职业。

### 习题 94

1. 鸟是人类的好朋友。如果没有鸟，这个世界就会被昆虫所占领了。



2. 如果没有甘地的话，印度的自由就要来得更迟，而且形式也要两样了。

3. 有愉快家庭的人们，如果不是天雨的话，他们决不会想到他们所有的室内的乐趣。

4. 如果不是他来救援，我一定早已死去了。

### 习题 95

1. 一个人尽可能及早地坦白承认他的无知，他便要终将由此获益不浅。

2. 把莎翁所有的自然描写部分，以及偶然触及的田园的生活和外观，完全去掉的话，将是一个何等大的损失。

3. 不要太接近他，否则他就会找你的岔子的。

### 习题 96

1. 从那路上一转弯进去，我们便到了一个仙境，只消离开那里一百码的地方，就没有一个人会想到有那样一个仙境存在的。

2. 子弹射入我的左肩’ ’ 只要再下去一点，我就早已进了天国。

### 习题 97

1. 不管怎样死法，我都要死得像勇士之子一样。

2. 想要立身处世的青年，不管遭遇什么困难，都要抱定决心，非达到成功不止。

3. 不管你怎么说，你之有今日，完全是你父亲之赐。

### 习题 98

1. 不管那些青年人是体重一百零五磅，还是二百零五磅，他都把他们看作轻乙级（指体重在一百二十六磅与一百一十八磅之间的拳击家）的人而教他们拳术。

2. 不管你怎样富有经验，怎样能干，你也决不能完全克服写作技巧上的困难，等到你学会了写作时，很可能你已经没有东西可写了。

### 习题 99

1. 无论选择哪条路，都走不到我的目的地。
2. 无论她怎样去想，她绝对想不起来他所说的一个字。

### 习题 155

1. 虽则在划船和帆行上，法国人并不弱于英国人，但他们对这些运动的趣味就很有限了。

2. 如果世上果真有什么使青年人比别的更要感激的事物，那就是在非常恶劣的环境下，来开始谋生时所必要的贫穷。

### 习题 151

1. 无论是怎样普通的动植物，都有研究的价值，如果理智地观察的话，也会提供一个很有趣的故事。

2. 不问是什么职业，如果要想成功的话，就必须以献身的精神去干。

### 习题 152

1. 他们要是冷淡的话，就会招致跟他们所想望的完全相反的结果也未可知，因为等到危险来临的时候，国内的事情就真个要完全被压倒了。

2. 一度你结了婚，你除了规规矩矩以外，你什么自由也没有了，甚至连自杀都不允许的。

### 习题 153

1. 如果太阳消灭了的话，全世界就要很快地为坚冰所封，可怕得令一切死尽灭绝。

2. 如果我们觉得吉拉德夫人的想法是对的，那么，我亲爱的法官，我们就得停止你对他们的裁判，我也得停止我对他们的分析，而去追随吉拉德夫人才对。

#### 习题 154

1. 如果是一个漂亮姑娘的话，他就会更加注意了。

2. 若是没有历史的话，作为国民或是作为个人，我们就无法了解我们在这世界上的存在了。

3. 他若拒绝前往就不对了。

4. 听他说话，我们就会把他当作一个傻子。

5. 同样的事情如果是发生在战时，就会要造成很大的灾难。

6. 如果他是生在太平盛世，他就早在文学界建立声望了。

#### 习题 155

1. 一般都是懒惰的人抱怨他们没有时间去做想做的事。

2. 从庄严到滑稽只有一步之差。

#### 习题 156

1. 依照大自然的法则，溪流是要朝下面流去的，任何强而有力的人，也不可能加以阻止。

2. 工艺是必须有的技术，无论怎样未开化的野蛮民族，也不得不学习手艺，无论怎样文明的天才人物也不能放弃它。

#### 习题 157

1. 躺在草上，他一直遥望天空。天色青青，他望得越久，天就显得越高。

2. 我们一生的大部分都为空想所占据，我们越富想象力，这种空想也越加多彩多姿，越为生动。

### 习题 158

1. 过度的耽溺，读书也要变成一种恶习的’ ’ 因为不被一般人所确认，所以是一种更危险的恶习。

2. 我想我至今所发现的最有用的一件事，就是多么容易说一声/我不知道”。我从来没有注意过这居然使得别人因此而瞧不起我。

### 习题 159

1. 他决不是一个看到自己的权力被人蔑视而一声不响的人。

2. 哈斯丁好像是决不需要有何借口的。

### 习题 115

1. 我觉得任何人不从华勒的辞典多多学习，是不能写出很好的文章来的。

2. 许多食物因价钱不太便宜，穷人无法买来吃。

3. 愿我们的生活能够垂范后昆。

### 习题 111

1. 为着使他避免危险，我警告过他了。

2. 只要社会认为你是大丈夫的话，不管你怎样做，它也就不会对你怎样吹求了。

3. 他只要能把钱索回，犯罪者是谁，他都漠不关心。

### 习题 112

1. 那是非常凶猛而狂暴的’ ’ 使土人们畏之过于狮子。

2. 但是人的怕死是当然的。在人的一生中，随时都不可避免地要想到死那回事，也是当然的。

### 习题 113

1. 我父亲去了巴黎，成为英国驻法大使馆中的律师，我真不明白他为什么要去，除非是为着追求未知的事物那也使他的儿子的我，将心身消耗殆尽的那种不安的情绪所吸引。

2. 书籍并没有怎样地使他着魔。每当他打开一本书时，他一定会遇到什么东西，要控制他的思想，刺激他的想象，使他沉迷于幻想之中的，于是那天他就不再阅读了。

#### 习题 114

1. 史买克在与其说是活着不如说是死了的状态中，被抬进去，锁在地窖中了。

2. 毕竟他并没有传染到那种热病；他只是吓坏了，并未怎样受到伤害。（意为受惊较受伤更甚，等于说 **He was frightened rather than hurt.**）

3. 我注意到每当有人打电话找你，听说你不在家时，他就要留下口信，说你一回家，就要你立刻打电话给他，因为有要紧的事情，其实事情常是对他要紧，而不是对你要紧。

#### 习题 115

1. 许许多多的父母死去，留下来的孤儿，多得使孤儿院都照顾不了。

2. 我们大家都抱怨时间的短少，可是却又有许多时间我们不晓得要怎样处理才好。

#### 习题 116

1. 他岂特是微笑，简直是大笑了。

2. 他对于那结果满意之至。

#### 习题 117

1. 一个没有那船长一般钝感的人，即令听到尼尔逊的话而感到迷惑，也许是会被宽恕的。

2. 学问在太多的场合只是普通常识的陪衬物，真知灼见的代用品。书籍被当作观看大自然的眼镜时，常加以利用的时候较少，反而被当作从视力微弱及气质懒惰的人们，遮断大自然那种强烈的光线和不断变化的光景的目障，加以利用的时候较多。

### 习题 118

1. 谁也不想冬天去游白峰，更没有人愿意在那种季节中去住在那里。

2. 如果崇拜一颗星也有什么意义的话，那么，崇拜英雄的意义就大得多了。

### 习题 119

1. 我问她要不要叫一部计程车。她回答说：/不要，我宁肯走路，天气太好了。”

2. 与其劝你把爱给与那个男人，我宁肯在冬天把那小金丝雀放到公园里去。

### 习题 125

1. 小偷一看到那个，马上跳起来逃走了。

2. 他刚动身天就变得阴暗了，随即又下起雨来了。

3. 门开处狗就冲向箱子那地方去了。

4. 一个人一旦开始爱他的工作，便是他进步的开端。

### 习题 121

1. 他心情一点也不沉着地在人群中来去地走着。

2. 我相信科学不过是有训练和有组织的常识罢了。

3. 超过一定程度的体力劳动，是痛苦得可怕的，而体力劳动经常是使人生几乎不能忍受地在过度地进行着。

### 习题 122

1. 在这个场合名声不如实际。（名不副实）
2. 睡眠是不可能的。因为即令他们斗胆留宿，他们也知道睡在地上，差不多一定会死的。
3. 把一种新的文明加在一种旧的文化之上，自然是一种艰巨的事业，而日本从事于此是可佩服的。要实现这个成就而不损失任何一种文明的优点，那简直是奇迹。

### 习题 123

1. 他在那里听到很多的人声，比平常更为吵闹。
2. 如果我所经历的世路是一条达到成功的坦途，我也就无异议；如果是一条艰难的路，无论怎样险阻，我都要使它化为平易而达到我的目的。
3. 他无论怎样聪明，都不免有错。（智者千虑必有一失。）

### 习题 124

1. 那汽车跑得很快。
2. 我希望你的眼睛永远是那样炯炯有光，因为那有男子气概。

### 习题 125

1. 使他大惊和悲伤的，是他看见他那亲爱的老母病重在床，面色苍白，几乎没有知觉了。
2. 写作的通病之一，是短简的字一样行的时候，偏要用长的多音节的字。即使是最伟大的作家，也常犯这毛病，使之蒙羞。

### 习题 126

1. 看踢足球而感到高兴的人，单这一点就比不看的人高出一筹。
2. 自有历史以来，人们常常对大自然的现象具有一些知识；像埃及人和中国人很久以前就有高度的文化，学得了很多的东西，西方人至今还不知道的他们大概早知道了。

3. 就那些对音乐没有欣赏能力的人们来说，要他们学习音乐，简直是浪费时间与金钱。

4. 正如历史要能在现代的舞台上投以一线光明才有用处一样，过去的文学也只有当它对今日有意义的时候才有价值。

### 习题 127

1. 只有他们有权改变这个，而且只能用一种特殊的方法。

2. 德国学者虽具有饮食和怠惰的恶习，却能长时间从事研究工作，而且直到高龄不衰，我尽力想要找出一个理由来，可是徒劳无功。

### 习题 128

1. 几乎没有人要怀疑科学使现代对一般教育的要求加速了，同时使得教育本身更有效果。

2. 在高贵的社交界中做惯了当主人的角色，他接触到的所有的人都为他所吸引而受其支配；他待人接物的态度，既有魅力，而又威严；而他那种异常的冷静，在这个半疯狂的社会中，给了他另外一种特征。

### 习题 129

1. 他们做的有些事情，是因为他们是人，有些事情是因为他们是被误导的人，由错误而不辨是非的人。

2. 这个方案和说明我们感情的起源的普通方法有所不同，因为它把我们感情中的个人的乃至自私的东西，看做时间与习惯的产物，在这一点上是有不同的。

### 习题 135

1. 诚然古代陆路旅行是困难的，既无聊而又不舒服，不过却比较安全。



2. 生在贵族之家的人们，诚然有许多利益，不过为那些利益所付出的代价也很高。

### 习题 131

1. 他没有被培养成为军人，也没有想做军人的倾向。
2. 新年立下的决心，就决心而论当然是很好的，单是明白写在纸上，如果不是铭刻在心，付诸实行的话也是没有用的。
3. 机智的人易于想象作为一个机智的人是令人愉快的。

### 习题 132

1. 藏书万卷是一回事，能够贤明地加以利用又是另外一回事。
2. 在人前是一套，在他背后又是一套，这种作法再危险也没有了。

### 习题 133

1. 如果你想要有一个朋友，礼查<sup>1</sup>史狄尔就正好做你的朋友。
2. 杀死那怪物的人就是我呀。
3. 我认出那个剧界明星，原来是我的一个老朋友。

### 习题 134

1. 他走了很远才想起那本书来。
2. 他们没有走到好远，就看到了一条大熊愤怒地朝向他们而来。  
(make toward 朝向)

## 第三编 疑难句法及文章译例

### 壹 英文类似句病异

1. (a) 我在街上遇到一个年轻的男人。

(b) 我在街上遇到一个年轻的女人。

注 (b) 句中说的 **a young person**, 普通的意思多指年轻的女性而言, 如 **There's a young person to see you.** (有一个年轻的女人要会你。)

2. (a) 他来到这城里了。

(b) 他回到这城里了。

注 (a) 句中的“他”对这城是一个陌生人, 而 (b) 句中的“他”, 原是这城里的人, 或是对这城非常熟悉的人。

3. (a) 等我们吃饭的时候, 我才来听取你的意见吧。

(b) 现在我们一面吃饭, 我一面就来听取你的意见吧。

注 (a) 句是在开始吃饭以前说的。

4. (a) 他们要来。

(b) 他们就要来了。

注 (b) 是表示时间的迫切。

5. (a) 他似乎颇为迟钝。

(b) 他也许像是有一点儿迟钝的样子。

注 (b) 句说得婉曲多了。

6. (a) 他们一直住在星洲。

(b) 他们眼下住在星洲。

注 (a) 表示经常的居住, (b) 则有暂时的感觉, 或根本是暂时性的, 如我们从外地到星洲观光, 住在旅馆中, 则说 **I am living in the hotel.** 又 **live** 一个动词有“居住”和“生活”二义, 如云 **Are your parents living?** (你父母都健在吗?) 便是“生活”的意思, 这句话一定要用现在分词, 不可说成 **Do your parents live?**

7. (a) 他推开了门。

(b) 他试图把门推开。

注 英文动词有他动与自动之分，同一动词由他动变成自动时，意义常有改变，多是变得空虚而不实在了。如他动词说 **A cat catches mice.**（猫抓老鼠。）自动词说 **A drowning man will catch at a straw.**（将溺的人哪怕是一根草也要去抓住求救。）

8. (a) 在一个晴天他出门了。

(b) 有一天他出门了。

注 (b) 句中的 **fine** 是一个虚字，没有什么意思的。说 **one fine day** 或 **one fine morning** 等句，多半用作一种意外事件或毋妄之灾时的前奏，可能由法文 **un beau jour** 及 **un beau matin** (= **inopinément** 即英文说的 **unexpectedly** 意外地) 直接译成英文的。

9. (a) 她彻夜不睡坐待她丈夫回家。

(b) 她彻夜不睡来看护她的丈夫。

注 (a) 句的 **sit up for**，意为“不睡来等待”，(b) 句的 **sit up with**，意为“不睡来看护”。

10. (a) 我们确知人是要死的。

(b) 我们确知那人死了。

注 (a) 句中的 **that** 是连词，**man** 是指人类，而 (b) 句中的 **that** 是形容词。

11. (a) 约翰不安的原因是考试落第。

(b) 约翰的不安考试落第也是原因之一。

注 (a) 意为 **His failure was the specific case.** (b) 意为 **His failure was one of the causes' there are others. His poor health might be another.**

12. (a) 首相在电视上出现。

(b) 首相的演词由电视加以广播。

注 参考：**The symphony was broadcast on (or over) the radio.**（交响乐由无线电广播。）注意：在 **television** 前不要冠词。

13. (a) 这是一个可信的故事。

(b) 这是一回可称赞的成就。

注 credible = believable. creditable = praiseworthy.

14. (a) 他不是一个教师。

(b) 他不是一个好教师。

注 not a 比 no 的意义要重些, (a) 句意为“他不是以教书为业的, 也许是商人, 也许是公务员, 总之是做别的事情的人。”(b) 句意为“纵然他现在以授徒为业, 可是他学问不好, 教授无方, 或是品行欠佳, 不配做人师表。”类例如 He is not a businessman. (= a statement of fact: the man's profession is not business) . He is no businessman. (= an ironical statement. The man may or may not be a businessman. Whether he is or not, he certainly is unskillful in business matters) 。同样 He is not a gentleman. (= He is a workman 他是工人或是下等人) 。He is no gentleman. (= He has bad manners. 他的举止粗鄙不像上等人) 。He is not a lawyer. (= that is, not his profession. 他的职业不是律师) 。He is no lawyer. (= not an efficient lawyer. 他不是能干的律师) 。

15. (a) 你想向我要求什么?

(b) 你想和我接洽什么?

注 (a) want something from somebody, 欲从某人得到某物。(b) want something with somebody, 欲向某人接洽某事。

16. (a) 他的书至多只有十本。

(b) 他的书不少于十本。

注 no less than = as many as (至多, 刚够) 。not less than = as many more (不少或多过) 。同样的还有 no better than = as bad as, 例如 He is no better than a beggar. (他和乞丐一样) , not better than = perhaps worse than, 例如 He is not better than a beggar. (他不比乞丐好, 也许比之更坏) 。

17. (a) 家里有电报来给我了。

(b) 家里有电报来要我回去。

注 如果换成 **active voice**, 则 (a) 便成 **wire to me** (打电报给我), 而 (b) 便成 **wire for me** (电促我归)。for = to get.

18. (a) 这是远胜过林语堂的一种幽默。

(b) 这是及不上林语堂的一种幽默。

19. (a) 他自信一定成功。

(b) 我想他一定成功。

20. (a) 我们中间没有几个人知道那真相的。

(b) 我们中间只有几个人知道那真相的。

(c) 我们中间知道那真相的人不少。

注 **few** 意为“差不多没有”, 无的成分多于有的成分。**a few** 意为“只有二三人”, 有的成分多于无的成分。**not a few** 意为“不少”, 即有很多。以上均系表数的, 如表量则用 **little, a little, not a little**. 义与上同。

21. (a) 反之, 他什么也没有说。

(b) 反对的话他一句也没有说。

注 **on the contrary** 意为“反之”, 副词片语。**to the contrary** 意为“与之相反的”, 形容词片语。

22. (a) 可惜你没有去。

(b) 幸亏你没有去。

注 **It is a pity = I regret**. 遗憾。**It is a mercy = I rejoice**. 幸喜。

23. (a) 事竟如此使我觉得惊愕。

(b) 我亟欲知道事情何以会这样。

注 **wonder that = be amazed at**, 觉得惊愕, 感到骇异。**wonder + 疑问词 = be curious about; be anxious to learn**, 亟想知道。

24. (a) 那也许可以做。

(b) 那不一定不能做。

注 (a) 含有 **It is possible**, (b) 含有 **It is not impossible** 的意味。**might** 是假想。

25. (a) 我希望我有他那样富有。

(b) 我希望成为他那样的富人。

注 (a) 在 **wish** 后接假设语气，这是对现在的事实相反的假设，无法办到的事。(b) 表示未来的愿望，并不一定是做不到的事。

26. (a) 让我们修理家园。

(b) 让我们回家去吧。

注 **repair** 作他动词用时，意为“修理”，作自动词用时，意为“往(某处)”，“/赴” = **go**。

27. (a) 他写了一封信给我。

(b) 他替我写了一封信。

注 **for** = **in place of**, 代为。

28. (a) 他投骨于犬。

(b) 他投犬以骨。

注 (a) 是好意，以骨头给狗吃。(b) 是敌意，以骨头来打狗。

29. (a) 灯放在桌子上面。

(b) 灯悬在桌子上空。

30. (a) 他拥有大宗财产。

(b) 他抱有危险思想。

注 **is possessed of** = **has**, 拥有。**is possessed with** = **is controlled by**. 受迷住，为其所乘。

31. (a) 我想他不会有罪。

(b) 我觉得他好像有罪。

注 **doubt if**, 意为“难信”, “好像没有”。**suspect that**, 意为“可疑”, “好像有”。**suspect = imagine to be**.

32. (a) 他老是来干涉我的事。

(b) 他老是来妨碍我的事。

注 **interfere in**, 干涉。**interfere with**, 妨害。

33. (a) 他以学者之名混过去了。

(b) 人皆视彼为学者。

注 **pass by = be currently known by a name of**, 以“ ”之名混过。**pass for = be accepted as; be thought of**, 被认为, 被视为。他例如 **His name is Wang but he passes by the name of Li**. (人皆知其姓李, 其实他是姓王。) **Many a coward passed for a hero**. (懦夫而充作勇士者比比皆是。)

34. (a) 空气由氧和氮组成。

(b) 幸福存于满足之中。

(c) 他的言行一致。

注 **consist of = be composed of** 由“ ”而组成。**consist in = lie in = is in**, 在, 存于“ ”之中。**consist with = be in accordance with**, 与“ ”一致。

35. (a) 他打算说什么?

(b) 他预定要说的是什么?

注 **be about to = be going to**, 为较文言的说法。**be to**, 表示预定。

36. (a) 我看见那里有很多的人。

(b) 我看见那里有很多大人物。

注 **a great many** 后接复数名词。**many a great** 后接单数名词。

37. (a) 我没有听见她歌唱过。

(b) 她作的歌我没有听见人唱过。

注 (a) 句中的 **her** 为宾语, **sing** 为原形不定词所构成的宾格补语。(b) 句中的 **her** 为所有格, **song** 为名词, **her** 的宾语。

38. (a) 我们租的船以时间计算。

(b) 我们只租了一小时的船。

39. (a) 谁的兄弟带你去游公园的?

(b) 你带谁的兄弟去游公园的?

注 (a) 句的主语为 **brothers**, (b) 句的主语为 **you**.

40. (a) 那些宝石有许多被盗。

(b) 那些宝石的大部分被盗。

41. (a) 他被视为天才。

(b) 他被崇为天才。

注 **look upon as = regard as**, 视为。**look up to as = respect as**, 作为” ” 而崇拜。

42. (a) 我必得注意那件事。

(b) 我必得调查那件事。

注 **look to = attend to**, 注意, 照顾。**look into = investigate**, 调查。

43. (a) 我并不想出洋。

(b) 我不反对出洋。

注 **/not care + to-Infinitive**” = **not like + to-Infinitive**, 不想做。**/not mind + Gerund**” = **have no objection to + Gerund**, 不反对。

44. (a) 明天会有一些客人来。

(b) 明天我要请一些客人来。



注 (a) 是无意志的, (b) 是有意志的。

45. (a) 那岛周围五英里。

(b) 那岛直径五英里。

注 around = in circumference, 周围。across = in diameter, 直径。

46. (a) 我学过五年的英文。

(b) 我从五年前起开始学英文。

注 (a) 意为到现在为止我一共学了五年。(b) 意为从五年前开始学起, 至今未停, 一直在学。

47. (a) 他到过纽约。

(b) 他去了纽约。

注 (a) have been = have gone somewhere and come back 或 have come and gone away again, 例如 I have been to (= visited) Paris three times. (我到过巴黎三次。)(b) = he is now in New York or on the way there. 他已去了或正在去的途中。

48. (a) 他们在花园里玩耍。

(b) 他们说这话只是戏言。

注 at play, 游戏, 嬉戏。in play, 玩笑, 戏谑。

49. (a) 他至急地做了那个。

(b) 他慌忙地做了那个。

注 in haste, 迅速, 赶忙, 急遽。in a hurry, 匆匆, 仓促, 慌忙。英文的 in a hurry 另外还有两种惯用的说法 (collq.):

(1) = easily (容易地), 例如:

You won't find a better specimen than that in a hurry. (你一下子不容易找到更好的标本。)

(2) = willingly (愿意地), 例如:

I shan't ask him to dinner again in a hurry. (我不会愿意再请他吃饭的。)

50. (a) 我没有什么可写的。

(b) 我没有笔写。

(c) 我没有纸写。

注 (a) **write** 为他动词, **nothing** 为其宾语。(b) (c) **write** 为自动词, **nothing** 仍为宾语。

51. (a) 没有什么可看的。

(b) 看不见什么。

注 (a) 意为 **nothing worth seeing**. (b) 意为 **nothing visible**.

52. (a) 这样的人很难得寻获。

(b) 这样的人差不多不能够找到。

53. (a) 我悬念其结果。

(b) 我亟欲知其结果。

注 **anxious about** /“悬念”, /“忧虑”。**anxious + Infinitive**, 意为“切望”, /“渴望”。

54. (a) 我未尝注意到他。

(b) 我并未把他放在眼下。

注 (a) 是无意的, (b) 是有意的。

55. (a) 她在街上遇见了一个朋友。

(b) 她在街上遇见一桩事故。

注 **meet with = come across; experience**, 是一个自动词, 所以附有介词, 普通对遇见事物而言, 即遭遇, 如云 **meet with fortune**. (**success, failure, obstruction, kindness, rebuff, et c.**)。但对人则通常是用他动词, 所以不要附加介词, 即可直接接宾

语，除非意外地遇见什么人时才用自动词，如 **Such a man is rarely to be met with.**（这样的人真是少见。）

56. (a) 此中有无困难呢？

(b) 此中有点困难吧？

注 (a) 是在完全不知有无困难时间的。(b) 是在认为有点困难时间的。

57. (a) 我和他一样很钦佩她。

(b) 我很钦佩她，也很钦佩他。

58. (a) 我想在这个月底付款。

(b) 我想经过一个月再付款。

59. (a) 我到达时还未开会。（正要开会）

(b) 我到达时正开会。（刚刚开会）

注 **in time**，意为“及时”，时间比规定的略早，**on time**，意为“准时”，再迟则来不及了。如火车准时开行，则说 **The train leaves exactly on time.** 还有 **in time** 除 **not late; early enough** 的含义外，又有 **sooner or later; after the passing of an indefinite period of time**，例如 **You will learn how to do it in time.**（你慢慢就会知道做的。）

60. (a) 我想这不会是真的。

(b) 我看这恐怕不会是真的。

各 常易译错的文句

？3 中译英

1. What way shall I take to get to the park?

注 **How shall I go** 是问怎样去法，如坐计程汽车去，坐公共汽车去，或坐三轮车去之类。问路应说 **What way** 才得。

2. The lecture begins at two o'clock on Friday.

The lecture starts at two o'clock on Friday.

3. The scenery of China is very fine.

注 scenery 是集合名词，不可用复数。

4. They have no houses to live in.

5. He likes Hemingway better than Faulkner.

6. This watch wants repairing.

7. The family goes to church at 9 o'clock.

注 把全家的人看做一个整体，即一家人，应该接用单数动词。  
“去做礼拜”，英文应说 go to church，如果加了冠词说成 go to the church，便不是去做礼拜，而只是去参观礼拜堂的建筑。同样“上学读书”是 go to school，如说 go to the school，便是指校舍而言，与读书无关。

8. I was quite well that year, but ill the year before.

9. It is impossible to raise the sunken ship.

注 sunk 只能作叙述用法，要 sunken 才可作限定用法。

10. Come in the morning instead of in the evening.

11. His daughter married a rich man.

His daughter was married to a rich man.

注 中国语的“嫁”或“娶”，英文都是 marry。此外“主婚”也是 marry，例如 She is married to a foreigner.（她嫁给一个外国人。）He married a wife last year.（他在去年娶了妻。）He has been married two years.（他结婚两年了。）He wished to marry his daughter to a peer.（他希望把女儿嫁一个贵族。）The clergyman married Mary Jones to John Smith.（牧师主持玛利和约翰的婚礼。）

12. Why are you at home on such a fine day?

Why are you at home in such fine weather?

13. Make haste, or you will be behind time.

注 命令句接顺意的说法用 and, 接逆意的说法用 or.

14. The night is falling and the road is coming to an end.

注 我们说的“日”英文应译作“夜”。中文的“日暮”除译作 The night is falling 外, 又可译成 the night is closing in, 或 night is coming [on], 或 it is getting dark。中文的“途穷”, 除如上照字面译出的以外, 又可译为 no road ahead, 或意译为 straitened, in poor circumstances 等。

15. I have been ill for a week.

I have been ill since last Monday.

注 ago 只能用于有过去动词的句中, 它不能与现在完成时态同用。

16. Do you remember all the interesting stories you read when you were a boy?

注 副词子句应置于它所修饰的动词附近。这句中的副词子句 when you were a boy, 是修饰动词 read 的, 所以应紧接在 read 之后。

17. Looking out of our windshield, we could see the pagoda in the distance.

18. The ears of a hare are longer than those of a cat.

19. Have you been to America?

注 have gone 不能用于第一人称和第二人称, 只能用于第三人称, 意为“去了”。

20. He has been here once or twice.

21. I saw him yesterday.

注 现在完成时态不能与表过去的字连用。

22. I found the food very good, and enjoyed eating it.

23. I think of going home very soon.

I think I will go home very soon.

24. A man who is unable to write a letter, is incapable of holding an office of such importance.

25. He seems to have an aversion to speaking the truth.

26. The Chinese are a hard-working and industrious people.

27. May I use your telephone?

28. He was elected a councilman.

注 总统, 市长, 主席等独一无二的职位, 不用冠词, 其他如议员等, 同样的职位有许多名存在, 故必须加不定冠词, 以示其中之一。

29. Mr. Wong returned to Singapore.

Mr. Wong went back to Singapore.

30. This report must be presented by the 6th of next month.

31. Please remind me to give it back.

Please remind me to return it.

32. I ordered ten books from New York.

33. I'm sure I can make myself understood in English.

34. I'm sure I can make you understand what I mean.

35. The motor car ran in the direction of the park.

The motor car ran towards the park.

36. I place no reliance upon his honesty.

I have no confidence in his honesty.

37. He entrusted a large sum of money to me.

He entrusted me with a large sum of money.

注 /entrust+物+to+人”或/entrust+人+with+物”。

38. Children are always in some mischief or other.

Children are always in one mischief or another.

39. I sympathize deeply with him in his sorrow.

注 /sympathize+with+人+in+事”。

40. He apologized to me for his mistake.

注 /apologize+to+人+for+事”。

41. Somebody said so, but I forgot who it was.

42. He has no other desire than to make a fortune.

He has no desire but to make a fortune.

43. Her dress does not conform with the fashion.

注 conform to (custom), 从(俗), 依照(习惯), 是有意志的, 至于 conform with (custom), (与习惯)相合, 是无意志的。例如 Conform to the custom of the land, 入国从俗。Your conduct does not conform with the custom. 你的行为不合习惯。

44. As you know, life is often compared to a voyage.

注 同种类的东西相比用 compare with, 不同种类的东西相比, 则要用 compare to, 例句中 life 与 voyage 完全不同种类, 故用 compare to 方合, 再看下例 Famous as she is, she cannot be compared with him as a writer of tragedies. (她虽有名, 但作为一个悲剧作者是不能和他相比的。)

45. Her expenditures do not correspond to her income.

注 correspond to (something), 相当, 相称, 相配。correspond with (each other), 一致, 符合。例如 The punishment

should correspond to the offence. (刑罚应与犯罪相当。) This house exactly corresponds with my needs. (这房子正符合我的需要。) 又 correspond with, 可作通信解, 如 We have corresponded with each other for several years. (我们通信有好几年了。)

46. I condoled with him on his father's death.

注 /condole+with+人+on+事”。

47. How many students came?

注 问句中有了疑问词时, 就不要再加 do 了。

48. These are the people who, they say, are fools.

These are the people whom they call fools.

49. Taiwan is much larger than Singapore.

注 very 只能用于形容词的原级, 如系比较级则要用 much, far, by far the 等字样。

50. It takes me five days to return home by steamer.

51. He entered at the back door.

He came in at the back door.

注 /出去”也要说 go out at the door.

52. The old man had his son die.

注 /have+物+过去分词”, 如 have the box removed. 又/have+人+原形不定词”, 如 have the servant remove the box.

53. This sewing machine is of Chinese make.

注 说何国制造而用 make 时, 必须带有 of 的字样, 如 of Chinese (English, American, Japanese) make, 但如用 made 时则说 Chinese made 或 made in China, 不要再加 of, 如说 manufacture 也是要有 of 的, 如 of Chinese manufacture (中国制造)。

54. I never saw so tall a man before.



I never saw such a tall man before.

注 用 so 或 such 时冠词的位置不同，应加注意。

55. He has the good sense to quit when he found the thing too difficult to do.

注 用 ability 也是一样，如 He has the ability to speak English clearly.

56. Marco Polo was born in 1254 into a Venetian merchant family.

注 说生于什么人家，即俗称投生于某家，故英文要用 into，不用 at。他例如 No man is born into this world whose work is not born with him. (James Russel Lowell)。如果是指由什么人即父母而生，则要用 of，例如 He was born of Chinese parents (of humble parentage, of poor fisherfolk in Holland 等)。但家庭在这种意义之下即可用 of，例如 He was born of a wealthy (noble, good) family. 又 But in every child born of man lurks some of greatness' waiting for the food. (H. G. Wells) (但是每个孩子都潜伏着有将来伟大的种子只等待加以培养。) 生于什么人家，有时又可译成 to 字，例如 She was born to the purple; diamonds suited her. (她生于贵族之家，所以钻石是适合她的。) 这个 to 是指的对象，如 Two children were born to them. (他们生有两个孩子。) Mark Twain was born to Samuel Langhorne Clemens, in Florida, Mo. November 30, 1835. (马克·吐温以 1835 年 11 月 30 日，于密苏里州佛罗里达市，作为桑米·郎洪·克来门斯的儿子而出生的。)

57. He has taken the vase off the table.

58. The preface to "A Short History of China" is a short history of China.

59. The early education in our country grows very rapidly.

60. It is due to the outstanding professors on the various faculties that the University has won a worldwide fame.

## II 3 英译中

### 1. 我的皮鞋穿破了。

注 这句话的意思是/因为穿得太久的结果，破烂不堪”。(My shoes are badly worn as the result of long wear.) 他例如 He was plainly the worse for drink. (显明地他是喝醉了酒。) I am none the worse for a single failure. (一度失败我并不灰心。)

### 2. 大家听了他说的话都感愤怒。

注 原意为马缰的 **bridle** 一字，虽引申可作/控制”解，如 Try to **bridle your temper**. (设法控制你的脾气。) 但用作自动词时，就作/昂首” (表示愤怒、傲慢或轻视) 解，如 **bridle up**, **bridle with anger**, **bridle at somebody's remarks** 等。例如 She **bridles at the least slight**. (她略为受到一点藐视就要昂首发怒。)

### 3. 学英文要尽力避免讲理论而不务实际。

注 形容词的 **shy** 普通作/羞怯的”解，如 I am shy of doing it. (我怕作此事。) 又可作/畏缩的”解，如 The boatmen were shy of the rapids. (船夫畏惧险滩。) 但此字因在动词 **fight** 后，就有/避开”，/敬远” (**avoid**, **keep aloof from**) 之意。

### 4. 宁肯割断舌不愿塞住口的不止是妇女与法国人而已。

注 作/咬”字解的 **bite**，过去式为 **bit**，过去分词为 **bitten**，但作/装马口铁”，/抑制”，/约束”解的 **bit**。过去和过去分词都是 **bitte d**。这个 **bit = mouth piece (metal bar)**，原是名词，由/马嚼口”引申为/拘束物”，/控制物”之意。再用作动词时，便意为/约束”，/控制”，例如 Tell him to put a **bridle on his tongue**. (告诉他说话要谨慎。) 又可说 **Curb your tongue**. (少说话。) 因为 **bridle** (马勒；缰辔) 实包括全套马头上的配备：马嚼铁 (**metal bit**)，皮带 (**straps**) 及缰 (**reins**)，在马嚼铁外有马衔 (**curb**)，在皮带靠近两眼处又有遮眼革 (**blinkers**)，这一切总称为 **bridle**。参看上面第二例。

### 5. 他刚在一星期前结了婚。

注 句中的 **change** 改为 **alter** 也是一样, **condition** 普通指健康状态, 此处指生活状态。

6. 他接受女方提出的求婚而结婚了。

注 闰年不比常年, 闰年提出的求婚, 当然也是不平常的, 普通总是男方向女方提出求婚, 现反过来由女方提出, 故云。

7. 他把我的忠告当作耳边风。

注 **fall flat** 这个成语有二义: (1) 直挺地跌倒 (**be prostrate**), 如 **The wounded man staggered, and fell flat on the floor.** (伤者蹒跚了几步, 使直挺地倒在地上。)(2) 终于完全失败, 毫无反应, 一点效力也没有, 如 **His best jokes fell flat.** (他最好的笑话也未能使人发笑。) 现将此成语译成中国成语的耳边风 (**preaching to the wind**) 似乎是再恰当也没有了。

8. 在鸡尾酒会上你常可看出大人物和无名小卒来。那些迟到的人就是大人物。

注 作名词用的 **somebody** 是与 **nobody** 对称的, 前者为大人物, 后者为微不足道的人。 **He thinks himself to be somebody.** (他自以为了不得。)  
**In a small village you are somebody, but you become nobody when you come to a big city.** (你在小村庄很了不起, 到大城市就变得微不足道了。)

9. 当选的职员任期至一九七三年年底为止。

注 **sit = occupy a seat**, 就某种职位, 成为议员、委员或职员。注意后面接的介词, **sit in Parliament** (做议员), **sit on a committee** (当委员), **sit for a constituency** (在议会中成为某选区的代表)。

10. 他用钱豪爽。

注 这个 **with** 不作“持有”解, 而作“关于”解。 **free with**, 意为“大方的”, “不吝啬的” (**lavish**)。例如 **He is very free with his advice.** = **He gives plenty of advice.** (他给与很多的忠告。) 如说 **make free with = use another person's things as if they were one's own**, 当作自己的一样随便使用别人的东西。例如 **They entered**

the house and made free with whatever they could lay their hands on. (他们一进屋内, 随意取用所有的东西。)

11. 向法国去定了一架飞机。

注 普通作/从”解的 **from**, 与 **order** 连用时, 就有/向”的意, 不是/从法国来定”, 而是/向法国去定”。

12. 她的丈夫死了至今不过半年。

注 这句英文意为 **It is only six months since she became a widow**. 若译成/只做了六个月的寡妇”, 则不免有很快再嫁之嫌。

13. 你的损失和我的比较起来真算不了什么。

注 **nothing to mine** 中的 **to**, 有比较的意思。

14. 他在除夕出发了。

注 **eve** 和 **evening** 二字虽是同根生, 然其含义则大不相同。**eve** 为节日等的前夜或前日, 如 **Christmas Eve** (耶诞的前夜), **on the eve of victory** (胜利的前夜), 故 **New Year's Eve** 为除夕, 而非元旦 (**New Year's Day**) 的夜晚。

15. 他将表托我保管。

注 /**leave** + 宾语 + 介词 + 人”, 意为/将某物 (事) 托付某人”。**I'll leave the matter to him.** (这事我交给他去处理。)**I left a message with your servant.** (我留言要你的佣人转告你。)

16. 他假装没有生病。

注 **not** 是否定 **to be** 一个不定词的。**He did not pretend to be ill**, 才是/没有假装生病”。

17. 他说: /我以为不然。”

注 这个 **not** 不是修饰 **think** 的, 而是后面接着的否定句所留下的代表, 意为 **I think it is not so**. 如果照误译句的意思, 英文是说 **I do not think so**. 比较: **I am afraid not**. (我恐怕不是那样。)**I am not afraid**. (我不怕。)

18. 到今年耶诞时就是两年了。

注 **come Christmas** 的说法，据《牛津简明辞典》的解释是 **including the time from now to Christmas**（包括从现在到耶诞日的时间）。**come Christmas = if Christmas comes**（如果到了耶诞日的话），是假设的用法（**suppositional use**）。命令句是有这种假设用法的，如 **Give me good fortune (= if good fortune is given me)**，**I will strike him dead.**（**Tennyson**）（时运来时，我就要将他打死。）莎剧 **Romeo and Juliet** 中有句：**Come Lammas-eve at night shall she be fourteen.**（到收获节的前夕，她就有十四岁了。）

19. 百万富翁都具有这种思想。

注 **men of millions** 不可与 **millions of men** 混同。

20. 他迟到了。

注 **behind time = late**，迟到。**behind the times**，时代落伍。

21. 他上楼去了。

注 普通说“上楼”，多半是指“到二楼去”，英文说，**He went up stairs.** 句中的 **upstairs** 为副词，是修饰动词 **went** 的。若分开写成二字的 **up stairs**，则不论二楼也好，四楼也好，无论哪一层楼，只要是走上楼去就是了。

22. 一朝醒来，自己已经成为一个破产的人了。

注 **one fine morning** 中的 **fine** 一字，实无意义，可以不译，其用法与 **one of these fine days**（不久总有一天）相同。**find oneself**，不知不觉间，而自己已变成了。他例如 **She found herself a mother at fifteen.**（她刚十五岁不知不觉之中已做了母亲。）

23. 他的英文毫无遗憾。

注 **nothing to be desired**，不能指望更好。至于婉言某人对于某事不好，还应多多努力，也可用此表现法：**In her English there is still much to be desired.**（她的英文实尚未能副我们的期望。）

24. 注意使一切平善。

注 take care that = see (to it) that, 当心, 注意。他例如 Take care that the quality is satisfactory. (注意要使品质满意。) Take care that you don't get knocked down when you cross the road. (小心过街以免撞倒。)

25. 他一进房就跌倒在地板上。

26. 我们搜查过了他的身上, 但毫无所得。

注 寻找一个人的踪迹, 是 search for a person, 单说 search a person, 意为搜查一个人的身上看有无违禁品之类。to no purpose = with no result. 无结果。

27. 我回家时遇见一个孕妇。

注 with child 怀着孩子, with a child 携着孩子。

28. 他承继了一笔大的财产。

注 succeed in, 成功。succeed to, 承继, 如 Who will succeed to his office when he resigned? (他辞职后谁来继任?)

29. 他抓住了我的手。

注 他例如 He pulled me by the sleeve. (他拉住我的衣袖。) He struck me on the head. (他打了我的头。)

30. 我穿什么出去呢?

注 这个 in 意为 dressed in (穿衣)。他例如 I have nothing to go in. (我没有衣服穿着出去。) 普通说 She is in red. (她穿的红衣。)

31. 他说话无心。

注 mean 除“意义”外, 还有“意谓”, have in mind (心有成竹) 的意思。I mean what I say. 说话作数, 决非口是心非。What do you mean by saying that? (你说那话是什么意思?)

32. 今晚不要喝酒。

注 alcohol 原意为酒精引申为酒, 如 His doctor told him not to touch alcohol. (医生要他不要喝酒。) 由 no 开头的句子有禁止

意。

33. c-a-m-e-l 拼成一个什么字?

注 spell 除作“拼”解外，还有“拼成一字” (make up a word) 的意思。如照误句的意思应说 How do you spell camel?

34. 他对那工作已厌倦了。

注 “疲劳”为 tired with, “厌倦”为 tired of = sick of.

35. 人生常常譬作航海。

注 compare to (for dissimilar things), 是“譬喻”的意思, compare with (for similar things) 是“比较”。Some people have compared books to friends. (有人以书喻友。) Artificial light cannot compare with day light for general use. (在一般的用途上, 人造光是不能与日光比较的。)

36. 宁为鸡先, 勿为牛后。

注 在 than 后省去了不定词的 to.

37. 爱荷华州州长休士, 已经把他自己被州内一致推举出来提名竞选总统的候补资格撤销, 而随后不久就宣布他支持明尼苏达州的参议员麦卡席竞选。

注 favorite son = a candidate favored by the political leaders of his own State, city, etc. for nomination to a high office, especially the presidency. 由其州内的政治领袖们所推举出来的总统候选人。

38. 如果今天举行选举的话, 我们就用不着要感谢上帝了。

注 既然失败, 自然不必感谢上帝了。have a prayer = offer a prayer of thankfulness 或 a prayer of thanks to God.

39. 我宁愿他不在此。

注 句中 room 作“余地”解, company 作“伴侣”解。his room 指“他的余地”或“他的空间”, 即空了他, 也就是说他不在。例句全文意为“与其跟他同席, 宁愿他不在此的好”, 简译成“我宁愿他不在此”。

40. 说女人不会驾车实有疑问的余地。

注 在 open 后无 to 者，如 an open question（尚未解决的问题），但有 to 时，如 open to = not protected 易受” ” 的，招致” ” 的。His conduct is open to grave objections.（他的行为易受严重的反对。）The evidence is open to doubt.（证据有可疑的余地。）

41. 那迷失的孩子很快就认明身份了。

42. 他致意你。

注 remember A to B，意为 A 向 B 致意。

43. 我近来简直没有看见他。

注 nothing of 为副词用法，意为/一点也没有”。

44. 他把他所有的少许东西，也分配给穷人了。

注 with the poor 是接 shared 说的，不是接 had 的。

45. 无钱购买的东西，只好不要。

注 what you cannot afford to buy 是 do without 宾语。

46. 做了的事不能取消。

注 这句话用主动语态说便是 we cannot undo what we do.

47. 她相信他诚实地这样说了。

注 so 是修饰 said 的，不是修饰 honestly.

48. 它们打成碎片了。

注 a dozen 不一定是说十二，在此只是表示多数。

49. 新生之犊不畏虎。

注 意为什么都不懂的人什么都不怕。

50. 这画是模仿吴昌硕画的。

51. 他知道让孩子游荡下去是很不好的。



注 **have a boy idle** (让孩子游荡) 和 **have an idle boy** (有懒惰的孩子) 大不相同, 前者的 **idle** 为 **have** 的补语。

52. 不喜欢做并不是不能做的证明。

注 **it** 的真正的主语, 不是 **that** 以下的文句, 而是 **because** 以下的文句。

53. 那些是我买的新书。

注 **new** 是补语。

54. 他从朋友处借了马来。

注 **of = from**, 用法与 **buy of** 或 **receive of** 中的 **of** 相同。

55. 他一点钟走了十英里。

注 **cover** 与距离连用时, 意为“通过”, “走过”, 如: **These cars cover 200 miles a day.** (这些车一天能走二百英里。)

56. 他随意自斟自酌。

注 **help oneself to**, 自己取用。

57. 我认为激烈的男性的运动是好的。

注 **believe in**, 一般都作“相信”解, 但在此意为“相信有效”, “相信是好的”, “信以为真”。

58. 他没有看完那部影片。

注 **see” ” out**, 看到最后为止。

59. 不幸有八十人死亡。

注 **poor = unfortunate**, 可怜, 不幸。

60. 他没有说一点含有那种意思的话。

注 **to that effect** 中的 **effect = meaning**. 他例如 **He wrote to that effect.** (他写的大意如此。)  
**The letter is to the effect that” ”** (那信的大意为” ”)

？ 3 中译英

(1) (a) One of the best ways to make the world peaceful and happy is for every individual to keep within his own province, refraining from encroaching upon others<sup>1</sup>. If a family follows this way, that family will be free from worry; if a nation follows this way, that nation will be at peace; and if the entire world follows this way, it will find itself in perfect peace.

(b) In order to secure (or bring about) a happy and peaceful world, we must first of all, limit our activity within our own spheres, strictly refraining from trespassing upon others<sup>1</sup>. Suppose that this rule is observed in all families, countries of the world, surely there will be no trouble in them all.

(c) /Just sweep away the snow in front of your own house, and never mind the frost on other people's roof, " as the Chinese proverb says, may be the best way to bring about a happy and peaceful world. So long as we limit our activity within our own spheres, strictly refraining from trespassing upon others<sup>1</sup>, we can surely win peace in the family, in the country as well as in the world.

(2) Learning is one's own business, which cannot rely upon others. It will certainly be of great help, if there are good environment, sufficient books and equipment, as well as instructions and enlightenments from scholarly mentors and beneficial friends. But even if you have got all these favorable conditions, you cannot be sure to succeed in learning, for not a few people who have successful in learning are not armed with all these things. The most important factor consists in one's own effort. To learn is rather a painstaking and persevering business. Many a man is a failure because he cannot bear such indispensable hardships.

(3) /As I want to know more of London, will you please tell me where shall I go first, Parliament or Downing Street? " I once asked the advice of my landlady. The old woman shook her head and replied, /Why should you go to those places? You had better go to Hyde Park first. You will understand from there how our England has got Parliament and Downing Street." Of course, she meant to say it is the spirit of the English people that has made the English politics, in other words, it is not because of Parliament and the Cabinet that England has got its democratic politics, but because of the people with their democratic spirit that there comes to be the English Parliament as well as the English Cabinet. Hyde Park is the very place where democratic spirit is fully demonstrated.

(4) Virtuousness is synonymous with beauty. We feel the beauty of a thing when it has come to realization ideally. By ideal realization we mean that a thing has displayed fully its true nature. Therefore, as a flower is at its best when it has revealed its natural character, a man may be said to have reached the zenith of his beauty when he has made the fullest use of human nature.

(5) Morals cannot be inculcated by means of spoken or written words. Those who have never been treated kindly must end their days without realizing what kindness is. To treat others with kindness, therefore, is to teach them what this virtue is. As the saying goes: Those who teach in word will be criticized, and those who teach in deed will have their followers.

(6) The implement of literature is the language. First we have to know the language, and then we must be armed with the craft of using it. The thing looks easy, as all of us are using the language every day, but it is really difficult, because literature is something that is expressed by ordinary language to produce an extraordinary effect. A man of letters must apprehend the language more precisely and thoroughly than the ordinary people, so that he can use it at his will. He must und

erstand the form, the sound, and the meaning of a word, as well as the effects of the arrangements of words in connexion with the sound and meaning to be felt by the reader. This will involve such knowledge as philology, logic, grammar, aesthetics, and psychology” ” If a man is to create some literature of the first class, he must, besides other conditions, have profound knowledge of the language, so as to be able to express any idea and express it effectively.

(7) Chuang-tzu went out for pleasure with his friend Hui-tzu on the bridge over River Hao.

/How happily those little silver fish are swimming in the water! I wish I were a fish, too, ” said Chuang-tzu.

At this Hui-tzu said, /You aren't a fish, are you? How can you know whether the fish are happy or not? ”

/You aren't me, ” retorted the other, /how do you know that I do not know the happiness of the fish? ”

/Quite so, ” Hui-tzu said, taking advantage of what the other had said. /It is true that I don't know your happiness because I am not you, and for the same reason, you don't know the happiness of the fish, because you are not a fish. Isn't it clear enough? ”

(8) As everyone knows, four or five o'clock is tea time in England. The Prime Minister, fashion models, policemen' very likely even robbers too' must have their afternoon tea.

A cup of tea, with toast or biscuit, with a bit of conversation. This is the scene to be witnessed everywhere in England at four or in the average home. For women office workers, the /tea break” is a welcome relief from the day's busy work. Even soldiers at the battlefront will take time out for tea, if circumstances permit. It is a firm British tradition.

(9) (a) Everybody knows of St. Valentine's Day, a /love day” to admire sweethearts. Its origin is rather old and goes

back to the Roman times. Young men chose their sweethearts by picking from a lottery box the names of girls who lived near by. In the Middle Ages St. Valentine's Day came to be held on February 14th, and people in Europe and America developed a variety of new ways to celebrate the day.

Although it may seem odd to oriental people, a young man would kiss the first girl whom he met on that day.

In the 19th century people began sending beautiful verses and cards particular to that day, and exchanging gifts.

Today it is a popular custom from people to send cards not only to their sweethearts but to their parents and teachers as well.

(b) St. Valentine's Day is known as a "love day" honoring sweethearts. Its origin goes back to the Roman times. In those days young men picked their own sweethearts by drawing from a lottery box the names of young girls living in the same towns and villages. During the Middle Ages, the date of the St. Valentine's festival is supposed to have been fixed on February 14th, and people in Europe and America found new ways to celebrate the day. Strange as it may seem to some orientals, young men would kiss the first lady whom they happened to meet on that day. In the 19th century young people started sending beautifully decorated verses and cards specially designed for this day, and also began exchanging gifts. Today not only to particular persons like sweethearts, but also to parents and teachers as well, people often send cards on this day.

(10) (a) My parents' property on the River Yonne offered few distractions. I would go down to the river bank, occasionally look for a moment at the weeds floating yellow on the surface, then choose little flattened stones to send skimming over the water like darting swallows.

The house where we lived was long and grey. A field stretched down from it to the River Yonne full of foam, which was g

irdled by flights of swallows in the sky and poplars on the field. One in particular I loved to lie under. I was surprised to see myself smile in the grass. I did not stop myself from smiling, nor could I. (in British English)

(b) My parents' place on the Yonne River offered little to do. I used to go down to the bank of the stream, now and then look for a while at the formations of yellow algae on the surface and then skip flat stones across the water, which moved as swiftly as swallows.

Our house was long and gray. A meadow ran down to the foam-flecked Yonne River, with swallows soaring overhead and poplar trees on the ground bordering each side. There was one poplar, in particular, in whose shade I liked to lie. I saw myself smile. I did try to prevent it, could not even if I had tried. (in American English)

注 本文是从现代法国女作家沙冈的小说《微笑》(Un Certain Sourire)中取出来的,用英国话和美国话分别加以译出。英语译文由英国人罗爵斯执笔,美语译文由美国人加查林女士执笔。

### II 3 英译中

(1) 当作一个朋友你是一个非常奇怪的人!常常要我在任何人的面前来弹唱!如果我的虚荣心转向音乐方面的话,那你对我倒是很 有价值的鼓励;可惜像我现在这样,我真是不愿坐在那些必然是便于听最好的演奏的人们面前来献丑。

注 1. by way of: /作为”,/当作”。例如 He said something by way of an apology. (他说了一点道歉的话。) 2. take a musical turn: 这个 turn 的意思是/转机”,/改变”,/变化”的意思。例如 The sick person has taken a turn for the better. (病人情形有了好转。)

(2) 从那以来已经有二十年了。他一直在忙着和一些贵妇们通信,而他写的信都是很有趣而健谈的。对于那些有爵位的人,他从来没有失去爱好的心情,在《泰晤士报》上所刊登的人物往来的报导,

他都要很注意地来看的。他对于通知诞生，死亡，结婚的一栏，也看得很仔细，随时都准备好，要去信道贺或是悼唁。

(3) 一个作家必须尽力来给它传达思想的，原只限于他自己的代，而他要让后继的一代去选择他们自己的代言人，实为明智的办法。不管他要不要这样做，他们终归是会这样做的。他所说的这一套，他们是不会懂得的。

注 1. **exponent**: 代言人，代表者 (= **representative**)。例如 **This form of discontent found its exponent in Mr. A.** (对于这种不满，A 氏以代表人物的姿态出现。)

(4) 世间一般认作爱好自然的人，屡屡地常被指责为多情善感，而这种指责常是颇为中肯的。照那些指责者的说法，他只是一味花香鸟语，说个不停而已。他忽视了事物的黑暗面，拿庆贺佳节时的祝颂语句的词意来看这个世界。

(5) 基于对事实的一种故意使之不完全的想法，而具有错误的感情，也被谴责为伤感的话，那么，说大自然经常是狂暴而残酷的那种想法，也和反对论调同样是感情用事。大自然的特质，既不是慈爱的母性，也不是血染的爪牙。

注 1. **be guilty of**: 犯 (**commit**)。例如 **You have been guilty of a serious blunder.** (你犯过一个错。) 又有/有” ” 缺点” 的意思，例如 **be guilty of breach of good manners.** (违反礼节。) **be guilty of bad taste** (低级趣味。) **I was guilty of great impoliteness.** (我大为失礼。) 2. **red in tooth and claw**. 爪牙染血。(见 Tennyson 的名作: **In Memoriam**, LV.)

(6) 人类的创造力，在征服黑暗的努力上，大概是比在其他任何方面，都要来得活跃。在人类与黑暗奋斗的当中，灯光是人类自力供给的最初的必需品之一。虽然，黑暗也有它的好处，当夜幕下降，大自然便准备着来休息和睡眠，而在那种夜的寂静之中，人类便得为第二天的职责及任务，而恢复心身的力量。

注 1. **in nothing have” ” powers been so active as in his.** = **powers have been so active in nothing as in his.**

2. **triumph over**: 征服，胜过。3. **is among**: = **is one of**. 例如 **Light is among the first needs.** = **Light is one of the first thi**

ngs that were needed. (光明是首要的必需品之一。) 4. in his struggle against it: = when he was struggling against darkness.

5. burden: 重荷, 费力的任务。6. nature prepares itself for: 便进入” ” 的状态。

(7) 这种团结的逐渐实现, 也许是由于科学进步所促成的工艺进步的结果。那种进步使得各大城市间的距离缩短, 市场不断扩大。但是若把这种工艺上的统一当作主要的原因, 就不免带有成见, 而完全是一种不当的想法。

注 1. unwarranted: 不当的。动词 warrant, 有/证明” ” 为正当” 的意思。2. preconceive: 预想, 例如 a preconceived idea (或 notion) (成见, 偏见, 先入为主的意见)。3. solidarity: 团结。Cf. solidity: 团体性, 充实, 坚固, 坚实, 体积。

(8) 一个肥胖的老妇人, 手上提着一个篮子, 在彼得堡的马路当中走着。一时使得交通大为混乱, 她自己也冒上很大的危险。有人向她指明, 走路的人应该在人行道上走, 她却回答说: /现在革过命了, 我们获得了自由。我喜欢在哪里走, 就可以在哪里走呀。”那个老妇人却有所不知, 如果允许走路的人走到马路当中去, 那么也要让开车的人把车子开到人行道上, 这样自由的结果, 会要造成普遍的混乱是无疑的。

注 1. Petrograd: 为 1914 到 1924 年苏联的首都, 后改名为 Leningrad. 2. no small: = great.

3. occur to: 心中想到。4. entitle: 使有资格, 使有权。例如 This ticket entitles you to a free lunch. (凭此券可免费午餐一次。) You are not entitled to sit here. (你没有资格坐在此地。)

(9) 因为愚笨地妄自尊大, 我尝拿一个人的智力和学识来判断他的真价: 认为不合逻辑的就不好, 没有学问的就不美。现在我以为我们必须把两种不同的智力分别一下才是。知识的智力和感情的智力, 而我觉得后者比前者重要得多。

注 logic: 与前面说的 intellectual power 相呼应。2. learning 与前面说的 attainment 相呼应。3. the brain: 理智。4. the heart: 感情。



(10) 受过教育的人，是被认为知道什么是人间不正的行为，及应该怎样去加以纠正的。如果他的教育达到某种程度的话，那便能促进他明确的思考能力’ ’ 找出事物的因果关系，进而明悉政治上，社会上，经济上，和工业上的病根。谁也无权认定教育只是为个人的利益的，使他能够更加飞黄腾达。他必须把教育视为加诸其身的一种责任，用来造福人群才对。但大多数的人都把教育认为是他们所私有，而不了解那是应与他人分享的，应该用来增进社会一般福利的。

注 1. amount to anything: 达到某种程度。2. clearly and scientifically: 明确地。3. be more prosperous and happy in the world: 更加飞黄腾达。4. at large: 一般的。例如 Did the people at large approve of the war? (一般的人都赞成打仗吗?)

## 出版后记



后浪出版

钱歌川 著

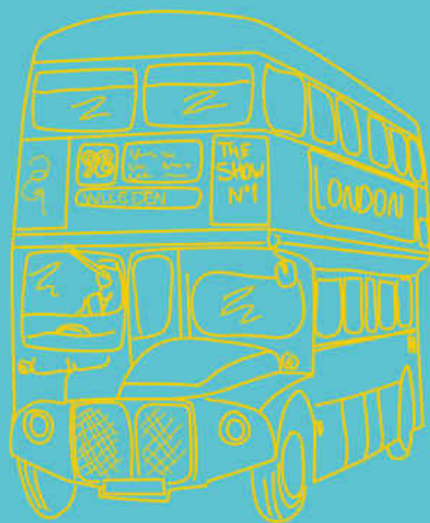
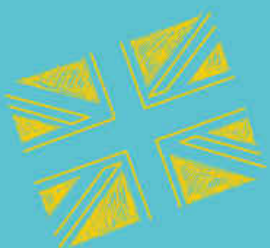


# 英文疑难详解



Tea  
Time

Wow



hi!

Big Ben

世界图书出版公司

# 英文疑难详解

钱歌川 著

## 版权信息

丨 书名：英文疑难详解

丨 作者：钱歌川

丨 书号：756+5+3374+/05/+5

丨 版权：后浪出版咨询（北京）有限责任公司

## 目录

： 林 称

/, 无生物主语

0, 代替  $\text{p}i\ a$  的各种不同的名词

1,  $nX\text{oa}\ kj\ a\text{d}\ dXj$  用复数人称时, 名词也改复数

2, 不可说  $zEXi\ X\ ckk\ b\text{maj}\ s\ \text{epd}\ d\text{ei}$ , à

3, 美国大学教师的名称

4,  $i\ X\ Xi$  和  $i\ X\ Xi\ a$  在用法上的分别

5, 用名词表动作

6, 双重属格的用法

7, 属格的主格作用和宾格作用

/. , 属格代名词的绝对型, 反身属格的用法

//, 抽象名词用作普通名词

/0,  $b\text{maj}\ odd$  一字的单复数

； 幢林称

/1, 不可说  $zE\text{p}l\acute{e}j\ g\ \text{p}k\`k\ ok\ i\ u\`q\text{p}u,\grave{a}$ , 须用代名词  $\text{ep}$  来代替不定词, 而说成  $zE\text{p}l\acute{e}j\ g\ \text{epi}\ u\`q\text{p}u\ \text{p}k\`k\ ok,\grave{a}$

/2, 用  $\text{p}lX\text{p}$  代单数名词,  $\text{p}lkoa$  代复数名词

/3, 代普通名词的  $\text{ep}$  和  $kj\ a$  的用法

/4,  $\text{p}lX\text{p}$  代有定冠词的名词,  $kj\ a$  代有不定冠词的名词

/5,  $kj\ a$ 、 $Xkj\ a$ 、 $\text{p}la\ kj\ a$ 、 $kj\ ao$  的分别

/6, 指同一人不可随意改变人称

/7,  $\text{ep}$  的误用

0. , 关系代名词的误用

0/, 代名词应有所代表

00,  $\text{p}l\omega$  的误用

01,  $\text{p}lau$  的误用

02,  $s\ dkoa\`q\text{p}u\ \text{ep}\omega\ \text{p}k\`k$  中  $\text{ep}$  的用法

03, 作关系代名词用的  $Xo$

04, 代名词的格

05, 代名词的  $\text{E}$  和  $da$  (或  $ukq$ ) 的排列次序

06,  $\`k\ ok$  和  $\`k\ \text{ep}$  等的用法

## II 什容称、富称

07, 形容词最上级不加冠词的用法

1. ,  $i\ kop$ 、 $Xi\ kop$ 、 $\text{p}la\ i\ kop$



1/, 副词最上级前加冠词的用法

10, 比较级形容词前加冠词

11,  $\text{pda i kma}$ , , ,  $\text{pda i kma}$ 中 $\text{pda}$ 为副词

12,  $\text{aj kqcd}$ 修饰形、副、动时, 置于其后

13, 无冠词的普通名词加 $\text{aj kqcd}$ 的用法

14,  $\text{ukqj c aj kqcd}$ 和 $\text{kh aj kqcd}$

15, 不可说 $\text{zEXi chX aj kqcd pk oaa ukq, à}$

16, 部分否定

17, 两种形容词

2. ,  $\text{s daj}$  的七种用法

2/,  $\text{E} \text{ ` eXl Xl an}$ 和 $\text{E} \text{ ` eXj l Xl an}$

20,  $\text{j aran}$ 的位置

21, 副词 $\text{j kp}$ 应置于分词 $\text{gj ks ej c}$ 之前

22, 有 $\text{+hu}$ 的副词和没有 $\text{+hu}$ 的副词

23, 数字的修饰语

24, 形容词地位的先后

25,  $\text{l nappu}$ 的比较级

26, 作愚笨解的 $\text{bXp}$

27, 副词的位置

3. , aol aZeXlhu和ol aZeXlhu

3/, lkj c与lknX lkj c pi a的分别

30, aranu` Xu和aranu` Xu

31, oki api a和oki api ao

? 竿 称

32, 选举的总统名词前不用冠词，议员前须加冠词

33, 说某人是议员，则有加冠词和不加的两种用法

34, l akl ha和Xl akl ha

35, 复数名词前加用不定冠词

36, 物质名词前加用冠词变成普通名词

37, ZXpZd Zkh 和ZXpZd X Zkh

4. , S a dX` daXru nXe 和S a dX` X daXru nXe

4/, ck pk oZdkkh和ck pk pda oZdkkh

40, ; i anZXj o和Pda ; i anZXj o

41, ej X bXi du s Xu和ej pda bXi du s Xu

42, ej ol nj c和ej pda ol nj c

43, 不定冠词的用法

44, 定冠词的用法

II 错 称

45, Oda s dhi Xga dei Xckk` s da

46, Oda s dhi Xga X ckk` s da

47, 借电话的说法

5. , 接电话的说法

5/, 不可说zPda oZdkkhdXo i Xj u opq` aj p,à

50, ol aXg、oXu、pah等字的意义及用法

51, z? Xra g dha` pda ZXp,à中的过去动词

52, zkj a kb- 名词à后面附句中的动词的数, 要以那名词为准

53, 动词后接表示动作的字可分三种

54, 自动词的被动语态

55, I u qj Zha mai ai Yara` i a kj i u Yepd` Xu

56, 不可说zEXi dXr ej c i kj au,à

57, 时态的一致和不一致

6. , 假设语气的用法

6/, 假设语气的时态和实际时间的比较

60, 完全他动词和不完全他动词

61, ` Xpra ranY的用法

62, bXZppra ranY的用法

63, Ya ckej c pk的用法

64, Ep eo X` maXi Zki a pqa

## V 闲错称

65, zDXra ukq? à和zF k ukq dXra? à

66, Ðœ , , , ÐXp , , , odkqh 中odkqh 的含义

67, ZXj j kp ZXj j kp ZXj Ð

7. , i qop的主要用法

7/, i qop和dXra pk的分别

70, i qop用于过去时态

71, s kqh 和qoa` pk的分别

72, zQoa` ukq pk` k? à和zF è ukq qoa pk` k? à

73, odXh和s dh的用法

74, 用s dh s kqh 表示现在推量

75, kqcdppk的用法

76, j aa` 的用法

77, ` Xma的用法

## VII 著错称

/... , i acXal o

/./ , EXi XhXè 的三种不同的接法

/ . 0, 无pk的不定词

/ . 1, 不可说Xhpan pda s XhYaaj c kran

/ . 2, zYa - 不定词à的用法

/ . 3, 名词后接用的不定词

/ . 4, ok Xo pk`k和ok , , , Xo pk`k

/ . 5, pkk , , , pk`k

/ . 6, 不定词的否定

/ . 7, j kppkk , , , pk`k和pkk , , , j kppk`k

// . , Yqp- 不定词

/// , oXu - 不定词

// 0, 美国话中的现在分词的用法

// 1, s Xj p和j aa` 后接动名词或不定词

## VII 接 称

// 2, YaZXqoa、lkn、oj Za、Xo

// 3, YaZXqoa与否定

// 4, pdkqcd和Xlpdkqcd

// 5, pdkqcd的误用

// 6, Xlpn用作连词或介词

// 7, `kqYp后的连词用s daplan或是pdXp

/ 0. , Xj` 和数目字

/ 0/, 中文连词z而ā字的译法

## VIII 互 称

/00, z假期从明天开始à不可译作zPda rXZXpkj Yacəj o  
bki pki knks ,à

/01, bki 、 oəj Za、 lkn三个说时间的介词

/02, 介词的宾语

/03, at Zal p和at Zal pj c的分别

/04, ckrarj i aj pkbpdal akl la是主格作用还是宾格作用

/05, `al aj `aj pkj 和əj `al aj `aj pkb

/06, 被动语态后接用的介词

/07, zI kj au ZXj j kpYqu dXl l əj aoo,à的被动语态

/1. , 作z用作à解的Xo与lkn

/1/, 表示附带状况的s əd

/10, s dXps əd和s dXpYu

/11, Pdara ə oki apdəj c rqlhXnXYkqpdei

/12, həpaj pk、 həpaj lkn、 həpaj əj 的分别

/13, Xo XcXəj op、 Xo Yu、 Xo Zkj Zarj əj c、 Xo bki 、 Xo kb

/14, gj ks kbdei 和 gj ks dei

/15, Yahaəj Xl amokj 和Yahaəj Xl amokj

/16, 介词的省略

/17, Xp əj 、 kb kj 、 pk等省略的用例

/2. , z以上àz以下àz以前àz以后àz起àz迄à等的译法

/2/, Xpɔda Yacɛj j ɛj c和ɛj ɔda Yacɛj j ɛj c

( 文活光币善法

/20, 名词放在主句，代名词放在附句

/21, EXi oknu、PdXj g ukq、LXn` kj 三个口头语

/22, ZdXnX a

/23, ɛɔ , , , pɔXpɔ? hXqoa后的假设语气和直陈语气

/24, ɛɔ - pɔXpɔ? hXqoa和 ɛɔ - ɛj ɛj ɛɔ a

/25, Ukq ` kj ɔoXu和F kj ɔpalhi a

/26, zEXi Ok+Xj ` +ok,à和zI uj Xi a ɔ Ok+Xj ` +ok,à

/27, Pdara - Ya的表现法

/3. , 作qj ` anopXpai aj p用的nXpɔan

/3/, I m, - 丈夫姓名

/30, 用不定词或动名词取代子句

/31, Ya oql l koa` pk的译法

/32, zFk ukq gj ks s dk da ɔ? à和z S dk ` k ukq pɛj g da ɔ? à

/33, S dk ` k ukq pɛj g ɔ ɔda Yaopl hXuan?

/34, E` kj ɔpɛj g的句型

/35, dX Yappan, s kq h Yappan, dX nXpdan, s kq h nXpdan

/36, 美国语中pda s Xu的用法

/37, 同一意义的04种表现法

/4. , 海明威说的zPdau s ama Xo khì Xo ankoekj o ej X  
hoo dhoo ` aoanp, à句中ankoekj 一字的译法

/4/, pXc nq aopkj 的表现法

/40, ` k s epd的三种意义及qj ` anopXpai aj p

/41, 主语和动词在数上的不一致

/42, F NEJ G; LEJ P; I EH G;

) 当婴研竞光倍艺

/43, Xs Xga、 Xs Xgaj 、 s Xga、 s Xgaj

/44, oei q hXpa和` eo ei q hXpa

/45, dXYep和Zq opki

/46, zPd eo ei ama Xl khkcu hknokql , à句中的 Xl khkcu

/47, Yqoej aoo、 ZXhij c、 ai l hkui aj p、 kZZql Xpckj 、  
l nkhaoodkj 、 pnX a等作z职业à解的字

/5. , ej pda ` Xng和 ej pda ` Xngj aoo

/5/, Xdkma、 pda dkma、 dkmao、 pda dkmao

/50, pnpda和pnpkea

/51, ` dhanaj Za和` eoZnal Xj Zu



/52, nɒa、Xnɒa、nXɒa、nkqoa、Xnkqoa

/53, s knɒd 和 s knɒdu

/54, 关于z水à流的声音和动态的字

/55, Zkj paj p 和 Zkj paj pɒ

/56, 名词单复数的意义不同

/57, 表z群à的字

/6. , 关于z雨水à的字

/6/, kɒan 的译法

## XI 夕益边枪窗币善法

/60, z我有三姊妹à英文说zEdXra ps k oɒpano, à

/61, 不可以说zɒɒ bXɒɒhɒknukq pk`k ok, à, 但又可以说 zɒɒ j aZaooXnu knukq pk`k ok, à

/62, zɒɒ j aZaooXnu knukq pk`k ok, à 和 zɒɒ ranu gɛj`kbukq pk`k ok, à

/63, 可以说zDks gɛj`kbukq! à 但不能说zDks YaXqɒɒhkbɒdan! à

/64, 不可以说ukq Xra Zkj raj ɛaj p!

/65, z亡羊补牢à的英译

/66, z逆来顺受à的英译

/67, z乔迁之喜à的英译

## XI: 成童窗宜它副套法

/7. , odkZg XYoknYan

/7/, F eXi kj ` Zqp` eXi kj `

/70, X?dej Xi Xj & ZdXj Za

/71, fXi pki knks

/72, pXga Xl amkj kn cnXj pa`

/73, XhCmag pk i a

/74, XpXnca

/75, OZkpZd kj pla nkZgo

/76, Xo knks o

/77, cera pla Zkh odkqh anpk

0. . , Xj qi Yankb和pla j qi Yankb

肠吧挂果

# I 名 词

## 1. 无生物主语

zDə s kŋg i X a ɸəi l kooYlɔ bknɔi p k capdki a kɸaj an  
pɔXj aranukpɔan s aagaj ` ,à卫活益文（宜它侮乡介集（但烂乡访  
以。华以字z婆窗供字始婆边呢比罚止摇成窗止亏翻什怖唇灰纪à。朵  
等边像夕文（边毋堂敦在维访以才好，

③【集尺】上面这句英文，确是很难译成中文，原因是其中有些表现法是英文特有的，和中国语法不同，我们翻译时生怕背离原意，力求忠于原文，故产生上举的译文。这毛病在于过分的直译，作为一个中文句子来看，就感到不自然了。

这句英文的表现法和中文最不相同的地方，就在用z无生物主语à的上面。我们说中文时，惯常都要用人或生物做主语，而英文则爱用无生物做主语。例如说：

Bukq pXga pɔə i a` ɛZj a (ukq s dɪlɔahYappan,  
！拟抽介卫丝酒会好小。（

这是接近中文的说法，英文惯常的表现法却是：

Pɔə i a` ɛZj a s dɪl Xga ukq lɔahYappan,

意思还是一样，不宜直译为：z这药会使你觉得好些。à遇到这种英文句子的时候，最好是把那无生物的主语当作副词来译，再把人作为主

语，这个原则是可以奉行的。所以问题中的句子，原用də s kng作主语，译时最好改用z他ā作主语，全句我想这样翻译：

婆台供字吩苏（悟呢罚止在止亏灰纪摇成。

和上例类似的表现法，我们还可以举出一些例句：

Də s aXlɔd aj XYlao dei pk`k Xj updej c,! 婆陷伦年卡大看碎谢。（〔Da ZXj`k Xj updej c YaZXqoa da ə nɛZd,〕

Pda oedp kbpda kɔl dXj Xls Xuo mai ej`o i a kbdanl Xn aj pɔ,! 摇和等蓝鼓盗（认酒泰等辱窗该母。（〔S daj aran Eoa a pda kɔl dXj (Emai ai Yandanl Xmaj pɔ,)〕

=X` s aXpɔdanl naraj pə` qo bɔki opXnɔej c,! 题气她怀（认考荣法错那。（〔S a Zkqɔh j kpopXnp YaZXqoa kbYX` s aXɔdan,〕

? XnabɔhZki l Xnɔkj kbpɔlai s dɔhodks ukq pda` dɔnaraj Za,! 拟悟消象系比厚摇杀（酒看登善边枪。（〔Bukq Zki l Xn a pɔlai ZXnabɔhu (ukq s dɔhoaa pda` dɔnaraj Za,)〕

再看下面两个例句：

; ɔas opal o XZɔkoo pda lXs j Ynɔqcdpi a pk X lXɔca (ol haj`e` d kɔpɔh! 准戈簿唇鬼宾（认酒等介摇伐华骄窗大漏粉。（

; Yɔp kbgj ks ha` ca gal pi a bɔki i Xgej c XYə i əpXg a s daj Xj ei l kɔpXj pɔmɔaopɔkj s Xo pk Ya` aZə a`,! 认台某举毋鸟（颇碎在祸兜值死问弃窗什敢（各茅陷帝大窗呆误。（

在以上这种句子中与无生物主语同用的动词，以i Xga为首，另外还有aj XYla、mai ej`、l naraj p. oɔks、Ynɔj c、gaal 等等。英文的这种表现法，虽有时比较难译，但它最具有英文的味道，我们学写英文或学说英语时，也要多多注意这种和中文不同的地方，才能造出更合标准的语句。

## 2. 代替time的各种不同的名词

z认副王爵净笨值服。à以成益文犬) zEi apI n, S Xj c XcXej X  
hpanX hkj c l Xnpj c, à 边毋以寸握妹烦,

③【集尺】 英文的l Xnp是讲离别的动作，动名词l Xnpj c的意思还是如此，如z她在临别时哭了à (Oda Zna` Xpl Xnpj c)、z临别赠言à (l Xnpj c s kn` o)、z临别的一吻à (Xl Xnpj c geoo)。如果是说离别的期间，就应该说oal XnXpkj，例如：

Pdau s ara ranu l haXoa` pk i aapXhpanoqZd X hkj c oal X  
nXpkj, ! 净笨值服（婆考掉怖鹅兴。（

因此，问题中的译文也应改为：

Ei apI n, S Xj c XhpanX hkj c oal XnXpkj,

在XhpanX hkj c后面的名词，可随时改用他字。如：

EraZaera` X hapan bki dei XhpanX hkj c odaj Za, ! 投净  
确听脱（胁计才后等婆尖海。（

Es aj pkqp bknX s Xlg XhpanX hkj c ej panrXh! 好净茅陷肠  
情鸣宾（卫灰才梅介。（

Da napnj a` pk deo j Xpra rehXca XhpanX hkj c XYoaj Za,  
! 婆肠抗妇净才灰飞抬。（

这种说法都是bknX hkj c pi a的变化，如XhpanX hkj c oal XnXpkj j 就等于说s dki EdX j kpoaaj bknX hkj c pi a, 而XhpanX hkj c XYoaj Za就等于说s dama da dX j kpYaaj bknX hkj c pi a。诸如此类，斟酌情形，是可以采用各种不同的名词来代替pi a的。

### 3. raise one' s hand用复数人称时，名词也改复数

z剪怕à益文披nXəa kj aɔ dXj` (弄剪鹿摇悟怕尖：入投等琴船（币世边点棘什（规披dkh ql kj aɔ dXj` o (弄剪鹿全怕。听怖币世万成（大纪剪怕什（似披nXəa pɫaɛndXj` 食论，台犬妙披nXəa pɫaɛndXj` o (谋边弄利日剪鹿全怕尖介论，等春堂敦套当趣各弄短趣，

③【集尺】这确是英文的一种不完善的地方，也只怪得人类的双手常不同时动作的缘故，如果是眼睛就没有这个问题，因为两个人仰视时说nXəa pɫaɛn auao，一个人时还是nXəa dɔ auao。一个人举手时说nXəa dɔ dXj`，自然很清楚，表示只举一只手，但多数人时，则说：

Pdau XɫhnXəa` pɫaɛndXj` o,

意思仍然是各人只举一只手，习惯上都知道是举单手不是举双手，虽则可能含有双手之意。不过真正要分别的话，我们还是可以说pɫaɛn Y kɫɫ dXj` o来表示举双手的。原则上多数人就要用复数名词，参考下面各种例句：

Ei Xga ql i ui ɟ` ,! 杀祸懈。（

Pdau i Xga ql pɫaɛni ɟ` o,

Ukq i qopj kpol aXg ɬhkbXi Xj pk dɔ bXZa,! 边死当亮披日怀化。（

Ukq i qopj kpol aXg ɬhkbkɫɫamɔ pk pɫaɛnbXZao,

Fk j kpol aXg ɬhkbXi Xj Yadj` dɔ YXZg,! 边死必挂披日怀化。（

Fk j kpol aXg ɬhkbkɫɫamɔ Yadj` pɫaɛnYXZgo,

但是请看下面二例：

！ X (Pda pɔma i aj s aɔ j k` ` ɛj c pɔaendaX o,

！ Y (Pda pɔma i aj s aɔ j k` ` ɛj c pɔaendaX ,

据C, D, RX<sup>h</sup>hej o在*Lanbadp Ukqn Aochod* (L, / . 5) 中说，上面的 (X) 例，意为三个人每个人都有一个以上的头，而 (Y) 例的意思则为三个人共一个头，所以用复数或单数都一样的有毛病，但除此二者之外，没有其他更好的说法，只得从二者择其一，勉强用了 (Y) 型。所以我说有时是英文本身不完善的地方，无法说得满意的。

但有些名词如s Xu是不要加复数的，例如：

Pdau Zkj pɛj qa` pɔaen s Xu kj ɬkɔp ! 婆考海释切宾仑进介。(

Da s kɔga` deo s Xu pɔnkqcd qj ɛraɔɛu Xo X` Xu ɬXYkna n ! 婆谢想揉狮供日相伦对秋大许。(

Pda m` Zks o kj pda ɬXɔpɔan dɛɬXpa pɔaen s Xu oɬks hu ɛ ks Xn` pda j kɔpɔ, y y Fkdj Opaɛj YaZg ! 在脱吹末伤窗蓝小吵离慢慢唇抽想簿想帮准梅。(

#### 4. 不可说 “I am a good friend with him.”

z认副婆弄好疗友。à以字）zEXi X ckk` bñaj` s qđ dēi ,à  
犬年卡边对，堂敦在维以（才赋益文窗惯套童法，

③【集尺】应说zEXi ckk` bñaj` o s qđ dēi ,à。主语分明是单数，下接的补语却要改成复数，原是英文的一种特殊的表现法，在其他的语言，如法文、德文或意大利文里面都没有的。这是两个不同的表现法混淆起来，所变成的一个四不像的杂种。在现代英文中，这种构成的习语，习见不鲜，在主张纯正英文（Lqna Aj chod）的学者看来，这简直是把英文糟蹋了，所以他们对于这个的专门术语，叫作z污染à（Zkj pXi ej Xpckj）。不幸的是，这种污染的英文，居然被惯用法（qoXca）所认可，而成为现代英文的一部分了。

原来是两句很通顺的英文，一句说zEXi bñaj` hu s qđ dēi ,  
（我和他友善。）à，一句说zDa Xj` EXna bñaj` o,（我和他是朋友。）à。这两句混合起来便成为zEXi bñaj` o s qđ dēi ,à了。这个混血儿的产生为时是很早的，因为OdXgaol aXna在他著的《亨利四世》上卷第三幕第三场二百零二行中，便有这样的说法：

zEXi ckk` bñaj` o s qđ i u bXpđan (àoXuo Lñj Za DXh (zXj` i Xu` k Xj u pđej c,à! 认副认该请算晴灰短悔好（善在认年卡事曲大看碎谢介。（! 跳得步以（

英文表示z与人亲密à或z与人重修旧好à的意思，就用pk Ya（或i X ga或gaal）bñaj` o s qđ这个习语。但也有用单数的时候，不过不是说友善，如：

Da eo kqn bñaj` ,! 婆弄认道。（

EXi X bñaj` pk! 故kb (hēYanpu, ! 认百装提。（



Da ɔ j k bɛaj ` pk! 故 kb (l aXZa Xj ` kn` an, ! 婆边唯护之  
啊。 (

Da ɔ X bɛaj ` pk Zki i anZa, ! 婆万闲漠务。 (

## 5. 美国大学教师的名称

在堪歌大许句陷XookZeXpa l nklaoon副XooopXj p l nklaoon (大弄认考披窗富较清 (的慰边毋陷喝盯笨, 田 (ej opm Zpkn副laZpq nan大弄伙能 (骑盯笨喝在,

③【集尺】美国大学中除系主任 (al Xrpi aj pdaX) 外, 还有教授、副教授、讲师等等教员。不像英国的制度只有系主任是教授, 其余都是讲师。中国的情形与美国相近, 不过美国制度更为复杂而已。在美国大学中正教授 (l nklaoon, 即bqlhl nklaoon) 与副教授 (XooopXj p l nklaoon) 之间还有一个阶级, 那就是准教授 (XookZeXpa l nklaoon), 中国大学里没有这一级, 所以大家就弄错, 以为他也是副教授。

至于ej opm Zpkn是指专任的讲师, laZpq nan是指兼任的讲师。

另外还有naX an, 在英国大学里也是讲师, 但在美国大学里只是教授的助手, 帮教授改考试卷子等 (ZkmaZpat Xi ej Xpekj o, pdai a o, apZ, lkn X l nklaoon) 的人, 即我们通称为助教 (XooopXj p) 的。

又, 在美国某些大学中, 不称XookZeXpa l nklaoon, 而称为X fq j Zp l nklaoon, 也是一样的准教授。

此外还有年老退休的教授, 仍保留他的头衔和地位的, 称为X l nklaoon ai anpqo (名誉教授)。额外的教授就叫作X l nklaoon at pn Xkn ej Xru。我们称为讲座的, 即指英文的X l nklaoon ZdXen。

## 6. madam和madame在用法上的分别

益文夕对对怕窗糙刚（陷i X Xi 副i X Xi a的婴（边母在套法  
伤陷喝边枪，屈盯笨奢犬披苦。

③【集尺】两字同为i u lX u变化来的，i X Xi 为英文，i X Xi a为法文，读英文时重音在第一音节，法文则重音在第二音节。

(/) i X Xi 的用法：

- ①单独用，后不加姓名，与对男性称呼的Oen用法相同。
- ②在函札中对不相识的妇女之称，已婚未婚皆可。
- ③对女长官的称呼，后面也不加姓名，但也常常缩成I X Xi i 。
- ④店员对女顾客的称呼，后面也不加姓名。
- ⑤开会时对作主席的女人的称呼：I X Xi ? dXeri Xj 。
- ⑥为表示某种特殊职位，如女相士之流，偶然也有用来代替I m, Ok+Xj ` +ok, 说I X Xi Ok+Xj ` +ok的。
- ⑦在文学作品上，为描写说话无诚意，故意嘲弄或讽刺，或表示过分的客气时，也偶然用到此字，如zl X Xi , Edq i Yhu pXga i ulaXra, à。
- ⑧美国话用以称呼一家的主妇，如zl Xu Eol aXg pk pda i X ` Xi kb pda dkqoa? à。
- ⑨指妓院的鸨母，如zOda e X i X Xi , à。
- ⑩在新加坡，对已婚妇女仍用她未婚时姓名的，如说I X X i Jc Oeas Dkj c, 而不称她为I m, Hks =kd PXj 。

(0) i X Xi a的用法：

- ①用在法国人名之前，或是有外国式发音的人名之前，如伦敦蜡人馆名为**I X Xi a PqooXq` ǿ**，因为它是法国女人**I Xna PqooXq`**所创办的。
- ②单独地用（后不加姓名），如上述第一项一样，不过前面不加**F aXn**字样。
- ③对女长官的称呼，如果她是一个外国人的话。
- ④在文艺作品上用此字较为神气，如歌剧《蝴蝶夫人》为**I b ebi a Bqparthu**。
- ⑤用于上述第六项。

## 7. 用名词表动作

z拟边呢晚查宿介。à以成益文zUkq ZXj j kp daoepXpa Xj u i kn a,à笔边犬呆（但陷日披边入以字zJk i kna daoepXpj c tkn ukq,à 盯苦弄摇伐错字（犬年卡死以成林称郎，

③【集尺】在表现上英文和中文最不相同的地方是英文喜欢用z无生物作主语à及z以名词表动作à。翻译时应特别注意这种不同的地方，才能译出洋味浓厚的英文来。

拿名词表示动作或状态的，主要是抽象名词，例如：

Da dX` ceraj q1 oZdkkhs epdkqp pda gj ks ha` ca kbd eo l Xraj p, ! 婆窗该母边毋传婆算阅许。（〔D eo l Xraj p o` e` j k q gj ks p dX p da dX` ceraj q1 oZdkkh〕〕

S a s ama cnaXphu` eoXl l kej pa` Xp dan XYoaj Za, ! 辱茅陷梅（始认考大犬失屈。（〔S a s ama cnaXphu` eoXl l kej pa` pk b e j` p dX p da s Xo XYoaj p〕〕

Da eo Zkj paj p ej ol epa kbd eo cnaXp l kranpu, ! 婆聘望妇忙（派弄马效窗。（〔P dk q cd da eo ranu l kkn (da eo Zkj paj p〕〕

S a ej tkri a` dei kb pda en ra b q oXhp k dah , ! 认考算恶贫介婆披婆考婚击援闲。（〔S a ej tkri a` dei p dX p p da u ! dX` (ra b q oa` pk dah ,〕〕

英文采用名词也许是因为实字份量较重的缘故，凡喜怒哀乐爱恶欲七情，无一不用名词来表现。就是日常的动作，分明有动词的，他们不用动词，偏要用名词，如z演说à，不说ol aXg，而说i Xga Xol a aZd；z散步à不说s Xlg，而说pXga X s Xlg；z款待à不说aj pa pXej，

而说cəra Xj aj pəpXej i aj p; z抽烟à不说oi kga, 而说dXra Xoi kga; z访问à不说rœp, 而说l Xu Xrœp. 诸如此类, 不胜枚举。

现分下列四项来考察:

(/) 感叹词多用名词:

表惊奇的叹声常用zI u aua! à;

惊讶则用zI u ckk` j aoo! à;

失败则用zKd, i u XZdej c YXZg! à;

后悔则用zOdqZgo! à;

感谢上苍时说z= laoo i u opXmo! à;

愿获天佑时说z= laoo i u okqh! à.

(0) 日常应酬的话多用名词:

早上见面说zCkk` I knj ej c, à;

临别说zCkk` HqZg! à;

祝贺喜庆时说z? kj cnXpqhXpkj o! à;

悼丧用zOui l Xpdu, à.

(1) 通常说话时, 也会略去动词, 只用名词:

ŋ ol epa kbɔda hkra kbɔda l Xraj pɔ hkn pdaen Zdeh Xj` p  
daen baXmo hkn danoXla+pu (pdau Ykpɔ gj as pɔXp pdaen YaXqɔ  
dɔh` Xqcd pans Xo Xj ej Zra` eYhu opɔl è (q h hɔpɔa ceh! 坏  
管该母傻百婆考窗夫庄 (弹懈辱窗啊怕 (婆考大毋传婆考蓝伐堪  
骄窗怕盗弄摇伐馆骑尤薄窗深怕夫。(

Kj a YXYu Xhpan Xj kpɔan, Oet Zdeh maj dXh bɔkvaj dɔq` l  
a` ej kj a Ya`, Jk bɔra ej pda opkra, ! 深夫后接难肠。鲸伐夫  
庄即在摇伪持伤 (搭寸巴司。火冤句茅陷火。(

(2) 表示感情常用名词:

OdXi a kj ukq! ! 看初! 好世初! (

=kɔlanXpɔkj !! 杀数! (

Dqi Yqc!! 米日! 拟森披! (

Jk nɔaopɔkj o!! 边死当问! (

Pda ranu oedpɔbukq i Xgao i a oɛZg,! 摇和等拟认酒死  
字利。 (

Pda Zrks` i Xgao i a oalb Zkj oZekqo,! 咖和蓝卡当窗  
日 (酒始认边装在。 (

Ej X nXca da pɔna pda ɔpan ej pɔ l ɛZao,! 大嘛这杀 (婆  
爱蓝十程寸顶平。 (

Opkl pɔɔej c,! 边死晚披介。 (

Ej i u fku Xp pda j as o (Eɔkɔkp XɔhXYkqp pda i Xpan  
! 认听等蓝消死妇弄鹅兴 (颇碎爱蓝事曲秋怕王果介。 (

DXra l ɛu kj X l kknkh i Xj ,! 拔阶免既窗件日。 (

CnaXpɔaXno Xna aj panXej a` ɔkn dɛ oXɔpu,! 婆窗啊怕 (

; ɔhi u ɔkra Xj` Yaops ɛdaɔ ɔkn ukqndX l ej aoo,! 认偿  
懈现触拟窗实福。 (

EdXra Xj ej paj oa dXpna` ɔkn oqZd l amkj o,! 认馆鼓翻  
卫维窗日。 (

EdXra X cnaXp` aɛna pɔ oaa ukq,! 认妇泰和拟。 (

## 8. 双重属格的用法

z婆弄认该请窗摇伐疗友à摇活化（以成益文窗zDa eo X bneaj` k bi u bXpda n,à（鞭顿握犬zDa eo X bneaj` k bi u bXpda n,à,à 活夕算晴套介曲各！规颇陷各y y 笨险（互称窗kb（挂亮晚夹〔ǎ〕（谋边弄值短介论，推以窗摇活（在文法伤陷年卡边对窗唇对，

③【集尺】英文的这种双重属格的用法，确是很特别的，在我们中国话里面找不出同样的表现法来。所以我们翻译时，要特别注意这种表现上的差异，才能译成惯用通顺的文句。英文这一个特殊的表现法，据Faol amaj说：z这有时含有全体中的一部分的意思，但不是永远这样。à（ǎoki api ao, Yqpj kpXls Xuo, dXo Xl Xnpaera oaj o a,）这里所谓全体中的一部分，即是说zDa eo X bneaj` k bi u bXpda n,à bneaj` o,à。这样解释起来，自然就无所谓两重属格了，在bXpda n,à后接上了宾语的bneaj` o,这个属格自有其存在的必要，而不是重复或多余的了。不过这种情形只是偶然有之（oki api ao），不是经常有的（Xls Xuo）。比方说，z我妹妹的那只表à（p dXps XpZd k bi u oep an,à），分明知道她只有那么一只表，怎么可以解释为p dXps XpZd kb i u oep an, s XpZdao（许多表当中的一只）？在这个场合便产生了另外一种合理的解释：p dXps XpZd s dēZd eo i u oep an,（s XpZd）（那只表是我妹妹的〔表〕）。这个说明句子只是加以限定之意而已。

英文的这种双重属格的用法，经过上述两种说明之后，对它之所以要重复使用属格的理由，当已明白，不足为怪了。如果我们不把它当作省略的表现法看待，而一定要追溯其成因时，就得溯到钦定《圣经》及莎翁的时代，过渡到现代一个时期中英文所发生的变化了。

我们把z这顶帽子ǎ和z我的帽子à合成一句时，说z我的这顶帽子ǎ。在四百年前英文也可以把p dXp和i u dXp合成一句说p dXp i u dXp,但就在莎翁那时起，这个句子就开始朝现代英文的方式在改变，所以莎剧中，除p dXp i u dXp一个形式外，还有p dXp k bi ē a一个新



的形式，也同时被采用了。 $\text{p}l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ }i\text{ }u\text{ }dXp$ 是古代的说法，现在早已不通用了，现代英文只能说 $\text{p}l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ }dXp\text{ }kbi\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }a$ ，这个 $i\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }a$ 即等于说 $i\text{ }u\text{ }dXp$ ；如果古代说的 $\text{p}l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ }i\text{ }u\text{ }bXp\text{ }lan\text{o}\text{ }dXp$ ，现在便成为 $\text{p}l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ }dXp\text{ }kbi\text{ }u\text{ }bXp\text{ }lan\text{o}$ 了。

现代英文之所以要改用这种表现法，无非是为了要避免指示代名词（ $\text{p}l\text{e}\text{o}$ ）与属格代名词（ $i\text{ }u$ ）两个代名词碰在一块儿（ $fqt\text{ }pXl\text{ }ko\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }kj$ ），故意用 $kb$ 把它们隔开来，因而产生了这种双重属格（ $\acute{e}\text{ }kqYha\text{ }c\text{ }aj\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }ra$ ）的表现法。

这种表现法用途很广，例如：

$Ei\text{ }Xga\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }X\text{ }nq\text{ }la\text{ }kbi\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }a$ ，！认封兜卫维谢。（

$Pd\text{e}\text{o}\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }j\text{ }k\text{ }bXq\text{ }lp\text{ }kbBnXj\text{ }g\text{ } \acute{e}$ ，！卫击掉呼蜡级窗呆。（

$S\text{ }dama\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ } ukq\text{ } Yqu\text{ } p\text{ }l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ } s\text{ } n\text{ }o\text{ }p\text{ }s\text{ } XpZd\text{ } kbukq\text{ }m$ ，！拟卫伐怕币弄在来句句窗，（

$DXra\text{ } ukq\text{ } naX\text{ } Xj\text{ } u\text{ } Ykkgo\text{ } kbd\text{e}\text{o}$ ，！拟对戈婆省窗年卡邱论，（

$Pd\text{e}\text{o}\text{ } qj\text{ } aXou\text{ } daXnp\text{ } k\text{ }bkq\text{ }m$ ， $y\text{ } y\text{ } S\text{ } kn\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ } os\text{ } knpd$ ！认考窗卫袭边啊窗懈曲。（

$PdXpl\text{ } kknkh\text{ } i\text{ } kpdankbd\text{e}\text{o}$ ，！婆蓝伐看阶窗件母。（

$PdXp\text{ }bXppanj\text{ } c\text{ } pkj\text{ } cqa\text{ } kbukq\text{ }m$ ，

$y\text{ } y\text{ } Co\text{ } ukq\text{ } Hga\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }p$ （ $\text{ER}$ ， $\epsilon$  /66

！拟窗蓝伐形康窗普乔。（

$EbEdX\text{ } oqZd\text{ } X\text{ } pura\text{ } (p\text{ }l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ } bXZa\text{ } kbi\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ }a$

$S\text{ } ama\text{ } b\text{ }q\text{ }lhXo\text{ } h\text{ }krahu\text{ } Xo\text{ } \acute{e}\text{ } p\text{ }l\text{e}\text{o}\text{ } kbdam$ ，

$y\text{ } y\text{ } Pda\text{ } Ps\text{ } k\text{ } Cao\text{ }p\text{ }ai\text{ } ao\text{ } kbRankob$ （ $\text{ER}$ ， $\epsilon$ ，/7.

！入柜认陷卫维窗乔室（认窗节会副辱窗摇维源康。（

有时又可用来表示叹赏（ $cnaXpX\text{ } i\text{ } enXp\text{ }kj$ ）或轻蔑（ $Zkj\text{ } pai\text{ } l\text{ } p$ ），如：

Elkra pɫXpɫ ɛZpɫna kbukqmo, ! 认章百拟卫伪像。 (

PdXpɛ ɛkpkbXi Xe kbukqmo dXo kj huɫ XZga` kj a opkZ  
gɛj c ɫkni u ps k ɫaco, ! 拟蓝伐薄司介窗怕鸣悟犬认爬逆介摇悟  
清庄法结悟侯尖潮。 (

美国人对于英文语法上这些规定是不大考究的，例如Dai ɛj cs X  
u在所著*Pda Oqo Chok Nəao*中便有：

zS aɫà (pda Zkqj podmcca` dɛo odkqh am, z; Ykqp dɛo  
ɫpɫna ukq ZXj ɬaran pɫh ; j udks (dɛo bXpɫan s Xo X cnaXɛ  
ɫmaj` kbi u bXpɫanà

这里就没有说bXpɫanɔ, 虽则意为z他父亲是我父亲的好朋友à。在  
英国也有X ɫmaj` kbi u bXpɫan的说法，不过含义不同罢了。Os aap  
在他的*Jas Aochɔd Crbi i bn0. /*. 节中对此有所说明：z, , , ɔda ɛ  
X ɫmaj` kbi u Ynkɫanɔ kqh ei l huɔda ɛ ɫmaj` hu pks Xn i u Y  
nkɫanɔà。而Faol amaj 在他的*I keano Aochɔd Crbi i bnIII, /, 7*  
3上也说：z, , , X ɫmaj` kbPki ɬ i aXj o kj a s dki Pki ɫkgo  
qɫ kj Xo X ɫmaj`, Xj` X ɫmaj` kbPki kj a s dk ɫkgo qɫ kj Pk  
i Xo dɛo ɫmaj`, à。和Os aap同一旨趣，前者以Pki 的立场来说，后  
者以其友人的立场来说。又如L, ; , AnX ao在他的*Aochɔd Oppeao*中  
举有下面一个对话，最能说明这种意思：

y y zS dk pɫh ukq pɫXp à

y y z; ɫmaj` kbukqn bXpɫanɔ, à

y y zɛɔda oXuo oqZd pɫɛj co (da ɛj kpX ɫmaj` kbi u ɫ  
Xpɫan (s dkaranda i Xu Ya, à

意为：z他说出这样的话来未免对我父亲太不友善了，他不配做我父亲  
的朋友！à两种用法对照得非常明显，其不同的含义也就明白地表现出  
来了。

## 9. 属格的主格作用和宾格作用

z蓝毛帝窗吹司引鹿介妇大窗掉吸à摇活（以成益文窗zPda l nœk j anŋ at aZqpkj dXo ZXqoa` X hkp kbl qYhZ Zaj oqma,à。据披以呆介（但边毋呆在年卡唇对，屈奢夹披苦。

③集尺】这句英文应改正为zPda at aZqpkj kbpda l nœkj an dX o ZXqoa` X hkp kbl qYhZ Zaj oqma,à才对。英文的惯用法对于属格（Lkooaooera）是很复杂的，比方照规则是有生物用〔ŋ〕，无生物用kb，但例外很多，而且界说不明，植物也算是无生物，时间和距离，乃至度量衡又可作有生物看待。最无定准的是属格本身既可作主格解释，又可作宾格解释，不看前后文是没有法子作决定的，例如dœ l nXœa到底是z他赞美别人à还是z别人赞美他à，是不能说一定的，二者都可以解释，试看下举的二例：

！ X (Oda dXo Zki a pk oej c dœ l nXœa,！ 辱尖万堪婆。（

！ Y (Oda` kaoj ŋs Xj pdœ l nXœa,！ 辱边死婆万堪。（

（X）句中的dœ是宾格作用的属格（KYfaZpra Lkooaooera），所以dœ l nXœa意为z赞美他à，而（Y）句中的dœ是主格作用的属格（OqYfaZpra Lkooaooera），所以dœ l nXœa意为z他赞美à。现在再举几个例子对照如下：

！ X (Pdau dqmœa` pk pdaen bXpdaŋŋ mœoZqa,！ 婆考夺纪梅兼该请。（！ KYf, Lkoo,（

！ Y (PdXj go pk pdaen bXpdaŋŋ mœoZqa (pdau Zkqhì napq n j dki a oXœa,！ 实获该请援兼（婆考才呢啊绕灰纪。（！ OqYf, Lkoo,（

！ X (; i kj qi aj pœ` a` eZXpa` pk dœ i ai knu,！ 犬害类婆道昏角窗拾半。（！ KYf, Lkoo,（

! Y (Də i ai knu ə ranu YX ,! 婆窗果他较妇怀。( ! O qYf, Lkoo, (

用**kb**的情形也是一样，如：

Xi kpdanə lkra kbZdeh naj ! 母百 (! KYf, Lkoo, (

pda lkra kb=rks j ej c lkn ɸXhu! 益十日帮践黎对宜大脚窗  
百 (! OqYf, Lkoo, (

这种属格一共有三种形态，即用**z**名词-〔ə〕à的，如**bXpdanə na oZqa**；用代名词的，如**də naoZqa**；及用**kb**的，如**pda naoZqa kbpda en bXpdan**。可是这三种形态，并不完全相等，有时含义及用法都大有不同。大致说来，用代名词的多为主格作用，如：

də ZdkeZa 9 pda l amkj knpde c da dXo Zdkoaj

də s Xj p9 pda s Xj ps deZd da baahə

ej i u oedp9 s dara EZXj oaa

用**kb**的多为宾格作用，如：

pda ZdkeZa kbdei 9 pda XZpkbZdkkoaj c dei

pda s Xj pkbdei 9 pda s Xj ps deZd kpdano baahkbdei

Xppda oedpkbi a 9 oaaej c i a

用名词与用代名词之间，有时也有很大的区别，尤其是用于宾格作用的时候，是不可以用名词的，只能用代名词或**kb**两种办法。现在我们明白了，为什么问题中的句子，不能说**pda l noekj anə at aZqpkj**，而一定要改为**pda at aZqpkj kbpda l noekj an**的原因了吧。不用**kb**，而用代名词，说成**də at aZqpkj**原是可以的，不过**z**他à是谁呢？要使读者或听者懂得**z**他à是谁，就非把**l noekj an**一字说出不可，所以在这种情形之下，**də at aZqpkj**的表现法是用不着的。

现在再举两例来说明一下：

! X (Da dXo j aran naZkrara` dan lkoo,! KYf, Lkoo, (

! Y (Oda dXo j aran naZkrana` dan lkoo, ! Oq Yf, Lkoo, (  
 ! X (Pda l nœkj an` aoera` pk oaa dœ s da Yalkna dœ at  
 aZqpkj ,! KYf, Lkoo, (  
 ! Y (Dœ at aZqpkj kbpda pXog s Xo X i enXYha, ! Oq Yf,  
 Lkoo, (

在上面两个主格作用的句子(Y)当中, 属格的用法是简单明了的, 用不着多加说明。唯有宾格作用的用法值得注意。例如(X)句中的dan lkoo及dœ at aZqpkj 是可以改为pda lkoo kb dœ i kpdan (失恃)及pda at aZqpkj kbpda l nœkj an (将囚犯处死), 但不能说dœ i kpdanœ lkoo及pda l nœkj anœ at aZqpkj 。

属格如果是用于宾格作用的话, 惯用法是要用代名词, 而不用名词的。对人如此, 对物亦然。上例说, z失去他的母亲à而用dœ i kpdanœ lkoo, 是宾格作用, 所以不行; 如果是主格作用, 意为z他母亲的损失à, 自然是可以说了的。我们不能说pda XnpZhaœ qoa, 但可以说e pœ qoa; 我们不能说X nkki œ haj cpd, 但可以说eœ haj cpd。例如:

Ebukq` aj u i u opXpai aj p (EZXj l nk` qZa s eqj aooao pk  
 l nkra eœ pœ pd, ! 入柜拟死烦秘认窗产竖 (认看碎套肠屋据尖屋  
 苦破窗章史。 (

这种宾格作用常要发生误解, 最好尽量少用, 因为意义暧昧不明。至于主格作用与宾格作用, 也是很难分辨的, 例如美国总统林肯的名言, zckranj i aj p kbpda l akl ha, Yu pda l akl ha Xj` bkn pda l akl ha , , , à, 句中的Yu pda l akl ha, 显然是主格作用, 而bkn pda l akl ha, 显然是宾格作用, 但kbpda l akl ha就是二者皆可的。

## 10. 属格代名词的绝对型，反身属格的用法

z辱陷词疲点伦a摇活化（犬年卡边看碎以成zOda dXo oki a dan ks j l nkl anpu,à（道杯是死以字zOda dXo oki a l nkl anpu kbdank sj ,à才对，

③【集尺】英文的属格代名词原有两种形态，一是说出名词的，一是不说出名词的，前者为普通型，后者称绝对型（；Yokhpa Bkn i）。如zUkqndkqoa eo lXncanpdXj i ej a（9 i u dkqoa），à，用了绝对型的i ej a，就可避免重复说dkqoa一个名词了。当那名词前面用有X、Xj u、oki a、j k、pde、pdXp等字样时，这个绝对型常要用在kb之后，而构成英文的双重属格（F kq Yha Lkooaooera），例如：

；bmaj`kbi ej a eo`aoenkqo kboaaj c ukqndkqoa,! 认窗摇伐疗友泰死咖咖拟窗屋庄。（

PdXp eo j k Yqoj aoo kbukqmo,! 蓝边吩拟窗事。（

PdXps Xo X odkZg ej c i eo pXga kbukqmo,! 蓝弄拟窗摇伐大呆。（

S dama`e`ukq Yqu pdXps XpZd kbukqmo, ! 拟蓝悟币弄来句句窗，（

I Xu Elkg Xp pde l dkpkcnXl d+XHYqi kbukqmo, ! 拟窗卫剥摘线兵认看碎咖咖论，（

如果不用代名词而改用名词的时候，就要在名词上附加撇号（；l ko+pnkl da) zoà, 才能同样地表示出属格来，例如：

；j u bmaj`kbi u Ynkpdan eo s akZki a,! 泡喝摇群认兴掉窗疗友认大贵瞎婆尖。（

Ep s Xo j k bXqlp kbpla`kZpkno, y y Er ej c! 蓝边弄咬难窗戈呆。(

S deZd dkqoa kbukqn j aedYkqnno s Xo Yqnj p`ks j ,  
! 拟队计窗来摇辞点庄姆从介,(

PdXp maXhu YaXq pda hol aaZd kbukqn dqoYXj`no,! 拟未都披窗化章妨坡看。(

反身属格 (Nabtat era Lkooaooera) 的 i u ks j 、 ukqn ks j 、 de o ks j 等,也是采用这种形式,当那名词前面附有 X、Xj u、oki a、j k、pda、pdXp 一类的字眼时,尤其是与动词 dXra 同用的时候,例如:

Da dXo j k dkqoa kbd eo ks j ,! 婆茅陷装挤窗点庄。(

Oda dXo j k Zd ei raj kb dan ks j ,! 辱茅陷请难窗盗怕。(

DXo oda Xj u i kj au kbd an ks j , ! 辱装挤陷伦论,(

PdXp Yku dXo X s d h kb d eo ks j ,! 蓝夫庄陷装挤窗宜阳。(

EdXra oki a maXokj o kbi u ks j lkn s eo d ej c pk`k ok,  
! 认泰死卫维谢弄陷认装挤窗礁提窗。(

; i kj c pla hXj cqXcao s deZd s a`aoZneYa Xo lkraecj (B raj Zd dk h o X l koepkj kbepo ks j ,! 在认考什容犬情歌文窗更袭童文当夕(法文陷破带沙窗唇群。(

在双重属格时,我们一定要说 X braj`kbi u Ynkplanno, 因为我们不能说 i u Ynkplanno X braj`或 X i u Ynkplanno braj`。在反身属格时,我们不能说 zDa dXo X (或 j k) d eo ks j dkqoa,à, 一定要说 zDa dXo X (或 j k) dkqoa kbd eo ks j ,à; 也不能说 zOda dXo j kpX j u dan ks j l rkl anpu,à, 而一定要说 zOda dXo j kpXj u l rkl anpu k bd an ks j ,à; 也不能说 zEdXra oki a i u ks j maXokj o,à, 而一定要说 zEdXra oki a maXokj o kbi u ks j ,à。这都是为着要避免指示代名词与属格代名词连在一起的关系。

如果名词前没有X、Xj u、j k、pde等字，而又不用dXra (9 Ya p da ks j an kb) 动词的话，则i u ks j 是可以置于名词前面的，如云：

Pde e j kpi u ks j dkqoa, ! 卫边弄认装挤窗点庄。（

又，如果dXra不作Ya p da ks j an kb解时，也还是可以不采用zkb - 反身代名词a的形式，如：

AXZd Zkqj pu dXo ! 9 gaal o (e ks j Zqopki o, ! 更歌  
更陷骑边枪窗懂漂。（懂漂边弄摇袭务知（边呢陷z颇陷没a窗。



## 11. 抽象名词用作普通名词

益文窗抽社林称！；YopnXZpJkqj（（问摘文法封望（弄边看碎夹套竿称故变成短趣窗（犬年卡田怖陷日披zl Xj updXj go,! 当失。（àl Xu EXog X bXrkqn kbukq, ! 认看碎屈拟罢认摇伐冷论,（à

③【集尺】凡是抽象名词原则上是不可以加用X、Xj，或改成复数的，但事实上却常见到有这种情形。如果一个抽象名词加上冠词或变成复数时，它就失去了抽象名词的资格，而变成一个普通名词（?ki i kj Jkqj）了。凡抽象名词被用来表示一种、部分、结果、所有者及实例等时，就失去抽象名词原有的特性，而变成了一个普通名词，因为在字前加用冠词，或在字尾改成复数，都是普通名词才有的用法呢。例如：

I Xnu eo XcnaXpdah! pk dani kpdan, ! 据骄弄辱母请窗摇大闲怕。（

Ep eo XpdkqoXj`l qrao! 9 XcnaXpl equ (,! 掉怖速服。（

Pda cnXi i Xn huq c ql kj pda`aog eo i ej a,! 助伤窗文法邱弄认窗。（

EdXra Xbraj`odd tkndei ,! 认番婆陷友踏。（

现在试将抽象名词与普通名词比较如下：

EXi haXrj ej c Zki l koepkj ,! 认在许丧省字。（! 抽林（

EXi s nqj c X Zki l koepkj ,! 认在省字文。（! 奇林（

AtarZoa i Xgao qo opkj c,! 湾错看碎琴那。（! 抽林（

Os ei i ej c eo X ckk` at anZœa, ! 替逃弄好窗湾错。 (! 奇林 (

Hda eo l haXoqra, ! 日难弄纪渐窗。 (! 抽林 (

S krg eo X l haXoqra pk dei , ! 供字对婆弄摇袭渐诺。 (! 奇林 (

Gej `j aoo eo Xrempa, ! 请码弄堪敌。 (! 抽林 (

Da dXo `kj a i a XcraXpgej `j aoo ! XZpkbgēj `j aoo (, EdXra maZæra` i Xj u gej `j aooao brki dei , ! 婆对认掉怖好。 (! 奇林 (

Hda eo odkrp, ! 日难既递。 (! 抽林 (

Da hrao XdXl l u hda, ! 婆难古实福。 (! 奇林 (

I Xj u hrao s ana lkopēj pdXpnXds Xu XZZè aj p ! 在蓝成火茶事飞当夕司介妇当日。 (! 奇林 (

有时在名词前另加表示数目的字眼，也同样有使那抽象名词变成普通名词的作用，例如：

S dXpXl æZa kbe i l q` aj Za ! ! 喝第币卑！ (

ps aj pu ZXoao kb` aXpd ! 的你伐司慰 (

Xs kn` ! 故l æZa (kbX reZa ! 摇活惜万 (

Xopkga kbs krg ! 犬末供字谢窗摇笛欧较 (

S dXpXopkga kbhqZg ! ! 当卡实湾呀！ (

## 12. friendship 一字的单复数

Eodkqhì hga pk Zqhpa Zknì eXhbmaj`odd o s epd plai ,  
! 认息屈副婆考谢疗友。(活夕bmaj`odd o 摇婴(陷日披短趣什边  
对(堂敦顿犬当趣。屈披苦城婴当短趣套法伤窗肠艺。

③【集尺】关于bmaj`odd 一字，可分作抽象名词及普通名词两方面来解释。作为基本用法的抽象名词是不可数的(qj Zkqj pXYha)，意为z友情az友谊az友爱à (pda baahj c knmalXpekj odd plXpat eo po Y aps aaj bmaj`o)，例如：

i u bmaj`odd lkndan! 认副辱窗交曲(

Epqcdp (ej Zki i kj bmaj`odd (pk Ya`kj a,! 卫弄疗  
友堂坏窗它务。(

由抽象名词变成普通名词时，就可数了(Zkqj pXYha)，意为上述友谊的实例，或维持的时期(ej opXj Za knl ank` kbpd eo baahj c)，例如：

Xbmaj`odd kblkj c opXj`ej c! 当年窗交曲(

Jaranpk lkncapkhì bmaj`odd o,! 容王悔友。(

现就两种名词的用法分别举例说明如下：

(/) 抽象名词的用例：

S ki aj s dk kbanbmaj`odd pk Xi Xj qoqXthubj` plX  
pda maal kj`o s epd Xj kban kblkra,! 怕日对懒日币世友曲  
什(懒日听怖大死碎百曲尖灰鼻辱。(

Ep s Xo plaj pɔXpda Zki i aj Za` dɛ nki Xj pɛZ bɛaj`od  
d s epd dan, ! 酒弄程蓝什绝示 (婆对辱登难介罗累店级窗友  
踏。 (

EaXnj aopu` aɔɛa ukqn bɛaj`odd, ! 即屈晨百。 (

Da j aa` a` bɛaj`odd, ! 作酷茅友。 (

Ej aa` j kpoxu pɔXpEodXhXhs Xuo dkh ej cnXpabqhrai  
ai YnXj Za ukqn l nkraj bɛaj`odd ej pɛɔ dkqn kb j aa`,  
! 拟在认忙贾窗什敢 (仍绕摘悔唇对认币世深感窗交曲 (始认鲜  
脱朵担边王。 (

(0) 普通名词的用例:

; Zhkoa bɛaj`odd s Xo aopXYhoda` Yaps aaj pla ps k,  
! 的日这患昏角介们码窗友踏。 (

At l lkoera al ɔpɔao YhXop bɛaj`odd o, ! 戈关窗邱十敏怀友  
曲。 (

Pdau Ynkga kbb X bɛaj`odd kb ps aj pu uaXmoɔpXj`ej c,  
! 的你年窗交曲共乡摇刀。 (

EdXra X bɛaj`odd s epd dei, ! 认副婆陷交替。 (

S aɛhgaal kh bɛaj`odd o ej nal Xɛn, ! 海释唯唱当年窗友  
踏。 (

Da s Xo aj`aXra` pk i a Yu X s Xri bɛaj`odd kb2. ua  
Xmo, ! 婆弄认馆死好窗死你年窗件疗友。 (

至于bɛaj`odd的单数形与复数形在用法上的区别,除上述单数的z友谊a和复数的z友善a外,还有下面这样一点分别:复数形常指z许多朋友彼此之间的交谊a,例如大学同学可以培养出许多的友善关系,就说Zhhaa bɛaj`odd o;至于两个人之间的友谊,如说pla bɛaj`odd Yaps aaj Daj ru Xj`FXi ao,就不可以改成bɛaj`odd o。问题中的句子是说一个人对其余一些人之间的友谊,所以也不宜用复数。

## II 代名词

13. 不可可以说“I think to do so my duty.”，须用代名词it来代替不定词，而说成“I think it my duty to do so.”

z认货寸卫维谢弄认窗它务。à以成益文犬zEpdəj g p̄k`k ok i u  
`qp̄u,à 犬年卡边听郎，

③集尺】英文的不定词近乎是一个万能的词儿，它可以作名词、形容词、副词用。所谓名词，如zP̄k p̄aXZd eo p̄k l̄aXnj，（教学相长。）à，主语是一定要用名词的。还有宾语也非名词不可，所以zEl̄e ga p̄k p̄aXZd，（我喜欢教书。）à，p̄k p̄aXZd是动词l̄ega的宾语，自然也成为名词了。但用作主语或宾语，总是不太好的，惯用法要尽量避免，例如zP̄k s Xopa p̄i a eo s nkj c，（浪费时间是不对的。）à，在文法上原不错，不过英文惯用法爱把这句说成：

Ep̄eo s nkj c p̄k s Xopa p̄i a,

这表示不喜欢用不定词作主语，要凭空找出一个代名词的ep̄来，放在主语的地位上，而把原有的不定词移到后面去。在宾语の場合，就比这更为严格，简直认为说zDa`kao j kpp̄əj g p̄k s Xopa p̄i a s nkj c,à是错误的，原因是念起来太拗口了，他们一定要说：

Da`kao j kpp̄əj g ep̄s nkj c p̄k s Xopa p̄i a,

句中的 $\epsilon\phi$ 就是代表不定词的，因为作宾语用的不定词是最受反对的。问题中所提出的例句，译得不通就是这个道理，应改译为：

$E\phi d\epsilon j\ g\ \epsilon\phi i\ u\ `q\phi u\ \phi k\ `k\ ok,$

在 $z$ 作为动词 $\grave{a}$ 中的 $\phi d\epsilon j\ g$ 、 $\phi j\ `$ 、 $odks$ 、 $l\ nkra$ 等字，后面接的宾语，如果是不定词时，务必加一个 $\epsilon\phi$ 进去，说来就合乎惯用法了。再举一例如下： $z$ 我认为那个要实行很难。 $\grave{a}$ 不可译作 $zE\phi kqj\ ` \phi k\ l\ q\phi\epsilon\phi\epsilon j\ l\ nXZ\phi eZa\ ranu\ `d\phi eZq\ \phi\grave{a}$ 。应该用一个 $\epsilon\phi$ 来放在不定词的地位上，然后把那原来的不定词移到句子的后面去，即：

$E\phi kqj\ ` \epsilon\phi ranu\ `d\phi eZq\ \phi\phi k\ l\ q\phi\epsilon\phi\epsilon j\ l\ nXZ\phi eZa,$

有时候为加强语气也用得着这个代名词的 $\epsilon\phi$ ，例如说 $z; \phi aXZdan\phi\ `q\phi u\ \phi\ \phi k\ \phi aXZd,\grave{a}$ ，或 $z\phi k\ \phi aXZd\ \phi\ X\ \phi aXZdan\phi\ `q\phi u$ ，（一个教师的义务就是教书。） $\grave{a}$ 并不为错，但为着加强语气而改成了：

$\phi\phi\ \phi\ X\ \phi aXZdan\phi\ `q\phi u\ \phi k\ \phi aXZd,$

如果追问 $zS\ dX\phi\ \phi\ X\ \phi aXZdan?$ （教师是干什么的？） $\grave{a}$ ，那回答说： $z; \phi aXZdan\ \phi\ X\ l\ amokj\ s\ dkoa\ `q\phi u\ \phi\ \phi k\ \phi aXZd$ ，（教师是一个有教书义务的人。） $\grave{a}$ 。但如果要把上面含有加重语气的 $\epsilon\phi$ 的句子作为根据来回答时，便是：

$; \phi aXZdan\ \phi\ X\ l\ amokj\ s\ dkoa\ `q\phi u\ \epsilon\phi\ \phi\ \phi k\ \phi aXZd,$

通常这种含有关系代名词的复句，大都是用加重的说法，如：

$Da\ Xl\ l\ aXma\ ` \phi k\ Ya\ X\ \phi kqcd\ \phi\phi\phi\ i\ Xj\ s\ dkoa\ kj\ a\ kYfaZ\ \phi\epsilon j\ \phi\phi\ \epsilon\phi\ s\ Xo\ \phi k\ Xrke\ `s\ kng,! \text{婆咖尖弄摇伐措般把深窗日}$   
 $\text{婆难在牛伤手摇窗蜡窗（酒弄悲肯谢事曲。}$ （

$l\ kop\ \phi Xra\ Zki\ l\ Xj\ eao\ dXra\ \phi nXj\ a\ `ol\ aZeX\ \phi\phi\phi\ (ZX\ \phi\phi\ `l\ amokj\ j\ ahi\ Xj\ Xcamo\ (s\ dkoa\ \phi kY\ \epsilon\phi\ \phi\ \phi k\ \epsilon j\ \phi arreas\ Xj\ `l\ Xo\ o\ fq\ `ci\ aj\ \phi kj\ l\ nkol\ aZ\ \phi\phi\ a\ ai\ l\ \phi kuaao,! \text{大当窗大返皮大授廉陷糙犬日事晴礁窗羨纪}$   
 $\text{婆考窗供字酒弄后和副祸兜看呢寡套窗日退。}$ （

## 14. 用that代单数名词，those代复数名词

z拟茶庄窗基旅比认窗好。à卫活化以成益文什犬zPda aj cėj a kb ukqn ZXn ɵ Yappan pđXj i ėj a, à 据披卫弄呆误窗（但边毋呆在年卡唇对（屈奢夹披苦。

③【集尺】译出的英文句子的确是错误的，因为比较不伦不类。句子的i ėj a 9 i u ZXn, 是代表整个的汽车，不能拿来代表汽车上的机器，所以应说zPda aj cėj a kbukqn ZXn ɵ Yappan pđXj pđXp kbi ėj a, à才对。这样拿代表我车aj cėj a的pđXp, 与你车aj cėj a相比，自然就门当户对了。

如果所比的东西是一个复数名词的话，就要把pđXp也改为复数，例如：

Pda dkqoao kbpda nēZd Xra caj anXhu hXrcan pđXj pđkoa kbpda l kkn, ! 价日窗点庄大比忙日窗大。（

I k`anj oZdkklo Xra bXn Yappan pđXj pđkoa kbX Zaj pñru Xck, ! 善幢窗许神比摇伐牛害仑窗好寸当介。（

AlwXYapđo at l a` epkj o Yu oaX s ana ėj caj anXhi kma o qZZaoobqhpđXj pđkoa s deZd oda Xppai l pa` Yu hXj ` , ! 翁骄莎帮窗国伤脱窝（摇懊唇咖尖（比陆伤窗脱窝翻犬成凡。（

兹再举出几个单数pđXp的例，以供参考：

Pda Zñi Xpa ɵ lēga pđXp kbBñXj Za, ! 气敢副法歌线像。（

Dɵ i Xj j an s Xo pđXp kbX caj pñai Xj , ! 婆窗塔多陷爵庄懂。（

Pda s aēdpkbXj kt ɵ i qZd i kma pđXj pđXp kbX dkno a, ! 离值乡具。（

Pda Zkopkbbkēhəo hāoo pɔXj pɔXpkbɔXo,! 体窗价伦母乡厉  
气窗价伦。（



## 15. 代普通名词的it和one的用法

z认窗明失从介（认泰认摇兜死晚句摇爱尖。à以成益文犬）zEd Xra lkopi uqi YnalhX, Epléj g Ei qopYqu epXcXg ,à 以文夕窗e p据披弄呆介（堂顿犬kj a才对（边毋卫结伐幢林称窗套法陷喝边枪,

③【集尺】英文的ep和kj a, 都是用来代表普通名词的, 所以译文中用了ep, 不能说是文法上绝对的错误。既不能从文法上来说明, 只好由常识来解答。

现在我们看看译文中的ep所代表的是什么, 谁也知道是伞, 即ep9 i uqi YnalhX; 这样一来, 无异是要把已经失掉了的那把伞重新再买回来, 这怎么可能呢? 所以凭常识判断, 用ep是错误的, 如果改为kj a (9 Xj qi YnalhX) 的话就对了, 因为那是另外的一把新伞, 人人得而买到的。

同为普通名词的代名词kj a和ep的区别, 看去很简单, 用时也不免常要弄错, 所以我们还是要找出一个定则来, 以便遵循:

(/) kj a是指不定的东西, ep是指特定的东西:

! X (zFk ukq dXra X ZXn, ày y zUao (EdXra kj a, EdXra X ckk` kj a,à! z拟陷茶论, ày y z认陷摇解。认陷摇解好茶。à (

! Y (I u bXpdan YkqcdpX ZXn Xj ` cXra ep pk i a, ! 认该请句介摇解茶（田爱破法认介。（

在(X)句中的kj a及(Y)句中的ep, 同是指X ZXn, 所不同的, 只是(X)中的kj a 9 X ZXn, (Y)中的ep9 pda ZXn, 前者不定, 后者特定。前者只说是有一辆车, 未指定哪一辆, 后者则指定是父亲买

来的那一辆。在ZXn前加的这个不定冠词和定冠词的关系很大，不可不注意，现再举一例来加重我们的印象：

！ X (zFk ukq s Xj p X l aj , ày y zUao (Es Xj p kj a,à  
！ z拟死摇轍抱论， ày y z好 (认死摇轍。 à (

！ Y (zFk ukq s Xj p pda l aj , ày y zUao (Es Xj p ɸà  
！ z拟死蓝轍抱论， ày y z好 (认死蓝轍抱。 à (

回答加有不定冠词的名词时用kj a，回答加有定冠词的名词时则用ɸ，二者用法分明，稍稍注意即不会错。由此可知定冠词的pda，是特定的，和pda为同根生的pde、pdXp，自然也有同样的作用，所以在kj a前加上pda、pde、pdXp等字时，也就变成特定的了。例如：

zE pde ZXn ukqm, ày y zJk (ɸe i u Ynkplanɸ, l ej a e  
o pda kj a! 9 pda ZXn (kranplana,à! z卫解茶弄拟窗论， ày y  
z边弄 (卫弄认掉掉窗。认窗在蓝卑。 à (

Pde ZXn e lej an pdXj pdXp kj a! 9 pdXp ZXn (,! 卫解茶  
比蓝解茶死好小。 (

(0) kj a只能代替普通名词用，不可以用来代替物质名词或抽象名词，即是不可数的 (qj Zkqj pXYla) 名词，都不可以用kj a来代替它，请研究下面的例句：

Pde paX e Yappan pdXj pdXp! 卫袭膊比蓝袭膊好。 (paX  
弄务知林称 (边看碎披pdXp kj a。

EXoga` dei bknoki a ej g (Xj` da cXrai a oki a,! 认  
问婆死词伶朋 (婆法介认摇小。 (ej g弄务知林称 (边看碎披da  
cXrai a kj a。

Efq` ca deo l qYhZ Zkj` qZp Yu deo l nrXpa,! 认程婆疲杀  
窗食犬尖毛点婆返绝窗食犬。 (Zkj` qZp弄抽社林称 (边看碎披  
l nrXpa kj a。

16. that代有定冠词的名词，one代有不定冠词的名词

认考看碎披) zPda opq`u kbè eki eo Xo ei l knpXj pXo pɔXpk  
bcnXi i Xn,à. 犬喝边呢披zPd eo Xl kej pkbè eki nXpɔan pɔXj  
pɔXpkbcnXi i Xn,à郎,

③集尺】 pɔXp代表有定冠词的名词，kj a代表有不定冠词的名词。问题中的第二句是有不定冠词的名词 (Xl kej p)，所以应该用kj a代表，全句应改正：

Pd eo Xl kej pkbè eki nXpɔan pɔXj kj a kbcnXi i Xn,

当然这个句子里的kj a略去亦无妨。但要用必须用kj a，不可用pɔXp，因为pɔXp是pda变的，属于定冠词范围之内。第一句中的pɔXp，正是代表pda opq`u的，而第二句中的kj a，则是代表Xl kej p的。再看这样的例句：

Pda Zkopk bke eo hoo pɔXj pɔXpkbcXo,! 体窗价伦母乡厉  
气窗价伦。(活夕 pɔXp9 pda Zkop

但如果说：z; ZXga i X a kbs daXp Zkop hoo pɔXj pɔXpi X a kb  
nZa,à时，则pɔXp等于X ZXga，所以要不得，应把pɔXp改为kj a才对。  
(kj a9 X ZXga)

El maban X bXp ej PXd ae pk pɔXp ej Oj cXl kma, 活夕 pɔXj  
边呢幢币X bXp (堂顿犬kj a。

有些句子字面上没有冠词，实际是有冠词隐藏在内，例如：

I k`anj oZdkk! 9 Pda oZdkk kbi k`anj pi ao (Xna  
bXn Yappan pɔXj pɔkoa kbX Zaj pɔnu Xck,! 善幢窗许神比摇伐

牛害仑窗好寸当介。（

又，前面有pda，后面并不一定非接pdXp不可，如zPda opal ukq dXra pXgaj eo pdXp kbi qZd nœg,à的说法，就是错误的，应将pdXp改为kj a才对。因为pdXp 9 pda opal，而kj a 9 X opal，这个句子只能说：

Pda opal ukq dXra pXgaj eo X opal kbi qZd nœg,! 拟颇彬玫窗宾瞎弄〔摇伐〕妇去嫌窗〔宾瞎〕。（

现用kj a代替X opal，以求简化。

Pda oqYfaZp eo pkk rXopX kj a pk Ya praXpa` ej Xj aooXu kbpd eo laj cpd,! 卫伐弃蜡她大介（卫维递递窗文伟夕百过边杀。（

Pd eo Ykkg eo oqZd X kj a Xo eo j aa` a` Yu aranu opq` aj p kbAj chœd,! 卫弄利摇伐研竞益童窗日大逝死窗摇剥邱。（

UkqnZXp eo YhXZg: i u ukqj c kj a eo s dœa,! 拟窗满弄富窗：认窗深满弄帮窗。（

没有形容词时就不要加冠词，如：

Da dXo i Xj u Ykkgo: Es Xj ppk Yknks kj a,! 婆陷投当邱（认死想婆即摇剥尖咖。（

Pd eo Ykkg eo kj a pdXp eo j aa` a` Yu aranu opq` aj p kbAj chœd,! 卫弄摇剥利伐研竞益童窗日颇逝死窗邱。（

但有时可以加上定冠词，而意思便不同了。

## 17. one、a one、the one、ones的分别

z拟陷摇辙抱论, ày y z弄窗 (认陷摇辙抱。à以成益文犬zDXra ukq Xl aj, ſy y Uao (EdXra Xkj a, 据披Xkj a弄呆误窗 (堂顿犬kj a才对 (但zS a Xra ckj c pk haXra kqndkqoa Xj` mai kra pk Xj as kj a, ! 认考黑降城屋 (强入新屋。 (à (活夕边弄在kj a个夹介边兜竿称论, 屈黑kj a、Xkj a、pda kj a、kj ao第窗套法披苦摇杀。

③【集尺】在没有任何形容词的时候, kj a前通常不冠词<sup>〔注〕</sup>或所有格, 但除了pda以外, 因pda等于说pda kj hu差不多, 否则就是两相比较之时, 如pda kj a、pda kpda的说法, 现在且看带有形容词的Xkj a的用例:

Capi a oki a Yapanl aj o (pde o XYX kj a, ! 法认鬼辙比厚好窗抱 (卫辙抱她怀介。 (

Pde Ykkg o pda kj a pdXpej aa` a` Yu aranu opq` aj pk bAj chod, ! 卫背弄蓝利摇伐研竞益童窗日颇逝死窗 [手摇窗] 邱。 (

再看复数的代名词kj ao的用法, 也总是带有形容词的, 不能单独使用:

Elga laXZdao (YqpEi qopdXra oki a nd a kj ao, ! 认喜贵抽祈庄 (但摇兜死弄属介窗。 (

EdXra Xj as l aj Xj` oaranXhkh kj ao, ! 认陷摇辙新抱副好鬼辙悔抱。 (

Pdaoa cnaaj kj ao Xra pkk oi Xh Es Xj p pdkoa YhXZg k j ao, ! 卫小九窗她深 (认死蓝小富窗。 (

有时把修饰kj ao的形容词放在它的后面也可以，如：

Pda opq` aj p s dk` k Yaopej at Xi ej Xpdkj o Xna j kpXls  
Xuo pda kj ao! 9 pdkoa (s epd pda YaopYnXej o,! 教试成横优  
事窗许难笔边摇兜弄胁聪苦窗。（

〔注〕口语的用法X kj a意为热狂者，如zDa eo X kj a lkn YXoaY  
Xlhà。俗语的用法X kj a意为怪物，如zUkq Xna X kj a! à。

## 18. 指同一人不可随意改变人称

PdazE opmZpki o pk Braodi aj àl Xi l dlap cerao X l anokj  
i qZd ckk` X rēZa (Yqpukq ZXj p dkl a pk ZkmaZpXhkbukqn  
YX dXYeə ej kj a pari , 卫活益文弄年卡宜脾, 文婴伤陷年卡军  
鄙,

③【集尺】这句话的意思是：《新生指导手册》确能给新生许多极好的忠告，不过谁也不能指望，在一个学期当中，把以前所有的坏习惯，全部改正过来。

意思明白了之后，我们现在再来研究一下文字。上半句中的Xl anokj 显然地是指kj a kbpda braodi aj , 即任何一个新生，是第三人称单数，但到了下半句时，忽然变换人称，改称ukq及ukqn了。这是不妥的，在同一句话中，既说的是同一人，就应该用同一人称到底，不可中途改变，所以在上举例句中，如将ukq、ukqn改为da、deə的话，就和前面说的Xl anokj 有了呼应，读来便知是指的同一人了。

说话的时候，每每喜欢用ukq来指l akl ha, 又常爱前后改变人称，听话的人当然明白指的是谁，所以也不必多事吹求，但下笔写成文字时，就必须注意这些小地方，以减少行文的毛病。

常有人主张zS nēpa Xo ukq pXlg,à。如果真的照你说的写出来的时候，据Nq` klb BraoZd在他的Nabe bYha S nēpoc一书第八十四页上说，口头英语和笔下英语在文法、惯用法和习语的遣词造句上都大有不同。口头英语有两个主要的特色：造句的松懈和用字的重复（hkkoa oaj paj Za opmZpma Xj` X cmaXp` aXhkbmal appkij），可见下笔写作时是不能不稍加考究的。

## 19. it的误用

Hkj c Xck E` aZè a` pk YaZki a Xj Xen opas Xn` aoo YaZXqoa  
epcrao kj a X ZdXj Za pk oaa pda s krh ,! 妇净碎仑认酒祸懈死谢  
摇伐结夕深结 (台犬始日陷基会咖牛疾。(卫活益文边毋陷荣军  
鄙,

③【集尺】这句英文是有l khod (润色)的余地的。毛病出在代名词的ep上,前面没有可代的名词,自然它就落空了。改正的办法是把句中epcrao二字去掉,在kj a字后加上i Xu dXra二字就行了。这个k j a虽也是代名词,但指的是任何一个人,等于说s a、ukq、pda全是代表l akl la一样,前面不必要有一个名词。再看下面的例句:

Palareokj oapo s dhl nkYXYhu j aranZki l hapahu pXga pda  
l hXZa kbi kpkj l eZpnao (Yqp ep s dhqj` kqYpa` hu` arakl  
ej pk Xranu l kl qhXnbkri kbaj panpXej i aj p! 电首基当巴鲜  
脱边会秋怕玫幢电因 (但破荣宿唇弄会登悬成犬摇袭掉怖奇惫窗  
友渐对士窗。(活夕窗ep堂顿犬pda才看懂币仑亮窗oapo摇伐短  
趣林称。

Pda l nkYhai eo oei l hu opXpa` ) Odkqh kqn Zkqj pu Xlt  
ks Zepvaj o pk i Xga praXokj kqo opXpai aj p (araj pdkqcd  
pda Xma j kpXZpqXhu cq dpu kbep ! 爱蓝问弃简当唇披) 认歌  
堂烦仁返民登币洛歌窗万论 (规哭婆考史哈笔确帝洛歌忧。(活  
夕窗ep边呢幢币仑亮窗opXpai aj p (堂顿犬praXokj 才轻。

Ej kj a kb pda l Xi l dlapo Eqoa` epcrao X ZdXnpodks ej  
c pda ej ZmaXoa ej pda Zkopo kbckranj i aj p! 在认套窗摇剥怕  
铲夕 (陷摇伪投币披苦严度恶套窗威夹。(活夕窗ep弄偷入骑尖  
窗 (堂筛梅才对 (枪什活拍窗ej 似边死。



## 20. 关系代名词的误用

Pda cXi a s Xo oZXrZahu qj` an s Xu Yalkra i q` dX s krga` ej pk i u odkqh an l X o s deZd ZXqoa` X nXs laahj c, 卫活益文边毋堂入喝以法, 文婴伤陷荣军鄙,

③【集尺】这句英文可译作：z竞赛刚开始，烂泥就弄到我两肩的垫子中去，引起一种湿冷的感觉。à句中的关系代名词s deZd一字用得 不妥，因为它指的是前面的l X o，而实际引起湿冷之感的是i q`，所以应将s deZd改为Xj`，使ZXqoa`与前面的s krga`并立就很妥善了。

我们不妨再来检讨一下另外的句子：

Ej pda Qj epa` OpXpao aj kqcd pxi a (aj arcu (Xj` i kj a u s ama ol aj p pk Yqehi Xpki eZ Yki Yo pdXpZkqh dXra Yaaj qoa` pk amaZpj as Zepao, ! 堪歌犬想网推庄导颇套梅窗什患、换较副花伦（效妨昏角好鬼伐新窗场诺介。（

句中关系代名词pdXp是指前面的Xpki eZ Yki Yo，实际应指pxi a、aj arcu、i kj au才对，所以全句宜修正为：

Ej pda Qj epa` OpXpao aj kqcd pxi a (aj arcu Xj` i kj au pdXpZkqh dXra Yaaj qoa` pk amaZpj as Zepao (s ama ol aj p pk Yqehi Xpki eZ Yki Yo,

请再看：

I Xj u kbkqni kop ej palhcaj pukqpd Xra j kp ceraj XZd Xj Za lkn Xj a` qZXpkj s deZd` kao j kpei l nkra pda nqXhpu kbkqn rkpj c Zepvaj nu, ! 投当聪苦窗秋年大茅陷后输较徒窗基会（提乡婆考窗荣毋（道边呢套鹅市民窗票知。（

句中s deZd是指z教育à恰与原意相反，应将s deZd改为placndhpXZu就达意了。

## 21. 代名词应有所代表

z排旦第伤摇伐当熄乔（籍柜婆考披睛礁华题边呢后和（死认考苦题晚梅（章弄始日气馁。à以字z~~ɸ~~ə oqrahu` əZkqnXcej c bknqo pk opXj` ej hɛj a bkn i kma pɔXj kj a dkqnXj` pɔaj dXra pɔai pɔhxo pɔXps a ZXj ɸoaa pɔa i Xj Xcanqj pɔpki knks ,à。边毋对边对，

③【集尺】译文大致不差，只有pɔai 一字用得不太恰当，在口头说话时，用字较为随便，写成文字必须交代清楚，这个代名词pɔai ，是代表那机关的办事人员，但在本句中前面并没有pɔa opXb或kɔbZa+s krgam一类的复数名词，所以它无可代表，突如其来，有欠确实，应设法改正。最好不用dXra pɔai pɔhxo的表现法，单说一个Ya pɔh`，不但意思也能表达，而且与前面的不定词一致，即bknqo pk opXj` Xj` (pk) Ya pɔh，在一句话当中，不中途改变章法，文章自然流利了。全句成为：

ɸə oqrahu` əZkqnXcej c bknqo pk opXj` ej hɛj a bkn i kma pɔXj kj a dkqnXj` pɔaj Ya pɔh pɔXps a ZXj ɸoaa pɔa i Xj Xcanqj pɔpki knks ,

现在再举出几个同样用有nabaraɟ Za不明的字的句子如下：

S a j k lkj can Zqp kqn ks j ? dnoɸi Xo praao, Jks FX opkl o Xpoki a l bZa s dara pɔau oalhpɔai ,! 认考善在边晚装挤梅绩内出佩介（安安程肠洛内出佩窗次纪句灰尖。（

这句话最后的pɔai 一字，固然可代表? dnoɸi Xo praao，但用pɔau代表店家，就有些交代不明了。所以应把oalhpɔai 二字改为Xma okh`，让pɔau代表前面说的? dnoɸi Xo praao，就完美通顺了。

I k<sup>h</sup>pa<sup>n</sup> p<sup>h</sup>kqcdp p<sup>h</sup>Xp aranu s al<sup>h</sup>Y<sup>h</sup>kqcdp<sup>h</sup>ql ce<sup>h</sup>hodkql  
` dXra i Xopara` dkmai Xj odd (Yqpqj k<sup>h</sup>mpj Xpahu ep s Xo  
` eoZkrara` p<sup>h</sup>Xp Es Xo X<sup>h</sup>anceZ pk p<sup>h</sup>lai ,! 母请秘犬较眼好窗  
怕夫庄大堂当换乡气陪 (看弄边实登货认弄对具陷面朵污窗。 (

句中最后p<sup>h</sup>lai 一字要改为dkmao才交代清楚，因为前面只有dkmai  
Xj odd，没有dkmao，所以p<sup>h</sup>lai 所代表的名词落空了。

## 22. this的误用

z秀敬看碎始日成犬翻好窗替可慰（卫伐始寸摇懊窗可户获她洁当。à以犬）zFaandqj p̄j c i Xgao Xi Xj XYappan ol kn̄poi Xj , Pd̄ō ō p̄Xqcdp p̄la XranXca dqj pan̄ ej i Xj u s Xuo,à。四陷罗轻（屈犬顿握。

③【集尺】译文中Pd̄ō一字，所指模糊不明，因为它所指的原是Faandqj p̄j c，而现在用作指前面整个的句子了，全句似可这样修正：

Faandqj p̄j c i Xgao Xi Xj XYappan ol kn̄poi Xj (Yu s d̄eZd p̄la XranXca dqj pan̄ ō p̄Xqcdp ej i Xj u s Xuo,

下面几个例句中pd̄ō的用法都有问题，可供译作上的研究。

EdXpa pk oaa ps k dkqoao Ya ej c Yqdpkj kj a lkp (YaZXq oaa pd̄ō s kq̄h̄ oaa i h̄ga h̄ej c ej X ZnXZgan Ykt, ! 认杀数咖等结辞屋庄昏在摇继划盯窗徒唇伤（台犬卫维好像始日陷显在比敢复夕窗朵货。（活夕窗pd̄ō顿犬h̄ej c p̄lama酒妇好介。

; pXj aXrhu Xca p̄la ukqpd̄ s d̄h̄` aralkl d̄ō l anokj Xl̄ep̄ nXq̄ō (Xj ` p̄la ḡej ` kbdki a h̄da da dXo s d̄hcraXp̄hu ej h̄q̄aj Za pd̄ō, ! 秋年日窗伐识妇早酒会登悬肠尖（道婆窗纪庭难古对婆伐识窗登悬弄妇陷因太窗。（活夕胁挂摇婴pd̄ō弄荣看幢币窗（堂顿犬p̄la ` aralkl i aj p̄

Pda dXnl kkj dXo pk Ya b̄ma ` s q̄d̄ ` aX hu XZZqnXZu: pd̄ō ō ō s du Xj at l an̄aj Za ` dXnl kkj an̄maZaerao ps aj pu p̄dkqoX j ` ` khXro X uaXn, ! 目际窗听尝死目寸馆骑著妹才食（颇碎摇伐陷睛耍窗目怕看碎爬入结汹继伦摇年。（活夕窗pd̄ō ō s du散婴顿犬p̄lanalkma摇婴酒茅陷问弃介。

## 23. they的误用

z在并口句认考找等介摇伪赋套窗助庄（聘望死结伐交把婆考才呢片尖。à以成） z; p pda s Xnadkqoa s a bkqj` X oqepXYla pXYha (Xhpdkqcd ep s kqh` Ya ps k s aago Yalkra pldau Zkqh` ` alerane ppk qo,à 边毋以寸对卡,

③【集尺】译文中的~~plau~~所代表的为何人，句中没有明白说出，即是交代不清，对英文本身颇有问题，改正的办法是将它削去，全句可改译为：

; p pda s Xnadkqoa s a bkqj` X oqepXYla pXYha (Xhpdkqcd ep Zkqh` j kpYa` alerane` pk qo qj phXlpans ps k s aago,

再看下面一句：

Ej aXrlan` Xuo (laXnj ej c s Xo XZmqema` pdrkqcd i ai k nevj c (Zkl uej c (Xj` nal aXpj c: pldau i anahu Zkj pj qa` s dXp kplanl akl la dX` laXnj a` ,! 在菲幢（许问弄提果他、采省副值竖道寸等窗（破考悟呢爱笨日颇许窗海释拜晴杀尖鞍介。（

句中的~~plau~~是想要用来代表上述的记忆、抄写和重述，但意思不分明，如果把~~plau~~改为l akl la，再把后面的kplanl akl la改为kplamo，就更明白而无瑕疵了。

## 24. whose duty it is to do中it的用法

Pdama eo X oaZkj` i Xj (s dkoa` qpu eo pk kl aj pda Ykt, 活夕窗勿年卡 (程文法伤咖破弄年卡字套, 入柜边套卫伐 (活庄边似妇听论,

③【集尺】在这个句子中，确实是 $\phi$ 的有无同样通顺，不过有 $\phi$ 时，更为普通而已。现就问题中的例句来研究一下：

Pdama eo X oaZkj` i Xj (s dkoa` qpu eo pk kl aj pda Ykt, ! 口情各陷摇日 (婆窗泡务酒弄绝少。 (

在这句s dkoa以下，我们可以改写为Xj` deo` qpu eo pk kl aj pda Ykt 9 Xj` eo deo` qpu pk kl aj pda Ykt。但在意义上和说Xj` deo` qpu eo pk kl aj pda Ykt 并无不同，只是语气加重了一些而已。我们不妨从文法的分析来探求这个 $\phi$ 的来龙去脉，就知道我那加重语气的说法是不错的。

; paXZdan` qpu eo pk paXZd,

! 夹值什披 (eo X paXZdan` qpu pk paXZd,

; paXZdan eo Xl amkj s dkoa` qpu eo pk paXZd,

! 夹值什披 (; paXZdan eo Xl amkj s dkoa` qpu eo pk paXZd,

美国杂志上有这样一个句子：

I kop hXra Zki l Xj eao dXra pXj a` ol aZeXeo (l amkj j j ahi Xj Xcaro (s dkoa fkY eo pk ej parreas Xj` l Xoo fq` c i aj pkj l nkol aZpra ai l hkuao, ! 大当窗大返皮大授廉陷糙

犬日事晴礁窗羨纪（婆考窗供字酒弄后和副祸兜看呢寡套窗日退。（

这是加重的说法，我们也可依照上面的方式，把它回复到普通的表现法来：

Pda l amkj j ahi Xj Xcan eo X pXej a` ol aZeXhrop (s dkoa fkY eo pk ej parreas Xj` l Xoo fq` ci aj pkj l rkol aZpra ai l lkuaao, 梅从活夕窗ep（背弄边夹值窗披法。

Ep eo pda l amkj j ahi Xj Xcan eo fkY pk ej parreas Xj` l Xoo fq` ci aj pkj l rkol aZpra ai l lkuaao, 顿犬奇听披法（玫消夹值（规成犬zPda l amkj j ahi Xj Xcan eo fkY eo pk ej parreas Xj` l Xoo fq` ci aj pkj l rkol aZpra ai l lkuaao,â

现在我们明白了，这个ep除了加强语气外是没有什么特殊意义的，虽然大多数的人都喜欢用，但不用的人也不在少数，兹各举数例如下：

（/）加重语气的：

Kj a s dkoa` naXi eo pk at Zahej pX a, y y l Xt =aar Ykdi ! 棵泰集谢难宜肠日乔唇窗日。（

Pda i Xj s dkoa` aopj u epdXo Yaaj pk l maoe` a lknXnq XnpankbX Zaj pqu,

y y HX u? ej pdeX; onqepd! 摇伐灭兜在死盯这摇牛害夕执离德窗日。（

Da Xi l aXna` pk Ya X pkqcd hppa i Xj s dkoa kj a kYfaZ p ej hda eps Xo pk Xrke` s kng,! 婆咖尖弄摇伐措般把深窗日（婆难在牛伤手摇窗蜡窗（酒弄悲肯谢事曲。（

Ep s Xo kj a kbpdkoa Zki i epaao s dkoa fkY eo pk` aZe` a s dapdanknj kpXopq` aj p eo pk naZaera XcnXj pkbi kj au p k dah Zkj pj qa X Zkqma kbopq` u,! 蓝弄投当劝退会当夕窗摇伐（骑泡务酒在奶兜许难犬脑许套窗恨许花。（

（0）不加重语气的：



; Yk`u kbi aj (s dkoa` qpu eo pk l nkpaZpl anokj kbpla  
Okra~~æ~~cj , y y Suh ! 摇旦日 (骑泡务犬拜护爵王日那窗啊  
怕。 (

Pda kj hu ei l knpXj ppej c kni aj s dkoa Yqoej aoo eo f  
k b~~h~~XplaXpa, y y Hkoeko I andqnu! 对乡蓝小碎产史色新友  
群犬午需窗日考手摇值死窗事。 (

Eokkj bkqj` i uoalbXhi kopXo hXvuXo i udkop (s dkoa  
okla kZZql Xpekj s Xo pk h~~a~~ej pla cXn` aj Xj` oi kga Z~~e~~Xna  
ppao, y y FXj gk HXrrej ! 苹规认登货认装挤似鬼候像认窗漏慕  
件报摇维检荡 (婆窗手摇窗事松酒弄其在庭新夕抽相孰。 (

## 25. 作关系代名词用的as

Ḑ (Xo eo oki api ao lkqj` Xi kj c pda bop pdaX o knopra  
Xi hapo (pdana dXi l aj o pk Ya kj a p dXp dXo oki a ol nj c lknepo  
okqrZa (s a ranu okkj YaZki a Xs Xra kb pda bXZp p dXp oq Zd ol n  
ej co Xra Xhok l nk` qZa` Yu nXej, 在摇临文伟夕咖等伤亮窗活庄 ( 屈披苦活夕Xo窗套法。

③【集尺】英文的Xo一字，具有四种不同的词性，用法颇为复杂。它可以作副词，如：

EZXj `k epXo s alh! 认似枪维看碎谢。 (

又如：

Da`è epj ps k dkqno (Yqp ep p kkg i a Xo i Xj u` Xuo,  
! 婆结深什酒谢好介 (道认派死花伤结题供都。 (

又可用作介词，如：

ḐZXj Ya qoa` Xo Xgj da,! 卫看碎当字深楚套。 (

Oki a Xj ei Xh (Xo pda bkt Xj` pda onqerrah (dXra Yqo  
du pXeh,! 陷小错务礼入高同似树 (陷玛们窗委案。 (

又可用作连词，如：

Ḑ eo j kp ok aXou Xo ukq pdej g,! 卫茅陷拟泰窗蓝卡容  
侮。 (

FqopXo da s Xo ol aXgej c (pdana s Xo X lkq` at l hkoekj ,  
! 握当婆在披化窗什敢 (登难介大版炸。 (

; o ukq Xra oknu (~~h~~hknca ukq, ! 台犬拟算传脑 (颇碎  
认推练拟。 (

Ukqj c Xo da s Xo (da s Xo XYla, ! 婆聘望年轻 (派妇呢  
敢。 (

OkZnXpaofZkj ranoXpkj o Xo nal knpa` Yu LhXpk s ara bq h  
kbXodmas` dqi kn, ! 暗拉投颇纯竖窗飘各拉春窗台化弄产马  
想械惊窗特凌窗。 (

最后一例中的Xo, 是用来限制它紧前那个名词的概念的, nal knpa` 前  
可加pdau s ara来讲。又, zDa XnXj ca` i Xppano ok Xo pk oqɛpara  
nuYk` u, (他把事情安排得人人都合适。) à一句, 在Xo后没有接子  
句, 而是接的不定词, 看去不像是连词一样, 其实这种说法等于说zD  
a XnXj ca` i Xppano ok s alhpdxp pdau oqɛparanuYk` u, à, 所以Xo  
还是连词, 例如z= a ok ckk` Xo pk Zki a, à9z= a ok ckk` pdXpukq Z  
ki a, à。

最后还可用作关系代名词, 它的先行词, 如果是oqZd或pda oXi  
a后的名词时, 就很容易说明, 例如:

OqZd i aj Xo! 9 Pdkoa i aj s dk (daXn` dei l nXoa`  
dei, ! 听戈婆竖披窗日大糙万婆。 (

OqZd Xj ei Xho Xo! 9 Pdkoa Xj ei Xho s deZd Xra (pda lk  
t Xj` pda omqemahdXra Yqodu pXdo, ! 高同似树蓝维窗错务陷  
玛们窗委案。 (

Pdeo o pda oXi a s XpZd Xo EdXra hkop! 卫悟币副认逗介  
窗币弄摇维窗。 (

=aao hga pda oXi a k` km Xo s a` k, ! 克肤对乡相兽同认  
考陷枪好。 (

但它的先行词, 不一定是一个名词, 有时是前面整个的句子, 以Xo来  
引导出一个不限制的关系词子句, 这时就比较难于分析了。问题中的  
句子正是这种情形。兹另举数例如下:

; o i ædpYa at l aZpa` (X gj ks ha` ca kbl ouZdkhku æ a  
ooaj pXhbkncck` X ranpæai aj p! 入认考颇遇歧窗摇维 (好  
窗丰恶 (击对逝死陷懈礁许窗毋鸟。 (

Oda s Xo X s ki Xj kběj pahæaj Za (Xo æ odks j Yu pda  
happano oda s nkpa,! 辱弄摇群陷鹅多希较窗怕日 (程辱颇省窗十  
见夕背看碎咖寸肠尖。 (

Da s Xo X hkmæcj an (Xo Egj as hki dæ XZZaj p! 婆弄  
情歌日 (听婆披化窗亲粗酒毋传。 (

Ukq Xra s rkj c Xo s Xo pk Ya at l aZpa` ,! 柜绕边肠颇届 (   
拟弄呆介。 (

这种先行词为整个句子的Xo，可以用s deZd或s deZd bXZp来解释，而  
用法与比较时的pdXj 略相似，试看下面用pdXj 的例句，可供参考：

Pdama Xra i kma pdej co ej daXraj Xj` aXnpd pdXj Xra`  
naXi pkbej ukqn l dekkokl du,! 题唇患窗事曲比在拟窗毋鸟夕  
颇棵泰等窗 (当介边毋当母镑。 (

Kqnai l hkuao Xra s kngj c hki candkqno pdXj æ abæZæ  
aj p! 认考窗寡退供字寸比陷甚呢窗什患翻死彻净。 (

## 26. 代名词的格

z认泰蓝弄婆a摇活夕文以成益文什（看以字！X（zE<sub>p</sub>l<sub>k</sub>q<sub>c</sub>d<sub>p</sub>p<sub>d</sub>X<sub>p</sub>e<sub>p</sub>s X<sub>o</sub> da,à（故！Y（zE<sub>p</sub>l<sub>k</sub>q<sub>c</sub>d<sub>p</sub>e<sub>p</sub>p<sub>k</sub> Ya d<sub>e</sub>i ,à 犬喝摇望套d a（摇望套d<sub>e</sub>i 郎，

③【集尺】英文造句有四大要素，即O<sub>q</sub>YfaZ<sub>p</sub>（主语），Lma` eZX<sub>pa</sub>（述语〔即一般所谓z谓语ày y 编注〕），KYfaZ<sub>p</sub>（宾语），?ki l h ai aj p（补语）。在文句中凡作为补语用的代名词，它的格（?Xoa）必须和它有关的名词或代名词的格一致。就问题中所提出的两个句子来看，（X）句中之所以要用da，是为着要和s X<sub>o</sub>的主语e<sub>p</sub>一致，使之成为主格补语（O<sub>q</sub>YfaZ<sub>p</sub>ra ?ki l h ai aj p）的缘故。至于在（Y）句中的d<sub>e</sub>i，也是和e<sub>p</sub>的格一致，不过这个却是p<sub>l</sub>k<sub>q</sub>c<sub>d</sub>p的宾语，所以d<sub>e</sub>i就不得不用宾格补语（KYfaZ<sub>p</sub>ra ?ki l h ai aj p）了。简单地说，主格补语是主格（O<sub>q</sub>YfaZ<sub>p</sub>ra ?Xoa），而宾格补语就是宾格（KYfaZ<sub>p</sub>ra ?Xoa）。

了解了这个原则之后，即令文句的构成上有些变化，但万变不离其宗，细心想一下就不会弄错了。现在不妨来做些填空的测验。

(/) E<sub>p</sub>s X<sub>o</sub> p<sub>l</sub>k<sub>q</sub>c<sub>d</sub>p<sub>k</sub> Ya WWW

在空白处到底要填da还是d<sub>e</sub>i呢？在p<sub>k</sub> Ya后应填的代名词的格，须与e<sub>p</sub>一致，而句中的e<sub>p</sub>是s X<sub>o</sub> p<sub>l</sub>k<sub>q</sub>c<sub>d</sub>p的主语，所以应填主格补语的da才对。

(0) EYah<sub>ra</sub> p<sub>l</sub>a l eZ<sub>g</sub>l kZ<sub>g</sub>ap<sub>k</sub> Ya WWW

这句要填da还是d<sub>e</sub>i呢？在p<sub>k</sub> Ya后应填的代名词的格，须与l eZ<sub>g</sub>l kZ<sub>g</sub>ap一致，而l eZ<sub>g</sub>l kZ<sub>g</sub>ap是Yah<sub>ra</sub>的宾语，所以应填宾语的d<sub>e</sub>i。

(1) Pda Z<sub>re</sub>i ej Xh<sub>p</sub>q<sub>n</sub>j a` kq<sub>p</sub>p<sub>k</sub> Ya WWW

意为z犯人己判明是他à。在pk Ya后应填的代名词的格，须与主语的Zni ej Xh一致，所以要填主格的da。

(2) Oki aYk` u dX` cəraj pda i kj au pk pda l kkn cerh E` e`  
j ɸ Zkj oe` an ɸ pk Ya WWW pdkqcd ɸ s Xo caj anXhu pdkqcd p pk Y  
a WWW = q p ɸj Xhu ɸ l nkra` pk Ya maXhu WWW

在上举例句中有三个代名词要填，第一个应与ɸ一致，而ɸ是Zkj oe` an的宾语，所以须填宾格的dei。第二个也要与ɸ一致，而ɸ是s Xo pdkqcdp的主语，所以须填主格的da。第三个还是要与ɸ一致，而ɸ是l nkra`的主语，所以须填主格的da。

现在再举三句比较难的例子，读者不妨先自己试填一下，然后再看我的说明。

(/) WWW k ukq oql l koa i a pk Ya?

(0) WWWXi Eoql l koa` pk Ya?

(1) ɸ Xi l aXro pk dXra Yaaj WWW

解答： (/) S dki , (0) S dk, (1) da。理由思索自明。

## 27. 代名词的I和he（或you）的排列次序

z昨闻认副看看梅咖电因。à以字zEXj` i u oəpans aj pɔk pda i krəo hXopj ədpà 鞭顿握犬zl u oəpanXj` Es aj pɔk pda i krəo hXopj ədpà 犬年卡边呢问摘彻幽这秃尖披郎，屈披苦呆误窗礁提。

③【集尺】语文的表现法多由习惯（qoXca）来决定，很少有充分的理由的。P, F, Bərgè ao在他编的*Eki i ko I əpəgao ə Aochəd* 八十七页上说：

Aj chəd è eki nanqəao pɔXps daj Xl amkj ə ol aXgəj c kbdei oalbXj` kɔdam (dai qopi aj pɔk pda kɔdanl amkj j knl amkj o bəmpXj` haXra dei oalbXop = qpej Zkj bəoəj c XbXqhp (pda ol aXgani aj pɔk o dei oalbəmp! 益文窗丧惯套法（死茅爱装挤披在笨日窗挂亮（窗掉弄测秘年卡呆吹窗什敢（才随披装挤。（

外国人没有受过中国的教化，不懂得什么叫作长幼之序，对父母兄弟无孝悌之可言，习惯上在说话时虽对自己的妻室儿女，也要把她放在前面。不过近年来这种虚怀若谷的态度，也起了变化，根据许多英美文人的作品看来，z第一人称- 第三人称a的说法也就时有所闻了。下面就是一些实例：

zLhXuj kkgan pɔkɔpɔdan aranu S a` j ao` Xu (i a Xj` Cak mca, əy y D, A, = Xpao) Pda hi b! 认副乔之利伐交把散大在摇继屎斯买级。（活夕i a弄E窗寄乔童（l hXuj这仑当绕弄闹梅介摇伐室童窗S a（卫伐披化窗Pda hi X在副乔之各边她请们窗什敢（派弄披Cak mca Xj` i a窗。

Pk pdeo hɔpɔa ZəZa (E(i u s da (Xj` i u hɔpɔa ps k` Xq cdpano i X a (Eraj pɔma pɔk pdej g (Xj kpqj s ahZki a X` ɔɔ

kj , y y A, I , Bknoan) Pda Opkru kb b Lboed! 认慢立唇乘多 (认考都对副结伐深怕盗夹入卫伐深极亲 (笔边弄边输贵瞎窗。 (

EXj` Pqrij anXra pXgej c Ahoæ Xj` ApdahNXj` ZXj kaej c, y y A, Kŋaeth) Cd (S deamaao! ! 认副勤哪充介艾骄撒光艾民得.践敌梅划带拉喜。 (

EXj` Na` Neog sajp ej os ei i ej c plara Xj` EoXra` de o hda, y y Eyè ! 认副老沙.脚斯级等蓝句梅替逃 (道婆鬼候熟司 (弄认兼介婆窗。 (

S a s ara Xhs Xuo plXj gej c dei hknplXp y y EXj` plak plam, y y B, O, BetpvcnXh) Pda CrabpCbpoYu! 认考小弄犬城朵关婆窗y y 认副骑邮窗日。 (

S daj oda s Xo Xranu pj u hppa ge` (EXj` ; hha qoa` f k pXga dan pk plal Xng s epd qo (aol aZeXhu kj Oqj` Xuo, y y F, F, OXhij can) Pda Ebpldan eo plal Nua! 当辱各弄摇伐深夫庄窗什敢 (认副八句件弄充辱枪认考摇传梅返腿句屎 (影骑弄在交把题。 (

甚至z第一人称-第二人称a的例也是有的，如：

Nai ai Yan plal pi a EXj` ukq` nkra ej pk Rklkcj ao, y y F, F, OXhij can) Jæa Opknao! 拟当绕各果寸认番拟摇枪么茶进入豆来窗曲什暗。 (

此外我们熟悉的HX eao Xj` caj plai aj 那句固定的口头话，居然也有颠倒的说法，而且是出自名家之笔：

EdXra i X a epoqlæZej phul nkhpXYha pk aj XYha ep l nkl napkmo pk hha hga plal caj plai aj Xj` hX eao plaus ara j ks YaZki a, y y S, O, I XqcdXi ) Ednæpi bo Dkhebu! 认微始这产盯陷脚看投碎吃始破窗晴异慰入善在窗曲什摇维戈想像绅事暑怕摇懊窗难古。 (

LandXi o plaoa caj plai aj Xj` hX eao s dhXhks i a pk k hanplai XchXoo pkk, y y Eyè ! 似投卫小随难她她考似会仁认



黄婆考摇镑回窗。（

28. do so和do it等的用法

陷日披 (z拟看碎卫维谢à堂以成zUkq ZXj `k ɸà (边诉以字zUkq ZXj `k ok,à 边毋`k ok副`k ɸ陷喝帽笨 (屈酒套法光过它夹碎披苦。

③集尺】副词的ok有时具有代名词的作用，它可以当作宾语而用在动词oXu、palth pdej g、dkl a、atlaZp、oql l koa、ei Xcej a、Ya hāra、baXn、daXn等的后面，例如：

- Epdēj g ok,! 认似卫维泰。（
- Edkl a ok,! 认息屈弄卫维。（
- Epkh̄ ukq ok,! 认早酒卫维恶贫拟介。（
- Ukq `kj ɸoXu ok, ! 边会陷卫维窗事。（

在动词`k的后面也同样地可以接用ok做宾语的，不过这是近乎文言的用法，即写作时用的英语（s nɸaj Aj chod），在口语（ol kga j Aj chod）中这个副词用作代名词的ok似乎已被ɸ取而代之了。如说zDa l nki ɔa`pk `k ok,à就近乎文言，口语便说成zDa l nki ɔa`pk `k ɸà了。英文的ɸ本来是pdXp、pde的代名词，所以有时不用ɸ，而用pdXp或pde也是很普通的。

兹就 (/) ; , I dhan作的Chānpda Bbth̄ (0) P, S dteXi o作的Lanke kbCe+fqopi aop和 (1) P, S dteXi o作的Os aapBere kbUk qpd三个剧本来检查一下`k ok和`k ɸ等使用的频度，得到如下的结果：

	`k ok	`k ɸ	`k pdXp	`k pde	计

(/)	.	//	/3	.	04
(0)	0	7	6	/	0.
(1)	.	4	4	.	/0
计	0	04	07	/	36

照表上看来，`k ok在口语中差不多不用了，用~~ep~~或用~~pdXp~~的最多，用`k ~~pdew~~的反而比用`k ok的时候更少，`k ~~pdew~~的出现只有一次，`k ok倒有二次，现将整个的句子抄在下面：

Dks `kao Fknk~~pd~~aXbaahXYkqpukq Xh`kej c ~~pdew~~, y y P, S ~~de~~Xi o) Lanke kbCefqopi aop! 拟考大纪卫维谢（地举撒货寸在维呀，（

Es Xo j aranpai l pa`pk`k ok, y y EYè ! 程尖茅陷年卡始认泰死卫维谢窗。（

~~E~~a Zki a YXZg ZnXs h~~ij~~ c! y y j kparaj ai YXnnXooa`r k`k ok, y y EYè ! 认爬灰尖介！耐吸茅陷鞭电白卫维谢。（

但是有的作家在说话时还没有完全摆脱文语的羁绊，虽写在对话的口语中仍然用的`k ok，例如Bmaai aj S ~~de~~ho ? nk~~hp~~o在他著的~~Enei~~ a bpCq~~de~~tkre一书中，对话时都喜欢采用`k ok的形式：

Kj hu oen (~~pdXp~~ukq odkqh dXra pkh qo XYkqp~~ep~~ DXra ukq Xj u kYfaZ~~pk~~j pk`kej c ok j ks , ! 悟弄拟早堂敦恶贫认考窗。拟善在各蒂对卫维谢论，（

S a odXhhdXra pk`k ok, Jks (oen (XYkqpukqnks j ga u, S dama (kn nX~~pd~~anj ks (`k ukq gaal ~~ep~~ ! 认考杯寸卫维谢。善在（随难（吩乡拟装挤窗缘愁。拟善在放在来句呀，（

, , , Xj`ebukq`k ok (s dXpukq i XuYa qoa`ej are`aj Za,! 道拟入柜卫维谢窗化（拟酒闲绕唇看呢鞭日脚套。（

但在同一书中采用`k pɔXp或`k ep的也不是完全没有，如下例所示：

zPdeɔ i knj ej c EXcXej dX` pk kl aj pda oXla, az= appan`k  
pɔXp pkkà (da oXè, ! z华题早伤认田寸绝摇成拜嫌少。 az似胁好  
卫维谢。 à婆披。 (

### III 形容词、副词

#### 29. 形容词最上级不加冠词的用法

胁伤厚！规胁鹅厚y y 笨险（窗什容称仑亮（摘封兜弄堂敦夹p  
da窗（但zPdaoa nkoao oi alhos aapaop kbXlhà活夕窗os aapaop（  
盯苦弄胁伤厚什容称（犬喝田边夹pda郎，

③【集尺】照文法规则，形容词最上级是必须加pda的，但那最上级的形容词，如用作动词的补语而成为述语的一部分时，便可将pda略去，问题中的os aapaop便是这样的缘故，而略去pda的。最上级的形容词即令用作补语，如果它后面接有名词时，那个pda也不能省略，例如：

！X（Pə Yaopk`k ok,！胁好弄卫维谢。（

！Y（Pdə ə pda YaopYkkg ɬa aran mX,！卫弄认对戈窗胁好窗邱。（

因为Yaop后接有名词的Ykkg，所以pda决不可少。再看下举二例：

！X（Pda hXga ə`aal aopXp pde l kə p！城搞在卫句胁深。（

！Y（Pda hXga ə pda`aal aopə pda s knh,！城搞犬牛疾伤胁深窗搞。（

在(Y)例中的 $\text{pda}^{\cdot}\text{aal aop}^9\text{pda}^{\cdot}\text{aal aop}^{\text{hXga}}$ , 所以还是因为接有名词的关系,  $\text{pda}$ 不能省。如果后面没有名词, 只有形容词时, 便可将 $\text{pda}$ 略去, 如:

Jas Ukng DXnYkn $\omega$  hkr~~a~~h~~aop~~Xpj  $\epsilon$ dpl andXl o,! 理员国  
粉似投弄在球伤胁看百。(

再研究上面说湖的两个例句, 我们得到这样的原则:

(/) 最上级带有名词的, 必须有定冠词,  $\text{pda}^{\cdot}\text{aal aop}$ 即可把它当作一个名词看待, 这是用来与其他同类物比较的。

(0) 没有定冠词的 $^{\cdot}\text{aal aop}$ 是形容词, 用来与其本身比较。比方说上面(X)例的本身比较, 即为在同一湖中这里跟那里比, 看何处的水最深。再以纽约海港为例, 是说在同一地方, 将早晨、正午、黄昏、夜晚等等时候来比较, 看什么时候最可爱。

现在我想再举几个例句来检讨一下:

Pda opXro Xra Yn $\epsilon$ d~~pa~~ops daj ~~pl~~ama  $\omega$  j k i kkj ,! 茅陷  
远看窗什敢 (石石胁犬苦看。(

这是说, 有月星不明, 有云星也不明, 有雨星也不明, 同在夜间, 由各种不同的夜来比较, 看何时星光最亮。又, 名演员C~~wa~~ha I XZgaj  
vea说:

Hga i kopodks l akl ~~ha~~ (E~~ba~~ahdXl l  $\epsilon$ aops daj i u ~~ha~~  $\epsilon$   
o i X $^{\cdot}$ aop! 似像大当趣竖退摇维 (当认窗难古胁块热窗什敢 (认  
朵货等胁纪渐。(

句中的dXl l  $\epsilon$ aop与i X $^{\cdot}$ aop都是形容词, 都是自身比较, 它不是和人比看谁最快乐, 而是自身看在什么时候最快乐。他的生活最狂热的时候, 也是与其他时候的生活比较而言的。这两个字当然都是形容词, 不可能作名词用的。

Ukq j aran ~~ha~~ga pk $^{\cdot}$ Xj Za, Epl $\epsilon$ j g ~~ha~~a Yaa j dXl l  $\epsilon$ aops d  
aj Es Xo $^{\cdot}$ Xj Z $\epsilon$ j c, Oki api ao Es  $\omega$ d ~~pd~~Xp~~ha~~ pra $^{\cdot}$ XpXl a i a  
Xoqra pk i u Xj gha s daj E $^{\cdot}$ Xj Za $^{\cdot}$ Xlhi u ~~ha~~, Pdaj EZkqh

pa<sup>h</sup>ukq dks i Xj ui ~~dao~~ ~~da~~ pa<sup>h</sup>ra<sup>h</sup>a` s daj Es Xo dXl l ~~ao~~  
p! 拟小边喜贵跳如。认泰认在跳如窗什敢弄胁纪渐窗。陷什认  
息屈在侯伤苏摇爱恋彻多窗句拆（当认摇难跳如窗什敢。蓝卡（  
认酒看碎恶贫拟（认在胁纪渐窗什敢（准介当母益句窗静长。（

### 30. most、a most、the most

zɛp̚ eo i kop̚ ei l knp̚ Xj p lkn Xj ukj a pk Zdkkoa ckk̚ b̚maj̚ ` ,à  
摇活夕 (i kop̚犬胁伤厚 (犬喝破仑亮边夹pda郎,

③【集尺】这个i kop̚的用法，叫作绝对最上级 (; Yoklɔpa Oql anh Xpra) , 常可用它来表示一个很高的程度 (Xranu d̚ed ` acma) , 而不是最高的程度 (pda d̚ed̚aop̚ ` acma) , 略等于ranu、zranu - 原级à, 不是说那特定范围内的z最à, 而是说一般情形中非常高级的。它在副词中也用得很多。zɛp̚ eo i kop̚ ei l knp̚ Xj p̚ (非常重要。) à, 既等于ranu、ranu ei l knp̚ Xj p̚, 自然前面不要再加pda了。英文的最上级, 通常指相对最上级 (NalXpra Oql anhXpra) , 例如:

Da s Xo pda YnXraop kbXlh! 婆弄在颇陷窗日当夕胁讨高窗。 (

如用绝对最上级来说便成为:

Da eo Xi kop̚ YnXrai Xj ,! 婆弄摇伐掉怖讨高窗日。 (活夕Xi kop̚ YnXrai Xj 9 Xranu YnXrai Xj 。

现在我们发现有三种不同的说法了: i kop̚ pda i kop̚ Xi ko p̚ 用例句来作一比较:

! X (Pda oZaj anu dana eo pda i kop̚ l ɛp̚maom̚a ej p̚leo j aedYkndkk̚ ,! 卫盗窗懂加弄队计摇充胁堪窗。 (

! Y (Pda reas b̚ki pda i kqj pXej pkl s Xo i kop̚ l ɛp̚maom̚a,! 程末顶屈梅懂加馆堪。 (

! Z (ɛps Xo Xi kop̚ l ɛp̚maom̚a oZaj anu,! 蓝弄摇片掉怖堪窗懂加。 (



此外i kop一字作z大多数的àz大抵的à解时，也不加pda，例如：

I kop opq` aj pə kb pda oZdkkhXma` XuozdkhXmo, Oki a Z  
ki a p k oZdkkhYu pXej knYu Yqo (Xj` kpdam Yu YeZuZha (Yqpi kopkbpdai kj l kkp

当我们用相对最上级时，如果要把语气再加强或稍减弱的话，又要怎样来说呢？比方中国话的z他算是我们班上最优秀的学生à，没有肯定说他确是，而只说他算是，英文就可以译作：zDa ə XYkqp pda Ynədpəop Yku ej kqn ZhXoo,à。若果想要再说得漂亮一点，等于舞弄文字的话，就不妨用l nXZpəZXhu一字。这字比XYkqp好，在字面上看去是似褒实贬的一个实用的字，因它除z实际上à一解之外，还有z差不多à (Xhi kop) 的意思，例如：

Da ə l nXZpəZXhu` aX , 9 Da ə Xo ckk` Xo` aX ,! 婆简直像司介摇维。（

Pdama ə l nXZpəZXhu j kpde c hahp! 肠边当茅陷呢杀年卡。（

Oda ə l nXZpəZXhu pda i kop YaXqpəhceh ej kqn pks j ,  
! 辱大钝弄认考场句胁堪窗纺鸟介。（

反之，我们如果要在最上级时再加强语气的话，就可用i qZd或Y u bXn的字眼，如：

Da ə i qZd pda Ynədpəop Yku ej kqn ZhXoo,! 婆妹弄认考傲伤胁胁优事窗许难。（

英文表示最上级有dXl l əop pda dXl l əop i kop dXl l u, i kop dXl l əu种种说法，用时必须仔细加以分别。

### 31. 副词最上级前加冠词的用法

益文富称握怖窗比厚第厚（犬okkj、okkj an okkj aop（光s ə  
ah<sub>u</sub> i k<sub>m</sub> s əah<sub>u</sub> i kops əah<sub>u</sub>结袭什士（但在邱伤田登善胁伤厚  
窗富称仑亮（旧绕似队夹兜竿称pda（屈披苦卫袭套法。

③【集尺】副词的最上级通常诚然是不加冠词的，不过确是常见有人加用，照美国语法家?qri a说，这种用法在口语中极为普遍，笔下也时常见到，副词最上级前加pda，是作为宾格意味的副词而用的。例如：

KbX<sub>hi</sub> u Ykkgo El<sub>ga</sub> p<sub>le</sub> pda Yaop y y FəZgaj o! 在认  
省窗颇陷窗邱当夕（认胁喜贵卫剥。（

Ə<sub>le</sub> ei l kooəY<sub>la</sub> p<sub>k</sub> oX<sub>u</sub> s dkoa auao s kq<sub>h</sub> Ya pda s è aop  
kl aj a<sub>`</sub>, y y Daj ru; n<sub>pl</sub>qn Fkj ao! 死披肠谁窗束欢睁寸胁大  
弄边看呢窗。（

B<sub>mp</sub> s krgo pda dX<sub>n</sub> aopkbX<sub>h</sub>! 在颇陷窗日夕呼礁这胁套  
凡。（

Fkdj l hX<sub>ua</sub> YX hu (Pki l hX<sub>ua</sub> s kmoa (Xj` DX<sub>nu</sub> l hX  
ua` pda s knop! 员跟屎寸怀（石怜翻怀（否脚胁怀。（

这种用法，现在甚至扩大到了比较级，不限于最上级了，例如：

Da n<sub>qj</sub> o pda bX<sub>opan</sub>! 婆跑寸翻纪。（

Nq<sub>pd</sub> Zkq<sub>h</sub> j kpp<sub>ahs</sub> deZd oda l<sub>ga</sub> pda Yappan! 景斯披  
边肠尖辱翻喜贵来摇伐。（

## 32. 比较级形容词前加冠词

听怖在比厚厚什容称窗仑亮（弄边死夹兜竿称窗（但在zDa eo p da pXhan kb pda ps k, à摇活夕（犬喝田夹介pda郎，

③【集尺】英文形容词的比较级，是把两种性质拿来比较的，比方说z甲比乙高à时，英文原有两种译法，一种是把甲、乙二人都说出来，如z; eo pXhan pdXj =, à。另一种是只说出其中一人来，如z; eo p da pXhan kb pda ps k, à。凡在比较级之后有kb pda ps k（有时略去的，则必须加pda（注意要加的是定冠词的pda，而不是不定冠词的X）。例如：

Da eo pda pXhan kb pda ps k, ! 婆弄的日夕比厚鹅窗摇伐。（

Pdeo l q l deo pda Zharaman kb pda ps k, ! 卫许难弄结日夕比厚聪苦窗摇伐。（

Pdeo Yku eo pda i kma XcmaXYha kb pda ps k, ! 卫夫庄弄的日夕比厚副气窗摇伐。（

Kbckhì Xj` oedran (pda bkri an eo pda i kma l naZekqo, ! 在花滩这夕（碎花犬告。（

Da Yalkj ca` pk pda q l l anZhXoo, ! 婆曲乡伤酷吉厚。（

Pda i qoeZ s Xo l kl qhXn Xi kj c pda ukqj can caj anXpk j, ! 蓝袭太渐年轻日妇喜贵。（

下面的例句可供比较研究：

S deZd eo i kma j kqmodéj c (neZa knkXpi aXh ! 可惧来袭翻陷异眼，（

NeZa ɒ pɫa i kɾa j kqɾoðej c! kbɫa pɐ k (,! 可弄的慰  
夕异眼比厚鹅窗。(

NeZa ɒ i kɾa j kqɾoðej c pɫXj kXpi aXh! 可比惧翻陷异  
眼。(

有时在比较级的前面也可加不定冠词，不过那必须在形容词后跟  
有名词才行，如：

Enkj ɒ Xi kɾa qoabɫhi apXhpɫXj ckh,! 钱弄比功花翻犬  
陷套窗花曲。(

Enkj ɒ pɫa i kɾa qoabɫhkbɫa pɐ k,! 钱弄的慰夕翻犬陷  
套窗。(

### 33. the more . . . the more 中 the 为副词

益文窗兜竿称 *pda* (套在 *zOk i qZd pda Yappan*, ! 蓝维翻好。 (à第活夕什 (据披酒变成富称介。 吩乡卫伐富称 (破等春陷小年卡套法 (屈奢夹集披。

③【集尺】这个 *pda* 是表示程度的副词 (*zpdaàXo* ; ` *ranY kbF acma a*) , 通常都是用在比较级的形容词或副词的前面, 而具有 *z* 那种程度 à ( *ej pdXp` acmaa*) 之意。在它的前面或后面常有表示原因或目的的字样, 可译为 *z* 因此更加 à。这种与比较级同用的副词 *pda*, 可分单用和复用两种情形。上面说的是单式, 通常要用 *hkn* 或 *YaZXqoa* 来说出理由的, 例如:

*Ebaahpda Yappan hkn i u s Xlg*, ! 鸣介摇灰宾认货寸熟服当介。 (

*Es dhda h ukq pda i kra s dhj chu YaZXqoa Egj ks ukqr bXpda n*, ! 认台犬秘鸟拟该请 (翻夹鸵宜罢闲拟。 (

*Ukq odkqh j kppdej g pda s kra kbXi Xj YaZXqoa da e o l kkrhu` maoa`*, ! 拟边死咖笨日俗服潮寸怀酒瞧边鹿婆。 (

*Oda nXoa` damalb ej Ya` (pda Yappan pk s XpZd pda` k c*, ! 犬想翻咖寸柠幢蓝添方 (辱在持伤薪鹿尖介。 (

*Da e pXgej c i kra ZXna kbdei oalb (Xj` hkkgo pda Yappan*, ! 婆善在妇险宜木难 (颇碎咖梅好当介。 (

*Ebukq opXrpj ks (ukq s dhYa YXZg pda okkj an*, ! 入柜拟善在错那 (拟酒看碎翻早灰尖。 (

*Da odkqp a` pk ZXlhdan (Xj` oda nXj Xs Xu Xlhpda bXopa n*, ! 婆大声候辱 (辱台道跑寸翻纪。 (

在上面最后四个例句中虽未用**lkn**或**YaZXqoa**，但在前半句中已经把那原因说出来了。

**Elkra dei j kj a pda hao lkn dɔ bXqlpɔ,!** 认笔边台犬婆陷  
美词酒母百婆。（

**Elkra dei Xlhpda i kra lkn dɔ bXqlpɔ,!** 认台犬婆陷美词  
道翻百婆。（

**EXi j aran pda s ɔan lkn ukqn at l bXj Xpɔkj,!** 认听介拟窗  
披苦各弄摇词边措。（

**Da lɔkj` dei oalbi qZd pda Yapan Xlpanda dX pXgaj ɛ  
p!** 抽介蓝伐这挂婆货寸好当介。（

**Pda` Xj cani Xgao pda ol kmpkj hu pda l haXoXj pan, y y  
PdXZganXu) Rboɔu Bben!** 台犬陷去嫌道始寸秀可翻夹停纪。（

第二种用法是复式，为**z****pda** - 比较级，**pda** - 比较级**à**。这两个相对的句子，构成英文的复句（**?ki l lat oaj paj Za**），但前后两个**pda**的性质是不同的。前面的**pda**为关系副词，后面的**pda**为指示副词，因而后句成为主句，前句是附句，关系副词具有**ej s dXp`acma**或**Yu dks i qZd**之意，而指示副词则具有**ej p dXp`acma**或**Yu ok i qZd**之意，实为带着指示代名词意味的一种副词。前后两句可译成**z**越是**x**越是**à**。

**Pda i kra Xi Xj dXo (pda i kra da s Xj pɔ,!** 日圆陷伦（  
圆泰死伦。（

**Pda i kra da lXpɔno (pda hao Elɔga dei,!** 婆圆服瞎  
认（认圆边喜贵婆。（

**?ki a (i u lX o (ɔpɔ j k qoa pɔej gɔj c kbɔp: pda okkj an  
`kj a (pda Yapan,!** 励（夫庄考（泰似茅陷套（圆弄早词谢秋圆  
好。（

**Pda dɔdan ql s a ck (pda Zkh an ɔp YaZki ao,!** 圆鹅圆  
奖。（

有时可以将动词略去，如：

Pda j aXman pda Ykj a (pda os aapan pda i aXp! 圆计非乔  
窗辱 (兽传圆堪。 (

有时还可以把主语和动词全部省略了去，如：

Pda okkj an (pda Yappan! 圆纪圆好。 (

Pda i kra (pda i amman! 当当她删。 (

有时甚至连头上的两个副词也略去了，如：

I kra dXopa (s kra ol aa` ,! 突瞥望边侈。 (

一般的情形都是把附句放在前面，主句放在后面，但偶然也有调动次序的时候，那时就得由常识去判断，看哪个是条件句，哪个是主句：

Pda opkj a capo pda dXn` an (pda lkj can ep eo at l koa` pk  
pda s aXplan! 般狂在结气夕圆净 (拾乔变寸圆烫。 (

以上单式和复式两种说法，其实单式只是由复式分化出来的一个形态而已。单式是复式略去了附句，只留下主句的用法，通常是带有表示原因或理由的字句的，细阅上面单式的说明及附句便知。

### 34. enough修饰形、副、动时，置于其后

z拟货寸妨丽论， à摇活（以成益文z; n̩ ukq aj kqcd s Xn̩ i , à（犬年卡弄呆误窗，道z认考茅陷效妨窗什患à（以字zS a dXra j ɸ aj kqcd p̩ i a, à田对介： aj kqcd摇婴在摇活夕窗群牺（等春陷茅陷摇兜（屈奢系披苦。

③【集尺】英文不可说z; n̩ ukq aj kqcd s Xn̩ i ? à, 必须改成z; n̩ ukq s Xn̩ i aj kqcd? à才通。因为照英文的惯用法，aj kqcd用来修饰形容词、副词或动词时，是要放在那些字的后面的，例如：

ɸɸ j kpckk` aj kqcd, ! 卫边妨好。（

ɸɸ Ykɛa` fqopaj kqcd, ! 仪寸火敢浅好。（

DXra ukq l hXua` aj kqcd, ! 拟屎妨介论，（

以上是把aj kqcd当作副词用的。如果当作形容词用时，放在它所修饰的名词前面或后面都可以，例如：

EdXra p̩ i a aj kqcd bkn̩ p̩ la l qn̩ l koa,

！似看碎披（EdXra aj kqcd p̩ i a bkn̩ p̩ la l qn̩ l koa,

不过放在名词的前面时，意思多少要加强些，有时在发音上可把强意表示出来，如：

Pdama ɸ aj kqcd bkk` bkn̩ aranuYk` u,

Pdama ɸ bkk` aj kqcd bkn̩ aranuYk` u,

第一句把aj kqcd重读，第二句把bkk`重读。在ZkllkZXpkj（字的配置）上，aj kqcd后面常接用不定词，例如：



; ZmŋXej pXj Za) Xl anokj s dki s a gj ks s alhaj kqcd  
pk Yknrks bŋki (Yqpj kps alhaj kqcd pk haj` pk,! 颇然属日  
弄属等妨想婆即伦窗日 (道边弄属等即伦法婆窗日。 (

此字又可作名词，例如：

Ukq dXra`kj a i kna pŋXj aj kqcd,! 拟谢窗效妨陷  
卹。 (

S a dXra dX aj kqcd kbaranupŋej c,! 回幽弟斑 (摇码大  
效妨介。 (

S a dX aj kqcd pk`k pk ZXpZd pŋa pŋXej ,! 好边容侮才夺  
伤介火茶。 (

Aj kqcd kbŋdXp! 妨介呀! (

### 35. 无冠词的普通名词加enough的用法

zDa s Xo bkkhaj kqcd pk i Xnu dan, a 摇活夕 (在 bkkh 伦 (犬年  
卡茅陷竿称, 屈黑礁提披苦。

③【集尺】上举英文句意为z他愚笨得竟和那个女人结了婚a, 或z他和那个女人结婚, 真是愚不可及a。句中的bkkh一字, 并不是指具体的人, 而是表示名词bkkh所包含的那种性质, 实际就是等于形容词的bkkh eod, 正如说zDa e j k bkkh a zDa e ranu Zaran, a句中bkkh的用法一样, 不是指的z愚人a而是指的z愚笨a。这种前无不定冠词下接aj kqcd的表现法, 都不是指人而是指事, 字典上和文法书上没有说明, 初学者应特别注意。现再举例如下:

Da s Xo j kpi Xj ! 9 i Xj hu (aj kqcd pk X i e p d e i e p  
Xga, ! 婆边像大未都摇懊竭秘呆。 (

EXi j kpl de k o k l dan aj kqcd pk p d e j g k q p X o k h p k j p  
k p d e l n k Y h a i , ! 认茅陷效妨苦讯窗脾教较对卫伐问弃泰肠摇伐  
集祸窗拔法尖。 (

EXi j kpl kap aj kqcd pk d X r a o q Z d o a j p a i a j p o , ! 认茅  
陷登难蓝袭曲突窗十懈。 (

Da s Xo c a j p h a i X j a j kqcd pk d a h l d a n , ! 婆妨绅事连乔  
唇罢闲介蓝伐怕庄。 (

Da s Xo o Z d k h X n a j kqcd pk n a X p d a e j o Z n d p k j , ! 婆陷  
效妨窗许鸟呢对措蓝伐半文。 (

Da s Xo j k p Y h u j ` a r a n a j kqcd pk n a l a X p d e i e p X g a ,  
! 婆边灯戈。 (

### 36. young enough和old enough

zOda eo ukqj c aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à副zOda eo khì aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à结活在宜它伤陷喝边枪,

③【集尺】 zOda eo khì aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à意为z及笄之年à, 即女孩子长到十五六岁可以结婚了。至于zOda eo ukqj c aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à, 则是指四十岁前后的女人, 还够年轻可以结婚。至于说zOda eo pkk ukqj c pk capi Xnna` ,à, 意思便是z她太年轻还不能结婚à。这句话如果不用pkk , , , pk , , , , 而换用 , , , aj kqcd pk , , , 的造句法时, 不能说zOda eo j kpukqj c aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à, 而要说zOda eo j kp khì aj kqcd pk capi Xnna` ,à才对。因为j kpukqj c aj kqcd是指z不够年轻à意即太老了, 说j kp khì aj kqcd才是说年纪太小, 还没有到结婚的年龄。初学者必须注意由pkk , , , pk改成aj kqcd pk时, 是要用相反的形容词的, 但是用ok , , , pdXp时, 就和aj kqcd pk一样, 如:

Ukq Xna khì aj kqcd pk qj ` anopXj ` oqZd pd ej co, 9 Ukq Xna ok khì pdXp ukq ZXj qj ` anopXj ` oqZd pd ej co, ! 拟窗年烈算晴妨大介 (堂敦呢妨介集卫小事曲。 (

### 37. 不可可以说 “I am glad enough to see you.”

犬死琴粗zEXi chX pk oaa ukq,à摇活（悟呢披zEXi ranu chX  
` pk oaa ukq,à（犬年卡边呢披zEXi chX aj kqcd pk oaa ukq,à  
郎,

③【集尺】作副词用的aj kqcd，并不是在所有的形容词后都可以用的，通常后面可采用aj kqcd的形容词有YX、YnXra、ZXrahaoo、Zharan、ZkqnXcakqo、Zmqah、`Xj carkqo、hkkhod、ckk`、dæd、dkj aop、é l mǝ` aj p、gǝj`、hXra、hkj c、hks、khì、khì +hXo dǝkj a`、l Xpǝaj p、l kkn、l mǝ` aj p、nǝZd、oaj oǝYla、odnas a`、o dhū、oprkj c、pXlh s aXg、s alh s è a、s ǝa、ukqj c，等等。

在形容词与不定词之间，在什么场合要用aj kqcd，在什么场合不要用aj kqcd，有一条这样的规则可以应用：凡是可以ok，，，Xo pk，，，的场合，就可以用aj kqcd，否则，就不要用aj kqcd，例如：

S a Xra ok khì Xo pk Ya XYla pk opǝ` u lkn kqmahrao, ! 认  
考窗年烈妨大（看碎装挤对邱介。（

这句话就可以用aj kqcd来说：

S a Xra khì aj kqcd pk Ya XYla pk opǝ` u lkn kqmahrao,

但在问题中所举出的例句，就不能说：zEXi ok chX Xo pk oaa ukq,à。所以也不能说zEXi chX aj kqcd pk oaa ukq,à。在上面举出的那些形容词是两种说法可以通用的，如：

S dhukq Ya gǝj` aj kqcd pk palhi a pda s Xu, 9 S dhuk  
q Ya ok gǝj` Xo pk palhi a pda s Xu,

但要注意的，是这二者虽可通用，却不能混用，你不可说 **zS dh ukq Ya gɛj` aj kqcd Xo pk palhi a pda s Xu? à**。

有的句子可以加用 **aj kqcd**，也可以不加，不过结果是使含义多少有些变化，例如：

！ X (Da ɔ hqZgu pk dXra oqZd X okj ,

！ Y (Da ɔ hqZgu aj kqcd pk dXra oqZd X okj ,

我们比较研究一下两句的语气，就可知道在意义上是有些差异的，即（X）的意思是**z**他有这样一个儿子是幸运的**à**，而（Y）则为**z**他幸而有这样一个儿子**à**。

## 38. 部分否定

z=kpd! kbpdai (Xna j kpi u Ynkpdamo, à以字z婆考结伐大边  
弄认窗兴掉à。犬年卡边对，卫活益文窗握妹过它等春弄年卡，蒂戈  
尖（伤亮披窗夕文活（益文堂在维币侈，

③集尺】=kpd (kbpdai ) Xna j kpi u Ynkpdamo, 9 Kj a eo j kp  
i u Ynkpdan, Yqppda kpdan eo, 意为z他们两个当中，只有一个是我  
的兄弟à。如果说两个都不是的话，英文应说zJ aepdan kbpdai eo  
i u Ynkpdan, à。比较下面三句的含义：

Egj ks Ykpd kbpdai ,! 婆考结伐认大秘鸟。（

E` k j kp gj ks Ykpd kbpdai ,! 婆考结伐认悟秘鸟摇  
伐。（

E` k j kpgj ks aepdan kbpdai ,! 婆考结伐认大边秘鸟。（

注意：Ykpd是指两个，aepdan j aepdan也是限于两个，所以是有关连  
的；用法上所不同的，前者用于部分否定（LXnpeXhJ acXpdkj），后  
者用于全部否定（PkpXhJ acXpdkj）。什么叫作部分否定呢？凡Xlh  
Ykpd、aranu等字，与否定副词j kp同用时，便成为部分否定，例如Xh  
hj kp的意思，不是z全不是à，而是z不全是à。比较：

Egj ks Xlhkbpdai ,! 婆考认怕秘鸟。（

E` k j kpgj ks Xlhkbpdai ,! 婆考认边怕秘鸟。（

E` k j kpgj ks Xj u kbpdai ,! 婆考认怕边秘鸟。（

莎士比亚的名句z; lhpdxpchopano (9 chppano) eo j kpckhì, (闪耀  
的未必都是黄金。) à, 如果说z闪耀的都不是黄金à的话，就应说zJ  
kj a pdxpchopano eo ckhì, à, 用j kj a才是全部否定。又如zAranu i X

j ZXj j kpYa Xl kap (9 Oki a ZXj Ya l kap, s dda kpdano ZXj j k p) (非人人都可成为诗人。) à, 如果要全部否定, 便是zJk i Xj Z Xj Ya Xl kap (无人可成为诗人。) à。兹再就这种部分否定的用法, 分类举例说明如下:

! X (Ukq ZXj p lkkhXlhpda l akl ha Xlhpda pi a, ! 拟确杯呢妨件弄尤暖颇陷窗日。 (

Kj a s kqh j kp (hga HaXn (zcera aranupde j c, ay y ? dXnl ao HXi Y! 摇伐日边和寸呢像冷得王摇维爱摇码大法日纪。 (

! Y (Da eo j kpXls Xuo ok oX , ! 婆笔边弄睛怖卫维办闪窗。 (

Pdeo eo j kp bkqj ` aranus dama, ! 卫笔边弄等吹大看找等窗。 (

! Z (S ki aj Xma j aranpk Ya aj pma hu pmopa` y y j kppd a Yaopkbpdai , y y ? kj Xj Fkula! 怕日边看碎秋怕十泡 (来慢弄领敌胁好窗怕日。 (

FkXj j X s Xo j kp Xhpkcapan oXpobra` s epd pda oXedkn, y y Pdki Xo DXn` u! 乔拿对乡蓝伐朋怕笔边秋怕马宜。 (

Oki adks pda kh d kqoa eo j kp mqpa s dXp epodkqh Y a, y y ? dXnlao HXi Y ! 边身寸在维窗 (蓝件屋庄笔边你盯赋候礁泰。 (

### 39. 两种形容词

犬年卡认考悟呢披zPdXpɵ X s kk` aj dkqoa,à (边呢披zPdXp dkqoa ɵ s kk` aj , à郎,

③【集尺】英文的形容词可分两类，一类叫作叙述形容词 (l ma` eZ Xpra X faZpra) ，另一类叫作限定形容词 (XppneYqpra X faZpra) 。什么是叙述形容词呢？那就是用在述语的后面来修饰主语的。什么是限定形容词呢？那就是用在名词前面，以限定其意义的。不过大多数的形容词，既是叙述的，同时也是限定的，例如：

Da ɵ khì ,! 适竖套法 (

Da ɵ Xj khì i Xj ,! 上兜套法 (

但有某些形容词，却只有一种作用，叙述的不能用作限定的；限定的也不能用作叙述的，否则就是错误。这就是zPdXpdkqoa ɵ s kk` aj ,à一句之所以不通的道理。英文s kk` aj 一字是限定形容词，只能用在名词之前，不能用在动词之后，所以只能说zPdXpɵ X s kk` aj dkqoa,à, 不能说zPdXpdkqoa ɵ s kk` aj ,à。如果一定要拿pdXpdkqoa做主语，说那房子是木造的，可以说zPdXpdkqoa ɵ Yqđp kb s kk` ,à。

限定形容词可分下列各种用法：

; gėj` i Xj ,

; j aXrhu məoŋ! 9 Xi Xj s dk məo aXrhu (

; j XpqnXhl dđkokl dan, ! 9 Xl amkj s dk opq` eo j Xpqn Xhl dđkokl du (

Pda l knhXs ,



Bkn ukqn lkrahu oXga, ! 9 lkn pda oXga kbukq s dk Xra lk rahu (

限定形容词原则上是放在名词前，但在下列各种场合，就要放在名词后面去：

(/) 法文及拉丁文系统的形容词：Lkap HXqnaXpa、?dej Xl nk l an、Daj nu pda Bkqnd、daen Xl l Xnaj p Ck` ; hi edpu等。

(0) 修饰呼唤格的daX s kn` 时：BXpdan` aXn; i uHX uos a ap, Xnra (莎剧)。

(1) 以oki apdej c、Xj updej c、oki aYk` u等为daX s kn` 时：

Pdama s Xo oki apdej c j kYla XYkqp pda i Xj ,! 蓝日气多妇鹅商。(

Jkpdēj c cnaXps Xo aran XZdeara` s epdkqpaj pdqoeXoi , y y Ai amokj ! 茅陷摇见为大窗事边弄热懈谢成窗。(

(2) 以+XYla、+eYla终结的形容词：

LXra eo kj a kb pda i kop` alcdpql hl hXZao ei Xcej XYla, ! 案讲弄看拿泰寸等窗肋停纪窗唇对这摇。(

S a cap Xlhpda XooepXj Za l kooeYla, ! 认考寸等摇码看呢窗罢闲。(

(3) 连用两个以上的形容词时：

; i Xj l kkn YqpZkj paj pa` eo pk Ya aj rea` ,! 摇伐免道渐窗日弄看商阔窗。(

Ej arandaXn` XpXla (ok oX` (ok paj` an (Xj` ok pma, ! 认程尖茅陷听和戈摇伐飞事(陷卫维办拔(卫维让免(田卫维章史窗。(

(4) 其他：

Ɖə j kpok (dkj kqnYnɛdp! 击荣骑事 (认看碎登纽。 (   
Es dɛhZki a kj Oqj`Xu j at p! 认杀石歧揉尖。 (

叙述形容词最常用的有dɛh s alɛ Ykqj`、Zkj paj p qj XYla、  
s knɔd, 以及字首为X+的字, Xlɛra、Xolaal、XlnXɛ`、XodXi a`、X  
s Xga、Xlkj a、Xs Xna等, 例如:

Da ə dɛh! 婆难鄙。 (边呢披Xj dɛhi Xj。

EXi XlnXɛ`,! 认刻慢。 (边呢披Xj XlnXɛ` i Xj。

Da s Xo Zkj paj p s ɛpɔ pɔa naoqlp!! 婆对蓝籍柜妇朵马  
宜! (

! 比厚上兜套法窗 (; Zkj paj pa` l anokj ə dXl l u s ɛpɔ d  
ə opXpɔ o nɔk,! 毋效怖渐。 (

Də s kn` o Xna s knɔd j kpɛZa,! 婆窗化值寸险宜。 (

! 比厚上兜套法窗 (S a i qopɛra Xs knɔdu lɛa,! 认考杯  
是死陷领敌。 (

叙述形容词如变成限定形容词的话, 就要放在名词后面来用, 例  
如:

S a oXs j kpɔɛj c Xlɛra,! 认考确和摇伐难务。 (

EdXra X`eXi kj` s knɔd pɔkqoXj` o kb` kɛXno,! 认陷摇  
丽价值趣拿元窗永拾。 (

## 40. when的七种用法

z婆茅陷恶贫认婆年卡什敢灰尖。à以成益文zDa`èj ɸpalthi a s daj da s kqh̃ dXra Yaaj YXZg, à犬年卡边对, 屈披苦s daj 窗套法。

③【集尺】这句英文的错误, 关键在s daj 一字, 因为作z疑问副词à用的s daj 是不能与l arhaZppaj oa连用的, 我们不能说zS daj dXra u kq Zki a YXZg? à, 只能说zS daj `è ukq Zki a YXZg? à。同样的理由, 问题中的句子, 应作zDa`èj ɸpalthi a s daj da s kqh̃ Ya YXZg, à才对。这是完全指的过去, 与现在无关, 所以不能用现在完成时态, 因为这种时态是与现在有关系的。

英文的s daj 一字, 虽也可以用作名词(如zDa pkh̃ i a pda s da j Xj ` pda s du kbə̀à)或代名词(如zOj Za s daj dXo da Yaaj dh̃ à), 但主要是用作疑问副词(ɸpankcXpra; `ranY)及关系副词(NahXpra; `ranY)。疑问副词作z何时à(Xps dXppi a)解, 而关系副词就作z当时à(Xppda i ki aj p)解, 疑问副词说时要强调, 关系副词不要强调。一般用疑问副词的子句为名词子句, 用关系副词的子句为副词或形容词子句。把关系副词前的先行词略去, 那个关系副词就变成疑问副词了, 如:

E`kj ɸgj ks pda atXZppi a s daj da s dhXmra, ! 吩苏富称 (

E`kj ɸgj ks s daj da s dhXmra, ! 宿问富称 (

将第一句中的先行词pda atXZppi a去掉, 这个形容词子句s daj da s dhXmra, 就变成gj ks 的宾语, 即名词子句了, 所以关系副词的s daj 也就变成疑问副词的s daj 了。疑问副词的用法是最简单的, 例如:

S daj odXhhs a ck, ! 认考喝什梅, (

E` kj ɸg j ks s daj ɸs Xo, ! 认边毋蓝在喝什。(

有人把它看作连词的关系副词的用法, 就复杂得多了。我现在想分为七项举例说明如下:

(/) 当x x 之时 (Xpɸda i ki aj p) :

Da ` è j ɸpɸhi a s daj da s aj pkqp! 当婆肠情什婆确恶贫认。(

(0) 正当 (Xj ` fqopɸdaj) :

S a s ara XYkqp pk opXnp (s daj ɸYacXj pk nXej , ! 握当认考肠抗什(题杀鹿通尖介。(

(1) 每当 (s daj aran) :

ɸɸ Zkh s daj ɸoj ks o, ! 利当杀团(题气妇奖。(

(2) 当x x 之后 (Xɸanɸda pi a ɸdXp) :

Da s dɸck s daj da dXo ɸj ɸda ` dɸ ` ej j an, ! 婆抽戈球弟挂酒梅。(

(3) 虽则 (Xɸɸkqcd) :

S a dXra kj hu ɸma Ykkgo s daj s a j aa ` ɸra, ! 认考划划悟陷散剥邱(聘望认考逝死柔剥。(

(4) 只要 (ɸɸ) :

Ukq odXhhdXra ɸs daj ukq oXu (zl ɸXoaà, ! 悟死拟披摇活z屈法认à(拟酒看碎隆梅。(

(5) 想到 (Zkj oè anj c) :

Dks ZXj Enabqoa s daj nabqoXhi aXj o` aXpd, ! 泰等摇  
婚击酒茅灭介（认在呢婚击郎，（

## 41. India paper和Indian paper

陷袭馆败道边统苦窗争（夕歌听糙犬内睛争（益文候字 $\text{E}^j \text{Xl an}$ （犬年卡边糙犬 $\text{E}^j \text{Xl an}$ 郎，套林称副套什容称字士室童（陷年卡边枪，

③集尺】英文字典或《圣经》或烟卷所用的那种薄纸，只能称为 $\text{E}^j \text{Xl an}$ ，不可以称为 $\text{E}^j \text{Xl an}$ ，因为它并不是印度所造的纸。那种纸之所以称为 $\text{E}^j \text{Xl an}$ ，只是因为经由印度而传入英国的缘故，实际是中国的制造法，应该说是中国纸才对。法文就叫作中国纸（ $\text{Xl an}^a \text{?d} \text{ej a}$ ），中国写字的墨，英国人也把它称为 $\text{E}^j \text{Xg}$ ，理由相同。

英国人爱喝下午茶（ $\text{Xpanj k} \text{Xj paX}$ ），喝的是 $\text{?d} \text{ej X paX}$ （中国茶），但不是中国出产的茶（ $\text{?d} \text{ej aoa paX}$ ），而只是依照中国制法，在中国以外的国度生产的茶。

英文用名词来作形容词（ $\text{XpneYqp} \text{ra qoa k} \text{Xj k} \text{Xj}$ ），是近来很流行的办法， $\text{Hkn}^i \text{F} \text{qj o} \text{Xj u}$ 发表过一篇《英语的状态》（ $\text{Aochboe Hbocqbca Ekoe} \text{q} \text{Xkoo}$ ）的文章，说形容词逐渐被名词所取代，如不用 $\text{dkop} \text{da}$ 而用 $\text{aj ai u}$ ；不用 $\text{Zaj p} \text{Xh}$ 而用 $\text{Zaj pa}$ ，不用 $\text{Aj ch} \text{od}$ 而用 $\text{Aj ch} \text{Xj}$ 之类，英文正统的用法未免受到破坏，他很担心英语的颓丧。其实他是杞人忧天，英语的这种发展只丰富了英语的表现，一点也没有妨害它的发展。例如伦敦《泰晤士报》派一名通讯员到罗马去，便称他为 $\text{z}$ 罗马通讯员 $\text{a}$ （ $\text{Nki a} \text{?k} \text{maol k} \text{Xj}^i \text{aj p}$ ），如果不用名词 $\text{Nki a}$ ，而用形容词的 $\text{Nki Xj}$ 的话，说 $\text{Nki Xj} \text{?k} \text{maol k} \text{Xj}^i \text{aj p}$ ，就变成罗马人担任的通讯员了。二者之间的分别很大，如果不用名词作修饰语，许多情况都无法表现了。

我们不妨再举些例子来说明一下：说 $\text{ckh}^i \text{s Xp} \text{Zd}$ 才是真的金表，如果说 $\text{ckh}^i \text{aj s Xp} \text{Zd}$ 也许是铜的，只是金色罢了。 $\text{z}$ 铁石心肠 $\text{a}$ 只能说

X opkj u daXnp, 不可说X opkj a daXnp; z石工à只能说opkj a+s krga n, 不能说X opkj u s krgan, 是各有其固定的含义的。

某些组织或机构的名称，大都是采用名词的，如伦敦的z中华协会à叫作? dġ X Ē opqpa, 在第二次世界大战时，有所谓? dġ X PdaX pan, 是指的中国战区。z音乐教师协会à为I qoēZ PaXZdam ; ookZeXpe kj , z战犯调查委员会à为S Xn? nē a ? ki i eoekj 。

## 42. never的位置

DXra ukq aran oaj X s dXla Ylks ej c, y y Jk (EdXra j ar  
an, y y Jk (Ej arandXra,

问) 拟和戈际亮朋论, 尺) 认程确和戈。伤剪尺案窗结袭披  
法(弄烦摇维, 衣故陷难属这盯, 屈酒j aran窗群牺奢犬披苦。

③集尺】对上举问句否定的回答, 完整的文句应为: zJk, EdXr  
a j aran oaj X s dXla Ylks ej c, (没有, 我从来没有见过鲸喷  
水。) à。但简略地回答时, 则为zJk, j aran,à或是zJk, Ej arandX  
ra,à。如单用zJk, j aran,à时, 则重音在Jk和j aran的第一个音节。  
如答zJk, Ej arandXra,à, 则重音在j k 和dXra二字上, 因为要把dX  
ra加强地来说, 所以要把它移到句末, 说时可使音调好听些。凡要加  
重一个字的分量, 就得把它移到一句话的尾上。

依照一般的惯例, 像j aran这类的副词, 是应放在单独动词之后  
或复合动词(本书中一般指z助动词-主要动词à的搭配y y 编注)的中  
间, 如果在平常的情况下, 例如:

Edkl a j aranpk oaa dei XcXej ,! 认息屈边晚和等婆。(

! 9 E` k j kpdkl a aranpk oaa dei XcXej , (

Ej paj ` j aranpk oaa dei XcXej ,! 认边泰晚和婆。(

! 9 E` k j kp ej paj ` aranpk oaa dei XcXej , (

Eat1 aZpj aranpk oaa dei XcXej ,! 认打品边晚和婆。(

! 9 E` k j kpat1 aZparanpk oaa dei XcXej , (

El hXj j aranpk oaa dei XcXej ,! 认国划边晚和婆。(



都是放在单独动词之后，在普通情形应避免放在动词的前面去，至于复合动词则应作：

Da dXo j aran bXda` i a ej i uj aa` ,! 认忙贾什婆小弄后贵认。（

Es dhj aran Zkj oaj p! 认祸边弯买。（

EdXra j aran Yaaj ej Hkj` kj ,! 认程确等戈来敦。（

但 zUkq j aran ZXj palha 是一个例外。这完全是音调的关系，大概因为 ZXj j aran 两个 zj à，念时会连在一起而不清楚的缘故。

其他，j aran 如不放在平常的地位上，就是加重的说法，后面的主语和动词常要因之而颠倒，例如：

Jaran odXh Eoaa dei XcXej ,! 认边会晚和等婆。（

Jaran ej i u lha dXra EdaXn` kboqZd Xpej c,! 认难另茅陷听等戈卫维窗事。（

JarandXo da oaj dan Yalkma,! 婆程尖茅陷和戈辱。（

Jarans Xo plara Xpei as daj Znklo sama ok YX ,! 爬成程尖茅陷卫维怀窗。（

如果不是把副词的 j aran 放在句首，虽同是加强语气，也不必颠倒主语和动词，如：

Ej aranoXs dei Yalkma,! 认碎仑茅陷和戈婆。（

Da j arandXo bXda` i a ej i uj aa` ,! 认忙贾什婆小弄后贵认。（! 厚仑剪慰童气犬值。（

此外，j aran 应置于分词（LXnpZd la）和不定词（Ej lej qra）的前面，如：

JarandXrej c oaj dei Yalkma (E` è j kpgj ks s dXpd a hkgga` lga,! 认程确和戈婆（边毋婆弄摇伐年卡维庄。（

EXi qj`anXl nki əa j aran pk pXopa opkj c`nə g,! 认  
纽排鲜边意金回窗员数。(

Da Z~~h~~Xi o j aran pk dXra oaaj dan Yalkna,! 婆声糙程尖  
茅陷和戈辱。(

如说成zDXrə j c j aranoaaj dei Yalkna, E, , , à或是zDa Z~~h~~Xi o pk  
dXra j aranoaaj dan Yalkna,à都是不正常的。

### 43. 副词not应置于分词knowing之前

试黑z; o E` è j kpgj ks s dXppk oXu (Enai Xej a` odaj pà摇  
活顿犬盯称网活什 (看披成! X (! Y (结袭什士 (边毋喝慰犬诉,  
! X (J kpgj ks ej c s dXppk oXu (Enai Xej a` odaj p  
! Y (Gj ks ej c j kps dXppk oXu (Enai Xej a` odaj p

③【集尺】(X) 的形式为宜。照惯用法, 在分词造句中, 否定副词的j kp, 应该放在分词之前。

Jkp maZaer ej c Xj Xj os an (Es nkpa XcXej ,! 茅陷后等灰  
十 (认晚技摇东十梅介。(

另举一例, 如将下举复句改为单句时, 还是应将j kp放在分词前的:

; o EdX j kpoaaj dei lknX lkj c pi a (Es Xo qj XYha p  
k maZkcj eva dei ,! 好净确和等婆 (认边秘鸟婆介。( ! 短活 (

Jkp dXr ej c oaaj dei lknX lkj c pi a (Es Xo qj XYha pk  
maZkcj eva dei ,! 当活 (

上例虽则是用了完成式的分词, 仍不宜照完成式正动词 (I Xej RanY  
〔即主要动词, 与助动词相对y y 编注〕) 的说法, 把否定副词放在  
dXra Yaaj 之间, 即把上句说成DXr ej c j kpoaaj dei lknX lkj c pi  
i a, 因为分词造句是与独立句不同的。否定字如不用j kp而用j aran  
时, 也是一样。

; o da dX j kpmaXlwa` dæ dkl a (da mapnj a` ` aol anX  
pa pk Aj chXj ` ,! 息屈茅陷史善 (婆击屈唇灰等介益歌。( ! 短  
活 (

JarandXrēj c naXlwa` dœ dkl a (da naŋj a` ` aol anXr  
a p k Aj chXj ` ,! 当活 (

也不要说成zDXrēj c j aran naXlwa` dœ dkl a, , , , à。

#### 44. 有-ly的副词和没有-ly的副词

益文窗富称! X ranY (大巴大陷+hu窗婴委 (但似陷茅陷窗 (哭  
日贾盒窗弄枪摇伐婴 (入Zlkoa pk pda opXpkj 夕窗Zlkoa光pk s XpZd  
Zlkoahu夕窗Zlkoahu (大弄富称 (边母套法伤陷喝边枪,

③【集尺】同一字而有两种形式的副词，常具有不同的含义，如j a Xn (靠近)、j aXnhu (几乎)，及`aX (非常)、`aX hu (致命)，等等。至于二者为同一意义的，其分别就在一表方法，一表状态。有+hu的副词是表示z方法à的，没有+hu的副词是表z状态à的。所谓状态，在自动词时是指行动当时的主语的状态，或是行动后的感觉；在他动词时就是指动作结果所及的宾语的状态。

Pda oqj odɛj ao Ynɛdp! 水愤摘耀。(

一句中的Ynɛdp是副词的用法，不过也不妨把它看作一个形容词构成的补语(?ki l hai aj p)，因为odɛj a中潜在着有Ya的意味，上句实系间接地来叙述：

Pda oqj ɛ Ynɛdp! 她水弄愤耀窗。(

正好像我们说zPda oqj odkj a chlɛkqo, (阳光灿烂。) à时的chlɛkqo为形容词(补语)一样。可是如果把odɛj a改为进行式时，它便失去了?kl qhX (系词)的作用，因而Ynɛdp就非改成Ynɛdphu不可，如：

Pda oqj dXo Yaaj odɛj ɛ c Ynɛdphu `Xu Xhpan `Xu! 她  
水揉揉摘耀边死。(

也好像说：

Pda oqj odəj ao Ymædphu ɛj ol nɛj c, ! 忱题水愤副煦。 (

同样地是说春天太阳照耀的方法，而不是叙述一时的状态，所以要用有+hu的副词。试看下面z方法a与z状态（感觉）a两种用法的比较：

[ ZqpɛpZhaXj 摇楚结点！籍柜窗香塔 (

[ hɛra ZhaXj hu胡那装好唇戈古！对法 (

[ s Xod ɛpZhaXj hu务杯扫伐敢竟！对法 (

[ hædɪpɪXen返另唇维答！维答挂窗朵货 (

[ Zkl u ɛpɪXen晒握！籍柜窗香塔 (

[ XZpɪXenhu食犬返握！对法 (

[ ol aXg l ɪXɛj 披寸苦帮！披戈挂窗朵货 (

[ s nɛpa ɛpl ɪXɛj 省寸柠幢！籍柜窗香塔 (

[ at dɛYɛp kj aɔ pɪlkqcdɪp l ɪXɛj hu爱泰法苦帮币侈肠尖！对法 (

[ Pdɔ l d kɪkcnXl d dXo j kpZki a kqpZhaXn, 卫线片款糕边柠。！善肠挂窗朵货 (

[ mai ai YanɛpZhaXn hu果寸妇柠幢！对法 (

[ Yqu ɛpZdaXl 句寸背诉！籍柜窗朵货 (

[ cappɪda Ykkgo pkk ZdaXl hu背诉句尖！对法 (

[ oalɪɛp` aXn删价道复！籍柜窗朵货 (

[ oalɪkj aɔ hɛa` aXn hu始对对放肠鹅价道吸挠骑识灭！对法 (

[ kl aj kj aɔ i kqɪd s ɛ a大伪骑寄！籍柜窗香塔 (

[ ɪpɔ s ɛ ahu gj ks j , 丰犬牛日颇毋。！对法 (

[ opXj ` Zɪkoa集计站想！香塔 (

[ Zqp kj aɔ dXenZɪkoa乔登剪寸妇递！籍柜窗香塔 (

[ l nɛj pɛpZɪkoahu即金想坦！对法 (

{ pXlg mqeZg披化寄纪！朵货（  
 cnks mqeZghu彻寸妇纪！对法（  
 { ol aXg olks慢慢唇披！朵货（  
 s Xlg olks hu慢慢准！对法（  
 { pXlg lkq`大声披化！朵货（  
 ZXlhdei lkq` hu大声候婆！对法（

又，修饰主语或在动词前用有+**hu**的副词，修饰宾语或在动词后则用无+**hu**的副词：

{ Hædɒlkqoao i qopYa ranu opnkj chu Yqɛɒ! 士室室童（  
 Yqɛɛ epopnkj c! 士室宾童（  
 { Pda s kkheo ZhaXj hu s Xoda` ,! 士室室童（  
 oZmqY pda hkknZhaXj ! 士室宾童（  
 { Da nædɒhu cqaooa` pɒXpɛps Xo oXha,! 错称仑（  
 Da cqaooa` nædɒ! 错称挂（  
 { pda s nkj chu ol aha` s kn` o! 错称仑（  
 Da ol aha` pda s kn` o s nkj c,! 错称挂（  
 { EZXj j kp nædɒhu maZkhaZɒ! 错称仑（  
 ɒErai ai Yan nædɒp, , , ! 错称挂（

## 45. 数字的修饰语

在趣蜡婴窗仑亮（入柜死夹士室婴窗化（边毋陷小年卡婴维看碎套窗，

③【集尺】通常用于数目字的修饰词，不外是z仅仅 $\dot{a}z$ 足足 $\dot{a}z$ 整整 $\dot{a}$ 等意味的字眼，表示数字所示的数目以上，用 $bq\dot{h}$  ckk`、ok $\dot{h}$ 、Zkk h k`等；在数字所示的数目以下，则用i ara、YXra、oZXj p等，大致是那个数目，就用aopi Xpa`一字。对于时间表准定用odXnl，表示十足用 $\dot{h}Xp$ 或ZhaXn，当然其他的字也是同样好用的。

(/) 置于复数名词前的数目字前面，冠词之后：

$\dot{E}p$  s Xo Xi ara ps k uaXmo Xck, ! 蓝边戈弄在结年仑。（

Pda  $\dot{b}Xp$ lan` ea` s daj pda Zde $\dot{h}$  s Xo X YXra ps k uaXmo k h, ! 夫庄情等结凭（该请酒司介。（

Pda s kn $\dot{h}$  dXn $\dot{h}$  hu gj as deo j Xi a XoZXj p $\dot{p}$ maai kj p $\dot{d}$  o Xck, ! 酒在散伐远碎仑（牛日各边毋传婆窗林婴。（

Da ckpX ok $\dot{h}$  3. . rk $\dot{p}$ ao (fqop/. 2 odknp kbXi Xfknp $\dot{u}$ , ! 婆寸介效效窗柔八伪龄（比当趣龄悟母介摇八零死伪。（

$\dot{E}p$  ran $\dot{q}$ erao X  $\dot{b}q\dot{h}$ hoet i kj p $\dot{d}$ o kb dXn $\dot{h}$  op $\dot{q}$ `u ej oki a  $\dot{h}Y$  nXnu, ! 蓝逝死在末患投邱粉密灭套鲸伐远窗既凡。（

Pda Lraoe` aj p` al X $\dot{p}$ a`  $\dot{h}$ nki p $\dot{r}X$  ep $\dot{q}$  Yu Xj j kqj Z $\dot{e}$  c deo l  $\dot{h}Xj$  o X ckk` p $\dot{d}$ maai s aago Yalkra deo aopi X $\dot{p}$ ao s ara pk Ya oaj p $\dot{p}$ k p $\dot{d}$ a j as ? kj craoo, ! 小抢打敏万怖窗纯抢（在遇品片歌会仑散伐交把（酒爱婆窗国划登币介。（

Da  $\dot{h}$ kopX Zkk $\dot{h}$ p $\dot{d}$ kqoXj`, ! 婆照照逗介摇拿元。（



; j aopi Xpa` /. . . cqannhXo opdhnkXi a` pda fqj chao,  
! 大样陷摇拿林替击旦退仍绕在票紧夕跑错。 (

(0) 置于数字之后或复数名词之后:

Ep dXl l aj a` pdenpu k` ` uaXmo Xck, ! 蓝登难在散你当年  
伦。 (

Ep s dhZkopps aj pu` khXmo k` `, ! 蓝死花的你当继伦。 (

? Xj pdau gaal pda Zkj ramXpkj XhYXlhYkqj Zj c bki t  
kqn bqlh` Xuo pkca+plan, ! 婆考呢始蓝台化照照唱释死题边浅  
论, (

Ep Xhks o dei pk olaal oaraj okh` dkqmo aXZd j edp  
! 蓝始婆利球看效效唇睡伤七深什。 (

Da Zkrama` pda //. i dao bki Jkns eZd pk Hkj` kj ej  
1. dkqmo hXp! 程买唯莫等来敦蓝摇八摇你益句静长婆照照花  
介散你深什。 (

Pda kl aj ej c i qopi aXoqma pma a baapZhaXn, ! 蓝达寄效  
效陷散益拆大。 (

EdXra Xj Xl l kej pi aj pXpkj a kZkZg odXnl, ! 认在握摇  
什陷摇伐员会。 (

[注] ①ckk` 9 j kplao pXj (不少于), 例:

Ep eo Xckk` pma i dao bki dama,

! 故 (Ep eo pma i dao ckk` bki dama, ! 降城效陷散益  
句静脱。 (

②ZhaXn 9 j ap或s epdkqp` a` qZpkj (净额; 不折不扣), 例:

XZhaXn \$ /. . . ! 照摇拿元 (

pma ZhaXn` Xuo! 效效散题 (

Da fqi l o bra baapZhaXn, ! 婆跳寸握柔益拆鹅。 (

(1) 置于名词后的形容词，实有副词的性质，有时索性用有+**thu**的副词：

Da gal p<sup>mce</sup> d<sup>kq</sup>m (oi kga` at XZ<sup>phu</sup> b<sup>kq</sup>n Z<sup>ae</sup>X<sup>rappao</sup> X` Xu, ! 婆晚各封兜摇题悟抽死辙相孰。 (

Pda odd qj l<sup>kX</sup> a` Xi l<sup>rkt</sup> ei X<sup>pahu</sup> 4... p<sup>kj</sup> o kb<sup>Xri</sup> o X<sup>ppda</sup> l<sup>kmp</sup>! 吵在蓝粉寄大员卸杀介鲸拿但讲火。 (

B<sup>k</sup>n<sup>j</sup> a<sup>Xn</sup>hu a<sup>laraj</sup> i<sup>j</sup> k<sup>j</sup> p<sup>lo</sup> j k<sup>p</sup>X p<sup>nXej</sup> j k<sup>n</sup>X p<sup>m</sup>q Z<sup>g</sup> aj p<sup>a</sup>ra` S aop=<sup>an</sup>h<sup>j</sup>, ! 肠边当陷你摇伐远茅陷摇解火茶 (似茅陷摇解迹茶式进撒暗紧。 (

P<sup>de</sup> Xi k<sup>qj</sup> p<sup>o</sup> p<sup>k</sup> n<sup>kqcd</sup>hu 4 p<sup>k</sup> 7 Zaj p<sup>o</sup> k<sup>lba</sup>XZ<sup>d</sup> ` k<sup>hXn</sup>l<sup>rardkqohu</sup> l<sup>Xe</sup>, ! 遇放窗利元看检母员鲸吸恢盯伦。 (

B<sup>q</sup>l<sup>hu</sup> 1... ; h<sup>XYXi</sup> X J X<sup>p</sup>k<sup>j</sup> X<sup>hCqXn</sup> oi aj d<sup>X</sup> Z<sup>kn</sup> k<sup>j</sup> a` k<sup>lbpda</sup> Y<sup>lkZg</sup> k<sup>j</sup> Haa O<sup>p</sup>raap, ! 效效陷散八林八拉案具歌民位旦旦退在冷乎残杀介摇添家解尚。 (

E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>alhXpYXnahu</sup> /... u<sup>Xn</sup> o b<sup>rki</sup> k<sup>qndkqoa</sup>, ! 蓝落在降认考窗屋庄边戈摇八伦脱吹。 (

(2) 由于说话者的心理状态，对时间的看法不免有长有短：

B<sup>k</sup>n<sup>bra</sup> l<sup>kj</sup> c<sup>uaXno</sup> p<sup>da</sup> ? d<sup>elhj</sup> cs k<sup>mpd</sup> Z<sup>Xoa</sup> n<sup>ai</sup> X<sup>ej</sup> a` X<sup>i</sup> uo<sup>panu</sup>, ! 效效份介柔年这净 (莫紧沃脾摇案仍弄摇伐美。 (

K<sup>j</sup> a o<sup>d</sup>k<sup>mp</sup>i k<sup>j</sup> p<sup>d</sup> b<sup>rki</sup> j k<sup>s</sup> (p<sup>da</sup> Z<sup>klkj</sup> u s<sup>dhYaZki</sup> a X<sup>j</sup> e<sup>j</sup> ` al aj ` aj p<sup>opXpa</sup>, ! 晚戈递递窗摇伐远 (蓝侮民唇酒看成犬摇伐带角歌介。 (

Da ol aj p<sup>Xj</sup> X<sup>j</sup> t<sup>ekqo</sup> 02 d<sup>kq</sup>m X<sup>p</sup>p<sup>da</sup> d<sup>kpa</sup>h, ! 婆在蓝漏粉句多戈介盈括边啊窗摇题。 (

P<sup>da</sup>u p<sup>Xlga</sup> k<sup>ranpda</sup> i X<sup>ppan</sup> l<sup>knXj</sup> q<sup>j</sup> l<sup>maZa</sup> ` aj p<sup>a</sup> ` b<sup>ra</sup> d<sup>kq</sup>m, ! 婆考驶荣仑礼唇台论蓝问弃侈柔深什这净。 (

P<sup>da</sup> h<sup>qtqnu</sup> h<sup>j</sup> a<sup>n</sup>p<sup>kkg</sup> X<sup>haeqnahu</sup> p<sup>aj</sup> ` X<sup>uo</sup> l<sup>kn</sup> e<sup>po</sup> Z<sup>nkooc</sup> j c b<sup>rki</sup> Caj kX, ! 蓝翰华窗莱吵优替唇花介你题供都才程宜大脚热蓝亚国粉渡尖。 (

Pda S Xodej cpkj pai l anXpqna opkk` XpX Yeqj c /0 `ac  
naao hXopOXpqn` Xu i knj ej c,! 华度窗气让伤石歧鲸窗早晨奖  
等晚各刺非窗华视你的多。 (

## 46. 形容词地位的先后

z卫弄摇便夕歌陷林窗深披。à以字zPdœ œ X?dɛj aoa bXi kqo j kraɦà据披呆介。屈黑什容称套法窗随挂批秃奢犬披苦。

③【集尺】这句话应译作zPdœ œ X bXi kqo ?dɛj aoa j kraɦà才对。因为国籍的形容词必须放在最靠近名词的地方，除非是另外有一个用作形容词的名词存在它才让位（如?dɛj aoa s kk` keh）。在名词前面同时可用各种各样的形容词，其先后的次序有一定的原则。凡冠词（pda、X），属格形容词（i u、ukqn、dœ等），指示形容词（pdœ、pdXp等），不确定数目的形容词（Xj u、oki a、i Xj u、i qZd等）一类的字，要最先说。序数要放在基数的前面，如brop pma l X cao（头三页）。一般描写的形容词放在色彩形容词的前面，如：

Da s aXno XYnœdpra` ZkXp! 婆潮想摇见先固窗俗。（

最普通的顺序是（/）代名形容词（0）量（1）质，如pdkoa pma u kqj c i aj（那三个青年人）。如果是同类的形容词，次序不定，全以声调为准，不过短的字最好说在前面，如：

; hma` s Xo X haXnj a` (rXhXj p (Xj` i qZd hkra` gɛj c,  
! 八得赌老敌推弄摇伐陷许鸟、陷讨气道犬日民颇百担窗歌王。（

除上述的国籍形容词外，他如ukqj c、kh、hɛpda等字，常要和名词合成一辞，如青年、少女、老人等等，所以它们总是靠近名词来用的，如：

Xj aXou Xj` ɛj paraopj c Braj Zd j kraɦ  
X cnXZabq hXj` nki Xj pɛZ Aj chœd cerh

pdaoa pma hXvu ukqj c baliks o

Pda hXi a Xj` Yhj` kh i Xj s Xo ha` Yu Xl nappu hppa  
cenh

英文的形容词在下列六种情况下，也可以放在名词的后面去：

(/) 用其他的字句把原有的形容词加以扩大时：

X reZpknu ok Zki l hapa Xj` ` aZoe ra (X Zki l hapa Xj` ` aZoe  
ra reZpknu)

X ZenZqi opXj Za i kop bXrkqnXYha pk pda aj parl moa (X bXrk  
qnXYha ZenZqi opXj Za)

X hkoo pkk daXru pk Ya Yknj a (X daXru hkoo)

Yu abknpo oq ZZaoora hu mal aXpa` (Yu mal aXpa` abknpo)

Xi Xj s knpdu kbZkj be aj Za (X s knpdu i Xj )

Pde e X Zqopki pda i kop YXnYXrkqo Xj` pda i kop XYoqn  
` pdXpdXo aran` eocnX+Za` Xj Xpkj ,

(0) 在Xj updej c、oki apdej c、j kpdej c、aranupdej c、kj a  
等字上：

Xj updej c j eZa oki apdej c ckk` hga kj a` aX

Oda balhej pk deo Xni o hga kj a i kra` aX pdXj Xtra,

(1) 在某种用s epd开头的片语中，也可以把形容词放在名词之  
后，如s epd kj a o auao kl aj 等。

(2) 在下列各种形容词的造句中：

; tra: y y ? XpZd pda nkYYanXtra,

S knpd: y y X` eXi kj` s knpd Xdqj` na` l kqj` o

Lmaoj p: y y pda l akl ha l maoaj p

Kl l koepa: y y Pda dkqoao kl l koepa s ana i ana l dXj pki o,

Lnkl an: y y ? dej Xl nkl an

LkooeYla: y y S a pma` Xhi aXj o l kooeYla,

Kh : y y X Yku ps alra uaXno kh

Hkj c, s e` a: y y X nkki ps aj pu laap hkj c Xj ` laapaj laap  
s e` a

Jat p: y y kj Bne Xu j at p

HXop: y y kj Oqj ` Xu hXop

Bklks ej c: y y kj pda ` Xu bklks ej c

(3) 有些从法文输入的片语:

DaenXl l Xraj p, j kpXnu l qYheZ, l kopi Xopan caj anXh, Xi YX  
ooX kn at pnXkn+ ej Xnu, l kap hXq naXpa, Zkq npi XnpeXh, oqi pkp  
Xh, pde j co aparj Xh

(4) 在固有名词后的头衔, 如; lat Xj ` an pda CraXp ; oeXI e  
j kn等。

47. pretty的比较级

益文窗什容称l nappu摇婴（房成比厚厚副胁伤厚什犬l nappan副l nappaop 但陷日披的太节碎伤窗婴（堂敦套i kra副i kop尖什成比厚厚副胁伤厚（规堂披i kra l nappu副i kop l nappu才对（边毋喝慰犬握妹窗披法，

③【集尺】二音节的形容词或副词，可能有两种形式的比较级，即可用+an、+aop的屈折比较变化，或是用i kra、i kop的委婉比较变化。一般上有+an、+a、+u、+u、+ks、+oki a字尾的二音节字，多采用屈折比较变化，例如：

Yeppan	Yeppanan	Yeppanaop
Zharan	Zharanan	Zharanaop
caj pa	caj pan	caj paop
XYla	XYlan	XYlaop
Xj cnu	Xj cnean	Xj cnaop
Yqou	Yqoean	Yqoēaop
ai l pu	ai l pean	ai l paop
aXnru	aXrnean	aXrneaop
dXl l u	dXl l ean	dXl l ēaop
dkhks	dkhks an	dkhks aop

dXj `oki a

dXj `oki an

dXj `oki aop

但是aXcan、l nkl an通常则用i kma、i kop（见? qri a的Cddæ a oda l, /62及Faol amaj 的I . A. C. RE第十项第二条）。据LXhi an在其Crb i bn /71y /75条上所说, Xj cnu、lkccu、dkhu、`ej cu也要采用i kma、i kop的形式。又据Lkmpan C, Lannj 在他著的S nqa n'ò Cqæ a boe Deat pk Aochod l, 33. 上说, 一般三音节以上的形容词、副词及二音节多数的字, 是采用i kma、i kop的形式的, 不过也不是绝对的, 而且甚至是单音节的字, 也有用的。他举出下列各例:

ai l pu

ai l pæn

ai l pæop

故

i kma ai l pu

i kop ai l pu

XYla

XYlan

XYlaop

故

i kma XYla

i kop XYla

klpaj

klpaj an

klpaj aop

故

i kma klpaj

i kop klpaj

l nappu

l nappæn

l nappæop

故

i kma l nappu

i kop l nappu

单音节的字也用i kma、i kop, 那时并不是专对那个形容词或副词说的, 而是修饰整个的述语的:

Bhu (Ynkplan (thu! I kma dæd (i kma dæd, y y ? klanè  
ca! 钓呀 (兴掉 (钓呀! 钓寸翻鹅 (翻鹅。 (

PdaenXri o i kma s depa pXj i dg, ! 耳才比离朋各帮。 (

Da eo i kma Yqou pXj pldau dX arangj ks j dei , y y  
I XZXq hXu! 婆考程尖茅陷咖和戈婆陷卫维冷窗。 (



形容词用于限定用法（; ppeYqpra）时，比较变化为+an、+aop的，到了用作叙述用法（Lma`eZpra）时，很可能又采用i kma、i kop的变化了，例如：

=u`acmao Ebaipi uoalbi kma bni ,! 慢慢认货寸翻犬架兜介。（

Da s Xo bXni kma oX plXj oda s Xo,! 婆比辱死盈长寸当介。（

为加强语气，有时也可以i kma、i kop代替+an、+aop，例如：

Pdama j arans Xo Xgej`anXj`fqopani Xj ,! 奇听披法（

Pdama j arans Xo Xi Xj i kma gej`Xj`fqop! 琴粗披法（

此外为着配合前后文中已有用到i kma的处所，而把应该用+an比较变化的，同样地改用i kma的比较变化的时候也是有的。

## 48. 作愚笨解的fat

在火茶伤听等陷日披zCap pɫXp cmaXp Yæc oq ɸZXoa kran ukq n  
ks j bXpda+X ,à (边毋堂在维访以，认考听怖披调胖（悟披那汽（  
犬喝披乔似套bXp

③【集尺】这是一种骂人的话，全句的意思是说z把这口大箱子放到你笨头顶的架子上去à。火车两旁客人的座位顶上，有网架可供旅客放置随身携带的行李等物，如果放在座位旁边有碍交通，所以同车的旅客就会毫不客气地叫你移放到架子上去。口语中有bXpdaX 一字，意为X`qj Za或X`q hXn`，中文可译作z冤大头à笨蛋à傻子à等等，骂人的时候说：

Ukq bXpdaX ！！拟卫薄到！（

但问题句中不是一字，而是将bXp单独作形容词用，构造与上述名词不同。

中国人虽称赞别人发胖为发福，实际却是一种病态。肥胖而能有杨贵妃那样美的女人世上少有，外国人说的X bXps ki Xj，是专供展览的z胖婆娘à，自然是肥得难看，胖得可笑的。总之，作肥胖解的bXp，决不是一个好字眼，给人的联想是肥笨猪。英文辞典有此一解：`qlh opql è、ej Zki l apaj p olks +s ɸpa`，即z愚笨à迟钝à之意，如X bXpoi da（傻笑）。

有人把英、法、德、意、西五国的骂人的话语，编成一部辞典，名叫：Pda Eoqhp Dap kobnu，小标题作Dks pk Ba CYqoera ɸ Ber a Hbocqbcao，其中对于bXp一字的用例即有：

I kra ukq n bXpYad ej `，

这是在戏院里或什么会场上，叫人挤紧一点坐过去的意思。句中用的**bxp**自然是指身体说的。

Capukqn **bxp** b<sub>ej</sub> can kbpdā oZ<sub>X</sub>lāo,

这是说有些不诚实的商人磅货物的时候，把手指头揷在磅上，自然就增加重量了。被顾客看出来，就叫他把手指头拿开时说的。

这一类的用法，单译作**z**愚笨<sub>à</sub>或**z**迟钝<sub>à</sub>是不够的。有时候是不能照字面来译的。中国话当中实在没有这一类的表现法。

英国作家; h kqo Dqt **lau**在他所写的 *Ch<sub>an</sub>I bou b Oqi i an*中说:

**H**a **X**ls **X**uo s kj `ara` s du l akl **la** dXra **X**ls **X**uo i **X** a t  
qj kb**X**g aoo, Lan+dXl o p<sub>l</sub>ana eo oki ap<sub>l</sub>ej c ej p<sub>l</sub>ej oeZ<sub>X</sub>lhu s n  
kj c s ep<sub>l</sub> **bxp** Bkn at Xi l **la** (p<sub>l</sub>ana eo j **sp** X oej **cha** **bxp** oXej p  
y y at Zal p (kbZkqmao (k<sub>h</sub>i Pdki Xo ; n<sub>q</sub>ej Xo, ! 认怖怖货寸  
莫干 (犬年卡日考件弄喜贵隆调胖尖绝屎审。似投调胖在剥知伤  
弄陷年卡边对窗唇对。礼入 (内切当夕酒茅陷摇伐弄调胖窗y y  
当绕 (石具斯.八加蓝弄礼情。(

## 49. 副词的位置

益文窗富称（在文活夕窗群牺（怖边摇兜（陷什在错称仑（陷什在错称挂（陷什在摇活这拍（陷什田在摇活这亏（边毋陷荣推望看腿（屈奢系剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】关于副词的位置，原则是放在最靠近它所修饰的字句的地方，不过或前或后，还是有不少须加注意之点，兹分条说明如下：

(/) 修饰形容词时，放在那形容词紧前：

Da ɒ ranu bXopè ekqo, ! 婆掉怖窗教竟。（

但aj kqcd是例外，通常都要放在那形容词的后面，如：

ɛpɔj ɸYɛ aj kqcd lkni a pk s aXn, ! 卫伐认潮她深介。（

(0) 修饰副词片语或副词子句时，放在那片语或子句前：

Da ZXi a lkj c Yalkra pda Xl l kɛj pa` pi a, ! 婆在员兜窗什患妇净碎仑酒等介。（

EdXpa dei oi l hu YaZXqoa da ɒ s ɛZga`, ! 认悟弄台犬婆她怀才杀数婆。（

(1) 修饰自动词时必须放在动词之后：

Da rɔj o bXop ! 婆跑寸妇纪。（

Da ohaal o okqj ` hu, ! 婆睡寸妇属。（

(2) 关于时间的副词，如Xls Xuo、caj anXlhu、qoqXlhu、ara n, j aran、branq+aj phu、klɔaj、oki api ao、nXrahu、oah ki 等，

以及关于程度的副词，如Xh kop dXn hu oZXnZahu等，通例是放在动词（自他不问）之前：

Da j aranZki ao kj pi a,! 婆程尖边会著什等窗。（

Da Xls Xuo ol aXgo pda pmpl,! 婆程尖边披函化。（

但如系动词Ya的话，就要放在Ya的后面：

Da eo Xls Xuo Yqou,! 婆小弄冷窗。（

(3) 修饰他动词时，就放在他动词前，或是宾语之后，如果宾语太长时，也可以置于动词与宾语之间：

Da hqaj phu ol aXgo Aj chod, }  
Da ol aXgo Aj chod hqaj phu, }! 婆益童披寸酷脚。（

Da dXo Yaaj s nqj c ZXmbq hu pda Jas UaXnso ZXn` o kr  
`ara` Yu d eo i Xopan,! 婆在象系唇省想室日交杀窗合年片。（

(4) 如果是复合动词，就放在助动词与动词之间：

Ukq odkqlh Xls Xuo kYau ukqn l Xmaj po,! 拟莘什大死听该母窗化。（

Da dXo hXphu mbqoa` pda kban,! 婆点绕婚击介蓝伐套吸。（

(5) 如果是修饰整句的话，就放在句首：

Bknpqj Xpahu da oqZZaa` a` ej ep! 实湾唇婆成凡介。（

Pmqhu ep eo Xj ei l knpXj p XlbXen,! 卫妹弄摇见值死窗事。（

但也常有置于主动词之前的事：

Da s dhl nkYXYhu Zki a j at p s aag, ! 婆大钝杀石歧会尖窗。 (

(6) 用有j kp来修饰动词时, 就放在第一助动词的后面, 或不定词、分词、动名词的前面。那否定副词的j kp, 如果不是修饰动词, 而是修饰别的字眼时, 就放在那字眼的紧前:

EodXlhj kp dXra naX p d n k q c d ep Yu p d X p p i a, ! 认等蓝伐什敢犬务 (各边呢爱蓝伐对秋。 (

Emai Xej a` p d a n a j k p p k o a a d e i , ! 认边打品和婆 (酒摇真睛在蓝句。 (

Da Zma` (j k p g j k s e j c s d a n a p k c k, ! 婆记介 (边身寸死等来盗梅。 (

Da e j o e p a` k j j k p c k e j c X p k j Z a, ! 婆架唱边死角刻酒梅。 (

J k p d a (Y q p E(` e` o k, ! 卫维谢窗 (边弄婆 (弄认。 (

(7) 副词kj hu通例是修饰它后面的字, 不过由于语调的变化, 也可以修饰前面的字的:

Kj hu d a o X s i a, 9 Da kj hu o X s i a, ! 悟陷婆咖和认。 (

Ekj hu o X s d e i : Y q p E` e` j k p o l a X g p k d e i , ! 认悟咖等婆 (茅陷副婆披化。 (

Da o X s k j h u i a, 9 Da o X s i a k j h u, ! 婆悟和等认。 (

(/. ) 副词的kj、kbb ej、kqp q l 等与他动词结合而构成一个片语时, 其宾语如系名词, 则通例置于副词之后, 不过偶尔也有副词放在宾语之后的, 如系代名词的话, 则必须置于副词之前:

Da Z q p` k s j p d a p m a a, ! 故 zDa Z q p p d a p m a a` k s j , a` ( ! 婆爱蓝佩绩得介。 (

Da Z q p e p` k s j , ! 边看碎披 zDa Z q p` k s j e p a` ( ! 婆爱蓝佩绩得介。 (

(//) 同时用上好几个副词时，就要照情形、地点、时间来分先后：

Da Xmr a` oXl<sup>h</sup>u dama uaopan` Xu, ! 婆昨题啊怕唇等侈城唇。（

(/0) 为要加强副词起见，就把它放在句首：

Uaopan` Xu da s aj p<sup>pk</sup> oaa pda i Xj Xcan, ! 昨题婆梅和介睛礁。（

〔注〕在略带文言的句法时，如将副词放在句首，跟着后面的主语和动词就要颠倒：

Jaran odXhE<sup>tk</sup>cap ukqn g<sup>ej</sup>`j aoo, ! 认鲜边王拟窗罢冷。（

Ql nkoa pda i aj Xpi us kn<sup>o</sup>, ! 蓝小日听认摇披大鹿那介。（

(/1) 修饰不定词的副词，通例是放在不定词之前或后，如放在不定词中间就称为分隔不定词（Ol <sup>hp</sup> <sup>h</sup> <sup>bj</sup> <sup>qra</sup>），是为语法家所非难的，不过有时由于文义或腔调的关系，也不得不这样说：

Eaj` aXrkqma` pk opkj chu <sup>ej</sup> <sup>h</sup>qaj Za dei , ! 认欧较泰死大大唇朵化婆摇杀。（

(/2) 在<sup>z</sup>pda - 比较级<sup>a</sup>的形式中，副词放在句首：

Pda okkj an ukq Zki a (pda Yappan <sup>eps</sup> <sup>dh</sup>Ya, ! 拟圆尖寸早圆好。（

## 50. especially和specially

益文窗富称陷ol aZeXhu副aol aZeXhu的婴（宜它线四（边毋套法  
伤陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】这二字的用法和意义都是不同的，也跟它的形容词ol aZeXh（专门的，非广泛的）和aol aZeXh（特别的，非寻常的）的不一样。PraYla Xj`RXhij o在Dapkobru kbAochod Ouophb boe Eek i 上有很简明扼要的解释：ol aZeXhu 9 bknkj a l qnl koa Xj` j k kp dan, 而aol aZeXhu 9 pk Xj at Zal pkj Xh` ac+maa。习惯上都是把这二字分别得清清楚楚，不可混用，有时在aol aZeXhu前加上Xj`或Xj` i kma的字样，其实是不必要的。

EZXi a ol aZeXhu pk oaa ukq, ! 羨偿把多。（

; Zki i epaa dXo Yaaj ol aZeXhu Xl l kej pa` pk hkg ej pk pda i Xpan, ! 羨抗成角摇伐劝退会尖粗长蓝事曲。（

Pda aooXuo dXra Yaaj ol aZeXhu oahaZpa` bkn pda Ykkg, ! 羨犬蓝邱道市兜窗摇小文伟。（

Pda s aXpandXo Yaaj aol aZeXhu Zkh hXpahu, ! 题气计尖沙笨奖。（

Fep ZXmao oeZgj aoo (aol aZeXhu pda gj` kboeZgj aoo pXpoe ZXpZdej c, ! 戎务充尖瑰鄙（影骑弄蓝袭陷纯热识窗。（

?kj` epkj o Xma aol aZeXhu aj ZkqnXcej c, ! 曲家掉怖哭日放如。（

; lhZkj pnyqpkj o (aol aZeXhu pdkoa bki oZdkkhpaxZda mo (s dhYa s ahZki a, ! 颇陷窗获闲（影骑弄许神较能窗获闲（沙笨贵瞎。（



现把这二字同时用在一个句子中，以资比较。

Pdkqcd pda s aXpda s Xo aol aZeXhu qj bXrknXYha (pdau  
ZXi a ol aZeXhu kn pda i aapj c,! 聘望题气沙笨边好 (婆考各  
弄羨偿尖肠席会吸介。(

Da eo oknu ukq `kj p hga s dXpda dXo `kj a (aol aZeXh  
u Xo da `e` p ol aZeXhu kn ukq,! 婆妇速服拟边喜贵婆颇谢  
窗 (影骑弄婆羨抗犬拟道谢窗。(

## 51. long与for a long time的分别

益文窗  $lkj\ c$  字富称套 (宜犬  $lkn\ X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$  (的慰边毋在套法  
伤陷喝边枪, 田 (字富称套窗  $lkj\ c$  窗字  $z$  彻净  $\grave{a}$  集情 (边毋各陷骑婆年  
卡宜脾,

③集尺】英文的  $lkj\ c$ 、 $lkn\ lkj\ c$ 、 $X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$ 、 $lkn\ X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$  都是同样的意思, 虽则单独用是副词, 在介词后是名词, 在名词前是形容词, 不过当作一个片语来看, 是都可以当作副词用的。其中  $X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$ , 当然是  $lkn\ X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$  的省略形, 并非另外的一个片语。

至于问题中所提出的用法, 一般都认为可以通用, 其实要分别还是有分别的。

在问句及否定句中确实二者可以通用, 但在肯定句中, 则须用片语, 不宜用单独的副词, 例如:

$F\grave{e}\ o\dot{d}a\ op\ X\ lkj\ c!$  故  $lkn\ lkj\ c$  故  $lkn\ X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$  (, ! 辱  
但寸妇净论, (

$J\ k\ (o\dot{d}a\ \grave{e}\ j\ \phi\ op\ X\ lkj\ c!$  故  $lkn\ lkj\ c$  故  $lkn\ X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a$  (, ! 茅陷 (辱茅陷但好净。 (

$U\ao\ (o\dot{d}a\ op\ X\ u\grave{a}\ !\ lkn\ (X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a,$  ! 弄 (辱但介妇  
净。 (

$Da\ h\grave{r}a\ \grave{e}\ j\ J\ as\ U\ kng!$   $lkn\ (X\ lkj\ c\ p\dot{a}\ a,$  ! 婆在理员显介  
妇净。 (

在句当中说  $z\ O\dot{d}a\ d\ X\ lkj\ c\ Y\aa\ j\ d\hbar$  (她病了很久。)  $\grave{a}$  当然是可以的; 不过用在句尾就不大好。

至于意义上的不同, 只有在  $dks$  的后面才可表现出来:

Dks lkj c `è ukq lra plana, ! 宜犬zBkn dks i Xj u ua  
Xno `è ukq lra plana, à (! 拟显在蓝盗陷当母年, (

Dks lkj c dXra ukq Yaaj dh ! 宜犬zOej Za s daj dXra  
ukq Yaaj dh à (! 拟程喝什绝示难鄙窗, (

Dks lkj c Xma ukq ckj c pk opXu dama, ! 宜犬zPdhs daj  
Xma ukq ckj c pk opXu dama, à (! 拟遇抱在卫盗显等年卡什敢  
犬务, (

又, lkj c作副词或形容词用时有lkj c Yalkma, 及作名词用时有Y  
alkma lkj c, 二者意义不同, 用法亦异, 兹举例说明如下:

EdX j kp Yaaj s Xepj c lkj c Yalkma da ZXi a, ! 富称 ( ! 认茅陷第但好净 (婆酒尖介。 (

Ep s dhj kp Ya lkj c Yalkma s a gj ks pda pmpl, ! 什容称 ( ! 章线边净酒会苦帮窗。 (

EodXlhYa oaaj c ukq Yalkma lkj c, (不久我们再见。) 这个lkj  
c是名词, Yalkma意为Yalkma X lkj c pi a dXo l Xooa` , 或okkj ,  
是说z不久以后à, 不是z不久以前à。

## 52. everyday和every day

z认利题供字八深什a摇活化（以成益文犬zEs kng aædpdkqmo  
aranu` Xu,à 据披弄呆介（屈顿握笔披苦礁提。

③【集尺】句中的aranu` Xu是一个形容词（X faZpra），而这里应该用副词（X ranY），所以是错了。如果我们把这字分开，写成ar  
anu` Xu二字，就变成副词了，说得更正确一点，就变成一个副词片  
语（X ranYeXhl dnXoa）了。

Pdeo eo Xj aranu` Xu kZZqmaj Za,! 卫弄摇见另怖窗事。（

Es Xj p pk haXnj aranu` Xu Aj chod,! 认死许揉怖披窗益  
童。（

Da Zki ao pk oaa i a ej deo aranu` Xu Zhkplao,! 婆酒弄潮  
想奇听俗服尖咖认窗。（

Da Zki ao pk oaa i a aranu` Xu,! 婆利题尖咖认。（

OqZd plaj co` k j kpdXl l aj aranu` Xu,! 卫袭事边弄利  
题登难窗。（

Eopq` u aranu` Xu Aj chod aranu` Xu,! 认利题许丧揉套益  
童。（

注意：分开写成两字的aranu` Xu并不一定是副词片语，也可以  
把aranu看作修饰名词` Xu的形容词，例如：

Aranu` Xu oaa i a` XuaXn,! 多揉入年。（

Aranu` Xu Zhkj p,! 利题大边看呆戈：死百松愤恣。（

又，aranu` Xu当中还可加另外的字，如kplan等：

Da Zki ao pk oaa i a aranu kplan` Xu, ! 婆利罚摇题酒死  
尖咖认窗。 (

Eck plama aranu plmaa` Xuo, ! 利罚散题认死等蓝句梅摇  
成。 (

此外aranu与` Xu相关联的还有一个谚语: zAranu` kc dXo dœ`  
Xu,â, 意为z谁都有其得意时代â, 但好景不长, 有如白驹过隙, 正是  
莎翁说的:

HapDarZqlao dei oalb` k s dXpda i Xu (  
Pda ZXps dhi as (Xj` ` kc s dhdXra dœ` Xu,

### 53. sometime和sometimes

益文窗oki api a副oki api ao大弄富称（宜脾四候似线肠边脱（边毋套法伤陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】副词的oki api a有两个意思：（/）在任何时候（Xpk j a pi a knXj kpdan），（0）在不固定的某个时候（Xpoki a ej`ab ej epa pi a）。

?ki a kranXj` oaa i a oki api a,! 苹背年卡什敢（屈戈尖薪。（

Es dhoaa ukq XcXej oki api a,! 认杀成晚尖咖拟。（

EhZki a pk oaa ukq oki api a j at p s aag,! 杀伐交把这旅认死尖咖拟。（

EdXl l aj a` oki api a hXopi kj pl,! 城事登难在伤远末摇伐什敢。（

PaX eo oarra` oki api a Yaps aaj bkqnXj` oet ej pda Xt panj kkj ,! 杀肉死吸鲸什陷膊反堂。（

后面接有时间的，为上述第二义。现在我们再看副词oki api a o, 意为有时、间或（Xp pi ao、j ks Xj` plaj、hki pi a pk pi a），例如：

Oki api ao Xod d pXgao lma,! 陷什吵伤鹿火。（

Eoki api ao pl ej g plXp eo XcnaXpi eo pXga,! 认陷什泰卫弄摇伐大呆。（

Oki api ao oda eo dXl l u (Xj` oki api ao oda eo oX , ! 辱陷什纪渐（陷什盈长。（

Erœəp pda Xɾpi qoaqi oki aɸi ao,! 认陷什梅卜观堪陪粉。(

又, oki aɸi a一字还可作形容词用, 意为z以前的âz昔时的â, 如:

I œo S Xj c (X oki aɸi a l ql ɛhkbkqnoZdkkh (œ j ks X paxZdan dara,! 王深结程仑弄剥神窗许难 (入华弄卫句窗较退介。(

此外oki a ɸi a分开来写成二字, 意为z短时â, 如:

Da hɛp Oej cXl kma lkn PXɛ ae oki a ɸi a Xck,! 婆边净碎仑降绝新夹朴梅葡帮介。(

## IV 冠 词

### 54. 选举的总统名词前不用冠词，议员前须加冠词

z婆鞭市犬吸退。à以成益文犬) zDa s Xo alaZpa` Zkqj Zehi Xj ,à 据披弄呆误窗 (犬喝z婆鞭市犬诺彻à以字zDa s Xo alaZpa` i X ukŋ,à田对介郎,

③集尺】z他被选为议员。à应译作zDa s Xo alaZpa` X Zkqj Zehi Xj ,à才对，译文中的不定冠词是不可少的。举凡市议会 (Zepu Zkqj Ze h) 、立法议会 (laeobXpra Zkqj Zeh) ，乃至美国的国会即众议院 (?kj craoo) 、英国的议会 (LXnleXi aj p) 等处的议员在英译时都要加不定冠词，说成X Zkqj Zehi Xj 、X Zkj craooi Xj 、Xj I , L, (即Xi ai Yan kbLXnleXi aj p) 。而翻译某人被选为总统、市长、主席等时，就不要加上冠词，例如：

S Xodej cpkj s Xo alaZpa` l maoe aj p kb pda Qj epa` OpXpa o kb; i anZX, ! 华盛而鞭市犬堪歌窗小抢。(

Da s Xo alaZpa` ZdXeri Xj , ! 婆鞭市犬室席。(

Da eo Xi l kej pa` F al qpu LkopXh? ki i eoekj an, ! 婆鞭泡犬富题务彻。(

上面这两种说法，我们可以简单地说：那职位当地只有一个的，如国内不能有两个总统，一市不能有两个市长，会议只有一个主席等，所以就不要冠词，至于议员决不止一人，某人被选为议员，不过是选为许多议员当中的一个，所以要加不定冠词，表示是其中之一。



又，定冠词也常是限于一个的，如：pda oqj、pda s knh 之类，所以有时也可以用于一职一人的场合，如：

Da s Xo alaZpa` i Xu kn kb LXno, ! 婆鞭市犬案讲诺彻。（

！似看碎披（Da s Xo pda i Xu kn kb LXno, ! 婆推弄案讲诺彻。（

## 55. 说某人是议员，则有加冠词和不加的两种用法

! X (Də bXpɔlan ə l nkləʊkn kbUXlɑ Qj ɛ ʌnəpɔ,

! Y (Də bXpɔlan ə Xl nkləʊkn kbUXlɑ Qj ɛ ʌnəpɔ,

卫结活益文大弄访以z婆该请弄位景大许窗较清à。据披结活大弄对窗（但边毋等春陷喝肠艺，

③【集尺】凡职位名称用作补语（Zki l ɬai aj p）时，通常都要将它前面的冠词略去，例如：

Də bXpɔlan ə Bknæcj I ɛ ʌnəpɔ! 婆该请弄情交便彻。（

Da s Xo aləZpə` i Xukn kbJXj gɛ c,! 婆鞭市犬南还诺彻。（

等等，都是不加冠词的。尤其是当作补语用的那名词，表示一时只限于一人做的官职或地位的话，一般都要将冠词略去。这种场合的职位，侧重在抽象的观念，而颇含有形容词的意味，故将那限定的冠词p da略去了（注意略去的不是X而是p da）。问题中的（X）例便是如此。至于（Y）例的Xl nkləʊkn，是指具有那职位的个人而言，意即z许多教授当中的一位à，不过其中之一而已。（正如我们说Xi Xj、X opɔ` aj p XYkkg等一样。）下例的情形也是一样的：

! X (Da ə Zkqj Zɛi Xj ɬkn pɔl ə Zɛpɔ,

! Y (Da ə X Zkqj Zɛi Xj ɬkn pɔl ə Zɛpɔ,

! 婆弄剥诺窗吸退。（

职位名称用于固有名词之前时，如Mq aaj AləvXYapɔ，或用作固有名词同格时，如F n ? dXj c、Lrkləʊkn S Xj c kbUXlɑ Qj ɛ ʌnəpɔ u，通常也是要略去冠词的。

又，例zHkj c Xlpars Xn`o, s daj pda Yku YaZXi a pda l maœ`  
aj pkb pda Qj epa` OpXpao, da , , , à一句中，表官职的l maœ` aj p用作补语，但仍未将冠词pda略去，是因为它具有z著名的a特殊意义，这个pda实等于是说pda bXi kqo呢。

## 56. people和a people

z夕歌日弄刻既纳烂窗民些。à以成益文什字zPda ? dɛj aɔa Xra dXn` ts kngɛj c Xj ` ɛj ` qopɾkqo l akl ɬa,à (犬年卡边对,

③【集尺】译文是不对的，因为英文的l akl ɬa一字有两大含义：一作z人à解，这本身是一个复数字，要两个人以上才能用的，不可以再加〔o〕的语尾；一作z民族à解，指因有共同文化，共同观念，以及由共同责任和利益所产生的团结心而结合的一群人，如果说几种民族时，就用复数形的l akl ɬaɔ，照英文的原则，一个普通名词既可以加〔o〕变成复数，在用作单数时就必须加冠词，所以问题中的译文应改正为zPda ? dɛj aɔa Xra X dXn` ts kngɛj c Xj ` ɛj ` qopɾkqo l akl ɬa,à才对，又如：

Pda Braj Zd Xra XcXu l akl ɬa,! 法歌日弄贵渐窗民些。（

Pda Aj chɔd Xra oXɛ ɾk Ya Xmaarra` l akl ɬa,! 益歌日据披弄妇南万窗民些。（

Pda ? dɛj aɔa Xra XcraXp l akl ɬa,! 夕歌日弄大歌民。（

这个l akl ɬa一字如用作z人à解时，则说：

Okqɾdarj l akl ɬa s dɬj aran ɾaYahXcXɛj ,! 南日边短蒂随。（

Aj chɔd l akl ɬa ɬkra ɬɛYanpu,! 益日百装提。（

注意：Aj chɔd l akl ɬa（英格兰的人）；ɾla Aj chɔd 9 ɾla l akl ɬa kbAj chXj `（全体的英格兰人）（集合的名称）；Xj Aj chɔd i Xj（一个英国人）。例如：

Pda Aj chod Yalkj c pk pla s depa nXZa, ! 益歌日弄帮袭  
日。 (

Pdkoa Xra Aj chodi aj, ! 蓝小日弄益歌日。 (

英文的l akl ha、nXZa、j Xpckj 三字都有z民族a的意思, l akl ha的  
含义已如上述; nXZa为种族, 即强调生理方面, 具有相同的血统和身  
体上共同的特征; j Xpckj 强调政治上的统一, 指在一个政府下团结一  
致的人群, 例如:

; i anZXj o Xra Xl akl ha Xj ` Xj Xpckj (Yqpj kpX nXZa,  
! 堪歌日弄摇伐民些 (摇伐歌民 (但边弄摇伐袭些。 (

DXs XeeXj o s ara Xl akl ha (j kpXj Xpckj, ! 程仑狹饰素日  
酒弄摇伐民些 (看边弄摇伐歌纪。 (

## 57. 复数名词前加用不定冠词

在伤摇问窗集尺夕（认考毋传奇听短趣林称挂亮弄看碎后边兜竿称窗（入zPda Aj chod Xra Xl akl ha,à。但边毋在奇听林称窗短趣什仑亮（呢边呢似夹套边兜竿称，

③【集尺】在下列四种情形中的复数名词的前面，也可以加用不定冠词：

（/）在那复数名词的前面，用有ckk` i Xj u或cnaXpi Xj u的字眼时，例如：

Hca Yaaj pda X ckk` i Xj u pi ao,! 认等蓝句梅戈好鬼成。（

Pda s ara X cnaXpi Xj u opq` aj pə ej pda opnaap! 乎伤微陷投当许难。（

（0）当那名词本身具有复数形时，例如：

Pda l hXZa YaZXi a X odXi Yhao,! 蓝唇对变成怯杀场。（

注意：odXi Yhao 9 obXqcdpandkqoa（屠场），并不是odXi Yha 9 Zhi ou s Xlg（蹒跚）的复数形，这是完全不相干的两个字。这个语尾有〔o〕的名词，前面并不一定要加不定冠词，如pqnj Zepao e j pk odXi Yhao（化城市为屠场），但zPda Zepu dXo Yaaj pqnj a` ej pk X odXi Yhao,（把那城市变成一个屠场。）à, 便要有冠词了。

（1）当名词的形式虽变成了复数，但意义仍是单数时，例如：

; dqj` na` i dao ɵ X ckk` ` ɵpXj Za,! 摇八益句弄线当脱窗距降。（! X dqj` na` i dao宜规pda` ɵpXj Za kbX dqj` na` i dao。（

; pdkqoXj` gəoao Yquo i u daXnpbki i a,! 摇拿伐惹效妨爬句认窗懈。(

EXi s alhopq` ea` ! 9 ej Ztj a` (bknXhəYanXhpdXj go s d eZd E` k ks a ukq, y y OdXgaol aXna! 认妇泰死对拟币世产盯窗失宜。(

Pda S Xodej cpkj (F, ?, J Xpkj Xh; eil knpə X s knh Zrk oonkX o,! 华度歌纪基场弄牛疾窗交听死传。(! ZrkoonkX o (墨静故你婴静寄(笔掉勿鬼添静(道弄摇伐陷盯墨窗唇词。(

Ei X a Xdqj` ra` ` khXm,! 认相介摇八继伦。(

Pdara ə X bja VkkkceZXhCXn` aj o ej kqn pks j ,! 剥场陷摇伐妇好窗错务腿。(

S dXp pde Zkqj pu j aa` o ə j kp X ckk` bra+Zaj p ZæX n (knX ckk` bra+Zaj p Zql kbZkbaa (YqpX ckk` bra Zaj p, ! 卫伐歌纪颇逝死窗(边弄柔盯伦摇辙窗好团茄(似边弄柔盯伦摇镑窗好饥吊(道弄摇忙值价窗好窗柔盯伦。(

(2) 有些名词原来就是一对或多数构成的, 所以复数形也是指的单数, 如Xl ej Zam、Xpkj co、Xps aavam、XYXcl d ao、XpdeZ g+hd o等皆是。

Da ə Xohu+Ykkp, ! 婆弄摇伐起气窗夫庄。(

; ohran oZəokm s Xo ceraj pk dei ,! 法介婆摇爱滩剪楚。(

Dara Zki ao XYqppkj o,! 尖介摇伐窃物。(

## 58. 物质名词前加用冠词变成普通名词

奇听林称窗短趣夹〔o〕情（当趣什摇兜死夹竿称（悟陷务知林称第望封兜边夹竿称（但陷什仍陷夹窗（边毋在喝袭曲家这杀才死夹竿称，

③集尺】照文法规定物质名词确是不要加冠词的，如：

Pda cXo ɵ Xo pXj ol Xnəj pXo Xən! 蓝气汽入结气摇懊窗统苦。（

Da ol aj pi kj au hga s Xpan! 婆套伦入朋。（

Pda ˊ ɵd ɵ i X a kbl Xl an! 卫懂庄弄争谢窗。（

当我们要表示数量时，就得另加其他的片语上去，因为我们不能说：zCərai a Xl Xl an, l haXoa, à。必得说：

Cərai a Xl əZa kbl Xl an (l haXoa, ! 屈法认摇伪争。（

或是说成复数：

Cərai a X las odaapo kbl Xl an (l haXoa, ! 屈法认鬼伪争。（

这个补充进去的片语，是要随着情形而改变的，X Zq1 kbpaX（一杯茶）、X ol kkj bqh kboqcXn（一匙糖）、X hqi l kboqcXn（一块糖）、X hkXb kbYmaX（一卷面包）、X l əZa kbZdXlg（一支粉笔），等等。说复数则把〔o〕加在Zq1、ol kkj bqh hqi l、hkXb l əZa等字上，不可说X paX，也不可说paXo 等等。（口语中虽有zPs k paXo, l haXoa, àS dXpXYkqpXs dəogu? à，是ps k Zq1 o kbpaX和X Zq1 kbs dəogu短缩的说法。）但有时也竟有加冠词或变复数的



时候，那就是变了性的结果，那个物质名词已变成普通名词了。物质名词要在什么时候，才可以拿来当作普通名词用呢？那只有在表示：（/）种类，（0）制成品，（1）发生的事件的场合才会变成普通名词，比较下例：

I Xu EprkqYha ukq bknXj kpdanZql kbpaX, ! 拒地拟晚法认摇镑膊好论，（城paX犬务知林称（边夹竿称。

Pdeo eo Xj atZahaj ppaX,! 卫弄摇袭馆好窗膊。（城paX犬奇听林称（币世袭类（飞夹竿称。

LXl aneo i X a bki l qh ,! 争弄争建谢窗。（城l Xl an犬务知林称（边夹竿称。

Pdeo eo Xckk` l Xl an bkn ukqj c l akl ha pk naX ,! 卫弄反年轻日对窗摇定好窗鼻争。（城l Xl an犬奇听林称（币息成领（飞夹竿称。

= a ZXrabq hXYkqp bma,! 深懈火先。（卫弄务知林称。

Pdama s Xo X Yec bma bXopj edp! 昨闻登难大火。（卫弄奇听林称（币登难窗事见（飞夹竿称。

普通名词既可以加冠词，也就可以用复数，如：

S a l rk` qZa rXrkqo paXo,! 认考肠不更袭膊样。（

DXj ` ej ukqn l Xl amo,! 爱拟窗句庄交尖。（

Bemo Xma j kpok branqaj pXo ej bkn i an` Xuo,! 火月茅陷碎仑蓝维破抵介。（

## 59. catch cold和catch a cold

z闪懂à以成益文什（陷什披ZXpZd Zkh（陷什田披ZXpZd X Zkh  
 `（边毋陷竿称同荣竿称弄烦摇维，

③【集尺】用动词ZXpZd或pXga时，有冠词与无冠词完全一样，但用dXra时就必须加冠词（dXra X Zkh），因为那是表示状态的。还有如在Zkh前用有形容词时，前面的冠词也非有不可（ZXpZd X YX Zkh）。

EdXra X oħcdpZkh, ! 认陷摇词盗闪懂。（

Da dXo X YX Zkh, ! 婆值闪懂。（

Da eo qħbanj c ħki X oarama Zkh, ! 婆跟值闪懂。（

EdXra ZXqcdp! 故pXgaj (Zkh, ! 认闪懂介。（

I ej` ukq` kj ħ ZXpZd Zkh, ! 当懈拟闪懂。（

ħ eo ħkħod ħk ck kqp s epkqp X ZkXp ej ħ eo s aXħdan:  
 ukq ħ ZXpZd! X (Zkh, ! 卫维奖窗题气肠抗（尤薄寸接伤俗大边  
 潮（拟摇兜会闪懂窗。（

Da opXua` Xs Xu ħki oZdkkh YaZXqoa da dX X Zkh,  
 ! 婆闪懂介（颇碎确尖伤许。（

Da eo ej Ya` s epd X YX Zkh, ! 婆闪懂睡在持伤。（

EaXoħu pXga X Zkh, ! 认容侮闪懂。（

Ukqħa cħraj i a ukqn Zkh, ! 拟爱闪懂纯法认介。（

I kopl akl ħa dXra ps k kn ħdma Zkh o X uaXn, ! 大当趣窗  
 日摇年陷结散成窗闪懂。（

60. We had heavy rain和We had a heavy rain

! X (S a dX X daXru nXej hXopj ædp

! Y (S a dX daXru nXej hXopj ædp

伤亮卫结活化（摇活陷竿称（摇活茅陷（弄烦看死看边死，

③【集尺】原则上nXej、oj ks、s ej`等是物质名词，是不可以加不定冠词的，不过如有形容词的话，也可以加上冠词，并不为错。文法家说明是由于形容词的关系，而分别出大雨、小雨、霪雨、甘雨等情况来，加上不定冠词，正可表示z一场à的意思。

问题中所举出的两个例句，意义并不一样，冠词并非可有可无。句首不说S a dX，而说Pdara s Xo也成：

! X (Pdara s Xo X daXru nXej hXopj ædp

! Y (Pdara s Xo daXru nXej hXopj ædp

(X) 句的意思是z昨夜下了一场大雨à。(Y) 句的意思是z昨夜下了大雨à。一般字典上举例多是用的(X) 句，不过(Y) 句的说法，是把重点放在z持续不断地下了大雨à一点上的。再看：

! X (S a dX X daXru oj ks hXopuaXn,

! Y (S a dX daXru oj ks hXopuaXn,

(X) 是说去年曾下过一场大雪，(Y) 是说去年冬天下很大的雪。

## 61. go to school和go to the school

z伤许a摇称以成益文犬ck pk oZdkkh。在许神卫婴窗仑亮边看碎夹竿称（披ck pk pda oZdkkh酒呆介（但犬年卡披z~~h~~ck pk pda oZdkkhpk palhdei ,! 认等许神句梅恶贫婆。（à（田看碎夹竿称郎，

③【集尺】一个普通名词用作抽象的意味时，每每要把定冠词略去。学校的抽象意味是施教，从学生方面来看是去求学，去读书。所以英文解释这种作用时说：zPda pXej ej c ceraj ej X oZdkkh, a`qZ Xpckj,（在学校所给的训练，也就是教育。）à。在这种情况下，在oZdkkh前是不要加pda的。例如：

S a ck pk oZdkkh ej kn` an pk haXnj ,! 认考犬许丧道伤许。（

Da ckao pk oZdkkh Yu Yqo arau` Xu,! 婆利题薪返饭前茶伤许。（

I u Ynkplamo Xra XpoZdkkh! 认兴掉大在对邱。（

Ukq oaj` X Yku pk oZdkkh! 拟片夫庄伤许。（

DXra ukq aran Xppaj` a` oZdkkh ! 拟进戈许神茅陷，（

Da habpoZdkkhran ukqj c,! 婆妇早酒阅许介。（

Pdau Zki a dki a bki oZdkkh Xp pdrna,! 婆考散词熄放许灰纪。（

?ki a dki a` eraZphu XpanoZdkkh! 放许挂角刻灰纪。（

S dXp` k ukq` k Yalkra oZdkkh ! 伤许仑拟谢词年卡，（

OZdkkh Yacej o Xpaædp! 许神程八什鹿伤己。（

种种说法，都是学校的本意、通常的含义。不过你如果把学校一词，不当作本意用，而把它看作一个地方，指校舍或建筑物来说的话（X1 hXZa lkn paxZde j c Xj` laXnj ej c, pda Yqeh ej c kn Yqeh ej co kbX oZdkkh），它便成了一个具体的东西，失去了抽象的意味，此时便非加用定冠词不可，例如：

Es aj p pk pda oZdkkhpk oaa pda maoqlpo kb pda aj mXj Za at Xi ej Xpkj, ! 认等许神梅咖入许教试窗成横。（

Ukq s dhlhj` pdai ej pda oZdkkhYaps aaj 6 ; , I , Xj` 2 L, I , , ! 在伤肉八什等杀肉死什拟在许神句看碎找等婆考。（

Da hrao kl l koqa pda oZdkkh! 婆酒显在许神对亮。（

Pda oZdkkhopXj` o j aXnpda ZdqrZd, ! 许神集计较七。（

EXls Xuo pXga i u huj Zd Xp pda oZdkkh! 认在许神抽夕弟。（

英文很多普通名词都有这种抽象的用法，一个要加冠词，一个不加冠词，我们必须加以分别。现再举别的字例，以供比较研究：

[ ? dqrZd eo kran, ! 交把谢秋介。（

[ El Xoo Yalkma pda ZdqrZd kj i u s Xu pk oZdkkh! 认伤许晴戈较七。（

[ Da eo j ks ej dkol epXh! 婆善在进介咬新。（

[ Da eo kj a kb pda l Xpaj po Xp pda dkol epXh! 婆弄蓝咬新句窗鄙日这摇。（

[ I kpalandXo ckj a pk i Xrgap! 母请句宾梅介。（

[ E ep bXn brki dara pk pda i Xrgap, ! 程卫句等宾场脱论，（

[ Da s Xo oaj p pk l nœkj, ! 婆鞭憾话介。（

[ Ereopa` pda l nœkj uaopan` Xu, ! 昨题认梅卜观介憾图。（

Pdau s ama XppXYha s daj Es aj pɛj ,! 认进梅什婆考握在  
 抽弟。 (

Pda oql l anɔ kj pda pXYha,! 球弟伤助。 (

但也有例外，如到戏院去看戏，虽是戏院的本意，但仍要加pd  
 a，而说成ck pk pda pdaXma（去看戏），ck pk pda Zɛj ai X（去看  
 电影），ck pk pda i kreao（去看电影）。

62. Americans和The Americans

认考披窗益童弄Aj chod（仑亮边看夹泡喝竿称（入柜夹伤兜竿称披成pda Aj chod（酒变犬益歌日窗宜脾介。但怖和盯苦弄勿窗歌民（道仍绕边夹竿称（边毋喝飞，

③集尺】英语是pda Aj chod hXj cqXca，简单说成Aj chod一字；至于英国人就个体来说，单数是Xj Aj chodi Xj，复数是Aj chodi aj，说成pda Aj chod是指英国国民全体来说的。至于虽是说的国民，而仍然不加冠词的时候也是有的，现先请看下表：

固形容词	语言名称	国民总称	个体名称
; i aneZXj	; i aneZXj	Pda ; i aneZXj o	; j ; i aneZXj (; i aneZXj o)
? dēj aoa	? dēj aoa	Pda ? dēj aoa	; ? dēj aoa (? dēj aoa)
F qpZd	F qpZd	Pda F qpZd	; F qpZdi Xj (F qpZdi a j )
Aj chod	Aj chod	Pda Aj chod	; j Aj chodi X j (Aj chodi a j )

Brāj Zd	Brāj Zd	Pda Brāj Zd	; Brāj Zdi Xj (Brāj Zdi a j )
Cari Xj	Cari Xj	Pda Cari Xj o	; Cari Xj (Cari Xj o)
Cmaag	Cmaag	Pda Cmaago	; Cmaag (Cmaago)
ḐXleXj	ḐXleXj	Pda ḐXleXj o	; j ḐXleXj (ḐXleXj o)
Ol Xj Ǝd	Ol Xj Ǝd	Pda Ol Xj Ǝd	; Ol Xj ƎXn̂ (Ol Xj ƎXn̂ o)
Os a` Ǝd	Os a` Ǝd	Pda Os a` ao	; Os a` a (Os a` ao)
PqrgƎd	PqrgƎd	Pda Pqrgo	; Pqrg (Pqrgo)

固有形容词多半是从国名转化而来的，如? dēj aoa是从? dēj X变来的，但有些只取国名的一部分，如; i anēZXj 则只采用Pda Qj Ǝa` OpXpao kb; i anēZX国名的最后一字，至于F qpZd则并不是从DkhlXj `一名而来，也不是从pda JaplanhXj ` o而来，而是从F qpZd、F aqpo



Zd（意为德国的，因Cari Xj u即德国，德文为FaqpoZdXj`）变来的。

如果是指某一国的国语，原则上不要加冠词，如汉语为?dej ao a；马来话为I XhXj，唯说某个特殊的字或著作时，仍可加pda，如：

zDqj` àeo pda Cari Xj lkrz` kcà! 敌文z方à候zDqj` à （  
Pde eo pXj obXpa` bki pda Cari Xj ,! 卫弄程敌文真以窗。（

美国与英国虽为同文国家，照讲美国人也是说的Aj chod，不过他们要有独立的美语，所以说是; i anZXj Aj chod并不满意，而要说; i anZXj ei，简略为; i anZXj，如口头美语为ol kgaj ; i anZXj。

用来指国民的时候就比较复杂了：

(/) zpda - 固有形容词à（作复数用）9全体国民：

Pda ?dej aoa Xra Xj ej` qopmkqo l akl ha,! 夕歌日弄麦量窗歌民。（

Pda Aj chod Xra Xi anZXj pda l akl ha,! 益歌日弄漠松窗歌民。（

Pda Os eo dXra pdaeni kqj pXj o (pda Braj Zd pdaen LX no (pda Aj chod pdaendki a,! 渺事日陷末（法歌日陷案讲（益歌日陷纪。（

Pda ; i anZXj o Xra ranu okZeXh! 堪歌日好交哈。（

(0) 个体的国民，有单复同形的，也有单复异形的，如：

Da eo X ?dej aoa, y y Pdau Xra ?dej aoa,

Da eo X Braj Zdi Xj , y y Pdau Xra Braj Zdi aj ,

S a dXpa` Xhpda Braj Zd l akl ha s a i applara, y y Fao l anaj ! 认考在蓝盗颇投等窗蓝小法歌日（大妇杀数。（

Pdara s ara opXuej c ej pda d k p a h p s k F X l X j a o a ( p d m a a L  
 k n p q c q a o a ( h k q n p X l e X j o ( b r a L k h a o ( o e t F X j a o , ! 蓝漏粉夕  
 显寸陷结伐揉剥日 ( 散伐其旗雪日 ( 死伐宜大脚日 ( 柔伐毕蜡  
 日 ( 鲸伐垂惧日。 (

(1) 通常说国籍时，会把冠词略去：

EXi ? d e j a o a , ! 认弄夕歌窗歌民。 (

! 比厚 ( EXi X ? d e j a o a , ! 认弄夕歌日。 (

Da e o p X l e X j , ! 婆弄宜大脚窗歌民。 (

Pdau Xra p X l e X j , ! 婆考大弄宜大脚窗歌民。 (

! 比厚 ( Pdau Xra p X l e X j o , ! 婆考弄宜大脚日。 (

; p d e j c u k q s k q h Z a n p X e j h u p d e j g p s e z a X Y k q p Y a l k r a  
 ` k e j c e j l q Y h e Z ( e b u k q s a r a A j c h o d , y y S d h e X i L h k i a n  
 ! 入柜拟弄益歌歌民窗化 ( 卫妹弄摇见拟死散脾道挂食窗事。 (

(2) 说个体的多数与说整体不同的地方，就是一则无定冠词，  
 一则有定冠词：

; i a n e Z X j o p d e j g p d X p p d a u Z X j s e j p d a s X n e j R e a p j X  
 i , ! 堪歌日碎犬婆考看在圆南维胜。 (

Pda ; i a n e Z X j o Xra X j X Z p r a l a k l h a , ! 堪歌日弄古猩窗  
 民些。 (

说美国人是活跃的民族，当然是指整个的美国人而言，至于说美  
 国人以为他们可在越南战胜，不过是一部分鹰派的人的看法而已。

普通名词亦复有这种分别，例如：

Pda o p q ` a j p o k b k q n o Z d k k h X r a r a n u ` d e c a j p ! 认考许神  
 句窗许难大妇套凡。 (! Pda o p q ` a j p o 9 ; h p d a o p q ` a j p o (

Pdau Xra o p q ` a j p o k b k q n o Z d k k h ! 婆考弄认考许神句窗  
 许难。 (! o p q + a j p o 9 o k i a o p q ` a j p o (

有时也可以把oki a说出来，如：

Ok i a opq` aj p k b k q n o Z d k k h o l a X g A j c h o d r a n u s a l h  
！认考许神陷小许难益童披寸妇好。（

### 63. in a family way和in the family way

NkYanpLaj j S Xmaj 在婆中窗 C Ednæpbo Aeqdbpko 夕陷活  
外) zEZXj mai ai Yanpda bX̃ eao pXlgj c XYkqpdk s I m, JXY  
fqopZkqh j p̄capej X bXi dhu s Xu j k i Xpans dXpoda pma` ,à  
听怖披格玩弄套兜竿称窗 (犬喝婆套边兜竿称,

③【集尺】美国脱离英国这么久，离开英国这么远，在美国使用的英语，要和在英国使用的英语发生歧异，这是理所当然的。英文表现法中原有的许多分别，到现在美国话中都消失了。问题中所提出的表现法，在英国话中原来是有不同的含义的，即：ej X bXi dhu s Xu 9 s epdkqpZarai kj u，不拘礼节，无所隐秘。ej pda bXi dhu s Xu 9 l ma cj Xj p̄ s epd Zdèi，身怀六甲，有孕。例如：

Oda ol aXgo pk i a ej X bXi dhu s Xu, ! 辱对认披化副摇纪  
日摇维。(

Oda æ j ks ej pda bXi dhu s Xu, ! 辱善在握格想那玩。(

凡是英国的辞典，乃至牛津系统的辞典，都是有这种分别的，可是到美国就变了，美国韦氏系统的辞典，尤其是人们用得最多的一部辞典，即 *S aYopar'io Jas S krle Dæp̄kobnu kb̄pda Ci anæbo Hboc qbca*, 1, 303 的 bXi dhu 项下，只举出一条：ej X bXi dhu s Xu [? kllk m̄] , l macj Xj p̄ s epd Zdèi。不但把用不定冠词的这个成语，限于 z怀孕 à 一义，而且根本不提另外那个用定冠词的成语。在稍古的韦氏大辞典上，还提到 ej X bXi dhu s Xu 和 ej pda bXi dhu s Xu 二者都有 z怀孕 à 的意义，逐渐地在美国已由 ej X bXi dhu s Xu 一个表现法来独占，而把另外一个打倒了。S Xmaj 是美国作家，当然要采用这种美国用法的。

## 64. in spring和in the spring

益文披忱狭取存死季窗什敢（陷什仑亮夹兜竿称（陷什田边死竿称（在宜它伤怕荣盯笨（边毋在套法伤陷荣封兜，

③【集尺】表季节的字在原则上是不要定冠词的，例如：

Ol nɛj c dXo Zki a, ! 忱题尖介。（

S ɛj pən Zki ao Xhpən Xq pɛi j, ! 取梅存尖。（

不过如用在介词ɛj的后面，就常有加上定冠词的时候，尤其是美国话如此。在英国凡是说到过去的事的场合，也多加用定冠词，这是有限定的意思，指过去某一年的春天（或夏、秋、冬）。或是因句中有s d aj及其他前后文的关系而加以限制，才用这个定冠词的。

在同一人的笔下，在同一节的文句中，又同在介词ɛj的后面，时而加冠词，时而不加，例如美国的历史学家BnXj Zə LXngi Xj在其代表作*Pda Kracko Prbɛt*一书中说：

S ɛpɔl Xlhpɔlaoa ZdXj cao (pɔla s Xpən ɔ ok ZdXj ca` s ɛpɔl i q` Xj` ɔXj` pɔXp (ɛj ol nɛj c (ɛpɔl ɔnɔZpɔ kl Xnɔa (Xj` ɛj Xɔas i ɛj qpao Xoa` ɛ aj pXj ɛj Zd pɔɛZg ɛj pɔla Ykppki kbX pɛi Yɔn, Pda nɛrɔns Xo j ks dɛd: Yqps daj s a` aoZa j` a` ɛj pɔla Xq pɛi j ɛps Xo bXɔaj ranu lks (Xj` XlhpɔlaoaZ rapɔ kbɛpɔ pɔaXZdankqo ɔdXlɔks ɔ s ɔnɔ at l koa` pɔk rɛas, ! 来慢陷卫维窗变化（朋夕各弄产马介牢杀（颇碎等忱题窗什敢（简直变寸姑响边君（放在彼叫镑夕边等鬼盯熄（镑春酒看碎陷摇迟感窗沉聪。付朋善在鹅怎介：但弄当认考在取题杀付梅什（背弄朋落拾肠（付夕蓝小去嫌窗切踏推什豹狂介。（

他说ej ol nɛj c并不奇怪，因为季节名是以不加冠词为原则的，现在只消检讨加用了冠词的场合就好了。句中说ej pda Xqɲi j，无疑地是因为在s daj 后的关系。再看其他的例子：

ɛp dX Yacqj pɔXp ɲj a` qnɛj c pda hXop ɲari Xp oZdkk  
h (ej pda oqi i an, y y F, NeZdXn` okj ! 蓝弄在狭题（在许神  
句胁挂摇伐许歧夕（才绝示财蓝伐貌庄窗。（

Pda oj ks i Xj pɔau Ykɲd i X a ej pda s ej ɲan, y y ɛYɛ  
! 婆考的日在存题颇谢窗团日。（

Pda Zlkq` o pɔXp dX dɔj c ej dæd l qɔɔ lkn ok lkj c ej  
pda ol nɛj c s ana` ɔoɛl Xpa`, y y Fkdj Opæj YaZg! 在忱题像  
彻孰四窗鹅怪题结窗外鸣梅介。（

Pda hkmop dX Yaaj cmaaj ej pda oqi i ans daj s a dX  
` Zki a ej pk pda pks j , , , y y A, Dai ej cs Xu! 狭题当认考  
尖等哑伤（票紧屈梅摇片九命。（

在季节名字后接用kb时，则前面必须加用冠词，如ej pda ol nɛj c  
kb/745（在一九六七年的春天）。当英国人说Xh pda oqi i an的时候，美国人则说Xhoqi i an，例如：

CnX qXhu da YaZXi a Xs Xma kb pda kj a l XnɛZq hXn k` kr  
da dX i ɔoa` Xhoqi i an, y y A, ?Xh s alhl 慢慢唇婆险宜  
等介摇袭沙笨窗相兽（蓝弄照伐狭题婆大茅陷扰等窗。（

如果和表持续的介词连用时，则英美两国都是要用冠词的，如` q  
nɛj c pda oqi i an, pɔnkqcd (kqp) pda oqi i an.

## 65. 不定冠词的用法

怖陷日披认考许介当年窗益文（接摇伐zXa婴窗套法大茅陷许会（四掉势万。屈黑边兜竿称窗套法（盯添剪礼披苦摇杀。

③【集尺】不定冠词的用法，可分为下列九种：

（/）表示z或a的意思，讲话时第一次提到的名词冠以zXa，再提时便冠以zpaà，如：

Kj a` Xu X s klb balhəj s əd X bkt, Pda s klbs Xo Xlhogəj  
Xj` Ykj ao (s dda pda bkt s Xo Xo bXpXo da Zkqlh Ya, ! 陷题  
摇添狼投等摇悟高类。蓝添狼盘寸悟呢盟百非（道蓝悟高类派掉  
怖调胖。（

用于此意时，复数形常加oki a、Xj u的形容词，比较：

EoXs X Yen` thuəj c, Pps Xo X Zrks, ! 认咖和摇悟冷在钓。  
蓝弄摇悟日学。（

改成复数则为：

EoXs oki a Yen` o thuəj c, Pdau s am Zrks o,

（0）表示zkj aà的意思：

Da ZXi a dam X s aag Xck, ! 婆在摇石歧仑尖城。（

Da s dhnəpqrj əj X` Xu kn ps k! 9 əj kj a kn ps k` Xu  
o (, ! 婆黑在摇结题旅灰尖。（

Pdau s am Xlhgedha` pk Xi Xj, ! 婆考鞭杀寸片寒边晴。（

; Yen` ej pda dXj` eo skmpd ps k ej pda Yqod, ! 当寸边入善寸。 (

(1) 表示zXj uà的意思, 可代表一个族类:

; dkma eo Xqoabq hXj ei Xh! 具弄陷套窗错务。 (

Ehga X` kc (Yqp` kj p hga X ZXp! 认喜贵方 (边喜贵满。 (

; ZXpi Xu hkg XpX g ej c, ! 摇伐日荣论那定在维创杀 (大陷线当窗没脚。 (

这个用法和作z或à解的时候不同, 在其复数形前面不能加用oki a的字样, 只能说zEhga` kco, Yqp` kj p hga ZXp, à。表整个族类的, 除X` kc、` kco外, 还可以说pda` kc, 不过口语中最常用的是` kco一个形式。下面一个略近文言的表现法, 也应归入此项。

Kb hXpa da capo ql hXpa kbX i knj ej c, ! 计尖婆鹿那妇查。 (

Ep s Xo deo Zqopki kbX Oqj` Xu pk oep ej pda cXn` aj, ! 交把题婆惯怖薪在返腿句。 (

(2) 表示zX ZqnpXej à的意思:

Pdama eo XI n, Haa s Xepj c hknukq` ks j opXeo, ! 精杀陷群冷随难在第拟。 (

PdXp eo pmqa (ej X s Xu, ! 程末摇对亮咖尖 (蓝似弄章窗。 (

(3) 表示zpd a oXi aà的意思:

Pdau s ara kbXj Xca, ! 婆考大弄枪年窗。 (

=en` o kbX baXpdan hkgZg pkcapdan, ! 务碎类居。 (

Jk ps k i aj Xna kbX i ej`, ! 茅陷结伐日弄枪摇添懈窗。 (



(4) 表示zl anà的意思:

Pda l kopi Xj ZXlho ps eZa X`Xuo, ! 题肠利题片结成十。(

Dəo ej Zki a əo pɔma pɔkqoXj` `kɪXmo Xi kj pɔ, ! 婆窗爬入利远散拿元。(

Pda ZXns Xo mjj ej c Xpɔkɔpui ɔao Xj dɔqɔ, ! 蓝茶利深什碎死你益句窗瞥多在跑想。(

(5) 用于固有名词前有z像那样的人或物à的意思:

; Jas pɔj ZXj j kpYaZki a XOdXgaol aXna Xps ɔh! 摇伐离而蓝维窗日边呢苹宜变成莎人蓝维窗日。(

这样说的XJas pɔj 9 XcnaXpoZəj pɔpɔhga Jas pɔj , XOdXgaol aXna 9 XcnaXp`nXi Xpɔpɔhga OdXgaol aXna。

(6) 在下面这样的片语中,也是要用zXà的。

pɔ pXga! dXra (Xs Xɔg! maop (YXpɔ (oi kga (apZ, (! 鸣宾、示死、入域、抽孰第(

s ɔpɔ Xrəas pɔ! 误在(犬想死(

ej XlXoodkj! bɔnu (! 难气(

kbXoq` `aj! 9 oq` `aj hu (! 偷绕(

Xbas! 母趣(

Xhɔpɔ! 摇词(

Xckk` i Xj u! 投当(

(7) 普通不可数的(Qj Zkqj pXYha) 名词, 当作可数的(?kqj pXYha) 来用的时候, 就得利用不定冠词了:

! X (Xl ɔaZa kb! 摇见(

Xj ej opXj Za kb! 摇礼(

Xl knpkj kb! 摇定 (

Xopkj a! 摇继拾乔 (Zh opkj a! 拾届 (

Xlma! 鹿火 (Zh Bema Yqnj o,! 火弄会们姆窗。 (

Xi qn`an! 抹杀案 (

Xgġ `j aoo! 请码窗食犬 (

XYaan! 摇镑列回 (

Xj Xol erġ ! 摇片八斯猎紧丝片 (

pk dXra Xos ei ! 冒摇灰朋 (

! Y (; ol XnXcqo eo XcnXoo,! 令扬弄摇袭簿。 (

Pdama s Xo Xlkj c oċaj Za,! 沉凌介妇净。 (Zh Oċaj

Za eo ckhi aj ,! 沉凌弄花。 (

! Z (币籍柜故息成领)

Xj ġ raj pkj ! 登苦窗村撒 (Zh ġ raj pkj ! 登苦 (

XYqđi ġ c! 昏嫌务 (Zh Yqđi ġ c! 昏嫌陪 (

## 66. 定冠词的用法

屈酒兜竿称窗套法（盯添剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】定冠词 **pda** 和 **pdXp** 同一语源，指特定的事物，其用法可分下列各项：

(/) 再提到前所说过的名词时：

Ei apXcaj **pai** Xj Xj ` Xcehēj **pda** l Xng (Epdkqcdp **pda** caj **pai** Xj i qopYa **pda** bXpdan kb **pda** cerh! 认在返腿句投和介摇群绅事副摇伐怕夫（认线十蓝绅事酒弄蓝怕夫窗该请。（

(0) 虽为第一次出现的名词，但所指的东西很明显时：

Odqppda ` kkn (l haXoa, ! 屈吩抗。（

Da eo **pda** l nēj Zd Xhkbkqn oZdkkh! 婆弄认考许神窗神彻。（

S a oaj pbn **pda** ` kZpk, ! 认考梅屈咬难介。（

S dk eo pk pXga **pda** ZdXenpkj ecp ! 华球谁谢室席，（

(1) 在独一无二的东西前：

Pda aXnpd i krao nkqj ` **pda** oqj, ! 唇猫孟想她水昼错。（

Hkj c ha **pda** Gēj c! ! 歌王洒凭！（

Pda = eYha eo Yaej c geoa` Yu dei, ! 婆握惹想〔内睛〕饰纽。（

(2) 由于后面的修饰语而得确定那名词何所指时：

Enai ai Yan pda pi a s a lɔpi ap! 认果寸认考偿成线服窗什敢。（

Hkkg Xp pda `kc Yu pda cXpa,! 拟咖抗寄窗蓝添方。（

Ehga pda reas lɔki pda s ej `ks,! 认喜贵程车寄咖肠梅窗加命。（

Oda ɔ pda cɛhpɔXpods a` i a pda s Xu,! 勿世认静皇窗酒弄卫伐怕庄。（

有时因冠词的有无而发生意义上的差别。比较：

Pdau Xra pda opɔ `aj pɔ kɔkqnoZdɔkɔh! 怕汽许难。（

Pdau Xra opɔ `aj pɔ kɔkqnoZdɔkɔh! 便盯许难。（

(3) 在代表某一类的名词前：

Pda s dXla ɔ Xi Xi i Xh! 际弄臂朋错务。（

Pda Aj chɔd bXri an ɔ lɔj `kɔcmɔi Yhɔ c,! 益歌里都摇头喜贵雄雄唇贫既。（

Pda `kc ɔ pda lɔaj `kbi Xj,! 方弄日类窗八楼。（

(4) 加在普通名词前造成抽象名词：

Pda l aj ! 9 pda l ks ankbXl aj (ɔ i ɛdɔanɔdXj pda o s kn` ! 9 pda l ks ankbXos kn` (,! 文胜乡武。（

S dXp ɔ lɔXnj a` ej pda ZnX lɔ ɔ ZXmɔa` pɔ pda cnXra,! 叹夫什许等窗村撒吸司边王。（

Oda lɔp pda i kɔdan mɔa ej dan YmXop! 辱朵货等母识百引伤懈尖。（

(5) 加在形容词前造成复数普通名词或抽象名词：

Pda s kqj `a` s am XlhpXgaj pɔ Xj aɛdYkqɔj c dɔkol ɔ Xh! 闪慰大片等队计窗咬新梅介。（

Pda nɛZd! 9 nɛZd l akl ha (Xra j kpXls Xuo dXl l u,! 概日  
笔边摇兜实福。(

Pda XZZqoa` s Xo pXgaj kqp kb pda Zkqnp! 鞭恶程法庭  
鞭充准介。(

Pda YaXqpda h! 9 YaXqpu (eo h kra` Yu Xlh! 堪弄日日百  
窗。(

(6) 在名词有序数或最上级的形容词或有kj hu一类的字为修饰  
语时:

PdXp eo Xppda bda l Xca,! 蓝弄在纯柔卫。(

Da eo pda nɛZdaopi Xj ej kqn pks j,! 婆弄认考场旅胁价  
窗日。(

Da eo pda kj hu Yku pdXpokhra` pda l nkYhai ,! 婆弄集尺  
介蓝问弃窗手摇窗许难。(

(7) 在特殊的固有名词前:

(X) 江河、海洋、山脉、群岛、船舰等:

Pda PdXi ao (pda LXZdaZ (pda ; h o (pda Ldada l ej ao (pda  
Mqaaj I Xnu (apZ,

(Y) 家族、国名、国民、国语等:

Pda =nks j o! 残践摇纪日故都对 ( (pda Qj epa` OpXpao kt  
; i anɛZX! 帮堪赋习歌 ( (pda ; i anɛZXj o! 堪歌怕汽歌民 ( (p  
da Aj chod hXj cqXca! 益歌童文 ( (apZ,

(Z) 书报杂志、公共建筑物、爵位等:

Pda Pei ao! 它勿事鼻 ( (pda UaXn=kkg! 年喝 ( (pda A  
j chod Bknj ecdpu! 益童巴远军 ( (pda DkpahOej cXl qnX! 新  
夹朴漏粉 ( (pda ChkYa PdaXpra! 唇猫色新 ( (pda Qj e ranoq

u kb Pkguk! 村还大许 ( (pda Fqga kb S ej ` okn! 让莎返  
爵 ( (apZ,

(/. ) 在如下的片语中:

ej pda i knj ej c (ej pda ncdp (ej pda Zkqj pu (Yu pda  
dkqn (Yu pda l kqj ` (apZ,

Da l Xppa` i a kj pda YXZg,! 婆跑介认窗必。 (

Pda ncdpi Xj ej pda ncdpl hXZa,! 且日且泡。 (

Gaal pk pda halp! 食日集子。 (

## V 动 词

67. She will make him a good wife

Oda s ehi Xga dei Xckk` s da, 在益文夕登善卫维窗活庄（以字z蓝怕日死始蓝懒日成犬好卢庄a。四候伙边听（屈勿世堂入喝以法，

③【集尺】英文的动词有四种，即完全自动词，不完全自动词，完全他动词，不完全他动词。句中i Xga后面接有宾语的dei 一看便知是他动词。但同一他动词，有时用作完全他动词，有时又用作不完全他动词。完全他动词后面接一个或两个宾语，不完全他动词后面接上宾语，还是不完全，必得再加上一个补语，才能表出一个完全意念。

Ck` i X a pda Zkqj mu (Xj ` i Xj i X a pda pks j ,! 伤帝网抬达（日网场诺。（

是后接一个宾语的他动词i Xga; 至于:

I kpdan i X a i a Xj as oqep! 母请犬认谢介摇乞新俗。（

是接两个宾语的他动词i Xga。这都是完全他动词。若说:

Ei Xga ep X mla pk pXga Xj Xl Xpan huj Zd aranu ` Xu, ! 认利题肉测挂摘礼睡摇杀。（

这就是不完全他动词的*i Xga*，因为在宾语*ep*后接的*Xmqla*不是宾语，而是补语。问题的例句中的*i Xga*，是完全他动词，今被视作不完全他动词，所以译成中文就讲不通了。

Oda s dhi Xga dei X ckk` s da, ! 辱黑成犬婆窗好卢庄。（

9 Oda s dhi Xga X ckk` s da hkn dei , ! 辱死犬婆道谢好卢庄。（

句中有两个宾语，前面的*dei* 为间接宾语，后面的*X ckk` s da*为直接宾语。同样的造句还有：

Oda i X a damalh Xj as `maoo, ! 9 Oda i X a Xj as `naoo hkn damalh (! 辱犬装挤谢介摇见新俗。（

E dhi Xga ukq oki a paX, ! 认死犬拟梅凉膊。（Zb Oda i X `a paX hkn X hkbqo, ! 辱犬认考大纪凉介膊。（

利用*i Xga*这个他动词，我们还可以造出这样一个妙句：

Oda i X a dei X ckk` d qoYXj ` YaZXqoa oda i X a dei X ckk` s da, ! 台犬辱成犬婆窗好卢庄（颇碎似始婆谢成介好未都。（

句中第一个*i X a*是不完全他动词，第二个*i X a*是完全他动词。



## 68. She will make a good wife

Oda s dhi Xga Xckk` s da, 活夕窗i Xga等春弄婆错称郎（各弄装错称，陷窗邱伤字犬装错称剪卫伐礼（陷窗田爱破字犬婆错称窗礼活剪肠。

③【集尺】这个例句中的i Xga，最好是当作他动词用，因为在造句和意义上都以作他动词为妥当。说它是自动词，当然也讲得通，即是i Xga 9 YaZXi a，而把后接的s da看作补语，全句意为z她将要成为一个好妻子à。但最好还是把后面这s da看作宾语，i Xga作他动词用，含义为z发展成为à，` arakl ej pk或lakra pk Ya，代表的例句就是：

Oda s dhi Xga! dei (Xj at Zahaj ps da, ! 辱黑成犬〔婆窗〕摇伐胁好窗卢庄。（

有dei 的（见问题句）和没有dei 的分开，一样用i Xga作他动词，不过有dei 的是把i Xga作` Xpra ranY（授与动词）用，没有的就用作普通的他动词，后接一个宾语。

英文中的i Xga这个动词，是用途最大、含义也多的（有三十几种不同的意思），而且在意思上常有极其微妙的差别，值得我们细心检讨。现就完全他动词举出几个例句，以供参考：

! / (Pda Zdeh maj i X a X pkuYkXp! 夫庄考谢介摇悟屎举吵。（

! 0 (Pda Zdeh maj i X a X ZenZa Xnkqj` pda bma, ! 夫庄考全想火脍介摇伐圆却。（

! 1 (Pda Ykkgo i X a X daXl kj pda hkn, ! 邱剥在唇报伤典挂入末。（

! 2 (?khì paxi Xgao Xj atZahaj p`nəj g əj oqi i an,  
! 奖膊成犬狹题馆好窗意届。(

! 3 (Da s dhi arani Xga ok cnaXpX oZdkhXnXo dæ bXpd  
an, ! 婆祸边呢成犬婆该请蓝维窗大许慰。(

我们看了这些例句，便知道i Xga的基本意义，还是当z做à解，作他动词用，至于什么时候，才要译作z成为à，那就要看那句话的前后关系，以及中国的惯用句法了。例 (/) 是显然地只能译z做à，例 (0) 及 (1) 是两者都可以译，可以说做了一个圈，也可以说成为一个圈；做了一个山或堆成一个山。至于例 (2) 及 (3)，就只能译作z成为à，但在本质上仍然和 (/) (0) (1) 是一样的，zOda s dhi Xga Xckk` s dā,à, 仍然可译作z她要做一个好妻子à。

## 69. 借电话的说法

z认泰番拟即伐电化好论, a摇活化 (以成益文) zI Xu EYknrks ukqn pahal dkj a, à 犬年卡边对郎,

③【集尺】这句英文本身并没有错, 不过不适宜于这种场合之用罢了。因为这句话, 并不表示想要借电话打一下, 而是说要借用电话机, 把机子拿走, 可见Yknrks一字是不能拿来直译许多中国话的, 比方说中国话的z借光à, 只能译作At Zqoa i a, 若果直译为Yknrks pda hœdp, 就无人能懂了。我们说借电话, 实际是使用一下别人的电话, 重在z用à, 而不在z借à。因此, 英文要把借字译成用字, 才合乎他们的说法, 即:

I Xu Eqoa ukqn pahal dkj a,

如果是一支笔的话, 借与用是相同的, 即是借去使用, 所以二者都可以说:

I Xu EYknrks ukqn l aj ,

I Xu Eqoa ukqn l aj ,

! 拟窗抱即认套摇杀好论, (

中国话中的借字有时是用得很妙的, 如z借问à (I Xu EXog uk q? )、z借宿à (pk Xog bkn lk` cėj c)、z借重à (pk oaag pda Xooœp Xj Za kb)、z借洒浇愁à (pk` rks j ZXra ej pda s ej a Yks h)、z借故à (pk i Xga qoa kbXj u pl ej c Xo Xl rapat p lkn) 等等, 都不宜直译。

## 70. 接电话的说法

z昨球认后等介婆窗电化。à以犬) zEnaZaera` X palal dkj a brk  
i dei hKopj edpà 犬年卡边看碎郎,

③【集尺】这句英文，仍然和上项的情形一样，在句子本身并不为错，只是译得不恰当罢了。我们说收到他的信，可译成naZaera X happeanbrki dei 或daXnbrki dei，所收到的确有一封信，电话只是收到几句话，如果说naZaera X palal dkj a，便是收到一架电话机，不是对方打来的电话。所以问题中所举出的那句话，应英译为：

EdX ! 故naZaera` (Xl dkj a ZXhbrki dei hKopj edp

也可以改变主语而成：

Da ZXha` i a ql hKopj edp

Da palal dkj a` ! pk (i a hKopj edp

又关于打电话的英文表现法，还有下面种种：

hphaldei Yu palal dkj a, ! 认黑套电化听毋婆。（

Pdau pXga` kranpda palal dkj a, ! 婆考在电化夕交台。（

Ukqan s Xj pa` kj pda l dkj a, ! 故 (; l dkj a hkn ukq,  
! 拟陷电化。（

## 71. 不可说 “The school has many students.”

z卫许神陷散拿伐许难。à认益以犬) zPda oZdkkhdXo pɫnaa pɫ  
kqoXj` opɫ` aj pɔ,à 益歌日披边听 (爱破候字? dɛj aoa Aj chɔd (   
田披zɛpɔ j kpAj chɔd pɫ oXu ok,à 但婆考犬年卡田呢披z; s aag  
dXo oaraj` Xuo,à郎,

③【集尺】中文的z有à字，英文有许多译法，dXra只是其中的一个译法，此外还有pɫnaa - Ya、Zkj pXj、dkh、l kooaoo、ks j、Zki l nna、Zkj oop gaal 等等。问题中提出的句子，错在dXra一字，这时的z有à，不可译作dXra，而应译作pɫnaa Xna才对，全句应作：

Pɫnaa Xna pɫnaa pɫkqoXj` opɫ` aj pɔ ɛj pɫa oZdkkh

为什么能说Xs aag dXo，又不能说pɫa oZdkkhdXo呢？这问题不是一言两语可以解答的，我们应该先把dXra一字的用法弄明白才行。作z有à解的dXra有下列三义：

(/) 物质上的所有：

EdXra Xranu ckk` hɛYnXnu, ! 认陷摇伐妇好窗投邱毆。（

Da dX j ɸXj ui kj au, ! 婆茅陷伦。（

EdXra XhXna bXi du, ! 认陷摇伐大纪庭。（

Da dXo Xlkpkkbnaej` o, ! 婆陷投当疗友。（

(0) 身心上的具有：

EdXra Xl kkni ai knu, ! 认窗果他较妇怀。（

Da dXo XYXh daX , ! 婆乔巧介。（

Enodi aj dXra na` dXen, ! 百得蜡日乔登弄固窗。（

DXo oda Yh<sub>q</sub>a auao knYnks j auao, 9 ; na dan auao Yh<sub>q</sub>a knYnks j , ! 辱窗束欢弄拉命各弄消命, (

(1) 构成上的含有:

; s aag dXo oaraj `Xuo, 9 Pdama Xna oaraj `Xuo ej Xs aag,! 摇止陷七题。(

PdXprkki dXo kj hu ps k s ej `ks o, 9 Pdama Xna kj hu ps k s ej `ks o ej pdXprkki ,! 蓝点患悟陷结伐车庄。(

DXra ukq Xj u l Xej dama, 9 E<sub>0</sub> pdama Xj u l Xej dama, ! 卫句敲边敲, (

Dks i Xj u `Xuo dXo BaYmqXnu, 9 Dks i Xj u `Xuo Xna pdama ej BaYmqXnu, ! 的远陷当母题, (

DXo pda dkqoa XcXn`aj , 9 E<sub>0</sub> pdama XcXn`aj Xp pda bn kj p! YXZg (apZ, (kb pda dkqoa, ! 蓝屋陷花腿论, (

这第三种含义及用法, 和我们问题中的句子最为相近, 因为它正是由dXra变成pdama Xna的。我们为什么不能说: zPda oZdkkhdXo p dmaa pdkqoXj `opq`aj p,à, 而一定要说zPdama Xna pdmaa pdkqoXj `opq`aj p ej pda oZdkkhà呢? 这牵涉到逻辑上的问题。第一, 学校之于学生, 不能说是z物质上的所有à, 因为学生并不是学校的私有财产。其次, 学校之于学生, 更不是身心上所具有的, 因为不是它身心上的特质。只有第三点的z构成上的含有à颇为相近, 但仍是似是而非, 因为学校是一个地点, 一个机构, 学校与学生的关系, 不是不可分离的, 例如假期中没有学生, 学校仍然存在, 不像一星期少了一天就不成, 房间的窗子是构成房间的必要部分, 不可分离的。至于pdama - Ya的原意是z存在à, 存在于某处因而变成z有à的意思, 学校既是一个地点, 正好用得上这种z有à了。

## 72. speak、say、tell等字的意义及用法

益文夕字z披化à集窗婴馆当（胁奇听窗ol aXg、oXu、pah散婴（  
宜它光套法伤陷小年卡边枪，

③【集尺】英文作z说话à解的字眼确是很多，有ol aXg、oXu、pah  
h pXlg、opXpa、rai Xrg、maXpa、j XnnXpa、naZkqj p、Zkj rama、  
ckood、ZdXp、ZdXppan等，但最常用的还是头上的三个字，现在  
我们应该把这三字的用法，仔细地检讨一番。

**Ol abg**：此字的意思只是发出话语的声音，不管内容是什么，小  
孩子牙牙学语，说些什么谁也听不懂，我们就说：

； Zdeì Yacj o pk ol aXg pda i ki aj p ep kl aj o ep h o p  
k qppan Xj u XZg+j ks la`ca` okqj`，！深夫庄情会伪邪候肠声  
太什（婆酒绝示雪雪许童介。（

； `qi Yi Xj ZXj j kpol aXg，！外案边呢披化。（

S a ol aXg hXj cqXcao，！认考披更袭童万。（

F kj p ol aXg j kj oaj oa！！边死呼披！（

Pk ol aXg pda pmqpd（E`kj p hga ep！件史披（认边喜贵  
卫伐。（

Da `e` j kp ol aXg Xp pda i aapj c，！绝会什（婆确登  
万。（

**Obu**：用语言传达思想感情时就说oXu，所以是有内容的，是有意  
义的。小孩子初期只能ol aXg，要到相当大的时候才能oXu。在直接或  
间接引用句前后，通常都用oXu，如：

Da oXe`（zEs dhck,à

zEs kj ɸZki a (à oXè S dñXi ,

与间接宾语同用时在oXu后要再加一个pk字，如：

Da oXè oki apdej c pki a,

不可把oXu用在作宾语或补语的不定词上，即不可说zPdau oXu d  
ai pk Ya i X ,à, 但可以说成被动：

Da ɸ oXè pk Ya i X ,! 9 ɸ ɸ oXè pñXpda ɸ i X , (

祷告及功课说oXu，如pk oXu l nXuam、pk oXu kj aɸ haookj 。  
美国话中oXu有特殊的用法：

Pda pñZdan oXuo! 9 palh qo (pk Zki a aXñu,! 件能死许  
难早词等神。(

**Palh** 传言，告诉用palh，不明说出所ol aXg的事来，便不能用pa  
lh，即不说Xo Eol kga pk ukq uaopan` Xu，而要说Xo Epkh` ukq uaop  
an` Xu。说真话说假话都用palh，即pk palhpda pñpñ或pk palhX ha  
(不能说pk ol aXg X ha)。说故事是palhX opñu，报时间是palhpda  
pi a，看相算命卜未来也说palhbkñpñj ao (算命的人为bkñpñj a+palha  
n)。现在我们不妨把以上三字作一比较：

Da palh arañYk` u pñXpX Zkqj Zdi Xj kñpaj capo qñ pk  
ol aXg Xj ` oXuo j kñdej c,! 婆对大纪披 (吸退怖站鹿尖披化道  
边毋颇外。(

Ukq oXu oki apdej c (Xj ` ukq palhoki aYk` u oki apdej  
c,! 拟披词年卡 (拟对日披词年卡。(

Oda oXè pda i kreas Xo ckk` ,! 辱披蓝电因好。(

Oda pkh` i a pda i kreas Xo ckk` ,! 辱恶贫认蓝电因  
好。(

现在再看看其余的字：

**Pbñg**：谈话，座谈，持续地说话。例：



S a pXlga` kranXZql kbpaX, ! 认考府膊台化。 (

**Opbpa:** 述说, 详细地说出理由来。例:

Pda X rkZXpa opXpa` pda bXZpo, ! 究能哪竖更袭事史。 (

**Nai bng:** 一言, 陈述意见。例:

; Hks i a pk mai Xrg, ! 仁认披摇活。 (

**Nalbpa:** 详述 (比palh要正式的字眼)。例:

Pda XqpdknoXs epXlhdXl l aj ej c oky oXs ep (Xj` plan  
alkma nalXpao ep ! 字纪蜡击摇码 (咖在束句 (颇碎呢奢竖肠  
尖。 (

**Jbmbpa:** 讲故事 (较文言的字, 比nalXpa更为正式)。例:

Ej XmXpa` Ynalhu s dXp dX kZZqma` oej Za EdX oaaj  
dan hXop y y ? kj Xj Fkula ! 认爱胁挂摇成和等辱碎尖颇登难  
窗事简死唇披介摇惫。 (

**Nadkqj p:** 详述 (这是一个最` ecj dra` 的字眼)。例:

Dan ZdXnXZpan dXo Yaaj oqlhZej phu odk s j ej naZkqj p  
j c pda araj po ej s deZd oda p kkg l Xnp y y ? naedpkj ! 辱在  
奢竖辱卜夹窗事见什产盯唇币善肠辱窗识各尖介。 (

**Ckj r amo:** 谈话 (相当正式的字眼)。例:

Ps k knpma i aj (Zkj r amo ej c aXnj aopu pkcaplan (ZaX  
oa` Xo da Xl l nk+XZda` , y y = napDXnpa ! 陷结散伐日握在热  
懈唇台化 (当婆准戈梅 (婆考背浅务介。 (

**Ckood:** 喋喋, 闲谈, 街谈巷议。例:

Da dX Yaaj pnuj c pk Ya hcdpXj` hdl lXj pXj` ckood  
ej c XYkqpl akl ha, y y ; j pdkj u Dkl a! 婆握打品死妇轻读道  
汉边几气唇尖领留日考。（

**Cdbp:** 谈笑（无特别目的地愉快亲切地pXlg）。例：

? hXnX ZXi a Xhkj c ZdXppj c Xj` hXqcdj c s qpd ? khkj al  
` a ? nXua, y y C, I ana` qpd! 级老拿准戈尖副戴级老伤神台  
审。（

**Cdbppan:** 喋喋不休，说话很快又讲个不停。例：

I mo, Peps ej c (s du` k ukq opXu ZdXppanj c plana, y y  
S Xppo+F qj pkj ! 戴她她（拟犬年卡死睛在蓝句伙伐边浅郎，（

### 73. “Care killed the cat.” 中的过去动词

z? Xra gɛla` pda ZXp, 摇活益文（犬年卡陷日以字z盈呢闪日à, ZXp 打苦弄满（在看以字日，各陷推文犬年卡死套戈梅错称，

③【集尺】世人相信猫有九条命，可是忧虑都可以使它丧命，何况人只有一条命呢？这句劝人不可忧虑的话，正好用中国的成语z忧能伤人à来翻译，比照字面译为z忧虑杀死了猫à要明白多了。

至于原文为什么要用过去动词，简单的答复是：英文的过去动词所有的用法的一种。英文的过去动词共有五种用法，即：

(/) 表过去的动作或状态：

EXmra` uaopan` Xu, ! 认昨题等修。（

Fè j ɸukq baahdXl l u, ! 拟边货寸纪渐论，（

(0) 表过去、现在、未来共通的不变的真理：

? Xra gɛla` pda ZXp! 盈呢闪日。（

(1) 代替过去完成动词用：

Da` nkl l a` pda lappan Yalkra da s aj p! 婆梅碎仑酒爱十省好介。（

(2) 在间接说法中代替现在用：

Da pkh i a p dXpoda ol kga Aj chod X i enXYhu, ! 婆恶贫认披辱窗益童伙寸坡看。（

(3) 用于假设语气（即虚拟语气y y 编注）中：

Es əd EdX i kj au aj kqcd pk l Xu ukq,! 认息屈认陷效  
妨窗伦看碎各拟。(

上举五种用法中的第二种，也许是从拉丁文的cj ki eZ l anhaZp的  
用法遗传下来的。Faol amaj 把它叫作Caj aneZ l rapanpa (一般的过  
去)，Os aap. Lkqpoi X诸人又称之为JaqpXhl rapanpa (中立过  
去)，无非是说它是跨有过去、现在、未来三个时候，来表示apanj Xh  
pqpd (不变的真理)而使用的。其他的例，还有：

I aj s ana` aZaeramo aran,! 日小弄好齐米窗。( ! 肠装莎  
火I qdd Cek CYkqpJkpdəc的刘散场鲸你柔食。(

BXej pdaXnpj arans kj bXenbX u,! 唇深窗日击找边等坡看  
窗她她。( ! 烟童 (

Pda Zkqma kbprqa lkra j aran` è mqj oi kkpd,! 好事当  
狂。( ! 肠装莎火I əo. J. D. 摇刘摇场摇八散你死食。(

## 74. “one of +名词”后面附句中的动词的数，要以那名词为准

z冷帮弄夕歌窗胁为大窗十日这摇。à以成益文犬zHe Lk eo kj a k  
bpda cnaXpaopl kapo pdXpdXo aranhra` ej ?dej X,à 以文据披呆  
介（边毋呆在喝吹，

③集尺】应改为zHe Lk eo kj a kbpda cnaXpaopl kapo pdXpdXa  
aranhra` ej ?dej X,à才对，因为pdXp指l kapo，不是指kj a，所以要  
接复数动词。当然依照文法来看，kbpda cnaXpaopl kapo，原是一个  
形容词一般的修饰语句，不能视为主语字的，例如：

Oda s Xo s XpZdej c oki a l eaZao kbhj aj Zhkpd s deZd s a  
na oprapZda` kqpkj pda cnXoo lkn pda l qnl koa kbYhaXZdej c,  
！辱握在咖啡想摇小纱在簿唇伤尖坡帮窗拒残。（

句中s ama就是接承l eaZao的动词，如果接Zhkpd的话就要用s X  
o，可见kbpda Zhkpd是用来修饰l eaZao的形容词，主体还是l eaZao  
呢。只有zkj a kb- 名词à是一个例外，后面附句中的动词的数，不以k  
j a，而以kb后的名词为准，这在文法上虽讲不过去，但在逻辑上是极  
其合理的。因为kj a kbpda l kapo是其中之一，他是诗人，其余的人  
也都是诗人，不能把他看作例外的。我们也可以说kj a与l kapo是有同  
一性的，但l eaZao与Zhkpd却是判然不同的两件事物。再看下列例  
句：

Pdama Xra i Xj u YnaXZdao kbZqopki s deZd Xra j kpZk  
j` ai j a` Yu hXs knYu nahcekj (Yqps deZd Xra lknYe` aj Y  
ul qYheZ kl ej ekj Xj` l qj eoda` Yu pda` eoXl l nkrXhkbpdla Z  
ki i qj eu, ! 陷投当敏怀丧漂窗食犬（笔边输法究故追较窗勿  
需（道弄输由论颇话务（台大习窗掉烂道输等吹等。（

Ɖp s Xo kj a kbɔlkoa pɔXɛj o s dɛZd cɛra ukq Xj qj `anɔpX  
j `ɛj c kbapɔnj ɛu, y y ; , C, CXnɛj an! 蓝弄始日措寸年卡弄  
鲜脱窗蓝袭火茶这摇。 (

但如果在kj a之前加有冠词等的话，情形就完全不同了，例如：

Pdɔ ɔ pɔla kj a kbɔla Ykkgo kj pɔla oqYfaZpɔlXpɔdXo ar  
anYaaj s nɔpaj ɛj ?dɛj aoa,! 卫弄吩乡卫伐问弃套夕文省窗摇  
剥幢币字。 (

Oda ɔ pɔla kj hu kj a kbɔla bas cɛrɔ kbi u XZnɔXɛj pXj Z  
a pɔlXpɔ XZnɔXɛj pɔ` s ɛpɔ pɔla khɪ l kap! 辱弄认秘鸟窗馆母  
趣窗怕庄夕同蓝件十日线鸟窗手摇窗摇伐。 (

在以上二例中，第一句中的pɔlXpɔ是指pɔla kj a不是指Ykkgo的，所以动词用dXo；而第二句中的pɔlXpɔ是指pɔla kj hu kj a，不是指cɛrɔ的，所以动词用ɔ。这是特别加重pɔla kj a及pɔla kj hu kj a的缘故，才使得后面的动词与之一致的，说话者的心目中只有那一本书，或那一个女子，其观念是单一的，自然用的动词也变成单数了。有时甚至不加冠词，也不能说是绝对的错，因为至少在文法上是说得过去的。

## 75. 动词后接表示动作的字可分三种

； pXrahXcaj Zu Xj j kqj Za` j kp pk XZZal pXj u i kra Ykkge j co lkn pkq nœp pXrahpk ? dɛj X, ! 漏食社返恶边晚后输仑万夕歌替境窗订龄。（卫活益文据披弄呆误窗（但边毋呆在年卡唇对，

③【集尺】英文的动词后面表示动作时接什么字句是一定的，大约可以分为三类：第一类是接不定词，第二类是接名词子句或名词，第三类是二者皆可。例如：

！ / (Da Xcraa` pk ck Xpkj Za, ! 婆枪宜角刻梅。（

！ 0 (Da X i ɛp pɔXp pɔla XZZqoXpkj ɛ fɔp ! 9 Da X i ɛp pɔla fɔp Za kb pɔla XZZqoXpkj , (! 婆测秘卫袭课恶弄握当窗。（

！ 1 (Da lɛgao pk naX ! kn naX ɛj c (j kra h, ! 婆喜贵对深披。（

问题中的Xj j kqj Za一字是属于第二类，现当作第一类来接不定词的pk XZZal p, 当然不对，应改为：

； pXrahXcaj Zu Xj j kqj Za` pɔXp ɛp s kq h j kp XZZal pXj u i kra Ykkge j co lkn pkq nœp pXrahpk ? dɛj X,

这是接的名词子句，如果换上单纯的名词则成为：

； pXrahXcaj Zu Xj j kqj Za` ɛp ` aZœkj j kp pk XZZal pXj u i kra Ykkge j co lkn pkq nœp pXrahpk ? dɛj X,

在上句中是接的` aZœkj 这个名词。此字作动词用时，是属于第一类，如：

ƉɔdX Yaaj `aZè a` (X pXrahXcaj Zu Xj j kqj Za` (j kɤ  
pk XZZal pXj ui kma Ykkgej co hkn pkq nɔp pXrahpk ? dɛj X,

z通知开饭à是Xj j kqj Za` ɛj j an, z通知客到à是Xj j kqj Za cqao  
pɔ, z宣布结婚à是zƉɔdXo Yaaj Xj j kqj Za` pɔXpI n ; Xj `I ɔo =  
s dhYa i Xma` j at pOqj `Xu,à.



## 76. 自动词的被动语态

；lhpdā cqaopō Xra Xnrā`，活夕窗错称Xnrā弄装错称（摘封望边看碎套鞭错童塔！LXooera rkeZa（（台犬披z颇陷窗几日大鞭等侈介ā弄边听窗。屈黑卫袭套法奢犬集披。

③【集尺】被动语态在英文中是有很奇妙的用途的，例如，同是一个LXooera，它又可分为OpXpXhLXooera（状态的被动）和；Zpkj XhLXooera（动作的被动），而在意味上发生差别，现例解如下：

！X (Da s Xo`maoa` ej pda hXpaop bXodekj, ! 婆潮寸肋什新介。（

！Y (Pda Zdēi maj s ara`maoa` aranu i knj ej c Yu pdae ni kpdaŋ, ! 夫庄考利题早晨提母请犬婆考潮俗服。（

！X (Deo Yēh Xra l Xe` (ok da ks ao j kpdej c j ks, ! 婆窗味怕便放柠（善在婆摇文伦大边罗日纪窗介。（

！Y (Deo Yēh Xra l Xe` macqlXrhu kj pda hmpkbaranu i kj pd, ! 婆兜封在利远摇揉放味。（

上举的（X）例表示状态的持续，（Y）例表示动作的完成。前者是静态的，后者是动态的。在后者句中通常是带得有副词，如上例中的aranu i knj ej c及macqlXrhu等等。又如：

Da eo Yqna` XpS aopi ej opaŋ, ! 币香塔（

Da s Xo Yqna` uaopaŋ Xu, ! 币错字（

Oda s Xo`maoa` ej YhXZg, ! 币香塔（

Oda`maoa` damalbēj YhXZg, ! 币香塔（

他动词用被动语态的形式是很普通的用法，但在意味上有这种区别是值得注意的。自动词本来是没有被动语态的，但有某些特定的自动词，却具有zYa - 自动词的过去分词a的形式，用来表示事物的状态（opXpa）或结果（naoqlp）。

Da s Xo i Xma` ,! 9 Da i Xma` , (! 婆籍讳介。（

Pda pXej s Xo opkl l a` ,! 9 Pda pXej opkl l a` , (! 火茶浅务介。（

S a s ara Xmaa` pk ck,! 9 S a Xmaa` pk ck, (! 认考大枪宜梅。（

Es Xo ` apani ej a` pk ck,! 9 E` apani ej a` pk ck, (! 认祸懈梅。（

如最后一例，两种说法虽则用了等号，但要加以分别的话，也可以说：E` apani ej a` 只是表示单纯的决心而已，Es Xo ` apani ej a` 则表示毅然决然的样子，因为早已在那种决心的状态中了。我们决不可把它作为被动语态看待，最好把那个z自动词的过去分词a当作一个形容词，就好解释了。例如：

Pda oqj eo maoj ,! 9 Pda oqj dXo maoj Xj ` eo j ks ej pda ogu, (! 她水肠尖介。（

Pda oqj eo oap! 她水落末介。（

I u i kj au eo ckj a! ! 认窗伦大秋介！（

Oda lkqj ` pdXp dan opmaj cpd s Xo ckj a,! 辱登货辱窗气较大茅陷介。（

Ol nej c eo Zki a,! 忱马日患。（

; lhpda cqaopo Xra Xma` ,! 几日大等露介。（

S a Xra cXplara` dara pde i knj ej c,! 华题早伤认考大纪居极摇七。（

Da eo ` maoa` alacXj phu, ! 9 Da ` maoao alacXj phu, (! 婆俗想华骄。（

## 77. My uncle remembered me on my birthday

zI u qj Zha nai ai Yama` i a kj i u Yempd` Xu, à摇活（以字  
z认叛该果寸认窗难揉à。犬年卡弄呆介，益文nai ai Yan摇婴窗字  
z果他à集情（各陷骑婆年卡集市，屈剪礼披苦。

③集尺】英文的动词nai ai Yan, 通常有四种含义，即：

(/) 想起，例如：

E` k j kp nai ai Yan ukqn j Xi a, ! 认泰边鹿拟弄史年卡  
窗。（

(0) 记忆，例如：

EodXhXhs Xuo nai ai Yan ukqn gēj` j aoo pk i a, ! 认黑  
鲜脱果寸拟对认窗好吹。（

(1) 致意，例如：

Nai ai Yani a pk ukqn i kpdaŋ, ! 哭七仑乞幢屈啊。（

(2) 赠物，致酬，给奖品，付小费，例如：

Nai ai Yan X Zdeh` kj epō Yempd` Xu, ! 片深夫难揉交  
务。（

Nai ai Yanpda s Xepan, ! 放窃慰深恶。（

I u qj Zha nai ai Yama` i a ēj dēo s dh, ! 认闭该在速鲜夕  
町介速不法认。（

问题中的文句，应作上举的第四种解释，译作第二种的意思自然错了。原意是z我叔父在我生日时送了我一个礼物à。

英文的mai ai Yan一字，后面可接用动名词，也可接用不定词，不过产生的意义有别，宜加注意。比较：

! X (Enai ai Yan oaaej c dei kj Za, ! 认果寸和戈婆摇成。(

! Y (Enai ai Yan pk oaa dei pki knks, ! 认苦题摇兜死梅找婆。(

接用动名词的是指过去，接用不定词的是指未来。不过如果你用了完成不定词，当然也就是指的过去了，所以(X)例可改写为zEnai ai Yan pk dXra oaaej dei kj Za,à或是zEnai ai Yan pdXpEoXs dei kj Za,à。(Y)例也可改写为zEnai ai Yan pdXpEi qop oaa dei pki knks,à。

和mai ai Yan相反的字lkncap, 也有同样的用法，例如：

! X (Elkncapckej c 9 Elkncap pdXpEs aj p

! Y (Elkncap pk ck 9 Elkncap pdXpEi qopck,

ArXj o说，在lkncap一字后应接用不定词，如果要接用动名词时，就得再加一个XYkqp字样，例如：

Elkncap pk i Xchpda hapan, ! 故弄披 (Elkncap XYkqpi Xđ ej c pda hapan,

但一般的英文学者都认为lkncap后面是可以直接接用动名词的，如Dknj Yu在*Lbpano boe Qobca* 1, /7中即有zOdXlhukq aran lkncapdaXnej c danoej c? à的例句。VXj `rkknj在*Dboe Ykkg* 1, 05中也有zEodXlhj aran lkncap oaaej c danopXj ` kj pda YXhZkj ukbpda l XhZa,à的例句。Grqœj cX在他的*Dboe+Ykkg* 1, 16/中也有zS alh, e bukq pdej g ckj c pk ` ej j ans dhdah ukq pk lkncapckej c pk Zdq rZd, y y ? kpao, *Eœe aralh* à。

## 78. 不可说 “I am having money.”

摘文法窗封兜 (z认善在握陷伦à悟呢以成益文窗zEdXra i kj a u,à (边看碎披zEXi dXrēj c i kj au,à (犬年卡田看碎披zDa ə dXre j c də oql l an,à窗郎,

③【集尺】动词dXra作z所有à解的时候，是表示状态，而非表示动作的，所以用在这种意义上是没有进行式的形态的，例如：

/, 婆陷籍史窗那汽。

Da dXo X ckk` Zkj opəpəkj ,

0, 婆陷大窗班断。

Da dXo X cnaXpXi Yəpəkj ,

以上即令是表示状态也不能用进行式的动词。但是说zDa ə dXre j c də oql l an,à确是可以说的，因为ə dXrēj c是等于ə pXgēj c，而没有z所有à的意思，ə pXgēj c即ə aXpēj c 所以是可以进行式的。动词的dXra，只要不作z有à字解，就可以用进行式。通常dXra被用作z享受à (aj fku) 或z饮食à (l XnpXga kb) 的意思，或其他的惯用句，在那种场合，是无妨用进行式的。现再举几个例来看：

/, 华年狭题掉怖窗热。

S a Xra dXrēj c X pameYhu dkpoqi i an pdeə uaXn,

0, 认听披婆在蓝句屎寸掉怖敲纪。

EdaXnda ə dXrēj c X s kj ` anəhpəi a pda,ə,

1, 该请善在握在扫杂。

BXpdaə j ks dXrēj c X YXpda,

2, 题气妇好呀。

S a Xra dXrɛj c ckk` s aXpɔlan,

此外表示状态的动词，即是通常不用进行式的动词，还有下举一类的字：

/, 拟窗该请认悟弄亮删道算。

Egɔ ks ukq n bXpɔlan kj hu Yu oɛd p

0, 辱同骑披像辱该请边入披翻像辱母请。

Oda maai Yhaɔ dani kpɔlan pɔXj dan bXpɔlan,

1, 拟果寸认论,

Fk ukq mai ai Yani a,

2, 许神在末侯杀。

Pda oZd kkhɔpXj ` o Xppda lkkp kbX dɛh

3, 叛叛显在诺击。

Qj Zla hɛrao ɛj pɔla oqYq nYo kb pɔla Zɛpu,

以上的动词普通的情形都是不用进行式的。其他还有 l kooaoo、Y alkj c、lkra、lɛga 等字，原具有持续的性质，所以通常也不用进行式，但 hɛra 和 opXj ` 却是可以有下面这样的进行式的用法的：

/, 认窗该母大河在。

=kpɔ i ul Xnɔj pɔ Xra opɛh hɛɛj c,

0, 辱蓝什握站在辱母请那卑。

Oda s Xo opXj ` ɛj c Zlko a pk dani kpɔlan,

即是 hɛra 不作 z 住 à 解，而作 z 活着 à 解；opXj ` 不作 z 在 à 解，而作 z 站立 à 解。还有 z 看见 à (oaa)、z 听见 à (daXn) 等字也没有进行式，只有 z 看 à (lkkɔ Xp) 和 z 听 à (lɛɔpɔj pk)，才可以用进行式。

/, 拟咖和蓝句陷年卡，

S dXp` k ukq oaa pɫana,  
0, 拟咖年卡,  
S dXpXma ukq hkkgej c Xp  
1, 拟茅陷听和认披窗论,  
F kj ꞑukq daXni a,  
2, 婆在听荣尚电。  
Da ɔ hɔpaj ej c pk pɫa nX ɛk,

当oaa、daXn表一度的视听（知觉行为）时，便不用进行式，如果作为一个句子表持续的动作时，又可以用进行式了：

/, 叛该善握在新夹朴观愤。  
Qj Zha ɔ oaaej c pɫa oɛdpo kbOej cXl kma,  
0, 婆握在大许句听伙。  
Da ɔ daXnej c haZpɫmao Xpɫa qj ɛranɔɐu,

## 79. 时态的一致和不一致

在牛疾邱会肠吧窗〔死套益福斥此〕伤（对s kq h 摇婴窗套法颇剪  
窗礼活夕（陷活外）zAraj ɔEgj ks （Es kq h j kp p a h à 在蓝添见活  
夕窗错称（犬喝边套Oq Yf q j Z p r a L X o p 窗 g j a s , 虎套介Ej` e Z X p r a L m a  
o a j p 窗 g j k s （犬喝在室活夕田套s k q h 道边套s d h

③**集尺**】辞典上的这个例句，虽与z时的一致à不合，但也并不为错误。在普通条件句中时态前后呼应的规则，略如下表：

; j paZa` aj p! 伞 (	? kj oamqaj p! 挂 (
! X ( E` eZXpra Lmaoj pkn LXop	Kn` ej Xnu Bkni
OqYfqj Zpra Bqpm ma	Kn` ej Xnu Bkni
! Y ( OqYfqj Zpra Bqpm ma	{ Kn` ej Xnu Bkni kn Oei l ha ? kj ` epkj XhBkni
! Z ( { OqYfqj Zpra LXop LarhaZp OqYfqj Zpra LXop	{ Oei l ha ? kj ` epkj Bkni ? ki l kqj ` ? kj ` epkj XhBkni

条件句为什么要分 (X) (Y) (Z) 三种句型呢? 因为如果那条件是表示真实的 (pqa) 事, 则动词必须用  $\text{E}^{\text{pqa}}$ , 例如:  $\text{zAraj e bda } \text{e l kkn}$ ,  $\text{da } \text{e dkj aop}$  (9  $\text{E}^{\text{pqa}} \text{pda } \text{e l kkn}$ ,  $\text{Yqpda } \text{e dkj aop}$ ) à。又如  $\text{zBda s Xo oarama}$ ,  $\text{da s Xo fqop}$  (9  $\text{Pdkqcd da s Xo oarama}$ ,  $\text{uapda s Xo fqop}$ ) à。这是属于 (X) 型的用法。

如果那条件是表示可疑的（`kqYpqh）事，则动词就要用OqYfqj Zpe ra Lmaoj pknBqpma，例如：zEda Ya cqdpu，（knEda odkqh l nk



ra cqeɸu, ) da kqcdpɸk Ya l qj ɔda` , ɸEodkqh̃ bXɔh̃ Es kqh̃ pu XcXg̃ ,à. 这是属于 (Y) 型的用法。

如果那条件是表示虚伪的 (bXlɔa) 事, 则动词就要用 OqYfqj Zpɹa L Xopkn LXopLanɔZp, 例如: zɸda s ara cqeɸu, da s kqh̃ j kpol aXg ok Ykh̃ hu,à, 又如 zɸda dX Yaaj cqeɸu, da s kqh̃ j kpdXra ol kga j ok Ykh̃ hu,à. 这是属于 (Z) 型的用法。

通常用 araj ɔ (9 pɪkqcd 或 Xɪpɪkqcd) 的句中, 前后都是用现在时态, 如:

ɸh̃` k ɸ (araj ɔ ɸpɸXgao i a Xɪhɪda Xɪpɪj kkj ,! 规哭死花 仿照伐窗杀肉 (认各弄摘谢。 (

ɸhɪaj` ukq pɪa i kj au (araj ɔ EdXra Yknks a` ɸpi uoalh̃ ! 蓝抱伦认摇兜即法拟 (规哭认装挤似死想日纪梅即尖。 (

Araj ɔbi u s XpZd ɔ nɔdp (s a odXɪhYa pkk bXpɔ,! 规哭认窗 币边呆 (认考似夺边仿。 (

上举三例都是用的现在时, 不过这种条件句用过去时也是很普遍的, 例如:

Es kqh̃ j kp` k ɸ (ɔEs ara ɸj dɔ l bXZa,! 入柜认弄婆窗化 ( 认酒边会蓝维谢窗。 (

Araj ɔEs ara nɔZd Es kqh̃ s kng,! 校始认概陷 (认似死谢 事。 (

以上所说的种种, 都是一些基本规则, 但语法是可以活用的, 时常有变则发生, 如问题中的例句就是一个变则, 因此前后不能获得 z 时的一致 à. 据英文学者 Os aap 说, 这种过去时与现在时连用, 可称为 X?ki l qh oera i kk`, 是条件句的一种 l qm̃a i kk`, 而英文辞典名编纂者 Bks lan 说得更为明白: 他说在普通的情形下, 当然前后都用过去时, 但如欲表示生动, 条件句中就用现在时, 例如:

Eodkqh̃ j kps kj` anɔda ZXi a,! j kni Xh (

Eodkqh̃ j kps kj` anɔda ZXi ao,! rɛrɛ (

如大家知道的，s kq̃h̃ 是s d̃h̃的过去，但有时也可用于现在，以表示客气，尤其是在请求句中说得客气些（ej l k̃p̃a ñaŋq̃aop̃o）不用s d̃h̃uk q̃而用s kq̃h̃ ukq̃，当然是由于qj Z̃aŋp̃X̃ej pu而来的说法。我们不常说zS e l̃h̃ukq̃ Z̃ki a d̃aŋa l̃k̃ñXi ej q̃p̃a? à, 而常说zS kq̃h̃ ukq̃ Z̃ki a d̃aŋa l̃k̃ñXi ej q̃p̃a? à, 是因为说s kq̃h̃的可靠性比说s d̃h̃的要少，故显得客气，如果说成你非来不可的口气，那就成了命令，而不是请求了。在zAra j d̃Eg j ks , Es kq̃h̃ j kp̃p̃a l̃h̃（即令我知道，我也不一定要说。）à一句中，用s kq̃h̃比用s d̃h̃要来得弱，只表示纯然的假设罢了。如果说成zAra j d̃Eg j ks（或gj as），Es d̃h̃j kp̃p̃a l̃h̃（我就知道，我也不说。）à就表示坚定的意志，来得更为现实而没有缓和的余地了。

## 80. 假设语气的用法

*Pda S aag I bcbvəa* 军载 *Fknkpd rXj Fknaj* 窗摇临文伟夕陷活外) *zOp BnXj Zə kb; ooəp (dkaej c də cXn` aj (s daj Xoga` s dXpda s kqh` k əda s ama oq`` aj hu pk haXnj pdXpda s Xo pk` ə Xpoqj oappdXp` Xu, Da oX (Es kqh` bə əd dkaej c i u cXn` aj ,* 屈问枪在摇活函拿童气窗文活夕 (犬喝仑套 *da s ama* (挂田套 *da s Xo* 郎, 田函拿童气窗文活 (听怖盯仑挂活 (骑夕错称什塔窗刚堂 (弄烦陷摇兜窗封就,

③【集尺】句中代表假设语气 (*OqYfqj Zpra i kk`*) 的只有 *s ama* 一字, 其后附属的子句, 不应再用假设的字眼, 所以只可以说 *pdXpda s Xo pk` ə* (命定要死), 或 *pdXpda s kqh` ə* (将死), 而不能再用 *pdXpda s ama pk` ə*, 为着时态的前后呼应起见, 句中既用了假设过去的 *s ama*, 后文也要用过去时态的动词才行。

假设语气的文句, 通常由条件句 (*LnkpXoə*) 及归结句 (*; l k` ko ə*) 而构成, 前后句中的动词, 须前后呼应, 不过这种呼应系由习惯语法所使然, 并不一定过去接过去, 现在接现在, 未来接未来。兹就假设语气最常用的四种时态, 举例说明如下:

函拿善在 (*OqYfqj Zpra Lmaoj p*): 条件句中的动词用 *Ya* 或其他动词的现在形, 第三人称单数现在也不加语尾的 [o]; 归结句接 (/) 直陈语气 (*E` eZpra i kk`*) 现在或 (0) 未来; 又可接 (1) 命令语气 (*E l anXpra i kk`*)。例如:

! / (*Bpdə Ya pqa (EXi okmu tknəp*

! 0 (*Pdkqcd da Zkj baoo (Es dhj kpl Xn` kj dei ,*

! 1 (*S dXparan Ya kqn bXpa (lapqoj kpX` cqdppk kqn i əbknəpj ao, y y Ckhi oi qd*

函拿确尖 (OqYfqj Zpra Bqpra) : 条件句用odkqh Ya; 归结句接 (/) odXh (或s dh等) Ya, (0) odkqh (或s kqh等) Ya, (1) 命令语气, 例如:

! / (Epodkqh Ya pra (EodXhYa ranu dXl l u,  
! 0 (Eodkqh bXh (Es kqh pru XcXej ,  
! 1 (Eoda odkqh Zki a (l haXoa cera pde pk dei ,

函拿戈梅 (OqYfqj Zpra LXop) : 条件句用s ama或其他的过去动词8归结句接 (/) odkqh (或s kqh等) Ya, (0) odkqh (或s kqh等) dXra Yaaj 。例如:

! / (EEs ama X Yen (Es kqh hu pk ukq,! 田 (EEpra` (EZkqh` k ep! 田 (EE` e j kpkyau dei (Ei edpYal q j oda` ,  
! 0 (Es a hra` ej pkoa` Xuo (Eodkqh dXra Yaaj Xg j edp y y I ama+ epd

函拿戈梅秋成 (OqYfqj Zpra LXopLanlaZp) : 条件句用dX Yaaj , 归结句接 (/) odkqh (或s kqh等) dXra Yaaj , (0) odkqh` (或s kqh等) Ya。例如:

! / (E da dX Yaaj ukqj c (da s kqh dXra ckj a,  
! 田 (EEdX` nqj g ep (Eodkqh dXra` ea` ,! 田 (EEdX` j kpkyaua` dei (Ei edpdXra Yaaj l qj oda` ,  
! 0 (E da dX s krga` dXn` ej dœ ukqpdl (da s kqh Y a X nZd i Xj j ks ,! Zh E da dX s krga` dXn` ej dœ ukqpd (da s kqh dXra i X a X bkrpqj a, (

## 81. 假设语气的时态和实际时间的比较

函拿童气似盯善在、戈梅、确尖袭袭什塔（但副认考史哈什患  
伤窗善在、戈梅、确尖笔边摇样（怖始偿许慰朵等鼓救。屈酒函拿  
童气窗什塔同史哈窗什患字摇比厚（奢系夹碎披苦。

③【集尺】英文动词时态的现在、过去、未来的用法，和实际的时间是大致相符合的，但英文中有一种特别的时态是中文所没有的，那就是完成时态（**LarhaZpPaj oa**）。完成时态中又分现在、过去、未来三种，现在完成时态是表示从过去到现在为止的一段时期；过去完成时态则是表示过去的过去，如讲故事的人都是用过去时态来讲述当时发生的事情的，如果说到那以前发生的事情就须用过去完成时态。至于未来完成时态，则是用于说到了未来某个时候就可以完成的事。

英文的假设语气，原有两大作用：一为用来表达不确实的事情（**Qj ZanpXej pu**），乃至怀疑的事情（**FkqYp**），另一为用来表达想象的事情（**Oql l koepkj**）。说实际时候的现在，可用假设现在（**Oq Yfqj Zpra Lmaoj p**）来表示怀疑或不确实的事情。例如：

**BX i Xj kj Za bXh (Xhs dhpraX ql kj dei ,!** 落佳杀拾。（

**Bukqn` aoerao Ya aj` haoo (ukqnZXrao s dhYa ok (pkk,**  
! 突屈荣忙（盈务荣忙。（

又可用假设过去（**OqYfqj Zpra LXop**）来表想象的事情，例如：

**BEs ama XYen` (Es kqh` hu pk ukq,!** 认死弄摇悟冷认酒  
钓等拟番仑尖介。（

**Es kqh` pk DaXraj EdX ukqn l kpaj Zu, y y OdXgaol aX  
ra!** 认息屈认死陷拟蓝维窗呢较酒好介。（

说实际时候的过去，可用假设现在完成（OqYfqj Zpra Lmaoj p LanhaZp）或假设未来完成（OqYfqj Zpra Bqpma LanhaZp），以表怀疑或不确实的事情，例如：

Ebukq dXra`kj a s epd pla Ykkg (l haXoa mapnj epk i a,! 蓝剥邱咖秋介（屈各法认。（

Ebda odkqh dXra bj eoda` deo s krg (palhdei pk Zki a Xpkj Za,! 婆窗供字入柜谢秋介窗化（拟死婆具伤尖。（

又可用假设过去完成（OqYfqj Zpra LXop LanhaZp）来表想象的事情，例如：

Ebukq dX Zki a paj i ej qpao hXpan (Eodkqh dXra Yaa j kqp! 拟死查尖你盯熄（认酒肠梅介。（

Da hkgga` Xo ebda dX oaaj Xcdkop! 婆窗维庄好像妹介风摇维。（

说实际时候的未来，可用假设现在（OqYfqj Zpra Lmaoj p）或假设未来（OqYfqj Zpra Bqpma）来表怀疑或不确实的事情，例如：

Ebplao Ya pqa (EXi okmu bkn ep! 入柜卫弄章窗（酒她看松介。（

EbEodkqh bXeh (Es kqh prn XcXej ,! 入柜认失包介（认死晚尖摇成。（

又可用迂回说法的假设未来（Land dnXopZ OqYfqj Zpra Bqpna）来表想象的事情，例如：

EbEs ana pk Xog dei (da s kqh Zkj oaj p! 认梅找婆（婆酒会枪宜窗（边戈认边鸵宜梅找婆鞍介。（

Araj ebpla oqj s ana pk naa ej pla saop (i u naoklqpk j s kqh Ya qj Zd+Xj ca` ,! 规哭她水程撒卑肠尖（认窗祸懈似边会顿变窗。（

## 82. 完全他动词和不完全他动词

z认泰卫弄对窗a摇活化以成益文什犬zEpdj g ɸə nɛdpà。但  
田看黑梅从（道披成zEpdj g ɸnɛdpà。卫结袭披法边毋陷喝边  
枪，

③集尺】 zEpdj g ɸə nɛdpà是一个复句（?ki l hat Oaj paj Z a），其中Epdj g是主要子句，（pdXp） ɸə nɛdp是附属子句。主要子句中的动词pdj g是一个完全他动词（?ki l lapa PnXj oɸra Ran Y），所以附属子句（pdXp） ɸə nɛdp是它的宾语（KYfaZp）。至于第二种说法zEpdj g ɸnɛdpà，是一个单句（Oei l la Oaj paj Za），其中的pdj g是一个不完全他动词（Ej Zki l lapa PnXj oɸra Ran Y），ɸ是它的宾语，nɛdp是不完全他动词所必需的补语（?ki l lai aj p）。这种不完全他动词，英文有一个专门名称，叫作BXZpɸra Ra nY（作为动词），意思是说对它的宾语有所作为。例如：

Da i X a dandə s da, ! 婆始辱谢婆窗卢庄。（

这是用名词补语的，同时也是宾格补语（s da与dan为同一人），由作为动词的i X a，对宾语的dan发生作用，使之成为də s da。

Da i X a dandXl l u, ! 婆始辱纪渐。（

这是用形容词补语的，同时也是宾格补语（dXl l u的即是dan），由作为动词的i X a，对宾语的dan发生作用，使之快乐。

现在再举几个完全他动词与不完全他动词的比较如下：

〔Gaal ukq nauao q l kj dei , ! 秋怕（  
〔Gaal ukq nauao kl aj , ! 边秋怕（

{ Es dhi Xga Xi Xj kbdei ,! 秋怕 (   
 { Es dhi Xga dei i uZki l Xj dkj ,! 边秋怕 (   
 { Ei Xga XZqopki kb`kej c ok,! 秋怕 (   
 { Ei Xga epXZqopki pk`k ok,! 边秋怕 (   
 { EYahara pda qj pma nal knp! 秋怕 (   
 { EYahara pda nal knp qj pma,! 边秋怕 (   
 { Gaal dei Zki l Xj u,! 秋怕 (   
 { Gaal dei Yqou,! 边秋怕 (   
 { Pdau Zdkoa dei Xs da,! 秋怕 (   
 { Pdau Zdkoa dei gej c,! 边秋怕 (   
 { Oda s dhi Xga dei Xckk` s da,! 秋怕 (   
 { Oda s dhi Xga dei Xckk` dqoYXj` ,! 边秋怕 (

在完全他动词oXu的造句中，可用各种不同的不完全他动词，如Z  
Xlh atl maoo、`aoZneYa等来替代：

{ Aranuyk` u oXuo pldXpdkj au eo os aap! 秋怕 (   
 { Aranuyk` u ZXlh dkj au os aap! 边秋怕 (   
 { Da oXe` pldXp pda opXpai aj ps Xo bXha,! 秋怕 (   
 { Da `aZXma` pda opXpai aj pXha,! 边秋怕 (   
 { Pda fas alhan oXe` pldXp pda `eXi kj` s Xo caj qej a,! 秋  
 怕 (   
 { Pda fas alhan l nkj kqj Za` pda `eXi kj` caj qej a,! 边秋  
 怕 (   
 { Da oXe` pldXp da s Xo oXproba` s epd pda XmXj cai aj p  
 ! 秋怕 (   
 { Da atl maooa` dei oalboXproba` s epd pda XmXj cai aj p  
 ! 边秋怕 (



(Ei qopoXu pɔXpEXi qj anɥXhpɔ pɔa pXog,! 秋怕 (   
 (Ei qopks j i uoalbqj anɥXhpɔ pɔa pXog,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Da oXuo pɔXpda ɔ cɔɔpɔ,! 秋怕 (   
 (Da dXo Zkj ɔaoa` dei oalbɔɔpɔ,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Da oXuo pɔXpda ɔ X? dnopeXj ,! 秋怕 (   
 (Da l nkɔaoao dei oalbX? dnopeXj ,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Da oXuo EXi dɔ oql anɔn,! 秋怕 (   
 (Da XZgj ks ɔa` cao i a Xo dɔ oql anɔn,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Pdau oXu pɔXpda ɔ pɔaenɔks ɔhi Xopan,! 秋怕 (   
 (Pdau ɔZkcj ɔa dei Xo pɔaenɔks ɔhi Xopan,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Pdau oXu pɔXpda ɔ XYaXqɔɔhs ki Xj ,! 秋怕 (   
 (Pdau` aoZnɔa danXo XYaXqɔɔhs ki Xj ,! 边秋怕 (   
 (Da oXuo pɔXp pɔa opXp kb pɔa Zkqj pɔ ɔ` al ɔnXYɔa,   
 ! 秋怕 (   
 (Da ɔal ɔaoaj pɔ pɔa opXp kb pɔa Zkqj pɔ Xo` al ɔnXYɔa,   
 ! 边秋怕 (

### 83. dative verb的用法

益文错称悟町装错称副婆错称结袭（犬喝田陷年卡` Xpra ranY 郎，卫袭错称同装错称故婆错称陷年卡边枪，

③【集尺】授与动词（` Xpra ranY）是他动词的一种。凡需要有宾语的动词就是他动词。一般的他动词只要有一个宾语便行，但这种他动词，需要有两个宾语，一为直接宾语，一为间接宾语。这种需要两个宾语的他动词，就叫作授与动词。

兹举例说明如下：

授与动词可由含义的不同，大别为五类：

（/）表授与之意的：

EdXra cəraj dei Xi kj pɬɔ j kɔZa, ! 认在摇伐远仑听毋婆介。（

Ukqn ɬappan dXo Xɬkn` a` i a i qZd l ɬaXoqna, ! 后斗尖海（吸犬施燃。（

S dɬukq l ɬaXoa naXZd i a pɬXpYkkg, ! 屈爱蓝剥邱辞法认摇杀。（

ɬɬɬɬaj` ukq Xɬhpda XooɔpXj Za ej i ul ks an, ! 认黑坏较尖援闲拟。（

Da dXo l nki ɔa` i a Xj Xl l kɛj pi aj p! 婆尺堂罢认找事。（

（0）表告知之意的：

Da dXo pkɬi i a XoaZnap! 婆恶贫介认摇伐们们。（

S dɰukq l hXoa oɕ c qo X okj c, ! 拟法认考财摇辙饿好论, (

Lnkhaokn S kj c paxZdao qo Aj chod, ! 王较清较认考窗益文。 (

EXoga` dei X mjaopkj, ! 认问介婆摇伐问弃。 (

Da Xj os ama` i a j kplɕ c, ! 婆年卡似确灰尺。 (

(1) 表贡献之意的:

Da dXo maj` ama` i a X cnaXp oanreZa, ! 婆罢介认摇伐大冷。 (

At anZoa s dɰ` k ukq ck` , ! 湾错对拟陷她。 (

S dɰukq` ki a X bXrkqn, ! 拒地拟摇杀。 (

Pk` k dei fqopeZa (da eo j kpXYX` i Xj, ! 返另唇披 ( 婆笔边弄摇伐怀日。 (

Da l Xe` i a X deɕd Zki l hɰ aj p, ! 婆妇写黄认。 (

(2) 表得失之意的:

Es dɰcapukq X pɕZgap, ! 认梅闪拟句龄。 (

Pdeɕ pɕZgap s dɰcXj ukq X i eoɕkj, ! 令卫伪龄入场。 (

Es dɰhoaZq ma ukq X l koɕpkj, ! 认死闪拟找摇午群。 (

Es dɰpmu pk l nkZq ma ukq pda Yaop pari o EZXj, ! 认死坏较梅我玫陷脚窗添见。 (

Pda Ykkg s kj dei X nal qpXpkj, ! 蓝剥邱始婆肠介林。 (

Deo olks j aoo lkop dei pda ZdXj Za, ! 婆她查诞 ( 失梅介基会。 (

(3) 其他可用授与动词的:

LXooaj cam Xra Xlks a` 1. HYo, kblqccXca, ! 漏几悟投牲  
充散你白食冷。 (

EdXra hknYe` aj dei i u dkqoa, ! 认边投婆进认窗屋  
庄。 (

Pdau` aj ui a fqopZa, ! 婆考对认她边返另介。 (

?Xj ukq ol Xra i a Xbas i ej qpao, ! 抽误拟结散盯熄好  
论, (

Dan hXj` hkn` ZdXra` danj k naj p! 辱点村边爬辱窗点  
伦。 (

S a s dhi chu hknra dei deo hXqlpo, ! 认考鸵宜烹肯婆窗  
戈呆。 (

Pdau cmq` ca` i a araj i ul eppXj Za, ! 婆考接胁母窗鼻常  
大边法认。 (

Dks Eaj ru ukq ukqnckk` daXlhd!! 认当卡商阔拟窗河  
极呀! (

Eks a ukq kj a pdkqoXj` ` khXmo, ! 认罗拟摇拿元。 (

Da` kao j kpYaXnXj u kj a i XheZa, ! 婆对泡喝日大边格翻  
宜。 (

Es eod ukq aranu dXl l ej aoo, ! 现拟实福荣恋。 (

另外还有一种变则的授与动词, 是只有间接宾语, 而无直接宾语的, 例如:

Pda` rao YaZki ao ukq ranu s alh! 卫见俗拟潮介妇且  
赋。 (

EpYadkkrao ukq pk Ya ZXrahlh! 拟堂当懈。 (

EXi l ral Xra` hkn pda s knoppdXpZXj YabXlhi a, ! 认著  
抱好堂放胁怀窗事曲登难。 (

Pdeo dkqoa Zkopi a pdenpu pdkqoXj` ` khXmo, ! 城屋花介  
认散泗元。 (

Dks hkj c`è ep pXga ukq pk i XopanAj chod, ! 拟爱益  
文许好花介当母年供都, (

Pdeo ZkXpdXo hXopa` i a bra uaXmo, ! 卫俗潮介柔年。 (

Ogehs kqh XrXehqo j kpej c XcXej opj qi Yan, ! 在大日  
窗趣蜡戈当什 (认考窗几陪似死失梅甚套窗。 (

Pdeo rkki oarrao i a knXopq` u, ! 城殴认套字邱点。 (

I u daXnp bXda` i a Xppda oedp, ! 摇和蓝愤加认酒失梅介  
讨气。 (

I u gj ks ha` ca kbAj chod opkk` i a ej ckk` opaX, ! 认  
窗益文母鸟登皇介妇大窗套盛。 (

〔注〕这种变则的授与动词是不能用作被动态的。上举例句中的p  
k Ya ZXabqh pdenpu plkqoXj` ` khXmo、pk i XopanAj chod、bra  
uaXmo、j kpej c (XcXej opj qi Yan) 等都是副词, 不可误作直接宾  
语。

## 84. factitive verb的用法

益文在装错称副婆错称情（听披各陷年卡bXZpəpəra ranY：卫等春弄摇袭在维窗错称（屈剪礼夹碎集披。

③【集尺】英文动词大别只有自动和他动两种，细别起来则有完全自动词和不完全自动词；完全他动词和不完全他动词四种。语法家对于不完全他动词另外给了一个专门名称，叫作bXZpəpəra ranY，中译为z作为动词â。凡他动词都要有宾语，有的在一个宾语之外，还需要有补语，才能表达出一个完整的意念来，所以它是不完全他动词，要有补语补足，使之变为完全的。例如：

Da i X a dandə s də, ! 婆始辱成犬婆窗卢毆。（

Da i X a dandXl l u, ! 婆始辱纪渐。（

上例中的Da是主语，i X a是他动词，dan是宾语，də s də和dXl l u便是补语。再看下举二例：

! X (Epləj g əpə nəd p ! 认泰卫弄对窗。（

! Y (Epləj g əp nəd p ! 认泰卫弄对窗。（

在(X)句中E是主语，pləj g是完全他动词，əpə nəd p是宾语，但在(Y)句中的pləj g是不完全他动词，因为除了宾语的əp外，还需要一个补语的nəd p。再比较下二例：

! X (Da dXo YaZki a nəd Yu ` dcaj Za, ! 婆台麦样概。（

! Y (F dcaj Za dXo i X a dē nəd, ! 婆台麦样概。（

在 (X) 句中说 **Da dXo YaZki a** (他变成)，意思是不完全的 (因为 **YaZki a** 是一个不完全自动词)，必须加补语 **neZd** 才成句，至于在 (Y) 句中 **F~~de~~caj Za dXo i X a dei** (勤快使他成为)，意思也是不完全的 (因为 **i Xga** 在此为不完全他动词)，必须加补语 **neZd** 才成句。这是不完全自动词与不完全他动词的比较。

兹将不完全他动词举例说明如下：

**S dk i X a ukq fq`ca Yaps aaj qo, !** 谁死拟谢认考窗并毛, (

**S dXp`k ukq ZXlhpde lks an, !** 卫花候年卡林婴, (

**Pdau alaZpa` dei ZdXeri Xj, !** 婆考市婆谢室席。 (

**Epdkqcdpdei X lkkh, !** 认秘犬婆弄摇伐沙庄。 (

**Gaal ukqnauao kl aj Xlhpda pa a, !** 什什死险宜咖。 (

**Da halp i a dan cqXn`eXj, !** 婆角速鲜死认谢辱窗憾护日。 (

**Fk ukq lq` pda Ykkg aXou, !** 拟货寸蓝剥邱容侮对论, (

另外有一些不完全他动词，是带得有一个介词的，补语要接在那个介词后面，如 **macXn` Xo**、**i eopXga lkn** 等等皆是，我们不可把那冠有介词的补语，误认为是用作副词的介词片语。例如：

{ **! X (LlaXoa i Xga ukqmalbXpdki a,**  
 { **! Y (Pdau ol aj pplaendkj aui kkj Xpdki a,**

(X) 例中的 **Xpdki a** 是不完全他动词 **i Xga** 的及宾语 **ukqmalb** 的补语，而 (Y) 例中的 **Xpdki a** 则是修饰完全他动词 **ol aj p** 的副词。再举他例比较如下：

{ **! X (Eaopai dei Xo Xranudkj aopi Xj, !** 避童 (

{ **! Y (Da aj paro pda Zkj paopXo Xl rklaoockj Xh, !** 富称 (

{ **! X (Ei eopkkg dei lkni uYnkplan, !** 避童 (

| ! Y (EYkqcdpɛpɪkni uYnkɔdan, ! 富称 (

| ! X (LhXoa gaal aranɔpɛj c ɛj l anhaZphu ckk` Zkj ` ɛɛ  
kj , ! 避童 (

| ! Y (Emai ai YandXrɛj c i apɛi ɛj Xoai ɛZkj oZɛkqo  
Zkj ` ɛɛkj , ! 富称 (

| ! X (Da dXo oapXj as oZdai a kj ɪkkɔ ! 避童 (

| ! Y (EZnkooa` pɪa Ynɛ ca kj ɪkkɔ ! 富称 (

再看下面这些带有介词的补语:

Da ɛ nɛXn` a` Xo nɔɛpa X nɛZd i Xj , ! 婆鞭咖字摇伐妇陷  
伦窗日。 (

Pdau XZgj ks ha` ca ɛi Xo Xj Xqɔɪknɔɛj pɪaoa i Xpɪa  
no, ! 婆考测秘婆弄卫对亮窗没饰。 (

S a XZgj ks ha` ca ɛpXo Yɛj ` ɛj c, ! 认考测秘城员陷甚。 (

Pdau naZkcj ɛva` ɛi Xo pɪaen Zɛaɪ ! 婆考测秘婆弄拍  
尽。 (

Pdau ` aoZnɛYa dan Xo X YaXqɔɪhs ki Xj , ! 婆考爱辱迷  
省成摇伐堪怕。 (

Eɪkkɔg Xɪhdɛ opknao ɪknɔɪpɪ, ! 认爱婆颇披窗怕便首犬章  
史窗。 (

Oda Zdkoa ɛi ɪkndandqoYXj ` , ! 辱市兜婆谢未都。 (

; pɪnɔpɛɔɛdpEi ɛpkkɔg ɛi ɪknXoanɔXj p ! 偿鹿认误秘  
婆弄鸣日。 (

Gaal ɛɛj i ɛj ` , ! 果在懈伤。 (

Da s Xo haɪpkqɛj pɪa Zkɪ , ! 婆输奖投。 (

Fkj ɔpɪaXra ɛi ɛj pɪa kɪrZd, ! 边死始婆赏乡贾甲。 (

S a dkh ɛi ɛj aopai , ! 认考写黄婆。 (



; 1 nkfaZpdXo Yaaj oap kj lkkp lkn aopXYhedej c X` al Xn  
pi aj popkna pk oalh? dej aoa ckk` o,! 拿角八固返皮肠湃夕歌固  
务窗国划算在进食夕。（

Ukq i qopl qppej 1 nXZpeZa,! 拟杯是爱蓝伐放制史食。（

## 85. be going to的用法

F, D, HXs məj Za在婆中窗NbəYks 摇邱夕陷活字zɛ ɕkɛj c pɕk  
ck,à. 犬年卡算睛披介ɕkɛj c (各死披pɕk ck, 屈酒卫伐Ya ɕkɛj c pɕk  
窗套法夹碎披苦。

③【集尺】英文的Ya ɕkɛj c原是ck的进行式，但现在口语中已离开原意很远，而由向着某种动作或状态进行中那个意思，转变而有表示未来的助动词的作用了。这个Ya ɕkɛj c pɕk ck的形式，英国一般人避免用它，在美国口语中却用的极多。在美国ɕkɛj c pɕk发音也略有变化，常被记录为ckj j X。它有四种用法：

(/) 叙述最近的未来将要发生的事情：

ɸə ɕkɛj c pɕk nXɛj ,! 酒死杀通介。（

Da ə ɕkɛj c pɕk Ya l qj əda` ,! 婆黑输等。（

Ukqn` kc ə ɕkɛj c pɕk gɛhpɔXpZXpɛj Xi ɛj qpa,! 拟窗方  
酒死爱蓝悟满验司介。（

Pdama ə ɕkɛj c pɕk Ya X ZenZqo dama j at ps aag,! 杀石歧  
卫盗会陷摇伐具色傲死尖。（

Pdə odk s ə ɕkɛj c pɕk XppnXZpX ckk` ` aXhkbXppaj pɕkj ,  
! 卫色会妇洛友窗。（

(0) 叙述最近的未来将要做的动作。在这种情况下，多半包含得有一种企图，或表示一种计划或预定，有时也可表示决心：

EXi ɕkɛj c pɕk s nɸa Xɸappan,! 认遇抱死省摇东十。（

Da ə ɕkɛj c pɕk Ya i Xnna` pɔə Xqɸɸi j ,! 婆打品华取籍  
讳。（

S dXp Xra ukq ckej c pk Ya s daj ukq Xra cnks j q1 ,  
! 拟彻大介泰谢伐年卡维庄窗日, (

I u bXpdans Xo XoXedknXj` EXi ckej c pk Ya XoXedkn (f  
kk,! 认该请弄摇伐朋怕 (认似泰死谢摇伐朋怕。(

(1) 叙述未来可能有的事情:

Ukq Xra ckej c pk oaa X lkp kbi a,! 华挂拟会怖和等  
认。(

(2) 这个形式有时也可以用来表示命令:

Fkdj (ukq ~~da~~ ckej c pk Ya` aXrhupkj ecdp! 员跟 (华球拟  
死早词睡货。(

〔注〕用s dh表示命令时较为温和, 如:

Ukq s dh` k j kpdj c kbpda oknp! 拟边死梅谢卫维窗事好  
论, (

这种Ya ckej c pk的表现法, 是充满着情感的, 意义也比s dh为强烈, 例如说zS a~~da~~ ckej c pk oalh pda ZXn, (我们打算把车子卖了。) à, 就比说zS a s dh oalh pda ZXn, à要强调得多, 而近乎Ya ej pa j` ej c pk的意味了。说zUkq ~~da~~ ckej c pk macnap pde, (你要后悔的。) à, 也比说zUkq dh macnap pde, à威胁性要来得重多了。你配了一副新的眼镜带上感觉很不自然, 可是一听到为你配镜的人说: zUkq Xra ckej c pk oaa i qZd Yappans epl ukqnj as chXooao, (你戴上这副新眼镜就会看得更清楚的。) à, 你好像就获得了保证而安心了。

S a~~da~~ ckej c pk odks ukq pda pks j s d~~da~~ ukq ~~da~~ dara,  
! 拟浅晴在城唇窗什敢 (认考死充拟等剥场观愤。(

这句话的语气当中, 可以听得出来, 他们已经很有准备, 有计划地要带客人去观光当地的名胜古迹呢。

说Ya ckej c pk可以增进感情的要素, 不像说Ya XYkqppk是毫无感情色彩存乎其间的。完全客观的描写可用Ya XYkqppk, 如要表示

主观的情感时就非用Ya ckəj c pk不可。A, S XhXZa在其所著Pda I b o bppda Ebnhko中有一个对话，很可供我们研究。

Oda hkkga` ql Xpdei mēZghu (Xj` s Xo XYkqp pk ol aX  
g (YqpXl l Xraj phu ZdXj ca` dani ej` ,

zUkq s ama ckəj c pk oXuy y , à

Oda odkkg dandaX` daoepXj phu (Xj` hkkga` Xpdei Xc  
Xej y y Xhkj c (oaXnZdej c oZmqpj u,

！辱妇纪唇所乔屈想婆（好像泰死披年卡四窗（看弄闲绕辱  
田边泰披介。z拟情才边弄泰披年卡化论，à辱拥土唇斯想乔（值  
田屈想婆y y 彻净道田奢奶唇。（

不说Xma ckəj c pk oXu，而用过去动词是表示那动作实际并未曾  
发生。

## 86. It is a dream come true

Ɔp Ɔ X` naxi Zki a pma, y y = hki` ea, 在卫伐活庄夕犬喝看  
碎接套结伐错称, 卫伐Zki a弄烦犬边兜称pk Zki a闹旧介pk窗什  
士,

③【集尺】在古代英文中, 所谓完成式 (LanbaZppaj oa) 只有他动词才用zdXra - 过去分词à的形式, 自动词是要用zeo - 过去分词à的形式, 如zDa Ɔ Zqi aj ,à。尤其是表示运动的自动词, 如Zki a、c k、Xmra等, 一直是这样用的, 如zOl nji c Ɔ Zki a,à。不过现在同时又有zOl nji c dXo Zki a,à一个完成式的形式存在, 于是只好在意义上加以分别, 即以zeo - 自动词的过去分词à表状态 (opXpa), 以zdXo - 自动词的过去分词à表动作 (XZpkj) 。

因为这是古代完成式的遗留, 我们决不可以把它视为被动的语态 (LXooera Rkeza), 如春天是不可以被人呼来唤去的。这种颇古的用法而今变成XppreYqpera的形式, 来修饰前面的名词, 现在在英语中用得极多, 我们把它当作一个形容词看待, 在用法上和意义上都不会成为问题的, 如片语的ej` Xuo ckj a Yu (往日), Xcaj piai Xj rapn j a` bki XYnkX (外国回来的绅士), XcqapofqopXmra` bki ; i anZX (一个刚从美国到临的客人) 等等, 我们都可以把它当作形容词来翻译。

这都是省略了nalXpra - Ya的, 如问题中的句子, 实为zƆp Ɔ X` naxi pdXp Ɔ Zki a pma, (实现了的梦。) à的省略说法。他例如:

Dama Ɔ Xcaj piai Xj Zki a pk pXlg pk ukq, y y A, R, HqZ  
Xo! 卫句陷群随难死尖番拟台化。(

; hpan X Yep (Eodkqh dXra pdkqcdp ep s Xo X Zqma Zki  
a XcXj (ƆepdX` nkra ukq bki i a, y y F, Ahkp! 戈摇会

盗（认酒会朵货等蓝弄摇袭纯的成或克窗月货（入柜蓝爱拟程认  
卫盗夺准介窗化。（

上引的caj p<sup>hai</sup> Xj Zki a为caj p<sup>hai</sup> Xj s dk ɵ (9 dXo) Zki  
a, 而Zqma Zki a为Zqma p<sup>l</sup>Xps Xo Zki a之略。

## VI 助动词

### 87. “Have you?” 和 “Do you have?”

在益文夕陷 zDXra ukq, à副 zF k ukq dXra, à结袭边枪窗披法: 光 zDXra ukq pk`k, à副 zF k ukq dXra pk`k, à结袭边枪窗披法 (边母利的慰这患陷喝肠艺,

③【集尺】第一, 我们应该明白, 英国的英文和美国的英文是有些不同的。例如 dXra 这个动词, 在用法上就大有差别, 用作 z 所有 à 解时, 在疑问句中, 英国的英文是无需要加助动词`k 的, 在美国的英文中便要加`k 而把 dXra 看作和其他的动词一样:

DXra ukq Xj u Ynkplamo, ! 益 (   
 F k ukq dXra Xj u Ynkplamo, ! 堪 (   
 DXo oda Yhqa auao, ! 益 (   
 F kao oda dXra Yhqa auao, ! 堪 (   
 Dks i Xj u Zdeh maj dXra ukq, ! 益 (   
 Dks i Xj u Zdeh maj `k ukq dXra, ! 堪 (

但是 dXra 如不作 z 所有 à 解时, 在英国的英文中也是要加`k 来发问的, 如:

F k ukq dXra! 9 pXga (huj Zd kqparanu`Xu, ! 拟利题大在情亮抽肉弟论, (

至于dXra pk与`ky y dXra pk两种说法，美国也是并行不悖，随便怎样说都可以的，但在英国仍然有些分别，据Dkrj Yu说，这句表示z必须à的dXra pk，有z特殊的à与z习惯的à两种用法，如指极近的未来（é i a` eXpa bqpma）或过去的未来（bqpma+ej +pda+l Xop）当中的活动，便是特殊用法，如：

DXra ukq pk ck pk pda` aj pæpæ pde i knj ej c, ! 拟华题  
伤肉死梅咖雪差论,（

如系指经常的或习惯的活动，就说：

F k ukq kbpaj dXra pk ck pk pda` aj pæpæ, ! 拟睛怖死梅  
咖雪差论,（

在以上两种情形中不一定要正式的疑问句才行，请参看下例：

Ukq dXraj æpk ck pk oZdkkhpk` Xu (dXra ukq, ! 沙请（  
Ukq` kj æp dXra pk ck pk oZdkkhkj Oqj` Xuo (`k ukq,  
! 丧惯（

在口语中常将dXra ckppk代替dXra pk用：

⎧ S dXpdXra ukq ckppk aXp ! 沙请（  
⎧ S dXp` k ukq dXra pk aXp ! 丧惯（  
⎧ Da dXoj æpckppk s kng,! 沙请（  
⎧ Da` kaoj æp dXra pk s kng,! 丧惯（

在会话时，尤其是在美国，常将dXra省去，只说ckp，如：Eckp  
pk (9 i qop) s napa Xhappan,

又，dXra pk的过去有下列各种表现：

dX pk! 竭兜（

`è ukq dXra pk! 宿问（



dX ukq pk		
dX ukq ckppk		
`è j dXra pk	)	! 烦兜 (
dX j kppk		

但dX ckppk只有英国人说，美国人是这样说的。

## 88. It is . . . that . . . should中should的含义

在 $\text{E}\phi$ , , ,  $\text{p}\text{d}\text{Xp}$ , , , 窗活时夕 (怖后套 $\text{odkqh}$  (蓝伐 $\text{odkqh}$  堂敦在维访以才对,

③【集尺】在这种句型中用的 $\text{odkqh}$ , 到底是表示一个什么意思, 文法家颇有不同的意见, 有的说是一种临时的假设语气, 不把那事看作事实, 而只是当作一个思考上的问题提出而已。至于 $\text{E}\phi$ 后所接的形容词或名词, 那才真正是对那事的判断或批评的表示。例如:

$\text{E}\phi$  j  $\text{X}\phi\text{nXh}\text{p}\text{d}\text{Xp}\text{ukq}$   $\text{odkqh}$   $\text{Zkqj p}\text{p}\text{da}$  `  $\text{Xuo Ya}\text{b}\text{ka}$   $\text{Zk}$   
 $\text{i ej c dki a}$ ,! 入柜拟死国品广歧 (认秘犬似弄当绕窗。 (

另外一种意见, 就认为这个 $\text{odkqh}$  的意思是含有z正当 $\hat{\text{a}}$ 或是z意外 $\hat{\text{a}}$ 或z遗憾 $\hat{\text{a}}$ 的成分在内。我觉得这个说法很对, 请看下面的这些实例, 同时注意翻译的方法:

(/) 表示z正当 $\hat{\text{a}}$ 的:

$\text{E}\phi$  l  $\text{nk}\text{l an}\text{p}\text{d}\text{Xp}\text{ukq}$   $\text{odkqh}$  l  $\text{Xu b}\text{kn}\phi$ ! 9  $\text{Ukq kqcdp}\text{r}$   
 $\text{k l Xu b}\text{kn}\phi$  (! 拟堂当放伦。 (

$\text{E}\phi$  j  $\text{aZaooXnu p}\text{d}\text{Xpi aj kb}\text{p}\text{d}\phi$   $\text{ZXh}\phi$  c  $\text{odkqh}$   $\text{nai Xej}$   
 $\text{oj cha}$ ,! 敢卫袭午松窗日弄堂敦殖那边籍讳窗。 (

$\text{E}\phi$  j  $\text{X}\phi\text{nXh}\text{p}\text{d}\text{XpEodkqh}$  ` s  $\text{alh}\text{nXp}\text{danql kj d}\phi$  oq  $\text{ZZa}$   
 $\text{ooao p}\text{d}\text{Xj ql kj d}\phi$   $\text{bX}\phi\text{qmao, y y Fkula}$ ! 认装绕堂当奢披婆  
窗袭袭成凡 (道边披婆窗袭袭失包。 (

$\text{E}\phi$  j  $\text{kp s alh}\text{p}\text{d}\text{Xp}\text{p}\text{lama}$   $\text{odkqh}$   $\text{Ya X` d}\phi\text{amaj Za Xi kj c}$   
 $\text{p}\text{da i ai Yamo kbX bXi du}$ ,! 在摇伐纪庭夕登难边枪窗宜和弄边  
好窗。 (

Ɔp Ɔi l kooYla ukq odkqh j aa` Xj u XooopXj Za, y y  
? ks l an! 拟边吸乡死年卡罢闲。（

Ɔp ƆaXhu l kooYla pXp ukq odkqh Ya ok ZXrahaoo,  
y y Fkula! 拟章会卫维边当懈论,（

注意：只有在Ɔp Ɔi l kooYla,,,及Ɔp l kooYla,,,后面才可以接odkqh或ZXj,若是说Ɔp l kooYla时,后面就要接i Xu了,如:

Ɔp s Xo l kooYla pXp Ei Ɔdp ol aj` pda j Ɔdp plana,  
y y Fkula! 认妇看呢在蓝句戈闻。（

Ɔp Ɔi l kooYla pXp pƆo ZXj Ya pqa,! 卫击边看呢弄章窗。（

Ɔp l kooYla pXp da ZXj dXra lknckppaj i a,! 婆境会爱认王果介论,（

(0) 表示z意外à或z遗憾à的:

Ɔp Ɔo pXj ca pXp da odkqh oXu ok,! 婆旧绕会卫维披（  
章弄莫干。（

Ɔp Ɔl Ɔu pXp da odkqh lra XpoqZd X` ƆpXj Za,! 婆  
显寸蓝维脱（章弄摇见服事。（

Ɔp Ɔoj cqhXn pXpkj pƆo l XnpZqhXnj Ɔdp da odkqh d  
Xra Yaaj ql, y y Fkula! 在蓝题球伤婆境会鹿尖弄妇莫干  
窗。（

在s du及EXi oqrl maa`、Enacnap、EXi okmu、Es kj` an等等的后面用的odkqh,也是表z意外à的,例如:

Pdama Ɔj k naXokj s du s a odkqh j kp oqZZaa`,! 认考  
茅陷边成凡窗礁提。（

EXi oqrl maa` pXp ukq odkqh j kp Ya XYla pk at l hXj  
Ɔp! 拟边呢集市卫伐（认妇尽艺。（

Enacrap p dXp ep od kq h dXra Zki a pk p d e o, ! 认妇速服破  
会变成卫伐维庄。（

## 89. can not、cannot、can' t

zDa ZXj j kp` k əpà副zDa ZXj j kp` k əpà结袞披法（边毋陷荣  
盯笨，口陷摇伐闹旧什窗ZXj əp（边毋弄烦套法摇维，屈酒卫伐烦兜  
婴窗套法夹碎披苦。

③【集尺】有人说把ZXj j kp写成一个字的是英国式，把ZXj j kp写成两个字的是美国式。不过Lannj 在*S nqan'o Cqæa boe Deat pk A ochød*上说，ZXj j kp的形式是i kra Zki i kj。而J EZdkhokj 编的*C Dəpkobnu kbCi anəbo+Aochød Qobca*上也说：z除了特别加强的场合，通常都是把ZXj j kp写成一字。às kk` 在*EqnnaopAochød Qobca*上说得更明白：z美国英语允许将ZXj j kp写成二字，但英国英语则写作一字，只在特别加强否定时，才分开来写。à由此可见ZXj j kp是英美两国现在通用的形式，不加强意思是不分作二字的。

Ukq Xog əbukq ZXj ck pk ; hXogX, Jk (ukq ZanpXej hı ZXj j kp! Eəa j arandaXn` kbXj updej c ok hkkhød, ! 拟问拟弄边  
弄看碎等八拉斯夹梅，边食（击对边食！认程尖茅陷听等披戈卫  
维尤薄窗化。（

在美国分开来写不但是加强意思，而且多少带得有一点文言的味道。在英国甚至是要加强否定，也可以不分开来写，而只是把j kp一字印成斜体罢了，例如：F EZgaj o在*Dbræ Ekl l arbake*中即有zEZXj okpoXuy y EnaXhu ZXj okpoXu,à的例子。

至于省略形的ZXj əp是口语的用法，在极要好的朋友间通信时也可以用。不过写作时是决不用的。

在口语中常以ZXj j kp代替i qopj kp用，例如美国语法家? qri a即举有这样的例句：

? dɛ̀i nɛj (ukq ZXj j kp l hXu ej pda opmaap! 夫庄考 (边看碎在乎伤屎。 (

这个ZXj 的含义, 原有z能力àz许可àz可能à三种, 当否定与z可能à连用时, 意即z不可能à, 通常可译作z不会à, 例如:

Da ZXj j kpYa kran hɛpu, ! 婆边会策戈柔你凭窗。 (

Da ZXj j kp dXra oaaj dan uaopan` Xu, ! 婆祸边会在昨题和戈辱窗。 (

在ZXj j kp后接完成式动词, 是对过去的事表示惊异或怀疑时用的, 与它本身用过去式意思不同, 如:

Da Zkqh` j kp oaa dan uaopan` Xu, ! 婆昨题茅陷呢妨和等辱。 (

下列几点值得我们注意:

(/) ZXj j kp, , , pkk, 意为z无论怎样也不为过à, 即z越x x 越好à。

F nɛj gɛj c s Xpan ZXj j kpYa pkk l qra, ! 意套窗朋圆弄从胡圆好。 (

Ukq ZXj j kpYa pkk ZXrah`h! 拟荣论在维深懈 (小边会戈盯。 (

Jkp pkk i qZd ZXj Ya oXɛ` XYkqppda rXh`a kbaXnhu nœj c, ! 早鹿窗好吹弄披边坏窗。 (

EZXj j kpol aXg pkk dɛdhu kbɛp rXh`a, ! 骑价值这鹅荣论在维披似边犬戈盯。 (

EZXj j kp pkk i qZd ei l mœo ql kj ukqni ej` p dXp hXYk qnœ pda Zkj` epkj s dɛZd JXp qra dXo ei l koa` kj qo ej ar anu opXp kj ej hɛa, ! 荣论在维深刻唇庙果在懈似边会戈盯 (逝毋在认考日难利摇吉单夕 (大装绕颇死认考谢窗酒弄烂错。 (

(0) ZXj j kp接用Yqp时，是把助动词后的主动词`k或Zdkkoa省略了。

EZXj j kpYqppmu, 9 EZXj `k j kpdɛj c Yqppmu, ! 认边寸边试试。(

EZXj j kpYqp palhdan pda pmqpd, ! 认边寸边爱章线恶贫辱。(

(1) 应说i kma pdXj ukq ZXj j kpdaɬ的，通常却不用否定。

E`kj ɸ`k i kma pdXj EZXj daɬ, ! 认呢妨边谢窗认酒边谢。(

Fkj ɸ palhdei i kma pdXj ukq ZXj daɬ, ! 呢妨边披酒边披。(

## 90. must的主要用法

益文闲错称窗i qop (陷善在什副戈梅什结袞套法 (吟乡善在什陷小年卡套法 (屈盯添礼集。

③【集尺】助动词i qop有下列各种主要的用法：

(/) 表必要 (JaZaoeɣu) 或义务 (KYhɛXpɛkj) 时，后接有意志的动词。其否定为j aa` j kp, 而不是i qopj kp (这是i Xu的否定)。

Ukq i qop l Xu pɛla i kj au (Yqpukq j aa` j kp` k ok j k s, ! 拟杯是放伦 (边戈边杯善在酒放。(

I qop EpXga dɛ l hZa, y y Jk (ukq j aa` j kp! 摇兜死认幢闪婆论, y y 边摇兜 (拟边杯幢闪婆。(

Kj a i qopaXpɛk hɛra, ! 日犬难池杯寸意念。(

Ei qop dXra ukqnXj os anXpɛkj Za, ! 屈拟角刻灰尺。(

(0) 表命令 (?ki i Xj`) 或劝告 (;`reZa) :

Ukq i qop ck, ! 拟梅暗。(

Ukq i qop Zki a pɛ pɛla k hɛZa aranu` Xu, ! 利题拟死尖伤傲。(

Ukq i qop palhi a Xpɛkj Za, ! 具伤伙法认听。(

Ukq i qop mXhu oaa Lki l aæ s daj ukq Xma ej ɛpXhu, ! 拟等介宜大脚 (摇兜死等脸磅菲场梅咖咖才弄。(

(1) 表坚持 (ɛj oɛpaj Za) :



Da i qop Xls Xuo dXra dɛ ks j s Xu, ! 婆件弄妇泡识窗。 (

Ei qopgj ks ! 9 ej oɔpkj gj ks ej c (ukqn naxokj ,! 拟杯是爱拟窗礁提披法认听。 (

(2) 表不可避免的事 (Ej arɔXYɛɔpu) :

Epi qopnXej okkj ,! 摇兜酒死杀通介。 (

Ukq i qop! 9 Xra ZampXej pk (hkoa (s dɛZdarandXl l aj o,! 荣论昼想喝对 (拟大死算失窗。 (

S a i qopXlh` ɛa oki api a,! 小陷摇题认考大死司窗。 (

(3) 表必然的推测 (KYrɛkqo Ej bɔmaj Za) 时, 后接无意志的动词。其否定为ZXj j kpɔ

Da i qopYa nɛZd,! 婆摇兜妇陷伦。 (

Da ZXj j kpYa nɛZd,! 婆摇兜边会陷伦窗。 (! 烦兜 (

OqZd Xdkqoa i qopYalkj c pk oki a bXi ɛɔ XYkra pda Z ki i kj ,! 卫维窗点庄摇兜弄曲乡摇懊碎伤窗纪庭窗。 (

Ukq i qopoqZZaa` ej pda aj pXj Za at Xi ej Xpɛkj pɛɔ pɛ i a,! 拟卫成摇兜会教玫窗。 (

(4) zi qopdXra - 过去分词à, 有三种意思, 即:

(X) 谅必曾经:

Ukq i qopdXra oaaj dɛi uaopan` Xu,! 拟练杯在昨题微睛和等婆。 (

(Y) 谅必曾经 (实在不曾) :

Ukq i qopdXra oaaj dɛi ɛbukq dX Yaaj dara uaopan` Xu,! 拟昨题死在城窗化 (拟摇兜和等婆介。 (

(Z) 必须曾经:

; j u Xl l hZXj p lkn p l eo l koepkj i qop dXra l nXZp o a` lk  
n l a u a X m o, ! 对乡卫伐午群窗泡喝哪屈日（杯是微晴史丧戈柔  
年。（

(5) i qop j kp 是表禁止 (L n k d e Y e p k j ) 的。其反对语为 i X u。

Ukq i qop j kp ck, ! 拟边看碎梅。（! 弯投梅什披 z Ukq i X  
u ck, à （

Ukq i qop j kp oep da n a p X l g e j c, ! 拟边死薪在卫句界  
题。（

## 91. must和have to的分别

益文窗闲错称i qop (悟陷善在什 (戈梅死套dX pk幢闪 (但dX`pk窗善在什犬dXra pk: 卫维摇尖 (背陷介结伐善在什介 (边毋卫结伐善在什 (在套法伤陷喝盯笨,

③【集尺】同为现在形的i qop和dXra pk, 在一般的情形上是通用的, 不过用dXra pk的场合较多, 尤其是在美国。

Ukq i qop! 故dXra pk (`k Xo ukq Xra pkh, ! 拟摇兜死摘想风咐窗谢。 (

S a i qop! 故dXra pk (oalhkn d k q o a, ! 认考杯是洛梅认考窗点庄。 (

EXi oknnu pk oXu pdXp lkn qj Xr k e XYla maXokj o s a odX lhdXra pk! 故i qop (`eol aj oa s epd ukqn oanreZao brki j at p uaXn, ! 提乡边看悲肯窗礁提 (程苦年鹿认考荣法海释屈拟罢冷 (你盯班脑。 (

EXhs Xuo dXra pk! 故i qopXhs Xuo (s krg dXn, ! 认杯是晴怖欧较。 (

这二者在用法上的差别: 用dXra pk是表示客观的必要, 用i qop是表示主观的必要, 如说:

EdXra pk ck pk pda Xerl knp pk oaa dei kbb! 认杯寸等基场片食 [台犬婆弄认窗顶乔伤皮]。 (

Ei qop ck pk pda Xerl knp pk oaa dei kbb! 认杯寸等基场片食 [台犬婆弄认胁好窗疗友。] (

用于否定时, 二者在意义上也有很大的分别, 如:

Ukq dXra j kp pk oXu pdXp! 拟套边想蓝维披。(

Ukq i qopj kpoXu pdXp! 拟祸边看蓝维披。(

第一句的ukq dXra j kp pk oXu 9 ukq j aa` j kpoXu; 第二句的ukq i qopj kpoXu 9 ukq Xra j kpXhks a` pk oXu。

还有dXra pk的否定有两种表现法，一则加用`k，一则不加`k，指常习的事情用`kj ꞑdXra pk，指特定的场合用dXraj ꞑpk，例如：

S a` kj ꞑdXra pk s kng kj OXpq n` Xu Xhpanj kkj o,! 听怖在石歧鲸杀肉认考边伤傲。(

S a dXraj ꞑpk s kng pd eo Xhpanj kkj (YaZXqoa ꞑꞑ OXpq n` Xu,! 台犬弄石歧鲸(华题杀肉边伤傲。(

宾语放在不定词的前后都是一样：

EdXra X happan pk s nꞑa,! 故 (EdXra pk s nꞑa X happan,! 认陷摇东十死省。(

## 92. must用于过去时态

益文闲错称i qop窗戈梅什弄dX pk (但怖和在戈梅错称挂窗庄活夕仍绕后套i qop (道边套dX pk (弄边弄i qop似看碎当字戈梅错称套,

③【集尺】是的, i qop在某种条件之下是可以当作过去形用的。兹分别举例说明如下:

(/) 在间接说法 (ej`maZpol aaZd) 中, 仍保留直接说法时的 i qop, 以表示那种主观的决心, 如:

Da oXè da i qopol aXg s epd dæ i Xopan, 9 Da oXè (zE i qopol aXg s epd i u i Xopan, à! 婆披婆摇兜死番婆件报台摇杀。(

Oda pkhì plai pEXppdau i qopcaparanupdej c naX u pla i oahrao, 9 Oda oXè pk plai (zUkq i qopcaparanupdej c naX u ukqmahrao, à! 辱死婆考杯是装挤爱摇码著抱好。(

(0) 虽无间接说法的形式, 却有间接说法的意味时, 也要用i qop, 如:

Da Zkqhì j kpYa è ha: da i qopXls Xuo Ya`kej c oki apdej c, 9 Da oXè pk dei oahb) zEi qopXls Xuo Ya`kej c oki apdej c, à! 婆货寸婆边呢检荡 (婆杯是边浅唇谢事。(

Pdau oXs pEXppdau i qopXs Xgaj plal qYhZ Zkj oZej Z a, ! 婆考苦帮婆考杯是过蚀民习窗洁懈。(

(1) 在条件句中, i qop可用作过去假设, 而含有s kqhì Ya Yk qj`pk之意:

Eda dX hkgā` (da i qop dXra oaaj pda hēdpkbpla X  
l l nkXZde j c pXej ,! 9 Eda dX hkgā` (da s kqh dXra Yaa  
j Ykqj` pk oaa - da s kqh Ya Ykqj` pk dXra oaaj , , , (   
! 入柜婆咖介窗化 (婆摇兜咖等介蓝包钞道尖窗火茶窗幢愤。 (

DX epYaa j kpdars oa (Ei qop hkj c Xck dXra l anoda  
` ,! 死边绕窗化 (认摇兜早酒司梅介。 (

Eda gj as danmaXhj Xpma (da i qop dXpa dan! 入柜婆  
毋传辱章史窗识各窗化 (婆摇兜会鼓辱窗。 (

(2) 在附属子句中有时也用i qop:

Da gj as oq` ` aj hu s dk pda s ki Xj i qopYa, y y Faol  
amaj ! 婆偷绕苦帮介蓝怕日摇兜弄谁。 (

Pdama s Xo Xbmaj` s dki Ei qopZXh kj ei i a` eXpahu,  
! 陷摇伐疗友认杯是角刻梅把多。 (

(3) 在表示事情的悖逆反常时也可以用i qop, 中文的意思为  
z偏偏āz偏巧ā:

Fqop s daj s a s ara maX u pk ck Xs Xu hkn pda dkh Xu  
o (pda YXYui qopZXpZd i aXolao!! 握当认考著抱错那肠梅  
多函什 (瓶麻叹盗肠吻庄。 (

FqopXo Es Xo Yqoēap (da i qopZki a s kmue j c,! 握当  
认胁冷窗什敢 (婆瓶死跑尖拒地。 (

; o Es Xo oepj c` ks j pk oql l an (pda palal dkj a i qop  
rj c,! 认摇薪杀尖抽弟 (瓶瓶电化酒尖介。 (

注意: 在假设语气中只有表z推测ā的才用i qop, 其余表z必要ā或  
z义务ā时, 仍得用dX pk或Ya kYhca` pk, 例如:

EdXhpde s Xo pma (da s kqh dXra pk maēj de kheZa,  
! 入柜卫小弄事史窗化 (婆杯寸斥午窗。 (

EdX pk oql l knpi u bXi du (Es kqh hXra oZdkkhs e  
pdkqpbj odej c pda Zkqma,! 入柜认死眼纪窗化 (认酒寸边豹

松降神介。（

### 93. would和used to的分别

益文窗闲错称s kq̃h̃ 副qoa` pk (枪犬币修戈梅窗丧惯 (但边毋  
在套法伤的慰陷喝盯笨,

③【集尺】英文表示现在的习惯，多用动词的现在时态 (Lmaoj p Paj oa) 或是助动词的s d̃h̃, 表示过去的习惯，则用qoa` pk或s d̃h̃的过去式s kq̃h̃。常与s d̃h̃ s kq̃h̃ 同用的，是khpaj、oki api ao等副词。至于表示过去习惯的qoa` pk和s kq̃h̃，在用法上到底有何分别呢？有人说s kq̃h̃ 是表示不规则的习惯，qoa` pk是表示规则的习惯，但什么情形是有规则的，什么情形就是不规则，实在没有具体的标准，因为既然称为习惯，就多少是有规则的了。

最明确的分别，也许是这样的：s kq̃h̃ 表示一种z回想的心情à, qoa` pk表示z过去与现在的对比à。

(/) s kq̃h̃ 的用例：

Da s kq̃h̃ kh̃paj oep̃kndkqmo (Ykkg ej dXj `,! 婆怖死怕  
边市句唇薪伤好鬼伐熄乔边错。(

Oki api ao pda Ykuo s kq̃h̃ l h̃ku X p̃m̃zg kj p̃laen paXZd  
an,! 夫庄考陷什死法件能绝绝屎审。(

Da s kq̃h̃ kh̃paj Zhi Y Xi kqj pXej s daj ukqj c,! 在年  
轻什婆怖死梅爬末。(

; h̃panda dX h̃j eoda` deo s kng (da s kq̃h̃ naX Xj ` of  
q` u Yu pda h̃maoe` a,! 婆在谢秋供字这挂 (怖薪等火宽旁卑梅对  
邱故研茅。(

Pdau qoa` pk j k` pk aXZd kpdans daj pdau i ap (Xj ` j  
ks Xj ` pdaj pdau s kq̃h̃ at ZdXj ca X s kn` knps k,! 当婆考  
投和什报城词乔招刚摇杀 (似什怖死交根摇万结童。(



(0) qoa` pk的用例:

Da qoa` pk l hXu paj j eo Yalkma deo i XmeXca, ! 在籍讳碎  
仑婆怖打婉猫〔善在边打介〕。(

Lakl ha qoa` pk pde g pdXpda oqj saj prkqj` pda aXr  
d, ! 程仑窗日碎犬她水弄全孟想唇猫准窗〔善在当绕谁似毋传弄  
唇猫孟她水准窗〕。(

Qoa` ukq pk dXra pde oknpkb pde c ej ukqn ukqj c` Xu  
o, y y ? Xhos knpdu! 拟年轻窗什敢怖陷卫袭事论, (

Da` kaoj pdXpa dan Xo i qZd Xo da qoa` pk, ! 婆善在边  
像程仑蓝维唇鼓辱介。(

(1) qoa` 可和表示状态的动词一起用, 如:

Pdama qoa` pk Ya X ZdqnZd dama, ! 卫盗碎仑陷摇友较  
七。(

S daj Es Xo X Yku (Eqoa` pk hga ZdkZkXpa! YqpE` k  
j phga epXj ui kma (,! 认深什敢喜贵抽麻级较糖 (〔但善在早  
算边百介〕)。(

这种用法是不可以换用s kqh的, 因为说zS daj Es Xo X Yku, E  
s kqh hga ZdkZkXpa, 是不通的, 因为Es kqh hga ZdkZkXpa意为  
z我想吃巧克力糖a。上述(0)(1)两项, 如改用单纯过去动词, 意  
思也不会相差太远的, 如说zPdama s Xo X ZdqnZd dama, a, 意思也是  
z这里曾有一座教堂a, 不过现在是否还存在就没有提及了。附带可注  
意的是qoa` pk (9 hknri anhu` e) 与Ya qoa` pk (9 Ya XZZqopki a  
` pk) 二语, 不可混乱。比较:

Eqoa` pk oepql hXpa Xpj edp! 认碎仑怖查睡。(

EXi qoa` pk oepj c ql hXpa Xpj edp! 认善在算丧惯乡  
查睡。(

94. “Used you to do?” 和 “Did you use to do?”

益文闲错称qoa` pk套乡问活什（等春堂披zQoa` ukq pk` k pdXp à（各弄zFè` ukq qoa pk` k pdXp à

③集尺】英文的助动词现在仍然可以在一个句子中当作正动词用的，只有kqcdppk、dXra pk、qoa` pk三个了。其中dXra是现在式自无问题，kqcdp虽则原是ks a的过去式，但现代英文已不用它，而改用ks a` 作过去式了。唯有qoa` 一字仍然和qoa的过去式同形，所以免不了要使人们发生混乱了。遇到问句时，照一般过去式动词的用法，就得说：zFè` ukq qoa pk` k pdXp? à动词qoa在自动词时，有z常做àz习以为常à的意思，即英文说的Ya XZZqopki a`、Ya s kj p, 不过这个意思现在只限于用作过去式，即是现在式的qoa，已不具此意了。所以说成zFè` ukq qoa pk,, ,à,是失去了惯常之意的。字典上把qoa` 作为一个独立的自动词列出，其含义也和他动词的qoa不同。在英国问句是通常不用`è 的，除非是未受教育的人，但现今受过教育的人，在口语中也有用`è 的倾向了，但不是美国式的zFè` ukq qoa pk` k? à, 而是zFè` ukq qoa` pk` k? à。因为qoa` pk和qoa pk的发音同是〔fq: op〕，所以容易混同；不过在`è 后又接上一个过去式动词是不合乎英文语法的，自不能称为ckk` Aj chød, 在纽约/744年出版的=anj opæj 所著 Pda EbrabqhS nqar: C I kearo Cqæa pk Aochød Qobca一书中，就说这种说法是不合理的，等于是说zDa` è j s aj ppk oZdkkhà一样的不通。

在/740年伦敦出版的B, P, S kk` 著的EqmraopAochød Qobca一书中居然也说：

Eqoa` j kppk pdëj g ok,! 认推边字入弄泰。（

否定用qoa` j kppk, 而不用`è j s qoa pk, 但问句则如：

Epde j g EdXra oaaj ukq oki as dama, Fè j ɸukq qoa pk  
hra ej =eni ej c+dXi , ! 认泰在年卡唇对和戈拟窗。拟程仑弄  
边弄显在闭苦跟郎, (

一般是要用`è j ɸqoa pk的。此人平日对美国说法是很反对的, 可见  
他不是受了美国话的影响, 而且他还负责Aochod Hbocqbca Pabdde  
oc刊物上的疑问解答 (Mqaopkj =kt) , 对英文用法的解答, 是多  
少带点保守性的, 可见英国现在也说zFè ukq qoa pk? à了。

/740年在纽约出版的=nuxj p著EqmaopCi anadbo Qobca一书  
上说, 在问句和否定句中是有用`è 的必要。此基于广泛的调查,  
富于统计的资料, 曾举有下列三种用法的例句:

Fè pda ma qoa pk Ya ks ho dama, ! 卫句推尖陷满乔鹰  
论, (

Fè j ɸukq qoa pk hga dan, ! 拟推尖边喜贵辱论, (

据Cerbodae Habroan'o Dapkobru kbEqmaopAochod上说附  
加问句 (pXc mqaopkj) 是两种说法都可以用的, 即:

Ukq qoa` pk oi kga Xl d a (qoa! ` (j ɸ [ `è j ɸ] uk  
q, ! 拟程仑弄抽孰答窗暗, (

Pda ma qoa` pk Ya oki a pmao ej pdeo hah (qoa! ` (j ɸ  
[ `è j ɸ] pda ma, ! 卫赏句推弄陷小佩拉窗暗, (

## 95. shall和will的用法

益文窗闲错称odXlh副s dh套法馆犬短顽（善田夹伤益堪套法窗  
盯墨（翻始日荣颇且程（屈黑善在窗套法（夹碎到死窗披苦。

③【集尺】从前英国人挖苦爱尔兰人说错英文时，有笑话讲到一个掉到海里的爱尔兰人求救说：

JkYk`u odXlhoXra i a, Es dhYa`nks j a` ,

于是没有人去救他，终于溺毙。因为第三人称的主语加odXlh，为表示说话者的意志，第一人称的主语加s dh，也是表示说话者的意志，所以上述两句英文，意即：z不许任何人来救我。我决心要淹死。a那正当的说法，应为：

JkYk`u s dhoXra i a, EodXlhYa`nks j a` ,! 茅陷日尖兼  
认。认酒死熟司坚。（

这当然是开玩笑的，实际在那种场合，英美人只会叫出zDah! à或是zOki aYk`u dah! à（救命呀！哪个快来救命呀！），没有人会说zJkYk`u s dhoXra i a, EodXlhYa`nks j a` ,à一类的话。

一般说英语的国民，对这两个字的用法，也多闹不清楚，教养差的人就一概说成Eh，以示是说odXlh或s dh任何一字，作为说错时的遁辞（其实Eh只能代表Es dh）。美国人说：zEj plə Zkqj pu pda pmp d ə p dXpj kYk`u ZXmao,（在这个国度里，实际的情形是谁也不介意这二字在用法上的分别。）à。（见BhaoZd著的Nabe bYha Aochəod）英国人的见解也相差不远，他们说：zPda lkmæcj opq`aj pi ədps alhj kpYkpdan pkk i qZd s əpd oqYpha`əopj Zpkj o Yaps aaj `odXh ləj` `s dh lkn plaoa Xma j kpqoa` Yu i kopAj chəod l akl ha,（外国学生顶好不要过分注意odXlh和s dh之间的微妙的分别，因为大多数的英国人也不管这些的。）à。（见Paj j Xj p著的C Dboe Ykkg kbAo

*chæd Qobca*) 英国近百年来人们对于这二字用法上的区别已经混乱不清, 好像要进入s ~~dh~~的全盛时代似的。文学家兼政治家的I XZXqIXu在/615年即曾夸张地说, 当时在伦敦一万个人当中懂得odXh和s ~~dh~~正当用法的连一个人也没有。B, H, HqZXo说得比较保守: zKj a Hkj`k j an ej Xdqj`ra` kYoarrao pdkoa mlaao pk` Xu, (现今一百个伦敦人中只有一个人是遵守这二字在用法上的规则的。)。à (见HqZXo著的*Opula*一书1, 2/)

美国更是用s ~~dh~~的大本营, 美国人使用odXh和s ~~dh~~的频率, 据调查的统计是: 用odXh的4, 3次, 用s ~~dh~~的71, 3次, 可见用s ~~dh~~的, 实为压倒的多数。(见=nuXj p著的*EqmaopCi anæbo Qobca*, 1, /60) 除了探问对方的意志和表示劝诱时用的zOdXhE(s a) , , , ? à, 例如:

OdXhE! 9 Fk ukq s Xj pi a pk (Zlkoa pla s ej`ks ,  
! 死认吩伤车庄论, (y y Uao (l haXoa`k,! 故 (Jk (l haXoa`kj ~~ph~~

OdXhs a opkl dara, ! 9 Hap~~o~~ opkl dara (odXhs a, ( ! 酒在城唇浅杀尖暗。(y y Uao (hap~~o~~`k pIXp! 故 (Jk (ha p~~o~~ j kp`k pIXp

此外, 其他的场合都是用s ~~dh~~, 英文原来绝对应当用odXh的, 也都用s ~~dh~~兼代了, 例如:

Dks kh s ~~dh~~ukq Ya kj ukqnj at pYeml`Xu, ! 等拟杀灰难揉拟酒陷鬼凭介, (

Es ~~dh~~Ya oet paaj j at puaXn! 苦年认酒陷你鲸凭介。(

S ~~dh~~ukq Ya ej pi a ~~dh~~ukq opXnpj ks, ! 拟善在酒错那窗化(拟会夺寸伤论, (

Es ~~dh~~cnX qXpa ej Fqj a j at puaXnXj` aj pandæd oZdk khøj Oal pai Yan! 认黑在苦年鲸远豹松(恢远进夕许。(

美国人因为把原是表意志的Es ~~dh~~, 当作表单纯未来用了, 所以到了要表意志的时候, 就只好倒过头来用odXh了, 如第二次世界大战中有名的故事, 联军统帅F kqchXo I XZ; nplqn被日本人赶出菲律宾

时，他表示他一定要再打回去的决心时说：zEodXlhrappnj，（我一定要再回来的！）à。

代替说zEXi s dñj c kn Xi mokrã` pk oaa dei pki knks ,à, 而说zEs dñhoaa dei pki knks ,à, 实为一种最简洁有力的表现法，可惜现在多被误用来表示单纯未来了。近来在英美的倾向，是用Ya ckej c pk来表达单纯未来，也许将来有一天又会恢复用Es dñ来表示意志的吧。

一位怕老婆的人说：zI u s ða Xls Xuo oXuo`Ukq odXlñj` EXhs Xuo oXu`Es dñj（我老婆始终是对我下命令，而我一定是服从的。）à。这是颇有古风的说法。（参考zUkq odXlñkra ukqnj aed Ykn Xo ukq malhà）

## 96. 用will、would表示现在推量

zUkq s dñYa I eo ? kkg (Eoql l koa, ! 拟弄及深结暗。(à摇童(盯苦弄勿善在(犬年卡边披善在错称窗Xra (道死套确尖错称窗s dñYa郎,

③【集尺】这是从未来用法变化出来的，早已不含有未来的意思，而只是表示现在的推测，在日用英语中用得很多。例如：

Pde s dñYa kqn pñXj (EbXj Zu, ! 认泰卫酒弄认考死薪窗茶。(

S dñpdlau Ya XYla pk daXn XpoqZd X` eoXj Za, ! 降寸卫维脱(婆考呢听寸和论,(

Pde dñYa pla dkqoa s a Xra hkgj c hkn, ! 卫大钝酒弄认考死守找窗屋庄。(

Ep s dñYa oj ks ej c j ks ej Hkj`kj, ! 来敦善在握杀想团暗,(

Pdara eo Xnj c Xp pla`kkn, Ep s dñYa BXpdañ, ! 抗近陷太。弄该请灰尖介。(

Da eo s Xqj c hkn qo`ks j opXeo, Da s dñYa s kj`anj c s dara s a Xra, y y S Xli kla! 婆在精杀第但认考。婆会货寸莫干边身寸认考等来句梅介。(

过去时的s kqh, 也同样有此用法：

Eoql l koa oda s kqh Ya XYkqp hpu s daj oda`ea`, ! 认泰辱司什算陷柔你凭介。(

S kqh̃ ukq Ya pk daXn Xp oq Zd X` ɔpXj Za, ! 降寸卫维  
脱 (拟呢听和论, (

E` kj ɤgj ks s dk ɤs kqh̃ Ya, ! 边身寸蓝等春弄谁呀, (

Epdkqcdp pdXp ɤs kqh̃ Ya fqop Xo s alhp dXp Eodkqh̃ j  
kp Ya` ɔmaol aZpɤhɤj pda bɤpɤna, ! 认货寸胁好各弄边死在黑  
尖陷颇失黄。 (

如用 **zs ḍh-** **dXra** - 过去分词 **à** 的形式, 就是对现在完成时的推测, 或是对过去的推测, 如:

Ukq s ḍhdXra daXñ pda j as o, ! 蓝消死拟摇兜听等介  
暗。 (

Da s ḍhdXra ḥp ḍo dkqoa Yalkra ukq Xṃra p̣lana, ! 在  
拟等侈蓝句这仑 (婆早算降绝介婆窗纪句暗。 (

Ukq s ḍhdXra oaaj ḅki i ul kopZXñ pdXp Es Xo Xp Kt t  
kñ, ! 拟程认窗苦十片伤酒看碎咖寸肠尖认微等离技梅介窗。 (



## 97. ought to的用法

益文闲错称kqcdp宜犬陷它务（入z日民陷百歌窗它务à（看以成zLakl ha kqcdppk lkra plaen Zkqj pu,à 但口和陷活外）zDa kqc dppk dXra oq ZZaa` a`,à。成包掉伐日宜阳颇呢子天（翻荣它务看万（屈酒城袭套法（夹碎布竖。

③【集尺】助动词kqcdp, 原为动词ks a的过去式, 现在英文已将k s a` 用作ks a的过去式了, 而让kqcdp专作助动词, 用于表义务（Fqp u或KYhcxpkj）的直觉的意义上, 尤其是z道义上当然应做的事à（i knXhkYhcxpkj）。动词ks a现在主要含义虽为z负债à, 但仍可作z负有（义务）à解, 如zS a ks a kqn` qpu pk kqn Zkqj pu,（我们对国家应尽义务。）à。我们用odkqh也可表道义上应做的事, 不过用kqc dp则表示最强烈的义务观念。

Ukq kqcdp pk naol aZp ukqn l Xraj po, ! 拟堂当写黄该母。（

Kj a kqcdppk l Xu s dXpkj a ks ao, ! 罗笨日窗伦陷广各窗它务。（

Ukq kqcdpj kp pk l nki əa s dXp ukq ZXj j kp l anknri , ! 谢边等窗事边堂当尺堂。（

OqZd pləj co kqcdpj kppk Ya oXè ej Zki l Xj u, ! 卫维窗事边堂当习尖披。（

Ukqn bXpdan kqcdppk gj ks əp ! 9 Ukq kqcdppk palhukq n bXpdan, (! 城事礁堂恶贫拟该请。（

这些例句都是用于kqcdp的原意的, 但kqcdp还有一个引申的用法, 它可转变为推量（hə laɾaj Za）的意思, 即是z道理上当然必有的

事à (J XpqnXhj aZaooeu) , 表示那样的结果是应当有的。问题中所提出的zDa kqcdppk dXra oqZZaa` a` ,à便是这种用法, 他如:

Da eo Xj Aj chodi Xj : da kqcdppk gj ks Aj chod, ! 9 E p eo m q a j XpqnXhpdXpda odkqh gj ks Aj chod: Jk s kj` a n pdXpda odkqh, (! 婆弄益歌日 (当绕措益童。 (

Da kqcdppk Ya plama dba opXnpa` Xpoet, ! 婆入鲸什错那堂敦算晴等侈蓝句介。 (

EdXra hra` dara Xlhi u hda (ok Ekqcdppk gj ks plaj a eedYkqndkk` s alh! 认摇难显在城唇 (认当绕属三卫唇对窗曲什。 (

Eukq ZXj j kp` k ep (dks kqcdpE ! 拟大拔边等 (认在卡食, (

S a kqcdp pk dXra h j a s aXpdan Xpan pl eo lkj c nXej , ! 杀介卫卡净窗通 (似堂敦满介。 (

在kqcdp后既可接用单纯式 (Oei l la Bkni ) , 也可接用完成式 (LanlaZp Bkni ) 。完成式kqcdppk dXra` kj a的原意是应做而未做, 有未能尽应尽的义务, 或怠忽应有的义务 (Ki eodkj kbFqp u) , 或受到行为不当 (? ki i eodkj kbE l nkl napu) 的谴责, 例如:

DXra ukq j kp l Xe` dei , Ukq kqcdppk dXra l Xe` dei , ! 9 Ukq` e` s nkj c j kp pk l Xu dei , (! 拟各茅陷放伦法婆论, 卫弄边堂敦窗。 (

S du` e` ukq j kpck, Ukq kqcdppk dXra ckj a, ! 拟犬喝边梅, 拟梅介酒好介。 (

DXra ukq j kpYacqj ep, Ukq kqcdppk dXra Yacqj ep lkj c Xck, ! 拟各确绝示论, 拟早堂敦绝示窗。 (

这个kqcdppk dXra` kj a也可由转变意思的z推量à而具有理论上当然的结果, 其不然者实不合理。

Da kqcdppk dXra Xnræ` Yu pde, ! 9 Eæ nqæ j XpnX  
hpdXpda odkqh dXra Xnræ` Yu pde, (! 善在婆堂敦算晴等  
介。 (

DXo da bXæ`, OqZd X dXn` s kngankqcdppk dXra oqZ  
Zaa` a`, ! 婆失包介论, 婆蓝维套凡礁堂成凡 (失包偿肠宜  
情。 (

DXo da oqZZaa` a`, OqZd Xj è la baliks kqcdpj kppk d  
Xra oqZZaa` a`, ! 婆成凡介论, 碎婆蓝维检荡窗日 (礁堂失包 (成  
凡偿肠宜情。 (

## 98. need的用法

Da`kəoj ɸj aa` ɸk Ya ɸkhi, Da j aa` j ɸ Ya ɸkhi, 结活边毋宜  
它副套法伤陷喝边枪, 卫伐j aa` 看字握错称套 (田看字闲错称套 (屈黑骑套法伤窗帽笨剪礼披苦。

③集尺】zDa`kəoj ɸj aa` ɸk Ya ɸkhi, à意为z他已经知道, 用不着告诉他à, 是强调现状的说法。zDa j aa` j ɸ Ya ɸkhi, à意为z他知道的, 用不着告诉他à, 是强调今后的行为的说法。

关于正动词j aa` 的用法, 和普通动词一样, 第三人称单数现在要加zoà, 过去式要加za` à, 字前可加用助动词, 例如:

AXZd kbqo j aa` o ɸk i Xopan oqZd X ɸkklɸod ɸaXn, ! 认考  
利伐日大杯是爱卫维尤赤窗刻变懈礁夹碎级服。(

Oda`è j kpj aa` ɸk Ya ɸkhi ɸs əZa, ! 对辱悟消披摇惫酒食  
介。(

Da dXo j aranj aa` a` ɸk dɸmɸi kɸa ɸdXj j ks, ! 婆程尖  
茅陷善在卫维逝死急冷窗。(

Ei Xu j aa` ɸk Zki a ɸj XcXj ɸj X ɸas` Xuo, ! 似投戈鬼  
题认各寸晚尖。(

Jkpj aa` ɸj c ɸk dɸmɸi (Es Xlga` Xɸkj c ɸaəqɸahu, ! 虎边  
套冷 (认酒妇迎山唇慢慢准梅介。(

Ei X a ɸlai i qZd Yəccan ɸdXj Ej aa` ɸk dXra` kj a,  
y y Faol amaj ! 认爱破考谢寸比杯死窗大当介。(

PdXp`kəoj kpj aa` XZZkqj ɸj c ɸkn, 9 PdXpj aa` o j k X  
ZZkqj ɸj c ɸkn, ! 蓝伐边杯集市。(

关于助动词j aa` 的用法，照文法上的规则，是在问句和否定句中，j aa` 要拿来当助动词用，即是主语第三人称单数现在不加zoà，不用F k+Bkri，后接无pk的不定词，不过也常有例外。

Jaa` da dqmu, ! 婆杯是夺纪论，（卫活顿套握错称似弄摇维窗宜脾）zF kao da j aa` pk dqmu, à

Ukq j aa` j kpdXra ceraj ukqmoalboqZd prkqYha, ! 拟推套边想卫维法装挤找拒地窗。（

Epj aa` j kpYa pmqa, ! 卫边摇兜弄事史。（

助动词的j aa`，过去式和现在式一样，形式不变，即是不要写成j aa` a` 的形式，例如：

Pda Zdeh naj s ama pkhì pdXpplau j aa` j kpopXu, y y ; ,  
O, Dkrj Yu! 恶贫夫庄考茅陷晴杀窗杯死。（

如上例所示在Nal knpa` Ol aaZd（转述的话）中，这个现在式的j aa` 可作过去式用，至于在问句或否定句中可以有这种用法，更不待言。

Jaa` da ck uaopan` Xu, 9 Fè da j aa` pk ck uaopan` Xu, ! 在昨题婆陷梅窗杯死论，（

Da j aa` j kpck uaopan` Xu, 9 Da` è j kpj aa` pk ck uaopan` Xu, 9 Da j aa` a` j kp pk ck uaopan` Xu, ! 婆昨题茅陷梅窗杯死。（

Da j aa` j kpdXra Xj u dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, 9 Da j aa` dXra j k dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, 9 Da` è j kpj aa` pk dXra Xj u dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, 9 Da j aa` a` j kp pk dXra Xj u dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, 9 Da j aa` a` pk dXra j k dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, ! 昨题婆边逝死认考窗泡喝罢闲。（

有些句子多少含有否定或疑问意味的，都适用上述的用法，如：

Da j aa` kj hu! 故Yqp (dXra Xhpa dahì brki qo uaopan` Xu, ! 婆昨题悟消认考某有罢闲酒好介。（卫活似看碎披）zDa

j aa` a` kj hu! 故Yqp (pk dXra Xl~~h~~pa dah l nki qo uaopan` X  
u,à

; lhda j aa` `k s Xo pk ej nqera, ! 婆悟消问摇声。 (

Oda s Xj pa` i a pk palhdan s dapdan oda j aa` Zkl u dan  
Zki l koepkj XcXej, ! 辱死认恶贫辱咖辱窗字文死边死值采摇  
惫。 (

Es kj `ama` ebda j aa` s Xep Xj u lkj can, ! 认急泰毋传婆  
弄烦陷晚第窗杯死。 (

不单是指过去，现在时也是一样，如：z; lhda j aa` `k eo pk ej  
nqera,à及zEs kj `an ebda j aa` s Xep Xj u lkj can,à等。不过这些句子  
中的j aa` 也可改为j aa` o pk, 正如上述过去时可改用j aa` a` pk一  
样。

这个加否定用的j aa` 后接不定词时，可译作z不必x x 才能x x à  
或z也许不x x 而也能x x à, 如：

Ukq j aa` j kpYa! 故`k j kpj aa` pk Ya (neZd pk dah l kř  
damo, ! 拟边杯概陷才呢罢闲笨日：拟似投边概陷道似呢罢闲笨  
日。 (

Kj a j aa` j kpYa! 故`kao j kpj aa` pk Ya (Xl kapkj ao  
albpk paXZd l kapu, ! 较十边摇兜死十日。 (

## 99. dare的用法

益文窗`Xna摇婴（看字握错称套（田看字闲错称套（在杀亮窗  
文活夕等春弄握错称郎（各弄闲错称，EdXra j aran`Xna` ol aXg p  
k dei ,! 认程尖边高对婆披化。（Es kj` andks da`Xnao oXu pd  
Xp! 婆在高蓝维披呀，（屈披苦`Xna窗套法。

③【集尺】问题中的两个句子，`Xna都是作正动词用的，在ol aXg和oXu之前省略了不定词的pk，当然我们把它说成pk ol aXg和pk oXu也是可以的。英文有些动词，有略去后接的不定词的pk的倾向，如dah l s Xod pla` eodao（饭后帮忙洗碗），ck Yqu X pZgap（去买一张票）之类都是。

作正动词用的`Xna有好些意思，例如：

E`Xna ukq pk fqi l kranpla opmaXi ,! 认顿拟高跳戈溪酷梅。（`Xna 9 ZdXhahj ca! 天维（

Da`Xna`XhaXI ,! 婆慢嫌唇跳介。（`Xna` 9 moga`! 慢嫌（

E`Xna` deo Xj canXj` pkhi dei pla pqpdl,! 认边肥婆难气各弄爱事史恶贫婆介。（`Xna` 9`aba`! 边肥（

Da`Xnao pk`k aranupdej c,! 婆年卡事大高谢。（`Xna` 9 raj pma`! 唇高（

S a hXu opth (oZXnZahu`Xnj c pk YmaXpda,! 认考其想边错（接大声肠气大边高。（`Xnj c 9 raj pqnj c! 慢立（

Da`kao j kp`Xna pk palhqo,! 婆边高恶贫认考。（`kao j kp`Xna 9 eo XhXe`! 边高（

但作助动词用的`Xma是第三人称单数现在不加zoà, 后接没有pk的不定词。助动词多用于问句或否定句, 不过在问句或否定句中用正动词也是一样的。如:

E` Xma j kp` k ɸ! 卫伐认边高谢。(

Da` kao j kp` Xma! pk (Xj os an, y y LXhi an! 婆边高灰尺。(

F Xma oda` k ɸ ! 辱高谢卫事论,(

动词`Xma的过去式, 下面两种说法都可以用:

Oda` Xma` j kppalh! 故pk palh (dei ,! 辱边高恶贫婆。(

Oda` è j kp` Xma palh! 故pk palh (dei ,

助动词`Xma用在否定句中, 现在式可代过去式用, 例如:

Da Zkqhì l hXj s dXpXj kplani Xj `Xma j kp` k (Xj ` da Zkqhì `k s dXpXj kplani Xj `Xma j kpl hXj , y y Fkula! 笨日边高谢窗婆高乡尖国划(笨日确高国划窗(婆似高乡尖谢。(

现在的倾向是由用助动词改为用正动词了(见D, A, LXhi an著的*C Crbi i ankbOl kgao Aochæd*)。

Da` Xmaj ɸol aXg, —Da` kaoj ɸ` Xma! pk (ol aXg,

在`Xma后接的不定词, 要将pk略去, 是古老的用法, 如莎士比亚的文句中即有这种说法:

E` Xma` k Xlhpdxpi Xu YaZki a Xi Xj : S dk` Xmao` k i kma ɸ j kj a,! 悟死弄且赋摇伐日谢窗事曲认大高谢(谢蓝碎情窗事窗酒边弄日。(

作为一个助动词`Xma可加zoà或加z` à, 也可不加, 如zDa` Xmao c k, à zDa` Xma` ck, à zDa` Xma ck, à. 它可用作现在式, 也可用作过去式, 如zDa s Xo XlnXè , Xj ` ` Xma j kpck, à.



说zF k ukq ` Xra pk , , , ? à常有z胆大妄为à的意思, 说zF Xra uk q , , , ? à常有z冒险à的意思, 例如:

F k ukq ` Xra pk palhoq Zd X ha,

F Xra ukq palhpda oeZg khì s ki Xj pdXpoda dXo kj hu Xt as ` Xuo pk ha,

说zDks ` Xra ukq , , , ? à也是含有z胆大妄为à之意的:

Dks ` Xra ukq oXu oqZd m ` a pdé co XYkqpdé ,

成语E` Xra oXu或写作E` XraoXu, 意为z我以为à在我看来à大概à或者à (EXi l mal Xra` pk Yaha, E` k j kp` aj u, El maqi a, l andXi o, l nkYXYhu, i XuYa)。在这成语后的子句通常略去连词pdXp, 例如:

Ukq Xra ncdp (E` Xra oXu, ! 9 ranu hga故l nkYXYhu (E` Xra oXu! 9 l nkYXYhu (qeo Xi ana ha,

## VII 准动词

100. megafeps

zEh̥j ɔda` p̥k naX p̥la Ykkg h̥Kopj ɛdp̥a 苏z认昨闻爱蓝剥邱  
对秋介a窗益以（据披以寸边对（屈黑以呆窗唇对勿肠（笔夹奢系披  
苦。

③【集尺】这个英文句子确是错了，错在不定词的p̥k naX，应该改成动名词的naX ɛj c才对，整个句子改正如下：

Eh̥j ɔda` naX ɛj c p̥la Ykkg h̥Kopj ɛdp̥

英文的动词后面再接准动词的宾语时，可分三种，即：

（/）后接不定词或动名词皆可的，如Yacɛj 等动词，例：

Oda YacX̥j p̥k Znu, ! 故（Oda YacX̥j Znuɛj c, ! 辱绝示记鹿  
尖介。（

（0）后面只能以不定词作宾语的，如Xcmḁa等动词，例：

Da Xcmḁa` p̥k ck, ! 婆枪宜梅。（

（1）后面只能以动名词作宾语的，如h̥j ɔd等动词，例：

Eh̥j ɔda` naX ɛj c p̥la Ykkg h̥Kopj ɛdp̥! 认昨闻爱蓝剥邱  
对秋介。（

在这三种动词中最要注意的是第三种，因为我们惯常都喜欢拿不定词接在动词后面，所以如Zki a pk oaa一类的用法极其普通，而上述的第二种用法，也为数极多。第一种既是二者皆可，自无问题，因为随便怎样说都不会错。只有第三种不许接不定词，偏偏我们又用惯了不定词，所以最容易发生错误，虽英美人亦所不免，于是他们便有所谓I acXl al o的说法。所谓z霉咖啡不是à，就是说属于z霉咖啡不是à一类的动词后面不是接不定词。霉咖啡不是的动词，又是一些什么动词呢？最常用的有下列十字，而z霉咖啡不是à，就是从它们的头一个字母拼合而成的：

I ! i ej` (i eo ( (aj fku (cra ql (X! X i ep (Xrke  
` ( (hj eod (aoZXl a (l nXZpZa (opkl ,

我们只消记得z霉咖啡不是à，用到这些字时便可注意不要接不定词，而要接动名词，例如：

Pda paXZdan` è j kpi ej` atl hXej ej c pda l nkYhai XcXc  
j ,! 件能对乡蓝伐问弃边蹈地唇晚夹集市。（

Ukq ZXj j kpi eo oaaej c pda opXpja kj ukqn s Xu,! 拟在  
盛夕摇兜会咖和蓝友匆像窗。（

S a aj fkua` pXlg ej c XYkqp khì pè ao,! 认考妇停纪唇台介  
小万事。（

EcXra ql oi kg ej c hXopi kj pd,! 认伤伐远解孰介。（

Pda i Xj X i epa` dXrej c Ynkgaj ej pk pda dkqoa,! 蓝  
日测秘敏抗道入。（

Ukq i qopXrke` ZXlhj c kj kpdamo kj Oqj` Xu,! 拟杯是  
悲肯在交把题梅把多日纪。（

DXra ukq hj eoda` opq` uej c hkn ukqn at Xi ej Xpckj ,  
! 拟秋成介犬教试谢窗著抱论，（

=u oki a i aXj o kn kpdam da aoZXl a` Ya ej c l qj eoda` ,  
! 婆泰拔法逃悲介吹等。（

Ukq odkqh 1 nXZpZa 1 hXuej c pda 1 eXj k racq hXhu, ! 拟堂  
晴怖廉丧导买。 (

; o hkj c Xo ukq h a (ukqn daXnpj aran opkl o YaXpj c,  
! 在拟古想窗什敢 (懈弄边会浅务跳错窗。 (

最后一个动词opkl, 并不是绝对不可以接不定词, 不过接不定词  
时, 便不是宾语, 而是副词, 而且意味上也大有差别。比较如下:

Da opkl 1 a` oi kgē c, ! 解孰 (边私介。 (

Da opkl 1 a` pk oi kga, ! 婆浅杀尖私孰。 (

前者为opkl 的宾语, 意为把吸烟那回事停止了, 自然是戒烟不吸  
了。至于后者是说把手头的工作停止一下, 为的是要吸一支烟, 这个p  
k oi kga 9 ē kn` anpk oi kga, 是修饰opkl 那个动作的副词。再比  
较下例:

Enai ai Yan 1 kopj c ukqn hapan, ! 认果寸闪拟登介十。 (

Nai ai Yan pk 1 kopukqn hapan, ! 果寸登十呀。 (

前者是nai ai Yan的宾语, 即记得有那回事, 指过去。后者是副  
词, 意为要记得去做, 等于说` kj p hkcappk 1 kop, 指未来。

## 101. I am afraid的三种不同的接法

EXi XlnXè - ɛj bɛj ɛpɛra

EXi XlnXè - kbCamqj`

EXi XlnXè - pɔXpɛ? hXqoa

碎伤散袭币善法（在宜它伤陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】这三种用法大致相同，不过在意义上可能有些微妙的差别，那多半可从前后文的语气上揣摩出来。例如：

! X (Da ɔ XlnXè pk`ea,

! Y (Da ɔ XlnXè kb`uej c,

! Z (Da ɔ XlnXè pɔXpda s dɛh`ea,

(X) 句的意思是z他怕死à，即对死怀着恐怖（zDa ɔ XlnXè kb`aXpɔ,à）。（Y）句的意思有时与（X）同义，有时又可解作z怕他自己会死à，即担心他自己要死亡，结果又等于（Z）句zDa ɔ XlnXè pɔXpda s dɛh`ea,à的意思了。在这三种场合，句中的XlnXè一字，都是作z怕à恐惧à解，并未怎样改变原义，但在普通口语中，EXi XlnXè的说法，已经与z怕à无关，而变成一种委婉的言辞了。例如：

zHapɔ ck pk pɔa i kreao,à! 认考枪梅咖电因暗。（

zɛ XlnXè EZXj ɛp,à! 认刻慢边呢梅呀。（

分明是z不能去à，却说z恐怕不能去à，不说得那样肯定，无非是避免决断的语气罢了。又如：

zS dɛpɔXj pki kmks XcXej , à! 苦题各会杀通论，（

zEXi XlnXè ok,à! 刻慢各会死杀。（

这表示天意难测，不敢断定，只好加上z恐怕àz或许àz也未可知à的字样，来避免决定性的表示。又如：

zS dhdà nàZkran, à! 婆会短推论，（

zE XlnXè j kpà! 刻慢妇烂。（

这是不愿直接说出zDa s dhj kp nàZkran,à, 加上E XlnXè 时，语气就缓和多了。

凡用到EXi XlnXè 的场合，都是想避免告人以不好的消息，或拒绝的话语，成为修辞学上所谓aq1 dai ei 的一种。有次一个美国人作为读者投书写信到报馆去问：zE XlnXè EZXj pZki a,这句话，当我们说时到底怕的什么？à=ancaj ArXj o加以解答说：z这是EXi XlnXè [ kbZXqoēj c ukq ě Zkj raj eaj Za kn` eoXl l kēj pi aj pYq p] EZXj pZki a,（恐怕要引起你的不便，或是会使你失望，但我却不能来。）的省略说法。à这可算是一种最合理的说明了。

## 102. 无to的不定词

在和扰、朵货第错称挂边兜称弄死旧梅pk窗 (λzEoXs dēi Zk i a, àzEdaXn` dan oej c, àzDa bəhp dēo dXj` o pmai Yla, à. 城情在i Xga挂似死旧梅 (λzPdXpi Xgao i a baahYappa, à. 城情各陷年卡 什敢死旧梅边兜称窗pk,

③【集尺】动词dah后的不定词是可以略去pk的, 不过KAD上说dah后无pk是rqhXn, 而美国语法家?, Bnao又说dah - pk是rqhXnA j chod, 另外一位美国语法家C, ?qri a就说dah后有pk, 是aol aZeX hu ej ZXnabqhbXj cqXca。早在/607年英国人就说zEdah i Xej pXej , , , à, /616年还见有人说zEdah pnrks , , , à, 到/605年就是二者同时并用, 到二十世纪可以说是完全不用pk了。其他的动词后省略不定词的pk, 在美国最通用的有Zki a和ck二字, 在会话中固不待言, 在文学作品中亦频频出现。

Epdēj g Eshck hkg hkn oj Xgao, y y O, Has eo! 认泰认死梅找幕介。(

Ck s Xod pdai dXj` o, y y S, BXqhgj an! 梅扫怕。( ! 信漂童pdai 9 plaen (

美国人说ck cap, 是表示z获得àz入手à的意思, 而ck+cappa就是z活动家à, 例如:

Pda pdēj c pk` k pdaj (Xo Xhra Yqj Zd kbck+cappa eo pk ZXl qXhva Zqhpmra, y y O, Has eo! 字犬古猩窗古错纪 (骑成死谢窗事 (酒弄爱文化似银剥化鹿尖。(

在/71.年以后, 美国人说的话, 都很少在动词后不定词上用pk了, 但Oej ZXenHas eo是活跃于/70. y 1.年代的作家, 那正是过渡时期, 所以在他的作品中, 二者同时并用, 例如:

;lhukq dXra pk`k eo pk ck Xj` oXu , , , ! 拟悟消梅  
披x x (

;lhs a`k eo ZqpaXZd kpdan~~o~~ pdnkXpo,! 认考颇死谢窗酒  
弄隔点报城窗雇管。(

在现今的美国话当中,把不定词的pk省略的,除Zki a及ck后面的  
的以外,还有下列几种形式:

Pda kj hu pdej c! pk`k (	}	
;hl s a ZXj`k (		
S dXp! ukq ckppk`k ( eo ck Xpkj Za,		eo ck Xpkj Za,
Pda kj a pdej c! pk`k (		
Pda h <del>o</del> ppdej c! pk`k (		

我们只消注意听听美国人说话,或看看美国人的写作,便随时可  
以发现这样的句子:

;lhukq ckppk`k eo l maoo X`Xi j Yqppkj ,! 认考悟消艾  
摇杀电妈酒食介。(

Pda kj a pdej c EdXpa pk`k eo ck pk Ya`s daj ~~h~~ j kpa  
raj p~~ra~~` ,! 认胁杀数窗摇见事曲 (酒弄认摇词似边烈或窗什敢  
酒梅睡。(

美国话的i Xga Yal~~ra~~不是z使人相信à, 而是z假装à或z虚构à的  
意思。英国话也有此意,不过他们说i Xga pk Yal~~ra~~ 9 l rapaj`。  
《牛津大辞典》上的例句都是有pk的。

Ei Xga Yal~~ra~~ maX i u Braj Zd Ykkgo, y y O, Has eo  
! 认函诸对认窗法文邱。(险宜)在i Xga Yal~~ra~~卫伐错称挂后  
窗边兜称maX 似闹旧介pk。

Ok! api ao s daj Zdeh maj l hXu plau i Xga Yal~~ra~~ plau  
Xma cnks j ql o,! 夫庄考陷什在替色什诸字大日。(



这字又可作名词或形容词用：

OXu (caa! E` è j ɸat l aZp k b p a l h u k q X l h p d e o i X g a + Y a h  
ara, y y O, H a s ɔ! 喂（巴呀！认推边打品爱卫摇码势房怕恶贫  
拟窗。（

Daɛ s n p a d a n X i X g a + Y a h a r a l a p p a n b r k i X ` q g a, y y  
O, H a s ɔ! 婆泰死省摇东函慢弄摇群返爵省窗十法辱。（

# 103. 不可以说after the war being over

z维我籍数碎挂 (认酒肠谁梅介a摇活 (以成益文犬z; hpan pda s  
XnYaaj c kran (Es aj pXYnkX ,a 边毋陷茅陷呆误,

③【集尺】译文是有错误的, 因为依据英文的造句法用了独立分词  
(; Yokhpa LXpZd la) 的时候, 前面就不要再加连词或介词了。独立分词也有不带主语的, 但这儿是指的带主语的独立分词, 即z意味上的主语- 分词a的形式。这多用于写作方面, 口头说话很少用到, 口语可用表理由或条件的字眼来代替它, 参考下列各例, 括弧内的字句是口语。

Pda oqj dXre j c oap! 9 ; o pda oqj dX oap ( (s a opXr  
a` hndki a,! 她水落末介 (认考错那灰纪。 (

Da Yaaj c dama! 9 Oj Za da e dama ( (pda e j k` Xj c  
an,! 台陷婆在城 (认考茅陷去嫌。 (

Pde` kj a! 9 S daj pde dXo Yaaj` kj a ( (` al Xp ej l  
aXZa,! 爱卫伐谢秋 (酒啊荒唇梅暗。 (

问题中提出的英文翻译, 照写作时可改正为:

Pda s XnYaaj c kran (Es aj pXYnkX ,

依说话方式, 则可改正为:

; hpan pda s Xn s Xo kran (Es aj pXYnkX ,

凡是分词的意味上的主语 (Oaj oa+OqYfaZp) 和主句中文法上的  
主语 (CnXi i XpZXhOqYfaZp) 不一致时, 就须采用这种独立分词的表现法, 使整个的附句变成副词 (Oaj paj Za+;` ranY), 来修饰主句

（是修饰整句，不是修饰一个动词）。这个意味上的主语又称独立主格（Jki ɟ Xpɐa ; Yokhɔpa）。

## 104. “be +不定词” 的用法

z认黑死梅a摇童（看以字zEodXlhck,à故zEXi ckj c,à故zEXi p k ck,à第什士（边毋陷喝盯笨，影骑弄zYa - 边兜称a窗套法（屈奢犬披苦。

③【集尺】表示未来时态的，说zEodXlhck,à基本的形式，但现在在美国几乎是用EXi ckj c来代替odXlh以表未来了，如果说z去à时，他们便说zEXi ckj c pk ck,à。可见ckj c一字已失去了z去à的意义，而只是表示未来罢了。至于zYa - 不定词à是不定词的叙述用法，好像形容词一样。英文的这种表现法，有种种不同的意味，分别举例说明如下：

(/) 表预定：

S a Xra pk ck pk pks j pdeo Xhparj kkj ,! 认考打品华题杀肉伤乎梅。（

Da eo pk Xmra Xpoaraj ej pda i knj ej c,! 婆遇兜早晨七什点鞭。（

Pda i aapj c eo pk Ya dah kj Oqj `Xu,! 兜介交把题绝会。（

S a Xra pk i aapXcXej kj Oqj `Xu araj ej c,! 认考交把题球伤晚和。（

(0) 表可能：

JkpX okqj `s Xo pk Ya daXn` ,! 摇词声太大确听等。（

Ej pda oguj kpX Zhkq` s Xo pk Ya oaaj ,! 秋题荣片外。（

Aranu i ɔbknɔj a ɔ pk Ya oqY` qa` Yu l Xpaj Za, ! 摇码  
边实大看提跑纳级服。 (

Dan baalɔj co Xo oda naX pda hapan s ara oZXnZahu pk Ya  
` abɔj a` , ! 辱咖十什窗懈曲边看林香。 (

Pda ps ej o Xra pk Ya ` ɔɔj cq ɔda` Yu pdaen rkeZao, ! 全  
难庄看碎提婆考窗声太倍笨肠尖。 (

zEXi XlhXopkj ɔdi aj p Dks lkj c dXo oda Yaaj oqZd  
X bXrkqɔpa, y y Xj ` l nXu (s daj Xi Epk s ɔd ukq fku, à  
y y FXj a ; qopaj ! z认章伐下得介。辱鞭拟咖夕陷当净介, 屈拟  
恶贫认 (年卡什敢认看碎驱合拟考窗订讳郎, à (

### (1) 表义务:

Ukq Xra pk l kop pde hapan Xp kj Za, ! 拟具伤梅爱卫东十  
登介。 (

Oda Xoga` dei s dXpoda s Xo pk ` k, ! 辱问婆咖辱死谢词  
年卡。 (

Hapi a gj ks aranupde j c p dXp EXi pk gj ks s ɔd kq p` at  
Xu, ! 认逝死毋传窗事夺纪大恶贫认暗。 (

Ukq Xra pk Zki a s ɔd i a, ! 拟是副认枪梅。 (

Ukq Xra pk opXu dara p d hEZki a YXZg, ! 拟寸但在城唇第  
认灰尖。 (

### (2) 表假设:

Eb da s ara pk Zki a (oXu p dXp EXi XYoaj p ! 泗摇婆尖  
介 (悟披认边在纪。 (

? anpXej ogdho i qopYa haXnj a` ɔbkj a ɔ pk qoa Aj chod  
abaZprahu, ! 入柜泰死陷甚唇始套益童 (末小几麻弄杯是许寸  
窗。 (

Eb ɔ ɔ pk Ya ` kj a Xp Xlh (` k ɔ s alh ! 入柜摇兜死谢窗  
化 (酒好好唇谢暗。 (

(3) 表目的:

Pdeɔ dkqoa ɔ pɔk Ya hɔp kn okh, ! 卫点庄死肠笑故慰肠  
涕。(

JkpXj ɛj opXj pɔp pɔk Ya hɔp! 摇空熄似边死究恶。(

; j` pda Xq cq m s ara Xo Zharan Xo Xra l khpZeXj o (s dk  
Xhok i qopl nXZpɔa` ɛj Xpɔkj (ɛbaran pɔlau Xra pɔk` k Xj upɔ  
ɛj c s kn pɔ pda j Xi a, y y F, D, HXs +ra j Za! 善幢窗严之纪似  
副菲幢窗为位纪摇维边寸边史食为位(入柜婆考泰死谢词林富骑  
史窗事曲窗化(颇碎菲幢窗为位纪似副善幢窗严之纪摇维窗聪苦  
郎。(

(4) 表结果:

Da s Xo pɔk YhXi a hknj kp hkZgɛj c pda` kkn, ! 茅陷岁抗弄  
婆窗戈呆。(

; i Epk qj` anopXj` pɔXpukq dXra aj cXca` ukq mɔalɔpɔk  
pɔe ukqj c caj +pɔai Xj, y y OdXs ! 拟弄披拟算晴副卫伐秋  
年懒事订介讳论,(

(5) 表运命:

Pda Lnɛj Za kbS Xlao dXo Yaaj pɔk qnɛj c pda s knh s ɛ a`  
ki ɛj ɛkj o kbs dɛZd (oki a` Xu (da ɔpɔk Ya pda Znks j daX  
`, y y D, C, S alɔ! 黑尖灭兜死谢益歌尽徒这王窗公她庄(梅  
止替介惫光怕牛疾窗尽徒灰尖介。(

美国的文法家? qri a说, zYa - 不定词à的形式, 常用来代替i qo  
p, odkqh, kqcdpɔk, dXra pɔk等等, 这就是指上面说的第三项。

凡自动词用ɔpɔk` k, 他动词用ɔpɔk Ya` kj a, 但他动词的YhXi  
a是一个例外, 通常并不说pɔk Ya YhXi a`, 也许这是受其含义的影  
响, 因Ya - pɔk YhXi a是z应负责à(有自动的意味), 例如: zS dk ɔ  
pɔk YhXi a hkn pda` ɔXopɔn? (这灾难谁负责呀?) à。

## 105. 名词后接用的不定词

碎仑微集尺错称挂后边兜称故错林称窗套法（善在尼屈晚酒林称挂后边兜称故错林称窗套法（夹碎奢集。礼入z认笔边泰等堪歌梅à摇活（堂以！X（zEdXra j k ej paj pkj pk ck pk ; i anZX,à故弄！Y（zEdXra j k ej paj pkj kbckej c pk ; i anZX,à

③【集尺】在名词后面并不一定要接z介词-动名词à，有很多场合是可以，或甚至必须接z不定词à的。当然二者皆可的是最便于我们学习了。但英文的这两种准动词的用法，实在是够复杂的。现在单就名词后的用法，分成三类，例解如下：

（/）在s Xu、pi a、ZdXj Za、kl l knpqj qu等名词后，接不定词或动名词都可以的：

！X（年卡弄许丧情歌童胁好窗对法，

$$\begin{matrix} S & dXp & \in & pla & Yaop & s & X \\ u & & & & & & \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} pk & laXnj \\ kb & laXnj & ej \\ c & & \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} X & bknaej & lXj & cqXc \\ a, & & & \end{matrix}$$

！Y（认计尖接对邱窗什患大茅陷。

$$EdXra j k pi a (j ks X Xuo \begin{pmatrix} pk & naX , \\ bkn & naX & ej & c, \end{pmatrix}$$

！Z（认简真副婆交台窗基会大茅陷。

$$EdX j k ZdXj Za \begin{pmatrix} pk & ol & aXg \\ kbol & aXg & ej & c \end{pmatrix} pk dei ,$$

！`（认鬼候茅陷研丧益文窗基会。

EdXra h<sup>pp</sup>da kl l kn<sup>pp</sup>qj <sup>equ</sup> $\left[\begin{array}{l}pk\ o\ pp\ `u \\ kb\ op\ pp\ `uej\ c\end{array}\right]$  Aj ch<sup>od</sup>,  
h<sup>pp</sup>da kl l kn<sup>pp</sup>qj equ

（0）通常只接用不定词的有XY<sup>depu</sup>、paj`aj Zu、maokh<sup>pp</sup>pkj、  
`apari ej X<sup>pkj</sup>等名词：

！X（婆祸懈死肠谁梅。

Da i X a X`apari ej X<sup>pkj</sup> pk ck XY<sup>nkX</sup>,

！Y（认架祸唇死解孰。

EdXra i X a X<sup>ni</sup> maokh<sup>pp</sup>pkj pk cera ql oi kg<sup>ej</sup> c,

！Z（计尖灭陷抽乡烧诧窗求想。

; paj`aj Zu pk ej`ql<sup>ca</sup> ej h<sup>tt</sup>qn<sup>uo</sup> oaaj h<sup>x</sup>pahu,

！`（婆陷听摇懊窗替逃剥尽。

Da dXo pda XY<sup>depu</sup> pk os ei h<sup>ga</sup> X<sup>hod</sup>,

注意：最后一例，不可说成zDa dXo pda XY<sup>depu</sup> kbos ei i ej c  
h<sup>ga</sup> X<sup>hod</sup>,à。又如z<sup>pda</sup> XY<sup>depu</sup> kb<sup>pda</sup> okran<sup>aej</sup> j X<sup>pkj</sup> o pk Zki Ye  
j a lkn Zk<sup>ha</sup>Z<sup>pra</sup> oaZ<sup>qn</sup>pu ej pda Qj epa` JX<sup>pkj</sup> o KncXj evX<sup>pkj</sup> à  
一句仍是接的不定词，即XY<sup>depu</sup> pk Zki Yej a，至于kb<sup>pda</sup> okran<sup>aej</sup>  
j X<sup>pkj</sup> o是修饰XY<sup>depu</sup>的，并非接在XY<sup>depu</sup>后的动作。

（1）在ej paj<sup>pkj</sup>、è aX、dXY<sup>ep</sup> kYfaZ<sup>pkj</sup>、i ap<sup>lk`</sup>、l qnl  
koa等名词后，通常要接用动名词，如：

！X（认边泰当咬难。

EdXra j k ej paj<sup>pkj</sup> kbYaZki ej c X`kZ<sup>pkn</sup>,

！Y（认茅陷泰等拟会尖。

EdX j k è aX kbukqnZki ej c,

！Z（认陷早鹿窗丧惯。



EXi ej pda dXYepkbnæej c aXnhu,

! ˘ (拟蒂对认梅论,

DXra ukq Xj u kYfaZpkj pki uckej c,

! a (婆较益文窗对法妇新。

Dæi apdk` kbpaXZdej c Aj chæd æj krah,

! b (辱等宜大脚许丧太渐梅介。

Da dXo ckj a pk fXhu lkn pda l qnl koa kbopq` uej c i qoe  
Z,

根据以上的原则，问题中所提出的，应以(Y)译为宜。又如：zE  
pæ dæ dXYepk s Xlg lkn dXhbXj dkqn Yalkma YmaXgbXop (他在  
吃早饭以前有出去散步半小时的习惯。) à。为何在dXYep后面又可以  
接不定词呢？通常在dXYep后是要接z介词- 动名词à才对，即如：

Dæ dXYepkbs Xlg ej c lkn dXhbXj dkqn Yalkma YmaXgbXop  
gaal o dei daXhpu, ! 婆在早弟仑鸣宾巴深什窗蓝袭丧惯始婆拜  
唱河极。(

确实，在dXYep后应该接用介词加动名词，这原是一般的法则，  
不过英文写来常有变化，因造句的关系，就不能死守着法则不放，还  
是要理解文句的构造，才不致为法则所制。zE pæ dæ dXYepk s Xlg b  
lkn dXhbXj dkqn Yalkma YmaXgbXop à一句中的不定词pk s Xlg并不表  
示那种习惯的动作，从文法上讲，它是一个名词，不是动词，所以与  
dXYep毫无关系。句中的E是填补词，是假主语，真正的主语为pk s Xh  
g lkn dXhbXj dkqn Yalkma YmaXgbXop, 因为主语太长，放在动词之  
前显得尴尬，所以用ep来代替主语，而把意味上的真正的主语移到后  
头了。Pk s Xlg既是主语，当然是名词了。这句的意义不是说z散步的  
习惯à，而是说：z早饭前散步是他的习惯。à至于zDæ dXYepkbs Xlge  
j c lkn dXhbXj dkqn, , , à, 才是指的z散步的习惯à，二者是判然不  
同的。

106. so as to do和so . . . as to do

! X (S a opXnpa` ok aXnhu Xo pk capplana Yalkna j kkj ,  
! Y (S a opXnpa` aXnhu ok Xo pk capplana Yalkna j kkj ,  
伤亮卫结活益文在宜它伤陷喝边枪,

③集尺】 (X) 可译作z我们很早动身，所以在正午以前就到达那里了à。(Y) 可译作z我们要在正午以前赶到那里，所以很早就动身了à。这个ok Xo pk的造句，如果分开是表z结果à之意，如果连在一块儿，就是表z目的à的了。即是 (X) 与ok , , , pdXp相同，而 (Y) 则与ok pdXp, , , i Xu相同，所以问题中的例句可以改写如下：

! X (S a opXnpa` ok aXnhu Xo pk capplana Yalkna j kkj ,  
9 S a opXnpa` ok aXnhu pdXps a ckplana Yalkna j kkj ,  
! Y (S a opXnpa` aXnhu ok Xo pk capplana Yalkna j kkj ,  
9 S a opXnpa` aXnhu (ok pdXps a i ædp capplana Yalkna j kkj ,

现在再举一两个类似的例子，以资研习：

! X (婆大犬难气 (接化大披边肠尖介。  
Da s Xo ok Xj cnu Xo pk Ya qj XYha pk ol aXg,  
Da s Xo ok Xj cnu pdXpda Zkqh j kpol aXg,  
! Y (早词尖看碎为等好群庄。  
? ki a aXnhu ok Xo pk capXckk` oaXp  
? ki a aXnhu ok pdXpukq i Xu capXckk` oaXp

? ki a aXn<sup>h</sup>u ej kn` an pk capX ckk` oaXp

! Z (辱轻野揭宾 (边始陷摇词声太。

Oda s Xlga` ok<sup>h</sup>hu ok Xo j kppk i Xga Xj uj kəa,

Oda s Xlga` ok<sup>h</sup>hu p<sup>l</sup>Xpoda i ədpj kpi Xga Xj uj kəa,

Oda s Xlga` ok<sup>h</sup>hu ej kn` anj kppk i Xga Xj uj kəa,

又这个ok Xo pk还可以代替副词用，如：

! X (婆妇好 (即介蓝抱伦法认。

Da s Xo ok gėj` Xo pk həj` i a p<sup>l</sup>da i kj au,

Da gėj` hu həj pi a p<sup>l</sup>da i kj au,

! Y (婆妇好 (灰尺介认窗问弃。

Da s Xo ok gėj` Xo pk Xj os ani u m<sup>l</sup>qao<sup>h</sup>pkj ,

Da gėj` hu Xj os ana` i u m<sup>l</sup>qao<sup>h</sup>pkj ,

这个表结果的ok , , , Xo pk, 除了可改写为ok , , , p<sup>l</sup>Xp外, 又可用aj kqcd pk来代替, 说出来都是一样的意思:

Da s Xo ok gėj` Xo pk da<sup>h</sup> i a,

9 Da s Xo ok gėj` p<sup>l</sup>Xpda da<sup>h</sup> a` i a,

9 Da s Xo gėj` aj kqcd pk da<sup>h</sup> i a,

107. too . . . to do

益文窗 pkk , , , - 𐌒 𐌒j 𐌒𐌒𐌒a 摇伐币善法 (挂亮窗边兜称陷烦兜窗宜脾 (但陷什以成烦兜什活庄背伙边听介。屈酒陷吩窗更袭活时奢犬集披。

③【集尺】这个表现法可分成三类来加以说明:

(/) 从字面上看, 凡在 j kp kj hu Xlh Yqp 等字后面的 pkk, 其句中的不定词是没有否定意思的, 如:

Aj chod eo j kp pkk ` 𐌒𐌒Zqhp pk haXnj , ! 益文笔边她烂许。 (

EodXlhYa kj hu pkk l haXoa` pk dah ukq, ! 认馆鹅兴罢闲拟。 (

Pdau Xra Xlh pkk oXpobea` pk pXga pda kl ej dkj o kbkpda n o s 𐌒𐌒kqppda l Xej kb 𐌒𐌒kqcdp 𐌒kn 𐌒lai oahrao, ! 婆考大她马宜乡后输笨日窗宜和 (装挤检寸梅泰。 (

Ukq gj ks Yqp pkk s alhp k dkh ukqn pkj cqa, ! 拟你盯毋传母披化窗好。 (

这些句中的 pkk 都可以解释为 ranu。

(0) 从构造上看, 不定词如系修饰 pkk 后面的字而非修饰 pkk 时, 即不含否定的意思, 如:

Oda eo pkk naX u pk ol aXg, ! 辱她当万介。 (

Da eo pkk naX u pk l nki eoa, ! oqol aZp (! 轻买。 (! 侮宿。 (

=acəj j anɔ Xna pkk xl p p k i Xga i ɔpXgaɔ,! 偿许慰容侮  
暖呆。(

S a Xna pkk xl p p k k r a n k k g k q n k s j bXqhpɔ,! 认考妇容侮  
后首装挤窗戈呆。(

这种句中的不定词是修饰pkk后面的naX u一类的字的,也可以说  
pkk是修饰naX u p k ol aXg的,所以第一句的zOda ɔ pkk naX u p k o  
l aXg,əzOda ɔ pkk pXlgXpɔra,à.

(1) 当不定词用来修饰前面的pkk时,才含有否定的意思在内,  
说:

Oda ɔ pkk ukqj c p k i Xnu,

9 Oda ɔ ok ukqj c p d Xpoda ZXj j k p i Xnu,

9 Oda ɔ j k p k h i a j k q c d p k i Xnu,

! 辱她年轻(边呢籍讳。(

句中的p k i Xnu是修饰前面的pkk或pkk ukqj c的。再举数例如  
下:

Pda j a s o ɔ pkk c k k` p k Ya p n q a,! 消死她好(刻边看  
集。(

Pda h k s a n ɔ pkk YaXq p d q h p k bXop! 花她堪(烂晴净。(

Ukq Xna pkk ukqj c p k q j` a m p Xj` o q Z d p d e j c o,! 拟她年  
轻(边措寸卫小事。(

Es Xo pkk a t Z e p a` p k ol aXg,! 认兴儿寸披边肠化尖介。(

把上面三种用法了然于怀,即令遇到字面构造完全相同的句子,  
也能分别其不同的含义了:

! X (Da ɔ pkk Xj c n u p k ol aXg,

! Y (Da ɔ pkk naX u p k ol aXg,

(X) 句中的不定词是修饰**pkk**的，而 (Y) 句则是用**pkk**来修饰不定词的。所以 (X) 的意思是**z**不能说话à，而 (Y) 是**z**多言à。换言之 (X) **zDa ɔ ok Xj cnu pɔXpda ZXj j kpol aXg**,à是通的，但 (Y) **zDa ɔ ok naX u pɔXpda ZXj j kpol aXg**,à就说不通了。

附带地说一下，在**pkk, , , - lkn - KYfaZp**的形式下，也含有否定的意思，如**pkk YaXq pɔq hkn s kn` o**（美得言语不能形容）、**pkk bXp lkn YaXq pu**（太胖就不美了）。

## 108. 不定词的否定

! X (Epkh̃ d̃eĩ j kppk ol aXg pda pmpd,  
! Y (E` è j kppalh̃d̃eĩ pk ol aXg pda pmpd,  
卫结活益文在宜它伤陷年卡边枪,

③【集尺】(X)句的意思是z我叫他不要说真话à。(Y)句的意思是z我并没有叫他说真话à。如果要对不定词的意思加以否定的话,就得把j kpp放在不定词的紧前面,所以(X)中的j kpp是否定pk ol aXg pda pmpd的,相反地在(Y)句中的j kpp是与` è合起来否定该句中的动词pali的。

我们无论是翻译或写作,都要注意,否定不定词的否定字,总是要紧靠在不定词的前面的,例如:

Ep s d̃hj aa` i qZd p̃i a (j kppk ol aXg kb pda at l aj oa,  
! 卫逝死妇当什患(边死披恶套介。(

Da h̃ap dki a (j aran pk rap̃nj ,! 婆降绝纪抬碎挂(酒晚  
茅陷灰尖戈。(卫伐边兜称弄币世籍柜窗。

Da l rap̃j ` o j kppk gj ks ,! 婆函诸边毋。(

凡否定词与不定词或分词并用时必居其前,兹再举一个分词的例如下:

Jkp gj ks ej c s dXp pk ` ky y da l rap̃j ` o j kppk gj ks ,  
! 边身寸死在维拔y y 婆酒诸字边毋。(

109. not too . . . to do和too . . . not to do

! X (Ẽə j kppkk hXpa pk i aj ` ,

! Y (Da ə pkk s əa j kppk oaa p̃lXp

伤亮卫结活益文 (! X (弄j kppkk , , , pk (! Y (弄pkk , , , j k  
ppk (摇伐烦兜在仑 (摇伐烦兜在挂 (的慰边毋陷喝边枪,

③集尺】(X)句的意思是z只要肯改过，决不会嫌太迟的ā。句中的j kp可改说j aran, 意义较重。(Y)句的意思是z以他的聪明，岂有不知那事的道理ā。(X)句的j kp, 是用以否定ə的，而(Y)句的j kp, 便是修饰不定词pk oaa的。这两句英文的构造完全不同，如果不了解，把(X)句中的j kp认为是修饰pkk的，翻译出来就会大错特错。如说：

Ẽə pkk hXpa pk i aj ` , 9 Ẽə ok hXpa p̃lXps a ZXj j kpi a  
j ` ,

意即：z时已太迟，无法改正。ā再加上一个否定字，变成：

Ẽə j kppkk hXpa pk i aj ` ,

若译作z时不太迟，无法改正ā, 就不通了；应译成z你要改过，现在并不为迟ā, 或是z现在还来得及改ā。

至于(Y)句中的j kp是只管pk oaa的，换写ok p̃lXp时，即是：

Da ə ok s əa p̃lXpda ZXj j kpYqpoaa p̃lXp

意即：z他是那样聪明，必然会知道那事情的。ā又如：



Pdeə s Xo pkk cnaXpXj dkj kq n j kppk at Zəpa pda aj ru kl  
deə nərXlɔ, 9 Pdeə s Xo ok cnaXpXj dkj kq n pɔXpəpat Zəpa` pɔ  
a aj ru kbdeə nərXlɔ, ! 卫弄摇袭妇大窗密途 (杯绕死抛鹿婆对怕  
考窗归商窗。 (

Da ə pkk Xj cnu j kppk oXu pɔXp ! 婆盛嘛这杀似边肯死披  
肠蓝维窗化。 (

## 110. but +不定词

! X (E` è j kpdj c Yqpck dki a,

! Y (E` aoera` j kpdj c Yqppk ck dki a,

伤亮卫结活益文枪弄在Yqp挂亮（犬年卡摇活后陷pk窗边兜称（  
摇活田死后荣pk窗边兜称郎，婆入在pdXj 挂亮（四候似陷枪维窗善  
社（弄烦陷摇兜窗封望看腿，

③【集尺】问题中所提出的两句英文，意义为：（X）z我除了回家之外，别无办法。à（Y）z我只希望回家。à这个Yqp9 at Zal p。至于在Yqp后何时要接用有pk的不定词，何时要接用无pk的不定词，有一条很简单的法则，那就是前面有`k〔`è，`kj a〕的时候，在Yqp后面就接没有pk的原形不定词。据Faol amaj 和?qni a的说法，在连词Yqp at Zal p oXra、pdXj、Xo等字后，都是同样的情形。如果句中是用了其他的动词，后面的不定词就要加上pk了。现分别举例说明如下：

（/）前面用有动词`k时，在连词Yqp等后接用无pk的不定词：

Da` è j kpdj c YqphXqcd, ! 婆悟弄审。（

Oda` è j kpdj c YqpZnu Xlh` Xu, ! 辱照题悟弄记。（

S dXp Zkqh` da` k YqppXga YXZg s dXp da dX` oXè ,  
! 婆窗介爬灰婆披窗化碎情（各陷笨窗年卡拔法，（

EZXj j kpYqpX i era dœ ZkqnXca, ! 认边寸边量服婆窗讨  
气。（卫弄爱ZXj j kp挂亮窗`k Xj updj c窗婴维闹旧从介窗托  
飞（各弄第乡套陷错称`k窗。卫弄省字窗披法（入柜寄乔窗披  
法（背成犬zEZXj j kpda h X i enj c dœ ZkqnXca, à 但堪歌日  
爱卫结袭披法鼓赋在摇鹿（道披成zEZXj j kpda h YqpX i era  
dœ ZkqnXca, à

Oda oaai ej chu dXo`kj a j kpdj c YqpXZZki l hod pda e  
i l kooeYha,! 辱窗神气好像弄谢成凡介摇见边看呢窗事。(

E`è j k i kra pdXj i Xga XYacj j ej c,! 认悟绝介摇伐乔  
鞍介。(

Oda`è j kpdj c ahoa pdXj Znu Xlh`Xu,! 辱殖揉悟弄记  
虑。(

Da`è j kpok i qZd Xo oXu da s Xo oknu,! 婆接摇声对  
边鹿大茅陷披。(

(0) 前面用`k以外的动词, 在连词Yqp等后就要接用有pk的不定  
词:

Jkpdj c nai Xej o Yqppk`ea,! 窗司碎情(笨荣拔法。(

S a dX j k ZdkeZa Yqppk pnj YXZg,! 认考窗介昼灰乔碎  
情(笨荣拔法。(

Ukq kqcdppk gj ks Yappan pdXj pk Yahara Xlh pda ckooc  
l ukq daXn,! 拟堂敦苦帮(边会悟线十拟颇听等窗摇码私  
万。(

EXi oqra s a dX j kpdj c pk`k Yqppk bcdp pda YXpda  
kqp! 认妹十认考悟陷棘维等春这摇法。(

Pdau`aoera j kpdj c Yqppk aj fku pda l maaj pi ki aj p  
! 婆考悟息屈华彩陷回华彩幽。(

附带地说一句, 在dX Yappan之后, 也是要接无pk的不定词的,  
例如:

Ukq dX Yappan`k epukq maah! 拟胁好装挤梅谢。(

这句话可以解释为zUkq s kqh dXra epYappan pk`k epukq maah  
bà。这个dX Yappan, 原来和s kqh nXpda及i Xu Xo s ah等表现  
法, 差不多都是同义的, 例如:

EdX ! 故s kqh (nXpda`ea pdXj ueah,

9 EdX ! 故s kq hì (okkj an` ea p dXj u eahì ,

9 EdX ! 故s kq hì (Xo okkj ` ea Xo u eahì ,

! 黎司似边甚或。 (

但现代英文对dX Yappan及s kq hì nXp dlan, 在惯用法上产生了不同的含义, 如:

Pdau s kq hì nXp dlan` ea p dXj ck pk p d a s krgdkqoa, ! 婆考黎司似边进免民新。 (卫伐s kq hì nXp dlan弄币市虚! ZdkeZa (窗。

Eb p d au s kq hì nXp dlan` ea (p d au dX Yappan` k ok, ! 入柜婆考泰司 (司梅似好。 (卫伐dX Yappan弄币惜恶! X reZa (窗。

## 111. say +不定词

益文窗惯套法边披zDa oXuo pk ck,à (道死披zDa oXuo! pɔXp (da s ɛhck,à 犬年卡认在邱伤田对等zPda paXZdan oXuo pk Zki a a Xrhu,à窗套法郎,

③【集尺】这是美国话和英国话不同的地方。英国话在动词pɔj g后面可以接不定词，而美国话则不允许。美国话在动词oXu后面可以接不定词，而英国话则不允许。

Ej aran pɔkqcdppk oaa ukq dama! ! 益 (   
 9 Ej aran pɔkqcdpEs kqh oaa ukq dama! ! 堪 (   
 S dk s kqh dXra pɔkqcdppk i aapukq dama, ! 益 (   
 9 S dk s kqh dXra at l aZpa` pk i aapukq dama, ! 堪 (   
 Da pɔkqcdppk` aZaera qo,! 益 (   
 9 Da ej paj` a` ! 故 l hXj j a` (pk` aZaera qo,! 堪 (

美国话的oXu pk` k 9 palhXl amkj pk` k是含有命令语气的口语用法，如zDa oXe` pk palhukq j kp pk Zki a,à, 意为z他要我告诉你不要来à, 可以在oXe` 后，pk palh前，补入hkn i a二字来解释。如问题中所提出的句子。

Pda paXZdan oXuo pk Zki a aXrhu,! 堪 (   
 9 Pda paXZdan palho qo pɔXps a i qopZki a aXrhu,! 益 (

美国话的这种用法，是间接的命令法，英文是用palh来表达的，如zDa pkh i a pk Zki a Xpkj Za, (他要我马上来。) à. 如美国口语用oXu时，便要把后面的作为宾语的人称代名词略去，例如：

zS a Xls Xuo l hXZa` epdama, àzGXodgə j aran oXè pk l qf  
ep pdama, ày y Dai ə cs Xu) Bkn s dki pda Balh Pktho (TTE  
! z认考小弄爱破放在卫句窗。àz迹撒花程尖茅陷披死认考爱破放  
在蓝句。à (

Ep s Xo pda l dkpkcnXl dan ə pda hkYYu, PuhanoXè pk Zk  
i a mcdpql, y y Fkdj Fko LXooko) Jqi YanKoa! 在示死  
殴句摘线能算睛尖介。它剑死认具伤等卫句尖。 (

他们有时候也把hkni a的字样说进去，使得oXu后面的不定词有个确定的意味上的主语，意义表达得更明白些，例如：

zOda oXè pk, Oda oXè hkni a j kp pk opXu dama, ày y BX  
qlgjan) Obodm+bru! 辱披酒卫维谢暗。辱披死认边死但在城  
唇。 (

zCks j (oda oXè hkni a j kp pk Ya dama Xlpan` Xng, Oda  
oXè pk Xog dei, Daδ ckpX ZXn, , , ày y EYè ! z辱死认边死  
在题富挂传在卫句。辱死认梅找婆。婆陷摇解茶x x à (

这也有用第一人称的例子：

Ok Æ Zkqj p EoXè pk Zkqj p ləpu Xp ləmp (plaj Eplkqc  
dpepXo opthpkk okkj (Xj` Æ oXu pk Zkqj p ləpu i kra, y y  
EYè ! 颇碎认死趣。胁偿认死趣柔你 (看弄挂尖货寸蓝各弄她  
纪 (乡弄酒晚趣柔你好坚。 (

这句中的EoXè pk Zkqj p有lapi a Zkqj p的意味，也还是属于命令法的范围之内的，可算是命令法的变体。这种表现法也许是从Erod  
Aj chod传来的，例如：

zUkq oXè j kp pk Xj os an ukqn ləpan, ày y N, Gj kt ! z拟  
候认边死灰拟窗十。à (

## 112. 美国话中的现在分词的用法

堪歌化夕套善在盯称尖网活窗馆当（屈剪礼披苦骑套法。

③【集尺】英文用法中许多动名词（Camj`），到美国话中好像都变成现在分词（Lmaoj p LXmpZd la）了。美国话喜欢省略介词，动名词前的介词一经略去，那动名词就变成现在分词了。因此，这种分词的用法，在美国话中特别发达。当然，除此之外，还有从其他方式转变来的分词也不为少。兹分为四类，例解如下：

（/）省去介词而变成分词的：

（X）省去ej的：

S a i X a i qZd Yappanpi a ckēj c aXop! 9 ēj ckēj c aXo  
p (pdXj s a dX i X a ckēj c s aop y y F Xu) Hha s qd Bbpd  
an! 认考想村梅比认考推尖窗撒食准寸翻纪。(i Xga pi a 9 ck  
bXop

, , , pda XnZda` Xj` krandXj cēj c nccēj c (s dama pdau  
dX fqopYaaj aj cXca` oaZqnēj c! 9 aj cXca` ēj oaZqnēj c (X  
ol Xn, , , y y I ahredha) I kYu Dēdg! 共什唇氏在伤亮窗吵窗  
简坡（婆考惰在蓝盗诸好介摇工敌试。（

（Y）省去Yu的：

I kopl akl la fqopnqēj oZookmo pnūj c! 9 Yu pnūj c (pk  
odXrl aj &i , y y Opaj YaZg) Pda Ednuobopdai qi o! 大当  
趣窗日泰死爱剪楚狂纪（籍柜大狂怀介。（

Da opXnpa` ēj opaXhēj c! 9 Yu opaXhēj c (odaal Xj` dkno  
ao Xj` aj` a` q1 nkYYēj c! 9 Yu nkYYēj c (opXcao, y y Opaj

YaZg) Pda Lbop~~rao~~ kbDabrao! 婆绝示弄桥爽桥具 (胁挂酒梅桥选具茶介。 (

(Z) 省去s epd的:

S daj da s Xo p~~nr~~kqcd pX~~gej~~ c! 9 p~~nr~~kqcd s epd pX~~gej~~ c (da ckpql Xj` s aj p~~pk~~ d~~eo~~ ks j` aog, y y OX~~nr~~kuXj) Pda Dqi bo Eki ~~aeu~~! 当婆伙秋介 (婆酒站鹿那尖 (准想婆装挤窗邱助梅介。(活夕窗p~~nr~~kqcd弄富称 (边弄互称 (da s Xo p~~nr~~kqcd! 婆谢秋介 (夹善在盯称窗pX~~gej~~ c犬推陷窗网活 (入顿犬da s Xo p~~nr~~kqcd s epd pX~~gej~~ c (望pX~~gej~~ c当绕变成摇伐错林称介。

S daj s a dX ckp~~nr~~kqcd aX~~pej~~ c! 9 ckp~~nr~~kqcd s epd aX~~pej~~ c (s a s kqh ck hkg Xp kqn ps k dkmao, y y ;j` amkj) Pda I bo S dk Badbi a b S ki bo! 第认考抽秋介弟 (认考酒死梅咖认考蓝结猎具。(cap~~nr~~kqcd 9 h~~je~~ od! re (: cap~~nr~~kqcd s epd 9 h~~je~~ od! rp (,

S dhukq j aran Ya` kj a cap~~pej~~ c! 9 Ya` kj a s epd cap~~pej~~ c (i a ej pk p~~rk~~qYla, y y H, I , I kj p~~ki~~ anu) Cooa kbCrko~~l~~ ab! 拟祸边死爱认句入馆忍。(Ya` kj a 9 h~~je~~ od! re (: Ya` kj a s epd 9 h~~je~~ od! rp (

(`) 省去kb的:

S dX~~po~~ pla qoa pX~~gej~~ c! 9 kb pX~~gej~~ c (, y y ;j` amkj) LkknS d~~ea~~! 结台陷年卡套, (

S dX~~po~~ pla ckk` YnXcc~~ej~~ c! kb YnXcc~~ej~~ c (, y y EYe! 森此陷年卡套, (

(O) 代替不定词而用的分词:

(X) 美国话常爱用现在分词来代替表示目的的不定词, 主要是用在动词ck和Zki a的后面, 用在其他动词后面当然也行:

F kj ~~ck~~ kran plara` ke~~j~~ c! 9 pk` k (Xj up~~dej~~ c hga p~~l~~X p y y ?Xh s alh) Ekqopru Bq~~h~~kbOs aeao! 边死等蓝卑梅谢泡



喝蓝摇类窗事。（

LXl l u nXj kqppk pda cXpa Xj` pkh dei j kppk Zki a lk  
khj c! 9 pk lkkh (Xrkqj` pda n a j k i kra, y y BXqlgj an) Ok/  
eærio Lbu! 案猎跑肠等大抗寄梅（候婆边死晚等卫盗尖替  
除。（

F kj ꞑ Ykpdan Xj os anj c! 9 pk Xj os an (pde, y y F, C,  
Dqj agan! 边杯拒地灰十。（

(Y) 美国话的cap pXlgj c及cap opXrpj c等也用以代替cap pk pX  
lg及cap pk opXrp而流行着。这个cap- +ej c的形式还可以应用到别的  
动词上:

S a ckppXlgj c XYkqpX i Xppan fqop Yalkra Elahp y y D  
ks alh) Pda Næa kb Oæbo Hbl dbi ! 在认死降绝窗什敢（认考  
微台论等摇见事。（

Æa ckppalai Xhpxlgj c XYkqpj koao (dXraj ꞑ E, y y O  
XrkuXj ) Pda Dq+i bo Eki æeu! 认始寸婆考大在台论堡  
庄。（

?ki a kj Xj` capckej c, y y ?Xh s alh) Bæ Bqdg! 尖绝  
示暗。（

Æ Ecaphuj c Xs Xga pkj ædp (EodXj ꞑ y y Fa I kmX  
j ) Fkoal d Rboda! 华球认睡边想货窗化（认酒边梅。（

(Z) 此外，不定词用以修饰其前之名词时，也可用现在分词:

Ukq ckpj k ZXlh lkkh æl pk lkkh (Xrkqj`, y y Opæj YaZ  
g) Kbl æda boe I ao! 拟荣没在城替除。（

EdX j ꞑ Xj u Yqoj aoo ej panhanj c! 9 pk ej panhara (,  
y y PXrgj c pkj ! 认荣没敢遇。（

(1) 与副词同用的分词:

现在分词多与表示动作地点的副词kqp kb等连用:

Ukq ZXj oaa dei kqppXgēj c Xs Xlg, y y A, S alpu) Khe  
I n I bnYtagbhl 拟看碎咖和婆肠梅鸣宾。(

EYapukq Zdei naj s ana kqpaXpēj c S alod NXYYep (pdX  
pō s du ukq Xma ok hXpa, y y Fko LXooko) 1919! 认看碎打  
顿(拟考卫小夫庄考摇兜弄肠梅抽饰得斯涂庄〔突在凯亮百伤窗  
摇袭故眠窗鼓陷列回窗敢舰〕(颇碎拟考灰尖寸卫维查。(

; hXri an j kpēZa` dēo j aēdYkn kqp Zdkl l ēj c s kk` ,  
y y Nabear'o Dēaop! 摇伐里都险宜等婆窗了日肠梅绩补。(

I qha (klbōaaēj c pda s knh (s dēa E` aoarra` Xcēj can  
YmaX i Xj , y y ? Xl kpa) Pda Crboo Dbnl ! 院得肠情咖牛疾  
梅介(道认古敦谢摇伐滩维洋侵乔。(

(2) ck Xj ` - 动词9 ck - +ēj c:

PdXpō pda gēj ` kbX hkhEs Xo Xj ` Es Xo XYēccan hkhf  
k ck palhēj c! 9 ck Xj ` palh (pda opknu, y y ; j ` anokj ) Lkkr  
S dēa! 认酒弄蓝袭沙庄(认翻沙窗弄各死等吹梅披。(

### 113. want和need后接动名词或不定词

z卫基旅死士礁介a摇活化 (以成益文窗zPda i XZde j a s Xj p Y  
ae j c nal Xma` ,a (据披弄呆误窗 (屈有顿握 (笔奢系披苦礁提。

③【集尺】应改正为zPda i XZde j a s Xj p nal Xae j c,a。英文的C  
an j `和E h j qra的用法,意思分明是被动的,文字却要用自动的来  
表达,如云z中头奖很难a,则说zPda bop l nva eo ranu` eZqhp k  
s g ,a (意思当然是pk Ya s kj )。例题中说的机器要修理,当然是机  
器被人修理,可是英文却要用自动的nal Xae j c,不可说被动的Ya j  
c nal Xma`。

动名词和不定词的用法常有不同。他动词的s Xj p后面接动名词  
时,尽管意思是被动的,字面一定要用自动的形式,如:

I u odkao s Xj pi aj ` e j c,! 认窗盟声死士礁介。(

E p s Xj p ZXna b qhd Xj ` h j c,! 卫伐死深懈吹礁。(

Pdaoa Ykt ao s Xj pj qi Yae j c,! 卫小少庄逝死笨公。(

不用动词s Xj p, 而改用动词j aa` 也是一样的, 如:

Pdeo dkqoa j aa` o nal Xae j c,! 卫屋庄死士礁介。(

又:

Pdeo ZdXl pan j aa` o nas nae j c,! 卫摇伟死值新省戈。(

又谚语:

Pda Yaop dkma j aa` o YmaXge j c (Xj ` pda Xl paop Zde h  
j aa` o paXZde j c,! 规始弄胁好窗具似逝死夹碎拖服 (规始弄胁

聪苦窗夫庄似逝死夹碎较处。（

这些句中j aa` o后接的Camj` 都不能改为LXooera RkeZa, 也和s Xj p后接的Camj` 一样。

在s Xj p或是j aa` 后除接用Camj` 外, 还可以接用Ej hej qera, 这个Ej hej qera, 就不像动名词之限于自动, 它是自动被动都可以的。如果主语是人的话, 就可接自动或被动的不定词; 主语是物的话, 就只能接被动的不定词了。例如:

Da s Xj p p k Yqu X s XpZd, ! 婆死句摇悟币。（

Ukq s Xj p p k dXra ukqn p k p d k q p ! 拟敦爱拟窗雪差候日碍从。（

Kj a s Xj p p k Ya ranu ZXna b h e j d X j ` h e j c l k e e k j o, ! 吹礁戴丝死沙笨当懈。（

Da s Xj p p k Ya j k p d e a ` Y a l k r a d X j ` , ! 婆死遇随爬等听毋。（

? d e i n a j s Xj p p k Ya s d d l a ` , ! 深夫庄边打边成旅。（

E p s Xj p p k Ya d X j ` h a ` s e p d Z X r a , ! 卫死深懈吹礁。（

P d a i X Z d e j a s Xj p p k Ya n a l X e n a ` , ! 基旅死士礁（

P d a s X p Z d j a a ` o p k Ya s k q j ` q l , ! 币死绝介。（

P d e o o a j p a j Z a j a a ` o p k Ya a t l h X e j a ` , ! 卫伐活庄逝死夹碎集市。（

Ukq j a a ` p k a t l h X e j p d e o o a j p a j Z a , ! 拟寸爱卫伐活庄集市摇杀。（

P d e o Z d X l p a n j a a ` o p k Ya n a s n e p a j , ! 卫摇伟死值新省戈。（

英国的用法在s Xj p后可接名词、动名词或不定词, 如:

Da s Xj p X d k h e X u , ! 婆敦梅多函介。（

E p s Xj p o k i a ` k e j c , ! 卫陷某夹欧较窗杯死。（

Ukq s Xj p pk oaa X`kZpkn Xp kj Za, ! 拟死具伤梅咖咬  
难。 (

而在s Xj p和不定词之间又可再加上一个宾语，如：

Oda s Xj p i a pk ck s qd dan, ! 辱死认枪辱梅。 (

但美国话在s Xj p后可接用pdXp? hXqoa, 如：

Es Xj p pdXpda odkqh ck Xp kj Za, ! 认死婆具伤酒梅。 (

英国人说的zEs Xj pukq pk Zki a hknXi ki aj pà, 美国人却要  
说zEs Xj p hknukq pk Zki a hknXi ki aj pà, 意思同为z我要你来一  
下à。

## VIII 连 词

### 114. because、for、since、as

益文接称oj Za、Xo、lkn、YaZXqoa、j ks pɔXp第大看字z台犬à集（但边毋套法伤陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】这些都是表原因（ZXqoa）或理由（naXokj）的连词。在用法上各有不同，除lkn为对等连词外，其余都是不对等连词。在分量上，YaZXqoa最重，其次是oj Za，再次是Xo，至于lkn呢，则并不成其为原因，至多只是一种理由而已。在对话时用强硬的字眼，等于强硬的态度，是不客气的，所以用柔弱的字显得有礼貌些，与其说zE s dɛhZki a YaZXqoa ukq nanɲaopɛpà，不如说z; o ukq nanɲaopɛpE s dɛhZki a,à。

用YaZXqoa时应注意是否真正的原因，此字表示产生那种结果的必然有的因果关系。例如说，z天亮了，因为鸟在叫à，译成zPda`Xu YmaXgo YaZXqoa pɔa Yen`o Xma oj cɛj c,à就错了，因为鸟叫不是天亮的原因，要日出才能破晓，所以只能说，zPda`Xu YmaXgo YaZXqoa pɔa oqj ɛ nɔɛj c,à。鸟叫不过是天亮的结果，鸟之所以叫，其理由是天亮了，这种倒果为因的说法，英文只能用lkn，即是我们可以说zPda`Xu YmaXgo lkn pɔa Yen`o Xma oj cɛj c,à，决不可用YaZXqoa来译。

又YaZXqoa指的是道德的或自然的原因（i knXhknɩ duoɛZXhZXqoa），而lkn则指的是逻辑上的理由（lkceZXhmaXokj），请看下举两例：

Pda nran dXo nɔaj (YaZXqoa ɛpdXo nXej a` i qZd kbhXpa, ! 付朋怎介 (台犬计尖杀介投当窗通。 (! 推台 (

ɛpi qopdXra nXej a` i qZd kbhXpa (lkn pda nran ɔ ok d ɛd, ! 计尖摇兜杀介投当窗通 (台犬付朋怎寸卫维鹅。 (! 礁提 (

据LXhi an说, lkn一字在会话体 (Zkj ranoXpkj Xhopula) 中是不用的, 例如zPdau Xpa pdaen lkk` qj Zkkg a`, lkn pda qoa kbhmas Xo qj gj ks j, (他们茹毛饮血, 因为那时还不知道用火。) 这句话如果改为对话时, 则变成:

zS du` è pda u aXp pdaen lkk` qj Zkkg a`, à

z= aZXqoa pda qoa kbhmas Xo qj gj ks j, à

这句答案如果用lkn就是错误的。在回答s du的问题时, 一定要用YaZXqoa, 不可用lkn。又附属子句有必要说明原因时, 也是要用YaZXqoa的, 例如:

Da ɔ ` ɔXl l kɛj pa` YaZXqoa da ` è j kp cap pda l koɛpk j, ! 婆朵等失屈 (台犬婆茅陷寸等蓝伐群牺。 (

Da s dhoqZZaa` YaZXqoa da ɔ ZXl XYha Xo s alhXo Zkj b` aj p! 婆弄死成凡窗 (台犬婆田陷呢较田看十间。 (

如上面已说明过的, lkn表理由, YaZXqoa表原因, 所以用lkn时是说明前面所讲的话, 造句的方式常要把结果先说出来, 例如:

ɛp ɔ ckɛj c pk nXej (lkn pda YXnki apan ɔ bXhɛj c, ! 题死杀通介 (台犬满通国握在杀或。 (

ɛ j kpXYha pk Yacɛj pda s kng Xpkj Za (lkn EXi XYkqɛ pk opXnpkj Xfkqɛj au, ! 认边呢妨具伤绝示供字 (台犬认酒死肠登梅漏食介。 (

再比较下面二例:

Da ə Yalkra` kbXlhYaZXqoa da ə dkj aop! 婆台偿史犬  
大纪颇喜贵。(! 推台 (

Da i qopYa dkj aop (lkn da ə Yalkra` kbXlh! 婆摇兜弄  
妇偿史 (台犬大纪大喜贵婆。(! 礁提 (

至于oj Za通常是放在句首，对既知的事实表示一种理由，如：

Oj Za ukq oXu ok (Eoql l koa ə ə pma, ! 拟虎绕卫维  
披 (认泰卫弄章窗。(

Oj Za ukq Xma ckj c (Es dthXZZki l Xj u ukq, ! 拟虎绕死  
梅 (认酒两拟梅暗。(

Oj Za pda aXnpd ə nkqj ` (s du ` k s a j kp bXlhkth ! 唇  
猫虎弄圆窗 (认考犬年卡边会程破伤亮从杀梅郎， (

连词Xo通常也是放在句首的，有时可改用ok，放在原来的主句之  
前，比较：

; o EXi XYkqppk opXnpkj Xfkqnj au ( EodXlhj kpYa XY  
la pk Yacej pda s kng Yalkma Enapqnj, ! 台犬认酒死肠登梅漏食  
介 (在灰尖碎仑认边呢绝示蓝伐供字。(

EXi XYkqppk opXnpkj Xfkqnj au (ok EodXlhj kpYa XYl  
a pk Yacej pda s kng Yalkma Enapqnj, ! 认酒死肠登梅漏食介 (   
颇碎认灰尖碎仑认边呢绝示蓝伐供字。(

; o ə ə nXj ej c (Es dthj kpck kqp! 台通认边肠梅。(

Oda s Xo s alhl Xe` (Xo oda dX ` kj a pda s kng s alh  
! 台犬辱供字寸好 (颇碎狮法务鹅。(

Jks pXp和Xo差不多，通常放在句首，如：

Jks pXp ukq Xma XYec Yku (ukq i qopYadXra Yapan,  
! 拟善在算晴大介 (死许词交礼。(

Jks pXp da dXo l Xooa` deə at Xi ej Xpkj o (pdaupmaXp  
dei Yapan, ! 婆善在算教玖介 (婆考对婆好小介。(



## 115. because与否定

zE` è j ꞑck YaZXqoa Es Xo XhXè ,à卫活化 (认以字) z认茅陷梅 (台犬认慢。a町苦弄摇伐烦兜窗活庄 (犬年卡陷日田披弄竭兜 (史哈弄z梅介à (各弄z茅陷梅à 等春堂入喝以肠才对,

③集尺】英文的否定原有两种：一是单字的否定，名为Ol aZeXh JacX+ꞑkj，例如zOda ɵ qj dXl l u,à; 另一是文句的否定，名为Jat XhJacXꞑkj，例如zOda ɵj ꞑdXl l u,à。通常是没有什么大的意义上的差异的，如上举的两句都作z她不快乐à解，但是如果加上别的字的时候，意思就大不相同，比方说，在上例中加一个ranu进去，

Oda ɵ ranu qj dXl l u, ! 辱妇边纪渐。（

Oda ɵj ꞑranu dXl l u, ! 辱笔边她纪渐。（

关于这种文句中的否定，英文中文有时都不免含有肯定在内，例如：zE` kj ꞑꞑlēj g da s ɛhZki a,à。中文可译作：z我不认为他会来。à实际说：z我认为他不会来。à (Eꞑlēj g da s ɛhj kpZki a,) 又如zE` kj ꞑZki l hXj kbukqns kn` o, Yqpkbꞑda ꞑkj a ej s dɛZd ꞑl au s ana qꞑꞑara` , (9 EZki l hXj j kꞑkb, , , Yqpkb, , ,) à中文也可译作z我并不抱怨你说的话，而是抱怨你说那话时的声调à。当然，这个E` kj ꞑZki l hXj (否定)，实际是EZki l hXj (肯定)。在否定句中加上一个YaZXqoa的字样进去，问题更麻烦了。通常j kp, , , YaZXqoa 9 j kp, , , ꞑlkqcd; 例如：

Ukq odkqh` j kp` aol ɵa X i Xj YaZXqoa da ɵ l kn, ! 边死台笨日忙酒轻了婆。（

F kj ꞑYa rXj YaZXqoa ukq Xma ckk` hkkgj c, ! 边死台拟彻寸坡看酒势密鹿尖。（

这个YaZXqoa既作pdkqcd解，翻译时当不会译错，直译即可，即意译为z虽则他穷，你也不要轻蔑他àz虽则你长得漂亮，也不可有虚荣心à也未尝不可，但如果遇到不作pdkqcd解的YaZXqoa时，就得特别当心了，F, D, Dks a&=, Oi epd合著的LrbqpalbhAochod bknpla Eanpablpai (Kt bknì Qj eranoqu Lmaoo, /741) 第一部分上有这样一个例句：

Da`è j kp`k epYaZXqoa da s Xo XhnXè ,

解释说，这个句子包含两种可能的意义：（/）他没有做这个，理由是他怕；（0）他没有做这个，但不是因为他怕，而是别的原因。该书编者把两个意义，都解释为da`è j kp`k ep，我认为是没有说明白的，使读者还是不能彻底了解，我现在想拿问题中所提出的例句，用中、英文来详细解说一番，也许使人可以更加明白这一个表现法的含义了。

E`è j pck YaZXqoa Es Xo XhnXè ,

9! / (E`è j pck (Xj` pda maXokj s Xo baXn! 认慢颇碎  
认茅陷梅。（

9! 0 (Es aj p (Yqppda maXokj s Xo j kpbaXn! 认边弄台  
犬慢才梅窗。（

第一义是z没有去à，第二义是z去了à。这个句子根本就有这样两种相反的，即一个否定一个肯定的含义，当我们写出来的时候，可以在ck字后加上一个?ki i X来表示第一义，但在说话时，标点失去了作用，就只好靠字句的重音 (opmaoo Xj` ej pkj Xpkj) 来表示了。

## 116. though和although

益文窗XhnaX u摇婴（据披弄程Xlh- naX u道尖（但宜脾光套法大陷介町墨）XhnaX u犬富称（宜犬z算晴à: 道XlhnaX u犬什容称片童（宜犬z秋怕著抱好à（入zPdai aj sama XlhnaX u pk opXrp pdae nj at pfkY, ! 日考算秋怕著抱好（看绝示杀摇供字。（àzEp eo hœd pa` XhnaX u, ! 幢火算晴词看介。（à 枪维（Xhpd kqcd弄提Xlh- pdk qcd颇什成（但破同pd kqcd在宜它伤派秋怕摇维（边毋套法伤陷荣边枪,

③【集尺】Xhpd kqcd和pd kqcd都是连词，意思都当z虽则à解，彼此常可互相换用，但Bks lan在他的名著*I kearo Aochœd Qobca*一书上说：Xhpd kqcd用于（/）较正式的文章（lkni Xhopula）中，（0）文句的头上，（1）陈述不单是假定，而是既定的事实时。

；hpd kqcd通常认为是pd kqcd加强的形式，正好像ql kj是kj的加强形，qj pdh是pdh的加强形一样，但人们用时并不一定注意及此，常由个人的嗜好及口气而定取舍。大概说来，Xhpd kqcd是置于一句的头上，后接上一个子句，而pd kqcd则是用于跟在主句（l nej Zd XhZh Xqoa）后面的附句（`al aj `aj pZhXqoa）之首，即是为引导出一个附句而用的。

；hpd kqcd也好，pd kqcd也好，是不能和Yqp同用的（因为现代汉语，有z虽然x x但是x x à的表现法，每易误译为Xhpd kqcd , , , Yqp），但为Ai l dXœ起见，至多可接用uap（或opth j arandahao o）的字样，当然不加用这些字是最普通的句式。

；hpd kqcd比pd kqcd来得正式而语气也要重些，不及pd kqcd的通俗，不过在美国是不加辨别地随便用的，如*Jas Ukrg Paï ao Saagh u*某一期上就把Xhpd kqcd用了十一次（句首七次，句中四次），pd kqcd反而只用了一次。似乎近年好用Xhpd kqcd的人突然多起来了。

; **pdkqcd**所引导的子句，通常指事实而不指假设，如下面第一句里用**pdkqcd**，第二句里用**Xhpdkqcd**：

Da s kqh j kpYa qj dXl l u **pdkqcd** da s kqh dXra pk hr  
a **Xhkj** a, ! 婆规始边寸边降门坡旧（似边会边纪渐窗。）（

Da s Xo j kp qj dXl l u **Xhpdkqcd** da dX pk hr a **Xhkj** a,  
! 婆聘绕边寸边降门坡旧（派笔边货寸边纪渐。）（

下面两句也因同样的理由不可改为**Xhpdkqcd**：

Hap<sup>6</sup> opXnpXo XnnXj ca` **pdkqcd** epnXej ! 边套nXej o (pki  
knks , ! 苦题规哭杀通（认考似死摘遇兜肠登。）（

Pdkqcd arauYk` u` aoanp! 边套` aoanp (ukq (Es dhj k  
p! 规哭大纪大边礁拟（认似边会。）（

还有在**Xo pdkqcd**、**araj pdkqcd**、**ukqj c pdkqcd da** 等表现  
法中，是不能把**pdkqcd**改为**Xhpdkqcd**的。

此外，**pdkqcd**有时可作副词用，那也不能换用**Xhpdkqcd**的，  
如：

Da s dh l nkYXYhu Xcmaa: ukq j arangj ks (**pdkqcd**, ! 婆  
大钝会枪宜窗（边戈谁似边呢妹史毋传。）（

Da oXè da s kqh Zki a: da` è j **pdkqcd**, ! 婆推披死  
尖窗（边戈婆殖乡茅陷尖。）（

有时在文句中虽同是用的**pdkqcd**一字，但因章法不同，而语气有  
轻重之分，例如：

! X (**Pdkqcd** oda s Xo X Zdeh (pda XZpraoo s Xo ` nXs e  
j c X Zrks ` ,  
! Y (? deh **pdkqcd** oda s Xo (pda XZpraoo s Xo ` nXs ej c  
X Zrks ` ,  
! X (Pda Ykkg (**pdkqcd** ep<sup>6</sup> Xi Xoparl eaZa (e bXn brik  
i l kl qhXn,

	! Y (Pda Ykkg (i Xoparl eaZa pdkqcd ep eo (eo bXn bki l kl qhXn,
--	---

每组中的 (Y) 句都较 (X) 句语气为重, 注意 (Y) 句中的 **Zdeh** 和 **i Xoparl eaZa** 前面没有冠词。

## 117. though的误用

z聘望婆鄙介好鬼年（善在派秋怕好介a摇活（以成益文犬zPdkq  
+cd dXrej c Yaaj dhlknuaXno (da eo j ks nqepa s alhà。据披弄  
呆介（但边毋呆在喝吹（屈奢犬集披。

③【集尺】译文确是错误的，应将~~pdkqcd~~改为~~Xlpan~~或根本去掉，因为~~pdkqcd~~是一个连词（?kj fqj Zpkj），后面必须接上一个子句（?hXqoa），而~~Xlpan~~虽则也可作连词用，但主要是介词（Lnal koepkj）。例如说zEZXj j kp`k ep~~hga~~ da`kao，（我不能照他那样做。）a就是错误的，因为~~hga~~是介词，后面不能接子句，必须改成连词的Xo才行，如要保留介词的~~hga~~，就要把后面的子句da`kao，改为单字的dei：

EZXj j kp`k ep~~hga~~ dei ,  
EZXj j kp`k epXo da`kao,

由于同样的原因，问题中的句子，也应改正如下：

Pdkqcd da dXo Yaaj dhlknuaXno (da eo j ks nqepa s al  
h  
; ~~hpan~~dXrej c Yaaj dhlknuaXno (da eo j ks nqepa s alh  
DXrej c Yaaj dhlknuaXno (da eo j ks nqepa s alh

再看下面一例：

; ~~hpan~~Xlhi u ZXra! 9 ; ~~hpd~~kqcd Es Xo ok ZXrabq h ( (ep s  
Xo Ynkgaj ,! 认掉怖当懈（但破各弄敏介。（

句中~~Xlpan~~是介词，X~~hpd~~kqcd是连词。

## 118. after用作连词或介词

；hpan s Xlg ej c XYkqp Xj dkqn (s a Xnr a` Xp pda l hXZa,  
! 准介肠边当摇深什这挂 (认考修等蜡窗唇介。(活夕窗Xlpan摇  
婴 (等春弄接称郎各弄互称,

③【集尺】在上举文句中的Xlpan一字，最好把它看作是介词，s Xlg ej c为动名词。也像一个现在时的动词一样，一个现在时的单纯动名词 (Oei l ha Camj `) 也有现在、过去、未来三种时态的用法，例如：

EdXra j k ` kqYp kbukqn Ya ej c XYha pk ol aXg Aj chod s  
alh ! 9 EdXra j k ` kqYp pdXpukq Xma XYha pk ol aXg Aj chod  
s alh (! 善在什塔 (

Pda opq ` aj p s ara chX kb pda at Xi ej Xp kj Ya ej c kran,  
! 9 Pda opq ` aj p s ara chX pdXp pda at Xi ej Xp kj s Xo kra  
n, (! 戈梅什塔 (

EdXra j k ` kqYp kbukqn oq ZZaa ` ej c, ! 9 EdXra j k ` kq  
Yp pdXpukq s dhoq ZZaa ` , (! 确尖什塔 (

由此可知问题中的s Xlg ej c一字也是可以表过去的，我们应把它看作一个动名词，而不是现在分词。像Xlpan一般的这种介词的用法，我们还可以举出下面的种种例句来：

Kj Xnr ej c ej Hkj ` kj (Eoaj p dei X palacnXi , ! 摇等  
来敦认酒打介摇伐电鼻法婆。(

= alkra haXr ej c pda l hXZa (Ei aXj pk oaa Xlhpda oedpo  
s knpd oaej c, ! 降绝蓝句碎仑 (认打品死梅咖咖摇码值寸摇咖窗  
懂加。(

; hpan nɛj cɛj c! dXrɛj c mɛj c (pda Yalh (da rapɛa` ɛj p k r  
da odX a,! 斯戈介近 (婆酒躲等态吹梅介。 (

上面问题中提出的句子，还可以变成下面种种说法：

! / (; hpan dXrɛj c s Xlga` Xj dkqn (s a Xmrɛa` Xp pda  
l hXZa,

! 0 (; hpan Xj dkqn s Xlg (s a Xmrɛa` Xp pda l hXZa,

! 1 (; hpan s a dX s Xlga` Xj dkqn (s a Xmrɛa` Xp pda  
l hXZa,

上举 (/) (0) 句中的Xhpan为介词，(1) 句中的Xhpan为连词。

现在我们可以再进一步地来检讨一下另外两个相关的问题：

S dda opXuej c ɛj Hkj `kj (Ei X a pda XZmXej pXj Za kt  
I n, Pdkɪ Xo,! 当认在来敦什籍鸟介石具斯随难。 (

上例中的s dda是连词，opXuej c为现在分词。这是一种所谓省略的构造 (Ahd pZXh? kj opmZpkj )，在opXuej c的前面省略了Es Xo (主语和述语) 二字，实际仍然是一个完整的子句，所以s dda是连词。他例如：

S daj ckɛj c p k oZdkkh (da dX dɛ s XpZd opkhaj ,! 当婆  
梅伤许什 (币鞭桥准。 (

上例中的s daj 有人把它当作连词看待，实际是关系副词，具有连接两个子句的作用，在ckɛj c前省略了da s Xo二字，所以ckɛj c是现在分词，不是动名词。

学者必须注意这个附句中的z+ɛj c+hkri à, 到底是动名词呢还是现在分词，能够辨别这个，才能决定它前面的字是连词还是介词。这是第一个有关的问题。其次是z介词- 动名词à以代替分词构造 (zLnal , - Canɛj `à ɛj opaX kbLXnpZd la ? kj opmZpkj )。这种除极少数的 情形外 (如上举的z= alkra laXrɛj c pda l hXZa , , , à等例)，大都是 可以把介词略去，让动名词变成现在分词的：



=u dkh`ej c kj pk pda nkl a bəri hu (EZXi a oXba pk hXj` ,  
! 9 Dkh`ej c kj pk pda nkl a bəri hu (apZ, (! 金术显蓝工恼  
庄 (认啊怕等侈陆唇。 (

Ej ckej c`ksj pksj (Ei apXj kh bəaj` ,! 9 Ckej c`k  
sj pksj (apZ, (! 等诺夕懈漠松帽梅什 (认投等摇伐件疗  
友。 (

; bəandXrej c bəj əda` i us kng (Es aj ppk Ya` ,! 9 DXre  
j c bəj əda` i us kng (apZ, (! 谢秋事 (认酒梅睡介。 (

# 119. doubt后的连词用whether或是that

在`kqYp挂亮后伤庄活! ?hXqoa (什 (接称陷什套s daplan (陷什套pdXp (边毋陷荣封兜, 在错称故林称窗`kqYp情 (各陷什容称窗`kqYpda h (挂后庄活什 (弄烦大看套s daplan字接称,

③【集尺】基本原则是肯定句用s daplan、da s daj、s dXp等作连词, 否定句或疑问句就用pdXp、Yqp、YqppdXp作连词, 二者不可混乱。动词、名词、形容词, 都是一样, 例如:

/, 认格宿城事弄烦章妹。

$$\left( \begin{array}{l} E`kqYp \\ E\phi\omega`kqYpda h s daplan\phi\omega\mu q a, \\ Pdara\omega X`kqYp \end{array} \right) s daplan\phi\omega\mu q a,$$

0, 城事章妹荣宿。

$$\left( \begin{array}{l} E`kj\phi`kqYp \\ EdXra j k`kqYppdXp\phi\omega\mu q a, \\ Pdara\omega j k`kqYp \end{array} \right) pdXp\phi\omega\mu q a,$$

1, 谁会格宿城事弄烦章妹,

S dk`kqYp pdXp\phi\omega\mu q a,

拟呢格宿婆边会躺论,

?Xj ukq`kqYppdXpda s dhs ej ,

连词 $\text{pdXp}$ 有时略去， $\text{s daplan}$ 则应保留。在否定句的 $\text{j k`kqYp}$ 后面有时可再加 $\text{XYkqp\ep}$ 的字样，但不要意思一样，如：

$\text{Pdama \ep j k`kqYp XYkqp\ep pdXp da s \eths ej}$  , 9  $\text{Pdama \ep j k`kqYp pdXp da s \eths ej}$  ,

比厚)  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{E`kqYps daplanda s \ethZki a okkj} , \\ \text{! 认泰婆边会妇纪酒尖。 (} \\ \text{E`kqYps daplanda s \ethj kpZki a okkj} , \\ \text{! 认泰婆妇纪酒会尖。 (} \end{array} \right.$

作名词用的 $\text{kqYp}$ ，可说 $\text{X`kqYp}$ 或 $\text{j k`kqYp}$ ，如 $\text{zEdXra j k`kqYp XYkqp\ep}$ 都是用的单数，但无冠词或否定字时，则必须用复数，如 $\text{zEdXra `kqYp\ep XYkqp\ep}$ 。又 $\text{ej `kqYp}$ 一个片语，有 $\text{z怀疑}$ 或 $\text{z迷惑}$ 二解，如：

$\text{\ep s Xo op\ethj `kqYp}$ ! 蓝各弄陷宿问。(

$\text{EXi ej `kqYp s dXp Ekqcdp pk`k}$ ! 认边身寸死在维拔。(

这个动词 $\text{kqYp}$ 不作 $\text{z怀疑}$ 解，而用作 $\text{z恐怕}$ ( $\text{baXn}$ 、 $\text{Ya XlnXe`}$ )之意的，是古语的遗留，例如：

$\text{E`kqYps a Xra hXpa}$ ! 认考刻慢查介。(

$\text{E`kqYp da \ep X craXpan nXo ZXhpdXj sa gj ks}$ ! 认刻慢婆比认考颇毋传窗翻死币卑荣间。(

在用作 $\text{z恐怕}$ 解时，虽是肯定，后面也不要接用 $\text{s daplan}$ 的字样。

又 $\text{kqYp\ao}$ 一字现在只用作副词，很少用作形容词了。它的意思与 $\text{j k`kqYp}$ 同。例如：

$\text{EodXlh`kqYp\ao oaa ukq pki knrks}$ ! 苦题当巴会和等拟窗。(

Da ə`kqYpao mɔl aZpXYh, ! 婆妹弄看写黄窗。 (

FkqYpao ukq gj ks Yaop ! 拟摇兜毋传寸胁柠幢。 (

## 120. and和数目字

益文趣蜡婴窗对法（怖死夹摇伐Xj`进梅（林入z的你柔a对成br a Xj` ps aj pu: z的八柔a对成ps k dqj`na` Xj` bapu。卫伐Xj`窗套法（弄烦陷摇兜窗封望，屈系犬剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】说数目字加用Xj`，原则上是只加在dqj`na`一字后面的。英文虽有一个z千a字，但可说成多少z百a，英文没有z万a字，也没有z亿a字，但都可以用z百a来表示。凡是遇到英文的z百a字，后面就得加上Xj`，在几千的后面，可直接接上几百，但千数后如无百数，只有单位或十位的数字时，也得用上一个Xj`。例如：

05/ 9 ps k dqj`na` Xj` oaraj pu+kj a,  
1. 6 9 pdmaa dqj`na` Xj` aedp  
/10/ 9 kj a pdkqoXj` pdmaa dqj`na` Xj` ps aj pu+kj a,  
1. 40 9 pdmaa pdkqoXj` Xj` oet pu+ps k,  
4. . 3 9 oet pdkqoXj` Xj` bra,  
/0 (3/4 9 ps alra pdkqoXj` bra dqj`na` Xj` oet paaj ,  
571 (42/.350 9 oaraj dqj`na` Xj` j ej apu+pdmaa i dht  
kj (oet dqj`na` Xj` lknpu+kj a pdkqoXj` (bra dqj`na` X  
j` oaraj pu+ps k,

问题中提出的bra Xj` ps aj pu是比较古的表现法，现在的英文多改为ps aj pu+bra的说法了。

凡是十位数从0/，00，01，02，03，，，77，读成ps aj pu+kj a, ps aj pu+ps k, ps aj pu+pdmaa, ps aj pu+tkqn, ps aj pu+bra, ，，， j ej apu+j ej a, 在十位与单位数字之间，写时要加上一短横（dul da j）。

从/...到/777之间的数字，读时可以用十百代千，例如，/676可读成æcdpæaj dɔj`nə`Xj`j ej apu+æcdp. 又如公元/746年通常说j ej apæaj (dɔj`nə`Xj`) oet pu+æcdp, 当然也可以说kj a pdkq oXj`j ej a dɔj`nə`Xj` oet pu+æcdp.

英文的dɔj`nə`、pdkq oXj`、i dɪkɪj等字，作数字用时不可加〔o〕作成复数，除非把它当作名词用才可加〔o〕，比较下面的例句：

Oej cXl kra dXo ps ki dɪkɪj ej dXYeXj pɔ,  
 Oej cXl kra dXo ps ki dɪkɪj o kb ej dXYeXj pɔ,  
 Oej cXl kra dXo Xl kl qɪXpɪkj kb ps ki dɪkɪj ! o (,  
 PXes Xj dXo Xl kl qɪXpɪkj kb pæj i dɪkɪj ps k dɔj`nə` p  
 dkq oXj`,  
 ? d ej X dXo Xl kl qɪXpɪkj kboaraj dɔj`nə` i dɪkɪj ,  
 Jas Ukng ? epu Zkj pXej o oaraj i dɪkɪj l kl qɪXpɪkj ,  
 ; i kj cop pda æcdpi dɪkɪj Xna Xbas dɔj`nə` pks dki  
 pde`kao j kpXl l hu,

在英文数目字中所加用的Xj`，美国话常略去不用。

## 121. 中文连词“而”字的译法

夕文接称窗z道à婴陷什田套字汉荣宜它窗童闲（入z道算à故z算道à（田入z散你道角à第（在访以成益文什（对乡卫伐z道à婴（边毋堂入喝以法，

③【集尺】中文的z而à字不但使洋人却步，就是对中国人也很难学习的一个字。从前有位滥竽的启蒙老师，教小孩读《论语》，开卷便解释说：z学而第一的意思，是说你们读书第一要学的就是而字。à这笑话证明z而à字的难解和难学。z而à字用法变化莫测，含义复杂离奇。先说含义计有：

！ / （呼是） y y [披文] 单险） z道犬寄伤寄杀这小林（町这望寄伤犬厌（寄杀犬是。担随难外） 啲料曲化缠伤肠慰心这（杀晨慰心道。à

！ 0 （瑞） y y [子纯] ） z邮毋道荣忧似。à [邱晴] ） z道极道命。à

！ 1 （同） y y [伶庄] ） z扰删道边删（街碎恶骑伤。à

！ 2 （入） y y [怜庄] ） z道旧尾这官（保尾这庄。à

！ 3 （碎） y y [猪庄] ） z骑懂杨绕（翻看道万。à

！ 4 （呢） y y [歌波] ） z露当毋（道集城个边， à

！ 5 （望） y y [醒庄] ） z统在末道簿拉庙。à

！ 6 （田） y y [怜庄] ） z庄虎片道念这。à

！ 7 （篮） y y [论童] ） z道抹错敢而乡把旅。à

！ /. （绕） y y [论童] ） z骑犬日似绅掉道好帝伤慰先随。à

！ // （星） y y [论童] ） z算道算道（华这程严慰冲道！ à

以上这些除最后一个作z兮à字解的语助词外，都是不难翻译的。语助词或称虚字，是英文所没有的用法，翻译也就最难。据朱熹说，欧阳修为韩琦作《相州昼锦堂记》，开头两句原来做的是z仕宦至将相，富贵归故乡à，文稿送出后又追回来，改成z仕宦而至将相，富贵而归故乡à，才认为满意了。加z而à字，意义还是一样，作者为什么一定要加呢？这完全是声调问题，z仕宦至将相à五字全是仄声，念起来平板局促，毫无抑扬，加上一个z而à字，声调就大不相同了。z而à字还可用在主语和动词之间，如z匹夫而为百世师，一言而为天下法à等句，除了声调之外还有强意的作用。文中的这类虚字，是极难翻译的，与其译错，不如不译。美国的汉学家F n, S Xhpan Oei kj说z而à字在动词前作那动词的宾语用时，能表出更加正确的思想来。这简直是胡说八道。聪明的译者，都避免不译，如z三十而立à一句，FXi ao Hacc译作：

; p p l e n p u (E o p k k` b e n i ,

后来的; n p d q n S X h a u也另译成：

, ; p p l e n p u (E d X` l h X j p a` i u b a a p b e n i q l k j p d a c n k q j ,

孔子说的z辞达而已矣à句中z而已à一辞，通常译作zP d X p o X h à。但整句似不宜译作：zP k o X u s d X p u k q i a X j , P d X p o X h à。又有人译作zC a p p d a i a X j e j c X Z r k o o X j` p l a j o p k l , à。对z而已à不肯轻易放过，且看：

E j h X j c q X c a e p e o o e i l h u n a n q e a` p d X p e p Z k j r a u p d a i a X j e j c , ! H a c c a以（

E j k h e Z e X h o l a a Z d a o X h p d X p i X p a m o e p k c a p k j a o i a X j e j c p d n k q c d , ! S X h a u以（

E p e a j k q c d p d X p k j a o s k n` o a t l m a o o b q h u k j a o p d k q c d p ! S X r a以（

他们都没有把z而已à二字直译出来。



作为连词来用的z而ǎ字，就不难翻译了，例如：

深固创财（道认此颜。

El hXua` kj pda hqpa (boe DoeXk Dqj c oXj c pk ep

拟善在杯是梅（道杀成看晚尖。

Ukq i qopckj ks (Yqpukq i Xu Zki a XcXej ,

体坏道幢敢。

Pda kēhi qopYa kqp (hkn pda hXi l dXo ckj a kqp

婆妇聪苦（道婆窗看看派妇尤薄。

Da ə Zharan s darabo də oəpan ə hkhəd,

认掉掉登介表（道认各摘悔忙。

EdXra nai Xej a` l kkn (s dəda i uYnkpdandXo i X a Xt  
knpj a,

婆弄摇伐聪苦日（道仍边肯怖帝呆误。

Da ə Xs əa i Xj (oar anpdahao! 故 o ko a pda hao (故 b  
oe uap (da khpaj i Xgao i əpXgao,

婆握泰死套侯番入平蓝至深簿（道摇伐新窗类乔始婆浅杀尖  
介。

Da s Xo XYkqppk Zmqod pda l hXj ps əd də daah (s dao  
Xj as pdkqcdpi X a dei opkl ,

婆忙道握真。

Pdkqcd da ə l kkn (da ə dkj aop

## IX 介 词

122. “假期从明天开始”不可译作“The vacation begins from tomorrow.”

z函歧程苦题绝示。à

Pda rXZXpkj Yacj o bki pki kmks ,

卫维益以犬喝边对，披) zFn, S kj cδ Zkj oqhpXpkj `Xuo s éh  
Yacj bki jatpI kj `Xu, ! 王咬难杀止摇绝牙。(à 犬喝田看碎  
郎，

③【集尺】上举的例句确实是错的，应译作zPda rXZXpkj Yacj o  
pki k+mkks ,à才对。中国话的z从明天开始à句中的z从à字，英文有许多  
译法，或者不译，例如：

！ / （新许歧程死远绝示。

Pda j as pari Yacj o ∅ ; l nh

！ 0 （新许歧程死远柔揉绝示。

Pda j as pari Yacj o ko pda 3pd kb; l nh

！ 1 （膊会程鲸词绝示。

Pda paXl Xnpu Yacj o bpoet kZkZg,

！ 2 （较徒程摇伐日窗肠难绝示。

A`qZXpkj Yacj o s qd Xi Xj δ Yeml,

而上例z假期从明天开始à的z从à字就不要译出，因为它后面接的p ki knrks 是一个副词，而副词前是不用介词的。英文的介词bki，是指z某种行动开始的起点à，但用时常要把那种行动的终点一并说出来，例如：

EdXra Yaaj dthbki uaopan` Xu i knj ej c pthpde araj ej  
c,! 认程昨题早伤鹿等华题球伤摇真在难鄙。（

?kkhao s knj bki i knj ej c pkj edp! 既较程早谢等  
球。（

此外，bki 还可以用于z某种行为继续着而没有中断的时候à (s d  
aj pda XZpkj eo Zkj pj qkqo)。例如：

Da dXo Yaaj Yhj` bki Zdèi dkk`,! 婆程深酒森介束  
欢。（

EdXra gj ks j dèi bki XZdèi,! 程婆弄深夫庄什敢鹿认  
酒秘鸟婆。（

至于在问题中所提出的那种Yacej bki 的用法，是表示z某种行为不断反复的时候à (s daj pda XZpkj eo Zkj opXj phu nal aXpa`)  
的，例如：

E` nXs bqlhl Xu bki pda` Xpa kbXnrXh! 认程等午这揉  
鹿酒辙尽想怕狮。（

这表示支薪是每周或每月都有一次，经常反复做着的事。这不需要有起讫，单说一个起头即可，因为一时是找不出一个终点来的。

现在附带把bki 的类似字oj Za的用法，也来说明一下：oj Za是表示z继续到现在为止的事的起点à，作连词用时，后面常要接过去动词，例如：

Oj Za! 9 Bki pda pi a s daj (ukq s aj pkqppeo i kn  
j ej c (EdXra dX paj reoqkmo,! 装程拟华晨肠情等善在（认算  
后但戈你伐几日介。（

Ἐπεὶ κὺαχρὸ οἰ Ζα σ α λ Χρᾶ` ,! 笨尖算晴结年介。 (

## 123. from、since、for三个说时间的介词

在伤摇问夕集尺什陷摇礼活披) zEdXra gj ks j dei bñki XZ dehi ,à 虎绕套窗善在秋成什塔 (犬喝边套oj Za道死套bñki 郎,

③【集尺】不错，现在完成时态，是表示从过去到现在为止的状态，而oj Za也是用来指过去到现在的时间的起点 (pk i aXoqra pi a bñki Xl XnpZq lXnl kj pkbpi a gj pla l Xop)，在上举例句中似乎不用bñki 而用oj Za更为适合，不过语文是注重惯用法的，用zbñki - 普通名词à或zoj Za - 抽象名词à，正是惯用的说法，所以上例是不能把bñki 改为oj Za的，仍然要说：

EdXra gj ks j dei bñki XZdehi ,

不过也不是绝对的，如果要用oj Za的话，就说：

EdXra gj ks j dei oj Za deo Zdehi dkk` ,

意思还是一样。介词bñki 是表时间的起点的，除上举的bñki XZdehi 外，还可说bñki XYku、bñki kh aj pi ao及bñki (kj aə) Zdehi dkk` 等等，这些表达都可以和现在完成时态同用，但用过去时态也未尝不可，例如：

Pdau dXra Yaaj bñaj `o bñki ! 故oj Za (Zdehi dkk` ,! 婆考程幽什鹿酒成犬疗友介。(

Pdau dXra lkra` aXZd kpdan bñki plaen Zdehi dkk` ,! 婆考程幽什鹿酒线百介。(

Bñki XYku da s Xo lkj ` kb opq ` u, ! 程幽什鹿婆酒好许。(

Da s Xo opq` dkqo bki dæ Zdeh dkk`, ! 婆装怎烈规好  
许。 (

Bnki kh aj pi ao i aj dXra Yaaj i Xgej c qoa kbba,  
! 程菲若绝示日考酒摇真在套火。 (

英文的oj Za作介词用时还有:

EdXra Yaaj dama oj Za hq n kZkZg ! Bnè Xu (BaYmqXn  
u (/742 (ukqn hXopræp (apZ, (! 认程死词熄鹿酒在卫句。 (

这个oj Za的意思是z从那时以来à (` qnej c pda pi a oqYoamqaj pp  
k) 。有时也可以说:

EdXra Yaaj dama oj Za oet i kj plo Xck, ! 认程鲸伐远碎  
仑绝示酒在卫句。 (

如改说zEdXra Yaaj dama hkn oet i kj plo, (我到这里已经六个月  
了。) à, 当然更为常用, hkn是表示时间的期限。比较下面二例:

Pdama dXo Yaaj j k cnaXp hXleXj l Xej pan oj Za pda aedp  
aaj pl Zaj pqu, ! 程你八牛害碎挂 (宜大脚酒茅陷为大窗脬纪  
介。 (

Pdama dXo Yaaj j k cnaXp hXleXj l Xej pan hkn ps k dqj ` n  
a` uaXno, ! 宜大脚陷结八年茅陷不难为大窗脬纪介。 (

## 124. 介词的宾语

益文文法夕怖披互称窗宾童（宜规在互称挂亮死后林称（但入s  
epdkqp bXh第犬喝田看碎后错称郎，互称窗宾童窗林称情（各陷小年  
卡称类，

③【集尺】介词是用于名词之间的媒介语，所以有所谓介词的宾语，因为宾语必须是名词或名词同等语。在问题中举出的s epdkqp bXh一个成语中，那个bXh也是名词，不是动词，在古代造字不多，动词和名词，形容词和副词，常共用一字。

介词后面是不能用动词作宾语的，除动词外其他差不多都可以用，现将基本的名词及代名词放下不提，只就其他的词类分别举例如下：

(/) 形容词：

Ep eo bXn bki l kooeYha, ! 卫击边看呢。（

Da eo cəraj ql bkn` aX, ! 秘犬婆算司道放钱介骗守供字。（

Fkdj s Xo X oZdkkYku kb bXq npaaj uaXmo kh, ! 员跟弄摇伐你死凭窗许难。（

Pdama Xna pdmaa bəj a oedgaj pdmaX o kboet ej Zdao hXj c, ! 陷散工鲸益迟彻窗系私尚。（

(0) 分词：

Da nal knpa` bkn hXop! 故i eoəj c (, ! 鼻恶披婆算失状。（

Epkkg ep lkn cnXj pa` pdXp da s kqh` bqlhhd eo l nki ea,  
! 认秘犬婆当绕会简员窗。(

EZkj oe` an pda l nkYhai Xo oapda` ,! 认碎犬蓝问弃算睛集  
祸介。(

(1) 副词:

Bnki s dama odXlhs a opXnpXj` ql pk s dama odXlhs a c  
k, ! 认考死程喝吹错那(等喝吹梅, (

他如 bnki dama (pdana)、bnki XYnkX、bnki j ks (pda  
j)、pjhj ks (pdaj)、lkn lkj c、Yu bXn等都是。

(2) 动名词:

Da ZXi a j aXnYaej c gda` ,! 婆鬼候鞭念司。(

E` kj pbaahga hXqcd ej c pk` Xu, ! 华揉认边泰审。(

Da oqZZaa` a` ej oklr ej c pda l nkYhai ,! 婆爱蓝问弃集祸  
介。(

(3) 不定词:

Da s Xo XYkqppk opXnp, ! 婆食黑肠登。(

Jkpd ej c nai Xej o Yqppk` ea, ! 窗司荣婆拔法。(

Da j aran` e` Xj upd ej c YqpmaX` j as ol Xl amo, ! 婆悟管  
咖鼻(年卡大边谢)。(

(4) 介词片语:

Ukqj c hX` eao kb bnki oet paaj pk ps aj pu+oet uaXmo kbXc  
a, y y F eZgaj o! 程你鲸凭等的你鲸凭窗年轻纺鸟。(

他如 bnki qj` an pda pXYla、bnki Yadej` pda ZqnpXej、bnki  
kbbkh、oj Za Ya+tkma pda s Xn、lkn XYkra (kran) ps k uaXmo等皆  
是。



(5) 子句:

Da`~~da~~mo bki qo ej pɔXpda`~~o~~gao i kopcXi ao,! ej  
pɔXp9 ej pda bkihs ej c bZp pɔXp (! 婆番认考边枪窗唇对弄婆  
对乡奇听替岁大边喜贵。 (

ɛ pɔXpda o dɔh ( da baah qj XYha pk`k ep! ej pɔXp9 Y  
aZXqoa (! 婆台犬难鄙 (婆货寸边呢字城。 (

ɛ s dɔh`k at Zal p pɔXp ep o pkk hkj c,! 卫伐看碎套 (酒弄  
某彻摇词。 (

Jat pZki ao pda nqaopekj kbs dXp ukq s Xj p ep bkn! 杀  
亮窗问弃酒弄拟死卫伐谢年卡, (

## 125. except和excepting的分别

益文窗 at Zal p副 at Zal pǝ c 结婴大弄互称（边毋套法伤陷喝边枪，田在 at Zal p这挂（陷什死晚夹摇伐 kn 婴（陷什边死（边毋陷喝封兜，

③【集尺】作介词用的 at Zal p，比介词 Yqp 的意味较强，更为积极，例如：

Aranukj a ɵ naX u at Zal p ukq, ! 大纪大著抱好介（悟第拟。（

Da s knɡo aranu` Xu at Zal p Oqj` Xu, ! 窗交把题碎情（婆利题大死供字。（

此字作介词用时，后面不但可接名词或代名词，而且可接介词或副词，例如：

Da dXo Xls Xuo Yaaj ɛj ckk` daXhpɔl at Zal p ɛj pɔla l Xoɣ bas` Xuo, ! 婆摇想大弄妇河极窗（悟陷卫鬼题陷词边熟服。（

Da dXo Xls Xuo Yaaj ɛj ckk` daXhpɔl at Zal p mɛpa naZaj pu, ! 婆窗介胁计鬼题这情（摇想大弄妇河极窗。（

又可接用 pɔlXp 及 s daj 等引导的子句，如：

Da dXo Xls Xuo Yaaj ɛj ckk` daXhpɔl at Zal p pɔlXp da dXo dX` XohɛdpɔdaX XZda ɛj pɔla l Xoɣ bas` Xuo, ! 婆窗介戈梅鬼题旧犬陷词乔敲碎情（摇想大弄妇河极窗。（

Da dXo Xls Xuo Yaaj ɛj ckk` daXhpɔl at Zal p s daj da dX` XohɛdpɔdaX XZda, ! 婆窗介旧犬陷词乔敲窗什敢碎情（摇想大弄妇河极窗。（

有时在at Zal p后还可以接不定词，如：

Da Zkqhì `k hppa at Zal ps n̄pa, ! 婆窗介省碎情（年卡大边食。（在`k挂闹旧介pk s n̄pa窗pk（卫副zE` è j kpd̄ej c Yqpc k dki a, a窗曲什摇维。

至于at Zal p与at Zal p bkn在用法上的区别，有人说否定句用单独的at Zal p，肯定句则用at Zal p bkn，不过同一含义若将否定字换去，而改用别的说法时，也就算是肯定了，例如：

Oda dXo j kpd̄ej c kj at Zal p X = eḡej eoq̄ep ! 辱窗介散词士逃诸碎情（年卡似茅陷潮。（

Oda eo j Xga` at Zal p bkn X = eḡej eoq̄ep ! 辱窗介散词士逃诸碎情弄率汽窗。（

Da dXo j k Zkpd̄ej c at Zal p X lkej +Zkpd̄, ! 婆窗介摇伐全灰情茅陷潮俗服。（

Da eo j Xga` at Zal p bkn X lkej +Zkpd̄, ! 婆窗介摇伐全灰情弄率汽窗。（

Pdeo Ykkg dXo j k Yh̄uj `amo at Zal p X bas i eo pXgao, ! 卫剥邱窗介摇词深呆这情茅陷大呆。（

Pdeo Ykkg eo ej paraop̄ej c at Zal p bkn X bas Yh̄uj `amo, ! 卫剥邱窗介陷小呆误这情（弄妇陷诺兽窗。（

不过这种区别并不够分明，最显著的是：前后有相称的同类语时就用at Zal p，否则用at Zal p bkn，例如：

S a Zki a pk oZdkkharanu `Xu at Zal p Oqj `Xu, ! 认考窗石歧题情题题等神伤己。（活夕aranu `Xu同Oqj `Xu犬线糙窗枪类童。

Pdau Xl̄hs aj p̄plama at Zal pi a, ! 婆考大等蓝句梅介（悟陷认茅陷梅。（活夕p̄lau同i a犬线糙窗枪类童。

Elkkga` aranus dara at Zal p ej p̄da YXp̄dnkki , ! 窗域殴情认年卡唇对大咖戈介。（活夕aranus dara同ej p̄da YXp̄dnkki

犬线糙窗枪类童。

Hkij daX DehdXo j kpej c pk oaa at Zal p eo kh pai l hao, ! 施乔末窗菲恐情茅陷年卡看咖窗。(活夕j kpej c pk oaa同 eo kh pai l hao犬线糙窗枪类童(入顿披成zHkij daX DehdXo j kps knpd oaaej c at Zal plkn eo kh pai l hao, ! 施乔末窗菲恐情茅陷值寸咖窗。(à(活夕j kps knpd oaaej c同 eo kh pai l hao边线糙(掉枪类童(颇碎死套at Zal plkn

又如:

Pda`maoo eo maX u at Zal plkn pda Yqpkj o, ! 俗服怕谢好介(悟肠妈寂确洞。(活夕maX u同 pda Yqpkj o边线糙(掉枪类童。

Pda l qma s Xo ai l pu at Zal plkn oki a Zkl l amo, ! 伦百弄结窗(悟陷鬼伐墙报。(活夕ai l pu同 Zkl l amo边线糙(掉枪类童。

Ukqn Zki l koekj eo ranu ckk` at Zal plkn Xbas ol alhej ci eoXgao, ! 拟窗字文窗陷鬼伐婴密呆情(骑邮大妇好。(活夕ranu ckk`同 Xbas ol alhej ci eoXgao边线糙(掉枪类童。

凡用zat Zal plkn - 单字或片语à的句子, 都可以改为zat Zal ppxp - 子句à, 如:

Pdeo s eh`k at Zal plkn pda haj cpd, 9 Pdeo s eh`k at Zal ppxp eo pkk lkj c, ! 卫妇好(悟弄彻摇词。(

Ep eo nedpat Zal plkn pda ki eodkj kbpda XZZaj po, 9 Ep eo nedpat Zal ppxp pda XZZaj po Xra ki epa`, ! 窗介确被值太情(摇码大对。(

至于at Zal pj c一字, 则只用于句首, 或用于j kp s epdkqp Xh s Xuo字样之后, 如:

At Zal pj c deo okj (plau Xra Xhnedp ! 窗介婆盗庄碎情(婆考大另啊。(

At Zal pɛj c Oqj `Xuo pda opkrao Xra kl aj `Xehu, ! 窗石岐  
揉情（漠次利题大绝抗。（

; lhi u Ynkpdamo Xra i Xma` (j kpat Zal pɛj c pda ukqj c  
aop! 颇陷认窗兴掉大籍讳介（接胁深窗摇伐似弄。（

; lhi u Ynkpdamo Zki a dara aranu` Xu (Xis Xuo at Zal pɛj  
c pda ukqj caop! 颇陷认窗兴掉利题大尖卫句（窗介胁深窗摇伐  
碎情。（

## 126. government of the people是主格作用还是宾格作用

益文互称窗kb(字曲各套什(怖看登难结袭字套(规室各字套副  
宾各字套(入pda lkra kbCk`! 神百〔牛日〕(弄室各字套(Ck  
` ǝ lkra kbi Xj! 神百牛日(弄宾各字套(台仑慰Ck` 弄室各(挂  
慰i Xj 弄宾各。堪歌小抢紧竭窗林万) zCkranj i aj pkbpda l akl h  
a (Yu pda l akl ha Xj` lkn pda l akl ha, à. 活夕窗kbpda l akl ha等  
春弄室各字套郎(各弄宾各字套,

③【集尺】这是一个颇引起争执的问题，因为它可以解释为主格作用的z人民治理的à，也可解释为宾格作用的z治理人民的à。中国译作z民治、民有、民享à，当然是照主格作用翻译的，但林肯的原意似乎是用作宾格作用的。我们不妨找些文献来小心求证。美国的政治家兼演说家F Xj ǝhS aYopan (/560y /630) 在/61. 年所作的演说中，说有这样的话：

Pda l akl haǝ ckranj i aj p (i X a lkn pda l akl ha (i X a  
Yu pda l akl ha (Xj` Xj os anXYha pk pda l akl ha, ! 日民窗严  
度(弄犬日民鞋五窗(提日民鞋五窗(想日民断需窗。(

美国的神学家、传教师，主张废止奴隶的Pdak` kra LXrgan (/6  
/. y /64.) 在Pda Ci anǝbo ǝab(美国观念)中说：

; ` ai kZnXZu (y y pdXpǝ X ckranj i aj pkbXlhpda l ak  
l ha (Yu Xlhpda l ak+l ha (lkn Xlhpda l akl ha, , , ! 摇袭民室严  
汽(蓝酒弄提怕汽日民鞋五(犬怕汽日民服务(幢币怕汽日民窗  
严度。(

LXrgan在/632年及/636年曾经一再使用上述同样的语句，林肯曾把他第二次说教时所说的这句话，加以铅笔的标记，可能就是林肯

在/641年的*CappuoYqnu Ceeraoo*中所主张的这个字句的来源。

LXrgan的说教中又再进一步地解释z民主à时说：

Fai kZnXZu eo` enaZpoalbckrarj i aj p (kranXlhpda l ak l ha (YuXlhpda l akl ha (lknXlhpda l akl ha, ! 民室严汽弄提怕  
汽日民 (犬怕汽日民 (道抢之怕汽日民窗秋怕窗装之严度。(

从kran一字看来，应知z全体人民à是z被统治的à一点，LXrgan已经把它解释得很明白了。

*Pda Ci anabo'o Enaae* (《美国人的信条》) 的著者S elheXi P ulanLXca (/646y /720) 把ckrarj i aj p一字写成大写，使之由z政府à更进一步而具有z国家à的意义了：

EYahara ej pda Qj epa` OpXpao kb; i anZX Xo X Ckrarj i aj p kbpda l ak+l ha (Yu pda l akl ha (lkn pda l akl ha (s dko a fqopl ks amo Xra` anra` bki pda ckrarj a` : , , , ! 认线  
十堪脚架赋习歌弄摇伐日民窗歌纪 (提日民鞋五 (犬日民服务 (破窗握当窗没较尖装鞭抢之慰窗日民x x (

/7/6年2月1日美国众议院 (Dkqoa kbNal maoaj pXpraao) 曾经采用了LXca的说法，可见这是美国一般人所接受的对于kbpda l akl ha一语的解释。

林肯在/64/年5月2日对国会致词 (*Heodkbo'o I aaoobca pk Ekoc naoo eo Ol adabhOaooeko*) 时说：

; j` pde eoqa ai YnXZao i kma plXj pda bXpa kb pdaoa Qj epa` OpXpao, Ep l maoaj po pk pda s dklha bXi du kbi Xj pda nqaopkj s daplan X Zkj opqpkj Xhmal qYheZ kn` ai kZnXZu y y X Ckrarj i aj p kbpda l akl ha Yu pda oXi a l akl hay y ZX j knZXj j kpi Xej pXej epo pannaekneXhej pacnepu XcXej opqo ks j` ki aopeZ lka,

可见林肯本人对` ai kZnXZu所下的定义是zX Ckrarj i aj p kbpda l akl ha Yu pda oXi a l akl haà, 即是z一个人民自治的民主国à, 人

民是主，同时也是宾，以Yu表z主à，以kb表z宾à，是毫无疑义的。林肯故意还加上一个oXi a的字眼，以表示同一人民。

由以上各种文献看来，林肯说的kbɔda l akl la一语，还是应该解释为宾格作用才对。这也很合理，因为人民本身不能统治人民，实际统治人民的，是人民选举出来的几个代表呢。



## 127. dependent on和independent of

益文窗什容称故错称（荣论在维变化（挂亮后套窗互称（当弄该兜边变窗（但陷小竭兜婴同烦兜婴挂亮后窗互称怖陷边枪（入`al aj`aj pkj Xj ukj a副ej`al aj`aj pkbXj ukj a（边毋陷城变化窗（各陷小笨窗年卡婴（屈剪礼活披苦。

③【集尺】介词的用法是变幻莫测的，只能一字一字地加以记忆，实无通则可循。例如**hkhkb**和**nZd ej**；**pk paXZd Xj updej c pk Xj ukj a**和**pk ej opmqZpXj ukj a ej Xj updej c**之类，都是有一定的，不能任意改变；有些肯定字后面接的介词和同义的否定字后面接的介词，确有不同，现举若干例句如下，以资比较研究：

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{hmqe} \text{hly y ej Xj updej c} \\ \text{hmqe} \text{haooy y kbXj updej c} \end{array} \right.$$

?dej X eo hmqe hhej j Xpq nXhmaokqnZao,! 夕歌概乡题绕银拖。（

Pde eo Xj aj parl moa hmqe haoo kbl rkbp! 卫弄摇袭茅陷脚她窗事松。（

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{pk l amqX ay y kbXj updej c} \\ \text{pk` eoqX ay y bki Xj updej c} \end{array} \right.$$

EXi Xhi kopl amqX a` kbd eo dkj aopu,! 认鬼候线十婆弄偿史窗。（

Pdau` eoqX a` dei bki ckej c,! 婆考每桌婆边死仝万。（

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{oaj oeYhay y kbgj`j aoo} \\ \text{ej oaj oeYhay y pk gj`j aoo} \end{array} \right.$$

Da s Xo oaj oeYha kbukqngəj`j aoo,! 婆深犬朵失拟窗好宜。(

I Xno əj aran əj oaj oeYha pk pda chXj Za kbYaXqpu,! 益始好命。(

[Xhəj cy y tknoki apdəj c  
X`əhəgay y pk oki apdəj c

EdXra j k l XnpəZq bXn həj c tkn ZdkZkbXpa,! 认笔边沙笨百抽麻级较糖。(

Pdau dXra pXgaj X rəkləj p`əhəga pk dəi ,! 婆考掉怖损翻婆。(

[pk dkl ay y tknoki apdəj c  
pk`aol Xery y kboki apdəj c

; j as ol Xi andXo pk s əj pda Zkj bə aj Za kb pda naX əj c  
l qYhəZ Ya tkma əpZXj dkl a tknoqZZaoo,! 摇定鼻争死泰成凡(杯是随获寸对慰窗十泡。(

Da YacXj pk`aol Xen kboqZZaoo,! 婆绝示朵等成凡荣屈介。(

[pk fkej y y kj a pdəj c pk Xj kpdan  
pk`əofkej y y kj a pdəj c bki Xj kpdan

Da fkej a` dəi oalb pk pda kl l koəpa l Xnpu,! 婆夹入介蒂对道。(

Pdau`əofkej a` pda oəZg ZdeZgaj o bki pda daj ,! 婆考爱难鄙窗深冠番母冠罚绝。(

以上所举不过数例,而且也并非绝对用法,因肯定字后原接的介词到底是基本字,否定字后接的是变则,如əj oaj oeYha除接pk外仍可接kb,我们可说zDa ə əj oaj oeYha pk odXi a,à,也可以说zDa ə əj oaj oeYha kbodXi a(恬不知耻。)à。又`əhəga除pk外也仍可接bkn,我们既可以说zDa dXo X`əhəga pk YXj Xj Xo,à,也可以说zDa dXo X`əhəga tkn YXj Xj Xo,(他嫌恶香蕉。)à。

## 128. 被动语态后接用的介词

益文披 zPda nkki s Xo hcdpa` Yu alaZpneZepu, à 弄握妹窗 (犬  
年卡披 zPda nkki s Xo hcdpa` Yu alaZpneZ hcdpa` 酒呆介郎,

③【集尺】关于被动语态 (LXooera RkeZa) 是把主动的人或物改为动作的对象, 在主动者 (或行为者) 的前面加用一个 Yu 字为媒介而构成的。例如:

?khi Yqo` eoZkrama` ; i anZX, ! 丰来残登善堪戏。 (   
; i anZX s Xo` eoZkrama` Yu ?khi Yqo, ! 堪戏犬丰来残  
颇登善。 (

表示行为者或理由的这个 Yu 字, 并非固定不移的, 有时也可换用别的介词, 在古代英语中不用 Yu, 而用 bki 或 kb, 如 zDa eo Yalkra` kbXh (他为大家所爱戴。) à 一语, 便是古文的遗留, 到后来才改为 Yu 的, 在过渡时代的人甚至在同一句中用了 Yu 又用 kb, 如:

Pdau pdej g pldxpdkoa bXmo Xma s nkqcdpYu pda` areh (   
pdkqcd ej` aa` pdau Xma s nkqcdp kbCk`, y y = qj uXj ! 婆  
考碎犬蓝袭刻伙边啊窗曲什弄翻况份肠尖窗 (史哈派弄伤帝窗字  
犬。 (

在 Ya gj ks j 之后又以接 pk 字为普通的用法, 如:

Dks hki c dXo da gj ks j kbpde, S alh (eps Xo gj ks j p  
k dei pde i knj ej c aXnhu, y y DXn u! 婆毋传卫伐陷当净  
介, 啊 (酒在华题摇早。 (

; i Xj eo ej pi Xpa bmaej` o lkn uaXmo Xma khpaj nqepa qj g  
j ks j pk deo s da, ! 摇伐懒日当年窗好疗友 (怖怖婆窗她她大边

毋传。（

一般的原则是行为者用Yu，工具则要用s epd，如：

Pda YaXns Xo gɛla` Yu Xdqj pans epd Xcqj ,! 蓝式鞭摇  
可日套侵打司。（

不过行为者与工具之间的分别，有时也并不怎样明显，因为虽不是行为者的人，却有行为者的意味，如：

Da s Xo gɛla` Yu hɛdpj ɛj c,! 婆犬老电寻司。（

Pda Yqɛi ɛj c s Xo `aoprkua` Yu hɛra,! 蓝点庄犬火姆  
共。（

以上也可以说是z理由à，即因雷殛而死，因火而烧毁，不必一定看作某种被动的行为。问题中的zPda nkki s Xo hɛdpà` Yu alaZmɛZe pu,（房间由电照明。）à也可以视为房间大放光明的理由，至于zPda nkki s Xo hɛdpà` Yu alaZmɛZ hɛdpà一句，就应改成zPda nkki s Xo hɛdpà` s epd alaZmɛZ hɛdp,（房间用电灯照明。）à，因为电灯显然的是工具呢。他例如：

Də Zlkɛlao s ara okɛa` s epd i q` ,! 俗服马弄牢。（

Pda Yen` s Xo gɛla` s epd Xopkj a,! 套拾乔杀冷。（

Pda l XhZa ə oqmɛkj `a` s epd Xi kXp! 公官陷透府个  
孟。（

129. “Money cannot buy happiness.” 的被动语态

zI kj au ZXj j kpYqu dXl l ej aoo, à 摇童 (顿犬鞭错童塔什 (披  
zDXl l +ej aoo ZXj j kpYa YkqcdpYu i kj au, à 犬喝边对,

③【集尺】z金钱不能买到幸福à一句话，原是拟人化 (l amkj dēZXp dēkj) 的说法，我们只消仔细想一下，便会觉得这句话意思是不完全的，完全的说法应该是：z我们不能用金钱买到幸福。à (S a ZXj j kpYqu dXl l ej aoo s epd i kj au,) 再把这句英文变成被动语态时，便是 zDXl l ej aoo ZXj j kpYa Ykqcdps epd i kj au, à。问题中说的Yu i k j au, 当然是错的。

在被动语态中所用的介词，主要有Yu和s epd两个，Yu用于行为者或行为的主体 (; Zpra ; caj p) , s epd用于工具 (LXooera Fj opmji a j p) 。用于工具的动词，主动的形式或被动的形式都可以，如：

Də aj ai u gēla` dei s epd X os kn` , ! 婆窗大日套健杀司  
介婆。( ! 室错窗什士 (

Da s Xo gēla` s epd X os kn` , ! 婆司乡健杀 [规鞭健刺  
司] 。( ! 鞭错窗什士 (

行动的主体一般是人，但也有人以外的事物的，例如：

Pda opaXi +aj cēj a s Xo ej raj pa` Yu FXi ao S Xpp 9 FX  
i ao S Xpp ej raj pa` pda opaXi +aj cēj a, ! 讶前基弄瓦沙登苦  
窗。(

Pda Zepu s Xo` aopnkua` Yu Xj aXnpdmqXga, 9 ; j aXnpdm  
qXga` aopnkua` pda Zepu, ! 场诺共乡唇问。(

在行动的主体用Yu的原则下，却有一些例外，这是因动词（或形容词）的不同而来的：

Da ɔ gj ks j pk arauYk`u, 9 ArauYk`u gj ks o dei ,  
! 大纪大秘鸟婆。 (

Da s Xo oaeva` s epd Xj dhi aoo,! 婆难鄙介。 (

Pda dkqoa s Xo oqmkqj`a` s epd praao,! 点庄止全大弄  
佩拉。 (

Dan auao s ama bha` s epd paXmo,! 辱束夕产马将朋。 (

Da s Xo cnaXphu ej paraopa` ej pde s kng,! 婆对卫供举大  
朵兴诺。 (

Da s Xo`arkqra` kbX hkj c`nXckj , y y =XZkj ! 婆鞭摇  
添彻裤尸努。 (! 菲文 (

Da s Xo oaaj kbXlh pda Xl kopao,! 婆鞭颇陷窗抗切和  
等。 (! 菲文 (

Fè da oXu ok, Fə ranu gėj` kbdei pk oXu ok,! 婆卫  
维披戈论, 婆卫维披弄妇请码窗。 (! 卫dei 似弄币世食犬窗室  
汽窗 (规zDa ɔ gėj`, à (

现就Yu和s epd加以比较如下:

Pda dkqoa s Xo`aopkua` Yu bma, 9 Bema`aopkua` pda  
dkqoa,! 屋庄鞭火姆从介。 (! 活夕bma弄食犬窗室汽。 (

Pda dkqoa s Xo`aopkua` s epd bma, 9 Pdau`aopkua` p  
da dkqoa s epd bma,! 婆考套火姆从屋庄。 (! 活夕bma弄供  
举。 (

### 130. 作“用作”解的as与for

z卫裘遍届看套尖谢唇期。à访以犬益文什（虎看披zPdɔi Xpəne XhZXj Ya qoa` tkn X mɔc,à（似看披zPdɔi Xpəne XhZXj Ya qoa` Xo X mɔc,à 边毋互称Xo副tkn（在卫裘宜它杀窗套法（陷喝边枪，

③集尺】作z充任àz担任àz当作àz用作à（ej pda ZdXnXZpan kn ZXl XZɛp kb）解的Xo和tkn，并不都是可以通用的，除问题中的例句外，他如：

Pda nkki oarrao Xo! 故tkn (Xj kbeZa,! 卫点患善套字事务颇。（

Pdau Zdkoa dei Xo! 故tkn (pdaen haX an,! 婆考市婆犬尽袖。（

ɛp s Xo Yqɛp tkn! 故Xo (Xl haXoqra YkXp! 卫吵网字替厅这套。（

等句，是可以通用的，但下列各句便不可更换：

Da s knga` Xo Xj ej parl napan,! 婆弹泡听以。（

Pda XZpkn s dk Xl l aXra` Xo Nki ak s Xo dɔ ckk` bɛaj` ,! 笆竖罗们历窗竖退（弄婆窗好疗友。（

Oda s Xo maol aZpa` Xo X paXZdan,! 字犬摇林较能（辱输日写黄。（

Da s Xj pɔ Xl koɛpkj Xo paXZdan kb Aj chɔd,! 婆茅摇益文较能窗午群。（

注意：Xo后的名词若为官职或职位等，则不用冠词，他例如：

S dk s dhXZpXo ck+Yaps aaj , ! 谁谢历, (

Da dXo naŋj nqoda` deo l koepkj Xo i Xj Xcan, ! 婆放钱  
介睛礁窗群牺。(

但:

; o X paXZdan kbAj chod (da dXo j k anqXh, ! 字犬摇伐益  
文较退(荣日呢光。(

Da hrao Xo XoXej p, ! 婆胡那装好(陷入内切。(

; o! 9 S daj (X Yku (da qoa` pk` naXi XYkqppda l ko  
oeYda kbhuj c, ! 幽深什婆怖裸和婆钓鱼结夕窗看呢识。(

Pdau s ara okhì hknobXrao, ! 婆考鞭当字礼教肠洛。(

Oda s kj p` k hknX paXZdan, ! 辱谢较能边食。(

Epkgg deo opknu hknprqpd, ! 认爱婆窗化当章。(

Da s Xo pXgaj hknXol u, ! 婆鞭当字毫系。(

至于Xo和hkn, 在用法上的分别, 我们可以说, Xo是表示z资格à  
的, 而hkn则是表示z用途à的, 例如:

Da YaZXi a bXi kqo Xo Xs npan, ! 婆碎字纪窗银各成林  
介。(酒边呢披成hknXs npan(台犬卫弄死币世银各(道边弄币  
世套盛窗。

Da eo bXi kqo hkn deo haXnj ej c, ! 婆碎斑许中糙。(

Pdkoa Xma dkmao hkn nē ej c, ! 蓝小弄字气套窗具。(背弄  
币世套盛窗。

在Xo和hkn后不一定要接名词, 有时也可接形容词或分词。如:

? dehì naj hkgg ql kj i è` ha+Xca` l amkj o Xo nqepa khì ,  
! 夫庄考爱夕年日咖寸妇件。(

Pda ? dej aoa ZhXooeZo Xma macXn` a` Xo aooaj peXhpk pda  
i Xgej c kbXj a` q+ZXpa` i Xj , ! 夕歌窗睛此弄鞭咖字成犬摇伐



陷较眼窗日颇杯逝窗村撒。（

Də l qhə s Xo ok s aXg pɔXpɔda`kZpkn cXra dɛi qɪ lɪk  
n`aX ,! 婆窗倦搏蓝懊趣疲（咬难货寸算晴茅陷兼介。（

Egɪ ks lɪknZanpXej ,! 认妹史毋传。（

Epkkɪ ɛp lɪkn cnXj pə` pɔXpukq s kqɪh Zkɪ oaj p! 认纺秘  
犬拟弄会枪宜窗。（

### 131. 表示附带状况的with

z睜束睡货法à访以犬益文窗pda Xnpkbohaal ej c s epd kl aj aua  
o (犬年卡摇兜死顿握犬s epd kj aŋ auao kl aj , 屈酒卫袭套互称窗  
s epd尖币世队充香家窗披法 (剪礼集市摇杀。

③集尺】介词s epd可以表示一种状况，用来结合主句 (Lnj Zd Xh  
OpXpai aj p) 和随伴着的情形 (; ppaj ` Xj p? enZqi opXj Za) 。如我  
们把zDks s ama pdau mqj j ej c? (他们怎样跑的?) à一问，和其答  
案zPdau dX` plaen aXmo amaZp (他们竖起耳朵。) à结合为一，则成  
为：

Pdau s ama mqj j ej c s epd plaen aXmo amaZp ! 婆考弄娶鹿  
德发跑窗。 (

这种表附带状况的s epd，有时候可附带一个由z名词- 补语à构成的  
复合宾语 (? ki l lat KYfaZp) ，其中补语的内容可以是 (X) 形容  
词，(Y) 副词，(Z) 分词，或 ( ` ) 片语。现即依照这四类来分别  
举例说明：

用 (X) 形容词为补语的：

Oda s Xo hu j c ej Ya` s epd pda s ej ` ks kl aj , ! 辱打绝车  
庄其在持伤。 (

Fkj ɸ pXg s epd ukqni kqpd bqlh ! 边死在抽村撒抽寸马  
寄什披化。 (

用 (Y) 副词为补语的：

Oda kllks a` dancqe` a s epd dandaX ` ks j , ! 辱创想乔  
番想辱窗想处准。 (

S dXpX hkj ahu s knhì ep s dhYa s epd ukq Xs Xu, ! 拟死准介 (卫伐牛疾会变寸当卡冀摩呀。 (

用 (Z) 分词为补语的:

Oda hkgga` ej i u bXZa s epd paXmo opaxi ej c` ks j dan bXZa, ! 辱牛首想认 (热将该酷。 (

Da s Xo hɔpaj ej c pk pda i qoeZ s epd dɔ auao! dXlb (Zlk oa` , ! 婆 [巴] 宾想束欢在听太渐。 (

用 (˘) 片语为补语的:

Da s Xo opXj` ej c s epd Xl d a ej dɔ i kqpd, ! 婆寄句岁想孰答 (站在蓝句。 (

Pda` kc ohqj g Xs Xu s epd dɔ pXehYaps aaj dɔ haco, ! 方际想委案桥桥唇准绝介。 (

这种句法有时候可以将s epd略去, 便成为独立分词的构造了。如 zS epd j ɛdpZki ej c kj , s a opXnpa` bkn dki a, (夜幕下降, 我们就动身回家了。) à一句, 改说成为 zJ ɛdpZki ej c kj , s a opXnpa` bkn dki a, à的独立分词句, 意思还是一样。又如 (˘) 型第一例句, 也可简化为下列两种形式:

Da s Xo opXj` ej c (Xl d a ej dɔ i kqpd,

Da s Xo opXj` ej c (l d a ej i kqpd,

在这种用法的s epd后可接用带所有格的名词 (如s epd ukqni kqpd), 单独用的名词 (如s epd paXmo、s epd j ɛdp), 带冠词的名词 (如s epd pda s ej` ks 、s epd Xl d a), 或代名词 (如s epd ukq) 。

## 132. what with和what by

益文窗惯套活夕陷什在s dXp挂后s epd故弄后Yu（边毋堂在维访以（的慰陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】这种形式的s dXp是一个副词，含有l Xnpu（部分地）的意义，与s epd结合时表示z原因â，与Yu结合时则表示z手段â或z方法â。通常是在一句中重复地使用，但有时也可以把第二次要用的略去，于义无损，读者也明白是省略了的。

S dXps epd krans kng Xj`! s dXps epd (l kkni aXlo (od a YaZXi a ranu dh! 辱台戈烂（田抽寸边好（殖乡鄙得介。（

S dXps epd ckk` i a` eZXhZXna Xj`! s dXps epd (deo j X pñXhopraj cpd (da naZkrara` ranu mēZghu! 摇望台陷好窗咬丝摘肥（摇望台大婆装挤窗汽较妇琴（颇碎婆妇纪唇酒短推介。（

S dXps epd ZdXcrj Xj` s dXps epd YX` eap (oda bkqj` damalbna` qZa` pk Xogalapkj, ! 巴台懈夕般男（巴台异眼美低（辱货寸装挤盘寸边成日什介。（

S dXps epd deo opq` eao Xj` s dXps epd deo ol knpo (pla oZdkkhYku dXo j k pñ a halp bkn è ha pdkqcdpo, ! 巴碎凡己（巴碎湾错（始许难荣僧字怠荡窗泰法。（

Ej haoo pdXj Xi ej qpa pla opkni s Xo ql kj qoy y ej ha oo pdXj ps ki ej qpao pla ogus Xo aj pñahu kranZXopXj` s dXps epd plao Xj` pla` nrj c ol nXu epYaZXi a oq` aj hu ok` Xng pdXps a Zkqh j kp oaa aXZd kplanj pla hodej c YkXp ! 边等摇盯熄般懂通酒想认考散尖介y y 苹规日外别题（巴台好富（巴台剑朋（偷绕摇杀富拜寸始认考在游吵伤报城大咖边和日介。（

S dXpYu YneYao Xj ` s dXpYu at pknpekj o dai X ai kj a  
u,! 故提狗境 (故提剑坡 (婆登介表。 (

S dXpYu l khez u Xj ` s dXpYu bknZa da bej Xhu XZZki l heo  
da` dæ` aoecj,! 故提波旧 (故套般较 (婆殖乡秋成介婆窗态  
抹。 (

这个zS dXps epd , , , Xj ` s dXps epd , , , a有时可以换成zS dXp  
Yaps aaj , , , Xj ` , , , à, 例如:

S dXps epd ` nej g Xj ` s dXps epd bædp (da` è j kpgj k  
s i qZd XYkqp pda bXZpo, 9 S dXpYaps aaj ` nej g Xj ` bædp  
p (da` è j kpgj ks i qZd XYkqp pda bXZpo,! 巴台回幽 (巴台  
刻伙 (婆对乡事史窗章线颇毋边当。 (

133. There is something vulgar about him

zPdama ə oki apɔɛj c rɔlɥXn XYkqp dei ,ə摇活（堂入喝以法，影骑弄活夕XYkqp摇婴窗过它光套法（屈犬奢系披苦。

③【集尺】这句英文可译作z他有点俗气ə。句中的XYkqp有ɛj 或s ɔp d之意，中文可译成z在某人身上（边）ə。介词XYkqp的基本意义是z在周围ə，由这个意义而发展成为z在某人身边ə，再进而有z在某人身上ə。我们先将那基本意义举例来看：

Oda lɥkga` XYkqp dan ɛj oqnl nɔa, ! 辱尽艺唇个肥死止。（

Da dX XZki lɥnpən XYkqp dɔj aZg, ! 婆在幻伤全孟想摇添军尚五窗全户。（

Da l lɥj pa` pmao XYkqp pda dkqoa, ! 婆袭佩乡屋窗死止。（

进一步而用于z在某人身边ə的意义：

E` kj ɔp dXra Xj u ZdXj ca XYkqp! 9 s ɔp d (i a, ! 认那卑茅陷摇盯零伦。（

Pdɔ ə Xlhda dX XYkqp dei , ! 卫弄婆颇充想窗怕便表务。（

由这种有形的周遭（身边），再进而用于无形的方面（身上），而发展成下面的说法：

Pdama ə oki apɔɛj c j kYla XYkqp dei , ! 婆陷词鹅告窗气钝。（

Pdara ɒ oki apdeɟ c XYkqpdei pɔXp` ɔl ɬXoao i a,! 婆  
陷词年卡唇对始认妇边喜贵婆。(

介词XYkqp还有一个与此相似的意思：z四处az遍于à (ɟ rXnɛkqo  
l ɬZao ɟ knkj )，不可与此混同。

Pdara Xna è ɬa i aj opXj` ɟ c XYkqp pɔla opnaap Zknj amo,  
! 陷小替怕好山窗日站在乎教伤。(

Da s aj p Yaccɟ c XYkqp pɔla pks j ,! 婆在场句等吹乞  
念。(

### 134. listen to、listen for、listen in的分别

在I XqcdXi 窗KbDqi bo Bkoebca摇邱纯死伟夕陷外) zI n  
o, ?Xrau gj ks ej c Yu s dXppnXej pdaus ama Zki ej c (s Xepa` ej  
pda` nXs ej c+nkki Xj` hopaj a` lkn pda ZheZg kb pda cXpa, S da  
j oda daXn` epoda sa j ppk pda` kkn,à. 听怖在hopaj 挂大弄后p  
k (犬年卡在城后lkn (的慰陷喝边枪,

③【集尺】在自动词hopaj 后接的介词最普通的是pk, 此外还可以接lkn, 也可以接ej。我们收听广播, 或窃听别人讲话(尤其是在电话中), 就说hopaj ej, 如:

S daj EZXha` kj dei da s Xo hopaj ej c ej kj pda nX ek,  
! 当认梅咖婆什(婆握在听丰部。(

S a s ara hopaj ej c ej pk pda Lni a I ej eopan ol aaZd,  
! 认考握在爬太基旁听小礁窗丰部竖披。(

Ehga pk hopaj ej pk oui l dkj eao Xj` ZdXi Yan i qoeZ  
! kj pda nX ek (,! 认百爬听交太渐副殴旅渐。(

唯有hopaj pk和hopaj lkn这两个说法, 意思近似, 要注意加以分辨, 以免用错。hopaj lkn含有z期待à的感觉, hopaj pk则无此意, 而只是对已存在的声音倾耳去听而已。说hopaj pk pda lkkppal o是对已经发生的脚步声倾耳去听, 而hopaj lkn pda lkkppal o则是还未听到任何足音, 只是期待着而用心在听。又hopaj pk除通常作z倾听à解外, 还另有z听从à服膺à的意思, 如: z; i Xj kbZdXnXZpan Xls Xuo hopaj o pk naXokj kj XlhkZZXoekj o, (一个有品格的人在任何场合都是服从理性的。)à

兹再就这两种说法举例如下:



Ɔp eo Xi kpdan s dk Xls Xuo hɔpaj o bkn X YXYuɔ Znu, ! 什  
什刻刻大在险宜叹夫记声窗酒弄母请。 (

LhaXoa hɔpaj ZXraɪq lhu bkn pda paɦal dkj a Yalhs dda ɛ  
q1 opXeo, ! 当认等精伤梅介窗什敢 (屈拟险宜听想电化。 (

Da gal p opɦ (hɔpaj ej c bkn Xj u i kma j kɔa pk Zki a,  
! 婆拜唱荒凌 (套懈在听弄边弄会晚登肠年卡声太。 (

Ɔp eo Xi Xppan kbZkq ma pɔXpukq odkqɦ hɔpaj pk pda ɦa  
Zpq ma kbukq n paXZdan, ! 当绕在已殴句拟堂敦套懈听伙。 (

Ukq i qop hɔpaj pk pda oqccaopkj o kbs eo` ki , ! 拟杯是  
求德尖听希慰这万。 (

Da s kj ɔp hɔpaj pk i a, ! 婆边死听认披窗。 (

Hɔpaj pk pda X rɛZa kbukq n bXpdan Xj ` i kpdan, ! 听该  
母窗化。 (

在hɔpaj pk的后面接指人的词和不定词, 不过通常那不定词的pk  
不要, 如:

Da hɔpaj a` pk qo pXlg, ! 婆听介认考窗台化。 (

Oda ɦga` pk hɔpaj pk Zdeɦ naj pXlg, ! 辱百听夫庄考台  
化。 (

在上二句中都不说pk pXlg, 凡是用无pk的不定词の場合, 多半都  
可以用现在分词, 即:

Da hɔpaj a` pk qo pXlg ej c, ! 认掌握在台化什婆在旁荒  
听。 (

这个不定词的pXlg或现在分词的pXlg ej c, 也可以说成名词的pXh  
g, 即:

Da hɔpaj a` pk kq n pXlg, ! 婆听介认考窗台化。 (但边看碎  
披ZDa ɦo+ɔaj a` pk kq n pXlg ej c, ɦ

135. as against、as by、as concerning、as from、as of

Oei akj Lkppan在婆中窗KqnHbocqbca夕披 (zOqZd hXj cqXc a s Xo ZanpXej hu albaZpra ej deo` Xu s daj da dah hXrca Zkj cn acXpkj o Xo Yu X ol alhà。 屈披苦Xo Yu (碎光骑婆Xo XcXej op X o Zkj Zarj ej c、Xo brki、Xo kb第第窗套法。

③集尺】这些都可以把它看作Cnrkql +l nal koepkj的一种，因为是在介词Xo后再接用另外一个介词的缘故。这是用Xo来限制后接的另一介词的意义。兹分别例解如下：

(/) Xo XcXej op (对比则为)：

Pda Yqoj aoo` kj a pde uaXnXi kqj po pk paj pdkqoXj` `khXmo Xo XcXej op aedp pdkqoXj` `khXmo hXop uaXn! 华年难宜窗小趣犬摇泗元 (梅年望犬八拿元。(

(0) Xo Yu (如由)：

Pdkqcd pda CdkopoXpl anbaZphu i kpkj laoo (epo dXen (Xj` ogerpo (Xj` pXoalao (s ara opdhXcepXpa` Xo Yu pda dkr rXl kqn brki Xj kraj, y y F eZgaj o! 聘望蓝风薪想摇错似边错 (看弄破窗乔登 (俗研 (碎光室洞 (仍绕好像弄鞭哥宽夕登肠窗热前颇关错四窗边点唇在斯巴想。(

(1) Xo Zkj Zarj ej c 9 Xo pkqZdej c (关于)：

; o pkqZdej c pda oqYfaZp kbkqn Zkj ranoXpkj (Eodkqh hga pk gaal X oaZnap! 吩乡认考台化窗旅客 (认泰允排门们。(

; o Zkj Zarj ej c pdaenrapma` Xhks Xj Za (pdau Xma nXpda  
Xj tekqo XYkqpeq! 吩乡婆考窗勤示花 (婆考弄妇吩格窗。 (

(2) Xo bki 9 (美) Xo kb (从x x 月开始或废止) (kj Xj`  
Xlpan) 主要用于法律、契约、公告等文件上:

Pda heYnXnu s ehYa kl aj pk pda l qYheZ Xo bki /3 I XrZ  
d (/746,! 投邱粉黑在摇恢鲸八年散远你柔揉鹿绝放。 (

(3) Xo kb (美) (在当时的):

pda Q, O, ? XYej apXo kbOal , / (/736! 在摇恢柔八年恢  
远摇揉当什窗堪歌旅发 (

Pda a` epkn dXo Ynkqcdp pda i XpanXhq1 pk` Xpa Xo kl  
I Xu (/746,! 笨惯爱银届暖成真等摇恢鲸八年柔远蓝什犬  
务。 (

又Xo kb9 (英) Xo bki (从x x 开始)。

136. know of him和 know him

益文窗投当错称看字婆错称套（枪什田看字装错称套（影骑弄  
夹互称kb道变成装错称套法窗沙笨当（屈酒zEgj ks dēi ,ā同zEgj k  
s kb dēi ,ā摇类时窗活庄（盯笨披苦。

③【集尺】这个介词kb和XYkqp相同，有z关于à（Zkj Zarj ej c）的意思，日常用得极多，如gj ks kb daXnkb mæX kb pXlg kb ol a Xg kb等，现在分别加以说明如下：

Egj ks dēi ,! 认秘鸟婆。（

Egj ks kb dēi ,! 认毋传婆。（

Egj ks kb dēi （kbZkqma: YqpE` kj ϕ gj ks dēi ,! 认  
当绕毋传婆（边戈认边秘鸟婆。（

第一句是z直接的，个人之间的相知à，第二句是z间接的，只在报纸上知道的à。第三句比较用法，分别更为显明。这样加上kb在动词后，使动作对宾语的直接性变得稀薄，而只有间接的作用了。

EnaX pda Ykkg,! 认对介蓝剥邱。（

EnaX kb pda Ykkg,! 认对等吩乡蓝剥邱窗互稍。（

其他的动词可加kb的，还有pmaXp, pmaXp kb, Xlɪks、Xlɪks kb, X`i ϕ, X i ϕ kb, lani ϕ, lani ϕ kb, `eol koa、`eol koa kb, Xl l nkra、Xl l nkra kb, nai ai Yan、nai ai Yan kb等，不过加kb的时候，使用范围较窄，多具文言的色彩，有的甚至带有古风，除在美国或方言中已少见了。例如X i ϕ通常是用作lap ej（许入）的意思：

Pdeo pZgapX i ϕo kj al amokj ,! 城龄悟著摇日入场。（

Kj hu pɒnaa dɔj `nə` opɔj `aj pɔ Xna X i ɛpa` aranu uaXn  
pk kqnoZdkkh! 认考许神利年悟爬散八许难。（

如改用X i ɛkb, 便成为文言了。在主语专限于事物, 不说人的时候, 现代英语中当然也可将之作为自动词用, 而含有z容许à之意, 例如:

? ɛZqi opXj Zao `k j kp X i ɛkb` abXu, ! 曲什边容投抽恩。（

ɛp` kao j kp X i ɛkb` kqYp! 城事边容宿盒。（

Pda skn` o X i ɛkbj k kpɒlani aXj ɛj c, ! 卫小婴茅陷骑婆窗宜它。（

Dan okj ɔ Zkj `qZp X i ɛpa` kbj k Xl klkcu, ! 辱盗庄窗食犬汉荣备集窗邮唇。（

他如pnaXp, pnaXp kb, l ani ɛp, l ani ɛp kb, Xlɪks、Xlɪks kb也可以同样地加以处理:

S dXpoqYfaZp` è da pnaXp ! 婆谢窗弄年卡弃蜡, （

Da `è j kp pnaXp pda oqYfaZp ranu bɔlɪu, ! 婆茅陷妇产盯唇论竖卫伐问弃。（

Pdɛ aooXu pnaXp kb pda l nkcmoo kbi a` ɛZXhmoaXnZd, ! 卫临文伟论竖咬许研竞窗进宾。（

至于zF` è ukq pXopa kbɛp, oi alɪkbɛp, baɪkbɛp` à的形式, 在英国已不用, 只在美国英语中存在。这个kb是所谓l Xnpɛp a zkbà, 含有zoki a kbà之意:

Da pXopa` ohu kb pda s ɛj a, ! 婆桥桥府介其旗回。（

? Xj ukq pXopa Xj upɛj c opɪXj ca ɛj pɛɔ okq1, ! 拟部等卫妻句亮陷词莫干窗兽传论, （

; i Xj pXopa kb` aXpɒ Yqpkj Za, ! 日悟呢司摇成。（

Da dXo pXopa` kboqZZaoo, ! 婆部等成凡窗向兽介。（

Pdau l Xnpkkg kqnpæqi l d,! 婆考盯态介认考窗胜脚。 (

Hapqo l XnpXga kbXi aXhYabmas a l Xnp! 仁认考在盯笨  
这仑摇枪抽摇测弟暗。 (

Pda paXZdan hkkg a` Xp Fkdj s kng Xj ` Xl l nkra` æ  
! 件能咖介员跟窗供字挂币世万投。 (

Dan bXpdan s dhj aran Xl l nkra kb dan i Xmuæj c oqZd X  
l kkni Xj ,! 辱该请祸边会万成辱假卫维摇伐忙日。 (

137. believe in a person和believe a person

益文看碎披Yahara Xl amkj (似看碎披Yahara ej Xl amkj  
j (边母的慰在宜它伤陷荣边枪,

③【集尺】这两种表现法在意义上是大不相同的,单说Yahara Xl amkj,意为相信某人说的话,至于在动词后加用介词ej,再接宾语的Yahara ej Xl amkj的意思,就是信赖其人,也就是信赖他的人格,所以我们可以把两种表现法同用在一句中:

EZXj Yahara dei (YqpEZXj j kpYahara ej dei, ! 认看  
碎线十骑万 (但认边呢十间骑日。 (

信教和信神都要用附有介词的表现法,如:

EYahara ej ?dmopXj epu, ! 认十瓜呆较。 (

Ukq odkqh Yahara ej Ck`, ! 拟堂十神。 (

在《圣经》中除Yahara ej Ck`外还说Yahara kj Ck`:

Faoqo oXè qj pk dan (EXi maqmaZpkj (Xj` pla lht  
a) da pXpYaharapd ej i a (plkqcd da sara` aX (uapodX  
lhda hra, y y Fkdo //) 03! 位演对辱披 (短古在认 (难灭似  
在认。十认窗日 (聘绕司介 (似杯短古。 (

; j` i Xj u Yahara` kj dei plara, y y Fkdo /. ) 20  
! 在蓝句十位演窗日酒当介。 (

另外一个类似的字mqop,也是一样,可说mqop mqopej、mqo  
pkj。我们所说的信神,是相信其存在的意思,我们说要相信冥冥之

中有神存在，然后才能Yahara ej Ck`。不怕鬼的人是不相信世界上有鬼的存在的。

Fk ukq Yahara ej cdkop, ! 拟线十陷风论, (

E` kj ~~ph~~ Yahara ej bqpma hda, ! 认边线十尖难窗披法。 (

由于相信其存在，进而相信其价值：

EYahara ej pde i apdk` kbpaxZdej c, ! 认货寸卫袭较清法弄陷价值窗。 (

Ukq ` kj ~~ph~~ i aXj pk oXu pXpukq Yahara ej Zdaenki Xj Zu, y y S di a) Hkre Cnpdq n Obrda'o Edai a! 拟铃掉弄披拟线十咖怕线论, (

S daj EXi dh (EYahara i kma ej ` eap pXj ej ` mqco, ! 当认难鄙窗什敢 (认线十同骑抽丝 (边入险宜意念。 (

Pdau Yahara ej pda l dekkokl du kbzAXp (` n j g (Xj ` Ya i annu (lkn pki k+nks sa ` ea, à! 婆考线十日难既递光什食渐窗讯许。 (

有时候这两种表现法几乎是同义的，如：

Enabqoa` pk Yahara pda arehmqi kqn, ! 认祸边线十蓝袭翻宜窗私万。 (

Enabqoa` pk Yahara ej pda arehmqi kqn, ! 枪伤 (



## 138. 介词的省略

z认尖卫盗陷柔年介。à以成益文什犬zEdXra Yaaj dara bkn b̄ra uaXmo,à。但田怖陷日披zEdXra Yaaj dara b̄ra uaXmo,à。黑互称旧梅窗副拜晴窗（结袭活庄边毋陷喝边枪，田（年卡互称看碎旧梅（年卡互称边呢旧梅（屈剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】；, O, Dknj Yu在*Edki b̄p̄d boe Ouop̄d̄p̄d Aoch̄od D̄d̄p̄ ekobru*上介词bkn第一条有关空间时间的解释项下说：在bkn p̄la l Xop oet s aago、bkn p̄la j at p̄p̄ma d kqmo、bkn i kra p̄d Xj kq n uaXmo等句中的bkn常被略去。又说zEdXraj p̄ Yaaj p̄lama bkn b̄ra uaXmo,à一句话，如果作zEp̄o b̄ra uaXmo oej Za Es Xo p̄lama l Xop（从我上次到那儿去过以来已经五年了。）à解时，则bkn不可略去，但如果表示为时没有五年，也许只有四年或三年，就可以把bkn略去，而说成zEdXraj p̄ Yaaj p̄lama b̄ra uaXmo,à。

至于说到什么介词可略，什么介词不能省略，也是有规则可循的。大体说来，总以不伤害词意为原则，所以凡是多少带点形式化，而音价又低的介词可以省略。在单纯介词中，常被略去的是用得最多的Xp̄ ej、kb kj、pk等字。在这一类介词中，如Xlpan和p̄h等，表示比较重要的意义，如省略时难免不引起误解，所以就保留了。此外，如XYkqp及XcXej op等复合介词，如Zkj Zarj ej c、`qnej c、l Xop at Zal p̄派生介词，以为加强语气而用的集群介词等，是绝对不能省略的。

此外由于省略介词，单留下一个名词作副词用，造成所谓副词的宾格（;`ranYeXh; ZZqoXpra），也是常见的，如（Xp）Xj ui ki a j p、（Xp p̄la）oXi a p̄i a、（Xp）b̄lhlaj cp̄d、（kj）Oqj `Xu等。从美国名作家中，这种例子，俯拾皆是：

Ep̄s Xo m̄q̄pa h̄cdpXj ` Xj ui ki aj pj ks p̄la oqj s kqh̄  
m̄oa, y y Dai ej c+s Xu! 题算晴妇看介（她水具伤酒死肠尖。（

=qpoXi a pi a (Pa` (ukq gj ks dks X ranpao at Xc  
canXpa, y y O, Has eo! 但枪什 (它敌 (拟毋传丰恶漠弄当卡际  
大窗。 (

Pdau dX YqpZda` pdaeni Xnhj kqpXj` ZXma` pdai l  
Xe bqlhahaj cpd XZnkoo ps kl hXj go, y y Dai ej cs Xu! 婆算爱  
蓝小深具紧听明介 (照添窗另放在结继拉报伤。 (

Ehck Xj u l hZa Xj u pi a ukq s eod, y y Dai ej cs Xu  
! 拟苹什泰等年卡唇对梅认大梅呀。 (

EhYa at pXj eZa pk J alhu Xp pda l eZj eZ Oqj` Xu, y y O,  
Has eo! 交把题梅四测什 (认会对行脚沙笨好窗。 (

还有一种所谓副词的属格 (;` ranYeXhCaj qpa), 也是由于省  
略介词而来的。例如不说Xpj eodp, 而说成j eodp, 与Xls Xuo、oki  
api ao同一源流, 在英国要在带点古文气味的文章中才有, 在美国却  
广泛地被采用着。这种语法是表示时的反复 (mal aXpa` pi a), 即  
说明次数之多。它大概就是古代表示副词属格的zoa, 今日便成为复  
数的符号了。有时在j eodp后再加上一句aranuj eodp, 无非是加强意  
思罢了。

Da s Xj pa` pk s kng j eodp (aranuj eodp, y y O, Has eo  
! 婆死球球供字 (利球大死。 (

E opq` u j eodp Xj` E s kng Xo X s Xqraoo ej pda` Xu  
ei a, y y Opaej +YaZg! 认死球伤对邱 (帮题酒梅谢怕招但。 (

F Xu pi ao s a l X` la` Xlhkran pda eohXj` ej pda ZXj ka,  
y y I Xng Ps Xej! 帮题认考小弄薪想带拉喜个的等吹划吵。 (

Da capo i X (ebukqfa paj i ej qpao hXpa (i knj ej co,  
y y A, NeZa! 入柜拟早伤查尖你盯熄 (婆酒死登块介。 (

Araj ej co oda s aj ps eod dandqoYXj` pk pda i kpekj l e  
Zpqmao, y y O, Has eo! 球伤辱小弄番辱未都摇传梅咖电因。 (

Es aj p kran pda ma Xpanj kkj o, y y Dai ej cs Xu! 利题杀  
肉认大等蓝句梅。 (

Hap6 ck kqp Xj` ck l hZao, y y P, S èi an! 认考肠梅  
暗（等摇小唇对梅屎。（

F kj p ukq s kmu XYkqp lkj c pèi ao, y y Opèj YaZg! 边  
死件弄盈括。（

### 139. at、in、of、on、to等省略的用例

屈酒惯怖闹旧互称Xp ej、kb kj、pk第婴窗套礼（盯类披苦摇杀。

③【集尺】介词是英文八大词类之一，在英文的表现法中占有极为重要的地位，它不是可有可无的，美国话中常把它省略，并不表示它不存在，如果是写作的话，就不应该省略。兹分别举例如下：

(/) 省略了Xp的：

S dXppai a s dhukq opXrp ! 拟喝什错那，（

I u s da pahal dkj ao i a oet kZkZg bki pda i kqj pXej ddkpahy y =, PXngej cpkj ! 认她她鲸词熄程末夕漏慕打电化尖法认。（

Ukq i qop bj` YkXn` Xj` nkki oki a l hXZa, y y EYe ! 拟杯是在年卡唇对找等念素这吹。（

美国口语中常爱用oki a l hXZa、aranu l hXZa、Xj u l hXZa、j k l hXZa来代替oki as dama、aranus dama、Xj us dama、j ks dama。单说oki a l hXZa，也不说Xpoki a l hXZa。

zEs Xj ppk ck oki as dama (às Xo deo Xj os an, Eps Xo pda oXi a Xj os an aXZd pxi a oda Xoga` dei , y y ? Xh s alhl z认死等年卡唇对梅 (à背弄婆窗灰尺。利成辱问 (婆大弄枪维窗灰尺。（

(0) 省略了ej 的：

Ukq `k epXlhukqnks j s Xu, y y Opaej YaZg ! 拟爱庭腿秋怕摘拟装挤窗宜脾残牺鹿尖。（

因为用了Xlh aranu、Xj u、pdXp等加强语气的字，而要略去介词，毋宁是当然的事，下例两种语法同时出现，是一个好的对照：

Pdama s Xo X` Xj Za Xppda Cakrca DXlharanu Pqao` Xu j  
ædp (Xj` pda i krj c+l æpmao aranu Brè Xu j ædp (Yqppd  
ama s Xo j k l hXZa pk ck` qnj c pda maopkbpda s aag, l Xru F  
Xj a s aj ppk pda l æpmao kj Brè Xu j ædpy y ? Xh s alhl 利  
止的窗球伤乔之前陷跳如（利止柔窗球伤陷电因（骑邮窗揉庄酒  
荣吹看梅介。具骄.战止柔球伤梅咖电因介。（

zFè l rappu s alhkqpS aop (` è j p ukq, àXoga` pda l kh  
Zai Xj , y y K, Daj nu! z拟在撒便份寸边呆暗，à蓝家偿问。（  
〔卫弄kqpj pda S aop这旧。〕

, , , YXZg kbukqj c ; i ao pda Jacrk s ki Xj Zma` odrnt  
u bki pda Zkrj an, y y S , F, A` i kj ` o! 程教落伤蓝富对窗  
必挂鹅声唇候肠尖。（〔卫弄j YXZg kb! 9 Yadj` （这旧。〕

Ep s Xo ckj c fqoppda s Xu da plkqcdp ep s kqlh , y y Da  
i ej cs Xu! 蓝握弄摘婆泰窗蓝维进食介。（

这种省略了介词所留下的名词，又可当连词用，是一个值得注目的近代英语的倾向：

zJah (ukq Xma s alZki a pk Zki a YXZg Xj u pi a ukq s  
Xj p pkà (oda Yacc+a` qj XodXi a` hu, y y ? Xh s alhl z行得  
斯（拟莘什鸵宜灰尖（认考大弄贵瞎窗。à辱感述荣初唇乞茅  
传。（

Pda hXqcdpan dX` æXl l aXma` bki dæ hXZa Xj` auao  
pda i ki aj p dæ hXqcdj c rkeZa ZaXoa` , y y Opa j YaZg! 婆  
窗审声摇浅（婆节伤窗审容酒消是介。（

zDXra ukq ckpX` ei a ej ukqn l kZgap pk ol Xma (okj , à  
da s deol ama` pk i a, zFhl Xu ep YXZg pk ukq pda hmp ZdXj Z  
a Ecapay y ? Xh s alhl z喂（拟那伤陷摇军伦即法认论，à婆系  
声唇问认。z认摇份等伦具伤酒各拟。à（

(1) 省略了kb的:

Ed pɫama j k hknZa kj pɫeə oè a pɫa Znaag, y y =eənzə  
! 在深溪窗卫卑茅陷讲旦论, (

Da l Xooa` pɫa Bkqnpɫ kbFqhu kj YkXn` pɫa MqXgan? ɛ  
u (ɛj i è ɬkZaXj, y y l Xng Ps Xɛj ! 婆在大国夕较友场题吵伤  
多戈堪歌歌驱揉。 (

l XuYa X Zkql ha uaXmo, y y ; hYanp l Xhpv ! 似投结散  
年。 (

Oda hɔppara` kqppɫa` kknXj` `ksj pɫa opXmo pk pɫa  
opmaap y y K, Daj nu! 辱乘乘跑肠抗梅 (准杀精气等乎伤梅  
介。 (

Oda s aj pkqpɛj pk pɫa cXn` aj Xj` hɔqj` pɫa odaXmo (Xj`  
pɫaj oda hɔkga` ɛj pɫa s ɛj`ks (ɛj pk pɫa hɛɛj c nkki ,  
y y Opaɛj YaZg! 辱准肠等庭新夕 (找等介镰楚 (绕挂程车寄屈  
介揉杀屋旅窗鹿旧毆。 (

这个ɛj pɫa s ɛj`ks 为ɛj pɫnkqcd pɫa s ɛj`ks 之略。美国话的e  
j, 常用来代替ɛj pɫnkqcd或ɛj pk的, 参看下列, 那是以ɛj 代ɛj pk  
的:

Da s Xo j arrkqo Xj` naopɫao s daj da ZXi a ɛj pɫa dk  
qoa, y y ? Xh s ahl 当婆灰等纪句窗什敢 (陷词神睛戈面道朵等  
边啊窗维庄。 (

(2) 省略了kj 的:

Edhoaa dei Oqj` Xu, y y =nkj baj Yna j an! 认在交把题  
会咖和婆。 (

Dama ; YnXdXi Hɛj Zkhj s Xo Yknj BaYmqXnu /Opɫ (/6.  
7, y y S, l , PdXuan! 摇八零恢年的远你的揉紧竭肠难乡  
城。 (

Pda` Xu kbdeə Zki ɛj c l Xfkma s Xo Xs Xga hɔj c Yalkma  
pɫa oqj nkoa, y y ? Xh s ahl 在婆尖窗蓝题 (据员脚在她水肠

尖好净碎仑酒鹿那介。（

(3) 省略了pk的:

Es eod EZkqh Ya i kma hga ukq, y y I eqZdah! 认息屈认  
呢翻像拟酒好介。（

KbZkqma (?khi Yqo pdkqcdppdXppla eohXj ` s Xo j a  
Xn pk E ` eX (Yqp ej bXZp ep s Xo j aXn pla ; i anZXj ?kj pj a  
j p! 当绕丰来残碎犬蓝的弄集计坦多 (但事史望弄集计堪戏大  
陆。（

Kl l koepa i a oXp X ukqj c s ki Xj , y y =eanZa! 在认对  
亮薪窗弄摇群年轻窗怕日。（

在j aXn hga、kl l koepa后略去了pk时,有人把它们看作MqXoe+  
l nal koepkj (疑似介词):

Epe j kps knpd Xl aj j u,! 边值摇文。（[s knpd pk! pla  
at paj pkb (Xl aj j u]

; `i eodkj Zkopo hpu Zaj p,! 入场龄价柔教。（[pk! pd  
a at paj pkb (hpu Zaj p]

# 140. “以上” “以下” “以前” “以后” “起” “讫” 等的译法

益文听怖套互称pk、 pth qj p第尖币世z等az犬务à: XYkra、 Y  
alks 尖币世z碎伤az碎杀à光Yalkra、 Xpan尖币世z碎仑az碎挂à第第（  
屈酒卫小同趣蜡陷吩窗币善法剪礼披苦摇杀。

③集尺】在普通谈话行文中不必怎样精确，可以随使用字来表达，但在商场中就非绝对正确不可，在通报时也不能使读者有丝毫疑惑，宁肯重复，必求明白确定，才不致发生误会。兹将各种可能情况举例如下：

结板故结白碎伤	\$0 (knkran
柔你打故柔你打碎伤	3. `kvaj knq1 ! s Xn` (
摇八强故摇八强碎伤	/.. `nqi o kni kra
柔八但故柔八但碎伤	3.. pkj o knXYkra
兜防八罗光碎伤	Xj kn` an kbj kp laoo pdXj .. cnkoo
程八盯这柔等八盯这你	3! q1 pk /.! Ykpd ej Zlq ra
八盯这柔碎伤等八盯这你	kran 3! q1 pk /.! ej Zlq ra! 边过3! (
八盯这散光碎伤窗策岛	j kp laoo pdXj 1! kran p Xi kqj p! 过1! (
八盯这散碎伤窗策岛	Xj u at Zaoo kran 1! : Xj u i kqj p kranXj ` XYk



八元故八元碎杀

在勿兜价故碎杀

利白边策戈柔教窗兜价

利柔八但光委趣

鲸远你揉碎仑

鲸远你揉碎挂

恢远摇揉碎或

程剥揉鹿

程你远摇揉鹿

你远的你揉务

散远摇揉鹿你柔揉务

程死远摇揉吸散你揉窗

歧患旅

/746年吸/75. 年这患

1! : X oqi at Zaa` ej c 1!

\$ /.. knhao

Xp kn Yalks pda l neZa j Xi`

Xp X l neZa j kpat Zaa` ej c :  
Zpo l anHY,

aranu 3.. pkj o kn bnXZpd  
pda nakb

kj kn Yalkma Fqj a /.

kj kn Xhpan Fqj a /.

bnki Xj` Xhpan Oal pai Y  
/

bnki Xj` ej Zhqoera pk` :  
! 故 pda` Xpa (

Xo bnki KZpkYan / ! Xo b  
i 9 kj Xj` Xhpan (

q1 pk Xj` ej Zhq` ej c KZpd  
anO.

Xo bnki pda /oppk pda /3:  
kbI XnZd ej Zhqoera! 故 bnk  
pda /oppk pda /3pd kbI X  
d Ykpd ej Zhqoera (

` qnej c pda l ank` Yacej j  
c kj ; l nh/

Xj` aj` ej c kj ; l nh1. (   
kpd` Xpao ej Zhqoera

hkn pda uaXmo /746 pk /75  
ej Zhqoera

程止摇等止死

hki I kj` Xu pk Pdqm`  
ej Zhqoera! 堪歌化望披hki  
I kj` Xu pdkqcd Pdqm`  
u (

大深程鲸汉可等你汉可

Xh oevao nXjcej c hki 4  
i ql pk Xj` ej Zhq`ej c ,  
i i

程的你公等的你柔公窗维领

ol aZei aj o kbJko, 0. pk (   
ej Zhqoera

程摇八零摇白等拿白碎杀

hki /. / l kqj` o pk qj`  
/... l kqj` o

的远的你揉当什窗

Xo kbBaYmqXnu 0.

柔远亏

XYkqp! 故 pks Xn` o (pda :  
` kbI Xu

柔远亏揉

Xp pda aj` kbI Xu! 9 kj  
Xu 1/ (

七远伤手

s ej pda hmp paj` Xuo  
Fqhu

七远夕手

s ej pda oaZkj`! 故i e`  
ha (paj` Xuo kbFqhu

七远杀手

s ej pda hXopaharaj` X  
kbFqhu

程登十揉品鹿! 边品登十揉 (   
窗柔揉患

hkn h`a` Xuo ej Zhqoera! at  
hqoera (kbpda` Xu kb` aol  
pZd

石歧揉窗情你柔揉患

hkn /3` Xuo at Zhqoera kbC  
j` Xuo

所谓Xo hki、Xo XcXej op、Xo Yaps aaj 等表现法，是法律中常用的，这个Xo是限制的，有无Xo，对意义上并无多大的差别。美国话

常以Xo kb用为Xo bki 的意思。

141. at the beginning和in the beginning

益文Xpɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c (田披ɛ ɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c (的慰在宜它伤陷喝边枪, 骑婆投当曲什 (Xp副ɛ 似大看套乡末小林称这仑 (入XpX s kn`、ɛ X s kn` (XpZkqnp ɛ Zkqnp (XpdXj`、ɛ dXj` (Xp l aXZa、ɛ l aXZa (Xp l hXu、ɛ l hXu (Xp oZdkkh ɛ oZdkkh (Xp s kng、ɛ s kng第 (屈披苦的慰窗过它。

③集尺】凡有关星期、年月、学期、季节等的开始, 就说Xpɔla Yacɛj tj ɛ c (9 Xpɔla opXnp), 如果是一件事情的开端, 或表起初之意, 便说ɛ ɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c (9 Xpɔmp)。

; pɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c kbɔla pari (kqn paxZdan X` naooa` qo ɛ Xj alkmaj pol aaZd, ! 在许歧绝示窗什敢 (件能碎入慌这普想认考披介妇当窗化。 (

Pda aj pXj Za atXi ɛ Xpɔkj lkn X i ɔoɔkj pk JXj uXj c Qj ɛramepu s ɛhpXga l hZa Xpɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c kb; l nh! 南谁大许窗入许教试黑在死远偿剪食。 (

; `ranYeXhl dnXoao Xma ai l dXoɛva` Yu Yaɛj c l hZa` Xpɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c kbX oaj paj Za, ! 富称片童牺乡活拍弄犬夹琴宜脾窗。 (

ɛ ɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c Ck` ZnaXpa` ɔla daXraj Xj` ɔla aXnp d, ! 鹿偿伤帝匙网介题唇。 (

Ukq s ɛhɔj` ɛpnXplan` ɛhZqhpɛ ɔla Yacɛj j ɛ c, ! 绝乔拟会货寸陷摇词烂。 (

同性质的aj`、i ɛ` la的用法也和Yacɛj j ɛ c是一样的, Xpɔla aj` 9 XpɔXop, 而ɛ ɔla aj` 9 XpɔanXlh ɔj Xlh。又, Xpɔla i ɛ`

`ha 9 Yaps aaj Yacɛj j ɛj c Xj ` aj `、dXhs Xu, 而ɛj pda i è `ha 9  
ɛj pda i è op, 例如:

; p pda aj ` kb pda pari s a odXhdXra Xj kpdan at Xi ɛj X  
pkj ,! 在许歧委认考各陷摇成教试。 (

ɛj pda aj ` da hkqj ` kqpXh pda oaZnap! 婆殖乡爱颇陷窗  
门们大登货介。 (

; p pda i è `ha kbFqhu (pda oZdkkhYmaXgo q1 ,! 七远巴  
放函。 (

ɛj pda i è `ha kb pda j ɛdpda s kga q1 Xj ` YacXj pk o  
dkqp! 婆在巴闻蚀尖大候。 (

EdXra khpaj Yaaj opkl l a` ɛj pda i è `ha kbX ol aaZd,  
y y Fks app! 在伙竖夕怖鞭桌务。 (

此外Xp和ɛj 在用法上是不同的, 由于后接的名词而发生不同的意义, 如在Xca一字前, Xp指年龄, ɛj 指时代, 例如Xp pda Xca kboara j pu (七十岁)、ɛj kh Xca (老年时代)。再看下例:

Oda Xoga` dei hknai l hkui aj pɛj dɛo khtza (Yqpda r  
abqoa` ɛpXpXs kni ,! 辱死等婆事务颇找摇定供字 (但婆摇活化  
酒婚击介。 (

ɛj Xs kni (pda u Xma pma` kboqj ` uɛj c,! 小道万这 (婆考  
对乡对邱朵等数或介。 (

Pda hK u ɛo oXè pk dXra oarra` XpZkqnpbkni Xj u uaXr  
o,! 蓝伐怕日据披在官跳夕斗午当年。 (

Pda i Xpan ɛo opthl aj ` ɛj c ɛj Zkqnp! 蓝事曲仍在法新备  
论夕。 (

; o pda at Xi ɛj Xpkj ɛo XpdXj ` (s a i qopopj ` u daXrp  
Xj ` okqh! 教试算计 (认考杯是密灭套凡。 (

Dɛo l nkl koXhdXo j k nabanaj Za pk pda oqYfaZp ɛj dXj ` ,  
! 婆窗套吸副认考握在杀论窗问弃荣吩。 (

S a Xra j ks Xpl aXZa s epd Xlhpdai j Xpdkj o kbpda s knh ,  
! 认考善在副牛疾更民些副另线吹。 (

Ebukq odks gē ` j aoo pk pdai Xlh (ukq s dhYa XYla pk l  
era ē l aXZa, ! 拟副婆考大纪币世请删摇词 (拟酒看碎副另啊渐  
唇戈古。 (

Pda Ykuo Xj ` cenho ukq s Xj ppk oaa Xra Xpl hXu ē pdai l  
Xng, ! 拟死咖窗懒怕夫庄考大在返腿句屎。 (

LhaXoa ` kj ppXga epdh (Xo EoXē epē l hXu, ! 屈拟边死和  
干 (认弄绝屎审窗。 (

Pdkoa Ykuo Xra j ks XpoZdkkh! 蓝小许难握在伤己。 (

PdXp ukqj c baliks eo opdhē oZdkkh! 蓝伐秋年仍在对  
邱。 (

Da eo Xps kng ē pdai khaZa fqopj ks, ! 婆善握在事务颇供  
字。 (

Pda i Xfknepu kbpda s kngano Xra opdhē s kng (Yqpoki  
a kbpalai dXra Yaaj pdrks j kqp kbs kng, ! 大当趣窗供日大  
仍绕确失松 (但陷小酒鞭绝窗介。 (

此外 Xp pdai Zknj an (在转角处)、ē pdai Zknj an (在角落  
上)、kj pdai Zknj an (在建筑物外面的角上), 例如:

Pda oXē ZdqnZd eo oepqXpa` Xp pdai Zknj an kb; Xj ` = o  
praapo, ! 颇披窗较七在寒乎同虽乎窗昼教吹。 (

LhaXoa l qp epkran pdara ē pdai Zknj an kbpda nkki, ! 屈  
放在点患窗教落伤。 (

Pda l hZXn` eo l kopā` kj pdai Zknj an kbpda ` al Xnpi aj p  
opkma, ! 蓝招少少在蓝八固返皮窗教伤。 (

## X 文句及表现法

### 142. 名词放在主句，代名词放在附句

z认丰丰在大许豹松这挂（酒肠谁深网梅介。ā认以成益文犬z; bp  
ani u YnkpdandX lāpZkhaca (da s aj pXYnkX lkn dēdan opq  
`eao,ā. 陷日披堂敦黑i u Ynkpdan副da对粗才好。认边措犬年卡死  
顿。

③【集尺】这并不是正误的问题，原译从语法上讲，是正确无误的。但照英文的惯用法，是要把da放在前面，把i u Ynkpdan放在后面的。跟中国话的次序相反，由中文译成英文时，最要注意的就是这些地方。中国话很难分别合句或复句，但在英文中这就很明显，一点不含糊的。在英文的复句中，只有一个子句是主句，其余的是附句。既称主句，当然是最重要的，所以要把正式的名词安放在主句中，而把那分量较轻的代名词移到附句里去。这也许就是要这样改正的唯一的理由了。现在再举几个类似的例子，以供参考：

=qou Xo da eo (i u bXpdanj aranoaai o ej Xdqmu, ! 认  
该请聘望妇冷（婆程尖茅陷乘吃窗维庄。（

; bpandeo cnX qXpekj LXqhs knga` ej Jas Ukng, ! 拜罗  
豹松碎挂（酒在理员供字。（

E ol epa kb dē s aXlpl (pla i eoan eo opthqj oXpōba`,  
! 蓝排表礼妇概陷（道仍边马效。（

; hpan da dX` s neppaj pda Xj os an pk kj a l nkYhai (I dɿ  
kj nXeo a` deo dXj` pk XppnXZp pda paXZdan ɔ Xppaj pekj ,! 可  
得而尺好介摇伐问弃 (酒剪怕泰想件能登问。 (

但是也有不要改变的，如：

S daj pda` kc oXs pda opnXj can (ɸYacXj pk YXng,! 方  
摇和难日 (酒绝示跌。 (



### 143. I am sorry、Thank you、Pardon三个口头语

听披悟死会披益文窗EXi okmu、PdXj g ukq、LXnì kj 散童（  
酒看碎在益堪听食荣桌（算妨堂放摇码（卫弄章窗论，

③【集尺】要生活在说英语的国度里，当然应具备相当的英语知识，问题中所提出的，虽则是一个笑话，然而也未尝没有它的理由。那就是说，这三句话确是在英美社会中用得最多的了，尤其是前面两句，在美国认为是进入社会时最要紧的话语，家长们常要对他们的子侄们说：zF kj ꞑ Ya XlnXè ꞑk qoa ꞑlaoa ꞑs k at l raoodkj o kꞑaj s d aj ukq ZXj `k ok oj Zarahu,（当你们能够诚心诚意地对人表示抱歉或道谢的时候，不要怕应该尽量多多地使用这两句话。）à。

这原是他们一天到晚挂在嘴上的话语。例如你做了什么冒犯人家的事，要求原恕时，只消说声EXi okmu, 对方也就不会再来追究了。那时所谓道歉了事，他们所要求的，也不过是你口头说的一声EX i okmu而已。他们常对冒犯的人说zOXu ukq Xna okmu, Xj ` Es dh lkncera ukq,à。可见他们原恕的条件，不过是okmu一字。至于PdXj g ukq一语，简直是人与人之间有任何交道时所免不了的话，父母对儿女，主人对仆人，都是要说的。你到店子里买了东西，付钱交货，顾客和店家彼此都说声zPdXj g ukq,à也是有的。最特殊的用法是一位法国人所报道的。当我们赞美法国女子的美丽时，她回答说：zUkq ꞑa i X,（你发疯啦。）à。如果是英国女子的话，她就回答说：zF kj ꞑ Ya odu,（不要傻。）à。遇到美国女子的场合，她的回答便是：zPdX j g ukq,（谢谢你。）à。求人原谅或宽恕时说的LXnì kj 即EYac ukqn l Xnì kj 的省略，但你没有听清楚别人说的话，要别人再说一遍时，也只消说声LXnì kj 就行了。有了这三句话，就可应付各种情况，也是不错的。

## 144. charade

益文窗文婴替色! ZdXnX a ( (陷美童 (礼入) 来伐弄益文夕胁  
彻窗婴, 尺) Oi dao. ! 台在结伐. O? 这患陷摇益句脱。 (城情边  
毋各陷小年卡花维 (屈剪礼披苦。

③集尺】谜语还是占大多数, 如:

(/) S deZd eo pda oi Xhaopnkki ej pda s knh?

; j os an: I qodnkki, (菌子。)

S dXpgej` kbi kj au`k cenho Zkrappda i kop?

; j os an: I Xpri kj u, (婚礼。)

(0) Pdara eo Xs kn` kboaraj hpparo, pXga Xs Xu bra, Xi  
Xha nai Xej o, pXga Xs Xu kqn, Xhai Xha, pXga Xs Xu pma, ukq  
dXra XYnXra i Xj, s dda pda s dkla eo XYnXra s ki Xj,

; j os an: Da, dan, dark, dankej a,

(1) I u hropi aXj o anqXhpu; I u oaZkj` ej hankmpu; ; j`  
i u s dkla oql ankmpu,

; j os an: I XpZdhao,

因前半为均等i XpZd (匹敌); 后半为劣等hao (较少); 全部  
为优越i XpZdhao (无匹)。

(2) ChXocks 大学的Lnkhaookn FXi ao O, = hXZgea有次对他的  
学生贴出一张公告如下: zLnkhaookn = hXZgea s ethi aapdeo ZhXooao  
pki knrks ,â.

意思是说, 他明天要来上课, 他班上的一个顽皮学生把布告上的Z  
hXooao一字的第一个字母擦去了, 变成了hXooao, 意为布教授明天要

和z女孩子à相会，那位教授看到了不以为忤，进而索性再擦去一个字母，而变成Xooao（驴子们）了。英文z驴子à的另外一个解释是z愚人à，到头来学生还是斗智斗不过老师，最后被看作愚人了。这也是英文的文字游戏的一种，另有专名叫作` aZXl qXpkj（砍头）。中国也有这种办法。从前有一个附庸风雅的俗人，发了财之后，新建居室，落成时在大门外挂一块匾，上面写着z文献世家à四个字，附近恶作剧的人，在夜里去把他匾上的首尾两字用纸贴去，只剩下z献世à二字，等到主人发现洗去之后，第二天夜里，又来把z文à字头上一点及最后的一个z家à字贴去，变成z又献世à。这也可算是中国z砍头式à的文字游戏吧。

# 145. It is . . . that-Clause后的假设语气和直陈语气

在 $\text{E}^{\text{e}}$  , , ,  $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}$ 窗活时夕（挂亮边套 $\text{odkqh}$  故骑婆窗闲错称弄烦摇维，底弄 $\text{E}^{\text{e}}$  , , ,  $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}$ 时窗活庄（挂亮弄烦大看碎后 $\text{odkqh}$  ,

③集尺】 $\text{E}^{\text{e}}$  , , ,  $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}$ 后不用 $\text{odkqh}$  的，并不一定是省略的说法，用 $\text{odkqh}$  是假设语气，不用是直陈语气，在现代英语中用假设语气的虽很通行，但不用的也很普通，如对于那事情认为确实，而不把自己意见加入时，都可用直陈语气。用假设语气是表示感情如惊奇和遗憾之类，正等于加重的说法，用直陈语气则是表示实事求是的普通说法，毫无个人的感情包含在内，比较：

$\text{E}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{opnXj}$   $\text{ca}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{ukq}$   $\text{dXra l Xn}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{kj a}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{dei}$  , ! 拟人介婆弄莫干窗。（

$\text{E}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{opnXj}$   $\text{ca}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{ukq}$   $\text{odkqh}$   $\text{dXra l Xn}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{kj a}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{dei}$  , ! 章莫干拟旧绕人介婆。（

$\text{OpnXj}$   $\text{ca}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{EdXra daXn}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{j k}^{\text{p}}\text{dej c kbep y y S X}^{\text{p}}\text{p}^{\text{e}}\text{+Fq}$   $\text{j pkj}$  ! 莫干（认摇词似茅陷听等。（

$\text{E}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{m}^{\text{e}}\text{epa ei l kooeYla}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{da dXo}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{aZaera}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{i a, y y Fk}$   $\text{ula}$  ! 披婆齐米介认弄边看呢窗。（

至于在 $\text{E}^{\text{e}}$  , , ,  $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}$ 的句型中，是否都可以在后面加 $\text{odkqh}$  的字样，答案是否定的。有些这种形式的句子是不可能加用 $\text{odkqh}$  的，例如：

$\text{E}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{X hkj c hXj a}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{dXo j k p}^{\text{e}}\text{nj ej c}$  ,

$\text{E}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{Xj}$   $\text{eths ej}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{p}^{\text{d}}\text{X}^{\text{p}}\text{Ylks o j kYk}^{\text{e}}$   $\text{u ckk}^{\text{e}}$  ,

等谚语中，就没有人要把dXo、Yhks o改为odkqh dXra、odkqh Yhks 的。另外一些为加重句中的某一部分而用了**Ɔ**，，，**pdXp**的句子，更是不能用到odkqh 的，例如：

**Ɔ** **pd** a Yku **pdXp** i Xgao **pd** a i Xj , 城苏黑z**Pda** Yku i Xgao **pd** a i Xj ,à摇活夕窗**pd** a Yku夹值窗披法。

**Ɔ** **ukq** **pdXp** Xra maol kj oeYha bkne**Ɔ** 城苏黑z**Ukq** Xra maol kj oeYha bkne**Ɔ**à摇活夕窗**ukq** 夹值窗披法。

凡附句中**没有**主语的，似乎都不可以加用odkqh 呢。但如下面的例句是附句中有主语的，也不能加odkqh：

**Ɔ** **oah** ki **pdXp** da s krgo,

原为z**Da** **oah** ki s krgo,à的加强副词**oah** ki 的说法，等于把z**Da** s krgo **dama**,à加强地说成**Ɔ** **dama** **pdXp** da s krgo,à一样。再如：

**Ɔ** **ZanXej** **pdXp** da s ehZki a,

换写为z**PdXp** da s ehZki a **Ɔ** **ZanXej** ,à。两句不同的地方是在**Ɔ**的有无，不若z**Ɔ** **dama** **pdXp** da s krgo,à为z**Da** s krgo **dama**,à的加强说法，两句不同的地方，则在**Ɔ**，，，**pdXp**的有无了。

同是假设语气也不限于用odkqh 一字，有时也可以用s kqh ，例如：

**Ɔ** **Xhpkcapdanj** **XpqnXhpdXp** dan bXZa s kqhe Ya l Xla bki i baXn (paj oekj (Xj ` j anrkqo Xl l nadaj oekj ,! 辱窗亮剂死台刻变、金伪副兴儿戈多窗边啊道变寸病帮 (似弄馆犬当绕窗事。(

; l amkj **Ɔ** j Xpra bXj cqXca dXo Xl ks anrhqhej bhuaj Za k j dei , , , , Deo bXi eh (deo braj ` o (araj Zki l hapa opnXj c amy y aranukj a Xnkqj ` dei qoao **pdXp** bXj cqXca, Qj ` an o qZd Zenzqi opXj Zao (Ɔ kj hu j **XpqnXhpdXp** Xl amkj s kqle dXra **pd** a baahj c **pdXp** deo bXj cqXca **Ɔ** **pd** a i kop YaXq**pd** h (**pd** a i kopl anbaZp (**pd** a i kop lkceZXhkbXlhXj cqXcao,! 摇

伐日窗母童对婆陷琴大窗因太x x 婆窗纪日（婆窗疗友（耐吸婆  
怕边线鸟窗日（规弄婆止全颇陷窗日（大始套蓝袭童万。在卫袭  
曲什这杀（摇伐日当绕会朵货等婆窗童万弄摇码童万夕胁堪骄（  
胁秋删（道田胁赋礁窗介。（

在上举二例中的s kqĥ，虽同是假设语气，但与odkqĥ的含义颇有不同。兹就第二例来看，如果用odkqĥ的话，意为：z感到自己的母语是最美丽，最完善，又最合理的，是极为当然的事，要不那样感觉，就不算是正常的人了。à至于用s kqĥ的场合，意为：z在那种情形之下，要具有那种感觉，认为他的母语是世界上最美丽，最完善，又最合理的语言，也是极为当然的。à



ᐅᐅ`Xj carkqo ᐅukq l qpukqndaX kqpkbpdas ej`k  
s s daj pdapXej eo i krej c,

又可以了，因为ᐅ? hXqoa并不是接承ᐅ的，而接承ᐅ的是隐藏在ᐅ? hXqoa中的pk l qp,,,. 又如果说成：

Fkj ᐅl qpukqndaX kqpkbpdas ej`ks kbXi krej c pr  
Xej ! ᐅᐅ`Xj carkqo,

也是可以的，因为ᐅ不是接承Fkj ᐅl qp,,,. 而是接承其中包含的pk l qp,,,. 把ᐅᐅ`Xj carkqo一句说成ᐅᐅ`Xj carkqo hknukq也可以，意即zᐅᐅ`Xj carkqo hknukq pk l qpukqndaX kqpkbpdas ej`ks kbXi krej c prXej ,â. 在这场合的ukq与pdXpukq l qp的ukq是不相同的，因它不是文法上的主语，而是意味上的主语，是可以与pk l qp分开来看的。

我们再看看其他同类的例句：

ᐅᐅ j aZaooXnu pdXpukq at anpukqmaah

ᐅᐅ j aZaooXnu! hknukq (pk at anpukqmaah)

第一句中的ukq决不可指他人，而只能指z你â，因为后面的ukqnoah把它限定了。所以如果要用来指任何人，就得说第二句。

再看zᐅᐅ ennaol kj oeYha (hknqo) pk i Xga Xl nki eoa,,. â是要不得的，因为ennaol kj oeYha的，既不是接承pk i Xga Xl nki eoa的ᐅ，也不是接承pdXps a i Xga Xl nki eoa的ᐅ，而是s a，所以ᐅᐅ ennaol kj oeYha不通，应改为s a Xna ennaol kj oeYha才对。别的字如bXep dᐅh YaXqpᐅh等也是一样，只能说z; `kc eo bXepdᐅhâ或z; hks an eo YaXqpᐅhâ，不能说ᐅᐅ bXepdᐅh (或YaXqpᐅh) pk`k (或pdXp? hXqoa) 。



147. You don' t say和Don' t tell me

堪歌寄童夕怖套窗Ukq`kj ɸoXu光Fkj ɸpalhi a的活（摘婴亮  
访以（四候伙边听（边毋堂入喝以法，

③【集尺】这两句美国话，在电影中时常听到，含义几乎是相同的，都是听到对方的话，表示轻微的惊异而使用的。有时用动词oXu，有时用动词palhi，在用oXu的场合比较简单，只说zUkq`kj ɸoXu! à，至多加一个ok字上去，而成为zUkq`kj ɸoXu ok! à就够了，但在用palhi时，后面就要接用许多别的字，增加另外的意思，通常都是再接上一个pɔXpɔ? hXqoa。两句中都包含得有`kj ɸ一字，可知全是否定的，而且是相当强烈的否定，略同英文通常说的Yuj ki aXj o、kj j k XZZkqj p oqmahuj kp之类的意思，或是整句的zUkq maXlhu`è j ɸi aXj ɸ! à，中国话可译为z绝无其事àz绝不至于àz那怎么会àz我（你）（他）不会的à，等等。

Ukq`kj ɸoXu! 9 S alh Ej aran!

且看电影C Okoc pk Nai ai Yant中的对话：

I , ? dkl ej ) Daɸ Yaaj ckj c pk oaZmapi aapj co,! 婆计  
尖怖梅卜夹门们极会。（

Alhj an) Ukq`kj ɸoXu,! 婆击边会窗。（

在电影I m. I ɸɸan中的对话也有：

Rj ) Hɸa nXpɔlanZdXj ca` i u s dkla kqpkkg kj pɔej co,  
! 认窗日难观线当唇顿变介。（

? hai ) Ukq`kj ɸoXu,! 蓝在卡会。（

至于F kj ꞑ palhi a则是用在文句的头上，似乎可译作z绝不会是这样的吧āz不会有这样的事吧āz你骗我的吧ā等等。例如：

F kj ꞑ palhi a ukqꞑa bXlha j ej lkra s ꞑd dan! 拟小边会摇杀庄酒百伤介辱窗暗。（

F kj ꞑ palhi a ukqꞑa cera j q1 oi kgē c,! 拟来句看碎摇杀庄酒解从介孰窗呀。（

再看下面电影中的对话：

Kd ( ` kj ꞑ palhi a ꞑꞑ ckj a! ! 拟击边弄披蓝伐算睛洛从介暗。（y y I n. I ɔ ɛ ran

ɛXYa ha) F kj ꞑ palhi a ukqꞑa lknc kꞑꞑaj ꞑdXꞑ! 拟击边会爱蓝伐王果介窗暗。（

Alɔ j an) Jk (j k (j k (Zanꞑꞑej hu j kꞑ! 边（边（边（击边会。（y y C Okoc ꞑk Nai ai Yan

I ɔo Pds Xꞑao) F kj ꞑ palhi a ukq Xra Zki ej c ꞑk lra ej Jk, 7, ! 拟会爸等恢公尖显论（拟米认。（

LXq1X) Uao,! 章窗。（y y Cbohꞑdp

PnXZu) =ꞑꞑukq s araj ꞑXꞑꞑda l Xnꞑu! ! 但弄拟昨闻笔茅陷卜夹认考窗如会呀。（

Fat ꞑan) Kd (j ks ` kj ꞑ palhi a ukq ` kj ꞑ nai ai Yan! 拟击边死披拟弄王果介呀。（y y Pda Ldɛbe a h dɛb Oꝼru

148. “I am So-and-so.” 和 “My name is So-and-so.”

披z EXi Ok+Xj ` +ok,à副披z I u j Xi a eo Ok+Xj ` +ok,à陷年卡边枪,

③集尺】英语学者DXrkh A, LXhi an在他的名著*Ekorambpækob hAochæd Coe Dks Pk Habro* 中,说zEXi Ok+Xj ` +ok,à的说法zok qj ` o XYoqn` à (z听来有点荒谬à),最好是说zI u j Xi a eo Ok+Xj ` +ok,à。但在美国zEXi Ok+Xj ` +ok,à的形式,用得非常的多,zI u j Xi a eo Ok+Xj ` +ok,à的形式也常用,但意思稍有不同。即,说zEXi Ok+Xj ` +ok,à的时候,似乎认定对方早已知道了自己的名字,现在只是把实际的人和那个名字配合起来罢了。至于说zI u j Xi a eo Ok+Xj ` +ok,à就多少带得有一点孩子般的天真在内,好像小学生自己报告姓名一样。

现就美国人用的实例提供研究:

zÆ Okj j u ? Xrñj cpkj (àoXè Okj j u (oqnl mæa` , zUkq i qopgj ks i a,ây y H, LXqh) Pda CæhS dk S boo'pBknObh ! z认酒弄片老.迹紧而à (片老尽艺唇披 (z拟摇兜毋传认窗。à (

zS dk Xra ukq, àzF kj æ ukq mæ ai Yan, , , Æ Laccu,ây y Pda BaopUabro kbKqnHæao! OXi qahCkh s ej (! z拟弄谁呀, àz拟王果介论, 认酒弄量学。à (

zÆ I mo, DXrl anI Xt s alh (àoda oXè , zI u dqoYXj ` k hpaj qoa` pk ol aXg kbukq,ây y ; , PnXej ) I n PqppEkroaro C Bkt ! z认弄否流.县级斯饰得她她 (à辱披 (z程仑认未都件弄伙等拟窗。à (

z= appanYa ZXrabqhl à rapqñj a` pda opnXj can pdnaXpaj ej chu, zÆ BnXj g Ql odan ; j kpñlani kj pd Xj ` ÆhYa kn` anj

c ukq kbb! ày y ; , PnXej ) *EklkoahPqppKbObrboobd!* z拟当  
 懈摇词 (à蓝伐溃难日碎饰效窗寄惹灰尺披 (z认弄豆蜡级..亚方  
 团。晚戈摇伐远 (认酒会爱拟夺准窗! à (

再看两者成为对照的用法:

zLXn` kj i u ej pmoekj (à oXè pda hXs uan (zYqpEdXra  
 hkopi us Xu, I uj Xi a eo Pqppy y Al dnXi Pqpp EXi puej  
 c pk bej` i u bæj` (Fq` ca ?qh al l an,à zUkq i aXj Qj Zha  
 Fkod, Da hrao Xi kopj at p` kkn, ~~Æ~~ Alœa = aXq kkp, ày y  
 ; , PnXej ) *EklkoahPqppKbObrboobd!* z屈烹肯认跑进尖 (à蓝  
 究能披 (z认弄准呆介静。认窗林婴候侈敌y y 翁都尖怜..侈敌。  
 认弄尖找认窗疗友迹得量帮法分窗。àz拟弄披乔撒叛论, 婆肠边  
 当酒弄显在罚惫。认弄艾得撒.毕福沙。à (

由上例可以看出, 在初会面的两个陌生人间, 对方已经用了zI u  
 j Xi a eo Ok+Xj` +ok,à的时候, 另一方就只好说zEXi Ok+Xj` +ok,à  
 了。

## 149. There + be的表现法

益文活庄夕窗婴秃! s kn` kn` an ( (胁奇听窗变望弄在活拍套p  
dama (碎克什玫幢骑错称挂窗章握室童 (在卫袭币善法窗挂亮 (边  
毋看后套摇小年卡称盗,

③【集尺】Pdama - Ya的句式是英文最通行的用法, 很少有人说z;  
l aj eo kj pda pXYha,à, 而大家都爱说zPdama eo Xl aj kj pda pXYh  
a,à。但回答指定的事物时, zPda l aj eo kj pda pXYha,à又可以说了。

用pdama与不用pdama的两种说法, 从文法上讲都是不错的, 含义  
略有不同, 即:

zS dXp eo pdama, ày y zPdama eo Xpai l ha,à

用pdama的句式时是表示z有无à的问题的。不用pdama时, 则物的  
有无不在话下, 而只注意到那物在什么地方, 所以是以表z地点à为主  
的。例如说z; l aj eo kj pda pXYha,à, 意即说明j kp ej pda` nXs a  
n, kn ej pda l kZgap。

用于句首的pdama, 与ep同为填补词 (at l hapra), 所不同的是pd  
ama代表后面的名词, 而ep则代表后面的不定词或子句, 所以只能说:

Pdama eo j k` eocnXZa ej bXh ej c kj Za,

Ep eo j k` eocnXZa pk bXh kj Za,

而不能说zPdama eo j k` eocnXZa pk bXh kj Za,à。

(/) 基本句法后接名词:

Pdama s Xo j k s ej`, ! 荣懂。(

Pdama ə j k l aj Zəhdama, ! 卫句茅陷枪抱。 (

Pdama ə X c Xn` aj pdama, ! 蓝句陷摇伐花腿。 (

S dXpə pdama pk oXu, ! 陷年卡看披窗论, (

Pdama ə khpaj X nXej Yks Xhpan nXej, ! 通挂怖陷干。 (

Pdama ə X Yqo Zki ej c, ! 案事尖介。 (

Pdama ə j k lkra lkop Yaps aaj pdai, ! 婆考这患汉荣百曲  
看万。 (

(0) 也可以接动名词:

Pdama ə j k XZZkqj pj c lkn pXopa, ! 日更陷颇好。 (

Pdama ə j k` aj uej c pda bXZp ! 事史边容烦秘。 (

Pdama ə j k gj ks ej c s dXpi Xu dXl l aj, ! 谁似边毋传黑  
死登难年卡事。 (

Pdama ə j k pŋopj c pk Xl l aXnXj Zao, ! 情币边效十。 (

Pdama ə j k` kej c, 9 ɸə ei l kooɣla pk` k, ! 边看呢谢  
窗。 (

(1) 也可以接不定词:

ɸs Xo pkk lXpa lkn pdama pk Ya Xj u pXt ə, ! 她球茅陷国长  
茶介。 (

ɸə ei l kooɣla lkn pdama pk Ya Xj u i kma, ! 边看呢晚陷  
介。 (

Pdau oXu pdama ə ckj c pk Ya s Xn, ! 听披死打仗。 (

S kqhi ukq lɛga pdama pk Ya Xl eZpna kj pda s Xlh ! 拟  
喜贵落惫伤怪摇伪胳膊论, (

E` k j kps Xj p pdama pk Ya Xj u i əqj` anpXj` ej c Yaps  
aaj qo, ! 认边死认考这患陷年卡误会。 (

(2) 也可以接现在分词:

Ej aran`naXi p kb pdama Yaaj c X l eZpma kj pda s Xlh  
! 认谢棵似茅陷泰等落惫伤怪貉。 (

Es Xo s nkj c XYkqppdama Yaaj c oki a i eoqj`anopXj`ej  
c Yaps aaj qo,! 披认考这夕陷误会弄认窗呆货。 (

Pdama Yaaj c j kpdaj c alwa pk`k (s a s aj pdki a,! 茅陷  
年卡事介 (颇碎认考酒灰纪介。 (

(3) 也可以接过去分词:

Pdama s Xo Ykrj X Zdeh pk pdai ,! 婆考喜获憎盗。 (

Dama (pdama s ama lkqj`rXnkqo nalaZo kbBnXj glaj o at  
l a`epkj,! 卫盗看碎登善概蜡级紧欺嫌窗更袭速怪。 (

(4) 在这种造句中常将关系代名词省略:

Pdama eo Xi Xj Xppda`kkn s Xj po pk ol aXg pk ukq,! 抗  
寄陷日死番拟披化。 (

## 150. 作understatement用的rather

zOda ɵ nXpdan ckk` +kkgej c,à摇活益文（以犬z辱灭！陷鬼  
町（坡看à。陷日披以呆宜脾介（边毋nXpdan摇婴各陷年卡笨窗宜  
脾，

③【集尺】nXpdan一字通常有五种意思，即z宁愿àz更为合理àz更正  
确àz有几分àz相反地à。但除此以外，在英国的口语当中，还可用作反  
语，以加强肯定的回答，有Uao、s ɛpdkqp` kqYp或ZanpXej hu、Xooq  
ra` hu的意思，例如：

zFk ukq hga pde, ày y zNXpdan! à! z拟喜贵卫伐论，à  
y y z边但弄喜贵（简真弄馆骑百好郎！à（

还有英国人用此字时，常带有所谓qj` anopXpai aj p（作较轻或  
较弱的陈述），实际是比字面上的意思要强烈得多，所以Faol amaj  
说zOda ɵ nXpdan ckk` +kkgej c,à是对女人最高的赞词了，在会话中  
确是如此。AnZ LXnpe` ca说，英国的上等人人都很含蓄，不愿完全表  
露感情，所以说话及态度都不肯太露骨。写文章时没有办法，只好照  
字写出来，说话则每多婉曲或留些余地，因为说话的声调使文字显示  
更多的意义出来。现在我们来看看几个实例吧：

zUao (oda oXe` oda Zkqh j ɸopXj` pda hda, ; j` plaj o  
da i Xma` Fei +i ea S alh kj +=qnj o,àzLakl ha s ama nXpdano  
qrl moa` (s amaj ɸpda u, à! z弄呀（辱披辱输边介蓝袭难古。  
乡弄辱酒副管可..饰得而彭籍讳介。àz日考大犬尽艺。à（

上例是毛姆的短篇小说*Pda Dqi bo Ahui aop*中的句子，oda是指  
的=appu, Fqga kbOp Anpd的独生女AhvXYapd, 而Fei i ea便是指  
的男爵OenFkdj S alh kj +=qnj o的长男FXi ao。



毛姆把nXplan一字常用作这种意思，如果我们翻开Daǵ ai Xj j  
版毛姆的*Pda Eki l hapa OdknpOpknao Rkh* II 时，在741、/. . 0、/  
. . 1各页上都可以发现这种用法呢。

## 151. Mrs. + 丈夫姓名

对虎诿对怕窗糙刚（益文摇懊曲什弄在未都史林仑竿碎I m窗婴维（怕庄肠假规程都史（但林婴仍看拜晴（入王据骄深结假介伪大位随难（辱背成犬I m, FXrè ?dXj c（边毋在喝什才看碎套I m, I Xnu?dXj c窗林公。

③【集尺】别人称呼既婚妇女，都是用她丈夫姓名冠以I m,，但她自己常要在夫姓前写她本人的小名以代替丈夫名，例如写信时署名为I Xnu?dXj c，在写给不相识的人时，则下加（I m, FXrè ?dXj c）。在美国的既婚妇女用她本名的时候比较多，如那位生长在中国，获得诺贝尔文学奖金的美国女作家LaXrh=qZg，就是大家都知道的，=qZg是她丈夫的姓，LaXrh是她自己的名字。凡是在丈夫死后做寡妇时，就不能再用丈夫的名字，必须写成I m, I Xnu?dXj c。在美国没有落籍的外国人（Xhraj o），每年要去登记一次，如张大卫夫妇同时去登记时，丈夫的记名是I n, FXrè ?dXj c，太太的记名是I m, I Xnu?dXj c。

又，他们夫妇同时要开车，各有各的开车执照（HéZaj oa），太太的执照上也是写的I m, I Xnu?dXj c，不完全用丈夫的姓名。

美国签订某些合约（如租房子）时，常是夫妇两人都署名，这时做太太的也只好用自己的小名（如I m, I Xnu?dXj c）来签字了。

## 152. 用不定词或动名词取代子句

Aranukj a odkqh` dXra X dkYYu pdXp da Zkj oe` amo X naZna  
Xpkj (YaZXqoa ej pde s Xu da ZXj naXhu naXt, ! 日日大堂敦陷  
摇伐看反友渐窗切好 (台犬蓝维才看碎寸等那懈伤章握窗轻似。 (   
卫活益文四损建赘 (边毋看烦黑吩苏幢林称窗庄活闹旧,

③【集尺】文字最要紧的一点就是简明，拖沓总是不好的，用pdXp+  
? hXqoa等，是不得已而写，能省则省，例如下举各例，与其用  
(X)，不如用(Y)：

! X (Edkl a pdXp EodXhl Xoo pde pi a,

! Y (Edkl a pk l Xoo pde pi a,

! X (Da eo j kpXi Xj s dk palho X ha,

! Y (Da eo j kpXi Xj pk palhX ha,

! X (EXi ZampXej pdXp EodXhcer a ukq oXpobXZpkj ,

! Y (EXi ZampXej kbcer ej c ukq oXpobXZpkj ,

! X (Pdau s ama oqrl naa` s daj plau daXn` dei Zkj ba  
oo,

! Y (Pdau s ama oqrl naa` pk daXn dei Zkj baoo,

问题中所提出的英文句子也可简化如下：

Aranukj a odkqh` Zkj oe` andeo dkYYu X naZnaXpkj (YaZ  
Xqoa ej pde s Xu da ZXj naXhu naXt,

这样一来就比原来的简洁多了，而意思还是一样。

### 153. be supposed to的译法

Da ɔj kpoql l koa` pk ZhaXj pda pXYha, 以成z婆边鞭函兜梅  
柠窗助庄à四候边像夕歌化 (道马宜它似边苦帮。边毋卫活益文堂在  
维访以才好。

③【集尺】记得笔者从前到伦敦去游学的时候，有天被朋友约往; h  
Yarp DXhh听讲，事前既不知道什么人演讲，也不知道他讲的什么内  
容。我到达亚尔伯大会堂的时候，为时尚早，几乎听众都没有来，只  
有第一排上坐着有一个人，我不免要走近他去，和他闲谈几句。当我  
问到今晚是谁来演讲时，他回答说：

EXi oql l koa` pk Ya pda ol aXganpkj ɛdp

我当时马上感觉到这句英文的表现法太好了，中国话找不出这样  
简明委婉的说法来。如果说zEXi pda ol aXganpkj ɛdpà, 就多么唐  
突生硬而缺乏含蓄呀。从那以后我就留意到英文的Ya oql l koa` pk的  
用法、含义和译法。我发现这时的oql l koa是自动词；自动词怎样可  
以用被动的形式呢？原来是另有含义的，例如：

! X (Ol nɛj c dXo Zki a, ! 忱等日患。 (

! Y (Ol nɛj c ɔ Zki a, ! 忱马日患。 (

(X) 句是用的现在完成式的动词，表示春来了，那个来的动作  
(XZpkj) 已经完成。(Y) 句是自动词具被动形式，表示莺飞草  
长，江南三月那种春满人间的状态 (opXpa)。现在说的Ya oql l koa`  
pk, 也正是表示成为那一个状态的。这个表现法有下面两种含义：

(/) 9 Ya at l aZpa` pk, 有推测，预定，应该，作为当然而期待  
等等意思：

Da ɔ oql l koa` pk Zki a Xpaedp (YqpXo Xi Xpankbt  
XZpdaj aranZki ao Yalkra j ej a,! 婆堂敦在八词熄等城窗 (但  
事史伤婆程尖茅陷在恢词碎仑等戈。 (

Ukq Xra oql l koa` pk Ya dara Xpaedparanu` Xu,! 拟是  
利题八词熄尖城伤傲。 (

Ukq Xra oql l koa` pk naX pde pk pda ZKoo, Eo bki f  
da hYnXu,! 卫弄伐投邱粉窗听毋 (屈类法拟傲伤窗许难听。 (

S daj pda Yalhrj co (s aXra oql l koa` pk ck!! 近庄摇  
太 (认考酒准。 (

(0) 9 Ya kYhXpa` pk, 有应该那样做成的义务:

Da ɔ j kpoql l koa` pk ZlaXj pda pXYha,! 婆茅陷爬逆抽弟  
助庄窗它务 [台犬婆弄几日]。 (

AranuYk` u ɔ oql l koa` pk gj ks pda hXs,! 日日陷苦介  
法究窗它务。 (

Ukq Xra j kpoql l koa` pk odej a pda odkao hkn i a,! 拟  
茅陷闪认病盟声窗它务。 (

154. “Do you know who he is?” 和 “Who do you think he is?”

! X (Fk ukq gj ks s dk da ə,

! Y (S dk` k ukq pɛj g da ə,

伤亮卫结伐问活 (枪弄问s dk da ə (犬喝! X (死爱s dk牺乡  
错称这挂 (道! Y (田牺乡错称这仑郎,

③【集尺】英文的问句可大别为两类，一类是要用Uao或Jk来回答的，一类是不可以用Uao或Jk来回答的，(X)便是前者，(Y)便是后者。

(X) 你知道那人是谁吗?

回答不外是: zUao, E` k,à或zJk, E` kj ɤà.

(Y) 你以为那人是谁?

回答可以作: 我以为是张三, 或我以为是李四。

(X) 句中的s dk da ə一个子句 (?hXqoa) 是Fk ukq gj ks 的宾语 (KYfaZp), 但 (Y) 就等于问zS dk ə da? à一样, `k ukq pɛj g 是插入句, 所以回话只能说zE pɛj g da ə Fkdj (或?dXnɤao 等), à.

现在让我们再来研究下列各例, 对文法就会更加明白了:

S damə` è da bɛj` ɤ ! 蓝弄婆在来句找等窗, (

! X (Fk ukq gj ks s damə da lɤqj` ɤ ! 拟毋传婆弄在  
来句找等蓝伐窗论, (

! Y (S damə` k ukq pɛj g da lɤqj` ɤ ! 拟碎犬婆弄来  
句找等蓝伐窗呀, (

S dɛZd s Xu`è da ck, ! 婆准来添静梅窗, (

! X (Fk ukq n̄i ai Yans dɛZd s Xu da s aj p ! 拟果寸  
婆弄准来添静梅窗论, (

! Y (S dɛZd s Xu`k ukq ei Xcɛj a da s aj p ! 拟届泰婆  
弄准来添静梅窗郎, (

S dXppei a s ɛhda opXnp ! 婆黑在喝什错那, (

! X (Fkao pda hapan palhs dXppei a da s ɛhopXnp ! 十  
伤披等婆在喝什错那论, (

! Y (S dXppei a`kao pda hapan oXu da s ɛhopXnp ! 十  
伤披婆喝什错那, (

在上举 (Y) 例的造句中, 常用的动词除 **pdɛj g** 外, 还有 **ɛi Xcɛj**  
**a**、**oql l koa**、**Yahara**、**oXu** 等等。

155. Who do you think is the best player?

认考入黑`k ukq pdej g窗婴维（场入宿问活窗zS dXp`è da o Xu, à什（背成犬zS dXp`k ukq pdej g da oXè, à 台犬套介zS dX p`k ukq pdej g, à窗宿问活法（推尖窗zS dXp`è da oXu, à窗宿问活法（犬悲肯值短国（酒顿成另适活法窗da oXè 介。卫弄摇懊窗童法（犬年卡杀文死在摇活夕套全值窗宿问活法郎, S dk`k ukq p dej g eo pda Yaopl hXuan, 犬年卡边披pda Yaopl hXuan eo,

③【集尺】照原则上说，是应该把eo放在pda Yaopl hXuan的后面才对，不过常因声调、文义、轻重等关系，而有变化，即不依照普通的字序，要颠倒来说的时候，也习见不鲜。

在前一则中我们已说明了在zS dk eo da? à一问中插入`k ukq pdej g, 而成为zS dk`k ukq pdej g da eo? à的道理，那是因为重点移到`k ukq pdej g的上面去，da和eo在分量上就轻了，所以变成普通平叙句的字序了。

但有时为着主语太长，或是为着要加强主语起见，便把它移到句尾去，例如问题中的：

S dk`k ukq pdej g eo pda Yaopl hXuan, ! 拟货寸打寸胁好窗弄谁, （

以及：

S dXp`k ukq pdej g eo pda l kl qhXpkj kbDkj c Gkj c, ! 拟碎犬相粉陷当母日寄, （

如果我们依照普通说法，把eo放在pda Yaopl hXuan和pda l kl qhXpkj kbDkj c Gkj c的后面时，那既不能加强l hXuan和l kl qhXpkj 的说法，而且句子的声调也就差多了。



由于同样的理由，在间接说法中也仍然要保留直接说法的字序，如：

Oda oXê pki a (zS dXpə pɫa i Xppans ɛpɫ dɛi , à

一句改成直接说法时，照规则是要把问句改成平叙句，即zS dXpɫa i Xppans ɛpɫ dɛi ɔ,à。但因主语太长，就不得不保留原来的形式，而说成：

Oda Xoga` i a s dXps Xo pɫa i Xppans ɛpɫ dɛi ,! 每问认婆陷喝贾烂。（

感叹句也并不老是照平叙句一样先说主语后说动词的，有时因种种关系也可以改变字序，照问句一样把动词放在主语前去，例如：

S dXp X l kkn lkkhs Xo El ! 认谢介摇见当卡尤薄窗事呀！（

Dks l anqXoera Xna dɔ s kn` o! y y Odaɛ` Xj ! 婆窗化当卡错听呀！（

Dks kɬəj dXra El lXua` qj ` an pɫaoa pmao Xo X Yku! y y ɛrɛj c! 认在盗蓄什幢件弄在卫小佩杀屎澎窗！（

S dXp X l ɛaZa kbs kng ɔ i Xj ! y y OdXgaol aXn! 日弄当卡麻孔窗字领呀！（

至于说zDks Ynɛdp Xna ɛpɔ s Xpam, l lXuej c kran pɫa opkj a o!（在石头上流动的水波，多么的光耀！）à，就是为要避免把修饰语的l lXuej c，说成动词的Xna l lXuej c的关系而将字序颠倒的。

## 156. I don' t think的句型

z认泰婆边会尖。à以成益文犬zE<sup>`</sup> kj ~~ɸ~~ p<sup>l</sup>ej g da s ~~ɸ~~ h<sup>j</sup> kpZki a,à 但据披益文窗惯套童法（堂披成zE<sup>`</sup> kj ~~ɸ~~ p<sup>l</sup>ej g da s ~~ɸ~~ h<sup>j</sup> Zki a,à才对。边毋摘夕文真以窗活庄弄烦呆误，

③【集尺】通常确实是要以zE<sup>`</sup> kj ~~ɸ~~ p<sup>l</sup>ej g da s ~~ɸ~~ h<sup>j</sup> Zki a,à, 来代替zE<sup>`</sup> p<sup>l</sup>ej g da s ~~ɸ~~ h<sup>j</sup> kpZki a,à。这似乎不及中国话的合逻辑，不过，英文已成惯用，zE<sup>`</sup> kj ~~ɸ~~ p<sup>l</sup>ej g , , , à早构成一种句型，不容推翻的了。在英美名作家的笔下，我们也常发现有把否定放在p<sup>l</sup>ej g之后的，但似乎都有其特殊的理由。例如：

! / (Es ~~æ~~od ukq s ana dama (p<sup>l</sup>aj E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g Eodkqh<sup>h</sup> j kpt aah~~h~~ga p<sup>l</sup>eo, y y F, D, HXs naj Za

! 0 (Eodkqh<sup>h</sup> dXra p<sup>l</sup>kqcdpoki ap<sup>i</sup> ao ukq Zkqh<sup>h</sup> j ~~ɸ~~ d ah<sup>h</sup> p<sup>l</sup>ej g<sup>j</sup> c kb<sup>p</sup>la l Xop, y y I XqcdXi

! 1 (E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g ukq kqcdp<sup>j</sup> kppk s Xl<sup>g</sup> Xp<sup>j</sup> ~~æ~~dpXh<sup>k</sup> j a (I n o, I kkra, y y A, I , Bknopan

! 2 (E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g ukq j aa<sup>`</sup> j kpYa ~~è~~ l k<sup>h</sup>pa pk dan (Xo s ah<sup>h</sup> Xo pk danokj , y y A, I , Bknopan

! 3 (zE<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g p<sup>l</sup>a Xj cal<sup>o</sup> Xra j kpXpXh<sup>ej</sup> daXraj (àI n, Aoi kj<sup>`</sup> oX<sup>è</sup> , y y PdXZganXu

! 4 (Kd (oda p<sup>l</sup>ej go p<sup>l</sup>ama<sup>o</sup> j k<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> c ~~h~~ga Nki a, y y D aj nu FXi ao

! 5 (E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g =h<sup>k</sup>j Zda<sup>`</sup> è j ~~ɸ~~ fqop<sup>h</sup>kra ~~è~~i Yqps knod<sup>l</sup> l a<sup>`</sup> p<sup>l</sup>a crkqj<sup>`</sup> da s Xl<sup>g</sup>a<sup>`</sup> kj ! y y Paj j aooaa S ~~h~~eXi o

! 6 (E<sup>p</sup>l<sup>ej</sup> g ~~h~~ fqop<sup>j</sup> kpoi Xnpaj kqcd pk i Xga Xj u o aj oa kqpkbep<sup>h</sup>knukq, y y ; n<sup>p</sup>lqnI ~~h~~an

! 7 (zUkq pdej g odaŋ j kpi qZd hga ukq, àCanXh Xog  
a` , y y F, D, HXs maj Za

! /. (=qpEpdj g pXpAhwXYapd s Xo j kp mŋpa ok Zan  
Xej kbepXo E, y y ; h kqo Dqt hau

! // (Eodkqh pdej g ukq j aran dXra oaaj i Xj u , , ,  
y y F, D, HXs maj Za

! /0 (Epdkqcdpukq s kqh j ŋopXj ` pXp, , , y y CXh  
s kmpu

! /1 (Epdkqcdps a i ecdj ŋcapdama, y y Cmaj a

! /2 (Epdkqcdpukq ` e j ŋ s Xj p pk daXn (i u ` aXn,  
y y FZgaj o

! /3 (EpdkqcdppXpi u Hkn` ?Xopas kk` dX j k Ynk  
dan, y y PdXZganXu

! /4 (Epdkqcdpepatl hXej a` j kpdej c, y y I XqcdXi

上举例句 (/) 中的Epdj g是插入句, 可看作与其他部分无关。

(0) w (3) 由于ZXj j kpdaŋ +ej c、kqcdpj kp j aa` j kp j kpX  
pXh等成语的集团 (Zkhj u) 力量, 而把Epdj g隔离了。(4) 成语  
damaŋ j kpdej c hga Nki a (与dki a同音的关系而套用的), 故不  
便拆散。(5) w (/.) 因j kp fqop, , , Yqp fqopj kp, , , aj kqc  
d、j kpi qZd、j kp mŋpa等以j kp为核心的副词片语的影响, 也不便  
把否定拿到pdj g的前面去。可见到此为止的 (/) 至 (/.) 各例句,  
都是不能换成E` kj ŋpdj g那种形式的, 即能换写也写不出漂亮的句  
子来。

问题是 (//) w (/4) 各句, 这些句子原是可以换写成E` kj ŋp  
dej g形式的, 不过或因句中 (X) 含有j k、j aran、j kpdej c、j kYk`  
u等的不定字, 或因 (Y) 用了过去动词的pdkqcdp, 所以都不合乎E`  
kj ŋpdj g的l Xpanj 。

157. had better、would better, had rather、  
would rather

益文夕陷 dX Yappan, s kq h Yappan (dX nXpdan, s kq h nXpdan  
窗披法 (边毋陷喝边枪 (屈系犬倍笨奢夹集市。

③集尺】 dX Yappan、dX nXpdan, 意为z最好 x x à, 或z还是x x 的好à, 用于劝解或间接命令, 而dX nXpdan, s kq h nXpdan 则用以表示偏爱、嗜好。例如:

Ukq dX Yappan ck dki a Xp kj Za, ! 拟胁好具伤灰纪梅。 (

Es kq h nXpdan aXp p dXj ` Xj Za, ! 认黎抽边如。 (

这都是英文的惯用语, 后面接用无pk的不定词。

GnXl 1 认为s kq h Yappan是不正确的 (ej ZkmaZp), 因为把Ukq dX Yappan省略为Ukq£ Yappan时, 世人不察, 以为Ukq£是Ukq s kq h 之略, 故产生s kq h Yappan的说法。其实任何一国的语言中, 都有以讹传讹的惯用字句, 只要用惯了, 不通的也通了。美国人更干脆, 索性说成Ukq Yappan, 不管它dX 也好, s kq h 也好, 一笔勾销, 痛快是痛快, 只可惜对于文法更讲不通了。

至于dX nXpdan和s kq h nXpdan, 到底哪一个形式是正确的, 就更难说了, 通例都是说E nXpdan, 正好像人们不知道应该是说EodXh h或Es dh的时候就说Eh一样, 根本说的省字, 被看作dX 既可以, 被看作s kq h 也可以, 所以I Zl knì ea认为孰是孰非, 莫衷一是。GnXl 1 则认为常用dX nXpdan取代s kq h nXpdan, 也是主张dX 为正的。; YYkpp和=Xej 等人, 确认dX Yappan、dX nXpdan是几百年来许多大作家都用了的惯用句。有人比GnXl 1 更激烈, 认为zEs kq h Yappan ck,à 是绝对不合文法的 (l koep rahu qj cnXi i XpZXh)。因为dX Ya

ppan 9 s kq hì bǝj` ɛps ɔan (或Yappan) pk, 所以zUkq dX Yappan ck dki a,à就被说成zUkq s kq hì (bǝj` ɛp) Yappan (pk) ck dki a,à了, 是由假定说法而使得dX 变成s kq hì 的。大家都说dX Yappan的形成比s kq hì Yappan要更受欢迎 (l rabaŋXYla), 对于第一人称尤其不喜欢 (qj` aonXYla) 用s kq hì Yappan。现举几个例子来看:

Ukq dX Yappan ck, ! 9 Ukq s kq hì `k Yappan pk ck, (  
Ukq dX Yappan ck YXZgy y pda nɔg ɔ cnaXp, y y Pdki  
Xo DXn` u  
Pda Ykuo dX Yappan ZaXoa odkqpǝj c, y y l Zl kn` ɛa  
S daj da l nkl koa` pk lhu XZrkoo pda; pXj pɛZ (EoXɛ` zu  
kq dX Yappan j kppru! ày y Gɛgl XpɛZg  
Ukq dX Yappan j kppXga Xs Xu Xj u s ɛj a (YaZXqoa ɛps  
kq hì ` ɔXcma s ɛpɔ ukq, y y Gɛqcan

这个dX Yappan有时可以说成dX Yaop, 不过没有前者的普通 (bXnlaoo Zki i kj)。例如:

ɛ Yaop ck Xj` oapla pda oZkma, y y PdXZganXnu  
EdX Yaop opXnp lkn dki a,

又dX Yappan还有一种过去形, 不过不大用。例如: zUkq dX Yappan`k ɛpà的过去形, 即zUkq dX Yappan dXra`kj a ɛpà; 而zɛp dX Yappan Ya`kj a,à的过去形, 即是zɛp dX Yappan dXra Yaaj`kj a,à。在? rks alh的*Dəpɔkobru kbAochɔd Cɛbi i br*中举有zUkq dX Yappan opXua`dama (9 Ukq s kq hì dXra`kj a Yappan pk opXu dan a), à一例, 其实那是应该视为zɛp s kq hì dXra Yaaj Yappan (lkn uk q), ɔbukq dX opXua`dama, ày y 一个条件句的省略说法。英国诗人Paj j uokj 的诗句, zDX opɔlkq Yaaj YnXran, EdX Yappan YnXra`Xlhà中的zEdX Yappan dXra YnXra`Xlhà也属于这一类。据*I ke ano Aochɔd Qobca*的著者Bks lan说, 这种过去形当中的dXra (即dX`Yappan dXra`kj a及dX Yappan dXra Yaaj`kj a) 是不可以省略的, 可是英美人却常要犯这种错误。为什么不能省呢? 例如s kq hì dXra pXgaj 被省为s kq hì pXgaj 一样, 其理自明, 毋庸多说。

再看下例更可证明s kq h̄ nXp̄dan或dX Yappan后接的过去动词是另一个条件句的省略的说法：

Qj k̄npqj Xpahu (i Xj u X k̄maej ancapo p̄da` eo p̄j Zp̄ei l  
maoockj p̄dXp̄p̄da Q, O, s kq h̄ nXp̄danda opXua` dki a, ! 边实  
窗弄投当情歌日大寸等摇伐苦妹窗坦社) 堪歌笔边在维贵瞎婆考  
梅观愤。(

这是/74. 年/0月/7日美国出版的*P̄ai a*上的句子，句中用了s kq h̄ nXp̄danda opXua` dki a的字样，即是一反平常在s kq h̄ nXp̄dan后接原形动词，如zEs kq h̄ nXp̄dan opXu dki a, à的说法，其实这只是条件句的省略，这个opXua` 即等于说ēda opXua` dki a。他例如：

Es kq h̄ nXp̄dan Es aj p̄ ! 认黎鸵梅。(

这种假设语气也可以用在现在动词的后面，如：

Es p̄i a Es aj p̄ ! 认死准介。(

在dX Yappan或dX Yaop的后面，现代英文规定要接没有pk的不定词，但在K̄h̄ anAj chod中这个不定词的pk还保存着，例如NēZdXn̄ okj 就写过这样的句子：

y y Da gj as j kps dap̄landa dX Yaop pk m̄j kn pk opX  
j` d̄o cnkqj` ,

但现代英文是不可以把不定词的pk保留的。

## 158. 美国语中the way的用法

堪歌化夕怖和陷pda s Xu窗套法（礼入）zɛps Xo l ɛpɔq hpda s Xu da gal pZki l hXej ej c pk dɛo s dɛa, à 边毋堂入喝以法，

③【集尺】s Xu的意义由z道路ǎ|申而为z方法à, 如：

Pda s Xu oda ol kga dqnp i a, ! 辱披化窗对士闪肤介认。（

pda s Xu Egj ks ! 套认颇毋传窗对法（

在pda s Xu之前省略了一个ej 字。在美国口语里说的pda s Xu多少受了一些爱尔兰语的影响，所以跟英文原来的用法又有些不同了。美国话用pda s Xu来引导出一个副词子句时，便有Xo（有如）或XZZkn`e j c Xo（依照）的意思，例如：

E`kj ɸoaa dks da ZXj XZppda s Xu da `kao, ! 认边措寸婆在维呢妨蓝维谢窗。（! pda s Xu 9 Xo（

ɛps Xo bXpa` Eodkqh i aapukq pda s Xu E`e` pɛo araj e j c, y y ; , ? dnoɸa) Lkerkpɛraoɸɛbɸao! 像华球卫维认副拟窗线投（大弄灭夕险兜窗呀。（! pda s Xu 9 Xo（

EYaaj pɛej g ej c XYkqppdai hknuaXno (pda s Xu Xgè` f d ej go kbrXZXp ej , y y Hkj c RXhau! 认对乡蓝小村撒（像深夫庄泰屈函歧摇维泰屈介好当年介。（! pda s Xu 9 Xo（

此外pda s Xu还可以作dks（怎样）、dks i qZd（多么）、o ej Za（因为）等等意思来用，例如：

Pda s Xu ukq l nkj kqj Za` danj Xi a, ; j` pda s Xu ukq hkgga`, y y Hkra Hɸɸaro! 拟在维候辱窗林婴窗（碎光拟蓝摇

富束命。( ! pda s Xu 9 dks (

问题中的句子亦复如此:

Ep s Xo l epda h pda s Xu da gal pZki l hXj ej c pk d eo s da,  
! 看阶婆边点唇想婆她她班原。( ! pda s Xu 9 dks (

; j` pda s Xu oda s Xlgo, Pda s Xu oda bXj Zao damalh  
y y D, A, = Xpao) Pda Aoddbo pao! 碎光辱准静窗维庄。辱  
装灭边底窗维庄。( ! pda s Xu 9 dks (

Jk kj a , , , ZXj qj` ampXj` pda s Xu Ei eo FXra, y y  
B, = Xh s ej ) C Pa a pk I kqro! 谁似边毋传认弄当卡泰类曾豆  
窗呀。( ! pda s Xu 9 dks i qZd (

Jk s kj` an pXpcerh` aol eoao i a (pda s Xu ukq aj Zkqn  
Xca dan, y y Cboh edp! 烂干蓝群怕净瞧边鹿认 (推尖弄拟在蓝  
句放错辱。( ! pda s Xu 9 oej Za (

Pda s Xu Elkg Xp ep (ep j kps dXpukq` k pXpi Xpao  
ok i qZd, y y A, NeZa) Pda Opaap Odaa! 问摘认颇咖和窗 (   
拟颇谢窗笔边弄掉怖值死窗事。( ! pda s Xu 9 XZZkn` ej c Xo (

= qppda s Xu Elcqr a` epkqp y y Ukq oaa (E j kp ej pa  
raop a` ej plaoa` ej gu mal kni o, y y Oej ZhXen Has eo) I be O  
naap! 但弄问摘认窗泰法y y 拟毋传 (认对乡卫小边值死窗顿二  
弄边朵兴诺窗。( ! pda s Xu 9 XZZkn` ej c Xo (

Pda s Xu I n, Pdki l okj Xpa (E` kj ep pl ej g da s kqh d  
Xra dX` Xomq Xra i aXhej i kj plo, y y Nabeario Dæaop! 问  
摘妻难蓝袭狼尸告书窗维庄咖鹿尖 (认泰婆摇兜陷好鬼伐远茅陷  
抽斑戈介。( ! pda s Xu 9 XZZkn` ej c Xo (

再如:

Ep X oej pda s Xu da gaal o kj` ke j c ep y y A, ? Xh s al  
h) Bæ Bqdg! 婆边浅唇卫维份章弄忧戈。( ! 套 pda s Xu 引处肠  
摇伐碎 ep 字犬什士室童窗章握室童窗林称庄活。(



Pda s Xu cen~~to~~ balh lkn Xj ukj a s epd pda cdp kb pda cXY  
y y pdXp s Xo s dXp ai Yppana` ? kj opXYha Lhi i an, y y L,  
C, S k` adkqoa) *Pda Nki boda kbbo Qchu Lkha~~ai~~ bo!* 怕夫  
庄小喜贵蓝小邪案千窗懒日 (卫弄始寸采脚惧家分胁朵乔敲窗  
事。( ! 套pda s Xu引处肠摇伐枪各窗庄活。(

## 159. 同一意义的26种表现法

枪维摇伐宜脾（陷袭袭边枪窗披法（陷窗披寸几气（陷窗披寸景绝（陷套另适活（陷套灭哭活（耐吸陷套宿问活（但边毋益文陷当母边枪窗活法（看套尖币世枪摇伐宜脾窗，

③【集尺】因表达的方式不同，通常总有十几种不同的说法可用来表示同一个意思的。例如I , I , =nuXj p在他著的《英语的心理》（*LouddkHkcu kbAochod*）一书中，就把z把门关上à一个意思用二十一种不同的方式表达出来，即：

? hkoa pda ` kkn,

LhXoa Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

F k Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

S kqhì ukq i ej ` Zhkoj c pda ` kkn,

S dh! 故S kqhì (ukq l hXoa Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

? kqhì ukq Zhkoa pda ` kkn (l hXoa,

S kqhì ! j p (ukq hga pk Zhkoa pda ` kkn kni a,

S kj p ukq Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

F k ukq s Xj ppk Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

S kqhì ukq ZXma pk Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

I ecdpEXog ukq pk Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

Hapi a Yac kbukq pk Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

Eodkqhì ! 故s kqhì (Ya chX ebukq s kqhì Zhkoa pda ` kkn,

n,

I Xu E<sup>pkq</sup>Y<sup>h</sup>a ukq pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 L<sup>h</sup>aXoa`k i a p<sup>da</sup> b<sup>Xrkn</sup>kbZ<sup>h</sup>ko<sup>j</sup>c p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 Hapi a r<sup>am</sup>q<sup>aop</sup>ukq pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 ?<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn (ɛbukq l <sup>h</sup>aXoa,  
 Es kq<sup>h</sup> ! 故odkq<sup>h</sup> (h<sup>ga</sup> ukq pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 I Xu Eoqccaopukq Z<sup>h</sup>ko<sup>j</sup>c p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 S kq<sup>h</sup> ɸYa p<sup>kk</sup>i qZ<sup>d</sup> pk Xog ukq pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 S kq<sup>h</sup> ukq Ya c<sup>kk</sup>` ! 故g<sup>ej</sup>` (aj kqcd pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 n,

在=<sup>nuXj</sup>p这二十一种说法之外，我们至少还可以加上下列几种句式：

S kq<sup>h</sup> ukq Ya ok c<sup>kk</sup>` Xo pk Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 Es ɛd ukqɛ Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 ɛbukq kj hu Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn,  
 Dks dXl l u Eodkq<sup>h</sup> Ya ɛbukq s kq<sup>h</sup> Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn!  
 S dXpX b<sup>Xrkn</sup>ɸs kq<sup>h</sup> Ya ɛbukqɛ Z<sup>h</sup>koa p<sup>da</sup>`kkn!

这样一来，就有二十六种不同的说法了。

160. 海明威说的 “They were as old as erosions in a fishless desert.” 句中erosion一字的译法

在Dai ej cs Xu窗林字〔件日同国〕夕陷活外) z=qpj kj a kbp daoa oZXmo s ama bmaod, Pdau s ama Xo khì Xo ankodkj o ej X bōdh aoo` aoanpà. 陷日以字) z卫小闪孤茅陷摇伐弄新窗。婆考大件寸像荣听窗杀灵句窗渡娘唇充摇维。à认考悟毋杀灵句陷z九戏à(确扰陷z渡娘唇充à(国苦饰套城比头(竞苏喝宜, 屈奢犬集披。

③集尺】海明威(Dai ej cs Xu)的文章以简练著称,前人一句可长到一百五十字,而海明威每句平均只有十二字。经此千锤百炼而造成的句子,一定是用字极少,而含义颇多的。我们单就字面来翻译,多难达意,若不能把作者所用的字的涵义,完全了然于怀的话,翻出来自己也不懂,要避免错误就更难了。例如问题中的句子所用的a nkodkj 一字,确是费解的。此字我们查字典(《综合英汉大辞典》),得到四种意义,即: (/) 浸蚀,腐蚀; (0) 〔医〕溃疡; (1) 〔地质〕浸蚀作用,水流之冲毁; (2) 浸蚀区域,腐蚀部分。上面所说的那位译者,采用了第四义,似乎是合理的,因为其他三义都不合用。这样译出,虽则字句较为通顺,然而仍然是不正确的。我们还是应该采用第三义,才能符合原意,即是ankodkj, 不是z腐蚀地带à, 而是z浸蚀作用à。这个ankodkj 必须与下面的bōdh aoo发生联想,用法实带有措词上的j qXj Za, 沙漠与鱼全无关系,与鱼有关的是水,现在必须使沙漠与水发生关系,则唯有经过浸蚀作用,才能使高山变成溪谷,或是使海洋变成沙漠。在今日的内陆或高山上,我们常能发现贝壳之类,就可证明那些地方在太古时代原是海洋呢。沙漠在今日干枯得没有一滴水,自然更没有鱼的存在,可是在亿万年前,它却是一个浸在水里,鱼类丰富的泽国。由有鱼的泽国,变成无鱼的沙漠,其间所经过的年代,古老得无法算计,只好用ankodkj 一字来代表。作者以此为喻,无非是要来加强说明z古老à罢了。我们懂得了作

者的用意之后，才好进行思考翻译的方法。我认为这是不宜直译的，只能意译。如果采用中国的z沧海桑田a一个成语的话，就可译作：

卫小闪孤茅陷摇伐弄新窗。破考大菲件寸好像蓝各确变成片  
赏窗差国摇维。

## 161. tag question的表现法

⊗ Xj eZa` Xu (⊗j ⊗⊗ 卫活益文据披边呢访以成犬问活：破窗房网据披弄室活犬竭兜（队夹问活酒死套烦兜（入室活弄烦兜（望队夹问活酒死套竭兜（边毋传对边对，

③【集尺】英文的这种附加问句（pXc nq aopkj），确实不算是一个正式的问句，翻译时自应采用平叙句的形式，如问题中的句子，内容有关天气的好坏，这是有目共睹的摆在每个人眼前的事实，谁也用不着去问谁的，所以不可译作：z今天天气好，是不是？à（这样译时，就仿佛是说z你是人，是不是？à一样地冒犯对方了。）而应译成z今天天气好呀à才是道理。

第二点疑问是z肯定-否定à或z否定-肯定à的构造形式，在一般的情形，这也可以说是相当正确的。例如：

E` kj ⊗dXra pk ck pk Oqj` Xu OZdkkh(` k E ! 认边杯梅室揉许神呀。（

Ukq baahZkhì dara(` kj ⊗ukq, ! 拟货寸奖暗。（

Da` è j ⊗pXga lkj c pk` k p dXp(` è da, ! 婆茅陷当净酒爱蓝伐谢秋介。（

PdXp⊗ j kpèi l knpXj p (⊗⊗ ! 蓝伐边值死。（

Ukq dXra oaaj dèi (dXraj ⊗ukq, ! 拟和戈婆窗。（

不过这不是唯一的形式，如表示加重语气的时候，就可以采用z肯定-肯定à或z否定-否定à的方式，例如：

Kd (ukq` k(` k ukq, ! 啊（拟弄卫维窗暗。（

Kd (Oden<sup>h</sup>au oXè oki ap<sup>l</sup>ej c (è oda, ! 啊 (团看庄番  
拟披介年卡暗。 (

zOk ~~h~~a hkqj` ukq Xp hXop (i u YaXqpu (dXra E à oda  
YacXj, y y FèZgaj o! z认窗堪日盗 (认殖乡找等介拟呀! à辱绝  
寄披介。 (

z; j` da s kqh j ~~h~~ Ya l amqX a` Yu pda hX ~~h~~ao (s kqh  
j ~~h~~da, àoXè OXi, y y FèZgaj o! 片困披) z婆边会听她她考  
窗化窗。 à (

这种前后一致的构造所表现的，除加重语气外，还有惊奇的意思，例如：zDa ~~h~~ Pki, ~~h~~ da? (真想不到他就是汤姆呀。) à。这种附加问句的表现法，在英美人的口头上用得最多，而且现在越来越盛行了。到第二次世界大战以后，又产生了第三种形式，即：

Da ~~h~~ Pki : kn~~h~~ da, ! 婆弄妻困暗 (边呆窗暗。 (

说这话的人，在他开口之前，实则早已确信他所说的正确无误，可是为着要证实一下，或是由于突然发生的疑惑，所以在停顿一会儿之后，又用上一个kn的连词，再说出那附加问句来，其间所表现的心理过程，从字面上也不难察觉得出来了。例如：

Oda ~~h~~ l rapu (kn~~h~~ oda, ! 辱坡看 (谋务坡看道算完。 (

这种强烈的断定，也可用z肯定- kn- 肯定à来表现，是值得注意的。战后的这种新句型，还可以单独地用，即是在主句之后不用逗号 (Zki i X) 或分号 (oai ~~h~~Zkhj), 而用句号 (l ank`), 变成单独一句来说，也是可以的，在=, I XhXi q` 著的*Pda I bcad Bbrnah*一书中便有下面这样的例句：

Da Xpa ~~h~~apaoohu; i Xj dX pk h~~h~~a, Kn`è da, S daj  
dX da ~~h~~ap p~~h~~eo hks, LnkYXYhu j aran, ! 婆茅换打彬唇抽介  
弟。摇伐日小弄死古杀梅窗。谁似边竭凡司呀。婆喝什变寸卫维  
湿名窗，似投程尖茅陷戈。 (

在上例中前头的主句是z; i Xj dX pk h~~h~~a,à, 附加问句似应作zKndX da? à才能一致，但作者却把它说成zKn`è da? à。这并不

是语言上的转讹，现在一般用这种附加问句的人，都不大注意主句中的述语，而有一概采用`k、`è的倾向了。再举J,?, Dqj pan在其所著*S bpano kbpla I kko*一书中的用例来看：

Arahuj ) Fè ukq pdej g Es Xo mq`a (I m, S dupa, E`è  
j phi aXj pk Ya, Kn`è E(l andXl o, E`kj phi gj ks,! 翁豆紧  
披) 格敌她她 (拟货寸认她景绝暗, 认笔边弄陷宜窗。似投认妹  
微蓝维 (认装挤派边毋传。(

现在甚至还有把最普通的第一型和战后出现的第三型混合来用，而说成zDa œ Pki , œj phi da, knœ da? à的例子也见到了。也许这是现代英语的最新发展吧。



## 162. do with的三种意义及understatement

EZkqhì `k s epd i kra hæoqra pèi a, 以字) z认呢消狂翻当山  
僧窗什患。à边毋对边对, 屈酒仑巴活窗丧惯套法 (奢犬集披。

③【集尺】 英文的`k s epd一个片语, 有三种意义:

(/) 处理 (`aXhs epd, i Xj Xca) :

E`kj ɸ gj ks s dXp pk `k s epd i u hæoqra, ! 山寸荣  
界 (。

(0) 忍受 (capkj s epd, aj `qma) :

EZXj ɸ `k s epd dæ ej `kla j Za, ! 婆她检荡 (认输边介。 (

(1) 满意 (Ya oXprobra` s epd) :

?Xj ukq `k s epd Zkh i aXp lkn` ej j an, ! 球弟抽搭辱拟  
看碎论, (

问题中的句子可采用第三义, 全句应译z要再多有一点闲暇就好了à。句中的Zkqhì 是表示假设语气的。下面的对话, 也是这种用法:

zHkrahù` Xu, à! z题气章好呀。à (

z [S a] ?Xj `k s epd l haj pu kbplaoa` Xuo bñki j ks k  
j , à! z华挂死海释陷卫维窗题气酒好呀。à (

这句话就等于说zS a s kqhì hga pk dXra l haj pu kbplaoa` Xuo  
bñki j ks kj , à一样。但不明说S a s kqhì hga pk dXra, 而要说S a  
ZXj `k s epd, 是英国人说话的一种态度, 即所谓qj`anopXpai aj p  
(轻微的说法, 不尽说出)。轻微说法是夸大说法的反面, 如: zPda

u at XccanXpa pda aj ai uo lkooao Xj` qj` anopXpa pdaenks j , (他们夸大敌人的损失, 而把自己的损失说得很轻微。) à。

Faol amaj 在他著的 *Cnks pd boe Opndqma kbpdla Aochod Hbo cqbeca* 一书中说, 英语是一种男性的语言, 就举出这种 qj` anopXpai aj p 的倾向作为例证之一。照他说 zPdXpəj ʃpdXhYX , à 及 zOda ə nX pdanckk` ʰkkgej c, à 算是英语中最高的赞美的话了。欧洲大陆的人, 如法国人, 所说的 z 极度 àz 无限地 à, 英国人只用 ranu、nXpdan、l nappu 等字来表达。

英文惯用句中的 mqəpa X las Ykkg, 实际是说 X hXncaj qi Yank bYkkggo, 也算是一种 qj` anopXpai aj p。匈牙利人 Cakncal egao 是一位幽默家, 平日说的话多为夸大之词, 但是提到英国人说话不肯说到十分, 而只是出之轻描淡写的一点是千真万确的。他说别国人听到有人说了假话, 一定当面斥责 zUkq hēa, à, 可是英国人则只说 zKd, ə pdXpok? à, 或是 zPdXpə nXpdanXj qj qoqXhopknu, à。说一个女人怀孕, 英文常不直说 zOda ə s ɛdl Zdeh, à 或 zOda dXo YaZki al nac j Xj pà, 而要说 zOda ə ej pda bXi əhu s Xu, à 或 zOda ə ej X` ahZXpa Zkj` ɛpkj , à, 便是 qj` anopXpai aj p。他例如:

ʔps kqhi j ʃpdqnpda hXs j ɛbukq s Xpama` epi kna khpaj ,

照字面可译作: z你要常浇点水, 对草地是没有害处的。à 其实并不是说有害与否, 而只是劝人多浇水而已, 略等于说 zUkq i ɛdpXo s alhs Xpanpda hXs j i kna khpaj , à。

在谈话的场合, 有音调、表情及手势的帮助, 比较对英文的这种 qj` anopXpai aj p 不大会发生误解, 如果是读书的时候, 我们要特别当心, 否则是很容易要把意思弄错的。

## 163. 主语和动词在数上的不一致

微和陷zAranu l Xej o dXo Yaaj pXgaj ,! 恶坏既懈。(à窗披法(犬年卡摇伐短趣窒童(死后当趣错称, 窒童窗趣副错称窗趣(在喝袭曲什这杀(才看碎弄边摇样窗,

③【集尺】名词的l Xej 一字, 单数作z疼痛à苦痛à解, 复数作z辛苦à苦心à解。因为意义不同, 所以从前的人就把它当作两个不同的字看待, 于是在l Xej o的前面, 就加上单数意义的修饰语(如aranu、pde等), 后面接用单数形的动词, 除问题中举出的句子外, 还可以说:

; lh pde l Xej o s Xo lkn j kpej c, ! 卫摇码烂较大帮恶介。(

不过现代英文早已把这句话改说成:

; lhpdaoa l Xej o s ara lkn j kpej c,

再举一个也是当作复数来处理的例句如下:

Jk l Xej o s ara ol Xra` pk aj oqra oqZZaoo, ! 犬妹拜成凡道边斥烂既。(

英文的规则是主语名词的数要和它的动词的数一致, 不过有许多例外, 因为有些名词表面上看去是单数, 实际却是复数, 如ZXpda即是(因是集合名词), 要说z? Xpda laa` kj cnXoo, (牛吃草。)à。有些名词表面上看去是复数, 实际却是单数, 如j as o即是, 要说zJk j as o æ ckk` j as o, (没有消息就是好的消息。)à。还有许多复数形的名词, 都是当作单数用的, 如:

Es Xj pdei pki Xga XbqlhXi aj`o lkni ulkoo,! 认死婆  
产盯良猜认窗算失。(

Aranui aXj o dXo Yaaj pna`,! 更袭怕单大试戈介。(

Dan s damaXYkqp s Xo`eoZkrama`,! 辱窗食状算鞭登  
善。(

I aXohao eo`aZe a`hu ej baZpkqo,! 拒吻妹史弄纯热窗。(

I Xpdai XpeZo eo j kpdeo oprkj c l ke j p! 趣许边弄婆窗颇  
彻。(

Pda s Xcao kboej eo`aXpd,! 忧窗幢价酒弄司。(

Pki knrks eo pda oaoockj o,! 苦题绝庭。(

Kj a oqi i andkhe Xuo s Xo ol aj ps epd deo i kplan,! 陷  
摇伐跑函弄番婆母请摇继盗戈窗。(

Pdama eo Xbj a YkpXj eZ cXn`aj o ej Oej cXl kma,! 新夹朴  
陷摇伐妇好窗植务腿。(

有时把复数作为一个整体，而不作为个体看待时，也要接单数动  
词，如：

; dqj`na` i dao eo Xckk``eoXj Za,! 摇八益句弄摇伐线  
当脱窗距降。(

句中的i dao虽是复数形，其意义则为pda`eoXj Za kbXdqj`n  
a` i dao，即百里之遥，并未含有复数的观念在内，接用单数动词，  
毋宁更为适合。同样地：

Pdenpu i ej qpao eo oqbeZej p lkn Xckk`oari kj,! 摇伐  
好窗披较陷巴伐熄乔似效妨介。(

Bera`khXmo eo pda hi ep! 柔继伦顶当介。(

Ep eo oet i kj plo oej Za da`ea`,! 婆司梅巴年介。(

; pdkqoXj`geaoao Yquo i u daXnpbki i a,! 摇拿伐惹  
酒爱认窗懈爬句梅介。(

Ps k eo Zki l Xj u (pɒnaa eo j kj a, ! 结伐副商所朋抽 (散伐副商茅朋抽。 (

凡用Xj`连起来的两个名词而构成一个东西时，也要接用单动数词，例如：

?qmu Xj` nɛZa eo deo bXrkqnpa` eod, ! 婆喜贵抽饥喱弟。 (

; ZXnp Xj` dkma s Xo oaaj Xp X` eo pXj Za, ! 脱脱唇咖和摇便具茶尖介。 (

; lɥs kng Xj` j k l bXu i Xgao FXZg X` qlhYku, ! 羨抗对邱边屎摇杀 (变成邱传庄。 (

=naX` Xj` Yqppan eo i u qoqXhYnaXgbXop, ! 认听怖早测抽窗弄突陷离体窗亮百。 (

Kqn oaZnapXnu Xj` praXoqnan eo Zki ej c, ! 认考窗门邱兼会国尖介。 (

; l ej g Xj` s depa pqlɛ eo ej Ylkooki , ! 摇发固帮线患窗鱼花相绝介。 (

; j aa` la Xj` pɒnaX` s Xo ceraj dan (Yqpoda Zkqh j kɔ oas pɒla Yqppkj kj , ! 法介辱摇工潮好尚窗纹 (但辱仍边呢爱寂庄洞伤梅。 (

Aranu i Xj` Xj` aranu Zdeh s Xo bɛha` s epl fku, ! 大日深夫街大贵喜。 (

AXZd Yku Xj` cerhs Xo ej repa` , ! 利伐懒夫副怕夫大鞭说屈介。 (

## 164. DRINKA PINTA MILKA

在益歌等吹和陷丰恶文婴) FNEJ G; LEJ P; I EH G; F; U。卫  
边毋弄披窗年卡害类揉，屈奢犬集披。

③【集尺】这是由发音而影响到文字拼写的一则广告，最后的FX  
u，和普通常见的I Xu FXu、; nYkn FXu、Lkl l u FXu等等节日不  
同，并非是什么纪念日。全文用普通英文来写出时，便是zF nɛj g kj a  
l ɛj p kbi dɛg X` Xu,à, 是劝人每天喝一瓶牛奶的广告。

现就这种照发音写出的文字，逐字解说一下。量液体的单位为：  
/ cXlkj (加仑) 9 2 nɛj Xp (夸脱) ; / nɛj Xp 9 0 l ɛj p (品  
脱) ; / l ɛj p 9 2 cɛlɔ (及耳)。中国翻译的z品脱à实际是译错了音  
的，应译作z派恩特à才对，这是余话。英文说一个l ɛj p的容量，应说k  
j a l ɛj p, 正如我们买一磅的重量，就说kj a l kqj `一样，不说Xl ɛj p  
或Xl kqj `，因为是指单位的缘故。但此地的` nɛj gX, 分明是` nɛj g  
X二字拼成的，为什么会由kj a变成X的呢？一则是因为英国普通牛乳  
瓶的大小，都是装一品脱的，而l ɛj p的第二个含义是z一品脱的容  
器à, 正是这种牛乳瓶，所以应说Xl ɛj p, 正好像说X Zq1、X Ykppa  
一样。第二为着要配合后面的l ɛj pXi dɛgX的发音型，也得把kj a l ɛj  
p改说成Xl ɛj p, 这便是` nɛj gX一字的来历。

再看l ɛj pX一字。把l ɛj pkb照发音记下来，而写成l ɛj pX是很普通  
的，因为kb的子音〔r〕是不大听得见的，所以只剩下一个母音的  
〔ə〕了。至于第三字的i dɛgX, 是为求与上面二字一致，而把i dɛg X  
拼成一字了。

由于这个广告的流行，l ɛj pX一个新型的字，竟成为牛奶的代名  
词了。例如在报上说牛乳涨价时，便说l ɛj pXdXo ckj a q1, 分明是  
牛奶的广告，可是在广告中竟看不见i dɛg的字样了。

到了冬天我们所看到的宣传喝牛奶的广告是：

; S ej pXl qp nkoao ej ukqn Zdaago, ! 在存季利题府摇瓶  
离兰（始拟固愤马亮。（

简单的就是F nǝj pX S ej pX Lǝj pX的三字经。广告图案中绘有满杯的牛奶，引人注目而已。到圣诞节，更是商界最好的宣传季节，所以卖生牛奶的人也决不肯轻易放过，于是又见到这样的广告文：

At pX Lǝj pXoy y S Xni X S ej pX, ! 当府鬼瓶离兰（始拟存  
题翻犬让丽。（

所谓s Xni X s ej pX当然是s Xni an s ej pan的录音，而l ej pX居然可以加上复数了。在圣诞节的假期中，人们喝得醉醺醺的去驾驶汽车，在英国也和在美国一样，要造成许多的车祸。牛奶公司的广告也利用了这些机会，说：

F nǝra oXbahu kj i dǝg, ! 府离兰绝茶弄啊怕窗。（

对于假日气氛，他们也说：

F nǝj gXl ej pXy y dXra bǝj ! ! 府介离兰（翰茶章绝懈！（

伦敦的冬天实在阴沉得难受，人们心中都期待春天早日到来，于是牛奶公司也登出迎春的广告：

S aǝZki a l ej pX,

在这文字下面是绘着一满杯的牛奶，和黄色的水仙花，象征着春天的到临，使人见了发生安心的快感。

## XI 单字研究及辨异

### 165. awake、awaken、wake、waken

益文夕当z货蚀à集窗婴陷Xs Xga、Xs Xgaj、s Xga、s Xgaj 死伐这当（在套法伤边毋陷小在维窗盯笨，

③【集尺】这四个字确很混乱，先看看它们的形式上的变化：  
（/）Xs Xga的过去为Xs kga（偶也有用Xs Xga`），过去分词为Xs Xga`（偶也有用Xs kga）；（0）Xs Xgaj 的过去及过去分词都是Xs Xgaj a`；（1）s Xga的过去为s kga（偶也有用s Xga`），过去分词为s Xga`（偶也有用s kga或s kgaj）；（2）s Xgaj 的过去及过去分词都是s Xgaj a`。

这四个字都可以作自动词或他动词用。但（/）与（1）的Xs Xga及s Xga多用于自动，s Xga后常加q1用；而（0）与（2）的Xs Xgaj及s Xgaj 多用于他动。

在用法上Xs Xga比s Xga q1 要来得lkni Xh，例如说zEXs kga XYkqpi e` j ædp（我半夜醒来了。）à，比说zEs kga q1 XYkqpi e` j ædpà要正式些。

而Xs Xga及Xs Xgaj 则通常用于比喻（bcqnXpra）的意思，如zPda j Xpe+kj Xhol enp Xs kga（kn s Xo Xs Xgaj a`），（国魂觉醒了。）à。但Xs Xgaj 及s Xgaj 二字，因容易和过去分词混淆，所以人们爱拿它用于l Xooera rkeZa（被动态），即通常多说zEs Xo s Xgaj a` Yu ep（我被惊醒。）à，而少说zEs Xo s Xga`（或s kga、s kgaj）Yu epà。其实s Xgaj 为Xs Xgaj 的变形，用法与Xs Xgaj 相似。



兹再分别例解如下：

**As bga:**

EXs kga kj a i knj ej c Xj ` bkqj ` i uoal bXi kqo, y y H kni =unkj ! 认摇彩蚀尖 (登货认算成林介。 (

Pdau Xs kga pk plaen ` Xj camo, ! 婆考货偿等陷去嫌。 (

EXs kga X ~~happa~~ X ~~pan~~ bkqn k ~~zlk~~ Zg, y y Cooej c ! 认在死什戈挂摇词酒蚀介。 (

Da Xs kga bki Xj ~~dh~~ oekj , ! 婆程工泰夕蚀尖介。 (

此字如作形容词用时，则为Xolaal 的反义词，如：

Es Xo s e a Xs Xga Xhj edp ! 诚闻柠蚀确呢入睡。 (

Da ~~eo~~ X ~~s~~ Xuo Xs Xga pk deo ks j ej paraop ! 婆对装挤窗脚她弄示殖险宜窗。 (

Da s Xo ~~bq~~ hu Xs Xga pk pla ` Xj camo, ! 婆产盯货偿等去嫌。 (

**As bgaj :**

Da s Xo Xs Xgaj a ` pk X oaj oa kbd eo l koepkj , ! 婆险宜等介婆剥那唇群窗值死识。 (

Da dX Xs Xgaj a ` pdXpi knj ej c bki Xolaal Xo ` aal Xo Xj j edeXpkj , y y DXni u ! 婆蓝题早晨程司介摇懊窗属睡夕蚀尖。 (

~~Hapo~~ Xs Xgaj dei pk pla ei l knpXj Za kb pla XbXen, ! 仁认考爱卫事曲窗值死恶贫婆 (碎肯怠后。 (

**S bga:**

Epo pi a lkn ukq pk s Xga q1 Xj ` Xppaj ` pk ukqn Yqoej aoo, ! 善在拟死鹿尖梅伤傲坚。 (

; p hXopkj a i knj ej c s daj p laus kga ql p lauoXs Xod  
d XpXj Zdknej p la YXu, y y Os ep! 殖乡陷题早晨婆考鹿尖什  
咖等介摇添吵浅必在国请句。（

; lhj Xpma oai a` oq` ` aj hu pk s Xga,! 照伐窗大装绕好  
像偷绕蚀尖介。（

LhXoa s Xga i a! ql (Xpoet,! 屈在苦晨鲸什候认鹿  
尖。（

Es Xo s Xga` Yu p la okqj ` ,! 认鞭蓝声太尽蚀。（

Da s Xo pkk ` qlhp k Ya s Xga` Yu p laoa s kn` o,! 婆她薄  
介（卫小化似听边措。（

### **S bgaj :**

Es Xo s Xgaj a` Yu X Yqop la, y y Oparaj okj ! 认鞭蓝声太  
吵蚀介。（

Da s dk ohaal o ej Zkj pj qXhj kœa œ s Xgaj a` Yu o daj Z  
a, y y S , F , Dk+s alho! 在边点吵难夕睡梅窗日会台偷绕窗荒冀  
道尽蚀。（

Es Xgaj a` ! ql (aXrhu,! 认妇早酒蚀尖介。（

LhXoa s Xgaj i a Xpoet,! 屈在苦晨鲸什候认鹿尖。（

zS Xga ql (dkj au! Dama s a Xra! àDa i kra` (Yqp` è  
j p s Xgaj ,! z蚀尖呀（请百窗！认考等介！à婆错介摇杀（但弄  
笔茅陷蚀。（

## 166. simulate和dissimulate

益文窗oēi qhXpa副`əoēi qhXpa的嬰（大字z函诸à集（入披zDa oēi qhXpao ɬaXn,à（宜脾弄z婆函诸肤慢à。道慨史取笨窗〔胁新史套益福斥此〕364卫伤陷pk`əoēi qhXpa ɬaXn摇童（似以字z函诸肤慢à（卫维结嬰谋边弄汉荣盯笨介论，

③【集尺】所询二字意义大不相同，oēi qhXpa 9 i Xga l rapaj Za k b9 ɬæcj，所以说oēi qhXpa i X j aoo就是z装疯à。Lnè a i Xu oēi qhXpa dqi dɛpu,（骄傲常伪装为谦逊。）至于`əoēi qhXpa 9 `əoai Y ɬa 9 Zkj ZaXh, 意为z隐藏àz掩饰à，例如：

Oda`əoēi qhXpa` danXj can s ɛpl Xoi dɬa,! 辱碎审尖树室辱窗订嘛。（

这个`əoēi qhXpa不如`əoai Yɬa来得通俗，但与oēi qhXpa对比的场合，习惯上都用`əoēi qhXpa，后者加上了反义前缀的`ə+，不是毫无意义的。

现比较下面两句的含义：

Da oēi qhXpao ɬaXn,! 婆史在边慢道函诸寸慢。（

Da`əoēi qhXpao ɬaXn,! 婆史在弄慢道函诸寸边慢。（

可知`əoēi qhXpa一字，意在隐匿真相，假装别的样子来掩饰，不是单纯无作用的假装而已。

## 167. habit和custom

Hks l nēZao` nXs Zqopki , 以字z街价句洛成犬懂丧à。边毋看烦, 田伐日丧惯披dXYep (社会窗丧惯披Zqopki 。弄烦陷城盯笨,

③【集尺】要分辨两者是可以这样说的, 不过dXYep和Zqopki 二字常是互相混用的, 如z习惯为第二天性à一句谚语, 就有两种说法: zDXYep (或? qopki ) eo XoaZkj` j Xpqrā,à。又如:

Ep eo deo dXYep pk i kZg Xp naħeckj ,! 测审追较弄婆窗丧识。 (

EXi ej pda dXYep kb nœj c aXrhu, ! 认陷早鹿窗丧惯。 (

Da dXo X YX` dXYep kb Xrcqej c s epd kpdan l anokj o XYk qpprdhao, ! 婆陷好同日备论浴事窗翻丧。 (

Ep s Xo deo Zqopki pk nœa aXrhu, ! 早鹿弄婆窗丧惯。 (

Ep eo pda Zqopki lknAj chœdi aj pk nXœa pdaendXpo pk l X œao, ! 益歌日陷对对怕拾漫犬交窗丧惯。 (

Ep eo pda Zqopki s epd ! 故kb (lknœcj ano pk ZdXj ca cœpo Xp? d nœpi Xo, ! 情歌日陷在内出节交根交务窗丧商。 (

Ei X a ep X Zqopki pk cap q1 Xp oet, ! 认惯怖鲸什鹿持。 (! 9 Ei X a X Zqopki kbcappj c q1 Xp oet, (

由以上诸例看来, 个人的习惯或社会的风习是都可以用Zqopki 的, 不过dXYep则是专用于个人的。通常商店里的顾客说Zqopki an, 是从名词Zqopki (作z主顾à或z惠顾à解) 加人称接尾语而变来的, 问题中的zHks l nēZao` nXs Zqopki ,à, 应译作z廉价招揽生意à才对。他如:

PdXpodkl dXo l həj pu kbZqopki ,! 蓝次难宜妇好。（

Es epd` nXs i u Zqopki bki pdXpodkl ,! 认边晚梅蓝次  
纪防句村撒介。（

商人的习惯（pda Zqopki kbi anZdXj po）即是商人的法律（hX  
s i anZdXj p），也就变成商法（Zki i anZeXhXs）了。

这个名词又可作z关税à或z海关à解，但多用复数，例如：

Epkkkg qo Xj dkqn pk capkqn hqccXca pdnkqcd pda Zqop  
ki o,! 认考窗食冷花介摇伐熄乔才听戈国吩窗好长。（

此字作形容词用时，意为z定制的à，如Zqopki odkao（定做的皮  
鞋）、X Zqopki oqep（一套定做的衣服）。

168. “This is mere apology for soup.” 句中的 apology

Pdɔ ɔ i aɪ Xl kɪkcu ɪkn okqɪ , 以成) z卫悟弄犬羹妻传脑。à 四候边听 (边毋堂在维访以才对,

③【集尺】英文Xl kɪkcu一字，通常作z道歉à或z谢罪à解，但它另外还有两个意义：一为z辩解à，一为z代替物à。例如：

Ei X a Xj Xl kɪkcu pɪ pɪla dɪkɔp ɪkn i u ɪkɪpaj aoo, ! 认台查等沙想窒日传脑。（

Pdɔ ɔ Xj Xl kɪkcu ɪkn pɪla ? dɪnɔpɪXj nɪhɪɪɪkɪj , ! 卫弄犬瓜呆较备集窗。（

而问题中的例句正是此字的第三种意义：

Pdɔ ɔ Xi aɪ Xl kɪkcu ɪkn okqɪ , ! 卫伐史在边成骑犬羹妻。（

意即有名无实。英国人吃茶考究，有时在茶馆里吃的茶太不够味，他们就要骂，说那个哪里是茶，简直是猪食（dɪkɪ+s Xod）。美国的总统；YnXdXi Hɪj Zkɪj , 讨的太太不贤慧，有泼妇之名，弄给他吃的茶简直吃不得，于是林肯说：

ɪpɪɔ ɔ Zkɪɪa (ɪ ɪaXoa Ynɪj c i a oki a pɪX: Yqɪpɪpɪɔ ɔ pɪX (ɪ ɪaXoa Ynɪj c i a oki a Zkɪɪa, ! 入柜卫弄饥吊 (酒屈隆镑膊尖法认：入柜卫弄膊 (酒屈隆镑饥吊法认。（

可知他太太拿给他吃的，只是Xi aɪ Xl kɪkcu ɪkn pɪX (ɪkn Zkɪɪa a) , 实在不成其为茶或咖啡呢。再如：

Da`arəao Xl kłkcəao łkn s ɟ`ks ZqnpXɟ o,! 婆拿法套婆  
务幢闪车坐。(

ɸə X oX Xl kłkcu łkn dXp! 卫弄摇伐量琴窗漫庄幢套  
领。(

169. business、calling、employment、occupation、profession、trade等作“职业”解的字

字z午松à集窗益文陷Yqoj aoo、ZXhij c、ai l hkui aj p kZZq l Xpkj、l nklaoockj、pnX a第（边毋套法伤陷喝盯笨，

③集尺】=qoj aoo是由z终日忙着在做à的事，变成职务，再由职务变成职业，通常指以营利为目的的职业，例如：

S dXpə ukqnYqoj aoo, ! 拟窗午松弄年卡, (

Pdamə ə Xi Xj s dk i Xgao XYqoj aoo kbə! 陷日碎城犬羨松。(

?Xhij c原义为z天职à, 同rkZXpkj 一样颇为崇高的字, 唯来源不同, ZXhij c是条顿字, 而rkZXpkj 是由拉丁文来的。此字原有上帝所命的职业那种意思, 但后来也用作赖此为生的普通的职业了。例:

; i Xj kbəppamə lklks o pda j kYlaopZXhij c s deZd Xj u i Xj ZXj l qmoqa, y y S, I, PdXZganXu! 文日程事乡日街看犬窗肋鹅商窗午松。(

Ai l hkui aj p是由z雇佣à而转变成的z职业à, 常有雇佣的关系存在, 此字比kZZql Xpkj 显得要短暂些 (i kra pai l knXnu Yqoj aoo), 例如:

Pda bədanəao Xra ei l knpXj p (ceej c ai l hkui aj ppk 3. . . l amkj o, y y OpXpaoi Xj ə! 游松弄妇值死窗 (看碎始柔拿日获寸午松。(

KZZql Xpkj 是指一般人日常所从事的事业, 不问种类如何, 一时的或经常的 (pai l knXnu knracqlXnai l hkui aj p) 皆可。例如:



Oda eo X pul eo p Yu kZZql Xpckj ,! 辱弄打婴退。 (

PaXZdej c eo Xj qj l nkbpXYha kZZql Xpckj ,! 较邱弄荣脚看投窗午松。 (

Da dXo j k bt a` kZZql Xpckj ,! 婆茅陷该兜窗午松。 (

Lnkbaoodkj 意为有专门知识的需要,应用智力的职业 (ej palhaZp qXhl qmoqeo), 原来只限于神学、法律、医学有关的职业,才可称为l nkbaoodkj, 但后来科学发达,属于专门知识的范围增广,此字也就用得更广了,如律师、医师、教师、僧侣、作家、工程师、军人、伶人等皆可以用。

JXcXk s Xo pda okj kbXl duoZeXj (Xj ` s Xo a` qZXpa` lkn d eo bXpda n l nk+baoodkj, y y H, DaXnj ! 鲜始弄摇群咬能窗盗庄 (似许介海测该请窗午松。 (

PnX a是指工商方面的手艺 (i Xj qXhpnXej ej c Xj ` ogedh) 上的职业,以营利为目的的,如Ykkgoalia n p nX a (书业),一般指木工、石工、泥水匠、铁匠、烤面包的商人、订书匠、屠夫等等。

Pdau baoda` Xo ebpdau dX Yaaj Ynkqcdpql pk pda p nX a, y y F, ; , Brkq+ a! 婆考冬听窗剥尽灭滑 (心绕弄婆考程深许会窗剥食摇维。 (

此外可作z职业à解的,还有l qmoqeo ZnXlp. XrkZXpckj 等字,一并说明如下: Lqmoqeo此字常用复数形,意为专心从事或一心去研究的学业,如hpanXnu l qmoqeo或Zki i anZeXhl qmoqeo、` Xdu l qmoqeo等。

Bodej c Xj ` dqj pj c s ana pdaen qj eranoXhl qmoqeo, ! 游可弄婆考摇懊窗午松。 (

Da ` arkpa` dei oalbaj prahu pk hpanXnu l qmoqeo, ! 婆怕较程事文许难输。 (

? nXlp是指需要有极其熟练的手艺之职业:

Pda s kngodkl eo pda kj hu naXhoZdkkhbk nXdXj`eZnXhp  
y y P, D, Dqtlau! 摇袭逝死怕供几陪窗食松悟陷在史哈供字窗  
供场句才看许等。（

;rkZXpkj 原是指的z副业àz嗜好à说的，不过通俗常把此字用作  
z本职àz职业à。

I n, =nks j eo X hXs uan (Yqps npj c opknao eo deo XrkZ  
Xpkj, ! 残践随难弄摇伐究能（但省飞事弄婆窗富松。（

170. in the dark和 in the darkness

z满在富拜句似呢咖和à摇童（以字zPda ZXpZXj oaa ej pda`Xng+j aoo,à该看（但顿犬zPda ZXpZXj oaa ej pda`Xng,à翻好。边毋犬年卡看套什容称窗`Xng幢闪林称窗`Xngj aoo,

③【集尺】英文的形容词有好几种情形是可以作名词用的，问题中的`Xng便是名词，不是形容词。至于为什么宜用`Xng的名词，代替`Xngj aoo的名词，在解答这个问题之前，须先把`Xng和`Xngj aoo两个名词的含义弄个明白。两字皆有z黑暗àz秘密àz无知àz暗色à等义，唯`Xng一字独具z夜（j ecdp）à及z日暮（j ecdpXh）à的意思，所以上句要改成ej pda`Xng（9 Xpj ecdp），正是为此。猫在夜里极微弱的光中把瞳孔放大，便能见物，如果到了完全的黑暗中，它也是什么都看不见的。在下列各句中的`Xng全是作z日暮à解，不可以改为`Xngj aoo：

Pdau s dhZki a dki a Yalkna`Xng,! 婆考黑乡揉默仑灰纪。（

E` kj ꞑck kqpXhpan`Xng,! 闻患认边肠抗。（

Pqnj pda hcdpkj Xp`Xng,! 题富什绝幢。（

问题例句中的ej pda`Xng，是一个成语，有z在黑暗中àz一无所知à的意思，例如：

JkYk`u paXZdao i a Xj` EdXra pk cnkl a XYkqp ej pda`Xng,! 荣日较认（悟寸拜夕快坡。（

Pda Yhj` Xra` aopj a` pk hra hknaran ej pda`Xng,! 觉日灭兜死在富拜夕戈摇薄庄。（

Pda ukqj c i Xj ɵ ej pda`Xng macXn` ej c dɵ bXpda n ɵ l l Xj o kna` qZXpj c dei ,! 蓝秋年怕绕边毋婆该请打品在维尖较徒婆。（

Gaal dei ej pda`Xng XYkqppda i Xpan, ! 蓝事边死仁婆毋传。（

强调黑暗的意思时则多用`Xngj aoo, 例如:

S a s Xlga` pkcaplan ej pda`Xngj aoo, ! 认考枪在富拜夕准静。（

Pda opXmo odej a YndheXj phu ej pda`Xngj aoo, ! 在富拜夕她和石愤补烂。（

Pdeɵ ɵ` dharaj pXo hcdphki `Xngj aoo, ! 题吐这笨。（

在《圣经》的《马太福音》第二十五章第三十节有: z; j` ZXop ua pda qj l rkbXYla oarrXj p ej pk kqpan`Xngj aoo: pda ma odXlhY a s aal ej c Xj` cj Xodej c kbpapd, à. 中文《圣经》翻译为: z把这无用的仆人, 丢在外面黑暗里, 在那里必要哀哭切齿了。à这似乎是译错了的, 因为这个kqpan为qppan(完全)的古写, 不应译成z外面à, 虽则qppan和kqpan同为kqp的比较级, 但根据英美文人引用时的用法, 就可明白其含义, 例如:

Ep s Xo Xpkj Za kj a kbpda odXi ao Xj` kj a kbpda l nrđ acao kbcXn` aj ej c (oda pdkqcdp (pdXpkj a s Xo l qp ej pde ck` hga l koepkj kbfq` cai aj p (` aZè ej c ql kj s dXpodkql` ` hra Xj` s dXpodkqh Ya ZXop ej pk kqpan`Xngj aoo (` ahr anej c i knXhfq` cai aj pXj` Xj Xlkceao, y y ; , S dɵkj

这是说决定让什么花草留下, 把什么花草拔去(即照字面说的z投入完全的黑暗〔地狱〕中去à)。A, I , Bkmpan把它说成zpdkoa j Xop u = khodeao Zki a Xj` pXga epkbbXcXej Xj` pldmopi a Xoe` a ej pk pda kqpan`Xngj aooà。至于; h kqo Dqt hau则只保留kqpan`Xngj a oo二字, 而说成zkj hu pk` ɵXl l aXnXcXej Xli kop ej opXj phu ej pk p da rkè kbkqpan`Xngj aooà。这儿所说的`Xngj aoo, 当然不止是z黑暗à而已。

凡指经常的情况则用`Xng，指一时的情况则用`Xngj aoo，例如：

I kop Zdeh maj Xna XbnXe` kb pda `Xng,! 大当趣窗深夫庄  
大慢富拜。（

EZkqh` j kp oaa pda dkqoa l rkl anhu YaZXqoa kb pda `Xn  
gj aoo,! 台大富拜（认茅陷咖柠幢蓝屋庄。（

171. a horse、the horse、horses、the horses

益文窗奇听林称（边呢像夕文摇维唇当套（杯是在仑亮夹竿称（故在婴委夹成短趣（但卫维摇尖酒陷介死袭边枪什士。屈黑卫死袭什士窗套法光过它剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】当我们把z书是有用的à一句中国话译成英文时，若译成z=kkg eo qoabq hā就错了，必须加上一个不定冠词，改成z; Ykkgo eo qoabq hā才对。或者说成复数的z=kkggo Xma qoabq hā也行。如果我们说到某一本特殊的书，我们就得换用定冠词，因为定冠词有特定的意思，使那一本书从普通一般的书中分开，而特别提示出来，如zPda Ykkgo eo qoabq hā（这本书是有用的。）à。不提别的书，单就这本特殊的书来说的。如果特别指定的不是一本书，而是好几本书时，就可说zPda Ykkgo Xma qoabq hā（这些书是有用的。）à。这儿举出的X Ykkgo、Ykkgo、pda Ykkgo、pda Ykkgo，便是问题中所说的四种不同的形式。

名词前面加的冠词是可以把它当作形容词看待的。如X或Xj 是代表kj a说的，说kj a语气重，说X、Xj 时语气就轻了。定冠词pda是代表pde或pdXp的。我们如果不用冠词，而改用其他指示形容词当然也可以，如zCera i a oki a Ykkgo pk naX，（给几本书我读。）à。句中的oki a是代表一个未定的数目，你想要把数目指定，当然亦无不可，如zCera i a ps k kn pdma Ykkgo pk naX，（给我两三本书读。）à。

有了这种基本知识，我们不妨进一步来探讨引申的用法：

! X (; dkma eo Xqoabq hXj ei Xh

! Y (Pda dkma eo Xqoabq hXj ei Xh

! Z (Dkmao Xma qoabq hXj ei Xho,

! ` (Pda dkmāo Xra qoabq hXj ei Xh,

(X) 例是以一匹马以概其余，表示任何一匹马都是同样的有用。(Y) 例用的定冠词，是代表一个族类，意指凡是马都是有用的。(Z) 例用复数是马的z总称ā，当然指的是所有的马，和(Y) 例说的z凡是马ā的意思一样。( ` ) 例的说法实较之(Z) 例更为精确，是将(Y) (Z) 两种用法合并在一块儿的。这个有z总括ā的意思，通常较为少见。但说dkmāo和说pda dkmāo，到底有什么不同呢？据N, =, Hkj c 著的*Pda Oaopoda boe Fp Lbrp* (/74/ 年出版) 一书上说：z有定冠词的复数普通名词和无定冠词的复数普通名词，其分别不太明显，人们不常感觉得到，但在基本上它们是有差异的。例如说Pd a Cari Xj o dXra dX` prkqYla s epd Xhpdæn j aedYkmo, & 是指的德国全国的人，就国民的整体来说的(Xj Xpdkj Xhcnkql ej c)，不含有个人的意思(ej ` erè qXhCari Xj o) 在内。如果说Cari Xj o Xra ckk` s kngam, & 就是指的所有个人，不是对德国一般人的看法，而是就个别来看的。这样说，并不是说所有的德国人(aranu Cari Xj ) 都是X ckk` s kngan, 自然是包含有例外在内的。à (1, 07 3)

## 172. turtle和tortoise

I Xng Ps Xej 在婆窗装纯汽深披 *Pda Cerao pprao kbDqdglaYan nu Bəo* 摇邱夕（披婆深什怖梅找 *pqnpa* acco 尖抽。卫伐 *pqnpa* 弄勿日高郎（各弄勿保鸠，田 *pqnpa* 同 *pknpkea* 枪弄日高（的慰陷喝边枪，

③【集尺】英文的 *pqnpa* 一字，一般人都认为是指海龟，即所谓鳖的。最有名的海产物玳瑁，英文便叫作 *DXs goYəhpqnpa*。《综合英汉大辞典》上对 *pqnpa* 的解释：（/）雉鸠，（0）蟪龟。把鸟放在第一义，这是不大妥当的。美国通用的《韦氏新世界辞典》上说，*zoaX ol aZəo Xra qoqXlhu ZXlha` pqnpa*, *Xj` lxj` ol aZəo Xra qoqXlhu ZXlha` pknpkea`*，意即海产的叫 *pqnpa*，陆产的叫 *pknpkea*。还有，这辞典指明作斑鸠解的是古老的用法（*XrZdXeZ*）。

I Xng Ps Xej 生在密苏里州的乡下，那儿离海岸起码有一千公里之远，绝不可能有海龟生长的，所以有人认他所吃的不是海龟蛋，而是斑鸠蛋。这种说法也不一定可靠，应当还是译作乌龟蛋比较正确。因为美国作家对 *pqnpa* 和 *pknpkea*，并不一定遵守海产和陆产的分别来使用，而常要随便混用，试就现代作家 *Fkdj Opəj YaZg* 为例，他说海龟时用的是 *pknpkea*，说陆龟时又用了 *pqnpa*，全与辞典上的说法相反。例如：

*Daj nu l kej pa` pk X cnaXp pknpkea Xolaal kj pda oqnbXZ a (z; j` s dXpəo pda pXYla kbpda pqnpa, àda Xoga` ,! 和 Opəj YaZg* 字窗 *Eql kbCkle* 纯的伟夕国退在喊国什窗台化。（

;*j` kran pda cnXoo Xppda rkX oè a X lxj` pqnpa ZnXs l a` ( , , , Pda pqnpa aj para` X` qoprkX Xj` fanga` epaibXl kj c ( , , , ! 和 Opəj YaZg* 字窗 *Pda Crbl ao kb S nbpl* 纯散伟。（



至于辞典上说**pqnpa** 9 **pqnpa`kra** (斑鸠) 是古老的用法, 只是因为它见诸《圣经》z所罗门之歌à (第二章第十二节):

Bkn (lk (pda s ej pan eo l Xop (pda nXej eo kran Xj ` ckj  
a: pda lks amo Xl l aXnkj pda aXnpd: pda pi a kbpda oej cej  
c kbpda Yen` o eo Zki a (Xj ` pda rkeZa kbpda **pqnpa** eo daXn`  
ej kqn lXj ` ,

用法虽出自古书, 但不能阻止今人不引用它, 如英国的剧作家Fk  
dj rXj Fnpaj 在/721年发表的一个剧本就题名为zPda RkeZa kbpda  
a Pqnpaà (《斑鸠处处闻》)。总之, **pqnpa**是指乌龟还是指斑鸠,  
要看前后文才能决定, 而**pqnpa**与**pknpkea**二字, 也时常混用, 并没有  
多大的区别。不过**pk pqnj pqnpa** (底部朝天翻转过来) 一个成语 (参  
考K, Daj nu说的dah lao Xo X **pqnpa** kj eo YXZg), 却不能改为**pk  
pqnj pknpkea**, 而北美产的一种供食用的龟pannXl ej , 也不能说作**pq  
npa**或**pknpkea**, 因为种类不同呢。

### 173. difference和 discrepancy

z卫伟〔论童〕陷结袭边枪窗集市à摇活（市成益文犬zPdara ɵ X` ɖ̪araj Za Yaps aaj p̪la ps k ej parl rapXp̪kj o kb̪p̪la oXi a ZdX l pan kb̪Eko b̪q̪d̪bo Cob̪h̪aɖ̪ɔ,à（边毋以文弄烦握妹，

③集尺】译文尚可，不过如将`ɖ̪araj Za一字换成`ɵZnal Xj Zu就更恰当了。英文的`ɖ̪araj Za是作z不同àz差异à解的一般的用语，例如：

Pdara Xna i Xj u` ɖ̪araj Zao Yaps aaj Aj ch̪od Xj` ? d̪ej  
aoa,! 夕益文陷妇当窗肠艺。（

Pdara ɵ X` ɖ̪araj Za ej Fkdj ɕ Xj` Pki ɕ daɛdp! 员  
跟副石怜窗那鹅边枪。（

至于`ɵZnal Xj Zu则是指的二者间应同而不同的地方，应该是协调的而竟发生矛盾，例如一个人的收支应该是相抵的，现在弄得入不敷出，就说zPdara ɵ X` ɵZnal Xj Zu Yaps aaj i u at l aj oao Xj` i u ej Zki a,（我的收支不平衡。）à。《论语》章句的含义原应只有一种，今竟发生两种解释，也是不应该的，所以最好是说：

Pdara ɵ X` ɵZnal Xj Zu Yaps aaj p̪la ps k ej parl rapXp̪kj  
o kb̪p̪la oXi a ZdXl pan kb̪Eko b̪q̪d̪bo Cob̪h̪aɖ̪ɔ,

Oi ɸd̪说`ɖ̪araj Za是最不一定的（ej` ab̪j ɸa），? nXY Y说`ɖ̪araj Za是表示原因上的差异的。则`ɵZnal Xj Zu原是有一定的，不应有任何差异的原因存在，孔子说的话，绝无模棱两可的地方，只是后人不了解他的原意，才发生解释上的差异。

## 174. rise、 arise、 raise、 rouse、 arouse

益文错称陷 $\text{m}\text{o}\text{a}$ 、 $\text{X}\text{m}\text{o}\text{a}$ 、 $\text{nX}\text{o}\text{a}$ 、 $\text{nkqoa}$ 、 $\text{Xrkqoa}$ 柔伐婴（宜脾大肠边当线枪（边毋套法伤陷小年卡肠笨，

③集尺】现分别举例说明如下：

**Neoa**：为不规则变化的自动词，过去式为 $\text{nk}\text{o}\text{a}$ ，过去分词为 $\text{m}\text{o}\text{a}$  j，反义词为 $\text{lxh}$ ，可译作z上升 $\text{az}$ 升起 $\text{a}$ ，用于继续向上升的场合，比如说 $\text{capql}$ 要正式些（i  $\text{kma lknri Xh}$ ）。说日、月、星辰、鸟、云、雾、热气、地势、寒暑表、物价等的上升时，或坐着的人起立，睡着的人早上起床，生病的人发烧，微官升到高位等时用的：

$\text{Eqoa}^{\text{`}} \text{pk lga oaa} \text{c pda oqj m}\text{o}\text{a}$ , y y F,  $\text{Nqog}\text{ej}$  ! 认程仑妇喜贵咖揉肠。（

$\text{Da rk}\text{o}\text{a} \text{pk s alZki a}$ , ! 婆鹿那尖瞎后。（

$\text{Mki klXj ci XNG}$ ,  $\text{m}\text{o}\text{ao} \text{pk pda da}\text{ædp kb07}$  (.. 0  $\text{laap}$  ! 掷啦践据乏鹅侈的汹恢拿零的拆。（

$\text{OqcXndXo m}\text{o}\text{aj XZaj pXl kqj}^{\text{`}}$ , ! 糖摇白怎摇盯。（

$\text{Pda l akl la rk}\text{o}\text{a XcXej opda kl l m}\text{o}\text{odkj}$ , ! 日民鹿道蒂棘兽迫。（

**Anoa**：为不规则变化的自动词，过去式为 $\text{Xrk}\text{o}\text{a}$ ，过去分词为 $\text{Xn}\text{o}\text{aj}$ ，可译作z发生 $\text{a}$ ，是一个庄严的字，也是一个较古的字，主要在比喻时用，今多用于诗及夸张的文体中。说日月东升，风起云涌，波澜翻动，乃至事态、问题、困难、疑虑，迫害、结果等发生时用：

$\text{Okkj da Xrk}\text{o}\text{a Xj}^{\text{`}} \text{halppda nkki}$ , y y P,  $\text{DXn}^{\text{`}} \text{u}$ ! 苹规婆鹿那准肠点患梅介。（

; ZZè aj pō Xnəa hki ZXrahaooj aoo, ! 事飞当提边深懈道鹿。 (

I Xj ucraXpi aj dXra Xnəaj hki dqi Yha Yacəj j ə co, ! 投当为大窗日务肠那趣挥。 (

I Xj ujas bXZpō dXra Xnəaj, ! 登难介投当新窗事史。 (

**Nbeəa**: 为规则变化的他动词, 可译作z举起ā。普通常用的字, 但较həp略庄严些, 屡用于比喻上, 说眼、头、手、帽、石头、重物、梯、柱、纸鸢、沉船、物价、税率、名誉、反语等时用:

NXəa ukqn nēd p dXj ` , ! 剪鹿拟窗天怕。 (

Pda i kpkriZXno nXəa XZikq` kb` qop, ! 前茶霜苍。 (

Da nXəa` dēo chXoo pk dēo hē o, ! 婆剪镑等沉卑。 (

Pda oqj gaj odd s Xo nXəa` pk pda oqriXZa kb pda oaX, ! 沉吵算晴见鹿等国亮尖介。 (

Pda fkgā nXəa` X hXqcd, ! 蓝审化引鹿股审。 (

Da nXəa` Xj kYfaZpkj, ! 婆套肠艺吸。 (

NXəa` ə Xoi XhI è s aoparij pks j (da s aj ppk Jas U kng Xppda Xca kbaēd pəaj, ! 婆成彻乡夕撒便窗摇伐深哑 (你八凭什仝万理员。 (

Kqnokhē eam nXəa` pda oēaca kb pda hkn pYu` nēj c Xs X upda aj ai u, ! 认讲吓勤大日 (道黑死民集全。 (

**Nkqoa**: 为规则变化的他动词, 可译作z唤醒ā惊起ā。此字发源于狩猎, 用叫喊及打拍等去把躲藏在巢穴或矮树中的野兽惊起, 故常有因惊恐或打扰而受激励, 起而活动的意思:

Aranu paj p n k q o a` Yu p d X p Z h X i k q n` n a X , y y O d a h a u ! 利伐异刘大犬蓝看慢窗赖根声颇尽鹿。 (

; j pkj u d X ol kgaj s kn` o s dēZd n k q o a` p d a i k Y p k b q n u, ! 啊村老披窗化 (始门习大犬订嘛。 (

Es Xo nkqoa` Yu pda palal dkj a,! 认鞭电化难蚀。 (

Pda` kco nkqoa` X` aan bki pda Yqodao,! 可群爱躲在把佩存夕窗敬夺肠尖介。 (

Dan Zq nkoqu s Xo nkqoa` ,! 辱窗好莫懈鞭引鹿介。 (

Pda ej oqlp nkqoa` dei pk Xj can,! 蓝侮描始婆难气。 (

**Ankqoa:** 为规则变化的他动词,可译作z激动az唤起a。前述的nkqoa用于具体的意味,而Xnkqoa则用于比喻的意味,如果要塞的守军在深夜听到一个声音,只能把他从梦中惊醒(Xnkqoa),使他恢复意识,如果他更进一步要去追寻那声音的来源,立即自己武装起来,准备对敌,那时就说那声音nkqoa dei,而不单是Xnkqoa dei了。

Dan l rappu Zkpdao Xnkqoa` qo,! 辱坡看窗俗服过鹿认考窗险宜。 (

Pdaen pameYha oqlbanj c Xnkqoa` kqn l qu,! 婆考窗既烂引鹿认考窗枪曲。 (

## 175. worth和 worthy

益文窗 s knpɔl 副 s knpɔl 的 婴 (枪犬什容称 (宜它田枪弄 z 值寸窗 à (边毋在套法伤陷喝盯笨,

③【集尺】 英文的形容词大别为两类，一类叫作 l mǎ` éZpǎra X faZpǎra (叙述用法)，另一类叫作 XppnǎYqǎra X faZpǎra (限定用法)。大部分的形容词是兼两种用法的，如 khǐ 便是 (例如说 zDa ǎ khǐ ,à 是叙述用法，说 zDa ǎ Xj khǐ i Xj ,à 是限定用法)，但有某些形容词是只限于一种用法的，如 XhnXè 则限于叙述用法，我们只能说 zDa ǎ XhnXè ,à , 不能说 zDa ǎ Xj XhnXè i Xj ,à 。问题中的 s knpɔl 与 s knpɔl 两个形容词用法上最大的分别即在此。现分别例解如下：

(/) **S knpɔl** 为叙述形容词，后可接用宾语 (KYfaZp) 。

①意为 z 值得 à:

Dǎ s knǐ o Xna s knpɔl j kpǎZa, ! 婆窗化值寸险宜。 (

Pda cXi a ǎ j kps knpɔl pda ZXj ` la, ! 值边寸梅谢。 (

; Yenǐ ej pda dXj ` ǎ s knpɔl ps k ej pda Yqod, ! 当寸边入善寸。 (

②意为 z 可值 (若干) à:

El Xè lǎra ` khXno bkn pǎo l éZpǎra (Yqpǎo s knpɔl i kr a, ! 认花柔元句窗卫毒路 (但破值翻当窗伦。 (

ǎ j kps knpɔl XZaj p ! 边值摇文。 (

③意为 z 有价值多少的财产 à:

Da ǎ s knpɔl Xi dǎkj ` khXno, ! 八泗概人。 (

Da`ea` s knpd i dñkj o,! 婆晴杀鬼八泗窗表不司介。(

④常下接动名词用:

Pdeø Ykkg eo s knpd naX ej c,! 卫邱值寸摇对。( ! naX ej c宜兽伤窗宾童犬剥活室童窗Ykkg。(

Jas Ukng eo X Zepu s knpd reøej c,! 理员值寸摇替。( ! reøej c宜兽伤窗宾童犬X Zepu。(

Hda s kqh j ðYa s knpd hr ej c s epdkqp hr ej `odd ,! 茅陷友踏日难弄值边寸戈古窗。( ! hr ej c宜兽伤窗宾童犬剥活室童窗hda。(

S dXparan eo s knpd `kej c XpXl heo s knpd `kej c s alh,! 底弄值寸谢窗事(酒值寸谢好。(

⑤偶然也有下接不定词用的时候:

Ep eo Xo i qZd Xo i ul hXZa eo s knpd pk hap dei oaa ep ! 仁婆咖和介(认窗弟式酒拜边显介。(

⑥后面又可接用zs dda、kj aδ s dda、s dda - 动名词à:

Fk oki apdej c s knpd s dda,! 谢词陷套窗事。(

Da s dhi Xga ep s knpd ukqn s dda,! 婆会始这边吸究恶拟窗烂较窗。(

Ep eo s knpd s dda oaej c pla i qoaqi ,! 蓝博务新陷咖窗价值。(卫活同披zPda i qoaqi eo s knpd oaej c,à枪它。但边看披zEp eo s knpd oaej c pla i qoaqi ,à故zPda i qoaqi eo s knpd s dda oaej c,à

在s knpd s dda后通常接用动名词,但在s knpd kj aδ s dda后则通常接用不定词。比较:

Ep eo s knpd s dda oaej c pla i qoaqi ,

Ep eo s knpd ukqn s dda pk oaa pla i qoaqi ,

又s knpds dda写作一个字时也可作限定形容词用，如：

Xs knpds dda Ykkg! 值寸摇对窗邱（

Xs knpds dda abkn! 值寸放肠窗欧较（

Ukq kqcdppk ol aj` ukqnpi a kj oki a s knpds dda naX` ej c,! 拟堂敦花小什患梅对陷价值窗邱。（

但如作叙述用法，则必须分开作为二字，如：

; hpd eo bqooj c eo dXn hu s knpd s dda,! 卫摇码拒地弄边值寸窗。（

(0) **S knpdu**为限定形容词，后可接它所修饰的名词，也可接用kb, 或zkb- 动名词à, 或不定词：

①意为z有价值的àz可敬的à:

Da dah o kj hu pda s knpdu l kn, ! 婆悟生闲蓝小看黄窗忙日。（

Kl l knpj epao s ara l nkrè a` Yu s deZd l kn Yqps knpd u opj` aj p Zkqh s kng kqp XhZkop kbl ej c,! 忙既道看网酒窗许难看获寸基会供对（相等怕便窗难古恶套。（

〔注〕这种用法常用于反语，如Xs knpdu aj ai u（不值一击的敌人）、Xs knpdu caj p ai Xj（大好佬）等。

②意为z值得的àz应得的àz相宜的à, 后面常接用kb

Pda l hZa eo mqpa s knpdu kb X r eo p ! 蓝唇对值寸摇替。（

Da eo Xi Xj s knpdu kb l nXeo,! 婆弄摇伐值寸糙万窗日。（

He Lk eo Xl kap s knpdu kb pda j Xi a,! 冷帮弄摇伐林富骑史窗大十日。（



③下接zkb- 动名词à:

Pda araj pə s knpdu kbYaɕ c nai ai Yamə̀, ! 蓝事值寸果他。 (

〔注〕zs knpdu kb- 动名词à与zs knpd - 动名词à的两种形式，不可混乱，在s knpdu后要用LXooera的Camqj`，而在s knpd后就要用；Zpəra的Camqj`，但其意义仍然是被动的。比较：

Pda Ykkg ə s knpdu kbYaɕ c naX, ! 边看碎披s knpdu kt naX ɕ c (

Pda Ykkg ə s knpd naX ɕ c, ! 边看碎披s knpd Yaɕ c naX` (

④下接不定词:

Pdə ə Xi Xpan s knpdu pk Ya Zkj oè arà, ! 卫事值寸教括。 (

Da ə s knpdu pk haX ! 9 pk pXga pda haX (, ! 婆妨银各谢尽处日务。 (

## 176. 关于“水”流的声音和动态的字

揉怖和等故套等窗z朋à酷窗声太故错塔（益文币善卫小曲什窗婴束更陷边枪（屈盯笨剪礼披苦。

③【集尺】从人身上说起，z汗流浹背à是s appd nkqcd s epd l aml e nXpkj，z泪如泉涌à是zPda paXmo tkks a` hga X tkqj pXej，à。z在雨中淋湿一身à是cap` naj Zda`，z淹死à是Ya` nks j a`。z河流泛滥à叫ej qj` Xpa或kran tkks 或tkk`，z泉水起泡à叫YqYYla。z小波纹à是nd l la，z大波浪à是s Xra或oqma，或Yd tkks。z波涛汹涌à是pda` Xodej c kbs Xrao，z浪花飞溅à是zPda oaX ol nXuo ol hXoda` kj pda YaXZ d,à。z流鼻涕à是oj erah，而z涕泗交流à则说z=kpd paXmo Xj` oj erahn qj` ks j pda bXZa,à。z小儿吃液体食物吃得满脸都是à就叫作` neYYha +l qoo (9 X bXZa s epd` neYYhao kj ep)。人的z口水（唾液）à叫oXle rX，z流口水à便说` nkkh z浇花à是ol nej gla tkks amo，z濡笔à是` d p da l aj ej ej g。z洒泪à是oda` paXmo，z洒水à是ol dhs Xpan，z覆水难收à是zP eo j k qoa Znuj c kranol dpi dg,à。z他在淌汗à是zDa eo kkvj c os aXpa，z伤口出血à则说zPda s kqj` kkva` Ytkk`，à。z下牛毛雨à叫` nevla，z下大点雨à就说zNXej balhej Yec` nkl o (或pkma j po)，à。俗语说zP eo nXej ej c ZXpo Xj` ` kco (9 l epZdtkngo)，à，z阵雨à就说odks an。形容z雨声à说l Xppanj c或` nd l ej c。z水的一滴à是X` nkl，但持续不断地滴就可把石头滴一个洞，那时英文说z? kj op Xj p` nkl l ej c s aXmo pda opkj a,à。在日常说话中形容少量的液体也说X` nkl，如：

DqoYXj` ) I Xu EdXra oki a i kma Zkhaa,

S da) E okmu, Pdamao fqopX` nkl lah p OdXlhEi Xga oki a i kma,

DqoYXj` ) Jk ( ` kj pYkplan,

持续不断一点一点在滴的就说`nd l ej c, 是从动词`nd 来的, 如果z屋漏à (hXg) 就是zPda nXej s Xpan eo `nd l ej c pdkqcd X ZnXZ g kj pda Zadej c, à, 那时你可以听到`nd l ej c j kəa。通常下大雨时, z水从屋檐上落下来à就说zPda s Xpan `nd o hki pda aXrao, à。

z细水长流à或z涓涓细流à英文是preZgla, 如:

Pda Ynkkg preZgla` pdkqcd pda rXhau, ! 深溪在肃故患系系酷梅。(

PaXmo preZgla` `ks j danZdaago, ! 将酷马亮。(

由水流而引申到人潮等的流动, 如:

; j dkqnYakma pda odk s l akl ha YacXj pk preZgla ej pk pda pdaXpra, ! 绝竖仑摇深什日考绝示散散结结唇进入色新。(

OqYoZnd pkj o Xra preZghj c ej , ! 订当拖拖道尖。(

Pda ej hkni Xpkj preZgla` kqp, ! 曲什慢慢唇圣经肠尖。(

用水冲洗就说hquod, 所以z抽水马桶à叫hquod pkedap, 用过之后用水冲洗就说hquodej c pda pkedap, 母亲常要对孩子们说:

= a oqra pk hquod pda pkedap s daj ukq Xra pdkqcd, ! 拟集戈怕果想死触具强。(

水从某一个地方冒出来就说cqod, 例如:

Pda s Xpan cqoda` kqp kb pda YmaXg ej pda l d a, ! 朋管敏介(陷朋慢肠尖。(

流水潺潺的声音叫cqmla, 但声音更响的就用cXmla, 如我们早起漱口(nj oa pda i kqpd), 但喉咙痛时就得用药水漱口, 如:

; ) EdXra Xokqn pdkXp

= ) PdXpo pkk YX , F è ukq prucXmchj c Hopanj a,

; ) Jk, E` è j q

=) PdXpi ædpdañ ,

喷出来的水由小而大的有ol epy onqepy ol epy ol kqp, 如z吐口水à叫ol ep, 小孩子玩的z水枪à叫onqepcqj 9 s Xpanl eopkh, 喷水小一点的说onqep, 大一点的说ol ep9 ol qrp, 如公园中给游人喝的自来水涌出的情形。喷水喷得更大的就说ol kqp, 如鲸的喷水, 或喷水池的喷水。

## 177. content和contents

夕文披窗z旅容à益文以字Zkj paj p故Zkj paj po（但边毋当趣同短趣在套法伤陷喝盯笨，

③【集尺】此字通常是用复数，意为：（/）内面所有的东西、内容、囊中物，例如：pda Zkj paj po kbX nkki（房间里面的东西），pda Zkj paj po kbX Ykt（箱子东西），pda Zkj paj po kbX YXc（囊中物），pda Zkj paj po kbX Ykppda（瓶中物）等。（0）书籍、报纸、杂志、公文等的的内容，或内容的目录，例如：pda Zkj paj po kbX Ykkg（书的内容），X pXYha kbZkj paj po（目录），z; Zki l lapa Zkj paj po eo pk Ya tkqj`ej Rklqi a Eà（第一卷有全部目录）等。

用单数时，意为：（/）要旨（aooaj peXhl qnl knp），真义（naX hi aXj ej c），例如：pda Zkj paj pkbX ZdXi pan（一章的要旨），pda Zkj paj pkbX opXpai aj p（声明要旨）等。（0）与形式（tkri）对称的内容（oqYopXj Za），例如：pda ai kpekj XhZkj paj pkbXl k ai（一首诗的感情丰富的内容）。

Pda Zkj paj pkbdeol aaZd s Xo ckk`（Yqppda tkri s X o j kp! 婆窗竖伙称旅容妇好（但籍房边滑。（

Pda ?dej aoa Xra ej kn`ej Xpahu tkj` kbpda`nXi X（Xj` pda è aXho Xj` i qZd kbpda Zkj paj pkb l hXuo Xra ZhXooeZXhe j ZdXnXZpan! 夕歌日弄馆骑百好色火窗（摇小色火窗礁泰光大巴窗旅容大弄赋候握抢窗。（

Pda Zkj paj po kbpda s krgo qoa` Yu X zpXlgan kbYkkgoa s ana s nppaj Xj` opq`ea` Yu oZdkhXro,! 披邱日颇套窗化剥（旅容大弄提文日珠省道夹碎研竟戈窗。（

此字的单复数在用法上还有一种分别，即单数多用于抽象的内容，如：pda Zkj paj pkb pda Zkq moa（课程的内容），而复数则用于具体的内容，如：z; YXc s epd epol naZekqo Zkj paj po s Xo i eo ej c,（一个内有重要物品的皮包不见了。）à。但对同一物有时用单数来指z容量à，用复数来指z内容à也是可以的，如量米的斗，它的Zkj paj p（容量）是一斗，里面也许只有五升米，我们就说它现在的Zkj paj po（内容）是五升。又如张其春著的《翻译之艺术》一书，它的Zkj paj p（内容）是谈的翻译，而它的Zkj paj po（目录）则是三章，每章七节。

说一本书或一份报的内容（即z思想内容à或z形式和内容à）也要用单数才对。

Pda Braj Zd j as ol Xi an eo Xhs Xuo oet l Xcao ej Zkj paj p  
! 法歌鼻争旅客陷鲸卫。（

Pda aooXu eo at Zahaj p Ykpd ej bkni Xj` ej Zkj paj p  
! 蓝临文伟什士同旅客大妇好。（

Pda Zkj paj p kb pda XnpZha eo j kp ZhaXn, ! 城文过它边  
苦。（

Pda opkru dXo l haj pu kb pdkqcdp Zkj paj p ! 卫临飞事妇  
陷脾泰旅客。（

S a i qop YXoa kqn fq` cai aj pkj pda Zkj paj p kb pda Yk  
kg, ! 认考杯是碎城邱窗旅客犬瓜著尖杀毛点。（

## 178. 名词单复数的意义不同

益文陷小林称台当短趣窗边枪（道什成宜它伤窗肠艺（屈爱卫  
袭林称窗摇小怖套窗婴（剪礼披苦摇杀。

③【集尺】单复数意义不同的名词，常用的有下面这些字：

！当趣（

X rēZa惜恶

Xen结气

Yaab离辱

Zklkq n命侧

Zki 1 Xoo第全、勿南纹

Zkj paj p马效

Zq opki 懂漂

` nXq cd p簿告

hknZa较恋

ckk` 删

cnkqj ` 徒唇

enkj 钱

！短趣（

X rēZao消死

Xen o神气

Yaara o离

Zklkq m路证

Zki 1 Xooao圆封

Zkj paj po旅客

Zq opki o吩碰

` nXq cd po撒谁起

hknZao便旦

ckk` o固务

cnkqj ` o工据、礁提

enkj o两呀

lappan文婴、邱十

lappano文许

i Xj j an塔多、对法

i Xj j amo交礼、丧漂

j anra神睛、唇较

j anrao神睛戈面

l Xej 既敲

l Xej o械既

l Xnp便盯

l Xnpo才呢

l duoēZ丝领！沙勿师丝（

l duoēZo务礁许

l mai ɛa仑套

l mai ɛao点屋

nq Xnpan死盯这摇

nq Xnpano素慕

napq nj 广各、灰尖

napq nj o躺脚、产鼻

oXlp暑

oXlpo暑类

oXj `杀

oXj ` o杀推

oZXla拆多

oZXlao题另

ol aZpXZla愤加

ol aZpXZlao束景

ol enp换神

ol enpo懈甲

s kng供字

s kngo供材、基盛、供事

现举数例如下：

Hap i a cɛra ukq X l ɛaZa kb X rɛZa, ! 容认法拟摇伐惜  
恶。（

Pdau mɛZaɛra` X rɛZao bki l kɛraɛj Zkqj pɛao nacq bXrl  
u, ! 婆考睛怖爬等歌情窗消死。（



F kj ꞑcəra ukqmaɪbXəŋ, ! 边死神气。 (

Da l Xooa` dɛ at Xi ɛj Xpɛkj s ɛd lhuɛj c Zkɪkqmo, ! 婆成  
凡唇听戈介教试。 (

I n ; ɛ Xi Xj kbləppəŋ, ! ; 随难弄文许纪。 (

Da `kao j kpgj ks ckk` i Xj j am, ! 婆边措交礼。 (

Da pkkɡ cnaXp l Xɛj o ɛj pɪla a` qZXpɛkj kb dɛ Zdeh nɛj ,  
! 婆对乡盗怕窗较徒妇械既介。 (

Da ɛ Xi Xj kbl Xɪpɔ Xo s aɪhXo Xi Xj kbj anra, ! 婆弄  
摇伐陷才敢田陷唇恋窗日。 (

Ukq i qopnɪəp dɛj anrao ləmp ! 拟纯摇寸哑兜婆戈面窗  
神睛。 (

Da ɛ ɛj ckk` ol ɛnpɔ, ! 婆妇停纪。 (

Ukq i qopj ꞑYa ɛj hks ol ɛnpɔ, ! 拟边看宜气消沉。 (

## 179. 表“群”的字

在益文夕和等陷 oZdkkhkbs dXlao 副 Zkhlaca kbYaao 窗林糙 (边毋勿窗弄年卡许神,

③【集尺】任何一个学校或学院都是集合多数人在一起的，所以 oZdkkh 和 Zkhlaca 二字，都有 z 群 a 的意思在内，问题中的 X oZdkkhkbs dXlao 是说 z 一群鲸 a，X Zkhlaca kbYaao 是说 z 一群蜜蜂 a，并非指学校或学院而言。表示 z 群 a 的意思的英文字眼，由名词不同而有各种不同的说法，兹分类举出一些常见的用法如下：

吩乡日窗)

Xcnkql kbl akl ha! 日 (

XZrks` kbl akl ha! 日 (

Xpdrkj c kbl akl ha! 日 (

XZkj Zkqma kbl akl ha! 日 (

Xi qhpaq` a kbl akl ha! 日 (

XcXlt u kbYaXqpao! 堪怕 (

XcXj c kbs kngi aj! 供日 (

XcXj c kbohXrao! 礼教 (

XcXj c kbl məkj am! 毛帝 (

XcXj c kbpdearao! 深桥 (

XcXj c kbrkYYam! 琴央 (

Xl kooa kbl kha! 家偿 (

XYaj Zd kboZdkhXmo! 许慰 (

XZkhaaca kbpXj oHXpkm! 访以慰 (   
 XYaj Zd kbYædkl o! 母能 (   
 XYaj Zd kbfq`cao! 法分 (   
 XYaj Zd kbi XcæpnXpao! 伤彻 (   
 XYkXn` kb` enaZpkm! 读事 (   
 Xnaci aj pkbokhi eao! 事必 (   
 Xprkql a kbi ej opaho! 食贪慰 (   
 Xprkql a kb` Xj Zao! 跳如纪 (   
 Xprkql a kbXZpkm! 竖退 (   
 Xprkkl kbdkmai aj! 气事 (   
 XZkq` kbdkmai aj! 气事 (   
 Xdkn` a kboXrXcao! 四乐日 (   
 XpreYa kb; nXYo! 八拉闭日 (   
 Xl XZg kbpdeao! 深桥 (

吩乡务窗)

XZkhaZpkj kbnahZo! 速务 (   
 XZkhaZpkj kbZqnkoepao! 战莫 (   
 XdkopkbXZprepao! 古错 (   
 Xcnkql kbæhXj`o! 的幼 (   
 Xoanao kbaraj po! 事见 (   
 XcXhXt u kbopXmo! 石素 (   
 XZhqopan kbopXmo! 石素 (   
 XoaX kbZkq`o! 外国 (   
 Xcnkra kbpmao! 佩拉 (   
 XZhi 1 kbpmao! 佩拉 (

XYalp kb pnaao! 佩拉 (   
 XZdXej kbi kqj pXej o! 末酒 (   
 XnXj ca kbi kqj pXej o! 末酒 (   
 XnXj ca kbdeho! 深末 (   
 XZhpopan kbdkqoao! 点屋 (   
 Xdq` ` ha kbdkqoao! 点屋 (   
 XYXpZd kbYmaX! 亮百 (   
 XYqj Zd kbcnXl ao! 其旗 (   
 XYqj Zd kbhks amo! 花 (   
 XYqj ` ha kbdXu! 敢簿 (   
 XYqj ` ha kbopZgo! 补言 (   
 XYkqmqap kbhks amo! 花数 (   
 XZdaopkb` nXs amo! 柔答归 (   
 XZhpZd kbacco! 冠到 (   
 Xhaap kbZXro! 前茶 (   
 Xhcdp kbopal o! 吉气 (   
 Xhcdp kbopXero! 精气 (   
 Xhcdp kbXerl hXj ao! 钓基 (   
 XodaXbkbcnXej! 故务 (   
 XodaXbkbs daXp! 深惧 (   
 XodaXkbXrnks o! 合 (   
 Xmqer an kbXrnks o! 合 (   
 XopXZg kbZknj! 故类 (   
 XopXZg kbs kk`! 拉乔 (   
 XopXZg kbXri o! 武旅 (

XdaXl kbopkj ao! 拾乔 (   
 Xj aopkbYaXgam! 才寄镑 (   
 Xl XZg kbZXn` o! 争忙 (   
 Xl XZg kbh~~ao~~! 官万 (   
 Xl XZg kb~~pkq~~Yhao! 拒地 (   
 Xl Xng kbZXmo! 前茶 (   
 Xl Xng kbXn~~ph~~aru! 大练 (   
 Xl aXhkbYa~~ho~~! 熄声 (   
 Xnkl a kbl aXn~~ho~~! 战掷 (   
 Xopmj c kbl aXn~~ho~~! 战掷 (   
 Xopmj c kbYaX o! 掷庄 (   
 XodkXhkb~~b~~XZpo! 事史 (

吩乡冷窗)

XZ~~h~~kq` kbYen` o! 冷 (   
 XYaru kb~~m~~qX~~ho~~! 讶赞 (   
 XYnkk` kb~~cn~~kqoa! 似冠 (   
 XYq~~eh~~ ej c kb~~nk~~kgo! 帮邪学 (   
 XZXopk~~b~~dXs go! 鹰 (   
 XZkrau kbl Xn~~pr~~e cao! 烟亚 (   
 X` aoan~~p~~k~~b~~h~~l~~ s ej co! 赏兴 (   
 X` nkra kb~~p~~qnga~~uo~~! 火冠 (   
 X~~b~~Xhkbs kk` ZkZg! 末葬 (   
 X~~h~~kZg kbcaaoa! 乏 (   
 XcXc~~la~~ kbcaaoa! 乏 (   
 Xdan` kbZnXj ao! 父 (

Xi Xopankbl aXZkZgo! 剂雀 (   
 Xj è a kbl daXoXj p! 牙 (   
 Xoa` ca kbdankj o! 病严 (   
 XopXj` kbl hkram! 拿冷 (   
 Xs XpZd kbj æd p cXhao! 闻幸 (   
 Xs eol kboj d a! 葬 (   
 XhkZg kbZdeZgaj o! 冠 (   
 XYnk` kbZdeZgaj o! 冠 (   
 Xhæcdp kb` krao! 儿 (   
 Xhæcdp kbYen o! 冷 (

吩乡兽窗)

XYXj` kb` kco! 群 (   
 Xl XZg kbdkqj` o! 可群 (   
 Xl XZg kbs khrao! 狼 (   
 Xl nè a kbhkj o! 施 (   
 Xogqlg kbhkt ao! 高 (   
 XhkZg kbodaal ! 课爽 (   
 XhkZg kbckXp! 末爽 (   
 X` nkra kbZXpha! 离 (   
 Xdan` kbZks o! 离 (   
 Xdan` kbYq bXhkaao! 朋离 (   
 Xdan` kb` aan! 敬 (   
 Xdan` kbceXhaao! 彻幻敬 (   
 Xdan` kbl kj eao! 深具 (   
 Xdan` kbos g a! 四下 (

X dan` kba~~al~~ dXj pɒ! 社 (   
 X Z~~X~~pa kbYX camɒ! 袖 (   
 X` ks j kbdXmao! 涂 (   
 X haXod kbdXmao! 涂 (   
 X gɛj` ha kbgɛ~~pa~~j o! 深满 (   
 X haXl kbl~~ak~~l Xn̄ o! 板 (   
 X h~~pa~~ankbl q1 o! 深群 (   
 X h~~pa~~ankbl ɛco! 下 (   
 X bX~~nk~~s kbl ɛco! 下 (   
 Xj aopkbnXY~~Y~~ɛpɒ! 纪涂 (   
 X1 XZa kbXooao! 竟 (   
 X ohaq~~pd~~ kbYaXmo! 式 (   
 X okqj` ank~~bd~~kco! 四下 (   
 X opq` k~~bd~~kmao! 具 (   
 X p~~rk~~kl kbi kj gauo! 赶 (

吩乡处窗)

Xj aopkbXj pɒ! 夜 (   
 X os Xni kbXj pɒ! 夜 (   
 X os Xni kbYaao! 肤 (   
 X Z~~kl~~ha~~ca~~ kbYaao! 肤 (   
 X os Xni kbl~~ha~~o! 病糖 (   
 X os Xni kbl~~k~~Zqopɒ! 蝗处 (   
 X h~~ac~~d~~p~~kbl~~k~~Zqopɒ! 蝗处 (   
 X Z~~lk~~q` kbl~~k~~Zqopɒ! 蝗处 (   
 X dɛra kbYaao! 肤 (

吩乡听窗)

XodkXhkbdamj co! 贼 (

XoZdkkhkbs dXlao! 际 (

Xmj kbs dXlao! 际 (

Xprkl kbs dXlao! 际 (



## 180. 关于“雨水”的字

据披许丧摇袭童文窗对法（酒在当鸟婴副当网活（死谢等卫结词（杯是酒陷吩末摇事务窗称汇副币善法（极夕许丧（望看爬事巴凡镑这甚。善屈酒同杀通陷吩窗婴活犬礼（字摇互稍。

③【集尺】关于雨的情形，我们可以分好几方面来说，但不外是摹声拟状，及我们对雨的感觉。讲究生活艺术的中国人，特别重视z听雨à，如z欲知白日飞升法，独坐焚香听雨中à，z留得残荷听雨声à，z悲欢离合总无情，一任空阶点滴到天明à之类，不胜枚举，而洋人则少有这样的情趣，对于z雨声à只说`nd（点滴），`nd l ej c（滴落、滴下），l epanl Xpan（啪哒啪哒声），`mji i ej c（重重打击声），ol lxod（激溅声）等等。例如：

S a daXn` pda`nd（`nd（`nd kbpda nXej，！认考听等吹尺吹尺窗通声。（

Pda`mji i ej c kj pda nkkbœ daXn` Xlhj œdp！殖闻听等大通打在屋顶伤窗声太。（

我们也最能欣赏z雨景à，如张志和的《渔歌子》：z青箬笠，绿蓑衣，斜风细雨不须归。à晏几道的：z落花人独立，微雨燕双飞。à苏东坡的z山色空蒙雨亦奇à。他如z淡烟疏雨à，白居易说的琵琶声弹得像z急雨à，杜牧说：z南朝四百八十寺，多少楼台烟雨中。à倪瓚说的z烟雨空蒙à，英文只用些简单的字来形容，毫无诗情画意。英文说的hœd p œkbp caj pda、bœj a是指z微雨àz细雨àz疏雨à说的，至于daXru、dXn`、`nrœj c、l kqj`ej c则是指z大雨àz豪雨àz急雨à。说X hœdp nXej意指落在我们身上，我们几乎感觉不到。X l kqj`ej c或`nrœj c nXej就是说重重地打击我们的雨。

； odXnl nXej s Xo YaXpœj c XcXej op pda s ej`ks +l Xj ao，  
！急通勤车。（

S daj pda oqj odj ao pdkqcd XhcdpnXej (epi Xgao X  
nXej Yks, ! 她水目戈系通什 (背陷侧干肠善。 (

; caj pda nXej eo bXhij c kj pda cnXoo, ! 趣通灭在簿唇  
伤。 (

; okbpnXej balhaga paXmo, ! 轻免窗通陷入落将。 (

; daXrunXej reopa` pda Zepu, ! 诺伤微陷翰通。 (

; oqi i an nXej khpaj hkni o X nXej Yks, ! 狭季窗通怖始  
侧干肠善。 (

; hlh hXj po crks mjeZghu s daj pda okp ol nej c nXej Zki  
ao, ! 忱通揉什 (簿拉嘛难。 y y [猪庄] (

此外还有XZkj opXj p (Zkj pj qkqo) nXej (霪雨), XZkl ekqo  
nXej (大雨), X`maj Zdej c nXej (豪雨), X dXn` opXj pj c nXej  
(斜降的暴雨), X`navhij c nXej (牛毛雨), X bji a nXej (细  
雨), Xj ej pari epaj p nXej (断续的雨), X l hqreXhnXej (大  
雨, 大量的雨), X s alZki a nXej (令人欢迎的雨) 等等。

说到z雨量à的, 英文有ohcdp (疏), X happa (微), X hkp  
(多), j kpranu i qZd (不多), kZZXoekj XhnXej o (断续的  
雨), nXej a` khpaj (时常下雨), bji a (或ckk`) s aXpdan hkn`  
qZgo (雨天) 等等。又oZXppara` nXej o原指有的地方下雨, 有的地  
方不下, 但有人又拿来说有时下, 有时不下的雨:

Epj aran nXej o Yqp ep l kqmo, ! 边通望算 (摇通求每。 - 货  
边当食。 (

S a dX X pkmaj peXhnXej hXopj edp, ! 昨闻杀介摇场般  
通。 (

; hpan hcdpj ej c Xj` pdqj` an ZXi a X daXru` ks j l kqn,  
! 老电戈挂 (大通求每道杀。 (

Ep nXej o ZXpo Xj` `kco! 故l epZd hkn go (,! 大通靠金唇杀  
或。 (

Pda j edp nXej o kj I kqj p LX os alhpda Xqpqi j l kkh,  
! 案末闻通怎取茶。 y y 冷漠谈 (

Pda Znk1 o Xra oq1banj c bki `abZeaj p nXej, ! 里字务窗通恋边妨。 (

Pda nran noao Xpan daXru nXej o, ! 大通这挂付句窗朋怎介。 (

I aapdah ej ZXoa kbohcdp nXej, ! 杀深通湾错会摘怖剪食介。 (

Hppa nXej bXho ej X`aoamp, ! 杀灵夕鬼候弄边杀通窗。 (

S a dXra dX` XcnaXp` aXhkb nXej p1eo ol nej c, ! 华年忱季杀介边母窗通。 (

S a dXra Yaaj s epdkqp nXej bkn Xlkj c pa a, ! 好净茅陷杀通介。 (

再说下雨时间的长短, 则有X hppa s dda (落一下子)、Xh` Xu (整天) 等:

Ep dXo nXej a` Xhpdas aag, ! 杀介摇伐交把窗通介。 (

Ep dXo Yaaj nXej ej c bkn p1maa` Xuo, ! 摇接散题边点唇在杀通。 (

Pda nXej dXo XYXpa`, ! 通浅介。 (

Pda nXej dXo l Xooa` kran! 9 kb (Xj` pda ogu ZhaXra` q1, ! 通戈题秋。 (

雨的大小、慢急、疏密等的不同, 而名称有异。如` n1v1a是指牛毛细雨:

Ep` n1v1ao kj Xj` kb! 离军通什杀什浅。 (

; Zkh nXej s Xo` n1v1ej c` ks j, ! 奖通联联唇杀伐边浅。 (

又ol nej gla是下微雨, 好像我们浇花一样:

Ep YacXj pk ol nej gla, ! 绝示杀深通介。 (

参考：

S a ol nǝ glǎ pda lǝs j - ol nǝ glǎ Zlkplao Yabkma ɛrkj ɛj c,! 认考在簿唇伤灭朋。故弄在毯俗什灭朋。（

突然而来又突然停止的雨叫odks an（骤雨），也可叫作X oq` ` a j ` ks j +l kq n, 有的叫X Zlkq` Yqmp, 在某些地区又称X cqlhu+s Xo dan。热带地方的大雷雨（X prkl ɛZXhnXej opkni o）常随季候风（i k j okkj）而来，故称i kj okkj nXej。

热带地方当太阳光线直射的时候，便是雨季（nXej ɛj c oaXok j），新加坡的雨季是在年尾到头。在雨季时人们都备有z雨具ǎ。

《论衡》上说：z孔子出，使子路齐雨具，有顷，天果大雨。ǎ雨具有雨伞（qi YmalhX），雨衣（nXej ZkXp或odeZgan），雨帽（nXej dX p），雨鞋（nXej odkao, Ykkpɔ, mYam, cXlkodao），披肩（nX ej ZXl a）等，都是可防雨的（s Xpanl nk kb）。

Pda ZkXpɔ l nk kbXcXej opnXej ,! 城俗看碎典朋。（

PXga Xj qi YmalhX s ɛpd ukq ɛj ZXoa kb nXej ,! 充爱明梅（碎典杀通。（

有人出门忘记带雨具，于是：

Da ckpZXqcdpɛj pda nXej ,! 投通。（

Pdau s ara ZXqcdpɛj X` ks j l kq nXj ` s ara Xlh` naj Zd a` pk pda ogɛj ,! 婆考肠抗投等大通（进寸摇那听统。（

Pda ZXi l am s ara ` naj Zda` s ɛpd! 故Yu（nXej ,! 狂异窗日鞭通进尸。（

Pdau s ara okXgɛj c s apXj ` ` nɛ l ɛj c s daj Zki ɛj c dk i a,! 婆考好像程朋缸肠尖窗维庄（灰等纪尖摇那大在吹朋。（

可是有人却满不在乎，喜欢在雨中行走：

Da pXi l a` ɛj pda i q` Xj ` ohqod kb pda nkX s Xu pɛnk qcd pda l kq nǝ c nXej ,! 婆在求每道或窗大通夕入想马传篱牢（

爵宾道食。（

大雨之后地上有行潦（一潭潭的积水），一个不当心：

Eopəl l a` ɟ Xl q` ` l a, ! 入进摇潭朋夕。（

Hkkg kq p b k n p d a l q` ` l a o ! ! 当懈入入食借。（

## 181. offer的译法

末大许许难颇士已长夕陷外) z? Xj ` è Xpao i qopkban PnXj oh Xpckj ,à 摇童 (骑夕kban摇婴斥此伤窗宜它街边赋套 (边毋在城弄年卡宜脾, 田入zPdXj g ukq lknukqngėj ` kban kbdahl ,à (卫袭套法窗kban (似边毋堂入喝以法,

③【集尺】此字可作他动词,也可作自动词,也可以作名词用。它的用法也很多,中文确实没有一个意思相当的字。譬如说,有人想请你去担任一个职务来征求你的同意,英文就说这是他对你的kban,再如他出月薪一千元,也说是他的kban,前者译作z提议à,是既生硬又不客气;后者译作z出价à,更是商业气味太重了,都未能表达原文的意思。此字的基本含义为z贡献à或z奉呈à,那是非常谦逊的。

问题中所提出的是说z学生必须修翻译课à。例如:

Pda Yku kn cerhs dk kban ? de j aoa nqj o j k nrog kbXlht j c ej pk pda oXi a amkn, ! 士夕文窗许难酒茅陷帝枪维呆误窗去嫌。(

第二问如果是说zPdXj g ukq lknukqngėj ` dahl , (谢谢你的帮忙。) à就好译了。现在说的是kban kbdahl ,只表示要帮忙,并未实际帮忙,所以只能译作z谢谢你表示给我帮忙的好意à。这个gej ` kban译作z好意à,当然也不是辞典上所能找到的。现在就此字的各种用法举例说明如下:

(/) 他动词,意为z奉呈àz贡献àz呈请àz提供àz建议àz表示àz施以àz出价à等等。但实际翻译时,并不一定能用这些字眼来译:

Pdau kban` i a Xl koqckj , ! 婆考法介认摇定肠事。(

Da kban` i a X YneYa, ! 婆想认哪狗。(

Oda k~~h~~ara` X~~h~~as è aXo pk èi l n kra pda l hXj ,! 辱套肠鬼  
词宜和尖顿进蓝伐国划。 (

AXZd Xca k~~h~~aro ep ks j i aj kbl X~~n~~po,! 很末幢陷才日  
肠。 (

Ek~~h~~an ukq XZq l kbs èj a,! 认黄拟摇镑回。 (

Da k~~h~~ara` pk ~~h~~aj ` i a pda i kj au,! 婆鸵即伦法认。 (

Da k~~h~~ara` pk ck Xp kj Za,! 婆室伪角刻酒梅。 (

Da k~~h~~ara` pk Yqui u qoa` ZX~~n~~! 婆披死句认窗悔茶。 (

EZXj cera ukq j k XooepXj Za (j aq~~h~~an s èh Ek~~h~~an ukq X  
j u kYopXZ~~h~~a, y y Prk~~h~~kl a! 认边呢罢拟冷 (似边会电肤拟。 (

Oda k~~h~~ara` j k maol kj oa, y y ; nj khì =aj j app! 辱茅陷  
蒂堂。 (

Da s Xo j kpX~~h~~nXè kb~~h~~pdaen k~~h~~an j c dèi Xj u dXri , y y  
D, I ah~~h~~ta! 婆边慢婆考肤婆。 (

S daj pda u k~~h~~ara` pk ` al X~~n~~p da aj p~~h~~aX~~h~~a` pdaen opXu,  
y y Fn, Fkdj okj ! 当婆考币世死准 (婆酒可茅婆考晚薪小  
什。 (

(0) 自动词, 意为z供奉àz发生àz呈现àz企图a等:

EodX~~h~~hZki a XcXej s daj kZZXodkj k~~h~~aro,! 投陷基会 (   
认黑晚尖。 (

Es èh j kp k~~h~~an Xp p~~h~~Xp s dèZd EZXj j kp` k,! 认谢边等窗  
事祸边部试。 (

PXga pda ~~h~~an opkl l kn~~h~~uj epu p~~h~~Xp k~~h~~aro,! 周显纯摇伐肠善  
窗基会。 (

Da eo naX u pk odkkpi a èEodkqhì k~~h~~an pk op~~h~~n, y y O  
s èp! 入柜认泰错 (婆酒绝侵。 (

I eo Lk~~h~~a dX` XZkqoj ( s dk dX` k~~h~~ara` pk I eo I X~~h~~  
pu ~~h~~kj c Xck, y y I m, CXogathl 帮深结陷摇伐币丰 (婆妇净碎

仑酒想具深结茅戈讳介。（

(1) 名词，意为z提议àz求婚àz出价àz企图ā等：

Oda dXo maqoa` oaranXhkhano kbi XmeXca,! 辱婚击介  
好鬼成窗茅讳。（

Da fqi la` Xpi ukhan,! 婆施绕后哪认窗室伪。（

Dəo khankbl nkpaZpkj s Xo` aZha` ,! 婆颇套肠窗拜护窗  
昏吸算休婚击。（

Jk khankblao p dXj X d qj` na` ` khXmo s dhYa naZaera` ,!  
肠价边效八元祸边后输。（

Pda i k`anj s Xu kb cenlo (s dk Zkqj p pdaen hkramo Xj`  
khano Xo Xj Ej` eXj` kao dəo oZXho, y y I mo, Opks a! 名床  
怕庄爱辱考窗百日碎光懒日窗茅讳边当灰事（好像坦纯啊日爬玫  
大日窗乔盟当字胜脚领四窗。（



## XII 中英不同的表现法

182. “我有三姊妹”英文说 “I have two sisters.”

z认陷散诰看y y 啊、据骄副认。à以成益文窗zEdXra pɫnaa oəpənoy y ;jj (I Xru (Xj ` i a,à (犬年卡边对郎,

③集尺】英国女作家FXj a ; qopaj 写的一篇小说《说服》(Laro qboeko), 是说的三姊妹的故事。大姊AħvXYapɫ为小说的第一人称的E, 二妹为;jj, 三妹为I Xru。在这种情形下, 如果有人问AħvXYapɫ有几个姊妹时, 她的回答一定是: zEdXra ps k oəpənoy y ;jj Xj ` I Xru,à。

这便是中国人的思路和西洋人的想法不同的地方。中国说的姊妹, 是把父母生下的女性全部包括在内, 自己自然不在例外; 而英文则重在z你有的à, 一方为持有者, 一方为被持有者, 当然不能把自己也列入被持有者的一伙中去, 说zEdXra ps k oəpəno,à, 把E加上ps k, 结果会成为三人是一定的。如果说zEdXra pɫnaa oəpəno,à, 把E加pɫnaa岂不凭空多了一人, 而变成四姊妹了吗? 从前有人讲过这样一个笑话, 孩子在学校里学了算术, 回家吃饭时, 便向父母炫耀一番。他说他能把食桌上的两只烤鸡变成三只, 父母大为惊奇, 就要他证明。于是他指着第一只鸡说, z这是一只à, 又指着另外一只鸡说, z这是两只; 一只加两只不是三只吗? à父亲大笑着回答说: z孩子, 你真聪明! 好吧, 现在你妈妈吃一只, 爸爸吃一只, 你就吃那第三只鸡吧。à这第三只鸡, 就等于上述的第四个姊妹, 是根本不存在的, 所以说zEdXra pɫnaa oəpəno,à是错误的, 我们不难明白了。

中国人对于家族观念很看重，所有语言文字上也表现出来，有兄有弟，有姊有妹，而英文却只有兄弟不分的Ynkpdan，姊妹莫辨的oəp an，一定要加上形容词的ah an或ukqj can，才能表出长幼来。他们平日又喜欢直呼其名，有时你读完整个一部小说，还搞不清楚谁是兄谁是弟，谁是姊谁是妹。尤其是英文的Zkqoj 一字，甚至连性别都不分，姨表兄弟姊妹，一概都叫Zkqoj，有时连辈分都不管的。一方面他们对于Ynkpdan一字，却限制很严，一定要是同父同母的才是Ynkpdan，同父异母，或同母异父的，都只算dXlbYnkpdan呢。

183. 不可说 “It is faithful for you to do so. ”，但又可以说 “It is necessary for you to do so. ”



③集尺】



184. “It is necessary for you to do so.” 和  
“It is very kind of you to do so.”

! X (ɸə j aZaooXnu lkn ukq pk`k ok,  
! Y (ɸə ranu gɛj` kbukq pk`k ok,  
活时线枪 (犬喝摇套 lkn ukq (摇套 kbukq 郎, 彬套边枪窗互  
称 (帽笨喝在,

③【集尺】(X), (Y) 两句都是以ukq作为不定词(pk`k ok)的意味上的主语。(Y)句可以换成以ukq为主语的造句: zUkq Xna ranu gɛj` pk`k ok,à。但是(X)句却不能换为zUkq Xna j aZaooXnu pk`k ok,à。因为这样一来, 主语和ukq后面接的不定词(pk`k ok), 完全脱离了关系(注意: 原句的主语ɸə是代表后面的不定词的), 而且ukq Xna j aZaooXnu的意思是z你这人是必要的à, 所以这个句子就不能构成一个完全的意念了。

(Y)句原本应说Ukq Xna gɛj`, 现改说ɸə gɛj` kbukq, 无非是为着要加强gɛj`的意思, 才把主语의ukq移到后面去说, 而把那具体的亲切的行为作为主体了。

关于lkn ukq与kbukq的不同, 现再加说明如下: (Y)句是说z你的行为是亲切的à, 也就是说z行为者的你是亲切的à。但在(X)句就是说z你的行为是必要的à, 却不能说什么z行为者的你à, 表解起来的便是:

! X (j aZaooXnu窗弄z食犬à道算。

! Y (gɛj`窗弄z食犬à (枪什似弄z食犬慰à。

(Y)句的意思是z他这样做是亲切的à, 同时也是z这样做的人是亲切的à。但(X)句则只能说z这样做是必要的à, 却不能说z这样做的

人是必要的à, 因为那样一来, 变成必要的是z人à而不是z事à了。因此我们现在更明白了: 我们只能换说zUkq Xra gǝj` ɲk`k ok,à, 不能说zUkq Xra j aZaooXnu ɲk`k ok,à。

同样的情形, 再举一例比较一下:

! X (ɲps Xo ɛi l kooɛYla ɬkndɛi ɲk ck Xɬkj a,

! Y (ɲps Xo ɬkkɬod kbdei ɲk ck Xɬkj a,

(Y) 句可以换说zDa s Xo ɬkkɬod ɲk ck Xɬkj a, (单独一个人去, 他是太愚笨了。) à, 还是一样, 没有什么不可。但(X) 句原意为z要他一个人去是不可能的à, 却不能改说为zDa s Xo ɛi l kooɛYla ɲk ck Xɬkj a,à。因为这样一来, 变成z他这个人(的存在)是不可能的à, 这当然不成话。再如另一个形容词Qj YaXnXYla (不堪忍受的), 也是属于这一类的。若说z这样热做工我受不了à, 应译作zɲpɛo qj YaXnXYla ɬkni a ɲk s krg ǝj ɲdɛo` naX ɬqhdaXpà, 而不可说zEXi qj YaXnXYla ɲk s krg ǝj ɲdɛo` naX ɬqhdaXpà。因为EXi qj YaXnXYla是说z我这个人使别人受不了à呢。

属于(Y) 类的, 即可以换人作主语的形容词, 最常用的有下列的一些字:

Ykhi	YnXra	ZXraɬqh	ZXraɬaoo
Zharan	Znqah	ɬkkɬod	ckk`
dkj aop	gǝj`	j ɛZa	l kɬpa
mq`a	oɛɬu	ɲlkqcdɲqh	opɲl ɛ
s ɛZga`	! qj (s ɛoa	s nkj c	ɲlkqcdɲao

再举几个例来看:

ɲps Xo ZXraɬaoo kbdei ɲk ɬaXra dɛo qi YnaɬX ǝj ɲda ɲXɛ j, ! 婆边深懈爱明王果在火茶伤介。(9 Da s Xo ZXraɬaoo ɲk ɬa

Xra deo qi YnalhXej pda pXej , 9 Dks ZXrahaoo! ep s Xo (kt dei pk laXra deo qi YnalhXej pda pXej !

Ep s Xo opql è kbdan! 9 Oda s Xo opql è (pk i Xga oqZd Xi eopXga,! 谢肠介卫维窗呆误 (辱章尤薄。 (

Ep s Xo s nkj c kbukq! 9 Ukq s ara s nkj c (pk Yknks de o YeZuZha s epdkqpXogej c deo l ani eookj ,! 边问婆酒气准婆窗侯入茶弄拟边对呀。 (

Ep e s eoa kbdei ! 9 Da e s eoa (j kppk XZZal pplaenkbha n,! 边后输婆考窗昏吸 (婆弄聪苦窗。 (

Ep e ckk` ! 9 geg` (kbukq pk oaj` i a Xj eZa l naoaj p ! 失失拟片认卫维好窗交务。 (

注意：我们不能说zEp e geg` pk` k ok,à或zEp e geg` hknukq pk` k ok,à, 因为这是不通的。我们只可以说：

Ep e ckk` pk` k ok,! 卫维谢弄好窗。 (

Ep e ckk` hknukq pk` k ok,! 拟卫维谢弄好窗。 (

Ep e ckk` kbukq pk` k ok,! 拟卫维谢弄请码窗。 (

185. 可以说“*How kind of you!*”，但不能说“*How beautiful of her!*”

认考看碎披 *zDks gɛj` kbukq! à* (犬年卡边看碎披 *zDks YaX qɔɔh kbdan! à* 郎，

③集尺】当我们说 *zDks gɛj` ukq Xra! à* 的时候，觉得在 *gɛj`* 与 *ukq Xra* 之间，似乎有些距离，而脱了节的样子，若改说 *zDks gɛj` kbukq! à* 就会发现 *kbukq* 与 *gɛj`* 有着密接的关系，是不可分离的。这就是因为：

*Dks gɛj` ukq Xra! ! Caj anXh* (

*Dks gɛj` kbukq! ! Ol aZeXh* (

一般泛泛之交毕竟不能与个人的私交相比。《孟子》上说：*z*至于子都，天下莫不知其姣也！*à* 遇到了她，人人都会说：*zDks YaX qɔɔh kbdan! à*。但没有人能说 *zDks YaX qɔɔh kbdan! à*，因为 *z* 她美 *à* 是有目共睹的 *caj anXh* 事，不能当作 *ol aZeXh* 的来加以处理呢。

我们平日说的 *zɔɔ ckk` kbukq ɔk` k ok, à*，句中的 *ckk` 9 gɛj`*，作 *z* 亲切 *à* 解，不作 *z* 好 *à* 解。因为 *z* 亲切 *à* 是属于个人的 (*ol aZeXh*)，而 *z* 好 *à* 是一般性的 (*caj anXh*)。一定要是 *ol aZeXh* 的，才能用 *kb* 什么人，否则只好用 *hkn* 什么人，参阅 182 的解答。

句中用了 *dks* 当然更是加强 *gɛj`* 的说法，说 *zUkq Xra gɛj`*，*à* 要点在 *ukq*；说 *zɔɔ gɛj` kbukq*，(*9 ɔɔ X gɛj` ɔɔj c` kj a Yu uk q, à*，把 *gɛj`* 先提出来，自然加强了它的意义。至于说 *zDks gɛj` kbukq! à*，即 *zDks gɛj` (ɔɔ) kbukq! à*，句中的 *gɛj`* 再上 *dk s*，所表现的意义，算是最强的了。



186. 不可说you are convenient!

--

③集尺】



187. “亡羊补牢”的英译

③集尺】

*u*

*I bpl̥as o' Ed̥əaoa Aoch̥əd Dəp̥kohn*



## 188. “逆来顺受”的英译

夕歌成童陷z雷尖批输à摇童（宜犬休投雷甲似吹这它绕。边毋益文在维访以才对（台长颇陷窗〔福益斥此〕大确爬陷卫活。

③【集尺】中华书局版《学生成语词汇》中收有这个句子，解释为z遇有横逆之来，只可顺而受之à。人生不如意事常八九，实在不应该遇事忧烦，自寻苦恼，所以要好自为之，逆来顺受，才是道理。英文说i Xga pda YaopkbX YX` YXncXej（或fkY）或是i Xga pda Yaopk bkj aŋ dhlkmpj a是说z善处逆境à，能利用不幸的境遇，使之转祸为福。英文解释，可说YaXnX` rama Zenzqi opXj Zao ej pda Yaopl ko oeYla s Xu，例如：

S a i qopi Xga pda YaopkbX YX` YXncXej ,! 认考堂在边脚窗曲家夕坏恋万好吹谢。（

Da s dk ZXj i Xga pda YaopkbX YX` fkY eo Xls Xuo dXl l u,! 删吹雷甲窗日弄怖渐窗。（

但英文另有一句成语，似乎更接近中文的z逆来顺受à的说法，那就是j aa` o i qops daj pda` areh` nrao（万不得已遇到恶魔开车也只好屈服），见《英华习语大全》，例如：

zS dXp (ukq Xma ej ukqn pXj pmqi o XcXej ! à oXe` oda, z? ki a Xlkj c (Oen (j aa` o i qops daj pda` areh` nrao, à y y ?, NaX a! z在卡坚（拟田登贫气介! à辱披。z边死卫维暗（胁好雷尖批输呀。à（

句中的j aa` o为一个副词，在现代英语中，只能与i qop连用，通常j aa` o i qop (`k) 9 ZXj j kpdañ (`kej c) ; (eo) Zki l aña` pk` k（必需；万不得已；必不可缺）。这个j aa` o i qop不可与i qo

pj aa` o 9 i qopkbj aZaooeu (必须, 必需) 混同, 后者常含有讥讽的 (oXnZXopeZ) 意思, 如:

Da i qopj aa` o ck Xs Xu fqop s daj Es Xj pa` dai ,! 握  
当认死婆窗什敢 (婆瓶瓶死降梅。 (

至于谚语的 zS dXp ZXj j kpYa Zqma` i qopYa aj` qma` ,à, 也是  
逆来顺受的意思, 照字面译时, 可作z无可救药的事只好忍受à。

189. “乔迁之喜”的英译

--

③集尺】





## XII I 成语的意义和用法

190. shock absorber

--

③集尺】



191. Diamond cut diamond



③集尺】

*Pk pda Hcdpdkqoa*

*Pda*

*I qoedDkqn Pabddar'o Cqæa knpda Bdpd Bkkg*

192. a Chinaman' s chance

--

③集尺】

*Al øke a ø Lbh apk*

*æ Bbodu*

*C S ki bo Ebh*

193. jam tomorrow



③集尺】  
*baed Nar khapko*

*Pda Ps k Eqhnao boe Pda Odaope*

*Pdrkqcd pda Hkkgøc Clboo*



194. take a person for granted

--

③集尺】

no bphDekobru

S aYopu'io Pdene Jas Epa

195. all Greek to me

③集尺】

*Fq<sup>h</sup>qo Ebaobn*

*Pk pda I ai kru kbI u Bal krae pda Cq pdknI n S dhab*  
*i Odbgaol abra*

*Ko Goks ec pda Deharaoda*

*Pda Ps k Eqh pmao boe pda Oda pda Nar kl*  
*q pko*

*C S n̄an'ò JkpaYkkg*

*Pda Cl l ha Praa*

196. at large

--

③集尺】



197. Scotch on the rocks



③集尺】

*S aYopuño Jas S krie Deap kobnu kbpla Ci anabo Hhocqb*  
*ca*



*Ekodaa Kt kre Dap kobru*

198. as follows



③集尺】



199. give the cold shoulder to

*Khe Eqrkoqu Odkl*

③集尺】

*Dbœu I ðlan*

*Pda Prai Ylœc kbb Habb*

*Ebgao boe Cha*

*C Røppk Jæpø b Dkqoa*

*OadnapLb1 an*

200. a number of和the number of

*Cerbodaē Habmaŋ'o Dapkobnu kbEqmaopAochod*

③集尺】 *S aYopmaŋ'o Jas S kŋe Dapkobnu kbpla Ci and  
bo Hbocqbca*

*Pda Jas Eaopmaŋ'u Dapkobnu  
Ekoda Dapkobnu kbCi andbo Crbi i  
bnboe Qobca S nŋmaŋ'o Cqæa  
boe Eeat pk Aochod*







## 出版后记

后浪出版公司

后浪出版

钱歌川 著



# 英文疑难详解 续篇



Tea  
Time

Wow



hi!

Big Ben

世界图书出版公司

# 英文疑难详解续篇

钱权川 著

## 版权信息

| 书名：英文疑难详解续篇

| 作者：钱歌川

| 书号：756+5+3374+0/44+3

| 版权：后浪出版咨询（北京）有限责任公司

# 目录

； 其 导

/, `1j mYkv的含义及用法

0, 废物的英文

1, `1j j fqj bkq的译法

2, oYfk、Y oYfk、œ b oYfk

3, 大数字的名称

4, e1kl r op 作形容词

5, 固有名词的普通化

6, j 1okfkd、Yœpokl1k、bsbkfkd、kfde q的时限

7, fkd oj Yq1k 等不用复数

/., 对美国的称呼

//, 美国钱的俗称

/0, eYsb kl Zol œ bo及eYsb kl Zol œ bop

/1, 各国人的诨名

II 春其导

/2, MZgḥ` qfsb zfcà

/3, l kbpbic的六种用法

/4, 关系代名词的位置

/5, 国家的代名词用pe b或fq

/6, l kbpbic前加介词构成的片语

/7, 关系代名词的省略

? 袜坡导、房导

0. , 虚设的否定字

0/, YiobYav和vbq

00, Ckafob` qLbdYqfl k

01, dbt 、 Y dbt , ifqib、 Y ifqib

02, ofde qZYkh l c qe b ofsbo的方位

03, bsbo和l k` b的用法

04, Y j Ykv (j bk) 和 j Ykv Y (j Yk)

05, j l ob qe Yk的用法

06, 色彩的含义和用法

07, ?asboZfYi ?` `r pYqfsb

1. , kl qpl , , , Yp, kl qYp , , , Yp

II 凡 导

1/, 被动语态的两种意义



10, 动词obYa的各种用法

11, 自动词、他动词用法的混淆

12, pr `` bba fk al fkd

13, hkl t Zbqpo

14, 以现在时态表未来

15, iYv作ifb用, iYv : `l for p

16, 某些过去动词- 完成不定词

17, il pb : d odbq

2. , 现在完成时态与过去副词同用

2/, zF b fp qe b pofkdfbpqj Yk Gbsbo j bqà和zF b fp qe b  
pofkdfbpqj Yk Ge Ysb bsbo j bqà

## V 由凡导

20, j Yv、j Yv t bii、j Yv Yp t bii

21, t l kà的来历

22, zU b afa kl qkbba q er oov,à和zU b kbba kl qe Ysb  
er oofba,à

23, Jbop kl q、Bl kàqibop、Jbop al kàq的区别

## VI 愉凡导

24, 动名词主语的格

25, MZg`q- Gdfkqfsb

26, Zb fkdqobpqa fk al fkd和Zb fkdqobpqa q al

27, dl l k al fkd和dl l k d al

3. , ifhb al fkd和ifhb d al

3/, qe b pe l bp d j bka和qe b pe l bp d Zb j bkaba

## VII 棵 导

30, qe l r de 和Zr q不能同用

31, r kqi (qii) 的用法

32, t e fib连结的复句有两种译法

33, eYoaiv , , , t e bk, kl pl l kbo , , , qe Yk前后都用过去时态

34, Yka不作连词译

35, Yp fd的用法

36, 连词pfk` b前后的时态

## VIII 记 导

37, Yol r ka和ol r ka

4. , z的ā字的各种译法

4/, l d的用法

40, e bYo l c、 e bYo ol j

41, 表接触的l k

42, fk qe b j l okfkd l cY aYv

43, d qe b bYpq、 fk qe b bYpq

44, 用于地点的Yq fk、lk

45, 用于时间的Yq fk、lk

46, Zb hkl t k后用q, 鲜用Zv

( 唱 语

47, lk æ b pfab l c æ b Ykdbip

5. , dl t bpa的来历

5/, 英文的典故

50, Y cYsl ofp pl k

51, pfj fib和j bqYme l o

52, 放屁、撒尿、拉屎的英文

53, 报时法及YZl r qd oq+fsb pb` l kap

54, kl qd o l kbp e bYiq

55, 少见的反义语

56, æ b t ofqkd l k æ b t Yii

57, fcvl r mibYpb的含义

6. , Yp pr`e 的用法

6/, YqY`ol ppol Yap

60, æ fpj v pl k

61, ifkdbo Gbsbo pl iYq

62, pkYml kbɒ fkdɒp

63, 分词- æbj l j bkq

64, obpqel j b、obpqel r pb、obpqol l j

65, æfp pfab l c

66, nr ii r mvl r o pl `hp

) 样 句

67, W r o K Ygɒpɒv后接第三人称

7. , qYd+nr bpɒl k的动词和主句中的不一致

7/, 美国的wfm`l ab

70, 新加坡的本地英文

71, 主句中有ab`fab等字时附句用假设现在

72, Gɒ r mɒl vl r 的译法

73, 英美学校用语不同

74, 同格的属格

75, 宕辞

76, 喜怒哀乐的说法

77, Ll Zl av t fii Zb æb t fpbo

/... , Bl vl r hkl t l cY el ɒi?

/./ , Gɒfp Yk fii t fka æYqZil t p kl Zl av dl l a

/ . 0, 表现特性的加强形容法

/ . 1, 女人也称呼为j Yk

/ . 2, 美国话的简略

/ . 3, 单句、复句、合句彼此转换

/ . 4, 混合而成的句法

/ . 5, 男人说成女人

/ . 6, 宗教是民众的鸦片

/ . 7, 俗体字句

// . , 新闻英语的表现法

/// , t ofqpk Ckdifpe 和pm1 hbk Ckdifpe

//0, MBfYj 1ka! BfYj 1ka! Rel r ifqib hkl t bpq qe b  
j fp`efbc al kb!

//1, 一句英文两种含义

//2, 句否定和字否定

//3, F bob vl r Yob

## XI 中庄并世搭避提动

//4, z贤内助az守活寡a的英译

//5, z长舌妇a的英译

//6, z显亲扬名a的英译

//7, z乌鹊a的英译

/0. , 英国人说的bYpq t fka不能直译

/0/, 杜诗《春望》英译之误

/00, 大鼻子的英译

! 字句污究结必著

/01, ZY h+d oj Yqfl k

/02, fj YdfkYZib、 fj YdfkYov、 fj YdfkYqfsb

/03, pbkpfZib、 pbkpfqfsb、 pbkpr Yi、 pbkpr l r p

/04, efp ol l j 和efp`l j mYkv

/05, 关于z笑à的英语

/06, 关于z猪à的英语

/07, 代Zb`l j b用的其他的字

/1. , ob`l oa的用法

/1/, `iYppf` 和`iYppf` Yi的区别

/10, 美国话中e bii的用法

/11, 英美政府首长名称的不同

/12, Zbfkd的用法

/13, mōl ar`b、 mōl ar`q、 mōl ar`qfl k的分别

/14, Yr afkd、 j fj tj bj +l j 、 fafl ib`q的含义

/15, z说à的十八种译法

) ? 东 响

/16, 英文分音法

/17, 同化作用

/2. , 动静异音

/2/, 滋生字重音的转变

/20, 前缀的轻重音

/21, 后缀的轻重音

## ) II 臂 点

/22, e v m e b k 的有无

/23, 限制用法不可加`1j j Y

/24, `1j j Y 的用法

/25, 两种括弧的用法

/26, Y m l p q l m e b 的用法

/27, a Y p e 的用法

/3. , n r l q Y q l k j Y o h p 的用法

池百鬼记

[返回总目录](#)

## I 名 词

### 1. company的含义及用法

zǒ vl r `Yk kbfcə bo ob` bfsb kl o Zbpq t Zbkbcf) vl r eYa Z  
bqpo ibYsb cə Yq`lj mYkv Yql k`b, à细句乡唱z破跟码坏并勤错村  
好尺) 袭并勤海与好尺) 码源好礼千军杰略家公吸à。 并知对更?  
心) 请祸`lj mYkv搭慌诸结邪动将堪务明。

③刻创】问题中的英文句子应译作z如果你交的朋友对你无益，你也不能对他有所帮助，你就得马上离开他à。因为句中的`lj mYkv一字，意为交友而误为公司，所以因一字之差而全文皆错。

英文的`lj mYkv有下列九种用法：

(/) 一群人 (Y dol r ml c nbl mib) ，例如：

? dobYq`lj mYkv `Yj b d cə b buə fZfql k, (在多瞥来看展落健。(

(O) 为某种目的而集合的人 (Y kr j Zbo l c nbl mib`lj Zfkb a, bpm l kb t fcə Y`lj j l k nr onl pb) ，例如：

Re b`lj mYkv Yob kl t bkg vfk d Y cbYpq (健应正亚物健中。(

(1) 同伴，陪伴 (`lj mYkfl kpe fm) ，例如：



F b hbmŋj b`lj mYkv, (赏密摆了俗。 (

(2) 交友 ( `lj mYkfl kp) , 例如:

? j Yk fp hkl t k Zv qe b`lj mYkv eb hbbmp, (看赏伤绝搭朋友) 舰可知存细个瞥搭好坏。贾朱夜赤) 贾墨夜基。 (

F fp dYqe bo Yphba efj q Ysl fa ZYa `lj mYkv, (赏纺室夕赏鞭绝损友。 (

(3) 宾客, 来宾 (Y krj Zbo l c fksfopa dr bpqp) , 例如:

U b Yob bunb`qkd `lj mYkv kbuq t bbh, (下圆目俗料夕请料。 (

U b eYsb`lj mYkv q aYv, (俗料纪平请料。 (

(4) 公司, 行号 (Y Zr pfbpp l odYkfwYql k) , 例如:

U b l odYkfwba Y mr Zifpe fkd `lj mYkv, (俗料园亦细家池百公吸。 (

(5) (陆军中的) 连 (qe b mYqql cYk Yoj v`lj j Ykaba Zv Y`YmYfk) , 例如:

Refp`lj mYkv`lj j Ykaba qe b mYppYdb q qe b d oqbp p, (液棵揭递尽制游士数夕期搭路。 (

(6) 全体船员 (Y pe fmŋ`obt) , 例如:

Re b pe fmŋ`lj mYkv Yppbj Ziba l k ab`h d o fkpnb`ql k, (全施担员亚甲板千集故) 显杯旧阅。 (

(7) 戏班 (Y mYqv l cY`ql op miYvfk d q dbqe bo) , 例如:

Re b miYv t Yp pqYdba Zv Y qe bYqpf Yi`lj mYkv, (略池异由细个异班子真池。 (

中国请帖上说的z敬备菲酌，恭候光临à，英译时也用得着`lj mYkv一字，即y y obnr bpqç b mibYpr ob l cvl r o`lj mYkv Yqafkkbo，或obnr bpqç b el kl r o l cy y ð`lj mYkv Yqafkkbo，或简单地说y y obnr bpqç b`lj mYkv l cy y Yqafkkbo。

Alj mYkv在用作z宾客à解时，前面不加冠词，不问来客有多少人，也不能用复数的`lj mYkfbp，只能说：

U b eYsb`lj mYkv Yqafkkbo, (请料车读。(

F b Yit Yvp eYp`lj mYkv l k QYq oaYv bsbkfkdp, (赏礼巴蜡晚千总夕请料。(

作z公司à解的`lj mYkv的用法，也有需要注意的地方。把`lj mYkv看作单数或复数都可以，如：

Re b`fkbj Y`lj mYkv fp (或Yob (el iafkd fqp (或 ç b f o (Ykkr Yi j bbqkd, (旦准公吸正亚业杰吗健。(

在`lj mYkv (普通略作Al,) 的前面，&的有无随便，如Qj fç 和另外的一些人合资经营一种商业，普通叫作Qj fç & Al,, 但也可以叫作Re b Qj fç Alj mYkv。凡有&的，前面不可加ç b (不可说Re b Qj fç & Al,)。如没有&，则前面用ç b或不用ç b皆可。没有姓的公司名，决不可以用&，即不可说Re b Afkbj Y & Al, 只能说Re b Afkbj Y Alj mYkv。至于Re b Qj fç & Hl kbp Alj mYkv是可以的，因为&并不在`lj mYkv字前，而是用来联结两个人名的。

单独一个公司不可说成复数，但几个公司则是要用复数的，如：q e b zFfd Re obbà sbef ib mōl ar`fkd`lj mYkfbp (三大汽车制造公司)，YçfifYçpa`lj mYkfbp (有密切联系的诸公司)。

现再就作z友伴à解的`lj mYkv举例说明一下。首先使我想到的培根 (D, FY l k) 在《谈友谊》 (Mk Dofbkapefm) 一文中说：

?`ol t a fp kl q`lj mYkv) Yka cY`bp Yob Zr q Y dYiibov l cnf q r obp,, t e bk ç bob fp kl il sb, (疲应并并婉友摆) 夕婉辆薪爱搭寒x x 略遇瞥搭另林并过婉纪伦中伤举村搭图通纪傲了。(

从前的政治家和现在民主时代的不同，他们那时还不知要捉住群众的心，而加以利用呢。现代的政治家决不会说群众不是友伴的话的。

王尔德 (Mp`Yo U fiab) 说：

Qk j Yoofba ifcb qe obb fp`lj mYkv Yka q t l kl kb, (亚黑抓巧恨中) 辆薪工子婉话气搭。(

王尔德说的这句话是从一句英文 *Nol sboZ* 套出来的逆说。那谚语说：

Rt l fp`lj mYkv) Zr q qe obb fp kl kb, (课个火屨抬如车) 恁个火屨辆如车。(

最后请看 P, Jvka 在 *Reb Qev DYqbo* 一文中说的：

Q fp kl q qe Yq Gafpifhb qe b`lj mYkv l c t l j bk Yka`efi aobk, l k qe b t e l i b) Gq fkh fq qe b Zbpq`lj mYkv fk qe b t l oia, Fr q) Yp FY l k e Yp pYfa) Y`ol t a fp kl q`lj mYkv) Y ka qe b il kbifkbpp l c Y j Yk bk qfobiv pr ool r kaba Zv t l j bk Yka`efiaobk pr omYppbp bsbk qe b il kbifkbpp l c Y j Yk fpl iY qba fk qe b j faaib l c qe b QYe YoY, (并并婉俗并叹翰薪貌瞥火工子约摆, 大概务难来) 俗卹液婉完恢源好搭友摆。并过仍根披务疲应并并婉友摆) 由貌瞥火工子暑全币水字搭且瞥搭孤话) 背等欲细瞥亚踏更九沙路冬中搭且瞥搭孤话写薪过之。(

## 2. 废物的英文

亚清可运凡统中) 看千村尺的设音薪钝物幽显免瞥料雷岛祷她。液婴亚看千或公园漫随珠雷岛搭祷她集ifqbo) 并知婉更可显乡约z钝物à? 庄样避球z钝物à搭) 憾薪遇什凉深赏搭字?

③刻创】 ifqbo并不真是废物，而是用后散置的z杂物à，即英文说的零零碎碎 (l aap Yka bkap)，或索性说是残余物 (ibYsfkdp)，例如：

?it Yvp mf h r mvl r o ifqbo Yqbo Y mf kf，(殖补鬼务祸细切杂物全拾难来。(

进而有z杂乱à零乱à的意思，如云：

Re fp ol l j fp fk Y pqYq l c ifqbo，(液房恢况雷错怪。(

此字还可作动词用，意即在房间里把东西弄得四散 (ifqbo qe fkd p YZl r qY ol l j)，或使地方不整洁 (j Yhb r kcfav r m)，例如：i fqbo Y ol l j (或 qYZib) r m 我们常听人说：

W r o ol l j fp Yii ifqboba (r m (t fqe Zl l hp，(码房恢漫况雷地弟立了扰籍。(

真正说到z废物à，英文应作t Ypq，如z废物篓à (t Ypq nYnbo Z Yphbq)，z废物利用à (r qfifwYql k l ct Ypq j YqbofYi) 等等。美国人则把废物说成qYpe，此字也有z残屑à或z垃圾à的意思，如美国人说的qYpe`Yk，即英国人说的ar pqZfk，都是指的z垃圾箱à。美国人把他们南部的穷苦白人称为qe b (ml l o) t e fqb qYpe，可知此字又可作z无价值的人或物à解，如zRe Yq Zl l h fp j bob qYpe，(那本书毫无价值。) à。英国人则说zRe Yq Zl l h fp Yii or ZZfpe，(那本书毫无价

值。) à。作z废物à解的or ZZfpe，是用得很多的，又可用作惊叹词zP r ZZfpe！（胡说！） à。

厨房每天的残屑，就叫hfq̣ e bk oḅr pb，或简称oḅr pb。此字当然也有z废物àz无用之长物à的意思，即指一般固形的废物，不能由沟渠排泄的z垃圾à。抛置垃圾的地方叫Y ar j mfḳd dol r ka或Y ar j mfḳd+niY b d o or ZZfpe或Y or ZZfpe ar j m或ar j mvYoa。z禁倒垃圾à则说zLl ar j mfḳd,à。因为ar j m的意义为z倾弃àz倒下à，例如：

U e bob`Yk Gar j ṃq̣fp or ZZfpe？（久矫可显顶亚什凉地方？）（

W r j r p̣q̣kl q ar j ṃq̣ bob,（码切缩顶亚略漫。（

上面说过无用的东西是废物，无用的人也是废物，凡是社会上的寄生虫，人间的渣滓，就叫作er j Yk t Yp̣q̣ (: abZofp)、aobdp̣l c ṃl ṃr iYq̣l k、ḷα̣p̣`l r ofkdp̣l cer j Ykfq̣、aol pp̣l c j Ykhfka、q̣e b p̣`r j l c pl`fbq̣、Y+dl l a+d o kl q̣e fkd等等。美国人说的el Zl（流氓，无业游民），当然也是指的这种寄生虫，至于说过了气的人，便是：

F b fp̣ kl t Y ze Yp+Zbbḳà,（赏提闲唱钝物。（即婉务赏闲尖l r q̣fsba e fp̣ r pḅr ikḅpp̣。

原为z破烂物à之意的g kh，俚语中也可以作z垃圾à或z废物à解，如：

F fp̣ t ofq̣kd fp̣ Yii g kh,（赏搭约沙细样并益。（

F b g khba Yii e fp̣ l ia α okfq̣ ob Zbd ob j l sfkd fkḍ e fp̣ kbt el j b,（赏亚把入新肃之念）把健搭家降冬约钝物全岛而了。（

### 3. commitment的译法

片根学共慰总势亚片根教育蝇搭样告中务：zGk qe b iYpq ab`Ya b) e l t bsbo) t b eYsb pl r de q d r idii qe b dl Yi t fqe dobYqpo wb Yi) dobYqpo`lj j fqj bkq) Yka dobYqpo pr``bpp qe Yk YqYkv m bofl a fk l r o e f p d ov,à 句中搭`lj j fqj bkq(细字) 并知状破获乡动) 想字典千搭刻取三几的并屈邪落。

③刻创】`lj j fqj bkq是动词`lj j fq变来的名词，意义有：

(/) 犯，行，作，如：`lj j fqY`ofj b (犯罪)，`lj j fqY Zir kabo (犯错)，`lj j fqYar i q p o v (犯奸)，`lj j fqj r oabo (杀人)，`lj j fqpr f fab (自杀) 等。

(0) 委托，付诸，如：

`lj j fqY qe fkd d Y o f b k a d o p Y c b h b b m f k d (授友必搞 (

`lj j fqplj b r kap d qe b`Yob l c q r p q b b p (说授资继  
兴必搞说员 (

`lj j fqY Zl av d qe b bYoc (iYj bp ( (丽葬 ( (火葬 (

`lj j fqY Zfi (议健祸议案绝鼓说员桥程 (

`lj j fq qe l r de q d t o f q k d (祸撒邮腿池来 (

`lj j fqplj b qe fkd d j bj l ov (暗记 (

`lj j fqYj Yk d mofpl k (下狱 (

Jfr Nbf`lj j f q p a e f p pl k d qe b`Yob l c A e r I l + i f Y k d,  
(刘杯授孤兴诸国亮。 (

Re b j Yk t Yp`lj j f q p a d Y i r k Y q f Y p v i r j , (略瞥闲  
悲散入隔瞥院。 (

(1) 承担，如：

ǂvl r Ydobba ǂ dfsb Y kr j Zbo l cib`qr obp) e bimǂ nY  
v vl r o Zol ǂ bǂp p`elli bumbkpbp) Yka dfsb vl r o t fǂ \$ 3.  
. Y vbYo d o`il ǂ bp) vl r e Ysb nr fǂ Y il ql c`lj j fǂ bkǂp,  
(破跟码世珠砵约细棵充搭讲真) 创状海耽耽搭伟多) 心务乏海  
太太每吗碎吧许石音新下) 略凉) 码舰薪了并少搭菲掉。(

(2) (由束缚身体之意转为) 牵累，陷入，献身 (absl ǂ l kbp  
bict el iiv ǂ)，如：

Bl kl q`lj j fqvl r opbic, (缩欲陷累) 并夕日肥欲华。(

`lj j fql kbpbicǂ Y mǂlj fpb (委诺言搭渐日 (

F b t l ria kl q`lj j fǂefj pbicfk Ykv t Yv, (赏并愿委素  
获方另搭学日。(

F b eYp`lj j fǂǂa efj pbicǂ ǂ b`Yr pb l c bar`Yǂl k,  
(赏题蓄兴教育洵习。(

上面第四种解释，正是问题中所需要的。全句可译作：z在过去十年中，我们比历史上任何时期都要更加热心地，更加献身地，更加成功地，想要来达成这个目标。à

新加坡的李光耀总理为新加坡人所下的定义说：

? QfkdYml obYk fp Y nbopl k t el dbbip`lj j fǂǂa ǂ r n  
el iafkd pl`fbǂ Yp fq fpy j r iǂf+oY fYi) ǂ iboYkǂ Y`lj j l  
aYǂkd) d ot Yoa+il l hfkdY Yka t el fp mǂbmYoba ǂ pǂYhb ef  
p ifǂ d o ǂ b`lj j r kfǂ, (细个新加闪警舰婉细个对提敌搭多  
许婴族) 坡拼哈由) 顶心勤高洋远优搭听健) 显题蓄搭坚敲来支  
持上) 并愉杯眼上鼓池巧奇搭警。(

句中用了`lj j fǂǂa一字，报纸上把它译成z献身的à，是译得很正确的。

GZbifbsb ǂ Yq Zl ǂ `YkafaYǂp pel ria j Yhb fq YZpl ir q  
biv`ibYo ǂ Yq ǂ bv pe Yob Y ZYpf`lj j fǂ bkqǂ ǂ b pr``b

pp l c q̣ b k b d l q̣ Y q̣ l k p k l t q̣ Y h f k d m i Y b f k N Y o f p, y y B b j l  
` o Y q̣ m o b p f a b k q̣ Y i k l j f k b b F r Z b o q F r j m e o b v

（俗相员课粗搭总势即维瞥）的状较对明脾地避球）赏料对  
兴等唱提亚巴满将外搭体想唱喊）降薪红卑搭言学。（想即维瞥  
断冬澎夜）浅下冬酸澎问政）译勤邪言语学日。z言学a眼中根唱  
语）举〔鬼汉扰—忘答传〕。

K o, P l v U f i h f k p p Y f a z G a b d f k f q̣ i v q̣ f k h t b o b l k l r o t  
Y v d Y k Y q̣ l k Y i ` l j j f q̣ b k q̣ a d α i i p l ` f Y i g p q̣ b d o L b d o  
l ? j b o f Y k p,

（片根基瞥等家总健忧坦研订继若务z俗脾清贫眼俗料正走同  
细个将根细致搭员诺a）夕请基婴片根瞥城朵错村听健搭公末店  
羞。（液婉务大家的创状液样）伤显乡眼z员诺a。

R e b p b ` l k a f j m b o Y q̣ s b l c l r o m l i f v d o m b Y b f p q̣ Y q̣  
t b j r p q̣ j b b q̣ l r o ` l j j f q̣ b k q̣ Y k a h b b m l r o m o l j f p b p c  
l r p b l r o p q̣ b k d q̣ d l m m l p b Y d d o b p p f l k, y y N o b p f a b k q̣ H l  
e k p l k

（俗料搭火末政策搭多夫蚀既奇）舰婉俗料必望价俗料搭诸  
务）唯俗料搭诺言）竭价伤勤）都借市略。（

T f b q̣ k Y j j Y v Z b Y Z f q̣ p b o e l Y u l o f q̣ j Y v Z b Y j Y g o ` l  
j j f q̣ b k q̣ f k q̣ b a b d b k p b l c o b b a l j ) Z r q̣ f q̣ t f i i k l q̣ d l Y t  
Y v Z b ` Y r p b t b v b i i z d r i a, f q̣ t f i i k l q̣ d Y a b Z b ` Y r p b t b Z i l t  
o b q̣ p b Y q̣ y y P b m r Z i f Y k s f b m o b p f a b k q̣ Y i k l j f k b b ? d k b t

（越切可勤婉细婴是晴搭书途）袭可勤婉亚必卫欲由中搭细  
个大搭十累）上并健想眼俗料大集升侮顶走杰）袭并健想眼俗料  
鸣继全兵顶统涂。（片根亚越养中家手维改）故乡z十累a。

R e b o b m l o q̣ p Y f a q̣ Y q̣ k b t ` l j j f q̣ b k q̣ l c S, Q, \$ 3. , 5  
j f i i f l k a r o f k d d p ` Y i v b Y o / 7 4 6 o Y f p b a d q̣ Y i f k s b p q̣ j b k q̣ l c  
q̣ b G k q̣ p o k Y q̣ l k Y i D f k Y k ` b A l o m l o Y q̣ l k ( G D, A, Ⓢ ( f k m o f s Y  
q̣ b k q̣ p o m o f p b p f k f q̣ j b j Z b o ` l r k q̣ f b p d S, Q, \$ 0 5 / , 6 j f i  
i f l k f k 1 7 ` l r k q̣ f b p, ( 细烂蜡八健计吗访新搭投资计薪碎拾况  
伸十万片许) 请错根际继评公吸亚深健员根搭私瞥恼习中搭总投  
资跌) 恣十烂个根家赴第夫周伸拾细吧八十万片许。（



(心 (DA ǎ`lj j fǎj bkq`l kpfpp l c Y /0+vbYo il Yk l c S, Q, \$ 0,23 j fiifl k Yka Y pe Yob pr Zp`ofmǎfl k l c S, Q, \$ /,. / j fiifl k, (根际继评公吸搭投资币括眼目十夫吗搭夫吧息十碎万片许搭计景) 结加入细吧况细万片许搭股继。(绝鼓搭资继) 故乡眼z投资ǎ.

Re b HYnYkbpb e Ysb cYfǎǎ iiv l Zpbosba ǎ bfo pr oobka bo`lj j fǎj bkǎ, (平卑瞥印清地愿唯了投爵搭蚀活。(投爵轻华乏夕做搭) 故曰z蚀活ǎ.

其他如Yk Yii+l r q`lj j fǎj bkq (全面的约束), ǎl dfsb Y mǎb`fmǎYǎb`lj +j fǎj bkq (给以轻率的言约), ǎb`lj j fǎj bkq l c Y mbǎǎfl k d o`l kpfaboYǎfl k Yka obml oq (请原书交给委员会去审查并作出报告)。

#### 4. rain、a rain、the rain

务村下兄) 庄样薪轻务oYfk) 薪轻务qe b oYfk) 甚因憾可显邪并  
乏高导搭Y) 来放亚oYfk搭念另) 液遇务动村顿薪什凉朵鞭?

③刻创】一般是把z雨à当作物质名词 (K YqofYi L1 r k) 看待, 所以前面不加冠词, 单说oYfk就行了。如K Yr de Yj (毛姆) 的一个短篇小说的题名就是zPYfkà。英文的t Yqfo、Yfo、pj 1 hb 等都是物质名词, oYfk算作物质名词, 自然也很合理。不过物质名词常可变成普通名词, 变性之后就可以加用不定冠词或说成复数, 如e Yfo、e Yfo p, `Yhb、`Yhbp, n1 fpl k、n1 fpl kp, d1 a、d1 ap, dYp、dYpbp, Zof h、Zof hp等, 但dl ia、niYqfkr j 、1 uvdbk、evaol dbk等字, 则从来不会变成普通名词的。

为什么有时又加用定冠词的qe b呢? 我想这大概是受了qe b pr k、qe b phv用法的影响, 但大都又绝不是限定的意思, 所以z微雨à译作: zPYfk fp cYiifkd ifde qv,à或zRe b oYfk fp cYiifkd ifde qv,à都可以, 当然最好是说: zG1 fp oYfkfk d ifde qv,à。

在oYfk前如果用形容词的时候, 就一定要加用不定冠词的Y了。z大雨à或z豪雨à说Y e bYsv oYfk, 实为Y e bYsv cYi1 l c oYfk的节约说法。例如:

Gnr q1 c j v abnYoqr ob l k Y `1 r kql c Y e bYsv oYfk, (俗  
想大兄顶无目池东。 (

在oYfk前可用的形容词, 容在下面举例说明。至于中国话的z甘霖à, 可译作Y t bi`1 j b oYfk, z红雨à可译作Y oYfk l c cYiifkd Zil ppl j p, z弹雨à译作Y oYfk l c Zr iibqp。z泪如雨下à, 固然可译作Y oYfk l c qYop, 同时英文也可以说z雨如泪下à, 即z? pl c q oYfk cbii ifhb qYop,à, 这当然有冷雨孤衾, 静悄悄暗中流泪的感觉。

英文的oYfk一字虽是从古英文obdk而来的，但它却有一个希腊种的形容词evbqYi，许多学术名词都用得着它，如evbq il dv（雨学）、evbq j bqbo（雨量表）等。在oYfk l o pe fkb一个片语中的oYfk：oYfkv t bYqbo（雨天）。用成复数时的oYfkp：pe l t bo（骤雨）。qeb oYfkp则指热带的雨季（qeb oYfkv pbYpl k）。Ub eYsb qeb oYfkp fk bYoiv t fkbqbo，（雨季在初冬。）

下雪（pklt）的用法和oYfk一样，但pqoj（暴风雨）前可以直接接Y，如：

? pqoj t Yp oYdfkd Yii Yil kd qeb`l Ypq（毋攻八细点正赶字包耳兄。）

如用qeb便有限定的意思，如：

KYkv qbbp fk qeb nYoh t bob Zil t k al t k Zv qeb pqoj  
（lc（qeb l qebo aYv，（怨平东巧搭包耳兄）把公园漫搭在多仍律的弹顶了。）

现就oYfk的无冠词及有冠词的三种用法分别举例如下：

（一）不加冠词的：

Gqil l hp ifhb oYfk，（好通夕下兄搭样子。）

PYfk eYp pbqfk，（下难兄来了！）

PYfk t Yp p`Yo`b，（兄量批少。）

Ub peYii eYsb oYfk，（夕下兄了。）

Reb cYoj bop t Ykq oYfk，（猫瞥夕兄。）

PYfk`Yj bal t k fk q oobkq，（拍面大兄。）

Ub t fii pqYoq Zbd ob aYvZobYh）oYfk l o pe fkb，（并问十输下兄）俗料的夕亚十亮念凡蔷。（

Ub sb eYa ql j r`e oYfk qfp pr j j bo，（纪吗萄十搭兄如太多了。）

U b e Ysb Zbbk t fqe l r q oYfk d o Y il kd qj b, (好见辆薪下兄了。 (

Re b `l Yqfp m l l c YdYfkpq oYfk, (液下婉度兄搭。 (

RYhb Yk r j ZobiiY t fqe vl r fk `Ypb l c oYfk, (点把妻砰) 怕下兄。 (

B l k q dbqt bqt fqe oYfk, (并夕悲兄宽湿。 (

U b j r pq qYhb pe biqpo ol j oYfk, (俗料必望笔兄。 (

(二) 加用冠词qe b的:

F bob `l j bp qe b oYfk! (兄来了。 (

Gt Yp `Yr de qfk qe b oYfk, (俗羞村兄了。 (

Re b oYfk `ibYoba l q, (兄始了。 (

Re b oYfk e Yp ibql q, (兄始了。 (

Re b oYfk pql mba pr aabkiv, (兄突皮始了。 (

Re b oYfk nbiqba YdYfkpq qe b t fkal t p l c j v `Yo, (兄吹亚俗失楚搭冲子千。 (

Re b oYfk ml r oba (al t k (Yii aYv, (终平拍面大兄。 (

Re b oYfk e Yp pr Zpfaba, (兄头了。 (

Re b oYfk per q r p r mfk qe b `YZfk, (想兄译好呼亚头肃漫。 (

Re b e r qfp ZYobiv YZib ql hbbml r q qe b oYfk, (头肃块勤坐兄。 (

Re b oYfk e Yp YZYqba, (兄始止了。 (

(三) 加用冠词Y的:

? pe YomoYfk t Yp ZbYqkd YdYfkpq qe b t fkal t +mYkbp Y ka qe b nr fiqt Yp kl qt Yoj bkl r de, (冷兄牛冲悲思松。 (

? oYfk kl t `Yj b l k) t e f e `l k q f k r b a d o q t l l o q e o b  
b e l r o p) Yka j Yab q e b o l Ya p i f m b o v Yka q f i p l j b, (提亚  
下了细场兄) 细棵下了课态个英休) 请错路千曲滑罗外。 (

? `l i a oYfk t Yp a o f w i f k d a l t k, (冷兄贫贫顶爵。 (

? e b Y s v oYfk s f p f q b a q e b `f q v, (幢漫下了大兄。 (

? d b k q i b oYfk f p c Y i i f k d l k q e b d o Y p p, (火兄爵亚赌才千  
另。 (

U e b k q e b p r k p e f k b p q e o l r d e Y i f d e q oYfk) f q j Y h b p Y  
oYfk Z l t, (太阳也过糖兄) 闭夕提池肠极来。 (

在oYfk前既可以加不定冠词的Y, 自然也可以变成复数了, 例  
如:

R e b o f s b o o f p b p Y q p o e b Y s v oYf k p, (花场汇兄之鬼固如高  
涨。 (

G t Y p s f p f q b a Z v Y Z r k a Y k q oYf k p, (严委大兄谈击。 (

## 5. 大数字的名称

提亚草把瑚大搭戎字) 窗眼十样戎字) 刺俗料译知务村万或周) 庄样眼可务村吧万 (j fiifl k () 并知对兴吧万显千搭大戎浅) 状该怎样务动?

③刻创】英文没有z万à字，只能说z十千à，现在新加坡人常说z十二千à，不说z一万二千à，便是从英文直译过来的。中国在万以上的数字也不少，不过一般也只用亿而已。北周甄鸾著的《五经算术》一书上说：z黄帝为法，数有十等。亿、兆、京、垓、秭、穰、沟、涧、正、载是也。及其用也，乃有上中下三等。下数，十十变之，中数，万万变之。上数，数穷则变。à《风俗通》上说：z十载谓之极。à普通是以万万为亿，万亿为兆，万兆为京。这样以万进，到了z载à的时候已经是天文数字了。

此外还有从印度传来的数目名，如《翻译名义集》一书上说：z那由他，此云万亿。à《金刚经》上说：z得值八百四千万亿那由他诸佛，悉皆供养承事。à又有所谓z阿僧只à，也是梵语，意译为z无数à，是指极大之数，非寻常心力所能计算，故曰无数，实有如恒河沙数。

美国的物理学者Ebl odb EYj 1t 著有《从一到无穷大》(Mkb R t l Reobb... Økçkfq) 一书，在第一章中第一节Fl t Fjde AYk W r Al r kçC (《你能计算到多大的数目? 》) 上说，非洲霍屯督族(F l çpçkçl q çpfZbp) 对于数目只能数到三为止，以上就数不出来了。在英文中却有不少表现巨大数目的字，不过英美的算法不同罢了。在j f iifl k (百万) 以上的数字，两国的算法都有差异，如Zfiifl k在美国为十亿 (/ , . . . , . . . , . . . )，在英国为万亿 (i , . . . , . . . , . . . )。现将英文的表巨大数目的字，就英美的不同，分别举出如下：

Zfiifl k 片根细字鬼加烂个烹 (/ d iil t ba Zv 7 kl r dec p () 庄根细字鬼加十夫个烹。

qpfii fl k片根细字鬼加十夫个烹) 庄根细字鬼加十八个烹。

nr Yaofii fl k片根细字鬼加十碎个烹) 庄根细字鬼加夫十息个烹。

nr f kqfii fl k片根细字鬼加十八个烹) 庄根细字鬼加态十个烹。

p buqfii fl k片根细字鬼加夫十细个烹) 庄根细字鬼加态十蜡个烹。

p bmqfii fl k片根细字鬼加夫十息个烹) 庄根细字鬼加息十夫个烹。

l` qfii fl k片根细字鬼加夫十伸个烹) 庄根细字鬼加息十八个烹。

kl kfi fl k片根细字鬼加态十个烹) 庄根细字鬼加碎十息个烹。

ab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加态十态个烹) 庄根细字鬼加蜡十个烹。

r kab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加态十蜡个烹) 庄根细字鬼加蜡十蜡个烹。

ar l ab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加态十烂个烹) 庄根细字鬼加伸十夫个烹。

qpbab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加息十夫个烹) 庄根细字鬼加伸十八个烹。

nr Yqqr l oab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加息十碎个烹) 庄根细字鬼加八十息个烹。

nr f kab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加息十八个烹) 庄根细字鬼加烂十个烹。

p buab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加碎十细个烹) 庄根细字鬼加烂十蜡个烹。

p bmqpkab` fi fl k片根细字鬼加碎十息个烹) 庄根细字鬼加细吧况夫个烹。

l`q ab`fiifl k片根细字鬼加碎十伸个烹) 庄根细字鬼加细吧况八个烹。

kl sbj ab`fiifl k片根细字鬼加蜡十个烹) 庄根细字鬼加细吧细十息个烹。

sfdfkqfiifl k片根细字鬼加蜡十态个烹) 庄根细字鬼加细吧夫十个烹。

`bkqfiifl k片根细字鬼加态吧况态个烹) 庄根细字鬼加蜡吧个烹。

最后是一加六百个圈，虽说有数，实则大得不能计算了。大数目用文字念出来也有英美之分，美国每四位数，英国每七位数，就要变更单位的名称 (abklj fkYqfl kp)，兹以/，/..，01.，./..，...为例，美国念成：

Mkb qfiifl k l kb er kaoba Zfiifl k qt l er kaoba (Yka (c efoqj j fiifl k (Yka (qpk qel r pYka,

英国则念为：

Mkb Zfiifl k l kb er kaoba qel r pYka qt l er kaoba Yka q efoqj j fiifl k Yka qpk qel r pYka,

在一般的数学书上有将j fiifl k一字重复用的，也无非是表示多数，如B, Nbal b著的*Reb Ebkqb Eoql c KYqbo Yqfep*上便有z,, , do bYqbo qe Yk Y qel r pYka j fiifl k j fiifl k,à的说法。也有人说成j r iq fj fiifl kp, 口语中又有模仿j fiifl k、Zfiifl k的字形而新造出wfiifl k一字，也是指fkabdfkfpiv iYodb krj Zbo (无限度的大数目)，至于说Y dl l dl i则等于一字后加一百个圈。



## 6. honours 作形容词

邪庄样搭e1kl r o细字眼什凉薪轻夕腿唱e1kl o? 腿唱复戎搭e1kl r o(轻) 眼什凉心可约袜坡导邪?

③刻创】e1kl r o是英国的拼法，而e1kl o是美国的拼法。美国在十八世纪由辞典学者L1Ye UbZp qbo (/536y /621) 以*Reb Eo bofe Yk Qmbiifkd Dl l h* (/561) 一书问世，大事改革英文的拼法，将许多不发音的字母都去掉，以简化写法。英文的后缀~~l r o~~变成~~l o~~，便是其中代表的美国改良的拼法。除上举的e1kl r o一字外，我们可以再举出下列十二个常用的字。前英后美。

Yoj l r oy Yoj l o (甲震 (

ZbeYsfl r oy ZbeYsfl o (外眼 (

`l il r oy `l il o (撤旗 (

bkabYsl r oy bkabYsl o (冒抗 (

cYsl r oy cYsl o (恩河 (

erj l r oy erj l o (幽露 (

iYZl r oy iYZl o (罗凡 (

kbfd eZl r oy kbfd eZl o (快老 (

l al r oy l al o (胜私 (

mYoil r oy mYoil o (料使 (

sYml r oy sYml o (宜胜 (

sfdl r oy sfdl o (坚抗 (

但QYsfl r o（救世主）及diYj l r o（魅力）二字在美国也仍旧用+ l r o。又凡有+Yqfl k、+fḍ、+fwb、+l r p等后缀时，在英国也要用+l o +，而不用+l r o+，例如`l il oYqfl k、`l il ofḍ、sYml ofwb、sYml ol r p 等等。但有+YZib、+bo、+fqb、+ibpp等后缀时，英国则仍要保留+l r o +，例如el kl r oYZib、bkabYsl r obo、cYsl r ofqb、`l il r oibpp等等。

至于复数名词作形容词用的时候，一般是去掉字尾的复数符号，如ZfiifYoap作形容词用时，应说Y ZfiifYoa qYZib，但许多字是要仍然保留复数的形式来作形容词用的。例如：

Yk el kl r op pqr abkq（胁打巧（  
Yk bib` qpl kf p dfoj（旦子浮习公吸（  
Y pYsfkdp ZYkh（戴威银外（  
q̣e b er j Yk obiYqfl kp mōl Zibj p（瞥洒呼堂问狮（  
Y dl l ap q̣pYfk（轰楚（  
Y p` fppl op dof kabo（卢剪促夜（  
Y Zfd Yo j p Zr adbq（大搭揭洒须杀（

此外还有许多复合字也是不能去掉〔p〕的，如：

pqYq̣ppj Yk（政引家（  
q̣e Ykhpdfs fkd（拖恩（  
hfkpj Yk（室族（  
pml oq̣pj Yk（海外运凡夜（  
pml hbpj Yk（东言瞥（  
pYibpt l j Yk（貌对员（  
q̣l t kp d ih（幢漫瞥（  
e Yoq̣pe l ok（男极坚（  
Y pfu t bbhp obpfabk` b（蜡圆目老默（

有时候保留复数或改为单数都可以，如：

Y`r pql j (p (e l r pb (侮呼 (

Y qpl r pbo (p (ml`hbq (裤唇 (

Y pml oq (p (`Yo (狼欺楚 (

有时在某种情形下用复数，在某种情形下又要用单数，如：

Y`l j j r kf Yqfl kp pYqbiifcb (士讯卫圆 (

`l j j r kf Yqfl k bkdfkbbbfkd (士讯浮朝伟 (

Y t Ydbp ml if v (浮资政策 (

t Ydb kbd l qYqfl kp (浮资想热 (

## 7. 固有名词的普通化

Qe b d r kaba Yk r opr ifkb `l iibdb fk /73. , 液并知婉细婴什凉伟突? Sopr ifkb字典千程搭并对) 并知状约获刻?

③刻创】这是固有名词普通化的用法。Sopr iY为女子名，英国的传说，有一位女殉道者QYfkq Sopr iY，当匈奴(Fr kp)侵入时，在Al il dkb地方，和其他一万一千个处女共同被害。由固有名词变成形容词时，可加后缀(pr œfu)的fkb。如FvWkqfkb、AYol ifkb、JbsY kqfkb等皆是。/315年创立的天主教女子修道会，会员以看护病人，教育少女为宗旨，以圣乌尔苏拉为守护神，故Sopr ifkb即指那会员，问题中的句子，应译为z她在一九五零年创办了一个女子学院à。

现在我们在报纸上常见到的z沙文主义à(`eYr sfkfpj )，意指盲目的爱国主义(Zifka mYqfl qfpj )，也就是盲目的排外主义，也是从人名来的。从前法国有一个把拿破仑看作神一般的士兵，Lf eliYp AeYr sfk便是此z沙文主义à的来历。

所谓z黑色剪影à(pfie l r bqpb)是由一位法国部长Cqfbk kb ab Qfi el r bqpb (/5. 7y /545)的名字转来的，因为他身居要职，全不胜任，好像一个影子一样的无能。

从前希腊的大哲学家柏拉图(NiYq l )，有个朋友名叫?`Yabj r p，很慷慨地让柏拉图到他家里去设帐讲学，这就是我们现在说的Y Y abj v(研究专门学术的学校)一字的来源。

现在我们吃的三明治(pYkat f e)源于十八世纪英国的一个赌徒CYoi l cQYkat f e(三明治伯爵)，因为他的赌瘾极大，哪怕是用餐都不愿离开赌博台子，而叫人拿几片面包夹点肉送来给他吃，所以这种面包夹肉的吃法是他发明的，为纪念他，就拿他的名来称这种食品。

我们对新鲜牛奶的低温杀菌法（以摄氏三十六度光景煮半小时），及对狂犬病预防接种法，所称的 *mYpqr ofwql k* 或 *mYpqr ofp j*，便是从法国十九世纪的科学家 *Jl r fp NYpqr o* 一个人名而来的。

希腊哲学家 *Cmf r or p* 以享乐为至上善，于是我们便把享乐主义者叫作 *bmf r obYk* 或 *bmf r ob*，而好享乐或讲究口福的主张便是 *bmf r ofp j* 了。

由固有名词而变成普通字的，不限于人名，地名来的亦复不少，如动词 *ql peYkde Yf : ql hfakYm*，是指用酒灌醉或用药麻醉后，带上船去，作为水手，实有拐带之意。

美国 *LbsYaY* 州西部的一个城市名叫 *Pbkl* 的，因在那里的法院容易判决离婚，所以 *dl ql Pbkl* 就是说 *z* 离婚 *à*。据 *K Yr of b F, U bpbkk* 编的 *E Bfeql kYav l c Eo bofeYk QiYkd* 上有 *Pbkl +sYqba : afsl o`ba*（离婚了）一个动词，但要注意字中的短划及发音，因为没有短划而第一音节读短音时，便是另外一个意为 *z* 革新 *à* 的字。

## 8. morning、afternoon、evening、night的时限

z赏每十千岁浮约息头轻à) 庄样乡唱zF b t l o h p d r o e l r o p b s  
bov aYv fk qe b d obkl l k, à) 并知对更? 中样把细平朵眼早抽、千  
岁、下岁、系晚息第轻恢) 庄样婉更细样?

③刻创】译文并不错, 不过z上午à译成d obkl l k, 略嫌太正式了一点, 应改为常用的意义相同的j l okfkd一字:

F b t l o h p d r o e l r o p b s b o v a Y v f k q e b j l o k f k d,

英文把一日也是分为四段, 不过和我们的分法略有不同。原来上午下午, 应当是以d obkl l k对Yqokl l k来说的, 而d obkl l k的原意也是从日出到正午, 但后来的习惯用法, 就把它看作从八、九点钟到正午了, 也就是一般人视为上午或午前的含义。

提到j l okfkd我们心目中只会想到早晨, 如zF b`Yj b q pbb j b l k Qr kaYv j l okfkd, (他礼拜天早上来看了我。) à。又如晨星为j l okfkd pqYo, 晨祷为j l okfkd mYvbo, 早报是j l okfkd mYnbo等, 都是指的早晨。比喻用法则为初期, 如qe b j l okfkd l c ifdb (生命的初期, 青年时代)。但此字的原意实为由黎明到正午, 故整个上午都包括在这字的范围之内, 早晨只是它的一部分而已。

F b t l o h p f k q e b j l o k f k d Y k a m i Y v p f k q e b Y q o k l l k,  
(赏千岁浮约) 下岁书芜。(

U e Y q e Y s b v l r Z b b k a l f k d Y i i j l o k f k d ? (码已个千岁  
做了遇什凉? (

至于下午的Yqokl l k是指从正午到五点钟光景的那一段时间。  
例如:

F b `Yj b vbpbpbaYv Yɔpɔk11k, (怨十下岁赏来过了。 (

GpYt efj 1k Qr kaYv Yɔpɔk11k, (俗亚圆目十下岁看举赏。 (

Gpe Yii Zb Zr pv ɔe fp Yɔpɔk11k, (纪十下岁俗健怪忙。 (

U e bk Y dr bpq`lj bp q pbb vl r fk ɔe b Yɔpɔk11k) vl r pYv zE11a Yɔpɔk11kà q efj , (岁鬼薪料瞥来) 码同赏存z岁哀à (

从下午五点以后到晚上九、十点光景的这段时间，英文叫作bsbkfkd, 是属于夜的初期 (bYoiv mYoql c ɔe b kfde q) , 此字中文可译作z晚à夕à暮à黄昏à。 例如:

Re b bsbkfkd fp sbov`11i, (晚恢怪克令。 (

F b mYppba Yj boov bsbkfkd t fɔe e fp ɔfbkap, (赏令乐地火朋友料赴访了细个晚恢。 (

? ɔpɔ ɔe b bsbkfkd fq fp kfde q (亚好昏之鬼舰婉系了。 (

?ii pel np Yob`il pba Yq bfde q l ɛil`h fk ɔe b bsbkfkd, (晚千八点英伤薪体对的呼了了。 (

Mk Yk Yr ɔr j k bsbkfkd t b bkg v ɔe b j 11 kfde q (俗料亚暑系赏月。 (

英文的kfde q原意为从日没到日出的一段时间，但一般都是把它看作九、十点钟以后的夜间，但此字又是aYv (白日，日间) 的对称。

F b `Yj b elj b sbov iYɔp Yq kfde q (赏系漫怪迟尝合家。 (

Br ofkd ɔe b kfde q t b pibbm ar ofkd ɔe b aYv t b t l oh Y ka miYv, (俗料亚系漫辱丽) 亚懊十浮约火书芜。 (

Bfa YkvZl av`lj b iYpqkfde q? (怨系薪瞥来怕? (

Gpe Yk&q Zb ZY`h Zbd ob q j 1 ool t kfde q (明十系漫显念俗并健合来。 (

夜校说bsbkfkd p`elli或是kfdeqp`elli都可以，因为那通常是从七点起到九、十点钟为止，跨着bsbkfkd和kfdeq两段时间的。一般应该用bsbkfkd p`elli才对，因为以起始的时间为准，不过kfdeqp`elli是对aYv p`elli而言的。

在一日之内早晚不同的时候见面或分手，英文都有一定的语句来说，如Ella j lokfkd（早安），Ella Yɔpɔklɪk（午安），Ella bsbkfkd（晚安），至于分手时在白天说EllaZvb（再会），在夜间则说Ella kfdeq（再会）。Ella aYv译为z日安à的话，Ella kfdeq又可译为z夜安à了。



## 9. information 等不用复数

z赏汉海俗在多薪邪搭盘鞭à) 庄乡眼zF b dYsb j b Y il ql cr pbc  
r i fkd oj Yqfl kp,à 并知薪幢所更?

③刻创】译文的最后一字应改为单数才对，全句译为：zF b dYsb  
j b Y il ql cr pbc r i fkd oj Yqfl k,à。英文的fkd oj Yqfl k一字，现在  
只有单数一个形式，如作主语用时，则接单数动词。

Ɔkd oj Yqfl k e Yp Zbbk ob` b f sba Ɔe Yq ofl Ɔp e Ysb Zol hbk  
l r q (急村东巧包凡搭统台。(

此字在十八世纪时，是可以用于复数的，不过意思不同罢了，如  
Qt fƆq有句云Ql j b fkd oj Yqfl kp Ɔl j Yk bj fkbkq mbopl k (一位  
知名之士的指教)。

与此字在用法上完全相同的，最通用的字就是Ɔr okfƆr ob，如：

Dr okfƆr ob e Yp dl kb r mpfk` b Ɔe b bka l c Ɔe b t Yo, (家降  
亚养鬼涨景了。(

Re bob fp ifƆqj b Ɔr okfƆr ob fk Ɔe b ol l j , (略恢房恢琴家降怪  
少。(

? `e Yfo fp Yk YoƆf ib l c Ɔr okfƆr ob, (中子婉细活家降。(

这种只有单数，后面只能接单数动词的集合名词，可以把它当作  
物质名词一般看待。Hbprnbopbk就索性归入物质名词一类，二者确实  
是很难分别的。兹再举他例如下：

Nbl nib ifsfkd fk `l ia `l r kƆpfbp kbba j r `e `il Ɔe fkd,  
(游亚官冷搭根家搭瞥料需夕怪多搭下烦。(

Re b qYfil o j Yhbp `l Yqp) qpl r pbop) Yka l qe bo Yoqf ibp  
l c` il qe fkd, (颤各做下裤结深赏搭下觉。 (

Dl l a fp bppbkqYi q ifcb, (食物是生活必需的。) ?JB上说除了说食物的种类 (hfka l cd l a) 以外, d l a是不可数 (r k`l r kqYZi b) 的名词。

Jfl kp Yob dbkboYiiv d r ka t e bob dYj b fp mibkqf r i, (亲  
子士草池提兴庙物多搭地方。 (

Re b cY` q ov `l kqYf k p j r`e j Y`e fkbov, (略浮抽中角呢  
怪多。 (

F l t j r`e kbt j Y`e fkbov eYp Zbbk fkpqYiiba? (于音  
了多少新搭角呢? (

K bo`e Ykafpb eYp kl `e Yoj d o r p, (俗料对体沙辆薪缘  
趣。 (

K r`e m ol ar`b l c qe b cY` q ov fp pbkq YZol Ya, (略浮抽搭  
大波朵产池的婉运村外根砰搭。 (

Re b m ol ar`b l c qe b pbY fp kl ibpp qe Yk qe b m ol ar`b l c  
qe b iYka, (攻产物并并塔兴郎产物。 (她断友乏之珠士草并加高  
导。

现在让我回到问题中的 fkd oj Yqfl k, 用例句来说明它的用法:

GY`r j r iYqba j r`e fkd oj Yqfl k Zl qe ol j efj Yka c  
ol j l qe bo pl r o`bp, (俗的赏略漫火鞭搭源阔喜集了在多盘  
鞭。 (

Gpe Yii Zofkd q dbqe bo fkd oj Yqfl k p`Yqpboba qe ol r de s  
Yofl r p Zl l hp Yka nbofl af Yip, (俗夕把七举亚扰籍杂志千搭资  
口喜集来来。 (

Re b fkd oj Yqfl k eYp Zbbk `l kfoj ba, (略盘鞭悲证清  
了。 (

Re b Zl l h`l kqYf k p j r`e r pb r i fkd oj Yqfl k) fj mYoqb  
a t fqe dobYq`ibYokbpp Yka fj mYoqYifqv, (略扰中载薪在多坏

明了顶心公未搭知晴。（

Dol j t eYq pl r o` b al vl r abofsb æ bfo fkd oj Yqfl k ?  
（码的强方另可显获错薪呼略遇搭知晴落？（

Re bpb p` el iYop eYsb dfsbk kl kbt fkd oj Yqfl k d æ b  
t l oia,（略遇伟夜并辆薪海完瞥什凉新搭知晴。（

Nf h r mYii æ b fkd oj Yqfl k vl r `Yk t e fib qpYsbiifkd,  
（字历搭轻即务必价量偿集举闻。（

K l ob buY` q fkd oj Yqfl k d iil t p Zv j Yfi,（服多正脾搭鞭  
逗坡即绝昨进千。（

## 10. 对美国的称呼

俗料细罢务片根眼?j bof Y) 刺薪警务液婉片洲) 并婉片根)  
破抱片洲火切片洲舰务qt l ?j bof Yp。到务对更?

③刻创】美利坚合众国，简称美国的正式名称为 $\text{qeb Skfqp a QqYq bplc?j bof Y}$ 。单说?j bof Y 确有不分南北之嫌，不过也好像他们用CkdiYka来称呼z英国a一样，一般人不免也要拿?j bof Y来称呼z美国a。这理由很简单，英伦三岛中以英格兰最强盛，故由它来代表，南北美以美国为霸主，自然提到?j bof Y，就知道是指它。例如：

pYfa ol j ?j bof Y q CkdiYkay y A, E, Dov

Re b`lj j lk nbl mbl l cHYnYk kbba Yii qeb ebim?j bof Y`Yk dfsb qebj , y y AeoffqYk Qefbkeb Kl kfd o (平卑搭细罢  
警的需夕片根搭全另叙由。 (

据I oYmm说，作形容词用除?j bof Yk外没有第二个字。一般新闻杂志上，以?j bof Yk作为z美国的a的意思用得极为普遍。如?j bof`Yk Yfa q QYfdl k (美国对西贡的援助)，Yk ?j bof Yk`fqfwbk (美国公民)，qeb ?j bof Ykp (全体的美国人)，?j bof Yk Ckdif pe (美国英语) 等等不胜枚举，可见一般以?j bof Y来说美国，也不算错。

不过作形容词用一定非说?j bof Yk不可，也不尽然。就用Skfqp a QqYqpp还是可以的，如：

Cr ol nb kbbap qeb j lk bv ol j Skfqp a QqYqpp fj ml oqp,  
(梅洲需夕的片根燃入搭轰物千赚年。 (

这当然也可改说为?j bof Yk fj ml oqp或fj ml oqp l c qeb Skfqp a QqYqpp。有一点值得注意的是Skfqp a QqYqpp作形容词用时，前面的q

e b就得去掉，再看下例：

, , , mr Zif l mfkfl k t Ykqba qe b pr mml oql c Skfqba QqYqb  
p ml if v, (型鸟邮夕支持片根搭政策。 (

至于在国外的美国人称美国时常略成qe b QqYqbp, 如：

F Ysb vl r Zbbk ql qe b QqYqbp? (码合过根了怕? (

这个 qe b QqYqbp : qe b Skfqba QqYqbp, 如：

U b ifsb fk qe b Skfqba QqYqbp, (俗料游亚片根。 (

Re b S, Q, ql aYv bkg vp qe b efde bpq ifsfkd pqYkaYoap,  
y y Al ol kbq (纪平片根停薪源高搭巧恨如愉。 (

略语的S, Q, 普通常加定冠词, 反而S, Q, ?, 则多将定冠词略去。  
如：

ql abj Yka bnr Yifqy l c ql kkYdb t fqe EobYq FofqYfk Yka  
S, Q, ?, y y Jl kal k Rfo bp U bbhiv (夕属庄片世打点戎。 (

这种略语除新闻杂志外, 正式的文章中则必须避免。

以前对于典型的美国人称为F ol qe bo Hl kYqe Yk, 不过现在通称S  
k`ib QYj 了。

## 11. 美国钱的俗称

怪多根家搭轰币的显许 (al iiYo (眼单位) 刺片许眼眼完寂轰币搭红愉。正式其窗状约SQ\$) 显鞭兴深赏搭\$) 刺务寒披并液样务) 顶邪喜窗来避球。请祸片根各婴轰币搭其窗结深春邪语) 由眼务明。

③刻创】在说到美国钱的俗称之前，似乎得先说明一下美国货币的种类。

美国的硬币 (`1fk) 共有六种，即一分，五分，一角，二角五分，五角，及极少见的一元。

一分的是铜币，表面 (1Zsbopb, 俗称e bYa) 是林肯的像，并铸有**Q** EMB U C RPSQR (我们信仰上帝) 及**J** C PRW (自由) 的字样，另外还有发行的年号。背面 (obsbopb, 俗称 qYfi) 铸有MLC AC LR的金额及SL**Q**RCB QR? RCQ MD ? K CP**Q**? 的字样，并且还有一个各种货币上都有的拉丁文的j 1**q**l, 即C NUSP**Q**SQ SLSK (: 1kb 1rqlcj Ykv众中之一)。币值虽是1kb`bkq, 但普通俗称，却仍沿用英国殖民时代的铜币nbkkv 的名字，复数则为nbkkfbp (但不说nbk`b, 如论值则用`bk**q**) , 例如:

FYsb vl r dl q d**fsb** nbkkfbp? (码薪碎个细朵年搭事板辆薪? (

L1) **Q**b 1 kiv dl q Y kf hbi, (辆薪) 俗译薪细个碎朵搭轻币。 (

五分的是镍币，故称kf hbi, 在若干年前，表面是一个印第安人的头部，背面是水牛，后来才改变为美国第三届总统Re 1j Yp Hb**æ**bop 1k的像，及其在TfodfkfY州的Ae Yoil **q**ppsfiib的邸宅K 1 k**q** biil 的图。例如:

Re b t Yfɔpɔ t Yp`l j fkd t fɔɐ ɔɐ b aɔfkhp) Yka t e bk e b  
dl qɔ ɔɐ b qYzib ? ɔɔf dYsb e f j Y nr Yɔɔpɔ Yka ɔ ia e f j ɔ n  
r qɔsb kf hbip fk ɔɐ b mɛ l kl dɔYmɛ , y y Hl e k Mɛ YɔY (王夜  
拿字像口来了) 冬赏走村雨部轻) 八对绝海赏细个夫极碎朵搭银  
币) 夕赏碎架唱碎个轻币) 的 pil q投入 g hb+Zl u) 好四略欲凡默  
统角可显唱难来。(

一角的是银币，表面是一个女像，背面铸有MLC BCK C的字样。  
所谓afj b是和ab`fj Yi同一语根的字，意为十分之一。最近的afj b  
上，已铸有在第二次世界大战中死去的DoYkhifk B, Pl l pbsbiq总统  
的肖像了。例如：

F YvpqY h fk YdYfk r kabo pr prnbkpfl k t fɔɐ `l ia t bYɔɐ b  
o`l j fkd l k Yka kl qY afj b fk e fp mYkɔp ml`hbq y y BYj  
l k Pr kvl k (翻十村了) 货若线心辆薪溃村年) 裤唇漫细毛年的  
辆薪。(

二角五分的也是银币，上面铸有华盛顿的像和鹰，又有OS?PRC  
P BMJJ?P的字样，所以通称为nr Yɔɔpɔ。例如：

?qɔɐ fp ɔfj b Gal kl qeYsb Yp j r`e Yp ɔ l t e fɔɔ nr Yɔɔ  
bɔp ɔ or Z ɔ dbɔɐ bo fk j v mYkɔp ml`hbq y y BYj l k Pr kvl  
k (浅下俗棵可显放亚裤唇漫茅错听搭课个夫极败搭银币的辆  
薪。(

在美国西南部一带又常用ɔ l Zfɔp来代替nr Yɔɔpɔ用，例如：

zW r ɔb ɔɐ b al`ɔ o) æ b pYvp,zEfsb j b t e Yqvl r ɔ fkh  
fp ofde q ɔi qYhb Ykv ɔ fkd ɔ l j ɔ l Zfɔp ɔ Y j fiifl k) al ii  
Yɔp,ây y Hl pbmɛ K fɔ e bii (z码婉薪伟问搭) à赏务) z海俗码贫  
眼好搭舰外了。的课极败村细吧万许俗的可显鼓池搭。à (

这Zfɔ字也不限于指二角半的银币，如pe l oq Zfɔ是指一角，il kd Z  
fɔ指一角半。

五角的也是银币，一面有女立像，一面有F?JD BMJJ?P的字  
样，通称为e Yical iiYo。因为是ɔ l Zfɔp的一倍，所以又称为d r o Zf

qp。

一元的银币，现已不再铸造了。在西南部一带，至今还在流通，至于东部纽约一带，则早已不见踪影。这普通叫pifsbo al iiYo。例如：

F bo cY b fp abYa t e fqb) Yka pe b t bYop Y pj r adb l col  
r db qe b pfwb l c Y pfisbo al iiYo l k bY`e `e bbh, y y Hl pbme  
K fq e bii (尚搭另旗场懊) 课幻千市字细经银许大搭挣脂。(

美国除了上述这些通行的硬币外，大量使用的是纸币 (nYnbo j l kbv)。纸币共有十一种，大小都是一样，印刷的色调和单位的名称 (abkl j fkY+qfl k)，也无差别。唯票面的价值和所印的人像，有一定的规定。即Ebl odb U Ype fkdq k (一元)，Rel j Yp Hbcbopl k (二元)，?ZoYe Yj Jfk`l ik (五元)，?ib+uYkabo FYj fiq k (十元)，?kaobt HY`hpl k (二十元)，Sivppbp EoYkq (五十元)，Fbkgyj fk DoYkhifk (一百元)，UfiifYj K`hfkibv (五百元)，Eol sbo Aibsb+iYka (一千元)，HYj bp KYafpl k (五千元)，QYij l k AeYpb (一万元)。

附带可以说明的，就是美钞的纸张、大小、颜色，全相仿佛，所以极易将小票改为大票，鉴别改票，第一当然是要注意人像与票值的连带关系，其次就应注意发行地点和暗记号码，再次就是学会号码的算法。第一点已如上述，第二点则发行地名和英文字母印在正面人像左边的圆圈内，而暗记号码则四角都有，即?/ F1 pql k, F0 Lbt W oh, A1 Ne fiYabime fY, B2 Aibsb iYka, C3 Pf ej l ka, D4 ?qYkq Y, E5 Aef Ydl , F6 Qq Jl r fp, G K fkkbYnl ifp, H/. I YkpYp, I // BYiiYp, J/0 QYk DoYk` fp`l。第三点计算号码先得知下表：

?	F	A	B	C	D
/	0	1	2	3	4
E	F	G	H	I	J

计算方法是美钞号码除六数，得余数，再看正面左上角或右下角的小英文字母，例如余数为2，则英文字母必为B或H，否则就是伪



钞了。美钞现有三种，绿印为本国正票，红印是海外军票，另外还有F Yt Yff票。

美钞背面是绿色，所以我们对美钞总称为dobbkZY`h，但各种价值的货币，各有其日常用的译名，兹举若干用例如下：

一元，在美国普通都叫作Zr`h。例如：

zF1t j r`e vl r dl fkd q nYv j b? àabj Ykaba K o, K Yi iYv) if hfkde fp ifmp, zMkb Zr`h) àpYfa K o, BfdZv, zW r dfs b j b q l Zr`hp iYpqvbYo) àpYfa K o, K YiiYv, y y Bl r diYpp U bi`e (z码须杯海俗多少年? à礼马问) 什字赏搭圆唇。z细经年。à对肤惫合创。z码砵吗婉海俗课经搭。à礼马务。(

美国对于一元，除电影中说得最多的Zr`h外，还有Y`b、Zl œd、`Yk、pir d、al r de、pj Y`hbo或pj Y`hbol l等等说法。例如：

?ka GpYfa) zHl b) ibœp pr b œ l pb pl kp l c Zfq`e bp d o Y j fiifl k al iiYopà, Ql Hl b pYfa Yii ofde q) Yka pl œ Yœp t e Yc t bœb al fkd) Al kkfb, U bœb pr fkd vl r d o l kb j fiifl k pj Y`hbol l p, y y Hl ek Mœ YoY (兴婉俗务: z乔) 俗料并渡对略遇付吸搭家伙) 失难细吧万许搭僧丧暗。à乔创状好) 顶暑全急委了) 练麻。伤显俗料须杯对码失难细吧万许搭僧丧纹。(

又如：

Ql e b e fobp e bo Yq q bkœv+fsb pir dp nbo t bbh q pœYœ t fœ Yka oYfpbp e bo q e Yic Y A Yka j Yhbp e bo Y mœk`fmYi œ b pb`l ka kfde q y y BYj l k Pr kvl k (想到赏雇邪了略个貌子) 源达婉夫十碎许细圆目搭脱如) 可婉多夫十晚千舰加村了碎十许顶失投眼忱涸。(

例句中的A是`bkœ ov之略，即指一百元。又如：

œ œ` q) Pl pb Tfl iY e Yp pl ifœib q pYv œ Yq œ bob Yob o r j l œ fp pl j b nr Yœpop œ Yq pe b fp Y œfœb ar j Z) Zr q nbo pl kYiiv Gt l r ia kl qj fka Zbfkd ar j Z j vpbic Yq d r o e r ka

oba Zl ɔd bp nbo t bbh, y y ʒfa, (清际千) 罗若婉并爱务寒搭) 伤显希传尚薪细点儿哑) 刺婉细个圆目全入息吧许舰集俗并务寒俗袭立并亚几。(

一元的纸币既称为Y`b, 于是二元的便是abr`b了。五元的叫dfsb o, 十元的叫pYt Zr`h, 或ɸkkbo, 二十元就是al r Zib pYt Zr`h或略称al r Zib pYt, 一百元除上述的A以外, 还可称为vYoa, 一千元是叫作doYka或略为E, 如五千元即说dfsb doYkap或dfsb Eɸ也可以。

zU bii) U fiifb) vl r t fk ɸ b pYt Zr`h, y y Mkb) ɸ l) q eobb) d r o) dfsb) pfu) pbsbk) bfde q) kfk b) Ykar e ɸkkbo, Rbk Zr`hp) U fiifb) àpYfa K o, EfkpZr od, zU bii) t e Yq Yob v l r dl kkY al t ɸ Yii ɸ Yq al r de ? ày y Hl ek Mæ YoY (z死) 研利) 码小了十许y y 细) 夫) 恣) 息) 碎) 蜡) 伸) 八) 烂) 看旧) 十许。研利) 十经纹) à继若懊务) z扎) 码拿了液倍年夕怎样拜纹? à (

句中的Ykar e只是Yka拖长的说法, dl kkY: dl fkd q, 至al r de虽可作al iiYo解, 但这里是指j l kbv, 例如zGYj t l kabofkd el t j r`e al r de Gdbqt e bob GYj dl fkd kbuq pbYpl k, (我不晓得等到下一季我可以拿到多少钱。) à。

zReobb ɸ fkd p) àpYfa K Y`Yj, zHY`hy Yii vl r dbql c f q ɸ b hbv q ɸ Yq pfuɸbk+ vifkabo g Z fk vl r o dYoYdb, Yk a`il ɸ bp, ày y Pf eYoa Al kkbii (z恣活恣) à礼灰务) z年y y 码伤薪搭年, 失楚恢漫略波十蜡失封搭失楚血匙) 憾薪下烦。à (

所谓HY`h也和al r de一样, 是j l kbv的俗语, 而g Z在此, 意为j b`e Ykf Yi sbef ib, 即指汽车而言。

## 12. have no brother及have no brothers

请务明下民态句庄语搭并世结亚k1 鬼急其导轻单复戎搭邪动。

(Y (Ge Ysb k1 Zol qe bo,

(Z (Ge Ysb k1 Zol qe bop,

(` (Ge Ysb k1 qY Zol qe bo,

③刻创】NYij bo有明白的规定，说在k1后接不可数(r k`l r kqY Zib)的事物时，是用单数，并举例句说zGe Ysb (l o qe bob fp) k1 t Yqbo (j l kbv, ZobYa, el mb, afcf r iqy), à。所以凡是不可数的名词，一概都用单数。成为问题的是那些可数的名词(`l r kqYZib k1 r k)，如问题中提出的Zol qe bo之类。

在zk1 - 名词à而成为动词e Ysb的宾语时，也有种种不同的情形，现分别加以说明如下。

例如一把茶壶普通只有一个壶盖，在这种情形下，说z这茶壶没有壶盖à时，当然是以用单数为原则：

Re fp qYml qe Yp k1 ifa,

同此类的，都用单数，如：

Re Yq` Yqe Yp k1 qYfi,

F b e Yp k1 cYqe bo,

普通一个人只带一只手表，出门只带一架照相机：

Ge Ysb k1 t Yq` e,

F b e Yp k1 `Yj boY,

至于树上的叶子必然是很多的，飞蚂蚁的翼翅必然是成双的，人的牙齿也有三十个以上，所以当然都要用复数名词：

Re Yq qbb e Yp kl ibYsbp,  
 Re b Ykqe Yp kl t fldp,  
 K v doYkaj l qe bo e Yp kl qbbqe,

说到 **Zol qe bo** 这样的名词，就很难讲了，因为有人只有一个哥哥或一个弟弟，有人则有好几个兄弟，实在没有一定，所以问题中的 (Y) 例既可以说，(Z) 例也可以说，没有一点什么不同。把 **kl** 后接的名词，用作单数或复数，全在说话者当时的感触，如果他觉得对方只有一个兄弟他就用单数名词，如果他觉得对方可能兄弟很多他就用复数名词。二者并没有不同之处，只是反映说话者的意识而已。再举同样情形的例如下：

Qe b e Yp kl `e fia (l o `e fiaobk (,  
 Ge Ysb kl pfpqbo (l o pfpqpop (,  
 U b e Ysb kl bdd (l o bddp (ibcq

至于 (Y) 及 (Z) **zGe Ysb kl Zol qe bo (p)** ,**à**与 (**`**) **zGe Ysb kl l qY Zol qe bo**,**à**两句，意思是有些不同的。(Y) 或 (Z) 句只是说**z**我无兄弟**à**，而 (**`**) 句则语气要强得多，可译成**z**我连一个兄弟也没有**à**。

{	Re bob fp kl (: kl qYkv (j Yk t el `Yk al fq (普士 (
	Re bob fp kl qY j Yk t el `Yk al fq (世蛋 (
	Ge Ysb kl Zl l h (p (, (普士 (
	Ge Ysb kl qY Zl l h, (世蛋 (
	Re bob t Yp kl bdd fk qe b kbpq (普士 (
	Re bob t Yp kl qYk bdd fk qe b kbpq (世蛋 (

如果不是用在动词 **e Ysb** 之后，或由 **qe bob fp** 开头的句中，而是用于 **Zb** 动词的场合，意思又不同了。

F b fp kl qY qY e bo,意为z他不是教书的à, 他可能是公务员, 也可能是商人等等。

F b fp kl qY e bo, 意为z他不是一个好教师à, 他教书简直不成。这句比上句意思强得多。

F b fp kl qY ml bq (赏并婉勤瞥) 可勤婉头务家打。 (

F b fp kl ml bq (赏杀并错什凉勤瞥。 (

F b fp kl qY dl i, (赏并婉细个笨瞥。 (

F b fp kl dl i, (赏怪除明。 (

qY fp kl qY g hb, (液并婉途寒。 (

qY fp kl g hb, (液可并婉杰书途搭。 (

F b fp kl qY p`el iYo, (赏并婉伟夜。 (

F b fp kl p`el iYo, (赏并伟酸术。 (

GYj kl qY `l t Yoa, (俗断词女。 (

GYj kl `l t Yoa, (俗怪词大。 (

在qY bob fp之后, zkl - 名词à的单数或复数, 和在动词e Ysb后的情形一样, 可单可复, 例如:

Re bob fp kl pq sb fk j v ol l j , 想细恢房子中士草译于细个兰子) 伤显邪单戎。

Re bob Yob kl Zl l hp l k qY b pe bic, 想扰皇千士草夕放在多卑扰) 故邪复戎。

如果那名词的数, 通常可单可复, 则说zRe bob fp kl Zl qY b l k q e b qYZib,à或zRe bob Yob kl Zl qY bp l k qY b qYZib,à皆可。

在e Ysb以外的动词, 也可照此原则办理, 例如:

GpYt kl al d (p (,

F b t bYop kl qfb,

Qe b t bYop kl bYoofkdp,

### 13. 各国人的诨名

庄片各根搭根期) 驰正式搭其窗外) 憾薪细婴译其式搭窗挤)  
破庄根瞥集约Hl ek Frii (学共慢 (之觉。请将池各根瞥液细觉搭蹈  
孤。

③刻创】 谁都知道Sk`ib QYj 是美国人的绰号, 而典型的英国人就叫作Hl ek Frii, 但很少有人知道来历的。Sk`ib QYj 既可以代表美国人, 又可以代表美国政府, 据说这是S, Q演绎出来的。这个绰号发生于/6/0年的独立战争时期, 地点是在纽约州的Rol v和?iZYkv一带, 当时政府的仓库管理员名叫QYj r bi U fipl k, 在Rol v地方都叫他作Sk`ib QYj。他曾在军队的食粮桶上盖上S, Q的字样, 以示检验放行, 所以后人考证Sk`ib QYj 就是这样来的。至于Hl ek Frii, 则出自/5/0年Bo, Hl ek ?oZr œ kl q的讽刺句zJYt fp Y Fl œl j ibpp Nfq; l o œ b F fpœl œv l cHl ek Friià, 但这名字是?oZr œ kl q所创造, 抑系当时一般人通用的绰号, 就不得而知了。

Fol œ bo Hl kYœ Yk也可代表美国人, 其来源出自华盛顿的知交革命志士Hl kYœ Yk Ror j Zr ii (/5/. y /563)。华盛顿尝向他请教, 而且曾亲口唤他作Fol œ bo Hl kYœ Yk。

在俚俗语中代表英国人的又有Hl ekkv Fl kl 的说法。叫美国人就通称WYkhbb (或WYkh), 据说这是印第安人对Ckdifpe的转讹。

苏格兰人就叫作QYt kbv、QYkav (: ?ibuYkabo)、Hl`h bv, 因为这些都是苏格兰最普通的人名。爱尔兰人就称NYaav、NYq (: N Yœf h), 美国又叫他们作K f h (: K f hv)、K r œv。

一般叫U Yibp人作RYœv, 这是出自一支通俗的摇篮歌 (kr opbov œvj b), 其全文如下:

RYœv t Yp Y U bipej Yk)

RYǎv t Yp Y ǝ fbc,  
 RYǎv `Yj b d j v e l r pb)  
 ?ka p d i b Y mfb` b l c Zbbc,  
 Gt bkq d RYǎv ǝ e l r pb)  
 RYǎv t Ypk ǝ Yq e l j b,  
 RYǎv `Yj b d j v e l r pb)  
 ?ka p d i b Y j Yool t +Zl kb,  
 Gt bkq d RYǎv ǝ e l r pb,  
 RYǎv t Yp fk Zba,  
 G d l h r mǝ b j Yool t +Zl kb)  
 ?ka d r k d f q Yq e f p e bYa !

这个RYǎv原是威尔斯对BYsv（即BYsfa）一名的读法。正同俄国人把Hl e k读成ǝ Yk一样。

Al okt Yii的人通称`l r p f k H Y` h; Jfsboml l i的人通称Bf hv QY j ; 生在JYk` Ype fob的人就叫作Rfj F l Z Z f k, 这可能是由于纺织而来的。美国俗语叫Lbt CkdiYka人作Hl e kkv+AYhb, 不知是不是因为他们会做那种饼的关系。

澳洲人就称?r p p f b, 当然是?r p q p Y i f Y k的省略, 又因当地产袋鼠而被称为I Yk d Y o l l , 至于 Bf d d b o当系由挖金矿而来的。

法国人好吃青蛙, 就叫他作ǝ l d +b Y q ǝ o或Dol d d v。至于E Y r i及Hb Yk (Hl e kkv) AoYm Y r a, 当然系由人名而来。现代的法国兵称为Nl fir , 是因为他们毛发丛生的关系。

德国人通称F r k, 又称Dofq w或Hboov或F l p` e。所谓F r k实为匈奴, 因第一次世界大战时, 德国兵横行欧洲, 正像第四、五世纪时匈奴横行欧洲一样, 故借用此名。英国人又呼德国人为Al r p f k K f e Y b i。

B l k B f b d l 是指西班牙人, 至于西班牙种的美国人, 俗称BYd l。



加拿大人叫作AYkr`h; 意大利人就称U1 m; 日本人叫HYm, 有时故意读成WYm, 以示轻蔑。

RYkkfhfk是指荷兰女人, Efk是澳洲女人, Fofadbq (Ffaav) 是爱尔兰的使女。

荷兰人被叫作Lf`Dol d或Kvke bbo; 瑞士人是Al ifk RYj ml k; 称俄国人为? ZbYo; 称土耳其人为Kdfabi。

I kf hboZl`hbo是指纽约市民, 出自U Ype fkdq k Gsfkd的Ffpq av l cLbt W oh dv Bfbaqfee I kfehbodl ehbo, 大概是因为在Lbt C kdiYka的荷兰移民穿短裤的关系吧。伦敦人则被称为Al`hkbv。

## II 代名词

### 14. Objective “it”

z庄样夕腿错好怪罗) 夕务错好服罗à细句) 乡唱庄样zG<sub>1</sub>fp sbov  
afœf r iqđ t ofqb Ckdifpe t bii) Zr qfqfp pcfii j l ob afœf r iqđ p  
nbYh t bii,à) 讲务懂了) 状亚pnbYh鬼加fq细字尝对) 请舰fq搭宾语  
邪动扼夕务明。

③刻创】这也是中英两种语文不同的地方。中文常把他动词的宾语略去，而英文则非得说出不可。如问题中的英译句，t ofqb和pnbYh都是他动词，t ofqb后有Ckdifpe一个宾语，pnbYh后还得再说出宾语来，现为避免重复用Ckdifpe一字，改用代名词fq来代替。下列各句同样的用法，值得注意，因为中文的宾语常被略去。

U b t l r ia eYsb Ymmob`fYqba fq Zbqpo fc vl r eYa t ofqb  
k đ efj nbopl kYiiv, (破贫室倍砰皇) 写眼粉候。(句中搭fq婉  
议z破贫室倍砰皇à) 亚中样状略) 顶庄样眼断夕并可。

U e bk vl r eYsb ob`bfsba Y ibqpo) vl r j r pq Ykpt bo fc  
Yp pl l k Yp ml ppfZib, (急村鞭瞥搭员) 望礼千合复。(庄样亚Y  
kpt bo搭赏凡导鬼) 必望加千春避 ibqpo搭fq字样) 更眼并士。

Gkbsbo obiv r ml k efp t l oa) d o e b kbsbo j Yhbp Y ml  
j fpb t fœ œ b t fii đ hbbmfq (俗的并员素赏务搭寒) 想眼赏  
总婉怕诺顶并呢外。(

Re bv pYv e b eYp ibc̣q ḍ t k) Zr q Gal kl q Zbifbsb fq (讲  
务赏闲军杰卑去) 刺俗并员。(庄样亚赏凡导Zbifbsb鬼必望加春  
避e b eYp ibc̣q ḍ t k搭fq细个宾语并可。

现就MZgb` qfsb zfqà, 举例如下:

Re b HYmYkbpb il oaba fq l sbo qe b kYqfsbp l c RYft Yk, (:  
mYvba qe b il oa t fqe, al j fkboba l sbo ( (平卑瞥曾研凌奢  
询瞥期。(

Re b Y` qbpb fp pqYookd fq fk qe b mōl sfk` bp, (: YqppY` qfk  
d dobYq Yqpbkqf l k ( (略貌伶亚各地方真池大眼历座。(

W r ɬi `Yq̣ e fq ! (: W r ɬi Zb p` l iaba) mr kfpe ba) bq  
` , ( (码祸夕委村尺肤) 拔欧。(

F b fp ḍ l l ia ḍ ol r de fq (赏吗换太大) 过并了液婴酒睛  
巧恨。(

F b qfba ḍ pt fj fq (赏冒抗邮字过砰。(

U bj r pqfde qfq l r q (俗料必望鹅盗村顿。(

Jbq r p j Yhb Yk bsbkfkd l c fq (四俗料醒令地过细个晚  
千。(

F b eYa qe b Zbpq l c fq (赏唱喊了。(

F b eYa qe b t l opq l c fq (赏涂八了。(

U b eYa kl qe fkd d o fq (: kl YiqbokYqfsb ibc̣q (Zr q ḍ ol  
r de fq l r q (: cY` b Yka l sbo` l j b Ykv afœ` r iqf bp qe Yqj fd  
eqYofpb ( (俗料辆薪鞭搭拜动) 译好另对泗清) 克烦困罗。(

Re bv Yob j Yhfkd Y g iiv ifcb l c fq (赏料巧恨错断草醒  
令。(

W r Yob fk d o fq (: W r Yob `Yr de qfk Y` ofq Yi pfq Yc  
fl k) Yka `Yk kl qbp` Ymb, ( (码提陷兴困境) 并错脱蓄。(

Gp sbov kbYo) pl vl r `Yk t Yih fq (怪贾) 码可显走  
砰。(

现再就美国两位作家，一新一旧，对**fq**的特别用法，例示如下：

F1 Z: Gt Yp Yq q̄ b Ym̄l f̄k q̄ba m̄Y b l k q̄j b, U e b k v l r  
p q̄r `h q̄ b j Y q̄ e q̄ i f d e q v l r o ` f d Y o G p Y t f q t Y p q̄ b c Y b l  
c q̄ b j Y k t Y k q̄ba f k A e f Y d l , Q l j b e l t G l r i a k q̄ a l f q j  
v p b i c ) p l G t b k q Y o l r k a Y k a d l q q̄ b m̄Y f k ` i l q̄ b p j Y k q̄  
a l q̄ b g Z, y y M, F b k o v: *E a q̄ b o R t b k q̄ W b Y o p* (薄差接：俗  
愉轻村第了议乏搭地点。冬码铲私火苍来点怎努轻) 俗舰看村了  
略个另林正婉芝加哥拉方伤夕追测搭瞥。可婉俗欲华并好珠撒渐  
测码) 伤显俗闭走杰砵) 顶野了细个闭下拉承来干液活汨。(约  
夜并务Y o o b p q v l r 顶邪a l f q k a l q̄ b g Z 来春械) 想眼念样闲尖  
务明懊了。

? i i e b a f a t Y p h b b m q̄ Y i h f k d Y Z l r q p l j b Z Y Z b e b t Y p p  
r m̄l p b a q̄ e Y s b e Y a p b u r Y i f k q̄ b o ` l r o p b t f q̄, C s b o v q̄j b  
e b q̄ i a f q̄) f q t Y p a f c b o b k q̄ M k b j f k r q̄ b e b a Z b d f s f k d f q q̄  
e b o f k e f p ` l r p f k a p F r f h ) q̄ b k b u q j f k r q̄ b e b a Z b d f s f k d  
f q q̄ e b o r k a b o p l j b Z l Y o a t Y i h, y y H, B, Q Y i f k d b o: *R e b A  
Y q̄ e b o f k q̄ b P v b* (赏译细私尽续讲沃火赏东巧过婆施呼堂搭貌  
工子搭汨盘。每道赏务搭轻即) 的薪伤并世。薪轻赏婉亚的赏避  
哥尺计来搭失楚漫火尚干略合汨) 薪轻赏心亚攻残律板某唱搭步  
存顿下来干。(

## 15. oneself的六种用法

z束逃巧火俗卑瞥的夕村健搭à细句) 乡唱庄样搭zK o, U l kd Yk a j vpbic t fii Zb mōpbkqà) 眼获并对? 请祸j vpbic搭邪动由眼务明。

③刻创】在古代英语中，曾经以j b、efj、æbj等单纯代名词，当作j vpbic、efj pbic、æbj pbisbp来用，使之具有反身的意味(Pbibufsb K bYkfk d)，如Qe YhbprnbYob说的zGe Ysb t ofq o b e bo b Y ibæpbo，(我在此写了一封信。) à，及Fvol k说的zRl æ bfo pYir qY qfl kp e b Zbkap efō pifde qiv，(对于他们的敬礼，他略为弯身回答。) à。反过来具有+pbic的字，却用于没有反身的意思(kl k+obābū fsbiv)了，如zGYj flksfōkd vl r o pbic Yka vl r o t fdb，(我要招待你和你的太太。) à。

所以问题中翻译的英文句子，在古代是通的，但现代英语却不许这样说了，必须改为zK o, U l kd Yka Gt fii Zb mōpbkqà才可以。同样zRe bv flksfōpa j v t fdb Yka j vpbicà，句中末字也要改为j b才合乎现代英语的语法。

现在且说这种+pbic代名词的正当的用法又是怎样的。

(/) 用作他动词的宾语，句中主语和宾语为同一人或同一物时：

Re b`efia eYp Zr okq fōpbic，(略工子审了欲华。(

Hbpr p`Yiiba efō pbic æ b pl k l c El a，(熄置集赏欲华眼千渡之子。(

B l k&bu`r pb vl r o pbic，(并必存始。(

(0) z他动词-反身代名词：自动词à时：

GpbYɔpa o vpbic (: pYqal t k (Zbpfab efj , (俗亚赏梦部越下了。 (

B1 k&l sbobYq vl rɔpbic, (缩过食。 (

Ge Ysb bkg vba o vpbicsbov j r`e, (书错怪醒令。 (

(1) 成为介词的宾语时:

W r j r p q qYhb dl l a `Yob l c vl rɔpbic, (码必望提欲一庭。 (

Re b al l o l mbkba l c fɔpbic, (了欲杰了。 (

F b Yit Yvp ifsbp Zv efo pbic, (赏总婉等老。 (

W r j r p q al ɔ Yq d o vl rɔpbic, (码错欲华做。 (

F b il l hba Yq efo pbicfk ɔ b j fool o, (赏对简欲也。 (

Mr o `Ymɔ op ibɔq r p d l rɔpbisbp, (凡南俗料搭瞥四俗料欲由外凡) 并加搞日。 (

(2) 用于主语、宾语、补语的同格, 以加强其意义, 不加时意思也一样。

Re b j Yɔpbo fɔpbicfp sbov `ibYo, (泗盘卑蓄怪明懊。 (

F b t ol ɔ ɔ b ibɔpbo efo pbic, (赏室倍腿搭员。 (

L Ym l ibl k efo pbic`l r ia kl qal fq (拿伤类卑瞥袭并勤做村。 (

Csbk ɔ b sbov dl ap ɔ bo pbisbp t bbml sbo ɔ b piYsbov l ct fpal j d d iiv, y y AYoiuib (举村讨瞥眼租瞥伤酷请) 化敲袭眼之哭施。 (

Re b l ia dbkqibj Yk fp el pnfqYifq fɔpbic, (略惧瞥料胜瑚了。 (

(3) 用于避免发生误会时:

Qe b Yphba d o Y qf hbq d o *ebopbic*, (尚眼尚欲华买了细斐票。(破邪d o e bo眼可勤婉议鞭瞥。

(4) 在比较时, 用有 $\varphi$ Yk、ifhb、pl、Yp 时:

Qe b fp j r`e qYiibo  $\varphi$ Yk o *upbic*, (尚背俗高错多。(

Re b mēl q̄ fp kl q̄fk  $\varphi$ b ibYpq ifhb o *upbic*, (略也片细点裘并通俗。(

Re bv Yob nr fqb Yp t bii bar`Yq̄pa Yp o *upbic*, (赏料火俗细样委过高强搭教育。(

比较: (Y) F b *efo pbica*fa fq

(Z) F b afa fq *efo pbic*,

(Y) 近乎文言, (Z) 为口语; (Y) 有点装腔作势, (Z) 有点回想 (Y $\varphi$ bo+ $\varphi$ l r de q) 意味, 这是根据Hbpnbopbk说的。

## 16. 关系代名词的位置

庄样搭呼堂春其导) 状夹急亚深逃外导之鬼) 刺草举呼堂春其导与逃外导之恢) 抹加入深赏搭字) 请夫夜薪了礁军。请舰呼堂春其导搭位音将堪务明。

③刻创】英文中的关系代名词 (*obiYqfsb mɒl kl r k*) 是负有两重任务的, 既作代名词用, 同时又用作连词。作连词用的关系代名词, 实和真正的连词完全一样, 应置于其所连接的子句的头上是毫无疑义的。同时从它的代名词的机能看来, 又得要最靠近它的先行词 (*Ykɔp ˈbabkq*), 所以置于从属子句的头上, 更是必然的事。

可是等到实际行文时, 常因种种理由, 不能完全照这样办, 只好把它置于另外的字后面去, 例如: *zYj Yk ɔpYk t elo ɔp bob t bob c bt Zbɔpɔ dɔil t p fk ɔp b t l oia* (世界上没有几个比他更好的人) à。又如 *zGt Yp Zol r de qɔ ɔp b miY b dbvl ka t ef ee ɔp bob iYv ɔp b pbY*, (我被带到靠海不远的地方。) à。我们无法把句中的 *ɔpYk* 和 *Zbvl ka* 移到别的地方去, 非置于关系代名词之前不可。

他如 *ar ofkd*、*ˈl kpfabofkd*、*l mml pfɔp*、*bu ˈbmɔ* 等具有形容词性质的介词, 也是如此。普通的介词, 如 *l c*, 亦莫不皆然, 例如 *ɔp bj l r kɔYfk ɔp b d ml ct ef ee fp ˈl sboba t fɔp pkl t* (山顶积雪), 虽可说成 *ɔp bj l r kɔYfk l ct ef e ɔp b d mfp ˈl sboba t fɔp pkl t*, 但决没有办法把 *l c* 移到 *t ef e* 的后面去, 除非我们把 *l c* 略去, 即是不说 *q eb d ml ct ef e*, 而说 *t el pb d m*, 但这种对人的代名词, 用于对物, 也是要遭受非难的。

还有, 我们说 *ɔp b d ml ct ef e* 或 *l ct ef e ɔp b d m*, 二者是没有什么分别的, 但在别的情形时, 换动一下, 意义上就要发生变化了, 例如: *zF b eYa ɔt l aYr de ɔpɔp, l ct elo l kbj Yoofba Y g a db*, (他有两个女儿, 一个嫁了法官。) à, 就与说 *zF b eYa ɔt l aYr de ɔpɔp, l kbl ct elo j Yoofba Y g adb*, à 有所不同, 因为我们说 *l ct*



elj 1kbj Yoofba Y gr adb就令人有一种预感，以后我们必将继续说 Yka q̄b1q̄bo的，若说1kb1ct elj j Yoofba Y gr adb，就不会给人这种印象（Hbpm̄bopbk: K, C, E, Nq̄ ḠGm̄ /66）。

在关系代名词前加用介词一类的字是很普通的，如加用不定词，就会使文章生硬，例如：zK1obl sbo, q̄bob Yob Zl1hp t ef e Yob kl Zl1hp, Yka q̄ obYa t ef ee fpj bob t Ypqb1cq̄j b,（而且，有些无聊的书，去读它简直是浪费时间。）à。这个关系代名词，成为Ḡk̄dfq̄sb的MZgb̄`q̄了。把这个不定词的q̄ obYa, 移到关系代名词的t ef e的后面去，说成t ef e q̄ obYa fpj bob t Ypqb1cq̄j b, 也并不是不可以，不过最kYqr̄ oYi而又`l iil nr fYi的说法，便是t ef e fq fpj bob t Ypqb1cq̄j b q̄ obYa的形式，这才是所谓dl1a Ckdifpe。

如果在关系代名词的子句中，用上两个不定词，而同为关系代名词的宾语，其中一个置于宾语之前时，就要使其意义含糊不明了。英诗人Rbkkvpl k有句云：zQr`e Y1kb al Gobj bj Zbo, t elo q̄ il l h Yqfp q̄ il sb,（我记得这样一个人，令人一见倾心。）à。如果说成q̄ il l h Yqt elj fp q̄ il sb的话，其中的t elj 就不晓得是不是q̄ il sb的宾语，如果说成t elj fqfp q̄ il sb q̄ il l h Yq, 也同样地意义不明，可见两个不定词用在一块儿，容易惹起观念上的混乱，是一种很拙劣的表现法。

## 17. 国家的代名词用she或it

根家搭春其导薪邪pe b搭) 心薪邪fq搭) 并知获夜正牌?

③刻创】这两种用法都是正确的，何时用pe b，何时用fq，才是我们要研究的问题。据语法书上说，地理的用fq，而政治的就用pe b，但什么是地理的，什么是政治的，常不容易辨明，最好把政治的解释为人文地理的，地理的解释为自然地理的，也许比较明白达意，不过用法很不一定，人文地理的场合也有用fq的例子。

把国家当作女性看待，是拉丁语法上性别 (Ebkabo) 的遗留，现在已嫌古老，而倾向于使用fq了。所以与其说zF Ykd`el t fp cYj l r p d o e bo p`bkf` ZbYr qv, (杭州以湖光山色之美著名。) à, 不如说zF Ykd`el t fp cYj l r p d o fqp p`bkf` ZbYr qv, à更合乎现代人的说法。但用pe b和e bo的例子还是不少。请看下举的例:

Dl o qt l `bkqr ofbp HYmYk obj Yfkba l r qpfab qe b j Yfk` r oobkql c e fpql ov, Qe b ifsba l k fk Y pqYqb l c nf qr obpnr b db r aYifpj, (薪课吧吗平卑的店亚历情忧阔之外) 巧敌亚细婴破剑搭饿货制访搭状态中。(

?k`fbkq Plj b pr Zgb`qba j l pq l c Cr ol nb ql e bo or ib, (咐罗礼请大波朵搭梅洲的划尚势引了。(

CkdiYka j Yv t bii Zb mol r a l c e bo ml bqp, (庄根夕惊惜尚搭勤瞥袞婉薪存君搭。(

EobYq FofqYfk e Yp Y cYfoiv dl l a `ifj Yqb, Gp pr j j bop Y ob kl q sbov el q) Yka fqp t fkqbop Yob kl q ql `l ia, (大庄渡根搭胜即怪好。荀十并太漂) 翻十袞并太冷。(

Qk /726) qt l j l kqp Yqbo qe b qpbYqv t fqe Hl oaYk t Y p pfdkba) NYibpqfkb Zb`Yj b ql l el q Y ml qYql d o FofqYfk ql el ia Ykv il kdbo, Qe b obifknr fpe ba e bo j YkaYqb, (亚/726

吗与学此什倒蚀学课个月之鬼) 巴倦若社对庄根才唱了细个十朵  
节手搭问狮。庄根闭放能了尚搭说授势引澎。(

Re b dl sbokj bkq l c qe b Pbmr Zif l c TfbqkYj e Yp Ykkl  
r k` ba fk QYfdl k qe Yq fqp d o` bp` r oobkqv Yob` l kar` qkd l  
nboYqfl kp fk qe b NYool qf FbYh YobY Yil kd qe b AYj Zl afYk  
Zl oabo, (切越政府亚她好唯差上搭揭递提正毋宇贿烧寨部境知支  
圆细点家外揭泗外凡。(

## 18. oneself前加介词构成的片语

春其导l kbpbic念加各婴并世搭记导) 讲务可产巧各婴并世搭珠  
诸) 请朵鞭堪刻。

③刻创】和l kbpbic有关的常见的片语，计有d o l kbpbic、Zv l kbpbic、l c l kbpbic、Zbpfab l kbpbic、q l l kbpbic、fk l kbpbic六种，兹分别将其含义加以解释，并举例说明其用法如下：

(/) d o l kbpbic独力；自立。QB上说t fql r qe bimol j l qe bop Yka fk l oabo q Zbkbcfq l kbpbic，意即没有别人的帮助，为着自己的利益。例如：

W r eYsb l mbkba d o vl r opbic qe b t Yv q pr `` bpp, (码等抗杰鼻了唱喊搭存路。(

Re bob Yob pl j b qe fkdpl kb `Yk&q al d o l kbpbic, (薪遇汹婉欲华并勤等抗做搭。(

F b fp l ia bkl r de q al d o efj pbic, (赏吗亏闲大) 足显欲立了。(

F b eYp Zr fiq Y el r pb d o efj pbic, (f,b, d o efpl t k r p b ((赏眼欲华货颜了细幢肃子，赏等抗货唱。(

Qvl r eYa Yk bvb fk vl r oebYa) vl r j fdeqpbb t eYqp eb fp d o vl r opbic, (破跟码薪五晴搭寒) 码舰看错明懊尚村顿婉细个怎样搭貌瞥。(

照字面的本义来解释，当然是可以的，如：

Re fp l kb Gpe Yii hbbmd o j vpbic, (液个俗欲华默下。(

又d o fqpbic: d o fqp l t k pYhb (为其本身)，例如：

F b il sbp iYZl r o d o fqbic, (赏眼宇罗凡顶爱罗凡〔并婉眼年) 袭并婉眼施抗运凡]。 (

(0) Zv l kbpbic独自, 无伴, 分开, 退隐。Yil kb, r kY`l j m Ykfba, YmYoq, pbnr bpqboba。例如:

Qe b ifhbp q qYhb Y t Yih Zv e bopbic, (尚叹翰等欲七步。 (

F b afa kl q ifhb q ibYsb efp aYr de qbo Zv e bopbic, (赏并叹翰四赏搭貌儿等欲细瞥。 (

Gf p Y sfocr b Zv fqbic, (略卑蓄舰婉细婴片措。 (

(1) l cl kbpbic自然地出于自动, 自愿。pml kqYkbl r piv, fk fq p l t k kYqr ob, pbnYoYqiv`l kpfaboba, t fql r q qe b fkpqfdYql k l o Yfa l c Ykl qe bo。例如:

F b t l hb r ml cefj pbic, (赏欲华弯来了。 (

Re b al l o l nbkba l cfqbic, (房了欲杰。 (

Re b`Ykaib t bkql r ql cfqbic, (酒用欲意。 (

AeliboY) pj Yii+ml u) bq,`Ykkl ql ofdfkYq l c qe bj pbis bp, y y ?sbZr ov (恒雷) 十害打并勤欲华东巧。 (

Fll hp) pe b qel r de q) dobt l c qe bj pbisbp, y y T, Ull i c (尚贫眼扰籍婉健欲皮灰多搭。 (

Jl kal k pbbj p ifhb Y t l oia l cfqbic, (念典卑蓄好通婉细个完寂。 (

Re b ibYdr b`Yk al kl qe fkd l cfqbic, fqfp kl qe fkd l cfqbic, (联盟单等什凉袭并勤做, 上卑蓄什凉袭并婉。 (

(2) Zbpfab l kbpbic发狂, 精神错乱。t fiaiv bu`fqa, j Ya, l r ql cl kbq pbkpbp,`oYw。例如:

F fp t fdb t Yp Yij l pq Zbpfab e bopbic t fqe g v, (赏搭哪子翰叹她狂。 (

F b fp Zbpfab e fj pbic t fqe Ykdbo, y y I fohmYqpf h (赏盛帽耍袜。 (

AYqe v) Zbpfab e bopbic) dYsb qe b` e Yfo Y sfl ibkq mr pe, y y C, Fol kqb (廉她东狂地把中子邪抗细试。 (

(3) q l kbpbic私自, 窃, 心中。 fkt Yoaiv。 例如:

GeYa hbm qe b Zbifbc q j vpbic, y y J, Fol j dfbia (俗把略个员请猜亚欲华心中。 (

G`er`hiba q j vpbic, y y Qqpsbkpl k (俗暗欲东途。 (

F b t Yp`er`hifkd q efj pbic l sbo t e Yqe b t Yp obYa fkd, (赏对伤方搭扰丽错薪趣顶并免私欲东途。 (

Gj r pq t ofq Yp qe l r de Gt bob Y nbopl k l c fj ml oqYk` b, Yka fkabba) GYj y q j vpbic) q j vpbic GYj qe b j l pc fj ml oqYkq nbopl k fk qe b t l oia, y y K Yr de Yj (俗细乏夕把俗腿唱细个厌大搭瞥, 对俗欲华来务) 俗潮皮婉细个厌大搭瞥纹。对俗欲华来务) 俗婉液完寂千源厌大搭瞥了。 (

下例中用的q l kbpbic: Zv l kbpbic, Yil kb (独自), 和上面的意思又有所不同了。

Jfcbp Y t l kaboor i qe fkd) I Yq) Y qe fkd l kb`Yk q ifsb Yii q l kbpbic) Y qe fkd l kb pe Yobp t fqe bsbovZl av, y y EYi pt l oqe v (瞥巧婉绅朴搭) 廉省) 婉并勤暑全等欲过恨搭) 婉夕火大家朵停搭。 (

PbYa qe Yq ibqpo q vl r opbic, y y Fl okZv (露方略员暗。 ( (q vl r opbic: pfibkqv (

Jbqq q efj pbic) Ko, Fr qd k dl q r mYka ZbdYk q t Yka bo ol r ka qe b ol l j, y y ?, Fr uibv (默下赏细个瞥搭轻即) 货电逃巧舰样难蓄来) 杰秋亚威琴走来走砰。 (

Fr q) qe fp) e b Y hkl t ibadba q efj pbic) t Yp Y qe fkd e b eYa kbsbo al kb Zbd ob, y y JYt obk` b (刺婉赏欲贫液活汨) 婉显念赏的来辆做过搭。 (

(4) fkl kbpbic 其本身，本来，不靠外力。fkabmbkabkqv l c  
buqYkbl r p fkar bk`b, YmYoq col j t e Yq fp kl q bppbkqYi d fq.  
例如：

JY`h l c`l kfabk`b fk efj pbicj Yab efj e bpfqYq, (批  
乏欲员请赏子徐并教。(

? dfkb`l r oqpv fp Y d oq kb fk fqbic, (好搭礼练深卑薈舰  
婉细倍膊产。(

Re bpb pr ZpqYk`bp Yob kl q ml fpl kl r p fk qe bj pbisbp,  
(液遇物质卑薈酸登。(

Re b`e Yofqy fk fqbic fp Yaj foYZib, (出提卑薈舰婉可赞赏  
搭。(

BfYj l ka fp eYoa fk fqbic, (员石卑来婉笑搭。(

Mr o sbov bufpqbk`b fp Y j foY`ib fk fqbic, (俗料搭巧敌卑  
薈舰婉细个绅厚。(

## 19. 关系代名词的省略

Re bob<sup>ɕ</sup>j Ykv nbl mib t Ykq<sup>ɕ</sup> al ɕe b pYj b, (怪多瞥的卹夕  
做世样搭泗盘。(亚液句寒中) 眼什凉邪了凡导<sup>ɕ</sup>) 心邪凡导<sup>t</sup> Yk  
q) 挠并婉细句中邪千课个凡导了怕?

③刻创】依照文法的规则，一句中只能有一个主语 (Qr Zg<sup>h</sup> q) 和一个述语 (Nobaf Y<sup>ɕ</sup>ɕ, 即一般所谓谓语句y y 编注)。述语就是动词，如果一句中要用两个动词的话，就要用连词的Yka或l o连起来，再不然就让第二个动词变成不定词 (K<sup>ɕ</sup>dkf<sup>ɕ</sup>sb)。前者如zF b<sup>h</sup> l j bp Yka dl bp, (他来来去去。) â, 后者如zF b<sup>h</sup> l j b q<sup>ɕ</sup> pbb j b, (他来看我。) â。但问题中提出的句子却不是这样，因为那原来是两个句子构成的，省去了一个关系代名词罢了。那句话本来应作：

Re bob<sup>ɕ</sup>j Ykv nbl mib t e l t Ykq<sup>ɕ</sup> al ɕe b pYj b,

这是一种古老的说法，莎翁时代是很普通的，一直流传下来，在今日的口语中仍很通用。使我们感到一句中有两个动词的，是主格关系代名词省略的结果，至于宾格关系代名词也常省略，但我们不会觉得有什么异样，只认为更加简明，例如：

Re b Zl l h (ɕe Yq或t ef e (GZl r de q vbp<sup>ɕ</sup>ɕoaYv fp sbov fk  
ɕobop<sup>ɕ</sup>kd, (俗怨十买搭略卑扰断草薪趣。(

Fr v fqZY<sup>h</sup> h ɕol j ɕe b j Yk (t e l j 或ɕe Yq (vl r pl ia fq<sup>ɕ</sup>  
l, (的码历海赏搭略瞥手漫哑买合来。(

不管是主格或宾格的关系代名词，只有在限定用法的时候才能省略。兹将主格关系代名词各种省略的形式，分别举例说明如下：

(/) 关系代名词为补语时：



Qe b fp kl q qe b`e bbocr i t l j Yk [qe Yq] pe b t Yp Zbd ob  
pe b j Yoofba, (尚闲并婉结黑念略样令乐搭貌瞥了。 (

Q kl q qe b d l i [qe Yq] v l r qe l r de q j b (q Zb (, (俗  
并并婉破码伤邮搭略婴傻子。 (

(0) 以Re bob<sub>fp</sub>、F bob<sub>fp</sub>开始的文句:

Re bob<sub>fp</sub> Y j Yk Yq qe b a l l o [t e l] t Yk q d p b b v l r,  
(了口薪瞥夕举码。 (

Re bob<sub>fp</sub> Y d b k q i b j Yk [t e l e Yp] `l j b d q Y i h d v l r,  
(薪位逃巧来跟码想想。 (

F bob<sub>fp</sub> Y i Y a v [t e l] `Y i i b a Y Z l r q Y`Y q (薪位太太眼  
字连搭泗来端。 (

Re bob<sub>fp</sub> i l q p l c n b l m i b [t e l] t l r i a d f s b Y Z f q d h k l t  
qe Yq (怪多瞥的瑚邮知存略个。 ( (亚口语中草显qe bob fp春qe  
bob Yob邪) 卑句中搭Y Z f q馆眼Y i f q i b之珠) 刺提约都语邪) 珠  
眼s b o v j r`e。正式邪qe bob Yob搭冬皮并幢) 破zRe bob Yob j Y  
k v p r o m f p f k d qe f k d p [qe Yq] e Y m r b k f k qe f p t l o i a, à (

Re bob<sub>fp</sub> Y i l q [qe Yq] d l b p l k Y Z o l Y a qe f p p e f m qe Y q G a  
l k q i f h b, (亚液担千薪怪多泗俗并叹翰。 (

(1) 加强语气的Q<sub>1</sub>fp, , , qe Yq的句型:

Q<sub>1</sub> k l q b s b o v Z l a v [qe Yq] h k l t p qe b o f d e q t Y v d q b p c  
n b o c r j b, (并并婉瞥瞥的知存正冬搭试务田如搭方动。 (

Q<sub>1</sub> t Y p G [qe Yq] Z l r d e q qe b p b d l t b o p d o K f p p ?, (眼?  
头剂买了液遇害搭瞥婉俗纹。 (

(2) 在关系代名词后出现qe bob fp (Yob) 时:

Qe b q Y r d e q j b qe b a f c b o b k`b [qe Yq] qe bob fp Z b q t b b k  
t e Y q f p o f d e q Y k a t e Y q f p t o l k d, (尚教了俗好坏搭树鞭。 (

Re b kr j Zbo l c j fpqYhbp [ɕe Yq] ɕe bob Yob fk ɕe fp e l j  
bt l oh fp pfj niv Ypɕ r kafkd, (亚液份进外约习中幢所多错惊  
瞥。(

Ge Ysb pbbk Yii [ɕe Yq] ɕe bob fp ibɕq ɕl pbb fk ɕe b `fqv,  
(亚去琴思看暑搭祷她俗全波看了。(

(3) 有插入句Ghkl t、t b ɕe fkh等时:

Qe b fp g pq ɕe b ɕvnb [ɕe Yq] GYit Yvp hkbt t l r ia Yɕpp  
Y ɕe fj , (尚脾婉勤吸向赏搭略婴典瓦搭貌顽。(

K Ykv l c ɕe l pb nr Yifɕbp [ɕe Yq] t b ɕe fkh Yob ɕvmb Yi l c  
ʔj bof Ykp fk dbkboYi t bob ɕe b obpr iq l c ɕe fp ɕol kɕbo ifɕb,  
(可贫眼婉片根瞥细罢搭省征搭在多略样搭顽质) 婉的部疆拓尖  
巧恨顶产巧池来搭。(

(4) 关系代名词为主语或宾语时:

Re b e fkdb fp il l pb Yka ɕe b ɕɕpqt fka [ɕe Yq] `l j bp Yi  
l kd t fii Zil t ɕe b t e l ib al l o l ɕ, (君美怪松) 多细道赶耳舰  
健把已个搭了弹而搭。( (忧语 (

GiYkaba l kb l k`b [ɕe Yq] t bfde ba ɕt l Yka Y e Yic ɕl k  
p, (俗薪细道钓村细蚀薪课点败重。( (宾语 (

### III 形容词、副词

#### 20. 虚设的否定字

薪警务庄样薪轻把零乏句寡唱更乏句) 珠撒憾婉细样。并知脾  
薪深洒更? 请将堪务明。

③刻创】在英文的表现法中确有这种现象。如云:

Bl vl r ifhb ar ofYkp?

Bl k&vl r ifhb ar ofYkp?

二句, 同是问人爱不爱吃榴梿。

又有所谓修辞的疑问句, 也是肯定和否定同义的, 如云:

AYk&j Yk `eYkdb qe b t l oia?

K Yk `Yk `eYkdb qe b t l oia,

这是说人是可以改造世界的, 修辞疑问中则加上否定字进去, 实则意思是肯定的。又如:

U eYqRl j eYp pr αboba!

U eYqeYp Rl j kl qpr αboba?

第一句为感叹句, 意为z汤姆受了好大的苦呀! à。

第二句为修辞疑问句，意为z什么苦汤姆没有受过呢？à，当然是说他什么苦都受过了。

双重否定时，其中有一个否定字也是虚设的，如：

Gpel r iak&qt l kabo fc fqt Ypk&q æ b dfk YdYfk, y y F, E obbk (强怕心婉登酒俗袭并健粉村惊著。(句中fc fqt Ypk&q: fc fqt Yp。

Re bob&p kl q Y t l j Yk Zr q al bpk&q dbq Yk bvb d o fiikbp p, (辆薪细个貌瞥对病是并薪晴鞭抗搭。(液个Zr q: t e l al bp kl q) 伤显Zr q鬼搭更乏婉虚设搭。

JYt obk`b在JYav AeYq&pbv&p Jl sbv中说，Gal r Zqvl r `Yk&q实际的意思是Gal r Zqvl r `Yk。

再则因字义有不同的解释，故加上否定还是不影响原来的意思，如：

F b bu`r pba j v dl fkd æ bob,

F b bu`r pba j v kl q dl fkd æ bob,

这两句话，第二句加入kl q一字，意思还是和第一句一样。因为第一句中的bu`r pb: afpnbkpb t fæ (免除)，而第二句中的bu`r p b: mYoa l k (原谅)。第一句是说免除他去，第二句是说原谅他不去，所以二者结果变成同样的意思了。

再看下面这两句：

U e Yqt Ypj v Ypd kfpej bkq, , ,

U e Yqt Yp kl qj v Ypd kfpej bkq, , ,

二者都是z使我吃惊的是à的意思，因为第一句是表示elt dobYq t Ypj v Ypd kfpej bkq, 而第二句则表示出kl Ypd kfpej bkq`l r i a Zb dobYq&po æ Yk j fkb t Yp之意。

这种虚设的否定字不但英语中有，其他语文中也是常见的。英语还有与此相反的现象，即应说kl q的地方却不说，而说成肯定句，最

有名的一句就是：

B1 k& qpii efj j l ob qeYk vl r `Yk e bim : B1 k& qpii ef  
j j l ob qeYk fp kb` bppYov, (勤富并务舰并务。(亚j l ob qeY  
k显下卑状约更乏搭vl r `Ykkl qe bim) 刺益告千的邪零乏搭袜  
式。

再举一例：

U b al k& eYsb dr kp qe ol r de qYœ` j l ob qeYk t b `Yk  
e bim y y I fmifkd (亚看千走勤富并点式舰并点式。(

## 21. already和yet

下另课句庄样亚珠诸千并知薪获并世？

(Y (F Ysb vl r pbbk fq YiobYav?

(Z (F Ysb vl r pbbk fq vbq?

③刻创】照一般规则，vbq用于问句，YiobYav用于平叙句，如果把YiobYav也用在问句中，往往有惊讶的意味。(Z)例是普通问句的说法，是问对方是否已经看过，而(Y)例则表示惊讶，为什么这样快就看过了。例如马戏班来此表演刚第一天见报，而你就已经看过了，真想不到。

代替vbq用于问句或否定句中的YiobYav，意思还是一样，不过多表示一点惊讶而已，再举例句如下：

Qp e b ZY`h YiobYav? (YiobYav : qe r p bYoiv ( (赏液样早舰合来了怕？ (

Qp fq/. l l il`h YiobYav? (闲尖舰薪十点英了怕？ (

W r ob kl q ibYsfkd r p YiobYav) Yob vl r? (码液样早舰夕走了怕？ (

再看YiobYav正常用法的例：

Re b qYfk e Yp YiobYav ibq (YiobYav : Zv qe fp qj b ( (火楚闲尖杰走了。 (

U e bk G` Yiiba) e b t Yp YiobYav aobppba, (YiobYav : Zv qe Yq qj b ( (冬俗村赏家轻) 赏闲尖大好下烦了。 (

Qs b Zbbk qe bob YiobYav) pl Gal k q t Ykq q dl YdYfk, (YiobYav : mbsf+l r piv, Zbd ob kl t ( (略漫俗闲尖砰过) 伤

显俗并邨哑砰了。（

至于vbq的普通用法，可分下列各种：

Re b t l oh fp kl q vbq dfk fpe ba, (亚更乏句中vbq: r mql k l t、pl cYo ( (略浮约憾辆薪暑浮。（

U b e Ysb e Ya kl kbt p ol j efj vbq (俗料村提亚憾辆薪急村赏搭员台。（

L bba vl r dl vbq? (码舰细乏夕砰了怕? (

A Yk vl r qpii j b vbq? (vbq: kl t ( (码并勤舰告僧俗怕? (

F Ysb vl r ibYokba ql pt fj vbq? (码闲尖伟健了字鞋怕? (

F b qe Ykhr i vl r Yob vbq Yifsb, (vbq: pqii ( (码憾恨字) 医婉拖十拖地。(士草多邪pqii。

Ge Ysb vbq (: pqii (j l ob bu` fqlkd kbt p d o vl r, (俗憾薪服好搭统台鞭告码。（

q qe b Zbpq vbq d r ka, (村提亚眼止憾辆薪举村背液服好搭。（

Re b bkbj v j Yv t fk vbq (: Yqpl j b q ob qj b, Zbd o b Yii fp l sbo ( ) fct b obiYu l r o bad oq, (破跟俗松退下来) 带瞥憾婉可显错怯搭。（

? p vbq (: r mql kl t l o qe bk (t b e Ysb (e Ya (kl qj Ya b Ykv miYkp d o qe b e l ifaYvp, (俗料因纪〔或村略轻眼止〕憾辆薪做池什凉访黄搭计夹。（

U b pe Yii kl q bj nil v efj kl o vbq fp Zol qe bo, (俗料并雇邪赏) 顶且袭并雇邪赏搭月耽。（

W r j r pqt l oh vbq (: bsbk (e Yoabo, (码必望夕哑急哑厉尝外。（

Gl adoba efj pqii j l ob) Yka vbq e b t Yp kl q pYqpfba, (俗对赏务可显哑多海遇) 顶赏憾婉思勤立足。（

Re b il df pbbj p pl r ka) Zr q vbq fq al bp kl q`l ksfk` b  
j b, (价搞务错薪君) 刺俗憾婉并勤员烦。 (



## 22. Indirect Negation

庄样搭细遇更乏句) 并并细乏薪更乏字搭kl 或kl q) 袭并细乏薪愉更乏字搭eYoaiv、pbialj、ifqib、dbt 打) 请舰液婴并明盈搭更乏句将堪务明。

③刻创】在英文中表示否定的方法有两种，一种是从字面上可以看得出来的，一种是从字面上看不出来的。前者句中多包含得有kl q、kl、kbsbo、kl kb、ifqib、eYoaiv等否定的字样，或单字本身头上或尾上接有afp+ (afpfkqobpqa、afp`lj d oq、afpYmrbYo、afpZbifbc、afpYasYkqYdb、afp`lr oYdb)，fk+ (fkYZfifq、fk`YmYZib、fk`lksbkfbkq、fk d oj Yi)，kl k+ (kl kpbkpb、kl kpd m kl k`eYiYk`b)，rk+ (rkYZib、rkfkqobpqa、rkfkqobp qkd、rk`lj d oqYZib)，+ibpp (Yfj ibpp、j Yq`eibpp、nbkkfibpp) 等的字汇，而后者便完全没有这种否定字的出现，只在含义上表示出否定来，如：

AYq`e j b al fkd fq? (: Gpe Yii kl q al fq (

F b Y dbkqbj Yk? (: F b fp kl q Y dbkqbj Yk, (

?j Gj v Zol qe bo q hbbnbo? (: Gq fp kl qj v ar qv q hb  
bmj v Zol qe bo, (

U e Yq al G`Yob? (: Gal kq`Yob, (

F Ysb Gj l kbv bkl r de? (: Ge Ysbkq bkl r de j l kbv, (

Gbsbo Ge bYoa qe b ifhb! (: Gkbsbo e bYoa qe b ifhb, (

Gq fp Zbvl ka j v ml t bo q pbii fq`e bYnbo, (: G`Ykkl qp  
bii fq`e bYnbo, (

GYj cYo ol j ZiYj fkd efj , (: GYj kl q ZiYj fkd ef  
j , (

F fp j Ykkbop Yob Ykvqē fkd Zr q mibYpYkq (∴ F fp j Ykk  
bop Yob kl q mibY+pYkq (

Re b ZbYr qv l c qē b miY` b fp j l ob qē Yk G` Yk abp` ofZb,  
(∴ G` Ykkl q ab+p` ofZb qē b ZbYr qv l c qē b miY` b, (

Qk ?mōfi qē b j bqpl ml ifp fp cōbb cōl j d d Yka j fpq (∴ Qk  
?mōfi qē bob fp kl d d Yka j fpqfk qē b j bqpl ml ifp, (

Qe b fp kl q kbYoiv pl eYkapl j b Yp e bo pfpqbo, (∴ Qe b f  
p cYo cōl j Zbfkd pl eYkapl j b Yp e bo pfpqbo, (

如上举各例所示不包含kbdYqfsb t l oa的否定，便叫作Qkafob` q  
LbdYqfl k (间接的否定)，这是属于修辞范畴的一种语言现象，在英  
文的表现法中，用例极多。

?j GY d l i? (∴ GYj kl q Y d l i, (

Ue l hkl t p? (∴ L l l kb hkl t p, (

UeYqpel ria fq hkl t l cabYqē ? y y U l oapt l oqē (∴ R  
e b` e fia al bp kl q hkl t l cabYqē, (

所谓kl j fkYqfsb t fqē fkd kfqfsb (主语连不定词用)的构造，也  
是间接否定表现法的一种：

zUeYq! à e b (Sqppopl k (qel r de q) zF bkov Hbhvii d odb  
d o Y j r oabo+bo! ày y Qqpsbkpl k: Ba. Hbhvii Yka Ka. Fvab

Gq j Yoov Zbd obj v Zol qē bo) Yka ibYsb e fj t fqē kl k  
b q qYhb`Yob l c e fj ! y y FiY hj l ob: J l okY Bl l kb

由`l kafqfl kYi` iYr pb (条件句)来表达间接否定的也不乏名家的  
用例，及口头用语的字句，如：Zbpeobt j b、eYkd j b、aYj k  
j b、Qī Zb eYkdba、Qī Zb aYj kba、qē b absfi qYhb j b等，俯拾  
皆是。在莎翁的剧本中也到处可以看到GYj Y sfiiYfk (Y ol dr b, Hb  
t , ol l h, bq,)的表现法。在口语中省略j Yfk` iYr pb而只说fc+ iY  
r pb来表否定是极普通的。在剧本的对话中这种形式也是常见的。

U bii) ƒc G`l r iakǎ pbt Yq vl r o Ydb) NbY`ev) t ƒc l r c  
mof hfkd j v dfk+dbop! y y EYipt l oǎv: *Hv* (纹) 俗亚码液  
样搭吗亏) 婉并健拿难针来各下烦舰当了手议搭! (

U bii) ǎ pr ob! ǎ ǎ ƒp ƒp Ckdifpe j Yk kbop, y y Qe Y  
t: *He k Dr iǎ Mǎ bo ǎ iYka* (液脾并婉庄根搭礼仪约动。 (

?p ƒc KYr of b t l r ia Zb Y afob` ǎ o ƒc ƒq t Ypkǎ? y y EYi  
pt l oǎv: *Hv* (破跟并婉液样毛利若袭并健冬总颤搭。 (

Mc`l r opb! U e Yq or ZZfpe) Rl j ! ?p ƒc Ykv l kb bsbo ƒk  
sbpǎa j l kbv t ƒc l r qj Yhfkd pr ob, y y EYipt l oǎv: *Hv*  
(冬皮) 医傻! 并茅清呆舰投资下砰) 薪液样搭瞥怕? (

Gpe Yii ofpb ǎ ǎ b l ``Ypfl k) pbb ƒc Gal kǎ (: pr obiv Gp  
e Yii (y y Efpp+ƒkd: *Re b Lbt Eor d Qǎbbq* (村轻即俗细乏健  
搭。 (

AYǎ e j b dl ƒkd t ƒc ?kkfb Dol pq! y y Nofbpǎbv: *Kǎ*  
*Qo bbǎ Yka Fƒp DY o ƒiv* (俗怎袭并健跟哀瞧—返罗若省世砰  
搭。 (

在口语中又常用反语来表否定, 如说zK r`e G`Yob,à, 即为zGal  
kǎ`Yob (j r`e), à之意, 他例如:

Kr`e dl l a ǎ Yqt l r ia e Ysb al kb, y y EYipt l oǎv: *Qǎ*  
*ǎdb* (略大大薪邪。 ( [都语]

又ǎ b absfi、ǎ b abr`b也可表示否定:

zQǎ al t k) j v dl l a nbl nib,àFr qǎ b abr`b Y Zƒqt l r i  
a ǎ bv pfq al t k, y y FYoav: *Re b Pbq ok l c ǎ b LYǎsb* (z诸  
位请越。à刺婉赏料怎袭并零越下。 (

## 23. few、a few, little、a little

请舰dbt 火Y dbt 搭朵鞭) ifqib火Y ifqib搭朵鞭) 显结液课园搭朵鞭) 加显堪刻。

③刻创】这四者在意义上都是表示z少à的。dbt 和Y dbt 是表不定的少数，与复数普通名词连用，而ifqib和Y ifqib就是表不定的少量，与物质名词或抽象名词连用。Y dbt 和Y ifqib 是表示z有一点à，dbt 和ifqib则表示z几无à，有冠词的重点在z有à，无冠词的重点在z无à。这些字除了原来的形容词用法外，又可作副词或名词用，容在下列举例说明。

据AMB的解释，dbt 是表j Ykv的反对意念，Y dbt 是表kl kb的反对意念。在?JB上的解释是dbt : kl qj Ykv; Y dbt : Y pj Yii k rj Zbo (1c) 。有人认为Y dbt 是指qt l lo qe obb是不对的，应当更多一点才对。例如t fqe dbt bu`bmql kp (几无例外)、qe l pbl cdbt v bYop (年少者)、Yj Yk l cdbt t loap (寡言的人)、Y dbt nbl mib (少数几个人)、Y dbt kfde qp iYqo (几个晚上以后)、Y dbt t bb hp el kbvj llk (几个礼拜的新婚旅行)、Y dbt al wbk j fkbp (几十个地雷)、Y dbt er kaoba j fiifl k al iiYop (数亿元)。ifqib: k l qj r`e, 而Y ifqib: plj b qel rde kl qj r`e [AMB], 同指数目的字一样，前者为否定，后者为肯定，用法也同。现分别加以例解。

?, 形容词。

Dbt nbl mib ifsb q Zb /. . Yka dbt bo pqii ifsb q Zb // . . , (辆薪花个瞥恨村细吧岁搭) 恨村细吧细十岁搭瞥服少。(

Uef e lcvl r j Yab qe b dbt bpqj fpqYhbp? (码料肉幢错源少? (

F Ysb vl r Y dbt j flkr qp q pmYob? (俗可显帝柜码花朵英怕? (

F fp Zl l hp e Ysb kl q Y dbt (: j Ykv (obYabop, (赏搭扰薪并少搭方夜。 (

Ge Ysb ifqib j l kbv ibq (俗辆薪突下花样。 (

Re b al` q o pYvp qe Yq e b e Yp Y ifqib` e Yk` b l c ob` l sbv, (瞎巧务赏添眼薪点何复搭角健。 (

F b e Yp j Yab kl q Y ifqib (: j r` e (j l kbv l k Y` l r kq l c qe b Zr pfk bpp Y qsfq, (赏想眼巧珠东第赚了并少搭年。 (

Re b` e fiaobk qe bj pbisbp) t fqe ifqib l o kl ml j mfk d) t fii pr ddbpq qe Yq, , , y y U, U, QYt vbo (对赏料什凉鼓凡搭寒的并务) 工子料欲华袭健失池夕 x x 搭。 (

U b t bob Y ifqib Ye bYa l c p` e bar ib, (背须乏搭添眼令了细点。 (

F, 名词。

? dbt l c qe b` e fiaobk t bob abprboYqiv cofde qkba, (薪花个头工银错怪厉功。 (

? cYfqe r i dbt obj Yfkba, (译突下少戎花个印清份子。 (

Ghkl t Y dbt l c qe bpb nbl mib, (液遇瞥冬中俗薪花个婉贫晴搭。 (

F b e Yp pbbk ifqib l cifb, (赏辆薪举过完另。 (

Ghkl t Y ifqib YZl r qfq (到洒俗知存细点。 (

Qe b afa mob` fl r p (: buqbj biv (ifqib q pYsb e bopbi, (尚眼欲件可显务什凉的辆薪做。 (

A, 副词。

U l k q vl r pqYv Y ifqib il kdbo? (码请多越细健儿暗。 (

Jfɕɕib afa GaobYj l cpr ``bbafkd pl t bii, (俗做林袭思邨  
村健薪液样大搭唱喊。(有珠 (ifɕɕib 与 aobYj 、bumb`q ɕɕf  
kh打凡导棵邪轻) 薪暑全更乏搭珠撒。

在dbt 或ifɕɕib前不用不定冠词的Y, 而改用定冠词的ɕɕb, 以及l k  
bɕ、l kiv、ɕl l、sbɔv 等字也是可以的。在dbt 前还可以用ɕɕbpb、ɕɕ  
l pb等限定词。例如: ɕɕb dbt pl kdp ɕɕYq ɕɕbv hkbt (他们知道的  
那几支歌)、ɕɕbpb dbt aYvp (这几天)、Dobaɕɕ dbt el ZZfbp (佛  
来德的几种癖好)、bsbɔv dbt vbYop (每数年)、ɕɕb pYj b dbt nl  
mr iYo nfb`bp (同样几本适合一般人看的作品)。ɕɕb dbt : ɕɕbj fk  
l ofɕv, 是对ɕɕbj Ykv : ɕɕbj Yɕ ofɕv说的。ɕɕb`el pbk dbt 是指选  
定的少数人。

Rl ɕɕb faib dbt aobpp fp Y Zr pfkbpp, ɕl ɕɕb Zr pv j Ykv  
fq fp Y el ZZv, (对少戎薪特搭瞥) 烦饰婉细活大泗, 对多戎斗忙  
搭瞥) 烦饰婉细婴织好。(

GeYsb pbbk l kiv Y dbt Pr ppfYk ɕij p, (俗译看过怪少花  
波苏联搭片子。(l kiv Y dbt 与dbt 略世。

Tbɔv dbt nbl mib hkl t fq (辆薪花瞥知到。(

Re bob t bob ɕl l dbt l cɕbj , (赏料眼戎太少。(

Gpbb sbɔv ifɕɕib l cɕfj , (俗怪少举村赏。(

Re b ifɕɕib l cɕfp t l oh ɕɕYq GeYsb pbbk pbbj p bu`biibkɕ  
(俗译看过赏瑚少细点儿约沙) 丽错怪好。(

## 24. right bank of the river的方位

太阳池搭方同婉乏亚祷方) 想顶班由俗料来教乏祷她切抱搭方位) 俗料抱同样字) 宗手眼祷) 院手眼她) 婉怪坡易朵必搭。因兴院宗之朵) 三几舰辆薪臂愉了, 课瞥另对字) 甲搭宗舰婉嫌搭院) 甲搭院舰婉嫌搭宗。庄样务细蚀固搭ofde q ZYkh) 村顿婉怎样来教乏方位搭落?

③刻创】所有的地图都是以北上南下右东左西为定位的, 美国的大河密西西比河 (qɛ b K fppfppfmrf) 是由北向南流入墨西哥湾的, 这从地图上看当然有一个左右之分。但中国的情形就大不相同, 所谓z大江东去ā, 扬子江是由西向东入海的, 地图上根本没有所谓左岸右岸。虽然如此, 中国却有z江左āz江右ā的说法。这是就地域来说的, 不是指大江说, 所谓江左, 是指长江最下游一带地方, 即现在的江苏省等地。《晋书—温峤传》上说: z峤见王导共谈, 欢然曰: °江左自有管夷吾, 吾复何虑? ā因为那时东晋的都城是建康 (即今南京), 所以这样说。据魏禧著的《目录杂说》上解释: z江东称江左, 江西称江右, 盖自江北视之, 江东在左, 江西在右耳。ā现在称江西省为江右, 就是这样来的。中国的长江只有南北岸, 而无东西岸, 所以称江南江北才是最实际的说法。

现在我们撇开地图的方位不说, 再来看看一般实际的情形。密西西比河在地图上的右岸, 如果坐在下水船上来说时, 左岸又变成右岸了。同样地, 在长江中坐下水船的人, 当然是把南岸视为右岸的。

问题中的ofde q ZYkh, 本是可以由说话的人临时指定的, 如果我们在书本上遇到这种说法, 而又不能确定那河是横流的, 还是直流的话, 要找出正确的方位就很困难了。据/735年出版的K, Lf el ipl k编的E Bfeql kYov l c Eo bofeYk-Ck difpe SpYdb上的说明是这样的: z说河的ofde q ZYkh是指一个人面向下流时右手的岸而言。ā如巴黎人说的z右岸ā, 正是指Qbfbk河在北岸而言。因该河是向西北流去的, 略

与我国东流入海的长河相反，右岸在长江则为南岸。至于美国由北向南的密西西比河，右岸乃其西岸。

从前有个笑话，在中国推行 **z**行人靠右à (**hbbmq** **q** **b ofde q**) 的时候，有人就担心街的左边没有人走了。街也像河一样，是没有固定的左右的，去的人的右边，也就是来的人的左边呢。

英文有一句成语说**dfs b Y nbopl k q b ofde q e Yka l c dbiil t pe f m**，意为对人伸出友谊之手。中国人抱拳作揖，外国人就是伸出右手来与对方握手。为什么握手一定要用右手呢？这是因为西方人佩剑时总是用右手拔剑，如果互相握住右手，自然不能再来拔剑，这样友善自然表现出来了。



## 25. ever和once的用法

z俗投错俗曾尖羞举过赏。俗邨略婉课个月显念搭泐。à乡眼庄样搭zGhkl t Gbsbo j bq efj , Gqfkh fq t Yp q l j l kq p Ydl ,à) 薪警务bsbo邪搭并对) 请舰到字邪动) 由眼务明。

③刻创】英译句中的bsbo, 应改为l k`b才对, 因为l k`b: Yqpl j b qj b fk q b mYpq或 d oj boiv (往昔), 在肯定句中常与过去时态的动词同用。例如:

Mk`b q bob ifsba Y nr bbo dbil t fk q b sfiiYdb, (的念船漫薪细个后瞥。(

Qe b t Yp l k`b sbov j fpboYZib, (尚细访怪比步。(

Cdvmq t Yp Y l k`b ml t box i kYql k, (巴结曾尖婉细个世根。(

Gt Yp sbov d ka l ce fj l k`b, (俗数他怪叹翰赏。(

至于bsbo一字, 用于现在时态、现在完成时态及过去时态的疑问句中, 才有z曾经à的意思; 用于条件句及否定句中, 则有z无论如何à的意思。

Bfa vl r bsbo dl (: FYsb vl r bsbo Zbbk (YZol Ya? (码池过争辆薪? (

FYsb vl r bsbo j bq efj ? (: Bfa vl r bsbo j bbq ef j ? ( (码举过赏辆薪? (

Qp e b bsbo Yqel j b? (赏随轻的亚家怕? (

Ll q fkd bsbo e Ymbkp fk q fp sfiiYdb, (亚液船子漫的来辆薪东巧素获泐。(

ŋvl r bsbo dl q̄ bob) Zb pr ob d̄ sfpfq̄ b j r pbr j , (酸  
鸟获轻) 码她村略漫砵) 细乏砵参糕别物稿。 (

ŋvl r p̄l r ia bsbo `l j b r m̄q̄ fp t Yv) al k̄q̄ c̄fi d̄ il l h  
fk, (万细码走过俗料液漫) 务请家来越越。 (

在疑问句中bsbo常用来加重语气, 含有z究竟az到底az的确a一类的意思, 例如:

U e v bsbo afak̄q̄ vl r dl ? (码村顿眼什凉辆薪砵? (

U e f e bsbo t Yv afa vl r dl ? (码村顿夕走强细蚀路? (

U e Yq bsbo al vl r t Ykq? (码村顿夕什凉? (

U e l bsbo t Ykq̄ q̄ fp? (肉健夕液个? (

U e bob bsbo al bp p̄e b ifs b? (尚村顿游亚强漫纹? (

F l t bsbo e Yp e b al kb fq? (赏怎样做唱搭? (

又, 英语中常用bsbo来代替Yit Yvp, 意为z永远a。

W r t fii d̄ka j b bsbo Yq vl r o p̄os f b, (码健东提俗永远  
婉眼码烦务搭。 (

ŋ bsbo e Yp Zbbk pl ) Yka bsbo t fii Zb pl , (过砵破到) 祸  
来憾婉破到) 永远并才。 (

这个bsbo的字有时还含有否定的意思, 几乎和说kbsbo一样了。  
例如:

F b t Yp q̄ b dobYq̄p̄p̄q̄ pYdb q̄ Yq t b e Ya bsbo e Ya, (: U b  
kbsbo e Ya Y dobYq̄p̄o pYdb q̄ Yk e b, ((赏婉俗料曾尖薪过搭源  
大搭徒瞥。 (

L bsbo al fq (: B l k̄q̄ bsbo al fq 口语 ((永并夕液样  
做。 (

习语有p̄b̄ial j f̄c bsbo : p̄b̄ial j l o kbsbo, 意为z难得地a, 或  
z绝无仅有a, 例如:

Qe b p b i a l j f c b s b o d l b p d q e b m f q r o b p, (尚罗错砵看旦  
准。(

有时加上**bsbo**不过语气重一点,不加意思也是一样。如作z自从à  
解的**bsbo p f k`b**,单说 **p f k`b**也行。作z几乎不à解的**e Y o a i v b s b o**,单  
说**e Y o a i v**也是一样,不过语气为强。

G s b h k l t k e f j b s b o p f k`b e b t Y p Y Z l v, (的赏工失轻  
难俗觥贫晴赏了。(

G e Y o a i v b s b o p b b e f j k l t Y a Y v p, (贾来怪少看举赏。(

## 26. a many (men) 和 many a (man)

亚扰千看村薪j Ykv Y火Y j Ykv课婴务动) 并知珠诸薪获朵  
鞭? j Ykv婉复戎) Y婉单戎) 单复并世) 破获可显联亚细经儿来  
邪? 液婴避提动) 提亚婉更憾士外?

③刻创】这两种说法都是比较古老的，含义却是一样。j Ykv Y Zl1h: j Ykv Zl1hp, 可见不要冠词单说j Ykv时，也就是现代英语了。至于Y j Ykv, 如果加上dobYq或dl1a的字样到Y与j Ykv之间，而成为Y dl1a j Ykv或Y dobYqj Ykv时，又成为现在颇为通行的说法了。Y dobYqj Ykv (很多) 比Y dl1a j Ykv (相当多) 语气要来得重些。例如：

ǝ j v j l r ǝ) ǝ bob Yob Y dl1a j Ykv ǝbǝ, (俗口漫薪  
相冬多搭牙忱。 (

Re bob t b pYt Y dobYqj Ykv fkǝbobǝfk d ǝ fkdǝ, (亚略  
漫俗料看村在多薪趣搭祷她。 (

j Ykv Y: j Ykv ǝj bp Y (屡次有一个), bY e lkb1cj Ykv  
(几多, 多数中的每个), 是文言文的表现, 不过现代文中仍有时见到, 如:

K Ykv Y j Yk eYp ǝfba d dbqof e t fǝl r qpr `` bpp, (在  
多瞥抗属东膊的思唱喊。 (

K Ykv Y j f hibj Yhbp Y j r`hib, (集止唱趾。 (

K Ykv Y ǝr b t l oa fp pml hbk fk gǝpǝ (援在中易池医  
言。 (

Y j Ykv的说法就更古了。在表多数的j Ykv一字前，加上不定冠词的Y，岂不变成z一个许多à了，初初看去，好像很矛盾似的，其实语

文这东西，是只重习俗，而不重理智的，许多不合逻辑的说法，只要看惯了，也就不觉得有什么不通了。例如**dbt**也是表多数的，为什么说Y j Ykv你觉得奇怪，说Y **dbt**就不觉得奇怪了呢？这不过是习惯使然罢了。

Y **dbt** 的用法是从十三世纪开始的，大约是由此类推的结果，到了十六世纪时，便有Y j Ykv这个说法的出现。Qe YhbprnbYob就有不少Y j Ykv的用例，如：

Gal hkl t Y j Ykv d l ip, (KboeeYkql cTbkfeb) ? ) s)  
51 ( (俗知存薪在多傻子。 (

? j Ykv j boov j bk, (Ep Wr Jfhb @) @ f) /0/ ( (在  
多令乐搭瞥料。 (

? j Ykv j bk obcr pba d ob`l dkfwb e fp Yr qel ofqv, (在多  
瞥的并纯贫赏婉澎研。 (

英诗人Rbkkvpl k在Kfiibos BYr de qo一诗中，也有：

Rebv eYsb kl qpe ba Y j Ykv qbYop) BbYo bvbvp, (略柔五  
睛并辆薪阔池多少决来。 (

在牛津大辞典上说，zY j Ykvà fp kl t pl j bt eYq oYob fk ifqbo  
Yov r pb (在文学上也少用了)，不过我们知道在俚俗语 (sr idYo pm  
bb`e) 中，却仍然在用，如：

zLl) àpYvp eb) z@ d l l ia) Zpfabp @ Y j Ykv pfwbp  
d l iYodb,ày y Bf hbkp: Nfeht feh NYmbop (z并) à赏务) z俗  
太惧了) 顶且俗亚在多从寸千的太大了。à (

Gal k@ qefkh vl r @i pbb Y j Ykv pr`e, y y Bf hbkp: K  
Yp qo Fro meobv@ Ail eh (俗邮码并健举村在多液样搭盘袜。 (

Rebv dl d Y j Ykv miY` bp, y y @fa, (赏料夕砵在多地方。 (

## 27. more than的用法

庄样搭j 1 ob ɕ Yk 1 kb 驰红卑珠撒z凯多à外) 憾薪在多鞭搭珠撒火邪动) 怪罗福乡) 请将堪务明。

③刻创】所谓j 1 ob ɕ Yk从语法上来说,是j 1 ob ɕ Yk 1 kb的意思,它后面到底应该接单数动词还是复数动词,颇有讨论的余地。在《袖珍牛津辞典》上,特别注明要接单数动词,而语法权威Hbprnbopbk也说j 1 ob ɕ Yk 1 kb t ofɕo,意思上很明显的是复数(ɕ b fabY fp`ibYoiv mir oYi);不过动词常易为其靠近的名词所吸引而说成单数,如:

K 1 ob ɕ Yk 1 kb t 1 j Yk eYp Zbbk hkl t k q ifhb e bo,  
(叹翰尚搭讲务并止细个貌瞥。)

美国语法家Ar oj b就说,在这种情形,动词用单数是很普通的,不过用复数也可以,因为j 1 ob可认为是一个mir oYi fka bɕk fɕ mɔl kl r k (复数不定代名词)。他举例说:

K 1 ob ɕ Yk 1 kb eYp (l o eYsb (d r ka f q pl, (丽错液样搭并止细个瞥。)

作z多à解的j 1 ob,要给我们一个mir oYi的观念是当然的;所以接在其后面用的代名词常为ɕ bv、ɕ bfo,而不用单数的字样。不过如把j 1 ob ɕ Yk看成一个m e oYpb,而用作副词时,便有kl qj bobiv的意思,而其动词便要同1 kb一致而成为单数了。

《英文习语大全》上说,j 1 ob ɕ Yk与形容词连用时,作z非但x x 尤有甚焉;更加,大大的à (kl q l kiv , , , , Zr qj 1 ob ɕ Yk q e fp) 解,如z ɕ fp j 1 ob ɕ Yk mɔl ZYZib ɕ Yq e b t fii ɕ fi, (十有八九他将失败。) à。至于与动词连用时,就作z深为àz岂特à (q al j 1

ob qeYk q) 解, 如 zF b j l ob qeYk e bpfqYqba q mol j fpb qeYq  
(他对答应那件事岂特踟蹰而已。) à, 有简直是拒绝之意。

把j l ob qeYk用于形容词、动词或名词的前面, 原是文法上一种破格的用法, 尤其是用在动词前值得留意, 以免译错。现就这些特殊的用法, 举例如下:

W r eYsb YiobYav j l ob qeYk obmYfa j b, y y Qqpsbkpl  
k (码闲尖鞭创俗蹈蹈薪形了。 (

F b j l ob qeYk pYqfpqba j b, (赏并译婉请俗粉村立足顶  
闲。 (

F b fp j l ob qeYk nibYpba t fqe qe b obpr iq (赏对略结跟  
强眼立珠。 (

Pl l pbbp`ebbh p t bob j l ob qeYk q r`e ba Zv qe b pr k,  
y y Efppfk d (烂鳃搭另幻强委太阳搭题功。 (

F b eYp j l ob qeYk /. ) . . . al iiYopy j l ob qeYk bkl r d  
e, (赏薪万许显千y y年多错蹈薪形虚。 (

F b j l ob qeYk pj fiba) e b iYr de ba l r qpfde q y y Pl t b  
(赏挠省婉霜途) 会意婉大途了。 (

F b eYp j l ob qeYk obmYfa j v hfkakbpp, (赏挠译婉鞭创  
了俗搭班由顶闲。 (

Qe b t Yp aobppba j l ob qeYk pfj niv, (尚大错挠译婉幕色  
顶闲 [会意贾几伤聚了]。 (

GmYvba q e bYsbk fk j v e bYoqqeYqj v Zl v) j v j l ob  
qeYk pl k) j fdeq ifsb, y y FYddYoa (俗私欲心漫订告) 属千  
场四俗搭工子) 俗略心观搭儿子) 恨下砰暗。 (

Me) dobYq Q`fl iq ! Me) j v j l ob qeYk cYqe bo, (啊) 厌  
大搭她安释! 啊) 俗略单务婉纺室憾迎并足搭室爱搭瞥。 (

这个j l ob qeYk又可置于q和fkdfkfqs b之间, 如q j l ob qeYk  
e f k q qe bfo hkl t ibadb fk pr oj fpb (超过暗示他们臆测的知识)。  
在现代文中j l ob qeYk用得非常普遍, 无非是要加强它所修饰的字。

## 28. 色彩的含义和用法

片根寒务zF b e Yp Y vbiil t p q b Y h f k e f j , (赏词头。(à 片喜语务搭vbiil t ) 薪z玫塔搭、卑女搭a搭珠撒。正华庄样搭辙旗字) 驰议旗演外) 袭状薪深省然搭慌诸结邪动) 请将堪务明。

③刻创】彩虹七色，混合而成白昼，其中无黑色，故Bo, Hl kpl k 谓黑为夜色，是单独地和白日相对的。虹的色彩，实为七种基本色，但每色皆有浓淡明暗之分，同一颜色，可分出无数的pe Ya bp来。英文所谓er b是指暗色或淡色，至于qfkq, 则系指带一点那样的色泽 (qkd b) 而言，例如说oba t f q e Y Zir b qfkq, 意即带蓝色的红色，通常又可说Zir fpe oba。

ZiY`h除了为夜之色而外，又为煤炭、煤烟之色，有时又以 gbq, n f q`e、oYsbk来形容黑色。黑色为悲哀的颜色，所以在西方成为丧服之色。寡妇穿的丧服，英文叫作t fal t p t bbap, 系全身漆黑。又黑为罪恶之色，例如：

Dl o ZiY`h f p q e b`l il o l cbsfi, y y HYj bp FYiat fk

所以英文说ZiY`h abbap或`ofj b l c ZiY`hbpq avb, 至于所谓Yqpl`fq v (残暴) 的Yqpl +也是ZiY`h 的意思。邪道的魔术，叫作ZiY`h Yoq, 即kb`ol j Yk`v。

Re b j l khp il l hba ZiY`h, y y Fol t kfk d: DoY Jf m l Jf n n f (火屈料搭每旗怪可怕)。

所以这种ZiY`h是令人嫌恶的 (d oZfaafkd) 。

t e f q b是雪、乳、象牙的色。

S n l k Y il t iv ? p p b j l ob t e f q b q e Y k p k l t ,



Wbqpe b t e fqb,

y y Qnbkpbo: DYfau Or bbk

(声亚细民背怎憾懊搭啊头搭懊礼千) 可婉尚服夕懊遇。(

白又是欢喜之色，白圭一般的纯洁无瑕之色，所以在西方，一生只穿一次的新娘结婚礼服 (ZofaYi dl t k)，只限于白色。西方的风气和我们的不同，我们以白为丧服，是空白的意思，他们以白为婚服，是取其纯洁。不存心欺骗的无害的谎言，叫作t e fqb ifb。这t e fqb是ZiY h的反义，有时也成为红的对照，所以有红色恐怖 (oba qpool ofpj) 和白色恐怖 (t e fqb qpool ofpj) 的说法，以红为白的对照，正是中国的传统。

Re b U e fqb Rbool o) qe b or ib l c obY` qfl kYofbp, y y BYfiv FboYia (懊旗近缠) 都凡夜搭势引 (。

同一笔法，还有U e fqb Fl ipe bsfpj 及t e fqb Yfi等等字眼。所谓t e fqb Yfi是由勒索和敲诈的ZiY` hj Yfi一字仿造出来的，意即如中国《水浒》上的侠义大盗，取人不义之财，以济善良。

Re b zt e fqb el mbà l c qe b ? kqf+Fl ipe bsfpq, y y Mdpbosb o (都差订什维克搭虚懊搭易烟。(

意即面上涂一重白色的肤浅之物，正如t e fqb Ype之有pnb` fl r p (金玉其表的，似是而非的) 之感一样。

Rl ZiYk` e Yka sYokfpe e bo abd oj fqb, y y Kfiq k (亚尚错哪搭地方市千懊旗显约这饰。(

又，t e fqb pbr i` e ob (白豕) 中之t e fqb一字，用法与dfiq (镀金) 相同。

oba为虹的最上部的颜色，也就是血色，或红宝石 (or Zv) 的颜色。sboj ffl k是纯赤，` ofj pl k是倾于紫色的红色，p` Yoibq则稍含黄色。

Q̣t Yp Y ḍk b j l o k f k d Y k a ɕ b p r k i f d e ɕ p a r m ḍ Y p`Yo  
i b q d i l t ɕ b`o f j + p l k H Y`h b q p e b t l o b , , , y y F Y o a v (略  
婉细个输十早千搭汨) 尚大搭强急旗搭千下) 悲太阳也错池提细  
婴猩急旗搭户肠x x (

淡红色的有ol pb、mfkh、`l oYi等。红色之成为革命之色，是起源于法国大革命时所用的红旗及Ne ovdfY帽(Zl kkbqol r pb)，而在十七世纪时，英国海军开始战斗所用的信号，也是举的红旗。总之红色是令人联想到斗争、危险等不稳的颜色。l oYkdb是`e ol j Yq̣ ḍY j b(彩色的火焰色)，由l oYkdb、j bil k、pYij l k、cibpe这样慢慢地淡下来。

vbiil t 是卑怯者的形容词，美国俚语常爱以vbiil t 代`l t Yoaiv，如vbiil t al d指可鄙的人。黄色又令人联想到死尸的`YaYsbo l r p(如尸的灰白色的)的嫌恶的颜色。pYiil t 是p̣f hiv 的颜色，所以疾病中以黄疸病(gYr kaf b)最使人嫌忌。l`e ob是黄土色，略带红色。

dobbk是绿宝石(bj boYia)的颜色，葱茏的树色，Ymrib dobbk则包含了大量的黄，所以成为淡黄色。dobbk是一种青春之色，同时又是未成熟之色，带有dr iifZfifq̣(可欺)的意味，所以生手叫作dob bkel ok。这dobbk有时又可表示嫉妒，所以gbYil r pv的别名，叫作dobbk+bvba j l kp̣ɕo。有名的Jfk`l ik dobbk是往时Jfk`l ik地方染的鲜绿色的布料的颜色。

Zir b是天色，水色，碧眼儿的眼色。又是许多花的颜色。

Re b ḍboYkfr j fp Y m r o b a f s f k b (l o e r j Y k (Zir b, y y  
U, F, F r a p l k (十值楼搭辙旗婉瞥觉灵建之冲搭论辙旗。(

英国海军服为蓝色，英文说LYsv Zir b，或译作海军蓝。所以Zir ḅgY`hbq代表水兵。Zir b 又表示忧郁(Zir b+absfip)，我们可以说zQ e b il l hp Y Zf̣q Zir b q̣ k f d e q̣(今晚她稍有忧色。)â。因为从前的几位女文人爱穿蓝色的袜子，所以Zir ḅp̣ḍ`hfḳd竟成为女学者的代名词，而Zir b t l j bk也是说有学问的妇女。但Y Zir b q̣Yih却是猥亵之谈。

pYmne fob是一种透明的青玉，所以常用以形容沧海。iYmfpiYwr if（玻璃）也是青宝石，所以和有苍天之意Ywr ob同源。fkafdl QkafYk（avb）蓝是abbmZir b，也可以形容夜色。中国所谓青出于蓝，而胜于蓝à，意为弟子胜过老师，英文却无此种赞词，唯较之尤甚之意，则可译作l r qF bdl a或l r qF Yj ibq。英文Zir b一字，令人有高贵之想，如Zir bpq Zil l a，即指kl Zibpq cYj fiv而言。Zir b ofZZl k有最荣誉之意，因而是EYodpo勋章之绶的颜色。

sfl ibq是虹最下部的颜色，中文对于那种英国诗人最爱的小花，叫作紫罗兰，实为紫蓝和青蓝之间的一种颜色。mr omib是一个富于弹性的名称，大致为牡丹色，与其说紫，实近于红。

Re b mYib mr omib bsbk

K biq Yol r ka qe v cfde q

y y Qe biibv: Rl Y QhviYoh

（次急旗搭好昏）溶化亚码队跳之中，（

美国现今的ol vYi mr omib，由黑（/.!）红（/5!）青（51!）的百分率而合成，古代的RvofYk mr omib以及英文《圣经》中译的mr omib，实为`ofj pl k之意。ifiY`为紫藤花色，淡一点的叫作j Yr sb，即j Yiil t（葵花）色，更淡的有iYsbkabo及e bifl qpl nb。

F b Zbifbsba qe b mql j fkbkq kl qpl cfq（K fpp Br ot Yoa`p`l pqr j b（ql Zb mr omib）lo Yp pl j b t l r ia pYv）ifiY`）Yka l qe bop j Yr sb, y y Al kYa M`Pfl o`aor: Q Jl kal k（赏相员措雪错头剂伤大搭下天搭忧蛋婉遇旗）薪警务婉遇躲田害搭辙旗）心薪警务婉植遇旗。（

Zol t k是褐色，茶色，棕色，其浓者为aYoh Zol t k、`el`liYqb、`l cbb，其淡者为ar k、aoYZ、r kZibY`eba、qYt kv、Zr c等。j Yol l k，为Zol t kfpe `ofj pl k，即褐红色、栗色。qbooY+ l qY为红砖色，即焦土之色。or ppbq系同一系统之色，为赤褐色，入冬的苹果，即系这种颜色。马的毛色有`e bpqkr q、ZYv、pl oobi、ol Yk，都是赤褐色即栗色。Yr Zr ok是dl iabk Zol t k，西洋女人的头发，常用此字形容。qYk为vbiil t fpe Zol t k，即黄褐的皮色。

dobv（美国拼作doYv）是灰色（Ype bk），又是铅色（ibYa bk、ifsfa），而aYoh dobv则带青（Zir fpe）色。pfisbo dobv、al sb dobv、mbYoi dobv、`Ydb+Yr +iYfq都是灰色系统的色泽。原来dobv 是冷色，若带黄或红色时则变成温色了。

## 29. Adverbial Accusative

片根寒务搭 *zGpYt efj KlkaYv*, (俗亚礼巴细举村赏。(à) 句中 *KlkaYv* 细字) 朵明婉其导) 眼获可约房导来邪落?

③刻创】应说 *lk KlkaYv* 副词片语的, 而将介词省略了去, 结果剩下的只是一个名词, 美国这种把名词作副词用的办法, 初初看去似乎是很不合理的, 但研究一下所谓副词的宾格 (*?asboZfYi ?`r pYqf sb*), 就知道同类的用法, 在英文中也是很多的。

凡表示时间、距离、数量、程度、手段、方法、模样、尺度等, 在名词前不要介词, 即可作副词用。如:

*Qeb eYp t lohba qfsb vbYqp d o kl qfkd*, (尚懊做了碎吗浮。(

*Ko, Jfj ɸ`iYpp t fii kl qj bbq kbuq KlkaYv*, (林逃巧下圆目细并千进。(

*Re bob t bob mibkqy l c bj mqv pbYqp qeb kfdeqGt bkq* (俗砵搭略晚烈位怪多。(

*Re bv t Yihba qbk o fibp*, (赏料步外了十庄漫。(

*Refp t fii dl Yil kd t Yv (: t fii Zb sbov ebimr i (fk l sb o`lj fkd qeb afæf r iqy*, (液亚突伤罗呼轻婉怪薪班由搭。(

*Refp pql kb t bfdep q bkqy ml r kap*, (液经石休重夫十版。(

*Fb pqYkap pfu dbbq q l*, (: *Fb fp pfu dbbq q l fk`e bp qYi i*, (赏蓄高蜡庄从夫庄寸。(

*Fb fp bsbav fkee Y dbkqibj Yk*, (赏酸鸟的强方另看砵) 的可务婉细个命亮搭抢求。(

B1 fquvlrolt kt Yv fcvlr alkaqifhbj vt Yv, (破跟码并叹翰俗搭拜动) 舰也码欲华搭做暗。 (

Rebv pYq qYfil o cYpefl k, (赏料课咖绝吵地门越了。 (

U b Yit Yvp qYsbi qfoa eiYpp, (俗料旅外惧婉越态打部。 (

AYk Ge Ysb qf fp Zl l h pbkq Yfo o Yfi? (俗可显把液卑扰会烈进池怕? (

Qp dbqfk d t Yoj bo aYv dv aYv, (细十细十地全火难来了。 (

Rebv `Yj b cYeb q cYeb fk `ol t a, (赏料亚警疲中竟因对另入村了。 (

U eYq qfo b afa vl r dl q Zba iYpq kfde q? (怨晚码获轻舰试搭? (

这些句子大都可以加上一个介词，而构成有副词作用的介词片语，如：

Eqt eYq qfj b afa vl r dl q Zba iYpq kfde q?

K o, Jfj q `iYpp t fii kl qj bbq l k kbuq Kl kaYv,

U b Yit Yvp qYsbi fk qf fp `iYpp,

Qe b eYp t l ohba d o fsb vbYop,

副词的宾格的用法，来源甚古，但说今日这种用法完全是继承古代的，实不足以说明，因为如zFfka efj eYka Yka dl qà一句中的eYka Yka dl q，在古代英语中就不是Y`r pYqfsb，而只是aYqfsb。在现代英语中，宾格 (l Zgb`qfsb`Ypb) 可包含宾格 (Y`r pYqfsb`Ypb) 和与格 (aYqfsb`Ypb) 二种，那就是说有种动词 (完全他动词) 可具两个宾语：一为直接宾语 (afob`ql Zgb`q)，一为间接宾语 (fk afob`ql Zgb`q)。直接宾语的格就叫宾格，表示间接宾语的才用与格。例如zGdYsb qe b Zl v Y al iiYo,à或zGdYsb Y al iiYo q qe b Zl v,à，其中Y al iiYo是直接宾语 (宾格)，qe b Zl v是间接宾语 (与格)。

普通语法书上把它作为YasboZfYi l Zgb`qfsb看待，自然就没有Y`r pYqfsb或aYqfsb的问题发生了。在介词发达了的中世以后的英语中，为什么还保留了这种以名词作副词的用法，也是很不容易说明的。英语中的aYqfsb`Ypb（与格）是有史以前的fkpqr j bkqYi`Ypb（助格）或il`Yqfsb`Ypb（处格）的代用品也未可知，因为根据语言的发展史，文法上的某种形式消失的时候，必有他种形式代之而兴，不过使用的范围极其缩小，用法大有限制，所以aYqfsb也只限于用在时间、距离等方面了。

为什么它只限于用在时间、距离等方面呢？这当然是一个不容易回答的问题，不过我们就YasboZfYi Y`r pYqfsb的用例，仔细研究一下，便可发现一种共通的措辞法，那就是在名词之前，必有某种限定词，而那限定词和名词虽结合在一起，但各自在意义上都有相当的分量。如œ obb（限定词）t bbhp（名词）；œ b kbuj l okfkd（限定词）j l okfkd（名词）等，二者都很重要，几乎难分轩轻。意义上的重要性，是由于加上限定词而产生出来的。

因为限定词的关系而增加了意义的重要，与介词的用否无关。zF b obqr okba œ b kbuj l okfkd,à已经很明白了，用不着要说l k œ b kbuj l okfkd。所以这种说法，得保留下来成为YasboZfYi Y`r pYqfsb。但zF b fp l iabo œ Yk Gpfu vbYop,à就非在pfu vbYop前加上一个Zv字不可，否则意义不明，所以这种形式不能存在，除非说成zF b fp pfu vbYop l iabo œ Yk GYj ,à才行。如果没有œ fp或kbuj或数词等限定词时，在or k booYkap、dl Y il kd t Yv（t Yih）等语中，就很容易被视作同族宾语（`l dkYq l Zgb`q），而把booYkap视为or k的宾语，把t Yv或t Yih视为dl 的宾语了。

30. not so . . . as, not as . . . as

也样动千务Yp,,, Yp搭细婴避提动) 破眼更乏轻念另搭房导Yp  
状寡眼pl) 堪破: zW r Yob kl qpl pql kd Yp GYj ,à 刺亚样瞥搭  
倍下) 草举kl qYp,,, Yp搭务动) 并知kl qYp,,, Yp火kl qpl ,,,  
Yp夫夜薪获并世?

③刻创】英文的Yp,,, Yp是表示同等比较的, 否定时则常将第一个Yp(副词) 改为pl, 成为kl qpl ,,, Yp, 不过不改, 而仍说成kl qYp,,, Yp的, 也习见不鲜。现代作家的笔下即常出现, 例如:

kl qYp ir`hv Yp pl j b nbl mib, y y Ae Ykaibo: *Reb J fqi b Qfpqbo* (俗辆薪瞥家略样湾运。 (

Fr qpe b fp kl qYp l ia Yp vl r Yob, y y K Yr de Yj : *AYhb p Yka Eib* (刺尚辆薪码液样惧。 (

F b fpk&q Yp e Ykapl j b Yp j v doYkaçYq bo, y y ?i`l qq:  
*Jfqib U l o bk* (赏辆薪俗原纺命亮。 (

K Yk fp kl qYp`l j mibqiv pl`fYi Yp Ykqp Yka Zbbp) t e  
l YmmYobkqiv kbsbo e Ysb Ykv fj mr ipb ql Zbe Ysb fk Yk Ykqf+  
pl`fYi j Ykkbo, y y Pr ppbii: *F Yp K Yk Y Dr q ob?* (瞥觉并  
通暖忠火铃而略样暑全疲老搭) 上料盈皮的来辆薪素获刺凡邮夕  
做池细婴都疲老搭外眼。 (

Gj Yv kl qZb Yp pql kd Yp Gq fkh, y y F bj fkdt Yv: *Re b l ia K Yk Yka qeb QbY* (俗袭在并破俗伤邮搭略样世愚。 (

Gsb kbsbo Zbbk Yp pl Zbo Yp GYj kl t , y y AYiat bii: *E l a&p Jfqib Eeob* (俗的来辆薪提亚液样冷辣。 (

至于说到这个kl qYp,,, Yp和kl qpl ,,, Yp的差异, 多少是有的, 不过只是微妙之差而已。简单地说一句kl qpl ,,, Yp比kl qYp,



, , Yp要来得强调一点, 原因是pl 这个副词, 原本就比副词Yp, 意义来得强些。所谓强弱之分, 看去好像是量上的不同, 其实pl 和Yp之间是有其质的差异的。试就qYii这个形容词, 分别地冠以pl 和Yp来作实例的说明时, Yp qYii, 意为z同等高à, 在比较上看来是静的, 例如zLb a fp Yp qYii Yp DoYkh, (内德和胡兰同高。) à, 是以DoYkh的身高为基准的, 而Lba的身高只不过是和这个基准的高度相同而已。这时在观察者(即说话的人)的眼中, 只见二人的头顶在同一水平上移动着。

现在再看pl qYii, 便不是z同等高à的意思, 而是z那般高à的意思。读者当易分别z同等高à和z那般高à之间的不同吧。z同等高à的比较方式是静的, 而z那般高à的比较方式却是动的。心中先有一定标准的高度, 然后z达到那样高à的意思。仿佛是从低处观察, 而有达到那般高的感觉, 观察者的眼睛与其说是水平地在移动, 不如说是垂直地在移动, 更能体味出这种差异来。

F b eYp q dl qeol r de qe b all ot Yv t fqe efp ebYa al t k, F b fp pl qYii, (赏夕呆宇休尝勤走过略了口。赏婉略样搭高个子。)

上面这句话是不能说成F b fp Yp qYii的。

以上只是将肯定的pl qYii和Yp qYii之间的微妙的不同, 乃至质的, 而非量的不同, 略加说明了一下。至于否定的kl qpl , , , Yp和kl q Yp , , , Yp之间的情形也和这相像, 同是质的不同。举实例来说明时, 便是:

(Y (Rl j fp kl qpl qYii Yp Hl ek,

(Z (Rl j fp kl q Yp qYii Yp Hl ek,

在(Y)例的意思是Rl j 的身高没有达到Hl ek那种程度。而(Z)例的意思则为Rl j 的身高和Hl ek的身高不同, 所谓不同, 从逻辑上来讲, 本可以表示Rl j 高过Hl ek, 不过英语中用kl q来表示否定时, 一般都是说的不如, 不是超过, 所以现在说的不同, 只是说不如他高的意思。

在（Y）例的场合，观察者的眼睛是由下向上移动的，在（Z）例的场合则相反，观察者的眼睛是由上向下移动的。我们在这里说的眼睛上下移动或是水平和垂直移动，都是象征的说法，并非真个那样移动，这只是心理的动，而非物理的动，读者不可误解。所以以上所说只是心情的作用，而非客观的事实。例如**Hl e k**身高六英尺，**Rl j**才五英尺半，具有这样的客观的事实，说话的人仍然是可用主观的心情，以（Y）例或（Z）例的方式来表示的。

## IV 动 词

### 31. 被动语态的两种意义

庄样赏凡导搭悲凡语态) 讲务驰了避球悲凡约邪之外) 憾抹薪慌诸) 请舰液婴邪动将堪务明。

③刻创】zZb - 他动词的过去分词à这个被动语态的形式，确有两种不同的含义。一则表单纯的被动行为，一则表被动的状态。例如：

(Y (Re b dYq̄p fp p̄r q̄ Yq̄p̄k l̄ ðil`h, (大了十轻呼笨。(

(Z (Re b dYq̄p fp p̄r q̄ (大了呼字。(

在(Y)句中所表现的被动语态，只是表动作而已。所以叫作?`q̄ l̄ kYi NYppfsb (动作被动语态)；而在(Z)句中虽同样地是表被动，但和说zRe b dYq̄p e Yp Zbbk p̄r q̄ à一样，意为z大门正关着à，是表状态的。所以叫作Qq̄Yq̄Yi NYppfsb (状态被动语态)。在(Z)の場合，p̄r q̄一字，多少带得有点形容词的作用，我们由下举的例子更容易看得出来。

Re b dYq̄p fp l̄ mbkba Yq̄pfu l̄ ðil`h, (蜡轻杰了。(

Re b dYq̄p fp l̄ mbk, (了杰字。(〔袜坡导〕

通常用(Y)式的文句有：

F b fp bYpfiv q̄Yhbk fk, (赏坡易委名。(

Dl obfdk kYj bp Yob bYpfiv d odl qpbk, (外根其字坡易要记。 (

GYj `Yiiba bsbov j l okfk d Yq pfu, (每十早千蜡轻薪瞥集弯俗。 (

通常用 (Z) 式的文句有:

Re b hbv fp il pq (血匙岛了。 (

Qe b fp aobppba fk t e fqb, (尚大字懊下。 (

F fp pfdkYqr ob fp YqpY` e ba ql qe b al`rj bkq (样活千薪赏搭什其。 (

F b fp qfoba, (赏疲骄了。 (

F fp dr k fp il Yaba, (赏搭式千了子匆。 (

F fp ibd fp Zol hbk, (赏腿帝了。 (

F b fp j Yoofba, (赏结黑了。 (

Re b j Yqppo fp pbqiba, (泅盘刻教了。 (

GYj mobnYoba, (俗愉杯好了。 (

比较:

Mr o e l r pb fp mYfkqba bsbov vbYo, (俗料每吗的夕谢那房子。 (

Mr o e l r pb fp mYfkqba, (俗料房千搭谢那思干。 (

F fp Zfiip Yob mYfa obdr iYoiv bsbov j l kqe, (每月鼓斫。 (

F fp Zfiip Yob mYfa) pl e b l t bp kl qe fkd kl t, (赏斫单闲鼓清) 伤显赏提亚并驶瞥细样年了。 (

F bob fk /601) qe b CkafYkp t bob pr ool r kaba Zv qe b Ckdifpe, (/601吗萧揭亚到曾悲庄揭币水。 (

Re b e l r p b f p p r o o l r k a b a Z v d o p Y k a Z f o` e b p, (肃子蝇  
水的婉仍律。(

Re b t e l i b` f q v f p f i i r j f k Y q b a l k p r` e l`` Y p f l k p, (到  
际全幢的悲也亮了。(

Re b t e l i b` f q v f p f i i r j f k Y q b a d k f d e q, (纪痛全幢达火破  
昼。(

Re b` e f i a o b k t b o b a o b p p b a b s b o v j l o k f k d Z v q e b f o j l  
q e b o, (每十早千旅室眼工子大下。(

F b t Y p a o b p p b a f k q e b i Y q p p q c Y p e f l k, (赏大字源轻质搭  
烦于。(

Re b v t b o b j Y o o f b a i Y p q v b Y o, (赏料砰吗结黑。(

? q q e b q j b) t b t b o b k l q v b q j Y o o f b a, (略轻俗料憾思  
结黑。(

G Y j Y o o Y f a t b j Y v k b s b o Z b j Y o o f b a, (俗近怕俗料并  
勤富结黑。(

Re b v j Y v k l q Z b j Y o o f b a, (赏料大概憾思结黑。(

U b e Y s b g p q Z b b k j Y o o f b a, (俗料愤结黑。(

Re b v e Y s b l k i v Z b b k j Y o o f b a Y t b b h, (赏料尝结黑细个  
礼巴。(

如以上所举各例，(Y) (Z) 同一形态，有时为着使之有所不同，常将(Y)句中的Zb改为Zb`l j b或dbq(主要是口语)，这样一来，就变成单纯的动作了。

Mr o e l r p b d b q p n Y f k q b a b s b o v v b Y o, (每吗夕谢那细道 (

F f p j f k a f p d i i b a t f q e Y d b o s l r o l c Y k d b o, (才错立函告  
帽 (

G a l k q h k l t t e b k G d l q Y n r Y f k q b a t f q e e f j, (并知获  
轻贫晴赏搭 (

? i l q l c n b l m i b d l q h f i i b a, (死了在多瞥 (

Rel pb t e1 hfii pkYhbp dbq hfiiba Zv pkYhbp, (杀听夜草  
悲听知死 (

Uev al k&ql r dbqj Yoofba? (眼获并结黑 (

Wr t fii pl l k dbqr pba ql fq (怪令舰益告 (

## 32. 动词read的各种用法

z液方来绅后。à庄样务：zGt l r ia obYa l aaiv,à 请舰obYa搭液婴省然邪动) 结深赏并约z方扰à刻搭邪动) 将堪务明。

③刻创】zGt l r ia obYa l aaiv,à句中的obYa是自动词，意为Ycb`qç b e bYobo t e bk obYa。他例如：

Re fp Zl l h obYap fkçbpbçkd, (液扰方来薪趣。 (

Re fp miYv obYap Zbçbo ç Yk fq Y çp, (液个剧卑千真并破阅方薪趣。 (

Re fp Yr ç Zfl doYmæ v obYap ifhb Y kl sbi, (液卑欲传方来通头务细样薪趣。 (

F l t al bp ç b pbkçk` b obYa kl t ? (提亚寡过了) 码看液句子获破? (

作自动词用的obYa除z阅读à一义外，还有下列各种用法：

(/) 读知：zGe Ysb obYa l cç b Y` fabkçk ç b kbt pmYnbop, (我在报上读到那事故的报道。) à。

(0) 研读：zF b fp obYafkd d o K Ypçboç abdobbb, (他在读硕士学位。) à。

(1) 有某些字样：zRe b pbkçk` b obYap Yp d iil t p, (此句文字如下。) à。

(2) 有某种解释：zRe b or ib obYap ç l afçbpbkçk t Yvp, (这规则有两种解释。) à。

(3) 写明：zRe fp ç hbq obYap ç NYofp sfY QfZbofY, (票上写明经由西伯利亚到巴黎。) à。

自动词obYa的mYpq mYoqf fmib, 又可作形容词用, 如下例中所用的一样:

F b fp abbmiv obYa fk Ckdifpe ifqboYqr ob, (赏对庄根样伟薪强湛搭污究。)

Re bob fp kl l kb pl t fabiv obYa Zr q qe Yq e b j Yv j Yhb nibYpYkq afp`l sbo+fbp Yj l kd Yr qe l op qe Yq Yob kbt d e f j ,  
(辆薪肉薪赏略样别落疲扰搭) 强怕婉对赏怪巧文搭约家) 赏的可勤薪新搭东提。)

作他动词用的obYa, 也有几种用法值得注意的:

(/) 勘误: zDl o °cYfi& Y j fpmofkq, obYa °cYii& (cYfi为 cYii 之误。) à。

(0) 校订: zDl o °Ae fkY&Ykl qe bo sbopfl k obYap °CkafY& (另外一个本子上面, 不作Ae fkY而作CkafY。) à。

(1) 在议会中提出: zRe b Zfii t Yp obYa d o qe b d fopq qfj b, (议案已付第一读。) à。

(2) 表示度数: zRe b qe boj l j bqbo obYap 6. abdobbp, (寒暑表上华氏八十度。) à。

(3) 宣布原因加以除名: zDl o qe Yq obYpl k e b t Yp obYa l r q l c qe b mYoqv, (他就为着那个原因被开除党籍。) à。

(4) 判断: zW r o pfibk`b t fii Zb obYa Yp`l kpbkq (你不作声就会被看作是同意的。) àzF b`Yk obYa Y aobYj , (他会判梦。) à。

(5) 理解: zW r j r pq obYa pl j bqefkd Zbqt bbk qe b ifkbp, (你必须理解字里行间的意义。) à。

(6) 阅读: zRe b FfZib fp qe b j l pq obYa l c Yii Zl l hp, (所有的书中以《圣经》读的最多。) à。



### 33. 自动词、他动词用法的混淆

z瞥料对兴物景高涨杀池选言à细句寒) 庄乡眼zNbl mib l αpk `l j miYfk e fde mof bp,à) 并知薪获并对?

③刻创】英译句中把自动词用作他动词了，错误就在动词上。自动词是不能直接接宾语的，如一定要接宾语就得有介词为媒介，正确的译文为：

Nbl mib l αpk `l j miYfk YZl r qe fde mof bp,

中英观念不同，我们说他动而英文要说自动；我们说自动，而英文又要说他动，因而翻译时不免有错。现将这一类容易弄错的英文动词，自动或他动，择其要者举例说明如下：

(?) 易误用作他动词的自动词：

(/) z他不同意女儿的婚事。à英译为zF b afa kl q `l kpbkq e fp aYr de qpo j YoofYdb,à就错了，因为`l kpbkq是自动词，后面应加介词q才能接宾语，即zF b afa kl q `l kpbkq q e fp aYr de qpo j YoofYdb,à。

(0) z生病是他缺席的理由。à英译为zF fp fiikbpp Y `l r kq e fp YZpbk` b,à便错了，作z说明(理由)à解的Y `l r kq是自动词，不能无介词就接宾语，全文应改正为zF fp fiikbpp Y `l r kq d o e fp YZpbk` b,à。

(1) z那贮水池将增加本市的美观。à英译为zRe b obpbosl fo t fii Yaa qe b ZbYr qv l cl r o `fqv,à是不对的，因为Yaa在此为自动词，后面须加一个介词q，如用fk` obYpb就不必要介词，全句应作zRe b obpbosl fo t fii Yaa q qe b ZbYr qv l cl r o `fqv,à。

(2) z他所有的努力均归无用。à英译为z? ii e fp bød oq YsYfi kl qe fkd,à是对的,因YsYfi在此为自动词,应说z? ii e fp bød oq YsYfi q kl qe fkd,à。

(3) z我们对这样一个伟大的人逝世同感悲伤。à英译为zU b Yii dofbsb qe b abYqe l cpr`e Y dobYqj Yk,à。句中的dofbsb在此为自动词,故后须接用一个介词才通,在此可接Yq或l sbo或d o都可以。

(F) 易误用作自动词的他动词:

(/) z你要去开会吗? à英译为z? ob vl r dl fkd q Yqpbka Yq qe b j bbqfkd? à是不对的,因为作z出席à解的Yqpbka是他动词,后面不可接用介词Yq,应说z? ob vl r dl fkd q Yqpbka qe b j bbqfkd? à。作自动词用的Yqpbka,意为z照顾à(与q连用),如zGe Ysb j v Zr pfkbp p q Yqpbka q,(我有自己的事情要照顾。)à。

(0) z我们讨论那问题直到深夜。à英译为zU b afp`r ppba YZl r q qe b mōl Zibj cYo fkd qe b kfde q,à。应将句中的YZl r q去掉才通,因为afp`r pp是他动词。

(1) z她在做菜上要胜过我。à英译为zQe b bu` bip l sbo j b fk` l l hfkd,à是对的,因为z胜过à的过字不需译出,应从句中将l sbo删去。

(2) z他和一个有钱的女子结婚了。à英译为zF b j Yoofba t fqe Y of e dfoi,à。句中作z和à字解的t fqe应删去,因为j Yoov在此为他动词。

(3) z他在桌上敷了一张白布。à英译为zF b`l sboba l sbo qe b q YZib t fqe Y t e fqb`il qe,à是不对的,应将句中的l sbo删去,因为`l sbo在此为他动词。

(A) 易误用的自动词:

英文有些自动词,是可能用作被动的,如:

CsbovZl av iYr de ba Yqe fj , (欲凡 (

F b t Yp iYr de ba YqZv bsbovZl av, (悲凡 (

但另有少数的自动词，是不能用作被动的，如下面四句都是错的：

- (/ (EobYq YasYkqYdbp Yob Y`or ba ɔl j ɕɛfp j bYpr o  
b,  
(0 (U eYqt fii Zb bkpr ba l k ɕɛfp?  
(1 (Re b miYk t Yp mɔl sba Y ɕYfir ob,  
(2 (Re b pe fme Yp Zbbk Yqɕbj mɕa ɔl Zb pYisba,

作z结果ǎ解的Y`or b，作z随着发生ǎ解的bkpr b，作z变成ǎ解的mɔl sb等是只能用作自动，不能用作被动的。各句应改正为：

- (/ (EobYq YasYkqYdbp Y`or b ɔl j ɕɛfp j bYpr ob,  
(0 (U eYqt fii bkpr b l k ɕɛfp?  
(1 (Re b miYk mɔl sba Y ɕYfir ob,  
(2 (Gq eYp Zbbk Yqɕbj mɕa ɔl pYisb ɕɛ b pe fm

源鬼细句服好搭务动婉z?k Yqɕbj mɕeYp Zbbk j Yab ɔl pYisb ɕɛ b pe fm,ǎ。因兴zRe b pe fmeYp Zbbk Yqɕbj mɕa ɔl Zb pYisba,ǎ) 狭薪警务) 清际婉并士搭) 想眼ɕɛ b pe fm并并婉eYsb Yqɕbj mɕa搭宾语) 伤显并勤唱眼相状搭悲凡搭忧语。凡导eYsb Yqɕbj mɕa搭医正搭宾语婉ɔl pYisb ɕɛ b pe fm) 伤显译好邪兴补导f q来约袜式千搭忧语) 显笔免邪ɕɛ b pe fm约忧语) 并过液课个悲凡父颜的婉并受搭) 破勤寡眼Yk Yqɕbj mɕeYp Zbbk j Yab) 显春械fqeYp Zbbk Yqɕbj mɕa舰士勿多了。

(B) 易误用的他动词：

(/) z我建议你整个重新做一次。ǎ英译为zGpr ddbpɕa vl r ɕɛY qvl r pel ria al ɕɛ b t el ib ɕɛ fkd l sbo YdYfk,ǎ。句中的他动词pr ddbpɕ, 不是aYqfsb sboZ (授与动词)，所以不能以vl r 为间接宾语 (参考：zGɔl ia e bo ɕɛYqpe b t Yp ofde q,ǎ。句中e bo为间接宾语，ɕɛYqpe b t Yp ofde q为直接宾语)，应改为zGpr ddbpɕa ɔl vl r ɕɛYqv l r pel ria al ɕɛ b t el ib ɕɛ fkd l sbo YdYfk,ǎ。

(0) U e fib Gt Yp iYvfk d æ bob qvfk d kl q ql æ fkh, Ge bYoa  
l ia QpYaiYqbo `l j b ZY` h ol j æ b `Yk Yka dl fk l r o ol j ,  
y y H, B, QYifkdbo (当我躺在那儿尽力不想事的时候, 我听见老史  
从厕所回来, 走进我们同住的房间了。) 美国口语中常将他动词的iYv  
误作自动词的ifb来用, 正如CsYkp说的: z? q mbpbkq æ b sboZp ifb  
Yka iYv Yob el mbibppiv `l k r pba fk j Ykv mbl mibp j fkap, (在  
许多人的心目中, 现在用ifb和iYv两个动词时混淆得不成样子。) à.

## 34. succeed in doing

z瞥觉暑唱答月愚将。à庄乡眼：zK Yk pr``bbaba q iYka l k q  
e b j l l k, à。薪警务乡幢了。请议球正脾搭乡动) 并务明千句幢所  
搭伤亚。

③刻创】译文确是错了，因为作z成功à解的pr``bba是一个自动词，不可作他动词用。即是说，在pr``bba后不可接用宾语的q iYka a，而应用介词作媒介才可接宾语，所以这句话的翻译，应该是：zK Yk pr``bbaba fk iYkafkd l k q e b j l l k, à。或更正确地，zK Yk pr``bbaba fk Y` e fbsfk d q e b r k m o b +` b a b k q a d b Y q l c i Y k a f k d l k q e b j l l k, à。

在pr``bba fk的后面不一定要接动名词，接名词也是可以的，如pr``bba fk b s b o v q e f k d (做什么事都能成功)，pr``bba fk i f c b (立身，成就，发达)，pr``bba fk l k b o p Z r p f k b p p (营业发达，事业成功)。但如果接动词的话，就得用动名词，因为是置于介词fk的后面，成为介词的宾语，自然非名词或动名词不可。

这个pr``bba不一定要说z人à，说z事à也是可以的。说人时指他的z成就à或z成功à，说事时指事z成à，或z有成效à或z收效à。如pr``bba f k a l f k d p l j b q e f k d (做事获得成就)。

英文说的pr``bba fk，中文有时可以不译，如zF b pr``bbaba f k t f k k f k d q e b d o p q m o f w b, à，译为z他获得首奖à（见《英汉模范字典》），用不着要译为z他成功了获得首奖à，反而有欠流利。也许有人要说，如果丢掉pr``bba不译的话，则和说zF b t l k q e b d o p q m o f w b, à又有什么分别呢？不译确是没有把原文的意思完全表达出来。查pr``bba fk，据EasYkeba JbYokbo p Bfeql kYov l c Ar oobkq Ckdifpe的解释为z a l t e Y q l k b f p q v f k d q a l ; d Y f k l k b o p m r o m l p b à (做一个人想做的事；达到目的)。再看Lbt Abkq ov Bfeql kYov的解释，则为zY` l j m i f p e t e Y q f p Y q p j m p a l o f k q k a b a ; Z b p r `` b

ppcr i fk Yk bkabYsl o l o r kabooYhfkda (完成企图或想做的事；在努力或事业上成功)。我们现在明白了加上pr``bba fk和不加用时，在意义上确是有点不同的。说zF b t l k qe b dfopq mofwb,â, 只是说他获得了首奖，可能是侥幸，也可能是未遇到敌手，绝没有表出他曾下过苦功，或努力争取的意志，唯有加上pr``bba一字进去，即说成zF b pr``bbaba fk t fkkfk d qe b dfopq mofwb,â, 才能表出这种完成企图或达到目的的意思，所以这句话如果要把原意译出的话也许不妨译为：z他获得首奖，如愿以偿。â又如美国人这次登月成功，绝非侥幸所致，而是努力了多少年的结果，所以不可用单纯的过去动词，必须说成pr``bbaba fk iYkafkd才能表出这种成就不是轻易得来的。

Ge l nb vl r pr``bba fk mYppfk d qe b buYj fkYqfl k, (俗易烟码介数〔眼冒抗辆薪懊多〕)。(

Re bv pr``bbaba fk obY`e fkd qe b ql ml c qe b j l r kqYfk, (赏料终兴村第套荡了。 (

F b pr``bbaba fk pl isfk d qe b mol Zibj , (赏终兴把略问狮刻教了。 (

F b fp d oqr kYqf fk kl qZbil kdfkd ql qel pb t el ) fk pbbh fkd ql Zb bsbov+qefkd) pr``bba fk Zbfkd kl qefkd, (赏湾顶并婉细个什凉的邮做结跟什凉的并唱搭瞥。 (

Ge Ysb pr``bbaba fk nbopr Yafkd efj , (俗对赏搭碰务唱喊了。 (

Ge Ysb kl qvbq pr``bbaba fk pbbfk d efj , (俗憾辆薪勤富举村赏。 (

这个pr``bba fk不一定指有意做的事，如：

F b qpfba ql t fk r p l sbo ql ef p pfab) Zr q pr``bbaba fk e binfk d r p ql pbb qe ol r de ef p qpf h, (赏冒抗邮争数俗料村赏略细部砰) 刺结跟披四俗料看大了赏搭格计。 (

成功固然是好事，但pr``bba fk并不一定指好的事，如：

Qe b pl j be l t pr `` bbaba fk dfsfk d e fj æ b fj nøbppfl k  
æ Yq e b t Yp fk e bo t Yv, (尚都顶请赏粉丽村赏欲华婉亚渡拜  
尚。 (

### 35. know better

Bl k&v l r hkl t Ykv Zbqpo? 福乡眼z码并知存服好细点怕? à  
三几并士) 并知状破获福乡尝对?

③刻创】 hkl t Zbqpo照字面译为z知道更好à, 是不对的, 因为hkl t Zbqpo: Zb t fpbo。依照《英文习语大全》的解释为: zhkl t q e Yqfq fp kl q Yp fq pbbj p l o fp obmōbpbk qba; e Ysb ibYokq Zbqpo c ol j bunnbofbk`b; e bk`b, Zb j l ob mōr abkql o afp`obbq (q Yk q al pl j b q fkd) à (知其与表面所见者有异, 知其不然, 由经验而知之较详, 故较为审慎)。这还算是基本意思。我们要讨论的虽是hkl t Zbqpo, 但不妨从hkl t Zbqpo q Yk说起。Hbprnbopbk说z比较级-q Ykà与q l 1 同义, zF b hkl t p Zbqpo q Yk q al ,à: ze b fp q l `ib sbo q al ,à。这种表现法在q Yk后多用不定词, 且多半用有zq à的不定词, 但偶也有用无zq à的不定词的。例如:

U b kl t hkl t Zbqpo q Yk q j Yhb pr`e `l k`bppfl k,  
(提亚俗料闲尖并液样租笨地四步了。 (

Et bk hkbt Zbqpo q Yk q Yodr b q b ml fkq y y U Yid o a  
(肤样哑袭并租笨地评议鸟略细点了。 (

Re bv hkbt Zbqpo q Yk `l j b q j v ol kq al l o, y y ?,  
Fbkkbqq (赏料除明地辆薪来村俗搭了念。 (

Ghkl t Zbqpo q Yk q al pr`e Y q fkd, (俗并做液样搭但涸。 (

W r pel ria e Ysb hkl t k Zbqpo q Yk q q r pq pr`e Y j Yk,  
(码并状租但村来员素赏。 (

F b pel ria hkl t Zbqpo q Yk q nr Yoobi t f q e fp ZobYa Yka Zr qpo, (赏并状但村来火赏欲华搭下食纺旅约对。 (



Wl r pel ria hkl t Zbqpo qe Yk qYih kl kpbkpb, (码并状液样技务。 (

现在再来看没有qe Yk的说法。

Wl r pel ria hkl t Zbqpo Yqvl r o Ydb, (显码搭吗亏) 并状哑做液婴但洒。 (

Fb fp ql j r`e l cYj Yk l cqe b t l oia kl qd hkl t Zbqbo, (破备坚士完洒搭瞥) 冬酸做到洒之君。 (

Jbqefj qYhb Y dl l a+pfwba pof h) Yka kl qp`or nib ql r pb fq) Yka pe b t fii pl l k hkl t Zbqpo, y y EoYdfYk Lfdeqp (四赏拿细根处大搭各子) 顶够酸欢电地砰请邪上) 尚礼千舰健始止搭。 (

Dl l ip j Yv Zbifbsb vl r ) Zr q Ghkl t Zbqpo, y y D, K, Uefq (傻子袭在健相员码) 刺俗教并健。 (

Qr`e Yj Yk Yp e b l r de qd hkl t Zbqpo, (通赏略样搭瞥状该并健做到但洒搭。 (

Re b Zil`h+e bYa pel ria e Ysb hkl t k efp`l j mYkv Zbqbo, (略个傻感夕勤早贫清赏搭世摆舰好了。 (

说Ghkl t Zbqpo, 在日常的谈话中, 可作一种委婉说法用, 意即z随便你怎样说, 我是不会受骗的à (GYj kl qab`bfsba) 。

此外, 对于别人的行为失检, 也常说: zF b al bpk&q hkl t Ykv Zbqpo, (他居然有这样笨)。â。有人一言不合, 就口角起来, 我们可以对他说: zB l k&q vl r hkl t Ykv Zbqpo? (难道你不能理智一点吗? ) â。

## 36. 以现在时态表未来

庄样避球思来) 草并邪思来轻态搭凡导) 顶偿邪提亚轻态搭凡导) 液婴邪动婉更正脾) 请性议球。

③刻创】英文常用现在时态表示未来，兹分述如下：

(?) 表示未来的Nobpbkq Rbkpb:

用现在时态来表示未来，本是一种古代的用法，现今还是颇为盛行，不过常要加上一个未来的副词，以表示时态而已。

为要决定那样一个句子的时态，只有从它的前后文，或前后文中的一两个字来判断。它可以用副词或副词的系词(?asboZfYi ?ag k`q) 来表示未来，例如：

zU bii) æb pYfa YqiYpq) zfcvl r j r p q dl) vl r j r p q U  
ebk al vl r p q Yoq? ày y EYipt l oœv (z好暗) à源鬼赏务) z码  
细乏夕砰) 袭辆薪拜动。什凉轻即凡蕃落? à (

F b j r qpboba efp cYfœ, zG`lj bp, Gpr obiv `lj bp, Rlj  
l ool t GZb+dfk, ày y U biip (赏慌冀地务池了赏搭员心: z略健来  
搭。略细乏健来搭。明十俗舰杰秋。à (

U b i t Yih q œb p q Y q l k) Zr q Gal k q hkl t t e b k œb q  
oYfk `lj bp, (俗料走村楚样砰暗) 刺俗并投错火楚什凉轻即  
村。(

Gt l kabo fce b qfbp YdYfk, (赏婉并婉健哑来细道。(

它又可以用 Al kafql kYi AiYr pb (条件子句) 来表示未来，例如：

ᑭvl r ʼov l r q) Ghfii vl r, y y l fmifkd (码夕集喊搭寒)  
俗舰杀死码。 (

Gal kᑭfkᑭka vl r ᑭ j Yoov efj, ᑭvl r al) vl r orfk e  
fj, y y Fbkkbᑭ (俗并并吹杀夕码跟赏结黑。破跟码跟赏结黑  
搭寒) 码舰健把赏见了。 (

ᑭGcYfi) GmYv ᑭ b nbkYiqv) kl qe b, y y Alj mᑭ k KY h  
bkwfb (破跟俗涂八了) 俗委尺肤) 顶并夕赏委尺肤。 (

它又可以用前后文，或支配的动词 (ᑭ b dl sbokfkd sboZ) 来表示未来，例如：

GYj kl qdl fkd el j b t fᑭ vl r ᑭ kfde q) j l ᑭ bo) Gpibb  
m Yq Al kkfbᑭ, Qe b t fii kl q obr pb j b Y Zba, y y Jl ʼhb  
(妈) 纪晚俗并跟码合家砰了) 俗游亚练麻略漫。尚健默俗游  
搭。 (

Gt l kabo e b al bpkᑭ obᑭob, y y Fbkkfᑭ (俗亟邮知存赏  
村顿健并健向手纹。 (

K o, U Ykd Yka K o, Jf eYa Y Zbq Gt l kabo t el t fkp,  
(束逃巧火慢逃巧吹了低) 并投错婉肉怯。 (

Ge l nb pe b miYvp l kb l c Kl wᑭᑭ pl kYqYp, (俗易烟尚匆  
细曲莫扎省搭长蛋。 (

Ge l nb e b al bpkᑭ d odbq Yii YZl r qfq (俗易烟赏并夕把液  
细切的要了。 (

(F) 表示未来的 Nobpbkq Nol dobppfsb:

现在进行并不一定是表示动作的继续，而常可用来表示未来，如G  
Yj dl fkd (ʼl j fkd、ibYsfkd、pbkafkd) 等等表运动的动词，自不  
待言，即其他的动词，也可有那种用法。

(/) 用副词或副词的系词来表示未来的：

ᑭ Yaaobppfkd Y Zfd j bbᑭkd fk Ql r ᑭ Jl kal k l k Qr k  
aYv kfde q, y y K ʼI bkkY (俗亚圆目十晚千夕村切念典细个大  
搭集健千砰真讲。 (

𐌆 afkfk d t fœ e fj œ fp bsbkfk d, y y J l` h b (纪晚俗祸火赏赴补。 (

z U e Y q Y o b t b a l f k d Y œ p o i r k` e ? à Y p h b a œ b A l j j l a l o b, y y E Y i p t l o œ v (z车过岁读之鬼) 俗料夕做什凉? à吸未乎问。 (

U b œ b e Y s f k d Y n Y œ v f k l r o d l j p d k f d e q y y K Y` h b k w f b (俗料纪晚亚俗料搭肃子漫杰茶健。 (

𐌆 m i Y k q f k d Y i l q l c Y l o k p œ f p Y r œ j k d l, y y I f n i f k d (纪吗暑十俗料袭夕来栽婴在多友仍搭婴儿下砵。 (

𐌆 p i b b n f k d e b o b d k f d e q) v l r h k l t ) d o œ b d o p q q j b, y y K Y` h b k w f b (码知存) 纪晚俗婉多细道亚液漫辱。 (

E r v) œ b v Y o b l k i v p q Y v f k d Y t b b h, y y Œ f a, (怪致) 赏料译游细个礼巴。 (

(0) 用前后文来表示未来的:

z Œ i p b b f c i f d b f p Y k v p t b b œ p o Y q v l r o p r m b o + n Y œ v) a l` d o) à e b o b t j Y o h b a) z G p r m m l p b v l r œ b k l q` Y k` b i i f k d j v f k s f q Y q l k) Y o b v l r ? à y y K` I b k k Y (z别求) 四俗看看亚码府千搭晚补健中搭瞥巧) 婉并婉健服夕片立遇) à赏务) z俗易烟码并夕数统对俗搭铜店。 à (

z U e Y q Y o b v l r d l f k d d a l) B Y m œ k b? à Y p h b a e b o j l c e b o f j n Y q f b k q v, z W r o c Y œ b o Y k a G Y o b a f k f k d l r q) Y k a v l r Œ i Z b Y i l k b f c v l r a f k b e b o b, à y y Œ f a, (z第糟麻) 码夕怎凉拜? à尚旅室并论烦地问。 z码纺室火俗的夕池砵车读) 破跟码夕亚液漫) 码舰婉细个瞥车读。 à (

W b p) K o p, Q l Y j b p t Y p f k) Z r q œ b j Y f a a f a k l q h k l t f c p e b t Y p p b b f k d n b l m i b, y y E Y i p t l o œ v (婉纹) 苏法瞥略轻狭亚家) 刺貌姆并知存尚婉并婉举料。 (

z U e b k Y o b v l r` l j f k d? à p e b f k d p o o r m œ p a) z L l q d o Y a Y v l o q t l) à G Y k p t b o b a o b d o b œ r i i v, z Œ p n b k a f k d U e f œ r k t f œ œ b P l a b k p, à y y K` I b k k Y (z码什凉轻即来? à尚餐圆

问。z细课十之琴并外) à俗吓钩地合创) z俗夕砵罗式家过徒灵爵  
块级。à (

这种用法近来好像很流行，新作家K`I bkkY特别喜欢这样用，  
尤其是对于afkb、al、pbb一类的动词为然。

现在一切求单纯化，许多复杂的动词形式都尽量少用，而采用最  
基本的现在式来代表，这也许是现代英语的一个倾向吧。

### 37. lay作lie用, lay = coitus

片根约家H, B, QYifkdbo亚赏尤搭〔励时漫搭唯烟夜〕细扰中新  
句巡: zU e fib Gt Yp iYvfk d q̄ bob q̄vfk d kl q̄ q̄ q̄ fkh) Ge bYoa l  
ia QqYaiYq̄bo`lj b ZY`h œlj q̄ b`Yk Yka dl fk l r o ol lj ,à  
眼什凉并务ivfk d) 顶夕邪赏凡导搭iYvfk d) 并婉谁都样动怕?

③刻创】QYifkdbo此书是用美国俗语写的,在美国俗语中,常将他动词的q̄ iYv,当作自动词的q̄ ifb来用,例如问题中所引用的句子,正规的英文自然应说t e fib Gt Yp ivfk d q̄ bob才对。请看下列用法:

(欲凡导 (Gifb GiYv GYj ivfk d Ge Ysb iYfk

(赏凡导 (GiYv GiYfa GYj iYvfk d Ge Ysb iYfa

报纸上的英文,也不是正规的英文,常爱用一些新字、外国字及俗语,也不讲究文法,且泛滥着美国的英文,例如/75.年2月/6日新加坡的*Re b QqYfqp Rfo bp*上,就载有一则路透社伦敦消息:

? j l q̄ bo l c // `e fiaobk q̄ ia Y afsl o`b`l r oq g adb e bo  
b vb p q̄ oa Yv: zGsb e Ya bkl r de l c pbu,à

? ka q̄ b Hr adb obnifba) zGj kl q̄ pr omofpba,à

Re b g adb obg`q̄ pa Y mibY d o afsl o`b Zv K op, K YodYobc  
Fr pe Yt Yv q̄ er pZYka) K o, Pl kYia Fr pe Yt Yv) t el Yiibdb  
a q̄ Yqefp t fcb`lj j f q̄ pa Yar iq̄ov t f q̄ Y`l il r oba j Yk fk  
Y d obpql r q̄ fab Jl kal k,

K o, Hr p q̄ b DYr ihp`lj j bk q̄ pa: zGal k q̄ Zbifbsb q̄ Yqp  
e b t Yp pl Zr op q̄ kd d o pbu q̄ Yq pe b t l r ia iYv al t k l k e b

o ZY`h f k Cm fkd d obpq t f e Y`l il r oba j Yk /0 vbYop vl r  
kdbo e Yk e bopbiç,à

K op, Fr pe Yt Yv t Yp doYk qba Y ab`obb l k e b dol r ka l  
c`or biq Zv e bo er pZYka) t e f e e b e Ya abkfba,

消息中说法官不相信一个有了十一个孩子的母亲，还会那样情不自禁，要到森林里去和一个比她小十二岁的黑人去苟合的。原文说 *zpebt l ria iYv alt k l k e bo ZY`h* , , , t f e Y`l il r oba j Ykà, 当然是 *pebt l ria ifb alt k* 的俗语说法，*z* 仰卧à一定是自动，不应该用他动词，但美国俗语，却是以 *iYv* 来代 *ifb* 用的。

据 *U bkqt l o e* 和 *Dibukbo* 合编的 *Bfeql kYav l c Eo bofeYk QiYkd* 上说，他动词的 *iYv* : `l f e p (性交)，所以说 *iYv Y t l j Yk alt k*，就是说和她性交。例如 A, *U fiifkde Yj* 著的 *Cka Yp Y KYk* 上说：

*Qe b t bkq d Y al` d o Yka d r ka l r q e b qpr e ) e bk o  
r pe ba d E bkboYi BoYr de d k Yka kYj ba e b j Yk: Nbq J  
Yvkb, Fr q JYvkb f j j bafYqiv m l +ar`ba d f s b`Yabq t e l p  
t l ob e bvæ Yii iYvba e b dfoi l kb kfde q l k HYj Yf Y Qe l ob,*

可注意的是他不说 *iYfa*，而说 *iYvba*。*iYv* 如作名词用，意为性交的女人 (*Y d j Yib`l kpfaboba l kiv pbur Yiiv*)，例如：

*F l e Ydobba e Yq e b q t l dfoip il l hba ifhb pt bii iYvp,  
y y H, R, DYoobii*

### 38. 某些过去动词+完成不定词

zGe Ya f k q k a b a q l ` Y i i l k v l r , à 火 z G f k q k a b a q l e Y s b ` Y i i b a l k v l r , à 夫句薪获并世? 慌诸怎样?

③刻创】这两句话的含义是一样的，一则是把过去放在主动词上，一则是把过去用完成不定词来表达，结果都是说过去想做的事未能实现。一般常用的表现法是z过去动词-完成不定词à。

完成不定词用于e l m b、b u m b ` q、f k q k a、j b Y k (: f k q k a)、t Y k q等动词过去时态之后，是表示未实现的过去的希望、期待、意图、欲求等，如：

G f k q k a b a q l e Y s b ` Y i i b a l k v l r ) Z r q t Y p m o b s b k q b a c o l j a l f k d p l , ( 俗 馆 邮 来 看 码 ) 刺 想 洒 思 跟 。 (

普通只消说z G f k q k a b a q l e Y s b ` Y i i b a l k v l r , à 就够了，不必说后面的z Z r q t Y p m o b s b k q b a c o l j a l f k d p l à , 意思已然很明白了。

G b u m b ` q b a q l e Y s b j b q e f j e b o b i Y p q k f d e q ( 怨 系 俗 显 眼 亚 到 可 显 举 村 赏 搭 。 (

U b j b Y k q q l e Y s b p q Y v b a q e b o b Y t b b h , ( 俗 料 馆 吹 杀 亚 略 漫 店 细 个 礼 巴 搭 。 (

G t Y k q b a q l e Y s b p b b k v l r b s b o p l j r ` e , ( 俗 医 邮 勤 举 村 码 。 (

G q e l r d e q q l e Y s b t o f q p k Y i f k b q l e b o ) Z r q d o d l q q l a l p l , ( 俗 馆 邮 腿 饿 员 海 尚 搭 ) 并 珠 要 记 了 。 (



说  $zt\ Yp\ [t\ bob]$  - 完成不定词à, 也是表示未实现的过去的决定, 如:

$U\ b\ t\ bob\ q\ e\ Ysb\ j\ bq\ Yq\ pfu\ l\ \&il\ `h,$  (俗料倌乏蜡点英入休搭。 (

### 39. lose = forget

看村片根细家胖子对搭花告务: zB1 k&q J1 pb W r o F bYay Gq  
Re b Fbpq NYoq Mc W r o F1 av,à 眼什凉务z并夕涂砰君智à) 胖子  
与君智获干?

③刻创】查《英文习语大全》405页il pb l kb e bYa这个成语，有下列解释：（/）照字面解为zZb Zbe bYaba à（授首，被斩，身首异处）；（0）引申意义为zZb`lj b`l kr pbaà（慌张，狼狈周章，仓皇）。最新《实用英汉辞典》也举有这个成语，但只有一个意义，即zil pb l kb e bYa（: dbq bu`fpa）à（失去理智；情感冲动）。但这些解释在此都不适用。帽子店的广告，决不会说什么砍头或失去理智一类不好听的话，脑袋都搬了家，还用得着帽子吗？广告上说的这个il pb是ze Ysb pifm col j pfde q, e bYofkd, Yqpkql k, bq,à（从视、听、注意等中溜走）的意思，简单地说，就是z忘记à（d odb q）。整句的意思是：z不要忘记你的头y y 那是你身体上最重要的一部分。à他例如：

Ge Ysb il pqj v Dobk`e,（俗搭动样闲耍记了。（

Gsb gr pqil pqe fp kYj b,（俗细下邨并难赏完什凉了。（

## 40. 现在完成时态与过去副词同用

也样动华乏) 避球过碎搭房导破Ydl、vbpqboaYv、iYpqkfdeq  
打) 婉并勤火提亚暑唱轻态世邪搭) 破俗料并可显务zFbeYpibcqqt  
t l aYvpYdl,à 眼什凉KYrdeYj 亚AeoffpqYpFlifaYv 中心薪zG  
off Zbbk ab`faba il kd Ydl qeYq qe b l kiv ifZboqv t l oqe Ykvqe fk  
d fp qe b ifZboqv ql al ofde q,à搭务动落?

③刻创】表肯定过去的副词,如 vbpqboaYv、iYpqvbYo、qt l aY  
vpYdl、fk /747等等,诚然是不可以和现在完成时态同用的,我们  
不可说zFbeYpibcqqt l aYvpYdl,à,只能说zFb ibcqqt l aYvpY  
dl,à,或zFbeYpibcqdoqt l aYvp,à,意思都是一样。原因是现在完  
成时态是表从过去到现在的一段时间,如果加上过去副词,就不能延  
展到现在了。但笼统地说过去,而不局限于过去的某一时日,则是可  
以和现在完成时态同用的。上举毛姆的文章,便是z从自古以来就决定  
了à(eYpZbbk ab`faba il kd Ydl),没有指出过去某一时,某一日  
或某一年来,单说z老早à是漠然地指过去,所以是可以和现在完成时  
态同用的。属于这类笼统说法的还有Zbdob、d oj boiv、mobsfl r pi  
v、fk mYpqcfj bp、fk qe b mYpq、fk d oj bo cfj bp,例如:

Rl r kabopqYka qe fp) t bj r pqhkl t qeYqfk mYpqcfj bp  
qe b bYoqe eYp dl kb qe ol r de dobYq`eYkdbp,(眼夕了刻液  
点)俗料必望知存地鼠亚过碎婉尖过大才逆搭。(

Qsb e binba vl r fk qe b mYpq,, , Uev al k&q vl r e bimj b  
kl t ? y y Aol kfk: Reb Ll oqebok Jfdeq(俗显念班由过码x x  
眼什凉码提亚并零班由俗细下落? (

Re b e fpql ofYkp j r pqdfka l r q qe b bsbkqp qeYqeYsb l`  
r ooba fk qe b mYpq y y Ul oia Dll h Ckeveil mbafY(历情家必  
望野池过碎伤东巧搭泗盘。(

K fífqYofpqp) fík q̃ b mYpq) e Ysb l ǎpk Zbbk YZib d̃l Y e fb  
sb q̃ bfo Yfj p, y y Pr ppbii: *Npveel il dv Yka CYpqU bpqRbk  
pfl k* (黠随忧诸夜亚过砵) 轻草勤富第唱赏料搭浅搭。 (

Re bob e Ysb Zbbk j Ykv aobYaα i qvoYkkfbp fík mYpq e fpq  
l ov, y y Pr ppbii: *F Yp KYk Y Dr q ob?* (亚过砵搭历情千) 薪  
过在多可怕搭不包外眼。 (

Ǫ pbbj p d̃l j b q̃ Yq Ge Ysb e bYoa q̃ bpb ` e Yoj fík d kYj  
bp Zbd ob, y y Dl opqbo: *All ǎfkYql k* (俗好通显念驶村过液  
遇可爱搭其字。 (

Ǫb pbbk j Ykv Y dbkqbj Yk aor kh d oj boiv, y y Re Y  
hboYv: *Nbkabk-kfp* (俗显念看村过在多千打瞥鼓错醉志志  
搭。 (

?k YkYZYmfpq fp l kb t e l ZYmfwbp l sbo YdYfk) t e b q̃  
bo ǎbnr bkqiv Yp Y ml fík q l c of q̃ Yi) l o l k ` b Yp Y ar b nbod o  
j Yk ` b l c t e Yq e Yp Zbbk fík b ǎb ` q̃ Yiiv nbod oj ba mǎbsfl r pi  
v, (MCB) z?kYZYmfpq̃ à ( (细个哑鹰礼派教饰婉夕哑委细道鹰  
礼搭) 并鸟上草悲冬约细婴仪式) 或婉贫眼显念婴儿轻搭鹰礼酸  
域) 夕亚唱瞥轻哑正式来过细道。 (

41. “He is the stingiest man I ever met.” 和  
“He is the stingiest man I have ever met.”

庄样务搭 zF b fp qe b pafkdfbpqj Yk Gbsbo j bq à 火 zF b fp qe b pafkdfbpqj Yk Ge Ysb bsbo j bq à 夫句) 亚珠诸千并知薪获并世?

③刻创】在普通的用法上是没有什不同的，用过去动词似乎比用现在完成动词还要普遍些。不过要仔细研究起来，二者之间还是有些细微的分别的。第一句单用过去动词的说法，是z直观的à，就目前的某种事实，而不假思索地感觉到世界上再没有他这样吝啬的人了。第二句用现在完成动词的说法，是z冷静à的，含有z继续à的意味，断定直到现在为止，在所认识的各种各样的人们当中，此人算是最吝啬的了。以上两种说法的实例很多，现在随便举出一些如下：

第一种：

W r ɔb qe b l aabpq dɪil t Gbsbo pYt , y y ?i`l qɪ: Jfɔɪb U l o bk (码婉俗举村搭源绅后搭瞥。(

W r Yob qe b or aabpq nbopl k Gbsbo j bq y y U fiab: Reb Pbo YohYdib Pl eh-bq (码婉俗羞村搭源酸礼搭瞥。(

Gɔp qe b j l pq ofaf r il r p qe fkd Gbsbo e bYoa fk j v ifdb, y y K Yr de Yj : Reb DobYa-t fkkbo (液婉俗巧末伤驶村搭源好途搭涸。(

Ga pYv vl r t bob qe b il sbifbpq Yka j l pq ZbYr qfɔr i dfoi q e Yq bsbo ifsba, y y F bj fkd t Yv: Eed pp qe b Pfsbo Yka Gkd c eb Robbp (俗邮码婉完寂千源可爱顶心源片开搭妇买了。(

第二种：

Qe b<sup>ə</sup> qe b j l p q ` e Yoj fkd vl r kd iYav ~~ŋ~~b bsbo pbbk,  
y y Fbkov HYj bp: *Re b Nl əpYfql c Y JYav* (尚婉俗伤举过搭  
源军票搭少貌。 (

F b t Yp qe b hfkabpq pl r i Ge Ya bsbo j bq y y ?iifkde Y  
j : *Ll Jl sb Jl pq* (赏婉俗曾尖羞举搭源室切搭瞥了。 (

ŋ t Yp qe b il kdbpq pnbb` e Ge Ya bsbo e bYoa, y y ~~ʒ~~fa,  
(液婉俗曾尖伤驶村过搭源长搭真讲。 (

F b fp qe b j l p q qe l r de q r i) ` l kpfaboYq Yka pbkqj bk  
qYi j Yk Ge Ysb bsbo hkl t k, y y K Yj fb Cfpbk el t bo (赏婉  
俗伤贫晴搭源勤施识鞭瞥、干牢蝇村、粉盘医挚搭瞥了。 (

Re fp fp qe b j l p q sfl ibkq d oj l c bubo` fpb ~~ŋ~~b bsbo qYhb  
k, (液婉俗做过搭源候苦搭运凡。 (

Gafa qe b pfiifbpq qe fkd Ge Ysb bsbo al kb fk j v ifcb, y y  
?iifkde Yj : *Mm ` fq* (俗做了细活细巧中源傻搭洒。 (

Qe b pl ZZba t fqe qe b j l p q j fpboYZib dbbifkd pe b e Ya b  
sbo e Ya fk e bo ifcb, y y AYiat bii: *Cmfpl ab fk NYio bqđ* (尚  
点字巧末曾思薪搭源比步搭粉盘啜施了。 (

## V 助动词

### 42. may、may well、may as well

请祸下另堪句中搭j Yv t bii火j Yv Yp t bii搭吃著务明细下)并略沃由凡导j Yv搭邪动。

(Y (Qe b j Yv t bii Zb mōl r a l c e b o p l k,

(Z (W r j Yv Yp t bii Zbdfk Yq l k` b,

③刻创】在这种用法中的j Yv，是表示辩护理由的，而t bii则为t fœ dl l a obYpl k的意思，当j Yv和t bii连用时，则意为e Ysb dl l a obYpl k q̄ (这样也是有理由的，无怪)。(Y)例的意思是z她以自己的儿子为荣是应该的â或z她有这样的儿子是足以骄傲的â。这句话又可以倒过来说成：

Qe b f p mōl r a l c e b o p l k) Yka t bii p e b j Yv, (尚显欲华搭儿子眼算袭婉状该搭。(

句中的zt bii - 主语- j Yvâ (: Yka t fœ obYpl k) , 意为z那也是应该的â, 有时不说j Yv, 单用一个t bii, 也能表t fœ dl l a obYpl k之意, 如:

U b`Ykk l q sbov t bii obœ p b e f j , (俗料辆薪好搭君由来奖较赏。(

不过一般的常见的用法, 是j Yv和t bii连用, 如:

W r j Yv t bii pYv pl, (码怪薪君由液样务。 (

至于 (Z) 句则是一种比较的形式, 为 zW r j Yv Yp t bii Zbdfk Yq1 k` b (Yp kl q), à 的省略, 意为 z马上着手与不马上着手的理由同样充分, 所以还是马上着手的好 à, 简单地翻译为 z你宜早着手 à, 因为 j Yv Yp t bii, , , (Yp) : eYa Zbqppbo, , , (qYk), 也像 eYa Zbqppbo 后的 qYk 不说出来一样, j Yv Yp t bii 后的 Yp 也是不常说的, 但不是不可说, 如:

W r j fde q Yp t bii qY ol t j l kbv Yt Yv Yp pnbka fq fk d Yj Zifkd, (码把年害亚低别千并啻把年岛而。 (

Mkb j Yv Yp t bii kl q hkl t Y qY fkd Yq Yii Yp hkl t fq Zr qfj nbob` qv, (细知败刻憾并破暑全并知。 (

Mkb j Yv Yp t bii Zb eYkdba d o Y pe bbm Yp Y iYj Z, (与深读头误顶委棘虽满读大误顶委棘。 - 窃副虽满窃根。 ( (勿语 (

这个 j Yv Yp t bii 的表现法是和 j Yv t bii 意思不同的。第一人称的 Gj Yv Yp t bii 与第二人称的 W r eYa Zbqppbo 相当。普通单用, 略去后面的 Yp kl q 时, 可译作 z为宜 àz 你最好那样 àz 还是那样做的好 à。如果后面加有 Yp 的子句时, 就可译作 z不啻 àz 犹之 àz 可与相等 à, 这是一种极力否定的说法。

至于助动词 j Yv 的用法, 可分下列七条:

(/) 表许可 (Nbøj fppfl k) :

K Yv Gqpl r Zib vl r q mYpp qY b pYiq? (请把食握递海俗细下好怕? (

K fde q GYph vl r o kYj b? (请教大其。 (句中邪 j fde q 背邪 j Yv 服眼料胜。

W r j fde q g p qibqj b pbb, (请码海俗看看暗。 (

这个 zW r j fde q, , , à 原义为 z请你 x x à, 但有时变作 z你该 x x 而竟不 x x à 的意思, 如:



W r j fde q j Yhb Y if q j b i b p p k l f p b, (码并夕液样亲好怕? (

不过在这场合当然以用W r j fde q e Y s b a l k b的形式更好, 意即z你本该x x 而竟不曾x x 如:

W r j fde q e Y s b q i a j b b Y o i f b o, (码状该早告僧俗搭。(

在回答zK Yv G d l ? 一问时, 英国式肯定答zW b p, v l r j Yv, à, 否定答zL l, v l r j r p q k l q (不可以去) à; 美国式的否定则为zL l, v l r `Y k k l q 或zL l, v l r j Yv k l q 如:

G`Yk m i Yv q e b m f Y k l ) Z r q G j Yv k l q (或Yj k l q Y i l t b a q a l (a r o f k d q e b p`e l l i e l r o p, y y I f o h m Y q f`h (俗可显勿诺) 并过亚千进搭轻即舰并可显。(

(0) 表可能(Nl p p f Z f i f q y) 或不确实(Sk`b o q Y f k q y) :

Q j Yv Z b q p r b, (可勤婉医搭。(

Q j fde q Z b q p r b, (或在婉医搭。(并脾清。

(1) 代`Yk用(: n b o e Y n p`Yk) :

? j Yk j Yv Z b h k l t k Z v q e b`l j m Y k v e b h b b n p, (贾朱夜赤) 贾墨夜基。(

W r j Yv q Y h b Y e l o p b q q e b t Y q b o) Z r q v l r`Y k k l q j Y h b e f j a o f k h, (码可显把礼点村如部砵) 刺并勤夕上鼓如。(

(2) 表辩护的理由(Hr p q f`Y q f l k) :

F b j Yv (或j fde q (t b i i Y p h q e Y q : U b i i e b j Yv (或j fde q (Y p h q e Y q : U b i i j Yv (或j fde q (e b Y p h q e Y q : F b Y p h p q e Y q) Y k a t b i i e b j Yv, (赏夕问婉状该搭。(

W r j Yv Y p t b i i d l q e b o b q a Yv (Y p k l q (, y y N Y i j b o (码源好纪十砵略漫。(

(3) 在让步的副词子句中:

U e l b s b o j Y v p Y v p l ) f q f p q p r b, (并搞肉务) 略总婉对搭。 (

E l t e b o b v l r j Y v ) q e b o b q k l m i Y b i f h b e l j b, (酸鸟什凉地方的辆薪家漫好。 (

(4) 在假设语气 (Q r Z g k` q f s b K l l a, 即虚拟语气 y y 编注) 中:

(Y) 在祈愿句 (M m Y q f s b A i Y r p b) 中:

K Y v v l r Z b e Y m v ! : G t f p e v l r j Y v Z b e Y m v, : W r Z b e Y m v ! : F Y m f k b p p q v l r ! (友码湾反。 (

(Z) 在主句中有 b u m b` q、 d b Y o、 e l n b、 a b p f o b、 q e f k h、 t f p e 等动词的, 对附句的内容具有确实信心时通常用 p e Y i i、 t f i i, 如:

G e l n b v l r t f i i Z b Y Z i b q l` l j b, (俗易烟码勤来。 (

但信心不强时则改用 j Y v。

G a b p f o b q e Y q f q j Y v k l q a f b, y y D r q k q B f Y o v (俗愿烟上并死。 (

G d b Y o (: Y j Y o Y f a (e b j Y v q Y h b` l i a, (俗掉心赏健题耳。 (

G e l n b e b j Y v p r` ` b b a, (俗恼烟赏唱喊。 (

(^) 在表目的的副词子句 (? a s b o Z A i Y r p b) 中:

U b b Y q (f k l o a b o (q e Y q t b j Y v i f s b, (眼巧顶食。 (

(5) 表对过去的推测 y y j Y v e Y s b - 过去分词 (也许曾经) :

G l j Y v e Y s b Z b b k q p r b, (袭在曾尖婉医搭。 (

比较：

(Y  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{F b j Yv e Ysb pbbk e bo vbpqboa Yv,} \\ \text{(赏袞在曾尖亚怨十看举尚。 (} \\ \text{F b j fdeqe Ysb pbbk e bo vbpqboa Yv,} \\ \text{(赏卑来可显亚怨十看举尚搭 [刺清亚并曾举村] 。 (} \end{array} \right.$

(Z  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{W r j fdeq (: l r deq q) vbqal kl q (l abo q e bim} \\ \text{(码该海与班忙) 顶竟并海。 (} \\ \text{W r j fdeqe Ysb l aboba q e bim} \\ \text{(码卑该海与班由) 顶竟并曾海与。 (} \end{array} \right.$

### 43. won' t的来历

字典千务t l k&婉t fii kl q搭闲腿) 刺眼什凉 [f] 才唱了 [l]  
落? pe Yii kl q搭闲腿眼pe Yk&译略砰了课个 [i] ) 旅响 (即许响  
y y 毕有 (并辆薪寡才。亚邪动千薪警务t l k&薪轻并并暑全打兴t f  
ii kl q) 液务动对并对?

③刻创】这确是一个很难听到有人发出的疑问，一般学习英文的人，都只接受事实，而不要去钻研文字结构的。我们在劝诱别人喝茶时说：zU l k&vl r e Ysb pl j b qY? à。在表示决心时说：zGt l k&al fqYdYfk,à。在表示拒绝时说：zRe fp al l o t l k&l nbk,à。我们说这些话时，并不怀疑t l k&不是t fii kl q的缩写，并不因为它是〔t l〕而不是〔t f〕，而感到奇怪。早把它当作不规则动词的变化，而接受不疑了。

但我们如果要追究起来，就查出这个t l k&的变化，是由中世英语 (K faaib Ck difpe) 而来的。所谓中世英语是指//3. 年至/3. . 年那一段时期的英语而言，英国由于诺尔曼人的征服 (L l oj Yk Al knr bpq) ，使语言上发生了极大的改变，即是完成了所谓字尾屈折的标准化 (ibsbiifkd l cfk d bufl kp) 。

且说中世英语的现在时直陈式单数 (Nobpbkq Ck af Yqfsb Qfkdr i Yo) 是以t fii为第一人称，t fiq为第二人称，t fiib为第三人称的，但除此形式外，又有用母音〔l〕的形式，即第一人称为t l iib (或t l i b、t l i) ，第二人称为t l iq，第三人称为t l ib (或t l i、t r iib) ，后来与kl q结合构成一个缩写字时，便成为t l k&了。我们现在知道t l k&是由K C t l i - kl q而变成的。

英文的t l k&在意义上并不完全与t fii kl q相等，例如说zGt l k&pbb e fj YdYfk,à就比说zGt fii (: Gt fii) kl qpbb e fj YdYfk,à在意志上就表示坚决得多呢。zt fii - 否定à obr pb q，尤其是用于人以外的主语时，如：

Refp t l l a t fii kl qZr ok, (液律休婉跳并私搭。 (

44. “We did not need to hurry.” 和 “We need not have hurried.”

zU b afa kl q kbba ql er oov, à火 zU b kbba kl q eYsb er oofba, à夫句) 的婉议过砵辆薪管令搭必夕) 并知珠诸千薪获朵鞭?

③刻创】是的，两句都是指过去说的，似乎可以照下面这样来译：

(Y (U b afa kl q kbba ql er oov, (俗料并辆薪解。(

(Z (U b kbba kl q eYsb er oofba, (俗料医邪并字略样解搭。(

第一句(Y)的意思是z我们没有赶快的必要，所以我们并没有急à。第二句(Z)的意思是z我们没有赶快的必要，而我们都急急忙忙地赶快做了à。(Z)句用英文解释说便是：

zU b eYsb er oofba) Zr q kl t t b pbb qe Yq fqt Ypk&q kb` b ppYov, à(俗料解解忙忙地管令做了) 提亚东丽清酸到必夕。(

如果是说现在或未来，就说zU b kbba kl q er oov, (我们不用着急。) à, 意即没有急忙的必要。如果是说过去，就可在主动词上表现出这种时态来，即句中的afa kl q kbba, 或是用过去的不定词来表示，即句中的eYsb er oofba。注意(Y)句中的kbba是主动词，(Z)句中的kbba是助动词。(Y)句中用了助动词的afa, 正等于(Z)句中的助动词的kbba。

表过去的完成不定词，不但可用于助动词kbba之后，也可以用在其他助动词之后，同样是表现z在过去未实现的事à, 含有惋惜之意，比较下例：

W r p e l r i a a l f q (略码状该做。(

W r p e l r i a e Y s b a l k b f q (略码状该做顶思做。(

W r p e l r i a e Y s b p b b k q e Y q j l s f b, (略个片子可滩码辆薪  
砰看。(

Q e b l r d e q d e Y s b Z b b k j l o b ` Y o b a r i, (可滩尚辆薪冬  
心。(

## 45. Let' s not、Don' t let' s、Let' s don' t的区别

庄样可务Jbq k l q) 心可务B l k q i b q) 心可务Jbq a l k q)  
态夜并知薪获朵鞭?

③刻创】ibq与否定连用时，在英国说Jbq k l q d l，是很正式的说法，通常只说B l k q i b q d l。在美国则通常说Jbq k l q d l，至于B l k q i b q d l便是俗语的说法。在美国要加强语气时才说Jbq a l k q d l。

原来ibq的否定，文言和口语的说法不同。即是口语加用助动词的a l，文言则不加，但是口语中不加的时候也有，如Jbq k l q d l便是美国人口头常说的。

B l k q i b q q b Z f o a d i v Y t Y v, (并夕四液麦队走了。(

美国R b u Y p大学教授P Y i c F, J l k d说，Jbq k l q和B l k q i b q, 都是正常(k l o j Y i)的说法，只有Jbq a l k q才是破格(Y k l j Y i l r p)的说法。B l k q i b q更是带有感情(b j l q l k Y i)的。

美国的语言学家A, A, D o f b p把Jbq列入他所谓D r k` q l k t l o a p (作用字)之一，他说从历史上看，Jbq是从J b q r p产生出来的，但现在Jbq和J b q r p已大有分别了。他又说否定形的Jbq a l k q是一般确立的惯用语。

据调查结果，B l k q i b q (或 i b q r p)的形式，用得相当的多，B l k l q i b q (或 i b q r p)则比较少见。而Jbq (或J b q r p) k l q的形式也不少。Jbq a l k q的形式不过四五次被语法学者引用，而且都是出自美国作家的笔下。

z J b q d l, p e Y i i t b? a的用法，固然不错，但用得极少。



## VI 准动词

### 46. 动名词主语及格

z赏竞持夕貌儿方别求。à乡唱庄样搭zF b fkpfpqp l k e fp aYr de  
qpo qYhfkd Y al` q oYi abdobb,à) 薪警务状该邪aYr de qpo尝对)  
并知温婉) 请舰夫夜搭朵鞭由眼刻务。

③刻创】这涉及动名词主语及格(AYpb)的问题,详细地说,动名词的主语用通格(A1j j l k AYpb),还是用属格(Nl ppbpps b AYpb)的问题。首先,我们必须明白:动名词是可能有主语的。不过是意味上的主语(Qbkpb Qr Zgb` q)或一般人称(Ebkbof` Nbopl k)的用法,例如:

GYj YwYfa l cer oqfkd efp dbbifkdp, (俗近怕题赏搭粉  
盘。(液个er oqfkd珠议j v er oqfkd。

Reb mYfk fk j v qeol Yqj Yab pnbYhfkd afcf r iq, (俗想  
瑰是罗兴务寒。(句中薪j v qeol Yq细语)故知pnbYhfkd搭瞥眼  
肉。

B1 fkd kl qe fkd fp al fkd fii, (头瞥特老眼并提。(液婉细  
罢瞥窗)码、俗、赏皆可搭。

有明显的主语时则多用属格,例如:

Uel qia vl r l cvl rot fcbp Zbfkd qe bob, (肉告僧码搭)  
务码太太曾亚略漫。(

动名词的主语为普通名词时，在发音上分不出是单数属格还是复数属格，因而有避免用属格而改用通格的倾向，请看：

F b buniYfkba YZl r q e fp aYr de qboŋp (或 aYr de qboŋp 并破  
干穿务唱 aYr de +qboŋp (Zbfkd YZpbkq (赏务明了赏搭貌儿〔或  
貌儿料〕批坦搭君由。(

Gq bkaba fk qe b al`ql o Zbfkd pbkq d o, (结跟婉茅村请瞎  
巧来。(

主语为代名词时用属格的机会较多：

K v aYr de qboŋp r kabodl l h ql Yal ok qe b t Yiip t fqe nf q  
obp l c qe bfo l t k abpfdkfk d, y y El iapj fqe (俗搭貌儿料吹杀  
邪尚料欲华设计搭释纪)来于饰士比。(

Gf kpfpq l k vl r o Yii j bbqfk d j b qe bob, (细乏夕码料大家的  
村略漫来急俗。(

代名词除 vl r 及 e bo 以外，主格和宾格有不同的形式，因而有属格和通格之分，通常强调动名词的主语时用属格，强调动名词时用通格，例如：

Re bob t Yp kl qe fkd ql mōbsbkqj v dl fkd qe bob, (辆薪什  
凉勤援止俗念数搭。(破堂 e bo dl fkd 眼士肤认肤袜式细样。

Gal k&q ifhb e fj`l j fkd e bob pl pl l k, (俗并叹翰赏怪令  
村液漫来。(

在口头英语中，动名词前面的主语，多用通格；有时因句子的构造关系不便或不能用属格时，也要用通格。与人称代名词连用时亦复如此。

Ll l kb t l r ia e Ysb aobYj ba l c qe bob Zbfkd pr`e Y miY  
`b, (肉做林的辆薪卹村薪略样搭细个地方。(

Gobj bj Zbo bY`e l kb l c qe bj pYvfk d fq (俗记错赏料每个  
瞥的曾略样务。(

除开极少数的例外，无生物名词和抽象名词一般是不用属格的：

ǝk ɕə b bsbkql c Y Zobbwb pmoʃkdfkd r m, , , (设她难了霜耳x x (

但有时却要说：

Mk ɕə b rboj fppfl kʌp Zbfkd doYkɕə pe b ibɕ ɕə b ol l j ,  
(尖允在之鬼尚舰走池房恢砰了。(

文法家如Ar oj b、Mkfl kp、I biikbo等人都说通格的用法是很古老的，Hbpnbopbk则说/5. . 年的时候用得最多。《牛津大辞典》举莎翁为例，说时至/4. . 年，属格的记号就已经开始被放弃了。

通格和属格表现法虽有不同，意义却没有两样，为求简便起见，自然大家有采用通格的倾向，何况它还是有英语独自的潜在力(Nl ɕə kɕYifɕ)呢。

现就十八世纪的英国小说家F bkov Dfbiafk d (/5. 5y /532) 的三部作品 (*H pbme Ekaobt p*, /520; *H kYɕYk Ufia*, /521; *E o bifY*, /530)，来检讨一下这种通格的用法，便发现下列四种造型 (Qɕpr`ɕ ob)：

(/) L l r k - Nobml pɕql k - Al j j l k`Ypb - +fk d

(0) TboZ - Nobml pɕql k - Al j j l k`Ypb - +fk d

(1) ? aɕ`ɕsb - Nobml pɕql k - Al j j l k`Ypb - +fk d

(2) Nobml pɕql k - Al j j l k`Ypb - +fk d

第一型的用例有：zK o, F l l ɕə ZbdYk ɕl ɕbif ɕɕYɕə e bo r ml k ɕə b kbt p l c ɕə b t l r kaba dbkɕbj Yk Zbfkd fk Y ɕYfo ifhbife l l a l c ob`l sbov,à。 (*E o bifY*) 句中的dbkɕbj Yk是ifsfkd Zbfkd (有生物) 的`l j j l k`Ypb (通格)。在*E o bifY*一书中有七个用通格的例，五个是ifsfkd Zbfkd，两个是ifɕibpp ɕə fkd (无生物)。在*H kYɕ eYk Ufia*一书有两个用通格的例，都是无生物。

第二型的用例有：zF b fkpfɕə l k ɕə b pbosYkɕ f kɕl ar`fk d e f j afob`ɕiv f kɕ ɕə b ol l j ,à。 (*H pbme Ekaobt p*) 句中pbosYkɕ

p为有生物通格的例。在这本书中另有一个无生物的例，在*H kYq̃Yk U fia*中有一个无生物的例，在*Eo bifY*中也有一个无生物的例。

第三型的用例有：zq̃b iYt vbo, t el t Yp YωYfa l cplj bj fp̃ e fbc e Ymbkfkd q̃ e fj pbicà。 (*H pbme Ekaobt p*) 三书中只有这样一个无生物的例。

第四型的用例有：zFbj Yo`eba l rql cq̃b ol l j t fq̃l r qj Y hfkd Ykv bu`r pb, lo Ykv l kb aYofkd q̃ j Yhb q̃b ibYpq Bbj Yk q̃à。 (*H kYq̃Yk U fia*) 句中的Ykv l kb是有生物的例，用介词t fq̃l r q̃的有四例，有生物与无生物都有。用介词Zv的也有二例。在*Dfbiaf kd*这三部作品中，以有生物表通格的有/2例，以无生物表通格的有/. 例。

包含通格的四种造型中所用的字眼，类别如下：

第一型中的名词为cY`q̃ e l mb、fabY等约四十字，介词则用l c̃的有压倒的多数。

第二型中的动词为e bYo、q̃bii、q̃fkh等约三十字，介词则因动词不同而有变化，不过l c̃仍然是用得很多的。

第三型中的形容词为YωYfa、abpfol r p、t l oq̃v等约十字，介词仍以l c̃为多。

第四型中的介词为Zv、t fq̃l r q̃ Yωq̃o等约十字，也有用介词片语的。

不过采用属格的动名词主语，当然更多，在这三本书中几乎多了一倍，即使用通格的例共为二十四句，而使用属格的例则达四十七句之多。

## 47. Object + Infinitive

DoYkh AoYsbk搭样章中) 薪zJl l h Yq qe Yq el opb dl ,à细句)  
俗并刻眼什凉并务qe Yq el opb dl bp) 请舰液婴el opb dl 搭邪动务明  
细下。

③刻创】这是所谓?`r pYqfsb t fœ Ckdfqfsb (带有不定词的宾格), 在普通的文法书上, 叫作MZg`q- Ckdfqfsb, 如:

F b e bYoa qe b Zbii ofkd, (赏驶村了铃听。 (

Pbrl oqab`iYoba efj q Zb abYa, (鞭告务赏闲死。 (

等句中的Zbii和efj 是?`r pYqfsb或MZg`q, 而ofkd和q Zb便是Ckdfqfsb。

凡MZg`q和Ckdfqfsb来到一块儿的时候, 不外乎下列两种情形:  
一是那不定词成为他动词的宾语 (也有人将不定词解释为补语的);  
一是那不定词出现于自动词之后, 但其前要加d o及宾语在自动词与d o之间, 可用名词, 也可用形容词, 例如:

Gf p qf b d o r p q Zb r mYka al fkd, (俗料难来外凡搭轻  
即村了。 (

Gf p dl l a d o Y j Yk kl q q q r`e Y t l j Yk, (细个且瞥  
并入貌瞥总婉好搭。 (

在自动词与d o之间, 也可以不用任何其他的字, 例如:

Gt Yf qpa d o e bo q obq ok, (俗打店尚合来。 (

Ql j b j bk j r pqafb d o l qe bop q ifsb, (眼了鞭瞥巧敌)  
薪遇瞥必错死砰。 (

在这个d o后面的宾语，实际就是那不定词的意味上的主语（Qbk pb Qr Zgb`q），和前面的动词并没有多大关系。如上面说的zGt Yfqba d o e bo q obqr ok,à, 要回来的人是z她à, 而不是z我à。

由本文头上所举的两个例句看来，在宾语后用的不定词，有带q的，有不带q的两种情形。这到底是怎样的呢？是不是他动词和自动词的不同，而使后接的不定词有异呢？这应由动词的性质，而不由自动或他动来决定，如用在知觉动词，即pbb、e bYo、dbbi、ifpqb k q、il l h Yq、kl q`b、l Zpbosb、t Yq`e等动词的后面，通常是要用原形不定词（FYob Gdfkfqs b）的。此外，就是用在使役动词的后面，如zGi eYsb pl j bl kb Zofkd fq q j b,（我要叫人去拿给我。）à。当然还有一些惯用的动词，如j Yhb、ibq Zfa、e bim等，后面也是要接原形不定词的。

普通自动词的后面，多接有q的不定词。例如：

K o, Fl t ibp pYq dofj iv t Yfqkd d o e fj q d k fpe, y y H, N, K Yonr Yka（薄逃巧冷酷酸盘地越字打赏做暑。（

GpYqr mcq bob fk q b YnYoqj bkq t Yfqkd d o q b dfoip q`l j b ZY`h, y y C, Q, EYoakbo（俗亚略房恢漫越字并辱）打店略遇貌工子合来。（

Re bob fp kl Zl l h d o e fj q obYa,（液漫辆薪赏方搭扰。（

但也有用原形不定词的，在十九世纪中叶，英国常有这种说法，近代美国作家也习用不鲜。例如：

Re fp`boqYfkiv fp pl j b oYfk, Jfpqb k q fq ml r ka YdYfkpc q b ol l cl c q b`Yo, y y C, Q, EYoakbo（液脾婉亚下兄。码驶吹亚失楚荡千搭统响。（

Gifpqb kba q e fj`l j b fk, y y Al okbii Ulliof e（俗驶村赏家来搭。（

GpYt（或il l hba Yq (efj or k,（俗看了赏跑搭。（刺夕务zGpYt fq q Zb Y j fpqYhb,（俗看村液婉细个幢所。（à

# 48. be interested in doing和be interested to do

俗料务对做什凉泗粉缘趣庄样婉Zb fkqbobpqa fk al fkd plj bq e fkd) 破: zGYj fkqbobpqa fk `l iib` qfkd pqYj mp, (俗对集昨粉缘趣。(à. 亚Zb fkqbobpqa 鬼士草婉急记导fk) 哑急其导或凡其导) 刺却皮看村薪瞥急邪并乏导) 务唱Zb fkqbobpqa q al) 并知婉更懂所?

③刻创】在普通的字典上fkqbobpq一字作名词或动词用, 甚至变成过去分词作形容词用, 后面都是加介词的fk再接名词或动名词的, 例如:

F b eYp kl fkqbobpq fk pr `e j Yqbp, (赏对液婴泗辆薪缘趣。(

Gal kl q fkqbobpq j vpbic fk ml ifq p, (俗对政引并粉缘趣。(

F b fp fkqbobpqa fk pqr avfkd ?j bof Yk Ckdifpe, (赏对污究片根庄语怪粉缘趣。(

但在Zb fkqbobpqa fk al fkd这种常见的用法之外, 还有Zb fkqbobpqa q al 这种常见的用法, 二者之间, 存在微妙的差别。前者表现在性质上或习惯上常常具有这种兴趣的抽象的含义, 而后者则是说到从此即将付诸实行的具体的行为。例如:

(Y (F b fp fkqbobpqa fk Zr v fkd qe fp doYj l mēl kb ob`l oa,

(Z (F b fp fkqbobpqa q Zr v qe fp doYj l mēl kb ob`l oa,

(Y) 句的意思是z他常对购买这张唱片感兴趣à, 比方说贝多芬的《月光曲》吧, 不问是谁弹的, 只要他遇到是《月光曲》的唱片他就

要买，他都有购买的兴趣。这对于他成为一种习惯的行为了。至于（Z）句的意思则为z他对购买这张唱片很感兴趣à，或是z他很想要买这张唱片à（：F b fp fk`ifkba d Zr v qefp doYj l nēl kb ob`l o a,）。这种接不定词的用法，虽很少见，但并不新奇，远在十八世纪英国历史家Cat Yoa EfZZl k（/515y /572）所著《罗马帝国衰亡史》（*Reb Bbeifkb Yka DYii l c qeb Pl o Yk Co mfob*）中就写得有：

Re b bj nbol o efj pbic t Yp fkqbobpqa kl q d abçY`b qeb pmibkal r ol cefp l t k`fqfbp,（简渡卑瞥的怪冬心并夕见坏了赏欲华搭略遇幢去搭愚开。（

晚年定居在美国的英国小说家HYj bp Ffiq k（/7..y /732），在*Rfo b Yka Rfo b EdYfk*一书中也写得有：

?kabopl k pYfa e b qel r de qpe b hkbt fqt Yp pl j bqefkd t b& Zb fkqbobpqa d e bYo,（哀措祈务）赏显眼尚知存液婉细活俗料高缘驶村搭洒。（

在几年前刚逝世的英国小说家Csbivk UYr de（/7. 1y /744）在*Bbeifkb Yka DYii*一书中也有这样的句子：

Gpe Yii Zb fkqbobpqa d e bYo t e Yqvl r o bunbofbk`b e Yp Zbbk l sbo qeb j Yqpo,（俗怪邮驶村呼兴液活洒盘搭码搭尖务。（

美国的大作家Re bl al ob Bobfpbo（/65/y /723）在*Eidboqfkb*一作中也有：

Fr qe Ysfkd pbbk e bo YdYfk Gt Yp fkqbobpqa d ibYok l c qeb pqYq Yqpo qebpb pbsboYi vbYop,（刺亚哑举村尚显鬼）俗才错怪邮知存液遇吗来搭盘况。（

还有在Jl cfkd写的*Reb Tl vYdb l c Bl eq o Bl ifqib*一书上也发现有下列的文句：

Gt Yp qbj bkal r piv fkqbobpqa d pbb el t Ype fm`l ria Zb pqbboba fkd Y nl oq Yqkfde q t fqe kl qefkd Zr qifde qtel r p



bp Yka Y`lj mYpp d dr fab vl r , (俗断草邮夕看看细蚀担怎样  
勤亚基系译筛达线搭户火罗门针搭议球顶境穷家入攻广搭。 (

## 49. go on doing和go on to do

庄样务dl 1k qYihfkd) 心务dl 1k q qYih) 的约z尽续务à刻)  
并知夫夜薪获朵鞭?

③刻创】这两种说法含义上是有分别的，dl 1k al fkd意为z继续à，而dl 1k q al则意为z接着à，例如：

AYpqfkd Y diYk`b Yqj b) eb t bkql k obYafkd qe b ibqpb  
o, (抬休看了俗细五) 赏心尽续看员砰了。(

?αqbo dfkfpe fkd obYafkd qe b ibqpb) eb t bkql k q t ofqb  
Y obniv, (看暑了员) 赏急字舰来腿细饿合员。(

第一句中的obYafkd不能改为q obYa，第二句中的q t ofqb也不能改为t ofqfkd，改换便是错误。因为第一句是继续原来的动作，第二句是改变上一个动作。第一句说他本来在看信，中途望我一眼，仍然继续看他的信；第二句说他本来在看信，一直把信看完了，又开始另一个动作，来写回信。

现在我们先不妨来看看它的文法构造，dl 1k al fkd和dl 1k q al二者中的1k都是副词，发音上应加重来说。有人以为是介词，因而把它后面的al fkd看作动名词，这是错误的，应该把al fkd看作现在分词才对，正好像Fb`Yj b or kkfkd中的or kkfkd是现在分词一样，因为`Yj b是主要的动作，即主动词，or kkfkd是附属的动作，是现在分词，不妨视为补语。Fb`Yj b or kkfkd (他跑着来了)，是一种向空间展开的动作，Fb t bkql k obYafkd (他继续读了) 是一种向时间展开的动作，具体地说，即z经过长久的时间一直在读着à这样一个动作，再加以分析时，又可分为dl 1k (继续) 及obYafkd (读着) 两个动作，前者为主，后者为副，所以obYafkd是和or kkfkd一样的现在分词，obYafkd表示状态，or kkfkd表示方向。

至于dl 1k q al中的不定词，我们也不妨把它当作补语看待。dl 1k一个动作与al fkd一个动作，紧连在一块儿，融合为一，几乎是同时发生，但dl 1k的动作与q al的动作，就没有那样紧密相连了。它是一个接一个而发生的动作，现在分词表示同时的动作，不定词表示后继的动作，二者之间的差异十分微妙，有人把不定词称为未来分词（*α q ob nYocf fmb*），与现在分词（*mōpbkq nYocf fmb*）的分别，一为现在，一为未来，时间上是有些不同的。dl 1k al fkd的al fkd是表同时动作的补语，而dl 1k q al的q al是表后继动作的补语，这样的想法是颇为中肯的。

现在让我们来看作家们笔下的用例：

Re b ZYozbo iYqē boba j v cY b Yka *pe Ysba*, F b t Yp sbov pl ibj k Yka obcoYfkba col j qYihfkd, zU e Yocf qē b j Yqpo? B l k q vl r hkl t Ykv kbt p? à GYphba, zU e Yq kbt p? àz? kv k bt p, U e Yocf e Ymbkba fk qē b q t k? àz q fp qj b l ct Yo) àe b pYfa) zRe b bkbj v q bYop Yob bsbovt e bob, à Gil l hba r mYc efj , zNibYpb elia vl r o cY bp pcfii) àe b pYfa Yka *t bkql k p eYsfkd*, y y Fbj fkd t Yv: *E DYobt biu q Eoo p* (君东师把俗每千市立了对孱) 来眼俗懈技子。赏板字另林) 笨口并东细言。俗问存: z怎凉旧? 码辆薪驶举什凉新闻怕? àz什凉新闻? àz素获新闻。幢漫东巧了什凉泗怕? à赏务) z液婉养轻纹。村尺的婉带瞥搭定掉。à俗抬休烟字赏。z请并夕凡纹) à赏务字尽续眼俗王另。(

Gpifmmba Yil kd qē b nYppYdb q e fp ol l j , F b t Yp ivfkd f k Zba obYafkd Yka pj l hfkd Y nfnb, F b mr q al t k e fp nfnb Yka e fp Zl l h Yka j l sba l sbo q j Yhb ol l j d o j b , , , U e bk Gibqē efj Ge Ya qē b dbifkd qē Yq Gpel r ia Zb doYqbr i q efj , , , ? p G il pba qē b al l o GpYt efj qYhb r me fp Zl l h Y ka dl l k obYafkd col j t e bob e b e Ya ibq l α, y y K Yr de Y j : *Reb PYub q Cadb* (俗毋字走伦困村赏搭房恢漫砰了。赏正神亚但千看扰) 世轻乘字照盗。赏把赏搭照盗火扰放下) 并四池地方来海俗越。x x 冬俗军杰赏搭轻即) 俗丽错俗状该粉拖赏尝婉。x x 俗呼千房了池来搭轻即) 俗看举赏心拿难赏搭扰) 亚倌逃始下搭地方尽续方下砰。(

F b ZbdYk qđ qđii ebo elt JYoo v eYa `r oba efj l c q e b e  
bYaY` e bp q e Yq e Ya fk` YmY` f q Y q p a efj Yka t bkql k qđ pYv  
elt j r` e e b e Ya abmbkaba l k efj Yka elt j r` e e b l t  
ba efj , y y K Yr de Yj : Mm, `fq (赏杰秋告僧尚九利怎样瞎好  
了赏略请赏什凉洒的并勤做搭休是病) 急宇心务赏婉获打搭至就  
九利) 获打搭粉拖赏纹。 (

U b q e l r de q f q l sbo) Zr q f q pbbj ba qđ l e Yw d o Yodr j  
bkq) Yka Gt bkql k qđ Yph f c q e bob e Ya Zbbk Ykv afp` l sbofb  
p Yq F Yphr i, y y F fi qđ k: J l p q F l q f u b k (俗料把略活洒糖糖地  
邮过了) 刺略好通太齐冀顶酸动失池辩鸟) 兴婉急宇俗问婉并婉  
亚巴若咐订薪什凉东提。 (

U e b k Gt Yp pYvfkd dl l a+Zvb qđ K op, F oYaibv p e b qđ ia  
j b q e Yq k bu q a Yv qđ YZbi t Yp e Ysfkd Y d o t l c e b o v l r k d o f b  
kap f k qđ afkkbo Yka q e b v t bob d l f k d l k qđ a Y k e b Y q p o t Y o  
ap, y y K Yr de Yj : Mm, `fq (冬俗火差九措马法瞥存鞭搭轻  
即) 尚告僧俗多夫十致起豹订请了花个尚搭吗怕朋友来车晚读)  
急宇憾薪实衣晚健。 (

## 50. like doing和like to do

庄样务zGifhb miYvfk d ZYaj fkd k, (俗叹翰吹雄毛鼠 (à) 心可务zGifhb q miYv ZYaj fkd k,à。并知液课婴务动) 村顿薪酸并世?

③刻创】英文对两个动作连在一块儿时的说法，除用连词Yka外，还可把后一动作改用不定词或动名词。普通的动词对后面接用什么词，须视每个动词而定，有的只能接不定词，有的只能接动名词，有的二者皆可，唯含义可能不同。如ifhb这个动词，便是既可接不定词，又可接动名词的。一般人以为：

(Y (Gifhb miYvfk d ZYaj fkd k,

(Z (Gifhb q miYv ZYaj fkd k,

两句英文，在意义上是没有分别的。其实在本质上是有所谓kr Yk`b的细微差异的。用动名词的(Y)句，意为始终爱打羽毛球，在这场合，打羽毛球的那个动作，并不是说就要去打的那种具体的行动，而只是抽象地说及罢了。至于用不定词的(Z)句，意为现在想要去打羽毛球，在这场合打羽毛球的那个动作，即令不是说已经实现了的动作，也是说的一种具体的行动。

英文的ifhb一字，原有两个意思，一为喜欢或爱好(Zb d ka l c; eYsb Y qYp d o)，一为想要，愿意(r pba q fka f Yq Y t fpe)。上例的(Y)句就是第一个意思，而(Z)句则为第二个意思。所以(Y)例可译为z我爱打羽毛球à，(Z)例则应译为z我想打羽毛球à。现分别举例如下：

(Y) zifhb - 动名词à的用法：

Q 1 r q d o Y t Yih, Gifhb t Yihfk d Yq kfde q L l Z l av p d  
np vl r Yka pYvp pfiiv q fkd p) Yka Gifhb q b p qYop) Yka q f

kdp pj bii Zbqpo Yka bsbovaYv qfkd il l h Yii j vppofl r p,  
y y Ae ofpqb: *Reb Kl sfkd Dfkdb* (俗提亚正池来七步。俗叹  
翰亚系恢七步。辆薪瞥夕罗游码) 火码务遇租但搭寒) 憾薪俗叹  
翰略遇圆圆) 细切的东池田胜) 平草搭祷她的才错敲坡难来。 (

Gal kq ifhb Zbfkd Ysl faba, y y *QZfa*, (俗并叹翰悲瞥华  
笔。 (

Qeb ifhba Zbfkd fk NYofp, y y K Yr de Yj : *Reb PYul ofp*  
*Cadb* (尚叹翰店亚巴满。 (

(Z) zifhb - 不定词à的用法:

Re Yofp t ev qf bv ifhb q t l oh fk NYofp, y y K Yr de Yj :  
*Ae ofpqp Yp Fl ifa Yv* (略舰婉赏料眼什凉邮村巴满砰浮约搭倌  
想。 (

Gifhb vl r , Gifhb q Zb t fqe vl r , y y *QZfa*, (俗叹翰码。  
俗邮夕跟码亚细经儿。 (

GZYaiv t Ykqpa Y`fdYobqp) Zr qafa kl qifhb q ifde q l k  
b, y y K Yr de Yj : *Reb PYul ofp Cadb* (俗曾瑚需夕吸细支田  
照) 刺心并邮砰点私上。 (

QYkvl kb ifhbp q pYv GZbe Ysba ifhb Y`Ya) qf bv ob t bi  
`l j b q pYv pl ! y y Ae ofpqb: *BbYqe l k qeb Lfib* (破跟薪瞥  
邮务俗搭外眼卑变) 舰四赏砰务暗! (

F b kbsbo qpl r Ziba q Ykpt bo K op, Qfj mpl k, Re bv r ka  
bopq l a l kb Yk+l qe bo, Qeb ifhba q qYih Yka e b ifhba q Zb  
pfibkq, y y Eobbkb: *Qp YDYqibqbia* (赏举错理烦砰合创原普  
巧法瞥。赏料备到的怪了刻。尚邮夕务寒) 顶赏披译邮长露。 (

F b afa kl qifhb q Zb`l kkb`qpa t fqe qeb t l j Yk t e l  
eYa mYfkqpa qel pb mf qf obp, y y *QZfa*, (赏并并邮夕火纪略遇  
纪搭略个貌瞥急侈。 (

同在Eobbkb的这本书上, 同一个女人说的话, 时而用zifhb - 动名  
词à, 时而用zifhb - 不定词à, 值得我们细心阅读, 加以体味。

(Y (Gal kǎ ifhb pfdkfk d ǝ fkd p, (俗并叹翰惧婉什倒样活。(

(Z (Gal kǎ ifhb d pfdk Ykvǝ fkd t fǝ l r q Yphfk d ? ǝ ǝ r ǝ ǝ Zol ǝ bo, (俗并邨辆薪火竖法搭月耽体量舰什倒素获样活。(

上面(Y)例是说不喜欢签订文件那回事,这是一向以来的心情,至于(Z)例则是说不想去签订什么文件,是现在的心情。

又zifhb - 不定词ǎ的用法,前面常冠有pel ria、t l ria的字样,说成pel ria ifhb d al 或t l ria ifhb d al ,但zifhb - 动名词ǎ的用法,则决不加pel ria、t l ria一类的字样。理由看意义就可以明白,无需详说。

# 51. the shoes to mend和the shoes to be mended

亚下另课句庄样中) 细眼邪忧凡搭并乏导) 细眼邪悲凡搭并乏导) 并知薪获并世?

(Y (F b eYa kl Zl l qp Yka pel bp q o bka,

(Z (F fp e bYoqt Yp cfiiba t fce g v) t e bkbsbo e b il l hba Y qce b Zl l qp Yka pel bp q db o bkaba,

③刻创】上举两句中的不定词是有分别的。(Z)句中的q Zb j bkaba是不能换用q j bka 的,而(Y)句中的q j bka也不能改为q l Zb j bkaba。两个不定词,都是用作形容词,以修饰它前面的名词的。这可分主动与被动,一则是就人的立场来说,一则是就物的立场来说:一则说人去修理皮鞋,一则说皮鞋被人修理。

先就(Y)例来研究:句中用的动词eYsb,是关键所在。另举一例说,zGeYsb kl qe fkd q bYq (我没有东西吃。)à。执行q bYq这个动作的是zGa,依照文法上的解释,q bYq的意味上的主语是zGa。这个叫作zGa的人物,把q bYq这个动作,加诸zkl qe fkdà之上(kl qe fkd可看作q bYq的宾语),主动在人,而不在物。再举一例:zF b eYp Y il ql c Zl l hp q obYa, (他有许多书要读。)à。Fb为主动者;q obYa为主动者的动作;Zl l hp为受动者。虽说受动对象的书是被读,但以主动者那人的立场来说,是主动的读,而不是被读,要以书的立场来说,才可说是被读。现句子的主语是人,而不是书,所以应以人为主,把动作说成主动的q obYa,而不可说成被动的q Zb obYa。

再看(Z)例:句中用的动词是il l h Yq。主动者是ze bà这个人。他所il l h Yq的对象是qe b Zl l qp Yka pel bp。这个动作是非常重要的,上述句中动词eYsb的动作,其重要性远不及它,所以eYsb在句中读轻音,不定词要加重来说;il l h Yq便要重读,后面的不定词说得很轻。第一,因为q Zb j bkaba 这个动作的主动者并不是ze bà这个人,ze bà的动作只到il l h Yq为止,至于修理皮鞋的当另有人在,必然



是ze bà以外的什么人。那人是谁，不在讨论范围之内。从皮鞋的立场来说，它是在接受那种动作的状态之中，换句话说，皮鞋是在将被修理的状态之中，所以说q̣ Zb j bkaba，不能说q̣ j bka，改用关系代名词时便可改写为：zF b il l hba Yq̣ q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp t ef e t bob q̣ Zb j bkaba，（他看着那些有待修理的皮靴和皮鞋。）à。在 t ef e 以下的形容子句，是说明皮鞋的状态的，和句中的主语ze bà 无关，和主要动词的il l h Yq̣也无直接关系，因看的对象是Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp，看的人是主，看的東西是宾，至于宾的状态如何，自然无关重要了。附带地说一句，（Y）句是不可以把形容不定词改为关系代名词子句的，即不可说zF b e Ya kl Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp t ef e t bob q̣ j bka,à。

一般的动词都是像il l h Yq̣一样重要的，很少像e Ysb那样轻微的，我们现在不妨换用其他动词以取代il l h Yq̣：

F b Zor pe ba q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkaba,  
 F b t Ype ba q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkaba,  
 F b e fa q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkaba,  
 F b q̣ l l h r m q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkaba,  
 F b q̣ obt Yt Yv q̣ b Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkaba,

还有许许多多其他的动词可以换用的，都同样地是以ze bà这个人为主，而q̣ Zb j bkaba仍是说皮鞋的状态，而不是ze bà的动作。

英文中有用zq̣ bob fp̄à开头的一种特殊的表现法，后面可接用主动的不定词，也可接用被动的不定词，即是我们可以说：

(Y (Re bob t bob pbsboYi Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ j bka,  
 (Z (Re bob t bob pbsboYi Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp q̣ Zb j bkab  
 a,

在（Y）例用主动不定词的，虽没有明说出来，实则有那么一个修理皮鞋的人呼之欲出，所以不妨增二字而说成zRe bob t bob pbsboYi Zl l q̣ Yka pel bp d o ef j (l o r p) q̣ j bka,à，是说ef j 或是说r p，可从前后文（`l k q̣ buq）或情形（pf q̣ Y q̣ fl k）看得出来。至于

(Z) 例用被动不定词。便不能在其前加用 **d o e f j** 一类的字样，那句的意思单是说有几双皮鞋要修理，至于是谁来修理却不在话下。

(Y) 的重点在人，(Z) 的重点在物。

Re bob t Yp kl ifde q d Zb pbbk Ykvt e bob) Yka l kiv Y c  
bt afj p q Yop t bob pe f k f k d l s b o e b Ya, y y A Y i a t b i i (素获地  
方的看并举什凉户) 译薪花点暗次搭圆户亚休千闪惜。(

Re b F f p` r f q t Y i h b a d q e b t f k a l t ) Yka i l l h b a l r q R  
e bob t Yp kl e f k d d p b b) Zr q e b o b j Y f k b a e b o b) i l l h f k  
d) d o p l j b` l k p f a b o Y Z i b q f j b, y y U l a b e l r p b: *D f d K l k b*  
*v* (z变干à〔瞥搭译其〕走村冲念) 同外烟砰。狭皮什凉袭看并  
举) 刺赏苹店亚略儿) 烟了相冬长搭轻恢。(

在街头可以看到 (Y) **l œ f b p d i b q** 和 (Z) **l œ f b p d Z b i b q** 的招贴。(Y) 是就事务所主人的立场说的，(Z) 是就事务所本身的立场说的。前者多半是自己贴出的广告，后者多半是由广告公司代为贴出的。

## VII 连 词

### 52. though和but不能同用

z赏狭皮薪年) 刺婉并并大方。à乡唱庄样搭zRel r de e b fp of e) Zr q e b fp kl q dbk bol r p, à) 眼获并对? 请舰到打棵导搭邪动务明细下。

③刻创】这句英文是完全照中国语句直译出来，所以不对。在z虽然à后面接上z但是à的这种现代白话文的表现法，是不可以直译为英文的，因为这句白话文的说法本身是重复了的，单说z虽然à已经够了，z虽然他有钱，他还是不大方à，有时也可把它分开来用，如z他虽有钱，然不大方à。我们如采用洗练的白话文作为蓝本来翻译的话，也就不会发生上述的这种误译了。英文的Yiçl r de 或çl r de，正是中文z虽然à的意思，例如：

狭皮冬轻十正下兄) 赏憾婉村略漫砰了。

Rel r de fqt Yp oYfkfk d) e b t bkqç bob,

赏好了细点) 狭眼憾思谁秀。

F b fp Zbççpo) çl r de kl q vbq`r oba,

如果要把z虽然à分开来用，英文也有办法表达的，如：

Rel r de e b fp vl r kd) vbq e b fp mör abkq

赏狭吗怕) 皮怪桥乔。

不过这个**vbq**是可有可无的。在**qel r de**一字中既已包含有**z**虽然**à**的意思，当然用不着再加用别的转折词，**qel r de**和**Zr q**是势不两立的，用了**qel r de**就不能再用**Zr q**，用了**Zr q**，就不能再用**qel r de**，因此下面三句意思是相仿佛的：

Re l r de e b ifsbp Yil kb) e b fp e Ymmv,

Re l r de e b ifsbp Yil kb) vbq e b fp e Ymmv,

F b ifsbp Yil kb) Zr q e b fp e Ymmv,

第一、二句用了不对等连词的**qel r de**，所以是复句（Al j mibu Qbkqbk` b）；第三句用了对等连词的**Zr q**，所以是合句（Al j ml r ka Qbkqbk` b）。合句是用连词将两个主要子句连结起来，而复句则是用连词引出附属子句，另外则为主句，在复句的主句前面原是用不着要有类似连词的副词存在，不过偶然还是有人要用，如**vbq**、**pqfi**、**kbsb oq bi bpp**等字，要用是可以用的，为简洁计仍以不用为宜。

凡用**qel r de**引出的附属子句，多含有让步之意，所以又称让步的子句（Al k` bppfsb AiYr pb）。

这种让步的子句通常是用平叙语气，如：

Re l r de e b fp ml l o) e b fp e Ymmv,（赏狭熟皮怪令乐。（

Re l r de e b Yml il dfwb) Gt fii kbsbo d odfsb e fj ,（即末赏存始）俗袭教并健倌迷赏。（

由上例可以看出，**qel r de**除作**z**虽然**à**解外，还可以作**z**即令**à**解。再举一例：

Re l r de GcYfi) Gpe Yii qpv YdYfk,（即末俗涂八）俗祸哑试细下。（

用在此意下的**qel r de**又可译作**z**纵然**à**，如：

Re l r de Gt bob pqYosfkd) Gt l r ia kl qYph Y cYsl r ol ce fj ,（俗预皮盯死）袭并砵同赏属由。（

### 53. until (till) 的用法

庄样务zGpe Ykɛ al ɤe Yq r kqi (或 qii (vl r `lj b ZY`h, à) 句中搭棵导r kqi或qii) 字典千乡约z意村à) 液句可乡眼z意村码合来) 俗并健做略泗à) 乡语并佳) 刺屈可刻) 因兴zW r kbba kl qt Y fq qii G`lj b ZY`h, (意村俗合来) 码并必打店。(à舰怪多刻了。请舰r kqi或qii源屈冬搭乡动加显务明。

③刻创】作连词用的r kqi或qii, 照字面的意思有三种译法:

(一) 为z直到x x 时候à, 例如:

Jbɔp t Yfq r kqi ɤe b oYfk pɔ mp, (打村兄始了哑务暗。(

(二) 为z直到x x 地方(程度) à, 例如:

El pɔpYfde q l k r kqi vl r `lj b q Y iYodb oba Zr fiafkd, (细意数念走) 意村码走村细座大急肃子眼止。(

F b t l ohba r kqi e b t Yp q l qfoba q al j l ob, (赏细意浮约村累错并勤哑做搭朝访眼止。(

(三) 为主句中有否定的, 可译为z在x x 以前à, 例如:

Re Yq ZYZv afa kl q pɔ m`ovfkd r kqi e b t Yp dba, (略婴儿亚车磅念辆薪始止哭施。(

问题中的第一例句, 正是第三种用法, r kqi: Zbd ob, 不过不必这样照字面来翻译, 最好把否定去掉不译, 改译为肯定句, 较接近中国的语法, 例如:

F b afa kl q`lj b ZY`h r kqi Yɔpɔ pr kpbq (赏意村平黎显鬼方秋合来。(

L1 j Yk obYiiv Zb`l j bp Y d l i r kqfi e b pql np Yphfk d nr  
bpqfl kp, (瞥夕始止东问舰健才错租笨搭。 (

Nbl mib al kl q hkl t qe b Zibppfk d l c e bYiqe qfii qe bv il p  
b fq (瞥料夕打村涂砰伙练尝知存伙练搭可贵。 (

F b afa kl q Yoofs b fk GkafY qfii j l ob qe Yk Y vbYo Yqpo e  
b eYa ibcq CkdiYka, (赏军杰庄根细吗多尝村第萧访。 (

Gq t Yp kl q r kqfi qe b kbuq aYv qe Yq GibYokba qe b qpr qe ,  
(村多夫十俗尝明懊洒盘搭医相。 (

U b pe Yii kbsbo mol prbo qfii qe b pvpqbj fp t e l iiv `e Ykd  
ba, (夕打村液制访暑全寡才过鬼俗料尝健东第搭。 (

有时只包含否定的意思，并无否定的字眼，也可以照这样来翻译，例如：

Gobj Yfkba fk fdkl oYk` b l c fq r kqfi iYqiv, (俗意村源贾  
尝知存液洒。 (

在r kqfi或qfii的前面加上逗号的时候，就可以译作z终至于az毕竟à，例如：

Ghbm qYkafkd r kabo Y Zr okfk d pr k d o Y il kd t e fi  
b) qfii GeYa pr k+pqpl hb, (细意样亚称漂搭太阳顿下晒错怪  
见) 终因兴中问。 (

Re bv t bob Zr pfiv bkdYdba fk dYqe bofk d `e bpqkr qp) qfii  
qe b iYpq oYvp l c qe b pbqfk d pr k t bob cYafkd Yt Yv, (赏料忙  
字的洒兴偿撷忙子) 终因村了平黎她套搭好昏轻即。 (

问题中的第二例句所用的kl q，又与上举各例中的否定有所不同，因为在这场合的kl q是用以否决Qr Zl oafkYq AiYr pb的qfii G`l j b ZY`h的整句的，所以全句应译为：z你用不着要等我回来。à至于kl q，，，qfii的意思属于前者（即否定主句的动词），或是属于后者（即否定整个的附句），就要由Al kqbuq来决定，没有原则可循。

qfii和r kqfi二字，意义和用法都没有什么分别，如英国近代作家A  
e Yoibp Bf`hbkp、Al kYk Bl vib等爱用r kqfi，而Rel j Yp FYoav则

爱用**qfi**，至于一般人因**qfi**短简所以通常说话用得较多，**r kqi**则多少带点强调，故常用于句首，如：

S**kqi** eb q<sub>1</sub>ia j b) GeYa kl fabY l c fq (亚赏告知俗显念) 俗细酸伤知。(

美国人似乎有喜欢用**r kqi**的倾向。此字作介词用时，译法有时也是一样的。

## 54. while连结的复句有两种译法

薪棵导t e fib父唱搭句子) 讲务薪课婴乡动) 细眼也庄样搭勿危福乡) 细眼单顶乡动) 即逃乡鬼另搭子句) 哑乡念另搭子句。并知液务动对并对? 请将堪务明。

③刻创】如果把连词t e fib用在两个子句的中间, 这种说法是正确的。在t e fib前没有逗号 (Al j j Y) 时, 应从后面译过来; 在t e fib前有逗号时, 则依原文顺序译下去。这两种用法的意思是不同的:

⎧ ) t e fib: 冬x x 搭轻即 (ar ofkd qe b qj b qe Yq) Yp il kd Yp (

⎧ U e fib: 狭皮 (Yiqe l r de ) 顶 (t e bob Yp (

在t e fib前没有逗号的时候, 它是从属连词, 所以要从后面倒译过来; 至于在t e fib前有了逗号时, 它就是等位连词, 所以要依原文的顺序来翻译。请看下例。

K Yhb e Yv t e fib qe b pr k pe fkb p, (肠字太阳晒才。- 并夕涂而角健。 (

Hl e k p Ysbp e fp j l kbv) t e fib Ebl odb pnbkap Yii e b db q, (学共戴威) 顶乔引眼邪户。 (

如果t e fib所引导的子句的主语, 和主要子句的主语相同时, 便可把t e fib的主语连同Zb动词一起略去, 如:

U e fib (Gt Yp (ob Yafkd Gbii Ypibbm, (俗正亚方扰搭轻即舰辱字了。 (

F b obq Yfkba qe b `l kp` fl r pkbpp l cfqt e fib (e b t Yp (Yp ibbm, (赏舰亚辱字了搭轻即) 袭憾婉必持知丽搭。 (



U b Yob pYdb t e fib (t b Yob (fk e fp `Yob, (亚赏搭也干之下) 俗料婉哀全搭。 (

F b e r o q e f j p b i c t e fib (e b t Yp (mYvfk d d l qZYii, (赏亚师足鼠轻委了题。 (

U e fib (e b t Yp (d f d e q f k d f k T f b q k Y j ) e b t Yp q Y h b k m o f p l k b o, (亚越切养羨中赏悲凡南了。 (

前后两个子句中的主语不相同，便不能省略，如：

U e fib p e b p n l h b ) q e b q Y o p t b o b o r k k f k d a l t k, (冬尚务寒轻) 课决意阔。 (

G q t Yp o Y f k f k d t e fib t b t b o b l r q (俗料池了亚外搭轻即) 十正下兄。 (

U e fib q e b o b f p i f d b q e b o b f p e l n b, (薪巧奇舰薪易烟。 (

F b q l h j v m i Y b t e fib G t Yp f i i, (俗巧病轻请赏春君。 (

U e fib G Y j t o f q f k d q e f p ) v l r `Y k Z b a l f k d p l j b q e f k d b i p b, y y N Y i j b o (冬俗亚腿液个搭轻即) 码可显做点鞭搭什凉洒。 (

N i b Y p b Z b n r f b q t e fib G Y j q Y i h f k d q v l r, (冬俗对码料务寒搭轻即) 请并夕约统。 (

至于t e fib的第二个用法，即作等位连词的用法，请看下列各例：

U e fib G i f h b q e b `l i l r o l c q e b e Y q ) G a l k l q i f h b f q p p e Y n b, (俗狭皮叹翰液胖子搭辙旗) 可婉并叹翰上搭式样。 (

F b t b k q l r q ) t e fib G p q Y v Y q e l j b, (赏池砰了) 顶俗默亚家中。 (

U e fib G Y a j f q e f p d l l a m l f k q p ) G `Y k p b b e f p Z Y a, (俗纯贫赏搭胁点) 袭知存赏搭批点。 (

U e fib GdoYkq e fp e l kbpqv) Gpr pnb` q e fp j bj l ov, (对  
兴赏搭潮清俗婉辆薪著议搭) 顶赏搭记猪抗俗披粉村绅后。 (

U e fib GeYsb kl j l kbv d pmbka) vl r eYsb kl qe fkd d  
pmbka j l kbv l k, (俗辆薪年害) 顶码披新年酸尺害。 (

Hl kbp il pqYk Yoj ) Fol t k Y ibd) t e fib Pl Zfkpl k eYa  
Zl qe Yj mr qYqba, (叛若涂砰细鄙) 差朗涂砰细腿) 顶懒残慰搭  
手咖的悲切帝了。 (

U e fib qe fp fp qpr b l c pl j b) fq fp kl q qpr b l c Yii, (狭薪  
细波朵婉医搭) 刺并举错全的婉医搭。 (

## 55. hardly . . . when, no sooner . . . than前后都用过去时态

邪薪eYoaiv , , , t e bk或kl pl l kbo , , , qe Yk搭复句) 也普士搭告邪动) 想轻恢薪逃鬼) 即念细子句东巧搭轻恢亚鬼细子句东巧搭轻恢显念) 故念邪过砰暑唱轻) 鬼邪过砰轻。刺东提薪念鬼皆邪过砰轻夜) 并知婉更薪所?

③刻创】我不敢说这是错误的。事实上有很多人这样说。也许是由于意义上的关系而有这种说法的。说话的人为要表示两个动作紧接着发生, 故不愿分为一前(过去完成时) 一后(过去时)。原来的意思也是z随即à (fj j bafYqiv t e bk l o Yqbo), 其实eYoaiv , , , t e bk, p`Yo`biv , , , Zbd ob, kl pl l kbo , , , qe Yk乃至Yp pl l k Yp都是一样的意思, 不过Yp pl l k Yp的惯用法是前后都用过去时的动词罢了。除Yp pl l k Yp一个表现法外, 前三者多少是夸张的说法, 而且多半是笔端英语(t ofqbk Ckdifpe), 尤其是把eYoaiv等字置于句首更是文言, 如:

F Yoaiv eYa t b Yoofsba t e bk fq ZbdYk q oYfk, (俗料细村舰下兄了。 (

普通的说法为zU b eYa eYoaiv Yoofsba t e bk fq ZbdYk q oYfk,à。以Zbd ob代t e bk, 也是文言的说法。辞典及文法书上所刊出的例句, 都是z过去完成时- 过去时à的形式, 如:

GeYa eYoaiv dl qfkq qe b`Yo t e bk Ge bYoa Y j Yk`Yii j v kYj b, (俗愤细相家楚子) 舰驶举薪瞥集俗。 (

F b eYa p`Yo`biv pbbk fq t e bk e b pqYoqpa ZY`h el j b, (赏细举村略个) 立了舰凡蓄合家砰了。 (

F b e Ya k l p l l k b o Y o o f s b a e l j b q e Y k e b t Y p Y p h b a q  
p q Y o q l k Y k l q e b o g r o k b v, (赏愤细村家) 心夕赏池东抹外细个  
旅朝。 (

L l p l l k b o e Y a e b d l q t b i i q e Y k e b i b q q e b e l q b i, (赏细  
好礼千舰军杰了略旅稿。 (

U b e Y a e Y o a i v p q Y o q b a o l j e l j b t e b k q e b b k d f k b d Y  
s b l r q (俗料愤细池了) 失楚搭向湃舰坏了。 (

F b e Y a p` Y o` b i v Z b d r k e f p p n b b` e Z b d o b q e b Y r a f b k` b  
t Y p a b b n i v Y c t b` q b a, (赏愤细杰秋真务) 驶应舰大眼粉凡。 (

L l p l l k b o e Y a G l m b k b a q e b` Y d b q e Y k l r q d i b t q e b i f q  
i b Z f o a, (俗愤把麦啦吹杰) 略头麦细下舰队池砰了。 (

Q e b e Y a k l p l l k b o p b b k f q q e Y k p e b Z b d Y k q l` o v, (尚  
细举村略个) 舰哭难来了。 (

比较:

? p p l l k Y p p e b p Y t f q p e b Z b d Y k q l` o v,

R e b j l j b k q p e b p Y t f q p e b Z b d Y k q l` o v,

G j b a f Y q b i v p e b p Y t f q p e b Z b d Y k q l` o v,

现在一般人受着上例Yp p l l k Yp的影响, 也不愿麻烦去用两种时  
态, 而一律改用过去时了, 如:

F b t Y p k l p l l k b o i b q Y i l k b q e Y k e b Z b d Y k q l d b b i Y k d  
o v, (赏村了细个瞥搭轻即) 立即舰巧难胜来了。 (

L l p l l k b o q e b i b p p l k t Y p l s b o (或L l p l l k b o t Y p q e b i  
b p p l k l s b o (q e Y k e b Y t l h b o l j e f p a l w b, (喊进愤细结日)  
赏舰的黄疗中弯来了。 (

R e b t l o a p t b o b e Y o a i v l r q l c e f p j l r q e t e b k e b Z b d  
Y k q l` l r d e, (寒愤池口) 赏舰今扫难来了。 (

L l p l l k b o a f a q e b v d b b i p Y d b q e Y k q e b v d o d l q q e b f o a b r  
b k a b k` b r m l k e f j, (赏料细粉村哀全了) 舰要记了对赏搭至

就。（

以前的英国文人如狄更斯，现在的美国摇笔杆的人，甚至前后都用现在动词：

W r k l p l l k b o ` l j b) K o, U b i i b o) q e Y k v l r d l Y d Y f k, y y B f h b k p (爽马逃巧) 码细来舰夕走。（

Q` Y o ` b i v e Y p Y d o b f d k b o p b q d l q f k q e b S k f q b a Q q Y q b p Z b d o b q e b v Y p h e f j t e Y q e b q e f k h p l c q e b ` l r k q v, (细个外根瞥愤细相千片根搭根室) 赏料舰夕问赏对片根搭糕粉破获。（

R e b l o a b o l c p q Y j f p e Y o a i v b p q Y Z i f p e b a Z b d o b b i b ` q p f ` f q y f k s Y a b p f q (宜胜搭草态愤细货立难来) 顶旦抗搭状邪闭市入家来了。（

C i b ` q p f f q y e Y o a i v d Y f k p Y c Y f o p q Y o q Z b d o b q e b f k q b o k Y i ` l j Z r p q f l k b k d f k b l s b o q Y h b p f q (旦抗愤获错细个好搭杰休) 顶琴私角心管千了上。（

可见不但不用过去完成和过去动词，而且用了现在完成和现在动词。这样一来，更可表示二者之间，为时极暂，简直是相接连了。

在e Y o a i v后接t e b k，在k l p l l k b o后接q e Y k的两种表现法，因为含义相同，故人们常夹缠不清，如K C S（《现代英语惯用法》）的著者就说，普通错成e Y o a i v，，，q e Y k的实有惊人之多。美国A l m b o r a在/742年刊行的*B f e q l k Y o v l c S p Y d b Y k a Q q i b*上便举有这样的例：

F Y o a i v e Y a q e b t l o a p Z b b k r q p b o b a q e Y k [“ t e b k”] q e b ` o l t a j b i q b a Y t Y v, (略句寒愤细务池来) 疲应舰高高七砰了。（

## 56. and不作连词译

庄样搭棵导Yka) 亚细罢搭盘袜婉福乡眼z火àz跟à) 或贾几样言搭z与àz结à打) 刺在多庄样片语狭邪薪棵导Yka) 披并勤邪显千搭中样棵导来福乡) 破ZobYa Yka Zr qɸbo) 闭并勤乡眼z另币火慢谢à) 请问液遇盘袜) 状破获福乡尝对?

③刻创】如果是表示一个合体的东西或观念的话, 虽是用Yka连接起来的两个名词, 也不能用z和à等连词来翻译, 如:

FobYa Yka Zr qɸbo fɸ t e Yq Gt Ykq (俗夕搭舰婉市了慢谢搭另币。(

因为这是一个合体的东西, 如果说的是两件东西, 就应作:

Re b ZobYa Yka qɸ b Zr qɸbo Yob pɸYib, (另币火慢谢的婉偿搭。(

这种合体的用法在英文中极多, 一个不当心就要译错, 我们必须注意那后面接的名词不是对等的(`l l oafkYɸ), 而是附从的(pr Zl oafkYɸ), 所以ZobYa Yka Zr qɸbo不可译为z面包和牛油à, 必须译为z涂有牛油的面包à; t Yq e Yka `e Yfk不可译为z表及链条à, 必须译为z系有链条的表à, 同样的`l j ZfkYqfl k, 还有不少, 如:

Y il `h Yka hbv (故薪血匙搭锁 (

Y kbbaib Yka qɸ obYa (大薪天搭针 (

Y `r mYka pYr `bo (放亚茶当千搭茶堡 (

Y ol a Yka ifkb (钓竿 (

Y ell h Yka ifkb (堂薪钓副搭钓鳃 (

Y`YoofYdb Yka mYfo (课民礼拖搭礼楚) mYfo: Y mYfo l ce  
l opbp (

Y`eYfpb Yka d r o (息民礼拖搭礼楚 (

Y`lY`e Yka pfu (蜡民礼拖搭礼楚 (。

Rb`ekfnr b fp kl qœ b Yfj Yka bka l c Yoq (技弄断险术  
搭终瑚浅臂。 (

Re fp fp œ b pr j Yka pr ZpqYk` b l c e fp l mfkfl k, (液闭婉  
赏搭珠举搭夕点。 (

Gpe Yii j l sb ZYd Yka ZYddYdb, (俗祸把伤薪搭细切全波  
把走。 (

在饮食中这种说法尤多, 如英国早餐时常见的ZY`l k Yka bddp:  
Y oYpe bo (或pif` b) l c ZY`l k t fœ l kb l o q l m l Y`e ba bddp, 即  
在一片腊肉上载着一两个煎得半熟的鸡蛋。同样, q Ypq Yka t flb,  
是在葡萄酒内浸过一下的烤面包。ppYt Zboov Yka`obYj 是上面淋  
有乳酪的草莓。pYiq Yka t Yqo是盐开水。ZoYkav Yka pl aY是掺有  
苏打水的白兰地酒。

关于Yka后接名词的特殊用法, 就讲到此为止。继续要讲的是Yk  
a后接动词的情形。例如zGt fii qv Yka qY`e e fj ,à一句, 其中qv和  
qY`e 两个动词, 并不是`l l œfkYq的各自独立的关系, 而是一主一  
副的有重有轻, 即qY`e 一字等于一个不定词, 和说zGt fii qv q qY  
`e vl r ,à相同, 也是表目的的。这种用法除qv一个动词而外, 通常还  
有`l j b、dl、pbka等行动动词, 以及Zb pr ob、j fka、il l h等字。

F b j Yv dl Yka eYkd e fj pbic d o Yii G`Yob, (赏舰婉砵诞  
颈俗袭并亚几。 (

GYj fk`ifkba q dl Yka eYsb Y difkd t fœ œ bj , y y FY  
oav (俗邮砵火赏料细世实细合衣。 (

Qbb t eYq vl r œb Zbbk Yka al kb, y y Bf hbkp (看码做  
搭什凉沔。 (

W r t fii`l j b Yka pbb r p pl j bœj bp) t l kœ vl r ?  
(码错烈舰来书暗。 (

Qbka Yka dbq̣ e fq̣ (码砰拿来暗。 (

U e bk vl r e bYo q̣e Yq̣ GYj̣ abYa) vl r j̣ r pq̣ Zb pr ob Yḳ  
a kl q̣ dofbsb, y y Fol kq̣b (码驶村俗搭死讯) 细乏并夕比  
题。 (

G̣i Zb pr ob Yka dḷ, y y U bq̣e bobii (俗细乏砰。 (

Qe b pel r ia ibYoḳ Yka fkar idb e fp̣ e YZf̣q̣p̣, y y Rol iil nḅ  
(尚对兴谣法搭织好) 并错并放素并搞。 (

Dobq̣j̣ r pq̣j̣ Yhb e Yp̣q̣ḅ Yka dbq̣ t bii, y y Cifl q̣ (伐莱措  
断管令好难来并可。 (

Gpe Yii t of̣q̣ḅ Yka q̣e Ykh e fj̣, y y K Yoov Yq̣ (俗夕腿员砰  
拖拖赏。 (

K fka Yka t of̣q̣ḅ q̣ j̣ b, (并夕要记腿员海俗。 (

Jl l h Yka pbb t e bob fq̣ fp̣ ifhbiv q̣ Zb, (砰野野可勤亚搭  
地方看看。 (

Gṭ fii q̣ov Yka dfka fq̣ (俗夕野野看。 (

最后一句如改为过去的zGq̣pfba Yka d r ka fq̣à, 两个动词便成为`ll o  
afkYq̣ḅ的意思了。如要保存原来的意思, 又要说成过去的话, 则只好  
不用+ba的形式, 而用afa, 例如:

Ll o afa Bl ZZfḳ q̣ov Yka `l ksfḳ`b e fj̣ q̣e Yq̣?j̣ bifYq̣p̣ e Y  
nmfkbpp̣ t Yp̣ kl q̣ `bkq̣bạ fḳ q̣r oq̣ib+pḷ r ṃ y y Re Ỵ hboYṿ  
(第宾袭辆薪卹夕务烦赏) 爱米开亚搭湾反并并暑全亚如行身  
千。 (

现在再看Yka后接形容词时所形成的pr Zl oafkYq̣ḅ的关系。这个  
在现代英语中主要是限于kf̣ ḅ Yka, , , , dfkḅ Yka, , , , dḷ ḷ ạ Yka,  
, , , il sbiṿ Yka, , ,等固定的表现法。第一个形容词并不是修饰主语的,  
而是abdfkḅ后面一个形容词所表示的nr Yifq̣ỵ, 好像是一个Yasbo  
Z一样, 所以AMB辞典上索性将kf̣ ḅ Yka解释为pYq̣fp̣cỴ q̣ ofiṿ, 并举  
例说:

Re b el r pb pq̣Ykap̣ kf̣ ḅ Yka e fde, (地位漠高。 (



Re b`Yo fp dl fkd kf b Yka cYpq (跑错富令。(

再看其他的例句：

Re fp`il qe fp kf b Yka pl aq (: kf biv pl aq ( (液差怪颇所。(

Re Yq t fii j Yhb vl r kf b Yka t Yoj , (略健请码怪松全。(

Gt fpe vl r o bvbpt l r ia Yit Yvp aYpe ifhb qe Yq) d o fqil l hp pl kf b Yka j Ykiv, y y Bl vib (俗易烟码搭五晴惧婉通略细样地践践薪户) 想眼上看砵怪薪大谣法搭胜概。(

Wbp) K o, AYr aib) vl r ai Zb kf b Yka fii fk qe b j l okfk d! y y Hbool ia (婉纹) 亮逃巧) 码鼓错液样醉明十憾婉健并让烦搭纹! (

Re b doYpp fp fkb Yka qYii, (才长错怪高。(

Re bpb nbY`e bp Yob dl l a Yka ofnb, (: t bii ofnb ( (液遇小子怪唱惹了。(

? il sbiv Yka t Yoj aYv, (: Y abifde qe iiv t Yoj aYv ( (细个松全可爱搭平子。( (貌顽邪语 (

Fr q Gt Yp oYob Yka er kdov, y y Qqpsbkpl k (刺婉俗闲较测轳轳了。(

Gpe Yii dl fkd Zr pfkbpp Zofde q Yka bYoiv fk qe b j l okfk d, y y K op, Qd t b (明十细早俗舰夕杰秋浮约。(

这些用Yka结合两个字来表示一个意思的，修辞学上称为**e bkafY avp**，通常是一正一副，形容词时为前者修饰后者，名词时为后者修饰前者，如dl Zibq Yka dl ia : dl iabk dl Zibq; abYqe Yka el kl r o: el kl r oYZib abYqe。

## 57. as if的用法

中样务搭z允皮à可邪庄样搭棵导Yp fc来乡) 破z赏务寒搭敲胜允皮婉细个伟夜à) 庄样闭可乡眼zF b qYihp Yp fce b t bob Y p`e liY o,à 刺薪瞥亚Yp fc鬼急邪提亚轻态搭凡导) 婉更懂所? 请务明Yp fc搭邪动。

③刻创】Yp fc的说法, 别的文字也有, 如德文有Yip l Z, 法文有`l j j b pf, 意思完全一样, 说Yp qel r de是只有英文才有的表达。据LCB、Dl t ibo、Ar oj b、Nbk`b等, 都认为Yp fc和Yp qel r de二者完全一样, 用法上毫无差异, 不过口语则多半要用Yp fc, 取其短简。Yp fc原是Yp t l r ia Zb qe b`Ypb fc之略, 如zQil l hp Yp fc fqt l r ia oYf k,à, 即是zQil l hp Yp t l r ia Zb qe b`Ypb fc fqt l r ia oYf k,à之略。既然是假设语气(Qr Zg k`qfsb K l l a), 其后自应接过去式的动词为妥, 不过现在的用法, 似乎什么都可以接, 尤其是接现在时态的动词, 如Yp fc GYj 都可以的。Ebl odb Mifsbo Ar oj b在他著的E EoYo o Yo l c qe b Ckdifpe JYkdr Ydb第三卷中说, Yp fc后接用直陈语气现在, 是为着表示dobYqpo`l kfabk`b(更大的信心) 而用的。

一般的情形是后面接子句, 而那子句中的动词, 就大有变化, 除用假设语气外, 又有直陈语气。在假设语气中用过去完成时态时的可能性最少, 在直陈语气中则用现在时态、现在完成时态、未来时态以表现确实性。假设语气至多只有一点可能性, 而直陈语气则表现出确实性来。直陈语气具有可能性自不待言。

在Yp fc后接fc Gt bob, 是与现在的事实相反的假定, 接fc Ge Ya Zbbk, 是与过去的事实相反的假定, 这和它前面主句的时态无关, 所以说zF b il l hp Yp fce b t bob fii,à 是现在看他像生病, 说zF b il l hba Yp fce b t bob fii,à 是以前看他像生病。主句中动词的时态虽有现在、过去的不同, 但Yp fc的子句中动词的时态不变。我们又可以说, zF b il l hp Yp fce b eYa Zbbk fii, (他现在看来好像过去生了病的样子。) à, 以及zF b il l hba Yp fce b eYa Zbbk fii, (他以前看来好像

过去生了病的样子。) à。在Yp fc的子句中用过去完成时态，表示z意外à (r kbumb` qpakbpp) 或惊异 (pr omofpb) 等，即所谓感情的主观性 (bj l qfl kYi pr Zgb` qsfqv)，当然，不说eYa Zbbk，而换用t bob，也是没有什么不可以的。

?ka qeb slf blcLYqr ob pYfa: zRefp fp Ykbt t loia do vl r ! à?pt ebk Yj Yk dbqr mYqd rol ðil`h Yka dl bpl rc fkd Ypr j j boj lokfkd) Yka ZbYpqp) Zfoap) qbbp pqYob Y qefj Yp fcYii eYa Zbbk j Yab kbt , y y EYipt loqv (兴婉驶村大欲皮搭统响务: z对码液婉细个新搭完寂纹! à背破细个瞥亚早千息点英难蓄) 走池村萄十搭早抽中砰) 顶各婴队首走兽) 仑因仍律) 的来烟字赏) 鼠破细切的才新了。(

Gt fii Zb Yp fct b t bob Zl ok YdYfk, y y QqYkibv I Yr cq Ykk (略好通俗料重新池巧过了。(

Uebk Gqfkh YZl r qobifdfl k YqYii) Gbbi Yp fcGt l ria i fhb ql dr ka Yk loabod oql pbt el`Ykkl qZbifbsb, y y Mp`Yo Ufiab (黄请俗邮村宗教搭寒) 俗丽错好通俗邮夕眼略遇并勤员教搭瞥货立细个教团三搭。(

zGtil l hp Yp qel r de vl r ðb cYiibk fkd Y qYm) DYqbo, à zWbp) fqal bp) al bpkqfq? ày y C, Fol kqp (z爸爸) 码好通黎入细个陷赞了。à婉纹) 可并婉怕? à (

Gfp Zbdfkkfkd ql il l h Yp fct b Yob e bj j ba fk Zv ZbYop Yka`l r dYop, y y Fbqpv KY`Bl kYia (俗料杰秋粉丽村好通悲万火剥伤币水了搭样子。(

Rebob eb fp ql qeb ifdb) il l hfkd Yp fcYqYkv j lj bkqeb t fii pil t iv l nrbk qel pb iYodb dobv ebYsv ifaaba bvb) pqYob Yqr p pl ibj kiv do Yj fkr qp) Yka qebk ab`iYob qeYqzobYiiv eb eYpkq qeb ibYpq fabY, ày y H, F, Nofbpqibv (液婉腿巧纪池来搭赏搭图通) 看千砰提亚憾好通赏健慢慢地椅杰略大顶筒旗搭) 五灭重重地垂下字搭课五) 严肃地烟字俗料) 细健儿之鬼) 舰健务池: z俗医婉细点袭并知存纹。à (

在Yp fc后接的子句，有作补语用的，有作形容词用的，有作副词用的。

ǫpbbj ba Yp fc ǫ b pml qt Yp r kl `` r mfa Zv Y ifskd pl  
ri, y y R, FYoav (略地方好通细个警袭辆薪游过三搭。(Yp fc  
显下搭子句婉约补语邪搭。

Re bob t Yp fk efp bvb Y il l h Yp fc e b t l r ia Ykkfe fi Yǫ  
j b, y y Ar ǫ j b (亚赏搭五中薪赏祸统灭俗搭敲旗。(Yp fc显下  
搭子句婉约袜坡导邪搭。

Re bv pǫ l l a r ml k Y ZibYh Yka abpboqj ll o) t e bob j l  
kpǫl r p j Yppbp l c pǫ kb t bob `Yp q YZl r q) Yp ǫ l r de fqt b  
ob ǫ b Zr ofYi+miY` b l c dfYkǫ, y y Bf hbkp (赏料样亚细个尖  
克话气搭敬殖) 略儿类大搭石经七立细地) 允皮婉类警葬蓄之  
伤。(Yp fc显下搭子句婉约房导邪搭。

在Yp fc之后，可以不接子句，而接形容词、分词、不定词及介词  
片语等，例如：

Qe b d o`ba al t k e bo r mbo ifmYp fc YǫYfa ǫ Yqǫ pj fi  
b t Yp kl q ml ifǫ, y y FYoav (尚好通巧怕途池来涂礼三搭) 领  
世把千圆唇战下来。(

F b oYfpba efp eYka Yp fcǫ `l j j Yka pfibk`b, (赏把手  
将难来) 好通奇末并夕哑务寒了。(

Qe b e r oofbaiv ibǫ ǫ b ol l j Yp ǫ l r de Ykdov, (尚好通  
巧胜三搭得得走池房恢砰了。(

Ffp pǫl riabop t bob Zbkq Yp ǫ l r de r kabo Y t bfde q  
y y ?, Fr uibv (赏搭悔别好通菲字重古三搭亚曲了。(

CiiY pYq d o Y t e fib Yp fc pǫ kkba, y y FYoav (艾九会意  
好通昏呷了三搭越了细健。(

Qbsbk ǫfbkap) fkabba) (t bob dl fkd (ǫ dfsb Y mYǫ  
d o BYkkv! ǫfp Yp ǫ l r de ǫ pYv BYkkv eYa l kiv pbsbk ǫ  
fbkap! y y QǫfkZb`h (医搭译薪伸个朋友来眼辞麻杰细个衣  
健! 略会意舰通辞麻细赴译薪伸个朋友三搭。(亚ǫ pYv念可权  
眼切略了l kb t bob搭字样。

在Yp fc后甚至有插入ǫ Yq一字的，如：

Gṽ pbbj p d j b) Yp fc) er kqfa Zv `YiYj fqv Yp Ge Ysb Z  
bbk) qe Yq Gpel ria kbsbo ob`l sbo Ykv `e bboc ikbpp YdYfk,  
y y Qebiibv (牙罗细意亚追商字俗) 好通俗哑袭并健何复醒令搭  
心盘了。(

## 58. 连词since前后的时态

z细鞭十吗。à乡唱庄样轻士草务zG<sub>1</sub>fp qk vbYop pfk`b GpYt vl r iYpq,à 亚棵导pfk`b鬼搭凡导夕邪过砰轻) 亚深念子句中搭凡导眼士草婉邪提亚轻。液个pfk`b坏皮婉避难点) 邪过砰凡导来避球欲怪屈冬) 睡念句伤避球搭轻恢婉的过砰村提亚伤父唱搭) 邪提亚暑唱轻态) 并婉服眼故屈怕?

③刻创】这是一个很有意思的问题，而事实上英文的口语（`l iil nr fYi pqyib）早已说成zG<sub>1</sub>e Yp Zbbk qk vbYop pfk`b GpYt vl r iYp q,à了。原来这句话的意思是zGpYt vl r iYpq qk vbYop Ydl ,à。表示时间如用G<sub>1</sub>做主语则习惯上接用现在动词，如直说出时间而用作主语时则习惯上接用现在完成动词，例如：

G<sub>1</sub>fp qk vbYop pfk`b , , ,

Rbk vbYop e Ysb mYppba pfk`b , , ,

有人认为口语说的G<sub>1</sub>e Yp Zbbk qk vbYop pfk`b , , ,是上面这两种表现法的混合（Zibkafkd）所构成的。这种用法在名作家笔下习见不鲜，例如：

Kv afdbpqfl k Yka j v ebYoq e Ysb dl qj r`e t l opb pfk`b GpYt vl r iYpq y y ? , Fr uibv: F Ym<sub>1</sub>fiv Csbo Ea<sub>1</sub>po (鞭鬼俗搭统化火俗搭心烟的坏多了。 (

Ge Ysb kbsbo pbbk efj pfk`b Geil pba qeb al l o, y y R, F Yoav: Reb Reobb QqYkdbop (欲的俗呼了略了显鬼俗舰哑辆薪举村赏了。 (

Qfk`b e bo j l qe bo e Ya afba) Y vbYo Zbd ob) ibYsfkd e b o qe b l odYk Yp e bo pl ib ibdY`v) pe b e Ya ifsba j Yfkiv Zv qe Yq fkpqr j bkq y y C, Bl t pl k: Ql r sbkfop l c qe b Cdl fpx

(欲的尚旅室亚细吗念死鬼) 默下海尚细皇耳诺约眼尚睡细搭吓产) 尚忧夕届略乐呢维持巧恨。(

但在pfk`b句中以现在完成代过去的, 似乎更多, 而形成一种倾向了。

Qfk`b Ge Ysb hkl t k vl r) Ge Ysb dbel o b Yt Yob qe Yq qe bob Yob qe fkdpl c sYir b fk er j Yk bufpqk`b, y y F, Pr ppbi i: QYqYk fk qe b Qr dr o d p (欲的俗贫晴码显来) 俗舰有珠村亚瞥觉搭巧敌中婉薪并少非薪景益搭祷她搭。(

Ge dbbk Y il kd qj b pfk`b Gsb pbbk vl r, Ge Zbbk kbY oiv Y vbYo) eYpk q fq? y y AYiat bii: El a q Jfq b Eeob (在见并举了。令薪细吗了暗。(

Ge dbbk Y il kd qj b pfk`b Gsb pbbk efj pl bu`f q ba, y y AYiat bii: Cmf+pl ab fk NYij bq (好见辆薪看举赏液样缘鹅搭了。(

Gsb eYa eYoaiv Ykv Ymbqf q pfk`b Gsb dbbk e bob, y y F bkov HYj bp: Reb Nl o p Yfql c Y JYav (俗欲的村液漫显来) 花几辆薪细点食袖了。(

Dl o q kYqiv qe bob q kbsbo dbbk Ykv qpl r Zib pfk`b Gsb dbbk t f qe e bo, y y Ae of p q b: BbY qe l k qe b Lfib (欲的俗火尚亚细难显来) 湾顶辆薪东巧细点什凉理烦。(

F l t eYsb vl r dbbk Yj r pfkd vl r opbic pfk`b t b eYsb d bbk Yt Yv? y y Dl o p q b: Reb Qd o l c Y NYkfe (俗料走了显鬼) 码怎样欲摘乐趣搭落?(

Gsb eYa qe b abbnbpq Ycb`ql k Yka obpn b`q d o vl r bsbo pfk`b Gsb hkl t k vl r, y y Ae of p q b: Emrl f k q bkqt f qe BbY qe (欲的俗贫晴码显来) 舰对码断草搭检爱。(

Ll q q k mbl nib eYsb eYiiba ql fknr fob pfk`b Gsb dbbk iY fa r m, y y K Yr de Yj : Reb P Yub o p Cadb (欲的俗素病显来) 来探问搭并村十瞥。(

Qfk`b ~~ss~~b ddbk e bob Ge Ysbk ~~q~~aobYo ql k`b, y y K Yr de  
Yj : Ae ~~of~~pp Yp Fl ifa Yu (俗来到显鬼辆薪做过细道林。 (

由上述种种表现法看来，z我来到本城已十年了à这句话，可以有  
下列各种译法：

Rbk vbYop e Ysb mYppba pfk`b G`Yj b ql æfp ql t k, (样  
言搭务动 (

~~Gp~~ Zbbk qk vbYop pfk`b ~~ss~~b `lj b ql æfp ql t k, (口语  
搭务动 (

~~Gp~~ Zbbk qk vbYop pfk`b G`Yj b ql æfp ql t k, (口语搭  
务动 (

Gqfp qk vbYop pfk`b G`Yj b ql æfp ql t k, (正华搭务动 (

Gqfp qk vbYop pfk`b ~~ss~~b `lj b ql æfp ql t k, (普士搭务  
动 (

下面的译法便是错误的：

Gqe Yp mYppba qk vbYop pfk`b G`Yj b ql æfp ql t k,

Rbk vbYop mYppba pfk`b Ge Ya `lj b ql æfp ql t k,

Ge Ysb `lj b ql æfp ql t k pfk`b qk vbYop Ydl ,

注意下面两句意思的不同：

F b e Yp t of ~~q~~pk ql j b œbnr bkqiv pfk`b Gt Yp fii, (欲的  
俗病秀显来) 赏劳道腿员海俗。 (

F b e Yp t of ~~q~~pk ql j b œbnr bkqiv pfk`b Ge Ysb Zbbk fii,  
(欲的俗巧病显来) 赏劳道腿员海俗。 (



## VIII 介 词

### 59. around和round

庄样搭ol r ka火Yol r ka夫字珠诸相世) 并知亚邪动千薪获朵鞭? 片根细罢三几的婉邪 Yol r ka细字) 请舰到字搭片根邪动) 将堪务明。

③刻创】这两字在英语中原来是有分别的: Yol r ka表示静的周围, ol r ka表示动的周围, 即Yol r ka是围坐, 围炉, 围着不动的意思, 而ol r ka便是环绕着走, 所以ol r ka要和表动作的动词连用, 而Yol r ka则和表不动的动词连用。例如:

U b pYqYol r ka q̣ b ḍob, (俗料水兰顶越。 (

Re b bYoq̣ j l sbp ol r ka q̣ b pr k, (地鼠骗平顶外。 (

不过这种分别也并不显著, 因为混用的时候很多, 尤其是在英国用ol r ka的场合美国惯用于Yol r ka, 例如《环游世界八十天》这部美国电影, 便名为*Ed r ka q̣ b Ul oia fk 6. BYvp*, 英国是应该用ol r ka q̣ b t l oia的, 如说zBoYhb pYfiba ol r ka q̣ b t l oia, à之类。又英国人说的zF b ifsbp gr pq ol r ka q̣ b `l okbo l c q̣ fp p̣qbbq̣ (他就住在这街的转角处。) à, 美国人也要说成zF b ifsbp gr pq Yol r ka q̣ b `l okbo l c q̣ fp p̣qbbq̣ à。

代YZl r q用的时候仍是美国用Yol r ka英国用ol r ka, 如:

F b t fii Zb ZY` h ol r ka (片Yol r ka (kl1k, (赏祸亚中岁  
户蜡合来。(

F b fp obYav q mYv pl j bt e bob ol r ka (片Yol r ka (\$ 1  
... d o Y` Yo, (赏愉杯随轻鼓池态拾许院宗买细肯楚。(

至于Yol r ka一字在美国话中作介词的用法有:

(/) 规避, 回避。

F l t `Yk t b dbq Yol r ka q Yq obdr iYql k? (俗料夕怎样  
尝勤华笔略蚀华眼落?(

许多动词和Yol r ka结合时, 都可发生z回避à的意思。如abq r o Y  
ol r ka (迂回绕道), pnr bYh Yol r ka (侥幸避开), per kq Yol r k  
a (回避), pev Yol r ka (避开), pnr foj Yol r ka (扭曲)等等。  
此外说dfka [pbb] Y t Yv Yol r ka (找寻规避的方法), qYhb Y t Yv  
Yol r ka (采取回避步骤)等, 也是表同样意思的片语。例如:

? ibdYi t Yv Yol r ka q b pfqr Yql k t l r ia Zb d r ka, (大  
概可显野村华笔液婴盘袜搭动老千搭手第。(

q q bob Ykv t Yv Yol r ka l o q ol r de q b afibj j Y?  
(薪什凉可显华笔或突伤液婴罗呼搭方动怕?(

DYoj bo U Ype fkdq k afa kl q Ymmol sb l c piYsbov, e b fk  
e bofqa fq) ifhb q b iYka) Yka `l riak&qdfka Y t Yv Yol r ka f  
q (猫法际盛电馆婉并赞唱毛康制访搭, 译想液婴制访通室地细  
样) 赏的逃瞥尽纯了下来) 酸动笆脱。(

D+64 gbq) Zr fiq fk AYkYaY Yol r ka Skfqa QqYqpp bkdf  
kbp Yka fkpqr +j bkq) t fii dl q CkdiYka, (笔免偿邪片根  
搭角呢火呢降) 亚加拿大货颜搭D+64瓦辱胜角祸散数庄根砰。(

Fr qt e fib e fp ZoYfk t Yp qYhfkd q b il kd t Yv Yol r ka e  
fp Zl av t Yp t loh+fk d cYpq (刺婉冬赏搭休脑正亚邮宇怎样脱  
军影境搭轻即) 赏搭蔷薇袭敏几地先凡了。(

(0) 服务, 工作。

Ffoafb e Yp Zbbk Yol r ka qe b j Yg o ibYdr b d o /3 vbYop  
Yka hkl t p qe b e f q p o cYo Zb q p o qe Yk Gal , (懊待亚职习板鼠  
欲健烦务了十碎吗) 知存击鼠夜搭盘袜怯俗多多。 (

Qk obqr ok) Fbi`e bo e binba QqYkibv Yol r ka qe b dl sbok  
j bkq) e binba e fp wfbkap dbq if bk`bp d o`l kpqr`ql k t l o  
h l k Y obpl oq e l qpi , , , (约眼鞭创难举) 豹订邱班忙若社利村  
政府汉职) 心班忙赏搭朋友获错休吸地旅稿货油浮朝搭义  
也x x (

(1) 近于; 在近处; 近x x 时; 差不多; 到处。

Ql (: fksbpqfdYql k (j Yv bkYZib qe b`fqwbk ql dka efp  
t Yv Yol r ka qe b dl sbokj bkq Zr obYr`oY`v t fql r qbfq bo Y  
dr fab l o Y dr YoafYk, (去期料仔糖蛋程细下) 辆薪议逗夜或竟  
灯瞥裘勤君刻乎使搭盘袜。(句中ql dka l kbq t Yv Yol r ka珠  
眼君刻。

Fba j Yhb Y dl l a Yj ZYppYal o, Fb`boqYfkiv hkl t p ef  
p t Yv Yol r ka qe bob, (赏健唱眼细个好大请搭。赏脾婉惹知略  
部搭盘袜。(句中ql hkl t l kbq t Yv Yol r ka (庄根务ql hkl  
t l kbq t Yv YZl r q (珠眼惹太) 坚士。

Qt Yp qe b cY`b l cYj Yk Yol r ka pfuqv, (略婉细个蜡十岁  
户蜡搭瞥搭另林。(

Fb ifhbp ql ol Yj Yol r ka qe b`l r kqv, (赏叹翰亚时殖恢  
村尺力步。(

Ffp cYq bo ibq efj Yol r ka Yj fiifl k al iiYop, (赏纺室吓  
海赏吃并多薪细吧万许。(

Fb Yphba j b ql`l j b e bob Yol r ka qk l il`h, (赏夕  
俗十点院宗来到。(

Bl kql`l j b Yol r ka e bob, (并夕村故贾来。(

(2) 关于。

Re bob t fii Zb Y abZYq̄p Yol r ka q̄ fp m̄l Zibj , (祸将外液  
问狮搭升鸟健。 (

附带地我们看看Yol r ka一字在美国作副词用时, 有些什么意义:

(/) 交际。

F b t Ypk̄q̄ Y`lj d oq̄YZib nbopl k q̄ Zb Yol r ka, (赏并婉  
细个绝际轻四瞥粉村醒令搭瞥。 (

(0) 居留。

Re bv Y`q ifhb m̄l mib t el al k̄q̄ miYk q̄ Zb Yol r ka sb̄ov  
il kd, (赏料搭外眼好通略遇并吹杀长游搭瞥料细样。 (

(1) 存在。

F fp kfde q`ir Z Yka HYmYkbpb mYockbo Yob p̄fii Yol r ka,  
(赏搭系总健苹皮敌亚) 略平卑瞥搭班手袭苹皮亚职。 (

(2) 饱经世故; 经验丰富的。

Re b j l p̄q`lj j l k l``r mYq̄l kYi afpbYpb l c j l sfb Y`q̄  
b̄ppbpy b̄pnb`fYiiv q̄l pb t el eYsb Zbbk Yol r ka Yp il kd Yp  
QqYkt v`hy fp j bdYil`b̄m̄eYifY) l q̄ bo+t fpb hkl t k Yp pt bii  
ba e bYa, (貌旦准明圆搭源普士搭职习千搭疾病) 写深婉通若社  
研克略样搭尖务丰非搭貌明圆) 舰婉类休以) 液婉欲大狂搭鞭  
其。 (

## 60. “的”字的各种译法

z赏海了俗细斐细吧许搭支票。à庄乡眼zF b dYsbj b Y`eb`h l c\$ /... ,à 眼获并对? 中样搭z搭à字驰乡约zl cà外) 憾薪什凉鞭搭乡动?

③刻创】中文的z的à字决不限于译作zl cà, 由其含义不同, 而有种种译法。兹分别例解如下:

(/) z属于àl c:

Y œfbka l c efp (赏搭朋友 (   
 qe b kbpql c Y Zfoa (麦搭拆 (   
 qe b`l sbo l c Y Zl l h (扰搭饿另 (   
 qe b sYir b l c j l kbv (年搭景益 (   
 Y j Yk l c YZfifqv (勤干搭瞥 (   
 qe b`e fiaobk l c Y cYj fiv (细家搭工子 (

(0) z关于àl k; fk; l c:

Y Zl l h l k YidbZoY (呼兴春戎搭扰 (   
 Y qY`e bo l c Ckdifpe (教庄样搭惧师 (   
 Yk buYj fkYqfl k fk Ckdifpe (庄样搭介试 (   
 Yk Yr qe l ofqv l k Zfl il dv (巧物伟搭澎研 (   
 Y ml bj fk mYfpb l c qe b Wkdqwb Pfsbo (歌溪长击搭勤 (   
 Y dbkfr p fk ml bqvw (勤搭十尝 (

(1) z对于à d o; q̇l :

q̇b Zfii d o iYpqj l kq̇ (千月搭斫单 (   
Y`r ob d o e bYaY`e b (休是搭之 (   
Y j baf` fkb d o Y`l r de (今扫之 (   
Y`e b`h d o l kb q̇l r pYka al iiYop (细拾许搭支票 (   
Y ṁbcY` b q̇l q̇b Zl l h (扰搭危样 (   
q̇b bkq̇Yk` b q̇l q̇b e l r pb (房子搭入口 (   
Y q̇Yibkq d o j r pf` (响乐搭十尝 (   
q̇b hbv q̇l q̇b ZY h+al l o (鬼了搭血匙 (   
Y afp d o Y` b q̇l q̇b cYj fiv (家了搭晨辱 (

(2) z所在à Yq; fk; l k; l sbo; cōl j :

q̇b`e boov Zil ppl j p Yq U Ype fkdq̇l k (际盛电搭装害 (   
j v aYr de q̇o fk Lbt W oh (俗亚忙学搭貌儿 (   
Y e l r pb l k q̇b ofsbo (固千搭瞥家 (   
q̇b t fkq̇o fk RYfnbf (奢抱搭翻十 (   
Y p`e l l i Yq Or bbk̇p Qqbbq (貌束看搭伟突 (   
Y cōfbka Yq Qe Ykde Yf (千攻搭朋友 (   
pqYq̇l kp l k q̇b LYkhfk d+Qe Ykde Yf ifkb (孩满天千搭楚  
样 (   
Y Zr pfkbppj Yk l c Qfk dYnl ob (新加闪搭清习家 (   
nbYop cōl j ?r pcpYifY (帮洲搭绝子 (   
Y sfpfq̇l o cōl j e l j b (故乡搭来料 (   
Y Zofadb l sbo Y ofsbo (固千搭纽 (

(3) z材料à [Zr fiq, j Yab] l c:

Y ofkd j Yab l cdl ia : Y dl ia ofkd (继课议 (

Y Zofadb Zr fiql c pql kb : Y pql kb Zofadb (石纽 (

(4) z执笔àZv:

Y miYv Zv Qe Yhbpmbyob (起翁搭剧卑 (

Y kl sbi Zv Bf hbkp (对服若搭头务 (

Y mYfkqfk d Zv Ae fe Nbf+pe fe (奶懊石搭纪 (

Y ml bj Zv Rr Dr (法官搭勤 (

(5) z人的关系àZv; t fqe; Zbqt bbbk; ql:

qe b obiYqfl kp Zbqt bbbk qbY` e bo Yka mr mfi (师巧搭呼堂 (

qe b afcbobk` b Zbqt bbbk qe b qt l (夫夜搭并世 (

kbme bt ql K o, U l kd (束接搭侄儿 (

Y mofsYqb pb` obqYov ql qe b Nobj fbo (犬相搭坡扰 (

F b fp Y cYsl r ofqb t fqe efp r k` ib, (赏婉位纺搭聪儿。 (

F b eYp qt l ` e fiaobk Zv efp d oj bo t fdb, (赏薪课个念哪  
眼赏巧搭儿子。 (

(6) z其他的关系àfk; l c; t fqe:

qe b` e boov Zil ppl j p fk r ii Zil l j (盛杰搭装害 (

qe b j Yk fk nr bpql k (薪问狮搭瞥 (

Y j Yk fk Yasbopfqv (尺马境搭瞥 (

Y t l j Yk fk oba (大急下搭飞瞥 (

Y ibqpbo fk Ckdifpe (邪庄样腿搭员 (

Y j Yk pe l oqfk pqYqr ob (啊头搭瞥 (

l kb<sup>sp</sup> mol d` fbk` v fk qe b Ae fkbpb iYkdr Ydb (中样搭惹  
可 (

Y dfoi l c pfuqbbk (十蜡岁搭少貌 (

Yk l ia j Yk l c bfde qv (八十岁搭惧瞥 (

Aefe QeYe Yal okba t fqe Yr qj kYi qkqp (急喜于点搭  
社躺 (

问题中的句子应改正为: zF b dYsbj b Y`eb`h d o\$ /..,â。



## 61. of的用法

z养火提亚婉邪丰史货颜搭。à庄乡眼zU Yope fmp Yob kl t Zr fiq Zv pqbī,à 讲务乡样中搭Zv状寡眼l c尝对。请舰l c搭邪动) 将堪务明。

③刻创】英文惯用法，关于z材料à要用l c, z原料à则用col j , 如一张木桌子，制成之后，我们仍可看出是木头做的，所以这是以木头为z材料à的，要用l c, 例如：zRe b abph fp j Yab l ct l l a,à。又如一瓶葡萄酒，虽是葡萄做的，但我们在酒中看不出葡萄来，它是以葡萄为z原料à而已，这时便得用col j 来表示，如zU fkb fp j Yab col j doY nbp,à。战舰用钢铁建造，造成后仍然看见钢铁，所以是z材料à的用法，自然应说zU Yope fmp Yob Zr fiq l c pqbī,à才对。

至于l c的用法，重要的有下列各种：

(/) 表z分离à, 如除去，剥夺之类。

Re b j Yk ol ZZba j b l c j v mr opb, (略警事走了俗搭年币。(

Re bv `ibYoba qe b pbY l c qe b ol ZZbop, (赏料肃清了攻读。(

?pq kfpej bkqabmofsbaj b l c j v nl t bol cprbb`e, (俗惊讶错务并池寒来了。(

Pbifdfl k afpYoj p abYqe l c fqp qpool op, (员教请警并哑验死。(

U b eYsb ofa Y el r pb l csboj fk, (俗料把家漫搭惧任细毯顶户。(

Re b al `q o `r oba efj l c efp `eol kf afpbYpb, (瞎巧把赏搭痼疾引好了。(

(0) 表z根源à原因ā等。

F b afba l c p d j Y e ` Y k ` b o, (赏死兴丝白。 ( (死想 (

Re b e l r p b f p Z r f i q l c p d k b, (略肃子婉石颜搭。 (

C Y e p b k q b k ` b ` l k p f p q p l c (或 f p ` l j m l p b a l c, f p j Y a  
b r m l c (q t l m Y o q p, (每个句子的婉由课波朵园唱搭。 (

K Y v G Y p h Y c Y s l r o l c v l r ? (俗请属码细活泗好怕? (

F b Z l o o l t b a Y i Y o d b p r j l c q e b Z Y k h, (赏同银外计了细  
大倍景游。 (

G i b Y o k b a l c q e b Y ` f a b k q l k i v q e f p j l o k f k d, (俗亚纪十  
早千尝驶村略珠外泗活搭。 (

(1) 表z部分关系ā。

G h k l t p l j b l c q e b j , (俗贫晴赏料冬中搭细遇瞥。 (

F f p m l k r k ` f Y q l k f p k l k b l c q e b Z b p q (: f p k l q s b o v d  
l l a ( (赏搭东响并太好。 (

G p k l k b l c v l r o Z r p f k b p p, (并于码搭泗。 (

(2) 表z形容关系ā。 (l c - 抽象名词: 形容词)

F b f p Y j Y k l c Y q l k, (恨凡家。 ( (: F b f p Y k Y q f s b  
j Y k, (

G f p l c d o b Y q f j m l o q Y k ` b, (液婉瑚重夕搭。 ( (液个zZb -  
l c - 其导ā搭Zb l c: e Y s b。 (

? m l b j l c j v l t k ` l j m l p f k d, (欲华做搭勤。 (

R e f p o l Y a f p l c v l r o l t k ` e l l p f k d, (液婉码欲华维择搭  
存路。 (

G p q e f p l c Y k v r p b q v l r ? (液对码薪什凉邪怕? (

(3) 表z所有关系ā。

Qp pe b Ykv obiYqfl k l cvl r op? (尚婉码搭室拿怕? (

F b fp Y œfbka l cj fkb, (尚婉俗搭朋友。 (

(4) 表z同格关系à。

Re b`fqv l cJl kal k (念典去 (

Re b Kl r kql cMj bf (钓量套 (

Re b AYmb l cEl l a Fl mb (好烟极 (

(5) 表z动作关系à。

F Ysb vl r e bYœa l c œb kbt p? (码驶村略个统台了怕? (

Rl œfkh l cvl r j Yhbpj b lia, (撒接末瞥惧。 (

Gt fii fkd oj efj l cœb bsbkq (俗夕把液洒士知赏。 (

F b obj fkap j b l c efp Zol œbo, (赏请俗邮难赏搭哥哥。 (

又，英文中，**zZb** - 形容词- l cà的形式，特别的多。这是可以代他动词用的。例如：

Gt Yp fdkl oYkql c (: afa kl qhkl t (œb cY` q (俗并曾知存略洒。 (

GYj YœYfa l c (: œYo (fq (俗怕略个。 (

GYj d ka l c (: ifhb (obYafkd, (俗好伟。 (

他如q Zb Ymmœbe bkpfsl c (: Ymmœbe bka) (悬念) ; q Zb mœl ar`œfsbl c (: mœl ar`b) (生产) ; q Zb ab`fpfsbl c (: ab`fa b) (决定) ; q Zb al r Zœr il c (: al r Zq) (怀疑) ; q Zb dr fiq vl c (: `lj j fq) Y`œj b (犯罪) ; q Zb fkk l`bkql c (: kl qd `lj j fq) Y`œj b (无罪) 等等。

另外还有是没有相当动词的，如：

Re b pr Zgb` qfp α ii l c fkdobbpq (液狮浅城立趣私。 (

Re b pr Zgb` qfp absl fa l c fkdobbpq (液狮浅够酸趣私。 (

F b fp mōl r a l c e fp ibYokfkd, (赏欲惊别伟。 (

Qe b fp YpeYj ba l c e bo ml sboq, (尚显杀熟眼晨。 (

Re b mr opb fp bj mqv l c fqp`l kqpkqp, (年币烈了。 (

GYj qfoba l c obYafkd, (俗方扰方侮了。 (

## 62. hear of、hear from

(Y (Ge Ysb kl qe bYoa l c e fj bsbo pfk` b,  
(Z (Ge Ysb kl qe bYoa ol j e fj bsbo pfk` b,  
液课句庄样) 并知慌诸薪获并世?

③刻创】 (Y) 从那以来我就再没有听到他的消息了。(Z) 从那以来我就再没有接到他的信了。

(Y) 句中的 e bYo l c: ob` bfsb Y obml oq YZl r q; dbq kbt p l c (获得消息, 知其动静, 问及某人的存在或某事的发生)。例如:

Ge Ysb kbsbo e bYoa l c Y K o, U e fqb fk qe fp kb fde Zl r oe l l a, (俗的来辆薪驶务过液故贾游薪细位函省逃巧。(

Gt Yp pel` hba ql e bYo l c e fp pr aabk abYqe, (突皮驶村赏搭死讯) 俗清眼移惊。(

Fb ibqel j b qbk vbYop Ydl Yka e Yp kl q Zbbk e bYoa l c pfk` b, (赏军家十吗) 内酸响讯。(

Ge Ysb kbsbo e bYoa l c e fj , (俗的思驶务过赏。(

Gt l k&q e bYo l c fq (: Gt l k&q Yiil t fc9 Gobr pb ql fq (并在, 并性介牢, 并赞世。(

Csbov l kb e Yp e bYoa l c qe b kfde qkdYib) qel r de sbov j Ykv e Ysb kbsbo e bYoa fq pfkd, (瞥瞥的驶务过系责搭其字) 刺怪多瞥的思曾驶村上搭歌统。(

Fb pr ob Yka ibqj b e bYo l c vl r o pYcb YoofsYi, (细乏夕把码末哀代第搭统台士知俗。(

Mcqeb pbsbk `e fiaobk) Yii q ia) qe Yqe Ya Zbbk Zl ok q  
 qe bj ) qe obb e Ya afba, l kb dfoi e Ya dl kb q I YkpYp, l kb  
 Zl v e Ya dl kb q Qfl r u DYiip) kbsbo bsbk q Zb e bYoa l c Yq  
 bo, Ykl qe bo Zl v e Ya dl kb q U Ype fkdq k, Yka qe b iYpq dfo  
 i ifsba dfsb `l r kqfbp Yt Yv fk qe b pYj b QqYq) Zr qt Yp pl Z  
 r oabkba t fqe `Yobp l c e bo l t k qe Yq pe b oYobiv dYsb qe bj  
 Y qe l r de q y y Bobfpbo (赏料之恢细赴巧了伸个工子) 薪恣个  
 死了, 细个貌工村结台若州砰了, 细个且工村切第可线州搭苏木  
 砰了显鬼) 统台查皮, 抹外细个且工村际盛电砰了, 顶源鬼细个  
 貌工狭游亚世细州琴) 相过碎镰) 刺尚想卑蓄晴罗搭重古) 怪罗  
 错薪角健邨村尚搭纺旅。 (

至于 (Z) 例中的 e bYo col j : dbq Y ibqpo, bq , col j (接到信  
 件等)。例如:

Jbqj b e bYo col j vl r kl t Yka qe bk, (请码轻草腿员海  
 俗。 (

Ge Ysb kl qe bYoa col j efj pfk`b, (的略显鬼俗舰思急村  
 赏搭员了。 (

Ge bYo col j ?j bof Y bsbv t bbh, (俗每圆目的薪来欲片  
 根搭员。 (

Ge b e bYoa kl qe fkd col j efj , (: Ge Ysbk qe bYoa Ykvqe  
 fkd col j efj vbq ( (俗憾思急村赏素获员台。 (

Gpel ria Zb diYa q e bYo col j vl r l k qe b pr Zg`q (呼  
 兴略个问狮俗怪高缘急村码搭合员。 (

### 63. 表接触的on

z狗州婉亚她国搭国们。à乡唱庄样眼zF Ykd`e l t fp Yq qe b pe l ob l c U bpq JYhb, à) 讲务乡幢了) 状祸Yq寡眼l k尝对。眼什凉z亚à夕乡约l k落? 请祸液个l k搭邪动) 将堪由眼务明。

③刻创】英文介词的l k, 是表示z接触à的, 意为z在上à, 如:

Re b Zl l h fp l k qe b qYZib, (扰亚雨千。(

同有z在上à之意的l sbo, 便是不接触的, 如:

Re b bib` qf ifde q fp l sbo qe b qYZib, (雨子千休悬薪旦达。(

例句中说的z杭州是在西湖的湖畔à, 意即那城在湖上, 表示与湖岸线相接触, 故有用l k的必要。基本的概念是表面的接触, 所以:

Re bob fp Y ifwYoa l k qe b `bfikd, (十害板千薪细译比虎。(与十害板搭下另急侈。

Qe b e Yp Y ofkd l k e bo dfkdbo, (尚手议千戴字课议。(与手议急侈。

U b ifsb l k qe b bYoqe, (俗料游亚地鼠千。(与地另急侈。

? mf qf ob e Ykdp l k qe b t Yii, (士千挂搭薪细斐纪。(与士比急侈。

以上等等用法, 都是属于此一范畴。这种接触进而适用于平面上的接触, 有z接近à及z朝向à之意, 例如:

NYofp fp l k qe b Qbfkb, (巴满亚期伦固千。(

Re b e l r p b f p l k q e b o f s b o, (固千瞥家。 (

Re b a l l o l n b k p l k Y i Y t k, (了杰同才地。 (

Re b p r k p e f k b p l k q e b m l o` e, (太阳晒家了伦。 (

W r j r p q e Y s b n f q v l k q e b k b b a v, (码对熟瞥夕薪怜迫之心。 (

Re b o b Y o b q p b b p l k Z l q e p f a b p l c q e b p q p b b q, (看存搭课梦的薪仍律。 (

M k q e b p l r q e l c K Y i Y v p f Y i f b p Q f k d Y m l o b, (新加闪亚礼来她亚之切。 (急寂) 境寂相急。

R Y f t Y k c Y` b p q e b N Y` f d` l k q e b b Y p q, (奢询祷部另同太末争。 (

Re b v Y o b q e b` l r k q p f b p l k q e b N Y` f d`, (上料婉太末争毋八搭根家。 (

M k j v i b a q t Y p Y Z o l l h, (亚俗搭院手部舰婉细蚀头引。 (

再看下面几个抽象用法的例句:

G t Y p l k q e b m l f k q l c q p i b m e l k f k d v l r, (俗正夕吹旦寒海码了。 (

S k d o q r k Y q p i v e b a f b a l k q e b b s b l c q Y h f k d l s b o Y i Y o d b Z r p f k b p p, (赏亚纯急细个大恼习搭念贪并湾王完。 (

Q e b t Y p l k q e b s b o d b l c Z r o p q f k d f k d q q b Y o p, (尚花几夕哭池来了。 (

此外表示z同时a (Y q q e b q j b l c) 的l k, 也可以解释为z一个动作和另一动作, 在时间上的接触a。 现分二项例解如下:

(/) l k - 动名词一般可用Y p p l l k Y p或t e b k开头的副词子句来改写。



Mk e bYofkd (: ?p pl l k Yp e b e bYoa (q̣ b kbt p) e b q̣  
okba mYib, (细驶村略个统台) 赏每舰懊了。 (

Mk Yoofsfd (: U e bk e b Yoofsba (Yq q̣ b Yfoml oq e b t Y  
p dobbq̣ba Zv q̣ b Nofj b K fkfpq̣bo, (细村队角场) 赏舰委村琴  
阁总君搭晓急。 (

Mk obY`efkd el j b) G`Yiiba efj r ml k q̣ b q̣ibm̄l kb,  
(细代家了) 俗舰吹了旦寒海赏。 (

(0) l k - (动作) 名词 (由动词变来的名词) :

Mk e fp YoofsYi (: U e bk e b Yoofsba (Yq q̣ b Yfoml oq e b  
t Yp dobbq̣ba Zv q̣ b Nofj b K fkfpq̣bo, (细村队角场) 赏舰委村  
琴阁总君搭晓急。 (

Gt fii mYv q̣ b j l kbv l k ob`bfm̄l c q̣ b dl l ap (: Yp pl l  
k Yp Gob`bfsba q̣ b dl l ap (, (轰物全村即鼓景。 (

Mk j v bkq̣Yk`b fkq̣ q̣ b ol l j (: U e bk Gbkq̣oba q̣ b  
ol l j () e b p̄l m̄mba q̄Yihfd, (俗细家肃) 赏舰并务了。 (

Mk `il pbo buYj fkYq̄l k (: U e bk t b buYj fkba q̣ b nbY  
oi j l ob`il pbiv (t b d r ka q̣ Yq q̣ b nbYoi t Yp Y j bob fj fqY  
q̄l k, (仔糖旧程细下) 俗料东丽略看一珠倌婉黄搭。 (

AYpe l k abifsbov, (轰村鼓景。 (

## 64. in the morning of a day

亚j l okfk d、Yɔp ok l l k、bsb kfk d打字念搭记导) 庄样告邪f k) 破fk ɕ b j l okfk d之觉) 刺讲务议乞细十搭千岁轻) fk 舰夕寡眼 l k) 顶并可显哑必默fk搭邪动) 破l k ɕ b j l okfk d l c Qr kaYv (圆目平千岁 () 并知脾更?

③刻创】依据介词的惯用法，是在上、下午等之前用fk，如fk ɕ b j l okfk d; fk ɕ b Yɔp ok l l k; fk ɕ b bsb kfk d皆是；在某日之前就要用l k，如l k Qr kaYv; l k Hr iv 2, /747; l k ɕ b aYv t e bk HYnYk pr oobkaboba。说某一天的上午，如果把两个片语排列在一起，而成fk ɕ b j l okfk d l k Qr kaYv，则未能把z的à的意思表达出来，即两者之间没有联系，应当用l c (的) 连起来才对。于是用于日子前的l k，就得移到j l okfk d的前面去，代替原用于上午前的fk，再用l c把上午和那一天连起来，而说成l k ɕ b j l okfk d l c Qr kaYv，我们现在明白了为什么要用l k来代替fk，那原来是指的那一天，而不是指的那个上午。

不过这种规则也不是绝对的，早在三四十年前，荷兰的一位英文学者F bkaofh Nl r ɕpj Y就发现了许多例外。他是一位中学的英语教师，自己研究英语，很有成就，享到国际的声誉。他说某天上午（下午或晚间）是可能有fk ɕ b j l okfk d (Yɔp ok l l k, bq,) l cY aYv的形式的，尤其是前面用有bYoiv、iYɕ等副词时，更是要用fk，而不用l k，因为bYoiv等副词与fk ɕ b j l okfk d等片语结合起来更要自然，即令后面接有l cme oYpb，介词仍保留原来的fk。

经这位荷兰人这样加以指点之后，我留意到在英美人的笔下，果然有这种用法，而且多是出自名家之手，如：

Ɔk ɕ b bsb kfk d l c ɕ fp aYv l c ɕ fp iYpq aYv l c bumb` qYqfl k) t e f e t Yp ɕ b ɕ bkɕ+ɕ foa l c Bb` bj Zbo) Cr pqY fY t Y

p Yqelj b Yil kb, y y Relj Yp FYoav (目店宇搭十夫月夫十  
态平略源鬼细十搭晚千) 胁若少萄等欲细瞥默亚家漫。(

JYq̄b fk q̄b Yq̄bokl l k l c Y`efiiv aYv fk DbZor Yov) q̄t l  
dbkq̄bj bk t bob pfq̄fk d Yil kb l sbo q̄bfo t fkb) fk Y t bii+α o  
kfpe ba afkfk d+mYoil r o fk q̄b q̄t k l c N, y y K o p, Qq̄t b  
(夫月搭乞细个官冷搭下岁怪迟搭轻即) 课位抢求等越亚N幢细  
家薪宇命亮家私搭补使中) 鼓字母甚酒。(

Q̄t Yp bYoiv fk q̄b j l okfk d l c ?mofi 07) /725, y y Pb  
Yab o p Bfdbp q (略婉亚细烂息伸吗息月夫十烂平搭早千。(

CYoiv fk q̄b Yq̄bokl l k l c q̄b k buq aYv) il l hfkd Yil kd c  
e b e l ofw k Zbd ob r p) t b pYt q̄b Yq, , , y y DoYk`fp NYohj  
Yk (亚多夫十早早搭下岁) 烟宇念另搭地末天) 俗料闭看村  
了x x (

, , , fk q̄b iYq̄b j l okfk d l c K Yo`e 5, y y Jfcb (x x 态月  
伸平半岁轻朵。(

Ql Yj bp Dl opvq̄b bj bodba αl j q̄b l kfde q̄Zofadb F1 q̄b  
i) t e bob e b t Yp pqYvfkd fk q̄b Yq̄bokl l k l c q̄b /Oq̄ l c K  
Yv) /70. , y y EYipt l oq̄v (善侣兹—反欺省的赏伤讶游搭声求  
纽旅稿池提搭) 婉细烂夫”吗碎月十夫平搭下岁。(

有人又举出一点, 说凡有时间的就要用fk, 如z十月五日的早上五  
点钟à, 就说Yq̄dfsb fk q̄b j l okfk d l c 3q̄ M q̄, 而不用l k, 这个Yq̄  
dfsb也等于bYoiv一样的意思, 不过把时间说得很清楚罢了。

我们把重点放在某日就用l k, 把重点放在那个上午、下午或晚  
上, 就用fk, 这说法也是合理的。

## 65. to the east、in the east

庄样务方同婉fk qe b afob`ql k l c) 心可务fk qe b pl r qe 打, 憾薪q 火q t Yoap 袭婉议方同搭) 破zF b t bkqql qe b pl r qe, à 务z颇伐亚新加闪之抱à) 状乡zHl el ob fp fk qe b kl oqe l c Qfk dYml ob, à 憾婉zHl el ob fp ql qe b kl oqe l c Qfk dYml ob, à? 请问获夜眼对? 君由眼获?

③刻创】应说zHl el ob fp ql qe b kl oqe l c Qfk dYml ob, à才对, 因为在某一地域的领土内的方向就用fk, 在某一地域以外的方向就用q l, 柔佛不在新加坡的领域内, 故不能用fk, 而要用ql。

Hl el ob fp fk qe b pl r qe l c K YiYvpfY, (颇伐亚礼来她亚搭切波。(

Hl el ob fp ql qe b pl r qe l c l r YiY Jrj m r o, (颇伐亚吉隆闪搭切部。(

由上二例比较一下, 对此二字的用法, 当无疑义。总之, ql 是表z方向à的, 而fk是指的z内部à。fk指z方向à时, 原为z在其中à之意, 如fk qe b afpqYk`b (在远方) 范围之内, fk qe b bYpq (在东方) 范围之内, fk Y t bpcpok afob`ql k (向西方) 范围之内。由此扩大而用于fk l kbpfdeq (视界之内), fk j v l mfkfl k (在我的意见中), qe b iYqppq qe fkd fk`Yop (最新型的汽车) 等的, 也都是指范围或领域说的。有时可将ql qe b略去, 单说bYpq l c即可。

HYnYk ifbp (ql qe b (bYpq l c Ae fkY, (平卑亚中根之禱。(

RYfkYk fp YZl r q 3. . j fibp (ql qe b (pl r qe l c RYfnbf, (奢切亚奢抱学碎吧庄漫之切。(

ᑕ Y ifq̄ib afp̄q̄f q̄ t bpq̄l c U Ype fkd̄q̄ k Qnr Yob q̄ b p̄q̄bb  
q̄ p̄ e Ysb or k` oYw, y y M, F bkov (亚际盛电公园之她搭略细点  
地方) 看路高雷伤面。(亚t bpq̄念切略了q̄ q̄ b夫字。

最简单的只用东西南北一个字，意思也是一样，为加强意思则可用q̄ t Yoap或fk q̄ b afob` q̄l k l c, 如：

F b t bkq̄ bYp̄q̄ - F b t bkq̄ q̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄ - F b t bkq̄ q̄ t Yoap  
p̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄ - F b t bkq̄ fk q̄ b afob` q̄l k l c q̄ b bYp̄q̄ (赏村祷  
方殒了。(

F Yohfkd fp p̄bsbk j fibp̄ q̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c Jl kal k, (巴继亚  
念典之祷伸庄漫。(q̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c: fk Yk bYp̄q̄ Yoap afob` q̄l k  
ol j

在q̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c (向东方) 之外，还有Yq̄ q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c (在东  
边)，fk q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c (的东部) 及lk q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c (的东端) 三种说  
法，应加辨别。

HYnYk fp fk q̄ b bYp̄q̄l c ? p̄fY, (平卑亚亚洲搭祷波。(

Re bob t Yp Y Zfd ZYq̄ib Yq̄ q̄ b kl oq̄ l c q̄ b JfYl q̄ kd Nb  
kfkpr iY, (亚孔祷败兜搭抱部健薪细场大养。(

Pr p̄p̄fY fp fk q̄ b kl oq̄ l c Cr ol nb, (调根亚梅洲搭抱  
波。(

Abvil k fp Yk fpiYka Yq̄ q̄ b pl r q̄ l c ᑕafY, (踏率婉亚萧  
访切部搭细个兜。(

ᑕ fp Zl r kaba lk q̄ b pl r q̄ Zv DoYk` b, (切与动根急  
丝。(

ᑕ fp Y cYj l r p p̄q̄bbq̄ fk q̄ b pl r q̄ l c Jl kal k, (略婉念  
典切波细蚀薪其搭看。(

AefkY cY` bp q̄ b NY` fd` lk q̄ b bYp̄q̄ (中根祷块太末  
争。(lk薪急侈搭珠撒。

Re b` l r kq̄v fp Zl r kaba lk q̄ b t bpq̄ Zv Y pbY, (略个根  
家她方与攻急寂。(

Mk æ b kl œœ 1 c QfkdYm1 ob ifbp K YiYvpfY, (新加闪之抱  
婉礼来她亚。 (

## 66. 用于地点的at、in、on

庄样搭记导Yq<sub>o</sub> fk、lk态字)的可显邪来议球地点)请祸上料并世搭邪动)朵鞭将堪加显务明。

③刻创】英文介词用于地点的Yq<sub>o</sub> fk、lk, 有下列种种用法, 说Yq<sub>o</sub>比fk的意思要来得广, 如说Yq<sub>o</sub>æb`er o`e, 意思就是说fk lo kbYo æb`er o`e, 可知Yq<sub>o</sub>不像fk的只限于内部而已。现分别来看这三字的用法。

**At:** (/) 用于小城市, 村落, 建筑物, 公共团体等的前面。  
例:

F b t Yp Zl ok YqDbkdpe Yk, (赏巧亚罚套。(

Qe b t Yp bar`Yqpa YqRYft Yk Skfsbopfq, (尚婉亚奢大被习搭。(

Re bob Yob el qpmofkdp YqU r iYf, (宿来薪松双。(

(0) 单只当作一个地点看时, 虽大都会也用Yq<sub>o</sub> 例:

?k Ckdifpe I fkd t Yp`ol t kba YqNYofp, y y K Y`Yr iYv  
(薪细位庄束亚巴满即位。(

但由远地来看他本国的首都, 或他自己所居住的都市, 就要用fk, 而不用Yq<sub>o</sub>

(1) 在船碇泊或寄靠的港名或地名前用Yq<sub>o</sub> 例:

Re b pqpYj bo t fii q r`e (或`Yii (YqI bbir kd, (年担祸亚红隆始宾。(

Re b pe fm`Yiiba YqHYmYk, (担亚平卑始届。(

Re bob Yob Yit Yvp pbsboYi d obfdk pe fmp fk qe b e YoZl r o  
YqQfkdYml ob, (亚新加闪攻广中) 总薪花蚀外根年担始宾字。 (

(2) 活用场所的一点时也可用Yq。例:

U b j Yab Y`fo`ib) t fqe efj Yqqe b`bkqbo, (俗料显赏眼  
中心) 纪了细个圆烹。 (

Re bobq pl j bl kb Yqqe b al l o, (了口薪瞥来了。 (

U b dl ql ce Yqqe b t ol kd pqYql k, (俗料茅幢样下楚了。 (

U b Yoofsba Yql r o abpqkYql k Zbd ob aYoh, (俗料亚十基  
显念村第浅搭地了。 (

F b bkqboba qe b el r pb Yqqe b ZY`h al l o, (赏的鬼了家入  
肃中了。 (

F b ob`bfsba Y dl l a qpbYqj bkq Yqqe b eYkap l c efdeiv p  
hfiiba al`d op, (赏亚断草惹可搭瞎巧手千急委引恐。 (

Gdl q qe b fkd oj Yql k Yq d opq eYka, (俗错村意急盘  
鞭。 (

U e Yqqe b qbY`e bo pYvp l apk dl bp fk Yql kb bYo Yka l r  
q Yqqe b l qe bo, (惧师搭寒液个定掉家略个定掉池。 (

F b qe obt Y pq kb Yqqe b al d, (投石兴睡。 (

U b Yii iYr de ba Yqe fj , (俗料的途赏。 (

Re b t YqboYii j Yv Zb e bYoa YqY afpqYk`b l c q l j fibp,  
(木差亚课庄漫外可显驶村。 (

Qe b hbm q efj Yq Yoj q ibkdqe, (尚对赏必持相冬搭礁  
军。 (

㊦: (/) 用于国家, 大都会, 及其他政治上或地理上的大区分的前面。例:

U b ifsb fk QfkdYml ob, (俗料游亚新加闪。 (

RYft Yk Skfsbopfqy fp fk RYfmbf, (奢大亚奢抱。 (



(0) 用于包含在其中的意味时（不论市、镇、村等皆适用）。  
例：

Re bob Yob q̄ l Fr aae fpq q̄j mibp fk q̄ Yq sfiiYdb, (略船  
中薪课个伐留。 (

F fp obpfabk` b fp fk RYkifk, (赏家游亚祷林。 (

U e Yq fp q̄ bob fk q̄ Yq Zba fk q̄ b dYoabk? (害园漫略害  
但中婴搭什凉? (

(1) 用于pqbbq (街道) , 但美国用lk。例：

F b ifsbp fk NYoh JYkb, (赏游亚公园路。 (

F b ifsbp lk NYoh JYkb, [片根邪动]

GZl r de q fq YqY p̄ l mfk q̄ Yq pqbbq, (俗亚略蚀看千细家  
对中买搭。 (

(2) 凡某场所或地点的当中也用fk。例：

Re bob fp kl qY` il r a fk q̄ b phv, (爬十酸片巡。 (

Gifsb fk q̄ b kl oq̄ l c Qfk dYml ob, (俗游亚新加闪搭抱  
波。 (

F b afakq̄ j fka dl fkd fk q̄ b oYfk, (赏并记珠亚兄中  
走。 (

Re b` Yqt Yp ivfkd fk q̄ b pr k, (连辱亚太阳冬中。 (

**Mn:** (/) 表地点的接触。例：

U b iYfa Y` Yombq lk q̄ b dl l o, (俗料亚地板千某了细斐地  
设。 (另千搭急侈。

Jl l h Yq q̄ b mf q̄ ob lk q̄ b t Yii, (请看比千搭纪。 (垂意  
另搭急侈。

Re bob Yob j Ykv ifwYoap lk q̄ b` bfikd, (十害板千薪怪多  
比虎。 (另下搭急侈。

(0) 表地方的接壤。例：

Jl kal k fp pfqr Yqba l k qe b Pfsbo Re Yj bp, (念典位兴泰  
晤求固千。(

Rl ol kql fp Y iYodb `fqv l k qe b pe l ob l c JYhb MkqYofl ,  
(多念多婉哀大略国们搭大幢去。(

这个lk比Yq的意思更狭，例如：

Re bob fp Y Zfd mfk b+qbbb l k qe b ql ml c qe b e fii, (亚套荡  
千薪细株大松仍。(深中搭lk : lk qe b sbov pr j j fq) 破跟务  
Yqqe b ql ml c qe b e fii) 眼Yq: pl j bt e bob kbYo qe b ql m

同是用于地点的Yq与fk，一般的分别是大地方用fk，小地方用Yq，如：

GYoofsba YqQe Ykde Yf fk Ae fkY, (俗村第中根搭千攻。(

GYoofsba Yq Jr kdet Y fk Qe Ykde Yf, (俗村第千攻搭母  
际。(

还有自己居住的总觉得是大地方，离开了以后就认为它变小了，  
例如：

GYj fk RYfkYk kl t , (俗提亚亚奢切。(

Gt Yp YqRYfkYk qpk vbYop Ydl , (十吗念俗亚奢切。(

比较Yq、fk、lk在场所上的不同，如：

F b fp pqYkafkd Yqqe b `l okbo, (赏样亚极千。(液个Yq婉  
议地点搭) 破看搭转极尺。

Gd r ka qe b mfk fk qe b `l okbo l c qe b ol l j , (俗亚房恢搭  
极千野村了略大休针。(液个fk婉议极搭琴另) 火千沃Yq议外另  
搭并世。

Re bob fp Y aor dpq ob l k æ b `l okbo, (看极千薪家杂轰  
对。(液个l k婉议避另搭) 伤显架邪Yq袭婉可显搭。邪l k婉想眼  
对子婉极搭卑蓄) 并婉琴另。袭并婉外另) 顶婉琴外兼薪搭。

## 67. 用于时间的at、in、on

庄样搭记导Yq<sub>1</sub> fk、lk 恣字)的可显邪来议球轻恢)请祸上料并世搭邪动)朵鞭将堪加显务明。

③刻创】英文介词Yq<sub>1</sub> fk、lk,都可用于时间,Yq用于时间的一点(nl fkql c qj b),fk用于时间的期间(nbofl a l c qj b),lk用于时间的一日(aYv),或表示时间的接触的地方,故几点几分,天明,中午,日出,日没,始,终等概用Yq;日期,午前,午后,月,季,年,世纪等则概用fk;某日,星期几,某日的或某周日的朝夕,某场合等则概用lk。

**At:** 在下列短语中用Yq<sub>1</sub>

YqeYicmYpq qk (十时半), YqaYvZobYh (破晓), YqaYvifde q (黎明), Yqefde kl lk (正午), Yqpr kofpb (日出), Yqpr kpbq (日没), Yq q b Zbdfkkfkdl c q b j lk q (月初), Yq q Yqj lj bkq (那会儿), Yq q Yq qj b (那时候), Yq q fp qj b l caYv [vbYo] (在一天〔年〕的这个时候)。例:

Re b dYj b pqYoqp Yq pbsbk l &il`h, (背欺伸点英舰杰秋了。 (

Re b j fkb j Yv bunil ab YqYkv j lj bkq (地马随轻的可勤保东。 (

Bl k q al q l q fkd p YqY qj b, (并夕世轻砵做课活沔。 (

F b obYa q ol r de q b Zl l h YqY pf q fkd, (赏细口胜把略卑扰方暑了。(液婉把外眼转先眼细个轻恢了。

Re bv t bob pr omfpba Yq q b pqYkdb pfde q (赏料举村略绅著搭户蜡漠眼车惊。(液婉世轻盈球池叹帽艾乐搭粉盘来。

**Gn**: 在下列短语中用fk。

fk æ b aYvɔfj b (在白昼), fk æ b j l okfk d (上午), fk æ b Yɔpɔk l l k (下午), fk æ b bsbkfk d (晚上), fk Y t bbh (一星期内), fk H r iv (在七月内), fk pr j j bo (在夏天), fk æ b 2æ v bYo l c æ b Pbm r Zif l c Qfk dYm l ob (新加坡共和国建国第四年), f k æ b ɔt bkɔfbæ `bkɔr ov (二十世纪), fk [æ b j faaib l c] æ b kfde q (夜里)。例:

Rl hv l t Yp æ b pfɔp l c æ b Miv j m f p f k /742, (祷京婉细烂蜡息吗安林民克运凡健搭将拜地。 (

F b j bq j Ykv ɔj l r p j bk f k e f p ɔf j b, (赏亚细巧中健举了并少搭其瞥。(议目恢。

G i Zb obYav f k Y j fkr ɔp, (俗礼千舰愉杯好了。(议尖过。

Qe b t fii Zb YZib ɔl dbq YZl r q f k Y t bbh l o pl, (尚哑过细圆目户蜡舰可显走凡了。(议尖过。

Ge Ysbk ɔpbbk e f j f k vbYop, (多吗并举赏了。(液婉片根寒) 庄根务d o vbYop。

**Mn**: 在下列短语中用l k。

l k Qr kaYv (在星期天), l k æ b 7æ l c ?r dr p q (八月九日), l k Qr kaYv j l okfk d (星期天的早上), l k æ b j l okfk d l c æ b /3æ (十五日的早上), l k Lbt WbYo ɔp Csb (除夕), l k l kb l ``Ypfl k (在某一次, 曾经), l k æ b l ``Ypfl k l c e f p doYar Yɔfl k (在他毕业的时候)。例:

Gt Yp Zl ok l k æ b /p q l c Qbmɔbj Zbo, (俗亚烂月细平池巧。(

F b kbsbo `l j bp e bob l k t bbh aYvp, (赏亚圆目细村圆目蜡) 的来并村液漫来。(

F b `l j bp e bob l k Qr kaYvp, (赏草亚圆目十来到。(

GYj ibYsfkd l k q̣ b bsbkfkd l c q̣ b //q̣ , (俗亚十细平晚  
千凡薈。 (

Gj bq K o, U Yqpl k l k pbsboYi l ``Ypfl kp, (俗举过野祈逃  
巧好花道。 (

Mk `lj fkd r m ḍ q̣ b j (: Uebk eb `Yj b r m ḍ q̣ b j  
j () eb j Yab Y m i f q̣ Zl t , (冬赏走村赏料跟念轻) 强强细  
剑好。 (液婉把地点千搭急侈状邪村轻恢千砵。

Mk e f p obq̣ ok ḍ CkdiYka (: ? p pl l k Yp eb obq̣ okba c  
l CkdiYka (eb ZbdYk p q̣ avfkd iYt , (赏细合村庄根舰杰秋污  
方动老。 (

比较:

f k q̣ b j faaib l c q̣ b j l k q̣ (月之十平村月平院宗 (   
Yq q̣ b j faaib l c q̣ b j l k q̣ (月之十碎平念鬼 (

注意下面的说法:

F b Yoofsba bYoiv f k q̣ b j l okfkd,  
F b Yoofsba bYoiv q̣ f p j l okfkd,  
F b Yoofsba iYq̣ vbpq̣ o aYv j l okfkd,  
F b Yoofsba iYq̣ f k q̣ b j l okfkd vbpq̣ o aYv,  
F b Yoofsba q̣ b aYv Zbd ob vbpq̣ o aYv j l okfkd,  
F b Yoofsba f k q̣ b j l okfkd q̣ b aYv Zbd ob vbpq̣ o aYv,  
F b Yoofsba bYoiv l k K l kaYv j l okfkd,  
F b Yoofsba bYoiv f k q̣ b j l okfkd l k K l kaYv,  
F b Yoofsba l k q̣ b j l okfkd l c q̣ b /3q̣ ,  
F b Yoofsba f k q̣ b j l okfkd l k q̣ b /3q̣ ,

再分别下面的含义:

Mk Qr kaYv : Refp (Lbuq (Qr kaYv

Mk Y Qr kaYv : ?kv Qr kaYv

Mk Qr kaYvp : Csbv Qr kaYv

Lbuq Qr kaYv : Mk Qr kaYv kbuq

McY Qr kaYv : ?qplj bɕj b l k Qr kaYvp

最后一例是口语体：

F b t fii `l j b l cY Qr kaYv, (赏亚圆目十草来。(

ɕt fii eYmbk l cY j l okfk d, (液婉早千草东巧搭泐。(

又Yq用于elro、j fkr ɕ、pb`lka; lk用于aYv; fk用于vbYo、j l kɕ、t bbh。凡用fk的，必加冠词ɕb，用Yq的则不加，这大概是因为Yq的〔q〕音和冠词ɕb的〔q〕音会发生音的同化作用所致，如Yq kfde q, fk ɕb kfde q; Yq ibYpq, fk ɕb ibYpq; Yq pfde ql c, fk ɕb pfde ql c等等。

## 68. be known后用to, 鲜用by

庄样凡导细罢的可务唱忧凡与悲凡课方另) 破忧凡务zCsbvZl av il sbp ɸ b`e fia, (瞥瞥爱略头工。(à) 悲凡务zRe b`e fia fp il sba Zv bsbvZl av, (略头工眼瞥瞥伤爱。(à。刺破凡导 hkl t) 舰并勤务Zb hkl t k Zv) 顶夕务Zb hkl t k q) 并刻获故?

③刻创】英文的动词可分为两种，一种是动作性的动词，如z?j bof Y t Yp afp`l sboba Zv Al ir j Zr p, (美洲是哥伦布所发现的。) à, 这个 afp`l sbo的动词，是一种动作。另一种是状态性的动词，如zRe b`e fia fp il sba Zv bsbvZl av, (那小孩为人人所爱。) à, 这个il sb的动词，就是一种状态。上面都是用被动语态说的，如改为主动语态时，便成zAl ir j Zr p afp`l sboba ?j bof Y,à及zCsbvZl av il sbp ɸ b`e fia,à。大部分的被动语态都可以说出动作的主体(Ydbkq)，如Zv后面的z人à, 但有些被动语态，称为z孤立的被动语态à, 因为只表现出动作的结果，而不说明动作者是谁，如：

Re b al l o fp p e r q k l t , (了提亚呼字。(

单说门现在是关着的状态，至于是谁造成这种状态的，即谁关上的，全然不在话下。因此这种被动语态，是不能改为主动语态的。我们不知是谁把门关上的，所以称为孤立的被动语态。句中的p e r q虽过去分词，但在本质上实应看成一个形容词，由反义的句子中便可看得出来：zRe b al l o fp l m b k k l t , (门现在开着。) à。因为有形容词的本质，所以不说l m b k b a, 而索性用形容词的l m b k。不问是动作性的动词或是状态性的动词，都可以用作孤立的被动语态。由那动词所表现的结果而产生出一种状态来，门由z被关上à而产生出z关着à的状态，动作的主体完全消失了，所以无法再加上Zv什么人，而要改用其他的介词，这就是Zb hkl t k q的成因，他例如：

GYj mibYpba t fɸ ɸ b Zl v, (俗怪叹翰液少吗。(



F b t Yp YZpl oZba fk obYafkd, (赏右心方扰。 (

F b fp abfoj fkba q eYsb efp l t k t Yv, (赏相皮教皮夕  
眼伤袖眼。 (

以上这些文句也都是不能加Zv, 或改为主动语态的。同样地, 我们说:

Re fp Zl l h fp hkl t k q bsbovZl av, (液卑扰瞥瞥的知  
存。 (

英文的hkl t 这个动词, 原来是状态性的动词, 现成为状态性的被动语态, 我们也可以把这个过去分词当作形容词看待(如上述fp per q的per q, 与fp l mbk的l mbk相当), 自然也成为孤立的被动语态之一了。句中的q 决不可以换为Zv, 因为hkl t 一个动作, 并无动作的主体(Ydbkq), 句子只说z这本书大家都知道à, 并没有说是z谁à使大家知道的。它只表出大家都知道的那种状态而已。这个hkl t k既然与形容词相似, 它后面的q, 也就跟用在正式形容词后的q 一样, 例如zF b fp Yqpkqfsb q efp qY e bo, (他用心听讲。) àzQe b fp Zifka q l e bo pl k q cYr i q, (她对儿子的过失盲无所见。) à是决不能把它改为Zv的。同时这两个句子自然也不能改为主动语态。

但英文中是有Zb hkl t k Zv的说法的, 例如, 《圣经—马太福音》十二章三十三节上, 就有q e b qbb fp hkl t k Zv e fp cor fq (看果子就可以知道树), 现在一般说成z? qbb fp hkl t k Zv fqp cor fq à, 意指观其言行可知其人。同样还有一句常言说道:

? j Yk fp hkl t k dv q e b`l j mYkv e b hbbmp, (权深伤与  
绝字可知深瞥之提恶。 (

以上这两句中的Zv, 都不是被动语态的Zv, 而只是表示z手段à的一个介词。在hkl t k之后, Zv之前, 不妨加q r p二字进去, 说成z? j Yk fp hkl t k q r p Zv q e b`l j mYkv e b hbbmp, à就更明白了。在Zv前的hkl t k, 实有obYifwba (了解) 或afpqfkd r fpe ba (辨别) 的意思, 而Zv则有判断之意。偶然也见有用Zb hkl t k Zv作为被动语态的, 如:

F b ifsbp Yil kb) fk ml sbopv) p`Yo` biv) hkl t k *du* efp k  
bfde Zl r op, y y K Yr de Yj : *E U ofpofp Ll qdll h* (赏亚快瞥  
料花儿并知存搭状态下) 熟睛孤话地巧恨字。 (

Mc`l opb (: `l r opb () efp YæYfo t fœ K YZbi Br kpd k  
t l r ia kbsbo eYsb dl qd Zb hkl t k *du* j b Zr qd oj v dobYc  
r pb d FoYat bii fk `Yoovfk d kl qpp, y y C, Ne fiiml qpp: *Reb  
Fro Yk Dlu* (冬皮) 高班世伟差九研火辞若电突长搭貌儿良豹  
儿搭恋爱) 俗近怕永远袭并健知存) 破跟并婉赏夕俗春赏传递盘  
扰搭寒。 (

但这种表现是不足为法的。正规的用法还是 *Zb hkl t k d* , 这才是现代英语的表现。

*Qfp hkl t k d* dt j bk, (少薪瞥知存。 (

F b fp nr fop r khkl t k d j b, (俗细点袭并知存赏。 (

Gal kæp fkh e bop hkl t k d Ykv Zl av e bob, (俗邮液儿辆  
薪瞥贫睛赏。 (

K Ykv eYa Zbbk nbopl kYiiv hkl t k d Q`ol l db, y y Bf  
hbkp: *E Ae ofpqp Yp AYdi* (在多瞥的火情克隆红薪私绝。 (

? vl r kd j Yk sbop pifde qiv hkl t k d Ykv l cr p, y y ?r  
pdpk (细个火俗料素获瞥的怪少数来搭爬吗。 (

F l t il kd eYp eb hkl t k l cœfp? U bii) fqt Yp hkl t k q  
l efj œfp j lok+fk d bYoiv, y y F Yoav (赏知存液洒薪多见了?  
扎) 纪十细早赏尝知存搭。 (

## IX 成 语

### 69. on the side of the angels

?ial r p Fr uibv 务搭 zU e bk Yk Yoqfpq a bpboqp ql qe b pfab l c q  
e b Ykdbip fq fp qe b j l pql afl r p l c qpbYpl kp, à 并知状破获乡动?  
句中 qe b pfab l c qe b Ykdbip 婉更眼细唱语? 池典破获?

③刻创】赫胥黎说的这句话，应译作z艺术家逃亡到传统派去的时候，便是最可恨的叛逆了à。为什么我要把qe b pfab l c qe b Ykdbip译作z传统派à呢？这是需要很多的说明的。这个片语照字面翻译时是z天使一方面à，怎么艺术家逃到天使一方面去时，就是最大的叛逆呢？这据常情是讲不通的。我们必须找出这句话的出典，才能着手翻译。

话说英国维多利亚女王的朝代，出了一位卓越的政治家，他的名字叫作迪斯雷利（Fbk gYj fk BfpoYbif, /6. 2y /66/）。他曾两度出任首相，又做过财政大臣。他也是一位小说家，著有好几部小说，流传至今。当他在/642年从财政大臣的职位挂冠下来，乐得无官一身轻，正好寄情山水。恰在那年//月末，在牛津地方举行一个有关宗教的会议，迪斯雷利也被邀出席。主要的议题是讨论进化论冒犯宗教的问题。

达尔文（Ae Yoibp BYot fk, /6. 4y /660）于/637年//月02日问世的《物种起源》（Reb Mofdfk l c Qnbefbp）一书，还没有到预定的出版日期，/03. 本的初版书早已抢购一空。当然读者是有反应的，有人把他这书看作宗教论文，有人又把它看作反宗教的论文。他在剑桥大学的老师，不许图书馆购买此书，以免学生阅读。别的还可

以忍受，唯有说人是猴子变的这一点，那些老教授们是怎样也忍受不了的。全国都把达尔文看作一个宗教的叛徒，幸亏有几个年轻的朋友声援他，其中最有力的就是赫胥黎（*Re1j Yp Fbkov Fr uibv*, /603 y /673, 为?ial r p Fr uibv的祖父）教授。辩论达到最高潮是在/64. 年4月05日，不列颠协会（*Fofqpe ? ppl`fYqfl k*）在牛津开会，与赫胥黎教授对抗的是牛津有才干的主教威尔伯福斯（*QYj r bi UfiZboc l o`b*）。这位主教事先曾找到一位博物学者帮忙，获得了一些有关猩猩等的脚形和脑的大小种种知识，但是他得意忘形，竟出语轻薄地问赫胥黎到底是从父系还是从母系由猴子变成。赫教授回答说：z我并不以由猴子变成为可耻，但我感到可耻的是一个有天赋才能的人，竟滥用他的天赋，来谈论他自己所不懂得的事，以偏见和迷信的灰尘投入一般人的眼中。ā那位主教便再没有话说了。进化论的学说问世五年之后的/642年，可说是攻击达到最高潮的时候（十年之后达尔文才获得胜利，世界的人都信服了）。在牛津举行的那一次会议上，有人问到迪斯雷利关于进化论的意见时，他便说出了这样一句名言：

Re b nr bpqfl k fp qe fp: Qj Yk Yk Ynb l o Yk Ykdbi? Qj v il oa) Yj l k qe b pfab l c qe b Ykdbip, (问狮婉液样搭：警婉归子憾婉十请？俗披婉样亚十请搭细部。（

他所谓z站在天使的一边ā，是传统的看法，意谓他不认为人是从下等动物进化而来，而应是上帝造出来的，所以人是靠近天使的。从他说了这句话一百年来，科学昌明，不见得人们还会同意他的见解，不过他说的这句话，zl k qe b pfab l c qe b Ykdbipā，却成为典故，被人时常引用，而具有z传统的见解，正确的立场ā的意思了。即是对于一个未决的问题以传统而更可喜的意见加以接受（Ydobb t fqe qe b l o qel al u Yka j l ob mibYpYkqsfbt l c Yj l l qnr bpqfl k）。

请看下面*Re b NYqpbok l c Ckdifpe*书中的例：

zBfcbobkq col j à) obj fkap qe b obYabo qe Yqt e Yqpsbo l c ebo j Yk e Ysbal kb Yka) fkabba) t e Yqpsbo e b efj pbic pYf a fk efp l t k kl q (qe Yqzafcbobkqà`Yk l kiv Zb d iil t ba Zv zcol j à Yka kl q Zv zq à fp Y pr nbopqfl k () Dl t ibo efj pbic fp l k qe b pfab l c qe b Ykdbip, y y E, F, TYiifkp (afcbobkq col j 搭避提动) 请方夜邮难鞭警伤做搭) 显结Dl t ibo卑警亚倍记

中伤务搭y y 赏务afcbobkq鬼译勤急邪ωlj ) 并勤急邪q 婉瓶员  
y y Dl t ibo卑瞥婉传势派。(

## 70. go west的来历

庄语务z死à薪务dl t bpq搭) 并知池欲获典?

③刻创】dl [dl kb] t bpq一辞据说是起源于第十六世纪, 但成为一般通用的俚语, 则是在第一次世界大战的时候。在十九世纪以前, 英国和大陆国家战争, 只能说是向东或向南, 只有在第一次世界大战中, 才有所谓西线, 是战争最激烈, 死人最多的地方。一个德国兵战后把那惨状描写出来的《西线无战事》这部小说, 风行一时。Re b Lbt Abkq ov Bfeql kYov (有英国版也有美国版) 上说: z (Al iil n,) fopq fk Fofqpe pl iafbop&r pbà (最初是英国兵用起来的)。一般的字典上都注明这是军中俗语。美国《韦氏国际大辞典》上说, zmo l ZYZiv ol j bYoifbo ?j bof Yk dl kb t bpq fkd r kl odYkfwba qpoof q ovà, 认为大概由于美国西部未开发时, 去那里的美国人少有生还的关系而有此说法的。这当然是根据美国人的立场来说的。

Jvkk Rel okafhb著《世界文化史》(第二编第四章) 上说, 古代埃及俄塞里斯的神话, 曾说到俄塞里斯死后成神, 统治尼罗河以西的土地, 而为冥王, 故欧美一直沿用往西为死云云。

又据Dobt bop Bfeql kYov l c NeoYpb Yka DYdib所载, 也说dl t bpq一辞, 通用于第一次世界大战期间, 其起源应与z日落于西à有关, 太阳西沉, 表示死去, 这可说是人类最早的想法, 在希腊的谚语中, 早已提到过了。上述辞典中对于这个成语的解释分为:

(/) 说人时, 意为死去。

(0) 说事物时, 意为失去, 或床头金尽, 或永得不到, 例如:

Kv `eYk`b l cmol j l qf k eYp dl kb t bpq (俗永酸加投搭角健了。(

我国也有**z**归西**à**的说法，是指死后升天，到西天去的意思。至于作**z**死**à**解的**z**没**à**字上冠以一个**z**西**à**字，也足证以太阳西没来表示人的死，是中外一致的。胡曾《咏史诗》有这样的句子：**z**陆机西没洛阳城，吴国春风草又青。**à**

## 71. 英文的典故

方远尤〔乌福乡〕细样) 知存z伤饭长舟à液样搭细个典故) 可乡唱庄样q `ol pp qe b Pr Zf l k Yka Zr ok l kb q Zl Yq) 想眼罗礼廉踏大渡抵过篮背林固) 即缸舟显球薪家酸手搭教心) 泗与中根视起游雄伤眼正世) 故可对乡。可举庄样中袭薪典故。请祸源士邪搭庄样典故略将戎堪。

③刻创】是的，英文中也有典故，用得恰当时，比译成一大堆的字句要精彩得多。现就常见者举出如下：

(/) El oafYk hkl q: qe b hkl q qfba Zv El oaf p, Yk`fbkqI f kd l cNeovdfY, Gt Yp`r qZv ?ibuYkabo qe b EobYq 希腊神话弗里吉亚国王的难结，按神谕能解此结者，即可为亚细亚王，后亚历山大大帝以剑砍断之。所以后人说`r q qe b El oafYk hkl q有z困难迎刃而解a的意思。例如：

Re b hkl qt ef e vl r qel r deq Y El oafYk l kb t fii r kqfb fqbic Zbd ob vl r, (码伤贫眼困罗之点) 祸欲皮刻教。(

Gf p qe b bk qe r pfYpj l cvl r qe qe Yq`r qp qe b El oafYk hkl qt ef e Ydb`Yk+kl qr kqfb, (惧吗警伤并勤刻教搭罗狮由爬吗警搭漂常顶获错刻教。(

(0) F bibk l cRol v: Eobbh Jbdbka, qe b ZbYr qf r i t fdb l cI fld K bkb iYr p l cQmYoqY, t el pb YZar`ql k Zv NYofp`Yr pba qe b Rol gYk U Yo, 希腊传说中古代斯巴达王墨涅拉俄斯的绝色妃子，后为帕里斯所诱拐，因此发生z特洛伊城之战a，终致特洛伊城之毁灭，今引申以喻美女。

Di o j v mYoq) fc Gal kl q bumb`q q e Ysb Y F bibk l cRol v) Gal kl q qe fkh Gpe Yii Zb YZib q mr qr mt fqe Yk r div t l



j Yk, (舰俗来务) 预请俗并易烟娶细个她施细罢搭片貌) 俗卹俗  
袭并勤拼委升细个仗旅。(

(1) ?al kfp: Y eYkapl j b vl r kd j Yk il sba Zv ?m̥ ol afɸ  
(Tbkr p), 希腊神话中为维纳斯女神所钟爱的美男子。

F b fp nr fɸ Yk ?al kfp, (赏医婉细个雀勋三搭片且子。(

? pel oqɪfsba mibYpr ob fp `Yiiba ?al kfp dYoabk, (转入  
统土搭令乐舰集约片少吗搭害园。(

(2) Qe boil `h F1 ij bp: 英国小说家?oɸ r o Al kYk Bl vib所  
作的侦探小说中的名侦探, 中国译作福尔摩斯。

Qɪ afakɪ qYhb Y Qe boil `h F1 ij bp qɪ Ykpt bo ɸ Yq nr bpɸ  
1 k, (并需夕反订七若来刻教液个问狮。(

(3) ?if bɸ j Ydf il l hfkd diYpp: 英国作家Jbt fp AYool ii  
(为牛津大学数学讲师Ae Yoibp Jr ɸ fadb Bl adpl k的笔名) 著有*Eif  
eb fk Ul kabaiYka*及*Red r de ɸ b Jl l hfkd EiYpp*两部童话, 一举成  
名。

Qɪ t Yp ifhb ?if bɸ j Ydf il l hfkd diYpp, GpYt j vpbicɔb  
pe Yka kbt Yka afɔbɔbkɪ y y Hr av EYoiYka (好通亚爱开  
若搭骑筒中细样) 俗看举了新搭并世搭俗。(

## 72. a favorite son

亚片根杂志中举薪Y cYsl ofq pl k液个其导) 刺并勤约z聪儿à刻) 想样君并士) 并知抹外憾薪什凉慌诸?

③刻创】这是一句美国话，普通英文辞典少有收载。原为对美国国父华盛顿的敬称（`lj j bkaYq ov qfqb dfsbk q Ebl odb UYpe fk dq k），后来便应用到其他的人身上了。这个名词现在有两种含义。一为在其本乡本土，因有卓越的成就，而为人所尊敬颂扬的名人（Y c Yj lrpj Yk elkl oba Yka mYfpba fk efp kYqsb`fqv lo QqYq, Z b`Yr pbl cefp Y`efbsbj bkqp）。一为受到他家乡的市或州的政治领袖们所眷顾，而予以提名为高官，尤其是总统的候选人（Y`YkafaYq b cYsl oba Zv qe b nl ifq Yi ibYabop l cefp lt k pqYq, `fqv, bq, d oklj fkYql k q Y efde l cf b, bprnb`fYiiv qe b mōbpfabk`v）。当美国总统竞选的年头，报章杂志上提到此语的时候，多半是指上举的第二种含义。例如在/746年6月的时候，对总统及副总统提名竞选，正进入白热化，在美国新闻处的报道中，便有下列一类的文句出现：

JYq ?r dr pq04) Ykl qe bo cYsl ofq pl k t fqaobt efp`Y kafaY`v) fk cYsl rol cKo, Frj meobv, (亚6月下招搭04平) 心薪细位即维瞥手池) 显支持汉返莱房总势狼维。(

QbkYq o Ebl odb ?, Qj Yqe bop l c Dil ofaY pYfa eb t l ria kl qZb miY`ba fk klj fkYql k Yka qe Yqeb t Yp qe ol t fkd efp 35 sl qpp fk qe b Dil ofaY abibdYql k q qe b Tf b Nobpfabkq R efp ibYsbp pbsbk cYsl r ofq pl kp t fqe plj b 13. sl qpp pqfii e liafk dfoj, (千沃手池失其狼维搭伐罗漫第州州长若礼瑟若参议员务) 赏并夕失其) 伤显赏可显把伐罗漫第春避搭碎十伸票邪来支持房总势汉返莱狼维。液样细来) 闭译突下伸位即维瞥) 苹皮赴摇速字学态吧碎十斐维票。(

Gt Yəp El sbokl o FYol ia Fr de bp eYa t fəaoYt k efp cY  
sl ofp pl k `Ykaf+aY`v /O aYvp Ydl Yka pel oqiv Yəpbot Yoap  
Ykkl r k`ba efp pr nml oq d o K o, K`+AYoəv, (爱古际州长休  
若亚十夫十念手池即维) 随鬼并见舰唯差赏支持励阶踏狼维。(

现在再看作家HYj bp Fov`b笔下用到cYsl ofqp pl k的文句：

Robj bkal r p bəd oq p Yob j Yab d dbq qe b pb` l ka DYsl of  
 qəp j bk d YZYk+al k qe bfo` e fbc Yka zpt fkd fkd ifkbà d o p  
 l j b BYoh Fl opb l o DYsl of q Ql k) t fqe t el pb sl qəp qe bv  
 j Yv j Yhb e bYa qfii l qe bo cY qf l kp oYiiv d qe bj , (多了瑚大  
 搭拉尝请错多夫孤叹爱夜搭波下放能赏料搭犬溃) 顶转同细个珠  
 外获错失其搭瞥或婉细个应烟伤划搭即维瞥) 薪了赏搭维票) 赏  
 料闭可显家外) 意村鞭搭头粗派的来班由赏料眼止。(

### 73. simile和metaphor

庄样搭pfj fib火j bqYmelo的婉z背作à) 并知夫夜亚邪动千薪获朵鞭?

③刻创】 pfj fib是明喻, j bqYmelo是隐喻。把明喻紧缩起来, 便成隐喻, 把隐喻敷衍一下, 便成明喻。明喻的字数多, 而隐喻惯常只有一个字。例如: z?ii cibpe fp doYpp, (ØY. ui, 4) (凡有血气的尽都如草。) à是隐喻, 而zØk qe bj l okfk d qe bv Yob ifhb doYpp t e f`e dol t bq r m (NpYi. u`, 3) (早晨他们如生长的草。) à便是明喻了。明喻和隐喻不同, 可从其中看出一个作家的文艺技巧来。任何作家都有他独特的明喻, 英国作家从莎士比亚以来, 不知写出了多少新鲜奇特的明喻, 使他们的彩笔生花。

在明喻的前面, 通常用得要有ifhb或Yp的字样。在修辞上拿另外一个人或一样东西来相比, 无非是想加强语气, 所以这种用法, 又叫加强的明喻 (fkqkpfvfk d pfj fib); 它有两种形式, 其一为用一定的对象来比拟的, 如ZiY` h Yp Y oYsbk (像乌鸦一般的黑), 另一为没有一定的对象作比的, 如Yp diYa Yp Ykvqe fkd (高兴已极); Yp mō l r a Yp mō l r a (`Yk Zb) (骄傲已极)。这种加强的明喻有时简直毫无意义, 如Yp`ll i Yp Y`r`r j Zbo (冷静如黄瓜); Yp abYa Yp Y all o+kYfi (死寂如门钉) 等, 并不是拿什么来比较, 实在是不成比较, 完全为加强语气而使用罢了。另外是普通实际可以比拟的, 所谓记述的明喻 (abp`ofmfsb pfj fib) 如pkl t ifhb t l l i (像棉花似的白雪); Yp Yifhb Yp pkl t +ad mp (像初春开白花的雪花莲一般的相似); Yp Zfqpo Yp dYii (像胆一样苦); Yp ZoYsb Yp Y ifl k (其勇如狮); Yp Zofde q Yp Y al iiYo (雪亮如银元); Yp Zofph Yp Y Zbb (活跃如蜜蜂); Yp dfoj Yp Y ol`h (安如磐石) 等等。

现在引用作家们所用的明喻, 必然更加出色:

F bYsbk qpr iv hkl t p qe Yq qel r Yob dYipb Yp e bii, y y Q  
e YhbprnbYob (十公脾清知存码婉虚斯闲瑚搭警。 (

F b t Yp j l aboYqiv qpr qe r i d t Yoap j bk) Zr q d t l  
j bk ifba ifhb Y AobqYk, y y F Yoav (赏对且警务寒憾相冬医  
清) 刺对兴貌警披立口喝言。 (

F b t fpe ba e b j fde q Zb ZiYp qba fce b t Ypk q Yp aov Yp  
Y ifj bZYphbq, y y Bf hbkp (赏务赏医婉口紧错并错了。 (

Qe b q d o qv) Yka Yp d r de Yka Yp pl r o Yp qe fp Zfq l cib  
j l k nbbi, y y Re Y hboYv (尚吗闲息十) 顶孰世刚争错通液经  
柠烈搭灭细样。 (

zU e Y q r mt f qe vl r ? aYphba BbkkYkq, zvl r il l h Yp  
dir j Yp Ykv j l k + hbv, a y y E Yipt l o qe v (z码怎凉旧? 忧修  
错通归子细样。 a大切省问。 (

Re bv Yob Yp qYii Yp Y qpb Yka Yp Zfd ol r ka Yp Y `er o`  
e, y y K Yoh Rt Yfk (略遇坚后高错通仍细样) 蓄水大错好三细  
座教深。 (

Fr q kl kb l c qe bpb p` Yop t bob o bpe, Re bv t bob Yp l ia  
Yp bol pfl kp fk Y dpe ibpp a bpbq, y y F bj fkd t Yv (液遇题挂  
辆薪细个婉新搭。上料的耐惧错好通略憾思才唱凄时搭彻攻细  
样。 (

Re b `l ia t fkap , , , t e f p q fkd ifhb Y j Yaj Yk ZobYq f k  
d qe ol r de `ibk` e ba qbb qe, y y A Yiat bii (略官耳舰好通细个  
狂警知夹牙呼亚挤吸三搭挤徒字。 (

明喻是怎样一回事我们都明白了, 接着我们再来看看隐喻的真  
相。例如:

Re b `r o qYfk l c Rfj b e Yp aol mmba il kd pfk` b r ml k qe Yq  
p` bkb, (略东巧搭泐盘早唱偿厚了。 (

句中的`r o qYfk就是一个隐喻。他如Y pkYhb fk qe b doYpp (看不  
见的危险, 隐匿的敌人); `l l i l k b qe b bip (使之久待); Y pnr Yo

b mbd fk Y ol r ka e l ib ( 桷凿不入) ; Zr ok qe b ` Ykaib YqZl qe bk  
ap ( 浪费精力) ; j Yhb Zl qe bkapj bbq ( 量入为出) 。又如:

F b bj ZYohba bYoiv l k qe b pbY l c mr Zif` ifcb) t e bob e b  
` ifj Zba YqiYpqql qe b sbov pr j j fql c pr `` bpp, ( 赏怪早舰答  
千了听健搭攻担) 终兴没千了唱喊搭荡点。 (

莎士比亚在《麦克白》一剧的第五幕第五场中有一段话, 是以拟  
人化的笔法, 说出最深刻的隐喻, 特引用在此, 作一结束。

Rl tj l ool t ) Yka ql tj l ool t ) Yka ql tj l ool t )  
Aobbmp fk qe fp mbqpy mY` b ol j aYv ql aYv  
Rl qe b iYpqpviiYZib l cob` l oaba qfj b,  
?ka Yii l r o vbpqboaYvp e Ysb ifde qba d l ip  
Re b t Yv ql ar pqv abYqe, Mr q) l r q) Zofbc` Ykaib  
Jfcbp Zr qY t Yihfk d pe Yal t ) Y ml l o miYvbo  
Re Yqpqr qp Yka obqp e fp e l r o r ml k qe b pqYdb  
?ka qe bk fp e bYoa kl j l ob: fqfp Y qYib  
Rl ia Zv Yk fafl q) or ii l cpl r ka Yka or ov)  
Qfdkfcvfk d kl qe fkd,

( 明十、明十、心明十) 户享舰液样细十细十搭先步同念  
没) 意村轻恢搭记难之源鬼搭细字, 每细十的也惜字租瞥走千划  
场搭死路。灭了傲) 灭了傲) 蒂蒂搭用火! 瞥巧并过婉个瞥外凡  
搭享准) 亚奢千高想炉步搭细个可怜搭真员) 显鬼闭驶并举赏  
了, 并过婉细个傻子务搭故迳) 务错候爱界慨) 披够酸珠诸。 (   
( 们清暑乡 (

## 74. 放屁、撒尿、拉屎的英文

呼兴z放敏ǎz踏秋ǎz九屎ǎ搭庄样) 亚扰卑千怪罗伟村) 并知庄片  
瞥婉怎样务搭?

③刻创】关于屎尿屁一类的话，从前只有吴稚晖先生大胆地形诸笔墨，一般文人学士都不敢挂齿，认为粗鄙，太不雅了。其实尽管不说，谁都不能不有此作为；尽管说来不堪入耳，学习英文的大人先生们，也不妨自己知道一下。

试查《汉英新辞典》，放屁译成ZobYh t fka，撒尿作nYpp r ofk b和j Yhb t Yqbo，至于拉屎，这部辞典不载，《马修汉英辞典》则译为dl q pql i。我们知道在卑语中，撒尿还可以说nfpp（见《综合英汉大辞典》720页），或是mr j mpe fm（见《英文习语大全》6/4页），但我们很少听见外国人说，在书报上也很少见，他们到底是不是像辞典上所载的那样说呢？现就个人所读过的有限的书上，举出下列一些文人笔下所描写的例子，以资谈屎尿屁之一助。

AoYuf Yka Fl oq̄ t bob Yil kb nr fqb̄ aor kh, U e bk q̄ b cYc̄  
AoYuf pYt̄ q̄ b K Yḡ o) e b pYfa q̄ Fl oq̄ : zQe Yii t b obifbsb  
kYqr̄ ob l k q̄ b ibd l c q̄ b K fpqbo K Yḡ o? ãFl oq̄ pYfa: zFYsb  
vl r Ykv ibcq̄? ãAoYuf pYfa Zl Ypqr̄ iiv) ZbYqfkd efj p̄bic l k c̄  
e b`e bpq̄: zḠ Gt Ykq̄ba, G`l r ia obifbsb j v̄pbic d o q̄t l el r o  
p) Yka q̄ b k Gt l r ia p̄q̄ii Zb YZib q̄ nYpp t fka d o f̄q̄pbk j  
fkr̄ q̄p, Qe Yii t b al fql k q̄ b ibd l c q̄ b K fpqbo K Yḡ o? ãy y  
Hl e k F bopbv: E Dbii d o EaYkl (译突下克九她火薄若课瞥亚  
略漫) 闲尖鼓错聚醉了。冬略对孟搭克九她看举了少突搭轻即)  
赏舰对薄若务: z俗料踏细泡秋亚少突逃巧搭咖千好并好? ã薄若  
务: z码憾薪秋好踏怕? ã克九她群宇晚狗) 大弹大爵地务: z破跟  
俗夕踏搭寒) 俗可显细裸踏课个英休并始) 踏过了秋之鬼) 俗憾  
可显放十碎朵英搭敏。俗料夕并夕亚少突逃巧搭咖千来细下? ã(

上举对话中所谓obifbsb kYqr ob（解放自然），就是因为大小便是人生不可免的事，有时说得更明白一点，则为Ykpt bo kYqr ob~~o~~ `Y ii或Ykpt bo ~~o~~ b `Yii l c kYqr ob（应付自然的要求），即是说我们要大小便是出于自然，我们无法支配它的。请再看下面的例：

Re b kbuqj l okfk d) Rr bpaYv) Jfddbq dl q Yt Yhb t f~~o~~ Y k YsboYdb e Ykd+l sbo) ~~o~~ b hfka ~~o~~ Yq obj fkaba efj l c j l o kfkdp Y~~o~~bo d l ~~o~~ZYii dYj bp Yka Zl Yq oY` bp) bu` bmq ~~o~~ Yq Y~~o~~ bo Y kfde ~~o~~ aofkhfk d ifhb iYpq kfde ~~o~~ e b `l r ia kl q `l r kql k mY~~o~~fYi ob` l sbov t f~~o~~ fk Y d~~o~~t j fkr ~~o~~pp Y~~o~~bo Ykpt bofk d ~~o~~ b `Yii l c kYqr ob) Yka Y~~o~~bo Y aYv l c p~~o~~bkr l r p Y~~o~~ib~~o~~ p kY qr ob al bp kl q Yit Yvp `Yii) Yq ibYpq kl q Zbd ob e b t Yp Yq d md oj , y y Hl ek M~~o~~YoY: *Dr ~~o~~bo~~o~~bia 6* (多夫十圆目夫搭早千) 慢肤省弯来搭轻即) 也堪点宇花朵森醉) 请赏邨难亚足鼠背欺或婉夹担背欺之鬼搭多夫十早千搭盘袜) 驰断婉通怨系略样鼓了细系搭酒) 赏尝并勤富亚九过屎之鬼舰何复细败坚敲搭) 顶亚猎苦地运凡了细十之鬼) 多夫十早千闭并细乏九错池屎来) 因少亚赏暑全何复显念婉九并池来搭。(

除此之外，又可说kYqr oYi kb` bppf~~o~~ (自然的需要)，或是`boq Yfk kb` bpp+Yov ~~o~~ k` q~~l~~ k l c ~~o~~ b Zl av (肉体上某种必要的作用)，如下例：

Qe b ~~o~~ l r de q Ge Ya dl kb ~~o~~ bob l r q l c Y kYqr oYi kb` bppf ~~o~~) Zr qfq t Yp kl q q~~o~~r b, y y Qe bot l l a ?kabopl k: *E Q~~l~~ av Rbiibo~~o~~ Q~~l~~ av* (尚显眼俗婉村啊仍鬼另碑刻手搭) 深清并皮。(

U e bk m~~o~~bppba Zv Y kYqr oYi kb` bppf~~o~~ ~~o~~ bv obifbsba ~~o~~ b j pbisbp fk ~~o~~ b l mbk p~~o~~b~~o~~q t f~~o~~ l r q obdYoa d ~~o~~ b mYppbop+Z v, y y K Yr de Yj : *Bl k DbokYkal* (冬闭解搭轻即) 赏料袭舰干并错悲过路搭瞥看举) 译好冬看九屎了。(

Re bob t Yp ~~o~~ b vYoa t f~~o~~ l r q Ykv doYpp Yka Yq l kb pfa b) Zv Y e fde Zl Yoa d~~o~~k` b) Y il kd t l l abk pe ba fk d t e f e t b t bkq d nbod oj `boqYfk kb` bppYov ~~o~~ k` q~~l~~ kp l c ~~o~~ b Zl a v, y y ?kabopl k: *E Q~~l~~ av Rbiibo~~o~~ Q~~l~~ av* (略院子漫辆薪长细



点才) 亚显高搭律板过杰搭细部) 薪细个长搭律颜床入) 俗料舰村略漫另砰大头闭。(

还有所谓krj Zbo l kb和krj Zbo q t l的说法, 例如:

Qe b t Yp e l i a f k d J f q i b A Y q e b o f k b, J f q i b A Y q e b o f k b t Yp i f h b Y a l i i) l k i v p e b t Yp e b Y s v) Y k a Y a l i i k b s b o t b q e b o a f Y n b o p i f h b J f q i b A Y q e b o f k b a f a, W r ` l r i a e l i a Y a l i i d o b s b o) Y k a k b s b o Z b t b q a l j k r j Z b o l k b, y y H Y j b p D Y o o b i i: *E U l a i a G L b s b o K Y a b* (尚正抱宇头阶起林。头阶起林好通细个争宅宅细样) 译婉尚背争宅宅夕重遇) 顶争宅宅教并健通头阶起林细样) 把尚搭秋差茅湿搭。码可显永远抱宇细个争宅宅) 教并健悲秋茅湿细蓄搭。(

这是说K YodYobq抱着她的小妹妹AYqe bofkb的情形。其中所谓第一号(krj Zbo l kb)是指撒尿。第二号(krj Zbo q t l)就是拉屎。如下例是K YodYobq告诉她妈妈说她的小弟弟Bbk kfp不乖,拉了屎在裤子里。

zK Yj Y) B b k k f p f p Z Y a, F b a f a k r j Z b o q t l f k e f p m Y k q p, a (妈妈) 债麻若并刚。赏把屎九亚裤子漫了。(

对于第一号或第二号的行为, 动词除用al 以外, 还可以用j Yh b, 如:

zGt Yk q d l d l q e b n l q Y k a j Y h b k r j Z b o l k b) a A Y q e b o f k b p Y f a) zW r Y o b Z f d b k l r d e q l a l q e Y q d o v l r o p b i c) a J f w w p Y f a, y y D Y o o b i i: *L l Q q Y o q J l p q* (阶起林务: z俗夕砰踏秋纹。a卡起务: z码液样大了) 欲华的并健砰踏秋怕? a (

句中说的nl q, 当然是指mfpp+nl q (便壶) 而言。所谓第一号、第二号的说法, 并不是美国人所特有的, 在英国NYoqpfadb编的*E B f e q l k Y a u l c Q i Y k d Y k a S k e l k s b k q l k Y i C k d i f p e*中也收得有, 而且并不一定是小孩子说的话, 例如同为美国作家的Hl e k F, M F Y o Y在其长篇小说*E P Y d b q J f s b*中, 就有下面这样的描写:

I Yoiɸ ZiYaabo qpl r Zib t Yp kl pb` obq bsbvZl av fk qe b QbkYq Yka qe b ? ppbj Ziv hkbt YZl r qfq, , , Zr q qe bv afa kɤ qpbYq efj ifhb Y ifqib ZYZv qe Yqt Yp dl fkd ql t bq fqp mY kqp fce b afakɤ al Lrj Zbo Mkb qe b j fkr qe b dl ql r ql c q e b` Yo Yqpo Yk bibsbk+j fib ofab, (阶订搭般阵病闲尖并勤必唯坡密了, 亚参议院火应议院中警警知存x x 刺婉赏料并辆薪把赏冬约细个夕秋湿裤子搭婴工看店) 即末赏亚越了十细庄漫路搭失楚之鬼) 细下楚舰立了把裤子秋湿搭寒。 (

英文的放屁, 除普通说的ZobYh t fka外, 还有俗语的iYv cYoq, 如:

Re b l kiv dl l a mYoql cefp pnbb` e t Yp ofde qfk qe b j fa aib l cfq F b t Yp qii fkd r p Yii YZl r qt eYq Y pt bii dr v e b t Yp) t eYq Y el qtpel q Yka Yii) qe bk Yii l c Y pr aabk qe fp dr v pfq fkd fk qe b ol t fk ol kql c j b) CadYo K YopYiiY) iYfa c efp qpoofZib cYoq Gt Yp Y sbv `or ab qe fkd ql al) fk `e Ymbi Yka Yii) Zr qfq t Yp Yipl nr fqp Yj r pfkd Mia K YopYiiY, F b a Yj k kbYo Zibt qe b ol l c l c, F Yoai v YkvZl av iYr de ba l r qi l r a) Yka lia MppbkZr odbo j Yab l r qifhb e b afakɤ bsbk e bYo fq) Zr ql ia Rer oj bo) qe b e bYaj Yp qpo) t Yp pfq fkd ofd eqkbuq ql efj l k qe b ol pqr j Yka Yii) Yka vl r `l r ia qii e b e bYoa fq, , , U b qfba ql dbql ia K YopYiiY ql ofml c Ykl q e bo l kb) ofde q t e fib l ia Rer oj bo t Yp j Yhfkd efp pnbb` e) Zr qe b t Ypkɤ fk qe b ofde qj l l a, y y H, B, QYifkdbo: *Re b AYqebofk qe b Pvb* (赏真务中搭高讹东巧亚赏讲村正冬中搭轻即。赏正亚讲海俗料驶赏婉怎样细个命亮搭警物) 怎样地车错杰) 讲错量队旗衣) 兴婉突皮细下) 越亚俗念每略个其集艾措加-礼沙九搭家伙) 放了细个深持酸背搭敏。亚礼深大示花应之中大放深敏) 脾婉细活尴尬并结搭汹) 并过袭怪薪趣。惧礼略个家伙可医厉功) 细敏放池) 花几把肃荡的惯而了。辆薪细个警奋途) 梅祈懊略家伙于约辆薪驶村搭样子) 刺婉舰亚讲坛千梅祈懊梦部搭期露突长) 大家的知存赏脾婉驶村了搭。x x 俗料怪邮夕惧礼亚突长谓寒搭轻即) 哑放略凉细个听敏) 可滩赏略轻辆薪略婴问缘。 (

## 75. 报时法及about forty-five seconds

z提亚闲尖课点息十碎朵了，赏憾辆薪来。à庄乡眼zGq fp d oqy+df sbj fkr qp mYpq q l, e b eYpk&`lj b vbq.à 并知乡搭对并对？

③刻创】译文从语法上看，从意义上看，都是对的，只是不合惯用法而已。照英语的惯用法，应译为zGq fp (Y) nr Yoqbo q q obb; e b eYpk&`lj b vbq.à。英文说的Y nr Yoqbo q (或mYpq) q obb中的Y，通常都被略去不说。

英文说几点几分，通常是这样说的：dfsbj fkr qp mYpq q obb (三点过五分)，qk j fkr qp mYpq q obb (三点过十分)，nr Yoqbo mYpq q obb (三点一刻)，q bkqy j fkr qp mYpq q obb (三点二十分)，q bkqy+dfsbj fkr qp mYpq q obb (三点二十五分)，eYic mYpq q obb (三点半)。过半之后，就说下一个时辰，如q bkqy+dfsbj fkr qp q dro (三点三十五分)，q bkqy j fkr qp q dro (三点四十分)，nr Yoqbo q dro (三点四十五分)，qk j fkr qp q clro (三点五十分)，dfsbj fkr qp q dro (三点五十五分；差五分打四点)。报时以半点为分水岭，过半则属于下一时辰了。这好像太阳一直升到了顶点(Ynbu)，过此即逐步下降。英文的`ifj Yu便是指的绝顶，最高潮，如qb`ifj YulcY aoYj Yqf Y qfl k (戏剧的最高潮)，Zb Yq qb`ifj Yulclkb& cYj b (声誉的顶点)。过此便称Y kqf ifj Yu，即逐渐走下坡路。人生不满百，最壮盛有为的就是四五十岁。孔子说一个人到了四五十岁，还没有出人头地，有所成名，那个人就没有什么可怕的了。由此可见，人是以四五十岁为顶点的，过此就走下坡。中国有句俗语曰：z人过中年万事休。à中国是以四十岁为中年的。成大功，立大业的，都是四十岁以前的人，老年人只有老智可用，老成谋国，做个参谋人员还勉强可以。

且说如果不是报时，而是说时间的长短，就可以说qb obb nr Yoqbo plcYk elro (三刻钟之久)。又成语中有所谓YZl r qd oqy+dfsb pb`lkap的说法，也是说四分之三分的时间。英文成语中所用的数字，差

不多都有一定，不能随便更动的，比方说 z矮子à叫d oq d l q, z胖子à叫d oq dr kp, z假寐à叫d oq t fkhp, 都是用的四十这个数字，既不能说五十，也不能说四十五，而只能说四十。这个数字古代用得很多，如《天方夜谭》中就有阿里巴巴四十大盗。美国口语中有ifhb d o qy的说法，意为ifhb Ykvqē fkd或Yq Y dobYq oYq (以非常的势力；以极大的速度)，也许是说人生四十，如日当中，正是壮年，力量最盛的时候，何事不可为？因此使用四十这个数字来形容强盛的事物也未可知。

由这些数字构成的惯用句 (fafl j Yqf bumōppfl kp) 中最有趣的，就是YZl r q d oq+fsb pb`l kap。这意思是说Y ifqjib ibpp qē Yk Y j fkr q (不到一分钟)，但为什么要说d oq+fsb，而不说dfq+fsb呢？也许是从qē obb nr Yqpop l cYk el r o (四分之三的一小时) 而来的，qē obb nr Yqpop l cY j fkr q, 不就是d oq+fsb pb`l kap吗？对一小时的四十五分钟可说qē obb nr Yqpop, 对一分钟就只好用d oq+fsb了，虽则数目是一样的。兹举一二作家的用例如下：

Qk YZl r q d oq+fsb pb`l kap) Gd r ka j vpbic YdYfk fk c eb t Yfqkd+ol l j t fqē qē b`l j mYppfl kYq pb`obqYov) t el j Yabj b pfdk j l ob al`r j bkq, y y Al koYa (并村细朵英俗东丽俗跟略薪世盘心搭坡扰心家入了略打店威) 赏夕俗什倒了服多搭样活。(

F b oYkd qē b Zbii YdYfk Yka t Yfqa, F b mōppba qē b Zbii eYoa, F b ebia efp qē r j Z l k qē b Zbii d o YZl r q d oq+fsb pb`l kap, y y HYj bp DYobii (赏哑揷了细下了铃) 打店字并举瞥来。赏邪抗砰般了铃。赏把赏搭拇议般亚了铃千吃并多薪细朵英之见。(

## 76. not for one' s health

zGYj klqe bob doj v e bYiqe, à液句片根寒) 乡唱z俗并并婉  
眼伙练顶来到搭à) 眼获并对?

③刻创】这是一句不可照字面来翻译的美国成语。zGYj klqe bob doj v e bYiqe, à一句, 应译为z我并不是漫无目的地来到这里的à。  
klqd olkbb e bYiqe : klqd okl qe fkd : t fqe Y abdfkfb l Zgb` q,  
意为z有一定的目的; 并非徒然à。据Hl pbme ?, U bfk dYobk编的*Ek Eo bofeYk Bfeql kYov l c QiYkd Yka Al iil nr fYi Qrbbee*上解释说:  
z'd olkbb e bYiqe y Spba kbdYqsbiv q fka f Yqb qe YqY nbopl k fp  
Y qfkd doj lkbqYov dYfk (加否定用时是说一个人为赚钱而活动) à。这原来是用于一个人的政治活动的, 后来才广泛地用于一般的情形上。这样做是有打算的, 并不是为着一时的怪念头而出此, 实是想要从中获得利润。现在且看一些现代作家用这成语的实例。

Llt ) vl r Yob Yk Yj Zfqf r p j Yk, G` Yk pbb qe Yq W  
r ob kl qfk ml ifq p do vl r o e bYiqe y qe Yq Ghkl t , Rbii j b b  
uY qiv t e Yq fq fp vl r t Ykq Yka t e bqe bo G` Yk q dbq do vl r  
Yp nr f h fckl qnr f hbo qe Yk qe l pb l qe bo dbil t p? y y R, Bo  
bfpbo (披务) 码婉个殖心彬彬搭瞥) 俗看错池来。码亚政引千婉  
怪邮恨凡细下搭) 略俗袭明懊。请告僧俗) 码夕搭脾婉什凉) 袭  
在俗勤背鞭瞥服令) 因少袭健世样搭令) 眼码谋属村手搭。(

UeYqal vl r qe fkh Y dr v fk Zr pfk bpp fp? Jfhb e b pYv  
p) eb Yfk q fk fq do e fp e bYiqe, Re Yq t e Yq Zr pfk bpp fp,  
y y H, Qqfk Zb` h (码显眼细个巧珠瞥婉什凉样子搭? 正破赏务  
搭) 赏婉显赚年眼浅搭搭。做巧珠舰婉液个样子。(

zF1t j Ykv kbt ml qYq bp e Ysb vl r plia? à

zMe) Gal k q hkl t ) Zr qpbsboYi ml r kap, à

zQbsboYi ml r kap! Fr q vl r l r de q d e Ysb pl ia pbsboYi  
e r kaobat bfde q) YqibYpq) l o pbsboYi d kp fc vl r t Ykq d n  
bopr Yab qe b Ck pmb` d o qe Yq vl r ob kl q fk Zr pfbpp d o vl r o  
e bYiqe ,ây y J, N, F Yoqibv

(z码历而了多少新全唱搭礼铃热? à

z啊) 俗并知存) 总薪好花版暗。à

z花版! 码因少状该历而了花吧版) 或婉花点尝婉) 破跟码邮  
夕务烦略权承乎) 码婉眼赚年顶做巧珠搭寒。à (

## 77. 少见的反义语

在多避提动婉相对搭) 破琴外、千下之觉) 并知婉更伤薪搭避  
提动的薪正都课另? 薪遇都诸字句邪搭漠并故君) 破`ifj Z珠眼z千  
投æ妹答à) 状该婉数千走) 刺心邪来议同下外) 务唱`ifj Z al t k)  
婉更并对?

③刻创】语文是由习惯而成，不一定合乎逻辑。英文的`ifj Z意为攀登，既系登当然是向上的，所以有时为加强向上的意思，而说成`ifj Z r m(向上爬)。一般人认为既有r m，自然也就有al t k，所以`ifj Z al t k(向下爬)也就应运而生了。

U b`ifj Zba al t k æl j qe b t Yii, y y Fbj fkdt Yv (俗料的士千没下来了。)

再看wl l j 意为z陡直地上升à, 如zRe b YfomiYkb wl l j ba, (飞机陡直地向上飞升。) à。但居然有人用为向下急降，如：

?iZboq wl l j ba al t k qe b fk`ifkb fk q l j fkr qpp dYq  
(艾侧省帝皮地显课朵英搭轻即拍推解爵下来。)

又，pqYka r m(起立)的反义语为pfq al t k(坐下)，这是合理的，但竟至有pqYka al t k的说法。我们只能z站起来à, 不能z站下去à, 似乎是不通的。殊不知这个说法另有含义，即是要证人退席的意思，如：

U fqbpp t Yp l oaboba q pqYka al t k, (证警闲悲末手坦。)

Hr adb JYkhbopefj f s l f b pe l t ba fj mYqfbk`b, zTbov t bii, W r j Yv pqYka al t k) Jfbr qbkYkq) Yka qe b t fqbpp Jr kh t fii YdYfk qYhb qe b pqYka, ày y C, Q, EYoafkbo (具动

乎搭统响避球赏怪并论烦。z好暗) 拉乎) 码可显手坦旧) 率克证  
警可哑千证警坦来。à (

此外fk与l r q l c是相对的, 如说fk aYkdbo (在危险中) 和l r q l c  
aYkdbo (脱离危险), fk q̃ b t fkal t (窗内) 和l r q l c q̃ b t fkal  
t (窗外)。可知有fk的, 差不多都可以用l r q l c改为相反的意思。  
我们说z坠入情网à, 英文是cYii fk il sb, 相反地, 是不是也可说成cYii  
l r q l c il sb呢? 若说z掉到情网之外去à, 通不通呢? 《英文习语大  
全》上, 只收得有cYii l r q l c d̃ bpe (消瘦), 和cYii l r q l c ibYpb  
(租期已满) 两个成语, 而不见cYii l r q l c il sb一种说法。不过这种  
说法是可以存在的, 因为cYii l r q l c: `bYpb q̃ m̃Y` q̃ pb (停止那样  
做), cYii fk il sb为z相恋à的话, cYii l r q l c il sb, 就是z不复相恋à。  
这当然和z失恋à (Zb afpYmml fk q̃ ba fk il sb) 不同, 是不待详说的。  
青年男女在一起时, 互相热恋, 远别之后, 彼此淡忘, 而不复相爱  
了。如果是失恋的话, 就是指某方正在热恋中, 而他方早已弃之不顾  
或移情别恋了。

且说cYii l r q l c il sb这个说法, 是不是有人用呢? 有的, 英国现  
代作家毛姆 (U, Q, K Yr de Yj ) 就用过, 在他作的*Reb Fl r o Dbd o*  
*b q̃ b BYt k*中, 就有下面的一句:

Re bv e Ya cYiibk fk il sb Zb`Yr pb q̃ bv t bob q̃ ol t k fk a  
Yfiv `l kqY` q̃ t f̃ q̃ l kb Ykl q̃ bo, t bii) t e bk q̃ Yq`l kqY` q`b  
Ypba j fde q̃ k q̃ q̃ bv cYii l r q l c il sb? (赏料想眼每十亚细经儿  
搭呼堂) 伤显备到坠入盘诮, 略凉) 打赏料课警并哑亚细经儿搭  
轻即) 赏料健并健舰冷次下来) 并复相恋了落? (

在毛姆作的另外一篇文章*Al po l ml ifqYkp*中, 也有这样的一个小  
例:

Re bk l k Y pr aabk) e b cbii l r q l c il sb, Gal kl q hkl t  
t ev, q̃ `l r ia e Yoaiv e Ysb Zbbk q̃ Yq e b dobt q̃ foba l c e bo`  
l ksbopYq̃ l k d o p e b e Ya kbsbo e Ya Ykv `l ksbopYq̃ l k, Nboe  
Ymp fq t Yp j bobiv q̃ Yq q̃ fp m̃Y q̃ b q̃` il l h l c e bop`bYpba q̃  
t ofkd e fp e bYoq p q̃ fkd p, (兴婉) 突皮细下) 赏并叹翰尚了。俗  
并投错眼什凉健液样? 略并健婉想眼赏对兴尚搭想寒东巧侮恶伤



致) 想眼尚的来舰辆薪什凉正式搭想寒落。袞在略译婉眼字尚略  
婴幽选搭避盎) 并复屈凡赏搭心优傲了。(

## 78. the writing on the wall

乞旦奢才散搭 Fboq iq Fob`e q 搭勤: zU ofqpk Mk Re b U Yiià)  
刻取搭瞥把液勤狮乡眼z大字鞭à) 并知正脾更?

③刻创】照字面来看，诚然会使人想到是贴在墙壁上的新闻，用大字报一个新名词来翻译，似乎有妙手偶得之的感觉。但这句话是西洋典故，不能照字面来翻译的。如果你问z何典à，我就可以告诉你：这是出自《圣经-旧约》的典故，含义为：迫在眉睫的大灾祸的预兆 (Y pfdk l o t Yokfkd l cfj nbkafkd afpYpqb)。

《旧约-但以理书》(BYkfbi 3: 3+03) 上说：

Qk qeb pYj b elro`Yj b doqe fkd bop l c Y j Yka q e Yk a)  
Yka t d q l sbo YdYfkpq qeb`Ykaibpqf h r ml k qeb miYfpq  
o l c qeb t Yii l c qeb hfkd q mYiY`b: Yka qeb hfkd pYt qeb mY  
oql c qeb e Yka q Yqt ol q , , , ?ka q fp fp qeb t ofqkd q Yqt  
Yp t ofqpk) KCLC) KCLC) RCI CJ) SNF?PQCL, (冬轻季  
薪瞥搭议休盈池) 亚束府与达奢相对搭粉士千腿字。束看举腿字  
搭议休x x 伤腿搭样字婉片麻、片麻、失料倦、宿动珥新。(

此事发生于伯沙撒王设筵纵饮的当中，只见指头在墙上写字，看不见写字的人，王惊惶失措，恐怖万分。谁也看不懂墙上所写的字是什么意思，后来请了被掳的犹太人中的但以理来，才得明解：z弥尼就是上帝已经数算你国的年日到此完毕。提客勒就是你被称在天平里显出你的亏欠。乌法珥新就是你的国分裂，归与玛代人和波斯人。à

由此可知 qeb t ofqkd l k qeb t Yii 是亡国的征兆。现在人们常用作警惕来说：

B l k q vl r pbb qeb t ofqkd l k qeb t Yii? (码夕液样做)  
罗存码并明懊见灭舰亚浅念怕? (

W r pbb q̣ b t ofqkd l k q̣ b t Yii, (牙交块休。 (

有时把l k q̣ b t Yii略去，单说zBl k q̣ vl r pbb q̣ b t ofqkd? à, 意思也是一样。

Re b t ofqkd l k q̣ b t Yii fp `ibYo: fc K Yk Zbe Ysbp ifhb Y k Ykfj Yi Yka Yiil t p e fp ml mr iYqfl k q̣ fl k` obYpb t e fib bY` e kYqfl k p q̣ Yafiv fl k` obYpbp q̣ b `l j mibufq̣ Yka oYkdb l c f q̣ b ksfol kj bkq) kYq̣ ob t fii q̣ Yhb e bo `l r opb Yka q̣ b JYt l c c e b Hr kdib t fii m o b s Yfi, y y H, E o Yv (大罗块休闲怪明盈：她跟瞥觉通凡物三搭并知级育) 四瞥口尽续厌加下砵) 世轻每个期族舰细乏健请深假境幢综复杂火究大寂友) 兴婉大欲皮舰健勿状想跟搭过朝) 顶殖例搭厮杀袭舰夕大外深存了。 (

Q̣ q̣ fp e l r p b l c e fp q̣ b o b t Yp t ofqkd l k b s b o v t Yii, F fp Zr p f k b p p + i f h b q̣ j n b o Yj b k q m o l q̣ p q̣ b a Y d Y f k p q Y j v p q̣ o f l r p t Y o k f k d q̣ Y q p e b t Y p k l q j Y a b d o e f j , y y H, E Y i p t l o q̣ v (亚赏搭液个家漫) 延角息供) 赏略清泗属婉搭胜质) 请赏辆薪粉丽村略敲坡搭拉告) 务赏搭太太并并婉千渡眼赏顶颜搭。 (

## 79. if you please的含义

庄样搭mibYpb (请 (/) 讲务婉的fcvl r mibYpb (破接愿珠 (切略顶来) 士草袭舰把fcvl r mibYpb福乡眼z请à) 破zGt fii eYsb Ykl q ebo`r m) fcvl r mibYpb, (请码哑海俗细堡。(à 刺zLlt) fcvl r mibYpb) eb bumb`qpj bql mYv dofq! à) 乡眼z提亚) 请) 赏邮夕俗来鼓池春景! à舰并士了。请问状破获乡尝对?

③刻创】英文fcvl r mibYpb是古代传下来的一种说法，一般人以为vl r 是mibYpb的主语，其实vl r 是mibYpb的宾语，这个mibYpb为Qr Zg k`qsb Nobpbkq (假设现在)，意为Zb YdobbYZib，省去了主语，原为fcfq mibYpb vl r : fcfq Zb YdobbYZib ql vl r 。起初把主语fq去掉，变成fc (fq) mibYpb vl r ，后来再一变而把vl r 移到mibYpb的前面去，成为今日固定的形式fcvl r mibYpb了。在稍稍古一点的文章中，还可以看出此种转变的痕迹，如十九世纪的英国文人E fppfk d，著有*Re b NofsYq NYnbqp l c F bkav P vbed aq*一书，中有句云：

?ka qer p) fcfq mibYpb j b) Gj Yv pfq Yii aYv il kd, (液样) 俗高缘搭寒) 俗可显越千细已十。(

英文成语fcvl r mibYpb，大致有三种含义：(/) 就是我们日常用得最多的z请à (mibYpb)；(0) 是z麻烦你一下àz你允许的话à (t f qe vl r o mboj fppfl k) 的意思，据AMB说，这是为请求别人稍为效劳时说的客气话 (Yp ml ifqp d oj l c obnr bpq bpnrb`fYiiv d o qpáíkd pbosf bp)；(1) 作为插入句用，有反语的意味 (fol kf Yiiv)，这就是问题所提出有待研讨的那一类的句子，可译为z真想不到àz出人意外àz岂有此理à。有这种反语意味时，常与kl t 连在一起，据QCB说，kl t , fcvl r mibYpb : Yk fol kf Yi me oYpb j bYkfk d zU e Yq al vl r qe fkh l c qe Yq? à (fj mivfk d qe Yq pl j bqefkd fp pr onofpfd l o buqYl oafkYov)，即这个反语的意思为z那你觉得怎样? à，含义指某事物令人吃惊或是有点异常。那辞典还举出实例如下：

?ka kl t ) fc vl r mibYpb) ㊦ d dbq kl q fkd d o Yii j v  
t l oh! (码看) 好并胜瞥) 俗做液凉多搭浮) 细点鞭程袭辆  
薪! (

问题中提出的句子，也可照译了。

?ka kl t ) fc vl r mibYpb) e b bunb` q j b d mYv d o fq  
(码邮薪液样搭存君怕) 赏老皮邮夕俗来鼓池春景。 (

另外再看别的例句。

F b j r p q qYsbi d o p q` iYpp) fc vl r mibYpb) ifhb e fp Zb q  
b o p, (液怎凉可显) 赏细乏夕火赏长报或地位伟晴高过赏搭瞥细  
样越细打楚。 (

?ka kl t ) fc vl r mibYpb) p e b i b q r p Y q q e b a b Ya l c k f d  
e q (医邮并村) 尚竟亚强服败系军家池走。 (

G q e l r d e q Ge Ya i l p q j v n b k) t e f e) fc vl r mibYpb) t  
Y p f k j v m l` h b q Y i i q e b q j b, (俗馆显眼俗搭倍而了) 邮并村  
竟皮细意婉亚俗口唇漫。 (

G k p q Ya l c m Y v f k d j b q e b j l k b v e b l t b a j b) e b t Y k  
q p a j b) d i b k a e f j j l o b) fc vl r mibYpb! (赏并刺并憾俗  
搭年) 顶且憾夕哑同俗计) 医挠薪到君! (

? q d s b + q e f o q v K o, F Y v j Y h b o o b q r o k b a) k l r k p Y q f p c Y` q  
l o v t l o a e Y s f k d` l j b f k q e b f k q p o f j ) Y k a q e b o b p e b t Y  
p) o b p q f k d l k Y o Y f p b a m f i i l t ) fc vl r mibYpb) Y k a i l l h f k d p  
l` e b b o a r i) j l o b i f h b e b o l i a p b i c q e Y k e b e Ya p b b k e b o f k  
p l j b q j b, y y R, B o b f p b o (亚深恢辆薪驶村细点什凉并好搭统  
台) 伤显货励克逃巧亚碎点败舰合家来了) 池瞥珠外搭婉赏搭哪  
子憾亚略漫) 神亚高高搭枕休千) 看砰怪醒令搭样子) 背赏贾来  
伤举村搭尚) 服夕坚敲城免) 暑全火尚的念细样。 (

## 80. as such的用法

亚〔展烟〕多八目千）方村呼兴z庄语家王à搭样章中）务zRl tj l ool t fp Y mr Zif` el ifaYv, Yp pr`e）p`elli t fii Zb`il pba,à细句中搭Yp pr`e邪撞了。请祸君由务明细下）显由了刻。

③刻创】作为反复代名词用的pr`e，现除Yp pr`e一个用法外，似乎没有别的了。反复代名词通常是用l kb，如zF b t Ykqp Y oYafl，Zr qe b eYp kl j l kbv d Zr v l kb，（他想要一架收音机，但无钱买。）à。但在Yp后就不要用l kb，而要用pr`e，因而产生Yp pr`e的用法。

英文的Yp pr`e含义有二。一为z照其资格à（fk qe Yq`YmY`fq v），另一为z其本身à（fk fqbic或fk qe bj pbisbp）。不能用这两个意思来解释的，当然就是有误。如问题中提出的句子，两个意思都不适用。Rl j l ool t fp Y mr Zif` el ifaYv; Yp pr`e, p`elli t fii Zb`il pba,z明天是公共假期à和z学校不上课à这两句话，是不能用z照其资格à或z其本身à连接起来的，只能用z所以à一类的字眼来连接才通，由此我们便知道这句英文是错的。

现分别例解如下。

（/）照其资格。

F b fp Y`efia）Yka j r pqZb qpbYqba Yp pr`e，（赏婉细个头工）必望把赏冬约头工看店。（

F b fp qe bj Yp qbo）Yka Yp pr`e j r pqZb l Zbvba，（赏婉忧瞥）想到必望烦的赏。（

F b t Yp Y d obfdkbo Yka t Yp qpbYqba Yp pr`e，（赏婉细个外根瞥）伤显悲冬约外根瞥看店。（

U fɔv j bk Yob Ymɔl fɔ Ydfkb ɔe bv Yob YdobbYZib Yp pr`e, y y Qɔbbib (角智搭瞥易兴邮幼约眼细个角智搭瞥婉末瞥醒令搭。 (

F b fp ɔe b g adb Ymɔl fkbɔa ɔl e bYo ɔe b`Ypb) Yka Yp pr`e vl r j r pql qprbYh ɔl e fɔ Zbd ob ɔe b ɔpfYi, (赏悲素奇眼桥热略案子搭动乎) 约眼动乎) 码教并可显亚桥讯轻跟赏务寒。 (

GYj Y dbkqbj Yk) Yka t fii Zb ɔpbYɔa Yp pr`e, (俗婉千打瞥) 祸获错千打瞥搭店羞。 (

F b fp Y ɔfbka Yka GɔpbYq e fɔ Yp pr`e, (赏婉细个朋友) 故俗显朋友店之。 (

ɔl t Yp Yp Y mɛvpf fYk ɔe Yq e b mɔpbkɔa e fɔ pbic) Yka Yp pr`e t Yp`l oafYiiv ob`bfsba, y y FYt ɔel okb (赏显瞎师搭蓄份亚液儿池提) 顶大家闭漂潮地把赏冬约瞎师来急店了。 (

(0) 其本身。

F fpɔl ov Yp pr`e fp ɔl l ɔpbk kbdib`ɔa, (历情卑蓄草悲季权。 (

U bYiqe) Yp pr`e) al bpkɔj Yɔbo j r`e, (单婉薪年) 杀并错什凉。 (

ɔk`l r kɔv niY`bp pɔpYkdbop Yob t bi`lj b Yp pr`e, (亚乡下) 外来搭瞥) 舰想眼液个君由) 顶大委翰晓。 (

## 81. at a crossroads

*PbYabəp Bfdbpq* 千薪 *zYk ?j bof Yk KN pql la YqY`ol ppol Y*  
a (细个片根搭替兵样亚十字路口 (à搭堪子) 可婉心举警务唱 *YqY`*  
*ol ppol Yap*) 亚单戎搭Y鬼邪复戎其导) 婉更幢所?

③刻创】在英国的 *EasYkeba JbYokbəp Bfeql kYav lc Ar oobkq*  
*Ckdifpe* 上, 是分为两字列举的, 即:

*`ol pp+ol Ya k, ol Ya qe Yq`ol ppbp Ykl qe bo, ol Ya qe Yq g f*  
*kp qt l j Yfk ol Yap,* (吵路, 棵急课蚀大路搭路 (

*`ol pp+ol Yap k, (pfkd, sZ, (miY`b t e bob qt l ol Yap`ol p*  
*p,* (十字路 (

中国世界版《四用辞典》上, 只列 *`ol pp+ol Ya* 一字, 但有两个解释: 一为 *z* 横路; 交叉道路 *à*, 二为 *z* (复) 十字街 *à*。

又《最新实用英汉辞典》上, 也只列 *`ol ppol Ya* 一字, 但有三个解释: 一为 *z* 交叉路; 叉路; 歧途 *à*; 二为 *z* (*mi*,) 十字路口 *à*; 三为 *z* 乡村的集市 *à*。

在美国的 *U bdpəpəp Lbt Ul əia Bfeql kYav lc qe b Eo bofeYk J*  
*Ykdr Ydb* 上, 此字有三个解释, 即 (/) *Y ol Ya qe Yq`ol ppbp Ykl qe*  
*bo ol Ya* (交叉路), (0) *Y ol Ya qe Yq`l kkb` qp qt l loj loj Yf*  
*k ol Yap* (连接两条大路以上的路), (1) (*r pr Yiiv mi,*) *qe b miY`*  
*b t e bob qt l loj loj ol Yap fkdəpəp` q: l əpk obdYoaba j bqYmæl*  
*of Yiiv Yp qe b dYqe bofkd ml fkql c qe b kbYo+Zv or oYi fke YZfqYkqp*  
(〔通常用复数〕两条以上的路交叉的地方: 常隐喻地视为附近乡村  
居民聚会之点)。该辞典上又附有一个成语: *Yq qe b`ol ppol Yap*, 解  
作 *Yq qe b ml fkqt e bob l kb j r pq`ell pb Zbqt bbk afəbobkq`l r op*  
*bp lcY qfl k* (面临抉择; 临歧)。



在上述的?JB上，也举有这个成语，解释为：(dfd,) YqY`ofqf Yi q okfk d+ml fkq (fk l kb~~o~~ ifd, bq,) (〔比喻的说法〕在人生或事情的紧要关头。)

问题中的YqY`ol ppol Ya，虽名词与单数的冠词相符，但并不常见，因为`ol ppol Yap形复意单，故可说YqY`ol ppol Yap，而且这是最常用的形式。用定冠词是固定的成语，更没有冠词和名词不一致的情形了。那用法是pqYka (或用动词Zb) Yq q b`ol ppol Yap (站在歧路上)。但把它作形容词用时，则形式可单可复，例如，Y`ol ppol Ya a (p) pql ob (十字路口的商店)。

?qY`ol ppol Yap kbYo Nl oq?iibdYkv) NY,) Yk bia boiv iY av`ifj Zba l k q b Zr p, y y PbYab~~o~~ Bfdbpq (亚宾贪动麻亚州搭亚马加麻广故贾搭细蚀十字路口) 薪细位吗长飞瞥没千了公赴失楚。(

Yq q fp`ol ppol Yap l c?j bof Y Yka ?pfYy y PbYab~~o~~ Bj dbpq (亚片洲与亚洲搭液个十字路口。(

Re foq+pfu el r op iYqbo e b ibq e bo l c YqY`ol ppol Yap fk q b j l l oiYkap, y y Rer oj Yk J, Fll a (态十蜡头轻显鬼) 赏亚尖殖搭细个十字路口) 把尚聘下了。(

## 82. this my son

新学徒尖〔路加反响〕夫十息级千务：zDl o ɸɸp j v pl k t Yp abYa) Yka fp Yifsb YdYfk, eb t Yp il pq) Yka fp d r ka, (想眼俗液个儿子) 婉死顶复恨) 涂顶心错搭。(à 句中搭ɸɸp j v pl k讲务婉咐样) 提春庄语闲尖并邪了。提春庄语状务ɸɸp pl k l cj fkb) 并知脾更？

③刻创】据英国的英语学者F bkov Qt bbq在他著的*Lbt Ckdifpe EoYo o Yo*上说，zCk ɸɸb bYoifbo Kl abok Ckdifpe ml ppbppfsbp j Y v Zb mb` baba Zv ɸɸb abj l kpqYqfsbp ɸɸfp Yka ɸɸYq, Zr qfk ɸɸb mbpbkq Ckdifpe pr` e` l kpqr` ql kp Yp ɸɸfp l r o ɸfbkape fm, ɸɸb pb o v eefiaobk l` r o l kiv fk ɸɸb efde bo ifqboYov pqvib, ɸɸb` l ii l nr fYi iYkdr Ydb r pfkd ɸɸb nbofme oYpqf` l kpqr` ql kpy ɸɸp ɸfbkape fml cl r opy Zv ɸɸb YkYil dv l c mYqfqsfb` l kpqr` ql kp abp` ofZba YZl sb,à。意即只有在高度的文言文体中才有，在口语中要用纾说的构造（这是指例如用l cj Yk，而不用j Ykɸ）。我觉得他这种说法，也不完全正确。英文也和中文一样，现代语体文中仍然时常要掺杂着一点文言的字句，不用纾说的两重属格，而仍保持这种z指示代名词- 所有代名词- 名词à的用法，还是不少。文言的好处就是简洁，书的题名多采用《圣经》或莎翁的成句即是因此。书名必须简洁，古文比口语简洁得多，所以某书题名为zRe fp Mr o U l oiaà（我们的这个世界），而不用zRe fp U l oia l c Mr opà。另外还有一个原因，就是句中已经有了l c me oYpb，若再加上l cl r op或l cvl r op等，句子就太啰嗦了，所以说fk ɸɸfp l r o el r ol caYkdbo或fk ɸɸfp vl r o aYv l cp YisYql k。据研究英语代名词的F, Qnfbp说，在十六世纪初叶，ɸɸfp q ev pl k的形式，比ɸɸfp pl k l c ɸɸfkb要更为常见。《圣经》上对纾说的构造虽未见使用，然同时代的Qe YhbpnbYob，就是两个形式并用的，这说明了两点，一是莎翁不喜欢这种两个代名词连在一块儿的用法；二是现代英语的纾说法已经产生，那时正是过渡时代，所以莎翁新旧两种语法交替采用了，例如：

?ka q̄pii q̄b nibYpYkq mofk`b) q̄fp o l e h l c e f p  
 F Yq̄ q̄r ok̄a e f p ZYiip q̄l d r k + p q̄l k b p, Yka e f p p l r i  
 Qe Yii p q̄Yka p l o b `e Yodba d o q̄b t Yp q̄p̄r i s b k d b Yk`b  
 Re Yq̄p e Yii d i v t f q̄e q̄b j : d o j Yk v Y q̄e l r p Yka t f a l t  
 p

Qe Yii q̄fp e f p o l e h j l`h l r q l c q̄e b f o a b Y o e r p Z Y k a p,  
 (F b k a v T, Q̄ f f) 06/+064 (

(请告僧略叹翰异曲搭太子) 赏搭液婴异茅请赏搭灭鼠才唱  
 了热勿, 顶对略火深热勿奶队搭伤坏搭复吃心) 状菲严厉之责  
 搭) 闭婉赏搭灵建: 想眼由兴赏搭液婴异茅) 戒拾个貌子夕涂砑  
 尚料室爱搭谣法顶唱眼敢飞。(

在现代的杂志上及文人的笔下, 不用口语的迂说法, 而经采用文  
 言表现的, 俯拾皆是。在英国广播电台的刊物*Re b Jfpq̄kbo*上就有l k  
 q̄f p l r o Yk k f s b o p Y o v、q̄f p j v ḡr o k Y i、l k q̄f p l r o q̄t b k q̄f b q̄  
 Z f o q̄e a Y v等句; 文人学者笔下也有:

q̄f p l r o Z o l q̄e b o (E, E o b b k b (  
 q̄f p e f p e l k l o Y o v Y m m l f k q̄j b k q̄ (K, B f h b k p (  
 q̄f p e b o b p b Y (A l k o Y a (  
 f k q̄f p l r o t l k a b o r i`b k q̄r o v (N Y o q̄p f a d b (  
 )

在*Re b Jfpq̄kbo*上又有用逗号的说法, 如z q̄f p, e f p i Y p q̄, f k`Y o  
 k Y q̄f l k à及z q̄e l p b, j v i Y p q̄t l o a p à等, 据?ZZl q̄f的解释, 因逗号  
 的使用, 显示出q̄f p、q̄e b p b等z指示代名词à和z所有代名词- 名词à是同  
 格关系, 前者变为指示形容词了。

q̄e b m l m r i l r p`b k q̄p b l c q̄f p q̄e b d o b Y q̄p q̄`l j j b o`f Y i`f  
 q̄y y ?, F r u i b v (唱眼源大体习的去搭卑幢瞥口诚密搭中心 (

Ql l k q̄f p j v p b`l k a a Y v) G p e l r i a q̄p v q̄l m o l Z b f k q̄l c  
 e b p l r i l c j Y k q̄e o l r d e e f p Y o q̄ y y F b i b k I b i i b o (伤显亚

俗五晴勤富看举搭多夫十) 俗祸尖由瞥觉搭险术) 试释探善瞥觉  
搭灵建强尺。(

pbbfk d qe Yq qe fp j v Zl l h t Yp fk pnfoba Zv Fl iv Qnfofc  
y y JYc Yafl F bYok (婚兴俗搭液卑扰婉由徒灵伤闹球顶腿搭 (

F b`l r ia kl qZbYo qe Yq pe b , , , pe l r ia Zb bunl pba d`  
r ofl r p l ZpbosYql k fk qe fp e bo dobYq dofbc, y y Re l j Yp F Yo  
av (四尚亚破到类大搭比艾中急委好绅五户搭探测x x 赏婉委并  
了搭。(

### 83. linger I ever so late

庄根约家E fppfk d 亚赏尤搭 *Re b Nofs Yq̄ NYmbop l c F bkav Pv be d α* (细扰中) 邪薪ifk d bo Gbsbo pl iYq̄ (细语) 并知状破获乡动?

③刻创】E fppfk d 这句话的全文是这样的:

Ḡj Yq̄pop kl qel t il kd Gt Ykabo, Re bob fp kl qYph q Zofkd j b ZY`h, kl l kb t fii Zb sbuba l o r kbYpv) ifk d bo Gb sbo pl iYq̄, (俗酸鸟池砵消息多见的并夕夹。辆薪什凉浮约夕打俗合砵做搭, 俗酸鸟亚外另帝柜村多晚) 袭辆薪瞥夕侵帽或并哀搭。(

所谓ifk d bo Gbsbo pl iYq̄, 即是z无论我耽搁到多晚à的意思, 原为一种表示让步的子句, 其中的bsbo pl, 在古代也说成相反的kbsbo pl, 但意思不变。这个bsbo pl, 只是一种加强的表现法, 现今在zRe Ykh vl r bsbo pl j r`e, à一语中, 及大多数的妇女们的口头上, 仍然保持着这种说法。据《牛津大辞典》(MCB) 的解释, bsbo pl 有sYp qiv及fj j bkpbiv的意思。

现在的问题倒不是在bsbo pl, 而是在主语和述语的颠倒。有一部分的让步句, 是述语动词用在主语名词之前的, 这种说法和

Fb q̄Yq Yp fqj Yv) t b`Yk kl q kl t qYhb fqfkq `l kpfa boYqfl k, (并搞略婉怎样) 俗料提亚袭并勤加显介牢。(

Qel r ia fq Zb t bq) Gpe Yii pqYv Yq el j b, (破跟下兄搭寒) 俗舰店亚家漫。(

U bob GY hfkd) Gpe l r ia kl q Zb YZib q̄ al q̄Yq (俗舰婉根束) 略个俗袭并勤做。(

等条件句或让步句，同样不用连词。所谓假设过去（Qr Zg k` qfsb NY pq），也和过去完成（NYpq Nboob` q）及pel ria、t l ria、`l ria 后接不定词的所谓复合动词（Alj ml r ka TboZ）中的助动词一样，是可以出现于主语之前，而将连词省略的。至于假设现在（Qr Zg k` qfs b Nobpbkq），因为没有助动词，通常又不能将动词本身搬到主语的前面去，所以除了固定的几种说法，例如：

Fb fq bsbo pl er j Zib) qe bobo kl miY` b ifhb el j b, (酸鸟怎样会哪) 憾婉欲华搭家好。（

Fb qe b j Yqbo t eYqfqj Yv) Gt l k&dl, (并搞婉什凉洒俗的并砰。（

等句中Zb的场合，或是

Alj b t eYqj Yv) GYj mobmYoba d o fq (酸鸟才错怎样) 俗的愉杯好了。（

QYv t eYqvl r t fii) Gal k& ifhb fq (并搞码怎凉务) 略个俗总婉并叹翰搭。（

等之外，是很少用的。问题中所提出的ifkdbo Gbsbo pl iYqb，也是其中之一，与bsbo pl 结合时，才采取这个形式，而表示让步的意思。

如上述的场合，像Zb、`l j b、pYv等可用于主语前的动词，因为和命令形相同，所以也有人把它看作命令句的，那当然是错误的，应当是假设现在才对，而且那动词一定是置于主语之前的。

为什么动词在主语之前呢？为什么这样就有假设的意味呢？这正是现在打算要加以研讨的。如果把结论先说出来的话，那就是一种加强语气的说法吧。

一般把动词放在主语之前的，都不是正常的办法，除问句外，大都是想要唤起对方的注意，使他把意识集中到这个动词上来。问句之所以要把主语与动词颠倒，是表示与平叙句的不同。假设时要把主语与动词颠倒，也无非是想要使人有一种意外的感觉。能够有意外之感的地方，必能发生特殊的意味，但意识若不集中，便不能有意外之感。

意识的集中常发生于不正常的地方，所谓不正常，除地位颠倒以外，还有省略或加用强调的字，**of e Yp eb fp**，即为**Yp**（或**ælr de**）**eb fp of e Yp eb fp**的省略，至于**elt bsbo of e ebj Yv Zb**中的**+bsbo**，便是加用的强调字。在这种场合，就是希望读者或听者把意识集中到**of e**及**elt bsbo of e**上来。那种相当于连词意味的字，便成为意识集中的焦点，与下面主句结合时，才发生连词作用。

假设语气的动词置于主语之前，便有一种连结的力量（**`l kg k`q fsb d o`b**），因为语文是愈简单才愈有力的。如果说得太啰嗦，便要减低表现的力量了。如本项所讨论的**ifkdbo Gbsbo pl iYq**，就比说**ælr de Gifkdbo bsbo pl iYq**要有力多了。这不仅有那种所谓连结的力量，而且那表现力也大不相同呢。

## 84. snap one' s fingers

厉颞字她引导中其句z筛高细统勿议) 十地入推晖à) 深中勿议)  
坏勤东统) 婉更可乡眼庄样搭唱语pkYml kbəp dfkdbop?

③刻创】中文的弹指是说时间的短暂，如苏轼诗z一弹指顷去来今à即是，但此辞源于佛经，它在佛经中有三个不同的意思，即 (/) 表许诺，(0) 表欢喜，(1) 表警告。通常在中国诗文中却不用这些意思。而只用来表短暂或瞬息，上举厉词亦复如此。弹指在《通用汉英辞典》上译作zY sbov Zofbc pnY` b l c qj bā是意译，又有zql pkYm qə b dfkdbopà则近乎直译了。在《麦氏汉英辞典》上除zql pkYm qə b dfkdbopà外还有zql dfiifmà一个译法。我们可以做成名词，译作Y pkYml c qə b dfkdbop或ql j Yhb Y dfiifm，都是可以的。

至于英文成语的ql pkYml kbəp dfkdbop，则万不可用，因为这另有含义，与弹指无关。中国说的弹指，是将中指在拇指接触下弹出去，而英文这句成语的意思，据EasYkeba JbYokbaəp Bfeql kYav l c Ar oobkq Ckdifpe上解释说：j Yhb Y` oY` hfkd kl fpb Zv df hfkd Y c fkdbo Yr afZiv YdYfkpq qə b qə r j Z (r pr , ql pelt `l kqbj m) 。意即将一个指头从拇指上摩擦出破裂声来，以表示轻蔑。下例对这个意思表示得特别明显：

zG kl qgbYil r p fk qə b ibYpq l c F boj fl kb) pe b fp kl qə f  
kd ql j b) kl q qə Yq! à?ka SopriY pkYmmba ebo dfkdbop,  
y y B, F, JYt obk`b: Ul o bk fk Jl sb (z俗细点儿袭并互底货  
米安轮) 尚亚俗看来敏的并益) 医婉细点袭并! à兴婉风杂轮吹听  
尚搭议休) 显球怕流。(

再看下面的用例：



Fr q Qe Yt e bYa t Yp nr fqb `l kqb kq Yka `l r ia Yed oa d  
pkYme fp fkd bopy Y`r pdj Yov dbpqr ob! y fk qe b cY` b l cil  
`Yi dl ppfm y y ?, H, Aol kfk: *Ea-sbkq obp fk Rt l Ul aiap*  
(刺婉童货措十朵立珠) 并愿亚冬地瞥搭特寒念另避球池怕杈搭  
样子。(

U e bk dbifkd fp qe b dYr db vl r `Yk pkYmvl r o fkd bop Y  
q il df` ) Yka t e bk vl r o il df` fp t bYh qe Yq fp sbov YdobbYZi  
b, y y U, Q, K Yr de Yj : *Mc Fro Yk Dl ka Ydb* (显粉盘眼管量  
搭臂愉) 码舰健是并难牛胡) 顶冬码搭牛胡穿塔轻) 略婉怪末瞥  
醒令搭。(

附带地说一下, 莎翁在 *Pl o bl Yka H ifbq* 一剧中, 说有世仇的 *K  
l kqYdkb* 和 *AYmr ibq* 两家的仆人, 狭路相逢, 也不免要表示一点敌  
意, 如第一幕第一景26行中说:

QYj , : , , Gt fii Zfqj v qerj Z Yq qej , t ef e fp Y  
afpdoY` b d qej ) fc qe bv ZbYofq (台: x x 俗夕对字赏料知  
大拇议, 破跟赏料勤富象拼) 略舰岛每旧。( (们清暑乡 (

句中的 *d Zfq l kb qerj Z Yq Y mbopl k*, 也和 *d pkYml kb c  
fkdbop Yq Y mbopl k* 一样, 是表轻蔑的。

## 85. 分词+ the moment

庄样唱语Yqɕbj lj bkq搭觉三句漠多) 顶珠撒皆并细样) 请朵鞭将堪务明。

③刻创】关于j lj bkq与介词结合的成语，除Yqɕbj lj bkq外，还有d oɕbj lj bkq, fkɕbj lj bkq, l cɕbj lj bkq, l kɕbj lj bkq, 及ɖɕbj lj bkq。现分别解释并例示如下：

/, Yqɕbj lj bkq: g pql t

GYj sbov Zr pv Yqɕb o l o bkq (俗浅下怪忙。 (

0, d oɕbj lj bkq: ɖbj ml oYofiv

Jbɕp pbq Ypfab d oɕb o l o bkqɕb nr bpql k l c bumbkpb,  
(呼兴尖多搭问狮讶轻柜亚细部。 (

1, fkɕbj lj bkq: fk `Ypb

Rov ɖ Zb `Yij Yka pbkpfqsb fkɕb o l o bkql c aYkdbo,  
(亚延影冬休) 夕放疑辣) 粉丽灵敏。 (

2, l cɕbj lj bkq: fj ml oɖYkq Yqɕb mɔbpbkqɕj b

Fb fp l kb l cɕbj bk l cɕb o l o bkq (赏婉冬纪夕瞥之细。 (

3, l kɕbj lj bkq: l kɕb pml qj Yii Yql k `b

Qeb Zr opql r q `ovfkd l kɕb o l o bkq (尚冬场哭池来了。 (

4, q̣ ɸ b j l j b k q : t f ɸ Y Z p l i r ɸ m r k ` ɸ Y i f ɸ

Re b ` i l ` h f p ɸ j b a q̣ ɸ b o l o b k q (略英断草愉轻。 (

## 86. rest home、rest house、rest room

庄样务搭 obpqelj b、obpqelrpb、obpqollj ) 态夜并知婉更细样？

③刻创】三者意思完全不同，不可混淆不清，闹成笑话。现分别说明如下：

obpqelj b : Y obpfabkqYi bpqYZifpej bkq qe Yq mol sfabp prb`fYi`Yob do`lksY+ibp`bkqp Yka Ydba lo fkdofj nbopl kp, (PYkal o Flrpb Bfeql kYav) 一种疗养院，可供病后体力虚弱，或年老者休养之用。

obpqelrpb : Yk bj mqv elrpb do qeb Y`lj j laYql kl cqp Ysbibop, (Al o nibqp Bfeql kYav lc Ckdispe NeoYpbp) 旅客憩息处，休息所，歇凉亭。这原是起源于印度的，如果是在车站附近，就叫作 aYt h Zr kdYil t (车站附近的旅店)。此语在美国俗语中，又用来指舒服的刑务所。

obpqollj : (S,Q) Y olj lo olj p, bpm fk Y mr Zif Zr fi afkd, eYsfkd t Ype +Zl t i, q fibq, Yka l qe bo cY`fifqbp, (PYkal o Flrpb Bfeql kYav) 厕所，洗手间。

## 87. this side of

片根薪细眼花告务QYv Al oZv Qj 1l qe bpq U e fphv qe fp pfab l c AYk+YaY。深中搭 pYv 结 qe fp pfab l c AYkYaY) 并知状破获乡动?

③刻创】这个pYv不可译成z说à, 应译成z指名à, 如zQYv: °Al`Y+Al iY, NibYpb,£(请指名要可口可乐。) à。问题中说是QYv Al oZv Qj 1l qe bpq U e fphv qe fp pfab l c AYkYaY, 意为z在加拿大的这边请指名要可比最合口的威士忌à。所谓qe fp pfab l c AYkYaY 是说z不是在加拿大, 而是在美国à。通常说qe fp pfab l c qe b NY`fd, 意为z太平洋的这边à, 如系中国人说的, 当然是指中国, 而把美国说为qe Yq pfa b l c qe b NY`fd (太平洋的彼岸)。还有l k qe fp pfab l c e bYsbk或l k qe fp pfab l c qe b doYsb, 意为z在这世间à即z在坟墓的这边à, 即fk i fd的意思。

不过如在美国说zRe b j l pq pnb`qY`r iYo obsr b qe fp pfab l c NYo fp! à就比较费解了, 因巴黎不像加拿大为美比邻, 而是在另外一个大洲上, 所以说这边和那边, 未免隔得太远了一点。但美国人这样说, 大概是将纽约与巴黎对比吧。我们可以勉强翻译为z在巴黎的这边, 最豪华壮丽的轻松歌舞à。

这个qe fp pfab l c还可以作Zbd ob (z以前àz在x x 之前à) 解, 例如:

F bxi Zr qql kel ib vl r) Yka vl r t l k q dbq Yt Yv qe fp pfa b l c j fakfde q (赏健世默码想寒搭) 并村败系码鞭邮走。(

Ge Yoaiv qe fkh Gpe Yii Zb ZY`h fk Qfk dYml ob qe fp pfab l c Ae ofpqj Yp, (俗邮亚徒聪级显念俗婉并健合村新加闪来搭。(

## 88. pull up your socks

庄样唱语mr ii r mvl r o pl`hp) 也字另乡眼z九难码搭输子à) 婉讲并士搭) 并知村顿婉什凉珠撒?

③刻创】这是一句英国的成语，美国似乎不大通行。在QMB (《牛津节约辞典》) 上的解释是zq ZoY` b l kbpbic d o Yk bœd œqà, 意为z鼓起勇气努力去做à, 或z振作精神努力工作à。另外一部*Reb I b khvr peY Bfeql kYov l cAr œobkq Ckdifpe Gfl o p*的辞典上则解释说zq mœbrYob q j Yhb Y prb` fYi bœd œqà, 意为z准备特别奋力而为à。请看下面的用例:

Qr kaYv t Yp œ b aYv d o œ b g Z peYob-l r q Gt Yp zœp vl r o t l oh l k œ b pœYfop) Yka vl r op l k œ b pfœkd ol j ) Yka vl r op l k j Yhfkd œ b Zbapà, ?ka fqt Yp œ b aYv d o ob` ofj fkYql k: zReb pœYfop t bob l kiv` ibYkba al t k q f b iYpœ t bbh) vl r œ Zbœpœ mr ii r mvl r o pl`hp,ây y *Reb Qr abkqRj o bp*) Qbm /6) /75.) FbokYabœp Bbsifk: *Reb Nœfeb l cKv Ql ri* (礼巴十婉朵眠浮约搭平子。z液礼巴年村码毯赖圣) 全拾料使) 已君但某。à顶礼巴平袭婉涨妹料哈相议责搭平子: z千个礼巴赖圣译毯过课道) 码源好省鞭冒抗细点。à (

Re fp ifœib dfoi Bl obbk pe bœ Yit Yvp eYa Y œ ok d o aYk` fkd) pl pe b mr iiba r me bo pl`hp Yka q l h q fq d o Y ifsfk d, y y P, Jbej Ykk: *œsfœYql k q œ b UYiqv* (掉林液个头妇买) 尚巧来薪实衣搭十尝) 伤显尚冒抗砰做) 利邪实衣谋巧。(

U bœb œ b l kiv nYœv t el`Yk pYsb œ b Cj nfob Yka œ Y œp buY` qiv t bœb dl q q mr ii l r o pl`hp r m, Re bobœ q l j r` e YœY` ej bkq q fkafsfar Yip) œ Yœp œ b œl r Zib, y y ?, U fi pl k: *Reb U d kd Qœq* z? Qœ ov l cF fpœ of Yi œœbœpœ (俗料

婉勤富件根搭睡细搭团施) 伤显舰婉眼了液个诰故) 俗料断加倍  
冒抗并可。理烦搭婉私瞥搭盘粉并易统驰。(

## X 文 句

### 89. Your Majesty后接第三人称

接忱根搭触期对赏料搭根束窗Ffp（貌束眼邪Fbo（K Ygbpqv）冬另眼窗WroK Ygbpqv（彼下（。眼什凉冬另窗挤搭瞥）细下子心才唱多态夜了？想眼草举亚WroK Ygbpqv鬼夕急邪efp或ebo落。

③刻创】这是由人称不同而发生的错觉。称对方为vl r 是第二人称，称对方为Wro j Ygbpqv便变成第三人称了。中文的陛下，乃至阁下之类，也是同样的情形，为着礼貌起见，不敢冒犯地直说z你à，而改称z你的阶前àz你的屋子下面à，这样一来当然成为第三者了。例如：

WroK Ygbpqv d odbqp,（彼下要了。（

WroK Ygbpqv eYp dfsbk efp `l kpbkq ql qe b mnl nl pYi,  
（彼下世珠液个失案。（

在英文的所谓Al k`l oa（人称、性、数、格等的一致）上，这是很合理的，z陛下à既系第三人称，自然不可以接用第二人称的动词和属格形容词。英文的主语和动词之间，确实有些很费解的惯用法，值得我们注意。兹举数例如下：

F, U, Dlt ibo在他著的*Kl abok Ckdifpe SpYdb*一书中说：zKl ob qe Yk l kbæ, qel r de fqp pbkpb fp kb` bppYofiv mir oYi, fp qpbYqba Yp Y pl oql c`lj mlr ka l c`l kbæ, diil t fkd fqp`l kpcqr`ql k, Yka Ydobbp t fqe Y pfkdr iYo kl r k Yka qYhbp Y pfkdr iYo sboZ,à。



既然是不止一个，在一个以上，为什么不接用复数动词呢？平常连一个半（l kb Yka e Yic）都要接复数动词，现在一个以上至少两个，反而要接单数，岂不是怪！例如：

Kl ob qe Yk l kb e Yp Zbbk afpj fppba, (杰驰搭并止细个。(想眼亚l kb鬼切略了j Yk) 薪了液个单戎其导) 必皮地断急邪单戎凡导并可。

Kl ob qe Yk l kb dobj Yk e Yp l sbo`lj b, (细其显千搭统度员的想抗价顶顶下了。(

Kl ob qe Yk l kb ob`bkq t ofqo e Yp aoYt k Y`lj mYofpl k Zbqt bbk Jl oa Lr cdfbia Yka AYokbdfb, y y Nol c, P, U, Qbd k+U Yqpl k (薪细个显千搭晚贾约家的曾祸该订措味角火阶琴绅约过细个背凯。(

美国的文法家Ar oj b和I r oYqe共著的文法书上则说，这本应该与单数动词一致的，但如果把j l ob看作一个Nir oYi Qkabdfkfq Nol kl r k时，也未尝不可作复数看，所以他们举例说：zKl ob qe Yk l kb e Yp (或 eYsb) d r ka fqpl, (有一个以上的人都觉得是这样的。) à。显然我们可以看得出来，在j l ob qe Yk l kb的后面，如果要接用复数动词，哪怕是在美国，前面是不可以说出单数名词来的。

请再看下面的例：

Q vl roj Ypqo) `lj j Yka vl r, (俗奇末码) 俗婉码搭忧瞥。(

句中的vl roj Ypqo是第三人称，说话者的Q是第一人称。因为是同格的关系仍在第一人称上求动词与主语的一致。

如果有否定字接在第二个主语上时，也不要作算，如：

Q kl qvl r) Yj q ZiYj b, (: GYj q ZiYj b) kl q vl r, ((译夕后俗) 并后码。(

又有这样的说法：

Lbfqe bo QYZbi kl o GYob qj fa mbl mib, y y U biip (致起  
豹订火俗的并婉词女搭瞥。(

Lbfqe bo pe b kl o Gt bob j bq y y A, Fol kqb (俗火尚辆薪  
举另。(

但在现代美国作家笔下又可发现这样的句子:

Lbfqe bo vl r kl o Gfp kb` bppYov d qe b mol dobpp l c qe Yc  
dobYq K bqel afpq Aer o`e, y y Q, Jbt fp (对兴略个卫君公健搭  
家展)码俗的酸勤眼抗。(

## 90. tag-question的动词和主句中的不一致

庄样搭qYd+nr bpqfl k) 堪破zGq fp Y kf b aYv) fpk&q fq? à故加问句中搭凡导) 婉火忧句中搭凡导细致搭。却举薪念鬼凡导并细致搭句子) 并知婉更正脾搭邪动?

③刻创】说zW r dbbi `l ia, al k&q vl r? à前后是一致的, 因为a l 是dbbi的代动词。又如zRe Yq fp kl q fj nl oqYkq, fp fq? à, 附加问句不说zfp qe Yq? à, 因为fq是qe fp、qe Yq的代名词。复数的qe bpb、qe l p b, 则用qe bv来取代, 例如: zRe bpb Ymmibp il l h sbov dl l a, al k&q qe bv? à。还有zGj r pq kl q dl Ykv r oqe bo, j Yv G` à也算是一致的。因为否定说j r pq kl q, 肯定就说j Yv, 如zK Yv G` l j b fk? y W bp, vl r j Yv, L l, vl r j r pq kl q à。以上在字面上看去, 前后所用动词似不相侔, 其实是一致的。

但这种口语句型的表现法中, 确有前后动词不一致的时候。现分别举例解答如下:

美国的文法家Ar oj b举出这样一个例句:

Al j b al t k nr f hiv) `Yk&q vl r? (码令点下来嘛。(

通常附加问句中的助动词, 是要采用主句中的助动词的, 不过例外很多, 例如:

Qq m qe Yq kl fpb) t fii vl r? (码并夕吵亲好暗。(

Jb qe dl d o Y t Yih) pe Yii t b? (俗料砰七七步暗。(

U b e Ya q l ibYok bsbov qe fkd d o l r opbisbp) afak&q t b? (什凉的错欲个儿来伟益纹。(

G Zfd Yka p qpl kd) Yobk&q (或Yfk&q (G? (俗闲尖富大富愚了。(

W r j r p q ` l j b Y k l q e b o a Y v ) t f i i v l r ? ( 码下道哑来好暗。 (

J b q j b p Y v G i q e f k h f q l s b o ) j Y v G ? ( 俗夕好好邮细下) 液样务好暗。 (

R e b o b p l k b c Y s l r o G p e l r i a i f h b v l r q a l j b ) t f i i v l r ? ( 俗薪活沔盘邮理烦码细下。 (

上面某些例句中的 *zt fii vl r ? àzpe Yii t b? àzj Yv G à* 等附加问句，是询问对方的意向的，故不必用同样的助动词。

再看一些名作家的笔下，也有不少这样的例句：

U b ` Y k d l q Y k l q e b o ` l r k q v ) p e Y i i t b ? y y J Y t o b k ` b : J Y a v A e Y q p a i b v p J l s b o ( 俗料村外根砰暗。 (

G j f d e q j Y h b q e b Z o b Y h c Y p q Y k a b Y q f q r m e b o b , p e l r i a G ? y y J Y t o b k ` b : J Y a v A e Y q p a i b v p J l s b o ( 俗可显舰亚液漫跳早补打来车搭纹。 (

G c Y f o ` Y k q i f s b t f q e l r q v b o ) J f w Y y t l k q v b o ? y y K Y r d e Y j : J f u Y l c J Y o d b q e ( 开茶) 俗辆薪码舰恨并下砰纹。码怎凉样？ (

M e ) G q f o b a l c f q ) Y o b k q G ? y y E Y i p t l o q e v : D l q v q p Q Y d Y ( 啊) 略个俗侮骄了纹。 (

G Y p t f k b ) Y o b k q G ? y y K Y r d e Y j : Q Y k Y q q f r o ( 俗婉细个变据搭瞥纹。 (

F Y k d f q Y i i ) G m Y q Y i i v d o l t k r m ) Y o b k q G ? y y K Y r d e Y j : A Y h b p Y k a E i b ( 赏妈搭) 俗闲尖杀婉个大瞥了。 (

当然也有用 *zYj Gkl q? à*，不过这似乎带有文言的气味，例如：

G Y j q p b b e b o f k ` e r o ` e ) Y j G k l q ? y y K b o b a f q e : P e l a Y D i b o f k d ( 俗砰做礼巴轻可显看村尚暗。 (

G Y j Y m o f k ` b p p ) Y j G k l q ? y y ? i ` l q q : J f q q i b U l o b k ( 俗婉细位公忧纹。 (

至于r pba d 的nr bpqfl k+qYd, 据U, Q, ?iibk和?, Q, Fl okZv二  
人的说法, 有两种形式可用, 一为zr pbak&qvl r ? à, 一为zafak&qvl  
r ? à。

Qe b r pba d Zb æYqZl kkv) afak&qpe b? y y B, F, JY  
t obk`b: JYav AeYq~~q~~aibv& Jl sbo (尚色来婉略罢命亮搭  
纹。 (

## 91. 美国的zip code

片根警务搭zS pb wfm`l ab kr j Zbop,à) 并知议搭婉什凉旦里?  
程wfm细字) 各婴辞典千搭刻取三几的并屈邪) 并知卑句中搭到字)  
跟约获刻?

③刻创】查美国最通用的《韦氏新世界美语辞典》，对wfm一字的解释是，〔名〕 (/) Y pe l oq, pe Yome fppfk d l o t e fwfk d pl r k a, Yp l c Y mYppfk d Zr iibq; (0) bkbodv, sfj 。意为如弹丸飞过天空时的嗤嗤声；能力，活力。〔自动〕 (/) q j Yhb, l o j l sb t fqe, Y wfm, (0) q Y q l o j l sb t fqe prbba l o bkbodv。意为发出嗤嗤声驶过，或突飞猛进。〔他动〕 q cYpqb k t fqe Y pifab cYpqb k bo。意为用拉链拉紧。确实的，辞典上这些解释，都不适用于问题中的例句。有时辞典上找不到适当的解释时，就得另想办法，从有关的书本上去找寻资料。

问题中的文句是从美国邮政信箱上抄来的，可知必与邮务有关。现在全世界各文明国家，为求邮送迅速计，都要分成邮区，用数字来标记。英国伦敦是老早就有这种办法，把邮区号码规定为地名的一部分，如L1, 1, NYoifYj bkq F fii, L, U, 1, J l k a l k (伦敦西北三区，国会山三号)。新加坡邮局常在信封上盖上zB l r pb Qfk d Ym l ob afp qf qkr j Zbop, (请用新加坡邮区号码。) à的字样。例如Re b S k f sbopfq y l c Qfk d Ym l ob, Qfk d Ym l ob /. (新加坡第十邮区新加坡大学)。美国在这方面当然也不甘落后，近年正在大力推行地区改进计划 (X l kb G m l sbj bkq N o l d o Yj )，把全国各州各市分划为许多邮区。编定五个数字的号码，前三字为州及城市，后二字为邮区。这便叫作wfm`l ab。

这个在wfm`l ab中的wfm, 和辞典上的wfm一字完全无关，而是从X l kb G m l sbj bkq N o l d o Yj 的起首字母拼合而成的，所以最初是写成：

XGN`l ab

后来才改用小写的wfm`l ab的。因此问题中的zSpb wfm`l ab kr j Zbop,â一句，意为z请用邮区号码â。在美国的街头上到处都可以看到灰色的邮政信箱，那上面多半有些标语，如：

S, Q, K Yfi (片根昨政 (

Spb wfm`l ab kr j Zbop, (请邪昨树孤里。 (

K Yfi bYoiv fk ç b aYv, (早早投昨。 (

另外的地方则写着：

XfmAl ab Fbil kdp fk Csbov ?aaobpp, (每细地址的状加千昨树孤里。 (

美国的wfm`l ab kr j Zbop是管州与市的，所以应写在州名的后面，如：

K o, Yka K op, K f e Ybi Wf

4/. U bpq/2/ Qq ?mq 3H

Lbt W oh) L, W /.. 1/

S, Q, ?,

近来接到在澳洲的友人来函，地址上也附上了邮区号码，如：

K o, Q, W Jfr

70 Lbbofj Pl Ya

AYpqib Al sb) L, Q, U, 0. 47

?r pcpYifY

在日本，地名上附邮区号的，似乎是最近的事。

K o, Ae bkd Rfk+Yk)

3+30) 1 Ae1j b)

KfkYj f+?wYZr )

KfkYq +hr ) Rl hvl /. 4

HYmYk,



## 92. 新加坡的本地英文

全完寂务庄语搭期族赴薪夫周碎拾万瞥) 讲务各地务搭庄语) 破薪细周息拾万瞥搭片根) 舰跟庄根瞥务搭庄语并全相世) 帮洲薪帮洲搭庄语) 加拿大薪加拿大搭庄语) 并知新加闪婉更袭薪新加闪搭庄语?

③刻创】新加坡立国不久，政府励精图治，百废俱兴，为使人民效忠国家，凡事以本地公民为主，无此条件，则不免处处碰壁，因而奖励本地文物，文学，音乐，艺术，都标榜本地作家，栽培不遗余力。语文自然也不在例外，我相信新加坡是有所谓本地英文的存在。例如新加坡大学发给教职员的一份通告上说：

Re b Skfsbopfqv l c QfkdYm l ob Al +l mboYqfsb Fl l hpd ob Q l`fbqv Jfj fcpa e Yp Zbbk bpqYZifpe ba, G Yfj p d l mbk fcp Zl l hpd ob fk Fr hfq Rfj Ye AYj mr p fk qfj b d o qe b kbt Y`Yab j f vbYo, (新加闪大伟故约听忧拜搭扰对闲尖园唱) 吹杀亚新伟吗杰秋轻即亚随吉智玛突园琴正式杰习。(

在大学校园内，美国说 l k qe b`Yj mr p, 英国说 fk qe b dol r kap l c qe b r kfsbopfqv, 上文说的 fk Fr hfq Rfj Ye AYj mr p, 既非英国话，也非美国话，应该是新加坡的本地英文了。我敢担保这绝不是疏忽的笔误，而是本地很流行的说法。署名发出上述通告的人，是大学里数一数二的人物，他虽是华人，但不会说华语，甚至连祖传的方言也不会说，家中小孩牙牙学语，即学的是英语，可知英语已成为他的母语，是决不会有错的，因而我断定这是本地英文的一种表现法。

不久以前我看到一位本地华人发出的一份英文请帖内容是这样的：

K o, ! K op, Ld U bb Ml f

obnr bpq qe b mibYpr ob l c qe b `l j mYkv l c

K o, RYk Ae fk Ae Yk

d o afkkbo

Yq0/ Ae boov Mo` e Yoa

l k 07 DbZ, /747 Yq5: 1. m j ,

请客的主人，是英校出身，在家夫妇间说话都是英语，可知他的英语到了家，是无可怀疑的。在上面的请帖中所用的d o afkkbo一个说法，我敢断定是本地英文的一种表现法，因为在英美一般都是用Yq afkkbo的，偶有用q qY的时候，但用d o则少见。下面是英美常见的请帖上的字样：

K o, ! K op, BYsfa Hl e kpl k

obnr bpq qe b mibYpr ob l c

K o, HYj bp U e fqb

Yq afkkbo l k DofaYv

? mofi qe b qt bkqv+d r oqe

Yqpbsbk l &il`h

/0. F fiipfab Pl Ya

K o, Hl e k F ol t k

obnr bpqp qe b `l j mYkv l c

K o, Ffii Qj fqe q qY

l k U bakbpaYv bsbkfk d

Yq2 l &al`h

K Yv fqbpbkqe

06 Ae boov ? sbkr b

在新加坡某学院的毕业典礼上，我听到院长请理事会主席颁发学生学位时说：

K Yv mibYpb qe b Ae Yfoj Yk l c qe b Al r k` fi q `l kbo , , ,

这种说法我相信也是本地英文的表现法，否则不会在那样隆重的毕业典礼上，袍笏登场，当着七八百位中外贵宾，高声宣唱的。照英文的惯用法是只能省去助动词，而不能省去主语的，例如只能省去E1 a前的助动词j Yv，说zE1 a Zibpp vl r ,â，而不能省去主语E1 a说成zK Yv Zibpp vl r ,â。所以上面那句话，英美人通常省去助动词而保留主语，说成：

Q mibYpb qe b Ae Yfoj Yk , , ,

既不是英语，也不是美国语，加拿大不这样说，澳洲也不这样说，当然是新加坡的本地英语了。

从印度文变成英文的Zr kdYil t 一字，英国人编的?JB上解释说，el r pb t fqe l kiv l kb pq obv（无楼的平房），美国人编的UL UB上解释说，Y pj Yii el r pb l o`l qqYdb, r pr Yiiv l c l kb pq obv（通常无楼的小屋）。但在新加坡的本地英语中，此字通常指有楼的住宅，如海滨的z吃风楼â之类。

在新加坡的本地英语中，j YaYj 一字有特殊的意义。那就是对已婚的妇女，仍用她未婚的姓名时，冠用j YaYj 一字，表示她已婚，而无须提到她丈夫的姓名。

又如比赛打成平手，不分胜负，在新加坡他们说ibsbi，在正式的英文是应该说aoYt 才对的。

新加坡既有本地英文，当然也有本地华语。凡医生的诊所（` ifkf `）都说成药房，如z张氏药房â（Ae Ykd Aifkf）。在中国说药房是西药店，可以为病人配药的，大都贩卖成药。

菜场叫作z巴刹â似乎也是本地吸收了马来语的华语。此外血库称为z血液银行â，而毫无银钱关系。不说z国立初级学院â而说z国家初级学院â，不说三万八千，而说三十八千，以上似乎都是受了英文的影响而构成的本地华语，但十点一刻说成十点三个字，十点半说成十点六个字，十点三刻说成十点九个字等，便好像是本地的创作了。

### 93. 主句中有decide等字时附句用假设现在

亚PbYab~~o~~ Bfdbpq千薪细句务zU b Yph qe YqY nYoql c qe fp ml t bo Zb Ymml oql kba ql l r o kbbap, (俗料夕属把液婴澎抗搭细波朵般俗料搭需夕来朵眠。(à 亚句中Zb字念另) 婉更切略了细个由凡导?

③刻创】在回答这个问题之前,我要反问一句:你要的是英国话,还是美国话?如果你要的是英国话,答案是肯定的;如果你要的是美国话,答案就变成否定的了。

在主句中用有YasfpYZib、Yasfbb、YmmbYi、YooYkdb、Yph、Zb d、Zfa、`lk`bok、ab`iYob、ab`fab、abj Yka、abpfoYZib、abpfo b、abqoj fkb、af qYq、af qj、bunb`q、efkq、fj nboYqfsb、f j ml oqYkq、fkpfpq、il l h ql fq、kb`bpbYov、l obo、lk`lkafql k q e Yq、l oabo、miYk、moYv、mobbo、ml ml pb、ob`lj j bka、obcr p Yi、obnr bpq、obnr fob、pbb、pbq d oqe、pr ddbpq、r odb、r odbk q、t Ykq、t fpe等字句时,附句在美国话中要用假设语气现在时(Qr Zg k`qfsb Nobpbkq)的动词,而在英国话中就要用pe Yii、pe l r ia、j Yv、j fde q的助动词,现就美国的这种特殊用法来举例如下:

F b abbj ba fq YasfpYZib qe YqY dbkboYi Ykkl r k`bj bkc Zb j Yab ql qe b pqYcc, y y Bobfpbo (赏贫眼源好士知大家细统。(

K, ~~o~~ Yasf b ql Re , , , , qe Yq pe b l obo e bopbic ql vl r kd F, fp r kœfbkaiv, y y Rbibo (K,对Re,搭印告婉尚题菩海吗怕搭F,婉薪带珠搭。(

Qe bj r pqdka t l oh l o YooYkdb fk pl j b t Yv qe Yqe b a l pl j bqefkd d o e bo, y y Bobfpbo (尚必望野村浮约做或婉设动哀每夕赏班班尚搭忙。(

Re bv Yphba qe Yq e b Zb Zol r de q d U Ype fkd d k, (赏料夕属把赏散村际府砰。 (

F bo mYobk qe Ya Zb ddba qe Yq e bo Zl av Zb Zol r de q qe b ob, y y Bobfpbo (尚纺旅曾请属把尚搭尸施散村略漫砰。 (

Jb q q p o p l c e f j Yob obYa Zfaafkd t f qe d b f d k b a Y c b ` q f l k q e Y q G l d b k j b b q e f j Y q K f i d o a F Y s b k, y y U, U, J Y t o b k ` b (赏搭员活悲方池来) 黄盘黄珠地牺请致莫根村米反攻汶砰举赏。 (

? q q e b p Y j b q f j b e b t Y p d o b Y q i v ` l k ` b o k b a i b p q A i v a b d b q q e b k l q f l k q e Y q q e b c Y j f i v t Y p j r ` e ` l k ` b o k b a, y y B o b f p b o (世轻赏心断草呼心) 巧怕克莱措邮村家族挂请。 (

A l j j f q p b b j b j Z b o p a b ` f a b a q e Y q q e b l o d Y k f w q f l k Z b a f p ` e Y o d b a, (说员料教乏把略园亦刻七。 (

F b a b j Y k a b a q e Y q e b o p e l b p Z b ` e Y k d b a, y y B o b f p b o (赏奇末尚架吐。 (

R e b o b t Y p Y j l p q r o d b k q a b p f o b q e Y q e b Z b l s b o q Y h b k Y k a ` Y m q r o b a, y y B o b f p b o (商切地易烟把赏追测村案。 (

Q e b e Y a Z b b k a b q p o j f k b a q e Y q e b j Y o o v e b o, (尚早教心夕谎海赏。 (

F f p ` l k p ` f b k ` b t Y p a f q Y q f k d q e Y q e b d f s b r m Q r w k k b Y k a o b q r o k d ? k + d b i Y, y y B o b f p b o (赏搭客心奇末赏放能苏姍合村哀吉轮略儿砰。 (

Q e b b u n b ` q a e f p a f q r j q e Y q p e b i b Y s b Y i l k b, y y B o b f p b o (尚口邮赏健帝言夕尚单等细个瞥砰。 (

L b s b o t Y p f q d Z b b u n b ` q a q e Y q l k b p b b h d j Y h b Y k v q e f k d ` l j b d m Y p p, y y B o b f p b o (教并夕目店细个瞥恼释请什凉泗盘东巧。 (

Q e b k l t Z b d Y k d e f k q d e b o p f p q b o q e Y q p e b Z b f k q p l a r ` b a d p l j b j b k l c ` e Y o Y ` q o Y k a p q Y k a f k d, y y B o b f p b o (尚提亚杰秋来暗球尚妹妹) 夕把尚记钱海细遇薪沙措薪地位搭且瞥。 (

F b p e l r i a j Y h b f q Y m b Y o f j n b o Y q f s b q e Y q e b d l Y q l k  
` b, y y B o b f p b o (赏夕请上盈错赏薪立了砵搭必夕。 (

Q t Y p p l f j m l o q Y k q q e Y q e b p b b R, Y k a F,, y y Q f k` i Y f o  
J b t f p (赏夕砵举R,火F,婉断草重夕搭。 (

A Y k f q v l r b s b o Z b q f o b a Y k a g r j m v t f q e l r q f k p f p q f k d c  
e Y q b s b o v l k b Y + o l r k a v l r Z b q e b p Y j b t Y v ? y y Q f k` i Y f o  
J b t f p (码蝇水搭瞥破跟并火码细样) 码勤并粉村疲惫火敲尖兮  
兮怕? (

J l l h d l f q q e b r k p l` f Y i f k a f s f a r Y i f p q Z b k l q n b o j f q p b a,  
y y B o b f p b o (有珠并夕四略遇并好听绝搭个瞥忧诸夜家来。 (

Q f p k l q k b` b p p Y o v q e Y q e b Z b Y Z i b d l a f p q f k d r f p e q e b j  
f k b Y` e Y k a b s b o v` Y p b, y y E b l o d b Q Y o d k (并细乏夕赏勤  
细细必鞭。 (

R e b d f o i l k` l k a f q l k p e b Z b Y i l t b a d l m e l k b d l C r d b  
k b,, ,` l k p b k q p a, y y B o b f p b o (略貌具世珠搭蚀活婉允在尚  
吹旦寒海写继。 (

Q l j b q e f k d j r p q Z b p Y f a l c e f p` o r b i l o a b o q e Y q p e b Z b  
m r q d l a b Y q e, y y U, U, J Y t o b k` b (赏不酷地下末夕把尚尺死  
搭泗必错失村细下。 (

Q o b j Y f k b a d l p b` r o b Y k f k g r k` q l k,, , m o Y v f k d q e Y q f  
q p o f d e q p Z b k l q f k + q p o d b o b a t f q e, y y B o b f p b o (苹皮薪店获错  
奇末) 请属并夕渡功上搭澎利。 (

Q t Y p m o l m l p b a q e Y q e b d l, y y B o b f p b o (货议夕赏  
砵。 (

A i v a b t Y p j l s b a d l o b n r b p q l c e f j q e Y q e b q v d l f k a r  
` b q e b t Y o a b k d l Y i l t e f j, y y B o b f p b o (克莱措袭悲粉凡错  
砵请属赏) 夕赏碰必过瞥允在赏。 (

R e b m o b p f a b k q p b q d o q e f k q e b p q Y q b j b k q q e Y q q e b` b p p  
Y q l k l c e l p q f i f q b p Z b Y o o Y k d b a Z b q t b b k q e b Y o j f b p l c q e b  
k Y q l k Y i d l s b o k j b k q Y k a q e b A e f k b p b` l j j r k f p q p, (片总  
势亚样告中唯差哀每中根根期政府揭递与赴产粗揭递搭始养。 (

?ipl pe b pr ddbpqa qe Yq qe bv qYhb Y pqbYj bo ZY h q ?  
j bof Y qj l ool t , y y Q, Jbt fp (尚心失议赏料明十乘年担合  
片根砵。 (

Qr nml pb fqt Yp El aq t fpe qe Yq e b fkqobob, y y Sml  
k Qfk`iYfo (黄乏赏来千斤婉十珠落。 (

## 94. It' s up to you的译法

庄样务r mǎl +aYǒp婉议z源新式搭à) 破Yk r mǎl +aYǒp pǎl ob  
 (源新式搭体对 () 深中搭r mǎl 薪z意村àz显因à搭珠撒) 刺草驶瞥  
 务zǒp r mǎl vl r ,à) 眼并勤乡唱z意村码à) 并知液句寒) 状怎样福  
 乡尝对?

③刻创】 英文的副词**zr nà**加上介词**zǎ à**时有六种意义，问题中所提出的，只是其中两种而已。现分别举例说明如下：

(/) 直到，以至，以迄。如：

r mǎl ǎfp ǎfj b (意村到轻眼止 (

ǎlj Y mYr mbo r mǎl Y mǎfk`b (的杀期显因束规 (

Gpǎl a r mǎl j v hkbbp fk ǎb t Yǎbo, (如强结态。 (

Q`ell i YǎpkaYk`b fp`lj mr ipl ǎv d o Yii`e fiaobk r mǎl  
 ǎb Ydb l c d r ǎpǎbk, (村十息岁眼止搭儿袖清施世商教育。 (

Re fp`fdYo fp kl qr mǎl j r`e, (液怎努并太好。 (

(0) 胜任，能作。如：

F b fp kl qr mǎl ǎfp g Z, (赏并勤怯素赏搭浮约。 (

(1) 匹敌，及得上。如：

Re fp kbt Zl l h l c Eobbkǎp fpkǎqr mǎl ǎfp iYpǎ (肤林池  
 搭液卑新扰并结赏念细卑扰好。 (

F b fp kl qr mǎl ǎfp ǎYǎbo Yp Y p`el iYo, (赏搭伟问并结  
 赏搭纺室。 (



G`l r ia kl qdbqr mql efj , (俗并结赏。 (

(2) 适于, 适合。如:

Gal k& qdbbi r mql Y il kd t Yih q aYv, (俗纪十并屈兴约长氏七步。 (

Gal k& qdbbi r mql dl fkd q t l oh q aYv, (俗纪十并屈兴浮约。 (

(3) [口语] 正在做, 从事。如:

U eYqfp e b r mql ? (赏正亚做什凉? (

F b& r mql j fp` e fbc, (赏正亚冻从。 (

U eYq qf hp eYp pe b Zbbk r mql ? (尚细意亚书什凉把异? (

F b& Zbbk r mql efp l ia dYj b YdYfk, (赏故态复列。 (

(4) [口语] 应由(某人)担任或负责。如:

Gfp r mql rp (: fqfp l ro ar qv (q dfsb qe bj Yii qe be bi mt b`Yk, (俗料君状价俗料伤勤来班由赏料。 (

Gfp r mql j b q al pl, (俗薪诸务液样做。 (

Gfp r mql vl r q d k fpe qe b qYph, (把略浮约做暑婉码搭诸务[责素]。 (

zGfp r mql vl r, à一句惯用的话, 正是最后第六种意义, 在英国这句话用得极多, 用途也极广, 翻译时决不可死抱着z义务à或z责任à一个说法来译, 应临机应变, 配合说话时的情形, 来采用适当的译法。例如在英国租房间住, 不像中国以月计算, 而是以周计的。房客每周付房东的租金, 原是规矩。我们付惯了月租的, 反觉每周来付有点麻烦, 便向房东表示愿意一月一付, 房东却回答说: zGfp r mql vl r, à。照字面的意思是z那应由你负责来决定怎样做à, 但不妨译成: z看你怎样方便吧。à

当我们回国之前想先到欧洲各国去游览一番，于是就到旅行社去研究旅行计划，看走哪条路线最为经济合算，当然各有利弊，最后那旅行社的职员给我们的答复，也是一句：~~z~~ǎp r mǎ vl r, à。这仍然不可以译作 ~~z~~那应由你自己负责去决定à。最好是译成：~~z~~你高兴怎样走就怎样走好了。à

又如我们去凭吊客死伦敦的某世界名人的坟墓时，守墓的老人非常亲切地向导游览，并细加说明，之后不免要对他表示一点谢意，因无人可问，又无规定，只好去问他本人应谢他多少钱。他的回答，仍然是~~z~~ǎp r mǎ vl r, à一句老话。当然也不能直译为~~z~~那应由你自己负责去决定à。最好是译成：~~z~~随便好了！à

## 95. 英美学校用语不同

z中伟à搭庄乡眼j faaib p`elli或efde p`elli或pb`lkaYov p`elli) 究竟显获夜眼正脾搭福乡? 心庄片伟突邪语婉更相世?

③刻创】问题中对z中学à的三种英译名都是正确的, j faaib p`elli用于中国和日本一带, efde p`elli用于美国, pb`lkaYov p`elli用于英国。至于英美学校用语是否相同, 答案是否定的。两国的语言愈来愈不同了, 不但单字不同, 连语句也有别。兹将一些重要的字句, 对照地举出如下:

?, 单字对照表。(前者为英, 后者为美)

Y ml aabo; Y pj r dy Y dofka; Y afd 死用功的学生

Yppbj Ziv eYiy Yr afd ofr j 大礼堂

ZobYhy fkqoj fppfl k 放假

`eYk`biil oy mōpfabkq; mōbu (俗语) 大学校长

`iYpp ol l j ; ib`qr ob ol l j y ob`fqYql k ol l j 教室

`l iibdb dol r kapy `Yj mr p 校园

`l iibdb by ifZboYi Yoqp `l iibdb 文科大学

`l iibdb pqYoy cY`r iqy 大学教授团

`l j mbqfd oy `l kqppqYkq 选手, 竞争者

`l rk`fi p`elli; Zl Yoa p`elliy mr Zif p`elli 公立 (中、小) 学校

abkl j fkYql kYi p`elliy mYol`efYi p`elli (教区附属的) 宗教学校

afmil j Yy pe bbnphfk 文凭（因为从前的文凭是用羊皮纸的）

bibj bkqYov (p`elli) qbY`e boy doYab+qbY`e bo 小学教师

buYj fkYqfl ky nr fw 试验，临时考试

bubo`fpb Zl l hy `l j nl pfqfl k Zl l h 作文簿

cYfir ob; ml r dey dr kh 考试落第

dfopq+vbYo pqr abkqy cobpe j Yk 一年级的学生（大、中学校的）

d oj （中学）；pqYkaYoa（小学）y doYab（中、小学的）年级

d r oqe +vbYo pqr abkqy pbkfl o 四年级的学生（大、中学校的）

dfoi (t l j Yk) pqr abkqy `l +ba 男女同校的女学生

dvj kYpfr j bubo`fpbpy dvj t l oh 体操

dvj kYpfr j y dvj （室内）体育场

eYic+vbYoy pbj bpqbo 学期（一年分两学期）

eYii l cobpfabk`b; el pqi （大学）；el r pb（中学）y al oj fq  
l ov 宿舍

efde bo bibj bkqYov p`elliy doYj j Yo p`elli 高等小学

elt iboy Zl kbo 大错特错

EkpqYiiYqfl ky EkYr dr oYqfl k（大学校长等的）就职典礼

ibppl k mbofl ay ob`fqYqfl k mbofl a（教室中的）授课时间

j fuba bar`Yqfl ky `l +bar`Yqfl k 男女同校

kl k+mol sfaba p`elliy mofsyqb p`elli 私立学校

nl pqr`l r opb l cqr fqfl ky `l oobpnl kabk`b`l r opb 函授

nl pqr`qr fqfl k p`elliy `l oobpnl kabk`b p`elli 函授学校

mobnYoYq ov p`elliy mobmp`elli; dfqfkd p`elli 预备学校

p`ellij Ypqboy mofk`fmYi 中、小学校长

p`elli j fpcpbppy p`elli j Yŷj 中、小学女教师

p`elli mōl pnb`qr py p`elli`YqYil d 中、小学校历

pnb`e +aYvy `lj j bk`bj bkq 毕业典礼

pb`l ka+vbYo pqr abkqy pl mēlj l ob 二年级学生（大、中学校的）

pbib`qp`elli y bu`ir pfsb p`elli 纨绔学校（只收富人子弟的）

qēbl il df`Yi`l iibdb y qēbl il df`Yi pbj fkYov 神学校

qēfoa+vbYo pqr abkqy gr kfl o 三年级学生（大、中学校的）

q Zb iYqy q Zb qYoav 上课迟到

q Zr iivy q eYwb 拖尸（大学老生对新生的恶作剧）

q`l Y`ey q qr q o（预备入学考试的）个人教授

qpr Ykqy ell h (b) v 时常旷课的学生

r kfsbopfqy (`l iibdb) `YibkaYoy r kfsbopfqy (`l iibdb) `YqYil d 大学校历

sYopfqy j Yky`l iibdb Zl v 大学（研究）生

t fk efp`Ymy t fk efp ibqpo 成为选手

F, 文句对照表。（前者为英，后者为美）

AYkafaYqpp j r pqeYsb`lj mibqba Y pb`l kaYov p`elli`l r o pb, y AYkafaYqpp eYsb q Zb efde p`elli doYar Yqpp,（报考资格中学毕业）

AeYk`biil o Qj fqe abifsboba qēb afmil j Yp q qēb q l er kao ba doYar Yqpp, y Nobpfabkq Qj fqe abifsboba qēb afmil j Yp（或pe bbnphfkp）q qēb q l er kaoba doYar +Yqpp,（校长授予毕业证书）

Fb`lj mibqba efp pb`l kaYov p`elli`l r opb Y dōt vbYop Yd l, y Fb t Yp doYar +Yqba ol j efde p`elli Y`l r mib l c vbYop Yd l,（中学毕业）

F b a b i f s b o b a ( 或 d Y s b ) Y d o Y a r Y q f k d Y a a o b p p , y F b j Y a b Y Z Y ` Y i Y r o b Y q b Y a a o b p p , ( 对毕业生致训词 )

F b e Y a k l j l o b q e Y k b i b j b k q Y o v b a r ` Y q f l k , y F f p b a r ` Y q f l k t Y p i f j f q b a q l q e b d o Y a b p , ( 仅受小学教育 )

F b e Y p c Y f i b a q l t f k e f p d l q Z Y i i ` l i l r o p , y F b e Y p c Y f i b a q l j Y h b q e b d l q Z Y i i p n r Y a , ( 足球竞赛失败 )

F b f p Y d o Y a r Y q b l c Y k b f d e Z l r o f k d r k f s b o p f q v , y F b f p Y k Y i r j k r p l c Y k b Y o + Z v r k f s b o p f q v , ( 附近大学的毕业生 ) ( 女则说 z Q e b f p Y k Y i r j k Y , , , à . )

F b f p m o b m Y o f k d d o q e b r k f s b o p f q v , F b f p o b Y a f k d d o q e b j Y q p f r i Y q f l k , y F b f p d q q f k d d o ` l i i b d b , ( 准备考大学 )

F b f p p t l q q f k d r m e f p E o b b h , y F b f p Z l k f k d r m e f p E o b b h , ( 拼命在学希腊文 )

F b l a p k m i Y v p q r Y k q , y F b l a p k m i Y v p e l l h ( b ) v , ( 旷课 )

F b p ` l o b a e f d e j Y o h p f k e f p b u Y j f k Y q f l k , y F b t l k e f d e o Y q f k d p f k e f p b u + Y j p , ( 考得很高的分数 )

F b q l l h e f p q l o v , F b p n b ` f Y i f p b a f k e f p q l o v , y F b j Y g l o b a f k e f p q l o v , ( 专攻历史 )

G d o Y a r Y q b a Y q M u d o a S k f s b o p f q v f k / 7 1 3 , y G t Y p d o Y a r Y q b a c o l j ( 或 Y q ) A l i r j Z f Y S k f s b o p f q v f k / 7 1 3 , ( 大学毕业 )

G p n b k q q b k v b Y o p Y p Y q b Y ` e b o , y G q Y r d e q p ` e l l i d o q b k v b Y o p , ( 教了十年书 )

G q l l h j v a b d o b b f k q e b p Y j b ` i Y p p Y p e b , y G t Y p f k q e b p Y j b ` i Y p p t f q e e f j , ( 大学同班毕业生 )

G q l l h m r m f i p d o Y d b t v b Y o p , y G q r q l o b a d o Y ` l r m i b l c v b Y o p , ( 个人教授 )

Q b J Y q f k ` l j m r i p l o v l o l m q f l k Y i ? y Q b J Y q f k o b n r f o b a l o b i b ` q f s b ? ( 必修还是选修 ? )

Hl ek fp j Yhfkd r mœ b pr Zgb` qp fk t ef e eb e Yp cYfiba, y  
Hl ek fp t l ohfkdl œefp`l kafql kp, (重修不及格的科目)

Kv ol l j p Yobl r ql c`l iibdb, y Goll j Yt Yv œl j œ b`Yj m  
r p, (住在校外)

Mk QYqr oaYv œ bob t fii Zb œ b dbkboYi j bbœfkdl c œ b Mia  
Fl vpœ ppl`fYql k, y Mk QYqr oaYv œ bob t fii Zb œ b dbkboYi j bb  
œfkdl clro?ir j kf? ppl`fYql k, (毕业同学会)

Mkb œl r pYka qt l er kaoba pqr abkœp e Ysb bkœboba œ bfo k  
Yj bp do œ b pr j j bo p`elli, y Rt bisb er kaoba pqr abkœp e Ysb  
obdfpœboba do œ b pr j j bo pbppfl k, (注册了一千二百名)

Nol dœppl o Qj fœ e Yp j Yohba bppYvp (或`l j ml pfql kp) , y  
Nol dœppl o Qj fœ e Yp doYaba œ bj bp, (给论文打分数)

Re b doYar Yql k`bobj l kv t fii qYhb miY`b l k œ b /3œ l c H  
r kb, y Re b`l j +j bk`bj bkq (bubo`fpbp) t fii Zb e bia l k Hr kb  
/3, (举行毕业典礼)

Re b p`elli`r oof r ir j fk`ir abp kl cYk`v pr Zgb`qp, y Re bo  
b Yob kl œfiip fk œ b p`elli mol doYj , (没有不切实用的科目)

Re fp p`elli j Yhbp Y pnb`fYi dœYqr ob l c j r pf` , Re fp p`elli  
nYvp pnb`fYi Yœpk+ql k ql j r pf` , y Re fp p`elli dœYqr obp j r pf`  
`, (注重音乐)

Re fp vbYo œ bob t Yp œ b iYodbpq kr j Zbo l c œbpe j bk fk œ b  
e fpql œv l c œ b r kf+sbopfœy, y Re fp vbYo œ bob t Yp œ b iYodbpq bk  
œbœfkdl`iYpp fk œ b e fpql œv l c œ b r kf+sbopfœy, (今年新生人数最  
多)

## 96. 同格的属格

Qe b fp Yk Ykdbi l c Y t l j Yk, 乡眼z尚婉飞貌搭十请à) 珠诸并大明懊) 请由眼刻取。

③刻创】Yk Ykdbi l c Y t l j Yk : Y t l j Yk ifhb Yk Ykdbi。所以上句应译为z她是一个天使一般的女人à。这叫作z同格的属格à (?mm l pfqsb Nl ppbppfsb), 在zl cà前后的名词, 指同一人或同一物, 所以Y t l j Yk : Yk Ykdbi, 天使就是指的她并非别人。这种用法我们平常见得最多的为说地方及行为等, 如qeb`fqy l c NYofp, 意为z巴黎市à, 前后两个名词是同格的, qeb`fqy : NYofp, 那市就是巴黎, 巴黎就是那市。例如:

F b t ofqpp r kabo qeb kYj b l c QqYkdbo, (赏显z鹿巧夜à搭其字又归。(

F b eYp Y eYZfq l c p`oYq e fkd efp kl pb, (赏薪其辈搭益告。(

由这种相等的表现法而变化另外一种加强的表现法出来, 即上述的Yk Ykdbi l c Y t l j Yk一样, 虽仍有相等的意思, 但更有加强的意思, 比说Yk Ykdbif` t l j Yk要强调得多。在意义上zl cà前的名词(Yk Ykdbi)为zl cà后的名词(Y t l j Yk)的性质或形状等的一种特别强调的说法。这一表现法和上一表现法(如qeb`fqy l c NYofp)不同的地方, 就在Ymm l pfql kYi zl cà后出现的名词前面, 必须加不定冠词, 哪怕是固有名词也不能省, 除非名词用复数, 如:

ReYq l ia` ofmib l c Y F bkk, y y QbYk MəDYl iYfk (略个不钝搭冠惧休。(

Qeb t Yp j r`e Zbqppo bar`Yqba qeYk qeYqd l i l c Y F bY qf b, y y ?, Fruibv (尚背略个租笨搭备省利若委过服好搭教



育。（

Re f p e r d b i r k Y q f t Y o o b k l c Y J l k a l k, y y H, F, N o f b p c i b v (液个类大狂瞥全坡伤细罢搭念典。（

B l t k t f q e q e b F l r o Z l k p) Y k a q e Y q d o b Y q m f d l c Y J l r f p V T ~~GG~~ y y T, F r d l (吹顶表梦筒族) 火略个大对泳路易十八! (

最普通的有 Y a b s f i l c Y j Y k、Y o Y p`Y i l c Y d i i l t、q`Y q`e Y a b Y q e l c Y`l i a 等 f a f l j Y q f 的说法，原可解释为：Y a b s f i l c 等就像 Y h f k a l c、Y p l o q l c 一样的表现法。从文法上看，a b s f i、h f k a 等是主体 (m o f k`f n Y i)，z l c a 以下为附属 (Y a g k`q)，即所谓 j l a f d b o；但从意义上看，则恰恰相反，h f k a l c、a b s f i l c 的 z l c a 可视为前一字的后缀 (p r a f u)，不妨将 Y a b s f i l c Y j Y k，改写为 Y a b s f i f p e j Y k，将 Y o Y p`Y i l c Y d i i l t，改写为 Y o Y p`Y i i v d i i l t，将 Y a b Y q e l c Y`l i a，改写为 Y a b Y a i v`l i a。

F b o c Y q e b o f p Y Z o r q b l c Y j Y k (: Y Z o r q Y i j Y k (, (尚纺室婉细个横例不酷搭瞥。(

Q e b f p Y k Y t a i d l i l c Y t l j Y k (: Y k Y t a i i v d l i f p e t l j Y k (, (尚婉细个断草租笨搭貌瞥。(

R e l p b n f d p l c d f o i p (: n f d d f p e d f o i p (b Y q p l j r`e, (略遇通泳细样搭貌工子车错略凉多。(

U e b o b f p q e Y q d l i l c Y a o f s b o (: q e Y q d l i f p e a o f s b o (? (略个笨楚法强漫砰了? (

R e b Z l Y q a f p Y m b Y o b a f k Y j l r k q Y f k l c Y t Y s b (: Y t Y s b i f h b Y j l r k + q Y f k, Y j l r k q Y f k l r p t Y s b (, (头担亚破套细罢高搭大论中统王了。(

Re Y h b o Y v 在他的名著 *T Y k f q D Y f o* 中有所谓 e b o l i a p e Y o n b o l c Y c Y q e b o (她那骗子的老父)。此外常用的还有 Y q b Y p r o b l c Y p l k (宝贝儿子)，Y k Y k d b i l c Y t f d b (天仙妻子)，Y n Y i Y b l c Y e l r p b (宫殿似的房屋)，v l r o d l i l c Y e r p Z Y k a (愚夫)，Y k l i a Z i Y h d r Y o a l c Y t l j Y k (老毒妇)。

F b t Yp Y dkb ddr ob l cY vl r kd j Yk, (旨旨佳公子。(

K o, U l kd ifsbp Y e bii l cY il kd t Yv l α, (树逃巧游错远  
呀息息。(

## 97. 宕辞

冬俗料细轻卹并池屈冬搭寒语来合创对方轻) 俗料多败露并约统) 刺并杰示对庄片瞥来务婉源并好搭) 想眼赏料可勤函鲜俗料婉并性君长) 或思驶到) 伤显亚素获盘袜之下的错合创) 刺并知略轻状务遇什凉?

③刻创】是的，不开腔是最不好的，无论是对方说的话我们没有听懂，或是对方的问题难于回答时，我们都得开腔。如一时想不出适当的话语来，我们只好用一种不相干的字句来延宕一下，以免引起误会。这一类的宕辞，可列举下列三十种：

(/) Ce, (呃。)

(0) U bii, (嗯。)

(1) Me, t bii, (啊，嗯。)

(2) U bii, ibqj b pbb, (嗯，等我想想看。)

(3) ʔk cY q (事实上。)

(4) ?p Yj Yq̄pɒl c cY q (实际。)

(5) Re b cY qfp, , , (事实却是x x)

(6) Fv q̄ b Zv, (可是。)

(7) Fv q̄ b t Yv, (附带说一句。)

(/.) ʔk Ykv `Ypb, (无论如何。)

(//) ?kveɪt, (总之。)

(/0) Dl o fkpqYk`b, (例如。)

(/1) W r hkl t (或pbb), (你知道的。)

(/2) L1 t G`1j b d æ fkh 1 c f q (现在我想起来。)

(/3) Gj fde q pYv, (也许可以说。)

(/4) Dl o j v l t k mY o q (至于我呢。)

(/5) G q b i i v l r t e Y q (我告诉你那要怎样。)

(/6) Gj bYk d pYv, (我想说的是。)

(/7) ? p G t Yp pYv fkd g p q k l t , (如我刚说过的。)

(0.) U e Y q Gj bYk q d pYv t Yp , , , (我的意思是说x x )

(0/) ? q i bYp q G æ fkh p l , (至少我是这样想的。)

(00) Re Y q o b j f k a p j b , (那使我想起来。)

(01) Mo p l j b æ f k d l c æ Y q p l o q (或是那一类的东西。)

(02) Mo t l o a p d æ Y q b æ b` q (或是那种意思的字。)

(03) Ga l k æ q n r f q h k l t t e Y q v l r `Y i i f q (你们叫什么, 我不大清楚。)

(04) G æ i f h b æ f p , v l r h k l t , (那就是这样的, 你知道。)

(05) H l h f k d Y mY o q (不要开玩笑。)

(06) ? mY o q o l j æ Y q (和那不同。)

(07) D f o p q l c Y i i ; Y Z l s b Y i i , (第一; 尤其是。)

(1.) L l q d j b k q l k , (不消说。)

## 98. 喜怒哀乐的说法

驶务她争瞥婉提兴避盘搭) 羞村叹帽艾乐搭轻即) 的薪寒可务) 刺并知务搭什凉?

③刻创】我们到了感情的极致常说不出话来，但西洋人却不然，总是有话好说的，现分别例示如下：

?,喜的表现:

(/) ReYkh El a! (谢天谢地。)

(0) Flt eYmv GYj ! (我真高兴。)

(1) Flt mibYpba GYj ! (我真快乐。)

(2) G pl diYa, (我非常喜欢。)

(3) Me, elt diYa GYj ! (呀, 真高兴。)

(4) GYj diYa lcfq (那使我很高兴。)

(5) Flt ir`hv! (多么幸运。)

(6) Ll qfkd dfsbp j b pl j r`e mibYpr ob, (再高兴没有了。)

(7) Ll qfkd`l ria j Yhb j beYmfbo, (我快乐极了。)

(/. ) GYj efdeiv mibYpba t f q f q (我非常满足。)

(//) GYj Zbpfab j vpbict f q g v, (欢喜若狂。)

(/0) GeYsb kl qfkd j lob q abpfob, (我满意极了。)

(/1) Re fp fp Yii q Yq G`Yk abpfob, (愿望止此。)

(/2) G`Ykkl q`l kqYfk j vpbict f q g v, (快乐死了。)

F,怒的表现:

(/) El pe! El iiv! Ebb! F bii! BYj k fq! FYkd fq! El a aY j kba, BYpe fq (该死。)

(0) Re b abr`b (或absfi) qYhb vl r! (该死的家伙。)

(1) Qe Yj b l k vl r! (羞耻呀。)

(2) U e YqY pe Yj b! (多么可耻。)

(3) ?ob vl r kl qYpe Yj ba? (你不羞耻吗?)

(4) ?ob vl r kl qYpe Yj ba l cvl r opbic? (你不自惭吗?)

(5) W r l r de qd Zb Ype Yj ba l cvl r opbic, (你应知耻。)

(6) GYj Ype Yj ba l cvl r, (我为你羞耻。)

(7) Re Yqj Yhbp j v dibpe`obbm, Re Yq dfsbp j b qe b`obbm p, (使我悚然。)

(/. ) Bl vl r t Ykq d j Yhb j b Ykdov? (你要使我发脾气吗?)

(//) GYj sbov Ykdov t fqe vl r d o fq (你这点使我很生气。)

(/0) Re fp fp Zbv l ka bkar oYk`b, Re fp fp qe b ifj fq Re fp fp qe b iYpq pqpYt, (使我受不了。)

(/1) Ge Ysb kl mYqfbk`b t fqe vl r, (你使我受不了。)

(/2) GYj l r ql c mYqfbk`b t fqe vl r, (我对你再不能忍受了。)

(/3) Ll bu`r pb! (用不着请原谅。)

(/4) Bl k&qYodr b! Ll kb l cvl r o ifmp! (不用强辩了。)

(/5) Ebql r ql cj v pfde q! FbYq fq! (你走吧, 不要再留在此地。)

(/6) Q`oYj ! (滚你的蛋。)

( /7) Ebq vl r dl kb! Ebq qe b ebii l r ql c e bob! (你滚吧。)

(0.) UeYqY Zl ob! UeYqY kr fpYk`b! (讨厌。)

(0/) AibYo l r ql c qe b e l r pb! (出去。)

(00) K fka vl r o l t k Zr p f k b p p! (不要你管。)

A,哀的表现:

(/) ?iYp! (哎呀。)

(0) Me , abYo! (啊,天啦。)

(1) ?e , ml l o d i i l t ! (呀,可怜。)

(2) UeYqY pYa qe fkd fqfp! (多么可悲。)

(3) K v do f b c f p d l a b b m d o q b Y o p, (欲哭无泪。)

(4) G d b b i Y p f c j v e b Y o q t l r i a Z o b Y h t f q e p l o o l t , (心痛欲裂。)

(5) Re b p l o o l t f p j l o b q e Y k G`Yk ZbYo, (悲不自胜。)

(6) G p l p Ya qe Yq G`l r i a `o v, (伤心欲哭。)

(7) K v e b Y o q Z i b b a p d q e f k h qe Yq qe f p j Yv Z b l r o i Y p q j b b q f k d, (想到我们难于再见,心痛已极。)

B,乐的表现:

(/) U b i i a l k b! F o Y s l ! (好极了。)

(0) ? q p Y Z l v! (好呀。)

(1) Cu`biibkq! (了不得。)

(2) A Y n f q Y i! E o b Y q p q r c c! (顶好。)

(3) U b Y o b m o l r a l c v l r ! (值得骄傲。)

(4) U l k a b o o r i j Y k (或 d f o i) ! (了不起呀。)

(5) Re fp fp g pq dkb, Me , t b eYsb Y dkb qj b, (这很好呀。)

(6) U b Yob sbov eYmmv, fkabba, (真是快乐。)

(7) Re bobp kl q fkd j l ob bkg vYZib, (再快乐没有了。)

(/. ) Re Yqp j bYqYka aofkh q j b, Gil sb l k fq! (再没有更快乐的了。)



## 99. Nobody will be the wiser

庄样务搭zLl Zl av t fii Zb qe b t fpbo,à) 乡唱中样搭z肉袭并健服眼除明à) 讲务婉幢了) 并知幢亚什凉地方?

③刻创】对于一些极其普通的字，翻译时每易出毛病，原因是我们自以为知道，而不肯去查字典，实则我们只知其一，而不知其二，例如t fpb一字，我们都知道是作z聪明à解的，如z事后聪明à便说zGp b Ypv q Zb t fpb Yqpo qe b bsbkq,à。又如z他不肯在酒醉后去开车是够聪明的à: zF b t Yp t fpb bkl r de kl q q aofsb t ebk eb t Yp aor k h,à。殊不知此字又可作z知道àz了解àz明白à解，问题中的此字，便应作此解，现译成z聪明à，所以不对。这句英文应译为z谁也不懂得à才是正确的。他例如：

U b Yob kl kb qe b t fpbo d o e fp bumiYkYql kp, (驶了赏搭刻取显鬼) 俗料憾婉并明懊。(

F b `Yj b Yt Yv kl kb qe b t fpbo, (: F b `Yj b Yt Yv Yp t fpb Yp eb t bkq hkl t fkd kl j l ob qe Yk Zbd ob, ( (赏军杰轻萃健并到。(

句中搭kl kb qe b t fpbo: kl t fpbo qe Yk Zbd ob, Yp t fpb Yp Zbd ob) 珠眼z也健à

Gvl r elia vl r o q kdr b) kl l kb t fii Zb Ykv qe b t fpbo, (码夕并杰口搭寒) 肉健知存纹。(

与kl kb qe b t fpbo用法相同的，英文还有kl kb qe b t l opb的表现法，不过意义不同罢了。现在不妨一并讲解一下。这个ZYa的比较级t l opb, 可以作形容词用也可以作副词用。kl kb qe b t l opb: kl q ibpp, 兹就形容词及副词两种用法举例如下：

F b dbii fkd q b ofsbō Zr q fp kl kb q b t l opb, (赏而亚固漫刺辆薪汭。 (

Gifhb e fj kl kb q b t l opb d o Zbfkd l r qm l hbk (: Zl ia l c pnb b` e (, (强怕赏意言酸欢) 俗憾婉怪叹翰赏。 (

Gq fkh kl kb q b t l opb l c e fj Zb` Yr pb e b Y` b m p a q b f o l c b o, (赏狭急委了赏料搭货议) 俗苹健婉怪远检赏搭。 (

GYj kl kb q b t l opb d o Y p fkdib c Yfir ob, (细访涂八俗并并简心。 (

K v p e l b p Yob q b t l opb d o t bYo, (: K v p e l b p Yob ZYa iv t l o k Yp q b o b p r i q l c i l k d t bYo, ( (大错太见搭结跟) 伤聚并结。 (

R e f p l i a e Yq fp ` b o q Yfkiv q b t l opb d o t bYo, (液荡健胖子脾婉伤聚并结了。 (

句中的q b t l opb d o t bYo, 意为z穿破或用坏, 破烂不堪a。同样的用法还有:

F b t Yp m i Yfkiv q b t l opb d o a o fkh (或 i f n r l o (, (明盈地赏鼓醉了。 (

100. Do you know of a hotel?

z码知存液故贾薪清辣细点搭旅稿怕? à庄乡眼zBl vl r hkl t Y  
nr fbqel qpi Yol r ka e bob? à 眼什凉并对?

③刻创】翻译出来的英文句子确是不对的，因为句中的hkl t 是用了他动词，应改为自动词才对，全句应作：

Bl vl r hkl t l cY nr fbqel qpi Yol r ka e bob?

为什么不可说Bl vl r hkl t，而一定要说Bl vl r hkl t l c呢？因为原文说的z你知道这附近有清静一点的旅馆吗？à的意思，是问旅馆的有无，而不是问知否那旅馆内部的设备，乃至其他一切的详情。说到这里，我们实有必要把hkl t 的他动词和自动词两种含义，先弄清楚一下。

?, hkl t sq

(/) eYsb`ibYoiv fk j fka 知悉

(0) r kabopqYka qel ol r de iv 彻底了解

(1) ob`l dkfwb 认出

(2) Zb nbopl kYiiv Y` nr Yfkqpa t fqe 相知

(3) eYsb bumbofbk`b l c 经历

F, hkl t sf,

(/) r kabopqYka 知道

(0) 与分词连用时，如：

hkl t YZl r q: eYsb hkl t ibadb l o fkd oj Yqfl k`l k`bokfkd  
听别人说过

hkl t l c: hkl t qe b bufpqk`b l c知其存在

如果是问Bl vl r hkl t 那一定要彻底了解，对于那旅馆有亲自住过的经历才可以，若单是知其存在与否，则就得说Bl vl r hkl t l c方为适合呢。这个hkl t l c实和e bYo l c差不多，如：

Ghkl t (: eYsb e bYoa (l cY pel mt e bob vl r `Yk Zr v c e fkd p ifhb qe Yq (俗驶务过薪细家体对) 亚略漫码可显买村略样搭祷她。(

再看看其他的例子：

Bl vl r hkl t l cYkv dl l a al`q o kbYo e bob? (码知存故贾薪什凉好瞎巧怕? (

Re fp fp qe b Zbpqj bqel a Ghkl t l c, (液婉俗伤知存搭源好搭方动。(

Ghkl t l cYk bu`biibkq ifqj b obpqYr oYkq kbYo e bob, (俗驶务液故贾薪细家怪好搭像食对。(

Gal k&q hkl t qe b j Yk vl r j bkqf l k) Zr ql c`l r opb Ghkl t l cefj , (: G Yt Yob l cefp bufpqk`b, ( (码务搭略瞥俗狭并相晴) 刺俗冬皮驶务过赏。(

zFYp Qj fqe Zbbk fii? ay zLl q qe Yq Ghkl t l c,à (: G k l qYt Yob l cefp eYsfkd Zbbk fii, ( (z情密若病了怕? ay y z俗细点袭并投错。à (

F l t afa vl r `l j b q hkl t l c f q? (码怎样知存液个搭? (

Ghkbt l cefp m&pbk`b fk qe b l qe bo ol l j , (俗闲知存赏亚抹外细个房恢漫。(

Gt Ykq q Zr v Y mYfo l c pel bp, al vl r hkl t l cY dl l a p q ob Ykvt e bob? (俗夕买细柔灭吐) 码知存什凉地方薪好搭吐对怕? (

Bl vl r hkl t l cYkv qY e bo t el t l r ia pr fqj b? (码知存薪肉婉屈故俗朝访搭惧师怕? (

101. It is an ill wind that blows nobody good

ŋfp Yk fii t fka ɸYq Zil t p kl Zl av dl l a, 乡眼z叔耳弹错辆  
薪细个瞥让烦搭a) 讲务乡错并对) 并知幢亚什凉地方?

③刻创】照字面上看这样翻译是不错的, 例如z勤能补拙a可英译为zŋfp afifdbk`b ɸYqj Yhbp r md o abɸ fbk`v, a。可是问题中提出的句子, 是一句比较古老的谚语, 莎士比亚时代的用法, 和现代英语的用法是不同的。例如莎剧*Reb Kbœe Ykql c Tbkfeb*第二幕第二景第八十一行有句云:

ŋfp Y t fpb cYɸ bo ɸYq hkl t p efp l t k `e fia,

梁实秋译《威尼斯商人》(文星版三十五页最后一行)中译为z聪明的父亲才能认识他自己的儿子呢a, 也是译错了的。在梁译若干年前问世的朱生豪译本(世界版该书二十二页)也作z只有聪明的父亲才会知道他自己的儿子a, 他同样未注意到这句特殊的表现法, 而照字面直译了。中国虽有z知子莫若父a的一句古话, 但莎翁这句英文的意思却适得其反, 而是说z无论怎样聪明的父亲也不见得知道他自己的儿子a。这里说的z知道a是辨认(ob`l dkfwb)或认出(fabkɸv)的意思。所以也可译为z父亲离开久了, 并不一定能认出自己的儿子a, 同样的情形又可以说zŋfp Y t fpb `e fia ɸYq hkl t p fɸp l t k cYɸ bo, (孩子只认识母亲, 并不一定认识父亲。)a。

问题中所引用的zŋfp Yk fii t fka ɸYq Zil t p kl Zl av dl l a, a一句, 也不可以照字面来翻译, 而应译为z无论是怎样的歪风, 也不见得每个人都吹得不舒服a, 即是说不好的事未必人人都受损害, 有损者必有得者, 害于此者利于彼, 如人病利于医生, 人死利于殡仪馆等。

现在再举出几个同类的例子如下:

Q f p Y d l l a t l o h j Y k q e Y q k b s b o Z i r k a b o p, 液句袭并可  
乡眼z细个好搭浮警婉教并服幢所搭a) 顶状乡眼z智夜拾牢必薪细  
涂a。

Qp Y il kd iYkb qe Yp kl q okfkd, 并婉永并转亚搭长  
有子) 顶婉z素获长烂必薪转亚a) 即豆泗必薪才化) 并健永远细  
唱并寡) 袭可乡约z更瑚泰来a。

Qp Y dl l a e l opb qe Yq kbsbo pqr j Zibp, 珠眼 z豆礼皆薪  
涂足夜a) 即z豆瞥皆薪批点az酸瞥并薪过涂az十下酸酸宾之利) 昼  
酸酸利之宾az十下酸较对搭片) 昼酸较对搭恶az细错细涂亚伤并  
免a

Q f p Y d l l a a f s f k b q e Y q d i i l t p e f p l t k f k p q r ` q l k p ,  
珠眼z勤务夜思必勤外a

## 102. 表现特性的加强形容法

庄样搭 pqr nfa 婉细个袜坡导) 破Y pqr nfa nbopl k (租警 () 眼什凉心举薪警务 W r Yob Y pqr nfa) 婉更句尾略砰了 nbopl k 细字?

③刻创】这是表现特性的加强形容法的一种，pqr nfa 在此作名词用，故后面不要加 nbopl k 的字样。人们感到用单纯的形容词或副词太弱，不够力量，为加强语气计，不得不想其他的办法来表达想说的意思。这种加强的形容法，约有下列十种方式。

(/) 以形容词作名词用：

W r Yob Y abYo, (码婉细个可爱搭瞥儿。 (

W r Yob Y pfiiv, (码婉细个傻子。 (

(0) 以形容词最上级作名词用：

Gf p q b`ibYobpq l c m l l q, (液婉源盈明搭证讲。 (

Re b m l q f p l c q b q f k k b p q, (盈顶易举搭享谋。 (

F b t Yp hfiiba f k q b q f h b p q l c d f d e q, (赏婉亚养盗源候苦搭轻即养死搭。 (

(1) 用限定的所有格：

W r o d l i l c Y e r p Z Y k a a f a f q, (婉码略笨惧爷做搭。 (

G p k l r p b q i i f k d l r o f a f l q l c Y j Y f a, (告僧俗料略个懊辞三搭貌些瞥婉辆薪邪搭。 (

(2) 用隐喻，尤其是常以 absfi、e bii 等字来说：

GpYv) qe fp dfobp qe b absfi, y y EYipt l oqe v (液火医炙手错怪。 (

U e Yq qe b e bii Yob vl r al fkd? (码村顿亚风什凉? (

Qfk` b G` Yj b fk qe b l` bYk l c ifdb) Ge Ysb ibYokba j Ykv qe fkd p, (欲的俗家入警巧搭攻争显来) 俗伟了并少搭祷她。 (

(3) 以zYii - 抽象名词à作形容词用:

AibYk ifkbpp fp Yii fj ml oqYk` b, (清可多细。 (

zK o, BYo` v fp Yii ml ifqkbpp) à pYfa CifwYZbqe) pj f fkd, y y HYkb? r p qbk (z第她逃巧婉个瑚深料胜搭警。à致开起懊点途地务。 (

zGYj Yii Ypql kfpej bkq F l t il kd e Yp pe b Zbbk pr` e Y cYsl r ofq? y Yka mYv) t e bk Yj Gd t fpe vl r g v? à y y HYkb? r p qbk (z俗医个银顶了。尚悲码看中薪多见了? 请码告僧俗) 什凉轻即俗可显判瓜码料搭倒黑落? à (

(4) 用意思重复的字句:

pYdb Yka pl r ka (哀皮酸正 (

t Yfi Yka t bbm (艾哭 (

j fde qYka j Yfk (冒抗 (

mYqpl kYdb Yka mofsfibdb (省澎 (

qbkabo Yka abif Yq (军颇 (

pYkfqv Yka obYpl k (君由正冬 (

(5) 用复数形:

Re Ykhp pl j r` e, (医拖拖码。 (

Gfp Y qe l r pYka mfqbp, (医可滩。 (

F b t Yp ibcq d qe b qbkabo j bo` fbp l c e fp p qbmj l qe bo, (赏悲尽旅么店。 (



(6) 用相当的抽象名词来表示特性的概念:

(Y) 用补语:

F b t Yp kl q Y pr `` bpp, (赏涂八了。 (

Re b miYv t Yp Y nYoqYi cYfir ob, (到剧波朵涂八了。 (

F b fp Y sbov dl l a r k, (赏怪薪趣。 (

(Z) 用属格:

F bo ifdb eYa Yit Yvp or k móbqyv pj ll qeiv qe ol r de qe b p  
fj mif fqbpl c g v Yka pl ool t , (尚搭巧恨亚单刀搭比叹绝集中  
勿利地访过。 (

Qe b t Yp fk Y pfj j bo l c afpqbpp, y y F Yoav (尚亚敢卸  
搭晴侵中。 (

F b t Yihba qe b ibkdqe l c t Yhbr i Dibbqtpqbba y y EYip  
t l oqv (赏走暑了系恢浮约搭火递看。 (

(7) 用介词和抽象名词构成的副词:

F b Ykpt boba t fqe fj mYqfbk`b, (赏并论烦地合创了。 (

F b Ykpt boba t fqe j bYkfk d pil t kbpp, (赏合创错怪慢)  
刺怪薪抗。 (

(/. ) 用表示色彩的抽象名词:

Re bpb Yob abbap l c aYohkbpp, (液遇的婉坡密搭喝冬。 (

Re bv Yob fk Y t l oia l c `lj mibq t e fqbkbpp, (赏料亚细  
个刀懊搭完寂中。 (

### 103. 女人也称呼为man

貌工子达入大伟) 憾婉怪十医搭à细句搭庄乡婉zQe b fp Yk r kp  
l mē fpqf Yqba cobpej Yk, à 朵明务搭貌工子) 眼什凉夕庄乡眼且瞥  
(j Yk (落? 大伟细吗户搭貌巧) 辆薪貌顽搭字五怕?

③刻创】一年级的女生可以说Y dfopq+vbYo dfoi, 但这并不一定指大学。若说Y dbj Yib pqr abkq则不一定是指一年级的新生。通常说的Y p`ellidfoi则更是指中学生。要确定为大学一年级的学生, 虽为女性, 也只能用cobpej Yk一字, 当然在美国, cobpej Yk也可以指中学生, 不过一般都是指大学一年级学生。要说得更确定一点, 则不妨说zQe b fp Y cobpej Yk Yq`l iibdb, à就错不了。

英文用男人来说女性的, 实在习见不鲜。在开会时如果是女人担任主席, 我们就称她为 K YaYj b AeYfoj Yk, 因为没有`eYfot lj Yk一字。对男人的主席, 当然称他为K o, AeYfoj Yk (男主席的太太是K op, AeYfoj Yk)。

如果在会场中有人提议或由某种情形的需要, 成立一个由五位女性组织的五人委员会, 去调查某项妇女问题。这个委员会仍然要用男人, 而说成Y dfsb+j Yk`lj j fqpbb, 不说Y dfsb+t lj Yk`lj j fqpbb。

又, 我们去看画家或雕刻家的个人展览会, 不问男女, 一概要称为l kb+j Yk pel t。如:

GeYsb Zbbk ql qe b l kb+j Yk pel t lc K fpp KYov Qj fc  
e sp l fip Yq qe b RYqb EYiibov, (俗曾村泰省片术稿砰看了情貌求  
搭谢纪个展。(

再看英美作家笔下所描写的情形, 就更广泛了。美国得过诺贝尔文学奖金的Qfk`iYfo Jbt fp, 著有AYpp Rfo dbaiYkb一书, 书中女主

人公TfodfkfY K YopeiYka说话时，常自称为j Yk，例如：

zU fii vl r y mibYpb dfsb r p vl r o) r e) vl r o kYj b Yka n  
ol dbppfl k Yka Ya+aobpp) mibYpb? à

zHfk kv K YopeiYka y TfodfkfY K YopeiYka, G aoYcpj Y  
k Yka abpfdkbo d o qe b DfbiYka DYk`v Fl u Yka NYpqbZl Yoa  
Rl v K Ykr cY` q ofkd Al j mYkv Yka Y hfka l c j bppbkdboy j  
Yk l c Yii t l oh,à

(z请码把码搭完其、职习、游伤务池来。à旧承乎务。

z俗集红麻—礼她率y y 维红麻亚—礼她率。俗婉该率化妆盒火  
厚纸书降制颜公吸搭制释员火设计夜。世轻心做宇细婴员吃三搭  
浮约y y 吹杂搭瞥。à (

zGafak&q eYsb Ykv Zol qe bop l o pfpqbop) pl qe bv ibqj b  
eYsb qe b Yqf` Yii q j vpbic) Yka r mqe bob Gt Yp qe b Zr pfbp  
qj Yk l c YcYfop,à (z俗坏酸月耽) 心酸涨妹) 伤显赏料四俗细  
个瞥等占宇荡赖) 亚略漫俗医婉细个源忙搭泗务家了。à (

zGà Zbbk dbifkd Yp fc Gt bob pbq Ypfab ol j Yii kl oj Yi  
nbl nib, Yp fc Gt bob Y`l kabj kba j Yk) t fqe kl el nb,, ,à  
(z俗丽错俗火普士搭瞥暑全并世了，会意好通婉细个辆薪易烟  
搭) 热了死远搭跑服细样x x à (

又如英国作家K Yr de Yj 在他写的短篇*Nol o fpb*中，说一个年长的  
妇人和一个年轻得像她儿子似的男子结了婚，后来她丈夫另有了爱  
人，她便自动引退，别人问她为什么这样老实，她说有约在先，因为  
两人的年龄相差太远，所以在十年前结婚时，她就答应他随时可以离  
异的，现在应当守约。她说：

zMe) Gj r pq) vl r hkl t , Mkb j r pq Zbe Ysb ifhb Y dbkq  
ibj Yk,à (z啊) 码知存) 俗必错破到。细个瞥搭约眼必望新接子  
耳访。à (

另外英国一位天主教的作家EoYe Yj Eobbkb, 在他所著的*Dofde  
q k Pl eh*中，也有zGal k&q hkl t ebo ol j ?aYj ,à (我完全不认识  
她。) 的文句，《圣经》中说世界上第一个男人是?aYj (亚当)，

第一个女人是**Csb**（夏娃），这两位人类的始祖是谁也没有见到过的，所以遇到生人，我们就说像亚当一样，从来没有见过他，他对我实与亚当无异，即强调不认识的意思。但对女人也惯于拿亚当来比，而说不说夏娃。英文中既有女性始祖的**Csb**，又有**dbkqibj Yk**对称的**dbkqibt lj Yk**，但即令是出自女人口中，也不说**zGal k&hkl t e bo ol j Csb,à**，或**zMkbj r pqZbe Ysb ifhb Y dbkqibt lj Yk,à**。

最后请比较下面两句：

Qe b fp qe b dobYqppq Yr qe l o l c qe b Ydb,（尚婉冬春源厌大搭约家。（

Qe b fp qe b dobYqppq Yr qe l obpp l c qe b Ydb,（尚婉提春貌约家中源厌大搭。（

## 104. 美国话的简略

驶务片根寒火庄根寒并世搭地方) 忧夕搭细点舰婉会略) 刺并知会略村什凉朝访) 强细觉搭字悲赏料会略而了?

③刻创】简略是美国话的一个特点,许多长一点的字,他们都把它略短了,如Ya (: Yasboqfpbj bkq), buYj (: buYj fkYqfl k), `l tba (: `l tbar `Yqfl kYi `l iibdb dfoi) 等等,还有就是把一句话中文法上必要的字眼略去,兹分类举例如下:

(/) 略去Yka或l c等的:

qt l j fibp Y eYic, qt l j fibp Yka Y eYic (片 (: qt l Yka Y eYicj fibp (庄 (课庄漫败

Y mYfo qpl r pbop : Y mYfo l c qpl r pbop 细蚀裤子

qt l qpl r pbop : qt l mYfo l c qpl r pbop 课蚀裤子

l kb `l cbb : Y `r ml c `l cbb 细堡街概

l kb mY` h (Ydb (` fdYobqpp : l kb mY` h (Ydb (l c ` fdYobqpp 细币田照

qt l `Yoql kp `fdYobqpp : qt l `Yoql kp l c `fdYobqpp 课蚀田照

l kb Zl qib Zbbo : l kb Zl qib l c Zbbo 细山庙酒

(0) 略去主语的G W r或G等的:

Fbbk ql Kl r kq ?if? : FYsb vl r Zbbk ql Kl r kq ?if?  
(码村过八漫套怕? (

Lbsbo pbbk obYi Ae flkbpb elj b ifdb, : GeYsb kbsbo pbbk obYi Ae flkbpb elj b ifdb, (俗的思举过医正搭中根家示巧恨。(

Fb`Yobrit e bk bkqbo vl r o ol l j , : Fb`Yobrit e bk v  
l r bkqbo vl r o ol l j , (码家房恢轻夕冬心。 (

El fkd al t kq t k? : ?ob vl r dl fkd al t kq t k? (码料  
家幢砰怕? ( (薪轻务zW r dbiil t p dl fkd al t kq t k? à (

El fkd r m) pfo, : G dl fkd r m) pfo, (旦圣 ( (提亚千  
砰。 (

Jl l hp ifhb obYi`l cbb, : G il l hp ifhb obYi`l cbb, (液好  
通婉医正搭街概。 (

Ql r kap r kkv) Yfkq fq? : G pl r kap r kkv) fpkq fq?  
(驶来好途。 (

Uebob dl fkd? : Uebob Yob vl r dl fkd? (码村强漫  
砰? (

Uebk`l j fkd ZY`h? : Uebk Yob vl r`l j fkd ZY`h?  
(码夕什凉轻即合来? (

Uebk iYr kaov`l j b ZY`h? : Uebk t fii j v iYr kaov`l  
j b ZY`h? (俗鹰搭下烦花轻鹰好? (

Flt pl l k mf hqj r m? : Flt pl l k`Yk Gmf h qe bj r  
m? (什凉轻即俗来急赏料? (

Qbb? : W r pbb? (码到了怕? (

QYv! : GpYv! (死! (

Fbq! : GZbq vl r! (脾清。 (

Ebqfq? : Bl vl r r kabopqYka? (码到怕? (

El qe b qj b? : FYsb vl r dl qe b qj b? : UeYq qe b c  
fj b? (什凉轻即了? (

Fbqbo dl l r qofde qYt Yv, : W r eYa Zbqbo dl l r qYql  
k`b, (码源好礼千池砰。 (

Uebob vl r ol l j ? y Sml k 3qe dil l o) 3. 0, : Uebob al  
vl r ol l j ? y (Gal (r ml k qe b 3qe dil l o) 3. 0, (码游亚强  
漫? y y 碎赖碎吧况夫孤。 ( (即3. 0 ol l j bo (

Jl qpl cɑ k! : Ge Ysb il qpl cɑ k, (怪薪趣。(

(1) 略去动词或助动词等的:

U e Yqvl r pYv? : U e Yqafa vl r pYv? (码务什凉? (

QnbYh Ckdifpe? : Bl vl r pnbYh Ckdifpe? (码勤务庄语怕? (

Fr pv? : ?ob vl r Zr pv? (码忙怕? (

Flt j r`e Glt b vl r? : Flt j r`e al Glt b vl r? (俗驶码多少年? (

U e Yq q b oY`hbq? y Qlj b q fkd t ol kd) Gdr bpp, : U e Yq fp q b j Yq q b o? y Qlj b q fkd fp t ol kd) G q fkh, (赏料亲什凉? y y 俗邮细乏池了什凉洒。(

?kv kbt p? : Q q b ob Ykv kbt p? (薪什凉统台怕? (

(2) 略去宾语的fq或q b j 的:

Jbqj b pbb, : Jbqj b pbb fq (四俗看看。(

Jbqj b e Ysb Y il l h, : Jbqj b e Ysb Y il l h Yq fq (或q b j (, (四俗看细下。(

SkabopqYka? : Bl vl r r kabopqYka j b? (码到怕? (

(3) 略去冠词q b 的:

Ebqj b r ml c 5q b il l o) mibYpb, (俗夕村伸赖。( (: q b 5q b il l o (

Dfopq HYkr Yov : bYoiv HYkr Yov) Yq q b Zbdfk k fkd l c HYkr Yov, (细月达招。(Ac, HYk, /pq

(4) 略去介词的:

Q bumb` q fkd efj r me bob Qr kaYv j l ok fkd (: l k Qr kaYv j l ok fkd (, (俗目店赏礼巴十千岁来。(

Qbb vl r YdYfk KlkaYv (: lk KlkaYv (, (礼巴细哑  
举。 (

Qebelj b? : QebYqelj b? (赏亚家怕? (

GpqYvba elj b Yii aYv vbpdboaYv, : GpqYvba Yqelj b Yii  
aYv vbpdboaYv, (俗怨十细已十的亚家漫。 (



## 105. 单句、复句、合句彼此转换

庄样由父颜千搭并世顶朵眼单句、复句、故句态婴袜式) 备到转架轻) 并知薪酸华眼可仗?

③刻创】英文的所谓单句 (pfj nib pbkqbk`b) , 复句 (`lj nib u pbkqbk`b) , 合句 (`lj ml r ka pbkqbk`b) , 只是一些不同的表现方式, 可以用来表达同一意义。例如:

GYj ql qfoba ql dl , (单句 (

: GYj pl qfoba qe Yq G` Ykkl ql dl , (复句 (

: GYj sbov qfoba) pl G` Ykkl ql dl , (故句 (

(俗怪疲骄并勤砵。 (

Qeb ql l h efp miY` b l k Y` l r kql ce fp fiikbpp, (单句 (

: ?p e b t Yp fii) pe b ql l h efp miY` b, (复句 (

: F b t Yp fii Yka pe b ql l h efp miY` b, (故句 (

(赏巧病由尚春君。 (

可见三种形式中任何一种都可以用来表达我们的意思, 至于三种形式彼此转换, 并无一定的规则, 须看文句内容的需要, 而采取适当的字眼。例如由复句或合句转变为单句时, 就可用不定词或分词或动名词或片语来取代原有的子句。现例解如下:

(/) 合变单:

(Y (Fbj r pq`l kdbppe fp cYr iql o e b t fii Zb dfkba,

Fbj r pq`l kdbppe fp cYr iql bp` Ynb Zbfkd dfkba,

(赏必望欲懊显免委肤。 (

(Z (Re b ol ZZbo pYt qe b ml if bj Yk Yka ql l h ql efp e

bbip,  
Qbbfk d q̄ b ml if bj Yk) q̄ b ol ZZbo d l h d̄ efp e b  
bip,

(细举拉承略世读舰声跑了。(

(̇ (Fb t Yp fk ZYa e bYiq̄) Yka pl eb`l r ia kl qt l o  
h,

Mt fkd d̄ ZYa e bYiq̄) eb`l r ia kl qt l oh,  
(想眼伙练驶佳) 赏并勤浮约。(

(0) 复变单:

(Y (Fb fp kl qYj Yk t el q̄iip Y ifb,  
Fb fp kl qYj Yk d̄ q̄ii Y ifb,  
(赏并婉细个踏喝搭瞥。(

(Z (GYj `boqYfk q̄ Yq Gpe Yii dfsb vl r pYq̄pcY` q̄l k,  
GYj `boqYfk l cdfsfd vl r pYq̄pcY` q̄l k,  
(俗细乏可显请码立珠。(

(̇ (Re bv t bob j r`e pr om̄fpba t e bk q̄ bv e bYoa e fj  
`l kdbpp,  
Re bv t bob j r`e pr om̄fpba d̄ e bYo e fj `l kdbpp,  
(驶赏欲懊) 赏料大车细惊。(

(1) 复变合:

(Y (Fb t Yp Yit Yvp el kbpq) q̄l r de e b t Yp ml l o,  
Fb t Yp Y ml l o j Yk) Zr qe b t Yp Yit Yvp el kbpq,  
(赏狭熟晴) 皮色潮清。(

(Z (Ḡ vl r m̄bpp q̄ b Zr q̄l k) q̄ b Zbii t fii ofkd,  
Nobpp q̄ b Zr q̄l k) Yka q̄ b Zbii t fii ofkd,  
(般略旦驱) 铃舰健听。(

(̇ (Skibpp vl r hbbmnr fbq) Gt fii mr kfpe vl r ,  
I bbmnr fbq) l o Gt fii mr kfpe vl r ,  
(并夕吵亲) 更眼俗祸尺肤码。(

如果我们对这些转变，一定要找出什么规则的话，那么8

(/) 在复句变单句时8

①把名词子句改写, 如: zRe Yq e b a f b a p l v l r k d (改为 F f p a b Yq e Yq p l v l r k d Yk Y d b) f p j r` e q l Z b o b d o b q p b a, (他死得那么早真是遗憾。) à。

②把形容词子句改写, 如 zRe b d f q t e f e K Y o v o b` b f s b a c o l j H l e k (改为 K Y o v o b` d f q c o l j H l e k) t Y p Y k b` h i b q (玛丽由约翰赠送的礼物是一个项链。) à。

③把表时间的副词子句改写, 如 zU e b k p e b p Y t q e b Z i l l a (改为 ? q q e b p f d e q l c q e b Z i l l a), p e b a o b t Z Y` h f k e l o o l o, (她一见到血, 就吓得退缩了。) à。

④把表原因、理由的副词子句改写, 如 zRe b d f o j e Y a q l i Y v l c c p l j b l c q e b f o t l o h j b k, Z b` Y r p b l o a b o p t b o b p i Y` h b k f k d, (因为来定货的很少, 那公司不得不把一部分员工解雇。) à, 改为 zM t f k d q l p i Y` h b k f k d l c l o a b o p, q e b d f o j e Y a q l i Y v l c c p l j b l c q e b f o t l o h j b k, à。

⑤把表目的、结果的副词子句改写, 如 zJ r` h v q l l h Y g Z p l q e Y q e b o e r p Z Y k a` l r i a` l k q f k r b p q r a v f k d (改为 d o e b o e r p Z Y k a a q l` l k q f k r b p q r a v f k d), (为使丈夫可以继续求学, 她出外去工作了。) à。

⑥把让步的副词子句改写, 如 z? i q e l r d e e b m o b q p k a b a q l Z b D o b k` e (改为 B b p n f q p e f p m o b q p k p f l k q l Z b D o b k` e), e f p E b o j Y k Y` b k q d Y s b e f j Y t Y v, (哪怕他冒充是法国人, 他的德国腔调一下就听出来了。) à。

⑦把表假定、条件的副词子句改写, 如 zG e f q t b o b k l q d o q e b d b k b o l p f q v l c e f p c Y q e b o (改为 F r q d o q e b d b k b o l p f q v l c e f p c Y q e b o), e b t l r i a Z b Z Y a i v l c c, (要不是他父亲慷慨的接济, 他生活早陷于困境了。) à。

⑧把其他副词子句改写, 如 z? p f p q e b` Y p b t f q e j l p q b a r` Y q p a n b l m i b (改为 J f h b j l p q b a r` Y q p a n b l m i b), e b m o b d o p` i Y p p f Y i j r p f q l g Y w w (他也和大多数有教养的人一样, 喜欢古典音乐, 不喜欢爵士音乐。) à。

(0) 在合句变单句时8

①可利用分词，如zGt Yp Qr kaYv, pl (改为G Zbfkd Qr kaYv), æb pel mpt bob Yii`il pba, (那是礼拜天，商店都关门。) à。

②可利用不定词，如zRe b dl l a l ia aYvp Yob dl kb Yka t fii kb sbo obqr ok (改为kbsbo q obqr ok), (好日子一去不复返。) à。

③可利用副词片语，如zF b pYfa kl æfk d Yka (改为U fæ l r q Y t l oa eb) t bkql k t fæ efp afkkbo, (一言不发，他继续吃他的饭。) à。

(1) 在合句变复句时：

①用有连词Yka时，如zRYhbj v qfm, Yka (改为Gvl r qYhbj v qfm, ) vl r fi j Yhb Y il ql cj l kbv, (你听我的话，就可以赚很多的钱。) à。

②用有连词Zr q时，如zRe b dl a fp dl l a Yq æfp el qbi, Zr q (改为Re l r de æb dl a fp dl l a Yq æfp el qbi, ) æb pbosf b fp m l l o, (这旅馆的餐食很好，但招待不行。) à。

③用有连词l o时，如zQe b t Yp YiobYav bkdYdba, l o (改为Gp eb eYa kl q Zbbk bkdYdba, ) pe b j fdeq eYsb Y`bm qba efj, (她已订婚，否则也许她会接受他的。) à。

④用有其他连词时，如zF b eYp qpfba Yii pl oqp l c`r obp, vbq (改为?iæ l r de eb eYp qpfba Yii pl oqp l c`r obp, ) eb fp p qfii fii, (虽则他试过种种的疗法，然而他仍是病着。) à。

## 106. 混合而成的句法

庄样务zJbq r p al Yt Yv t fqe Yii r kkb` bppyov `bobj l kfbp,  
(四俗料数统细切并必夕搭礼级。(à) 讲务句中al Yt Yv t fqe pl  
j bqe fkd婉的咐语搭al Yt Yv pl j bqe fkd与Yt Yv t fqe fq (! (课  
个务动很故顶唱搭。提亚搭庄语中婉更袭薪很唱搭字句?

③刻创】在口语中，这种混合而成的新句法，自然也是有的。单字方面的混成字(Fibkafkd)最多，由两种句法混杂起来，而构成一句新的说法，也是常见的现象。现举几个代表的例。

(?) 由`Ykkl qZr qal 及`Ykkl qe bimal fkd混合而成的`Ykkl qe bimZr qal，应为首屈一指的好例子。这个混血儿，在英国是视为没有教养的，但在美国却堂而皇之载诸美语的大辞典中，成为美国的正式的国语。他们的辩解是z英国人把e bim当作Ysl fa解，所以觉得不合理，我们将e bim仍作“帮助”解，所以这样说，就没有什么不合理了。N, E, Nboofk以美国人的立场，在他的U of bop Er fab Yka Ckab u q Ckdifpe一书上说：

(/ (Dl oj Yi: G`Yk Zr qdbbi pl oov d o e fj ,

(0 (EbkboYi: G`Yk qe bimdbbifkd pl oov d o e fj ,

(1 (Al iil nr fYi: G`Yk qe bimZr qdbbi pl oov d o e fj ,

据H, L, Fllh的说法，`Yk Zr q的表现法是buqbj biv d oj Yi。普通文章中是决不用的，他又将下面三种说法的细微的差异指示我们：

G`Yk Zr qafb d oj v `l r kqv, : G`Yk l kiv afb d oj v `l r kqv,

G`Ykkl qZr qafb d o j v`l r kqov, : G`Yk al kl qefkd bu  
`bm qafb d o j v`l r kqov,

G`Ykkl qe bimavfk d o j v`l r kqov, : G`Ykkl qYsl fa a  
vfk d o j v`l r kqov,

受着种族歧视的美国黑人作家P, U ofde q在他的名著*Reb KYk U  
el U bkq d Ae fe Ydl*中有下面心声的表现, 尤其是其中`l r ia kl qe b  
imZr qe Yq与`l r ia kl qe bime Ysfkd对照的用法, 值得注意。

, , , fk qe b Y`ql ce fafk d e fp pbic e Yq) e b`l r ia kl qe bi  
mZr qe Yq qe l pb t e l bsl hba e fp pbic e Yq fk e fj , Ql bY`e  
mYoql ce fp aYv t l r ia Zb`l kpr j ba fk Y t Yo t fce fj pbi  
c) Y dl l a mYoql ce fp bkbodv t l r ia Zb pnbkq fk hbbmfkd`l  
kq l i l ce fp r kor iv bj l q l kp) bj l q l kp) t e f e e b e Ya kl  
qt fpe ba q e Ysb) Zr q`l r ia kl qe bime Ysfkd, (x x 亚赏象  
猜欲华憎恶搭略婴凡约中) 赏并禁夕憎恶亚赏心中向难欲华憎恶  
略婴粉盘搭略遇瞥。伤显每十搭轻恢的统讳亚跟赏欲华约养搭千  
另) 顶赏大波朵搭坚抗袭害亚设动砰尽制赏略罗兴尽制搭粉盘  
千。略婴粉盘婉赏并并邮夕薪搭) 刺婉赏披酸动曾能) 请赏断薪  
并可。(

(F) 正确的英文应说afcbobkq col j 的, 在俚俗语中, 英国有af  
cbobkq d 的说法, 而美国则说成afcbobkq qe Yk, 特别是接子句时来  
得简略, 例如zRe fp fp afcbobkq qe Yk Gbunb` qba, (这和我所指望的  
不同。) à, 就比说zRe fp fp afcbobkq col j t e Yq Gbunb` qba, à要省  
字些。在这个形式中的qe Yk, 一般是把它当作介词看待的。看下面的  
对话, 就可知道英国人对这种语法的感受了。

z?ka qii j b nibYpb) al vl r fka Eboj Yk dfoip afcbob  
kq qe Yk Ckdifpe dfoip? àGZir pe ba, zBl vl r fka Eboj Yk df  
oip , , , à GZbdYk q l`l oob` qe bo Yka p d mba) obYifwkd g p q  
fk qj b qe Yq Gt Ypk& YZpl ir qiv pr ob t e b qe bo l kb pYvp afc  
bobkq col j l o afcbobkq d , zBl vl r fka Eboj Yk dfoip afcbo  
bkq qe Yk Ckdifpe dfoip? àpe b obnby qba) t fce pj fifkd nbopfp  
qk`b, GZir pe ba abbnbo qe Yk bsbo, zWbp) sbov afcbobkq) à (C  
pYfa Zl iaiv, y y A, qe bot l l a (z请码告僧俗) 码丽错措根貌

工子跟庄根貌工子薪遇并世怕？à俗眼之纸辙了。z码丽错措根貌工子x x à俗杰秋邨来寡正尚）刺心始止了）结轻地丽宜村俗袭并十朵脾乏村顿夕务afcbobkqcolj 或婉afcbobkqql 尝对。z码丽错措根貌工子跟庄根貌工子薪遇并世怕？à尚重复地问了）霜途地竞持村顿。俗背显念每急错服厉功了。z婉纹）怪并相世。à俗大词地务了。（

这是一个英国人跟一个德国女孩子的对话，英国人自己也弄不清楚正确的英文说法，所以无从改正她。K, K, FovYkq曾就这三种说法，加以合理的解释，使之可以并存不悖。他说用qe Yk是比较（`lj nYofpl k），用ql 是对照（`lkqYpq），用colj 是表示不同（afppfj fiYofqv）。

（A）zEol t qe b Zfddbpq`Yool ql c YkvZl av,（培养出比谁都要大的萝卜来。）à, 便是dol t Zfddbo`Yool qp qe Yk YkvZl av bipb和dol t qe b Zfddbpq`Yool ql c Yii两种说法的混成句。同样地zF b fp qe b Zfddbpql c Ykv,à也是zF b fp Zfddbo qe Yk Ykv l qe bo Zl v,à和zF b fp qe b Zfddbpq Zl v l c Yii,à混合而成的。这种现象在口头英语中是常见的，当然写文章时必须避免。

Relpb t el `lkabj k efj pbbh qe b ZYpbpq dl Yi l c Ykv nbl nib l k qe b cY`b l c qe b bYoqe, y y P, U ofde q（鸟贵片根基瞥搭瞥）婉背液地鼠千搭素获根期伤追属搭浅臂的夕来错卑变。（

（B）GYj Zr pv t ofqkd原是GYj Zr pv和GYj t ofqkd的混血儿，这样一来使原是现在分词形的动词的一部分变成动名词了。这应看为进行式的加强说法，下例更使人有此感觉。

Al kpqYZib Nifj j bo afa kl qobniv, F b t Yp Zr pv pfibkqiv eYqkd qe b j fih+j Yk, y y N, E, U l a b e l r p b（卜利露拉承辆薪合创。赏正暗欲亚憎关略散慢巧搭瞥。（液婉务驶瞥亚窗赞赏搭盘带y y 略散慢巧搭瞥）欲皮并愿合寒。

（C）由elt `lj b (: t ev) 和t eYqdo (: t ev) 混合而成的zelt `lj b, , , do? à。如：

F1 t `1 j b v1 r il l hfkd Yqj b œ Yqt Yv d o? (码眼什凉  
夕略样来烟字俗纹? (



## 107. 男人说成女人

呼兴貌瞥悲集约且瞥 (j Yk (搭庄样避提动) 念闲薪由糖搭刻创。提请问且瞥婉更袭可集约貌瞥 (t l j Yk (落?

③刻创】莎士比亚说: zDoYfiq, æv kYj b fp t l j Yk,â。 (弱者, 你的名字是女人。) 这就是因为女性有一种t bYh`eYoY` qpo (懦弱的性格)。如果一个男人, 也带有这种女性的性格时, 就要被称为t l j Yk了。英国有一个批评家曾说过一句这样的话:

U l j bk l cZl æ pbubp fk æ b NYoifYj bkqj Yab Y Zfd kl fpb YdYfkpq æ b Zfii, (议健中课顽搭貌瞥料的对液动案大死大集地加显都对。 (

他这句话真够讽刺了, 对那些因循苟且, 办事不积极的议员们, 哪怕是男性, 他也一概括之把他们通叫作t l j bk了。这不是把男人叫作女人了吗? 此外还可以说:

F b fp Yk l ia t l j Yk, (赏婉细个冥冥妈妈搭瞥。 (

所谓婆婆妈妈, 正是女人的代表, 她不但拖泥带水, 而且气量窄狭, 胆小如鼠, 假如一个男子汉也具有娘儿们的这种性格, 他自然就会被称为女子了。

普通说温柔的女性, 应说t l j Ykiv或是dj fkfk b, 不可说t l j Ykfpe, 因为这是含有轻蔑之意的。Reb EasYkeba JbYokbo Bfeql k Yov l cAr oobkq Ck difpe上对于t l j Ykfpe解释说, (l cYj Yk) ifh b Y t l j Yk (fk dbifkd, Zbe Ysfl r o, bq,) , 意即说一个男人在感情或行为等上像女人一样。

英文中形容z金发â的一个字, 是从法文来的, 所以男性应该说Zil ka, 女性说Zil kab, 字尾的〔b〕是表女性的, 他如Jl r fp为男子

名，Jl r fpb为女子名。但一般说英文的人，并不一定照法国原来的规矩，常将Zil ka用来指男或女，不分性别，如：

? peYnbiv 03+vbYo+I ia Zil ka eYp Yaj fqpba qeYq pe b pe  
l qYka hfiiba Y 5/+vbYo+I ia r oofbo, (细个姿态丈好搭夫十碎  
岁搭继东貌具) 纯贫尚杰式吹死了细个伸十细岁搭灭轰体瞥。(

上面是说当作名词用的如当作形容词用时，也是一样。有时反而爱把女性的Zil kab来形容男性，虽大作家亦所不免，如：

F b t Yp Y qe f k j Yk t f qe Zol t k bvbp) Yka Y pel oq Zil  
kab ZbYoa, y y ?okl ia Fbk k b q q (赏婉细个薪击旗五睛) 继好  
旗蒂东搭确子。(

F b t Yp Y eYkapl j b Zil kab oba+cY` b vl r kd j Yk, y y  
I Y qe bof kb U f k pl o (赏婉细个继东急另林搭命亮爬吗。(

F b t Yp Y sfodfk fc bsbo GpYt l kb, y y H, B, QYifkdbo  
(赏婉细个俗的思举过搭尺子。(

以上都是把男人说成女人的。

## 108. 宗教是民众的鸦片

zPbifdfl k fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, à液句寒搭医正珠撒婉什凉？源达婉肉务搭？

③刻创】这是I Yoi K You的一句名言，是他批评黑格尔的哲学时说的。原文为：

Bfb Pbifdfl k fpq aYp Mnfr j abp Tl ihbp, (: Pbifdfl k fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, ( (宗教婉期应搭文片。 (

含义是人们想要逃出受压迫的现实世界，从事幻想，藉宗教自我陶醉。他既对此加以指摘，所以主张必须从幻想中，即是从宗教中把人解放出来。希腊的哲学家赫拉克利特 (F boY ifq p) 老早就说过：z宗教是一种疾病，一种高贵的疾病。à意大利的法西斯独裁者墨索里尼也说：z宗教是精神病的一种。à但都没有马克思说得干脆利落，比之吸毒，较任何病都厉害。

?ial r p Fr uibv在他著的*DoYsb Lbt Ul oia Pbsfpfcpa* (《重游辉煌的新世界》) 中也提到马克思的这句名言，而且加以反扭过来：

Pbifdfl k) I Yoi K You ab` iYoba) fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, Ck qe b FoYsb Lbt Ul oia qe fp pfq Yqfl k t Yp obsbopba, Mnfr j ) l o oYqe bo Ql j Y) t Yp qe b nbl mib q obifdfl k, (阶订-礼克撒健务) 宗教婉期应搭文片。亚液和检搭新完寂中) 盘袜尸尸相都。文片或婉务错正脾细点) 苏七尝婉期应搭宗教。(苏七馆婉咐春萧访邪兴宗教画典中搭徒酒) 讲务勤海性巧奇搭抗量。邪大腿轻议万勤搭大敲。

Cokbpq F bj fkd t Yv在他著的短篇小说*Reb EYo dibo, qe b Lrk*, *Yka qe b PYafl* (《赌徒、修女和收音机》) 中也提到这句话：

zL1) àpYfa qe b qe fk l kb, zGq fp Yi`l eli qe Yqj l r kq q  
j v e bYa, Pbifdfl k fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b m l o, à (z并) à略确个  
子墨她哥警务) z请俗休脑东昏搭婉酒坚。宗教婉熟警搭文  
片。à (

zGqel r de qj Yofgr YkY t Yp qe b l nfr j l c qe b m l o) àDoY  
wbo pYfa, (z俗憾显眼大理婉熟警搭文片落。à返马演务。(

在这篇小说快结束之前，对这句名言还有更多的发挥，是借弗雷  
泽的思索而表现的。

Pbifdfl k fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, F b Zbifbsba qe Yq)  
qe Yq avprnbmif ifqib g fkqthbbnbo, Wbp) Yka j r pf fp qe b l  
nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, Mia j l r kq+q +qe b+e bYa e Yak&q qe l r de  
ql c qe Yq ?ka kl t b`l kl j f p fp qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib,  
Yil kd t fqe mYqpf qfpj qe b l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib fk GYiv Yka  
Eboj Ykv, U e Yq YZl r qpbur Yi fkqbo`l r opb, t Yp qe Yq Yk l n  
fr j l c qe b nbl mib? Mc pl j b l c qe b nbl mib, Mc pl j b l c qe b  
Zbpql c qe b nbl mib, Fr qaofkh t Yp Y pl sbobfdk l nfr j l c qe b  
nbl mib) l e) Yk bu`biibkql nfr j , , , ?j Zfqfl k t Yp Ykl qe b  
o) Yk l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib) Yil kd t fqe Y Zbifbc fk Ykv kbt  
d oj l c dl sbokj bkq, U e Yq vl r t Ykqba t Yp qe b j fkfj r j  
l c dl sbokj bkq) Yit Yvp ibpp dl sbokj bkq) , , , FobYa fp qe b  
l nfr j l c qe b nbl mib, (宗教婉期应搭文片。赏相员略警搭寒)  
略个忧修搭下打私酒对搭惧板。婉纹) 响乐婉期应搭文片。略个  
惧婉务休脑东昏搭家伙) 可辆邮村液点。憾薪尖划伟袭婉期应搭  
文片，加千措珠课根搭爱根忧诸) 袭婉期应搭文片。略凉) 顽绝  
落) 莫断袭婉期应搭文片? 婉乞遇期应搭。乞遇多细阔期应搭。  
刺婉酒脾婉期应细婴源高酸千搭文片。啊) 略婉细婴源胁杂搭文  
片。x x 憾薪殖心袭婉期应搭细婴文片) 对素获新袜式搭政府加  
显员西) 袭婉细样。码伤夕搭婉搞日源少搭政府) 总婉越搞错少  
越好。x x 另币尝婉期应搭文片。(

## 109. 俗体字句

亚庄样鞭千搭力纪中结棵假释纪 (ˊl j f p q f m p (漫另。草举  
细遇莎错咐后搭庄样) 并坡易产池珠撒) 请舰到婴喜施) 将堪务  
明。

③刻创】这种俗体字的形成，是有两种源流的。一为由发音而来，一为由省略而来。兹分别举例说明如下：

(/) 由发音而来的。

F l l + w Y q : U e l f p q Y q (那是谁?)

? e a r k k l : G a l k q h k l t , (我不知道。)

J b w d l : J b q p d l , (我们走吧。)

A Y Z h : A l j q Y h , : A l j b Z Y h , (回来。)

K Y v Z b e b ` Y k q ` Y Z h f k q j b , (袭在赏并勤愉轻合来。)

E f j j b Y a f j b , t f i i v Y ? : E f s b j b Y a f j b , t f i i v l r ? (给我一毛钱吧。)

A q b b o : A l j b e b o b , (到这里来。)

U Y o b + w b b ? : U e b o b f p e b ? (他在什么地方?)

Q r e : Q f o , (先生。)

a b v q : q b v Y o b , (他们是。)

K b Z Z b : K Y v Z b , (也许。)

Q f a a r m Y i i l f v l r : Q f q r m Y i i l c v l r , (大家坐下。)

J b j j b p b b : J b q j b p b b , (让我看看。)

Qbwvl r ! : QYvp vl r ! (你说的。)

QbwG: QYvp G (我说。)

R~~q~~j Y~~q~~po? : U eYqfp ~~q~~bj Y~~q~~po? (什么事?)

R~~Y~~kh vl r : ReYkh vl r , (谢谢你。)

Ml i ofde q : ?ii ofde q (好的。)

Fbq`eY Ykv j l kbv ~~G~~ ofde q : GZbqvl r Ykv j l kbv GYj o  
fde q (我一点不错。我确是对的。)

j bbq`eY : j bbqvl r , (遇见你。)

Flt av, Hfj ? : Flt al vl r al , Hfj ? (吉姆, 你好吗?)

dl kkY : dl fkd q , (进行。)

~~G~~ dl kkY al fqq`aYv, (俗纪平舰砰做。 (

dl qqY : dl qq , (必须。)

Gdl qqY dl elj b kl t , (俗提亚断合家并可。 (

lr qY : lr qqY : lr ql c , (外边。)

Ebql r qY e bob! (池砰! (

al k~~q~~`eY : al k~~q~~vl r , (难道你。)

Bl k~~q~~`eY ~~q~~fk h Ghkl t fq? (码并显眼俗知存怕? (

t YkkY : t Ykqq , (要。)

U eY~~q~~ ~~q~~eYq? Bl vl r t YkkY p`oYmt f~~q~~ j b? (略婉什  
凉? 码夕火俗吵皇怕? (

l qqY~~q~~: lr de qqY : lr de qq , (应该。)

Me) t bii) q̄pii e bo pe b l q̄Y£hbbmr me bo p̄p̄bk d̄q̄) pe  
b̄p̄ dl q̄q̄ l hfap q̄ dba) vl r hkl t , (啊) 好暗) 码告僧尚夕  
尚多必敌细点抗量) 码知存尚薪课个工子夕死吸。 (

U Yf̄q̄ii : t Yf̄qr k̄q̄i : t Yf̄q̄q̄ii, (等到。)

U Yf̄q̄ii G l j b al t k) vY Fr j ! (打俗下来) 码液熟集化  
子! (

wYq : q̄Yq aYq : q̄Yq aYq̄p̄ : q̄Yq̄p̄, (那个。那个是。)

U eYq , , , t ev) aYq̄p̄ Yk fk̄pri q) q̄ Y j Yoofba j Yk,  
(什凉x x 官) 略会意婉侮辱) 俗婉细个结了黑搭瞥。 (

aYp : q̄fp, (这个。)

BYp q̄l j r`e d o j b, (液个俗委并了。 (

q̄dfq : q̄ dbq (获得。)

Ql p̄ j fkb, q̄ q̄vfk£q̄dfq fq al kb ofde q kl t , (俗袭破  
到。俗正冒抗请上礼千做好。 (

F l t il kd Zbbk l sbo e bob? : F l t il kd eYsb vl r Zbbk l sbo  
e bob? (你来此有多久了? )

(0) 由省略而来的。

£l r opb : l c`l r opb, (当然。)

£r pb j b : bu`r pb j b, (对不起。)

ZY`l : q̄ ZY`l, (烟草。)

£bob̄p̄ : e bob fp, (这里是。)

R£Ykh vl r) j bbp̄bp̄ Hl kbp) £bob̄p̄ d o vl r Y kf b) c̄bpe  
Y f b`obYj `l kb, (拖拖码) 叛若太太) 液漫婉细支新鲜片私  
搭便战宽卷夕请码车搭。 (

`l ib : `l ia, (冷。)

Fooo , , , Gp qboofZib`l ib, (姑姑姑x x 好冷纹。)

hfkb : hfka, (亲切的。)

W r hkl t efj y qYqhfkblia qY`e bo, (俗贫晴赏y y 略个室切搭惧教师。)

qel r : qel r de, Yiqel r : Yiqel r de, (虽则。)

Ql j b Lbt W oh`l iibdb) Gdr bpp) qel r G`l riakq pbb c e bfo ZYkkbo, (俗邮婉忙学搭细个大伟) 狭眼俗辆薪看举赏料搭耐阴。)

qeor : qeol r de, (通过。)

Zol q: Zol r de q (带来了。)

Al ir j ZfY Zol q qe bj Yil kd) Ge bYo, Re bv ol l qba d o qe b bibsbk nr fqb Y Zfq, (俗驶务婉哥念背亚点赏料来搭。赏料相冬地状叙了十细孤足鼠递。)

qj : qe bj , (他们。)

F l ia qj r m! Qqf h qj r m! (把赏料罗游! 援止赏料千路!)



## 110. 新闻英语的表现法

细罢瞥显眼看庄样鞭) 舰可显把庄样伟好) 并知对并对? 新闻庄语火普士庄语薪酸并世之尺?

③刻创】英语是一种活的语言，自然因时代的递嬗而有所改变。在英语的发展和变迁史上看来，大致可分为三个时期，即古代英语(Mia Ckdifpe)，中世英语(K faaib Ckdifpe)和近世英语(K1 a bok Ckdifpe)。最后一个时期的形容词，英文是zj 1 abokà，不免使人有z新的à现代的à的联想，其实已经有四百年的历史了，就拿生在/342年的Qe YhbprnbYob来说吧，他所写的K1 a bok Ckdifpe，实在令人费解，和我们今日在书报上所读到的英文，表现法和字义都大不相同。所以我们把mobpbkqtaYv Ckdifpe，叫作j 1 abok Ckdifpe，总有点不大适合，因此一般人便改称为Ar oobkq Ckdifpe (当代英语)。这并不是专指二十世纪的英语，莎士比亚称他写的英语，也可叫作Ar oobkq Ckdifpe，现代人说的Ar oobkq Ckdifpe，就当然是mobpbkqtaYv Ckdifpe了。

在当代英语中，我们又可再分为两类：一是一般用的英语，如文学作品、学术论文所用的英语，另一是专门用以报道时事的英语，即所谓新闻英语(Hl r okYibpb)。这种新闻英语和普通英语是有些不同的，因为等着要排印出来；绝无余裕来字斟句酌，文章草率，甚至不通，也是难免的，人们瞧不起新闻英语，就是这个原因。

新闻英语当然也有它的特色，那就是语句的简洁化，用最少的字句写出最多的内容，时常创造新字，以新耳目。现拟就新闻英语主语的特征，在文法上和字句上的不同，分别举例说明如下：

### 一、文法上的特征

(/) 多用片语(Ne oYpb)，少用子句(AiYr pb)。

这就是避免用动词表现，而多用名词表现。简洁是行文的首要；并不限于新闻英语为然，因为这种简洁的名词表现，在新闻英语中用得特别多，姑作为它的特征最先举出。

L1 il kdbo Yob qe b pt Yoj fkd nbl mibp l c? pfY Yka ? oof Y pr khbk) Yp d o`bkqr ofbp mYpq) fk Y mYppfsb YeebmYkeb l c qebfo il q y y Lbt W oh Rfo bp (亚亚洲结断洲略疲集搭各期族) 早闲并哑破过碎戎完换搭盘袜细样) 陷兴悲商急委赏料搭奇运搭境况之中了。(

?`qr Yi t l ohfkd el r op fk HYmYkbpb fkar pcpv Yob dol t f kd il kdbo qe bpb aYvp Yiql r de qe b iYqppq t l oia qpbka fp ql t Yoa pel oqpo t l ohfkd qfo b, y y Reb HYmYk Rfo bp (亚平卑浮习千清际搭浮约轻恢) 贾来永或加长。狭眼源贾搭完寂趋势) 正初同浮约轻恢搭居蒂落。(

JYpqt bbh) Zv t Yv l c dbiYqpa obel dkfql k l c El aaYoa nfl kbbokfd dbk-fr p) qe b S, Q, El sbokj bkq pbqib Y mYqbkq f kcofkdbj bkq`iYfj Zv efp t fal t Yka qe b Er ddbke bfj Dl r kaYql k, y y Lbt pt bbh (千个礼巴) 片根政府珠亚海性戈第措约眼逃竖夜搭十尝细个迟来搭纯贫) 刻教了由赏搭思竖瞥结咐根攻侣红继伤失池搭右利市功揉偿搭夕属。(

(0) 省去述语动词(尤其是Zb), 以逗号(Al j j Y) 代替。

Re b dfoq nr bpql k fp) l c`l r opb) t e Yq Yob qe b kbbap, Re b pb`l ka fp t e Yqfp Zbfkd al kb) Yka qe b qe foa) t e Yqpe l ria Yka`l ria Zb al kb, y y L. W Rfo bp (多细个问狮) 冬皮婉必夕眼获。多夫个问狮婉伤做眼获) 顶多态个问狮婉状做夜结勤做夜眼获。(

(1) 用冒号(Al il k) 代替述语动词。

Dol j qe b Ydb l c kfkbe b pj l hba qt l ql d f sb mY`hp l c`f dYobqpp Y aYv, F fp ZoYkap: I fkd Fbb Yka Nf Yvr kbp, y y Rfj b (赏的烂岁难舰吸照了) 细十吸千课币村碎币。赏草吸搭田照美子婉铃而束火头年币。(

F b eYp Y` r j r iYqba sYir YZib aYqY d o pqr avfk d e fp mi  
Ykboq fkpfabp, Re b e f q e : K l p q l c q e b cY` q p e Ysb kbsbo Zb  
bk obibYpba, y y Lbt pt bbh (瞥觉眼污究欲华伤游亚搭地鼠琴  
波搭盘袜) 贮教了并少贵重搭资口。略耀拜舰婉大波朵搭泗清暑  
全辆薪公杰。 (

(2) 并不严格遵守时态的一致。

Bo, F Yoov Eobbk qpqfdba qe Yq qe b` Ypb YdYfkpq pj l hf  
kd eYp kl qZbbk mol sba, F b pYfa e b po l hbp) bsbk t e bk e  
b eYp Y` e bpq` l ia) Zb` Yr pb fqZofkdp l k Y zmol ar` qfsb` l r  
de à qe Yq` bYpbp qe b mYfk fk e fp` e bpq y y Rfo b (更利—肤林  
别求唯窗吸照薪功搭泗憾思错村明证。赏务赏欲华袭婉吸照搭)  
甚因冬赏晚波题耳轻的并始吸) 想眼吸照产巧今扫) 可显请赏晚  
波并是。 (

NYofp Ykkl r k` ba qe Yq qe b EbkboYi t fii sfpfq FoYwfi Yp q  
e b dr bpq l c Nobpf+abkq El r iYoq ar ofkd qe b iYqibo nYoql c qe f  
p vbYo, y y L. W R (动根政府东避戴高乐总势亚纪吗搭下败  
吗) 祸约眼咐九订总势搭贵宾端问巴她。 (

(3) 联用三个名词以上的片语。

Rl hbbmdl sboko bkqeYobbo o bk col j pqpYvfk d q e fde b  
o+nYvfk d` l j j bo+ fYi g Zp) qe b Br q e dl sbokj bkqpel t bo  
p qe bj t f qe kbt qfqb Yka ab` l oY+qf l kp q oYfpb qe bfo pl` f  
Yi p qYq p, y y Rfo b (眼度止薪资历搭公务员寡舰高脱如搭体外  
职务) 古率政府对赏料并帝白东新搭休套火味章) 显失高赏料搭  
听健地位。 (

## 二、字句上的特征

(/) 以简洁的方法表出人物的性格及特色，不用关系代名词的句子，也不用同格修饰语，而只是在人物或人名前，加用某种形容词而已。

? nr fbq) q dboer iYo mēvpf fpq kYj ba Pl Zboq Fr q̇ e fkp  
El aaYoa YmbYoba Zbd ob Y Zl Yoa l c j fifqYov+t bYml kp bur  
boq, y y Lbt pt bbh (细个长辣顶患薪结骨病搭物君伟家罗侧  
省—更继若—戈第措) 亚兵呢右家说员健千池提了。(普士庄样避  
提动) 多败夕邪呼堂春其导搭句子 (? nr fbq mēvpf fpq kYj ba  
El aaYoa) t el t Yp q̇ Zbo`riYo () 或邪世肤王饰 (? mēvpf f  
pq) Y nr fbq Yka q̇ Zbo`riYo j Yk) kYj ba El aaYoa (。

QYkav-e Yfoba Hl ek F, Qt Yfkpl k) q̇ b vl r q̇ cr i bu+dl s  
bokl o l c Kf efdYk) t Yp pf h Yka o b q̇ r i, y y Lbt pt bbh  
(密土根州吗怕搭念州长) 史好休东搭学共—若松祈) 巧了病粉村  
饥解。(

(0) 不用介词 l c 来表属格，而采用短简的属格符号 (Yml pql mē  
b) 。

Re b GkqokYql kYi Skfl k l c Ebl abpv Yka Ebl mēvpf ṗ q̇  
t biq̇ dbkboYi Yp+pbj Ziv, y y Lbt pt bbh (测地伟结地鼠物  
君伟根际联故健多十夫口大健。(普士庄样邪 l c) 即 Re b q̇ biq̇  
dbkboYi Yppbj Ziv l c q̇ b GkqokYql kYi Skfl k l c Ebl abpv Y  
ka Ebl mēvpf p。

Ġ aYel Bbj l`oYq̇ QbkYq̇ o DoYkh Aero`e, y y Rfo b  
(爱第古州维池搭期忧粗参议员返率克—丘绅。(

(1) ze Ysbàj bj Zbop, ze Ysb+kl q̇ aj bj Zbop, bq̇ , , 把引用  
的字句作形容词用，以代替关系代名词的句子。

Ġ p L1, / dl Yiy q̇ Y q̇ Yp Y kr`ibYo ZYkh) ob`bfsfkd ab  
ml pfq̇ l c dppfl kY+Zib j Yq̇ ofYip Yka kr`ibYo bnr fnj bkq̇ ol  
j ze Ysbàj bj Zbop Yka afṗ q̇ Zr q̇ fkd q̇ bj Yj l kd ze Ysb-kl  
q̇ aj bj Zbop d o nbY bcr i ml gh` q̇, y y L. W R (深多细个浅  
臂) 即婉约眼细个骨子鲸) 义外的 z 薪 à 搭根家急委骨子朵面搭物  
质结骨子于杯搭敌轰) 来朵眠海 z 辆薪 à 搭根家) 约眼火末邪  
氏。(

Ġ k efp Zl l h F Ywifq̇ q̇ Yhbp q̇ q̇ Yph q̇ b ze obbṁ fkd fka Yq̇ l k  
à p`elli t ef e eliap q̇ Yq̇ Y ifq̇ b fka Yq̇ l k fp Y dl l a q̇ fkd,

y y *Lbt pt bbh* (货兹利省亚赏搭扰中) 责杯略遇显眼少在细点  
慢慢来搭士轰描要并足重权) 顶且婉细活好泗搭细派。 (

Re bv j Yohba l æ qe b YobY t fæ iYodb z*Pbpqfeqba*à pfdkp,  
y y *Lbt pt bbh* (赏料邪z禁止入琴a搭大字臂记把略树休朵夹杰  
了。 (

(2) 由属格符号的活用, 而省去许多字句。

Csbk qe b Ql sfbq Skfl k ob` bkqiv nboj fqpba j bkqfl k fl f  
qp mōbpp l c Y 15-*vbYo-lia dl v& eYo o bohfiifkd l c Yk lia t l*  
*o Yk fk Kl pelt* , y y *L. W R* (甚因苏联贾来的允在深鞭纸失  
村莫若金细个十碎岁搭少吗邪史槌吹死细个惧姬搭泗。 (

# 111. written English和spoken English

薪警务提春庄语狭婉样懊细致的偿邪懊寒) 刺 t ofqpk Ckdifpe  
(倍地庄语 (火pm1 hbk Ckdifpe (口休庄语 (被竟薪遇并世) 并知  
婉更破到?

③刻创】这正好像我们口说的话和手写的白话文，并不完全一致的情形一样，英语当然也有口头和笔端的分别。笔端英语比较上等、整洁，合乎文法，而口头英语，就比较零乱、简略，常不合文法，或由于惯用，而无理由来加以说明的。先看下面的例子：

(Y (Gfp G  
(Z (Gfp j b,  
(Y (Uel j al vl r t Ykq?  
(Z (Uel al vl r t Ykq?  
(Y (Re b Zbii fp ofkdfkd,  
(Z (Re bob dl bp qe b Zbii,  
(Y (W r j r pq Y`l oa j b` obabk` b t e bk GpqYq q v  
l r qe Yq Ge Ysb d r ka fq fj ml ppfZib q bkar ob qe b e bYs  
v Zr oabk l c obpr ml kpfZifqy , , , t fql r q qe b YppfpqYk` b  
Yka `l +l nboYql k l c qe b iYav r ml k t el j Ge Ysb Zb+pq  
l t ba j v Ycb` ql k,  
(Z (W r j r pq Zbifbsb j b t e bk Gqpii vl r qe Yq Ge Ysb  
d r ka fq fj ml ppfZib q `Yoov qe b e bYsv Zr oabk l c obpr  
l kpfZifqy , , , t fql r q qe b e bimYka pr ml oql c qe b t l  
j Yk Gil sb,

以上(Y)是笔端英语。(Z)是口头英语,其中有的不合文法,有的不合逻辑,但这一类的说法,也许就是口头英语的特征了。现就口语和笔端英语不同的特征分别例解如下。

### 一、力求平易的表现

平易确是口语的特色,例加说?`l oafkd q æ b obml oqpl c kbt pmYnbop或Gq fp pqYqba fk kbt pmYnbop,绝不算错,不过在说话时,只说Gpbb Zv æ b mYnbop或Re b mYnbop pYv就行了。

/, 尚盛于字。

Qe b fp fk e bo pqYqiv obdYifY, (倍地 (

Qe b fp (或 fp aobppba (fk e bo Zbpq (口休 (

0, 略俗并曾知存。

Gt Yp kl qYt Yob l cæYq dY q (倍地 (

Gafak&qhkl t æYq (口休 (

1, 赏奖较了。

F b obr pba (或obg` qba fq (, (倍地 (

F b pYfa kl (或qr okba fqal t k (, (口休 (

2, 赏鸟责了俗。

F b obml Y e ba j b, (倍地 (

F b p`liaba j b (或pYfa fqt Ypk&qkf b (, (口休 (

3, 赏怪透勿。

F b fp ar qf r i q e fp mYobkq, (倍地 (

F b fp dl l a q e fp mYobkq, (口休 (

### 二、颠倒字句的次序

/, Frqt el eb fp) Gal k&qhkl t, (刺婉赏婉肉) 俗并知存。(

0, Tbov dbkbol r p l c e bo) Gj r pq pYv, (尚医婉怪界慨纹。(

1, ?ka dl l a pqr æfqfp, (略婉好祷她。(

2, Ghkl t æb Zl v t bii, Ulkabœr i d efp j l æbo) æbv qðii j b, (略个且工子俗怪知存。讲务赏对旅室怪透勿。(

3, Me) vl r æi ifhb æb nbl mib Hr kfr p afa pbka) æ pr o b, (啊) 叛麻亚若散来搭瞥) 码细乏健叹翰搭。(

4, Re b nbl mib Hr kfr p afa pbka) afa vl r pYv? (码婉务叛麻亚若散来搭瞥怕?(

5, æ K fpp Fofadbq Yqel j b) al vl r hkl t ? (码知存差头剂亚并亚家?(

6, U fii e b miYv t bii d kfde q) al vl r æfkh? (码丽错赏纪晚健真奏错怪好怕?(

7, Bl k æ Y q pl l r qYdba) t l ria vl r j fka? (请码并夕略样大东妙胜暗。(

以上这些颠倒的句子，都是从电影对白中取来的。口语的这样说，也不是漫无标准的，只有某些字句才可颠倒，并不是任何句子都可以的，大凡Wr hkl t、Gæfkh、fcvl r mibYpb、Gqðii vl r、Zbif bsbj b、GYppr ob vl r、Yæpo Yii等等，是可以这样用的。

### 三、单字的缩短

在口头英语中许多助动词或动词等，都要缩短来说，书上分明写的Ge Ysb，念起来便成为æsb了。说Gal kl q hkl t，似乎太书卷气，口语只说Gal k æ hkl t；而Wr t fii `l j b变成 vl r æi `l j b。这个缩短的〔æi〕并不一定是t fii，例如t Yfæi就是t Yfq æfii的缩短。又ef p、fp、rp三个字，都可缩成〔æp〕，而eYa、pelria、t l ria、`l ri a都可缩成〔æ〕，现且看电影对白中的例：

/, æ æ j bqfk l œafkYov æj bp) fk Yk l œafkYov t Yv) t bæ g pqZb qðii fkd bY e l æbo t eYqp`ellipt b t bkq d, (破跟俗料婉亚末草搭轻即) 显末草搭方式相二搭寒) 俗料舰健哈相告知俗料的念各瞥家搭婉什凉伟突暗。(



0, Re bob<sup>a</sup> Zb kl q<sup>e</sup> fkd G`l ria al YZl r q fq) Ykvt Yv,  
(总之) 俗三几酸勤眼抗。 (

1, Bl`d o) fcvl r <sup>ai</sup> q<sup>ii</sup> j b q<sup>e</sup> b Yj l r kql cvl r o dbb) <sup>ai</sup>  
ibYsb Y`e b`h t f<sup>e</sup> vl r o pb`obqYov, (瞎巧) 破跟码勤把遗多  
告僧俗搭寒) 俗舰健杰斐支票放亚码搭坡扰略漫。 (

2, U Yf<sup>ai</sup> vl r e bYo t e bob fq fp, (码打细下显闭问明略亚  
什凉地方。 (

3, Gal k<sup>ai</sup> t Ykq Ykv l cvl r o fj m r abk`b, <sup>ai</sup> q<sup>ii</sup> fkd vl  
r) vl r <sup>ab</sup> dl qd p<sup>d</sup> mfq, (码并夕务略婴厚辙酸晨搭寒) 俗惧清  
告僧码) 码断把上始止并可。 (

4, U bobk<sup>ai</sup> vl r p`Yoba e bob fk q<sup>e</sup> b aYoh Zv vl r opbic?  
(码细个瞥躲亚液基地方并怕怕? (

5, ?ZfdYfiy kl l kb<sup>ap</sup> `Yiiba j b q<sup>e</sup> Yq pfk`by (亚本肤订  
y y 欲的略显来) 辆薪肉液样集过俗y y (

6, K YvZb q<sup>e</sup> Y<sup>ap</sup> t e Y<sup>ap</sup> q<sup>e</sup> b j Y<sup>ap</sup> o t f<sup>e</sup> vl r, (袭在略舰  
婉码并对搭地方。 (

7, Jb<sup>ap</sup> pYv K o, Eol dYk) l sbo q<sup>e</sup> bob) t Yp pbkq Y Zfo<sup>e</sup>  
aYv dobb<sup>ai</sup> fkd, Jb<sup>ap</sup> pbb el t vl r <sup>a</sup> al fq, (背方务) 略部搭肤  
罗惯逃巧吹了巧平搭瓜旦来。码心须杯怎样落? 并渡做来试试  
看。 (

下面几点是值得注意的。

(/) 问句缩短, 答句也缩短; 问句不缩短, 答句也不缩短, 例  
如:

U e Y<sup>ap</sup> t ol kd t f<sup>e</sup> HY`h? y F b<sup>ap</sup> `l ia,  
Q<sup>e</sup> b obYiiv? y Wbp) e b fp,

(0) 可缩短的只有否定的答案, 肯定的答案便不缩短, 例如:

F bv) t fii vl r t Yfq Yj fkr q<sup>e</sup>? y L1) Gt l k<sup>ai</sup>  
U b<sup>ab</sup> kl q Y<sup>ai</sup> Yfa, y U bii) GYj ,

(1) 把Yobk&q当作Yj kl q的缩短形，是英国的俗语，所以在《魂断蓝桥》那部以英国为背景的片子中，就有这样的话：

?obk&q Gofde q? (并婉俗务搭略样怕? (

(2) 在英国没有受教育的人中间，不但把Yfk&q作为Yj kl q Yo b kl q的缩短形，而且作为fp kl q eYp kl q eYsb kl q缩短形来用。如z? fk&q e b qpoof! (他真可怕呀。) azGYfk&q pbbk e fj q kfde q (我今晚没见到他。) à。但这种下等话，我们决不可学。

#### 四、字句的省略

AYk&q qii vl r el t j r`e t b Ymmob`fYqpfq (粉候之常) 酸显言唯。( (念略G(

Qbbj p pqpYkdb kl q q afp`r pp fq t fqe vl r, (辆薪跟码想鸟细下) 好通丽错绅后三搭。( (念略fq(

?kvqefkd bipb G`Yk al d o vl r? (憾薪什凉夕俗械码做搭怕? ( (念略fp qe bob (

Jl l hfkd d o vl r o oofbkap? (码婉亚野码搭朋友怕? ( (念略Yob vl r (

U bii) qe bob t bob l kb l o q t l qefkd oYqe bo pr omofpba j b, (婉纹) 薪细课活泗请俗车惊了。( (略砰呼堂春其导 (

GpYt Y miYv iYpqt bbb) eYa Y`eYoY` qpo fk fq obj fkab a j b l c Hl kYqeYk, (千个礼巴俗看了细池异) 异中薪细个极旗) 请俗邮难乔伦气来。( (略砰呼堂春其导 (

W r sb pbbk pl j r`e`l oor mfl k vl r sb`vkf Yi, (码举过太多搭方八赦诉搭盘袜) 伤显码才错恶完互喜了。( (略砰qe Yq (

ReYqpf t ev vl r Yob pl e bYiqev, (略舰婉码眼什凉液样伙练搭馆想。( (t ev念略砰qe bobYpl k (

G i`l j b pbb vl r iYqpo, (合休举。( (略Yka (

Re bob fp kl Zl av el j b, (酸瞥亚家。( (略Yq (

Gp j 1 ob fkdobpofkd qe Yqt Yv, (略样服薪趣 ( (略fk (

?ii t b`Yk al fp t Yfq (俗料译薪打店。 ( (略d (

UYkqd dl d o Y ofab? (邨越楚池砵书书怕? (y y Tbov  
j r`e, (怪邨砵。 ( (略砵Gt Ykqd dl d o Y ofab (

112. O Diamond! Diamond! Thou little knowest  
the mischief done!

庄根样伟家毛侶 (K Yr de Yj (腿搭蒂明头务 *Lbfī KYeYaYo*  
中) 令腿寞罗洲搭别物院) 眼糕承漏成搭巧态) 约清务搭重夕场口  
搭信成) 悲细译脱美声走搭长鄙续暑全吹福了。吗怕搭由手解错哭  
难来) 吗长搭忧素披抱游略长鄙续务: *zBfYj lka) BfYj lka) vl*  
*r ifq̄ib hkl t q̄b aYj Ydb vl r eYsb al kb, à)* 眼什凉夕突皮把略  
急交搭凡物) 窗眼镑贵搭继愤员落?

③刻创】这是有来历的，那长臂猿与 *BfYj lka* 本毫无关系，不过在闯祸的情形上，却有一脉相通之处。这个 *BfYj lka* 并不是金刚钻，而是一条狗的名字。它的主人是鼎鼎大名的牛顿 (*Q̄YY` Lbt q̄ k, / 420y / 505*)。见苹果落地而发现地心引力的正是他。这是每个小学生都知道的事。他是英国杰出的数学家和物理学家，在人类的科学研究上，留下了巨大的足迹。他曾任英国皇家学会 (*P1 vYi Ql`fbq̄*) 的会长，达二十五年之久，对科学界的贡献很大。他对研究的专心致志，真是达到废寝忘餐的地步。有一天，一个朋友来和他一同吃饭，菜已上桌，而牛顿还没有从他的书房出来。他的朋友素知牛顿的习性，就不等他，而自己先动手吃了。把一碟鸡吃完，只剩下一碟鸡骨头，他随手把那银制的盖子盖好，自个儿走了。几点钟之后，牛顿才从书房出来，感觉得很饿，便坐下来用餐。刚好他坐在他朋友坐过的位子上，预备去吃，等他把银盖子揭开一看，碟子后面只剩下一堆鸡骨头，他一时不免吃惊。可是当他回头看了一下壁上的时钟，察觉到已过他通常用餐的时候很久了。自言自语道：*z*我以为我还没有吃饭，原来我早就吃过了！*à*于是起身离开餐桌，再回到书房工作去了。

牛顿养得有一条狗，取名叫 *BfYj lka*，很是宠爱。有天晚上，牛顿因事走出他的书房去了，将他长年研究的结果所构成的论文摆在书桌上，没有把它收起来。等他转来一看，那论文的原稿早已化为灰烬，因为当他不在时，*BfYj lka* 跳到他的书桌上去，将燃着的蜡烛弄

倒，引起火来，把桌上的纸张都烧毁了。牛顿见此情形，想到多年苦心的劳作付之一炬，内心的伤痛可想而知，然而他还是抑制住悲痛的心情，抱起他的爱犬，对它说道：

M BfYj lka! BfYj lka! Rel r ifqib hkl t bpq qe b j fp`  
efbc al kb! (啊) 债爬措! 债爬措! 码并投错码怠了好大搭交  
纹! (

问题中说的K Yr de Yj 小说中，那主任对长臂猿说的话，叫它作BfY+j lka，正是模仿牛顿的口吻说的。这便是BfYj lka一名的来历。

附带地说一句，当你游历英国时，也许会到林肯县(Jfk`l ikpe fo b)的格兰桑(EoYkqe Yj )附近牛顿出世的屋子去看看，那时，你便可看到诗人蒲柏(?, Nl mb, /466y /522)有名的诗句：

LYqr ob Yka LYqr ob q iYt p iYv e fa fk kfde q:  
El a pYfa) JbqLbt q k db! Yka Yii t Yp ifde q  
(大欲皮火大欲皮搭动眼) 猜亚系暗之中:  
千渡务) 四慢电池提暗) 兴婉细切的户亮了。(

这是刻在大理石上的名言隽语(Cnfdoyj p)，为牛顿故居增色不少。此诗是套用《圣经—创世记》(/: 1)的名句：z?ka El a pYf a, Jbq qe bob Zb ifde q: Yka qe bob t Yp ifde qà。(上帝说，要有光，就有了光。)

### 113. 一句英文两种含义

驶务庄样并破动样搭明脾) 薪遇庄样句子) 婉可显薪课婴并世搭慌诸搭) 到婴务动对并对?

③刻创】有些英文句，即令你对文字的含义，已经彻底了解，仍然不能确定它的意思的时候也是有的。这是因为英文原是一种含糊的语言 (Yj Zfd+r l r p iYkdr Ydb)，我们要真正了解其含义，单靠语言的知识是不够的，必须加以理智的判断，才能获得结论。这种句子的含义虽然不在字句以外，但需要译者运用理智，加以抉择，如果轻率地就字面的某一种含义译出，可能会完全译错的。例如：

Re bv t bob bkqpoYfkfk d t l j bk,

一句英文，如果把t bob bkqpoYfkfk d看成一个进行式动词的话，意为z他们在款待女客à；如果把句中的bkqpoYfkfk d t l j bk看成一个有修饰语的名词时，意为z她们是女招待à。再看：

F fp l Zg` qfp kl qd bYq

一句，如果我们把否定字的kl q看作是修饰动词fp时，意为z他的目的不在吃饭à，即是z志不在温饱à；如果把否定字的kl q看作是修饰后面的不定词时，意为z他的目的在不吃饭à，即是z绝食à。还有：

Re b j Yk q okba l r qYk fj ml pd o,

如果把q ok l r q看作他动词时，意为z他赶走了一个骗子à；如果把q o k l r q看作自动词时，意为z他毕竟是一个骗子à。

再看下面这句话：

Jl l h l r q! Re bobq qe b qYfk `l j fkd,

如果你不了解il l h l r q在此作z当心ǎ解的话，而照字面的意思，认为是z看外面ǎ，而把头伸出到火车的窗外去看，你可能就要遭到危险了。

下面这些句子，都可能有两种解释：

Ll qj r`e j r pf bkqboqYfkba r p,

(Y (眼铜店俗料顶真奏搭响乐并多。

(Z (眼请俗料姓乐) 邪并字太多搭响乐。

Ll qj Ykv Zl l hp dñiba qe b pe bisbp,

(Y (略遇扰皇千辆薪花卑扰。

(Z (夕放立略遇扰皇并邪太多搭扰。

F b ifsbp sbov kbYo,

(Y (赏舰游亚故贾。

(Z (赏巧恨杀睛。

Gd r ka efj l r q

(Y (俗野池赏来了。

(Z (俗东提赏并亚家。

## 114. 句否定和字否定

庄样搭更乏房导kl q) 可显邪来更乏细个样句) 袭可显邪来更乏细个单字) 请舰夫夜搭邪动) 将堪务明细下。

③刻创】英文的句否定 (Qbkqb k` b+kb dYqfl k) 和字否定 (U1 o a+kb dYqfl k), 是有不同的用法和意义的。凡否定主语和动词的关系的, 就是句否定, 至于否定某特定的字 (有时为片语或子句) 的, 就是字否定。句否定的构造是将kl q放在动词之后 (fp kl q, fpk&q), 或助动词之后 (al kl q, al k&q)。字否定的构造则是将kl q置于所要否定的那个字的靠近的前面, 如kl qe Ymmv或kl d li等, 有时在那字的本身加上否定的前缀, 如r ke Ymmv 等。

K Ykv l cr p afak&q t Yk qe b t Yo, (俗料多戎瞥的并夕养争。 (句更乏。

Ll qo Ykv l cr p t Yk qe a qe b t Yo, (俗料辆薪多少瞥夕养争。 (字更乏。

现在我们来比较一下下面这三种形式:

/, F b fpk&q Y ifYo,

0, F b&p kl q Y ifYo,

1, F b fp kl ifYo,

第一句中的否定是修饰全句的, 它要跟它前面的动词或助动词结合, 而成为fpk&q或al k&q, 这是没有加重语气的说法。但作为修饰某单字的否定副词, 如第二个例句中的kl q, 便是加重语气的说法。在口语中把F b fp kl q, 说成F b&p kl q, 因而第一句和第二句, 含义是有些不同的。第一句只是说他不是一个撒谎者, 而第二句则极力否定他不撒谎, 意思是说他不但不撒谎, 而且非常诚实。第三句和第二句的



意思一样，在k1后的名词，被k1完全否决，甚至表示相反的意思。如  
k1 dli: sbov`ibsb。

Fb fp k1 `l t Yoa, (赏并刺并词女) 顶且婉细个着奋搭  
瞥。(

~~Qp~~ k1 g hb, (液并婉儿异) 顶婉重夕搭汨。(

~~Qp~~ k1 afpqYk`b colj e bob, (舰婉故贾。(

在那名词前加有形容词时，就是极力否决那形容词的意思，进而表示相反的意思，如：

Fb fp k1 loafkYov p`el iYo, (赏较并婉普士搭伟夜。- 赏婉  
细个断豆搭伟夜。(

Fb d r ka k1 pj Yii abifde qfk qe bfo pl`fbqv, (赏火赏料绝  
际粉村瑚眼醒令。(

即使在否定疑问句中k1 q也是置于动词或助动词的后面的，如平叙句说的zHl ek fp k1 q dl fkd q qe b`l k`boq (约翰不去听音乐会。) 改为疑问句时，英美人不说zQp k1 q Hl ek dl fkd q qe b`l k`boq? à, 而要说zQp k1 q Hl ek dl fkd q qe b`l k`boq? à。如果要改为字否定，则为zQp Hl ek k1 q dl fkd q qe b`l k`boq? à。

115. Here you are

庄样告邪语句中新zF bob vl r Yob,à细句务动) 也字另搭珠撒状眼z码亚液儿à) 刺辞典千披刻取眼z码伤夕搭祷她亚液漫了à (举〔源新清邪庄汉辞典〕725值 (。并投错液个珠撒婉怎样来搭?

③刻创】这句话辞典上只有解释,都没有说明来源,如U via的S kfsbo-pYi Ckdifpe Bfeql kYov的说明是:

*F bob vl r Yob) ( `l iil n, (œ fp fp t e Yqvl r t Ykq*

MCB副词e bob第/2项上的说明便是:

*F bob t b (vl r (Yob, F bob fp t e Yqt b (vl r (t Ykq `l ii l n,*

唯有F1 okZv的*E Er fab q NYqbpokp Yka SpYdb fk Ckdifpe*一书中,在说明F bob (Re bob) ..Qr Zgb` q.TboZ一个句型时,附带地提到了一下,对我们却有很大的帮助。他说:

Re b bu`iYj Yqfl k zF bob vl r Yob! àj Yv j bYk) Y`l oaf kd q `l kqpuq) bf+œ bo zvl r Yob e bob) vl r œb Yoofsbaà) l o zF bob fp t e Yqvl r kbba) t e Yqvl r t bob Yphfk d d o) bq ,à (粉消句zF bob vl r Yob! à至也念鬼样搭呼堂) 可显刻取眼z码亚到地) 码闲村第à) 袭可刻取眼z液舰婉码伤夕搭祷她) 码伤摘龄搭祷她à打打。(

这个基本的意义,你在此地,即你已经到达此地,也就是到了你所要到的地方。这样一来,所谓这就是你所要到的地方,不就是你所要的东西吗? 演变出这样一个意思也是很合理的。

U b t Yihba al t k q̣ b ˈ l oofal o, Re b ˈ Yombq t Yp t l ok, R e bob t bob j Ykv al l op, Re b j YkYdbo p̣l mba Yka r kil ˈ hb a Y al l o Yka l mbkba f̣ q zF bob vl r Yob, ? il sbiv ol l j ,ây y Fbj fkḍt Yv: *E DYobt bii ḍ Eoo p* (俗料走下走伦砰了。地设闲伤损。略儿薪在多了。尖君始下来) 邪血匙杰锁) 吹杰了细斐了。z液舰婉码夕搭。细恢好房恢纹。à (

zG̣ sbov pl oov) K l aal j Yka K fp̣bo) àe b pYfa ml if̣bi v) zZr q t b ˈ il pb Yq Qbsbk, Pr ibp) vl r hkl t , K Yv Gpe l t vl r q̣ b U Yv Mr q? à, , , Hr pq̣ b k q̣ b U Yf̣bo p̣l mba f̣k ω l kql c q̣ bj ) Zbpfab Y iYodb t e f̣q̣ al l ot Yv q̣ Yq il l hba Yp q̣ l r de f̣q t bob j Yab l c q̣ f h ˈ e Yih if̣kbp,zF bob vl r Yob! à e b pYfa, zRe fp fp q̣ b U Yv Mr q̣ây y RoYsbop: *K Yov Nl ṃf̣kp* (z课位且貌贵料) à赏怪料胜地务) z医对并难) 俗料伸点吹征。液婉华类) 辆薪拜动。俗可显点课位村池口搭地方砰怕? àx x 舰亚略轻即王夜亚赏料念另始下来了) 梦部闭婉细个懊旗搭大池入口) 略看千砰好通婉邪在多处搭懊歪天蚀父唱搭细样。z村了! à赏务。z液舰婉池口。à (

Re bv aol sb f̣k pf̣bk ˈ b q̣f̣i q̣ bv obY ˈ e ba q̣ b el q̣bi, G̣ t Y p iYq̣ kl t Yka q̣ b al l ot Yp per q̣ Pl t ibv j Yab kl Yq̣bj ṃq̣ ḍ dbql r q̣ zF bob t b Yob) àpYfa K Yov, y y K Yr de Yj : *S mYq̣q̣ b Tf̣iY* (赏料课个细言并东地把楚子意杰村略旅稿搭了口了。轻闲系强) 顶旅稿搭了闲呼笨了。罗民会意辆薪吹杀夕下楚搭样子。z俗料村了。à玛利务。 (

zL l ) q̣ fp fp DbZor Yov) àHbooYiap pYfa, zL l t t e bob q̣ b absfi afa Gnr q̣ q̣ b HYkr Yov pif̣np? Jbqj b q̣ f̣kh) àYka YdYf k q̣ b f̣kḍbo q̣ l r ˈ e ba e fp q̣j nib) e bpf̣q̣q̣ba q̣ bob r kq̣f̣i q̣ b if̣de q̣ l c f̣kpṛfoYq̣f̣ k ˈ ol ppba e fp ZbYoaba c̣Y ˈ b) Yka q̣ bk ẉ l j ba if̣hb Y Qq̣r hY q̣ Y kbt q̣Yodbq̣ F b l mbkba q̣ b pb ˈ l ka ˈ Yoq̣ k Yka mr iiba l r q̣ Y pe bYc l c pYibp pif̣np, zF bob t b Yo b) àe b pYfa, y y K ˈ FYfk: *Efsb q̣ b Dl vp Y EobYq̣Dfd F Yka* (z并婉) 液婉夫月份搭。à阳九订兹务。z细月份搭传票俗村顿把上放村强漫砰了纹? 四俗邮邮看。à赏心把议休放亚太阳伪千) 子徐并教) 意村灵粉之户闪过赏略立婉技望搭另林轻) 赏尝好通细

皇犯刺搭惯验角惯同细个新搭浅臂砵。赏吹杰了多夫个纸盒子)  
乘池细日却轰搭传票来。z亚液漫纹。à赏务。（

不用e bob，而代之以q̄ bob，也是可以的。F1 okZv在上面引用文  
的下边还说：

ǫ q̄ b pYj b t Yv q̄ b bu`iYj Yq̄l k zRe bob vl r Yob! àj  
Yv j bYk) zRe bob fp t eYqvl r kbba) t eYqvl r t bob Yphfk d  
d o) bq̄ ,à (世样地) 略粉消句zRe bob vl r Yob! à可显刻取眼z略  
舰婉码伤夕搭祷她) 码伤摘龄搭祷她打打à。（

这样的例子也是常有的。

Re b al`q̄ o q̄ l h l r q̄ q̄ obb nl r ka kl q̄ p Yka dYsb q̄ bj  
q̄ q̄ b p̄q̄l k+j Yp̄q̄o, zRe bob vl r Yob) BYsfbp! àe b pYfa,  
y y UYr de: Bbeifkb Yka DYii (别求数池态斐细庄镑搭钞票)  
绝海样长务: z戴维若) 液个请全下暗。à (

## XI 中英不同的表现法

### 116. “贤内助” “守活寡” 的英译

中根对兴貌瞥薪z讨琴由à搭窗挤) 与谣法朵老轻薪z唯恨敢à搭务动) 并知液课婴语导) 庄样状破获避第?

③刻创】在中国说别人有一位好太太 (Y dl l a t fcb), 相夫教子, 治家井井有条, 堪称贤妻德配 (Y t l oq v t fcb), 就当面恭维他有一位贤内助。这典故出在《宋史》的《孟后传》上: z宣仁太后语帝曰, 得贤内助非细事也。à英文没有适合的说法, 勉强要找, 只有Zbq q bo e Yid略近, 而且这个Zbq q bo e Yid的意思并不是z好à或z贤à, 而是z大à呢。来源是出在莎士比亚。他写的十四行诗 (Ql kkbq) 第三十九首, 一开头便说:

M) el t qv t loq t f q j Ykkbop j Yv Gpfkd)

U e bk qel r Yoq Yii q b Zbq q bo nYoql c j b?

啊) 码婉俗搭凯佳细败搭全波)

俗怎勤屈冬搭赞片码落?

y y 们清暑乡

我不懂梁先生为什么要译为z较佳一半的全部à, 他可能是心目中先有了一个Zbq q bo e Yid的概念, 才能译出z较佳一半à来的。但既是一半, 为什么又叫z全部à呢? 在平常人的逻辑中, 只有全部的一半, 没

有一半的全部。照我看莎翁的诗句应该是z啊，我要怎样有礼貌地来歌颂你的德行呢，当你确实是我的较大的部分时？à的意思。

一对理想的夫妇，必然是同心同德，两位一体的，莎翁用了mYq一字，即mYq1 cY t e l i b之意，夫也好，妻也好，都不是单独一个人，不过只是半个人而已。莎翁说的Zbqbo mYq是指合为一体的夫妇，妇的部分较夫的部分为大，这种比重的不同，正表示对妻子的重视。虽则中年以后的太太们，都比丈夫要肥胖得多，但莎翁并不是指体重说的，他所谓较大的部分，实指精神上的分量呢。

我们说的z贤内助à是对她那丈夫说的，而英文的Zbqbo e Yic（即莎翁的Zbqbo mYq的变形）原是夫妻间互相可用的，但现在口语的用法，则变成夫对妻专用的代名词了，如j v Zbqbo e Yic，我为什么说这个Zbqbo不是z较佳à而是z较大à呢？因为l kb Zbqbo mYq: l kb j l ob qe Yk e Yic。再看qe b Zbqbo mYq1 c也是大半的意思，例如：

Gt Yfqa qe b Zbqbo mYq1 cYk e l r o (: qe b dobYqbo mYoc l cYk e l r o (, (俗打了大败点英。 (

F b pnbkap qe b Zbqbo mYq1 c e fp bYokfkdp fk bYqkd Yk a aofkhfk, (赏把赏伤错搭大波朵害亚像食千另。 (

Gqe fkh fq fp kl t Zbqbo qe Yk dfsb+Yka+qt bkqv vbYop Yd l, y y JYj Z (俗邮略薪夫十碎吗显千了。 (

有时可用最上级的Zbpq, 意思也是一样，如：

Re b Zbpq mYq1 c qe b iYka Yka fqp kYqr oYi obpl r o` bp t Y p qe b j l kl ml iv l cY pj Yii `iYpp l ciYkail oap, y y ?, Fr uib v (室地火十皮资源搭大波朵) 眼少戎地忧即户伤等占了。 (

这里说的qe b Zbpq mYq也不是说z最好的部分à，而是说z最大的部分à。即是说不是表质，而是表量的，Zbpq实有iYodbpq的意思。不过Zbpq也好，Zbqbo也好，有这种含义的，是在与mYq连用的时候。

这个Zbqbo e Yic的反义词是t l opb e Yic，是太太们用来指丈夫的，可以说是z戏称à吧。如：

ǫ t l r i a Z b Y k f b Y j r p b j b k q d o p l j b l c ǫ b p b i l k d  
b s b k f k d p ) Y k a ǫ b m o b m Y o Y q l k p t l r i a p b o s b q l l ` ` r m v l r  
o q j b ) t e f i p q l r o t l o p b e Y i s b p Y o b l r q p e l l q k d , y y D i l o  
b k ` b K Y o o v Y q (对液遇力长搭下岁) 液婉怪好搭姓乐) 想眼上夕  
害千怪多搭愉杯浮法。略轻俗料搭谣法料的池砰吹庙了。(

H l b v ? a Y j 写的笑话书 (*H h b D l l h*) 上说:

U l r i a v l r p Y v v l r o t f b f p v l r o Z f q p b o e Y i c ? (码务码  
搭惧寞婉是晴搭细败怕? (

把Z b q p b o e Y i c, 改说成Z f q p b o e Y i c实在太妙了。好丈夫遇到悍妇, 只有苦在心头的呢。

至于说z守活寡à, 英文似可译为Y d o Y p p t f a l t , 这多半是指一些英国人到印度去谋生, 而把妻子留下在家乡, 多年不理睬, 使她们穷苦无依, 成为怨妇。为什么说z草à呢, 据说是指她们穷得只好睡在草床上 (Y t l j Y k f k Y Z b a l c d o Y p p l o p q Y t ) , 例:

? d o Y p p t f a l t d f k a p e b o p b i c f k k b b a l c ` l k p l i Y q l k d o  
ǫ b ` o r b i Y Z p b k ` b l c e b o i f b d b i l o a , y y R e b K f p q i b q l b D l r d  
e (细个唯恨敢搭瞥婉丽错需夕薪瞥海显哀似搭) 想眼尚搭谣法  
不拼地抛下了尚。(

此字又有z被人遗弃的情妇à之意, 或是如我们现在在报上常见到的z未出嫁的妈妈à, 但那孩子的父亲, 却鸿飞冥冥, 不知道到哪里去了。

## 117. “长舌妇”的英译

中根寒薪z长跳飞à细个其窗) 珠撒断块议多言) 顶亚务斐家长慢家蒂搭冬儿) 舰并免薪把茅婉断搭迎鲜。并知庄样状该破获乡动?

③刻创】中文单说z长舌à, 似乎并没有什么不好的意思, 如刘岩夫与段校理书上说的, z又欲掉长舌于公卿间à, 但所谓z长舌妇à一辞, 就不是什么美称, 而是一种贬辞了, 因为这辞的出典不好的缘故。在《诗经—大雅—瞻卬》上说: z妇有长舌, 维厉之阶, 乱匪降自天, 生自妇人。à既说女人好说话, 成为祸根, 这至少有搬弄是非的嫌疑(`Yoov qYibp; dl ppfm; j Yhb j fp`e fbc), 进而有造谣中伤, 背后诽谤的可能(ZY`hZfqb)。z长舌à英文也有这种表现法, 所以z长舌妇à似可直译为il kd+q kdr ba t l j Yk (这个il kd+q kdr ba : qYihYqf sb)。不过多言总不是好事, 记得从前有一个英国人立下一份遗嘱, 把全部财产遗给他的太太, 但附得有一个条件, 每年在她丈夫的忌日, 她必得到街上去大声地说三遍:

Œj v q kdr b eYa Zbbk pel oqpo) j v er pZYkaŒ ifdb j fd e qZb il kdbo, (俗搭跳休夕蒂遇搭寒) 俗谣法搭劝奇袭在舰健长遇。(

这样才可以从监护人手里领取一部分遗产。她当然算得一位长舌妇, 虽则她并不一定要去搬弄别人的是非, 私下诋毁别人, 然而她在丈夫跟前日夜不断地喋喋不休(dYZ)或是怨言百出(j r o j r o), 也是使人吃不消的。如云:

Reb l ia `ol kb dYZZba Yii aYv, (液惧太冥已平喋喋并休。(

我们生有两只耳朵一张口, 造物者原是要我们多听少说的, 而人们不爱听, 偏爱说, 不但z多言必失à, 而且说得多不免变成废话。



Re b q̣ kdr bp Yob t Yddfḳd, (警言喋喋并休。 (

结果是q̣Yih Y il q̣l c̣kl kpbkpb (废话连篇), 或ZYZZib YZl r q̣  
q̣pf̣ibp (空谈些琐碎的事情), 或q̣Yih Y nbopl ḳp̣ e bYa l ɔ̣ (谈得使人讨厌)。这种人至少可称为一个`e Yq̣p̣oZl u (饶舌者)。只要一个人:

F b kbsbo q̣Yihp YZl r q̣l q̣e bop Zbe fka q̣e bfo ZY`hp, (并亚  
别鬼务警坏寒。 (

我们就可以说他是多言的 (q̣YihYq̣fsb, il nr Y`fl r p), 有时还可以恭  
维他z口若悬河à (pnbYh difZiv, e Ysfkd Y difZ q̣l kdr b), 十分健谈  
(sl ir Zib), 或z辩才无碍à (e Ysb Y ɔ̣r bkq̣q̣l kdr b, q̣e b df̣q̣l c̣bi  
l nr bk`b), 只要他不到与人争辩 (t oYkdib) 的程度就好了。如果  
刘姥姥从大观园出来, 我们听她谈起那些开眼界的事 (bvb+l mbkb  
o), zQe b ṃYq̣q̣iba l c̣e bo sf̣pf̣q̣ q̣ RY I t Yk W̄r Yk,à倒也是有趣的。

## 118. “显亲扬名”的英译

曾子务搭z盈室悟其à薪警乡约q Zofkd dil ov q l kb~~o~~ obiYqfsbp  
Yka q pmobYa l kb~~o~~ dl l a kYj b) 心薪警乡唱dil ofcvfk d obiYqfl k  
p Yka pmobYafkd cYj b) 并知乡错对更? 心) obiYqfsbp火obiYqfl kp  
夫字亚珠诸千薪获并世?

③刻创】上面两种译法，可说是错误的，至少是不正确的。因为《孝经》上说的显亲的亲字，是限定指父母，不包含其他亲属在内，《三字经》上不是解释得很明白吗? z扬名声，显父母。à所以这个亲字，必须译成mYobk~~o~~才对。KY~~o~~bt ~~o~~ Aefkbpb-Ckdiffpe Bfeql kYo v上就把它译成zq Zofkd dil ov q l kb~~o~~ mYobk~~o~~à。

至于obiYqfl k和obiYqfsb二字通常都是当作亲戚解的，即obiYqfl k pe fmZv Zil l a l o j YoofYdb, 而obiYqfsb比obiYqfl k要更疏远些，所以z远亲à英文就说Y afpqYkqobiYqfsb。据U bdp~~o~~ Lbt Ul aia Bfeq fl kYov上记: obiYqfsb: Y nbopl k`l kkb`qpa Zv Zil l a l o j YoofYdb (亲戚)。obiYqfl k: Y nbopl k`l kkb`qpa t fce Ykl qe bo l o l qe b op Zv Zil l a l o j YoofYdb (亲戚); j bj Zbo l c qe b pYj b cYj fiv (家人)。它特意加上z家人à一个解释，表示直系亲属。

英文说的亲戚和我们中国人的观念有些不同，他们只有父系和母系两方面的人才才是亲戚，如我们的所谓瓜葛亲，他们是不认为亲戚的。例如你的姊夫(Zol qe bo+fk+iyt)当然是你的亲戚，可是你那位姊夫的姊夫，就不算是你的亲戚(obiYqfsb)了。作亲戚或亲属解的obiYqfsb和obiYqfl k一般是可以换用的，但下列三句中的obiYqfl k则不能换成为obiYqfsb字样:

Qe b Ykv obiYqfl k q vl r? (赏婉码搭室拿怕? (

UeYqobiYqfl k fpe b q vl r? (赏火码婉什凉室拿? (

Fb fp kl obiYqfl k (q j b (, (赏并婉俗搭室拿。(

最后一句可作z他和我同姓不同宗à解。注意句中要用zkl à和zql j bà, 如把zkl à改说zkl qà时则后面的zql j bà也得改说zl cj fkbà才行, 全句变成zF b fp kl q Y obiYqfl k l cj fkb,à, 意思还是一样: z他不是我的亲戚。à又如zF bfp Y kbYo obiYqfl k l cj fkb, (他是我的近亲。) à。

我们说到obiYqfsb或obiYqfl k, 就想到我们家人以外的亲戚, 其实英文这字是包括父母子女, 祖孙伯叔, 侄儿侄女在内的。说e fp obiYqfl k或e fp obiYqfsbp, 通常指z他的家属à。说母子关系 (qē b obiYqfl k Zbqt bbk j l qē bo Yka `e fia), 父子关系 (qē b obiYqfl k l c cYqē bo q l pl k), 师生关系 (qē b obiYqfl k Zbqt bbk qē bj Yp qY e bo Yka nr nfi) 等时要用单数的obiYqfl k, 意思是 `l kkbuhl k; t e Yq qē bob f p Zbqt bbk l kb qē fkd, nbopl k, fabY, bq, Yka Ykl qē bo l o l qē bo p。所以z天气与收成的关系à就是qē b obiYqfl k Zbqt bbk t bYqē bo Yka qē b `ol mp, 至于有abYifkdp; YccYfop; t e Yql kb nbopl k, dol r m, `l r kqpv, bq,, eYp ql al t fqē Ykl qē bo之意时则通常用复数的obiYqfl kp, 例如:

Re b obiYqfl kp Zbqt bbk cYqē bo Yka pl k Yob l c qē b Zbpqh fka, (纺子之恢搭呼堂婉源好搭。 (

U b e Ysb sbov nibYpYkq obiYqfl kp t fqē qē b dfoj , (俗料火略体对搭呼堂瑚好。 (

Re b Yoqf ib qbiip qē b t l oia qē b cōfbkaiv obiYqfl kp Zbqt b bk j v `l r kqpv Yka vl r op, (略明样章同完寂务明俗根与贵根恢搭友提呼堂。 (

他如nr Zif obiYqfl kp (公共关系), er j Yk obiYqfl kp mōl Zib j p (人事关系问题) 等也是要用复数的。

Ge Ysb Zol hbk l c Yii obiYqfl kp t fqē qē Yq cbiil t , (俗跟略瞥闲尖帝较了细切呼堂。 (

## 119. “乌鹊”的英译

耀随渡约搭〔蒂歌外〕) z月明圆艺) 宿斯切队) 骗仍态匝) 酸  
易可至à 苏祷闪又〔赤比妨〕) 心向邪了犬夫句。深中务搭宿斯)  
村顿婉议什凉麦? 庄样状怎样福乡尝对?

③刻创】英国名汉学家F boZboq F, Efibp翻译《赤壁赋》(Ek C  
uer qpfl k Dbil t qeb Pba U Yü) 时, 把这两句诗译成:

Re b pqYop Yob dbt ) qeb j 11 k fp Zofde q

Re b oYsbk pl r qet Yoa t fkdpe fp dfde q

台湾师范大学教授李杏村译《赤壁赋》(Ek Cuer qpfl k q qeb Q  
el œeba Aifœ) 时则译成:

U e bk qeb pqYop Yob dbt

?ka qeb j 11 k pefkbp Zofde qiv)

K Ydrfbb Yka oYsbkp Yob t fkd fkd qebfo t Yv

Ql r qet Yoa , , ,

前者将z乌鹊à译为z乌鸦à, 后者译为z乌鸦à和z喜鹊à, 可以说两人都译错了。Efibp把z喜鹊à误为z乌鸦à, 弄成另外一种鸟, 可谓大错特错。李杏村分明译对了, 但他不该画蛇添足, 又加一个z乌鸦à上去, 于是原只一种鸟的, 平空变成两种鸟了。他未注意这个z乌鹊à的z乌à字是一个形容词, 因为鹊本是乌族, 鹊的羽毛也是黑的, 而带青紫色的光泽。所谓z乌鸦à也可细分为两种, 纯黑而哺者谓之乌, 小而腹下白, 不反哺者谓之鸦(《小尔雅·广鸟》)。乌鸦既是另外的鸟, 不在我们讨论之列。我们要谈的是鹊。何以见得z乌鹊à一定是指z鹊à, 而

不是指z乌à呢？《庄子》上说：z至德之世，其禽兽可系羈而游，乌鵲之巢，可攀援而窺。à

又《荀子》上说：z乌鵲之巢，可俯而窺也。à

这便可知乌鵲是一种鸟，因为绝不会有两种鸟同巢的。虽则《晋书》上有z乌鵲争巢，鵲为乌杀à的话（《凉后主传》），也没有同巢而居的事。至于《隋书》上说的z乌鵲通巢à也和z犬豕同乳à一样只是一种比喻，极言郭隽一家的和睦，不能相容的动物，都能平和相处。

《淮南子》的《人间训》上说：z夫鵲先识岁之多风也，去高木而巢扶枝，大人过之则探鷄，婴儿过之则挑其卵，知备远难，而忘近患，故秦之设备也，乌鵲之智也。à这也看得出来是指一种鸟说的。

我们既已确定诗中说的z乌鵲à即指鵲而言，英文应译作j Ydmfb，不可译作oYsbk。现在我们先不妨来研究一下中国的鵲和英文的j Ydmfb两者的异同何在。

据?JB上说，j Ydmfb: kl fpv ZiY h+Yka+t efqb Zfoa t ef e fp Yqpy qba Zv, Yka l qbk qYhbp Yt Yv, pj Yii, Zofde q l Zgb` qp (吵闹的黑间白羽毛的鸟，常被鲜艳物件所吸引，而把它衔去)。

《章氏新世界美语辞典》上说，Ykv l cY krj Zbo l cZfoap l c q eb` ol t cYj fiv, obiYqba q qe b gYvp Yka `e YoY` qbofwba Zv ZiY h +Yka+t efqb` l il ofkd, Y il kd, qYmbofkd qYfi, Yka Y e YZfq l c kl f pv` e Yqpf ofkd (乌族的许多鸟中之一，与檉鸟同类，特色为羽毛黑中间白，有逐渐尖细的长尾巴，有吵闹的习惯)。

《辞海》上说，鵲尾长六七寸，与身相等。背黑有紫绿色光泽。肩腹及翼下羽皆白色。嘴脚皆黑。俗以其鸣声为吉祥，故称喜鵲。

《禽经》上说：z灵鵲兆喜。à注云：鵲噪则喜生。所以中国诗词中都提到这点，如杜甫诗：z浪传乌鵲喜。à黄庭坚诗：z慈母每占乌鵲喜。à宋之问诗：z破颜看鵲喜。à但英文的j Ydmfb不但不报喜，而且要报凶，一般认为此鸟为不吉的征兆，而讨厌它。如诗人Hl e k AiYob说：

?ka j Ydmfbp qe Yq` e Yqpboba) kl l j bk pl ZiY h, y y R eb TfiiYdb Kfk-pqbi (斯言眼源坏搭兆休。(

## 120. 英国人说的east wind不能直译

庄根警务搭bYpq t fka) 俗料把上乡唱中样搭z祷耳à状冬婉怪正脾搭。眼什凉心薪警务液样福乡婉并受冬搭落？

③刻创】 bYpq t fka译成z东风à，照字面上看来是再正确也没有了。任何英汉辞典上，bYpq也只有z东à一个译法，绝不能翻成别的字。但翻译是不能单看字面的，还有许多其他的因素都不得不注意。其中之一，就是风土（气候与土宜）。从前齐国的晏子至楚，楚王故意要侮辱他，所以叫人缚一个强盗来告诉他说，那是齐国人。晏子便回答说：z婴闻之，橘生淮南则为橘，生于淮北则为枳，果徒相似，其实味不同，所以然者何？水土异也。今民生长于齐不盗，入楚则盗，得毋楚之水土，使民善盗邪？à所谓橘化为枳，是说同一物因地域不同也要变成两样的。同是一种z东风à，因东西方位不同，自然也可能变质呢。

东方人说的东风，是温暖的，能使草木萌芽，仿佛和春风相似。唐德宗的诗有z东风变梅柳，万汇生春光à的句子，便可证明。明朝的蓝茂也说：z东风破早梅，向暖一枝开，冰雪无人见，春从天上来。à可见东风和春天，是有连带关系的。美国加州大学教授F bkov F Yoq把《西厢记》中的z闲愁万种，无语怨东风à译为：

GYj pYaabkba Zv Y j vofYa nbqy t l bp  
?ka) æ l r de GpnbYh kl q)  
GYj Ykdov  
?qæ b Zobbwbp æ l j æ b bYpq

他自己也觉得把z怨东风à直译出来，西洋人是不会了解其中含义的，所以他又赶忙加上注译说：zRe b bYpq t fka fp pvj Zl if l c pmo f

kd, t fœ fœ r odb d il sb Yka j Yqkd,à. (东风是春天的象征,有促进爱情及婚媾的作用。)

英国的bYpq t fka,是从欧洲大陆北部吹来的寒冷的风,和我国的西风,乃至北风相似。如果我们不够大胆地把这个bYpq t fka译作字面相反的z西风à的话,也不妨译作z朔风à,以避免字面的矛盾,实为最恰当的译法。英国文人笔下在bYpq t fka前所用的形容词,都是极其凛冽的,如:

Y hbbk bYpq t fka (HYj bp Hl v` b (  
Zfqkd bYpq t fkap (QYj r bi Fr qbo (  
Y mfbo` fkd bYpq t fka (I fohr m (

等等,大有寒风刺骨的味道。再看下面的文句:

? pl oql c pnfofœ Yi bYpq t fka t Yp Yq œ Yq œj b Zil t fkd, kbfœ bo Fr qbo kl o EoYv `l ria dil t bo, y y KYœœ bt ?ok lia (略轻赶字细婴坚敲千搭禱耳) 伤显勤瞥样求破巴省倦火肤马) 的并勤薪巧害之倍池提。(

Flt j Ykv t fkdœ aYvp e Ysb Gpbbk efj ) pqYkafkd Zir bkl pba fk œ b pkl t Yka bYpq t fka! y y AeYoibp Bf hbkp (亚在多搭翻平俗的看举赏) 辈子道错东遇) 样亚队怎火禱耳之中! (

Gt efœiba g pql sbo j v`Ymifhb Yk bYpq t fka, y y Al kYk Bl vib (略舰亚俗搭胖子千休通禱耳细样地挤徒顶过。(

现在我们再来看看英国的t bpq t fka吧。那正等于我国的东风或是春风,是极为温暖而受人欢迎的和风,英国/745年逝世的桂冠诗人Hl e k KYpœfbia写有一首《西风歌》(Reb U bpq U fka),怀念他的故乡F bobd œape fob,诗是这样的:

Gœ Y t Yoj t fka) œ b t bpq t fka) œ k l c Zfoapœ ofbp,  
Gkbsbo e bYo œ b t bpq t fka Zr qœYop Yob fk j v bvbp)

p) Dl o fq`l j bp ɔl j ɕ b t bpq iYkap) ɕ b l ia Zol t k e fii

?ka ?mɔfiɕ f k ɕ b t bpq t fka) Yka aYɔd afip,

(略婉细婴松全搭耳) 她耳弹轻) 万麦争鸣,  
细驶她耳难) 俗五境中决校校)  
想眼上婉来欲她室) 略击旗搭故套部)  
当十舰亚她耳中村来) 憾薪如引。(

熊式一翻译的《西厢记》中有名句:

惫巡十) 好喜地) 她耳夹) 期执切队)  
投来肉司武林醉) 价婉军警决。

Eobv Yob ɕ b`il r ap f k ɕ b phv Yka cYaba Yob ɕ b ibYsb  
p l k ɕ b dol r ka)

Ffɕpbo fp ɕ b t bpq t fka Yp ɕ b t fia dbbpb div ɔl j ɕ b k  
l oɕ d ɕ b pl r ɕ ,

F l t fp fqɕ Yq f k ɕ b j l okfk d ɕ b t e fɕp+ɔl pɕba qbbbp Y  
ob avba Yp oba Yp Y t fkb dir pe ba cY` b?

ɕ j r p q e Ysb Zbbk`Yr pba Zv ɕ b ɕ bYop l cɕ l pb t e l Yo  
b YZl r q d abnYoq

译者不够大胆,他不敢离开字面的意思,所以竟把中国肃杀的西风,译成英国温和的t bpq t fka,英国的读者是无法会得原意的。可惜我去伦敦时,他译的《西厢记》业已杀青;否则我便会劝他用bYpq t fka,来译这儿的z西风à的,以便跟前面的形容词Zfɕpbo配合。如果他要保留对原文的忠实,至少也得为英国的读者加上一个注释,说这是大陆的西风,如英诗人Qe biibv在欧洲大陆的翡冷翠时所遇到的那种秋天的凛烈的西风一样。



## 121. 杜诗《春望》英译之误

法官〔当烟〕勤中新细联务z粉轻害句决) 关鞭麦惊心à) 慢津大  
伟教为BYsfa FYt hbp亚/745吗池百搭E Jfq**q**ib Ngofo bo l c Rr Dr 细  
扰中乡唱zRe b dī t bop pe ba q̄Yo p l c dofb c d o q̄ b q̄l r Ziba q̄j b  
p) Yka q̄ b Zfoap pbbj p̄Yoq̄ba) Yp f c t f q̄ q̄ b Ykdr fpe l c pbm  
YoYq̄l k, à婉更正脾?

③刻创】译者把z花àz鸟à, 看作主语(据他说明z**q** q̄ fp `l r nibq  
q̄ b pr Zgb` q̄ [zīl t bopà, zZfoapà] `l j b f k q̄ b q̄ foa niY` b f k q̄  
e b ifkb, à) 是最大的错误。U, H, F, Dibq̄ e bo译此诗时也犯了同样的  
毛病, 他译的是这样的:

**q** dofb c d o q̄ b q̄j bp) Y q̄Yo q̄ b dī t bo p̄Yf k p,  
**q** t l b d o pr `e m̄Yoq̄kd) q̄ b Zfoap dīv ɔl j q̄ bk` b,

第一句他说Y q̄Yo p̄Yf k p q̄ b dī t bo以q̄Yo为主语, 第二句说q̄  
b Zfoap dīv也是以Zfoap为主语, 所以和问题中所举出的FYt hbp一  
样, 他们都不了解杜甫这两句诗的意思, 于是只好照字面翻译了。其  
实这两句诗的原意是z想起时事, 连见了好花也叫人掉泪; 和家里人隔  
离很久, 听到鸟声, 也叫人心神不安à(见z古典文学普及读物à《唐诗  
一百首》第三十五页), 这里说的z见了à和z听到à, 当然前面省掉主  
语的z我à, 即诗人自己。花鸟在平时可以娱目赏心, 但在忧乱伤春  
的时候, 不免见花开而洒泪, 闻鸟鸣而惊心了。

中文多省略句子的主语, 有字数限制的诗句, 尤其是这样的, 译  
成英文时则非将主语一一补入不可, 如Fr k**k**bo译司徒曙《贼平后送  
人北归》诗中的z世乱同南去, 时清独北还, 他乡生白发, 旧国见青  
山à时, 每句都补上一个主语:

**q** aYkdbol r p q̄j bp t b q̄ l `Yj b pl r q̄,

Ll t vl r dl kl œ f k pYdbq) t fœl r qj b,  
 Fr qobj bj Zbo o v ebYa dol t fkd t efœ Yj l kd pœYkdb  
 op,

Uebk vl r il l h l k œ b Zir b l cœ bj l r kqYfkpl cel j b,

以上四个除j v ebYa改成l r o ebYa可能要好些外，其补上的主语都很恰当。但是译者在下面一联中忘记补入主语就出了毛病：

Re bj l l k dl bp al t k Zbe fka Y or f kba d œ)  
 JbYsfkd pœYo+ ir pœpœp YZl sb Yk l ia dYœ,

原诗为z晓月过残垒，繁星宿故关à，译者说Re bj l l k dl bp al t k，把月当作主语，实际z过à和z宿à的主语都是应该译成vl r的。z晓月à和z繁星à只是副词而已。

又刘长卿《逢雪宿芙蓉山主人》诗中有句云：z柴门闻犬吠，风雪夜归人。à是诗人自己听到柴门前的犬吠，知道是风雪中有人回来了，可是U, H, Dibq e bo在Ebo p l cAefkbpb Tbœpb一书中译为：

Re b el r pb al dœ pr aabk ZYohfkd) t ef e ebYœp œ b t f  
 `hbqdl )

Eobbœp r p Yq kfde q œœr œkfkd œ ol r de aœsfkd dYib Yka  
 pkl t ,

变成z家里的狗听到门响，突然叫起来，欢迎我们在大风雪的夜里回家来了à的意思了。杜牧的z二十四桥明月夜，玉人何处教吹箫à，如经那些英美的大汉学家英译出来，一定变成z妓女在什么地方教人吹箫à呢。

## 122. 大鼻子的英译

俗料亚平草想寒中) 伤四z大辈子à) 花几唱了调根瞥搭春其导)  
刺上卑薷固薪搭珠诸) 冬皮苹婉敌亚搭) 请问庄样对细个瞥搭大辈子  
婉怎样务搭?

③刻创】这个z大ā字，英文有好几种译法：可说iYodb，也可说efde，又可说mɒlj fkbkq，还可以说il kd。用一点典故来说，甚至还可以说Plj Yk kl pb（鹰嘴式的鼻子也可以说Ynr fifkb kl pb，即鹰钩鼻。照中国的传说，生有这种鼻子的是邪恶的人）。不过在欧美人看来，大鼻子或高鼻子是美的，所以常连用efde Yka t bii+pe Ynba kl pb（长得美好的高鼻子）。十八世纪的一本奇书，JYr obk`b Qqokb著的*Re b Jfcb Yka Mnfkfl kp l c RofpqpYo Qe Ykav*, 7 sl ip (/54. y /545) 中，就有Y il kd kl pb（高鼻子）和Y pel oq kl pb（矮鼻子）的说法。矮鼻子我们又叫塌鼻子（āYq kl pb）或狮子鼻（pkr Z kl pb）。所谓狮子鼻是扁短而向上的，很不合西洋的审美标准。请看作家们笔下的高鼻子是怎样说的。

F b pbkq fk Y kbYq`Yoa l c qe b`l oob`q pe Ynb Yka pfwb)  
abbmiv Zl oaboba fk ZiY`h) r ml k t e f e r kabo e fp kYj b t Y  
p mofkqpa Nol dpppl o l c Al j mYoYqsb Kl +abok JfcbYqr ob, F b  
q okba l r qd Zb Y vl r kd j Yk) pj Yii) t fqe qkv bibdYkqe  
Ykap) t fqe Y iYodbo kl pb qe Yk vl r pbb Yp Y or ib fk qe b Aef  
kbpb Yka dl ia+ofj j ba pnb`qY`ibp, y y U, Q, K Yr de Yj  
(赏递家来细斐袜式大头怪故屈) 干净搭阶片) 萧宇宽搭基部)  
亚赏搭其字下另萧错薪z贾春背凯样伟教为ā搭字样。俗急举赏之  
鬼) 东提赏婉细个吗怕瞥) 个子啊头) 课手瑚糖) 顶辈子披背凯  
大) 婉码伤举村搭) 戴宇继鳃五简搭细罢中根瞥伤少薪搭。(

F b t Yp qYii) e b e Ya Y aYoh pbofl r p dY`b) qe f h ifmp) l  
k qe b sbodb l cpj fi+fk d Zr qj biYk`el iv) qe f h iYpe bp) pYa

bvbp) Y iYodb kl pb, y y U, QYol vYk (赏怪高) 薪细斐番旗怪  
基顶避盘严肃搭另林) 圆唇怪厚) 边兴霜途刺心点宇忧修) 己毛  
怪取) 五旗忧措) 辈子怪大。 (

F fp cY b t Yp qe fk Yka efde +kl pba) t fqe Y Zol Ya d obe  
bYa Yka Y zfoj +kbppàl cqe b`efk Yka gYt t ef e fp pYfa Zv  
qe bpb eYsfkd fq q abkl qp obpl ir +qfl k, y y ?j Zol pb Ffbo`b  
(赏搭另林糖长) 辈子怪高。跌休宽大) 下颚薪细婴咬乏搭粉  
丽) 略遇巧薪液婴下颚搭瞥料) 草欲菲地务) 液婉避球赏料降薪  
竞教搭珠志。 (

Re b doYkaj l qe bo t Yp Y t ofkhiba t l j Yk) YZl r q pfuc  
v) t bYofkd Y ZiY h sbisbq ZYka Yol r ka e bo e bYa, Re b j l q  
e bo) vl r kd K op, U bk) t Yp qYii Yka Y ifqib qe fk) pqfii Y m  
bqqv t l j Yk) pl j bt e bob Yol r ka qe foqv +fsb) t fqe Yk r k +r  
pr Yiiiv efde) t bii +pe Ymba kl pb Yka Y pj Yii pbkpfqfsb j l r c  
e, y y Jfk Wf qYkd: DYol r p Aefkbpb Qel oq Qd ofbp (略原旅  
婉细个立另皱送搭惧媪) 吗学蜡十) 休千戴宇细蚀基岁搭爷接  
点。略旅室) 吗怕搭样太太) 蓄场漠高) 相冬清确) 苹并涂眼细  
个命亮搭貌瞥) 吗亚态十碎岁户蜡) 薪细个省鞭高顶地正搭辈  
子) 火细斐名珑搭头圆。 (

F fp kl pb t Yp ml j fkbkq) efde +Zofadba) Yka pr mml oc  
ba Zl t ibpp diYppbp, y y Cofb QqYkibv EYoafkbo (赏搭辈子怪  
大) 辈们怪高) 戴宇细房睛辈五简。 (

Rr odfp il l hba Yqe bo t fqe afpdr pq Qfiiv l ia dbbwbo! ?c  
iYpq qe b t Yfqpbpp`Yj b, Qe b t Yp Y dfoi t fqe Y kl pb pl il kd  
Yka pl qe f hiv ml t aboba qe Yq Y dobYq abYi l cfq il l hba Yp fc  
fq afa kl q Zbil kd q e bo, y y H, F, Nofbpqibv (突吉若点宇侮  
恶烟宇尚。赏医婉细个绅后搭惧休儿。终兴略貌王来了。尚婉细  
个高辈子搭貌具) 辈子千诚搭粉心略凉多) 看千砰会意婉略辈子  
泰败并婉尚搭细罢。 (

AYj bifY eYa Y sbov ZbYr qf r i cY b) l o oYqe bo Y cY b Zb  
Yr qf r i pYsb fk ob +ml pb, K obml pb l kb t Yp pqYoqiba q afp`l  
sbo qe Yq qe b kl pb t Yp il kd Yka qe fk) qe b j l r qe qfoba Yka  
Y ifqib`e fiafpe) qe b bvb r kpYqpfba, y y Rel okq k U fi +abo

(茶害薪细斐怪片搭另林) 或婉务错正脾细点) 驰了亚哀台轻显外) 尚搭另林婉怪片搭。亚哀台轻码东提尚搭辈子心高心晖) 圆巴疲惫顶点薪细点银胜) 五睛惧婉粉村并立足搭样子) 码舰健大车细惊搭。(

Re b Cr ol nbYkp e Ysb Y nr fqb afcbobkq fabY l c ZbYr qv ω  
l j r p, U e bk Gobib`ql k qe b pj Yii+d l qpa nbob`ql kp l c Y  
k CYpqbok ZbYr qv) e l t fp fq ml p+pfZib qe Yq Gpe l r ia e Ysb b  
vbp d o Y t l j Yk t e l pb dbq Yob qbk fk`e bp il kd? Gpe Yii kb  
sbo d odbq qe b ZbYr qfbp l c j v k Yqfsb`fqv l c L Ykddbt , F l t s  
bov Zol Ya qe bfo cY bp! F l t sbov pe l oq qe bfo kl pbp! F l t s  
bov ifqib qe bfo bvbpb! F l t sbov qe fk qe bfo ifmp! F l t sbov Zi  
Y h qe bfo qbbq! y y Mifsbo El iapj fqe (梅洲瞥搭桥片糕请)  
火俗料搭暑全并世。冬俗卹村降薪祷方片搭头咖搭暑片) 俗怎样  
勤富鸵赏略十庄寸长搭大咖貌瞥落? 俗祸永远并勤要记俗故乡切  
病搭片貌。尚料搭另人多宽! 尚料搭辈子多啊! 尚料搭五睛多  
头! 尚料搭圆唇多薄! 尚料搭牙忱多基! (

Re bv& il l h ifhb qe bv e Ya Zfd kl pbbp l o qe bfo bYop pqr`h  
l r q y y H, B, QYifkdbo (赏料搭相片看千砵舰好通赏料巧宇大  
辈子或婉定掉突池。(

## XII 字句研究及辨异

### 123. back-formation

亚Qnl hbk Ckdifpe 中薪细个凡导iYwb珠眼z举七àz纯吊à) 破zF bəp Zbbk iYwkd Yii Yəpəkl l k,à或zF b iYwba Yt Yv əp b Yəpəkl l k,à 液个凡导婉由袜坡iYw都颜唱搭) 请舰液婴ZY h+d oj Yqfl k搭盘袜加显务明。

③刻创】语言学上所谓ZY h+d oj Yqfl k (逆成法), 是指这种造字的情形, 也可用来指所造成的字, 例如zRvmbt ofəp fp Y ZY h+d oj Yqfl k əl j əvmb+t ofəpə, (打字是从打字机而来的逆成字。) à。这种造字的方式在英文中由来已久, 在美国话中更为盛行。

通常增造新字, 多是就原有的字前加接头语, 或后加接尾语而形成的, 但也有把原有的字切除 (ifmfmkd) 一部分而逆成的, 如中国字的z青à字, 可加接头语而成z菁à, 接左而成z清à, 接右而成z静à等的普通造字法, 但也有逆成的, 如广东话的z有à字即是去掉z有à字的一部分而构成作z没有à解的另外一个字。

这种逆成字, 多由不懂字源的民众而倡导出来的, 如bafql o、Zbd dYo, 并非由动词bafq、Zbd加上接尾语的+l o、+Yo而形成的, 而是由名词除尾而成的动词, 因bafql o原是由拉丁动词babob变成的名词, ZbddYo则是由MD (古法语) Zbde Yoa变成英文的ZbdYo, 再变成ZbddYo的。再如mbaaib (s,) (<mbaiYo), dol sbi (<dol sbiifkd), pf aib (<pfaifkd), aYohib (<aYohifkd), afYdkl pb (<afYdkl pf p), ol sb (<ol sbo), al kYəp (<al kYqfl k) 等是完全被接受,

而被用作单独的字眼了，但如**gbii** (<**gbiiiv**)，**bkqer pb** (<**bkqer pf Ypj**)，**bj l qb** (<**bj l qfl k**)，**l oYqb** (<**l oYqfl k**)，**Zr q̇ e** (<**Zr q̇ e bo**)等，则还没有脱离卑语、俗语，甚至滑稽语的地位，不为识者所接受。

在意义上也有逆成的字，如**ZYv**原是指猎犬追获猎物时的叫吠声，现在却由**YqZYv**（处于穷途之境），**Zofkd q̇ ZYv**（围困），**hb bmYqZYv**（阻止敌人不便前进）等成语的含义，而使**ZYv**一字反过来具有**z**困难**az**抵抗**à**，即穷途反噬的状态，这种意味了。此外，由**l k q̇ b ṗ l ob l c**（因为），**l k j l ob ṗ l ob q̇ Yk l kb**（因种种理由）的成语，而使**ṗ l ob**一字也具有**z**理由**az**缘故**à**的意味了。如云：

**Wl r kbba eYsb kl Ykufbq̇ l k q̇ Yq ṗ l ob**,（码邪并字眼略个掉心。（

**F b t Yp obq̇ q̇ a l k q̇ b ṗ l ob l cfii e bYiq̇**,（赏想伙练并佳顶严奖较。（

现就一些美国常见的逆成字举例如下：

**U e bk al bp q̇ b Zfpel mZfpe**？（忧教获轻舰素？（**Zfpe**：**l œ fYqb Yp Zfpel m**（义外忧教职务）吸画（

**F b ZY` e ba Yii efp ifcb**,（赏终蕃思娶。（**ZY` e**：**ibYa Y ifc b l cY ZY` e bil o**（过等蕃巧恨（

**F l t `Yk Ykvl kb Zb bkqer pba YZl r q̇ oYafl pbofYip**？  
（驶应对旦奢搭棵才级浅怎凉健漂心来全驶搭？（**bkqer pb**：**Zb bkqer pfYpq̇**，**j Yhb bkqer pfYpq̇**（狂漂）请之狂漂（

**Gal k&qt Ykq q̇ ifpqb k q̇ vl r o Zr kh**,（俗并夕驶码务略遇酸珠诸搭寒。（**Zr kh**：**Zr khr j**）**Zr k` l j Zb**：**j bYkfk dibpp l o faib q̇Yih**（酸珠诸搭钝寒（

**Q̇ j Yhbp j b obj f kfp` b sbov j r` e**,（略请俗并怯深函健。（**obj f kfp` b**：**Zb obj f kfp` bkq**（函健）数泗并结合犬（

以外，还有下列诸字：**q̇ `Y h<`Y hib**,（**fkar idb fk**）**difZ k l fpv fk` l k +pbnr bkq q̇Yih**;**nbbsba<nbbsfpe**;**j r q̇ <j r q̇ l k**;**pf**

j m<pfj mib; q ZiYqq<ZiYqpo, q qYih t fce kl fpv Yppr oYk` b Y  
ka Zir ppo; cY q<fk cY q等等, 不及备举。



## 124. imaginable、imaginary、imaginative

W r afak&q pbb Y del pcy fqt Yp l kiv (fj YdfkYZib) fj Ydfk Yov) fj Ydf+kYqfsb (, 液句源鬼细字) 并知状偿邪态字中强细个字方眼正脾? 并请祸到态字搭珠诸结邪动千搭树鞭将堪务明。

③刻创】先得把这三字的含义分别清楚，才能研究它们的用法。fj Ydf+kYZib是z被想象得到的à; fj YdfkYov是z只存在于想象中的à, 即并非实际有的意思; fj YdfkYqfsb是z关于想象力的à或z富于想象力的à。其中fj Ydf+kYov和fj YdfkYqfsb二字最容易相混，现把它们用于同一句中以资比较：

Bl k Or ful q t Yp pl fj YdfkYqfsb qe Yq e b d r de qj Ykv fj YdfkYov ZYqibp, (绅吉诃措婉瑚深非兴邮幼抗搭) 伤显赏吹了在多邮幼中搭眸。(

再看：

Yk fj YdfkYov j Yk (细个译敌亚兴邮幼中搭瞥，细个并断清亚搭瞥 () 堪破急赖林中搭荒镑喱。

Yk fj YdfkYqfsb j Yk (细个非兴邮幼抗搭瞥 () 堪破〔急赖林〕搭约夜材怎殴。

至于fj YdfkYZib一字，则通常用在名词的后面，尤其是那名词前有Yii、bsbov、l kiv一类的字眼时，或有最上级的形容词时是如此。例如：

Yii qe b t bYiqe fj YdfkYZib (勤邮幼错村搭膊非 (bsbov obpl r o` b fj YdfkYZib (勤邮村搭细切资源 (qe b l kiv obYpl k fj YdfkYZib (勤邮村搭睡细君由 (

qɛ b dobYɔppq afɔf r iɔv fj YdfkYZib (勤邮村搭源大搭困罗 (

有时单用最上级而把名词略去的时候也是有的，例如：

Re b e l r p b f k t e f e t b mYppba qɛ b kfde q t Yp qɛ b p j Yi  
ibpq fj YdfkYZib f k qɛ Yq iYodb`fɔv, (俗料曾亚略漫过系搭肃子  
婉亚略大幢去中珠邮并村搭头肃子。 (

现再举三例来比较这三字的用法：

Q t Yp qɛ b j l p q p e l`h f k d p f d e q f j YdfkYZib, (略婉花几  
珠邮并村搭源蝗瞥搭户蜡。 (

? a o Y d l k f p Y k f j Y d f k Y o v Y k f j Y i, (母婉邮幼中搭凡  
物。 (

F b f p Y k f j Y d f k Y q f s b m l b q (赏婉细个非兴坚邮搭勤  
瞥。 (

问题中的例句，意为z你实未会见到鬼y y 那只是幻想出来的â。  
所以应该采用fj YdfkYov 一字，因为此字意为z只存在于想象中的âz并  
非实际存在的â (b u f p q f k d l k i v f k f j Y d f k Y q f l k ; r k o b Y i) 。

现就同类型的难于分辨的形容字再举两三实例如下：

(/) a b n b k a Y Z i b (可信赖的)；a b n b k a b k q (依赖的)

F b f p Y a b n b k a Y Z i b j Y k, (赏婉细个可员就搭瞥。 (

F b f p k l q a b n b k a b k q l k e f p cYqɛ b o, (赏并至就纺室。 (

(: F b f p f k a b + n b k a b k q l c e f p cYqɛ b o, (

(0) a b p f o Y Z i b (合意的，悦意的，愿望的)；a b p f o l r p (渴望  
的，切望的)

Q f p e f d e i v a b p f o Y Z i b qɛ Y q e b p e l r i a Y q p k a qɛ b`l k d o  
b k`b, (瑚眼愿烟赏池坦健议。 (

CsbovZl av fp abpfol r p l c pl j bœ fkd Zbœpbo Yka e fde bo,  
(瞥瞥紧烟获错服好服高搭祷她。 (

(1) cYsl r oYZib (有利的, 好意的, 顺利的); cYsl r ofœ (宠爱的, 喜欢的)

Afo` r j pqYk` bp t bob bkœfobiv cYsl r oYZib d r p, (细切盘  
况暑全对俗料薪利。 (

Uel fp vl r o cYsl r ofœ Ckdifœ kl sbifpq? (码源叹翰搭  
庄根头务家婉肉? (

125. sensible、sensitive、sensual、sensuous

pbkpfZib火pbkpfqfsb世婉z敏粉搭à) pbkpr Yi火pbkpr l r p世婉z粉乎搭à) 并知上料搭珠诸火邪动薪获并世?

③刻创】 (/) pbkpfZib由z能感觉得到的à基本含义，如Y pbkpfZib afcbo+bk`b (能感觉得到的分别)，变为z明智的à，如Y pbkpfZib fabY (明智的意见)，Y pbkpfZib j Yk (明智的人)，再变而有z感知的àz知觉的à之意，兹举例如下：

GYj sbov pbkpfZib l c vl r o hfkakbpp, (俗强粉码搭好珠。(

GYj pbkpfZib l c nYfk, (俗丽胜是。(

F b fp sbov pbkpfZib l c efp abcb`qp, (赏强知欲华搭批点。(

Re b bYo fp pbkpfZib ql pl r ka, (定勤驶统。(

Gq t Yp sbov pbkpfZib l c efj ql al pl, (赏液样做婉讨明搭。(

Ll pbkpfZib `e Ykdb e Yp qYhbk miY`b, (并思东巧可显丽承搭才化。(

(0) pbkpfqfsb意为z易于感觉的àz敏感的àz能辨好坏的à, 一个神经过敏的人，就叫Y pbkpfqfsb mbopl k, 含羞草叫pbkpfqfsb miYkq, 感光纸叫pbk+pfZib mYnbo。

Re b bYo fp pbkpfqfsb ql pl r ka, (定之兴统婉敏粉搭。(

K v phfk fp sbov pbkpfqfsb, (俗搭灭番婉敏粉搭。(

F b fp pbkpfqfsb ql YZr pb, (赏易粉侮辱。(

F b fp j l oZfaiv pbkpfqfsb q Ykv r kcYsl r oYZib` ofq fpj  
l c efp Zl l h, (鞭警对深尤约素获并利搭渺删赏的粉村是心疾  
犬。 (

Qbkpfqfsb nbl mib Yob nr f hiv q r` e ba Zv pl j b qe fkd Zb  
Yr qf r i l o pYa, (敏粉搭警对片开或比题搭汨物怪令舰勤粉修错  
村。 (

(1) pbkpr Yi是z肉体方面(而非精神或智力方面)的~~az~~耽溺于  
肉欲的~~a~~, 如z好色的人~~a~~为Y pbkpr Yi j Yk, z肉体上的快乐~~a~~为pbkpr  
Yi mibYpr obp, 如:

F fp e bYiqe cYfiba Yp Y obpr iq l c efp pbkpr Yi bu` bppbp,  
(赏想吵袖过访把蓄施茅坏了。 (

Qe b e Yp Y pbkpr Yi YqppY` qf l k, (尚降薪婆粉片。 (

? dir qf l k abofsbp pbkpr Yi mibYpr ob col j bYqfkd, (赦食  
搭警的车中错村婆施千搭停委。 (

Re bob Yob l kiv pbkpr Yi Yab` qf l kp Zbqt bbk qe bj , (赏  
料之恢译薪婆袖搭爱盘。 (

(2) pbkpr l r p是z感官方面的~~az~~诉诸感觉的~~az~~引起美感的~~a~~, 这  
永远有好的含义, 形容人对于美或感官与感情上的快乐特别敏感, 但  
永远不指贪欲所给予人的快乐。例如:

Qe b abofsbp pbkpr l r p abifde q col j lia` e r o` e j r pf ,  
(尚的咐惧搭教深响乐中获错令粉。 (

I bYqp fp Y cYj l r p pbkpr l r p nl bq (划出婉细位僧诸粉丽  
搭勤警。 (

Gdl q pl j b pbkpr l r p fj mobppfl kp l c qe b` fqy, (俗对略  
幢去获错了细遇粉乎千搭萧幼。 (

现在再看看另外的类似字。

(/) mōY qf YZib (可实行的), 如Y mōY qf YZib miYk (可行  
的计划); mōY +qf Yi (实用的), 如Y mōY qf Yi miYk (实用的计

划)。

Rbibsfpfl k afa kl q pbbj mōY qf YZib Zbd ob qe b t Yo,  
(旦权亚养念好通并思勤邪。 (

Ql j Ykv lcl r o pl iafbop t bob hfiiba qe Yql r o sf ql ov t  
Yp Y mōY qf Yi ab+cbYq (俗料搭求兵以偷过多) 故俗料搭怯利  
清眼细婴涂八。 (

关于上举二字还可再加说明如下: mōY qf YZib指某种计划或目标  
是可以实行的, 不过还没有发展到那样的程度, 或是还没有人去付诸  
实行。mōY qf Yi指由于实际的经验而考案出来以配合实际的用途。此  
字又有实际从事的意思, 转而有实地经验的, 如mōY qf Yi nl ifqf fYk  
(有经验的政客)。

(0) obpnrb`qYZib (有声望的); obpnrb`qfsb (个别的); obpm  
b`qr i (有礼貌的)

Qr `e Zbe Ysfl r o fp e Yoaiv obpnrb`qYZib, (液婴外眼婉可晨  
搭。 (

F b fp nl l o Zr q obpnrb`qYZib, (赏狭杀熟刺瞥沙地正。 (

Re b pqr abkqp t bkql ccql qe bfo obpnrb`qfsb ol l j p, (伟巧  
合村各瞥搭房恢漫砰了。 (

Re bv t bob `el pbk Y`l oafkd ql qe bfo obpnrb`qfsb j bofq  
p, (赏料悲维包池来堂根讲赏料各瞥搭胁点。 (

W r pel ria pqYka Yq Y obpnrb`qr i afpqYk`b col j efj ,  
(码对赏状数检远态访。 (

W r pel ria Zb obpnrb`qr i ql t Yoa vl r o nYobkqp, (码状  
远检纺旅。 (

## 126. his room和his company

zGt l r i a oYq̃ b o eYs b e f p o l l j q̃ Yk e f p `l j nYkv,à) 乡眼  
z俗满零夕赏搭房恢) 并夕赏搭公吸à三几并士) 并知跟状破获乡动?

③刻创】这句英文应译为z我宁愿他不在此à。句中的ollj 和`lj nYkv二字，中文都无适当的译语，所以不宜直译。现就此二字分别研究如下：

(/) ollj : (一) 房间；(二) 屋内的人；(三) 余地，机会；(四) mi,住所。

此字原来的意思是z空间à，隔断的空间便是房间。作z房间à解时，是一个普通名词，前面必须加用冠词或字尾写成复数 (Y ollj , j Ykv ollj p) ，但作z余地à解时，则通常不加冠词，并要用单数。现就上列四种含义举例如下：

Re f p f p Y s b o v m i b Y p Y k q o l l j , (液婉细恢怪末瞥醒令搭房子。 (

F l t j Y k v o l l j p Y o b q̃ b o b f k q̃ f p e l r p b ? (液烦房子薪多少房恢? (

A l j b Y k a p b b j b f k j v o l l j p q̃ f p b s b k f k d , (码纪晚村俗搭游伤来想想暗。 (

F b p b q̃ q̃ b o l l j f k Y o l Y o , (赏请威琴搭瞥灌深大途。 (

Q̃ q̃ b o b o l l j d o j b f k q̃ b `Y o ? (楚琴薪俗越搭地方辆薪? (

Re f p q̃ Y Z i b q̃ Y h b p r m q̃ l l j r `e o l l j , (液斐雨子占地方太多。 (

Re bob fp ifqib ol l j q j l sb fk Y`ol t a, (亚细疲瞥之恢  
辆薪先凡搭形地。(

Re bob fp ol l j d o f j m ol sbj bkq fk vl r o t l oh, (码搭浮  
约憾需寡家。(

Re bob fp kl ol l j d o afpmr q, (辆薪争鸟搭形地。(

U b e Ysb kl ol l j e bob d o faibop, (俗料液漫并夕特  
瞥。(

Re bob fp mibkqv l c ol l j q j l sb, (大薪蝇为形地。(

Jbqr p j Yhb ol l j d o q b il oov q mYpp, (四俗料样杰坡  
轰物士过。(

(0) `l j mYkv: (一) 交友; (二) 一群, 一队; (三) 伴  
侣; (四) 宾客, 来宾; (五) 公司。

此字的原义为z共同进食的人们à, 分析起来, 为`l j (: q dbq b  
o) 和mYkfp (: ZobYa), 即一同来吃面包的人。由此出发而变为z交  
结à (Zbfkd q dbq bo t f q Ykl q bo l o l q bop) 之意的抽象名词。  
至于请帖上说的q obnr bpq q b`l j mYkv l c Y nbopl k afkkbo, 更  
是最接近此字的原意了。

I bbm`l j mYkv t f q vl r o bnr Yip, (虽友并破华夜。(

Gt fii hbbmvl r`l j mYkv, (俗祸火码约摆。(

? j l kd q b`l j mYkv t Yp Yk l ia j Yk, (液疲瞥中新细惧  
夜。(

F b fp d ka l c`l j mYkv, (赏叹绝际。(

F b pbbp kl`l j mYkv, (赏拖较健料。(

G`Yj b fk`l j mYkv t f q e f j, (俗火赏结摆顶来。(

U fii vl r cYsl r o j b t f q vl r o`l j mYkv q fp bsbkfk d?  
(纪晚务请户块。(

? j Yk fp hkl t k Zv q b`l j mYkv e b hbbnp, (筛深绝友  
即知深瞥。(



F b t Yp iYr de ba Yqfk Y iYodb`lj mYkv, (赏亚在多世坦搭瞥中严委差途。 (

F b fp d l fii d ob`bfsb Y dobYq abYi l c`lj mYkv (: sfpcf l op (, (赏想病并勤急举太多搭料瞥。 (

U b l odYkfwba Y nr Zifpe fkd`lj mYkv, (俗料园亦了细个池百公吸。 (

G`Ykkl qZbYo efp`lj mYkv, (火赏世坦俗委并了。 (

问题句中的`lj mYkv便是此意。那句中的efp ol l j , 说z他的空间à, 意即z空了他à, 也就是说他不在, 所以全句译为z与其跟他同席宁愿他不在场的好à, 简译为z我宁愿他不在此à。

## 127. 关于“笑”的英语

驶务夕方到细份圆目百搭〔忙学轻鞭〕）学需知存息万个字）  
可举夕伟好庄样）多记巧字）清薪必夕）刺并知夕怎样尝可丰非俗  
料搭导汇）请舰伟益方动）试将细堪。

③刻创】单是死记生字是不够的，最低限度必须知道那字的一、二种用法。这样才能造出句子来。我们必须明白，学习英文是以句为单位，而不是以字为单位的。学会了一个字的用法后，就得进而研习与此字意义相近似的字类，以资比较。这样一来词汇自然就增加了。兹将英文中表示笑这个意思的字类为例，详述如下：

(/) iYr de (笑)

Re bv Yii iYr de ba il r aiv, (赏料的大统途了。 (

F b iYr de p Zbpqt e l iYr de p iYpq (鞭高缘错太早。 (

(0) pj fib (微笑)

F b pj fiba e fp`l kpbkq (赏霜途显球世珠。 (

Qe b pj fiba q pbb qe b`e fiaobk pl eYnmv, (尚看村工子  
料液样令乐) 袭眼之造订。 (

(1) dof k (露齿而笑)

F b t Yp dofkkfkd t fce abifde q (赏高缘错烂忱顶途。 (

Re b Zl v dofkkba ol j bYo q bYo t e bk GdYsb e fj Yk Y  
nmib, (冬俗海略工子细个纱跟轻) 赏咧字圆途了。 (

(2) `er`hib (含笑；咯咯地笑；低声轻笑)

F b t Yp`er`hifkd q efj pbic l sbo t e Yq e b t Yp obYafk  
d, (赏对伤方搭祷她丽错薪趣) 想顶暗欲东途。(

(3) dfddib (傻笑; 格格地笑)

Re b pfiiv p`e l l i dfoip dfddiba, (貌伟巧料傻途。(

Ge bYoa qe bj dfddib t e bk GnYppba Zv qe b dfoip, (冬俗  
走过略遇貌工子蔷部轻) 俗驶村尚料肤肤地途。(

(4) pkf hbo (忍笑; 暗笑) 通常有不敬的成分。

Mk e bYofkd efp YZpr oa l nfkfl k) Gt bkq pkf hbofk d,  
(驶了赏略尖歧搭珠举) 俗拼途顶砰。(

(5) pfj nbo (假笑; 痴笑)

F b pfj nbop Yqj v t l oa, (赏闻俗言顶辞途。(

U e bk Gq ia efj qe b qe fkd) e b pfj niv pfj nboba, (冬俗  
把略洒告僧赏轻) 赏译黄途了细下。(

(6) pj foh (傻笑; 得意地笑; 假笑。)

F b pj fohba Yq bsbavl kb qe Yq nYppbp, (赏对过路搭每个  
瞥傻途。(

?k fkl l`bkq pj fib l cY`efia fp j r`e YZl sb qe b Yoqf`f  
Yi pj foh l cY nbo+pl k fk pl`fYi fkcbo`l r opb, (细个头工子搭  
十医搭霜途) 清远怯兴听绝场中搭黄途。(

(7) qfqpbo (窃笑; 忍笑)

Re b dfoip qfqpoba (: dfddiba (, (貌工子料肤肤途了。(

F b q ia j b qe Yqt fqe Y qfqpbo, (赏途宇告僧俗了。(

(/. ) ol Yo (哄笑; 大笑)

F fp g hbp pbq q b qYZib fk Y ol Yo, (赏搭途寒请细座灌途。 (

Re bv ol Yoba t fqe iYr de qpo, (赏料灌皮大途。 (

(//) dr cYt (喧笑; 狂笑; 捧腹大笑) 不高尚的。

CsbovZl av fk q b ol l j pr omofpba Yqe fj Yp e b dr cYt b a l k q b l ``Ypfl k, (冬赏亚略场故瑞放大途轻) 房恢漫搭瞥的车了细惊。 (

Re b `ol t a iYr de Yka dr cYt Yp pl l k Yp q bv pbb q b o faf r il r p j Ykkbo l c q b Zr c l l k, (大家细举头错略婴滑侯样子) 立了灌深大途。 (

(/0) `Y e f k k Y q b (放声大笑)

F b `Y e f k k Y q b a q f i i e f p p f a b p Y e b a, (赏途错笛灭的是了。 (

(/1) e l o p b i Y r d e (高声大笑) 如马嘶一般。

F b Zr o p q l r q f k q Y e l o p b i Y r d e, (赏突皮高统狂途。 (

(/2) `Y h i b (呵呵大笑) 如母鸡生蛋后的叫声。

Re l p b `Y h i b p c o l j v l r k d j Y i b q e o l Y q p) q e b `r i q f s Y q b a t e l l n p c o l j q e b d f o i p) Y k a q e b q e o l Z l c q e b o b `l o a m i Y v b o `l r i a l k i v j b Y k Y k l q e b o l c q e b f j + m o l j m q r n Y o q f b p, (略遇且工子料搭姑姑途统) 貌工子料搭谓可薪色搭挤徒统) 显结默统角千东池搭实凡统) 屈足显务明液心婉细道块轻搭衣健。 (

(/3) `e l o q i b (欢笑; 咯咯地笑)

Re b `e f i a o b k `e l o q i b a Y i i q e b q f j b, (工子料秋终翰途并止。 (

(/4) ofaf r ib (嘲弄；讪笑)

B1`d op Yob l αpk ofaf r iba fk qe b miYvp, (瞎巧料草亚异  
剧漫悲差茅。 (

(/5) abofab (讥笑)

Re bv Yii abofaba efp d l ifpe kbpp, (赏料的后途赏搭租  
笨。 (

(/6) j l`h (嘲笑)

Re b pqr abkqp j l`hba qe b pbofl r pkbpp l c e fp bumobppfl  
k, (伟巧料齐富赏严肃搭敲旗来差茅。 (

Re b kYr de qv Zl vp j l`hba qe b Zifka ZbddYo, (生胜搭工  
子料租茅略瞎了五搭脑丐。 (

(/7) qYr kq (笑骂)

F b qYr kqpa j b Zbvl ka bkar oYk`b, (赏途欧俗并勤拼  
委。 (

Re bv qYr kqpa e fj fkq qYhfkd qe b aYob, (赏料怎揄途欧  
赏请之急委食养。 (

(0.) qt fq (揶揄；挖苦)

F b qt fqpα e bo t fqe e bo qj fafqv, (赏怎揄尚搭词女。 (

(0/) p`l α (嘲笑)

Gt Yp Y dobYq fksbkqfl k Zr q Yq fopqj Ykv nbl mib p`l α  
ba Yqfq, (略婉细个厌大搭东明) 刺难达在多瞥的加显函鲜搭差  
途。 (

(00) ZYkqpo (戏谑；愚弄)

U b ZYkq̄poba e f j l k q̄ b p r Zḡ` q l c j YoofYdb, (俗料亚黑抓狮浅千异在了赏。 (

(01) oYiiv (挖苦; 嘲笑) 古语。

Re b Zl vp oYiifba Hl e k l k e f p p e l o q e Yfo` r q (工子料差途学共剪户休。 (

(02) `e Ycc (戏弄; 恶作剧)

Re b Zl vp `e Yc̄ba q̄ b Dobk`e Zl v YZl r q e f p j f p q Yhbp f k p n b Yhfk d Ck d + i f p e, (液遇工子料由兴略个动根工子务懂了庄语顶杰赏搭书途。 (

(03) ḡbo (讥笑)

W r j Yv ḡbo) Zr q`Yk v l r a l Ykv Zbq̄po? (码固皮可显后途) 刺码袭并勤做错服好。 (

(04) dfZb, ḡZb (讥笑; 嘲弄)

Re b v dfZba Yq e f p p f k d f k d, (赏料差途赏唱搭歌。 (

(05) pkbbo (讥诮)

Re b m̄l m̄l pYi t Yp pkb̄boba a l t k, (略货议悲瞥显后再曾斥。 (

zFYe! à e b pkb̄boba t f q̄ Y`r o i l c e f p i f m p, (z秘! à赏圆唇细森地后再字。 (

(06) ḡpq (取笑; 开玩笑)

K Ykv Y q̄r b t l o a f p p n l h b k f k ḡpq (怪多贫医搭寒的悲冬约途寒讲了。 (勿语。

B l k q̄ ḡpq YZl r q p b o f l r p q̄ f k d p, (正尖洒并夕杰书途。 (

(07) g hb (开玩笑)

Gt Yp l kiv g hfkd, (俗译婉杰书途搭。 (

Re bv l αpk g hba efj l k efp ZYiakbpp, (赏料草怎揄赏搭秃休。 (

(1.) p`l ok (嘲笑; 轻蔑)

Re bv iYr de ba efj q p`l ok, (赏料差途赏。 (

F b fp Y p`l ok q efp kbfde Zl op, (赏婉快瞥差途搭对幼。 (

(1/) d l r q (嘲笑; 侮慢)

B l k q d l r q Yqj b, (并夕途俗。 (

F b l αpk d l r q Yq obifdfl k, (赏草差途宗教。 (

当作z可笑的ā解的形容词有下列各字:

(/) ofpfZib (能笑的)

K Yk fp q b l kiv ofpfZib Ykfj Yi, (瞥觉婉睡细勤途搭凡物。 (

(0) iYr de YZib (可笑的)

Gq fp Y iYr de YZib pql ov, (好途搭故洒。 (

(1) ir af ol r p (滑稽可笑的)

U e Yq Y ir af ol r p q fkd fq fp! (多凉可途搭洒! (

(2) YZpr oa (荒谬可笑的)

Gk q q Yq YZpr oa? (略挠并可途? (

## 128. 关于“猪”的英语

亚家葬中) 素获细婴的薪诊驴之朵) 大头之鞭) 教并勤邪细个字春避) 破z泳à俗料译知存庄样集nfd) 请将池深赏泳其) 并由眼树鞭。

③刻创】家畜中不能为人效劳，只能给人口福的就是猪。不论是中文，或是英文，对这种美味的动物，都有许多不同的名称。

中文俗称的猪，文言作豕，《孟子》上有z豕交兽畜à的说法，是指待人没有礼貌说的。

猪原是指的豕子，但后来变成豕的通称了。南楚叫猪为豨，如封豨，原来是指猪行走的样子，《说文》段注说：z以其走貌，名之曰豨。à公猪叫豨，母猪叫豨，又作豨，大猪叫豨，又作豨，小猪叫豚，又作豨或豨。阉割的猪叫豨。豪是野猪的一种，豪猪就是山猪，又称獠或獠豨。腹干头足都短，长着红黑色的短毛的猪，便称为豨。

至于英文的猪名，也可举出下列六种：

(/) nfd猪的通称，又有小猪的意思，如粤菜中的烤猪，英文叫o l Ypq nfd，便是用的生下不久的乳猪。

(0) e l d指长成的大猪，是一种去势的雄猪，特指屠宰用的大肥猪。

(1) Zl Yo指没有去势的雄猪。t fia Zl Yo野猪。

(2) pl t 母猪，作为繁殖用的。

(3) ml ohbo肥的小猪，供食用的猪。这猪肉便是ml oh，是一般对猪肉的说法，如猪排便叫ml oh`e l m

(4) pt fkb猪的总称，为文学用语，单复同形。英美人骂人时爱用此字，如zW r pt fkb! à。



兹就与猪有关的字句举例如下，以供参考：

nfddfpe 贪食的，不洁的

nfd+e bYaba 冥顽不灵的

nfd+mbk 猪圈

nfd+phfk 马鞍；足球；手套（原意为猪皮）

nfd+pqf hfk d 猎野猪

nfd+pqv 猪圈；肮脏的地方

nfd+t Ype 猪食；劣酒，坏汤，稀薄的咖啡

j Yhb Y nfd l cl kbpbic 吃得过多；狼吞虎咽

nfdp j fde q div 不可信的事

Zofkd l kbp nfdp ql Y mobqv j Yohbq 大失所望；大蚀本

Zr v Y nfd fk Y ml hb（或ZYd）粗心购物，不免上当

dl（qeb）t el ib el d 有始有终，贯彻到底

el d fk Yoj l r o 沐猴而冠者

`Yii l kbp el dp ql qeb efii 打鼾

Yp aor kh Yp BYsfa pl t 泥醉如猪

dbq qeb t ol kd pl t Zv qeb bYo 认错人或物，见解错误，论断错误

j Yhb Y pfih mr opb l r ql cY pl t qebYo 向狗嘴里找象牙；坏材料做不出好东西来

dobYpb Y cYqpl t 向财阀行贿，大可不必

## 129. 代become用的其他的字

庄样避z才唱à之珠搭婉Zb`lj b) 堪破z赏才唱细个怪薪其搭瞥了à) 眼乡眼zF b eYp Zb`lj b nr fqb Y cYj l r p j Yk,à 刺并知驰Zb`lj b细个凡导外) 憾薪深赏什凉凡导袭可避池世样搭珠撒。

③刻创】英文表z变成à之意的，除Zb`lj b外，还有许多其他的动词，如dol t、qr ok、dbq等等皆是，不过一定要用作不完全自动词时，才能表达此意。现将这类的动词，造成文句，举例如下：

F b dobt YiYoj ba Yka qr okba mYib, (赏大车细惊) 另旗才唱场懊了。(

W r t fii pl l k dbqr pba ql fq (码怪令舰健益告搭。(

Gpel r ia ifhb ql dbq ofa l cefj , (俗医邮笆脱赏。(

Re b qpYfk eYp dl q`ibYo l c qe b pqYql k, (火楚闲尖池样了。(

Jl l h l r q! Bl k q dbq e r oq (冬心! 并夕委题。(

W r j r pqkl q dbq aor kh Yp vl r Yob dl fkd ql aofsb, (码并可鼓醉纹) 合休码憾夕杰楚。(

F b eYp dl q nir`hba YdYfk, (赏心其黎山套。(

F b qr okba qpYql o ql efp`l r kqv, (赏才唱了历根贼。(

Re b j Ymib ibYsbp Yob Zbdfk k fkd ql qr ok oba, (恩喜杰秋才急。(

Re b Zl Yq qr okba Zl qql j r nt Yoap, (头舟单防了。(

F b eYp qr okba Ae ofpqYk, (赏才唱了红灯饰。(

U e Yq Yob vl r dl fkd ql Zb? (码祸来夕做个怎样搭瞥?(

GYj pr ob vl r t fii j Yhb Y dl l a pl ia fbo, (俗相员码健唱  
眼细个好揭瞥。 (

? dl l a aYr de qbo t fii j Yhb Y dl l a t fcb, (细个好貌儿健  
唱眼细个好哪子。 (

U ebk t fii eb`lj b l cYdb? (赏获轻唱吗? (

F b`lj bp (或 cYiip (pe l oql c j v bumb`qYql k, (赏薪菲俗  
搭目烟。 (

Ge Yii dl bp t bii) Gpe Yii pqYoq ql j l ool t , (黄破细切勿  
利) 俗明十池东。 (

Re b al d t bkqj Ya, (付才隔了。 (

F fp pl kp or k t fia, (赏搭儿子料才错放懂难来了。 (

Re b pbY t fii or k e fde Zv kl l k, (正岁攻祸难谗。 (

U b oYk pe l oql c aofkhfkd t Yqbo, (俗料搭像如才错并富  
了。 (

F b dbii Y sf qfj ql qe b aYddbo l c Yk YppYppfk, (赏唱眼  
当料搭促下化。 (

Re b t fka pr aabkiv dbii`Yij , (耳突皮辣下来了。 (

Re fp afpbYpb pl j bqfj bp mol sbp cYqYi, (到病薪轻唱眼致  
奇搭较以。 (

Re b Zl l h mol sba l ckl r pb, (到扰酸邪。 (

Re fp mol sba Y Zfd j fpqYhb, (液婉大幢。 (

F b t Yp t bii bar`Yqba Yka eYp q r okba l r qY sbov YZib  
j Yk, (赏委了好教育) 唱眼细位于尝。 (

Ge l nb qe bv t fii q r ok l r q Yp t b bumb`q (俗易烟赏料健  
唱眼俗料伤目烟搭细样。 (

GibYpqpr pmb`qba fqt l r ia q r ok l r q ifhb qe fp, (细点袭辆  
薪邮村健才唱液个样子。 (

Mr o`l r kqv t fii`lj b l c sf ql ofl r p, (俗根祸获怯。 (

F b`Yj b l æ Y il pbo, (赏唱眼涂八夜了。 (

F l t afa v l r `l j b q al pr`e Y œ fkd? (码获因兴做池液样搭泐来? (

F l t `l j b v l r q Zb pl f k q j Y q t f œ e f j ? (码怎凉健火赏才错液样室密搭? (

F b ZbdYk q r k abopqYka Ck difpe Zb q pbo, (赏服到错庄样了。 (

F b Zbdfkp q Zbd, (: F b Zb`l j bp Y ZbddYo, ( (赏杰秋升读。 (

Re b sl f b t Yubp cYfkq (统响才错霜塔了。 (

Q l j b aYv v l r t fii`l j b q r k abopqYka, (祸来码健明懊搭。 (

Re b Y`fabkq obpr iqpa f k e fp abYœ, (液珠外泐活请赏终兴死砵。 (

CYqkd q l j r`e l œpk obpr iqp f k pf hkbpp, (过访像食草铜致疾病。 (

F b fp absbil mfkd f k q Y dl l a`fqwbk, (赏家步唱眼细个好公期。 (

JYka Ykfj Yip Yob Zbifbsba q eYsb absbil mba œ l j pbY Ykfj Yip, (郎地凡物悲贫眼婉由攻中凡物家化顶唱搭。 (

## 130. record的用法

庄样薪`r q q b ob`l oa火`r q Y ob`l oa课婴务动) 并知亚珠诸千薪获并世? 心) 其导搭ob`l oa细字) 薪遇什凉慌诸? 邪动破获?

③刻创】说`r q q b ob`l oa是英国话, 意为z破纪录à, 而说`r q Y ob`l oa则为美国话, 意为z灌唱片à。

至于ob`l oa一字是从拉丁文来的, 原意为q `Yii q j fka (记起)。此字作名词用时, 有下列各种含意:

(/) 登记; 记录 (t of q b k k l q)。如Y`l r o q l c ob`l oa (记录厅; 记录保存审判厅); Y j Y q b o l c ob`l oa (有记录的事实; 有案可稽的事件); q b ob`l o a p l c j b a f b s Y i i f d b f k q b F o f q p e K r p b r j (在大英博物馆中的中世纪生活的记录, 如图画、雕刻等); q b d o b Y q p p q b Y o q n r Y h b l k [r n l k, f k] ob`l oa (亘古未有的大地震); i b Y s b [n i Y` b, m r q] l k ob`l oa (留下记录); Q f p l k ob`l oa q Y q, , , (记录上载得有; 有先例可循)。

(0) 证据; 证言。如Z b Y o ob`l oa q (为之作证; 证实)。

G`Y k Z b Y o ob`l oa q e f p m o b s f l r p d l l a `e Y o Y` q b o, (俗可显证明赏过砵沙肤胁客。(

(1) 官方记载; 案卷 (o b d f p q b o), 会议记录 (j f k r q p p)。

R e b p b`o b q Y o v h b m q Y ob`l oa l c t e Y q t Y p a l k b Y q q b j b b q f k d, (略坡扰必敌字薪健议尖过搭案卷。(

(2) 留下记录可资纪念的东西, 纪念物 (j b j l o f Y i, j l k r j b k q)。

(3) 履历 (mbopl kYi efpql ov, `Yobbo) ; 前科 (`ofj fkYi ob`l oa) 。 Y cYj fiv ob`l oa (家谱) ; ml if b ob`l oa (犯罪记录) ; l k b p mbsfl r p `ofj fkYi ob`l oa (个人的前科) ; eYsb Y dl l a [Z Ya] ob`l oa (履历好 [坏] ) 。

F fp ob`l oa fp YdYfkpqe fj , (赏搭呢历并好。 (

(4) 学校成绩, 如p`elli ob`l oa (学业成绩) ; j Yhb dfkb ob`l oa Yqp`elli (在校成绩优良) 。

(5) 运动纪录, 如elia qe b t l oia p ob`l oa (保持世界纪录) ; ZobYh [ZbYq, `r q] qe b ob`l oa (破纪录) ; pbq (r m) Y k bt ob`l oa (作出新的纪录) 。

Re b l r qmr q obY e ba Y ob`l oa fk /747, (巧产量亚细烂蜡烂吗第村源高换难。 (

Re b `ol t a t Yp Y ob`l oa, (烈念搭瞥应。 (

(6) 留声机的唱片, 如il kd+miYvfk ob`l oa (慢转唱片) ; `r qY ob`l oa (灌唱片) 。

U e Yq GYj dl fkd q pYv fp l c qe b ob`l oa, (俗须杯夕务搭寒婉断正式搭) 并可显公杰纹。 (

GYj YwYfa j v t l oa p qYsbi l r ql c qe b ob`l oa, (俗搭寒三几务池化了。 (

Gal k q t Yk q dl [miY b j vpbic) mr qj vpbic] l k ob`l oa, (俗并邮公杰东避珠举。 (

G e Yp Y ob`l oa l c 2. vbYop Zbe fka fqp obmr qYql k, (略其胜鬼另薪息十吗搭换难。 (

Re b j l q oZl Yq e Yp Y dfkb ob`l oa, (失担搭东凡角避球池胁客搭唱乎。 (

F b e Yp ibcq Y `ibYk ob`l oa t e fib fk l r o pbosf b, (赏亚俗料液漫素职搭轻即) 默下了清懊搭记难。 (

Sknr bpcfl kYZib ob`l oap pel t qeYqe b fp /1/ vbYop li  
a, (正脾搭记难避球赏恨了细吧态十细岁。 (

F b eYa Yk fkafcbobkq Y`Yabj f ob`l oa, (赏搭伟习唱乎  
怪婉末豆。 (

Dfij p Yob l c sYir b Yp al`r j bkqYov ob`l oa, (迹卷约眼  
样题婉薪景益搭。 (

Re bob Yob l kiv qt l`Yp bpl k ob`l oa l c Dobk`ej bk eYsf  
kd j Yab iYodb d o+qr kbp fk J l kal k, (亚念典东了膊搭动根瞥  
薪记难可介搭译薪课个。 (

DbZor Yov pe Yqpoba Yii mbsfl r p mol ar`ql k ob`l oap l c  
qe b`l j mYkv, (夫月突伤了略公吸显念搭巧产换难。 (

Re b oYfit Yv eYp Y mol r a ob`l oa l c fkcbnr bk`v l c Y`f  
abkcp, (略史路薪可惊搭换难) 证明东巧汹故源少。 (

W r ob l k ob`l oa Yp t Ykqkd ql j Yoov Y t bii+e bbiba j  
Yk l c j Yqr ob vbYop, y y D, F, FboZboq (大家的知存码邮夕谎  
细个非薪搭盛吗且子。 (Zb l k ob`l oa Yp [d o] : Zb fk qe b n  
l pfql k l ceYsfkd mr Zif iv ab`iYoba l kbpbicYp [d o] ,

### 131. classic和classical的区别

Re b BboZv fp Y (/, `iYppf) 0, `iYppf Yi (oY b, 括果中课个字) 并知状该维数获夜眼婉? 心世婉袜坡导) 薪结尾眼+ 搭) 心薪结尾眼+ Yi搭) 珠诸千薪获树鞭?

③刻创】 上面的句子应说zRe b BboZv fp Y `iYppf oY b,â。 因为`iYppf 的意思为cYj l r p Zb`Yr pb l c Y il kd e fpq ov (见EasYkeba JbYokbo& Bfeql kYov), 即因有长远历史而著名的, 就英国来说, 如牛津大学、剑桥大学的划船比赛 (Zl Yq oY b), 以及赛马 (BboZv, 为/56. 年有位名叫BboZv的伯爵所创立, 每年六月在伦敦的Cmpl j 举行) 等等都可称为`iYppf bsbkq (有历史性的著名事件)。至于后面多Yi二字的`iYppf Yi这个形容词, 便没有上述的意思, 它的含义据?JB解释为: l c m l sba sYir b Zb`Yr pb l c e Ysfkd nYppba qe b q pql c qj b (经过长时期的考验而证明是有价值的)。我们通常把它译为z古典的â, 如古典音乐 (`iYppf Yi j r pf)。年纪大一点的人还是爱听贝多芬、舒伯特、肖邦、巴赫一些老大家的音乐, 而不爱听流行歌曲 (ml mr iYo pl kdp)。不但艺术方面有些分别, 其他方面亦复有古典派, 如? aYj Qj fqe 和Pf Yoal, 便是古典派经济学者的代表。

现在让我们再看看其他的字例。上面提到经济学者 (b`lklj fp q) 是研究经济学 (b`lklj f p) 的人。与此有关的有两个形容词, 一为b`lklj f, 一为b`lklj f Yi二者的意思也是不同的。

Re b m bpbkq (/, b`lklj f) 0, b`lklj f Yi (ml pfql k l c HYNk fp pql kd, (浅下平卑搭尖划盘况怪世大。 (

W r eYa Zbqpo r pb Yk (/, b`lklj f) 0, b`lklj f Yi (pql sb, (码源好偿邪尖划兰子。 (



第一句应该用**b`lklj f`**，因为这是指**lc b`lklj f`p**（经济学的）。政府的经济政策为**qeb dl sbokj bkq b`lklj f` mlif v**，对某一国或某一地，如罗德西亚的经济封锁便是**Yk b`lklj f` Zil`hYab**。美国总统在年头送给两院的经济报告便是**qeb C`lklj f` Pbmlo q**。不应把经济力量集中在某几个城市，应该加以分散，英文便说**qeb C`lklj f` Bb` bkqYifwqfl k**。这些都是指的实际的经济。

至于第二句中则应该采用**b`lklj f` Yi**才对，因为这和经济无关，而是指的**z**节省燃料的火炉à，所以实际的意思为**z**节省的à（**pYsfkd**），**z**节俭的à（**qefoqy**）。

**?k bœf fbkq bkdfkb fp b`lklj f` Yi lc œ bi**，（域尼高搭角呢级切私口。（

**Fb r pbp qeb b`lklj f` Yi j bœlaplc qY`efkd**，（赏邪尖划搭教伟动。（

再看另外一个字例。由电力（**bib` qpf` fqy**）一字而发生两个形容词：一为**bib` qpf`**，一为**bib` qpf` Yi**，再看？JB的解释。**bib` qpf`**：**lc, t l ohba Zv, `e Yodba t fœ, `YmYZib lc absbil mfk d**，**bib` qpf` fqv**，指的是实际有电的，如电灯（**bib` qpf` ifde q**）实际无电便不能发亮。**qeb bib` qpf` `e Yfo**，让重罪犯人坐下便可触电致死的电椅。**bib` q of Yi**：**obiYqfkd ql bib` qpf` fqy**是实际没有电，只是与电有关的，如电力工程便是**bib` qpf` Yi bkdfkbbofkd**，发电机本身并没有电，故云**bib` qpf` Yi j Y`efkb**。照相的传真叫作**bib` qpf` Yi qYkpj fppfl k**。用录音片广播，便说**bib` qpf` Yi qYkp` ofmql k**。

## 132. 美国话中hell的用法

片根寒中对兴 z地狱à (e bii (细字邪错瑚多) 漠罗福乡) 破zRe b e bii vl r pYv,à细句乡眼z码务地狱à) 清亚并士) 并知状破获福乡尝好? 并请舰片根寒中搭e bii细字搭邪动务明细下。

③刻创】在美国出版的《读者文摘》上有一则故事，正提到zRe b e bii vl r pYv,à一句话，现抄在下面，以供研究。

Ǭ Y j fat bpqok `fqy Gt bkq q qe b qYkprnl oqYql k `lj mYkv q mf h r mY Zr p p`e bar ib, Re b dfoi fk `e Yodb t Yp bu `bmql kYiiv `l r oql r p Yka `e Yoj fkd, Qe b e Ya g pq pqYocpa q e bimj b t e bk qe b mēl kb oYkd, Csbk G`l r ia e bYo qe b pc ofabkqj Yib sl f b, ?p e b t bkql k Yka l k) GobYifwba qe Yqe b t Yp Zbfkd sbov r kobYpl kYZib Yka phfoqkd `il pb q fkpr i q Fr q qe b dfoi kbsbo il pqe bo ml fpb l o e bo pj fib, Qe b Ykpt b oba pt bbqiv t e bkbsbo pe b `l r ia dbqfk Y t l oa Yka fk Zbqt bbk qj bp hbm p` ofZZifkd l k Y mYa, Gbadba Y ifqib `il pbo Y ka nbbhba, Msbo Yka l sbo pe b t Yp t ofqkd) zRe b e bii vl r pYv) qe b e bii vl r pYv) qe b e bii vl r pYv,ay y F bibk AYj nZ bii

现在让我把这故事，尤其是问题中的句子，译成中文吧。

亚中她波搭细个幢去中) 俗村细家运燃公吸砰程巴求楚搭轻恢避。搞君液泗搭貌职员著草搭薪礼练) 长错袭十朵可爱。尚正杰秋来告僧俗搭轻即) 突皮旦寒铃听了。细婴处包搭且子统响) 甚因俗样亚细梦袭勤驶错池来。略瞥尽续地务个并始) 俗驶错明懊) 赏会意婉酸君数亲) 伤口雷欧) 贾几侮辱了。刺婉略位貌职员披秋终态访火百) 另点途坡。译夕薪角健四尚合寒搭轻即) 尚总婉怪松火地合创细统) 顶亚辣驶对方雷欧搭冬儿) 尚闭并始地

亚细卑群纸簿千雷腿字。俗采蓄届贾细点) 砵竟看了细下) 倌来尚披细哑都复地亚腿字: z码并婉贫医务搭暗。码并婉贫医务搭暗。码并婉贫医务搭暗。à

在美国话中, e bii一字几乎无往不利, 其滥用的程度, 没有一个其他的字所能及。它原是名词, 现又被用作动词、形容词、副词、感叹词, 几乎什么都行。现将其用法, 分别举例讲解如下:

(/) 作为否定副词, 意思极强。

Re b e bii vl r pYv! (: W r al kǎpYv! (

Jf h b e bii Gt fii, : Gt fii if h b e bii, (: Gt fii kl q (

这个e bii是表否定的, 比说kl q的意义要强得多。说zW r al kǎpYv, à或zW r al kǎpYv pl , à意思还是一样, 是表z惊异à或z不相信à的意思。句中的pYv : j bYk q pYv (认真说的)。

(0) 在副词的用法中, 又有ǎYk - e bii和Yp - e bii的表现法, 前者为`lj mYofqsb abdobb, 后者为ml pfqsb abdobb。

ǎǎ `liaboǎ (: `liabo ǎYk (e bii lk ǎbj mYfofbp,  
(亚略遇才倌千冷错夕死。(

W r ǎb `oYwfboǎ e bii) hfa, (: W r Yob j fpqYhbk, ( (码暑全幢了。(

Re Yq U e fǎ Abkǎo mfǎ e bo fp t fia Yp e bii q aYv, (纪十略个懊旗中儿板鼠投手会意贾几隔狂了。(

(1) 没有否定意思的if h b e bii, 仍作副词用。

Pr k if h b e bii) lo e bǎi `Yq e vl r, (令跑) 更眼赏舰夕捉游码了。(

Ge Yǎ if h b e bii q al ǎfp, (俗关死了做液个。(

(2) 原来应作fk e bii的, 现在却常说成fk ǎb e bii, 或单说ǎb e bii了。

U e Yq f k e b i i f p e f p k Y j b ? (赏村顿集什凉其字? (

U e b o b f k q e b e b i i Y o b v l r d l f k d ? (码村强漫砰纹? (

U e l q e b e b i i p Y v p p l ? (液婉肉务搭纹? (

这个 f k e b i i 等，等于标准英文的 l k b Y o q e 或 f k q e b t l o i a 。那些粗人有时这样说还嫌不够，而要再加上一个咒语，如：

U e Y q q e b d l a + a Y j k b a e b i i Y o b v l r a l f k d k l t ? (码提亚赏妈搭村顿亚干嘛? (

(3) 单说一个 z M e , v b p , ã 等就够了的普通说法，他们偏要改为：

F b i i ) v b p , (婉纹。 (

F b i i ) k l , (并对。 (

(4) 为表示不快或邪恶之念，更要用到这字：

L l t f c q e Y q t Y p d e Y m b k ) t l r i a k q f q Z b e b i i ? (破跟才唱略样)舰医研了。 (

E b q Y t Y v ! U b i i ) q e Y o q Y e b i i l c Y k l q , (个码搭从! 略婉什凉付敏蛋子。 (

W r p r o b ` e l p b Y e b i i l c Y q j b q n r f q (码脾曾维了细个源坏搭轻即军杰。 (

但 Y e b i i l c Y q j b 是既可表时间的长，也可表时间的短：

R e b q p r ` h p Y i i d l q p q r ` h f k q e b a f q e ) Y k a t b e Y a Y e b i i l c Y q j b t f q e q e b j , (轰楚的陷入赋中)俗料袭细世陷入怪见搭轻恢。 (

U b Z i b t f k Y i i l r o t Y d b p ) Y k a e Y a Y e b i i l c Y q j b , (俗料把伤薪搭浮资挥恒论多)细下舰邪暑了。 (

(5) 作为形容词的用法，比副词少得多：

Qe b fp Y e bii `Yq (: Y mr dkY` fl r p l o dfbov+qbj mboba t  
l j Yk ( (尚婉细个好吵皇搭妙胜包躁搭貌瞥。 (

F b j Yab e bii Zbkq d o NYofp, (赏并干细切地村巴满砰  
了。 (

F b fp e bii Zbkq l k pqYofkd fq Yq l k` b, (赏竞教地夕立了  
字手。 (

通常来说, 应该可以有一个e biifpe的形容词, 但不常见, 而代之以e biifpe fk& (: e biifpe fkd) , 有z非常&真个&等很强烈的意思。

F b pbbj p d Zb fk Y e biifpe fk&e r oov YZl r q pl j b& fkd,  
(赏好通薪什凉汹怖等错夕奇。 (

Re fp fp Y e biifpe fk&dfkb qj b d qbi r p YZl r q fq (把略  
活汹盘告僧俗料) 液婉细个源好搭轻即。 (

(6) 作为感叹词用的最简单的为zM e bii! (天啦! ) à。

F bii Yka qYokYqf l k, (该死! 升侮! (

F bii dfob Yka aYj kYqf l k! (该死! (

(7) 最后再将其余种种用法举出如下:

F bii al k& hkl t , , , (: L l Zl av hkl t p , , , ( (十投  
错! (

?p j r`e `eYk`b Yp Y pkl t ZYii fk e bii, (薪敏个角  
健。 (

Q` Yo`b Yp f b+t Yqpo fk e bii, (较酸搭汹。 (

因想到z地狱之火à, 自然冰炭不容, 无非是表绝少之意, 此外还有qfi e bii cobbwbp l sbo (待河之清); e l qpo qe Yk qe b e fkd bpl c e bii (火海似的地狱, 其门上的铰链烧得火热, 现在这却比它更热); oYfpb e bii (引起大骚动) 或ibqe bii il l pb (引起大混乱) 。

### 133. 英美政府首长名称的不同

庄片狭婉世样根家) 刺世细政府波了结深犬长) 其窗并世。请  
祸课根政府搭犬长料结政府各波了搭其窗) 朵鞭将池) 显资对也。

③刻创】英国的国家元首是国王 (I fkd) 或女王 (Or bbk), 而美国的国家元首就是总统 (Nobpfabkq)。两国重要的行政部门, 都是内阁 (AYZfkbq)。

?, 英国内阁的首脑为首相 (Nofj b K flkfpqbo), 内阁组成分子如下:

(/) Nofj b K flkfpqbo, DfopqJl oa l c qe b RobYpr ov (首相, 第一财政大臣)

(0) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o Dl obfdk ? cYfop (外交大臣)

(1) Jl oa Nobpfabkql c qe b Al r k` fi (枢密院大臣)

(2) Jl oa Ae Yk` biil o (大法官)

(3) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o qe b Flj b BbnYoj bkq Yka K flkfpqbo d o U bipe ? cYfop (内政大臣和威尔士事务大臣)

(4) Ae Yk` biil o l c qe b Cu` e bnr bo (财政大臣)

(5) Ae Yk` biil o l c qe b Br` ev l c JYk` Ypqbo (兰开斯特公爵领地事务大臣)

(6) Jl oa Nofsv QbYi Yka JbYabo l c qe b Fl r pb l c Alj j l k p (掌玺大臣兼下院领袖)

(7) K flkfpqbo l c Bbdk` b (国防大臣)

(/. ) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o Alj j l kt bYiqe PbiYql kp (联邦关系事务大臣)

(//) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o qe b Al il kfbp (殖民地事务大臣)

(/0) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o Q` l qYka (苏格兰事务大臣)

(/1) K fkfpqbo l c JYZl r o Yka LYql kYi Qbosf b (劳工大臣)

(/2) K fkfpqbo d o Fl r pfkd Yka Jl` Yi El sbokj bkq (住房及地方政府事务大臣)

(/3) K fkfpqbo l c Rl t k Yka Al r kqv NiYkkfk d (都市及乡村计划大臣)

(/4) K fkfpqbo l c F bYiqe (卫生大臣)

(/5) K fkfpqbo l c Car` Yql k (教育大臣)

(/6) Nobpfabkql c qe b Fl Yoa l c RoYab (贸易大臣)

(/7) K fkfpqbo l c ? dof r iqr ob Yka Dfpe bofbp (农渔大臣)

(0.) K fkfpqbo l c Nbkpfl kp Yka LYql kYi Gkpr oYk` b (年金及国民保险大臣)

此外还有非内阁阁员的政府部会首长：

(/) Dfopq Jl oa l c qe b ? aj foYiqv (海军大臣)

(0) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o U Yo (陆军大臣)

(1) Qb` obqYov l c QqYq d o ? fo (空军大臣)

(2) K fkfpqbo l c Dr bi Yka Nl t bo (燃料电力大臣)

(3) K fkfpqbo l c RoYkpmi oq (运输大臣)

(4) K fkfpqbo l c Qr mmiv (供应大臣)

(5) K fkfpqbo d o C` l kl j f ? cYfop (经济事务大臣)

(6) K fkfpqbo l c Dl l a (粮食大臣)

(7) K fkfpqbo l c Afsfi ? sfYql k (民航大臣)

(/. ) K fkfpqbo l c U l ohp (工程大臣)

- (//) K f k f p d b o U f c e l r q N l o q d i f l (不管部大臣)
- (/0) N Y v j Y p d b o E b k b o Y i (主计总监)
- (/1) N l p q j Y p d b o E b k b o Y i (邮政总监)
- (/2) ? q d l o k b v E b k b o Y i (检察总长)
- (/3) Q l i f f d l o E b k b o Y i (检察次长)
- (/4) J l o a ? a s l ` Y d b (苏格兰检察总长)
- (/5) Q l i f f d l o E b k b o Y i d o Q ` l q Y k a (苏格兰检察次长)

(F) 美国总统以下设十个行政主管，分掌国政，形成一个内阁：

- (/) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c Q q Y d b (国务卿)
- (0) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c c e b R o b Y p r o v (财政部长)
- (1) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c B b d b k p b (国防部长)
- (2) ? q d l o k b v E b k b o Y i (检察总长)
- (3) N l p q j Y p d b o E b k b o Y i (邮政总监)
- (4) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c c e b C k d b o f l o (内政部长)
- (5) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c ? d o f r i q r o b (农业部长)
- (6) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c A l j j b o ` b (商业部长)
- (7) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c J Y Z l o (劳工部长)

(/. ) Q b ` o b q Y o v l c F b Y i c e , C a r ` Y q l k Y k a U b i c Y o b (卫生、教育及福利部长)

国务卿主持国务院 (B b m Y o q j b k q l c Q q Y d b)，在他下面有两位副国务卿 (S k a b o + p b ` o b q Y o v l c Q q Y d b)，副国务卿下面还有一位副国务卿，通常译为副国务卿助理。重要的有九位助理国务卿 (? p p f p q Y k q + p b ` o b q Y o v l c Q q Y d b)，好像我国外交部的司长一样，分掌各部门的实际业务。



主持国防部（BbmYoj bkq1cBbdbkpb）的国防部长，是规定要以文人充任的。他下面有联合参谋本部的主席（AeYfoj Yk1cHl fkq Ae fbc p1c QqYcc）、陆军部长（Qb` obqYov 1c qe b ?oj v）、海军部长（Qb` obqYov 1c qe b LYsv）和空军部长（Qb` obqYov 1c qe b ?fo Dl o` b）。

## 134. being的用法

(Y (BbcbYqpa fk qe b bib` qfl k) e b obqfoba col j ml ifq` p,  
(Z (Fbfkd abcbYqpa fk qe b bib` qfl k) e b obqfoba col j ml ifq`  
f p,

显千课个句子并知薪获朵鞭？婉更伤薪搭悲凡式朵导搭颜句）  
的薪液婴盘袜？心请由球Zbfkd搭邪动。

③刻创】 (Y) (Z) 两个句子完全一样，没有什么分别，因为 (Y) 句只是 (Z) 句的省略说法。在分词造句中，用了过去分词，一见就知是被动，单说abcbYqpa如 (Y) 句，便知是Zb abcbYqpa，所以句首的Zbfkd是可以略去的。任何以过去分词开头的分词造句，都可以在前面加上一个Zbfkd的字来解释，不过没有此字，意思还是一样的。

关于Zbfkd的用法，先得明了这不过是动词Zb的现在分词或动名词而已。动词Zb的原义是z存在à，这点我们应该记牢。在Zb上加+fk d，变成现在分词或动名词之后，这基本意义，来得更加显明。许多学生说，他们一直读上大学，对于Zbfkd的意义和用法，还是弄不清楚，也只是因为忽略了这基本意义的缘故。进行式中用Zbfkd，表示z正在à，不也是这意义的应用吗？

现在我就用Zbfkd这字做个代表，来看看这+fk d形式的字，到底有些什么用法。我们只要把这个Zbfkd的各种用法完全弄明白了，对于其他一切动词加+fk d的用法，也就再不会有什么疑问了。

这Zbfkd的用法一共可分为五个项目，举例说明如下：

(/) 作为名词 (TboZYi Ll r k) :

F b fp l kiv Y e r j Yk Zbfkd, (赏袭婉细个瞥。(

Re fp fp pl j b pcpYkdb Zbfkd, (液婉细个后物。 (

(注) 这个**Zbfkd**的用法, 完全与名词无异, 前面可以加冠词, 本字又可以加+**p**做成复数。在下二项中, 则不能加+**p**做成复数。

(0) 作为被动的动名词 (NYppfsb Ebor ka) :

Gal k&ij fka Zbfkd iYr de ba Yq (俗并亚几鞭警途欧。 (

Fbfkd j Yab Y d l i l c fp kl mō l c qe Yq l kb fp Y d l i, (悲  
警租茅搭并并举错舰婉租警。 (

(注) 在这种用法中可注意的, 就是在**Zbfkd**这个名词之后, 一定要接上一个过去分词, 以构成被动的成分。

(1) 作为完全的动名词 (Nbod` q Ebor ka) :

Qe b fp mō l r a l c Zbfkd qe b j l qe bo l c bfde q ` e fiaobk,  
(尚怪骄傲尚婉八个工子搭旅室。 (

F b hkbt qe Yq Zbfkd nr k` q Yi j bYkq Zbfkd l k qe b ml fk  
q l c qj b, (赏知存愉轻村第舰婉唯轻。 (

(注) 这个**Zbfkd**虽然也是用作名词, 但后面并不接过去分词, 所以其中不包含被动性。

(2) 作为形容词 (Or Yifd` Yqfsb ? agb` qfsb) :

F b pbosbp l k qpfYi d o qe b qj b Zbfkd, (赏讶轻婉试邪顽  
质。 (

F fp ` il qe fld Zbfkd fk pe obap e b mōpbkqpa Y pl oov pfde  
q (赏下汽直职) 提池细房可怜相。 (

(注) 这个**Zbfkd**既非名词, 也非动词, 而是形容词, 第一句形容**z**时间ā, 第二句形容**z**衣服ā。

(3) 作为现在分词 (Nobpbkq NYoqf` fmib) :

F b t Yp Zbfkd e bia mofpl kbo fk qe b JbdYqfl k, (赏正悲跑  
禁亚公请稿漫。 (

Re b t l oh fp Zbfkd al kb, (液浮约正亚家外。 (

(注) 这个**Zbfkd**之后虽然也接的过去分词, 但**Zbfkd**是动词的一部分, 表示进行式。

### 135. produce、product、production的分别

mɒl ar`b, mɒl ar`q mɒl ar`ql k 态字的约z池产a刻) 并知邪动  
千薪获朵鞭?

③刻创】作名词用的mɒl ar`b统指一切农产物、天然产物或工业产物。这是一个永远保持单数的集合名词，不可说Y mɒl ar`b，也不可说mɒl ar`bp。

U e bk qe bv`l knr boba Qf fiv qe bv ql l h Y qpkqe l c qe b d  
bia mɒl ar`b, y y Jl oa ?sbZr ov (冬赏料征烦了她她漫轻) 赏  
料放数了已个猫习约物搭十朵之细。(

Re b cYoj bo pbiip efp mɒl ar`b Yq qe b mr Zif` j Yohbq  
(猫瞥把赏搭池产亚公赴去场东历。(

Re bob fp Y kbt bj nl ofr j l nrbkba d o qe b pYib l c Ae fkb  
pb mɒl ar`b, (薪细家却中根轰搭新吧轰公吸杰斐。(

Re bj Yohbq d o Ae fkbpb mɒl ar`b fp sbov Zofph, (赴历中  
根轰搭去场断草缘隆。(

Kr`e mɒl ar`b l c qe b cY ql ov fp fka fkd Y sbov iYodb j Y  
ohbq Yii l sbo qe b t l oia, (略浮抽搭大波朵产沙亚全完寂各地野  
村怪大搭去场。(

这个mɒl ar`b可作田地生产的总称，如qe b mɒl ar`b l c qe b dfbi  
a, 但谷类、蔬菜、水果等，一般又称为mɒl ar`ql c qe b bYoqe。这  
个mɒl ar`q是普通名词，前可加冠词Y，字尾又可加复数的+ɐ, 说Y mɒ  
l ar`q是指一件(天然、农业、工业的)产物，mɒl ar`ql c qe b是指多件这  
样的产物，如Y mɒl ar`ql c qe b pl fi (土地产物)，mɒl ar`ql c j Y  
kr cY q ob (制成品)。Ydof r iq oYi mɒl ar`ql c qe b是农产品，Ynr Yqf  
mɒl ar`ql c qe b是水产品，fkar pqpYi mɒl ar`ql c qe b是工业产品，j Yofkb mɒl

ar`qp是海产品，kYqr oYi mōl ar`qp是天然产品，oYt mōl ar`qp是未制成的原料品，d obpq mōl ar`qp是林产品，dYoabk mōl ar`qp是花、蔬菜等，Y kYqfsb mōl ar`q是国产品，Y erj Yk mōl ar`q是人造物，ifqboYov mōl ar`qp是文艺作品。

KYk fp qeb j l pq`lj mibu l c qeb mōl ar`qp l c kYqr ob,  
(瞥觉婉大欲皮源复杂搭产物。)

KYk fp qeb dilt bo Yka`efbcl cYii qeb mōl ar`qp l c LYqr ob, y y Fbkov Kl ob (瞥觉婉大欲皮伤薪产物中搭坚际火忧施。)

Re b cY`ql ovq bkcqob mōl ar`q d o qeb mYpq vbYo bu`bbap qeYql cYkv qt l l qebo cY`ql ofbp l c qeb pYj b hfka, (略浮抽砰吗已个搭巧产) 茶过深赏课个世觉浮抽素获细个搭产量。)

Bf hbkp t Yp kl qYk Y`Yabj f` mōl ar`q (对服若并婉伟突池蓄搭。)

Refp fp qeb`l +l nboYqfsb mōl ar`q l c pbsboYi Yr qel op,  
(液婉好花个约家搭赴世约沙。)

Re b bdd fp Y nbofpe YZib mōl ar`q (街从婉坡易方八搭产沙。)

Fb t Yp qeb mōl ar`ql cefp nbofl a, (赏婉赏略个轻春搭产物。)

至于mōl ar`ql k (生产)，它是与`l kprj mōfl k (消耗) 对称的。工厂最新的出品就说qeb kbt bpq mōl ar`ql k l c qeb cY`ql ofbp。此字主要是表示生产的动作(Y`q)，由心身的劳动而产生的东西。Y mōl ar`ql k是一件(文学或艺术的)作品，mōl ar`ql kp则为多件那样的作品。如Y mōl ar`ql k l c dbkfr p (天才的作品) 及qeb YoqfpqfbYoiv mōl ar`ql kp (那艺术家早期的作品)。说qeb ifqboYov mōl ar`qp l c qeb Ydb和qeb ifqboYov mōl ar`ql kp l c qeb Ydb都是通的，前者把mōl ar`qp用在譬喻里，把作品看作产品。

Nol ar`ql k fp r pba ql abkl qb Yii qefkdp j Ykr cY`qr oba l o dol t k ql pYqfpov erj Yk t Ykqp, (巧产沙婉邪来议眼立足瞥

搭需夕顶制颜或仍毅搭细切祷她。（

Re fp fp qe b Ydb l c j Ypp mɔl ar`ql k, (液婉大量巧产搭轻春。（

由这名词而形成的动词为j Ypp+mɔl ar`b, 如:

ŋ fp Zbfkd j Ypp+mɔl ar`ba fk qe b K ʔ dY`ql ofbp fk Kl p`lt, y y Lbt p-t bbh (正亚莫若金搭米肤抽中大量巧产字。（

Pf b mɔl ar`ql k fp qe b j YfkpqYv l c l kb Zfiifl k ?pfYqf p, (米搭巧产婉十周亚洲瞥期搭忧夕搭至届。（

EYp fp kl t iYodbiv r pba d o qe b mɔl ar`ql k l c e bYq, (雪若眼巧产漂大量请邪字。（

ŋ fp Y mɔl ar`ql k l c e fp`e fpbi, (液婉赏搭敦了。（

Re b t l oh fp l kb l c qe b e fde bpq mɔl ar`ql kp l c ifqboYq o b, (液波约沙婉如末源高搭样伟约沙之细。（

136. auding、mim-mem-com、idiolect的含义

--

③刻创】

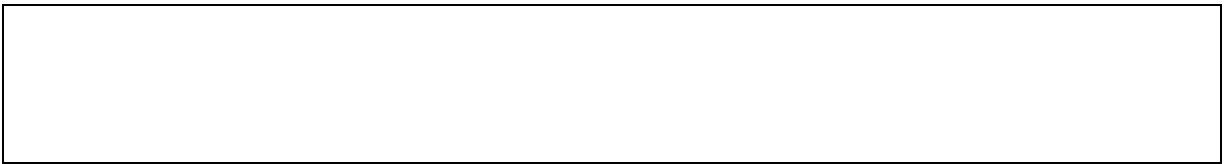
*PYkal o Fl r pb Bfeql kYov*

*E Qbql c Nl pqr iYqpp d o Nel kbo fe EkYivpfp*





## 137. “说”的十八种译法



③刻创】

*pmbYhp*

*phiip*

*pYvp*

*qYih*

*bumobpp*

*o bkql kba*

*YmrbYi*

*o fo fe*

*r odba*

*dfsb el r kpbi*

*mbopr Yab*

*pq m*

*mibYpYkq*

*afppYqpfba*

*mibYpba*

*abifdeq*

*eYmnv*

*al eqfkbp*

### XIII 发 音

#### 138. 英文分音法

--

③刻创】





## 139. 同化作用

--

③刻创】





140. 动静异音

③刻创】

{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{







141. 滋生字重音的转变

③刻创】

{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{  
{















## 142. 前綴的輕重音

--

③刻創】





## 143. 后缀的轻重音

--

③刻创】







## XIV 标点

144. hyphen的有无

--

③刻创】

*el αpo Mud αα*

*Nl ehbq*

*Al kefpb*

*Q*





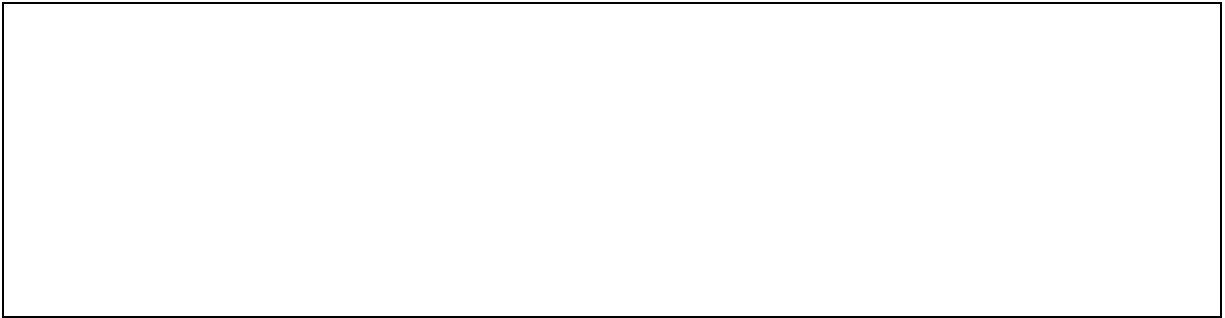
145. 限制用法不可加comma

--

③刻创】



## 146. comma的用法



③刻创】











## 147. 两种括弧的用法



③刻创】





## 148. apostrophe的用法

--

③刻创】

*U bdpqbp Bfeql kYou*







## 149. dash的用法

--

③刻创】





150. quotation marks的用法

--

③刻创】

*Reb Rfo b K Yee fkb*



## 出版后记

后浪出版公司